European Association of Urology
Guidelines
2017 edition
European Association of Urology Guidelines 2017

Introduction

We are honoured to present the 2017 edition of the European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines. The EAU Guidelines are the most comprehensive continuously updated guidelines, available for urologists and related specialties, produced by a dedicated Guidelines Office involving approximately 300 international experts. The EAU guidelines are recognised worldwide as an important resource to assist clinicians in their everyday practice, they are currently available in more than 30 languages and endorsed by more than 55 national and scientific societies throughout Europe and the world. Furthermore, this year we are delighted to announce the inclusion of two new topics, Renal Transplantation and Thromboprophylaxis.

Clinical practice guidelines not only play a pivotal role in health care practice, but are also a vital resource for the advancement of medical education. The EAU Guidelines Office are committed to actively pursuing effective collaborations both within the EAU and externally which help to further the medical education of young clinicians. A key example of this is the EAU Guidelines Office systematic review programme, the success of which is measurable in the numerous European Urology publications it has produced to date. In this endeavour the EAU Guidelines Office is exceptionally grateful for the continued support and active collaboration of Prof. Dr. J. Catto editor-in-chief of European Urology. Other highly productive collaborations include the hosting of multiple European School of Urology courses on changes in the guidelines and evidence-based medicine methodology for which the continued support of Prof. Dr. J. Palou has been invaluable. In the coming year we will continue to build upon and grow these collaborations.

Adherence to national and international clinical guidelines is sub-optimal throughout Europe therefore, the development of clinical guidelines must fundamentally be supported by an effective dissemination and implementation strategy. Dissemination should be an active process in which tailor-made information is actively imparted to the appropriate audience/users. Effective implementation of clinical guidelines involves the identification of barriers to knowledge transfer, or more importantly, the identification of the optimum interventions to limit or overcome such barriers. During the course of 2017 both the EAU Guidelines Social Media (SoMe) and IMpact Assessment of Guidelines Implementation and Education (IMAGINE) groups will continue to actively drive these processes forward, allowing for the continued optimisation of urological healthcare resources ultimately, focused on improving patient outcomes.

Moving forward, as of 2018, the EAU Guidelines will begin to adopt a modified version of the Grading of Recommendations Assessment, Development and Evaluation (GRADE) approach to measure the quality of evidence of studies included in the guidelines and to grade guidelines recommendations. The strength of each recommendation will be determined by the balance between desirable and undesirable consequences of alternative interventions, the quality of evidence for each intervention as well as the nature and variability of patients’ values and preferences. The strength of each recommendation will be represented by the words ‘strong’ or ‘weak’. The panels will provide both ‘strong’ and ‘weak’ recommendations ‘for’ or ‘against’ each intervention. This system will be introduced across all EAU Guidelines, in a staged process, the aim being to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and a given recommendation.

The yearly publication of the EAU Guidelines would not be possible without the unwavering support of the EAU Executive Committee and Management team, our highly valued Guidelines Panels and young Guidelines Associates, our EAU membership and every user of the Guidelines globally. So, on behalf of the EAU Guidelines Office Board, thank you for your support and inspiration.

We hope you enjoy using the 2017 update of the EAU Guidelines!

Prof. Dr. James N’Dow
Chairman EAU Guidelines Office
The EAU Guidelines Office has set up dedicated Committees responsible for critical aspects of guidelines development.

**EAU Guidelines Office Methods Committee**
Prof. Dr. R. Sylvester, Brussels (BE) (chair)
Prof. Dr. S. Canfield, Houston (TX, USA)
Dr. L. Marconi, Coimbra (PT)
Dr. C. Yuhong Yuan, Hamilton (ON, CN)
Dr. I. Omar, Aberdeen (UK) (ex-officio)
Dr. S. MacLennan, Aberdeen (UK)
Prof. Dr. J. N’Dow, Aberdeen (UK) (ex-officio)

**EAU Guidelines Office Dissemination Committee**
Prof. Dr. M.J. Ribal, Barcelona (ES) (chair)
Prof. Dr. M. Rouprêt, Paris (FR)
Dr. S. Loeb, New York (NY) USA
Dr. I. van Oort, Nijmegen (NL)

**EAU Guidelines Office Associates Programme**
Prof. Dr. T. Knoll, Sindelfingen (DE) (chair)
Dr. L. Marconi, Coimbra (PT)
Dr. V. Hernández, Madrid (ES)
Dr. M. Bruins, Nijmegen (NL)

**EAU Guidelines Office IMAGINE Group (IMPact Assessment of Guidelines Implementation and Education)**
Prof. Dr. A. Briganti, Milan (IT) (chair)
Dr. G. Gandaglia, Milan (IT)
Dr. S. MacLennan, Aberdeen (UK)
Dr. S.J. MacLennan, Aberdeen (UK)
Dr. L. Marconi, Coimbra (PT)
Prof. Dr. M. Trapero-Bertran, Barcelona (ES)
Prof. Dr. L. Vale, Newcastle (UK)
Prof. Dr. J. N’Dow, Aberdeen (UK) (ex-officio)

**EAU Guidelines Office CONFIDENCE Committee (CONsensus Finding DEvelopmeNt Committee)**
Prof. Dr. A. Bex, Amsterdam (NL) (chair)
Dr. G. Athanasiadis, Aberdeen (UK)
Dr. M. Bruins, Nijmegen (NL)
Prof. Dr. J. N’Dow, Aberdeen (UK) (ex-officio)
Methodology section

Clinical guidelines development is one of the core activities of the European Association of Urology (EAU), with the 2017 Guidelines covering the majority of the urological field. The EAU clinical guidelines, which are updated based on systematic reviews of the available clinical evidence, are developed to support clinicians in making informed decisions in their care of patients.

The Guidelines Office (GO), consisting of more than 300 clinicians, is responsible for the production of these documents. Their efforts are supported by a number of expert Committees, each with specific tasks and responsibilities.

The EAU GO unified production methodology aims to:
- ensure scientific quality, accuracy and currency of information;
- promote a sustained quality improvement;
- contribute to the dissemination and implementation of all EAU Guidelines publications.

Systematic Review development

The EAU GO have set up a management structure to support development of systematic reviews (SR) involving young clinicians (Guidelines Associates) who are supported by methodologists and statisticians. These SRs are based on clinical questions prioritised by the Guideline Panel responsible for each topic and their findings are incorporated into the EAU guidelines as they become available. Benefits and harms of interventions are addressed in detail, both in the development stage of the clinical question and when review findings are being incorporated and treatment recommendations formulated. Whenever possible, patient input is sought at both the development stage of the SR questions as well as when guidelines recommendations are being drafted. Patient organisations are invited to take part in review of the EAU Guidelines documents prior to publication. This is a rolling programme, with the ambition to address the majority of key clinical questions covered by the EAU guidelines.

All SRs are performed using standard Cochrane SR methodology: (http://www.cochranelibrary.com/about/about-cochrane-systematic-reviews.html). Two independent reviewers screen abstracts and full texts, carry out data abstraction, assess risk of bias and do a GRADING exercise [1-4]. The results are presented in tables showing baseline characteristics and summaries of findings. Meta-analyses are performed only as part of a SR when several randomised controlled trials have addressed the same question and outcomes are reported homogenously. For lower level data, narrative syntheses of the evidence are provided. The Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses (PRISMA) guidance is followed [5].

Independently of these SRs, each Guideline Panel has undertaken a separate systematic search, tailored to their individual guideline. These are broad searches (Scope/Horizon searches) which are developed to:
- ensure that the available clinical evidence is identified in a structured unbiased fashion;
- ensure that significant data are not missed;
- inform on the need to update guidelines documents;
- identify gaps in the literature and prioritise future systematic review activities.

The results of these searches are selected and assessed in a structured fashion by Guideline Associates and Guideline Panel members, although no detailed evidence summaries are produced. The search histories are available online in the Appendices and Publications sections of each guideline topic (www.uroweb.org/guidelines/).

Level of evidence and grading systems

Modified Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence approach

The majority of recommendations in this text are assessed according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [6].
Table 1: Level of evidence*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Type of evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1a</td>
<td>Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td>Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2b</td>
<td>Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2: Grade of recommendation*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Nature of recommendations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Modified from [6].

**Modified Grading of Recommendations Assessment, Development and Evaluation (GRADE) approach**

Moving forward, the EAU GO have adopted a modified GRADE approach to assess the quality of evidence of studies included in the guidelines and to grade guidelines recommendations [7-9]. Assessment of the evidence using GRADE methodology has been the standard for all new systematic reviews undertaken by the GO in the past two years. GRADE methodology will now be introduced across all EAU Guidelines documents, in a staged process, which will be completed by 2018.

To allow for a transparent assessment of how recommendation statements have been developed, a Summary of Evidence (SOE) table will be provided for each recommendation within the guidelines which will address a number of key elements:

1. The overall quality of the evidence which exists for the recommendation;
2. The magnitude of the effect (individual or combined effects);
3. The certainty of the results (precision, consistency, heterogeneity and other statistical or study related factors);
4. The balance between desirable and undesirable outcomes;
5. The impact of patient values and preferences on the intervention;
6. The certainty of those patient values and preferences.

These key elements in the SOE tables are the basis which panels use to define the strength of each recommendation. The strength of each recommendation will no longer be represented by alphabetic characters, but rather by the words ‘strong’ or ‘weak’ [9]. The panels will provide both ‘strong’ and ‘weak’ recommendations ‘for’ or ‘against’ recommending an action based on the information found in the SOE tables. The strength of each recommendation is determined by the balance between desirable and undesirable consequences of alternative management strategies, the quality of the evidence (including certainty of estimates), and nature and variability of patient values and preferences.

**References**

The assistance and support of National Urological Associations has been invaluable for the European Association of Urology guidelines project over the past years. Whilst in many European countries the EAU guidelines are being used in clinical practice, or form the basis of national urological guidelines, the EAU Guidelines Office have only recently started to formalise endorsement of their guidelines. Formal replies have been sent in by the following National Urological Associations within Europe and beyond:

**National Societies Endorsements**

The Algerian Association of Urology
The Argentinian Society of Urology
The Armenian Association of Urology
The Urological Society of Australia and New Zealand
The Austrian Urological Society
The Belarusian Association of Urology
Belgische Vereniging Urologie
The British Association of Urological Surgeons
Brazilian Urological Association
The Bulgarian Association of Urology
La Sociedad Chilena de Urología
The Chinese Urological Association
La Sociedad Colombiana de Urología
The Croatian Society of Urology
The Cyprus Urological Association
The Czech Urological Society
The Danish Urological Society
The Dutch Association of Urology
The Estonian Society of Urologists
The Finnish Urological Association
The French Association of Urology
The German Urological Association
The Georgian Urological Association
The Hellenic Urological Association
The Hong Kong Urological Association
The Hungarian Urological Association
The Icelandic Urological Association
The Indonesian Urological Association
The Irish Society of Urology
The Italian Association of Urology
The Kosova Urological Association
The Latvian Association of Urology
The Lithuanian Urological Society
The Luxembourg Society of Urology
The Macedonian Association of Urology
The Malaysian Urological Association
The Maltese Association of Urology
The Mexican Society of Urologists (SMU)
Norwegian Urological Association
The Polish Urological Association
The Portuguese Urological Association
The Russian Society of Urology
The Romanian Association of Urology
Société Belge d’Urologie
The Slovak Urological Society
The Slovenian Urological Association
The Spanish Association of Urology
The Sri Lanka Association of Urological Surgeons
The Swedish Urology Association
The Swiss Society of Urology
The Taiwan Urological Association
The Tehran University of Medical Sciences
Faculty of Urology
The Turkish Association of Urology
The Thai Urological Association
The Urological Society of India
The Urological Association of Serbia
The Ukrainian Association of Urology

Furthermore, the EAU Guidelines Office is most grateful for the continued support of the European Board of Urology.

---

European Board of Urology
Composition Guidelines Working Groups

**EAU Working Group on Non-Muscle-Invasive Bladder Cancer**
Prof.Dr. M. Babjuk, Prague (CZ) (chair)  
Prof.Dr. M. Burger, Regensburg (DE) (vice-chair)  
Prof.Dr. E.M. Compérat, Paris (FR)  
Prof.Dr. P. Gontero, Torino (IT)  
Mr. A.H. Mostafid, Guilford (UK)  
Prof.Dr. J. Palou Redorta, Barcelona (ES)  
Prof.Dr. M. Rouprêt, Paris (FR)  
Prof.Dr. S.F. Shariat, Vienna (AT)  
Prof.Dr. R. Sylvester, Brussels (BE)  
Dr. B.W.G. van Rhijn, Amsterdam (NL)  
Prof.Dr. R. Zigeuner, Graz (AT)  

**Associates:**
Dr. O. Capoun, Prague (CZ)  
Dr. D. Cohen, London (UK)  
Dr. J.L. Dominguez Escrig, Madrid (ES)  
Dr. B. Peyronnet, Rennes (FR)  
Dr. T. Seisen, Paris (FR)  
Dr. V. Soukup, Prague (CZ)  

**EAU Working Group on Muscle-invasive and Metastatic Bladder Cancer**
Prof.Dr. J.A. Witjes, Nijmegen (NL) (chair)  
Prof.Dr. E.M. Compérat, Paris (FR)  
Dr. N.C. Cowan, Portsmouth (UK)  
Dr. E. Briers, Hasselt (BE), patient representative  
Dr. L. Bourke, Sheffield (UK)  
Dr. E. Veskimae, Tampere (FI)  

**EAU Working Group on Prostate Cancer**
Prof.Dr. N. Mottet, Saint-Etienne (FR) (chair)  
Mr. Ph. Cornford, Liverpool (UK) (vice-chair)  
Prof.Dr. J. Bellmunt, Barcelona (ES)  
Prof.Dr. M. Bolla, Grenoble (FR)  
Dr. E. Briers, Hasselt (BE), patient representative  
Dr. L. Bourke, Sheffield (UK)  
Prof.Dr. M. De Santis, Coventry (UK)  
Prof.Dr. A.M. Henry, Leeds (UK)  
Prof.Dr. S. Joniau, Leuven (BE)  
Dr. T.B. Lam, Aberdeen (UK)  

**EAU Working Group on Renal Cell Cancer**
Prof.Dr. B. Ljungberg, Umeå (SE) (chair)  
Prof.Dr. A. Bex, Amsterdam (NL) (vice-chair)  
Prof.Dr. L. Albigeois, Paris (FR)  
Prof.Dr. K. Bensalah, Rennes (FR)  
Prof.Dr. R.H. Giles, Utrecht (NL)  
Dr. T. Powles, London (UK)  
Prof.Dr. M. Staehler, Munich (DE)  
Prof.Dr. A. Volpe, Novara (IT)  

**EAU Working Group on Testicular Cancer**
Prof.Dr. P. Albers, Düsseldorf (DE) (chair)  
Prof.Dr. W. Albrecht, Mistelbach (AT)  
Prof.Dr. F. Algaba, Barcelona (ES)  
Prof.Dr. C. Bokemeyer, Hamburg (DE)  
Dr. G. Cohn-Cedermark, Stockholm (SE)  
Prof.Dr. K. Fizazi, Villejuif/Paris (FR)  
Prof.Dr. A. Horwich, London (UK)  
Prof.Dr. M.P. Laguna, Amsterdam (NL)  
Dr. N. Nicolai, Milan (IT)  
Dr. J. Oldenburg, Oslo (NO)  

**EAU Working Group on Penile Cancer**
Prof.Dr. O.W. Hakenberg, Rostock (DE) (chair)  
Mr. N. Watkin, London (UK) (vice-chair)  
Prof.Dr. E.M. Compérat, Paris (FR)  
Mr. S. Minhas, London (UK)  
Dr. A. Necchi, Milan (IT)  
Dr. C. Protzel, Rostock (DE)  

**Associates:**
Dr. N. Arfi, Saint-Etienne (FR)  
Dr. R.C.N. van den Bergh, Zeist (NL)  
Mr. M. Cumberbatch, Sheffield (UK)  
Dr. N. Fossati, Milan (IT)  
Dr. T. Gross, Bern (CH)  
Dr. M. Lardas, Athens (GR)  
Dr. M. Liew, Manchester (UK)  
Dr. L. Moris, Leuven (BE)  
Dr. I.G. Schoots, Amsterdam (NL)  
Dr. P.M. Willemse, Rotterdam (NL)  
Dr. E.M. Wit, Amsterdam (NL)  

Dr. S. Dabestani, Malmö (SE)  
Dr. S. Fernández-Pello Montes, Gijón – Asturias (ES)  
Dr. R. Tahbaz Salehi, Hamburg (DE)  

**EAU Working Group on Penile Cancer**
Prof.Dr. O.W. Hakenberg, Rostock (DE) (chair)  
Mr. N. Watkin, London (UK) (vice-chair)  
Prof.Dr. E.M. Compérat, Paris (FR)  
Mr. S. Minhas, London (UK)  
Dr. A. Necchi, Milan (IT)  
Dr. C. Protzel, Rostock (DE)  

**Associates:**
Dr. N. Arfi, Saint-Etienne (FR)  
Dr. R.C.N. van den Bergh, Zeist (NL)  
Mr. M. Cumberbatch, Sheffield (UK)  
Dr. N. Fossati, Milan (IT)  
Dr. T. Gross, Bern (CH)  
Dr. M. Lardas, Athens (GR)  
Dr. M. Liew, Manchester (UK)  
Dr. L. Moris, Leuven (BE)  
Dr. I.G. Schoots, Amsterdam (NL)  
Dr. P.M. Willemse, Rotterdam (NL)  
Dr. E.M. Wit, Amsterdam (NL)
EAU Working Group on Male LUTS
Prof.Dr. S. Gravas, Athens (GR) (chair)
Prof.Dr. T. Bach, Hamburg (DE)
Prof.Dr. M. Drake, Bristol (UK)
Dr. M. Gacci, Florence (IT)
Prof.Dr. C. Gratzke, Munich (DE)
Prof.Dr. T.R.W. Hermann, Hannover (DE)
Prof.Dr. S. Madersbacher, Vienna (AT)
Prof.Dr. C. Mamoulakis, Heraklion (GR)
Prof.Dr. K. Tikkinen, Helsinki (FI)

Associates:
Dr. M. Karavitakis, Athens (GR)
Mr. S. Malde, Uxbridge (UK)
Dr. V.I. Sakalis, Chalkidiki (GR)
Dr. R. Umbach, Sindelfingen (DE)

EAU Working Group on Male Sexual Dysfunction
Prof.Dr. K. Hatzimouratidis, Kozani (GR) (chair)
Prof.Dr. A. Salonia, Milan (IT) (vice-chair)
Prof.Dr. F. Giuliano, Garches (FR)
Prof.Dr. I. Moncada, Madrid (ES)
Mr. A. Muneer, London (UK)
Dr. P. Verze, Naples (IT)

Associates:
Mr. A. Parnham, Manchester (UK)
Dr. E.C. Serefoglu, Istanbul (TR)

EAU Working Group on Male Infertility
Prof.Dr. A. Jungwirth, Salzburg (AT) (chair)
Prof.Dr. Th. Diemer, Giessen (DE) (vice-chair)
Prof.Dr. G.R. Dohle, Rotterdam (NL)
Prof.Dr. Z. Kopa, Budapest (HU)
Prof.Dr. C. Krausz, Florence (IT)
Prof.Dr. H. Tournaye, Brussels (BE)

Associates:
Dr. B. Kelly, Birmingham (UK)
Dr. R. Pai, Nottingham (UK)

EAU Working Group on Male Hypogonadism
Prof.Dr. G.R. Dohle, Rotterdam (NL) (chair)
Prof.Dr. S. Arver, Stockholm (SE)
Prof.Dr. C. Bettocchi, Bari (IT)
Prof.Dr. T. Hugh Jones, Barnsley (UK)
Prof.Dr. S. Kliesch, Münster (DE)

Associates:
Dr. K. Dimitropoulos, Larissa (GR)
Dr. M. Dinkelman-Smit, Rotterdam (NL)
Dr. K. Hetou, Bremen (DE)

EAU Working Group on Urological Infections
Prof.Dr. R.S. Pickard, Newcastle upon Tyne (UK) (co-chair)
Prof.Dr. G. Bonkat, Basel (CH) (co-chair)
Prof.Dr. R. Bartoletti, Pisa (IT)
Prof.Dr. F. Bruyère, Tours (FR)
Prof.Dr. S. Geerlings, Amsterdam (NL)
Prof.Dr. F. Wagenlehner, Giessen (DE)
Dr. B. Wullt, Lund (SE)

Associates:
Dr. T. Cai, Trento (IT)
Dr. B. Köves, Budapest (HU)
Dr. A. Pilatz, Gießen, (DE)
Dr. B. Pradere, Tours (FR)
Dr. R. Veeratterapillay, Newcastle upon Tyne (UK)

EAU Working Group on Urinary Incontinence
Prof.Dr. F.C. Burkhard, Berne (CH) (chair)
Prof.Dr. J.L.H.R. Bosch, Utrecht (NL)
Prof.Dr. F. Cruz, Porto (PT)
Prof.Dr. G. Lemack, Dallas, TX (USA)
Dr. A.K. Nambiar, Newcastle upon Tyne (UK)
Mr. N. Thiruchelvam, London (UK)
Prof.Dr. A. Tubaro, Rome (IT)

Associates:
Dr. D. Ambuehl, Berne (CH)
Dr. D. Bedretdinova, Paris (FR)
Dr. F. Farag, Nijmegen (NL)
Dr. B.B. Rozenberg, Nijmegen (NL)

EAU Working Group on Neuro-Urology
Prof.Dr. B. Blok, Rotterdam (NL) (co-chair)
Prof.Dr. J. Pannek, Nottwil (CH) (vice-chair)
Prof.Dr. D. Castro-Diaz, Santa Cruz de Tenerife (ES)
Prof.Dr. G. del Popolo, Florence (IT)
Dr. J. Groen, Rotterdam (NL)
Mr. R. Hamid, London (UK)
Prof.Dr. G. Karsenty, Marseille (FR)
Prof.Dr. T.M. Kessler, Zürich (CH)

Associates:
Dr. J. Bonzvon, Geneva (CH)
Dr. H. Ecclestone, London (UK)
Dr. S. Musco, Florence (IT)
Dr. B. Padilla Fernández, Santa Cruz de Tenerife (ES)
Dr. V. Phé, Paris (FR)

EAU Working Group on Urolithiasis
Dr. Ch. Türk, Vienna (AT) (chair)
Dr. A. Neisius, Mainz (DE)
Prof.Dr. A. Petrik, Ceské Budejovice (CZ)
Prof.Dr. C. Seitz, Vienna (AT)
Prof.Dr. A. Skolarikos, Athens (GR)
Dr. A. Tepeler, Istanbul (TR)
Dr. K. Thomas, London (UK)

Associates:
Dr. T. Drake, Chichester (UK)
Dr. N. Grivas, Ioannina (GR)
Dr. Y. Ruhayel, Malmö (SE)

EAU-ESPU Working Group on Paediatric Urology
Prof.Dr. S. Tekgül, Ankara (TR) (chair)
Prof.Dr. R. Nijman, Groningen (NL) (vice-chair)
Dr. H.S. Dogan, Ankara (TR)
Prof.Dr. R. Kocvara, Prague (CZ)
Prof.Dr. Chr. Radmayr, Innsbruck (AT)
Prof.Dr. R. Stein, Mannheim (DE)

Associates:
Dr. J.S.L.T. Quaedackers, Groningen (NL)
Dr. S. Silay, Istanbul (TR)
Dr. S. Undre, London (UK)
EAU Working Group on Urological Trauma
Dr. N.D. Kitrey, Tel-Hashomer (IL) (chair)
Dr. N. Djakovic, Mühldorf (DE)
Mr. M. Gonsalves, London (UK)
Dr. F. Kuehhas, Vienna (AT)
Prof.Dr. N. Lumen, Ghent (BE)
Dr. E. Serafetinidis, Holargos (GR)
Mr. D.M. Sharma, London (UK)

Associates:
Dr. Y. Abu-Ghanem, Tel Hashomer (IL)
Mr. A. Sujenthiran, London (UK)

EAU Working group on Chronic Pelvic Pain
Prof.Dr. D.S. Engeler, St. Gallen (CH) (chair)
Prof.Dr. E.J. Messelink, Groningen (NL) (vice-chair)
Prof.Dr. A.P. Baranowski, London (UK)
Dr. J. Borovicka, St. Gallen (CH)
Dr. A. Cottrell, Plymouth (UK)
Prof.Dr. P. Dinis Oliveira, Porto (PT)
Ms. S. Elneil, PhD MRCOG, London (UK)
Mr. J. Hughes, Middlesbrough (UK)
Dr. A. C de C Williams, London (UK)

Associates:
Dr. S. Goonewarde, London (UK)
Dr. B. Parsons, London (UK)

EAU Working Group on Renal Transplantation
Dr. A. Breda, Barcelona (ES) (chair)
Mr. J. Olsburgh, London (UK) (vice-chair)
Prof.Dr. K. Budde, Berlin (DE)
Prof.Dr. A. Figueiredo, Coimbra (PT)
Prof.Dr. E. Lledó-García, Madrid (ES)
Dr. H. Regele, Vienna (AT)

Associates:
Dr. R. Boissier, Marseille (FR)
Dr. C. Fraser Taylor, London (UK)
Dr. V. Hevia, Madrid (ES)
Dr. R.H. Zakri, Folkestone (UK)

Ad-hoc panel - Thromboprophylaxis
Prof.Dr. K. Tikkinen (FI) (chair)
Mr. R. Cartwright, London (UK)
Prof.Dr. G. Guyatt, Hamilton (CN)
Prof.Dr. M. Gould, Pasadena, CA (USA)
Dr. R. Naspro, Bergamo (IT)
Prof.Dr. G. Novara, Padua (IT)
Prof.Dr. P-M. Sandset, Oslo (NO)
Dr. P. Violette, Ontario (CN)

Ad-hoc panel – Complications reporting in the literature
Prof.Dr. D. Mitropoulos, Athens (GR) (chair)
Prof.Dr. W. Artibani, Verona (IT)
Mr. C.S. Bilyani, Leeds (UK)
Prof.Dr. J. Bjerregaard Jensen, Århus (DK)
Prof.Dr. M. Rouprêt, Paris (FR)
Prof.Dr. M.C. Truss, Dortmund (DE)

Ad-hoc panel - Imaging Nomenclature
Prof.Dr. T. Loch, Flensburg (DE) (chair)
Dr. B. Carey, Leeds (UK)
Dr. P.F. Fulgham, Dallas, TX (USA)
Prof.Dr. J. Walz, Marseille (FR)
Acknowledgement of reviewers - 2017 edition of the EAU Guidelines

Reviewers were identified based on their expert knowledge within the urological field and bordering specialities. The EAU Guidelines Office Board is most grateful for their time and diligence in providing complete and extensive reviews of the individual EAU Guidelines. Whenever feasible, feedback from lay reviewers and patient advocacy groups has been sought.

EAU Guidelines Reviewers (alphabetical listing)

Mr. M. Abd-Alazeez
Prof. Dr. F. Abdollah
Dr. O. Abusanad
Prof. Dr. J. Barry
Prof. Dr. G. Bjarnason
Dr. P. Black
Prof. Dr. R.H. Breau
Prof. Dr. J.A. Broghammer
Mr. N. Buchholz
Prof. Dr. J. Burgos
Mr. R. Calvert
Prof. Dr. P. Castellucci
Prof. Dr. D. Cella
Prof. Dr. S. Chambers
Prof. Dr. R.L. Choyke
Prof. Dr. R. Colombo
Prof. Dr. D. Crawford
Prof. Dr. J.N. Cornu
Prof. Dr. D. Culkin
Prof. Dr. M. Cutress
Prof. Dr. A. De la Taille
Prof. Dr. S. Deger
Prof. Dr. J. Denstedt
Dr. K.B. Dieperink
Prof. Dr. P. Ditonno
Prof. Dr. J. Dos Santos
Mr. J. Dyer
Prof. Dr. A.R. El-Nahas
Prof. Dr. K. Everaert
Prof. Dr. D.A. Galvão
Prof. Dr. O. Hes
Prof. Dr. J.J. Hsieh
Dr. T. Klatte
Prof. Dr. T. Kondo
Dr. R. Lacovelli
Prof. Dr. S. Lahme
Prof. Dr. D. Lightner
Prof. Dr. Y. Lotan
Prof. Dr. V. Margulis
Dr. F.E. Martins
Prof. Dr. S. Matin
Prof. Dr. B. Montgomery
Prof. Dr. R. Montironi
Prof. Dr. R.M. Morgan
Dr. U. Nagele
Dr. C. De Nunzio
Prof. Dr. W. Osterlinck
Prof. Dr. P.J.S. Oster
Dr. F. Pellucchi
Prof. Dr. G. Ploussard
Dr. G. Procopio
Prof. Dr. S. Rais-Bahrami
Prof. Dr. M.J. Resnick
Dr. M. Rink
Prof. Dr. M. Rioux-Leclercq
Dr. O. Rodrigues-Faba
Dr. M. Roumiguié
Dr. M. Roscigno
Prof. Dr. J.J.M.C.H. de la Rosette
Prof. Dr. R.A. Santucci
Prof. Dr. C.D. Scales
Prof. Dr. A.B. Smith
Prof. Dr. M. Smith
Dr. R. Soler
Prof. Dr. G. Sonpavde
Mr. M. Speakman
Dr. G. Stewart
Prof. Dr. N. Suardi
Prof. Dr. G. Thalmann
Prof. Dr. D. Tilki
Prof. Dr. O. Traxer
Dr. M. Valerio
Prof. Dr. B.B. Voelzke
Dr. O. Wegelin
Dr. N. Wood
Dr. E. Xylinas
Prof. Dr. R.F. Youssef
Non-muscle-invasive (Ta, T1 and CIS) Bladder Cancer

Upper Urinary Tract Urothelial Cell Carcinomas

Muscle-Invasive and Metastatic Bladder Cancer

Primary Urethral Carcinoma

Prostate Cancer

Renal Cell Carcinoma

Testicular Cancer

Penile Cancer

Management of Non-Neurogenic Male Lower Urinary Tract Symptoms (LUTS), incl. benign prostatic obstruction (BPO)

Urinary Incontinence

Neuro-Urology

Erectile dysfunction, Premature ejaculation, Penile Curvature and Priapism

Male Infertility

Male Hypogonadism

Urological Infections

Urolithiasis

Paediatric Urology

Urological Trauma

Chronic Pelvic Pain

Renal Transplantation

Thromboprophylaxis

Abbreviations
EAU Guidelines on
Non-muscle-invasive
Bladder Cancer
(TaT1 and CIS)

M. Babjuk (Chair), M. Burger (Vice-Chair), E. Compérat,
P. Gontero, A.H. Mostafid, J. Palou, B.W.G. van Rhijn,
M. Rouprêt, S.F. Shariat, R. Sylvester, R. Zigeuner
Guidelines Associates: O. Capoun, D. Cohen,
V. Hernández, V. Soukup

© European Association of Urology 2017
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION 5
   1.1 Aim and scope 5
   1.2 Panel composition 5
   1.3 Available publications 5
   1.4 Publication history and summary of changes 5
      1.4.1 Publication history 5
      1.4.2 Summary of changes 5

2. METHODS 6
   2.1 Data Identification 6
   2.2 Review 6
   2.3 Future goals 6

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY 7
   3.1 Epidemiology 7
   3.2 Aetiology 7
   3.3 Pathology 7
   3.4 Summary of evidence for epidemiology, aetiology and pathology 7

4. STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS 8
   4.1 Definition of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer 8
   4.2 Tumour, Node, Metastasis Classification 8
   4.3 T1 subclassification 8
   4.4 Histological grading of non-muscle-invasive bladder urothelial carcinomas 8
   4.5 Carcinoma in situ and its classification 9
   4.6 Inter- and intra-observer variability in staging and grading 9
   4.7 Further pathology parameters 10
   4.8 Summary of evidence and recommendations for bladder cancer classification 10

5. DIAGNOSIS 10
   5.1 Patient history 10
   5.2 Signs and symptoms 10
   5.3 Physical examination 10
   5.4 Imaging 10
      5.4.1 Computed tomography urography and intravenous urography 10
      5.4.2 Ultrasound (US) 10
   5.5 Urinary cytology 11
   5.6 Urinary molecular marker tests 11
   5.7 Potential application of urinary cytology and markers 11
      5.7.1 Screening of the population at risk of bladder cancer 11
      5.7.2 Exploration of patients after haematuria or other symptoms suggestive of bladder cancer (primary detection) 12
      5.7.3 Surveillance of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer 12
         5.7.3.1 Follow-up of high-risk non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer 12
         5.7.3.2 Follow-up of low/intermediate-risk non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer 12
   5.8 Cystoscopy 12
   5.9 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the primary assessment of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer 13
   5.10 Transurethral resection of TaT1 bladder tumours 13
      5.10.1 Strategy of the procedure 13
      5.10.2 Surgical and technical aspects of tumour resection 13
         5.10.2.1 Surgical strategy of resection 13
         5.10.2.2 Evaluation of resection quality 13
         5.10.2.3 Monopolar and bipolar resection 13
         5.10.2.4 Office-based fulguration and laser vaporisation 13
         5.10.2.5 Resection of small papillary bladder tumours at the time of transurethral resection of the prostate 14
5.10.3 Bladder and prostatic urethral biopsies and incidental papillary tumours during transurethral resection of the prostate

5.11 New methods of tumour visualisation

5.11.1 Photodynamic diagnosis (fluorescence cystoscopy)

5.11.2 Narrow-band imaging

5.12 Second resection

5.13 Pathology report

5.14 Summary of evidence and recommendations for transurethral resection of the bladder, biopsies and pathology report

6. PREDICTING DISEASE RECURRENTENCE AND PROGRESSION

6.1 TaT1 tumours

6.2 Carcinoma in situ

6.3 Patient stratification into risk groups

6.4 Subgroup of highest-risk tumours

6.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for stratification of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer

7. DISEASE MANAGEMENT

7.1 Counselling of smoking cessation

7.2 Adjuvant treatment

7.2.1 Intravesical chemotherapy

7.2.1.1 A single, immediate, post-operative intravesical instillation of chemotherapy

7.2.1.2 Additional adjuvant intravesical chemotherapy instillations

7.2.1.3 Options for improving efficacy of intravesical chemotherapy

7.2.1.3.1 Adjustment of pH, duration of instillation, and drug concentration

7.2.1.3.2 Device-assisted intravesical chemotherapy

7.2.1.4 Summary of evidence - intravesical chemotherapy

7.2.2 Intravesical BCG immunotherapy

7.2.2.1 Efficacy of BCG

7.2.2.2 BCG strain

7.2.2.3 BCG toxicity

7.2.2.4 Optimal BCG schedule

7.2.2.5 Optimal dose of BCG

7.2.2.6 Indications for BCG

7.2.2.7 Summary of evidence - BCG treatment

7.2.3 Combination therapy

7.2.4 Specific aspects of treatment of Carcinoma in situ

7.2.4.1 Treatment strategy

7.2.4.2 Cohort studies on intravesical BCG or chemotherapy

7.2.4.3 Prospective randomised trials on intravesical BCG or chemotherapy

7.2.4.4 Treatment of CIS in prostatic urethra and upper urinary tract

7.2.4.5 Summary of evidence – treatment of carcinoma in situ

7.3 Treatment of failure of intravesical therapy

7.3.1 Failure of intravesical chemotherapy

7.3.2 Recurrence and failure after intravesical BCG immunotherapy

7.3.3 Treatment of BCG failure and recurrences after BCG

7.3.4 Summary of evidence - treatment failure of intravesical therapy

7.4 Radical cystectomy for NMIBC

7.5 Recommendations for adjuvant therapy in TaT1 tumours and for therapy of carcinoma in situ

7.6 Treatment recommendations in TaT1 tumours and carcinoma in situ according to risk stratification

7.7 Treatment recommendations for BCG failure and recurrences after BCG
8. FOLLOW-UP OF PATIENTS WITH NON-MUSCLE-INVASIVE BLADDER CANCER
8.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for follow-up of patients after transurethral resection of the bladder for non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer

9. REFERENCES

10. CONFLICT OF INTEREST
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim and scope
This overview represents the updated European Association of Urology (EAU) guidelines for Non-muscle-invasive Bladder Cancer (NMIBC), TaT1 and carcinoma in situ (CIS). The information presented is limited to urothelial carcinoma, unless specified otherwise. The aim is to provide practical recommendations on the clinical management of NMIBC with a focus on clinical presentation and recommendations.

Separate EAU guidelines documents are available addressing upper tract urothelial carcinoma (UTUC) [1], muscle-invasive and metastatic bladder cancer (MIBC) [2], and primary urethral carcinoma [3]. It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts, but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition
The EAU Guidelines Panel on NMIBC consists of an international multidisciplinary group of clinicians, including urologists, uro-oncologists, a pathologist and a statistician. Members of this panel have been selected based on their expertise and to represent the professionals treating patients suspected of suffering from bladder cancer. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements which can be viewed on the EAU website Uroweb: https://uroweb.org/guideline/non-muscle-invasive-bladder-cancer/.

1.3 Available publications
A quick reference document (Pocket guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices, presenting the main findings of the NMIBC Guidelines. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text version. Several scientific publications are available, the latest publication dating to 2016 [4], as are a number of translations of all versions of the EAU NMIBC Guidelines. All documents are accessible through the EAU website Uroweb: https://uroweb.org/guideline/non-muscle-invasive-bladder-cancer/.

1.4 Publication history and summary of changes

1.4.1 Publication history
The EAU Guidelines on Bladder Cancer were first published in 2000. This 2017 NMIBC guidelines document presents a limited update of the 2016 publication.

1.4.2 Summary of changes
New references have been added throughout the 2017 NMIBC Guidelines document. Key changes in this 2017 print:

- Section 4.3 - T1 subclassification. This is a new section.
- Section 5.5 - Urinary Cytology. Diagnostic categories based on the Paris Working Group Classification have been added.
- Section 5.10.2 - Surgical and technical aspects of tumour resection. This section has been revised and enlarged, resulting in changes in the recommendations (Section 5.14).
- Section 5.12 - Second resection. Additional literature has been included, resulting in changes in the recommendations (Section 5.14).
- Section 6.4 - Subgroup of highest risk tumours. This is a new section.
- Section 7.2.1.3.2 - Device-assisted intravesical chemotherapy. This is a new section.

Changes in recommendations

Section 5.9: A new recommendation has been added.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations for the primary assessment of NMIBC</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Repeat urine cytology in patients with suspicious initial cytology results.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Section 5.14: Additional information has been included.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations for transurethral resection of the bladder (TURB) and/or biopsies and pathology report</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform en-block resection or resection in fractions (exophytic part of the tumour, the underlying bladder wall and the edges of the resection area). The presence of detrusor muscle in the specimen is required in all cases except for TaG1/LG tumours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a second TURB in the following situations:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• after (suspicion of) incomplete initial TURB (in the case of any doubt about completeness of a TURB);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• if there is no muscle in the specimen after initial resection, with exception of TaLG/G1 tumours and primary CIS;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• In T1 tumours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Register the results of a second TURB as it reflects the quality of the initial resection.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Section 7.5: A new recommendation have been included.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations for adjuvant therapy in TaT1 tumours and for therapy of CIS</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In patients with bacillus Calmette-Guérin failure, who are not candidates of radical cystectomy due to comorbidities, use preservation strategies (device-assisted instillations of chemotherapy, intravesical chemotherapy, intravesical immunotherapy).</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Section 8.1: A new recommendation has been added.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations for follow-up of patients after transurethral resection of the bladder for NMIBC</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In patients initially diagnosed with TaLG/G1-2 bladder cancer, use ultrasound of the bladder during surveillance in case cystoscopy is not possible, or refused by the patient.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. METHODS

2.1 Data Identification
For the 2017 NMIBC Guidelines, new and relevant evidence has been identified, collated and appraised through a structured assessment of the literature. A broad and comprehensive scoping exercise covering all areas of the NMIBC Guidelines was performed. Excluded from the search were basic research studies, case series, reports and editorial comments. Only articles published in the English language, addressing adults, were included. The search was restricted to articles published between June 1st 2015 and April 22nd 2016. Databases covered by the search included Pubmed, Ovid, EMBASE and the Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials and the Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. After deduplication, a total of 973 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance. A detailed search strategy is available on line: https://uroweb.org/guideline/non-muscle-invasive-bladder-cancer/?type=appendices-publications.

Recommendations in this text are assessed according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [5]. Additional methodology information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guidelines/. A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed on line at the above address.

2.2 Review
Chapter 7, Disease Management was peer reviewed prior to publication in 2016. All other chapters of the NMIBC Guidelines were peer-reviewed in 2015.

2.3 Future goals
The results of an ongoing systematic review will be included in the 2018 update of the NMIBC Guidelines. These reviews are performed using standard Cochrane systematic review methodology; http://www.cochranelibrary.com/about/about-cochrane-systematic-reviews.html.
Ongoing systematic review:

1. Is there a difference between the 2004 WHO grading system and the 1973 WHO grading system for NMIBC in terms of prognostic performance and reproducibility? [6].

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY

3.1 Epidemiology
Bladder cancer (BC) is the seventh most commonly diagnosed cancer in the male population worldwide, while it drops to eleventh when both genders are considered [7]. The worldwide age-standardised incidence rate (per 100,000 person/years) is 9.0 for men and 2.2 for women [7]. In the European Union the age-standardised incidence rate is 19.1 for men and 4.0 for women [7]. In Europe, the highest age-standardised incidence rate has been reported in Belgium (31 in men and 6.2 in women) and the lowest in Finland (18.1 in men and 4.3 in women) [7].

Worldwide, the BC age-standardised mortality rate (per 100,000 person/years) was 3.2 for men vs. 0.9 for women in 2012 [7]. Bladder cancer incidence and mortality rates vary across countries due to differences in risk factors, detection and diagnostic practices, and availability of treatments. The variations are, however, partly caused by the different methodologies used and the quality of data collection [8]. The incidence and mortality of BC has decreased in some registries, possibly reflecting the decreased impact of causative agents [9].

Approximately 75% of patients with BC present with a disease confined to the mucosa (stage Ta, CIS) or submucosa (stage T1); in younger patients (< 40) this percentage is even higher [10]. Patients with TaT1 and CIS have a high prevalence due to long-term survival in many cases and lower risk of cancer-specific mortality compared to T2-4 tumours [7, 8].

3.2 Aetiology
Tobacco smoking is the most important risk factor for BC, accounting for approximately 50% of cases [8, 9, 11] (LE: 3). Tobacco smoke contains aromatic amines and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, which are renally excreted.

Occupational exposure to aromatic amines, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and chlorinated hydrocarbons is the second most important risk factor for BC, accounting for about 10% of all cases. This type of occupational exposure occurs mainly in industrial plants, which process paint, dye, metal and petroleum products [8, 9, 12, 13]. In developed industrial settings, these risks have been reduced by work-safety guidelines, therefore, chemical workers no longer have a higher incidence of BC compared to the general population [8, 12, 13].

While family history seems to have little impact [14] and, to date, no overt significance of any genetic variation for BC has been shown, genetic predisposition has an influence on the incidence of BC via its impact on susceptibility to other risk factors [8, 15, 16].

Although the significance of fluid intake is uncertain, the chlorination of drinking water and subsequent levels of trihalomethanes are potentially carcinogenic, also exposure to arsenic in drinking water increases risk [8, 17] (LE: 3). The association between personal hair dye use and risk remains uncertain; an increased risk has been suggested in users of permanent hair dyes with a slow NAT2 acetylation phenotype [8].

Dietary habits seem to have little impact [18-20].

Exposure to ionizing radiation is connected with increased risk; weak association was also suggested for cyclophosphamide and pioglitazone [8, 17] (LE: 3). Schistosomiasis, a chronic endemic cystitis based on recurrent infection with a parasitic trematode, is also a cause of BC [8] (LE: 3).

3.3 Pathology
The information presented in this text is limited to urothelial carcinoma, unless otherwise specified.

3.4 Summary of evidence for epidemiology, aetiology and pathology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Worldwide, bladder cancer is the eleventh most commonly diagnosed cancer.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Several risk factors connected with the risk of bladder cancer diagnosis have been identified.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS

4.1 Definition of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer
Papillary tumours confined to the mucosa and invading the lamina propria are classified as stage Ta and T1, respectively, according to the Tumour, Node, Metastasis (TNM) classification system [21]. Flat, high-grade tumours that are confined to the mucosa are classified as CIS (Tis). These tumours can be treated by transurethral resection of the bladder (TURB), eventually in combination with intravesical instillations and are therefore grouped under the heading of NMIBC for therapeutic purposes. However, molecular biology techniques and clinical experience have demonstrated the highly malignant potential of CIS and T1 lesions as compared to Ta lesions. The terms “NMIBC” and “superficial BC” are therefore suboptimal descriptions.

4.2 Tumour, Node, Metastasis Classification (TNM)
The 2009 TNM classification approved by the Union International Contre le Cancer (UICC) was updated in 2017 (8th Edn.), but with no changes in relation to bladder tumours (Table 4.1) [21].

Table 4.1: 2017 TNM classification of urinary bladder cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T - Primary tumour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX Primary tumour cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0 No evidence of primary tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta Non-invasive papillary carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis Carcinoma in situ: ‘flat tumour’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 Tumour invades muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a Tumour invades superficial muscle (inner half)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b Tumour invades deep muscle (outer half)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 Tumour invades perivesical tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a Microscopically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b Macroscopically (extravesical mass)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4 Tumour invades any of the following: prostate stroma, seminal vesicles, uterus, vagina, pelvic wall, abdominal wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a Tumour invades prostate stroma, seminal vesicles, uterus or vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b Tumour invades pelvic wall or abdominal wall</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N - Regional lymph nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0 No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1 Metastasis in a single lymph node in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac, or presacral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2 Metastasis in multiple regional lymph nodes in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac, or presacral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3 Metastasis in common iliac lymph node(s)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M - Distant metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0 No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1a Non-regional lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1b Other distant metastases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3 T1 subclassification
The depth and extent of invasion into the lamina propria (T1 substaging) has been demonstrated to be of prognostic value in retrospective cohort studies [22, 23] (LE: 3). Its use is recommended by the most recent 2016 World Health Organization (WHO) classification [24]. The optimal system to substage T1 remains to be defined.

4.4 Histological grading of non-muscle-invasive bladder urothelial carcinomas
In 2004, the WHO and the International Society of Urological Pathology published a new histological classification of urothelial carcinomas which provides a different patient stratification between individual categories compared to the older 1973 WHO classification [25, 26] (Tables 4.2 and 4.3, Fig 4.1). Recently an update of the 2004 WHO grading classification was published [24] but the following guidelines are still based on the 1973 and 2004 WHO classifications since most published data rely on these two classifications [25, 26].
Table 4.2: WHO grading in 1973 and in 2004 [25, 26]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1973 WHO grading</th>
<th>2004 WHO grading system (papillary lesions)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grade 1: well differentiated</td>
<td>Papillary urothelial neoplasm of low malignant potential (PUNLMP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 2: moderately differentiated</td>
<td>Low-grade (LG) papillary urothelial carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 3: poorly differentiated</td>
<td>High-grade (HG) papillary urothelial carcinoma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The prognostic value of both WHO 1973 and 2004 grading systems has been confirmed. Attempts to demonstrate better prognostic value of one over the other, however, have yielded controversial results [27-29]. Moreover, the 2004 WHO system have not been fully incorporated into prognostic models yet.

Figure 4.1: Stratification of tumours according to grade in the WHO 1973 and 2004 classifications [30]*

4.5 Carcinoma in situ and its classification
Carcinoma in situ (CIS) is a flat, high-grade, non-invasive urothelial carcinoma. It can be missed or misinterpreted as an inflammatory lesion during cystoscopy if not biopsied. Carcinoma in situ is often multifocal and can occur in the bladder, but also in the upper urinary tract, prostatic ducts, and prostatic urethra [31].

Classification of CIS according to clinical type [32]:
- Primary: isolated CIS with no previous or concurrent papillary tumours and no previous CIS;
- Secondary: CIS detected during follow-up of patients with a previous tumour that was not CIS;
- Concurrent: CIS in the presence of any other urothelial tumour in the bladder.

Table 4.3: WHO 2004 histological classification for flat lesions

- Urothelial proliferation of uncertain malignant potential (flat lesion without atypia or papillary aspects).
- Reactive atypia (flat lesion with atypia).
- Atypia of unknown significance.
- Urothelial dysplasia.
- Urothelial CIS is always high grade.

4.6 Inter- and intra-observer variability in staging and grading
There is significant variability among pathologists for the diagnosis of CIS, for which agreement is achieved in only 70-78% of cases [33] (LE: 2a). There is also interobserver variability in the classification of stage T1 vs. Ta tumours and tumour grading in both the 1973 and 2004 classifications. The general conformity in staging and grading is between 50% and 60% [28, 34-36] (LE: 2a). The published comparisons have not clearly confirmed that the WHO 2004 classification provides better reproducibility than the 1973 classification [27, 28, 36, 37].
4.7 Further pathology parameters
According to a meta-analysis of retrospective trials, the presence of lymphovascular invasion (LVI) in TURB specimens is connected with an increased risk of pathological upstaging [38] (LE: 3). Lymphovascular invasion has been reported as an unfavourable prognostic factor in T1 tumours [38] (LE: 3). Some variants of urothelial carcinoma (micropapillary, plasmacytoid, nested, sarcomatoid, microcystic, squamous and adeno variants, have a worse prognosis than classical urothelial carcinoma [2, 39-46] (LE: 3).

Molecular markers, particularly FGFR3 mutation status, are promising but need further validation [47-51].

4.8 Summary of evidence and recommendations for bladder cancer classification

### Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The depth of invasion (staging) is classified according to the TNM classification.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillary tumours confined to the mucosa and invading the lamina propria are classified as stage Ta and T1, respectively. Flat, high-grade tumours that are confined to the mucosa are classified as CIS (Tis).</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 and CIS, as compared to Ta, have high malignant potential, the term non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer (NMIBC) is therefore a suboptimal description.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For histological classification of NMIBC, both the WHO 1973 and 2004 grading systems are used.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the 2017 TNM system for classification of the depth of tumour invasion (staging).</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use both the 1973 and 2004/2016 WHO grading systems for histological classification.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use the term “superficial bladder cancer”.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mention the tumour stage and grade whenever the terminology NMIBC is used in individual cases.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. DIAGNOSIS

5.1 Patient history
A comprehensive patient history is mandatory.

5.2 Signs and symptoms
Haematuria is the most common finding in NMIBC. Visible haematuria was found to be associated with higher stage disease compared to non-visible haematuria at first presentation [52]. Carcinoma in situ might be suspected in patients with lower urinary tract symptoms, especially irritative voiding.

5.3 Physical examination
Physical examination does not reveal NMIBC.

5.4 Imaging

#### 5.4.1 Computed tomography urography and intravenous urography
Computed tomography (CT) urography is used to detect papillary tumours in the urinary tract, indicated by filling defects or hydronephrosis.

Intravenous urography (IVU) is an alternative if CT is not available [53] (LE: 3), but particularly in muscle-invasive tumours of the bladder and in UTUCs, CT urography gives more information than IVU (including status of lymph nodes and neighbouring organs).

The necessity to perform a baseline CT urography or IVU once a bladder tumour has been detected is questionable due to the low incidence of significant findings obtained [54-56] (LE: 2a). The incidence of UTUCs is low (1.8%), but increases to 7.5% in tumours located in the trigone [55] (LE: 2b). The risk of UTUC during follow up increases in patients with multiple- and high-risk tumours [57] (LE: 3).

#### 5.4.2 Ultrasound (US)
Transabdominal US permits characterisation of renal masses, detection of hydronephrosis, and visualisation of intraluminal masses in the bladder [58] (LE: 3). Ultrasound is therefore a useful tool for detection of obstruction in patients with haematuria. However, it cannot exclude the presence of UTUC and cannot replace CT urography.
The diagnosis of CIS cannot be made with imaging methods (CT urography, IVU or US) (LE: 4).

5.5 Urinary cytology
The examination of voided urine or bladder-washing specimens for exfoliated cancer cells has high sensitivity in G3 and high-grade tumours (84%), but low sensitivity in G1 and low-grade tumours (16%) [59]. The sensitivity in CIS detection is 28-100% [60] (LE: 2b). Cytology is useful, particularly as an adjunct to cystoscopy, if G3/CIS malignancy is present. Positive voided urinary cytology can indicate an urothelial tumour anywhere in the urinary tract; negative cytology, however, does not exclude the presence of a tumour.

Cytological interpretation is user-dependent [61]. Evaluation can be hampered by low cellular yield, urinary tract infections, stones, or intravesical instillations, but in experienced hands specificity exceeds 90% [61] (LE: 2b).

A standardised reporting system redefining urinary cytology diagnostic categories was published in 2016 by the Paris Working Group [62]:
• Adequacy of urine specimens (Adequacy);
• Negative for high-grade urothelial carcinoma (Negative);
• Atypical urothelial cells (AUC);
• Suspicious for high-grade urothelial carcinoma (Suspicious);
• High-grade urothelial carcinoma (HGUC);
• Low-grade urothelial neoplasia (LGUN).

Urine collection should respect the recommendation provided in Section 5.9. One cytospin slide from the sample is usually sufficient [63]. In patients with suspicious cytology repeat investigation is advised [64] (LE: 3).

5.6 Urinary molecular marker tests
Driven by the low sensitivity of urine cytology, numerous urinary tests were developed [65-69]. None of these markers have been accepted for diagnosis or follow-up in routine practice or clinical guidelines. A list of the more established urine tests (US Food and Drug Administration [FDA] approved and those for which multi-institutional data are available) is listed in Table 5.1.

The following conclusions can be drawn regarding the existing tests:
• Sensitivity is usually higher at the cost of lower specificity, compared to urine cytology [65, 67-72] (LE: 3).
• Benign conditions and bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) influence many urinary marker tests [65-69] (LE: 3).
• Requirements for sensitivity and specificity of a urinary marker test depend on the clinical context of the patient (screening, primary detection, follow up [high risk, low/intermediate risk]) [67, 68, 73] (LE: 3).
• Patient selection explains the wide range in performance of the markers listed in Table 5.1.
• Positive results of Cytology, UroVysion (FISH), NMP-22, Ucyt+ and microsatellite analysis in patients with negative cystoscopy and upper tract workup, may identify patients more likely to experience recurrence [74-77] and possibly progression [74-78] (LE: 3).

Table 5.1: Summary of more established urinary markers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Markers (or test specifications)</th>
<th>Overall sensitivity (%)</th>
<th>Overall specificity (%)</th>
<th>Sensitivity for high-grade tumours (%)</th>
<th>Point-of-care test</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UroVysion (FISH)*</td>
<td>30-86</td>
<td>63-95</td>
<td>66-70</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsatellite analysis</td>
<td>58-92</td>
<td>73-100</td>
<td>90-92</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunocyto/uCyt +*</td>
<td>52-100</td>
<td>63-79</td>
<td>62-92</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuclear matrix Protein 22*</td>
<td>47-100</td>
<td>55-98</td>
<td>75-92</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BTA stat*</td>
<td>29-83</td>
<td>56-86</td>
<td>62-91</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BTA TRAK*</td>
<td>53-91</td>
<td>28-83</td>
<td>74-77</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytokeratins</td>
<td>12-88</td>
<td>73-95</td>
<td>33-100</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BTA = bladder tumour antigen.
* FDA approved.

5.7 Potential application of urinary cytology and markers
The following objectives of urinary cytology or molecular tests must be considered.

5.7.1 Screening of the population at risk of bladder cancer
The application of haematuria dipstick, NMP22 or UroVysion in BC screening in high-risk populations has been
reported [79]. The low incidence of BC in the general population and the short lead-time impair feasibility and cost-effectiveness [77, 79]. Routine screening for BC is not recommended [80].

5.7.2 **Exploration of patients after haematuria or other symptoms suggestive of bladder cancer (primary detection)**

It is generally accepted that none of the currently available tests can replace cystoscopy. However, urinary cytology or markers can be used as an adjunct to cystoscopy to detect invisible tumours, particularly CIS. In this setting, sensitivity for high-grade tumours and specificity are particularly important. Urinary cytology is highly specific, but urinary markers lack such high specificity and are not recommended for primary detection.

5.7.3 **Surveillance of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer**

Research has been carried out into the usefulness of urinary cytology vs. markers in the follow up of NMIBC [69, 81, 82].

5.7.3.1 **Follow-up of high-risk non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer**

High-risk tumours should be detected early in follow up, and the percentage of tumours missed should be as low as possible. Therefore, the best surveillance strategy for these patients will continue to include frequent cystoscopy and cytology.

5.7.3.2 **Follow-up of low/intermediate-risk non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer**

To reduce the number of cystoscopy procedures, urinary markers should be able to detect recurrence before the tumours are large and numerous. The limitation of urinary cytology is its low sensitivity for low-grade recurrences. Several urinary markers are better, but still do not detect half of the low-grade tumours identified by cystoscopy [67] (LE: 3).

According to current knowledge, no urinary marker can replace cystoscopy during follow up or help to lower cystoscopy frequency in a routine fashion. One prospective randomised study found that knowledge of positive test results (microsatellite analysis) can improve the quality of follow-up cystoscopy [83] (LE: 1b), supporting the adjunctive role of a non-invasive urine test performed before follow-up cystoscopy [83].

5.8 **Cystoscopy**

The diagnosis of papillary BC ultimately depends on cystoscopic examination of the bladder and histological evaluation of sampled tissue by either cold-cup biopsy or resection. Carcinoma in situ is diagnosed by a combination of cystoscopy, urine cytology, and histological evaluation of multiple bladder biopsies [84]. Cystoscopy is initially performed as an outpatient procedure. A flexible instrument with topical intra-urethral anaesthetic lubricant instillation results in better compliance compared to a rigid instrument, especially in men [85].

**Figure 5.1: Bladder diagram**

1 = Trigone 6 = Anterior wall
2 = Right ureteral orifice 7 = Posterior wall
3 = Left ureteral orifice 8 = Dome
4 = Right wall 9 = Neck
5 = Left wall 10 = Posterior urethra
5.9 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the primary assessment of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer

### Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The diagnosis of bladder cancer depends on cystoscopy examination.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary cytology has high sensitivity in high-grade tumours including carcinoma in situ.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take a patient history.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal and bladder ultrasound may be used during the initial work-up in patients with haematuria.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At the time of the initial diagnosis of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer (NMIBC), perform computed tomography urography (or intravenous urography [IVU]) in selected cases (e.g., tumours located in the trigone, multiple or high-risk tumours).</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform cystoscopy in all patients with symptoms suggestive of bladder cancer. It cannot be replaced by cytology or by any other non-invasive test.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystoscopy should describe all macroscopic features of the tumour (site, size, number and appearance) and mucosal abnormalities. A bladder diagram is recommended (see Figure 5.1).</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voided urine cytology is advocated as an adjunct to cystoscopy to detect high-grade tumour.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform cystoscopy on fresh urine with adequate fixation. Morning urine is not suitable because of the frequent presence of cytolysis.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat urine cytology in patients with suspicious initial cytology results.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.10 Transurethral resection of TaT1 bladder tumours

#### 5.10.1 Strategy of the procedure

The goal of TURB in TaT1 BC is to make the correct diagnosis and completely remove all visible lesions. It is a crucial procedure in the diagnosis and treatment of BC. TURB should be performed systematically in individual steps (see Section 5.14).

#### 5.10.2 Surgical and technical aspects of tumour resection

##### 5.10.2.1 Surgical strategy of resection (resection in fractions, en-bloc resection)

A complete resection is essential to achieve a good prognosis [86]. A complete resection can be achieved by either resection in fractions or en-bloc resection.

- **Resection in fractions** (separate resection of the exophytic part of the tumour, the underlying bladder wall and the edges of the resection area) provides good information about the vertical and horizontal extent of the tumour [87] (LE: 3).
- **En-bloc** resection using monopolar or bipolar current, Thulium-YAG or Holmium-YAG laser is feasible in selected exophytic tumours. It provides high quality resected specimens with the presence of detrusor muscle in 96-100% of cases [88-91] (LE 3).

The technique selected is dependent on the size and location of the tumour and experience of the surgeon.

##### 5.10.2.2 Evaluation of resection quality

It has been confirmed that the absence of detrusor muscle in the specimen is associated with a significantly higher risk of residual disease, early recurrence and tumour understaging [92] (LE: 2b). The presence of detrusor muscle in the specimen is considered as the surrogate criterion of the resection quality and is required (except of TaG1/LG tumours). It has been shown that surgical experience can improve TURB results, which supports the role of teaching programmes [93].

##### 5.10.2.3 Monopolar and bipolar resection

Compared to monopolar resection, bipolar resection has been introduced to reduce the risk of complications (e.g., bladder perforation due to obturator nerve stimulation) and to produce better specimens for the pathologist [94] (LE: 3). Currently, the results remain controversial [95-97].

##### 5.10.2.4 Office-based fulguration and laser vaporisation

In patients with a history of small, TaLG/G1 tumours, fulguration of small papillary recurrences on an outpatient basis can reduce the therapeutic burden and is a treatment option [94, 98] (LE: 3). There are no prospective comparative studies assessing the oncological outcomes.

Potassium titanyl-phosphate (KTP) laser vaporisation is associated with a low risk of complications. Its oncologic outcomes need to be confirmed in a larger patient population [99].
5.10.2.5 Resection of small papillary bladder tumours at the time of transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP)

Only limited, retrospective, data exist on the outcome of incidentally detected papillary bladder tumour during cystoscopy as the initial step of TURP. Provided these tumours are papillary by aspect, rather small and not extensively multifocal, it seems feasible to resect these tumours and continue with the resection of the prostate. However, no exact risk-assessment can be provided [100, 101].

5.10.3 Bladder and prostatic urethral biopsies and incidental papillary tumours during transurethral resection of the prostate

Carcinoma in situ can present as a velvet-like, reddish, area indistinguishable from inflammation, or it may not be visible at all. For this reason, the strategy of taking biopsies from abnormal urothelium and biopsies from normal-looking mucosa (random/mapping biopsies) is recommended (see Section 5.14). The indication for random biopsies reflects the very low likelihood of detecting CIS, especially in low-risk tumours (< 2%) [102] (LE: 2a). The risk increases in patients with high-risk tumours and with positive cytology [103]. If equipment is available, photodynamic diagnosis (PDD) is a useful tool to target the biopsy (see Section 5.11.1).

Involvement of the prostatic urethra and ducts in men with NMIBC has been reported. Palou et al. [104] showed that in 128 men with T1G3 BC, the incidence of CIS in the prostatic urethra was 11.7% (LE: 2b). The risk of prostatic urethra or duct involvement is higher if the tumour is located at the trigone or bladder neck, in the presence of bladder CIS and multiple tumours [105] (LE: 3). Based on this observation, a biopsy from the prostatic urethra is necessary in some cases (see recommendation in Section 5.14) [104, 106].

5.11 New methods of tumour visualisation

As a standard procedure, cystoscopy and TURB are performed using white light. However, the use of white light can lead to missing lesions that are present but not visible, which is why new technologies are being developed.

5.11.1 Photodynamic diagnosis (fluorescence cystoscopy)

Photodynamic diagnosis (PDD) is performed using violet light after intravesical instillation of 5-aminolaevulinic acid (ALA) or hexaminolaevulinic acid (HAL). It has been confirmed that fluorescence-guided biopsy and resection are more sensitive than conventional procedures for the detection of malignant tumours, particularly for CIS [107, 108] (LE: 2a). In a systematic review and meta-analysis, PDD had higher sensitivity than white light endoscopy in the pooled estimates for analyses at both the patient-level (92% vs. 71%) and biopsy-level (93% vs. 65%) [108]. A prospective randomised trial did not confirm a higher detection rate in patients with known positive cytology before TURB [109].

Photodynamic diagnosis had lower specificity than white-light endoscopy (63% vs. 81%) [108]. False-positivity can be induced by inflammation or recent TURB and during the first three months after BCG instillation [110, 111] (LE: 3). Prospective randomised studies evaluating the impact of ALA fluorescence-guided (FC) TURB on disease-recurrence rate provided controversial results [108, 112, 113].

The beneficial effect of HAL FC on recurrence rate in patients with TURB was confirmed by a multicentre, prospective, randomised trial and by a raw-data-based meta-analysis of controlled trials. A meta-analysis reported in the HAL arms an increase in detection of tumour lesions across all risk groups and an absolute reduction of < 10% in recurrence rates within twelve months [114] (LE: 1a). The beneficial effect of HAL FC on recurrence rate in patients with TURB and early intravesical instillation of chemotherapy was not confirmed by two prospective randomised trials [115, 116]. In the prospective controlled analysis of patients receiving early instillation in a real-life clinical setting, the beneficial effect of HAL FC on early recurrence rate was confirmed for low- and intermediate-risk tumours [117]. The value of fluorescence-guided TURB for the improvement of outcome in relation to progression rate, survival and clinical management remains to be demonstrated.

5.11.2 Narrow-band imaging

In narrow-band imaging (NBI), the contrast between normal urothelium and hyper-vascular cancer tissue is enhanced. Initial studies have demonstrated improved cancer detection by NBI-guided biopsies and resection [118, 119] (LE: 3). The reduction of recurrence rate if NBI is used during TURB has been confirmed after three and twelve months only for low-risk tumours (pTaLG, < 30 mm, no CIS) [120].
5.12 Second resection

The significant risk of residual tumour after initial TURB of TaT1 lesions has been demonstrated [86] (LE: 2a). Persistent disease after resection of T1 tumours has been observed in 33-55% of patients, after resection of TaG3 tumour in 41.4% [121-124]. Moreover, the tumour is often understaged in the initial resection. The likelihood that muscle-invasive disease is detected by second resection of initially T1 tumour ranges from 1.3-25%, and increases to 45% if there was no muscle in the initial resection [109, 125-128]. This risk increased to 50% in some radical cystectomy (RC) series, although these studies only enrolled selected patients [129-131] (LE: 2a). Treatment of a TaT1 high-grade tumour and a T2 tumour is completely different; correct staging is therefore important. It has been demonstrated that a second TURB can increase recurrence-free survival [121, 122] (LE: 2a), improve outcomes after BCG treatment [132] (LE: 3) and provide prognostic information [127, 129, 133] (LE: 3).

In a retrospective evaluation of a large multi-institutional cohort of 2,451 patients with BCG-treated T1G3/HG tumours (second resection was performed in 935 patients), the second resection improved recurrence-free survival (RFS), progression-free survival (PFS) and overall survival (OS) only in patients without muscle in the specimen from initial resection [134] (LE:3).

Retrospective evaluation showed that a second resection performed 14-42 days after initial resection provides longer RFS and PFS comparing to second resection performed after 43-90 days [135] (LE:3). Based on these arguments, a second TURB is recommended in selected cases two-six weeks after initial resection (for recommendations on patient selection, see Section 5.14).

The results of the second resection (residual tumours and understaging) reflect the quality of the initial TURB. As the goal is to improve the quality of the initial TURB, the results of the second resection should be recorded.

5.13 Pathology report

Pathological investigation of the specimen(s) obtained by TURB and biopsies is an essential step in the diagnosis and treatment decision-making process for BC. Close co-operation between urologists and pathologists is required. A high quality of resected and submitted tissue and clinical information is essential for correct pathological assessment. The presence of sufficient muscle is necessary for the correct assignment of the T category. To obtain all relevant information, the specimen collection, handling and evaluation should respect the recommendations provided below (see Section 5.14) [136].

5.14 Summary of evidence and recommendations for transurethral resection of the bladder, biopsies and pathology report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transurethral resection of the bladder (TURB) followed by pathology investigation of the obtained specimen(s) is an essential step in the treatment of NMIBC.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The absence of detrusor muscle in the specimen is associated with a significantly higher risk of residual disease and tumour understaging.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with a history of small, TaLG/G1 tumours, fulguration of small papillary recurrences on an outpatient basis is feasible and safe.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A second TURB can detect residual tumours and tumour understaging, increase recurrence-free survival, improve outcomes after BCG treatment and provide prognostic information.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In patients suspected of having bladder cancer, perform a TURB followed by pathology investigation of the obtained specimen(s) as a diagnostic procedure and initial treatment step.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform TURB systematically in individual steps:</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• bimanual palpation under anaesthesia;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• insertion of the resectoscope, under visual control with inspection of the whole urethra;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• inspection of the whole urothelial lining of the bladder;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• biopsy from the prostatic urethra (if indicated);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• cold-cup bladder biopsies (if indicated);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• resection of the tumour;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• recording of findings in the surgery report/record;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• precise description of the specimen for pathology evaluation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Performance of individual steps

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform en-block resection or resection in fractions (exophytic part of the tumour, the underlying bladder wall and the edges of the resection area). The presence of detrusor muscle in the specimen is required in all cases except for TaG1/LG tumours.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoid cauterisation as much as possible during TURB to avoid tissue deterioration.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take biopsies from abnormal-looking urothelium. Biopsies from normal-looking mucosa (trigone, bladder dome, and right, left, anterior and posterior bladder wall) are recommended when cytology is positive or when high-risk exophytic tumour is expected (non-papillary appearance). If equipment is available, perform fluorescence-guided (PDD) biopsies.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take biopsy of the prostatic urethra in cases of bladder neck tumour, when bladder carcinoma in situ is present or suspected, when there is positive cytology without evidence of tumour in the bladder, or when abnormalities of the prostatic urethra are visible. If biopsy is not performed during the initial procedure, it should be completed at the time of the second resection.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take the biopsy from abnormal areas in the prostatic urethra and from the precocillicular area (between the 5 and 7 o’clock position) using a resection loop. In primary non-muscle-invasive tumours when stromal invasion is not suspected, cold-cup biopsy with forceps can be used.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refer the specimens from different biopsies and resection fractions to the pathologist in separate containers and label them separately.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The TURB protocol must describe tumour appearance, all steps of the procedure, as well as the extent and completeness of resection.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with positive cytology, but negative cystoscopy, exclude an upper tract urothelial carcinoma, CIS in the bladder (random biopsies or PDD-guided biopsies) and tumour in the prostatic urethra (prostatic urethra biopsy).</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a second TURB in the following situations:</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• after (suspicion of) incomplete initial TURB (in the case of any doubt about completeness of a TURB);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• if there is no muscle in the specimen after initial resection, with the exception of TaLG/G1 tumours and primary CIS;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• in T1 tumours.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If indicated, perform a second TURB within two-six weeks after initial resection. This second TURB should include resection of the primary tumour site.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Register the results of a second TURB as it reflects the quality of the initial resection.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inform the pathologist of prior treatments (intravesical therapy, radiotherapy, etc.).</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pathological report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The pathological report should specify tumour location, tumour grade, depth of tumour invasion, presence of CIS, and whether the detrusor muscle is present in the specimen.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The pathological report should specify the presence of lymphovascular invasion or unusual (variant) histology.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In difficult cases, consider an additional review by an experienced genitourinary pathologist.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. PREDICTING DISEASE RECURRENCE AND PROGRESSION

6.1 TaT1 tumours

In order to predict, separately, the short- and long-term risks of disease recurrence and progression in individual patients, the EORTC Genito-Urinary Cancer Group has developed a scoring system and risk tables [137]. The basis for these tables are individual patient data from 2,596 patients diagnosed with TaT1 tumours, who were randomised into seven EORTC trials. Patients with CIS alone were not included. Seventy-eight percent of patients received intravesical treatment, mostly chemotherapy. However, they did not undergo a second TURB or receive maintenance BCG.

The scoring system is based on the six most significant clinical and pathological factors which are shown in Table 6.1. It also illustrates the weights applied to various factors for calculating the total scores for recurrence and progression. Table 6.2 shows the total scores stratified, into four categories that reflect various probabilities of recurrence and progression at one and five years [137] (LE: 2a).

Table 6.1: Weighting used to calculate disease recurrence and progression scores

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor</th>
<th>Recurrence</th>
<th>Progression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of tumours</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour diameter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 3 cm</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior recurrence rate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≤ 1 recurrence/year</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 1 recurrence/year</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concurrent CIS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Score</td>
<td>0-17</td>
<td>0-23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.2: Probability of recurrence and disease progression according to total score

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recurrence score</th>
<th>Probability of recurrence at 1 year</th>
<th>Probability of recurrence at 5 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% (95% CI)</td>
<td>% (95% CI)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>15 (10-19)</td>
<td>31 (24-37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-4</td>
<td>24 (21-26)</td>
<td>46 (42-49)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-9</td>
<td>38 (35-41)</td>
<td>62 (58-65)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-17</td>
<td>61 (55-67)</td>
<td>78 (73-84)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A scoring model for BCG-treated patients that predicts the short- and long-term risks of recurrence and progression has been published by the Club Urológico Español de Tratamiento Oncológico (CUETO) (Spanish Urological Oncology Group). It is based on an analysis of 1,062 patients from four CUETO trials that compared different intravesical BCG treatments. Patients received twelve instillations over five to six months. No immediate post-operative instillation or second TURB was performed in these patients. The scoring system is based on the evaluation of seven prognostic factors:

- gender;
- age;
- prior recurrence status;
- number of tumours;
- T category;
- associated CIS;
- tumour grade.

Using these tables, the calculated risk of recurrence is lower than that obtained by the EORTC tables. For progression, probability is lower only in high-risk patients [138] (LE: 2a). The lower risks in the CUETO tables may be attributed to the use of BCG in this sample, which is a more effective instillation therapy. The CUETO risk calculator is available at: http://www.aeu.es/Cueto.html.

The prognostic value of the EORTC scoring system has been confirmed by data from the CUETO patients treated with BCG and by long-term follow up in an independent patient population [139, 140] (LE: 2a). In 1,812 intermediate- and high-risk patients without CIS treated with one to three years of maintenance BCG, the EORTC found that the prior disease-recurrence rate and number of tumours were the most important prognostic factors for disease recurrence, stage and grade were the most important prognostic factors for disease progression and disease-specific survival, while age and grade were the most important prognostic factors for OS. T1G3 patients do poorly, with one- and five-year disease-progression rates of 11.4% and 19.8%, respectively. Using these data the new EORTC risk groups and nomograms for BCG treated patients were designed [141] (LE: 2a).

Further prognostic factors have been described in selected patient populations:

- In T1G3 tumours important prognostic factors were female sex and CIS in the prostatic urethra in men treated with an induction course of BCG, and age, tumour size and concurrent CIS in BCG-treated patients (62% with induction course only) [104, 142] (LE: 2b).
- Attention must be given to patients with T1G3 tumours in bladder (pseudo) diverticulum because of the absence of muscle layer in the diverticular wall [143] (LE: 3).
- In patients with high-risk disease, the tumour stage at the time of the second TURB is an unfavourable prognostic factor [129, 133] (LE: 3)
- In patients with T1G2 tumours treated with TURB, recurrence at three months was the most important predictor of progression [144] (LE: 2b).
- The prognostic value of pathological factors has been discussed elsewhere (see Section 4.6). More research is needed to determine the role of molecular markers in improving the predictive accuracy of currently available risk tables [139, 145].

6.2 Carcinoma in situ

Without any treatment, approximately 54% of patients with CIS progress to muscle-invasive disease [146] (LE: 3). Unfortunately, there are no reliable prognostic factors that can be used to predict the course of the disease. Publications are based on retrospective analyses of small series of patients and conclusions are not homogeneous. Some studies have reported a worse prognosis in concurrent CIS and T1 tumours compared to primary CIS [147, 148], extended CIS [149] and CIS in the prostatic urethra [104] (LE: 3).
The response to intravesical treatment with BCG or chemotherapy is an important prognostic factor for subsequent progression and death caused by BC [138-140, 144]. Approximately 10-20% of complete responders eventually progress to muscle-invasive disease, compared with 66% of non-responders [150, 151] (LE: 2a).

6.3 Patient stratification into risk groups
To facilitate treatment recommendations it is important to categorise patients into risk groups. Based on available prognostic factors and in particular data from the EORTC risk tables, the Guidelines Panel recommends stratification of patients into three risk groups. Table 6.3 provides a definition of these risk groups, which takes into account the EORTC risk tables’ probabilities of recurrence and especially progression.

6.4 Subgroup of highest-risk tumours
Based on prognostic factors, it is possible to sub-stratify high-risk group patients, and identify those that are at the highest risk of disease progression. Patients diagnosed with T1G3/HG tumours associated with concurrent bladder CIS, multiple and/or large T1G3/HG tumours and/or recurrent T1G3/HG,T1G3/HG with CIS in the prostatic urethra, some forms of variant histology of urothelial carcinoma and T1 tumours with LVI (Table 6.3) are at the highest risk of progression.

Table 6.3: Risk group stratification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk group stratification</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low-risk tumours</td>
<td>Primary, solitary, TaG1 (PUNLMP, LG*), &lt; 3 cm, no CIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate-risk tumours</td>
<td>All tumours not defined in the two adjacent categories (between the category of low- and high risk).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-risk tumours</td>
<td>Any of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• T1 tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• G3 (HG**) tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• carcinoma in situ (CIS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Multiple, recurrent and large (&gt; 3 cm) TaG1G2 /LG tumours (all features must be present)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subgroup of highest risk tumours:</strong></td>
<td>T1G3/HG associated with concurrent bladder CIS, multiple and/or large T1G3/HG and/or recurrent T1G3/HG, T1G3/HG with CIS in the prostatic urethra, some forms of variant histology of urothelial carcinoma, lymphovascular invasion.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sub-stratification of high-risk tumours for clinical purposes is addressed in Table 7.2.
*Low grade is a mixture of G1 and G2.
** High grade is a mixture of some G2 and all G3 (see Figure 4.1).

6.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for stratification of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The EORTC scoring system and risk tables predict the short- and long-term risks of disease recurrence and progression in individual patients with non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer (NMIBC).</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients treated with BCG, the CUETO scoring model predicts the short- and long-term risks of disease recurrence and progression.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients receiving BCG maintenance: prior recurrence rate and number of tumours are the most important prognostic factors for disease recurrence.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage and grade are the most important prognostic factors for disease progression and disease specific survival.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient age and grade are the most important prognostic factors for overall survival.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stratify patients into three risk groups according to Table 6.3.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apply the EORTC risk tables and calculator for the prediction of the risk of tumour recurrence and progression in different intervals after transurethral resection of the bladder, in individual patients.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the CUETO risk tables and the new EORTC risk groups for the prediction of the risk of tumour recurrence and progression in individual patients treated with bacillus Calmette-Guérin.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. DISEASE MANAGEMENT

7.1 Counselling of smoking cessation

It has been confirmed that smoking increases the risk of tumour recurrence and progression [152, 153] (LE: 3). While it is still controversial whether smoking cessation in BC will favourably influence the outcome of BC treatment, patients should be counselled to stop smoking due to the general risks connected with tobacco smoking [154-157] (LE: 3).

7.2 Adjuvant treatment

7.2.1 Intravesical chemotherapy

Although TURB by itself can eradicate a Ta, T1 tumour completely, these tumours commonly recur and can progress to MIBC. The high variability in the three-month recurrence rate indicates that the TURB was incomplete or provokes recurrences in a high percentage of patients [86]. It is therefore necessary to consider adjuvant therapy in all patients.

7.2.1.1 A single, immediate, post-operative intravesical instillation of chemotherapy

Immediate single instillation (SI) has been shown to act by destroying circulating tumour cells after TURB, and by an ablative effect (chemo resection) on residual tumour cells at the resection site and on small overlooked tumours [158-161] (LE: 3).

Four large meta-analyses comprising 1,476 to 3,103 patients have consistently shown that after TURB, SI significantly reduces the recurrence rate compared to TURB alone [162-165] (LE: 1a). In the most recent systematic review and individual patient data meta-analysis of 2,278 eligible patients [162], SI reduced the five-year recurrence rate by 14%, from 59% to 45%. The number to treat (NNT) to prevent one recurrence within five years was seven eligible patients. Only patients with a prior recurrence rate of less than or equal to one recurrence per year and those with an EORTC recurrence score < 5 benefited from SI. In patients with an EORTC recurrence score ≥ 5 and/or patients with a prior recurrence rate of > 1 recurrence per year, SI was not effective as a single adjuvant treatment. Mitomycin C (MMC), epirubicin, and pirarubicin have all shown a beneficial effect [162]. No randomised comparisons of individual drugs have been conducted [162-165] (LE: 1a).

Prevention of tumour cell implantation should be initiated within the first few hours after TURB. After that, tumour cells are firmly implanted and are covered by extracellular matrix [158, 166, 167] (LE: 3). In all SI studies, the instillation was administered within 24 hours. To maximise the efficacy of SI, one should devise flexible practices that allow the instillation to be given as soon as possible after TURB, preferably within the first two hours in the recovery room or even in the operating theatre. As severe complications have been reported in patients with drug extravasation [168, 169] safety measures should be maintained (see Section 7.5).

7.2.1.2 Additional adjuvant intravesical chemotherapy instillations

The need for further adjuvant intravesical therapy depends on prognosis. In low-risk patients (Tables 6.1, 6.2 and 6.3), a SI reduces the risk of recurrence and is considered to be the standard and complete treatment [162, 163] (LE: 1a). For other patients, however, a SI remains an incomplete treatment because of the considerable likelihood of recurrence and/or progression (Tables 6.1, 6.2 and 6.3). The individual patient data meta-analysis also showed that a SI reduced recurrences in intermediate-risk patients with an EORTC recurrence score < 5, none of whom received further treatment prior to recurrence [162]. There is evidence from several studies in intermediate-risk patients that SI might have an impact on recurrence even when further adjuvant instillations are given; however, they do not take into account the EORTC recurrence score [170-172] (LE: 2a). In one study [173], further chemotherapy instillations after SI improved recurrence-free survival in intermediate-risk patients (LE: 2a). Conversely, a sufficient number of delayed repeat chemotherapy instillations without SI can also reduce recurrences [170, 172].

A large meta-analysis of 3,703 patients from eleven randomised trials showed a highly significant (44%) reduction in the odds of recurrence at one year in favour of chemotherapy over TURB alone [174]. This
corresponds to an absolute difference of 13-14% in the number of patients with recurrence. Contrary to these findings, two meta-analyses have demonstrated that BCG therapy may reduce the risk of tumour progression [175, 176] (LE: 1a) (see Section 7.2.2.1). Moreover, BCG maintenance therapy appears to be significantly better in preventing recurrences than chemotherapy [177-179] (see Section 7.2.2.1) (LE: 1a). However, BCG causes significantly more side effects than chemotherapy [179] (LE: 1a).

The length and frequency of chemotherapy instillations is still controversial. A systematic review of RCTs, comparing different schedules of intravesical chemotherapy instillations, concluded that the ideal duration and intensity of the schedule remains undefined because of conflicting data [172]. The available evidence does not support treatment longer than one year (LE: 3).

7.2.1.3 Options for improving efficacy of intravesical chemotherapy
7.2.1.3.1 Adjustment of pH, duration of instillation, and drug concentration
One RCT using MMC has demonstrated that adapting urinary pH, decreasing urinary excretion, and buffering the intravesical solution reduced the recurrence rate [180] (LE: 1b). Another trial reported that duration of a one hour instillation of MCC was more effective compared to a 30 minute instillation, but no efficacy comparisons are available for one- vs. two-hour durations of instillation [181] (LE: 3). Another RCT using epirubicin has documented that concentration is more important than treatment duration [182] (LE: 1b). In view of these data, instructions are provided (see Section 7.5).

7.2.1.3.2 Device-assisted intravesical chemotherapy

Hyperthermia
Promising data have been presented on enhancing the efficacy of MMC using microwave-induced hyperthermia in patients with high-risk tumours [183]. In one RCT comparing one year of BCG with one year MMC and microwave-induced hyperthermia in patients with intermediate and high-risk bladder cancer, a reduced RFS at 24 months in the MMC group was demonstrated [184] (LE: 1b). Different technologies which increase the temperature of instilled MMC are available, however, data about their efficacy are still lacking.

Electromotive drug administration (EMDA)
The efficacy of MMC using EMDA in patients with high-risk tumours has been demonstrated in one small RCT [185]. The definitive conclusion however, needs further confirmation.

7.2.1.4 Summary of evidence - intravesical chemotherapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In patients with non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer and a prior low recurrence rate (≤ one recurrence per year) and in those with an EORTC recurrence score &lt; 5, a single instillation (SI) significantly reduces the recurrence rate compared to transurethral resection of the bladder alone.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In intermediate-risk patients, SI might have an impact on recurrence even when further adjuvant instillations are given.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Further chemotherapy instillations after SI improve recurrence-free survival in intermediate-risk patients.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.2.2 Intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) immunotherapy
7.2.2.1 Efficacy of BCG
Five meta-analyses have confirmed that BCG after TURB is superior to TURB alone or TURB + chemotherapy for preventing the recurrence of NMIBC [177, 186-188] [189] (LE: 1a). Three recent RCTs of intermediate- and high-risk tumours have compared BCG with epirubicin + interferon [190], MMC [191], or epirubicin alone [178] and have confirmed the superiority of BCG for prevention of tumour recurrence (LE: 1a). The effect is long-lasting [178, 191] and was also observed in a separate analysis of patients with intermediate-risk tumours [178]. One meta-analysis [177] has evaluated the individual data from 2,820 patients enrolled in nine RCTs that have compared MMC vs. BCG. In the trials with BCG maintenance, there was a 32% reduction in the risk of recurrence for BCG compared to MMC, but a 28% increase in the risk of recurrence for patients treated with BCG in the trials without BCG maintenance.

Two meta-analyses have demonstrated that BCG therapy delays and potentially lowers the risk of tumour progression [175, 176] (LE: 1a). A meta-analysis carried out by the EORTC-GU/CG has evaluated data from 4,863 patients enrolled in 24 RCTs. Five different BCG strains were used, and in 20 of the trials, some form of BCG maintenance was used. Based on a median follow-up of 2.5 years, in 260 out of 2,658 patients (9.8%) treated with BCG, tumours progressed, compared to 304 out of 2,205 (13.8%) in the control groups (TURB alone, TURB + intravesical chemotherapy, or TURB + other immunotherapy). This shows a reduction
of 27% in the odds of progression with BCG maintenance treatment. The size of the reduction was similar in patients with TaT1 papillary tumours and in those with CIS [176]. A recent RCT with long-term observation has demonstrated significantly fewer distant metastases and better overall- and disease-specific survival in patients treated with BCG compared to epirubicin [178] (LE: 1b). On the contrary, a meta-analysis of individual patient data was not able to confirm any statistically significant difference between MMC and BCG for progression, survival and cause of death [177].

The conflicting results in the outcomes of these studies can be explained by different patient characteristics, duration of follow-up, methodology and statistical power. However, most studies showed a reduction in the risk of progression in high- and intermediate-risk tumours if BCG was applied including a maintenance schedule.

Two other meta-analyses have suggested a possible bias in favour of BCG arising from the inclusion of patients previously treated with intravesical chemotherapy [192]. In the most recent meta-analysis, however, BCG maintenance was more effective than MMC, both in patients previously treated and not previously treated with chemotherapy [177] (LE: 1a). It was demonstrated that BCG was less effective in patients > 70 years of age, but still more effective than epirubicin in a cohort of elderly patients [193] (LE: 1a).

7.2.2.2 BCG strain
The EORTC meta-analysis suggested no large differences in efficacy between various BCG strains [176]. Recently published smaller studies without maintenance demonstrated some differences between strains. This clearly needs further evaluation in prospective trials [194, 195] (LE: 2a).

7.2.2.3 BCG toxicity
BCG intravesical treatment is associated with more side effects compared to intravesical chemotherapy [176] (LE: 1a). However, serious side effects are encountered in < 5% of patients and can be treated effectively in almost all cases [196] (LE: 1b). It has been shown that a maintenance schedule is not associated with an increased risk of side effects compared to an induction course [196]. Side effects requiring treatment stoppage were seen more often in the first year of therapy [197]. Elderly patients do not seem to experience more side effects leading to treatment discontinuation [198] (LE: 2a).

Major complications can appear after systemic absorption of the drug. Thus, contraindications of BCG intravesical instillation should be respected (see Section 7.5). The presence of leukocyturia, non-visible haematuria or asymptomatic bacteriuria is not a contraindication for BCG application, and antibiotic prophylaxis is not necessary in these cases [199, 200] (LE: 3).

Bacillus Calmette-Guérin should be used with caution in immunocompromised patients; e.g. immunosuppression, human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] infection pose relative contraindications [201], although some small studies have shown similar efficacy and no increase in complications compared to non-immunocompromised patients. The role of prophylactic anti-tuberculosis medication in these patients remains unclear [202-204] (LE: 3). The management of side effects after BCG should reflect their type and grade according to the recommendations provided by the International Bladder Cancer Group (IBCG) and by a Spanish group [205, 206] (Table 7.1).
Table 7.1: Management options for side effects associated with intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) [206-209]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management options for local side effects (modified from International Bladder Cancer Group)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Symptoms of cystitis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenazopyridine, propantheline bromide, or non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If symptoms improve within a few days: continue instillations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If symptoms persist or worsen:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Postpone the instillation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Perform a urine culture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Start empirical antibiotic treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If symptoms persist even with antibiotic treatment:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. With positive culture: adjust antibiotic treatment according to sensitivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. With negative culture: quinolones and potentially analgesic anti-inflammatory instillations once daily for 5 days (repeat cycle if necessary) [207].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If symptoms persist: anti-tuberculosis drugs + corticosteroids.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If no response to treatment and/or contracted bladder: radical cystectomy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Haematuria</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform urine culture to exclude haemorrhagic cystitis, if other symptoms present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If haematuria persists, perform cystoscopy to evaluate presence of bladder tumour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Symptomatic granulomatous prostatitis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quinolones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If quinolones are not effective: isoniazid (300 mg/day) and rifampicin (600 mg/day) for three months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cessation of intravesical therapy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Epididymo-orchitis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform urine culture and administer quinolones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cessation of intravesical therapy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orchidectomy if abscess or no response to treatment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Management options for systemic side effects</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General malaise, fever</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generally resolve within 48 hours, with or without antipyretics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arthralgia and/or arthritis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rare complication and considered autoimmune reaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arthralgia: treatment with NSAIDs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arthritis: NSAIDs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If no/partial response, proceed to corticosteroids, high-dose quinolones or anti-tuberculosis drugs [209].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Persistent high-grade fever (&gt; 38.5°C for &gt; 48 h)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permanent discontinuation of BCG instillations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediate evaluation: urine culture, blood tests, chest X-ray.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prompt treatment with more than two antimicrobial agents while diagnostic evaluation is conducted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consultation with an infectious diseases specialist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BCG sepsis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention: initiate BCG at least 2 weeks post-transurethral resection of the bladder (if no signs and symptoms of haematuria).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cessation of BCG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For severe infection:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• High-dose quinolones or isoniazid, rifampicin and ethambutol 1.2 g daily for 6 months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Early, high-dose corticosteroids as long as symptoms persist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Consider an empirical non-specific antibiotic to cover Gram-negative bacteria and/or Enterococcus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Allergic reactions</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihistamines and anti-inflammatory agents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider high-dose quinolones or isoniazid and rifampicin for persistent symptoms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delay therapy until reactions resolve.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.2.2.4  Optimal BCG schedule

Induction BCG instillations are given according to the empirical six-weekly schedule introduced by Morales [210]. For optimal efficacy, BCG must be given in a maintenance schedule [175-177, 189] (LE: 1a). Many different maintenance schedules have been used, ranging from a total of ten instillations given in eighteen...
weeks to 27 over three years [211]. The EORTC meta-analysis was unable to determine which BCG maintenance schedule was the most effective [176]. In their meta-analysis, Böhle et al. concluded that at least one year of maintenance BCG is required to obtain superiority of BCG over MMC for prevention of recurrence or progression [175] (LE: 1a).

The optimal number of induction instillations and the optimal frequency and duration of maintenance instillations is not fully known. Moreover, it can be different in each individual patient [212]. In a RCT of 1,355 patients, the EORTC has shown that when BCG is given at full dose, three years’ maintenance (three-weekly instillations 3, 6, 12, 18, 24, 30 and 36 months) reduces the recurrence rate compared to one year in high- but not in intermediate-risk patients. There were no differences in progression or OS. In the three-year arm, however, 36.1% of patients did not complete the three-year schedule [213] (LE: 1b). In a RCT of 397 patients CUETO suggested that in high-risk tumours, the maintenance schedule with only one instillation every three months for three years may be suboptimal [214] (LE: 1b).

7.2.2.5 Optimal dose of BCG
To reduce BCG toxicity, instillation of a reduced dose was proposed. However, it has been suggested that a full dose of BCG is more effective in multifocal tumours [215, 216] (LE: 1b). The CUETO study compared one-third dose to full-dose BCG and found no overall difference in efficacy. One-third of the standard dose of BCG might be the minimum effective dose for intermediate-risk tumours. A further reduction to one-sixth dose resulted in a decrease in efficacy with no decrease in toxicity [217] (LE: 1b).

The EORTC did not find any difference in toxicity between one-third and full-dose BCG, but one third dose BCG was associated with a higher recurrence rate, especially when it was given only for one year [197, 213] (LE: 1b). The routine use of one-third dose BCG is complicated by potential technical difficulties in preparing the reduced dose reliably, given uneven distribution of colony-forming-units in the dry product formulation.

7.2.2.6 Indications for BCG
Although BCG is a very effective treatment, there is a consensus that not all patients with NMIBC should be treated with BCG due to the risk of toxicity. Ultimately, the choice of treatment depends upon the patient's risk (Table 6.2). The recommendation for individual risk groups is provided in Section 7.5.

A statement by the Panel on BCG shortage can be accessed on line: https://uroweb.org/guideline/non-muscleinvasive-bladder-cancer/?type=appendices-publications.

7.2.2.7 Summary of evidence - BCG treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In patients with intermediate- and high-risk tumours, intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) after TURB reduces the risk of tumour recurrence; it is more effective than TURB alone or TURB + intravesical chemotherapy.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For optimal efficacy, BCG must be given in a maintenance schedule.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three-year maintenance is more effective than one year to prevent recurrence in patients with high-risk tumours, but not in patients with intermediate-risk tumours.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.2.3 Combination therapy
In one RCT, a combination of MMC and BCG was shown to be more effective in reducing recurrences but more toxic compared to BCG monotherapy (LE: 1b). Using similar BCG schedules in both groups, each BCG instillation in the combination group was preceded a day before by one MMC instillation [218]. Another RCT in frequently recurrent NMIBC demonstrated significantly higher efficacy of weekly MMC followed by monthly BCG in reduction of the recurrence rate when compared to BCG and interferon [219] (LE: 1b). In contrast a recent RCT in a similar population of NMIBC comparing BCG monotherapy with a combination of epirubicin and interferon for up to two years showed the latter was significantly inferior to BCG monotherapy in preventing recurrence [220] (LE: 1b). In an RCT using MMC with EMDA, a combination of BCG and MMC with EMDA showed an improved recurrence-free interval and reduced progression rate compared to BCG monotherapy [185, 221] (LE: 2).

7.2.4 Specific aspects of treatment of Carcinoma in situ

7.2.4.1 Treatment strategy
The detection of concurrent CIS increases the risk of recurrence and progression of TaT1 tumours [137, 138], in this case further treatment according to the criteria summarised in Sections 7.2.1, 7.2.2, 7.3 and 7.4 is mandatory. CIS cannot be cured by an endoscopic procedure alone. Histological diagnosis of Carcinoma in
situ must be followed by further treatment, either intravesical BCG instillations or RC (LE: 4). Tumour-specific-survival rates after immediate RC for CIS are excellent, but as many as 40-50% of patients might be overtreated [146] (LE: 3).

7.2.4.2 Cohort studies on intravesical BCG or chemotherapy
In retrospective evaluations of patients with CIS, a complete response rate of 48% was achieved with intravesical chemotherapy and 72-93% with BCG [146-149, 222] (LE: 2a). Up to 50% of complete responders might eventually show recurrence with a risk of invasion and/or extravesical recurrence [149, 211, 222, 223] (LE: 3).

7.2.4.3 Prospective randomised trials on intravesical BCG or chemotherapy
Unfortunately, there have been few randomised trials in patients with CIS only. A meta-analysis of clinical trials comparing intravesical BCG to intravesical chemotherapy in patients with CIS has shown a significantly increased response rate after BCG and a reduction of 59% in the odds of treatment failure with BCG [224] (LE: 1a).

In an EORTC-GUCG meta-analysis of tumour progression, in a subgroup of 403 patients with CIS, BCG reduced the risk of progression by 35% as compared to intravesical chemotherapy or different immunotherapy [176] (LE: 1b). The combination of BCG and MMC was not superior to BCG alone [225]. In summary, compared to chemotherapy, BCG treatment of CIS increases the complete response rate, the overall percentage of patients who remain disease free, and reduces the risk of tumour progression (LE: 1b).

7.2.4.4 Treatment of CIS in prostatic urethra and upper urinary tract
Patients with CIS are at high risk of extravesical involvement in the upper urinary tract (UUT) and in the prostatic urethra. Solsona et al. found that 63% of 138 patients with CIS developed extravesical involvement initially or during follow-up [226]. Patients with extravesical involvement had worse survival than those with bladder CIS alone [226] (LE: 3). In the prostate, CIS might be present only in the epithelial lining of the prostatic urethra or in the prostatic ducts [31]. These situations should be distinguished from tumour invasion into the prostatic stroma (stage T4a in bladder tumours), and for which immediate radical cystoprostatectomy is mandatory. Patients with CIS in the epithelial lining of the prostatic urethra can be treated by intravesical instillation of BCG. Transurethral resection of the prostate can improve contact of BCG with the prostatic urethra [85, 227] (LE: 3). However, potential spread of CIS has to be considered; no suprapubic trocar-placed catheter should be used.

In patients with prostatic duct involvement, there are promising results after BCG instillation, but only from small series, so the data are insufficient to provide clear treatment recommendations and radical surgery should be considered [227, 228] (LE: 3). Treatment of CIS that involves the UUT is discussed in the EAU Guidelines on Urothelial Tumours of the Upper Urinary Tract [1].

7.2.4.5 Summary of evidence – treatment of carcinoma in situ

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma in situ (CIS) cannot be cured by an endoscopic procedure alone.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compared to intravesical chemotherapy, bacillus Calmette-Guérin treatment of CIS increases the complete response rate, the overall percentage of patients who remain disease free, and reduces the risk of tumour progression.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Flowchart 7.1: Treatment strategy in primary or recurrent tumour(s) without previous BCG*

Consider tumour appearance and early post-operative situation:
- Presumably low- or intermediate-risk tumour with low previous recurrence rate (≤1 recurrence per year) and EORTC recurrence score < 5
  - No perforation, no extensive resection, no bleeding with clots after TURB
  - Single installation of chemotherapy (GR: A)

Alternatively:
- Apparently muscle-invasive or high-risk tumour (vesical appearance etc.)
  - Bladder perforation, bleeding with clots

Consider completeness of the resection and pathological report:
- Incomplete resection or no muscle (except for monofocal TaG1/LG or T1 or G3/HG except for primary CIS)
  - Macrosopically complete resection and TaG1-2/LG with muscle in the specimen or in TaG1/LG even without muscle or in primary CIS

Stratify patients into risk groups (GR: B):
- Previous history
- Endoscopic appearance (number and size of tumours)
- Pathological report the worst stage and grade from either first or second TURB (GR: B)

Low-risk tumour (primary solitary TaG1/LG < 3 cm)
- Cystoscopy (GR: A) at 3 mo
  - If negative, cystoscopy (GR: A) at 12 mo and then yearly for 5 yr (GR: C)
  - Positive or suspect cystoscopy during follow-up
    - Tiny papillary recurrence
      - Consider patients’ age, comorbidities and preferences
    - LARGER or non-papillary recurrence
      - Office fulguration or surveillance
      - TURB + biopsies from abnormal looking mucosa (GR: B), bladder random biopsies if indicated* (GR: C), prostatic urethra biopsy if indicated* (GR: C)

Intermediate-risk tumour
- Primary or recurrent tumour without previous chemotherapy:
  - Intravesical BCG for 1 yr (weekly and 3 weekly at 3, 6 and 12 mo) or intravesical chemotherapy for up to 12 mo (GR: A)
- Recurrent tumour with previous chemotherapy:
  - Intravesical BCG for 1 yr (weekly and 3 weekly at 3, 6 and 12 mo) (GR: A)
  - In late recurrence of small TaG1/LG consider repeating intravesical chemotherapy
  - In all cases: Cystoscopy (GR: A) and cytology (GR: B) at 3 mo
  - If negative, cystoscopy and cytology at 3-6 mo intervals until 5 yr and then yearly (GR: C)

High-risk tumour (T1 or Tis or G3/HG or multiple and recurrent and > 3 cm TaG1-3/LG)
- Cystoscopy (GR: A) and cytology (GR: B) at 3 mo
  - If negative, cystoscopy and cytology every 3 mo for 2 yr, every 6 mo thereafter until 5 yr, and then yearly (GR: C), CT-IVU or IVU yearly (GR: C)

Consider the pathological report:
- Non-muscle invasive recurrence
  - Consider previous history and pathological report (see flow-chart II)
- Muscle invasive recurrence
  - See MIBC guidelines

*For details and explanations see the text of the guidelines
BCG = bacillus Calmette-Guérin; CIS = carcinoma in situ; GR = grade of recommendation; MIBC = muscle-invasive bladder cancer; PDD = photodynamic diagnosis; TURB = transurethral resection of the bladder.
7.3 Treatment of failure of intravesical therapy

7.3.1 Failure of intravesical chemotherapy
Patients with NMIBC recurrence after a chemotherapy regimen can benefit from BCG instillations. Prior intravesical chemotherapy has no impact on the effect of BCG instillation [177] (LE: 1a).

7.3.2 Recurrence and failure after intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) immunotherapy
Categories of unsuccessful treatment with intravesical BCG are presented in Table 7.2.

Table 7.2: Categories of unsuccessful treatment with intravesical BCG

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BCG failure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Whenever a MIBC is detected during follow-up.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BCG-refractory tumour:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. If high-grade, non-muscle-invasive papillary tumour is present at three months [229]. Further conservative treatment with BCG is associated with increased risk of progression [150, 230] (LE: 3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. If CIS (without concomitant papillary tumour) is present at both three and six months. If patients with CIS present at three months, an additional BCG course can achieve a complete response in &gt; 50% of cases [31] (LE: 3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. If high-grade tumour appears during BCG therapy*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-grade recurrence after BCG. Recurrence of high-grade/grade 3 (WHO 2004/1973) tumour after completion of BCG maintenance, despite an initial response [231] (LE: 3).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BCG intolerance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Severe side effects that prevent further BCG instillation before completing treatment [206].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Patients with low-grade recurrence during or after BCG treatment are not considered to be a BCG failure.

7.3.3 Treatment of BCG failure and recurrences after BCG
Treatment recommendations are provided in Sections 7.5 and 7.7. They reflect the categories mentioned in Table 7.2 and tumour characteristics at the time of recurrence.

Patients with BCG failure are unlikely to respond to further BCG therapy; RC is therefore the preferred option. Various studies suggest that repeat BCG therapy is appropriate for non-high-grade and even for some high-grade recurrent tumours [232, 233] (LE: 3). Additionally, there are now several bladder preservation strategies available that can be categorised as intravesical immunotherapy [234], intravesical chemotherapy, device-assisted therapy (see Section 7.2.1.3.2), and combination therapy (see Section 7.2.3) [235]. Changing from BCG to these options can yield responses in selected cases with BCG treatment failure [232, 234-242] (LE: 3).

Treatments other than RC must be considered oncologically inferior in patients with BCG failure at the present time [150, 229, 230] (LE: 3).

Little is known about the optimal treatment in patients with high-risk tumours who could not complete BCG instillations because of intolerance.

Non-high-grade recurrence after BCG is not considered as BCG failure. Treatment decision should be individualised according to tumour characteristics. It could include chemotherapy or repeat BCG instillations, but the published evidence is very low.

7.3.4 Summary of evidence - treatment failure of intravesical therapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prior intravesical chemotherapy has no impact on the effect of bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) instillation.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatments other than radical cystectomy must be considered oncologically inferior in patients with BCG failure.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.4 Radical cystectomy for NMIBC

If RC is indicated before progression to muscle-invasive tumour, it can be performed as an immediate (immediately after NMIBC diagnosis) or early procedure (after intravesical therapy failure, see Section 7.3).

There are several reasons to consider immediate RC for selected patients with NMIBC:

- The staging accuracy for T1 tumours by TURB is low with 27-51% of patients being upstaged to muscle-invasive tumour at RC [106, 130, 243-246] (LE: 3).
- Some patients with NMIBC experience disease progression to muscle-invasive disease (Table 6.2).

Patients who experience disease progression to muscle-invasive stage, have a worse prognosis than those who present with ‘primary’ muscle-invasive disease [247, 248].

The potential benefit of RC must be weighed against its risks, morbidity, and impact on quality of life. It is reasonable to propose immediate RC in those patients with NMIBC who are at highest risk of disease...
progression (see Section 7.6) [46, 104, 137, 138, 249] (LE: 3).

The benefits and risks of immediate and delayed RC should be discussed with patients, in a shared
decision-making process. Individual additional prognostic factors in T1 tumours mentioned in Sections 4.7
and 6.4 should be considered. Early RC is strongly recommended in patients with BCG-refractory tumours, as
mentioned above. A delay in RC may lead to decreased disease-specific survival [250] (LE: 3).

In patients in whom RC is performed before progression to MIBC, the five-year disease-free survival
rate exceeds 80% [251-253] (LE: 3).

7.5 Recommendations for adjuvant therapy in TaT1 tumours and for therapy of
carcinoma in situ

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Counsel smokers with confirmed non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer (NMIBC) to stop smoking.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>The type of further therapy after transurethral resection of the bladder (TURB) should be based on the risk groups shown in Table 6.3 and Section 7.6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>In patients with tumours presumed to be at low risk and in those presumed to be at intermediate risk with previous low recurrence rate (≤ one recurrence per year) and expected EORTC recurrence score &lt; 5, one immediate chemotherapy instillation is recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>In patients with intermediate-risk tumours (with or without immediate instillation), one-year full-dose bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) treatment (induction plus three-weekly instillations at 3, 6 and 12 months), or instillations of chemotherapy (the optimal schedule is not known) for a maximum of one year is recommended. The final choice should reflect the individual patient's risk of recurrence and progression as well as the efficacy and side effects of each treatment modality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>In patients with high-risk tumours, full-dose intravesical BCG for one-three years (induction plus three-weekly instillations at 3, 6, 12, 18, 24, 30 and 36 months), is indicated. The additional beneficial effect of the second and third years of maintenance should be weighed against its added costs and inconveniences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>In patients with CIS in the epithelial lining of the prostatic urethra, transurethral resection of the prostate followed by intravesical instillation of BCG can be offered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Discuss immediate radical cystectomy with patients at highest risk of tumour progression (see Section 7.6).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Offer radical cystectomy (RC) to patients with BCG failure (see Section 7.7).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>In patients with BCG failure, who are not candidates for RC due to comorbidities, use preservation strategies (device-assisted instillations of chemotherapy, intravesical chemotherapy, intravesical immunotherapy).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Intravesical chemotherapy**

| C  | When given, a single immediate instillation of chemotherapy should be administered within 24 hours after TURB, preferably within two hours. |
| C  | A single immediate instillation of chemotherapy should be omitted in any case of overt or suspected bladder perforation or bleeding requiring bladder irrigation. |
| C  | Give clear instructions to the nursing staff to control the free flow of the bladder catheter at the end of the immediate instillation. |
| C  | The optimal schedule of further intravesical chemotherapy instillation and its duration is not defined, it should not exceed one year. |
| B  | If intravesical chemotherapy is given, it is advised to use the drug at its optimal pH and to maintain the concentration of the drug by reducing fluid intake before and during instillation. |
| C  | The length of individual instillation should be one-two hours. |

**BCG intravesical immunotherapy**

| C  | Absolute contraindications of BCG intravesical instillation are: |
| C  | • during the first two weeks after TURB; |
| C  | • in patients with visible haematuria; |
| C  | • after traumatic catheterisation; |
| C  | • in patients with symptomatic urinary tract infection. |

The management of side effects after BCG intravesical instillation should reflect their type and grade (see Table 7.1).
7.6 Treatment recommendations in TaT1 tumours and carcinoma in situ according to risk stratification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk category</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Treatment recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low-risk tumours</td>
<td>Primary, solitary, TaG1 (PUNLMP, LG), &lt; 3 cm, no CIS</td>
<td>One immediate instillation of intravesical chemotherapy after TURB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate-risk tumours</td>
<td>All tumours not defined in the two adjacent categories (between the category of low- and high-risk).</td>
<td>In patients with previous low recurrence rate (less than or equal to one recurrence per year) and expected EORTC recurrence score &lt; 5, one immediate instillation of intravesical chemotherapy after TURB. In all patients either one-year full-dose BCG treatment (induction plus three-weekly instillations at three, six and twelve months), or instillations of chemotherapy (the optimal schedule is not known) for a maximum of one year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-risk tumours</td>
<td>Any of the following: T1 tumours; G3 (HG) tumour; CIS; Multiple, recurrent and large (&gt; 3 cm) TaG1G2/LG tumours (all features must be present).</td>
<td>Intravesical full-dose BCG instillations for one-three years or radical cystectomy (in highest-risk tumours - see below).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subgroup of highest-risk tumours</td>
<td>T1G3/HG associated with concurrent bladder CIS, multiple and/or large T1G3/HG and/or recurrent T1G3/HG, T1G3/HG with CIS in the prostatic urethra, some forms of variant histology of urothelial carcinoma, LVI (see Sections 4.7 and 6.4).</td>
<td>Radical cystectomy should be considered. In those who refuse or are unfit for RC intravesical full-dose BCG instillations for one-three years.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.7 Treatment recommendations for bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) failure and recurrences after BCG

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Treatment recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCG-refractory tumour</td>
<td>1. Radical cystectomy&lt;br&gt;2. Bladder-preserving strategies in patients unsuitable for radical cystectomy</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-grade (HG) recurrence after BCG</td>
<td>1. Radical cystectomy&lt;br&gt;2. Bladder-preserving strategies&lt;br&gt;3. Repeat BCG course</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-HG recurrence after BCG for primary intermediate-risk tumour</td>
<td>1. Repeat BCG or intravesical chemotherapy&lt;br&gt;2. Radical cystectomy</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. FOLLOW-UP OF PATIENTS WITH NMIBC

As a result of the risk of recurrence and progression, patients with NMIBC need surveillance. However, the frequency and duration of cystoscopy and imaging should reflect the individual patient’s degree of risk. Using risk tables (see Tables 6.1 and 6.2), the short- and long-term risks of recurrence and progression in individual patients may be predicted and the follow-up schedule adapted accordingly [137, 138].

When planning the follow-up schedule and methods, the following aspects should be considered:
- The prompt detection of muscle-invasive and HG/G3 non-muscle-invasive recurrence is crucial because a delay in diagnosis and therapy can be life-threatening.
• Tumour recurrence in the low-risk group is nearly always low stage and LG/G1. Small, TaLG/G1 papillary recurrence does not present an immediate danger to the patient and early detection is not essential for successful therapy [254, 255] (LE: 2b). Fulguration of small papillary recurrences on an outpatient basis could be a safe option that reduces the therapeutic burden [98] (LE: 3). Some authors have even defended temporary surveillance in selected cases [255-257] (LE: 3).
• The first cystoscopy after TURB at three months is an important prognostic indicator for recurrence and progression [144, 150, 258-260] (LE: 1a). Therefore, the first cystoscopy should always be performed three months after TURB in all patients with TaT1 tumours and CIS.
• In tumours at low risk, the risk of recurrence after five recurrence-free years is low [259] (LE: 3).
• Discontinuation of cystoscopy or its replacement with less-invasive methods can be considered [260].
• In tumours originally intermediate- or high risk, recurrences after ten years tumour-free are not unusual [261] (LE: 3). Therefore, life-long follow-up is recommended [260].
• The follow-up strategy must reflect the risk of extravesical recurrence (prostatic urethra in men and UUT in both genders)
• The risk of UUT recurrence increases in patients with multiple- and high-risk tumours [57] (LE: 3).
• Positive urine test results have a positive impact on the quality of follow-up cystoscopy [83] (LE: 1b) supporting the adjunctive role of urine tests during follow-up.
• In patients initially diagnosed with TaLG/G1-2 BC, ultrasound of the bladder may be a mode of surveillance in case cystoscopy is not possible or refused by the patient [262].

No non-invasive method can replace endoscopy. Follow-up is therefore based on regular cystoscopy (see Section 5.7). There is a lack of randomised studies investigating the possibility of safely reducing the frequency of follow-up cystoscopy.

As CIS is often not visible, multiple biopsies may be necessary in selected cases to confirm the efficacy of intravesical treatment in patients treated for CIS [84]. The recommendations for follow-up are mainly based on retrospective data (see Section 8.1).

8.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for follow-up of patients after transurethral resection of the bladder for non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The first cystoscopy after transurethral resection of the bladder at 3 months is an important prognostic indicator for recurrence and progression.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The risk of upper urinary tract (UUT) recurrence increases in patients with multiple- and high-risk tumours.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base follow-up of TaT1 tumours and carcinoma in situ (CIS) on regular cystoscopy.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients with low-risk Ta tumours should undergo cystoscopy at three months. If negative, subsequent cystoscopy is advised nine months later, and then yearly for five years.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients with high-risk tumours should undergo cystoscopy and urinary cytology at three months. If negative, subsequent cystoscopy and cytology should be repeated every three months for a period of two years, and every six months thereafter until five years, and then yearly.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients with intermediate-risk Ta tumours should have an in-between (individualised) follow-up scheme using cystoscopy and cytology.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular (yearly) upper tract imaging (computed tomography-intravenous urography [CT-IVU] or IVU) is recommended for high-risk tumours.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endoscopy under anaesthesia and bladder biopsies should be performed when office cystoscopy shows suspicious findings or if urinary cytology is positive.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider random (R)-biopsies or photodynamic diagnosis (PDD)-guided biopsies after intravesical treatment (at three or six months) in patients with CIS.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>During follow-up in patients with positive cytology and no visible tumour in the bladder, R-biopsies or PDD-guided biopsies (if equipment is available) and investigation of extravesical locations (CT urography, prostatic urethra biopsy) are recommended.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients initially diagnosed with TaLG/G1-2 bladder cancer, use ultrasound of the bladder during surveillance in case cystoscopy is not possible or refused by the patient.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9. REFERENCES


http://www.uicc.org/resources/tnm/publications-resources


http://apps.who.int/bookorders/anglais/detart1.jsp?codlan=1&codcol=70&codcch=4008


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16600720


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15126782


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22119022


10. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the Non-Muscle-Invasive Bladder Cancer guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements of all relationships that they have that might be perceived as a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publicly accessible through the European Association of Urology website: https://uroweb.org/guideline/non-muscle-invasive-bladder-cancer/?type=panel.

This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Urothelial Carcinoma of the Upper Urinary Tract


© European Association of Urology 2017
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. **INTRODUCTION**
   1.1 Aim and objectives
   1.2 Panel composition
   1.3 Available publications
   1.4 Publication history & summary of changes
      1.4.1 Summary of changes

2. **METHODS**
   2.1 Data identification
   2.2 Review
   2.3 Future goals

3. **EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY**
   3.1 Epidemiology
   3.2 Risk factors
   3.3 Histology and classification
      3.3.1 Histological types
         3.3.1.1 Summary of evidence for histology and classification

4. **STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS**
   4.1 Classification
   4.2 Tumour Node Metastasis staging
   4.3 Histological grading
   4.4 Guidelines for staging and classification systems

5. **DIAGNOSIS**
   5.1 Symptoms
   5.2 Diagnosis
      5.2.1 Imaging
         5.2.1.1 Computed tomography urography
         5.2.1.2 Magnetic resonance imaging
      5.2.2 Cystoscopy and urinary cytology
      5.2.3 Diagnostic ureteroscopy
   5.3 Summary of evidence and guidelines for the diagnosis of upper tract urothelial carcinoma

6. **PROGNOSIS**
   6.1 Prognostic factors
      6.1.1 Pre-operative factors
         6.1.1.1 Age and sex
         6.1.1.2 Ethnicity
         6.1.1.3 Tobacco consumption
         6.1.1.4 Tumour location
         6.1.1.5 Surgical delay
         6.1.1.6 Other
      6.1.2 Post-operative factors
         6.1.2.1 Tumour stage and grade
         6.1.2.2 Lymph node involvement
         6.1.2.3 Lymphovascular invasion
         6.1.2.4 Surgical margins
         6.1.2.5 Pathological factors
   6.2 Molecular markers
   6.3 Predictive tools
   6.4 Bladder recurrence
   6.5 Risk stratification
   6.6 Summary of evidence and guidelines for prognosis

7. **DISEASE MANAGEMENT**
   7.1 Localised disease
7.1.1 Kidney-sparing surgery
  7.1.1.1 Ureteroscopy
  7.1.1.2 Percutaneous access
  7.1.1.3 Surgical open approach
  7.1.1.4 Guidelines for kidney-sparing management of upper tract urothelial carcinoma
  7.1.1.5 Adjuvant topical agents

7.1.2 Radical nephroureterectomy
  7.1.2.1 Laparoscopic radical nephroureterectomy
  7.1.2.2 Lymph node dissection
  7.1.2.3 Adjuvant bladder instillation
  7.1.2.4 Summary of evidence and guidelines for radical nephroureterectomy

7.2 Advanced disease
  7.2.1 Radical nephroureterectomy
  7.2.2 Systemic chemotherapy
  7.2.3 Radiotherapy
  7.2.4 Summary of evidence and guideline for advanced disease

8. FOLLOW-UP
  8.1 Summary of evidence and guidelines for follow-up of upper tract urothelial carcinoma patients after initial treatment

9. REFERENCES

10. CONFLICT OF INTEREST
INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim and objectives
The European Association of Urology (EAU) Non-muscle-invasive Bladder Cancer (NMIBC) Guidelines Panel has compiled these clinical guidelines to provide urologists with evidence-based information and recommendations for the management of urothelial carcinoma of the upper urinary tract (UTUC). Separate EAU guidelines documents are available addressing non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer [1], muscle-invasive and metastatic bladder cancer (MIBC) [2], and primary urethral carcinoma [3].

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition
The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Panel on NMIBC consists of an international multidisciplinary group of clinicians, including urologists, uro-oncologists, a radiologist, a pathologist and a statistician. Members of this panel have been selected based on their expertise and to represent the professionals treating patients suspected of harbouring urothelial carcinoma. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements, which can be viewed on the EAU website Uroweb: http://uroweb.org/guideline/upper-urinary-tracturothelial-cell-carcinoma/.

1.3 Available publications
A quick reference document (Pocket guidelines) is available in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices, presenting the main findings of the UTUC Guidelines. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text version. Several scientific publications are available as are a number of translations of all versions of the EAU UTUC Guidelines. All documents are accessible through the EAU website Uroweb: http://uroweb.org/guideline/upper-urinary-tracturothelial-cell-carcinoma/.

1.4 Publication history & summary of changes
The first EAU guidelines on UTUC were published in 2011. The 2017 EAU guidelines on UTUC present a limited update of the 2016 version.

1.4.1 Summary of changes
The literature for the complete document has been assessed and updated, whenever relevant. Conclusions and recommendations have been rephrased and added to throughout the current document.

Key changes for the 2017 print:
New section 3.3.1.1 - Summary of evidence for Chapter 3 (Epidemiology, aetiology and pathology) has been added.

3.3.1.1 Summary of evidence for histology and classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A small proportion of upper tract urothelial carcinoma belong to the tumour spectrum of the hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New section 5.3 - Summary of evidence section has been added to the Guidelines for the diagnosis of upper tract urothelial carcinoma.

5.3 Summary of evidence and guidelines for the diagnosis of upper tract urothelial carcinoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The diagnosis of urothelial carcinoma of the upper urinary tract depends on computed tomography urography.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective urinary cytology has high sensitivity in high-grade tumours including carcinoma in situ.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
New section 7.1.2.4 – Summary of evidence section has been added to the Guidelines for radical nephroureterectomy.

### 7.1.2.4 Summary of evidence and guidelines for radical nephroureterectomy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Radical nephroureterectomy is the standard in high-risk upper tract urothelial carcinoma, regardless of tumour location.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open and laparoscopic approaches have equivalent efficacy and safety in T1–2/N0 upper tract urothelial carcinoma.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2. METHODS

#### 2.1 Data identification

Standard procedure for EAU Guidelines includes an annual assessment of newly published literature in the field to guide future updates. For the 2017 UTUC Guidelines, new and relevant evidence has been identified, collated and appraised through a structured assessment of the literature. A broad and comprehensive scoping exercise covering all areas of the entire guideline was performed. Excluded from the search were basic research studies, case series, reports and editorial comments. Only articles published in the English language, addressing adults were included. The search was restricted to articles published between June 1st 2015 and April 22nd 2016. Databases searched included Pubmed, Ovid, EMBASE and both the Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials and the Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. After deduplication, a total of 973 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance. A detailed search strategy is available online: [http://uroweb.org/guideline/upper-urinary-tract-urothelial-cell-carcinoma/?type=appendicespublications](http://uroweb.org/guideline/upper-urinary-tract-urothelial-cell-carcinoma/?type=appendicespublications).

References used in this text are assessed according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [4]. Additional methodology information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: [http://uroweb.org/guidelines/](http://uroweb.org/guidelines/).

A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address.

#### 2.2 Review

This document was peer-reviewed prior to publication in 2016.

#### 2.3 Future goals

The results on ongoing and new systematic reviews will be included in the 2018 update of the UTUC Guidelines. These reviews are performed using standard Cochrane systematic review methodology: [http://www.cochranelibrary.com/about/about-cochrane-systematic-reviews.html](http://www.cochranelibrary.com/about/about-cochrane-systematic-reviews.html).

Ongoing systematic reviews:
- Oncological outcomes of laparoscopic/robotic radical nephroureterectomy versus open radical nephroureterectomy for upper tract urothelial carcinoma: an EAU Guidelines systematic review [5].
- What are the benefits and harms of lymph node dissection (LND) during radical nephroureterectomy for upper tract urothelial carcinoma (UTUC)? [6].

### 3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY

#### 3.1 Epidemiology

Urothelial carcinomas (UCs) are the fifth most common tumours [7]. They can be located in the lower (bladder and urethra) or upper (pyelocaliceal cavities and ureter) urinary tract. Bladder tumours account for 90-95% of UCs and are the most common malignancy of the urinary tract [8]. In contrast, UTUC are uncommon and account for only 5-10% of UCs [9, 10]. Pyelocaliceal tumours are about twice as common as common as ureteral tumours.
In 17% of cases, concurrent bladder cancer is present [11]. Recurrence in the bladder occurs in 22-47% of UTUC patients [12], compared with 2-6% in the contralateral upper tract [13, 14].

Approximately 60% of UTUC are invasive at diagnosis compared with 15-25% of bladder tumours [8, 15]. Upper tract urothelial carcinomas have a peak incidence in people aged 70 to 90 years and are three times more common in men [16, 17].

Familial/hereditary UTUC are linked to hereditary non-polyposis colorectal carcinoma (HNPCC) [18], which can be screened for during an interview (Figure 3.1) [19]. Patients should undergo DNA sequencing to identify hereditary cancers misclassified as sporadic if they fulfil the criteria for HNPCC [18, 20].

**Figure 3.1: Selection of patients with UTUC for hereditary screening during the first medical interview**

![Diagram of UTUC screening process]

HNPCC = hereditary non-polyposis colorectal carcinoma.

### 3.2 Risk factors

Various environmental risk factors contribute to UTUC development [21, 22]. Tobacco exposure increases the relative risk from 2.5 to 7 [21, 23]. Historically, UTUC ‘amino tumours’ were related to occupational exposure to carcinogenic aromatic amines. The odds ratio of developing UC after exposure to aromatic amines is 8.3 [21, 22]. Upper tract urothelial carcinoma caused by phenacetin consumption almost disappeared after the product was banned in the 1970s [22].

Upper tract urothelial carcinoma often present after a bladder cancer. The average duration of exposure needed to develop UTUC is ~7 years, with a latency of ~20 years following termination of exposure.

Several studies have revealed the carcinogenic potential of aristolochic acid contained in *Aristolochia fangchi* and *Aristolochia clematis*. The aristolochic acid derivative dA-aristolactam causes a specific mutation in the p53 gene at codon 139, which occurs mainly in patients with nephropathy due to Chinese herbs or Balkan endemic nephropathy [22, 24, 25].
There is a high incidence of UTUC in Taiwan, especially on the South-west coast which represents 20-25% of UCs in the region [22, 25]. There is a possible association of UTUC with blackfoot disease and arsenic exposure in drinking water in this population [22, 25, 26].

Differences in the ability to counteract carcinogens may contribute to host susceptibility to UTUC. Some genetic polymorphisms are associated with an increased risk of cancer or faster disease progression, which introduces variability in the inter-individual susceptibility to the risk factors previously mentioned. Upper tract urothelial carcinoma may share some risk factors or molecular disruption pathways with bladder UC. Two UTUC-specific polymorphisms have been reported [27, 28].

3.3 Histology and classification

3.3.1 Histological types

Upper tract urothelial carcinoma with pure non-urothelial histology is an exception [29, 30] but variants are present in ~25% of cases [31, 32]. These variants always correspond to high-grade tumours with worse prognosis compared to pure UC. Squamous cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract represents < 10% of pyelocaliceal tumours and is even rarer within the ureter. Squamous cell carcinoma of the urinary tract can be associated with chronic inflammatory and infectious diseases arising from urolithiasis [33, 34]. Other variants are: micropapillary, sarcomatoid carcinomas and lymphoepithelioma [33, 34].

3.3.1.1 Summary of evidence for histology and classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A small proportion of upper tract urothelial carcinoma belong to the tumour spectrum of the hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS

4.1 Classification

The classification and morphology of UTUC and bladder carcinoma are similar [8]. It is possible to distinguish between non-invasive papillary tumours (papillary urothelial tumours of low malignant potential, and low-grade and high-grade papillary UC), flat lesions (carcinoma in situ [CIS]), and invasive carcinoma. As in bladder tumours, non-urothelial differentiation has been identified as an adverse risk factor [35].

4.2 Tumour Node Metastasis staging

The Tumour Node Metastasis (TNM) classification is shown in Table 4.1 [36]. The regional lymph nodes that should be considered are the hilar, abdominal para-aortic, and paracaval nodes, and, for the ureter, the intrapelvic nodes. Laterality does not affect N classification.

A subclassification with pT3a and pT3b has been suggested, but is not in the officially accepted pTNM staging system [31, 37, 38]. Renal pelvic pT3 subclassification may discriminate between microscopic infiltration of the renal parenchyma (pT3a) and macroscopic infiltration or invasion of peripelvic adipose tissue. pT3b UTUC is more likely to be associated with aggressive pathologic features and disease recurrence [31, 37].
Table 4.1: TNM classification 2017 for upper tract urothelial carcinoma [36]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T - Primary tumour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX Primary tumour cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0 No evidence of primary tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta Non-invasive papillary carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 Tumour invades muscularis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 (Renal pelvis) Tumour invades beyond muscularis into peripelvic fat or renal parenchyma (Ureter) Tumour invades beyond muscularis into periureteric fat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4 Tumour invades adjacent organs or through the kidney into perinephric fat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N - Regional lymph nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0 No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1 Metastasis in a single lymph node 2 cm or less in the greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2 Metastasis in a single lymph node more than 2 cm, or multiple lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M - Distant metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0 No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1 Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3 Histological grading
In 2004, the WHO and the International Society of Urological Pathology published a new histological classification of urothelial carcinomas which provides a different patient stratification between individual categories compared to the older 1973 WHO classification [39, 40]. Recently an update of the 2004 WHO grading classification was published [41], but the following guidelines are still based on the 1973 and 2004 WHO classifications [39, 40].

Only few tumours of low malignant potential are found in the upper urinary tract, [33, 34]. pT2 tumours should be treated as high-grade disease.

4.4 Guidelines for staging and classification systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Classify the depths of invasion (staging) according to Tumour Node Metastasis classification, 8th edition.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classify flat, high-grade tumours, confined to the mucosa, as carcinoma in situ (Tis).</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the World Health Organization 1973 and 2004 grading systems for the histological classification of upper tract urothelial carcinoma.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. DIAGNOSIS

5.1 Symptoms
The most common symptom is visible- or non-visible haematuria (70-80%) [42, 43]. Flank pain occurs in 20-40% of cases, and a lumbar mass in 10-20% [44, 45]. Systemic symptoms (including anorexia, weight loss, malaise, fatigue, fever, night sweats, or cough) are associated with UTUC and should prompt more rigorous evaluation for metastatic disease [44, 45].

5.2 Diagnosis

5.2.1 Imaging

Computed tomography urography has the highest diagnostic accuracy for UTUC of all the clinically available imaging techniques [45]. The sensitivity of CT urography for UTUC is 0.67-1.0 and the specificity is 0.93-0.99 according to the technique used [21, 46-51]. Epithelial ‘flat lesions’ without mass effect or urothelial thickening are not visible with CT [52].

8 UROTHELIAL CARCINOMA OF THE UPPER URINARY TRACT - LIMITED UPDATE MARCH 2017
Computed tomography urography is defined as CT examination of the kidneys, ureters and bladder following the administration of intravenous contrast material [21, 53]. Rapid acquisition of thin sections provides high-resolution isotropic images that can be viewed in multiple planes to assist with diagnosis without loss of resolution. Computed-tomography urography usually includes several phases of acquisition following administration of intravenous contrast media [21, 54].

The secondary sign of hydronephrosis is associated with advanced disease and poor oncological outcome [21, 53, 55, 56]. The presence of enlarged lymph nodes is highly predictive of metastasis in UTUC [21].

5.2.1.2 Magnetic resonance imaging
Magnetic resonance urography (MRU) is indicated in patients who cannot undergo CT urography, usually when radiation or iodinated contrast media are contraindicated [57]. The sensitivity of MRU is 0.75 after contrast injection for tumours < 2 cm [57]. The use of MRU with gadolinium-based contrast media should be limited in patients with severe renal impairment (< 30 mL/min creatinine clearance), due to the risk of nephrogenic systemic fibrosis. Computed tomography urography is generally preferred over MRU for diagnosing UTUC.

5.2.2 Cystoscopy and urinary cytology
Positive urine cytology is suggestive of UTUC when bladder cystoscopy is normal, provided that no CIS is detected in the bladder or prostatic urethra [8, 58]. Cytology is less sensitive for UTUC than for bladder tumours. It should be performed in the upper tract (in situ cytology) [59].

Retrograde ureteropyelography is an option to evaluate UTUC [21, 49, 60, 61] but is now mostly used in conjunction with ureteroscopy and not as a stand-alone diagnostic technique due to similar diagnostic accuracy when compared with CT urography for UTUC [49]. Urinary cytology of the renal cavities and ureteral lumina is preferable before application of contrast agent for retrograde ureteropyelography, because the latter may cause deterioration of cytological specimens [59, 60].

The sensitivity of fluorescence in situ hybridisation (FISH) for molecular abnormalities characteristic of UTUC parallels its performance in bladder cancer [62]. However, its use may be limited by the preponderance of low-grade recurrent disease in the population undergoing surveillance and kidney-sparing therapy for UTUC [63, 64]. FISH currently has limited value for the surveillance of UTUC [63, 64].

5.2.3 Diagnostic ureteroscopy
Flexible ureteroscopy is used to visualise the ureter, renal pelvis and collecting system and biopsy suspicious lesions. Ureteroscopic biopsies can determine tumour grade in 90% of cases with a low false-negative rate, regardless of sample size [65]. Under-grading may occur from diagnostic biopsy, making intensive follow-up necessary if a kidney-sparing treatment is chosen [66]. Ureteroscopy also facilitates selective ureteral sampling for cytology to detect carcinoma in situ [60, 67, 68].

Flexible ureteroscopy is especially useful for diagnostic uncertainty, if kidney-sparing treatment is considered, or in patients with a solitary kidney. Additional information can be provided by ureteroscopy with- or without biopsy. Combining ureteroscopic biopsy grade, imaging findings such as hydronephrosis, and urinary cytology, may help in the decision-making process between radical nephroureterectomy (RNU) and endoscopic treatment [67, 69].

Technical developments in flexible ureteroscopes and the use of novel imaging techniques improve visualisation and the diagnosis of flat lesions [70]. Narrow-band imaging is the most promising technique to date but the results are preliminary [69, 71]. Table 5.3 lists the recommendations for diagnosis.
5.3 Summary of evidence and guidelines for the diagnosis of upper tract urothelial carcinoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The diagnosis of upper tract urothelial carcinoma depends on computed tomography urography.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective urinary cytology has high sensitivity in high-grade tumours including carcinoma in situ.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform urinary cytology as part of a standard diagnostic work-up.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a cystoscopy to rule out concomitant bladder tumour.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a computed tomography urography for the diagnostic work-up.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use diagnostic ureteroscopy and biopsy in cases where additional information will impact treatment decisions.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. PROGNOSIS

6.1 Prognostic factors

Upper tract urothelial carcinomas that invade the muscle wall usually have a poor prognosis. The five-year specific survival is < 50% for patients with pT2/pT3 tumours and < 10% for those with pT4 [71-73]. The main prognostic factors are briefly listed below; Figure 6.1 presents a more exhaustive list.

**Figure 6.1: Upper tract urothelial carcinoma - Prognostic factors**

ASA = American Society of Anesthesiologists; BMI = body mass index; ECOG = Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group; PS = performance score.
6.1.1 **Pre-operative factors**

6.1.1.1 Age and sex

Gender is no longer considered an independent prognostic factor influencing UTUC mortality [16, 73, 74]. Older age at the time of RNU is independently associated with decreased cancer-specific survival [73, 75] (LE: 3). Many elderly patients can be cured with RNU [76], suggesting that age alone is an inadequate indicator of outcome [75, 76]. Despite its association with survival, age alone should not prevent a potentially curable approach.

6.1.1.2 Ethnicity

One multicentre study did not show any difference between races [77] but population-based studies have indicated that African-American patients have worse outcomes compared to other ethnicities [76, 78] (LE: 3).

6.1.1.3 Tobacco consumption

Being a smoker at diagnosis increases the risk for disease recurrence and mortality after RNU [79, 80] as well as recurrence within the bladder [81] (LE: 3).

6.1.1.4 Tumour location

Initial location of the UTUC is a prognostic factor in some studies [82-84] (LE: 3). After adjustment for the effect of tumour stage, patients with ureteral and/or multifocal tumours seem to have a worse prognosis than those with renal pelvic tumours [73, 83-86].

6.1.1.5 Surgical delay

A delay between diagnosis of an invasive tumour and its removal may increase the risk of disease progression. Once a decision regarding RNU has been made the procedure should be carried-out within twelve weeks [87-90] (LE: 3).

6.1.1.6 Other

The American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) score significantly correlates with cancer-specific survival after RNU [91] (LE: 3). The Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group (ECOG) performance status correlates only with overall survival [92]. Obesity and higher body mass index adversely affect cancer-specific outcomes in UTUC [93, 94] (LE: 3). The pre-treatment derived neutrophil-lymphocyte ratio also correlates with higher cancer-specific mortality [95, 96] (LE: 3).

6.1.2 **Post-operative factors**

6.1.2.1 Tumour stage and grade

The primary recognised prognostic factors are tumour stage and grade [21, 67, 73, 97].

6.1.2.2 Lymph node involvement

Lymph node metastases and extranodal extension are powerful predictor of survival outcomes in UTUC [98]. Lymph node dissection (LND) performed at the time of RNU allows for optimal tumour staging [99, 100] (LE: 3). Its curative role remains debated.

6.1.2.3 Lymphovascular invasion

Lymphovascular invasion is present in ~20% of UTUC and is an independent predictor of survival [101, 102]. Lymphovascular invasion status should be specifically reported in the pathological reports of all UTUC specimens [101, 103] (LE: 3).

6.1.2.4 Surgical margins

Positive soft tissue surgical margin after RNU is a significant factor for developing UTUC recurrence. Pathologists should look for, and report, positive margins at the level of ureteral transection, bladder cuff, and around the tumour soft tissue margin [104] (LE: 3).

6.1.2.5 Pathological factors

Extensive tumour necrosis (> 10% of the tumour area) is an independent prognostic predictor in patients who undergo RNU [105, 106] (LE: 3). The architecture of UTUC is also a strong prognosticator with sessile growth pattern being associated with worse outcome [107, 108] (LE: 3). Concomitant CIS in organ-confined UTUC, and a history of bladder CIS are associated with a higher risk of disease recurrence and cancer-specific mortality [109-111] (LE: 3). Similar to lower tract UC, concomitant CIS is an independent predictor of worse outcomes in organ-confined disease [112].
6.2 Molecular markers
Several studies have investigated the prognostic impact of markers related to cell adhesion (E-cadherin and CD24), cell differentiation (Snail and epidermal growth factor receptor), angiogenesis (hypoxia-inducible factor-1α and metalloproteinases), cell proliferation (Ki67), epithelial-mesenchymal transition (Snail), mitosis (Aurora-A), apoptosis (Bcl-2 and survivin), vascular invasion (RON), c-met protein (MET) and mTOR pathway [21, 73, 113-117]. Microsatellite instability (MSI) is an independent molecular prognostic marker [118] and can help detect germline mutations and hereditary cancers [18].

The rarity of UTUC means that the main limitations of the above studies were their retrospective nature and small sample size. None of the markers have fulfilled the criteria necessary to support their introduction in daily clinical decision-making.

6.3 Predictive tools
Accurate predictive tools are rare for UTUC. There are two models in a pre-operative setting: one in locally advanced cancer that can guide the extent of LND at the time of RNU [119]; and one for selection of non-organ-confined UTUC likely to benefit from RNU [120]. Four nomograms are available predicting survival rates post-operatively, based on standard pathological features [121-125].

6.4 Bladder recurrence
A recent meta-analysis of available data has identified significant predictors of bladder recurrence after RNU [12] (LE: 3). Three categories of predictors of increased risk for bladder recurrence were identified:

- patient-specific factors such as (male gender, previous bladder cancer, pre-operative chronic kidney disease);
- tumour-specific factors such as (positive pre-operative urinary cytology, ureteral location, multifocality, invasive pT stage, necrosis);
- treatment-specific factors such as (laparoscopic approach, extravesical bladder cuff removal, positive surgical margins) [12].

6.5 Risk stratification
As tumour stage is difficult to assert clinically in UTUC, it is useful to ‘risk stratify’ UTUC between low- and high-risk tumours to identify those that are more suitable for kidney-sparing treatment rather than radical extirpative surgery [126, 127] (Figure 6.2).

Figure 6.2: Pre-intervention risk stratification of upper tract urothelial carcinoma

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Low-risk UTUC*</th>
<th>High-risk UTUC**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Unifocal disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tumour size &lt; 1 cm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Low-grade cytology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Low-grade URS biopsy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• No invasive aspect on CT-urography</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| • Hydronephrosis |
| • Tumour size > 1 cm |
| • High-grade cytology |
| • High-grade URS biopsy |
| • Multifocal disease |
| • Previous radical cystectomy for bladder cancer |
| • Variant histology |
```

*All of these factors need to be present

** Any of these factors need to be present

CTU = computed tomography urography; URS = ureterorenoscopy.
6.6 Summary of evidence and guidelines for prognosis

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age, sex and ethnicity are no longer considered as independent prognostic factors.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The primary recognised post-operative prognostic factors are tumour stage and grade, extranodal extension and lymphovascular invasion.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use microsatellite instability as an independent molecular prognostic marker to help detect germline mutations and hereditary cancers.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the American Society of Anesthesiologists score to assess cancer-specific survival following surgery.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. DISEASE MANAGEMENT

7.1 Localised disease

7.1.1 Kidney-sparing surgery

Kidney-sparing surgery (KSS) for low-risk UTUC (Section 7.1.1.4) allows sparing the morbidity associated with radical surgery, without compromising oncological outcomes and kidney function [128]. In low-risk cancers it is the primary approach and survival is similar after KSS versus RNU [129]. This option should therefore be discussed in all low-risk cases, irrespective of the status of the contralateral kidney [21, 130, 131]. In high-risk tumours it can be considered in imperative cases (i.e. renal insufficiency or solitary functional kidney).

7.1.1.1 Ureteroscopy

Endoscopic ablation can be considered in patients with clinically low-risk cancer in the following situations [132, 133]:
- laser generator [134] and pliers are available for biopsies [133, 135] (LE: 3);
- in case a flexible ureteroscope is available (rather than a rigid ureteroscope);
- the patient is informed of the need for closer, more stringent, surveillance;
- complete tumour resection can be achieved.

Nevertheless, a risk of under-staging and under-grading remains with endoscopic management.

7.1.1.2 Percutaneous access

Percutaneous management can be considered for low-risk UTUC in the renal cavities [21, 133, 136] (LE: 3). This may be offered for low-risk tumours in the lower caliceal system that are inaccessible or difficult to manage by flexible ureteroscopy. However, this approach is being used less due to the availability of improved materials and advances in distal-tip deflection of recent ureteroscopes [21, 133, 136].

7.1.1.3 Surgical open approach

Segmental ureteral resection with wide margins provides adequate pathological specimens for staging and grading, while preserving the ipsilateral kidney. A lymphadenectomy can also be achieved during segmental ureteral resection.

Complete distal ureterectomy with neocystostomy are indicated for low-risk tumours in the distal ureter that cannot be removed completely endoscopically, and for high-risk tumours when kidney-sparing surgery for renal function preservation is necessary [21, 137, 138] (LE: 3).

Segmental resection of the iliac and lumbar ureter is associated with higher failure rates than for the distal pelvic ureter [21, 137, 138] (LE: 3).

Partial pyelecetomy or partial nephrectomy is almost never indicated. Open resection of tumours of the renal pelvis or calices has almost disappeared.
7.1.1.4 Guidelines for kidney-sparing management of upper tract urothelial carcinoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer kidney-sparing management as primary treatment option to patients with low-risk tumour and two functional kidneys.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer kidney-sparing management in patients with solitary kidney and/or impaired renal function, providing it will not compromise the oncological outcome. This decision will have to be made on a case-by-case basis, engaging the patient in a shared decision-making process.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer a kidney-sparing approach in high-risk cancers for distal ureteral tumours and in imperative cases (solitary kidney and/or impaired renal function).</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use a laser for endoscopic treatment of upper tract urothelial carcinoma.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.1.1.5 Adjuvant topical agents

The antegrade instillation of bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccine or mitomycin C in the upper urinary tract by percutaneous nephrostomy via a three-valve system open at 20 cm (after complete tumour eradication) is feasible after kidney-sparing management or for treatment of CIS [139] (LE: 3). Retrograde instillation through a ureteric catheter is also used. The reflux obtained from a double-J stent has been used, but is not advisable since it often does not reach the renal pelvis [140].

7.1.2 Radical nephroureterectomy

Open RNU with bladder cuff excision is the standard treatment for high-risk UTUC, regardless of tumour location [15] (LE: 3). Radical nephroureterectomy must comply with oncological principles, that is preventing tumour seeding by avoidance of entry into the urinary tract during resection [15].

Resection of the distal ureter and its orifice is performed because there is a considerable risk of tumour recurrence in this area. After removal of the proximal ureter, it is difficult to image or approach it by endoscopy [21, 137, 141].

Several techniques have been considered to simplify distal ureter resection, including pluck technique, stripping, transurethral resection of the intramural ureter, and intussusception [13, 21, 141]. Except for ureteral stripping, none of these techniques is inferior to bladder cuff excision [75-77, 83] (LE: 3).

7.1.2.1 Laparoscopic radical nephroureterectomy

Retroperitoneal metastatic dissemination and metastasis along the trocar pathway following manipulation of large tumours in a pneumoperitoneal environment have been reported in few cases [142, 143].

Several precautions may lower the risk of tumour spillage:
- avoid entering the urinary tract;
- avoid direct contact between instruments and the tumour;
- laparoscopic RNU must take place in a closed system. Avoid morcellation of the tumour and use an endobag for tumour extraction;
- the kidney and ureter must be removed en-bloc with the bladder cuff;
- invasive or large (T3/T4 and/or N+/M+) tumours are contraindications for laparoscopic RNU until proven otherwise.

Laparoscopic RNU is safe in experienced hands when adhering to strict oncologic principles. There is a tendency towards equivalent oncological outcomes after laparoscopic or open RNU [21, 143-147] (LE: 3).

Only one prospective randomised study has shown that laparoscopic RNU is not inferior to open RNU for non-invasive UTUC. In contrast, oncological outcomes were in favour of the open approach in pT3 and/or high-grade tumours [148] (LE: 2). Oncological outcomes after RNU have not changed significantly over the past three decades despite staging and refinements in staging and surgical technique [149] (LE: 3). A robot-assisted laparoscopic approach can be considered, but solid data are still lacking [150].

7.1.2.2 Lymph node dissection

The anatomic sites of lymph node drainage have not been clearly defined yet. The use of a LND template is likely to have a greater impact on patient survival than the number of removed lymph nodes [134].

Lymph node dissection appears to be unnecessary in cases of TaT1 UTUC because lymph node retrieval is reported in only 2.2% of T1 versus 16% of pT2-4 tumours [98]. An increase in the probability of lymph-node-positive disease is related to pT classification [100]. However, it is likely that the true rate of node-positive disease has been under-reported because these data are retrospective.

Despite available studies evaluating templates to date, it is not possible to standardise indication
Lymph node dissection can be achieved following lymphatic drainage as follows: LND on the side of the affected ureter, retroperitoneal LND for higher ureteral tumour and/or tumour of the renal pelvis (i.e. right side: border vena cava or right side of the aorta; and left side: border aorta) [21, 98].

7.1.2.3 Adjuvant bladder instillation
The rate of bladder recurrence after RNU for UTUC is 22-47% [12, 153]. Two prospective randomised trials have demonstrated that a single post-operative dose of intravesical chemotherapy (mitomycin C, pirarubicin) immediately after surgery reduces the risk of bladder tumour recurrence within the first year post-RNU [154-156] (LE: 1b).

7.1.2.4 Summary of evidence and guidelines for radical nephroureterectomy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Radical nephroureterectomy is the standard in high-risk upper tract urothelial carcinoma, regardless of tumour location.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open and laparoscopic approaches have equivalent efficacy and safety in T1–2/N0 upper tract urothelial carcinoma.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform radical nephroureterectomy in the following situations:</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• suspicion of infiltrating upper tract urothelial carcinoma on imaging;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• high-grade tumour (urinary cytology);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• multifocality (with two functional kidneys);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• non-invasive but large (&gt; 1 cm) upper tract urothelial carcinoma.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical steps of radical nephroureterectomy:

- Remove the bladder cuff. A
- Perform a lymphadenectomy in invasive upper tract urothelial carcinoma. C
- Offer a post-operative bladder instillation to lower the bladder recurrence rate. B

Management is outlined in Figures 7.1 and Figure 7.2.
Figure 7.1: Proposed flowchart for the management of localised upper tract urothelial carcinoma

UTUC

Diagnostic evaluation:
CTU, urinary cytology, cystoscopy

+/− Flexible ureteroscopy with biopsies

Low-risk UTUC

Kidney-sparing surgery:
flexible ureteroscopy or segmental resection
or percutaneous approach

High-risk UTUC*

RNU+/− template lymphadenectomy

Open (prefer open in cT3, cN+)
Laparoscopic

Recurrence

Close and stringent follow-up

Single post-operative dose of intravesical chemotherapy

CTU = computed tomography urography; RNU = radical nephroureterectomy.
*In patients with a solitary kidney, consider a more conservative approach.

Figure 7.2: Surgical treatment according to location and risk status

UTUC

Ureter

Kidney

Mid & Proximal

Distal

Calyx

Renal pelvis

Low-risk

High-risk

Low-risk

High-risk

Low-risk

High-risk

Low-risk

High-risk

1. First treatment option
2. Secondary treatment option
*In case not amendable to endoscopic management.
7.2 Advanced disease

7.2.1 Radical nephroureterectomy
There is no oncologic benefit for RNU in patients with metastatic UTUC except for palliative considerations [15, 100] (LE: 3).

7.2.2 Systemic chemotherapy
Extrapolating from the bladder cancer literature and small, single centre UTUC studies, platinum-based combination chemotherapy is expected to be efficacious in UTUC. However, there are currently insufficient data upon which to base recommendations.

There are several platinum-based regimens [157], but not all patients can receive adjuvant chemotherapy because of comorbidities and impaired renal function after radical surgery. Chemotherapy-related toxicity, particularly nephrotoxicity from platinum derivatives, may significantly affect survival in patients with post-operative renal dysfunction [158, 159].

There were no adverse effects of neoadjuvant chemotherapy for UTUC in the only study published to date [160], although survival data need to mature and longer follow-up is awaited. Adjuvant chemotherapy can achieve a recurrence-free rate of < 50% [161, 162].

After a recent comprehensive search of studies examining the role of peri-operative chemotherapy for UTUC, there appears to be an overall survival and disease-free survival benefit for cisplatin-based adjuvant chemotherapy [163] (LE: 3). However, there are currently insufficient data to base recommendations on until further evidence from an ongoing prospective trial is available [164].

7.2.3 Radiotherapy
The role of adjuvant radiotherapy is not well defined, neither alone, nor in combination with chemotherapy [21, 165] (LE: 3). It may be of benefit in terms of loco-regional and bladder control in selected patients but data are too scarce to give recommendations.

7.2.4 Summary of evidence and guideline for advanced disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peri-operative systemic cisplatin-based chemotherapy may provide a survival benefit.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In case chemotherapy is offered, a neoadjuvant approach is recommended, as the renal function will decrease after radical nephroureterectomy.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. FOLLOW-UP

The risk of disease recurrence and death evolves in the follow-up period after surgery and is less likely with time [166, 167]. Stringent follow-up (Section 8.1) is mandatory to detect metachronous bladder tumours [13], local recurrence, and distant metastases. When RNU is performed, local recurrence is rare and the risk of distant metastases is directly related to the risk factors listed previously.

Surveillance regimens are based on cystoscopy and urinary cytology for > 5 years [11-13]. Bladder recurrence is not a distant recurrence [12]. When kidney-sparing surgery is performed, the ipsilateral UUT requires careful follow-up due to the high risk of disease recurrence [130, 135, 168]. Despite endourological improvements, follow-up after kidney-sparing surgery is difficult; frequent and repeated endoscopic procedures are mandatory. As done in bladder cancer, a second look has been proposed after KSS but is not yet routine practice [169].
8.1 Summary of evidence and guidelines for follow-up of upper tract urothelial carcinoma patients after initial treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Follow-up is more frequent and more strict in patients who have undergone kidney-sparing treatment compared to radical nephroureterectomy.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>After radical nephroureterectomy, &gt; five years</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-invasive tumour</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform cystoscopy/urinary cytology at three months, and then annually.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform computed tomography urography every year.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Invasive tumour</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform cystoscopy/urinary cytology at three months, and then annually.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform computed tomography urography every six months for two years, and then annually.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>After kidney-sparing management, &gt; five years</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform urinary cytology and computed tomography urography at three and six months, and then annually.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform cystoscopy, ureteroscopy and cytology <em>in situ</em> at three and six months, and then every six months for two years, and then annually.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. REFERENCES


10. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the Non-Muscle-Invasive Bladder Cancer Guidelines working panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have that might be perceived to be a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publicly accessible through the European Association of Urology website: http://uroweb.org/guideline/upper-urinary-tract-urothelial-cell-carcinoma/. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation, and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION  
   1.1 Aims and scope  
   1.2 Panel Composition  
   1.3 Available publications  
   1.4 Publication history and summary of changes  
      1.4.1 Publication history  
      1.4.2 Summary of changes  
      1.4.2.1 Change in summary of evidence

2. METHODS  
   2.1 Data identification  
   2.2 Review  
   2.3 Future goals

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY  
   3.1 Epidemiology  
   3.2 Aetiology  
      3.2.1 Tobacco smoking  
      3.2.2 Occupational exposure to chemicals  
      3.2.3 Radiotherapy  
      3.2.4 Dietary factors  
      3.2.5 Bladder schistosomiasis and chronic urinary tract infection  
      3.2.6 Gender  
      3.2.7 Genetic factors  
      3.2.8 Summary of evidence and recommendations for epidemiology and risk factors  
   3.3 Pathology  
      3.3.1 Handling of transurethral resection and cystectomy specimens  
      3.3.2 Pathology of muscle-invasive bladder cancer  
      3.3.3 Recommendations for the assessment of tumour specimens

4. STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS  
   4.1 Pathological staging  
   4.2 Tumour, node, metastasis classification

5. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION  
   5.1 Primary diagnosis  
      5.1.1 Symptoms  
      5.1.2 Physical examination  
      5.1.3 Bladder imaging  
      5.1.4 Urinary cytology and urinary markers  
      5.1.5 Cystoscopy  
      5.1.6 Transurethral resection of invasive bladder tumours  
      5.1.7 Second resection  
      5.1.8 Concomitant prostate cancer  
      5.1.9 Summary of evidence and specific recommendations for the primary assessment of presumably invasive bladder tumours  
   5.2 Imaging for staging of MIBC  
      5.2.1 Local staging of MIBC  
      5.2.1.1 MRI for local staging of invasive bladder cancer  
      5.2.1.2 CT imaging for local staging of MIBC  
      5.2.2 Imaging of lymph nodes in MIBC  
      5.2.3 Upper urinary tract urothelial carcinoma  
      5.2.4 Distant metastases at sites other than lymph nodes  
      5.2.5 Future developments  
      5.2.6 Summary of evidence and recommendations for staging in muscle-invasive bladder cancer
6. PROGNOSIS 14
6.1 Introduction 14
6.2 MIBC and comorbidity 14
6.2.1 Evaluation of comorbidity 14
6.2.2 Comorbidity scales, anaesthetic risk classification and geriatric assessment 14
6.2.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for comorbidity scales 15
6.2.4 Prognostic markers 16
6.2.4.1 Tumour location 16
6.2.4.2 Molecular markers 16

7. DISEASE MANAGEMENT 16
7.1 Treatment failure of non-muscle invasive bladder cancer 16
7.1.1 High-risk non-muscle-invasive urothelial carcinoma 16
7.1.2 Recommendations for treatment failure of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer 17
7.2 Neoadjuvant chemotherapy 17
7.2.1 Introduction 17
7.2.2 The role of imaging and biomarkers to identify responders 18
7.2.3 Summary of available data 18
7.2.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for neoadjuvant chemotherapy 19
7.3 Pre- and post-operative radiotherapy in muscle-invasive bladder cancer 19
7.3.1 Post-operative radiotherapy 19
7.3.2 Pre-operative radiotherapy 19
7.3.2.1 Retrospective studies 19
7.3.2.2 Randomised studies 19
7.3.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for pre- and post-operative radiotherapy 20
7.4 Radical surgery and urinary diversion 20
7.4.1 Removal of the tumour-bearing bladder 20
7.4.1.1 Introduction 20
7.4.2 Timing and delay of cystectomy 20
7.4.2.1 Indications 20
7.4.3 Radical cystectomy: technique and extent 21
7.4.3.1 Pelvic organ preservation techniques in men: oncological and functional outcomes 21
7.4.3.1.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for sexual-preserving techniques in men 22
7.4.3.2 Pelvic organ preservation techniques in women: oncological and functional outcomes 23
7.4.3.2.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for sexual-preserving techniques in women 23
7.4.3.3 Laparoscopic/robotic-assisted laparoscopic cystectomy 23
7.4.3.3.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for laparoscopic/robotic-assisted laparoscopic cystectomy 25
7.4.4 Urinary diversion after radical cystectomy 25
7.4.4.1 Preparations for surgery 25
7.4.4.2 Patient selection for orthotopic diversion 26
7.4.4.2.1 Ureterocutaneostomy 26
7.4.4.2.2 Ileal conduit 27
7.4.4.2.3 Continent cutaneous urinary diversion 27
7.4.4.2.4 Uretocolonic diversion 27
7.4.4.2.5 Orthotopic neobladder 27
7.4.5 Morbidity and mortality 28
7.4.6 Survival 30
7.4.7 Summary of evidence and recommendations for radical cystectomy and urinary diversion 31
7.5 Unresectable tumours 32
7.5.1 Palliative cystectomy for muscle-invasive bladder carcinoma 32
7.5.1.1 Recommendations for unresectable tumours 33
7.5.2 Supportive care 33
7.5.2.1 Obstruction of the UUT 33
7.5.2.2 Bleeding and pain 33

7.6 Bladder-sparing treatments for localised disease 33
  7.6.1 Transurethral resection of bladder tumour (TURB) 33
    7.6.1.1 Recommendation for transurethral resection of bladder tumour 33
  7.6.2 External beam radiotherapy (EBRT) 33
    7.6.2.1 Summary of evidence and recommendation for external beam radiotherapy 34
  7.6.3 Chemotherapy 34
    7.6.3.1 Summary of evidence and recommendation for chemotherapy for muscle-invasive bladder tumours 34
  7.6.4 Multimodality bladder-preserving treatment 34
    7.6.4.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for multimodality treatment in muscle-invasive bladder cancer 35

7.7 Adjuvant chemotherapy 35
  7.7.1 Recommendation for adjuvant chemotherapy 36

7.8 Metastatic disease 36
  7.8.1 Introduction 36
    7.8.1.1 Prognostic factors and treatment decisions 36
    7.8.1.2 Comorbidity in metastatic disease 37
    7.8.1.3 Not eligible for cisplatin (unfit) 37
  7.8.2 Single-agent chemotherapy 37
  7.8.3 Standard first-line chemotherapy for fit patients 37
  7.8.4 Carboplatin-containing chemotherapy for fit patients 38
  7.8.5 Non-platinum combination chemotherapy 38
  7.8.6 Chemotherapy in patients unfit for cisplatin 38
  7.8.7 Second-line treatment 38
  7.8.8 Low-volume disease and post-chemotherapy surgery 38
  7.8.9 Treatment of bone metastases 39
  7.8.10 Role of immunotherapy 39
  7.8.11 Summary of evidence and recommendations for metastatic disease 39
  7.8.12 Biomarkers 40
    7.8.12.1 Recommendation for the use of biomarkers 40

7.9 Quality of life 41
  7.9.1 Introduction 41
  7.9.2 Choice of urinary diversion 41
  7.9.3 Non-curative or metastatic bladder cancer 42
  7.9.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for health-related quality of life 42

8. FOLLOW-UP 43
  8.1 Introduction 43
  8.2 Site of recurrence 43
    8.2.1 Local recurrence 43
    8.2.2 Distant recurrence 43
    8.2.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for specific recurrence sites 44
  8.3 Follow-up of functional outcomes and complications 44

9. REFERENCES 45

10. CONFLICT OF INTEREST 75
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aims and scope
The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Panel for Muscle-invasive and Metastatic Bladder Cancer (MIBC) have prepared these guidelines to help urologists assess the evidence-based management of MIBC and to incorporate guideline recommendations into their clinical practice.

Separate EAU guidelines documents are available addressing upper urinary tract tumours [1], non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer (TaT1 and carcinoma in situ) [2], and primary urethral carcinomas [3].

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel Composition
The EAU Guidelines Panel consists of an international multidisciplinary group of clinicians, including urologists, a pathologist, a radiologist and an oncologist.

All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements which can be viewed on the EAU website Uroweb: http://uroweb.org/guideline/bladder-cancer-muscle-invasive-and-metastatic/?type=panel.

1.3 Available publications
A quick reference document (Pocket Guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text version.

Several scientific publications are available (the most recent paper dating back to 2016 [4]), as are a number of translations of all versions of the EAU MIBC Guidelines. All documents are accessible through the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guideline/bladder-cancer-muscle-invasive-and-metastatic/.

1.4 Publication history and summary of changes

1.4.1 Publication history
The EAU published its first guidelines on bladder cancer in 2000. This document covered both superficial (non-muscle-invasive) bladder cancer and MIBC. Since these conditions require different treatment strategies, it was decided to give each condition its own guidelines, resulting in the first publication of the MIBC Guidelines in 2004. This 2017 document presents a limited update of the 2016 version.

1.4.2 Summary of changes
New relevant references have been identified through a structured assessment of the literature and incorporated in the various chapters of the 2017 EAU NMIBC Guidelines.

Key changes in the 2017 print are:
- Section 3.2.6 Gender - This section has been expanded with additional data.
- Section 5.1.4 Urinary cytology and urinary markers - This section has been expanded with additional data.
- Section 6.2.4 Prognostic markers - A new section has been included.
- Section 7.4.4.1 Preparations for surgery - A new section on pain management has been included as well as additional data on estimated glomerular filtration rate.
- Section 7.4.4.2.1 Ureterocutaneostomy - This section has been expanded with additional data.
- Table 7.6 Management of neobladder morbidity - Additional information has been added.
- Section 7.8.10 Role of immunotherapy - This is a new section.

1.4.2.1 Change in summary of evidence

7.8.11 Summary of evidence and recommendations for metastatic disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>7.8.11 Summary of evidence for metastatic disease</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PD-L1 inhibitor atezolizumab has been FDA approved for patients that have progressed during or after previous platinum-based chemotherapy based on the results of a phase-II trial.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. METHODS

2.1 Data identification
For the 2017 MIBC Guidelines, new and relevant evidence has been identified, collated and appraised through a structured assessment of the literature.

A broad and comprehensive literature search, covering all sections of the MIBC Guideline was performed. The search was limited to English language publications. Databases searched included Medline, EMBASE and the Cochrane Libraries, covering a time frame between July 1st 2015 and April 5th 2016. A total of 2,298 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance. A detailed search strategy is available online: http://uroweb.org/guideline/bladder-cancer-muscle-invasive-andmetastatic/?type=appendices-publications.

References used in this text are assessed according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [5]. Additional methodology information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guidelines/.

A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address.

2.2 Review
No separate peer-review was done for the 2017 print of the MIBC Guidelines.

2.3 Future goals
Topics considered for inclusion in the 2018 update of the MIBC Guidelines:
• Diagnostics - haematuria

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY

3.1 Epidemiology
Bladder cancer (BC) is the 7th most commonly diagnosed cancer in the male population worldwide, whilst it drops to 11th when both genders are considered [6]. The worldwide age-standardised incidence rate (per 100,000 person/years) is 9.0 for men and 2.2 for women [6]. In the European Union, the age-standardised incidence rate is 19.1 for men and 4.0 for women [6, 7]. In Europe, the highest age-standardised incidence rate has been reported in Belgium (31 in men and 6.2 in women) and the lowest in Finland (18.1 in men and 4.3 in women) [6, 7].

Worldwide, the BC age-standardised mortality rate (per 100,000 person/years) was 3.2 for men vs. 0.9 for women in 2012 [6, 7]. Bladder cancer incidence and mortality rates vary across countries due to differences in risk factors, detection and diagnostic practices, and availability of treatments. The variations are, however, also partly caused by the different methodologies used in the studies and the quality of data collection [8, 9].

The incidence and mortality of BC has decreased in some registries, possibly reflecting the decreased impact of causative agents [9, 10]. Approximate 75% of patients with BC present with a disease confined to the mucosa (stage Ta, carcinoma in situ [CIS]) or submucosa (stage T1). In younger patients (< 40) this percentage is even higher [11]. Patients with TaT1 and CIS have a high prevalence due to long-term survival in many cases and lower risk of cancer-specific mortality compared to T2-4 tumours [7, 8, 12].

3.2 Aetiology
3.2.1 Tobacco smoking
Tobacco smoking is the most well-established risk factor for BC, causing 50-65% of male cases and 20-30% of female cases [13]. A causal relationship has been established between exposure to tobacco and cancer in studies in which chance, bias and confounding can be discounted with reasonable confidence [14].

The incidence of BC is directly related to the duration of smoking and the number of cigarettes smoked per day [15]. A meta-analysis looked at 216 observational studies on cigarette smoking and cancer published between 1961 and 2003, and the pooled risk estimates for BC demonstrated a significant association for both current
and former smokers [16]. Recently, an increase in risk estimates for current smokers relative to never smokers has been described suggesting this could be due to changes in cigarette composition [13]. An immediate decrease in the risk of BC was observed in those who stopped smoking. The reduction was about 40% within one to four years of quitting smoking and 60% after 25 years of cessation [15]. Encouraging people to stop smoking would result in the incidence of BC decreasing equally in men and women.

3.2.2 **Occupational exposure to chemicals**

Occupational exposure is the second most important risk factor for BC. Work-related cases accounted for 20-25% of all BC cases in several series and it is likely to occur in occupations in which dyes, rubbers, textiles, paints, leathers, and chemicals are used [17]. The risk of BC due to occupational exposure to carcinogenic aromatic amines is significantly greater after ten years or more of exposure; the mean latency period usually exceeds 30 years [18, 19]. Population-based studies established the occupational attribution for BC in men to be 7.1%, while no such attribution was discernible for women [8, 20].

3.2.3 **Radiotherapy**

Increased rates of secondary bladder malignancies have been reported after external-beam radiotherapy (EBRT) for gynaecological malignancies, with relative risks of 2-4 [21]. In a population-based cohort study, the standardised incidence ratios for BC developing after radical prostatectomy (RP), EBRT, brachytherapy (BT), and EBRT-BT were 0.99, 1.42, 1.10, and 1.39, respectively, in comparison with the general U.S. population [22].

It has recently been proposed that patients who have received radiotherapy (RT) for prostate cancer with modern modalities such as intensity-modulated radiotherapy (IMRT) may have lower rates of in-field bladder- and rectal secondary malignancies [23]. Nevertheless, since longer follow-up data are not yet available, and as BC requires a long period to develop, patients treated with radiation and with a long life-expectancy are at a higher risk of developing BC [23].

3.2.4 **Dietary factors**

Several dietary factors have been considered to be related to BC; however, the links remain controversial. The European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC) study is an on-going multicentre cohort study designed to examine the association between diet, lifestyle, environmental factors and cancer. They found no links between BC and fluid intake, red meat, vegetable and fruit consumption, and only recently they have described an inverse association between dietary intake of flavonols and lignans and the risk of BC, in particular aggressive tumours [24].

3.2.5 **Bladder schistosomiasis and chronic urinary tract infection**

Bladder schistosomiasis (bilharzia) is the second most common parasitic infection after malaria, with about 600 million people exposed to infection in Africa, Asia, South America, and the Caribbean [25]. There is a well-established relationship between schistosomiasis and urothelial carcinoma of the bladder, which can progress to squamous cell carcinoma (SCC), however, a better control of the disease is decreasing the incidence of SCC of the bladder in endemic zones such as Egypt [26, 27].

Similarly, invasive SCC has been linked to the presence of chronic urinary tract infection (UTI) distinct from schistosomiasis. A direct association between BC and UTIs has been observed in several case-control studies, which have reported a two-fold increased risk of BC in patients with recurrent UTIs in some series. However, some of these results may be attributed to recall bias [28].

3.2.6 **Gender**

Although men are more likely to develop BC than women, women present with more advanced disease and have worse survival rates. A meta-analysis including nearly 28,000 patients shows that female gender was associated with a worse survival outcome (HR: 1.20; 95% CI: 1.09-1.32) compared to male gender after radical cystectomy (RC) [29]. This finding had already been presented in a descriptive Nation-Wide Analysis based on 27,773 Austrian patients. After their analysis the authors found that cancer-specific-survival (CSS) was identical for pT1-tumours in both sexes, while women had a worse CSS in both age cohorts (< 70 years and ≥ 70 years) with higher tumour stages [30]. However this higher mortality is questioned once both genders receive the same therapy. In the population-based study from the Ontario Cancer Registry analysing all patients with BC treated with cystectomy or radical RT between 1994 and 2008, no differences in overall survival (OS), mortality and outcomes were found between males and females following radical therapy [31].

A population-based study from the MarketScan databases suggests that a possible reason for worse survival in the female population may be that women experienced longer delays in diagnosis than men, as the differential diagnosis in women includes diseases that are more prevalent than BC [32].

Furthermore, differences in the gender prevalence of BC may be due to other factors besides tobacco and chemical exposure. In a large prospective cohort study, post-menopausal status was associated
with an increase in BC risk, even after adjustment for smoking status. This result suggests that the differences in oestrogen and androgen levels between men and women may be responsible for some of the difference in the gender prevalence of BC [33-35].

3.2.7 Genetic factors
There is growing evidence that genetic susceptibility factors and family association may influence the incidence of BC. The relationship between family history of cancer and risk of BC was examined in a Spanish BC study showing that family history of cancer in first-degree relatives was associated with an increased risk of BC; the association being stronger among younger patients. Shared environmental exposure was recognised as a potentially confounding factor [36]. Recent studies detected genetic susceptibility with independent loci, which are associated with BC risk [37].

Genome-wide association studies (GWAS) of BC identified several susceptibility loci associated with BC risk [38, 39].

3.2.8 Summary of evidence and recommendations for epidemiology and risk factors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Worldwide, bladder cancer is the 11th most commonly diagnosed cancer.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Several risk factors connected with the risk of bladder cancer diagnosis have been identified.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active and passive tobacco smoking continues to be the main risk factor, while the exposure-related incidence is decreasing.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The increased risk of developing bladder cancer in patients undergoing external-beam radiotherapy (EBRT), brachytherapy (BT), or a combination of EBRT and BT, must be taken into account during patient follow-up. As bladder cancer requires time to develop, patients treated with radiation at a young age are at the greatest risk and should be followed up closely.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The principal preventable risk factor for MIBC is active and passive smoking.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notwithstanding stricter regulations, workers should be informed about the potential carcinogenic effects of a number of recognised substances, duration of exposure, and latency periods. Protective measures should be recommended.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.3 Pathology

3.3.1 Handling of transurethral resection and cystectomy specimens
In transurethral resection (TUR), a snap frozen specimen from the tumour and normal looking bladder wall should be taken, if possible. Separate specimens should be taken from the superficial and deep areas of the tumour and sent to the pathology laboratory separately, in case the outcome will impact on treatment decisions. If random biopsies of the flat mucosa are taken, each biopsy specimen of the flat mucosa should also be sent separately.

In RC, bladder fixation must be carried out as soon as possible. The pathologist must open the specimen from the urethra to the bladder dome and fix the specimen. In some circumstances this procedure can also be performed by the urologist. In a female cystectomy specimen, the length of the urethral segment removed en bloc with the specimen should be checked, preferably by the urological surgeon [40].

Specimen handling should follow the general rules as published by a collaborative group of pathologists and urologists [41, 42]. It must be stressed that it may be very difficult to confirm the presence of a neoplastic lesion using gross examination of the cystectomy specimen after TUR or chemotherapy, so the entire retracted or ulcerated area should be included.

It is compulsory to study the urethra, the ureters, the prostate in men and the radial margins [43]. In urethra-sparing cystectomy; the level of urethral dissection, completeness of the prostate, specifically at the apex (in men), and the inclusion of the entire bladder neck and amount of adjacent urethra, uterus and vaginal top (in women) should be inked and documented.

All lymph node (LN) specimens should be provided in their totality, in clearly labelled containers. In case of doubt, or adipose differentiation of the LN, the entire specimen is to be included. LNs should be counted and measured on slides, capsular extension and percentage of LN invasion should be reported as well as vascular embolts [44, 45]. In the case of metastatic spread in the perivesical fat without real LN structures (capsule, subcapsular sinus), this localisation should nevertheless be considered as N+. 

---

8 MUSCLE-INVASIVE AND METASTATIC BLADDER CANCER – LIMITED UPDATE MARCH 2017
A meta-analysis indicated that LN density is an independent predictor of clinical outcome (HR OS: 1.45; 95% CI: 1.11-1.90) [46].

Positive margins in the peripelvic fat tissue (soft tissue margins), should be inked by the pathologist for evaluation. Positive margins decrease CSS in cases of pN0M0 urothelial carcinomas [47].

In rare cases, fresh frozen sections may be helpful to determine treatment strategy. A recent study confirmed the reliability of fresh frozen sections of obturator LNs, but further studies are warranted to confirm these results [48].

3.3.2 **Pathology of muscle-invasive bladder cancer**
In MIBC all cases are high-grade urothelial carcinomas. For this reason, no prognostic information can be provided by grading MIBC [49]. However, identification of some morphological subtypes may be important for prognostic reasons and treatment decisions [50, 51]. Recently, an update of the World Health Organization (WHO) grading was published [52] however, the data presented in these guidelines are based on the 2004 WHO classification [53]. Currently the following differentiations are used:
1. urothelial carcinoma (more than 90% of all cases);
2. urothelial carcinomas with partial squamous and/or glandular differentiation [54, 55];
3. micropapillary and microcystic urothelial carcinoma;
4. nested variant [56] (including large nested variety);
5. lymphoepithelioma;
6. plasmocytoid, giant cell, signet ring, diffuse, undifferentiated;
7. some urothelial carcinomas with trophoblastic differentiation;
8. small-cell carcinomas [57];
9. sarcomatoid carcinomas.

3.3.3 **Recommendations for the assessment of tumour specimens**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Record the depth of invasion (categories pT2a and pT2b, pT3a and pT3b or pT4).</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record margins with special attention paid to the radial margin, prostate, ureter, urethra and peritoneal fat and uterus and vaginal top.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record the number of lymph nodes (LNs) and number of positive LNs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record lymphatic or blood vessel invasion and extranodal extension.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record the presence of carcinoma <em>in situ</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

4. **STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS**

4.1 **Pathological staging**
For staging, the Tumour, Node, Metastasis (TNM) classification (2017, 8th edition) is recommended [58]. Blood and lymphatic vessel invasion and LN infiltration have an independent prognostic significance [59]. It seems that the pN category is closely related to the number of LNs studied by the pathologist [58]. New prognostic markers are under study (see Section 6.2.4 Prognostic Markers).

4.2 **Tumour, node, metastasis classification**
The TNM classification of malignant tumours is the method most widely used to classify the extent of cancer spread [50-52, 58, 60] (Table 4.1).
### Table 4.1: TNM classification of urinary bladder cancer [58]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T - Primary Tumour</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tx</td>
<td>Primary tumour cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>Non-invasive papillary carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ: “flat tumour”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumour invades muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>Tumour invades superficial muscle (inner half)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>Tumour invades deep muscle (outer half)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumour invades perivesical tissue:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>microscopically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>macroscopically (extravesical mass)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumour invades any of the following: prostate stroma, seminal vesicles, uterus, vagina, pelvic wall, abdominal wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Tumour invades prostate stroma, seminal vesicles, uterus, or vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Tumour invades pelvic wall or abdominal wall</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N - Regional Lymph Nodes</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nx</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Metastasis in a single lymph node in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac, or presacral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Metastasis in multiple regional lymph nodes in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac, or presacral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td>Metastasis in a common iliac lymph node(s)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M - Distant Metastasis</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>Non-regional lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>Other distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 5. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

### 5.1 Primary diagnosis

#### 5.1.1 Symptoms

Painless haematuria is the most common presenting complaint. Other clinical signs include urgency, dysuria, increased frequency, and in more advanced tumours, pelvic pain and symptoms related to urinary tract obstruction.

#### 5.1.2 Physical examination

Physical examination should include rectal and vaginal bimanual palpation. A palpable pelvic mass can be found in patients with locally advanced tumours. In addition, bimanual examination under anaesthesia should be carried out before and after transurethral resection of the bladder (TURB), to assess whether there is a palpable mass or if the tumour is fixed to the pelvic wall [61, 62]. However, considering the discrepancy between bimanual examination and pT stage after cystectomy (11% clinical overstaging and 31% clinical understaging), some caution is suggested with the interpretation of bimanual examination [63].

#### 5.1.3 Bladder imaging

Patients with a bladder mass identified by any diagnostic imaging technique should undergo cystoscopy, biopsy and/or resection for histopathological diagnosis and staging.

#### 5.1.4 Urinary cytology and urinary markers

Examination of voided urine or bladder washings for exfoliated cancer cells has high sensitivity in high-grade tumours (LE: 3) and is a useful indicator in cases of high-grade malignancy or CIS.

However, positive urinary cytology may originate from a urothelial tumour located anywhere in the urinary tract. Evaluation of cytology specimens can be hampered by low cellular yield, UTIs, stones or
intravesical instillations, but for experienced readers, specificity exceeds 90% [64, 65] (LE: 2b). However, negative cytology does not exclude a tumour. There is no known urinary marker specific for the diagnosis of invasive BC [66].

A standardised reporting system redefining urinary cytology diagnostic categories was published in 2016 by the Paris Working Group [67]:
- Adequacy of urine specimens (Adequacy);
- Negative for high-grade urothelial carcinoma (Negative);
- Atypical urothelial cells (AUC);
- Suspicious for high-grade urothelial carcinoma (Suspicious);
- High-grade urothelial carcinoma (HGUC);
- Low-grade urothelial neoplasia (LGUN).

5.1.5 Cystoscopy
Ultimately, the diagnosis of BC is made by cystoscopy and histological evaluation of resected tissue. In general, cystoscopy is initially performed in the office using a flexible instrument. If a bladder tumour has been visualised unequivocally in earlier imaging studies, such as computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), or ultrasound (US), diagnostic cystoscopy may be omitted and the patient can proceed directly to TURB for histological diagnosis. Currently, there is no evidence for the role of photodynamic diagnosis (PDD) in the standard diagnosis of invasive BC.

A careful description of the cystoscopic findings is necessary. This should include documentation of the site, size, number, and appearance (papillary or solid) of the tumours, as well as a description of any mucosal abnormalities. The use of a bladder diagram is recommended.

The use of PDD could be considered if a T1 high-grade tumour is present, to identify associated CIS. Presence of CIS may lead to a modified treatment plan (see Section 7.1). Photodynamic diagnosis is highly sensitive for the detection of CIS, but in experienced hands, the rate of false-positive results may be similar to that with regular white-light cystoscopy [68].

5.1.6 Transurethral resection of invasive bladder tumours
The goal of TURB is to enable histopathological diagnosis and staging, which requires the inclusion of bladder muscle in the resection biopsies.

The strategy of resection depends on the size of the lesion. Small tumours (< 1 cm in diameter) can be resected en bloc, where the specimen contains the complete tumour plus a part of the underlying bladder wall including muscle. Larger tumours need to be resected separately in parts, which includes the exophytic part of the tumour, the underlying bladder wall with the detrusor muscle, and the edges of the resection area. At least the deeper part of the resection specimen must be referred to the pathologist in a separate labelled container to enable him/her to make a correct diagnosis. In cases in which RT is considered and CIS is to be excluded, PDD can be used [69].

The involvement of the prostatic urethra and ducts in men with bladder tumours has been reported. The exact risk is not known, but it seems to be higher if the tumour is located on the trigone or bladder neck, in the presence of bladder CIS, and in multiple tumours [70, 71] (LE: 3). Involvement of the prostatic urethra can be determined either at the time of primary TURB or by frozen section during the cystoprostatectomy procedure. A frozen section has a higher negative-predictive value and is more accurate [72-74].

5.1.7 Second resection
In the case of high-grade non-muscle-infiltrative tumour, residual disease is observed in 33-53% of patients [75-81]. In order to reduce the risk of understaging [76, 77], a second TURB resection is often required to determine the future treatment strategy.

Diagnosis of urethral tumour before cystectomy or positive urethral frozen section leads to urethrectomy and therefore excludes neobladder reconstruction. If indicated, in males, urethral frozen section has to be performed on the cystoprostatectomy specimen just below the verumontanum bladder neck and on the inferior limits of the bladder neck for females.

5.1.8 Concomitant prostate cancer
Prostate cancer is found in 25-46% of patients undergoing cystectomy for BC [82, 83]. The impact on survival is unknown but the impact on surgical treatment is limited.
5.1.9 **Summary of evidence and specific recommendations for the primary assessment of presumably invasive bladder tumours**

(For general information on the assessment of bladder tumours, see EAU Guidelines on Non-muscle-invasive Bladder Cancer [2]).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Currently, treatment decisions cannot be based on molecular markers.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>During cystoscopy, describe all macroscopic features of the tumour (site, size, number and appearance) and mucosal abnormalities. A bladder diagram is recommended.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take a biopsy of the prostatic urethra for cases of bladder neck tumour, when bladder carcinoma in situ is present or suspected, when there is positive cytology without evidence of tumour in the bladder, or when abnormalities of the prostatic urethra are visible.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take a biopsy at the time of the second resection, if no biopsy was taken during the initial procedure.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In women undergoing subsequent orthotopic neobladder construction, obtain procedural information (including histological evaluation) of the bladder neck and urethral margin, either prior to or at the time of cystoscopy.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify the grade, depth of tumour invasion, and whether the lamina propria and muscle tissue are present in the specimen in the pathological report.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.2 Imaging for staging of MIBC

The treatment and prognosis of MIBC is determined by tumour stage and grade [84, 85]. In clinical practice, CT and MRI are the imaging techniques used. The purpose of using imaging for staging MIBC is to determine prognosis and provide information to assist treatment selection. Tumour staging must be accurate to ensure that the correct choice of treatment is made. Imaging parameters required for staging MIBC are:

- extent of local tumour invasion;
- tumour spread to LNs;
- tumour spread to the upper urinary tract (UUT) and other distant organs (e.g., liver, lungs, bones, peritoneum, pleura, and adrenal glands).

#### 5.2.1 Local staging of MIBC

Both CT and MRI may be used for assessment of local invasion, but they are unable to accurately diagnose microscopic invasion of perivesical fat (T2 vs. T3a) [86]. The principal aim of CT and MRI is therefore to detect T3b disease, or higher.

##### 5.2.1.1 MRI for local staging of invasive bladder cancer

Magnetic resonance imaging has superior soft tissue contrast resolution compared with CT, but poorer spatial resolution. In studies performed before the availability of multidetector CT, MRI was reported as more accurate in local assessment. The accuracy of MRI for primary tumour staging varies from 73% to 96% (mean 85%). These values were 10-33% (mean 19%) higher than those obtained with CT [87]. Dynamic contrast-enhanced (DCE) MRI may help to differentiate bladder tumour from surrounding tissues or evaluate post-biopsy reaction, because enhancement of the tumour occurs earlier than that of the normal bladder wall, due to neovascularisation [88-90].

In 2006, a link was established between the use of gadolinium-based contrast agents and nephrogenic systemic fibrosis (NSF), which may result in fatal or severely debilitating systemic fibrosis. Patients with impaired renal function are at risk of developing NSF and the non-ionic linear gadolinium-based contrast agents should be avoided (gadodiamide, gadopentetate dimeglumine and gadoversetamide). A stable macrocyclic contrast agent should be used (gadobutrol, gadoterate meglumine or gadoteridol). Contrast-enhanced CT using iodinated contrast media should be considered as an alternative [91] (LE: 4).

##### 5.2.1.2 CT imaging for local staging of MIBC

The advantages of CT include high spatial resolution, shorter acquisition time, wider coverage in a single breath hold, and lower susceptibility to variable patient factors. Computed tomography is unable to differentiate between stages from Ta to T3a tumours, but it is useful for detecting invasion into the perivesical fat (T3b) and adjacent organs. The accuracy of CT in determining extravesical tumour extension varies from 55% to 92% [92] and increases with more advanced disease [93].
5.2.2 Imaging of lymph nodes in MIBC
Assessment of LN metastases based solely on size is limited by the inability of both CT and MRI to identify metastases in normal-sized or minimally enlarged nodes. The sensitivity for detection of LN metastases is low (48-87%). Specificity is also low because nodal enlargement may be due to benign disease. Overall, CT and MRI show similar results in the detection of LN metastases in a variety of primary pelvic tumours [94-99]. Pelvic nodes > 8 mm and abdominal nodes > 10 mm in maximum short-axis diameter, detected by CT or MRI, should be regarded as pathologically enlarged [100, 101]. Currently, there is no evidence supporting the routine use of positron emission tomography (PET) in the nodal staging of BC, although the method has been evaluated with varying results in small prospective trials [102-105].

5.2.3 Upper urinary tract urothelial carcinoma
Excretory-phase CT urography is the imaging technique with the highest diagnostic accuracy for upper urinary tract urothelial carcinoma (UTUC) and has replaced conventional intravenous urography and US as the first-line imaging test for investigating high-risk patients [106]. The sensitivity of CT urography for UTUC is reported to range from 0.67 to 1.0 with a specificity from 0.93 to 0.99, depending on the technique used [107-114]. Attention to technique is therefore important for optimal results.

For UTUC detected by CT urography, a biopsy for histopathological confirmation of diagnosis is recommended to eliminate false-positive results and to provide information regarding the grade of the tumour to aid in the choice of treatment [108, 109, 115-117]. The biopsy is usually performed endoscopically.

5.2.4 Distant metastases at sites other than lymph nodes
Prior to any curative treatment, it is essential to evaluate the presence of distant metastases. Computed tomography and MRI are the diagnostic techniques of choice to detect lung [118] and liver metastases [119], respectively. Bone and brain metastases are rare at the time of presentation of invasive BC. A bone scan and additional brain imaging are therefore not routinely indicated unless the patient has specific symptoms or signs to suggest bone or brain metastases [120, 121]. Magnetic resonance imaging is more sensitive and specific for diagnosing bone metastases than bone scintigraphy [122, 123] (LE: 2b).

5.2.5 Future developments
Evidence is accruing in the literature suggesting that fluorodeoxyglucose (FDG)-PET/CT might have potential clinical use for staging metastatic BC [124, 125], but there is no consensus as yet. The results of further trials are awaited before a recommendation can be made. Recently, the first study was published showing the superior feasibility of diffusion-weighted imaging (DWI) over T2-weighted and DCE MRI for assessing the therapeutic response to induction chemotherapy against MIBC [126]. The high specificity of DWI indicates that it is useful for accurate prediction of a complete histopathological response, allowing better patient selection for bladder-sparing protocols. Results from prospective studies are awaited.

5.2.6 Summary of evidence and recommendations for staging in muscle-invasive bladder cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imaging as part of staging in muscle-invasive bladder cancer (MIBC) provides information about prognosis and assists in selection of the most appropriate treatment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are currently insufficient data on the use of diffusion-weighted imaging (DWI) and fluorodeoxyglucose- positron emission tomography/computed tomography (FDG-PET/CT) in MIBC to allow a recommendation to be made.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Summary of evidence LE
6. PROGNOSIS

6.1 Introduction
The treatment and prognosis for MIBC is mainly determined by tumour and nodal stage [85]. The pathological report will inform on histological type, lymphovascular invasion, presence of CIS, positive margins and extranodal extension. In clinical practice, CT and MRI are the imaging techniques used.

6.2 MIBC and comorbidity
Complications related to RC may be directly related to pre-existing comorbidity as well as the surgical procedure, bowel anastomosis, or urinary diversion. A significant body of literature has evaluated the usefulness of age as a prognostic factor for RC [127-129].

Advanced age has been identified as a risk factor for complications of RC, although chronological age is less important than biological age. Other risk factors for morbidity include prior abdominal surgery, extravesical disease, and prior RT [130]. Female gender, an increased body mass index (BMI) and lower pre-operative albumin levels are associated with a higher rate of parastomal hernias [131].

Low pre-operative serum albumin is also associated with impaired wound healing, gastrointestinal complications and a decrease of recurrence-free and OS after RC [132, 133]. Therefore, it could be used as a prognostic biomarker for patients undergoing RC.

6.2.1 Evaluation of comorbidity
Rochon et al. have shown that evaluation of comorbidity provides a better indicator of life expectancy in MIBC than patient age [134]. The evaluation helps to identify the medical conditions likely to interfere with, or have an impact on, treatment and the evolution and prognosis of MIBC [135].

The value of assessing overall health before recommending and proceeding with surgery was emphasised by Zietman et al., who have demonstrated an association between comorbidity and adverse pathological and survival outcome following RC [136]. Similar results were found for the impact of comorbidity on cancer-specific and other-cause mortality in a population-based competing risk analysis of > 11,260 patients from the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) registries. Age carried the highest risk for other-cause mortality but not for increased cancer-specific death, while the stage of locally advanced tumour was the strongest predictor for decreased CSS [137]. Stratifying elderly patients according to their risk-benefit profile using a multidisciplinary approach will help to select patients most likely to benefit from radical surgery and to optimise treatment outcomes [138]. Unfortunately, most series evaluating RC do not include indices of comorbidity in the patient evaluation.

6.2.2 Comorbidity scales, anaesthetic risk classification and geriatric assessment
A range of comorbidity scales has been developed [139]; six of which have been validated [140-145] (LE: 3). The Charlson Comorbidity Index (CCI) ranges from 0 to 30 according to the importance of comorbidity described at four levels and is calculated by healthcare practitioners based on patients’ medical records. The score has been widely studied in patients with BC and found to be an independent prognostic factor for peri-operative mortality [146, 147], overall mortality [148], and cancer-specific mortality [149-152]. Only the age-adjusted version of the CCI was correlated with both cancer-specific and other-cause mortality [153]. The age-
adjusted CCI (Table 6.1) is the most widely used comorbidity index in cancer for estimating long-term survival and is easily calculated [154].

### Table 6.1: Calculation of the Charlson Comorbidity Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of points</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 point</td>
<td>50-60 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Myocardial infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heart failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peripheral vascular insufficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cerebrovascular disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dementia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chronic lung disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Connective tissue disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ulcer disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mild liver disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diabetes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 points</td>
<td>61-70 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hemiplegia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Moderate to severe kidney disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diabetes with organ damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumours of all origins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 points</td>
<td>71-80 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Moderate to severe liver disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 points</td>
<td>81-90 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 points</td>
<td>&gt; 90 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 points</td>
<td>Metastatic solid tumours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AIDS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Interpretation**

Health assessment of oncology patients must be supplemented by measuring their activity level. Extermann et al. have shown that there is no correlation between morbidity and competitive activity level [155]. The Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group (ECOG) PS scores and Karnofsky index have been validated to measure patient activity [156] (LE: 3). Performance score is correlated with patient OS after RC [151] and palliative chemotherapy [157-159].

1. Calculate Charlson Comorbidity Score or Index = i
   a. Add comorbidity score to age score
   b. Total denoted as ‘i’ in the Charlson Probability calculation (see below). i = sum of comorbidity score to age score

2. Calculate Charlson Probability (10-year mortality = Y)
   a. Calculate Y = \(10^i \times 0.9\)
   b. Calculate \(Z = 0.983^Y\) (where Z is the 10-year survival)

According to a consensus conference of the National Institutes of Health, the aim of the Standardized Geriatric Assessment (SGA) is to discover, describe and explain the many problems of elderly people, to catalogue their resources and strengths, to assess individual service needs, and to develop a co-ordinated plan of care. The SGA can be carried out by means of several protocols. These protocols differ in the completeness of diagnostic research. The most complete protocol is the Comprehensive Geriatric Assessment (CGA) [160] which is tailored to the care of cancer patients [161]. In BC, the CGA has been used to adapt gemcitabine chemotherapy in previously untreated elderly patients with advanced BC [162].

### 6.2.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for comorbidity scales

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chronological age is of limited relevance.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A comorbidity score developed in particular for the assessment of patients diagnosed with bladder cancer would be helpful.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base the decision on bladder-sparing treatment or radical cystectomy in elderly/geriatric patients with invasive bladder cancer on tumour stage and comorbidity.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess comorbidity by a validated score, such as the Charlson Comorbidity Index. The American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) score should not be used in this setting (see section 7.4.4.1).</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.2.4 Prognostic markers

6.2.4.1 Tumour location

Location of the tumour at the bladder trigone has shown to be associated with an increased likelihood (OR 1.83, 95% CI: 1.11-2.99) of nodal metastasis and decreased survival (OR 1.68; 95% CI: 1.11-2.55) [84].

6.2.4.2 Molecular markers

The performance of current commercially available pathological prognostic markers points to the relevance of including molecular prognostic markers into clinical practice [163], but so far very few studies have addressed this topic. At present, insufficient evidence exists to recommend the standard use of prognostic marker p53 in high-risk muscle-invasive disease, as it will not yield sufficient data upon which to base treatment in an individual patient [164].

Recent publications demonstrated four main molecular groups of BC:
- basal BC with the basal and claudin low-type group;
- luminal BC with luminal and p53-like subtype.

The basal group, which can have sarcomatoid aspects and shows an over-expression of epidermal growth factor receptor 3 (EGFR3), is chemosensitive, the luminal type displays an over-expression of fibroblast growth factor receptor 3 (FGFR3), epidermal growth factor receptor (ERBB2↑ and ERBB3), and is chemotherapy resistant [50, 51, 165].

In 2014, the Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) project in BC reported on the integrated genomic analysis of the first 131 MIBC patients, identifying genes that are mutated in a significant proportion of BCs, several of which were not previously reported [166]. Profiling studies have also reported on validated biomarker panels that predict prognosis and can be used to identify patients who may benefit from more aggressive therapy [167]. In the coming years, expanding knowledge of BC carcinogenesis may change our management of the disease.

7. DISEASE MANAGEMENT

7.1 Treatment failure of non-muscle invasive bladder cancer

7.1.1 High-risk non-muscle-invasive urothelial carcinoma

The recurrence and progression rate of non-muscle invasive BC (NMIBC) strongly correlates with the factors as described in the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) risk calculator [168]. According to this calculator, the risk of progression after five years is 45% for high-risk tumours. In 2015, however, the EORTC group presented new nomograms based on two large phase III trials with a median follow up of 7.4 years. With one to three years of maintenance bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG), the risk for progression at five years was much lower: 19.3% for T1G3 tumours [169].

Meta-analyses have demonstrated that BCG-therapy prevents the risk of tumour recurrence [170] and the risk of tumour progression [171, 172] but so far, no significant overall- or disease-specific survival advantages have been shown, as compared to no intravesical therapy [171-173]. The EAU NMIBC Guidelines present data supporting cystectomy in selected patients with NMIBC.

Large cystectomy series show a risk of an understaging error in TaT1 tumours of 35-62%. This may be caused by the presence of persisting or recurrent tumours due to omission of a second TURB or re-TURB, and the absence of neoadjuvant therapy [174-176]. Second TURB identifies upstaging to > T2 tumours in 10-20% of patients [177, 178].

Progression to MIBC significantly decreases CSS. In a review of nineteen trials including 3,088 patients, CSS after progression from NMIBC to MIBC was 35%, which is significantly worse compared to patients with MIBC without a history of NMIBC. This underlines the need to recommend early radical treatment, such as RC, in case of intravesical therapy failure [2, 179, 180].

According to the EAU NMIBC Guidelines, it is reasonable to propose immediate RC to patients with non-muscle-invasive tumour who are at highest risk of progression [168, 181-183]. Risk factors are any of the following:
• T1 tumours;
• high-grade/G3 tumours;
• CIS;
• multiple and recurrent and large (> 3 cm) Ta G1G2 tumours (all conditions must be presented in this point).

Subgroup of highest-risk tumours:
• T1G3/high-grade associated with concurrent bladder CIS;
• multiple and/or largeT1G3/HG and/or recurrent T1G3/high-grade;
• T1G3/high-grade with CIS in the prostatic urethra;
• unusual histology of urothelial carcinoma;
• lymphovascular invasion;
• BCG failures.

Although the percentage of patients with primary TaT1 tumours and the indication for cystectomy in TaT1 tumours is not specified in large cystectomy series, the ten-year recurrence-free survival rate is 80% and similar to that of TURB and BCG maintenance therapy [2, 175, 184, 185] (LE: 3).

Radical cystectomy is also strongly recommended in patients with BCG-refractory tumours, defined in the NMIBC guideline as:
• whenever muscle-invasive tumour is detected during follow-up;
• if high-grade, non-muscle-invasive papillary tumour is present at three months;
• if CIS (without concomitant papillary tumour) is present at both three and six months;
• if high-grade tumour appears during BCG therapy [186];

Patients with disease recurrence within two years of initial TURB plus BCG therapy have a better outcome than patients who already have muscle-invasive disease, indicating that cystectomy should be performed at first recurrence, even in non-muscle-invasive disease [187] (LE: 3; GR: C).

There are now several bladder-preservation strategies available; immunotherapy, chemotherapy, device-assisted therapy, and combination therapy [188]. However, experience is limited and treatments other than RC must be considered oncologically inferior at the present time [188].

7.1.2  Recommendations for treatment failure of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consider immediate radical treatment in all T1 tumours at high risk of progression (i.e., high grade, multifocality, carcinoma in situ, and tumour size, as outlined in the EAU Guidelines for Non-muscle-invasive Bladder Cancer).</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer radical treatment to all T1 patients failing intravesical therapy.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.2  Neoadjuvant chemotherapy

7.2.1  Introduction

The standard treatment for patients with MIBC is RC. However, RC only provides five-year survival in about 50% of patients [176, 189-192]. To improve these results, neoadjuvant chemotherapy (NAC) has been used since the 1980s [193, 194].

There are many advantages and disadvantages of administering chemotherapy before planned definitive surgery to patients with resectable muscle-invasive urothelial carcinoma of the bladder and cN0M0 disease:
• Chemotherapy is delivered at the earliest time-point, when the burden of micrometastatic disease is expected to be low.
• Potential reflection of in-vivo chemosensitivity.
• Tolerability of chemotherapy and patient compliance are expected to be better pre-cystectomy.
• Patients might respond to NAC and reveal a favourable pathological status, determined mainly by achieving pT0, pN0 and negative surgical margins.
• Delayed cystectomy might compromise the outcome in patients not sensitive to chemotherapy [195, 196], although published studies on the negative effect of delayed cystectomy only include chemo-naive patients. There are no trials indicating that delayed surgery, due to NAC, has a negative impact on survival.
• Neoadjuvant chemotherapy does not seem to affect the outcome of surgical morbidity. In one randomised trial the same distribution of grade 3-4 post-operative complications was seen in both treatment arms [197]. In the combined Nordic trials (n = 620), NAC did not have a major adverse effect on the percentage of performable cystectomies. The cystectomy frequency was 86% in the experimental arm and 87% in the control arm, 71% received all three chemotherapy cycles [198].
• Clinical staging using bimanual palpation, CT or MRI may often result in over- and understaging and have a staging accuracy of only 70% [199, 200]. Overtreatment is a possible negative consequence.
• Neoadjuvant chemotherapy should only be used in patients eligible for cisplatin combination chemotherapy; other combinations (or monotherapies) are inferior in metastatic BC and have not been fully tested in a neoadjuvant setting [197, 201-213].

7.2.2 The role of imaging and biomarkers to identify responders
Data from small imaging studies, aiming to identify responders in patients treated with NAC, suggest that response after two cycles of treatment is related to outcome. So far, neither PET, CT, nor conventional MRI or DCE MRI can accurately predict response [214-217]. In addition, the definition of stable disease after two cycles of NAC is still undefined. To identify progression during NAC, imaging is being used in many centres, notwithstanding the lack of supporting evidence.

For responders to NAC, especially in those with a complete response (pT0 N0), treatment has a major positive impact on OS [218]. The overtreatment of non-responders and patients in the non-target population (i.e. patients without micrometastatic disease) are major drawbacks. Pre-operative identification of responders based on molecular tumour profiling in TURB specimens might guide the use of NAC [219, 220] (see Section 7.8.12 - Biomarkers).

7.2.3 Summary of available data
Several randomised phase III trials addressed the potential survival benefit of NAC administration, with conflicting results [197, 201-210, 221-226]. The main differences in trial designs were the type of chemotherapy (i.e. single-agent cisplatin or combination chemotherapy) and the number of cycles provided. Patients had to be fit for cisplatin. Since these studies differed considerably for patient numbers, patient characteristics (e.g. clinical T-stages included) and the type of definitive treatment offered (cystectomy and/or RT), pooling of results was not possible.

Three meta-analyses were undertaken to establish if NAC prolongs survival [211-213]. In the most recent meta-analysis, published in 2005 [213], with updated patient data from 11 randomised trials (n = 3,005), a significant survival benefit was shown in favour of NAC. The results of this analysis confirmed the previously published data and showed a 5% absolute improvement in survival at five years.

The Nordic combined trial showed an absolute benefit of 8% survival at five years and 11% in the clinical T3 subgroup, translating into nine patients needed to treat [198]. Only cisplatin combination chemotherapy with at least one additional chemotherapeutic agent resulted in a meaningful therapeutic benefit [211, 213]; the regimens tested were methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin plus cisplatin (MVA(E)C), cisplatin, methotrexate plus vinblastine (CMV), cisplatin and methotrexate (CM), cisplatin/adrinamycin, cisplatin/5-fluorouracil (5-FU), and carboplatin, methotrexate, vinblastine (CarboMV).

More modern chemotherapeutic regimens such as gemcitabine/cisplatin have shown similar pT0/pT1 rates as methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin plus cisplatin (MVAC) in the most recent retrospective series and pooled data analyses, but have not been used in randomised controlled trials (RCTs) [227-230]. The updated analysis of the largest randomised phase III trial [201] with a median follow-up of eight years confirmed previous results and provided some additional interesting findings:
• 16% reduction in mortality risk;
• improvement in ten-year survival from 30% to 36% with neoadjuvant CMV;
• benefit with regard to distant metastases;
• no benefit for locoregional control and locoregional disease-free survival, with the addition of neoadjuvant CMV independent of the definitive treatment.

The presence of micrometastases is postulated to be lower in smaller tumours (T2) compared to more extensive tumours (T3b-T4b). T4 stage tumours are prone to a higher degree of clinical understaging because macrometastatic nodal deposits are detected more often in post-cystectomy specimens [198]. Data support the use of NAC in the T2b-T3b tumour subgroup (former classification T3), and has shown a modest, but substantial, improvement in long-term survival as well as significant downstaging [218].
7.2.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for neoadjuvant chemotherapy

Conclusions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence and Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neoadjuvant chemotherapy has its limitations regarding patient selection, current development of surgical techniques, and current chemotherapy combinations.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neoadjuvant cisplatin-containing combination chemotherapy improves overall survival (OS) (5-8% at five years).</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neoadjuvant treatment of responders and especially patients who show complete response (pT0 N0) has a major impact on OS.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Currently, no tools are available to select patients who have a higher probability of benefitting from neoadjuvant chemotherapy (NAC). In the future, genetic markers, in a personalised medicine setting, might facilitate the selection of patients for NAC and differentiate responders from non-responders.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence and Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer neoadjuvant chemotherapy (NAC) for T2-T4a, cN0M0 bladder cancer. In this case, always use cisplatin-based combination therapy.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer NAC to patients who are ineligible for cisplatin-based combination chemotherapy.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.3 Pre- and post-operative radiotherapy in muscle-invasive bladder cancer

7.3.1 Post-operative radiotherapy

There are only very limited, old, data on adjuvant RT after RC. However, advances in targeting, and reducing the damage to surrounding tissue, may yield better results in the future [231]. A recent RCT in 100 patients, comparing pre-operative vs. post-operative RT and RC, showed comparable OS, DFS and complication rates [232]. Approximately half of these patients had urothelial cancer (UC), while the other half had SCC. In locally advanced BC (T3-T4, N0/N1, M0), the local recurrence rate seems to decrease with post-operative RT [233].

7.3.2 Pre-operative radiotherapy

7.3.2.1 Retrospective studies

Older data and retrospective studies alone cannot provide an evidence base for modern guideline recommendations due to the major study limitations, which include concomitant chemotherapy and differences between surgery and RT. This conclusion was supported by a 2003 systemic review [234]. A retrospective study from 2015 [235] did show a decreased cause-specific mortality and overall mortality for pre-operative RT in clinical T2b and T3 patients only. Another recent retrospective study with pre-operative RT in clinical T1-3 tumours showed that downstaging to T0 tumours occurs in > 50% of the irradiated patients, as compared to < 10% of patients without having received pre-operative RT [236]. Additionally, downstaging resulted in a longer progression-free survival (PFS).

7.3.2.2 Randomised studies

Six randomised studies have been published so far, investigating pre-operative RT, although all are from several decades ago. In the largest trial, pre-operative RT at a dose of 45 Gy was used in patients with muscle-invasive tumours resulting in a significant increase in pathological complete response (pCR) (9% to 34%) in favour of pre-operative RT, which was also a prognostic factor for survival [237]. The OS data were difficult to interpret since chemotherapy was used in a subset of patients only and more than 50% of patients (241/475) did not receive the planned treatment and were excluded from the final analyses. Two smaller studies using a dose of 20 Gy showed only a small survival advantage in ≥ T3 tumours [238, 239]. Two other small trials confirmed downstaging after pre-operative RT [240, 241].

A meta-analysis of the five randomised trials showed a difference in five-year survival of (OR: 0.71; 95% CI: 0.48-1.06) in favour of pre-operative RT [242]. However, the meta-analysis was potentially biased by the patients in the data from largest trial who were not given the planned treatment. When the largest trial was excluded, the OR became 0.94 (95% CI: 0.57-1.55), which is not significant.
7.3.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for pre- and post-operative radiotherapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No data exist to support that pre-operative radiotherapy (RT) for operable muscle-invasive bladder cancer (MIBC) increases survival.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-operative RT for operable MIBC, using a dose of 45-50 Gy in fractions of 1.8-2 Gy, results in downstaging after four-six weeks.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limited high-quality evidence supports the use of pre-operative RT to decrease the local recurrence of MIBC after radical cystectomy.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer pre-operative radiotherapy (RT) to improve survival.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer pre-operative RT for operable MIBC since it can result in tumour downstaging after four to six weeks.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.4 Radical surgery and urinary diversion

7.4.1 Removal of the tumour-bearing bladder

7.4.1.1 Introduction

Radical cystectomy is the standard treatment for localised MIBC in most Western countries [176, 243]. Recent interest in patients' quality of life (QoL) has promoted the trend toward bladder-preserving treatment modalities, such as radio- and/or chemotherapy (see Sections 7.2 and 7.6). Performance status (PS) and age influence the choice of primary therapy, as well as the type of urinary diversion, with cystectomy being reserved for younger patients without comorbid disease and with a better PS. The value of assessing overall health before recommending and proceeding with surgery was emphasised in a multivariate analysis [149]. The analysis found an association between comorbidity and adverse pathological- and survival outcome following RC [149]. Performance status and comorbidity have a different impact on treatment outcomes and must be evaluated independently [155].

Controversy remains regarding age, RC and the type of urinary diversion. Cystectomy is associated with the greatest risk reduction in disease-related and non-disease-related death in patients aged > 80 years [149]. The largest, retrospective, single-institution study on cystectomy to date found that patients aged > 80 years had increased post-operative morbidity, but not increased mortality. Although some patients successfully underwent a neobladder procedure, most patients were treated with an ileal conduit diversion [244].

It is particularly important to evaluate functioning and QoL of elderly patients using a standardised geriatric assessment, as well as carrying out a standard medical evaluation (see Section 6.2) [245].

7.4.2 Timing and delay of cystectomy

Nielsen et al. reported that a delay of RC > 3 months in three American centres was not associated with a worse clinical outcome [246]. Ayres et al. investigated whether a delay > 3 months would have the same effect in the United Kingdom [247]. Initially they found, in agreement with Nielsen et al., that cystectomy within 90 days of diagnosis had no effect on OS for MIBC (n = 955). However, analysis of T2 tumours showed a statistically significant survival benefit if patients had surgery within 90 days of diagnosis (n = 543; HR: 1.40; 95% CI: 1.10-1.79). A population-based study from the USA SEER database analysed patients who underwent a cystectomy between 1992 and 2001, also concluded that a delay of more than twelve weeks has a negative impact on outcome and should be avoided [248].

7.4.2.1 Indications

Traditionally, RC was recommended for patients with MIBC T2-T4a, N0-Nx, M0 [243]. Other indications include high risk and recurrent superficial tumours, BCG-resistant Tis, T1G3 (see Section 7.1), as well as extensive papillary disease that cannot be controlled with TURB and intravesical therapy alone.

Salvage cystectomy is indicated in non-responders to conservative therapy, recurrence after bladder-sparing treatment, and non-urothelial carcinoma (these tumours respond poorly to chemotherapy and RT). It is also used as a purely palliative intervention, including for fistula formation, pain and recurrent visible haematuria (macrohaematuria) (see Section 7.5.1 - Palliative cystectomy).

When there are positive LNs, in the case of N1 involvement (metastasis in a single node in the true pelvis) orthotopic neobladder can still be considered, but not in N2 or N3 tumours [249].
7.4.3  **Radical cystectomy: technique and extent**

In men, standard RC includes removal of the bladder, prostate, seminal vesicles, distal ureters, and regional LNs. Prostate-sparing cystectomy is an option in a subset of carefully selected patients with BC without involvement of the prostatic urethra and without prostate cancer. This procedure is oncologically safe with good functional results as long as it is performed in an experienced centre [250]. In women, standard RC includes removal of the bladder, entire urethra and adjacent vagina, uterus, distal ureters, and regional LNs [251]. Controversies in evaluating the clinical significance of lymphadenectomy are related to two main aspects of nodal dissection: therapeutic procedure and/or staging instrument.

Two important autopsy studies for RC have been performed so far. The first study showed that in 215 patients with MIBC and nodal dissemination, the frequency of metastasis was 92% in regional (perivesical or pelvic), 72% in retroperitoneal, and 35% in abdominal LNs. There was also a significant correlation between nodal metastases and concomitant distant metastases (p < 0.0001).

Approximately 47% of the patients had both nodal metastases and distant dissemination and only 12% of the patients had nodal dissemination as the sole metastatic manifestation [252]. The second autopsy study focused on the nodal yield when super-extended pelvic LN dissection (LND) was performed. Substantial inter-individual differences were found with counts ranging from 10 to 53 nodes [253]. These findings demonstrate the limited utility of node count as a surrogate for extent of dissection.

Regional LNs have been shown to consist of all pelvic LNs below the bifurcation of the aorta [254-258]. Mapping studies have also found that skipping lesions at locations above the bifurcation of the aorta, without more distally located LN metastases, is rare [258, 259].

The extent of LND has not been established to date. Standard lymphadenectomy in BC patients involves removal of nodal tissue cranially up to the common iliac bifurcation, with the ureter being the medial border, and including the internal iliac, presacral, obturator fossa and external iliac nodes [260]. Extended lymphadenectomy includes all LNs in the region of the aortic bifurcation, and presacral and common iliac vessels medial to the crossing ureters. The lateral borders are the genitofemoral nerves, caudally the circumflex iliac vein, the lacunar ligament and the LN of Cloquet, as well as the area described for standard lymphadenectomy [260-264]. A super-extended lymphadenectomy extends cranially to the level of the inferior mesenteric artery [265, 266].

In order to assess how and if cancer outcome is influenced by the extent of lymphadenectomy in patients with clinical N0M0 MIBC, a SR of the literature was undertaken [267]. Out of 1,692 abstracts retrieved and assessed, nineteen studies fulfilled the review criteria [260-264, 266, 268-280]. All five studies comparing LND vs. no LND reported a better oncological outcome for the LND group. Seven out of twelve studies comparing (super-)extended with limited or standard LND reported a beneficial outcome for (super)extended in at least a subset of patients which is in concordance with several other recently performed meta-analyses [281, 282]. No difference in outcome was reported between extended and super-extended LND in the two high-volume-centre studies identified [266, 278]. Further data from on-going randomised trials on the therapeutic impact of the extent of lymphadenectomy are awaited.

It has been suggested that PFS as well as OS might be correlated with the number of LNs removed during surgery, although there are no data from RCTs on the minimum number of LNs that should be removed. Nevertheless, survival rates increase with the number of dissected LNs [283]. Removal of at least ten LNs has been postulated as sufficient for evaluation of LN status, as well as being beneficial for OS in retrospective studies [284-286]. In conclusion, extended LND might have a therapeutic benefit compared to less-extensive LND, but due to study bias, no firm conclusions can be drawn [267].

7.4.3.1  **Pelvic organ preservation techniques in men: oncological and functional outcomes**

Different approaches have been described to improve voiding and sexual function in patients undergoing RC for BC. No consensus exists regarding which approach preserves function best. Concern remains regarding the impact of “sparing-techniques” on oncological outcomes.

To determine the effect of sexual function-preserving cystectomy (SPC) on functional and oncological outcomes a SR was undertaken [287].

Four main types of sexual-preserving techniques have been described:

1. **Prostate sparing cystectomy**: part or the whole prostate is preserved including seminal vesicles, vas deferens and neurovascular bundles.

2. **Capsule sparing cystectomy**: the capsule or peripheral part of the prostate is preserved with adenoma
including prostatic urethra) removed by TURP or en bloc with bladder. Seminal vesicles, vas deferens and neurovascular bundles are also preserved.

3. **Seminal sparing cystectomy**: seminal vesicles, vas deferens and neurovascular bundles are preserved.

4. **Nerve sparing cystectomy**: the neurovascular bundles are the only tissue left in place.

Out of 8,517 screened abstracts twelve studies recruiting a total of 1,098 patients (823 in the intervention group vs. 275 in the control group) were identified, including nine comparative studies (one RCT and two retrospective non-RCTs with matched pair design [250, 288-297] and three single-arm case series [298-300]. Sexual function-preserving cystectomy described included prostate-, capsule-, seminal vesicle- and nerve-sparing techniques. In the majority of cases, the open surgical approach was used and the urinary diversion of choice was an orthotopic neobladder. Median follow-up was longer than three years in nine studies, with three studies presenting results at a median follow-up longer than five years.

The majority of the studies included patients who were potent pre-operatively with organ-confined disease without tumour in the bladder neck and/or prostatic urethra. Prostate cancer was ruled out in all of the SPC techniques, except in those performing nerve-sparing cystectomy.

Oncological outcomes did not differ between groups in any of the comparative studies that measured local recurrence, metastatic recurrence, DSS and OS, at a median follow-up of three to five years. Local recurrence after SPC was commonly defined as any urothelial cancer (UC) recurrence below the iliac bifurcation within the pelvic soft tissue and ranged from 1.2-61.1% vs. 16-55% in the control group. Metastatic recurrence ranged from 0-33.3%.

For those techniques preserving prostatic tissue (prostate or capsule sparing) rates of incidental prostate cancer in the intervention group ranged from 0 to 15%. In no case, incidental prostate cancer with Gleason score > 8 was reported.

Sexual outcomes were evaluated using validated-questionnaires (International Index of Erectile Function [IIEF], Erection Hardness Scale [EHS], Bladder Cancer Index [BCI]) in eight studies. Post-operative potency was significantly better in patients who underwent any type of sexual-preserving technique compared to conventional RC (p < 0.05), ranging 80-90%, 50-100% and 29-78% for prostate-, capsule- or nerve-sparing techniques, respectively. Data did not show superiority of any sexual-preserving technique.

Urinary continence, defined as the use of no pads in the majority of studies, ranged from 88 to 100% (day-time continence) and from 31-96% (night-time continence) in the prostate-sparing cystectomy patients. No major impact was shown with regard to continence rates for any of the three approaches.

The evidence base suggests that these procedures may yield better sexual outcomes than standard cystectomy without compromising oncological outcomes. However, the overall quality of the evidence was moderate, and hence if a sexual-preserving technique is offered, patients must be carefully selected, counselled and closely monitored.

7.4.3.1.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for sexual-preserving techniques in men

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The majority of patients motivated to preserve their sexual function will benefit from sexual-preserving techniques.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None of the sexual-preserving techniques (prostate/capsule/seminal/nerve sparing) have shown to be superior and no particular technique can be recommended.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer sexual-preserving techniques to men motivated to preserve their sexual function since the majority will benefit.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select patients based on:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• organ-confined disease;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• absence of any kind of tumour at the level of the prostate, prostatic urethra or bladder neck.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer sexual-preserving cystectomy as standard therapy for muscle-invasive bladder cancer.</td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.4.3.2 Pelvic organ preservation techniques in women: oncological and functional outcomes

Sexual and voiding dysfunction in female patients is prevalent after RC and orthotopic neobladder. Patients’ QoL has promoted the trend toward pelvic organ-preserving techniques. Better imaging modalities, increased knowledge of the function of the pelvic structures and improved surgical techniques has enabled less destructive methods for treating high-risk BC. These techniques involve preserving the neurovascular bundle, vagina, uterus or variations of any of the stated techniques.

A SR was conducted to evaluate the advantages and disadvantages of sexual-function preserving RC and orthotopic neobladder for female patients [301].

After screening 11,941 abstracts, fifteen studies recruiting a total of 874 patients were eligible for inclusion. Three papers had a matched pair study design, and the remainder of the included studies were retrospective surgical series with small case numbers and a high risk of selection bias favouring less advanced cancers.

Sexual outcomes were reported in seven studies with 167/194 patients (86%) having resumed sexual activity within six months post-operatively, with median patients’ sexual satisfaction scores of 88.5%, ranging from 80% to 100%.

Survival outcomes were reported in seven studies on 197 patients, with a mean follow-up of between 12 and 132 months. At three and five year, CSS was 70-100% and OS was 65-100%. Positive surgical margins were reported in six studies, ranging from 0 to 13.7%. Local and metastatic recurrence rates were reported as ranging between 0-13% and 0-16.7%, respectively. Mean time to local recurrence was seven months.

Eleven studies reported continence outcomes. Overall daytime and nighttime continence was 58-100% and 42-100%, respectively. Overall self-catheterisation rate was 9.5-78%.

Although, this SR provides the best evidence currently available, including basically all reported cases, the data remains immature. Most studies were retrospective and non-comparative with small numbers of patients included, meaning that any estimates are uncertain and likely to be biased. Heterogeneity in outcome definition, measurement and reporting hampers the usefulness of the current evidence base. The overall risk of bias was high across all studies. However, for well-selected patients, sparing female reproductive organs during RC appears to be oncologically safe and provides improved functional outcomes.

7.4.3.2.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for sexual-preserving techniques in women

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Data regarding pelvic organ-preserving radical cystectomy for female patients remain immature.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer sexual-preserving techniques to female patients motivated to preserve their sexual function since the majority will benefit.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select patients based:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• organ-confined disease;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• absence of tumour in bladder neck or urethra.</td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer pelvic organ-preserving radical cystectomy for female patients as standard therapy for muscle-invasive bladder cancer.</td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.4.3.3 Laparoscopic/robotic-assisted laparoscopic cystectomy

Due to data limitations, until recently, laparoscopic radical cystectomy (LRC) and robot-assisted radical cystectomy (RARC) were considered as investigational procedures for which no advantages could be shown as compared to open surgery. Most of the available studies suffered from patient selection bias (age, stage).

A number of new publications have become available (cut-off date for the literature search was Oct 1st, 2015), in particular on RARC; a SR [302], a consensus panel report [303], an RCT from the Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Center (MSKCC) group [304] a SR on oncologic and functional outcomes after RARC [305] and a retrospective review on the recurrence patterns after open radical cystectomy (ORC) and RARC [306]. Since there is a continuous flow of reports on RARC, this text section and the recommendations will be subject to significant updates in the coming years.

For the methodology of the SR we refer to the manuscript [302]. In short, out of 1,071 abstracts assessed, 105 studies were selected as meeting the inclusion criteria. Of the 105 papers 102 had a level of evidence of 4, and only three publications had a level of evidence of 2b.
For RARC with urinary diversion, the mean operative time was six to seven hours. Although the intracorporeal technique is more demanding, operating times are comparable, most likely reflecting more experience with the procedure. The operation time decreased over time, but remained longer than for ORC. The average operative time for ORC is listed as 297 minutes in the three higher quality RCTs, which still seems relatively long.

In the comparative studies, mean length of hospital stay for RARC decreases with time and experience, and is 1 to 1.5 days shorter as compared to ORC. In the RCT’s however, operative time and length of hospital stay showed no significant difference for either procedure. Blood loss and transfusion rate favour RARC. Intraoperative, 30-day complication rate and mortality were similar for RARC and ORC, but complication grade and grade 3, 90-day, complication rates favoured RARC. Overall complication rates were reported as > 50% which illustrates that cystectomy and diversion remains major surgery. Complication rates did not change with time or experience.

A major limitation of this review is the low level of evidence of the included studies. Of the three RCT’s, only one was adequately powered and there was no correction for baseline characteristics (selection bias). In some of the larger series in the review 59-67% of tumours are < pT2 tumours. In the largest RCT 91.5% were clinically < T2 and 71.7% pathologically < T2 [304] compared to a large series of ORC (n = 1,054) 47% of included patients had a < pT2 tumour [176].

The Pasadena Consensus Panel (a group of experts on RC, lymphadenectomy and urinary reconstruction) reached similar conclusions as the Novara review based on the same methodology and literature [303]. They presented similar outcomes comparing RARC and ORC for operative endpoints, pathological and intermediate oncological endpoints (positive surgical margins and LN yield), functional endpoints and complication outcomes. Additionally, RARC was associated with increased costs, although there are ergonomic advantages for the surgeon, as compared to laparoscopic radical cystectomy (LRC). For both techniques surgeons’ experience and institutional volume strongly predicted outcome. According to the literature, proficiency is reached after 20-250 cases. However, the Pasadena Consensus Panel performed statistical modelling and came to the conclusion that 30 cases should be enough to achieve proficiency in RARC, but they also concluded that challenging cases (high BMI, post chemo- or RT, pelvic surgery, T4 or bulky tumours or positive nodes) should be performed by experienced robotic surgeons only. Experience is defined as a high volume centre, > 30 RARCs/year and experience in ORC.

In the only sufficiently powered RCT, comparing ORC (n = 58) vs. RARC (n = 60) and open diversion, the primary endpoint was an advantage in 90 days grade 2-5 complications for RARC [304]. Since the complication rates were similar (62% for RARC vs. 66% for ORC), the trial was closed after a planned interim analysis. Robotic-assisted radical cystectomy resulted in less blood loss but had a longer operative time and higher costs. Length of hospital stay, pathology, and QoL were similar. Limitations of this study are lack of long-term outcomes and limited experience in RARC as compared to ORC in this group of patients. A similar health-related QoL (HRQoL) was also found in an initial report of a prospective RCT comparing ORC and RARC [307]. Similar functional and oncological outcomes with five years follow up were also reported by Yuh et al. [305]. Nguyen et al. also reported that RARC was not an independent predictor of recurrence after surgery in a retrospective review of 383 consecutive patients [306].

Most reviewed series used extracorporeal reconstruction which leaves room for improvement.

Although an intracorporeal neobladder is a very complex robotic procedure [308] the choice for neobladder or cutaneous diversion, must not depend on the surgical approach.

For LRC, a recent review came to similar conclusions as described for RARC [308]. The review included sixteen eligible studies on LRC. As compared to ORC, LRC had a significantly longer operative time, fewer overall complications, blood transfusions and analgesic use, less blood loss and a shorter length of hospital stay. However, the review was limited by the inherent limitations of the included studies. Although this review also showed better oncological outcomes, these appeared comparable to ORC series in the largest LRC multicentre study to date [308].
7.4.3.3.1  Summary of evidence and recommendations for laparoscopic/robotic-assisted laparoscopic cystectomy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Robot-assisted radical cystectomy (RARC) provides longer operative time (1-1.5 hours), major costs, but shorter length of hospital stay (1-1.5 days) and less blood loss compared to open radical cystectomy (ORC).</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RARC series suffer from a significant stage selection bias as compared to ORC.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 3, 90-day complication rate is lower with RARC.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most endpoints, if reported, including intermediate term oncological endpoint and quality of life are not different between RARC and ORC.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgeons experience and institutional volume are considered the key factor for outcome of both RARC and ORC, not the technique.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommendations on how to define challenging patients and an experienced RARC surgeon are still under discussion.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The use of neobladder after RARC still seems under-utilised, and functional results of intracorporeally constructed neobladders should be studied.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inform the patient of the advantages and disadvantages of open radical cystectomy (ORC) and robot-assisted radical cystectomy (RARC) to allow selection of the proper procedure.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select experienced centres, not specific techniques, both for RARC and ORC.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beware of neobladder under-utilisation and outcome after RARC.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**7.4.4  Urinary diversion after radical cystectomy**

From an anatomical standpoint, three alternatives are currently used after cystectomy:
- abdominal diversion, such as an ureterocutaneostomy, ileal or colonic conduit, and various forms of a continent pouch;
- urethral diversion, which includes various forms of gastrointestinal pouches attached to the urethra as a continent, orthotopic urinary diversion (neobladder, orthotopic bladder substitution);
- rectosigmoid diversions, such as uretero-(ileo-)rectostomy.

Different types of segments of the intestinal tract have been used to reconstruct the urinary tract, including the stomach, ileum, colon and appendix [309]. Several studies have compared certain aspects of HRQoL, such as sexual function, urinary continence and body image, in patient cohorts with different types of urinary diversion. However, further research is needed on pre-operative tumour stage and functional situation, socio-economic status, and time interval to primary surgery.

**7.4.4.1  Preparations for surgery**

The ASA score has been validated to assess the risk of post-operative complications prior to surgery. In the BC setting, ASA scores ≥ 3 are associated with major complications [132, 310], particularly those related to the type of urinary diversion (Table 7.4) [311]. However, the ASA score is not a comorbidity scale and should not be used as such.

**Table 7.4: ASA score [312]**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ASA</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>No organic pathology, or patients in whom the pathological process is localised and does not cause any systemic disturbance or abnormality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>A moderate but definite systemic disturbance caused either by the condition that is to be treated or surgical intervention, or which is caused by other existing pathological processes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Severe systemic disturbance from any cause or causes. It is not possible to state an absolute measure of severity, as this is a matter of clinical judgment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Extreme systemic disorders that have already become an imminent threat to life, regardless of the type of treatment. Because of their duration or nature, there has already been damage to the organism that is irreversible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Moribund patients not expected to survive 24 hours, with or without surgery.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In consultation with the patient, both an orthotopic neobladder and ileal conduit should be considered in case where reconstructive surgery exposes the patient to excessive risk (as determined by comorbidity and age).

Diagnosis of urethral tumour before cystectomy or positive urethral frozen section leads to urethrectomy and therefore excludes neobladder reconstruction. If indicated, in males, urethral frozen section has to be performed on the cystoprostatectomy specimen just under the verumontanum and on the inferior limits of the bladder neck for females.

When there are positive LNs, orthotopic neobladder can nevertheless be considered in the case of N1 involvement (metastasis in a single node in the true pelvis) but not for N2 or N3 tumours [313].

Oncological results after orthotopic neobladder substitution or conduit diversion are similar in terms of local or distant metastasis recurrence, but secondary urethral tumours seem less common in patients with neobladder compared to those with conduits or continent cutaneous diversions [314].

For cystectomy, general preparations are necessary as for any other major pelvic and abdominal surgery. If the urinary diversion is constructed from gastrointestinal segments, the length or size of the respective segments and their pathophysiology when storing urine must be considered [315]. Despite the necessary interruption and re-anastomosis of bowel, a formal bowel preparation may not be necessary [316]. Bowel recovery time can be reduced by the use of early mobilisation and early oralisation, gastrointestinal stimulation with metoclopramide and chewing gum [317]. Patients treated according to the “fast tract” ERAS (Early Recovery After Surgery) protocol have shown to score better on the emotional and physical functioning scores and suffer less from wound healing disorders, fever and thrombosis [318].

A cornerstone of the ERAS protocol is post-operative pain management which involves significantly reducing the use of opioids; offering opioids mainly as breakthrough pain medication. Instead of patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) and epidural opioids, most patients receive high-dose acetaminophen and/or ketorolac, starting intra-operatively. Patients on ERAS experience more pain as compared to patients on a traditional protocol (VAS 3.1 vs. 1.1, p < 0.001), but post-operative ileus decreased from 22% to 7.3% (p = 0.003) [319].

A multicentre randomised placebo-controlled trial showed that patients receiving alvimopan, a peripherally acting μ-opioid receptor antagonist, experienced quicker bowel recovery compared to patients receiving placebo [320]. However, this drug is, as yet, not approved in Europe.

Patients undergoing continent urinary diversion must be motivated to learn about their diversion and to be manually skilful in manipulating their diversion. Contraindications to more complex forms of urinary diversion include:

- debilitating neurological and psychiatric illnesses;
- limited life expectancy;
- impaired liver or renal function;
- transitional cell carcinoma of the urethral margin or other surgical margins.

Relative contraindications specific for an orthotopic neobladder are high-dose pre-operative RT, complex urethral strictures disease, and severe urethral sphincter-related incontinence [321].

### 7.4.4.2 Patient selection for orthotopic diversion

Radical cystectomy and urinary diversion are the two steps of one operation. However, the literature uniformly reports complications of RC, while ignoring the fact that most complications are diversion related [322]. Age alone is not a criterion for offering continent diversion [321, 323]. Comorbidity, cardiac and pulmonary function, and cognitive function, are all important factors that should be considered, along with the patient’s social support and preference.

Age > 80 years is often considered to be the threshold after which neobladder reconstruction is not recommended. However, there is no exact age for a strict contraindication. In most large series from experienced centres, the rate of orthotopic bladder substitution after cystectomy for bladder tumour is up to 80% in men and 50% in women [324-327]. Nevertheless, no RCTs comparing conduit diversion with neobladder or continent cutaneous diversion have been performed.

Recently, a retrospective study including 1,383 patients showed that the risk of a decline in estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) did not significantly differ after ileal conduit vs. neobladder in patients with pre-operative chronic kidney disease 2 (eGFR 60-89 mL/min/1.73 m²) or 3a (eGFR 45-59 mL/min/1.73 m²) [328]. Only age and anastomotic strictures were found to be associated with a decline in eGFR.

#### 7.4.4.2.1 Ureterocutaneostomy

Ureteral diversion to the abdominal wall is the simplest form of cutaneous diversion. Operating time, complication rate, stay at intensive care and length of hospital stay are lower in patients treated with
ureterocutaneostomy as compared to ileal conduit [329]. Therefore, in older, or otherwise compromised, patients who need a supravesical diversion, ureterocutaneostomy is the preferred procedure [330, 331]. Quality of life, which was assessed using the Bladder Cancer Index, showed equal urinary bother and function for patients treated with ileal conduit and ureterocutaneostomy [329].

However, others have demonstrated that, in carefully selected elderly patients, all other forms of wet and dry urinary diversions, including orthotopic bladder substitutions, are possible [244]. Technically, either one ureter, to which the other shorter one is attached end-to-side, is connected to the skin (transureteroureterocutaneostomy) or both ureters are directly anastomosed to the skin. Due to the smaller diameter of the ureters, stoma stenosis has been observed more often than in intestinal stomas [330].

In a retrospective multicentre study peri-operative morbidity was evaluated for urinary diversion using bowel as compared to ureterocutaneostomy. Patients selected for a ureterocutaneostomy were older and had a higher ASA score, while their mean Charlson score was lower (4.2 vs. 5.6, p < 0.001) [332].

Despite the limited comparative data available, it must be taken into consideration that older data and clinical experience suggest ureter stenosis at the skin level and ascending UTI are more frequent complications in ureterocutaneostomy compared to an ileal conduit diversion. In a retrospective study comparing various forms of intestinal diversion, ileal conduits had fewer late complications than continent abdominal pouches or orthotopic neobladders [333].

7.4.4.2.2 Ileal conduit
The ileal conduit is still an established option with well-known/predictable results. However, up to 48% of patients develop early complications including UTIs, pyelonephritis, ureteroileal leakage and stenosis [333]. The main complications in long-term follow-up studies are stomal complications in up to 24% of cases and functional and/or morphological changes of the UUT in up to 30% [334-336]. An increase in complications was seen with longer follow-up in the Berne series of 131 patients who were followed for a minimum of five years (median follow-up 98 months) [337]; the rate of complications increased from 45% at five years to 94% in those surviving > 15 years. In the latter group, 50% of patients developed UUT changes and 38% developed urolithiasis.

7.4.4.2.3 Continent cutaneous urinary diversion
A low-pressure detubularised ileal reservoir can be used as a continent cutaneous urinary diversion for self-catheterisation; gastric, ileocecal and sigma pouches have also been described [338-340]. Different anti-reflux techniques can be used [341]. Most patients have a well-functioning reservoir with day-time and night-time continence approaching 93% [342]. In a retrospective study of > 800 patients, stomal stenosis was seen in 23.5% of patients with an appendix stoma and 15% of those with an efferent intussuscepted ileal nipple [342]. Stone formation in the pouch occurred in 10% of patients [341-343]. In a small series of previously irradiated female patients, incontinence and stomal stenosis was seen in 8/44 patients (18%) [344].

7.4.4.2.4 Ureterocolonic diversion
The oldest and most common form of ureterocolonic diversion was primarily a refluxive and later an anti-refluxive connection of ureters to the intact rectosigmoid colon (uretero-rectosigmoidostomy) [345, 346]. Most indications for this procedure have become obsolete due to a high incidence of upper UTIs and the long-term risk of developing colon cancer [313, 314]. Bowel frequency and urge incontinence are additional adverse effects of this type of urinary diversion. However, it may be possible to circumvent the above-mentioned problems by interposing a segment of ileum between the ureters and rectum or sigmoid in order to augment capacity and avoid direct contact between the urothelium and colonic mucosa, as well as faeces and urine [347].

7.4.4.2.5 Orthotopic neobladder
An orthotopic bladder substitution to the urethra is now commonly used both in men and women. Contemporary reports document the safety and long-term reliability of this procedure. In several large centres, this has become the diversion of choice for most patients undergoing cystectomy [189, 243, 321]. In elderly patients (> 80 years), however, it is rarely performed, even in high-volume expert centres [348, 349]. The terminal ileum is the gastrointestinal segment most often used for bladder substitution. There is less experience with the ascending colon, including the caecum, and the sigmoid [243]. Emptying of the reservoir anastomosed to the urethra requires abdominal straining, intestinal peristalsis, and sphincter relaxation. Early and late morbidity in up to 22% of the patients is reported [350, 351]. In two studies with 1,054 and 1,300 patients [321, 352], long-term complications included diurnal (8-10%) and nocturnal (20-30%) incontinence, ureterointestinal stenosis (3-18%), metabolic disorders, and vitamin B12 deficiency. In a recent study that compared cancer control and patterns of disease recurrence in patients with neobladder and ileal conduit, there was no
difference in CSS between the two groups when adjusting for pathological stage [353]. Urethral recurrence in neobladder patients seems rare (1.5-7% for both male and female patients) [321, 354]. These results indicate that neobladder in male and female patients does not compromise the oncological outcome of cystectomy. It remains debatable whether neobladder is better for QoL compared to non-continent urinary diversion [355-357].

Various forms of UUT reflux protection, including a simple isoperistaltic tunnel, ileal intussusception, tapered ileal prolongation implanted subserosally, and direct (sub)mucosal or subserosal ureteral implantation, have been described [341, 351]. According to the long-term results, the UUT is protected sufficiently by either method.

In conclusion, standard RC in male patients with bladder neoplasms includes removal of the entire bladder, prostate, seminal vesicles, distal ureters (segment length undefined), and corresponding LNs (extent undefined) (LE: 2b). In female patients, standard RC includes removal of the entire bladder, urethra and adjacent vagina, uterus, distal ureters, and corresponding LNs.

A detailed investigation of the bladder neck prior to RC is important for women who are scheduled for an orthotopic bladder substitute [358]. In women undergoing RC the rate of concomitant urethral malignancy has been reported to range from 12-16% [359]. Localisation of the primary tumour at the bladder neck correlated strongly with concomitant urethral malignancy. Additionally, the tumours were at higher risk of advanced stage and nodal involvement [360].

Currently, it is not possible to recommend a particular type of urinary diversion. However, most institutions prefer ileal orthotopic neobladders and ileal conduits, based on clinical experience [361, 362]. In selected patients, such as patients with a single kidney, ureterocutaneostomy is surgically the least burdensome type of diversion (LE: 3). Recommendations related to RC and urinary diversions are listed in section 7.5.

7.4.5 Morbidity and mortality

In three long-term studies, and one population-based cohort study, the peri-operative mortality was reported as 1.2-3.2% at 30 days and 2.3-8.0% at 90 days [189, 322, 324, 363, 364]. In a large single-centre series, early complications (within three months of surgery) were seen in 58% of patients [322]. Late morbidity was usually linked to the type of urinary diversion (see also above) [325, 365]. Early morbidity associated with RC for NMIBC (at high risk for disease progression) is similar and no less than that associated with muscle-invasive tumours [366]. In general, lower morbidity and (peri-operative) mortality have been observed by surgeons and in hospitals with a higher case load and therefore more experience [363, 367-371].
Table 7.6: Management of neobladder morbidity (30-64%) [372].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLAVIEN System</th>
<th>Morbidity</th>
<th>Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grade I</strong></td>
<td>Any deviation from the normal post-operative course without the need for pharmacological treatment or surgical, endoscopic and radiological interventions. Allowed therapeutic regimens are: drugs such as antiemetics, antipyretics, analgetics, diuretics and electrolytes and physiotherapy. This grade also includes wound infections opened at the bedside.</td>
<td><strong>Immediate complications:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Post-operative ileus</td>
<td>Nasogastric intubation (usually removed at J1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chewing gum</td>
<td>Avoid fluid excess and hypovolemia (provoke splanchnic hypoperfusion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Post-operative nausea and vomiting</td>
<td>Antiemetic agent (decrease opioids)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Urinary infection</td>
<td>Antibiotics (ATB), no ureteral catheter removal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nasogastric intubation (usually removed at J1)</td>
<td>Check the 3 drainages (ureters and neobladder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chewing gum</td>
<td>Avoid fluid excess and hypovolemia (provoke splanchnic hypoperfusion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Post-operative nausea and vomiting</td>
<td>Antiemetic agent (decrease opioids)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Urinary infection</td>
<td>Antibiotics (ATB), no ureteral catheter removal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nasogastric intubation</td>
<td>Check the 3 drainages (ureters and neobladder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ureteral catheter obstruction</td>
<td>Inject 5cc saline in the ureteral catheter to resolve the obstruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Increase volume infusion to increase diuresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>intra-abdominal urine leakage (anastomosis leakage)</td>
<td>Check drainages and watchful waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anaemia well tolerated</td>
<td>Martial treatment (give iron supplement)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Late complications:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non compressive lymphocele</td>
<td>Watchful waiting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucus cork</td>
<td>Cough</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indwelling catheter to remove the obstruction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incontinence</td>
<td>Urine analysis (infection), echography (post-void residual)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physiotherapy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retention</td>
<td>Drainage and self-catheterisation education</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grade II</strong></td>
<td>Requiring pharmacological treatment with drugs other than those allowed for grade I complications. Blood transfusions and total parenteral nutrition are also included.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anaemia badly tolerated or if myocardial cardiopathy history</td>
<td>Transfusion^{1,2}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary embolism</td>
<td>Heparinotherapy^{3}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyelonephritis</td>
<td>ATB and check kidney drainage (nephrostomy if necessary)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confusion or neurological disorder</td>
<td>Neuroleptics and avoid opioids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grade III</strong></td>
<td>Requiring surgical, endoscopic or radiological intervention</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ureteral catheter accidentally dislodged</td>
<td>Indwelling leader to raise the ureteral catheter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anastomosis stenosis (7%)</td>
<td>Renal drainage (ureteral catheter or nephrostomy)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ureteral reflux</td>
<td>No treatment if asymptomatic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>III-a</strong></td>
<td>Intervention not under general anaesthesia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compressive lymphocele</td>
<td>Transthecal drainage or intra-operative marsupialisation (cf grade III)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>III-b</strong></td>
<td>Intervention under general anaesthesia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ileal anastomosis leakage</td>
<td>Ileostomy, as soon as possible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evisceration</td>
<td>Surgery in emergency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compressive lymphocele</td>
<td>Surgery (marsupialisation)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Grade IV

| Life-threatening complication (including central nervous system complications: brain haemorrhage, ischaemic stroke, subarachnoid bleeding, but excluding transient ischaemic attacks) requiring intensive care/ intensive care unit management. |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Rectal necrosis  | Neobladder rupture | Colostomy       |
| Severe sepsis   | ATB and check all the urinary drainages and computed tomography scan in emergency |

**IV-a**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Single organ dysfunction (including dialysis)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-obstructive renal failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicarbonate/aetiology treatment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IV-b**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Multi-organ dysfunction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Obstructive pyelonephritis and septicaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephrostomy and ATB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Grade V

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Death of a patient</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Suffix ‘d’**

If the patient suffers from a complication at the time of discharge, the suffix “d” (for “disability”) is added to the respective grade of complication. This label indicates the need for a follow-up to fully evaluate the complication.

---

1. A recent SR showed that peri-operative blood transfusion (PBT) in patients who undergo RC correlates with increased all-cause mortality, cancer specific mortality and cancer recurrence. The authors hypothesised that this may be caused by the suggested immunosuppressive effect of PBT. The foreign antigens in transfused blood induce immune suppression, which may lead to tumour cell spread, tumour growth and reduced survival in already immunosuppressed cancer patients. As other possible causes for this finding increased post-operative infections and blood incompatibility were mentioned [373].

2. Intraoperative tranexamin acid infusion reduces peri-operative blood transfusion rates from 57.7% to 31.1%. There was no increase seen in peri-operative venous thromboembolism [374].

3. Hammond and co-workers reviewed 20,762 cases of venous thromboembolism (VTE) after major surgery and found cystectomy patients to have the second highest rate of VTE among all cancers studied [375]. These patients benefit from 30 days low-molecular-weight heparin prophylaxis. Subsequently, it was demonstrated that BMI > 30 and non-urothelial BCs are independently associated with VTE after cystectomy. In these patients extended (90 days) heparin prophylaxis should be considered [376].

### 7.4.6 Survival

According to a multi-institutional database of 888 consecutive patients undergoing RC for BC, the five-year recurrence-free survival was 58% and the CSS was 66% [377]. Recent external validation of post-operative nomograms for BC-specific mortality showed similar results, with bladder-CSS of 62% [378].

Recurrence-free survival and OS in a large single-centre study of 1,054 patients was 68% and 66% at five years and 60% and 43%, at ten years, respectively [176]. However, the five-year recurrence-free survival in node-positive patients who underwent cystectomy was considerably less at 34-43% [175, 176, 379]. In a surgery-only study, the five-year recurrence-free survival was 76% in patients with pT1 tumours, 74% for pT2, 52% for pT3, and 36% for pT4 [176].

A trend analysis according to the five-year survival and mortality rates of BC in the U.S.A., between 1973 and 2009 with a total of 148,315 BC patients, revealed an increased stage-specific five-year survival rate for all stages, except for metastatic disease [380].
7.4.7  **Summary of evidence and recommendations for radical cystectomy and urinary diversion**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For muscle-invasive bladder cancer, offer radical cystectomy as the curative treatment of choice.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A higher case load reduces morbidity and mortality of cystectomy.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radical cystectomy includes removal of regional lymph nodes.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are data to support that extended lymph node dissection (LND) (vs. standard or limited LND) improves survival after radical cystectomy.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radical cystectomy in both sexes must not include removal of the entire urethra in all cases, which may then serve as the outlet for an orthotopic bladder substitution. The terminal ileum and colon are the intestinal segments of choice for urinary diversion.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The type of urinary diversion does not affect oncological outcome.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopic cystectomy and robotic-assisted laparoscopic cystectomy are feasible but still investigational. Current best practice is open radical cystectomy.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients aged &gt; 80 years with MIBC, cystectomy is an option.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical outcome is influenced by comorbidity, age, previous treatment for bladder cancer or other pelvic diseases, surgeon and hospital volumes of cystectomy, and type of urinary diversion.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical complications of cystectomy and urinary diversion should be reported using a uniform grading system. Currently, the best-adapted, graded system for cystectomy is the Clavien grading system.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No conclusive evidence exists as to the optimal extent of LND.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not delay cystectomy for &gt; 3 months as it increases the risk of progression and cancer-specific mortality.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before cystectomy, fully inform the patient about the benefits and potential risks of all possible alternatives. The final decision should be based on a balanced discussion between the patient and the surgeon.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer an orthotopic bladder substitute or ileal conduit diversion to male and female patients lacking any contraindications and who have no tumour in the urethra or at the level of urethral dissection.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer pre-operative radiotherapy when subsequent cystectomy with urinary diversion is planned.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-operative bowel preparation is not mandatory. “Fast track” measurements may reduce the time of bowel recovery.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer radical cystectomy in T2-T4a, N0M0, and high-risk non-MIBC (as outlined above).</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a lymph node dissection as an integral part of cystectomy.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preserve the urethra if margins are negative.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check the urethra regularly if no bladder substitution is attached.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following EAU Working Panel consensus.*
7.5 Unresectable tumours

7.5.1 Palliative cystectomy for muscle-invasive bladder carcinoma

Locally advanced tumours (T4b, invading the pelvic or abdominal wall) may be accompanied by several debilitating symptoms, including bleeding, pain, dysuria and urinary obstruction. These patients are candidates for palliative treatments, such as palliative RT. Palliative cystectomy with urinary diversion carries the greatest morbidity and should be considered for symptom relief only if there are no other options [381-383].

Locally advanced MIBC can be associated with ureteral obstruction due to a combination of mechanical blockage by the tumour and invasion of ureteral orifices by tumour cells. In a series of 61 patients with obstructive uraemia, RC was not an option in 23 patients, and obstruction was relieved using permanent nephrostomy tubes [384]. Another ten patients underwent palliative cystectomy, but local pelvic recurrence occurred in all ten patients within the first year of follow-up. Another small study (n = 20) showed that primary cystectomy for T4 BC was technically feasible and associated with a very tolerable therapy-related morbidity and mortality [385].
7.5.1.1 Recommendations for unresectable tumours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer radical cystectomy as a palliative treatment to patients with inoperable</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locally advanced tumours (T4b).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer palliative cystectomy in patients with symptoms.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.5.2 Supportive care

7.5.2.1 Obstruction of the UUT

Unilateral (best kidney) or bilateral nephrostomy tubes provide the easiest solution for UUT obstruction, but patients find the tubes inconvenient and prefer ureteral stenting. However, stenting can be difficult to achieve, stents must be regularly replaced and there is the risk of stent obstruction or displacement. Another possible solution is a urinary diversion with, or without, a palliative cystectomy.

7.5.2.2 Bleeding and pain

In the case of bleeding, the patient must be screened first for coagulation disorders or the patient’s use of anticoagulant drugs must be reviewed. Transurethral (laser) coagulation may be difficult in a bladder full of tumour or with a bleeding tumour. Intravesical rinsing of the bladder with 1% silver nitrate or 1-2% alum can be effective [386]. It can usually be done without any anaesthesia. The instillation of formalin (2.5-4% for 30 minutes) is a more aggressive and painful procedure, requiring anaesthesia. Formalin instillation has a higher risk of side-effects, e.g. bladder fibrosis, but is more likely to control the bleeding [386]. Vesicoureteral reflux should be excluded to prevent renal complications.

Radiation therapy is another common strategy for control of bleeding, and is also used to control pain. An older study reported control of haematuria in 59% of patients and pain control in 73% [387]. Irritative bladder and bowel complaints due to irradiation are possible, but are usually mild. Non-conservative options are embolisation of specific arteries in the small pelvis, with success rates as high as 90% [386]. Radical surgery is a last resort and includes cystectomy and diversion (see above Section 7.5.1).

7.6 Bladder-sparing treatments for localised disease

7.6.1 Transurethral resection of bladder tumour (TURB)

Transurethral resection of bladder tumour alone in patients with muscle-invasive bladder tumours is only possible as a therapeutic option if tumour growth is limited to the superficial muscle layer and if re-staging biopsies are negative for residual (invasive) tumour [388]. In general, about half will still have to undergo RC for recurrent muscle-invasive cancer with a disease-specific mortality rate of up to 47% within this group [389]. A disease-free status at re-staging TURB appears to be crucial in making the decision not to perform RC [390, 391]. A prospective study by Solsona et al., which included 133 patients with radical TURB and re-staging negative biopsies, reported a fifteen-year follow-up [391]. Thirty per cent had recurrent NMIBC and went on to intravesical therapy, and 30% (n = 40) progressed, of which 27 died of BC. After five, ten and fifteen years the results showed a CSS of 81.9%, 79.5%, and 76.7%, respectively and PFS rates with an intact bladder of 75.5%, 64.9%, and 57.8%, respectively.

In conclusion, TURB alone should only be considered as a therapeutic option for muscle-invasive disease after radical TURB, when the patient is unfit for cystectomy or a multimodality bladder-preserving approach, or refuses open surgery [392].

7.6.1.1 Recommendation for transurethral resection of bladder tumour

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer transurethral resection of bladder tumour alone as a curative treatment option as most patients will not benefit.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.6.2 External beam radiotherapy (EBRT)

Current RT techniques with soft-tissue matching result in superior bladder coverage and a reduced integral dose to the surrounding tissues. The target dose for curative RT in BC is 60-66 Gy, with a subsequent boost using external RT or interstitial RT. The use of modern standard RT techniques results in major, related, late morbidity of the urinary bladder or bowel in less than 5% of tumour-free patients [393]. Acute diarrhoea is even more reduced with intensity-modulated RT [394]. Important prognostic factors for outcome include response to
RT, tumour size, hydronephrosis and completeness of the initial TURB. Additional prognostic factors reported were age and stage [395].

In 2007 long-term results were reported by Chung et al. [396]. A total of 340 patients with MIBC were treated with EBRT alone, EBRT with concurrent chemotherapy, or NAC followed by EBRT. The overall CR was 55% and the ten-year DSS and OS were 35% and 19%, respectively. Complete response was 64% after EBRT alone, 79% after concurrent chemotherapy (n = 36), and 52% after NAC (n = 57). Younger age, lower tumour stage and absence of CIS were associated with a significant improvement in survival.

A 2002 Cochrane analysis demonstrated that RC has an OS benefit compared to RT [397], although this was not the case in a 2014 retrospective review using a propensity score analysis [398].

In conclusion, EBRT can be an alternative treatment in patients unfit for radical surgery.

### 7.6.2.1 Summary of evidence and recommendation for external beam radiotherapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>External beam radiotherapy alone should only be considered as a therapeutic option when the patient is unfit for cystectomy or a multimodality bladder-preserving approach.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiotherapy can also be used to stop bleeding from the tumour when local control cannot be achieved by transurethral manipulation because of extensive local tumour growth.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer radiotherapy alone as primary therapy for localised bladder cancer.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.6.3 Chemotherapy

Chemotherapy alone rarely produces durable complete remissions. In general, a clinical CR rate of up to 56%, as reported in some series, which must be weighed against a staging error of > 60% [399, 400]. Response to chemotherapy is a prognostic factor for treatment outcome and eventual survival [199], though it may be confounded by patient selection.

Several groups have reported the effect of chemotherapy on resectable tumours (neoadjuvant approach), as well as unresectable primary tumours [197, 226, 401, 402]. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy with 2-3 cycles of MVAC or CMV has led to a downstaging of the primary tumour in different prospective series [197, 226, 401]. Pathological complete responses of primary bladder tumours were reached in 12-50% of patients after MVAC and in 12-22% of patients after gemcitabine/cisplatin (GC) in phase II and phase III trials [197, 226, 401, 403-410].

Contemporary series with GC followed by RC reported inferior pT0 rates, which may have been related to a lack of dose density and inappropriate delay of surgery [230].

For highly selected patients, a bladder-conserving strategy with TURB and systemic cisplatin-based chemotherapy, preferably with MVAC, may allow long-term survival with intact bladder [199]. However, this approach cannot be recommended for routine use.

### 7.6.3.1 Summary of evidence and recommendation for chemotherapy for muscle-invasive bladder tumours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>With cisplatin-based chemotherapy as primary therapy for locally advanced tumours in highly selected patients, complete and partial local responses have been reported.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer chemotherapy alone as primary therapy for localised bladder cancer.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.6.4 Multimodality bladder-preserving treatment

Multimodality treatment (MMT) or trimodality treatment combines TURB, chemotherapy and radiation. The rationale for performing TURB and radiation is to achieve local tumour control. The addition of systemic chemotherapy or other radiosensitisers (mentioned below) aims at the potentiation of RT. Micrometastases
are targeted by platinum-based combination chemotherapy and this topic is covered in the section on NAC (see Section 7.2). The aim of multimodality therapy is to preserve the bladder and QoL, without compromising outcome. A collaborative review addressed this approach [411].

There are no completed RCTs to compare the outcome of MMT with the gold standard, RC, but this approach has been shown to be superior to RT alone [412, 413]. Many of the reported series have differing characteristics as compared to the large surgical series which typically have median ages in the mid-late 60s compared to mid-70s for some large RT series (reviewed in [412]). In the case of MMT, two distinct patterns of care may be distinguished: treatment aimed at patients fit for cystectomy and treatment aimed at older, less fit patients. For the former category MMT presents selective bladder preservation. In that case, the initial step is a radical TURB, where as much tumour as possible should be resected. This implies that proper patient selection (T2 tumours, no CIS) is critical [414]. For patients who are not candidates for cystectomy, less stringent criteria can be applied, though extensive CIS and poor bladder function should both be regarded as strong contraindications.

Following TURB and staging, treatment comprises EBRT with concurrent radiosensitising drugs. Two schedules are in common use worldwide: a split dose format with interim cystoscopy is used in North America [414] whilst single-phase treatment is more commonly used elsewhere [412]. For radiosensitising chemotherapy, cisplatin [415] or mitomycin C plus 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) can be used [412], but also other schedules have been used. In particular, hypoxic cell sensitisation with nicotinamide and carbogen has been evaluated in a large phase III trial [416]. In a recent phase I trial gemcitabine was used [417]. The regimen was well tolerated with promising results.

With MMT, five-year CSS and OS rates are achieved from 50-82% and from 36-74% respectively [393, 412, 415, 416, 418-420]. Salvage cystectomy rates are 10-30% [412, 415, 420]. There are data that major complication rates are similar for salvage and primary cystectomy [421]. The majority of recurrences post-MMT are non invasive and can be managed conservatively [412]. The collaborative review comes to the conclusion that there are accumulating data suggesting that bladder preservation with MMT leads to acceptable outcomes and therefore may be considered a reasonable treatment option in well-selected patients as compared to RC [422]. It should also be considered in all patients where surgery is contraindicated, either relatively or absolutely as the factors that determine fitness for surgery and chemoradiotherapy differ.

A bladder-preserving multimodality strategy requires very close multidisciplinary co-operation and a high level of patient compliance. Even if a patient has shown a CR to a multimodality bladder-preserving strategy, the bladder remains a potential source of recurrence, hence long-term bladder monitoring is essential and patients should be counselled that this will be required. A recent subanalysis from two RTOG trials looked at CR (T0) and near CR (Ta or Tis) after MMT [423]. After a median follow up of 5.9 years 41/119 (35%) of these patients experienced a bladder recurrence, and fourteen required a salvage cystectomy. There was no difference between complete and near-complete responders.

### 7.6.4.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for multimodality treatment in muscle-invasive bladder cancer

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In a highly selected patient population, long-term survival rates of multimodality treatment are comparable to those of early cystectomy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer surgical intervention or multimodality treatments as primary curative therapeutic approaches since they are more effective than radiotherapy alone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer multimodality treatment as an alternative in selected, well-informed and compliant patients, especially for whom cystectomy is not an option.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.7 Adjuvant chemotherapy

Adjuvant chemotherapy after RC for patients with pT3/4 and/or LN positive (N+) disease without clinically detectable metastases (M0) is still under debate [421, 424] and is still infrequently used [193].

The general benefits of adjuvant chemotherapy include:

- chemotherapy is administered after accurate pathological staging, therefore treatment in patients at low risk for micrometastases is avoided;
- no delay in definitive surgical treatment.
The drawbacks of adjuvant chemotherapy are:

- assessment of *in vivo* chemosensitivity of the tumour is not possible and overtreatment is an unavoidable problem;
- delay or intolerability of chemotherapy, due to post-operative morbidity [425].

There is limited evidence from adequately conducted and accrued randomised phase III trials in favour of the routine use of adjuvant chemotherapy [424, 426-431]. Individual patient data from six randomised trials [420, 432-435] of adjuvant chemotherapy were included in one meta-analysis [426] with 491 patients for survival analysis (unpublished data from Otto et al., were included in the analysis). All these trials were suboptimal with serious deficiencies, including small sample size (underpowered), early cessation of patient entry, and flaws in design and statistical analysis, including irrelevant endpoints or a lack of recommendations concerning salvage chemotherapy for relapse or metastases [424]. In these trials, three or four cycles of CMV, cisplatin, cyclophosphamide, and adriamycin (CISCA), methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin or epirubicin, and cisplatin (MVA(E)C) and cisplatin and methotrexate (CM) were used [436], and one trial used cisplatin monotherapy [434]. These data were not convincing enough to give an unequivocal recommendation for the use of adjuvant chemotherapy.

In a 2014 meta-analysis [427], an additional three studies were included [428-430]. However, only 945 patients were included in this meta-analysis of nine trials, and none of the trials were fully accrued and no individual patient data were used [427]. For one trial, only an abstract was available at the time of the meta-analysis [429], and none of the included trials by themselves were significantly positive for OS in favour of adjuvant chemotherapy. In two of the trials, more modern chemotherapy regimens were used (gemcitabine/ cisplatin and paclitaxel/gemcitabine and cisplatin) [428, 429]. The HR for OS was 0.77 and there was a trend towards an OS benefit when including all nine trials. The effect was stronger for DFS (HR: 0.66; 95% CI: 0.48-0.92) and when stratified for the ratio of nodal positivity (HR: 0.64; 95% CI: 0.45-0.91). The background of this finding was heterogeneity in outcomes observed between the included studies. After stratification of the studies by the ratio of node positivity, no further heterogeneity was identified. The HR for DFS associated with adjuvant cisplatin-based chemotherapy in studies with higher nodal involvement was 0.39 (95% CI: 0.28-0.54), compared with 0.89 (95% CI: 0.69-1.15) in studies with less nodal involvement.

Furthermore, a retrospective cohort analysis that included 3,974 patients after cystectomy and LND showed an OS benefit in high-risk subgroups (extravesical extension and nodal involvement) [HR: 0.75; CI: 0.62-0.90] [437]. The most recent publication of the so far largest RCT (EORTC 30994), although not fully accrued, showed a significant improvement of PFS for immediate compared with deferred treatment (HR: 0.54; 95% CI: 0.4-0.73, p < 0.0001), there was, however, no significant OS benefit [438].

From the currently available evidence, it is still unclear whether immediate adjuvant chemotherapy or chemotherapy at the time of relapse is superior, or if the two approaches are equivalent with respect to the endpoint of OS. Cisplatin-based combination chemotherapy results in long-term DFS, even in metastatic disease, mainly in patients with LN metastases only, and with a good PS [407, 439, 440]. In the most recent meta-analysis, the positive role of adjuvant chemotherapy for BC has been strengthened, however, still with a poor level of evidence [427]. Patients should be informed about potential chemotherapy options before RC, including neoadjuvant and adjuvant chemotherapy, and the limited evidence for adjuvant chemotherapy.

### 7.7.1 Recommendation for adjuvant chemotherapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer adjuvant cisplatin-based combination chemotherapy to patients with pT3/4 and/or pN+ disease if no neoadjuvant chemotherapy has been given.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.8 Metastatic disease

#### 7.8.1 Introduction

Half of the patients with muscle-invasive UC relapse after RC, depending on the pathological stage of the primary tumour and the nodal status. Local recurrence accounts for 30% of relapses, whereas distant metastases are more common. Ten to fifteen percent of patients are already metastatic at diagnosis [441]. Before the development of effective chemotherapy, patients with metastatic UC rarely had a median survival that exceeded three-six months [442].

#### 7.8.1.1 Prognostic factors and treatment decisions

Prognostic factors are crucial for assessing phase II study results and stratifying phase III trials [405, 409].
In a multivariate analysis, Karnofsky PS of ≤ 80% and presence of visceral metastases were independent prognostic factors of poor survival after treatment with MVAC [409]. They have also been validated for newer combination chemotherapy regimens [443-445].

For patients refractory to, or progressing shortly after, platinum-based combination chemotherapy, four prognostic groups have been established, based on three adverse factors that have been developed in patients treated with vinflunine and that have been validated in an independent data set: Hb < 10 g/dL; presence of liver metastases; and ECOG PS ≥ 1 [446]. Cisplatin has also been administered in patients with a GFR as low as 40 mL/min., using different schedules. The respective studies were mostly small size phase I and II trials [447-450]. In one phase III trial the cut off for cisplatin eligibility was ≥ 50 mL/min [451].

7.8.1.2 Comorbidity in metastatic disease

Comorbidity is defined as “the presence of one or more disease(s) in addition to an index disease” (see Section 6.2.1). Comorbidity increases with age. However, chronological age does not necessarily correlate with functional impairment. Different evaluation systems are being used to screen patients as potentially fit or unfit for chemotherapy, but age alone should not be used to base treatment selection on [452].

7.8.1.3 Not eligible for cisplatin (unfit)

The EORTC conducted the first randomised phase II/III trial for urothelial carcinoma patients who were unfit for cisplatin chemotherapy [453]. The EORTC definitions were GFR < 60 mL/min and/or PS 2.

An international survey among BC experts [454] was the basis for a consensus statement on how to classify patients unfit for cisplatin-based chemotherapy. At least one of the following criteria has to be present: PS > 1; GFR ≤ 60 mL/min; grade ≥ 2 audiometric loss; peripheral neuropathy; and New York Heart Association (NYHA) class III heart failure [455].

More than 50% of patients with UC are not eligible for cisplatin-based chemotherapy [456-459].

Renal function assessment in UC is of utmost importance for treatment selection. Calculation of creatinine clearance (CrCl) (24-h urine collection) with current formulae tend to underestimate clearance in patients aged > 65 years compared to measured CrCl [456, 460].

7.8.2 Single-agent chemotherapy

Response rates to single-agent, first-line chemotherapy vary. The most robust data have shown a response rate of about 25% for first- and second-line gemcitabine in several phase II trials [461, 462]. Responses with single agents are usually short-lived, complete responses are rare and no long-term DFS has been reported. The median survival in such patients is only six-nine months.

7.8.3 Standard first-line chemotherapy for fit patients

Cisplatin-containing combination chemotherapy has been the standard of care since the late 1980s (for a review see [463]). Methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin plus cisplatin MVAC and GC prolonged survival to up to 14.8 and 13.8 months, respectively, compared to monotherapy and older combinations. Neither of the two combinations is superior to the other, but equivalence has not been tested. Response rates were 46% and 49% for MVAC and GC, respectively. The long-term survival results have confirmed the anticipated equivalence of the two regimens [439]. The major difference between the above-mentioned combinations is toxicity. The lower toxicity of GC [158] has resulted in it becoming a new standard regimen [464]. Methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin plus cisplatin is better tolerated when combined with granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF) [464, 465].

High-dose intensity MVAC (HD-MVAC) combined with G-CSF is less toxic and more efficacious than standard MVAC in terms of dose density, complete response, and two-year survival rate. However, there is no significant difference in median survival between the two regimens [466, 467]. In general, all disease sites have been shown to respond to cisplatin-based combination chemotherapy. A response rate of 66% and 77% with MVAC and HD-MVAC, respectively, has been reported in retroperitoneal LNs vs. 29% and 33% at extranodal sites [466]. The disease sites also have an impact on long-term survival. In lymph-node-only disease, 20.9% of patients were alive at five years compared to only 6.8% of patients with visceral metastases [439].

Further intensification of treatment using the new paclitaxel, cisplatin and gemcitabine (PCG) triple regimen did not result in a significant improvement in OS in the intent-to-treat (ITT) population of a large randomised phase III trial, comparing PCG triple regimen to GC [468]. However, the overall response rate (ORR) was higher with the triple regimen (56% vs. 44%; p = 0.0031), and the trend for OS improvement in the ITT population (15.8 vs. 12.7 months; HR = 0.85, p = 0.075) became significant in the eligible population. Adding paclitaxel to GC did not induce major additional side effects. Grade 4 neutropenia was more common (35.8% vs. 20% for GC), as
was febrile neutropenia (13.2% vs. 4.3%), and the need for G-CSF was higher (17% vs. 11%). Gemcitabine/cisplatin alone caused more G4 thrombocytopenia and thrombocytopenia-induced bleeding (11.4% vs. 6.8%). Paclitaxel, cisplatin and gemcitabine is an additional option for first-line treatment of UC.

7.8.4 Carboplatin-containing chemotherapy for fit patients
Carboplatin-containing chemotherapy is not equivalent to cisplatin combinations, and should not be considered interchangeable or standard. Several randomised phase II trials of carboplatin vs. cisplatin combination chemotherapy have produced lower CR rates and shorter OS for the carboplatin arms [469].

7.8.5 Non-platinum combination chemotherapy
Different combinations of gemcitabine and paclitaxel have been studied as first- and second-line treatments. Apart from severe pulmonary toxicity with a weekly schedule of both drugs, this combination is well tolerated and produces response rates between 38% and 60% in both lines. Non-platinum combination chemotherapy has not been compared to standard cisplatin chemotherapy in randomised trials, therefore, it is not recommended for first-line use in cisplatin-eligible patients [470-477].

7.8.6 Chemotherapy in patients unfit for cisplatin
Up to 50% of patients are ineligible for cisplatin-containing chemotherapy [455]. The first randomised phase II/III trial in this setting was conducted by the EORTC and compared methotrexate/carboplatin/vinblastine (M-CAVI) and carboplatin/gemcitabine (GemCarbo) in patients unfit for cisplatin. Both regimens were active. Severe acute toxicity (SAT) was 13.6% in patients treated with GemCarbo vs. 23% with M-CAVI, while the ORR was 42% for GemCarbo and 30% for M-CAVI. Further analysis showed that in patients with PS 2 and impaired renal function, combination chemotherapy provided limited benefit [453]. The ORR and SAT were both 26% for the former group, and 20% and 24%, respectively, for the latter group [453]. Phase III data have confirmed these results [445].

7.8.7 Second-line treatment
Second-line chemotherapy data are highly variable and prognostic factors have been established recently (see Section 7.8.1.1) [446]. A reasonable strategy may be to re-challenge former cisplatin-sensitive patients if progression occurs at least six to twelve months after first-line cisplatin-based combination chemotherapy. Second-line response rates of paclitaxel (weekly), docetaxel, nab-paclitaxel [478] oxaliplatin, ifosfamide, topotecan, pemetrexed, lapatinib, gefitinib and bortezomib have ranged between 0% and 28% in small phase II trials [462, 479, 480]. Although gemcitabine has also shown excellent response rates in second-line use, most patients already receive this drug as part of their front-line treatment [461]. Paclitaxel/gemcitabine studies have shown response rates of 38-60%. No randomised phase III trial with an adequate comparator arm has been conducted to assess the true value and OS benefit of this second-line combination [442, 476, 481].

Vinflunine, a novel third-generation vinca alkaloid, provided promising results in phase II trials [482]. A randomised phase III trial compared vinflunine plus best supportive care (BSC) against BSC alone in patients progressing after first-line treatment with platinum-containing combination chemotherapy for metastatic disease [483]. The results showed a modest ORR (8.6%), a clinical benefit with a favourable safety profile and, most importantly, a survival benefit in favour of vinflunine, which was statistically significant in the eligible patient population (not in the ITT population). For second-line treatment of advanced or metastatic UC, this trial reached the highest level of evidence ever reported. Currently, in Europe, vinflunine is the only approved second-line treatment. Vinflunine has not been approved for this indication in the United States.

7.8.8 Low-volume disease and post-chemotherapy surgery
With cisplatin-containing combination chemotherapy, excellent response rates may be obtained in patients with LN but no other metastases, good PS, and adequate renal function, including a high number of CRs, with up to 20% of patients achieving long-term DFS [439, 467, 484, 485]. The role of surgery after chemotherapy is still unclear. Although some studies suggest a survival benefit and QoL improvement, the level of evidence supporting this practice is very limited [486-500]. A retrospective study of post-chemotherapy surgery after a partial or complete response has indicated that surgery may contribute to long-term DFS in selected patients [410, 501, 502].
Treatment of bone metastases

The prevalence of metastatic bone disease (MBD) in patients with advanced/metastatic UC is 30-40% [503]. Skeletal complications due to MBD have a detrimental effect on pain and QoL and are also associated with increased mortality [504]. Bisphosphonates reduce and delay skeletal-related events (SREs) due to bone metastases by inhibiting bone resorption. In a small pilot study in patients with BC, SREs caused by bone metastases were delayed [505]. Denosumab is a fully human monoclonal antibody that binds to and neutralises RANKL (receptor activator of nuclear factor-KB ligand), thereby inhibiting osteoclast function and preventing generalised bone resorption and local bone destruction. Denosumab is not inferior to zoledronic acid (ZA) in preventing or delaying SREs in patients with advanced MBD, including patients with UC [506]. Denosumab has recently been approved by the European Medicines Agency (EMA) for treatment of patients with bone metastases from solid tumours. Patients with MBD, irrespective of the cancer type, should be considered for bone-targeted treatment [504].

Patients treated with ZA or denosumab should be informed about possible side effects and receive prophylactic treatment for jaw osteonecrosis and hypocalcaemia, which is more common with denosumab. Aggressive calcium and vitamin D supplementation is recommended. Dosing regimens of ZA should follow regulatory recommendations and should be adjusted according to pre-existing medical conditions [507]. For denosumab, no dose adjustments are required for variations in renal function.

Role of immunotherapy

Immunomodulatory therapies using checkpoint inhibition, particularly with antibodies directed against the programmed cell death-1 (PD-1) protein or its ligand (PD-L1) have been tested. Atezolizumab, the first PD-L1 inhibitor was approved by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in May 2016 for patients that have progressed during or after previous platinum-based chemotherapy. In a phase-II two-cohort study including 310 patients, the objective response rate was 15% independent of the expression of PD-L1. Progression-free survival was 2.1 and OS was 7.9 months. According to the expression level of PD-L1 numbers for response rate, PFS and OS were greater for patients with high expression but responses occurred also in patients with no expression of PD-L1. The toxicity profile of atezolizumab was favourable. Results of the phase III trial (NCT02302807) comparing atezolizumab with second-line chemotherapy are pending [508, 509].

Summary of evidence and recommendations for metastatic disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In a first-line setting, performance status (PS) and the presence or absence of visceral metastases are independent prognostic factors for survival.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a second-line setting, negative prognostic factors are: liver metastasis, PS ≥ 1 and low haemoglobin (&lt; 10 g/dL)</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisplatin-containing combination chemotherapy can achieve median survival of up to 14 months, with long-term disease-free survival reported in ~15% of patients with nodal disease and good PS.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single-agent chemotherapy provides low response rates of usually short duration.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carboplatin combination chemotherapy is less effective than cisplatin-based chemotherapy in terms of complete response and survival.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-platinum combination chemotherapy produces substantial responses in first- and second-line settings.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-platinum combination chemotherapy has not been tested against standard chemotherapy inpatients who are fit or unfit for cisplatin combination chemotherapy.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no defined standard chemotherapy for unfit patients with advanced or metastatic urothelial cancer (UC).</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vinflunine reaches the highest level of evidence ever reported for second-line use.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-chemotherapy surgery after partial or complete response may contribute to long-term disease-free survival in selected patients.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zoledronic acid and denosumab have been approved for all cancer types including UC, because they reduce and delay skeletal related events in metastatic bone disease.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PD-L1 inhibitor atezolizumab has been FDA approved for patients that have progressed during or after previous platinum-based chemotherapy based on the results of a phase-II trial.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First-line treatment for fit patients:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use cisplatin-containing combination chemotherapy with GC, MVAC, preferably with G-CSF, HD-MVAC with G-CSF or PCG.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use carboplatin and non-platinum combination chemotherapy.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>First-line treatment in patients ineligible (unfit) for cisplatin:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use carboplatin combination chemotherapy or single agents.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For cisplatin- ineligible (unfit) patients, with performance status 2 or impaired renal function, as well as those with 0 or 1 poor Bajorin prognostic factors and impaired renal function, offer carboplatin-containing combination chemotherapy, preferably with gemcitabine/carboplatin.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second-line treatment:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer vinflunine to patients progressing after platinum-based combination chemotherapy for metastatic disease. Alternatively, offer treatment within a clinical trial setting.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer zoledronic acid or denosumab to treat bone metastases.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Grade A recommendation is weakened since the key studies did not reach statistical significance.

GC = gemcitabine plus cisplatin; G-CSF = granulocyte colony-stimulating factor; MVAC = methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin plus cisplatin; HD MVAC = high-dose methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin plus cisplatin; PCG = paclitaxel, cisplatin, gemcitabine.

7.8.12 Biomarkers

Modest disease control rates, with sporadic marked responses, in some patients with UC have led to the investigation of biomarkers for assessment of post-operative prognosis and the potential value of peri-operative chemotherapy, and as predictors of response to chemotherapy or its monitoring. Most of the biomarkers are associated with tumour angiogenesis. Small studies, usually retrospective, have investigated microvessel density, altered p53 tumour expression [510], serum vascular endothelial growth factor [511], urinary and tissue basic fibroblast growth factor [512], urinary (wild-type and mutant) and tissue fibroblast growth factor receptor-3 [513], and more recently, thrombospondin-1 [514], circulating tumour cells [515, 516], and multidrug resistance gene expression [517]. Although a few biomarkers have shown potential, as yet, there is insufficient evidence to support their routine clinical use (LE: 3).

7.8.12.1 Recommendation for the use of biomarkers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not use biomarkers in daily clinical practice since they have no impact on predicting outcome, treatment decisions, or monitoring therapy in muscle-invasive bladder cancer.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.
7.9 Quality of life

7.9.1 Introduction

The evaluation of HRQoL considers physical, psychological, emotional and social functioning.

Several questionnaires have been validated for assessing HRQoL in patients with BC, including FACT (Functional Assessment of Cancer Therapy)-G [518], EORTC QLQ-C30 [519], EORTC QLQ-BLM (muscle-invasive BC module) [520], and SF (Short Form)-36 [521, 522] and recently the BCI questionnaire specifically designed and validated for BC patients [523].

A psychometric test, such as the FACT-BL, should be used for recording BC morbidity. New intensive interviewing techniques have added valuable information to our knowledge of HRQoL, which greatly depends on patients’ individual preferences [524].

7.9.2 Choice of urinary diversion

There is controversy about which type of urinary diversion is best for a patient’s HRQoL [243]. Most patients stated that, given a choice, they would still opt for an orthotopic diversion rather than an ileal conduit [525]. Another study reported that, although urinary function is better in conduit patients, at long-term follow up (> 1 year) the urinary bother is the same in both diversion groups.
A SR based on 18 studies showed a slight, but not significant, better QoL in patients with an orthotopic diversion [526]. However, analysing only the studies comparing exclusively ileal conduit vs. ileal orthotopic neobladder, the advantage in QoL of the latter group was significant.

Due to improved surgical techniques in orthotopic bladder substitution, some recent studies are supportive of continent bladder substitutes [362, 520, 527]. Patients with an orthotopic substitution had significantly better physical function and a more active lifestyle compared to patients with an ileal conduit. It is important to note that HRQoL parameters are independent prognostic factors for OS [528]. Patients with a continent bladder-substitute generally scored more favourably than those with an incontinent diversion, as judged by body image, social activity and physical function [527, 529]. Note that all studies investigated mostly male patients. Also of interest is the urinary bother in female neobladder. Bartsch and co-workers found in 56 female patients day-time and night-time incontinence rates of respectively 29.6% and 35.2%. Thirty-five patients (62.5%) performed clean intermittent catheterisation, which is much worse compared to male neobladder patients. Moreover, patients with non-organ-confined disease (p = 0.04) and patients with a college degree (p = 0.001) showed worse outcome on HRQoL scores [530].

Nevertheless, the HRQoL outcome is most likely a result of good patient selection. An older more isolated patient is probably better served with an ileal conduit whereas a younger patient with more interest in body image and sexuality is better off with an orthotopic diversion.

7.9.3 Non-curative or metastatic bladder cancer

In non-curative or metastatic BC, HRQoL is reduced because of associated micturition problems, bleeding, pain and therefore disturbance of social and sexual life [531]. There is limited literature describing HRQoL in BC patients receiving palliative care [532], but there are reports of bladder-related symptoms relieved by palliative surgery [385], RT [533], and/or chemotherapy [534].

Alternative definitive treatments of MIBC, e.g. trimodality bladder-sparing procedures, have shown similar survival times compared to cystectomy. However, the impact on HRQoL has been controversial [136, 393, 535-538].

7.9.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for health-related quality of life

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No randomised, prospective health-related quality of life (HRQoL) study has evaluated the different forms of definitive treatment for MIBC.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In most patient groups studied, the overall HRQoL after cystectomy remains good, irrespective of the type of urinary diversion used. The suggestion that continent diversions are associated with a better HRQoL has not been sufficiently substantiated.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Important determinants of (subjective) quality of life are a patient’s personality, coping style and social support.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use validated questionnaires to assess HRQoL in patients with MIBC.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer a continent urinary diversion unless a patient’s comorbidities, tumour variables and coping abilities present clear contraindications.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-operative patient information, patient selection, surgical techniques, and careful post-operative follow-up are the cornerstones for achieving good long-term results.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encourage patients to actively participate in the decision-making process.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provide clear and exhaustive information on all potential benefits and side-effects, allowing patients to make informed decisions.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. FOLLOW-UP

8.1 Introduction
An appropriate schedule for disease monitoring should be based on:
• natural timing of recurrence;
• probability and site of recurrence;
• functional monitoring after urinary diversion;
• possible treatment of recurrence [539].

Nomograms on CSS following RC have been developed and externally validated. However, their wider use cannot be recommended until further data becomes available [540, 541].

Surveillance protocols are commonly based on patterns of recurrence observed from retrospective series. Diagnosis of asymptomatic recurrence based on routine oncological follow-up and results from retrospective studies are controversial [542, 543]. Importantly, these retrospective studies use different follow-up regimens and imaging techniques that make final analysis and conclusive recommendations difficult. Prospective trials demonstrating the effectiveness of follow up after RC and its impact on OS are lacking [544].

8.2 Site of recurrence

8.2.1 Local recurrence
Local recurrence takes place in soft tissues at the original surgical site or LNs in the area of LND. Lymph node involvement above the aortic bifurcation can be considered metastatic recurrence [542].

Contemporary cystectomy has a 5-15% probability of pelvic recurrence. Most recurrence manifests during the first 24 months, often within six to eighteen months after surgery. However, late recurrence can occur up to five years after cystectomy. Pathological stage and LN status are predictive for pelvic recurrence, as well as positive margins, extent of LND, and peri-operative chemotherapy [545].

Patients have poor prognosis after pelvic recurrence. Even with treatment, the median survival ranges from four to eight months following diagnosis. Definitive therapy can prolong survival, but mostly provides significant palliation of symptoms. Treatment comprises systemic chemotherapy, local surgery, or RT [544].

8.2.2 Distant recurrence
Distant recurrence is seen in up to 50% of patients treated with cystectomy. Stage and nodal involvement are risk factors [546]. Systemic recurrence is more common in locally advanced disease (pT3/4), ranging from 32 to 62%, and in patients with LN involvement (range 52-70%) [547].

The most likely sites for distant recurrence are LNs, lungs, liver and bone. Nearly 90% of distant recurrence appears within the first three years after RC, mainly in the first two years, although late recurrence has been described after > 10 years. Median survival of patients with progressive disease treated with platinum-based chemotherapy is 9-26 months [548-550].

Despite periodic monitoring, > 50% of metastases are diagnosed after symptom appearance.

The value of monitoring in diagnosis of asymptomatic metastases and its impact on survival is questionable. Some studies have demonstrated no impact on survival despite using routine monitoring, although others have suggested that diagnosis of asymptomatic metastases, especially in the lungs, improves survival [542, 543]. Consideration must also be given to the possibility of longer survival in patients with minimal metastatic disease undergoing multimodal treatment, including metastasectomy. There are reports of survival rates of 28-33% at five years in patients undergoing resection of metastases after objective response to chemotherapy [495, 502].

The incidence of new urethral tumours after RC is 1.5-6.0% in men, with a mean recurrence-free interval of 13.5-39.0 months and median survival of 28-38 months, of which > 50% die from systemic disease.

Secondary urethral tumours are likely to occur at one to three years after surgery. Prophylactic urethrectomy at cystectomy is no longer justified in most patients. Independent predictors for urethral recurrence are: cystectomy for NMIBC, prostate involvement, and history of recurrent NMIBC [544].

In women, the main risk factor is bladder neck disease. Many studies have demonstrated that the risk of urethral recurrence after orthotopic diversion (0.9-4.0%) [551-554] is significantly less than after non-orthotopic diversion (6.4-11.1%) [545, 551, 553].
There is limited data and agreement about urethral follow-up, with some recommending routine surveillance with urethral wash and urine cytology [554], and others doubting the need for routine urethral surveillance [552, 555, 556]. Urethral washes and urine cytology do not appear to affect survival [555, 557]. However, there is a significant survival advantage in men with urethral recurrence diagnosed asymptptomatically vs. symptomatically, so follow-up of the male urethra is indicated in patients at risk of urethral recurrence [544].

Treatment is influenced by local stage and grade of urethral occurrence:
- in urethral CIS, BCG instillations have success rates of 83% [554];
- in invasive disease, urethrectomy should be performed if the urethra is the only site of disease;
- in distant disease, systemic chemotherapy is indicated [558].

Upper urinary urothelial carcinomas occur in 1.8-6.0% of cases and represent the most common sites of late recurrence (three years DFS following RC). Median OS is 10-55 months, and 60-67% of patients die of metastatic disease [544].

A meta-analysis found that 38% of UTUC recurrence was diagnosed by follow-up investigation, whereas in the remaining 62%, diagnosis was based on symptoms. When urine cytology was used in surveillance, the rate of primary detection was 7% and 29.6% with UUT imaging [559]. This meta-analysis concluded that patients with non-invasive cancer are twice as likely to have UTUC as patients with invasive disease. Multifocality increases the risk of recurrence by three-fold, while positive ureteral or urethral margins increase the risk by seven-fold. Radical nephroureterectomy can prolong survival [560].

### Summary of evidence and recommendations for specific recurrence sites

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site of recurrence</th>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local recurrence</td>
<td>Poor prognosis. Treatment should be individualised depending on the local extent of tumour.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>Offer radiotherapy, chemotherapy and possibly surgery as options for treatment, either alone or in combination.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distant recurrence</td>
<td>Poor prognosis.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>Offer chemotherapy as the first option, and consider metastasectomy in case of unique metastasis site.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary urethral tumour</td>
<td>Staging and treatment should be done as for primary urethral tumour.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Use local conservative treatment for non-invasive tumour.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Offer urethrectomy in isolated invasive disease.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Do not use urethral washes and cytology.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although general recommendations are not advised based on high level of evidence, closer follow-up could be considered in patients with locally advanced disease or LN involvement. The suggested follow-up includes four-monthly CT scans during the first year, six-monthly until the third year, and annual imaging thereafter.

Patients with multifocal disease, NMIBC with CIS or positive ureteral margins are at higher risk of developing UTUC which can develop late (> 3 years). In those cases, monitoring of the UUT is mandatory during follow-up. Computed tomography is to be used to assess the UUT [559].

### Follow-up of functional outcomes and complications

Apart from oncological surveillance, patients having undergone a urinary diversion deserve functional follow up. Complications related to urinary diversion are detected in 45% of patients during the first five years of follow up.

This rate increases over time, and exceeds 54% after fifteen years of follow up. Therefore, long-term follow up of functional outcomes is desirable [544] (LE: 3), and may stop after fifteen years.

The functional complications are diverse and include: vitamin B12 deficiency, metabolic acidosis, worsening of
renal function, urinary infections, urolithiasis, stenosis of uretero-intestinal anastomosis, stoma complications in patients with ileal conduit, neobladder continence problems, and emptying dysfunction [S44]. Especially in women, approximately two-thirds need to catheterise their neobladder, while almost 45% do not void spontaneously at all [S30]. Recently a 21% increased risk of fractures was described as compared to no cystectomy, due to chronic metabolic acidosis and subsequent long-term bone loss [S61].

9. REFERENCES


345. Simon, J. Ectopia Vesicae (Absence of the anterior walls of the Bladder and the pubic abdominal parietes) Operation for directing the orifices of the ureteres into the rectum, temporary success) JAMA 1911. 1911: 398. [No abstract available].

346. Coffey, R.C. Physiologic implantation of the severed ureter or common bile-duct into the intestine. JAMA, 1911. LVI: 397. 
http://dx.doi.org/10.1001/jama.1911.02560060007002


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20399461


10. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the Muscle-invasive and Metastatic Bladder Cancer Guidelines Working Group have provided disclosure statements of all relationships that they have that might be perceived as a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publicly accessible through the European Association of Urology website: https://uroweb.org/guideline/bladder-cancer-muscle-invasive-and-metastatic/?type=panel.

This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Primary Urethral Carcinoma

Guidelines Associates: M. Bruins, E. Linares Espinós, M. Rouanne, Y. Neuzillet, E. Veskimäe

© European Association of Urology 2017
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Aims and scope</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Panel composition</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Publication history and summary of changes</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1 Summary of changes</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. METHODS</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Data identification</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Review</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 Future goals</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Epidemiology</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Aetiology</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 Histopathology</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1 Tumour, Node, Metastasis (TNM) staging system</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2 Tumour grade</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION AND STAGING</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1 History</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2 Clinical examination</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3 Urinary cytology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4 Diagnostic urethrocystoscopy and biopsy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5 Radiological imaging</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6 Regional lymph nodes</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. PROGNOSIS</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1 Long-term survival after primary urethral carcinoma</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2 Predictors of survival in primary urethral carcinoma</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. DISEASE MANAGEMENT</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1 Treatment of localised primary urethral carcinoma in males</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2 Treatment of localised urethral carcinoma in females</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.1 Urethrectomy and urethra-sparing surgery</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.2 Radiotherapy</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3 Multimodal treatment in advanced urethral carcinoma in both genders</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1 Preoperative platinum-based chemotherapy</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.2 Preoperative chemoradiotherapy in locally advanced squamous cell carcinoma of the urethra</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4 Treatment of urothelial carcinoma of the prostate</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. FOLLOW-UP</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. REFERENCES</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. CONFLICT OF INTEREST</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aims and scope
The aim of these guidelines is to deliver current evidence-based information on the diagnosis and treatment of patients with primary urethral carcinoma (UC). When the first carcinoma in the urinary tract is detected in the urethra, this is defined as primary UC, in contrast to secondary UC, which presents as recurrent carcinoma in the urethra after prior diagnosis and treatment of carcinoma elsewhere in the urinary tract. Most often, secondary UC is reported after radical cystectomy for bladder cancer [1, 2] (see Chapter 7.4 of the EAU Guidelines on Muscle-invasive and Metastatic Bladder Cancer (MIBC) [2]).

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account.

Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition
The EAU Guidelines Panel on MIBC is responsible for this publication. This is an international multidisciplinary group of clinicians, including urologists, a pathologist, an oncologist and a radiologist. Members of this panel have been selected based on their expertise to represent the professionals treating patients suspected of suffering from urethral carcinoma. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements, which can be viewed on the EAU Website Uroweb: www.uroweb.org/guideline/primary-urethral-carcinoma/.

1.3 Publication history and summary of changes
The Primary Urethral Carcinoma Guidelines were first published in 2013 [3]. This is the third update of this document.

1.3.1 Summary of changes
The literature for the complete document has been assessed and updated, where relevant.

2. METHODS

2.1 Data identification
For the 2017 Primary urethral Carcinoma Guidelines, new and relevant evidence has been identified, collated and appraised through a structured assessment of the literature. An updated systematic literature search was performed to identify studies reporting data on urethral malignancies since the prior search, covering a time frame between January 1st 2014 and September 20th, 2016. Databases searched included Ovid (Medline), EMBASE and the Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials and Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. A total of 309 records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance. A detailed search strategy is available online:

Recommendations in this text are assessed according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [4]. Additional methodology information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guidelines/.

A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed on line at the above address.

2.2 Review
This document was peer-reviewed prior to publication in 2015.
2.3 Future goals
The MIBC Guidelines Panel aims to systematically address the following key clinical topics for future updates of the Primary Urethral Carcinoma Guidelines:

- assessment of the accuracy of radiological imaging (MRI) for local staging of primary UC and its predictive value on clinical decision-making;
- the (long-term) efficacy of urethral-sparing surgery and radiochemotherapy for genital preservation in localised tumours;
- the prognostic impact of neoadjuvant and adjuvant treatment modalities in locally advanced disease.

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY

3.1 Epidemiology
Primary UC is considered a rare cancer, accounting for < 1% of all malignancies [5] (ICD-O3 topography code: C68.0 [6]). In early 2008, the prevalence of UC in the 27 European Union countries was 4,292 cases with an estimated annual incidence of 655 new cases [7]. The age-standardised ratio was 1.1 per million inhabitants (1.6/million in men and 0.6/million in women; with a male to female ratio of 2.9) [7]. There were differences between European regions; potentially caused by registration or classification [7]. Likewise, in an analysis of the Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results (SEER) database, the incidence of primary UC peaked in the > 75 years age group (7.6/million). The age-standardised rate was 4.3/million in men and 1.5/million in women, and was almost negligible in those aged < 55 years (0.2/million) [8].

3.2 Aetiology
For male primary UC, various predisposing factors have been reported, including urethral strictures [9, 10], chronic irritation after intermittent catheterisation/urethroplasty [11-13], external beam irradiation therapy [14], radioactive seed implantation [15], and chronic urethral inflammation/urethritis following sexually transmitted diseases (i.e. condylomata associated with human papilloma virus 16) [16, 17]. In female UC, urethral diverticula [18-20] and recurrent urinary tract infections [21] have been associated with primary UC. Clear cell adenocarcinoma (AC) may also have a congenital origin [22, 23].

3.3 Histopathology
Both the Surveillance of Rare Cancers in Europe (RARECARE) project and SEER database have reported that urothelial carcinoma of the urethra is the predominant histological type of primary urethral cancer (54-65%), followed by squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) (16-22%) and AC (10-16%) [7, 8]. A recent SEER analysis of 2,065 men with primary UC (mean age: 73 years) found that UC was most common (78%), and SCC (12%) and AC (5%) were significantly less frequent [24]. In women, a recent report of the Dutch National Cancer Registry on primary urethral cancer reported that UC occurred in 45% of cases, followed by AC in 29%, SCC in 19%, and other histological entities in 6% [25].
4. STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS

4.1 Tumour, Node, Metastasis (TNM) staging system
In men and women, UC is classified according to the 8th edition of the TNM classification [6] (Table 4.1). It should be noted that there is a separate TNM staging system for prostatic UC [6]. Of note, for cancers occurring in the urethral diverticulum, stage T2 is not applicable as urethral diverticula are lacking periurethral muscle [26].

Table 4.1: TNM classification (8th edition) for urethral carcinoma (UC) [6]
Primary tumour stage is separated into UC and UC of the prostate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumour invades any of the following structures: corpus spongiosum, prostate, periurethral muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumour invades any of the following structures: corpus cavernosum, beyond prostatic capsule, anterior vagina, bladder neck (extraprostatic extension)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumour invades other adjacent organs (invasion of the bladder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ, involvement of prostatic urethra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis pu</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ, involvement of prostatic urethra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis pd</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ, involvement of prostatic ducts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue (for tumours involving prostatic urethra only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumour invades any of the following: prostatic stroma, corpus spongiosum, periurethral muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumour invades any of the following: corpus cavernosum, beyond prostatic capsule, bladder neck (extraprostatic extension)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumour invades other adjacent organs (invasion of the bladder or rectum)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2 Tumour grade
The former World Health Organization (WHO) grading system of 1973 which differentiated urothelial carcinomas into three different grades (G1-G3) has been replaced by the grading system of 2004 that differentiates urothelial UC into papillary urothelial neoplasm of low malignant potential (PUNLMP), low grade and high grade. Non-urothelial UC is graded by a trinomial system that differentiates between well-differentiated (G1), moderately-differentiated (G2), and poorly-differentiated tumours (G3). Table 4.2 lists the different grading systems according to the WHO 1973 and 2004 systems [27]. The 2004 classification corresponds to the new 2016 WHO classification [28].
Table 4.2: Histopathological grading of urothelial and non-urothelial primary urethral carcinoma [27]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PUNLMP Papillary urothelial neoplasm of low malignant potential</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low grade</td>
<td>Well differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High grade</td>
<td>Poorly differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-urothelial urethral carcinoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gx</td>
<td>Tumour grade not assessable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G1</td>
<td>Well differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G2</td>
<td>Moderately differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G3</td>
<td>Poorly differentiated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendation

Use the 2017 TNM classification and 2004/2016 WHO grading systems for pathological staging and grading of primary urethral carcinoma.

5. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION AND STAGING

5.1 History

When becoming clinically apparent, most patients (45-57%) with primary UC present with symptoms associated with locally advanced disease (T3/T4) [26, 27, 29]. At initial presentation visible haematuria or bloody urethral discharge is reported in up to 62% of the cases. Further symptoms of locally advanced disease include; an extraurethral mass (52%), bladder outlet obstruction (48%), pelvic pain (33%), urethrocutaneous fistula (10%), abscess formation (5%) or dyspareunia [29].

5.2 Clinical examination

In men, physical examination should comprise palpation of the external genitalia for suspicious indurations or masses and digital rectal examination [30]. In women, further pelvic examination with careful inspection and palpation of the urethra should be performed, especially in those with primary onset of irritative or obstructive voiding. In addition, bimanual examination, when necessary under general anaesthesia, should be performed for local clinical staging and to exclude the presence of colorectal or gynaecological malignancies. Bilateral inguinal palpation should be conducted to assess the presence of enlarged lymph nodes (LNs), describing location, size and mobility [31].

5.3 Urinary cytology

Cytological assessment of urine specimens in suspect cases of primary UC should be conducted according to the Paris system [32]. The role of urinary cytology in primary UC is limited since its sensitivity ranges between 55% and 59% [33]. Detection rates depend on the underlying histological entity. In male patients, the sensitivity for UC and SCC was reported to be 80% and 50%, respectively, whereas in female patients, sensitivity was found to be 77% for SCC and 50% for UC [32].

5.4 Diagnostic urethrocystoscopy and biopsy

Diagnostic urethrocystoscopy and biopsy enables primary assessment of a urethral tumour in terms of tumour extent, location and underlying histology [30]. To enable accurate pathological assessment of surgical margins, biopsy sites (proximal/distal end) should be marked and sent together with clinical information to the pathologist.

Careful cystoscopic examination is necessary to exclude the presence of concomitant bladder tumours [3, 34]. A cold-cup biopsy enables accurate tissue retrieval for histological analysis and avoids artificial tissue damage. In patients with larger lesions, transurethral resection (optionally in men under penile blood arrest using a tourniquet) can be performed for histological diagnosis. In patients with suspected UC of the prostatic urethra or ducts, resectoscope loop biopsy of the prostatic urethra (between the five and seven o’clock position from the bladder neck and distally around the area of the verumontanum) can contribute to an improved detection rate [35].
5.5 Radiological imaging
Radiological imaging of UC aims to assess local tumour extent and to detect lymphatic and distant metastatic spread. For local staging, there is increasing evidence that magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is an accurate tool for monitoring tumour response to neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy and evaluating the extent of local disease prior to exenterative surgery [36]. Imaging for regional LN metastases should concentrate on inguinal and pelvic LNs, using either MRI or computed tomography (CT). Distant staging should concentrate on chest and liver, with CT of the thorax and abdomen in all patients with invasive disease (> cT1N0M0) [36-40]. If imaging of the remainder of the urothelium is required, then CT should include CT urography with an excretory phase [41].

5.6 Regional lymph nodes
Enlarged LNs in UC often represent metastatic disease [42, 43]. In men, lymphatics from the anterior urethra drain into the superficial- and deep inguinal LNs and subsequently to the pelvic (external, obturator and internal iliac) LNs. Conversely, lymphatic vessels of the posterior urethra drain into the pelvic LNs. In women, the lymph of the proximal third drains into the pelvic LN chains, whereas the distal two-thirds initially drain into the superficial- and deep inguinal nodes [44, 45].

Nodal control in UC can be achieved either by regional LN dissection [30], radiotherapy [46] or chemotherapy [42]. Currently, there is still no clear evidence supporting prophylactic bilateral inguinal and/or pelvic lymphadenectomy in all patients with UC. However, in patients with clinically enlarged inguinal/pelvic LNs or invasive tumours, regional lymphadenectomy should be considered as initial treatment since cure might still be achievable with limited disease [30].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Patients with clinically enlarged inguinal or pelvic lymph nodes often exhibit pathological lymph node metastasis.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use urethrocystoscopy with biopsy and urinary cytology to diagnose urethral carcinoma.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess the presence of distant metastases by computed tomography of the thorax and abdomen.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use pelvic magnetic resonance imaging to assess the local extent of urethral tumour (mapping tumour extension).</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. PROGNOSIS

6.1 Long-term survival after primary urethral carcinoma
According to the RARECARE project, the mean one- and five-year overall survival (OS) in patients with UC in Europe is 71% and 54%, respectively [7]. With longer follow-up, a SEER analysis of 1,615 cases reported median five- and ten-year OS rates of 46% and 29%, respectively. Cancer-specific survival (CSS) at five and ten years was 68% and 60%, respectively [8].

6.2 Predictors of survival in primary urethral carcinoma
In Europe, mean five-year OS does not substantially differ between the sexes [7]. Predictors of decreased survival in patients with primary UC are:

- advanced age (> 65 years) and black race [7, 47];
- stage, grade, nodal involvement [43] and metastasis [24];
- tumour size and proximal tumour location [24];
- extent of surgical treatment and treatment modality [24, 47];
- underlying histology [7, 25, 47];
- presence of concomitant bladder cancer [34];
- location of recurrence (urethral vs. non-urethral) [48].

Some limitations have to be taken into account in the interpretation of these results. In the Dutch study, the numbers were low (n = 91) [26]. In the large SEER database (n = 2,046), therapy is not well specified in relation to survival [25]. Finally, in contrast to the RARECARE project [7], the opposite findings were reported in the SEER database in relation to the role of histology on survival in male patients [47].
### 7. DISEASE MANAGEMENT

#### 7.1 Treatment of localised primary urethral carcinoma in males

Previously, treatment of male anterior UC has followed the procedure for penile cancer, with aggressive surgical excision of the primary lesion with a wide safety margin [30]. Distal urethral tumours exhibit significantly improved survival rates compared with proximal tumours [49]. Therefore, optimising treatment of distal UC has become the focus of clinicians to improve functional outcome and quality of life, while preserving oncological safety. A retrospective series found no evidence of local recurrence, even with < 5 mm resection margins (median follow-up: 17-37 months), in men with pT1-3N0-2 anterior UC treated with well-defined penis-preserving surgery and additional iliac/inguinal lymphadenectomy for clinically suspected LN disease [50]. This suggests that prognosis is mainly determined by nodal stage. Similar results for the feasibility of penile-preserving surgery have also been reported in recent series [51, 52].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In distal urethral tumours performing a partial urethrectomy with a minimal safety margin does not increase the risk of local recurrence.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer distal urethrectomy as an alternative to penile amputation in localised anterior urethral tumours, if surgical margins are negative.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 7.2 Treatment of localised urethral carcinoma in females

##### 7.2.1 Urethrectomy and urethra-sparing surgery

In women with localised UC, to provide the highest chance of local cure, primary radical urethrectomy should remove all the periurethral tissue from the bulbocavernosus muscle bilaterally and distally, with a cylinder of all adjacent soft tissue up to the pubic symphysis and bladder neck. Bladder neck closure and appendicovesicostomy for primary anterior urethral lesions has been shown to provide satisfactory functional results in women [30].

Recent series have reported outcomes in women with mainly anterior UC undergoing primary treatment with urethra-sparing surgery or radiotherapy, compared to primary urethrectomy, with the aim of maintaining integrity and function of the lower urinary tract [53-55]. In long-term series with a median follow-up of 153-175 months, local recurrence rates in women undergoing partial urethrectomy with intra-operative frozen section analysis were 22-60%, and distal sleeve resection of > 2 cm resulted in secondary urinary incontinence in 42% of patients who required additional reconstructive surgery [54].

Ablative surgical techniques, i.e., transurethral resection (TUR) or laser, used for small distal UC, have also resulted in considerable local failure rates of 16%, with a CSS rate of 50%. This emphasises the critical role of local tumour control in women with distal UC to prevent local and systemic progression [53].

##### 7.2.2 Radiotherapy

In women, radiotherapy was investigated in several older long-term series with a medium follow up of 91-105 months [46, 50]. With a median cumulative dose of 65 Gy (range: 40-106 Gy), the five year local control rate was 64% and seven year CSS was 49% [46]. Most local failures (95%) occurred within the first two years after primary treatment [50]. The extent of urethral tumour involvement was found to be the only parameter independently associated with local tumour control but the type of radiotherapy (external beam radiotherapy [EBRT] vs. interstitial brachytherapy) was not [46]. In one study, the addition of brachytherapy to EBRT reduced the risk of local recurrence by a factor of 4.2 [56]. Of note, pelvic toxicity in those achieving local control was considerable (49%), including urethral stenosis, fistula, necrosis, and cystitis and/or haemorrhage, with 30% of the reported complications graded as severe [46].
## Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In anterior tumours, urethra-sparing surgery and local radiotherapy represent alternatives to primary urethrectomy but are associated with increased risk of tumour recurrence and local toxicity.

## Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Offer urethra-sparing surgery as an alternative to primary urethrectomy to women with anterior urethral tumours, if negative surgical margins can be achieved intra-operatively.

Offer local radiotherapy as an alternative to urethral surgery to women with localised urethral tumours, but discuss local toxicity.

### 7.3 Multimodal treatment in advanced urethral carcinoma in both genders

#### 7.3.1 Preoperative platinum-based chemotherapy

Recent retrospective studies have reported that modern platinum-based polychemotherapeutic regimens are effective in advanced primary UC, providing prolonged survival even in LN-positive disease. Moreover, they have emphasised the critical role of surgery after chemotherapy to achieve long-term survival in patients with locally advanced UC.

In a series of 39 patients treated with perioperative platinum-based chemotherapy for advanced primary UC, preoperative chemotherapy was found to be associated with improved progression-free and OS compared to surgery followed by adjuvant chemotherapy [57]. Another series reported outcomes in 44 patients with advanced primary UC treated with specific cisplatin-based polychemotherapeutic regimens according to the underlying histology. The overall response rate for the various regimen was 72% and the median OS 32 months. Patients who underwent surgery after chemotherapy had a significantly improved OS compared with those who were managed with chemotherapy alone [42].

#### 7.3.2 Preoperative chemoradiotherapy in locally advanced squamous cell carcinoma of the urethra

The clinical feasibility of preoperative local radiotherapy with concurrent radiosensitising chemotherapy as an alternative to surgery in locally advanced SCC has been reported in several recent series. This approach offers a potential for genital preservation [57-62]. The largest and recently updated series reported outcomes in 25 patients with primary locally advanced SCC of the urethra treated with two cycles of 5-fluorouracil and mitomycin C with concurrent EBRT. A complete response to primary chemoradiotherapy was observed in ~80%. The five-year OS and DSS survival was 52% and 68%, respectively. In this updated series, salvage surgery initiated only in non-responders or in case of local failure was not reported to be associated with improved survival [58].

### 7.4 Treatment of urothelial carcinoma of the prostate

Local conservative treatment with extensive TUR and subsequent Bacillus-Calmette-Guérin (BCG) instillation is effective in patients with Ta or Tis prostatic UC [63, 64]. Likewise, patients undergoing TUR of the prostate prior to BCG experience improved complete response rates compared with those who do not (95% vs. 66%) [65]. Risk of understaging local extension of prostatic urethral cancer at TUR is increased, especially in patients with ductal or stromal involvement [66]. In smaller series, response rates to BCG in patients with prostatic duct involvement have been reported to vary between 57 and 75% [63, 67]. Some earlier series have reported superior oncological results for the initial use of radical cystoprostatectomy as a primary treatment option in patients with ductal involvement [68, 69]. In 24 patients with prostatic stromal invasion treated with radical cystoprostatectomy, a LN mapping study found that twelve patients had positive LNs, with an increased proportion located above the iliac bifurcation [70].
**Summary of evidence**

| LE | Patients undergoing transurethral resection of the prostate for prostatic urothelial carcinoma (UC) prior to bacillus-Calmette-Guérin (BCG) treatment show superior complete response rates compared to those who do not. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer a urethra-sparing approach with transurethral resection (TUR) and BCG to patients with non-invasive urethral carcinoma or carcinoma in situ of the prostatic urethra and prostatic ducts.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with non-invasive UC or carcinoma in situ, perform a prior TUR of the prostate to improve response to BCG.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients not responding to BCG, or in patients with extensive ductal or stromal involvement, perform a cystoprostatectomy with extended pelvic lymphadenectomy.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. FOLLOW-UP

Given the low incidence of primary urethral cancer, follow-up has not been investigated systematically so far. Therefore, it seems reasonable to tailor surveillance regimens according to patients' individual risk factors (see Chapter 6.2). In patients undergoing urethra-sparing surgery, it seems prudent to advocate a more extensive follow-up with urinary cytology, urethroscopy and cross-sectional imaging despite the lack of specific data.

9. REFERENCES

   https://uroweb.org/guideline/primary-urethral-carcinoma/
   http://www.uicc.org/resources/tmn
http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.juro.2015.02.417


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24251884


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16426729


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15076287
10. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the Muscle-invasive and Metastatic Bladder Cancer Guidelines Panel have provided disclosure statements of all relationships that they have that might be perceived as a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publically accessible through the European Association of Urology website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/primary-urethral-carcinoma/. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU - ESTRO - ESUR - SIOG Guidelines on Prostate Cancer

N. Mottet (Chair), J. Bellmunt, E. Briers (Patient Representative), M. Bolla, L. Bourke, P. Cornford (Vice-chair), M. De Santis, A.M. Henry, S. Joniau, T.B. Lam, M.D. Mason, H.G. van der Poel, T.H. van der Kwast, O. Rouvière, T. Wiegel

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION 9
   1.1 Aims and scope 9
   1.2 Panel composition 9
       1.2.1 Acknowledgement 9
   1.3 Available publications 9
   1.4 Publication history and summary of changes 9
       1.4.1 Publication history 9
       1.4.2 Summary of changes 9

2. METHODS 11
   2.1 Data identification 11
   2.2 Review 12
   2.3 Future goals 12

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY AND AETIOLOGY 12
   3.1 Epidemiology 12
   3.2 Aetiology 13
       3.2.1 Family history/genetics 13
       3.2.2 Risk factors 13
           3.2.2.1 Metabolic syndrome (MetS) 13
           3.2.2.1.1 Diabetes/metformin 13
           3.2.2.1.2 Cholesterol/statins 13
           3.2.2.1.3 Obesity 13
           3.2.2.2 Dietary factors 13
           3.2.2.3 Hormonally active medication 14
               3.2.2.3.1 5-alpha-reductase inhibitors (5-ARIs) 14
               3.2.2.3.2 Testosterone 14
           3.2.2.4 Other risk factors 14
       3.2.3 Summary of evidence and guidelines for epidemiology and aetiology 14

4. CLASSIFICATION AND STAGING SYSTEMS 15
   4.1 Classification 15
   4.2 Gleason score and International Society of Urological Pathology 2014 grade groups 15
   4.3 Prognostic relevance of stratification 16

5. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION 16
   5.1 Screening and early detection 16
       5.1.1 Guidelines for screening and early detection 18
   5.2 Clinical diagnosis 18
       5.2.1 Digital rectal examination 18
       5.2.2 Prostate-specific antigen 18
           5.2.2.1 PSA density 19
           5.2.2.2 PSA velocity and doubling time 19
           5.2.2.3 Free/total PSA ratio 19
           5.2.2.4 Additional serum testing 19
           5.2.2.5 PCA3 marker 19
           5.2.2.6 Guidelines for risk-assessment of asymptomatic men 20
       5.2.3 Prostate biopsy 20
           5.2.3.1 Baseline biopsy 20
           5.2.3.2 Repeat biopsy after previously negative biopsy 20
           5.2.3.3 Saturation biopsy 21
           5.2.3.4 Sampling sites and number of cores 21
           5.2.3.5 Diagnostic transurethral resection of the prostate 21
           5.2.3.6 Seminal vesicle biopsy 21
           5.2.3.7 Transition zone biopsy 21
           5.2.3.8 Antibiotics prior to biopsy 21
           5.2.3.9 Local anaesthesia prior to biopsy 21
           5.2.3.10 Fine-needle aspiration biopsy 21
5.2.3.11 Complications  

5.2.4 The role of imaging  
5.2.4.1 Transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) and ultrasound-based techniques  
5.2.4.2 Multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging  
5.2.4.3 Guidelines for imaging  

5.2.5 Pathology of prostate needle biopsies  
5.2.5.1 Processing  
5.2.5.2 Microscopy and reporting  
5.2.5.3 Tissue-based prognostic biomarker testing  

5.2.6 Histopathology of radical prostatectomy specimens  
5.2.6.1 Processing of radical prostatectomy specimens  
5.2.6.2 Radical prostatectomy specimen report  

5.2.6.3 PCa volume  
5.2.6.4 Surgical margin status  

5.2.7 Guidelines for the clinical diagnosis of prostate cancer  

5.3 Diagnosis: Clinical staging  
5.3.1 T-staging  
5.3.1.1 Definitions  
5.3.1.2 DRE, PSA level and biopsy findings  
5.3.1.3 Transrectal ultrasound  
5.3.2 N-staging  
5.3.2.1 Computed tomography and magnetic resonance imaging  
5.3.2.2 Choline PET/CT  
5.3.2.3 New methods  
5.3.3 M-staging  
5.3.3.1 Bone scan  
5.3.3.2 Other modalities  

5.4 Guidelines for staging of prostate cancer  

6. DISEASE MANAGEMENT  
6.1 Treatment: Deferred treatment (active surveillance/watchful waiting)  
6.1.1 Introduction  
6.1.1.1 Definition  
6.1.1.1.1 Active surveillance  
6.1.1.1.2 Watchful waiting  
6.1.2 Deferred treatment of localised PCa (stage T1/T2, Nx/N0, M0)  
6.1.2.1 Active surveillance  
6.1.2.2 Watchful waiting  
6.1.2.2.1 Patient selection for watchful waiting  
6.1.2.2.2 Outcome of watchful waiting compared to active treatment  
6.1.2.3 The ProtecT study  
6.1.3 Deferred treatment for locally advanced PCa (stage T3-T4, Nx-N0, M0)  
6.1.4 Deferred treatment for metastatic PCa (stage M1)  
6.1.5 Guidelines for active surveillance and watchful waiting  
6.2 Treatment: Radical prostatectomy  
6.2.1 Introduction  
6.2.2 Low-risk PCa  
6.2.3 Intermediate-risk, localised PCa  
6.2.4 High-risk and locally advanced PCa  
6.2.4.1 High-risk PCa  
6.2.4.1.1 Gleason score 8-10  
6.2.4.1.2 Prostate-specific antigen > 20 ng/mL  
6.2.4.2 Locally advanced PCa  
6.2.5 Indication and extent of pelvic lymph node dissection  
6.2.5.1 Technique of lymph node dissection
6.2.5.1.1 Sentinel node biopsy analysis

6.2.6 Radical prostatectomy in cN0 patients who are found to have pathologically confirmed lymph node invasion (pN1)

6.2.6.1 Outcome of pN1 disease

6.2.6.1.1 Prognostic indicators

6.2.7 Adjuvant treatment

6.2.7.1 Adjuvant treatment after RP

6.2.7.2 Adjuvant androgen ablation in men with pN1 disease

6.2.7.3 Adjuvant radiotherapy in men with pN1 disease

6.2.7.4 Adjuvant chemotherapy

6.2.7.5 Guidelines for extended lymph node dissection in prostate cancer and pN+ patients

6.2.8 Comparing RP surgical approaches

6.2.9 Indications for nerve-sparing surgery

6.2.10 Guidelines for radical prostatectomy

6.3 Treatment: definitive radiotherapy

6.3.1 Introduction

6.3.2 Technical aspects: three-dimensional conformal radiotherapy and intensity-modulated external-beam radiotherapy

6.3.3 Radiotherapy for localised PCa

6.3.3.1 Dose escalation

6.3.3.2 Hypofractionation

6.3.3.3 Neoadjuvant or adjuvant hormone therapy plus radiotherapy

6.3.3.4 Neoadjuvant chemotherapy plus radiotherapy

6.3.3.5 Combined dose-escalated radiotherapy and androgen-deprivation therapy

6.3.3.6 Recommended external beam radiation therapy treatment policy for localised PCa

6.3.3.6.1 Low-risk PCa

6.3.3.6.2 Intermediate-risk PCa

6.3.3.6.3 Localised high-risk PCa

6.3.3.6.4 Locally advanced PCa: T3-4 N0, M0

6.3.3.6.5 MRC PR3/PR07 study - The National Cancer Institute of Canada (NCIC)/UK Medical Research Council (MRC)/Southwest Oncology Group (SWOG) intergroup PR3/PR07 study

6.3.3.7 Lymph node irradiation

6.3.3.7.1 Prophylactic LN irradiation in clinically N0 prostate cancer (estimated cN0)

6.3.3.7.2 Clinical, or pathological node positive, M0 disease

6.3.4 Proton beam therapy

6.3.5 Low-dose rate and high-dose rate brachytherapy

6.3.5.1 Low-dose rate (LDR) brachytherapy

6.3.5.2 High-Dose Rate (HDR) brachytherapy

6.3.6 Immediate (adjuvant) post-operative external irradiation after RP (cN0 or pN0)

6.3.6.1 EORTC 22911

6.3.6.2 ARO trial

6.3.6.3 SWOG 8794 trial

6.3.6.4 Conclusion

6.3.7 Summary of evidence and guidelines for definitive radiotherapy

6.4 Treatment: Options other than surgery and radiotherapy for the primary treatment of localised prostate cancer

6.4.1 Background

6.4.2 Cryosurgery

6.4.2.1 Results of cryosurgery for PCa

6.4.3 High-intensity focused ultrasound of the prostate

6.4.3.1 Results of high-intensity focused ultrasound in PCa

6.4.4 Focal therapy of PCa
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.4.5</td>
<td>Summary of evidence and guidelines for experimental therapeutic options to treat clinically localised prostate cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>Treatment: Hormonal therapy - rationale and available drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.1.1</td>
<td>Different types of hormonal therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.2</td>
<td>Testosterone-lowering therapy (castration)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.2.1</td>
<td>Castration level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.2.2</td>
<td>Bilateral orchietomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.3</td>
<td>Oestrogens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.4</td>
<td>Luteinising-hormone-releasing hormone agonists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.4.1</td>
<td>Achievement of castration levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.4.2</td>
<td>‘Flare-up’ phenomenon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.5</td>
<td>Luteinising-hormone-releasing hormone antagonists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.6</td>
<td>Anti-androgens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.6.1</td>
<td>Steroidal anti-androgens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.6.1.1</td>
<td>Cyproterone acetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.6.2</td>
<td>Non-steroidal anti-androgens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.6.2.1</td>
<td>Nilutamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.6.2.2</td>
<td>Flutamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.6.2.3</td>
<td>Bicalutamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.7</td>
<td>New compounds (for castrate-resistant patients only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.7.1</td>
<td>Abiraterone acetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.7.2</td>
<td>Enzalutamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5.8</td>
<td>Cost-effectiveness of hormonal therapy options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>Treatment: Metastatic prostate cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.2</td>
<td>Prognostic factors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.3</td>
<td>First-line hormonal treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.3.1</td>
<td>Prevention of ‘flare-up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.4</td>
<td>Combination therapies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.4.1</td>
<td>Complete androgen blockade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.4.2</td>
<td>Non-steroidal anti-androgen monotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.4.3</td>
<td>Intermittent versus continuous androgen deprivation therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.4.4</td>
<td>Immediate versus deferred androgen deprivation therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.5</td>
<td>Hormonal treatment combined with chemotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.6</td>
<td>Prostate targeted therapy in newly diagnosed metastatic disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.7</td>
<td>Metastasis-directed therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.8</td>
<td>Imaging as marker of response in metastatic prostate cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.9</td>
<td>Guidelines for the first-line treatment of metastatic prostate cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6.10</td>
<td>Guidelines for hormonal treatment of metastatic prostate cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>Management of prostate cancer in older men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.1</td>
<td>Evaluating health status in senior adults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.1.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.1.2</td>
<td>Evaluation of life expectancy, comorbidity and health status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.1.2.1</td>
<td>Comorbidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.1.2.2</td>
<td>Dependence in daily activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.1.2.3</td>
<td>Malnutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.1.2.4</td>
<td>Cognitive impairment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.1.2.5</td>
<td>Baseline screening using the G8 screening tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.1.2.6</td>
<td>Conclusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.1.3</td>
<td>Guidelines for the evaluation of health status in elderly men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.2</td>
<td>Specific aspects of PCa treatment in older men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.2.1</td>
<td>Localised PCa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.2.1.1</td>
<td>Deferred treatment (active surveillance, watchful waiting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.2.1.2</td>
<td>Radical prostatectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.2.1.3</td>
<td>External beam radiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.2.1.4</td>
<td>Minimally invasive therapies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.2.1.5</td>
<td>Androgen deprivation therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.2.2</td>
<td>Advanced PCa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7.2.2.1</td>
<td>Hormone-naive metastatic PCa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.10.4.1 Cabazitaxel 80
6.10.4.2 Abiraterone acetate after prior docetaxel 80
6.10.4.3 Enzalutamide after docetaxel 80
6.10.4.4 Radium-223 80
6.10.5 Treatment after docetaxel and one line of hormonal treatment for mCRPC 81
6.10.6 Monitoring of treatment 81
6.10.7 When to change treatments 81
6.10.8 Symptomatic management in metastatic castration-resistant PCAs 81
6.10.8.1 Common complications due to bone metastases 81
6.10.9 Preventing skeletal-related events 82
6.10.9.1 Bisphosphonates 82
6.10.9.2 RANK ligand inhibitors 82
6.10.10 Summary of evidence and guidelines for life-prolonging treatments of castrate-resistant PCa 82
6.10.11 Guidelines for cytotoxic treatment in castrate-resistant PCa 83
6.10.12 Guidelines for supportive care of castrate-resistant PCa 83

7. FOLLOW-UP 83
7.1 Follow-up: After local treatment 83
7.1.1 Definition 83
7.1.2 Why follow-up? 83
7.1.3 How to follow-up? 83
7.1.3.1 Prostate-specific antigen monitoring 83
7.1.3.2 Definition of prostate-specific antigen progression 84
7.1.3.3 Prostate-specific antigen monitoring after radical prostatectomy 84
7.1.3.4 PSA monitoring after radiotherapy 84
7.1.3.5 Digital rectal examination 84
7.1.3.6 Transrectal ultrasound, bone scintigraphy, computed tomography, magnetic resonance imaging, and 11C-choline positron emission tomography computed tomography 84
7.1.3.6.1 Transrectal ultrasonography/magnetic resonance imaging guided biopsy. Biopsy of the prostate bed and urethrovesical anastomosis or of the remaining prostate after radiotherapy, are only indicated if local recurrence affects treatment decisions. 84
7.1.4 When to follow-up? 84
7.1.5 Summary of evidence and guidelines for follow-up after treatment with curative intent 85
7.2 Follow-up: During hormonal treatment 85
7.2.1 Introduction 85
7.2.2 Purpose of follow-up 85
7.2.3 Methods of follow-up 85
7.2.3.1 Clinical follow-up 85
7.2.3.1.1 Prostate-specific antigen monitoring 85
7.2.3.1.2 Creatinine, haemoglobin and liver function monitoring 85
7.2.3.1.3 Bone scan, ultrasound and chest X-ray 86
7.2.3.1.4 Testosterone monitoring 86
7.2.3.1.5 Monitoring of metabolic complications 86
7.2.4 When to follow-up 86
7.2.4.1 Stage M0 - M1 patients 86
7.2.4.2 Castration-refractory PCa 86
7.2.5 Guidelines for follow-up during hormonal treatment 87

8. QUALITY OF LIFE OUTCOMES IN PROSTATE CANCER 87
8.1 Introduction 87
8.2 Adverse effects of prostate cancer therapies 87
8.2.1 Surgery 87
8.2.1.1 Early complications of extended lymph node dissection 88
8.2.2 Radiotherapy 88
8.2.2.1 Side effects of external beam radiotherapy 88
8.2.2.2 Side effects from brachytherapy 89
8.2.3 Local treatments other than surgery or radiotherapy 90
8.2.3.1 Cryosurgery 90
8.2.3.2 High-intensity focused ultrasound 90
8.2.4 Hormonal therapy
  8.2.4.1 Sexual function
  8.2.4.2 Hot flushes
  8.2.4.3 Other systemic side-effects of androgen-deprivation therapy
  8.2.4.4 Non-metastatic bone fractures
    8.2.4.4.1 Lifestyle changes before starting long-term androgen-deprivation therapy
    8.2.4.4.2 Hormonal treatment modalities
    8.2.4.4.3 Bisphosphonates
    8.2.4.4.4 Denosumab (a fully human monoclonal antibody against receptor activator of NF-κB ligand [RANKL])
  8.2.4.5 Metabolic effects
  8.2.4.6 Cardiovascular morbidity
  8.2.4.7 Fatigue
  8.2.4.8 neurological side effects

8.3 Overall quality of life in men with prostate cancer
  8.3.1 Long-term (> 12 months) quality of life outcomes in men with localised disease
  8.3.2 Improving quality of life in men who have been diagnosed with prostate cancer

9. REFERENCES

10. CONFLICT OF INTEREST
1. **INTRODUCTION**

1.1 **Aims and scope**

The Prostate Cancer (PCa) Guidelines Panel have prepared this guidelines document to assist medical professionals in the evidence-based management of PCa.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account.

Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 **Panel composition**

The PCa Guidelines Panel consists of an international multidisciplinary group of urologists, radiation oncologists, medical oncologists, radiologists, a pathologist and a patient representative.

All imaging sections in the text have been developed, jointly with the European Society of Urogenital Radiology (ESUR). Representatives of ESUR in the PCa Guidelines Panel are (in alphabetical order): Prof. Dr. O Rouvièreme and Dr. I.G. Schoots.

Section 6.3: Treatment - Definitive Radiotherapy, has been developed jointly with the European Society for Radiotherapy & Oncology (ESTRO). Representatives of ESTRO in the PCa Guidelines Panel are (in alphabetical order): Prof. Dr. M. Bolla, Prof. Dr. A.M. Henry, Prof. Dr. M.D. Mason and Prof. Dr. T. Wiegel.

All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements which can be viewed on the EAU website Uroweb: [http://uroweb.org/guideline/prostatecancer/?type=panel](http://uroweb.org/guideline/prostatecancer/?type=panel).

1.2.1 **Acknowledgement**

The PCa Guidelines Panel are most grateful for the support and considerable expertise provided by Prof. Dr. J-P. Droz, Emeritus Professor of Medical Oncology (Lyon, France) on the topic of ‘Management of PCa in senior adults’. As a leading expert in this field, and prominent member of the International Society of Geriatric Oncology, his contribution has been invaluable.

1.3 **Available publications**

A quick reference document (Pocket guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text version. Several scientific publications are available [1, 2] as are a number of translations of all versions of the PCa Guidelines. All documents can be accessed on the EAU website: [http://uroweb.org/guideline/prostate-cancer/](http://uroweb.org/guideline/prostate-cancer/).

1.4 **Publication history and summary of changes**

1.4.1 **Publication history**

The EAU PCa Guidelines were first published in 2001. This 2017 document presents a full update of the 2016 full text document.

1.4.2 **Summary of changes**

New and relevant evidence has been identified, collated and appraised through a structured assessment of the literature and incorporated in all chapters of the 2017 EAU PCa Guidelines.

Key changes for the 2017 print:

- Chapter 3 - Epidemiology and aetiology. This section has been completely renewed.
- Chapter 4 - Classification and staging systems. This chapter has been expanded with a new section (4.3 Prognostic relevance of stratification). Additional information on the International Society of Urological Pathology Gleason grading has been included in Table 4.2.2 (EAU risk groups for biochemical recurrence of localised and locally advanced prostate cancer).
- Section 6.6.8 - Imaging as marker of response in metastatic prostate cancer. This is a new section.
- Chapter 6.7 - Management of PCa in older men. Two new figures have been included.
- Chapter 8 - Quality of life outcomes in prostate cancer. This chapter is partly based on the findings of a new systematic review (SR) (see below). A second review is ongoing, the findings of which will be incorporated in the 2018 print of these Guidelines.
Changes in the summaries of evidence and recommendations can be found in sections:

3.2.3  **Summary of evidence and guidelines for epidemiology and aetiology**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prostate cancer is a major health issue in men, the incidence mainly dependent on age.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genetic factors are associated with risk of (aggressive) PCa but ongoing trials will need to define the clinical applicability of screening for genetic susceptibility of PCa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A variety of exogenous/environmental factors may have an impact on the risk of progression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-ARIs are not EMA-approved for PCa prevention.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium or vitamin-E supplements have no beneficial effect in preventing PCa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In hypogonadal men, testosterone supplementation does not increase the risk of PCa.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No definitive recommendation can be provided for specific preventive or dietary measures to reduce the risk of developing prostate cancer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 4.2.2: EAU risk groups for biochemical recurrence of localised and locally advanced prostate cancer**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Intermediate-risk</th>
<th>High-risk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Low-risk</strong></td>
<td>PSA &lt; 10 ng/mL and GS &lt; 7 (ISUP Grade 1) and cT1-2a</td>
<td>PSA 10-20 ng/mL or GS 7 (ISUP Grade 2/3) or cT2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Localised</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Locally advanced</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GS = Gleason score; ISUP = International Society for Urological Pathology; PSA = prostate-specific antigen.

6.1.5  **Guidelines for active surveillance and watchful waiting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations - active surveillance</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging before a confirmatory biopsy.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>During confirmatory biopsy include systematic and targeted biopsies.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.2.7.5  **Guidelines for eLND in prostate cancer and pN+ patients**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform a frozen section of nodes during radical prostatectomy to decide whether to proceed with, or abandon, the procedure.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.2.10  **Guidelines for radical prostatectomy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer both radical prostatectomy and radiotherapy in patients with low- and intermediate-risk disease and a life expectancy &gt; 10 years.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer active surveillance as an alternative to surgery in patients with low-risk disease and a life expectancy of &gt; 10 years.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.3.8 Summary of evidence and guidelines for definitive radiotherapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The optimum duration of androgen deprivation therapy (ADT) with external beam radiation therapy (EBRT) is well established in the literature. There is no evidence that these durations should change when using brachytherapy boost with EBRT.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limited data, from experienced centres only, are available for the use of fractionated high-dose-rate brachytherapy as monotherapy in patients with low and intermediate-risk PCa.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moderate hypofractionation (HFX) with IMRT including image-guided radiation therapy (IGRT) to the prostate only can be offered to carefully selected patients with localised disease (as discussed in the text).</td>
<td>1a A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate HFX should adhere to radiotherapy-protocols from trials with equivalent outcome and toxicity, i.e. 60 Gy/20 fractions in four weeks or 70 Gy/28 fractions in six weeks.</td>
<td>1a A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.9.4.6 Guidelines for imaging in patients with biochemical recurrence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prostate-specific antigen (PSA) recurrence after radical prostatectomy</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PSA ( \geq 1 ) ng/mL: positon emission tomography (PET)/computed tomography (CT) imaging is recommended using choline or prostate-specific membrane antigen (PMSA).</td>
<td>2b A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.3.1.1 Guidelines for long term quality of life in men with localised disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Advise eligible patients for active surveillance, that global quality of life is equivalent for up to five years compared to radical prostatectomy or radiotherapy.</td>
<td>1b A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discuss the negative impact of surgery on urinary and sexual function, as well as the negative impact of radiotherapy on bowel function with patients.</td>
<td>1b A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advise patients treated with brachytherapy of the negative impact on irritative urinary symptomatology at one year but not after five years.</td>
<td>1b C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.3.2.1 Guidelines on improving quality of life in men who have been diagnosed with prostate cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer men on androgen deprivation therapy, twelve weeks of supervised (by trained exercise specialists) combined aerobic and resistance exercise.</td>
<td>1a A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer men with T1-T3 disease specialist nurse led, multi-disciplinary rehabilitation based on the patients’ personal goals addressing incontinence, sexuality, depression and fear of recurrence, social support and positive lifestyle changes after any radical treatment.</td>
<td>1b A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. METHODS

2.1 Data identification

For the 2017 PCa Guidelines, new and relevant evidence has been identified, collated and appraised through a structured assessment of the literature.

A broad and comprehensive literature search, covering all sections of the PCa Guidelines was performed. The search was limited to studies representing only high levels of evidence (i.e. SRs with meta-analysis, randomised controlled trials (RCTs), and prospective comparative studies) published in the English language. Databases searched included Medline, EMBASE and the Cochrane Libraries, covering a time
frame between June 1st 2015 to June 23rd, 2016. A total of 1,914 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance. A detailed search strategy is available online: http://uroweb.org/guideline/prostatacancer?type=appendices-publications.

Specific sections of the text have been updated based on a SR questions prioritised by the Guidelines Panel. These reviews were performed using standard Cochrane systematic review methodology; http://www.cochranelibrary.com/about/about-cochrane-systematic-reviews.html:

- What is the negative predictive value of multiparametric MRI in excluding prostate cancer at biopsy? A systematic review and meta-analysis from the EAU Prostate Cancer Guidelines Panel [prior to print] [3].
- The Benefits and Harms of Different Extents of Lymph Node Dissection During Radical Prostatectomy for Prostate Cancer: A systematic review [4].
- Systematic review of quality of life outcomes as assessed by PROMS following primary treatment of clinically localised prostate cancer.

Recommendations in this text are assessed according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [5]. Additional methodology information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guidelines/.

A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address. In addition, the International Society of Geriatric Oncology (SIOG), the European Society for Radiotherapy & Oncology (ESTRO) and the European Society for Urogenital Radiology (ESUR) have endorsed the PCa Guidelines.

2.2 Review
Publications ensuing from the systematic reviews have all been peer-reviewed. The following sections were subjected to peer review prior to publication:
All Imaging sections:
- Section 5.2.3 - The role of imaging in PCa diagnosis;
- Section 5.3 - The role of imaging in clinical staging;
- Section 6.1.2.1 - The role of multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging in active surveillance
- Section 6.6.8 (new section) - Imaging as a marker of response in metastatic PCa,
- Sections 6.10.4 and 6.10.5 - The role of imaging in PSA-only recurrence after treatment with curative intent.
- Section 6.10 – Treatment - Management of PSA-only recurrence after treatment with curative intent.
- Section 6.10 – Treatment – Castration-resistant PCa

2.3 Future goals
The results of ongoing and new SRs will be included in the 2017 update of the PCa Guidelines.
Ongoing SRs:
- How does biochemical recurrence following curative treatment for prostate cancer impact on overall survival, cancer-specific survival and development of metastatic disease? [6].
- What evidence based supportive interventions improve disease-specific quality of life in men with prostate cancer?

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY AND AETIOLOGY

3.1 Epidemiology
Prostate cancer remains the second most commonly diagnosed cancer in men, with an estimated 1.1 million diagnoses worldwide in 2012, accounting for 15% of all cancers diagnosed [7]. The frequency of autopsy-detected PCa is roughly the same worldwide [8]. A SR of autopsy studies showed a prevalence of PCa at age < 30 years of 5% (95% CI: 3-8%), increasing by an odds ratio of 1.7 (1.6-1.8) per decade, to a prevalence of 59% (48-71%) by age > 79 years [9].

The incidence of PCa diagnosis, however, varies widely between different geographical areas, being highest in Australia/New Zealand and Northern America (age-standardised rates [ASR] of 111.6 and 97.2 per 100,000, respectively), and in Western and Northern Europe (ASR 94.9 and 85), largely due to the use of prostate specific antigen (PSA) testing and the aging population. The incidence is low in Eastern and South-
Central Asia (ASR 10.5 and 4.5), whilst rates in Eastern and Southern Europe, which were low, have showed a steady increase [7, 8].

There is relatively less variation in mortality rates worldwide, although rates are generally high in populations of African descent (Caribbean, 29 per 100,000 and Sub-Saharan Africa, ASRs 19-24 per 100,000), intermediate in the USA and very low in Asia (2.9 per 100,000 in South-Central Asia) [7].

3.2 Aetiology

3.2.1 Family history/genetics

Family history and racial/ethnic background are associated with an increased PCa incidence suggesting a genetic predisposition [10, 11]. However, only a small subpopulation of men with PCa (~9%) have true hereditary disease. This is defined as three or more affected relatives, or at least two relatives who have developed early-onset PCa (< 55 years) [11]. Patients with hereditary PCa usually have a disease onset six-seven years earlier than average, but their clinical course does not seem to differ in other ways, e.g. for disease aggressiveness [11, 12]. Men with African ethnicity origin show a higher incidence of PCa and generally have a more lethal course of disease [13].

Of the underlying determinants of genomic diversity and mechanisms between genetic and environmental factors, much remains unknown. Genome-wide association studies have identified 100 common susceptibility loci contributing to the risk for PCa, explaining ~38.9% of the familial risk for this disease [14, 15]. Furthermore, an incidence was found of 11.8% of germline mutations in genes mediating DNA-repair processes among men with metastatic PCa [16]. Germline mutations in genes such as HOXB13 and BRCA1/2 have been associated with an increased risk of PCa, targeted genomic analysis of these genes could offer options to identify families at high risk [17, 18]. Trials of screening for PCa-targeting BRCA mutation carriers are ongoing [19].

3.2.2 Risk factors

As Japanese men move from Japan to California, their risk of PCa increases, approaching that of American men [20]. A wide variety of exogenous/environmental factors have been discussed as being aetiologically important for the risk of progression from latent to clinical PCa [21]. However, currently there are no effective preventative dietary or pharmacological interventions.

3.2.2.1 Metabolic syndrome (MetS)

The single components hypertension (p = 0.035) and waist circumference > 102 cm (p = 0.007) of MetS have been associated with a significantly greater risk of PCa, but conversely, having ≥ 3 components of MetS is associated with a reduced risk (odds ratio [OR]: 0.70 95%; CI: 0.60-0.82) [22, 23].

3.2.2.1.1 Diabetes/metformin

On a population level, metformin users (but not other oral hypoglycaemics) were found to be at a decreased risk of PCa diagnosis, compared with never-users (adjusted OR: 0.84; 95% CI: 0.74-0.96) [24]. In 540 diabetic participants of the Reduction by Dutasteride of Prostate Cancer Events (REDUCE) study, metformin use was not significantly associated with PCa (OR: 1.19; p = 0.50) [25].

3.2.2.1.2 Cholesterol/statins

A meta-analysis of fourteen large prospective studies did not show an association between blood total cholesterol (TC), high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL), low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL) levels and the risk of either overall PCa or high-grade PCa [26]. Results of the REDUCE study also did not show a preventive effect of statins on PCa risk [25].

3.2.2.1.3 Obesity

Within the REDUCE study, obesity was associated with lower risk of low-grade PCa in multivariable analyses (OR: 0.79; p = 0.01), but increased risk of high-grade PCa (OR: 1.28; p = 0.042) [27]. This effect seems mainly explained by environmental determinants of height/BMI rather than genetically elevated height or BMI [28].

3.2.2.2 Dietary factors

The association between a wide variety of dietary factors and PCa have been studied (Table 3.1).
Table 3.1: Dietary factors that have been associated with prostate cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol</td>
<td>High alcohol intake, but also total abstention from alcohol have been associated with a higher risk of PCa and PCa-specific mortality [29].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dairy</td>
<td>A weak correlation between insulin-like growth factor-I (IGF-1) levels and high intake of protein from dairy products and the risk of PCa was found [30].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat</td>
<td>No association between intake of long-chain omega-3 poly-unsaturated fatty acids and PCAs was found [31]. A relation between intake of fried foods and risk of PCa may exist [32].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lycopene</td>
<td>A trend towards a favourable effect of lycopene on PCa incidence has been identified in meta-analyses [33], RCTs comparing lycopene with placebo did not identify a significant decrease in the incidence of PCa [34].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(carotenes)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meat</td>
<td>A meta-analysis did not show an association between red meat or processed meat consumption and PCa [35].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D (25(OH)D)</td>
<td>An U-shaped association has been observed, with both low- and high vitamin-D concentrations being associated with an increased risk of PCa, and more strongly for high-grade disease [36, 37].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium/Vitamin E</td>
<td>Selenium and Vitamin E were found not to affect PCa incidence [38].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.2.3 Hormonally active medication

3.2.2.3.1 5-alpha-reductase inhibitors (5-ARIs)
Although it seems that 5-ARIs have the potential of preventing or delaying the development of PCa (~25%, for Gleason 6 cancer only), this must be weighed against treatment-related side effects as well as the potential small increased risk of high-grade PCa [39-41]. None of the available 5-ARIs have been approved by the European Medicines Agency (EMA) for this indication.

3.2.2.3.2 Testosterone
Hypogonadal men receiving testosterone supplementation did not have an increased risk of PCa [42].

3.2.2.4 Other risk factors
Balding was associated with a higher risk of PCa death [43]. Gonorrhoea was significantly associated with an increased incidence of PCa (OR:1.31; 95% CI: 1.14-1.52) [44]. Occupational exposure may also play a role, based on a meta-analysis, night-shift work is associated with an increased risk (2.8%; p = 0.030) of PCa [45]. Pilots also have been found to have an increased risk of PCa diagnosis (RR 2.0) [46]. Current cigarette smoking was associated with an increased risk of PCa death (RR: 1.24; 95% CI: 1.18-1.31) [47].

In contradiction, vasectomy was not associated with an increased risk of PCa [48]. No association between self-reported acne and risk of (aggressive) PCa was found [49]. There are conflicting data about the use of aspirin or non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and the risk of PCa [50, 51].

Ultraviolet radiation exposure decreased the risk of PCa (hazard ratio [HR]: 0.91; 95% CI: 0.88-0.95) [52]. A protective effect for PCa of circumcision was found [53]. Higher ejaculation frequency (≥ 21 times a month versus 4-7 times) has been associated with a 20% lower risk of PCa [54].

3.2.3 Summary of evidence and guidelines for epidemiology and aetiology

Summary of evidence
Prostate cancer is a major health issue in men, the incidence mainly dependent on age.
Genetic factors are associated with risk of (aggressive) PCa but ongoing trials will need to define the clinical applicability of screening for genetic susceptibility of PCa.
A variety of exogenous/environmental factors may have an impact on the risk of progression.
5-ARIs are not EMA-approved for PCa prevention.
Selenium or vitamin-E supplements have no beneficial effect in preventing PCa.
In hypogonadal men, testosterone supplementation does not increase the risk of PCa.

Recommendation
No definitive recommendation can be provided for specific preventive or dietary measures to reduce the risk of developing prostate cancer.
4. CLASSIFICATION AND STAGING SYSTEMS

4.1 Classification
The objective of a tumour classification system is to combine patients with a similar clinical outcome. This allows for the design of clinical trials on relatively homogeneous patient populations, the comparison of clinical and pathological data obtained from different hospitals across the world, and the formulation of recommendations for the treatment of these patient populations. Throughout these Guidelines the 2017 Tumour, Node, Metastasis (TNM) classification for staging of PCa (Table 4.1.1) [55] and the EAU risk group classification, which is essentially based on D’Amico’s classification system for PCa, are used (Table 4.2.2) [56]. The latter classification is based on the grouping of patients with a similar risk of biochemical recurrence (BCR) after surgery or external beam radiotherapy (EBRT).

Table 4.1.1: Tumour Node Metastasis (TNM) classification of PCa [55]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T - Primary Tumour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N - Regional Lymph Nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M - Distant Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Invasion into the prostate apex or into (but not beyond) the prostate capsule is not classified as T3, but as T2.
2 Metastasis no larger than 0.2 cm can be designated pNmi.
3 T2a to c only exist for clinical T2 (cT2). For pathological T2 they are no longer present in the 2017 TNM. Only pT2 exists.
4 When more than one site of metastasis is present, the most advanced category is used. (p)M1c is the most advanced category.

4.2 Gleason score and International Society of Urological Pathology 2014 grade groups
The 2005 International Society of Urological Pathology (ISUP) modified Gleason score of biopsy-detected PCa comprises the Gleason grade or the most extensive (primary pattern) pattern, plus the second most common pattern (secondary pattern), if two are present. If one pattern is present, it needs to be doubled to yield the Gleason score. For three grades, the Gleason score comprises the most common grade plus the highest grade, irrespective of its extent. When a carcinoma is largely grade 4/5, identification of < 5% of Gleason grade 2 or 3 glands should not be incorporated in the Gleason score. A Gleason score ≤ 4 should not be given based on prostate biopsies [57]. In addition to reporting of the carcinoma features for each biopsy, an overall (or global) Gleason score based on the carcinoma-positive biopsies can be provided. The 2014 ISUP Gleason grading conference of prostatic carcinoma [58, 59] limits the number of PCa grades, ranging them from 1 to 5 (see table 4.2.1), in order to:
1. align the PCa grading with the grading of other carcinomas;
2. eliminate the anomaly that the most highly differentiated PCas have a Gleason score 6;
3. to further define the clinically highly significant distinction between Gleason score 7 (3 + 4) and 7 (4 + 3) PCas.

The ISUP 2014 Gleason grading represents a compression of Gleason scores ≤ 6 to ISUP grade 1, and Gleason scores 9-10 to ISUP grade 5, whereas Gleason score 7 is expanded to ISUP grade 2, i.e. 7 (3 + 4) and ISUP grade 3, i.e. 7 (4 + 3).

Table 4.2.1: International Society of Urological Pathology 2014 grades

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gleason score</th>
<th>ISUP grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2-6</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 (3 + 4)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 (4 + 3)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 (4 + 4 or 3 + 5 or 5 + 3)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.2: EAU risk groups for biochemical recurrence of localised and locally advanced prostate cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Low-risk</th>
<th>Intermediate-risk</th>
<th>High-risk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PSA &lt; 10 ng/mL and GS &lt; 7 (ISUP grade 1) and cT1-2a</td>
<td>PSA 10-20 ng/mL or GS 7 (ISUP grade 2/3) or cT2b</td>
<td>PSA &gt; 20 ng/mL or GS &gt; 7 (ISUP grade 4/5) or cT2c</td>
<td>any PSA or GS cT3-4 or cN+ Any ISUP grade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Localised</td>
<td>Locally advanced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GS = Gleason score; ISUP = International Society for Urological Pathology; PSA = prostate-specific antigen.

4.3 Prognostic relevance of stratification
A more precise stratification of the clinically heterogeneous subset of intermediate-risk group patients could provide a better framework for their management. The adoption of the current ISUP grading system, defining the split-up of Gleason score 7 cancers into ISUP grade 2 (primary Gleason grade 3) and ISUP 3 (primary Gleason grade 4) because of their distinct prognostic impact [59] strengthens such a separation of the intermediate-risk group into a low-intermediate (ISUP grade 2) and high intermediate-risk (ISUP grade 3) group. Emerging clinical data support this distinction between favourable- and unfavourable-risk patient categories within the intermediate-risk group [60].

5. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

5.1 Screening and early detection
Population or mass screening is defined as the ‘systematic examination of asymptomatic men (at risk)’ and is usually initiated by health authorities. In contrast, early detection or opportunistic (ad-hoc) testing consists of individual case findings, which are initiated by the man being tested (patient) and/or his physician. The co-primary objectives of both strategies are:
• reduction in mortality due to PCa;
• at least, a maintained quality of life (QoL) as expressed by QoL-adjusted gain in life years (QUALYs).

Prostate cancer mortality trends range widely from country to country in the industrialised world [61]. Mortality due to PCa has decreased in most Western countries but the magnitude of the reduction varies between countries. The reduced mortality rate seen recently in the USA is considered to be partly due to a widely adopted aggressive PCa screening policy [62]. However, there is still no level 1 evidence that PSA mass screening is cost-effective in reducing PCa mortality [63].

Currently, screening for PCa is one of the most controversial topics in the urological literature [64]. Three large
prospective RCTs published data on screening in 2009 [65-67]. Heated discussions and debates resulted in many conflicting positions and policy papers. Some authors argue that following the current American Urological Association (AUA) guidelines [68] or the US Preventive Services Task Force recommendations for screening [69] may lead to a substantial number of men with aggressive disease being missed [70, 71]. A comparison of systematic and opportunistic screening suggested over-diagnosis and mortality reduction in the systematic screening group compared to a higher over-diagnosis with a marginal survival benefit, at best, in the opportunistic screening regimen [72]. The potential impact of this topic would necessitate the highest level of evidence produced through a systematic literature search of all published trials or cohorts summarised in a meta-analysis. Subgroup analyses of cohorts that are part of large trials, or mathematical projections alone, cannot provide the quality of evidence needed to appropriately address this clinical question.

A Cochrane review published in 2013 [63], which has been updated since [73] presents the main overview of the date. The findings of the updated publication (based on a literature search until April 3, 2013) are almost identical to the 2013 review:

- Screening is associated with an increased diagnosis of PCa (RR: 1.3; 95% CI: 1.02-1.65).
- Screening is associated with detection of more localised disease (RR: 1.79; 95% CI: 1.19-2.70) and less advanced PCa (T3-4, N1, M1) (RR: 0.80; 95% CI: 0.73-0.87).
- From the results of five RCTs, randomising more than 341,000 men, no PCa-specific survival benefit was observed (RR: 1.00; 95% CI: 0.86-1.17). This was the main endpoint in all trials.
- From the results of four available RCTs, no overall survival (OS) benefit was observed (RR: 1.00; 95% CI: 0.96-1.03).

Moreover, screening was associated with minor and major harms such as over-diagnosis and over-treatment. Surprisingly, the diagnostic tool (i.e. biopsy) was not associated with any mortality in the selected papers, which is in contrast with other known data [40, 41].

The impact on the patient’s overall QoL is still unclear [74-76], but screening has never been shown to be detrimental at population level. All these findings have led to strong advice against systematic population-based screening in all countries, including Europe.

Since 2013, the European Randomized Study of Screening for Prostate Cancer (ERSPC) data have been updated with 13 years of follow up (see Table 5.1.1) [77]. The key message is that with extended follow up, the mortality reduction remains unchanged (21%, and 29% after non-compliance adjustment). However the number needed to screen and to treat is decreasing, and is now below the number needed to screen observed in breast cancer trials [78].

Table 5.1.1: Follow-up data from the ERSPC study [77]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Years of follow-up</th>
<th>Number needed to screen</th>
<th>Number needed to treat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1,410</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>979</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>781</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An individualised risk-adapted strategy for early detection might be offered to a well-informed man with at least ten-fifteen years of life expectancy. However, this approach may still be associated with a substantial risk of over-diagnosis. It is therefore important to carefully identify the patient cohorts likely to benefit most from individual early diagnosis, taking into account the potential balances and harms involved.

Men at elevated risk of having PCa are those > 50 years, or at age > 45 years with a family history of PCa (both paternal or maternal [79]), or African-Americans [80]. In addition, men with a PSA > 1 ng/mL at 40 years and > 2 ng/mL at 60 years [81, 82] are also at increased risk of PCa metastasis or death from PCa several decades later. The long-term survival and QoL benefits of such an approach remains to be proven at a population level. In 2014, as for breast cancer, a genetic abnormality associated with an increased risk has been shown prospectively i.e. BRCA2 [19, 83]. Several new biological markers such as TMPRSS2-Erg fusion, PCA3 [84, 85] or kallikreines as incorporated in the Phi or 4Kscore tests [86, 87] have been shown to add sensitivity and specificity on top of PSA, potentially avoiding unnecessary biopsies and lowering over-diagnosis. At this time there is too limited data to base a recommendation on.

Risk calculators may be useful in helping to determine (on an individual basis) what the potential risk of cancer may be, thereby reducing the number of unnecessary biopsies. Several tools developed from cohort studies are available:
from the PCPT cohort: PCPTRC 2.0 http://deb.uthscsa.edu/URORiskCalc/Pages/calcs.jsp;  
from the ERSPC cohort: http://www.prostatecancer-riskcalculator.com/seven-prostate-cancer-riskcalculators;  
from a local Canadian cohort: http://sunnybrook.ca/content/?page=occ-prostatecalc (among others).
Since none has clearly shown superiority it remains a personal decision which one to use [88].
Informed men requesting an early diagnosis should be given a PSA test and undergo a digital rectal examination (DRE) [89]. The optimal intervals for PSA testing and DRE follow-up are unknown, as they varied between several prospective trials. A risk-adapted strategy might be considered based on the initial PSA level. This could be every two years for those initially at risk, or postponed up to eight to ten years in those not at risk [90].
The age at which early diagnosis should be stopped remains controversial, but an individual’s life expectancy must definitely be taken into account. Men who have less than a fifteen-year life expectancy are unlikely to benefit based on data from the Prostate Cancer Intervention Versus Observation Trial (PIVOT) and the ERSPC trials. Furthermore, although there is no simple tool to evaluate individual life expectancy, co-morbidity is at least as important as age. A detailed review can be found in Section 6.7 on senior adults and in the recently updated SIOG Guidelines [91].
Based on the tools currently available, an individualised strategy will diagnose many insignificant lesions (over 50% in some trials), most of which will not require any form of active treatment (see Section 6.1 - Deferred treatment). It is important to realise that breaking the link between diagnosis and active treatment is the only way to decrease over-treatment, while still maintaining the potential benefit of individual early diagnosis for men requesting it.

5.1.1 Guidelines for screening and early detection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not subject men to prostate-specific antigen (PSA) testing without counselling them on the potential risks and benefits.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer an individualised risk-adapted strategy for early detection to a well-informed man with a good performance status and a life-expectancy of at least ten to fifteen years.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer early PSA testing in well-informed men at elevated risk of having PCa:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• men &gt; 50 years of age;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• men &gt; 45 years of age and a family history of PCa;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• African-Americans &gt; 45 years of age;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• men with a PSA level of &gt; 1 ng/mL at 40 years of age;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• men with a PSA level of &gt; 2 ng/mL at 60 years of age.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer a risk-adapted strategy (based on initial PSA level), with follow-up intervals of two years for those initially at risk:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• men with a PSA level of &gt; 1 ng/mL at 40 years of age;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• men with a PSA level of &gt; 2 ng/mL at 60 years of age;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postpone follow-up to eight years in those not at risk.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decide on the age at which early diagnosis of PCa should be stopped based on life expectancy and performance status; men who have a life-expectancy of &lt; 15-years are unlikely to benefit.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2 Clinical diagnosis
Prostate cancer is usually suspected on the basis of DRE and/or PSA levels. Definitive diagnosis depends on histopathological verification of adenocarcinoma in prostate biopsy cores or specimens from transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) or prostatectomy for benign prostatic enlargement (BPE).

5.2.1 Digital rectal examination
Most PCas are located in the peripheral zone and may be detected by DRE when the volume is ≥ 0.2 mL. In ~18% of cases, PCa is detected by suspect DRE alone, irrespective of PSA level [92]. Suspect DRE in patients with PSA level ≤ 2 ng/mL has a positive predictive value of 5-30% [93]. Abnormal DRE is associated with an increased risk of higher Gleason score and is an indication for biopsy [94, 95].

5.2.2 Prostate-specific antigen
The use of PSA as a serum marker has revolutionised PCa diagnosis [96]. Prostate-specific antigen is organ- but not cancer-specific, therefore, it may be elevated in benign prostatic hypertrophy (BPH), prostatitis and
other non-malignant conditions. As an independent variable, PSA is a better predictor of cancer than either DRE or transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) [97].

There are no agreed standards defined for measuring PSA [98]. PSA is a continuous parameter, with higher levels indicating greater likelihood of PCa. Many men may harbour PCa despite having low serum PSA [99]. Table 5.2.1 demonstrates the occurrence of Gleason ≥ 7 (or ISUP grade 2) PCa at low PSA levels, precluding an optimal PSA threshold for detecting non-palpable but clinically significant PCa. The use of nomograms may help in predicting indolent PCa [100].

Table 5.2.1: Risk of PCa in relation to low PSA values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PSA level (ng/mL)</th>
<th>Risk of PCa (%)</th>
<th>Risk of Gleason ≥ 7 PCa (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.0-0.5</td>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6-1.0</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1-2.0</td>
<td>17.0</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1-3.0</td>
<td>23.9</td>
<td>4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1-4.0</td>
<td>26.9</td>
<td>6.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2.2.1 PSA density
Prostate specific antigen density is the level of serum PSA divided by the TRUS-determined prostate volume. The higher the PSA density, the more likely it is that the PCa is clinically significant (see Section 6.1.3).

5.2.2.2 PSA velocity and doubling time
There are two methods of measuring PSA kinetics:
- PSA velocity (PSAV): absolute annual increase in serum PSA (ng/mL/year) [101];
- PSA doubling time (PSA-DT): which measures the exponential increase in serum PSA over time [102].

Prostate specific antigen velocity and PSA-DT may have a prognostic role in treating PCa [103], but limited diagnostic use because of background noise (total prostate volume, and BPH), different intervals between PSA determinations, and acceleration/deceleration of PSAV and PSA-DT over time. These measurements do not provide additional information compared with PSA alone [104-107].

5.2.2.3 Free/total PSA ratio
Free/total (f/t) PSA ratio can be used to differentiate BPH from PCa. It stratifies the risk of PCa in men with 4-10 ng/mL total PSA and negative DRE. Prostate cancer was detected by biopsy in 56% of men with f/t PSA < 0.10, but in only 8% with f/t PSA > 0.25 ng/mL [108]. Free/total PSA is of no clinical use if total serum PSA is > 10 ng/mL or during follow up of known PCa.

Free/total PSA must be used cautiously because it may be adversely affected by several pre-analytical and clinical factors (e.g., instability of free PSA at 4°C and room temperature, variable assay characteristics, and concomitant BPH in large prostates) [109].

5.2.2.4 Additional serum testing
A few assays measuring a panel of kallikreins in serum or plasma are now commercially available, including the FDA-approved Prostate Health Index (PHI) test, combining free and total PSA and the (-2)pro-PSA isoform (p2PSA), and the four kallikrein (4K) score test (measuring free, intact and total PSA and kallikrein-like peptidase 2 [hK2]). Both tests are intended to reduce the number of unnecessary prostate biopsies in PSA-tested men. A few prospective multicentre studies demonstrated that both the PHI and 4K test out-performed f/t PSA PCa detection, with an improved prediction of clinically significant PCa in men with a PSA between 2-10 ng/mL [87, 110] [111]. In a head to head comparison both tests performed equally [112].

5.2.2.5 PCA3 marker
Prostate cancer gene 3 (PCA3) is a prostate-specific, non-coding mRNA biomarker that is detectable in urine sediments obtained after three strokes of prostatic massage during DRE. The commercially available Progensa urine test for PCA3 is superior to total and percent-free PSA for detection of PCa in men with elevated PSA as it shows significant increases in the area under the receiver-operator characteristic curve for positive biopsies [113-116].

PCA3 score increases with PCa volume, but there are conflicting data about whether it independently predicts Gleason score, and its use for monitoring in active surveillance (AS) is, as yet, not confirmed [117]. Currently, the main indication for the Progensa test is to determine whether repeat biopsy is needed after an initially negative biopsy, but its clinical effectiveness for this purpose is uncertain [118].
5.2.2.6 Guidelines for risk-assessment of asymptomatic men

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In order to avoid unnecessary biopsies, offer further risk-assessment to asymptomatic men with a prostate specific antigen level between 2-10 ng/mL prior to performing a prostate biopsy. Use one of the following tools:</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• risk-calculator;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• an additional serum or urine-based test (e.g. Prostate Health Index test [PHI], four kallikrein [4K]score or Prostate cancer gene 3 [PCA3]) or imaging.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2.3 Prostate biopsy

5.2.3.1 Baseline biopsy

The need for prostate biopsy is based on PSA level and/or suspicious DRE. Age, potential comorbidity, and therapeutic consequences should also be considered and discussed beforehand [119]. Risk stratification is a potential tool for reducing unnecessary biopsies [119].

Limited PSA elevation alone should not prompt immediate biopsy. Prostate specific antigen level should be verified after a few weeks using the same assay under standardised conditions (i.e., no ejaculation, manipulations, and urinary tract infections [UTIs]) in the same laboratory [120, 121]. Empiric use of antibiotics in an asymptomatic patient in order to lower the PSA should not be undertaken [122].

Ultrasound (US)-guided biopsy is now the standard of care. A transrectal approach is used for most prostate biopsies, although some urologists prefer a perineal approach. Cancer detection rates are comparable with both approaches [123, 124].

5.2.3.2 Repeat biopsy after previously negative biopsy

The indications for repeat biopsy are:

- rising and/or persistently elevated PSA (see Table 5.2.1 for risk estimates);
- suspicious DRE, 5-30% cancer risk [92, 93];
- atypical small acinar proliferation (i.e., atypical glands suspicious for cancer), 40% risk [125];
- extensive (multiple biopsy sites, i.e., ≥ 3) high-grade prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia (HGPIN), ~30% risk [125, 126];
- a few atypical glands immediately adjacent to high-grade prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia (i.e., PINATYP), ~50% risk [127];
- intraductal carcinoma as a solitary finding, > 90% risk of associated high-grade prostate carcinoma [128];
- positive multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging (mpMRI) findings (see Section 5.2.4).

Additional information may be gained by the Progensa DRE urine test for PCA3, the serum 4Kscore and PHI tests or a tissue-based epigenetic test (ConfirmMDx). The role of PHI and Progensa PCA3 in deciding whether to take a repeat biopsy in men who had a previous negative biopsy is uncertain and probably not cost-effective [118]. The ConfirmMDx test is based on the concept that benign prostatic tissue in the vicinity of a PCa focus shows distinct epigenetic alterations. If, due to sampling bias, the PCa is missed at biopsy, demonstration of epigenic changes in the adjacent benign tissue would indicate the presence of carcinoma. The ConfirmMDX test quantifies the methylation level of promoter regions of three genes (RASSF1, GSTP1 and APC) in benign prostatic tissue. A multicentre study found a negative predictive value of 88% when methylation was absent in all three markers, implying that a repeat biopsy could be avoided in these men [129]. Given the limited available data, no recommendation can be made regarding its routine application.

Table 5.2.2: Description of additional investigational tests after a negative prostate biopsy*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of test</th>
<th>Test substrate</th>
<th>Molecular</th>
<th>FDA approved</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Progensa</td>
<td>DRE urine</td>
<td>IncRNA PCA3</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHI</td>
<td>Serum</td>
<td>Total, free and p2PSA</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4Kscore Test</td>
<td>Serum/plasma</td>
<td>Total, free, intact PSA, hK2</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConfirmMDX</td>
<td>Benign prostate biopsy</td>
<td>Methylated APC, RASSF1 and GSTP1</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Isolated high-grade PIN in one or two biopsy sites is no longer an indication for repeat biopsy [130].
5.2.3.3 Saturation biopsy
The incidence of PCa detected by saturation repeat biopsy (> 20 cores) is 30-43% and depends on the number of cores sampled during earlier biopsies [131]. Saturation biopsy may be performed with the transperineal technique, which detects an additional 38% of PCa. The high rate of urinary retention (10%) is a drawback [132].

5.2.3.4 Sampling sites and number of cores
On baseline biopsies, the sample sites should be bilateral from apex to base, as far posterior and lateral as possible in the peripheral gland. Additional cores should be obtained from suspect areas by DRE/TRUS. Sextant biopsy is no longer considered adequate. For a prostate volume of 30-40 mL, ≥ 8 cores should be sampled. Ten to twelve core biopsies are recommended [133], with > 12 cores not being significantly more conclusive [134, 135].

5.2.3.5 Diagnostic transurethral resection of the prostate
Transurethral resection of the prostate should not be used as a tool for cancer detection [136].

5.2.3.6 Seminal vesicle biopsy
Indications for seminal vesicle (staging) biopsies are poorly defined. At a PSA of > 15 ng/mL, the odds of tumour involvement are 20-25% [137]. A seminal vesicle staging biopsy is only useful if it has a decisive impact on treatment, such as ruling out radical tumour resection or for potential subsequent radiotherapy. Its added value compared with mpMRI is questionable.

5.2.3.7 Transition zone biopsy
Transition zone sampling during baseline biopsies has a low detection rate and should be limited to repeat biopsies [138].

5.2.3.8 Antibiotics prior to biopsy
Oral or intravenous antibiotics are recommended. Quinolones are the drugs of choice, with ciprofloxacin being superior to ofloxacin [139]. Increased quinolone resistance [140] is associated with a rise in severe post-biopsy infection [141].

5.2.3.9 Local anaesthesia prior to biopsy
Ultrasound-guided periprostatic block is recommended [142]. It is not important whether the depot is apical or basal. Intrarectal instillation of local anaesthesia is inferior to periprostatic infiltration [143].

5.2.3.10 Fine-needle aspiration biopsy
Fine-needle aspiration biopsy is no longer recommended.

5.2.3.11 Complications
Biopsy complications are listed in Table 5.2.3 [144]. Severe post-procedural infections were initially reported in < 1% of cases, but have increased as a consequence of antibiotic resistance [145]. Low-dose aspirin is no longer an absolute contraindication [146]. A SR found favourable infections rates for transperineal compared to transrectal biopsies with similar rates of haematuria, haematospermia and urinary retention [147].

Table 5.2.3: Percentage of complications per biopsy session, irrespective of the number of cores

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complications</th>
<th>Percentage of patients affected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Haematospermia</td>
<td>37.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haematuria &gt; 1 day</td>
<td>14.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectal bleeding &lt; 2 days</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostatitis</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever &gt; 38.5°C</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epididymitis</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectal bleeding &gt; 2 days +/- surgical intervention</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary retention</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other complications requiring hospitalisation</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.2.4 The role of imaging

5.2.4.1 Transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) and ultrasound-based techniques
Grey-scale TRUS is not reliable at detecting PCa [148]. Thus, there is no evidence that US-targeted biopsies can replace systematic biopsies. New sonographic modalities such as sonoelastography and contrast-enhanced US are still under investigation. Currently there is not enough evidence for their routine use.

5.2.4.2 Multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging
Correlation with radical prostatectomy (RP) shows that mpMRI, associating T2-weighted imaging with diffusion-weighted imaging, dynamic contrast-enhanced imaging, and/or H1-spectroscopy, has good sensitivity for the detection and localisation of Gleason score > 7 cancers (see Table 5.2.4) [149-152].

### Table 5.2.4: PCa detection rates (%) by mpMRI for tumour volume and Gleason score in radical prostatectomy specimen [151]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gleason score</th>
<th>Tumour volume (mL)</th>
<th>&lt; 0.5</th>
<th>0.5-2</th>
<th>&gt; 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GS6</td>
<td></td>
<td>21-29%</td>
<td>43-54%</td>
<td>67-75%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GS7</td>
<td></td>
<td>63%</td>
<td>82-88%</td>
<td>97%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GS &gt;7</td>
<td></td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>93%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging can reliably detect aggressive tumours in candidates for prostate biopsy with a negative (NPV) and positive predictive value (PPV) ranging from 63 to 98% and from 34 to 68%, respectively [153]. As a result, mpMRI is increasingly performed before prostate biopsy.

Theoretically, pre-biopsy mpMRI could be used in two different ways. The first strategy uses mpMRI to improve the detection of clinically significant prostate cancer (csPCa). In this diagnostic pathway, MRI-targeted biopsy (TBx) would be added to systematic biopsies in case of positive mpMRI, and systematic biopsies would be performed in all patients with negative mpMRI. The second strategy uses mpMRI as a triage test before biopsy. In this diagnostic pathway, only MRI-TBx would be performed in case of a positive mpMRI. Patients with negative mpMRI results would not undergo a prostate biopsy at all.

A large body of evidence suggests that MRI-TBx has a higher detection rate of detecting csPCa as compared to systematic biopsy [154-158]. However, sub-groups analysis showed that the impact of mpMRI was most marked in the repeat-biopsy setting, but not in biopsy-naïve men [154, 155]. Single centre RCTs performed in biopsy-naïve men provided contradictory findings as to whether or not the combination of systematic biopsies and MRI-TBx had a higher detection rate for PCa and csPCa than systematic biopsies alone [159-161]. Two large multicentre studies (MRI-FIRST and PRECISION) are currently ongoing to define the added value of pre-biopsy MRI in biopsy-naïve patients. It is therefore too early to make recommendations on the routine use of pre-biopsy mpMRI in biopsy-naïve patients.

Magnetic resonance imaging-targeted biopsies can be obtained through cognitive guidance, Ultrasound/mpMRI fusion software or direct in-bore guidance. Controlled studies and a SR did not show a clear superiority of one technique over the others [158, 162-164].

Whether systematic biopsies can be omitted in patients (or prostate lobes) with negative mpMRI depends on the NPV of mpMRI. A SR performed under the auspices of the EAU-ESTRO-ESUR-SIOG PCa Guidelines Panel showed a highly variable prevalence of overall PCa (13.0-74.7%) and csPCa (13.7-50.9%) in patients undergoing pre-biopsy mpMRI (unpublished results). Due to the fact that the NPV decreases when prevalence increases, it is necessary to risk-stratify patients before defining the patients that could safely omit biopsy in case of a negative mpMRI. Prostate-specific antigen density [165] or risk calculators [88] can be used to identify groups of patients with low risk of PCa in whom mpMRI would have a high NPV. The impact of these risk-stratification tools on the NPV of pre-biopsy mpMRI needs to be carefully evaluated, both in the biopsy-naïve and in the repeat-biopsy setting.

Despite the use of the new PIRADS v2 scoring system [166], mpMRI has a low specificity, with high rates of false positives, especially among lesions scored 3/5 and 4/5 [167]. Multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging inter-reader reproducibility is also moderate [168-171], which currently limits its broad use outside expert centres. At this moment it is too soon to define if quantitative approaches and computer-aided diagnosis systems will improve the characterisation of lesions seen at mpMRI in the future [172-174].
5.2.4.3 Guidelines for imaging

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Before repeat biopsy, perform multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging (mpMRI) when clinical suspicion of PCa persists in spite of negative biopsies.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>During repeat biopsy, include systematic biopsies and targeting of any mpMRI lesions seen.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2.5 Pathology of prostate needle biopsies

5.2.5.1 Processing

Prostate core biopsies from different sites are processed separately. Before processing, the number and length of the cores are recorded. The length of biopsy tissue significantly correlates with the PCa detection rate [175]. To achieve optimal flattening and alignment, a maximum of three cores should be embedded per tissue cassette, and sponges or paper used to keep the cores stretched and flat [176, 177]. To optimise detection of small lesions, paraffin blocks should be cut at three levels [138] and intervening unstained sections are kept for immunohistochemistry.

5.2.5.2 Microscopy and reporting

Diagnosis of PCa is based on histology. The diagnostic criteria include features pathognomonic of cancer, major and minor features favouring cancer and features against cancer. Ancillary staining and additional (deeper) sections should be considered if a suspect lesion is identified [178-180]. Diagnostic uncertainty is resolved by intradepartmental or external consultation [178]. Table 5.2.5 lists the recommended terminology for reporting prostate biopsies [176].

Table 5.2.5: Recommended terminology for reporting prostate biopsies [176]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Terminology</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Benign/negative for malignancy; if appropriate, include a description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active inflammation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Granulomatous inflammation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-grade prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PIN)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-grade PIN with atypical glands, suspicious for adenocarcinoma (PINATYP)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus of atypical glands/lesion suspicious for adenocarcinoma/atypical small acinar proliferation, suspicious for cancer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intraductal carcinoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each biopsy site should be reported individually, including its location (in accordance with the sampling site) and histopathological findings, which include the histological type and the ISUP 2014 Gleason grading system [181]. A global Gleason score comprising all biopsies is also reported according to the ISUP 2014 grade (see Section 4.2). Intraductal carcinoma, lymphovascular invasion (LVI) and extra-prostatic extension (EPE) must each be reported, if identified. More recently, expansile cribriform pattern of PCa as well as intraductal carcinoma in biopsies were identified as independent prognosticators of metastatic disease [182].

The proportion of carcinoma-positive cores as well as the extent of tumour involvement per biopsy core correlate with the Gleason score, tumour volume, surgical margins and pathologic stage in RP specimens and predicts BCR, post-prostatectomy progression and RT failure. These parameters are included in nomograms created to predict pathologic stage and seminal vesicle invasion after RP and RT failure [183-185]. A pathology report should therefore provide both the proportion of carcinoma-positive cores and the extent of cancer involvement for each core. The length in mm and percentage of carcinoma in the biopsy have equal prognostic impact [186]. An extent of > 50% of adenocarcinoma in a single core is used in some AS protocols as a cut off [187] triggering immediate treatment vs. AS in patients with Gleason score 6.

A prostate biopsy that does not contain glandular tissue should be reported as diagnostically inadequate. Mandatory elements to be reported for a carcinoma-positive prostate biopsy are:

- type of carcinoma;
- primary and secondary/worst Gleason grade (per biopsy site and global);
- percentage high-grade carcinoma (global);
- extent of carcinoma (in mm or percentage) (at least per biopsy site);
- if present: EPE, seminal vesicle invasion, LVI, intraductal carcinoma/cribriform pattern, peri-neural invasion;
- ISUP 2014 grade (global).
5.2.5.3 Tissue-based prognostic biomarker testing
The ProProlaris test (Myriad Genetics) measures the expression of 31 cell-cycle associated genes in biopsy-derived PCa tissue and may be of clinical use to determine whether a patient needs curative treatment or may have his treatment deferred [188]. Similarly, Oncotype Dx is a RNA-based test based on 12 carcinoma-associated genes and 5 reference genes which can be applied to carcinoma tissue in prostate biopsies to determine the aggressiveness of the carcinoma. Both tests were shown in prospective studies to provide prognostic information in men with clinically localised PCa, additional to conventional clinico-pathological parameters, including Gleason score and PSA level. The results of prospective multicentre studies are awaited before a recommendation can be made regarding their routine application.

5.2.6 Histopathology of radical prostatectomy specimens
5.2.6.1 Processing of radical prostatectomy specimens
Histopathological examination of RP specimens describes the pathological stage, histopathological type, grade and surgical margins of PCa. It is recommended that RP specimens are totally embedded, to enable assessment of cancer location, multifocality and heterogeneity. For cost-effectiveness, partial embedding may also be considered, particularly for prostates > 60 g. The most widely accepted method includes complete embedding of the posterior prostate, and a single mid-anterior left and right section. Compared with total embedding, partial embedding detected 98% of PCa with a Gleason score > 7 and accurate staging in 96% of cases [189].

Ink the entire RP specimen upon receipt in the laboratory, to demonstrate the surgical margins. Specimens are fixed by immersion in buffered formalin for at least 24 hours, preferably before slicing. Fixation can be enhanced by injecting formalin, which provides more homogeneous fixation and sectioning after 24 hours [190]. After fixation, the apex and the base (bladder neck) are removed and cut into (para)sagittal or radial sections; the shave method is not recommended [57]. The remainder of the specimen is cut in transverse, 3-4 mm sections, perpendicular to the long axis of the urethra. The resultant tissue slices can be embedded and processed as whole-mounts or after quadrant sectioning. Whole-mounts provide better topographic visualisation, faster histopathological examination and better correlation with pre-operative imaging, although they are more time-consuming and require specialist handling. For routine sectioning, the advantages of whole mounts do not outweigh their disadvantages.

5.2.6.1.1 Guidelines for processing prostatectomy specimens

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ensure total embedding, by conventional (quadrant) or whole-mount sectioning.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ink the entire surface before cutting, to evaluate the surgical margin.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examine the apex and base separately, using the cone method with sagittal or radial sectioning.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2.6.2 Radical prostatectomy specimen report
The pathology report provides essential information on the prognostic characteristics relevant for clinical decision-making (Table 5.2.6). As a result of the complex information to be provided for each RP specimen, the use of synoptic(-like) or checklist reporting is recommended (Table 5.2.7). Synoptic reporting results in more transparent and complete pathology reporting [191].

Table 5.2.6: Mandatory elements provided by the pathology report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Histopathological type: &gt; 95% of PCa represents conventional (acinar) adenocarcinoma.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grading according to Gleason score (or therapy-related changes) and ISUP 2014 grade group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour (sub)staging and surgical margin status: location and extent of extraprostatic extension (EPE), presence of bladder neck invasion, laterality of EPE or seminal vesicle invasion, location and extent of positive surgical margins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional information may be provided on multifocality, and diameter/volume and zonal location of the dominant tumour.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5.2.7: Example checklist: reporting of prostatectomy specimens

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Histopathological type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type of carcinoma, e.g. conventional acinar, or ductal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Histological grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary (predominant) Gleason grade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary Gleason grade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary Gleason grade (if applicable)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global Gleason score/ISUP 2014 grade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approximate percentage of Gleason grade 4 or 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumour quantitation (optional)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Percentage of prostate involved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size/volume of dominant tumour nodule</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathological staging (pTNM)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If extraprostatic extension is present:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indicate whether it is focal or extensive;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specify sites;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indicate whether there is seminal vesicle invasion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If applicable, regional lymph nodes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number of nodes retrieved;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number of nodes involved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surgical margins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If carcinoma is present at the margin:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specify sites.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Presence of lymphovascular/angio-invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location of dominant tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence of intraductal carcinoma/cribriform architecture</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2.6.2.1  Gleason score in prostatectomy specimens

Grading of conventional prostatic adenocarcinoma using the (ISUP 2014 modified) Gleason system [181] is the strongest prognostic factor for clinical behaviour and treatment response. The Gleason score is incorporated in nomograms that predict disease-specific survival (DSS) after prostatectomy [192].

The Gleason score is the sum of the most and second-most dominant (in terms of volume) Gleason grade. If only one grade is present, the primary grade is doubled. If a grade comprises ≤ 5% of the cancer volume, it is not incorporated in the Gleason score (5% rule). The primary and secondary grades are reported in addition to the Gleason score. A global Gleason score is given for multiple tumours, but a separate tumour focus with a higher Gleason score should also be mentioned. Tertiary Gleason grade 4 or 5, particularly if > 5% of the PCa volume, is an unfavourable prognostic indicator for BCR. The tertiary grade and its approximate proportion of the cancer volume should also be reported [193] in addition to the global Gleason score as well as the ISUP 2014 grade group (see Section 4.2).

5.2.6.2.2  Definition of extraprostatic extension

Extraprostatic extension is defined as carcinoma mixed with periprostatic adipose tissue, or tissue that extends beyond the prostate gland boundaries (e.g., neurovascular bundle, anterior prostate). Microscopic bladder neck invasion is considered EPE. It is useful to report the location and extent of EPE because the latter is related to recurrence risk [194].

There are no internationally accepted definitions of focal or microscopic, vs. non-focal or extensive EPE. Some describe focal as a few glands [195] or extension as < 1 high-power field (HPF) [196], whereas others measure the depth of extent in millimetres [197].

At the apex of the prostate, tumour mixed with skeletal muscle does not constitute EPE. In the bladder neck, microscopic invasion of smooth muscle fibres is not equated to bladder wall invasion, i.e., not as pT4, because it does not carry independent prognostic significance for PCa recurrence [198, 199] and should be recorded as EPE (pT3a). A positive margin at the bladder neck should be reported as EPE (pT3a) with positive margin, and not as pT4.

Stage pT4 is only assigned when the tumour invades the bladder muscle wall as determined macroscopically [200].
5.2.6.3  PCa volume

The independent prognostic value of PCa volume in RP specimens has not been established [196, 201-204]. Nevertheless, a cut-off of 0.5 mL is commonly used to distinguish insignificant from clinically relevant cancer [201]. Improvement in prostatic radio-imaging allows more accurate pre-operative measurement of cancer volume. It is recommended that at least the diameter/volume of the dominant tumour nodule should be assessed, or a rough estimate of the percentage of cancer tissue provided [205].

5.2.6.4  Surgical margin status

Surgical margin is an independent risk factor for BCR. Margin status is positive if tumour cells are in contact with the ink on the specimen surface. Margin status is negative if tumour cells are close to the inked surface [202] or at the surface of the tissue lacking ink. In tissues that have severe crush artefacts, it may not be possible to determine margin status [206].

Surgical margin is separate from pathological stage, and a positive margin is not evidence of EPE [207]. There is insufficient evidence to prove a relationship between margin extent and recurrence risk [196]. However, some indication must be given of the multifocality extent of margin positivity, such as the linear extent in mm of involvement: focal, ≤ 1 mm vs. extensive, > 1 mm [208], or number of blocks with positive margin involvement.

5.2.7  Guidelines for the clinical diagnosis of prostate cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not use transurethral resection of the prostate as a tool for cancer detection.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the International Society of Urological Pathology (ISUP) 2014 Gleason grading system for grading of PCa.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In symptomatic men, base the initial decision to perform a biopsy on prostate-specific antigen (PSA) testing and digital rectal examination (DRE).</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the additional diagnostic options in asymptomatic men with a normal DRE and a PSA between 2.0 and 10 ng/mL (risk calculator, or an additional serum or urine-based test [e.g. Prostate Health Index, 4Kscore or prostate cancer gene 3] or imaging).</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not initially offer transition zone biopsies due to low detection rates.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For initial diagnosis, perform a core biopsy of ten to twelve systematic transrectal or transperineal peripheral zone biopsies under ultrasound guidance.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform transrectal prostate needle biopsies under antibiotic protection.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use a local anaesthetic by periprostatic infiltration for transrectal prostate needle biopsies.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ensure that prostate core biopsies from different sites are submitted separately for processing and pathology reporting.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhere to the 2010 ISUP consensus meeting Guidelines for processing and reporting of prostatectomy specimens.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform one set of repeat biopsies for persistent indications for PCa (abnormal DRE, elevated PSA or histopathological findings suggestive of malignancy at initial biopsy).</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3  Diagnosis: Clinical staging

The extent of PCa is evaluated by DRE and PSA, and may be supplemented with bone scanning and computed tomography (CT) or mpMRI.

5.3.1  T-staging

5.3.1.1  Definitions

Extraprostatic extension is defined as carcinoma mixed with periprostatic adipose tissue, or tissue that extends beyond the prostate gland (e.g., neurovascular bundle, anterior prostate, or bladder neck) and corresponds to stage T3a. It is to be distinguished from seminal vesicle invasion (SVI) which corresponds to stage T3b (see Section 5.2 for details).

5.3.1.2  DRE, PSA level and biopsy findings

The first level of assessment is local tumour stage because the distinction between organ-confined (T1/T2) and extraprostatic (T3/T4) disease affects treatment decisions. Digital rectal examination is positively correlated with tumour stage in < 50% of cases [209], although it often underestimates tumour extension. More extensive T-staging is only recommended if it directly affects treatment decisions.

Serum PSA levels increase with tumour stage, although they are limited for accurate prediction of final
In prostate needle biopsy, the percentage of cancerous tissue is a strong predictor of positive surgical margins, SVI, and non-organ-confined disease. An increase in tumour-positive biopsies is an independent predictor of EPE, margin involvement, and lymph node (LN) invasion. Serum PSA, Gleason score, and T-stage are more useful together than alone in predicting final pathological stage. Models may help to select candidates for nerve-sparing surgery and lymphadenectomy (LND) (see Section 6.2.5).

Seminal vesicle invasion is predictive of local relapse and distant metastatic failure. Seminal vesicle biopsies can improve pre-operative staging accuracy. This is not recommended for first-line examination, but should be reserved for patients with high risk of SVI in whom a positive biopsy would modify treatment. Patients with T-stage > 2a and serum PSA > 10 ng/mL are candidates for SV biopsy. Patients with positive biopsies from the base of the prostate are more likely to have positive SV biopsies.

Transperineal 3D prostate mapping biopsy (PMB) is an alternative to transrectal biopsies because it provides more accurate tumour localisation, extent and Gleason grading, and has acceptable morbidity.

5.3.1.3 Transrectal ultrasound
Transrectal ultrasound is no more accurate at predicting organ-confined disease than DRE. Transrectal ultrasound-derived techniques (e.g. 3D-TRUS, colour Doppler) cannot differentiate between T2 and T3 tumours with sufficient accuracy to be recommended for routine staging.

5.3.1.4 Multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging
T2-weighted imaging remains the most useful method for local staging on mpMRI. At 1.5T (Tesla), mpMRI has good specificity but low sensitivity for detecting T3 stages. Pooled data from a meta-analysis for EPE, SVI, and overall stage T3 showed a sensitivity and specificity of 0.57 (95% CI: 0.49-0.64) and 0.91 (95% CI: 0.88-0.93), 0.58 (95% CI: 0.47-0.68) and 0.96 (95% CI: 0.95-0.97), and 0.61 (95% CI: 0.54-0.67) and 0.88 (95% CI: 0.85-0.91), respectively. Multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging cannot detect microscopic EPE. Its sensitivity increases with the radius of extension within peri-prostatic fat. In one study, the EPE detection rate increased from 14 to 100% when the radius of extension increased from < 1 mm to > 3 mm. In another study, mpMRI sensitivity, specificity and accuracy for detecting pT3 stage was, 40%, 95% and 76%, respectively, for focal (i.e. microscopic) EPE, and 62%, 95% and 88% for extensive EPE.

The use of high field (3T) or functional imaging in addition to T2-weighted imaging improves sensitivity for EPE or SVI detection, but the experience of the reader remains of paramount importance and the inter-reader agreement remains moderate with kappa values ranging from 0.41 to 0.68. Multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging, although not perfect for local staging, may improve prediction of the pathological stage when combined with clinical data. Other MRI-derived parameters such as the tumour volume or the contact length of the tumour with the capsule, or the Gleason score obtained through MRI-TBx could further improve the local staging.

Given its low sensitivity for focal (microscopic) EPE, mpMRI is not recommended for local staging in low-risk patients. However, mpMRI can still be useful for treatment planning in selected low-risk patients (e.g. candidates for brachytherapy).

5.3.2 N-staging
N-staging should be performed only when it might directly influence treatment decisions. High PSA values, T2b-T3 stage, poor tumour differentiation and perineural invasion are associated with high risk of nodal metastases. Nomograms can define patients at low risk (< 10%) of nodal metastasis, although nomograms may be more accurate in establishing the extent of nodal involvement. The simple Roach formula can also be used. Patients with low- and intermediate-risk PCa may be spared N-staging before potentially curative treatment.

Gleason 4 pattern in sextant biopsies can define the risk of N1 disease. Risk of nodal metastases was 20-45% if any core had a predominant Gleason 4 pattern, or > 3 cores had any Gleason 4 pattern. For the remaining patients, the risk was 2.5%, suggesting that nodal staging is unnecessary in selected patients.

5.3.2.1 Computed tomography and magnetic resonance imaging
Abdominal CT and T1-T2-weighted MRI indirectly assess nodal invasion by using LN diameter and morphology. However, the size of non-metastatic LNs varies widely and may overlap with the size of LN metastases, since microscopic invasion does not enlarge LNs. The normal range for non-metastatic LNs also varies with different anatomical regions. As a result, the ideal size threshold remains unclear. Computed tomography and MRI sensitivity is less than 40% among 4,264 patients 654 (15.3%) of...
whom had positive LNs at LND, CT was positive in only 105 (2.5%) patients [241]. Detection of microscopic LN invasion by CT is < 1% in patients with a Gleason score < 8, PSA < 20 ng/mL, or localised disease [245-247].

Diffusion-weighted MRI may detect metastases in normal-sized nodes, but a negative diffusion-weighted MRI cannot rule out the presence of LN metastases [242, 248]. Moreover, this scan is technically challenging to perform in the pelvis where artifacts due to bowel gas can interfere with the quality of the imaging.

Because of their low sensitivity, CT or MRI should not be used for nodal staging in low-risk patients and be reserved for high-risk cancer patients.

5.3.2.2 Choline PET/CT

$^{11}$C- or $^{18}$F-choline positron emission tomography (PET)/CT have good specificity for LN metastases, but a sensitivity of 10-73% [249, 250].

In a meta-analysis of 609 patients, pooled sensitivity and specificity of choline PET/CT for pelvic LN metastases were 62% (95% CI: 51-66%) and 92% (95% CI: 89-94%), respectively [251]. In a prospective trial of 75 patients at intermediate risk of nodal involvement (10-35%), the sensitivity was only 8.2% in a region based and 18.9% at a patient-based analysis, which is too low to be of clinical interest [252].

In intermediate/high-risk patients, comparisons between choline PET/CT and diffusion-weighted MRI gave contradictory results, with PET/CT sensitivity found to be superior [253], similar [254, 255] or inferior [252] than that of diffusion-weighted MRI.

Because of its insufficient sensitivity, choline PET/CT does not reach clinically acceptable diagnostic accuracy for detection of LN metastases.

5.3.2.3 New methods

$^{68}$Ga-labelled prostate-specific membrane antigen-PET CT ($^{68}$Ga-PSMA PET/CT) seems to exhibit promising sensitivity for LN involvement. A recent meta-analysis of five retrospective studies, performed in an initial staging and/or recurrence setting, reported combined sensitivities and specificities of 86% (95% CI: 37-98%) and 86% (95% CI: 3-100%) at patient level, and 80% (95% CI: 66-89%) and 97% (95% CI: 92-99%) at lesion level [256]. Similarly, $^{18}$F-labelled PSMA targeting compounds are being developed commercially. However, these results must be interpreted with care, as careful validation studies have not been performed.

5.3.3 M-staging

5.3.3.1 Bone scan

$^{99m}$Tc-Bone scan (BS) has been the most widely used method for evaluating bone metastases of PCa. A 2014 meta-analysis showed a combined sensitivity and specificity of 79% (95% CI: 73-83%) and 82% (95% CI: 78-85%) at patient level and 59% (95% CI: 55-63%) and 75% (95% CI: 71-79%) at lesion level [257]. Adding single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) to plain BS has been shown to reduce the number of equivocal lesions [258]. Bone scan diagnostic yield is significantly influenced by the PSA level, the clinical stage and the tumour Gleason score and these three factors were the only independent predictors of BS positivity in a study of 853 patients [259]. The mean BS positivity rate in 23 different series was 2.3% in patients with PSA levels < 10 ng/mL, 5.3% in patients with PSA level between 10.1 and 19.9 ng/mL, and 16.2% in patients with PSA levels of 20.0-49.9 ng/mL. It was 6.4% in men with organ-confined cancer and 49.5% in men with locally advanced cancers. Detection rates were 5.6% and 29.9% for Gleason scores of 7 and ≥ 8 respectively [241]. In two studies, a major Gleason pattern of 4 was found to be a significant predictor of positive BS [260, 261].

Bone scanning should be performed in symptomatic patients, independent of PSA level, Gleason score or clinical stage [241].

5.3.3.2 Other modalities

$^{18}$F-sodium fluoride ($^{18}$F-NaF) PET or PET/CT shows similar specificity and superior sensitivity to BS. It may even have the highest sensitivity for bone metastases, as compared to all other imaging techniques [262, 263]. However, unlike choline PET/CT, it does not detect LN metastases, and it is less cost-effective compared to BS [262].

It remains unclear whether choline PET/CT is more sensitive than conventional BS, but it has higher specificity, with fewer indeterminate bone lesions [249, 251, 264].

Diffusion-weighted whole-body and axial MRI are more sensitive than BS and targeted conventional radiography in detecting bone metastases in high-risk PCa [265, 266]. Whole-body MRI is also more sensitive and specific than combined BS, targeted radiography and abdominopelvic CT [267]. A meta-analysis found that MRI is more sensitive than choline PET/CT and BS for detecting bone metastases on a per-patient basis, although choline PET/CT had the highest specificity (Table 5.3.1) [257].
Only limited evidence is available on the performance of $^{68}$Ga-PSMA PET/CT in initial staging. A meta-analysis reported a combined positivity rate of 40% (95% CI: 19-64%) in patients undergoing primary staging. However, the positivity rate fell to 27% (95% CI: 15-42%) when studies with a sample size < 10 were excluded [256].

Table 5.3.1: Sensitivity and specificity for detecting bone metastases on a per-patient basis [257]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imaging modality</th>
<th>Sensitivity %</th>
<th>Specificity %</th>
<th>CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bone scan</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>95% (0.73-0.83)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choline PET/CT</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>95% (0.83-0.96)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>95% (0.91-0.99)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cl = confidence interval; mpMRI = multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging; PET = positron emission tomography.

Although evidence shows that choline PET/CT and mpMRI are more accurate than BS, the clinical benefit of detecting bone metastases at an earlier time-point using more sensitive techniques remains unclear in the initial staging setting [268]. Bone scan is therefore usually preferred in most centres.

5.4 Guidelines for staging of prostate cancer

Any risk group staging | LE | GR |
-----------------------|----|----|
Do not use computed tomography and transrectal ultrasound for local staging. | 2a | A |

Low-risk localised PCa | LE | GR |
-----------------------|----|----|
Do not use additional imaging for staging purposes. | 2a | A |

Intermediate-risk PCa | LE | GR |
----------------------|----|----|
In predominantly Gleason pattern 4 (ISUP grade 3), include at least cross-sectional abdominopelvic imaging and a bone-scan for metastatic screening. | 2a | A* |
In predominantly Gleason pattern 4 (ISUP grade 3), use prostate multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging (mpMRI) for local staging. | 2b | A |

High-risk localised PCa/High-risk locally advanced PCa | LE | GR |
-----------------------------------------------|----|----|
Use prostate mpMRI for local staging. | 2b | A |
Perform metastatic screening including at least cross-sectional abdominopelvic imaging and a bone-scan. | 2a | A |

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

6. DISEASE MANAGEMENT

6.1 Treatment: Deferred treatment (active surveillance/watchful waiting)

6.1.1 Introduction

Many men with screening-detected localised PCa will not benefit from definitive treatment [269] and 45% of them are candidates for deferred management. There are two distinct strategies for conservative management that aim to reduce over-treatment: active surveillance (AS) and watchful waiting (WW) (Table 6.1.1).

6.1.1.1 Definition

6.1.1.1.1 Active surveillance

Active surveillance aims to achieve correct timing for curative treatment in patients with clinically localised PCa, rather than delay palliative treatment [270]. Patients remain under close surveillance, and treatment is prompted by predefined thresholds indicative of potentially life-threatening disease, still potentially curable, while considering individual life expectancy.
6.1.1.1.2 Watchful waiting

Watchful waiting (WW) is also known as deferred or symptom-guided treatment. It refers to conservative management, until the development of local or systemic progression with (imminent) disease-related complaints. Patients are then treated according to their symptoms, in order to maintain QoL.

### Table 6.1.1: Definitions of active surveillance and watchful waiting [269]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active surveillance</th>
<th>Watchful waiting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treatment intent</td>
<td>Curative</td>
<td>Palliative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follow-up</td>
<td>Predefined schedule</td>
<td>Patient-specific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment/markers</td>
<td>DRE, PSA, re-biopsy, mpMRI</td>
<td>Not predefined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life expectancy</td>
<td>&gt; 10 years</td>
<td>&lt; 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aim</td>
<td>Minimise treatment-related toxicity without compromising survival</td>
<td>Minimise treatment-related toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comments</td>
<td>Low-risk patients</td>
<td>Can apply to patients with all stages</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DRE = digital rectal examination; PSA = prostate-specific antigen; mpMRI = multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging.

6.1.2 Deferred treatment of localised PCa (stage T1/T2, Nx/N0, M0)

Mortality from untreated screen-detected PCa in patients with Gleason scores 5-7 might be as low as 7% at fifteen years follow-up [269].

6.1.2.1 Active surveillance

Active surveillance is currently reserved for selected low-risk patients. Current data are from ongoing prospective or retrospective cohorts; no formal RCT is available comparing this modality to standard treatment. The ProtecT trial [271] was discussed later as it is not a formal AS strategy.

One of the largest published cohorts with the longest follow-up in a mainly low-risk population includes 993 patients (mean age: 67.8 years) [272]. These men presented with stage T1c or T2a and PSA \( \leq 10 \text{ ng/mL} \), age \( \leq 70 \) years and a Gleason score \( \leq 6 \) or age > 70 years with a Gleason score of \( \leq 7 \). After a median follow-up of 6.4 years the ten- and fifteen-year OS were 80% and 62%, respectively, and DSS rates were 98.1% and 94.3%, respectively. Twenty-seven percent of this cohort eventually underwent radical treatment, prompted by a PSA-DT < 3 years (43.5%), a Gleason score progression on repeat biopsies (35%) and patient preference (6%). Thirty men (3%) developed metastases during follow-up; 2% of those initially classified as Gleason 6 compared to 9.7% if initially Gleason 7, and fifteen men died [273].

Several cohorts have investigated AS in organ-confined disease, the findings of which were summarised in a SR including > 3,900 patients [274]. There is considerable variation between studies regarding patient selection, follow-up policies and when active treatment should be instigated.

### Selection criteria

for AS are limited by a lack of prospective RCTs, or findings from a formal consensus meeting. The criteria most often published include: Gleason 6, when specified < 2-3 positive cores with < 50% cancer involvement in every positive core, a clinical T1c or T2a, a PSA < 10 ng/mL and a PSA density < 0.15 ng/mL/cc [274, 275]. The latter threshold remains controversial [275, 276]. A pathology consensus group suggested excluding men from AS when any of the following features were present: predominant ductal carcinoma (including pure intraductal carcinoma), sarcomatoid carcinoma, small cell carcinoma, EPE or LVI in needle biopsy [277] and perineal invasion [278]. A Canadian consensus group pose that AS is the treatment of choice for low-risk disease, without stratifying for biopsy results, although they clearly recommend that men < 55 years should be closely scrutinised for high-volume Gleason 6 cancer. The same authors pose that low volume Gleason 7 (3 + 4) (< 10% pattern 4) may also be considered for AS. However, recent findings suggest that any grade 4 pattern is associated with a three-fold increased risk of metastases compared to Gleason 6, while a PSA up to 20 ng/mL might be an acceptable threshold [279-281].

In this setting, re-biopsy within six to twelve months to exclude sampling error is mandatory [275, 281] even if this could be modified in the future [282].

### Biological markers

including urine PCA3, transmembrane protease, serine 2-TMPRSS2-ERG fusion, or PSA isoforms appear promising, as does genomics on the tissue sample itself [283-285]. However, further data will be needed before such markers can be used in standard clinical practice.
**Imaging** with mpMRI is of particular interest due to its high NPV value for lesion upgrading and for staging anterior prostate lesions [286, 287]. A formal SR is available [287]. The added value of mpMRI and targeted biopsies could be promising in:

1. reducing misclassifications at initial diagnosis and follow-up;
2. reducing unnecessary (targeted or systematic) biopsies at follow-up, and;
3. aiding in monitoring patients on surveillance.

The added value may differ at different time points in an AS setting. At confirmatory biopsy in men who did not have an mpMRI before, the reclassification rate due to targeted biopsies can be estimated to be 2-22% (absolute numbers) [287-291]. The added value of mpMRI for surveillance/repeat biopsies (hence more than one year following the confirmatory biopsy assessment) has not been evaluated yet. However, combined data of confirmatory and surveillance repeat biopsies show a reclassification rate due to targeted biopsies of 2-14% (absolute numbers) [292-294]. These numbers are directly related to the eligibility criteria for AS, and the reclassification criteria used within these populations.

The concordance of systematic and targeted biopsies at confirmatory biopsies is approximately 80%. However omitting systematic biopsies may induce a misclassification rate of 3-13% [287-290, 292-294], therefore systematic biopsy should be systematically performed, even facing a normal mpMRI.

Targeted biopsies of suspicious lesions on mpMRI are mainly performed for Likert/PIRADS (Prostate Image Reporting and Data System) > 3 lesions. Although increased rates of reclassification occur in PIRADS 4 and 5 lesions, a substantial proportion of PIRADS 3 lesions show reclassification following targeted biopsies [288, 289], thereby confirming the significance to biopsy Likert/PIRADS ≥ 3 lesions within AS management. The follow up strategy is based on serial DRE (at least once/year), PSA (at least once, every six months) and repeated biopsy (at a minimum interval of three to five years). Based on two small single centre studies [295, 296], not all patients with progression/reclassification at biopsy had radiological progression and vice versa. Therefore, mpMRI cannot be used as a stand-alone tool to trigger follow-up biopsies, but efforts are being made to define and standardise radiological progression during AS [297].

**Risk prediction in men on AS** is under investigation to further reduce unnecessary biopsies and misclassification [298]. In an AS cohort of 259 men with Gleason 6 and Gleason 7 (3 + 4) cancers detected by MRI-targeted and systematic biopsies, independent predictors of upgrading at 3 years were Gleason 7 (3 + 4), PSA density ≥ 0.15 ng/mL/cm³ and a score 5 lesion on MRI [299]. Thus, the role of mpMRI in risk prediction should be further investigated.

**Switching to active treatment**

The decision to start active treatment should be based on a change in the biopsy results (Gleason score, number of positive cores, length in the core involvement), or T-stage progression. These criteria are recognised in all published cohorts. A PSA change (especially a PSA-DT < 3 years) is a less powerful indicator to change management based on its weak link with grade progression [300, 301]. Active treatment may also be instigated upon a patient’s request. This occurs in around 10% of patients on AS [302]. Overall, no major perturbation of health-related QoL (HRQoL) and psychological well-being was apparent in the first years [303].

**Table 6.1.2: Active surveillance in screening-detected prostate cancer**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Studies</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Median follow-up (mo)</th>
<th>pT3 in RP patients*</th>
<th>OS</th>
<th>CSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Van As et al., 2008 [304]</td>
<td>326</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>8/18 (44%)</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carter et al., 2007 [305]</td>
<td>407</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>10/49 (20%)</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adamy et al., 2011 [306]</td>
<td>533-1,000</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>4/24 (17%)</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soloway et al., 2010 [307]</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roemeling et al., 2007 [308]</td>
<td>278</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khatami et al., 2007 [309]</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>n.r.</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>98.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Klotz et al., 2015 [272]</td>
<td>993</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>n.r.</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>99.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td>2,130-3,000</td>
<td>43</td>
<td></td>
<td>90</td>
<td>99.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Patients receiving active therapy following initial active surveillance.

CSS = cancer-specific survival; n = number of patients; n.r. = not reported; OS = overall survival; RP = radical prostatectomy.
6.1.2.2 Watchful waiting

The rationale behind WW is that PCa often progresses slowly, and is predominantly diagnosed in older men with a high incidence of comorbidity and other causes of mortality [310]. Watchful waiting is possible in patients with localised PCa and a limited life expectancy.

6.1.2.2.1 Patient selection for watchful waiting

Studies on WW have included patients with up to 25 years of follow-up, with endpoints of OS and CSS. Several series have shown a consistent CSS rate of 82-87% at ten years [311-316], and 80-95% for T1/T2 and Gleason score ≤ 7 [317]. In three studies with data beyond fifteen years, the DSS was 80%, 79% and 58% [313, 315, 316], and two reported twenty-year CSS rates of 57% and 32%, respectively [313, 315]. Many patients classified as Gleason 6 would now be classified as Gleason 7 based on the revised Gleason classification, suggesting that the above-mentioned results should be considered as minimal. Patients with well-, moderately- and poorly-differentiated tumours had ten-year CSS rates of 91%, 90% and 74%, respectively, correlating with data from the pooled analysis [317]. Observation was most effective in men aged 65-75 years with low-risk PCa [318].

Gleason 6-10 tumours carry a continuously increasing mortality risk up to fifteen years follow-up after WW [319]. Others have shown that the mortality risk of PCa was high in Gleason 7-10 tumours, intermediate in Gleason 6 tumours, but low in Gleason 2-5 tumours (Table 6.1.3) [320, 321].

In an analysis at ten years follow up in 19,639 patients aged > 65 years who were not given curative treatment, most men with a Charlson comorbidity index (CCI) score ≥ 2 died from competing causes at ten years whatever their initial age. Tumour aggressiveness had little impact on OS suggesting that patients could have been spared biopsy and diagnosis of cancer. Men with a CCI score ≤ 1 had a low risk of death at ten years, especially for well- or moderately-differentiated lesions [322]. This highlights the importance of checking the CCI before considering a biopsy.

Table 6.1.3: Fifteen-year mortality risk for localised PCa in relation to Gleason score in patients aged 55-74 years [320, 321, 323]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gleason score</th>
<th>Cancer mortality risk* (%)</th>
<th>Cancer-specific mortality† (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2-4</td>
<td>4-7</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6-11</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>18-30</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>42-70</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-10</td>
<td>60-87</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Figures differ among age groups and represent the true risk in the study population (considering actual competing mortality from other causes).
† Figures compensate for differences in competing mortality and indicate outcome if the patient lives for fifteen years.

6.1.2.2.2 Outcome of watchful waiting compared to active treatment

The SPCG-4 randomised study compared WW to RP (Table 6.1.4) [323] before the PSA era and found RP to provide superior CSS, OS and progression-free survival (PFS) compared to WW at a median follow-up of 12.8 years. The PIVOT trial made a similar comparison in 731 randomised men (50% with non-palpable disease) [324] and found no benefit of treatment within ten years. Only patients with serum PSA > 10 ng/mL or high-risk PCa had a significant OS benefit from RP, with a relative-risk reduction in mortality of 33% and 31%, respectively. Patients who underwent RP also had a significant reduction in bone metastases (4.7% vs. 10.6%). Overall, no major perturbation of HRQoL and psychological well-being was apparent in the first years [325].
Table 6.1.4: Outcome of SPCG-4 at fifteen years follow-up [323]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>RP (n = 348) (%)</th>
<th>Watchful waiting (n = 348) (%)</th>
<th>Relative risk (95% CI)</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disease-specific mortality</td>
<td>14.6</td>
<td>20.7</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>0.010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall mortality</td>
<td>46.1</td>
<td>57.2</td>
<td>0.75 (0.61-0.92)</td>
<td>0.007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastatic progression</td>
<td>21.7</td>
<td>33.4</td>
<td>0.59 (0.45-0.79)</td>
<td>&lt; 0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local progression</td>
<td>21.5</td>
<td>49.3</td>
<td>0.34 (0.26-0.45)</td>
<td>n.r.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI = confidence interval; n.r. = not reported; RP = radical prostatectomy.

The data on deferred and conservative management of low-risk disease contrasts with the recent increase in the incidence of local treatment from 25 to 34% in the USA in men with a life expectancy < 10 years [326]. Swedish data show a higher prevalence of deferred treatment in low-risk disease of 46% [327].

6.1.2.3 The ProtecT study

The ProtecT trial randomised 1,643 patients between active treatment (RP or EBRT) and active monitoring (AM) [271]. In this AM schedule, patients with a PSA rise of more than 50% in twelve months underwent a repeat biopsy, but none had systematic repeat biopsies (which presents an intermediary approach, between AS and WW). Most patients had low-risk disease with 90% PSA < 10 ng/mL, 77% Gleason 6 (20% Gleason 7), 76% T1c. After ten years of follow up, the CSS was the same between those actively treated and those on AM (99% and 98.8% respectively), as was the OS. Only metastatic progression differed (6% in the AM group as compared to 2.6% in the treated group). The key finding is that AM is as effective as active treatment at ten years, at a cost of increased progression and a double metastatic risk. Metastases remain quite rare (6%), but more frequent compared to results from AS protocols based on patient selection. This confirms that for low-risk patients, some form of initial AM is safe. Beyond ten years, no data is available yet and AS is possibly safer, especially in younger men, based on initial patient selection. Individual life expectancy must be evaluated before considering any active treatment in low-risk situations, and for those with up to ten years individual life expectancy, AM or WW are probably very good options.

6.1.3 Deferred treatment for locally advanced PCa (stage T3-T4, Nx-N0, M0)

The final analysis of the largest RCT focusing on this specific question was published in 2013 [328]. Nine hundred and eighty-five patients with T0-4 N0-2 M0 PCa were treated with androgen-deprivation therapy (ADT), either immediately or after symptomatic progression or occurrence of serious complications. After a median follow-up of 12.8 years, the OS HR was 1.21 (95% CI: 1.05-1.39), favouring immediate treatment but showing no significant difference in PCa mortality or symptom-free survival which raises the question of its clinical value. Patients with a baseline PSA > 50 ng/mL had a > 3.5-fold higher mortality risk than those with a PSA baseline of ≤ 8 ng/mL. If baseline PSA was 8-50 ng/mL, the mortality risk was ~7.5-fold higher in patients with a PSA-DT of < 12 months compared with > 12 months. The median time to start deferred treatment was seven years. In the deferred arm, 25.6% died without needing treatment (44%).

6.1.4 Deferred treatment for metastatic PCa (stage M1)

The only candidates with metastasised disease who may possibly be considered for deferred treatment are asymptomatic patients with a strong wish to avoid treatment-related side-effects. Median survival is 42 months, therefore, the time without treatment (before symptoms) is short in most cases. The risk of developing symptoms, and even death from PCa, without receiving any benefit from hormone treatment has been highlighted [329, 330]. Patients with deferred treatment for advanced PCa must be amenable to close follow-up.
6.1.5  **Guidelines for active surveillance and watchful waiting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations - active surveillance</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Discuss surgery and radiotherapy as treatment options with patients suitable for such treatments.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer active surveillance to patients with the lowest risk of cancer progression: &gt; ten years life expectancy, cT1/2, PSA ≤ 10 ng/mL, biopsy Gleason score ≤ 6, ≤ 2 positive biopsies, minimal biopsy core involvement (≤ 50% cancer per biopsy).</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counsel patients about the possibility of needing further treatment in the future.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging before a confirmatory biopsy.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>During confirmatory biopsy include systematic and targeted biopsies.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base follow up on digital rectal examination, prostate-specific antigen (PSA) and repeated biopsies.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations - watchful waiting for localised prostate cancer</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer watchful waiting to patients not eligible for local curative treatment and those with a short life expectancy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>While on watchful waiting, base the decision to start non-curative treatment on symptoms and disease progression (see Section 6.1.2.2).</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations - watchful waiting for locally advanced prostate cancer</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In locally advanced M0 patients unwilling or unable to receive any form of local treatment, offer a deferred treatment policy using androgen-deprivation therapy as monotherapy to asymptomatic patients with a PSA doubling time &gt; 12 months and a PSA &lt; 50 ng/mL and non-poorly differentiated tumour.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.2  **Treatment: Radical prostatectomy**

6.2.1  **Introduction**

The goal of RP by any approach must be eradication of disease, while preserving continence and, whenever possible, potency [331]. Increasing comorbidity greatly increases the risk of dying from non-PCa-related causes [322]. An estimation of life expectancy is paramount in counselling a patient about surgery [332] (see also Section 6.7). Currently, three large prospective RCTs have reported the benefit of RP over WW [324, 333] and over AM [271] in men with low- and intermediate-risk PCa.

Radical prostatectomy can be performed by open, laparoscopic or robot-assisted (RARP) approach. In a randomised phase III trial, RARP was shown to have reduced admission times and blood loss but not early (twelve weeks) functional or oncological outcomes [334, 335]. Lower rates of positive surgical margins for high-volume surgeons suggest that experience and careful attention to surgical details, adjusted for the characteristics of the cancer being treated, can improve cancer control with RP [336-338].

Management decisions should be made after all treatments have been discussed in a multidisciplinary team (including urologists, radiation oncologists, medical oncologists and radiologists), and after balancing benefits and side effects of each therapy modality, together with the patient.

6.2.2  **Low-risk PCa**

At ten years’ follow-up, a benefit for metastases-free and PFS but not CSS or OS for RP compared to AM was seen in the ProtecT study where the majority of men had early, localised disease (i.e. > 75% had either clinical T1 or Gleason sum score 6 disease) [271]. In the SPCCG-4 study [333], death from any cause and distant metastases was significantly reduced in low-risk PCa at eighteen years of follow up for RP compared with WW, although this finding was based on a sub-group analysis as the majority of men in the trial (i.e. 62%) did not have low-risk disease. However, death from PCa was not reduced. In the PIVOT trial, a pre-planned subgroup analysis of men with low-risk PCa showed that RP did not significantly reduce all-cause mortality or death from PCa at ten years compared with WW.

The decision to offer RP in cases of low-risk cancer should be based on the probability of clinical progression, side-effects and potential benefit to survival [339]. The results of the ProtecT trial suggest that AM and surgery are alternatives to EBRT in patients whose tumours are most likely to be clinically insignificant (this is covered in more detail in Sections 6.1 and 6.3). Apart from disease characteristics, age and comorbidities also impact...
on decision-making regarding treatment choices. Individual patient preferences should always be considered in shared decision-making.

If RP is performed in low-risk PCa, pelvic LND is not necessary as the risk for pN+ does not exceed 5% [340].

6.2.3 Intermediate-risk, localised PCa

Patients with intermediate-risk PCa should be informed about the results of two RCTs [324, 333] comparing RP vs. WW in localised PCa. In the SPCG-4 study, death from any cause (RR: 0.71; 95% CI: 0.53-0.95), death from PCa (RR: 0.38; 95% CI: 0.23-0.62) and distant metastases (RR: 0.49; 95% CI: 0.32-0.74) were significantly reduced in intermediate-risk PCa at eighteen years. In the PIVOT trial, according to a pre-planned subgroup analysis among men with intermediate-risk tumours, RP significantly reduced all-cause mortality (HR: 0.69; 95% CI: 0.49-0.98), but not death from PCa (0.50; 95% CI: 0.21-1.21) at ten years.

When managed with non-curative intent, intermediate-risk PCa is associated with ten- and fifteen-year PCa-specific mortality (PCSM) rates of 13% and 19.6%, respectively [341].

The risk of having positive LNs in intermediate-risk PCa is between 3.7% and 20.1% [340]. An eLND should be performed in intermediate-risk PCa if the estimated risk for pN+ exceeds 5% [340]. In all other cases, eLND can be omitted, which means accepting a low risk of missing positive nodes. Table 6.2.1 presents data from three RCTs.

Table 6.2.1: Oncological results of radical prostatectomy in organ-confined disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>Population</th>
<th>Year of treatment</th>
<th>Median follow-up (mo)</th>
<th>Risk category</th>
<th>12-year CSS (%)</th>
<th>18-year CSS (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bill-Axelson, et al.</td>
<td>SPCG-4</td>
<td>Pre-PSA era 1989-1999</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>Low-risk</td>
<td>89.8**</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Intermediate-risk</td>
<td>84.9**</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilt, et al. 2012 [324]</td>
<td>PIVOT</td>
<td>Early years of PSA testing 1994-2002</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>Low-risk</td>
<td>100**</td>
<td>94.2**</td>
<td>n.a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*10-year CSS
** Based on sub-group analysis of risk groups
CSS = cancer-specific survival; n = number of patients; n.r. = not reported; PSA = prostate-specific antigen; RP = radical prostatectomy.

6.2.4 High-risk and locally advanced PCa

Patients with high-risk PCa are at an increased risk of PSA failure, need for secondary therapy, metastatic progression and death from PCa. Nevertheless, not all high-risk PCa patients have a uniformly poor prognosis after RP [342]. When managed with non-curative intent, high-risk PCa is associated with ten- and fifteen-year PCSM rates of 28.8% and 35.5%, respectively [341].

There is no consensus regarding the optimal treatment of men with high-risk PCa. Provided that the tumour is not fixed to the pelvic wall, or that there is no invasion of the urethral sphincter, RP is a reasonable first step in selected patients with a low tumour volume. Extended LND should be performed in all high-risk PCa cases, as the estimated risk for positive LNs is 15-40% [340].

6.2.4.1 High-risk PCa

6.2.4.1.1 Gleason score 8-10

The incidence of organ-confined disease is 26-31% in men with a Gleason 8-10 on biopsy. A high rate of downgrading exists between the biopsy Gleason score and the Gleason score of the resected specimen [343].

Several retrospective case series have demonstrated CSS rates over 60% at fifteen years after RP in the context of a multimodal approach (adjuvant or salvage ADT and/or RT) for patients with a biopsy GS > 8 [343-346] [347].

6.2.4.1.2 Prostate-specific antigen > 20 ng/mL

Reports in patients with a PSA > 20 ng/mL who underwent surgery as initial therapy within a multimodal approach demonstrated a CSS at fifteen years of over 70% [345, 346, 348-351].
6.2.4.2 Locally advanced PCa
Surgery for locally advanced disease as part of a multimodal therapy has been reported [352-354]. Retrospective case series demonstrated over 60% CSS at fifteen years and over 75% OS at ten years [352-359].

For cT3b-T4 disease, PCa cohort studies showed a ten-year CSS of over 87% and an OS of 65% [360-362].

The indication for RP in all previously described stages assumes the absence of clinically detectable nodal involvement. Only limited evidence exists supporting RP of cN+ patients. In a recent study, the outcomes of 50 patients with cN+ were compared with those of 252 patients with pN1, but cN0 at pre-operative staging, and cN+ was not a significant predictor of CSS [363].

6.2.5 Indication and extent of pelvic lymph node dissection
A recent SR did not show any benefit of performing any PLND during RP for any oncological outcome, including survival [4]. However, it is generally accepted that eLND provides important information for staging and prognosis which cannot be matched by any other currently available procedure [255]. The individual risk of identifying positive LNs can be estimated using pre-operative nomograms. Only a few of these nomograms are based on eLND templates. A risk of nodal metastases over 5% (Briganti nomogram, MSKCC, or Roach formula) is an indication to perform nodal sampling by an eLND [340, 364, 365].

6.2.5.1 Technique of lymph node dissection
Extended LND includes removal of the nodes overlying the external iliac artery and vein, the nodes within the obturator fossa located cranially and caudally to the obturator nerve, and the nodes medial and lateral to the internal iliac artery. With this template, 94% of patients are correctly staged [366].

6.2.5.1.1 Sentinel node biopsy analysis
Sentinel node biopsy (SNB) was shown to have a sensitivity of 95.2% for detecting metastases at eLND in a SR [367]. Due to lack of any reliable evidence regarding oncological effectiveness, SNB is still an experimental nodal staging procedure (see Section 5.3.2.3). In addition, controversy regarding definitions and thresholds has limited its application in clinical practice, although efforts to standardise definitions based on consensus have recently been attempted [368].

6.2.6 Radical prostatectomy in cN0 patients who are found to have pathologically confirmed lymph node invasion (pN1)
At fifteen years of follow up, cN0 patients who were treated with RP but were found to have pN1 at the time of surgery, were reported to have a CSS and OS of 45% and 42%, respectively [369-375].

In terms of performing frozen section of nodes during RP, two retrospective observational studies have shown a better CSS and OS in favour of a completed RP vs. an abandoned RP in patients who were found to be pN+ at the time of surgery [372, 373, 376]. This highlights the fact that frozen section should no longer be performed and supports the role of RP as an important component of multimodal strategies of pN+ PCa.

6.2.6.1 Outcome of pN1 disease
6.2.6.1.1 Prognostic indicators
The number of positive LNs [377], the number of removed LNs [369, 374, 377-382], tumour volume within the LN, and capsular perforation of the nodal metastases are predictors of early recurrence after RP for pN1 disease [383]. A LN density (defined as the percentage of positive LNs in relation to the total number of analysed/removed LNs) over 20% was found to be associated with poor prognosis [384].

6.2.7 Adjuvant treatment
6.2.7.1 Adjuvant treatment after RP
For patients classified as pT3 pN0 with a high risk of local failure after RP due to positive margins (highest impact), capsule rupture, and/or invasion of the seminal vesicles, who present with a PSA level of < 0.1 ng/mL, both adjuvant or salvage radiotherapy to the prostatic fossa can be offered. (see Section 6.3.6). Adjuvant androgen ablation with bicalutamide did not improve PFS in localised disease after RP [385]. A SR showed a possible benefit for PFS but not OS for adjuvant androgen ablation therapy [386].

6.2.7.2 Adjuvant androgen ablation in men with pN1 disease
The combination of RP and early adjuvant HT in pN+ PCa has been shown to achieve a ten-year CSS rate of 80% [370, 371]. In patients who prove to be pN+ after RP, early adjuvant HT has been shown to significantly improve CSS and OS in a prospective RCT [371]. However, this trial included mostly patients with high-volume
nodal disease and multiple adverse tumour characteristics and the findings may not apply to men with less extensive nodal metastases.

6.2.7.3  **Adjuvant radiotherapy in men with pN1 disease**

In a retrospective multicentre cohort study, maximal local control with RT of the prostatic fossa appeared to be beneficial in PCa patients with pN1 after RP, treated adjuvantly with continuous ADT [375]. However, the beneficial impact of adjuvant RT on survival in patients with pN1 PCa was highly influenced by tumour characteristics. Men with low-volume nodal disease (< 3 LNs) and GS 7-10 and pT3-4 or R1, as well as men with three to four positive nodes were more likely to benefit from RT after surgery, while the other subgroups did not [375]. In a Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results (SEER) retrospective population-based analysis, adding RT to RP showed a non-significant trend for improved OS but not PCa-specific survival, but data on the extent of additional RT is lacking in this study [376]. No recommendation can be made for the extent of adjuvant RT in pN1 disease although whole pelvis RT was given in more than 70% of men in a large retrospective series which identified a benefit for adding RT to androgen ablation in pN1 patients [375]. However the optimal field (prostatic fossa only or whole pelvis) remains unclear.

6.2.7.4  **Adjuvant chemotherapy**

The TAX3501 trial, compared the role of leuprolide (eighteen months) with, and without, docetaxel (six cycles) closed prematurely due to poor accrual [387]. Adjuvant chemotherapy after RP should only be considered within a clinical trial.

6.2.7.5  **Guidelines for extended lymph node dissection in prostate cancer and pN+ patients**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform a lymph node dissection (LND) in low-risk PCa.</td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform an extended(e)LND in intermediate-risk PCa if the estimated risk for positive lymph nodes exceeds 5%.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform an eLND in high-risk PCa.</td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform a frozen section of nodes during radical prostatectomy (RP) to decide whether to proceed with, or abandon, the procedure.</td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform a limited LND.</td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Upon detection of nodal involvement during RP:

- offer adjuvant androgen deprivation therapy (ADT); 1b A
- discuss adjuvant ADT with additional radiotherapy (see Section 6.2.6.3); 2b A
- offer observation (expectant management) to a patient after eLND with < 2 nodes with microscopic involvement, and a PSA < 0.1 ng/mL and absence of extranodal extension. 2b B

6.2.8  **Comparing RP surgical approaches**

A previous SR and meta-analysis of non-RCTs demonstrated that RARP had lower peri-operative morbidity and a reduced risk of positive surgical margins compared with laparoscopic prostatectomy (LRP), although there was considerable methodological uncertainty [388]. There was no evidence of differences in urinary incontinence (UI) rates at twelve months and there was insufficient evidence to draw conclusions on differences in cancer-related, patient-driven or erectile dysfunction (ED) outcomes. There is a lack of studies comparing the different surgical modalities for these longer-term outcomes [388-394]. Another SR and meta-analysis [335] included two small RCTs comparing RARP vs. LRP. The results suggested higher rates of erectile function recovery (RR 1.51; 95% CI: 1.19-1.92) and restoring early continence (RR 1.14; 95% CI: 1.04-1.24) in the RARP group. Increased surgical experience has lowered the complication rates of RP and improved cancer cure [395-398]. Consequently, there is emerging data to suggest some benefits of the robotic approach over the laparoscopic and open approaches, in terms of perioperative, recovery and short-term functional outcomes; however, there is uncertainty over oncological outcomes, longer-term functional and QoL outcomes [334].

6.2.9  **Indications for nerve-sparing surgery**

Nerve-sparing RP can be performed safely in most men with localised PCa [399, 400]. Clear contraindications are patients in whom there is a high risk of extracapsular disease, such as any cT2c or cT3 PCa, and any GS > 7 on biopsy. An externally validated nomogram predicting side-specific extracapsular extension can help guide decision making [401, 402]. Multiparametric MRI might be helpful in selecting a nerve-sparing approach (see Section 5.3.1.4).

If any doubt remains regarding residual tumour, the surgeon should remove the neurovascular bundle (NVB). Alternatively, the use of intra-operative frozen-section analysis can help guide these decisions [403].
There is conflicting data on the early use of phosphodiesterase-5 (PDE5) inhibitors in penile rehabilitation post-surgery [404, 405]. However, a large multicentre RCT including men < 68 years old with normal pre-operative erectile function, showed benefit from daily dosing of 5 mg tadalafil, after nerve-sparing RP for organ-confined non-metastatic PCa [406].

6.2.10 Guidelines for radical prostatectomy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer both radical prostatectomy (RP) and RT in patients with low- and intermediate-risk disease and a life expectancy &gt; 10 years.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer AS as an alternative to surgery or RT in patients with low-risk disease and a life expectancy of &gt; 10 years.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer nerve-sparing surgery in patients with a low risk of extracapsular disease (refer to Partin tables/nomograms).</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer RP in patients with high-risk localised PCa and a life expectancy of &gt; 10 years only as part of multi-modal therapy.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer RP in patients with locally advanced (cT3a) disease and a life expectancy &gt; 10 years only as part of multi-modal therapy.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer RP in highly selected patients with locally advanced disease (cT3b-T4 N0 or any T N1) only as part of multi-modal therapy.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer neoadjuvant hormonal therapy before RP.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer adjuvant hormonal therapy after RP for pN0 disease.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.3 Treatment: definitive radiotherapy

6.3.1 Introduction

Intensity-modulated radiotherapy (IMRT), with or without image-guided radiotherapy (IGRT), is the accepted best standard for EBRT. Regardless of the technique used, the choice of treatment is multidisciplinary. After the extent of the tumour has been properly assessed, the following are taken into account [407]:

- 2017 TNM classification;
- Gleason score, defined using an adequate number of core biopsies (at least 10);
- Baseline PSA;
- Age of the patient;
- Patient’s comorbidity, life expectancy, and QoL;
- International Prostate Symptom Score (IPSS) and uroflowmetry recordings (max urinary peak flow > 15 mL/s when considering brachytherapy [408]);
- And the EAU prognostic factors classification.

6.3.2 Technical aspects: three-dimensional conformal radiotherapy and intensity-modulated external-beam radiotherapy

Anatomical data are acquired by scanning the patient in the treatment position. The data are transferred to the three-dimensional (3D) treatment planning system, which visualises the clinical target volume and then adds a surrounding safety margin. Real-time verification of the irradiation field using portal imaging allows comparison of the treated and simulated fields, and correction of deviations where displacement is more than 5 mm.

It is possible to use IMRT with linear accelerators, equipped with the latest multileaf collimators and specific software. At the time of irradiation, a multileaf collimator automatically (and in the case of IMRT continuously) adapts to the contours of the target volume seen by each beam. This allows for a more complex distribution of the dose to be delivered within the treatment field and provides concave isodose curves, which are particularly useful as a means of sparing the rectum. To date, no RCT have been published comparing dose escalation using IMRT and 3D-CRT.

With dose escalation using IMRT, organ movement becomes a critical issue, in terms of both tumour control and treatment toxicity. Evolving techniques will therefore combine IMRT with some form of IGRT, in which organ movement can be visualised and corrected for in real time, although the optimum means of achieving this is still unclear [409]. Tomotherapy is another evolving technique for the delivery of IMRT, which uses a linear accelerator mounted on a ring gantry that rotates as the patient is delivered through the centre of the ring, analogous to spiral CT scanning.

Whatever the techniques and their degree of sophistication, quality assurance plays a major role in the management of RT, requiring the involvement of physicians, physicists, dosimetrists, radiographers, radiologists and computer scientists.
6.3.3 Radiotherapy for localised PCa

6.3.3.1 Dose escalation

Several RCTs have shown that dose escalation (range 74-80 Gy) has a significant impact on five-year survival without biochemical relapse [410-419]. These trials have generally included patients from several risk groups, and the use of neoadjuvant/adjuvant HT has varied. The best evidence of an OS benefit for patients with intermediate- or high-risk PCa, but not with low-risk PCa, comes from a non-randomised but well conducted propensity-matched retrospective analysis of the U.S. National Cancer Database (NCDB) covering a total of 42,481 patients [420].

In everyday practice, a minimum dose of ≥ 74 Gy is recommended for EBRT + HT. Currently, it is not possible to make different recommendations according to the patient’s risk group.

If IMRT and IGRT are used for dose escalation, severe late side effects ≥ Grade 3 for the rectum is about 2-3% and for the genito-urinary tract is 2-5% [412, 419, 421-434] (see also Chapter 8).

Table 6.3.1: Randomised trials on dose escalation in localised PCa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>PCa condition</th>
<th>Radiotherapy Dose</th>
<th>Follow-up</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MD Anderson 2011 [410]</td>
<td>301</td>
<td>T1-T3, N0, M0, PSA 10 ng/mL vs. PSA &gt; 10 ng/mL</td>
<td>70 vs. 78 Gy</td>
<td>Median 9 yr</td>
<td>Disease specific mortality (DSM) vs. other cause of death</td>
<td>High risk/PSA &gt; 10 16 % DSM @ 70 Gy 4% DSM @ 78 Gy (p = 0.05) Higher risk 15% DSM @ 70 Gy 2% DSM @ 78 Gy (p = 0.03)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROG 95-09 2010 [411]</td>
<td>393</td>
<td>T1b-T2b PSA 15 ng/mL 75% GS &lt; 6</td>
<td>70.2 vs. 79.2 Gy including proton boost 19.8 vs. 28.8 Gy</td>
<td>Median 8.9 yr. for survivors</td>
<td>10-year ASTRO BCF</td>
<td>All patients: 32% BF @ 70.2 Gy 17% BF @ 79.2 Gy (p &lt; 0.0001) Low-risk patients: 28% BF @ 70.2 Gy 7% BF @ 79.2 Gy (p &lt; 0.0001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRC RT01 2014 [407]</td>
<td>843</td>
<td>T1b-T3a, N0, M0 PSA &lt; 50 ng/mL neoadjuvant HT</td>
<td>64 vs. 74 Gy</td>
<td>Median 10 yr</td>
<td>BFS; OS</td>
<td>43% BFS @ 64 Gy 55% BFS @ 74 Gy (p = 0.0003) 71% OS both groups (p = 0.96)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutch RCT 2014 [419]</td>
<td>664</td>
<td>T1b-T4 143 pts. with (neo)adjuvant HT</td>
<td>68 vs. 78 Gy</td>
<td>Median 110 mo.</td>
<td>Freedom biochemical (Phoenix) and/or clinical failure (FFF) @ 10 yr.</td>
<td>43% FFF @ 68 Gy 49% FFF @ 78 Gy (p = 0.045)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French GETUG 06 2011 [414]</td>
<td>306</td>
<td>T1b-T3a, N0, M0 PSA &lt; 50 ng/mL</td>
<td>70 vs. 80 Gy</td>
<td>Median 61 mo.</td>
<td>BCF (ASTRO)</td>
<td>39% BF @ 70 Gy 28% BF @ 80 Gy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrospective NCDB study 2015 [420]</td>
<td>16,714</td>
<td>intermediate risk 73% T ≤ 2a 76% GS ≤ 7a</td>
<td>&lt; 75.6 Gy vs. ≥ 75.6 Gy 49% HT</td>
<td>Median 85-86 mo.</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Propensity adjusted HR: 0.84 favouring dose escalation (p &lt; 0.001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13,538</td>
<td>high risk 40% T ≥ 2b 67% GS ≥ 7b</td>
<td>&lt; 75.6 Gy vs. ≥ 75.6 Gy 77% HT</td>
<td>Median 85-86 mo.</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Propensity adjusted HR: 0.82 favouring dose escalation (p &lt; 0.001)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BCF = biochemical failure; BFS = biochemical progression-free survival; GS = Gleason score; HR = hazard ratio; HT = hormone therapy; OS = overall survival; PSA = prostate-specific antigen.
6.3.3.2 Hypofractionation

In radiobiology, the linear quadratic model uses two coefficients, alpha ($\alpha$) and beta ($\beta$) to describe the dose-response relationship. In clinical practice, these coefficients are used to calculate the effect of different fractionation schemes. Fractionated RT utilises differences in the DNA repair capacity of normal and tumour tissue. In fast growing tissue including many tumours, cells have little time to repair photon-induced DNA damage. The $\alpha/\beta$ ratio is then typically around 10 Gy. In contrast, tissue with a low cell renewal has a good opportunity for repair between fractions of irradiation. In such tissue, the $\alpha/\beta$ ratio is 3 Gy or lower. Slowly proliferating cells with low $\alpha/\beta$ ratios are very sensitive to an increased dose per fraction [417].

While the correct $\alpha/\beta$ ratio is still controversial, a meta-analysis of 25 studies with > 14,000 patients concludes that PCa, due to its slow growth, has an $\alpha/\beta$ ratio of approximately 1.5 Gy. Assuming this value, hypofractionated RT could be more effective than conventional fractions of 1.8-2 Gy [418]. Beyond the radiobiological aspects, hypofractionation (HFX) can increase the convenience for the patient and lower costs for the health care system.

Several studies report on HFX applied in various techniques and in part also including HT [435-444]. A SR concludes that studies on moderate HFX (2.5-4 Gy/fx) delivered with conventional 3D-CRT/IMRT have sufficient follow-up to support the safety of this therapy, but long-term efficacy data are still lacking [445]. Extreme HFX (5-10 Gy/fx) typically requires IGRT and stereotactic body radiotherapy (SBRT). Short-term biochemical control is comparable to conventional fractionation. However, there are concerns about high-grade genitourinary and rectal toxicity, and long-term side effects may not all be known yet [445-447].

On behalf of the German Society of Radiation Oncology, an international expert panel has released a comprehensive overview on HFX for clinical routine [448]. Taking into account the published results and the uncertainties of the correct $\alpha/\beta$ ratio, moderate HFX (Table 6.3.2) plus dose escalation should be done by experienced teams, accompanied by meticulous RT quality assessment and close attention to organ-at-risk dose-constraints until long-term data are available. It should be restricted to high-quality EBRT using IGRT and IMRT in carefully selected patients and adhere to published phase 3 protocols with documented safety and efficacy. The Conventional or Hypofractionated High-dose Intensity Modulated Radiotherapy in Prostate Cancer (CHHiP)-regimen with 60 Gy in 20 fractions over four weeks or the RTOG regimen with 70 Gy in 28 fractions over six weeks at present seem to be the first choices. Meticulous follow-up and documentation of outcome and late toxicity are mandatory. Hypofractionation to the pelvic LNs and post-operative HFX in the adjuvant or salvage setting are experimental and should be reserved for clinical trials.
Table 6.3.2: Major phase 3 randomised trials of moderate hypofractionation for localised PCa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Risk, GS, or NCCN</th>
<th>Regimen</th>
<th>BED, Gy</th>
<th>Median FU, mo</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Toxicity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lee et al. 2016 [439]</td>
<td>550</td>
<td>low risk</td>
<td>70 Gy/28 fx 73.8 Gy/41 fx</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>69.6</td>
<td>70 yr. DFS 86.3% (NS) 5 yr. DFS 85.3 %</td>
<td>Gr 2 GI 18.3% (p = 0.005) Gr 2 GU 26.2% (p = 0.009) Gr 2 GI 11.4% Gr 2 GU 20.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dearmaley et al. 2012, 2016</td>
<td>1077</td>
<td>15% low 73%</td>
<td>57 Gy/19 fx 60 Gy/20 fx 74 Gy/37 fx</td>
<td>73.3</td>
<td>77.1</td>
<td>62 yr. BCDF 85.9% (19 fx) 90.6% (20 fx) 88.3% (37 fx)</td>
<td>acute Gr ≥ 2 GI 38% (19 fx) 38% (20 fx) 25% (37 fx) 5 yr. Gr ≥ 2 GI 11.3% (19 fx) 11.9% (20 fx) 13.7 (37 fx) 5 yr. Gr ≥ 2 GU 6.6% (19 fx) 11.7% (20 fx) 9.1% (37 fx)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluwini et al. 2015, 2016</td>
<td>403</td>
<td>30% GS &lt; 6 45% GS &gt; 7 25% GS 8-10</td>
<td>64.6 Gy/19 fx 78 Gy/39 fx</td>
<td>90.4</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>5 yr. RFS 80.5% (NS) 5 yr. RFS 77.1%</td>
<td>3 yr. Gr ≥ 2 GU 41.3% Gr ≥ 3 GU 19.0% (p = 0.02) Gr ≥ 2 GI 21.9% 3 yr. Gr ≥ 2 GU 39.0% Gr ≥ 3 GU 12.9% Gr ≥ 2 GI 17.7%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BCDF = biochemical or clinical disease failure; BED = biologically equivalent dose, calculated to be equivalent in 2 Gy fractions using an α/β of 1.5 Gy; DFS = disease-free survival; FU = follow-up; fx = fractions; GI = gastrointestinal; Gr = Grade; GS = Gleason score; GU = genito-urinary; NCCN = National Comprehensive Cancer Network; NS = not significant; n.s. = not stated.

Radiotherapy with > 3.4 Gy has been suggested to define extreme HFX [448]. Respective studies largely include low- to intermediate-risk patients and obtain very favourable results. Table 6.3.3 gives an overview on selected studies. It seems prudent to restrict extreme HFX to prospective clinical trials and to inform patients on the uncertainties of the long-term outcome.

Table 6.3.3: Selected trials on extreme hypofractionation for localised PCa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>med FU (mo.)</th>
<th>Risk-Group</th>
<th>Techniques</th>
<th>Regimen (TD/fx)</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Toxicity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Freeman et al. 2014</td>
<td>1,743</td>
<td>n.s.</td>
<td>41% low</td>
<td>mainly robotic IGRT</td>
<td>35–40 Gy/4-5 fx (8% SBRT-boost 19.5–21.8 Gy/3 fx after 45–50 Gy EBRT)</td>
<td>FFBF 92% @ 2 yr. 99% low risk 97–85% intern. risk 87% high risk</td>
<td>G3 GU 0% G3 GI 0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Katz et al. 2014</td>
<td>515</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>63% low</td>
<td>robotic IGRT</td>
<td>35–36.25 Gy/5 fx</td>
<td>FFBF @ 7yr. 96% low risk intern.risk 69% high risk</td>
<td>G ≥ 2 GU 9% G ≥ 2 GI 4%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FFBF = freedom from biochemical failure; FU = follow-up; TD = total dose; fx = number fractions; GI = gastrointestinal; G = grade; GU = genitourinary; IGRT = image-guided radiation therapy; n.s. = not stated; EBRT external beam radiotherapy in standard fractionation.
6.3.3.3 Neoadjuvant or adjuvant hormone therapy plus radiotherapy

The combination of RT with luteinising-hormone-releasing hormone (LHRH) ADT has definitively proven its superiority compared with RT alone followed by deferred ADT on relapse, as shown by phase III RCTs [451-455] (Table 6.3.3). These trials included high-risk PCa patients, mostly by virtue of locally advanced (T3-T4 N0-X) disease, though with a wide range of clinical risk factors, such as PSA level or Gleason grade (high-risk localised, T1-2, N0-X PCa). The most powerful conclusion from these studies comes from the EORTC 22863 trial, which is the basis for the combination of RT and ADT in patients with locally advanced PCa as standard practice today.

In daily practice, ADT starts either at the onset of RT (for adjuvant ADT) or two or three months before (for neoadjuvant), but the concomitant component is crucial to potentiate RT. Long-term ADT, ranging from two to three years is recommended for locally advanced disease [416, 456] rather than short term (six months) [455]. Dose escalation phase III RCTs are on-going to assess its impact on DFS. Cardiovascular mortality may be related to ADT, not RT, as addressed in Section 8.2

Whether these results should be applied to patients with intermediate- or high-risk localised PCa is unclear. The Boston trial has shown an improved eight-year OS rate for patients without moderate or severe comorbidity assigned to six months of complete ADT (p = 0.01) [454], and the RTOG 94-08 study showed an increased ten-year OS rate for intermediate risk only with four months of complete ADT (p = 0.003) [415].

The EORTC trial 22961, an equivalence trial with 970 patients (78% T3-4, 92% N0) combined RT (70 Gy) with either six months or with three years of LHRH analogue treatment. With a median follow-up of 6.4 years, both CSS and overall mortality were significantly lower with long-term androgen suppression [416].

In the RTOG 9910 trial, 1,579 intermediate-risk PCa patients were randomised to LHRH antagonist therapy for eight weeks before RT (70.2 Gy in 2-D or 3-D techniques) followed by either another eight or 28 weeks of anti-hormonal treatment. Extended androgen suppression did not significantly improve ten-year rates of distant (both arms 6%), loco-regional (6% vs. 4%) or biochemical progression (both arms 27%), or DSS (96% vs. 95%) or OS (66% vs. 67%). The 8 + 8 week scheme was confirmed as a standard procedure [457].

Table 6.3.3: Studies of use and duration of androgen deprivation therapy in combination with radiotherapy for prostate cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>TNM stage</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>ADT</th>
<th>RT</th>
<th>Effect on OS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EORTC 22863, 2010 [451]</td>
<td>T1-2 poorly differentiated and M0, or T3-4 N0-1 M0</td>
<td>415</td>
<td>EBRT ± ADT</td>
<td>LHRH agonist for 3 yr. (adjuvant)</td>
<td>70 Gy RT</td>
<td>Significant benefit at ten yr. for combined treatment (HR: 0.60, 95%; CI: 0.45-0.80, p = 0.0004)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTOG 85-31, 2005 [452]</td>
<td>T3 or N1 M0</td>
<td>977</td>
<td>EBRT ± ADT</td>
<td>Orchiectomy or LHRH agonist 15% RP</td>
<td>65-70 Gy RT</td>
<td>Significant benefit for combined treatment (p = 0.002) seems to be mostly caused by patients with GS 7-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Granfors, et al. 2006 [458]</td>
<td>T3 N0-1 M0</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>EBRT ± ADT</td>
<td>Orchiectomy</td>
<td>65 Gy RT</td>
<td>Significant benefit (p = 0.02 p = 0.03), mainly caused by LN-positive tumours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D’Amico, et al. 2008 [454]</td>
<td>T2 N0 M0 (localised unfavourable risk)</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>EBRT ± ADT</td>
<td>LHRH agonist plus flutamide for 6 mo.</td>
<td>70 Gy 3D-CRT</td>
<td>Significant benefit (HR: 0.55, 95% CI: 0.34-0.90, p = 0.01) that may pertain only to men with no, or minimal, comorbidity TROG 96-01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study</td>
<td>T-stage</td>
<td>N-stage</td>
<td>M-stage</td>
<td>ADT Duration</td>
<td>EBRT ± ADT</td>
<td>Treatment Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denham et al. 2011 [455]</td>
<td>T2b-4</td>
<td>N0 M0</td>
<td></td>
<td>802</td>
<td>66 Gy 3D-CRT</td>
<td>Goserelin plus flutamide 3 or 6 mo. before, plus concomitant suppression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTOG 94-13, 2007 [459]</td>
<td>T1c-4</td>
<td>N0-1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1292</td>
<td></td>
<td>ADT timing comparison, 2 mo. neoadjuvant plus concomitant vs. 4 mo. adjuvant suppression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTOG 86-10, 2008 [453]</td>
<td>T2-4</td>
<td>N0-1</td>
<td></td>
<td>456</td>
<td>65-70 Gy RT</td>
<td>Goserelin plus flutamide 2 mo. before, plus concomitant therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTOG 92-02, 2008 [456]</td>
<td>T2c-4</td>
<td>N0-1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1554</td>
<td>65-70 Gy RT</td>
<td>LHRH agonist given for 2 years as adjuvant after 4 mo. as neoadjuvant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EORTC 22961, 2009 [416]</td>
<td>T1c-2ab</td>
<td>N1 M0, T2c-4 N0-1 M0</td>
<td></td>
<td>970</td>
<td>70 Gy 3D-CRT</td>
<td>LHRH agonist for 6 mo. vs. 3 yr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pisansky et al. 2014 [457]</td>
<td>intermediate risk (94% T1-T2, 6% T3-4)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1579</td>
<td>70 Gy 3D-CRT</td>
<td>LHRH antagonist 8 + 8 vs. 8 + 28 wk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPCG-7/ SFUO-3, 2014 [460]</td>
<td>T1b-2</td>
<td>Grade 2-3, T3 N0 M0</td>
<td></td>
<td>875</td>
<td>70 Gy 3D-CRT</td>
<td>LHRH agonist for 3 mo plus continuous flutamide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| PRO7/ SWOG, 2014, 2015 [461, 462] | T3-4 (88%), PSA > 20 ng/mL (64%), GLS 8-10 (36%) N0 M0 | 1205 | ADT = androgen deprivation therapy; EBRT = external beam radiation therapy; GS = Gleason score; LHRH = luteinising-hormone-releasing hormone; OS = overall survival; RT = radiotherapy; HR = hazard ratio; 3D-CRT = three-dimensional conformal radiotherapy.
6.3.3.4 Neoadjuvant chemotherapy plus radiotherapy

The GETUG 12 trial investigated the impact of neoadjuvant chemotherapy with docetaxel on the PFS in a cohort of 413 high-risk patients. Patients were randomly assigned to either goserelin 10.8 mg every three months for three years, plus four cycles of docetaxel and estramustine or to goserelin alone (arm 2). Local therapy was administered at three months and consisted of RT in 358 patients (87%). Toxicity included Grade 3-4 neutropenia (27%) with neutropenic fever in 2%, but no toxicity-related death. A PSA response (PSA < 0.2 ng/mL after three months of treatment) was obtained in 34% in the ADT + docetaxel arm and 15% in the ADT arm. With a median follow-up period of 4.6 years, the four-year PFS was 85% in arm 1 vs. 81% in arm 2 (p = 0.26), but the data need to mature [464].

6.3.3.5 Combined dose-escalated radiotherapy and androgen-deprivation therapy

Zelefsky et al. [465] reported a retrospective analysis comprising 571 patients with low-risk PCa (22.4%), 1,074 with intermediate-risk PCa (42.1%), and 906 with high-risk PCa (35.5%). Three-dimensional-conformal RT or IMRT were administered. The prostate dose ranged from 64.8 to 86.4 Gy; doses beyond 81 Gy were delivered during the last ten years of the study using image-guided IMRT. Complete androgen blockade was administered at the discretion of the treating physician to 623 high-risk PCa (69%), 456 intermediate-risk PCa (42%) and 170 low-risk PCa (30%) patients. The duration of ADT was three months for low-risk patients and six months for intermediate-risk and high-risk patients, starting three months before RT. The ten-year biochemical disease-free rate (BDFR) was significantly improved by dose escalation: 84% (> 75.6 Gy) vs. 70% for low-risk PCa (p = 0.04), 76% (> 81 Gy) vs. 57% for intermediate-risk PCa (p = 0.0001), and 55% (> 81 Gy) vs. 41% for high-risk patients (p = 0.0001). The six-month ADT also influenced the BDFR in intermediate- and high-risk patients, with 55% for intermediate-risk vs. 36% for high-risk patients (p < 0.0001). In the multivariate analysis, a dose > 81 Gy (p = 0.027) and ADT (p = 0.052) were found to be predictive factors for distant metastasis-free survival, but none of these parameters influenced OS.

6.3.3.6 Recommended external beam radiation therapy treatment policy for localised PCa

6.3.3.6.1 Low-risk PCa

Intensity-modulated RT with escalated dose without ADT is an alternative to brachytherapy (see below).

6.3.3.6.2 Intermediate-risk PCa

Patients suitable for ADT can be given combined IMRT with short-term ADT (four to six months) [415, 466, 467]. For patients unsuitable for ADT (e.g. due to comorbidities) or unwilling to accept ADT (e.g. to preserve their sexual health), the recommended treatment is IMRT at an escalated dose (76-80 Gy) or a combination of IMRT and brachytherapy.

6.3.3.6.3 Localised high-risk PCa

The high risk of relapse outside the irradiated volume makes it mandatory to use a combined modality approach, consisting of dose-escalated IMRT, possibly including the pelvic lymphatics + long-term ADT. The duration of ADT has to take into account WHO PS, comorbidities, and the number of poor prognostic factors. It is important to recognise that EBRT + short-term ADT did not improve OS in high-risk localised PCa, in the Boston and RTOG 94-13 and 86-10 trials [453, 454, 459], and long-term ADT is currently recommended for these patients.

6.3.3.6.4 Locally advanced PCa: T3-4 N0, M0

In locally advanced disease, RCTs have clearly established that the additional use of long-term ADT combined with RT produces better OS. Whilst RT is effective in this patient group, combined RT + ADT is currently superior to ADT alone.

6.3.3.6.5 MRC PR3/PR07 study - The National Cancer Institute of Canada (NCIC)/UK Medical Research Council (MRC)/Southwest Oncology Group (SWOG) intergroup PR3/PR07 study

This study comprised 1,205 patients, consisting of T3-4 (n = 1,057), or T2, PSA > 40 ng/mL (n = 119), or T2, PSA > 20 ng/mL and Gleason score > 8 (n = 25), who were randomly assigned to lifelong ADT (bilateral orchidectomy or LHRH agonist), with or without RT (65-70 Gy to the prostate, with or without 45 Gy to the pelvic LNs). With a median follow-up of eight years, OS was significantly improved in the patients allocated to ADT + RT (HR: 0.70; 95% CI: 0.57-0.85; p < 0.001). Deaths from PCa were significantly reduced by the addition of RT to ADT (HR: 46; 95% CI: 0.34-0.61; p < 0.001). Patients on ADT + RT reported a higher frequency of adverse events related to bowel toxicity, but only two of 589 patients had Grade 3 or greater diarrhoea at 24 months after RT [462].

A total of 273 patients with locally advanced PCa T3-4 or pT3 N0 M0 were randomly assigned to three years
of ADT using an LHRH agonist (leuprorelin), with or without RT (70 Gy to the prostate plus 48 ± 2 Gy to the pelvic LNs). After a median follow-up period of 67 months, there was a significant improvement in the five-year DFS (p < 0.001), metastatic DSS (p < 0.018), and loco-regional PFS (p < 0.0002), but the effect on OS was not reported [463].

Another study compared hormonal treatment alone (i.e. three months of continuous androgen blockade followed by continuous flutamide treatment (n = 439) with the same treatment combined with RT (n = 436) [460]. The ten (fifteen) year cumulative PCSM was 18.9% (30.7%) and 8.3% (12.4%) (HR: 0.35; [p < 4.1E-10 for fifteen year results]), and overall mortality was 35.3% (56.7%) and 26.4% (43.4%) (HR: 0.70; p = 0.0006 for fifteen-year results), respectively.

6.3.3.7 Lymph node irradiation
6.3.3.7.1 Prophylactic LN irradiation in clinically N0 prostate cancer (estimated cN0)
There is no level 1 evidence for prophylactic whole-pelvic irradiation, since RCTs have failed to show that patients benefit from prophylactic irradiation (46-50 Gy) of the pelvic LNs in high-risk cases. Such studies include the RTOG 77-06 study (n = 484 with T1b-T2) [468], the Stanford study (n = 91) [469], and the GETUG 01 trial (n = 444 with T1b-T3 N0 pNx M0) [470]. In the RTOG 94-13 study [459], there were no differences in the PFS in patients treated with whole-pelvic or prostate-only RT, but interactions between whole-pelvic RT and the duration of ADT were reported following the subgroup analysis. Pelvic LND may be needed to improve the selection of patients who may be able to benefit from pelvic LN irradiation and to supplement the use of the Briganti tables [340] and/or the Roach formula [471]. The results of pelvic LND, especially in young patients, allows radiation oncologists to tailor both the planning target volume and the duration of ADT, particularly ensuring that there is no pelvic irradiation for pN0 patients, while it is possible to irradiate, in combination with long-term ADT. The real impact of such an approach remains, so far, hypothetical, since no randomised trails are available. The benefits of pelvic nodal irradiation at a high dosage using IMRT merit further investigation in a phase II trial. One such trial is currently recruiting through the RTOG, and PIVOTAL, a UK randomised phase II trial, has completed accrual.

6.3.3.7.2 Clinical, or pathological node positive, M0 disease
Outcomes in this group after RT as a sole modality are poor [416], and these patients should receive RT plus long-term ADT. The RTOG 85-31 randomised phase III trial, with a median follow-up period of 6.5 years, showed that 95 of the 173 pN1 patients who received pelvic RT with immediate HT had better five-year (54%) and nine-year (10%) PFS rates (PSA < 1.5 ng/mL) vs. 33% and 4%, respectively, for radiation alone (p < 0.0001). Multivariate analysis showed that this combination had a statistically significant impact on the OS [472]. Patients with pelvic LN involvement lower than the iliac regional nodes, < 80 years old, with a WHO PS 0-1 and no severe comorbidity, may be candidates for EBRT + immediate long-term HT. Recent data from the UK Systemic Therapy in Advancing or Metastatic Prostate cancer: Evaluation of Drug Efficacy (STAMPEDE) trial suggests that pelvic RT could be beneficial for N1 disease, but this is not based on a randomised comparison [473] (see also Section 6.3.7).

6.3.4 Proton beam therapy
In theory, proton beams are an attractive alternative to photon-beam RT for PCa, as they deposit almost all their radiation dose at the end of the particle’s path in tissue (the Bragg peak), in contrast to photons, which deposit radiation along their path. There is also a very sharp fall-off for proton beams beyond their deposition depth, meaning that critical normal tissues beyond this depth could be effectively spared. In contrast, photon beams continue to deposit energy until they leave the body, including an exit dose.

Two recent planning studies comparing conformal proton therapy with IMRT have yielded conflicting results; one study suggested that the two are equivalent in terms of rectal dose sparing, but that IMRT is actually superior in terms of bladder sparing [474]; the other study suggested a clearer advantage for protons [475].

One RCT on dose escalation (70.2 vs. 79.2 Gy) has incorporated protons for the boost doses of either 19.8 or 28.8 Gy. This trial shows improved outcome with the higher dose, but it cannot be used as evidence for the superiority of proton therapy per se [411]. Thus, unequivocal information that shows an advantage of protons over IMRT photon therapy is still not available.

Studies from the SEER database, and from Harvard [476, 477], describing toxicity and patient reported outcomes do not point to an inherent superiority for protons. In terms of longer term gastrointestinal (GI) toxicity, proton therapy might even be inferior to IMRT [477].

A retrospective 2:1 matched-control analysis of 27,647 U.S. Medicare patients compared 314 men receiving proton therapy with 628 men who had IMRT. Despite the considerably higher costs for proton
therapy, there was some improvement in GU-tract toxicity after 6 months, but not after 12 months, and not at the GI tract [478].

A randomised trial comparing equivalent doses of proton-beam therapy with IMRT is needed to compare the efficacy of protons vs. photons; a study of this type is under consideration by the RTOG. Meanwhile, proton therapy must be regarded as a promising, but experimental, alternative to photon-beam therapy.

6.3.5 Low-dose rate and high-dose rate brachytherapy

6.3.5.1 Low-dose rate (LDR) brachytherapy

There is a consensus on the following eligibility criteria for LDR monotherapy [479]:

- stage cT1b-T2a N0, M0;
- Gleason score 6 with \( v \geq 50\% \) of biopsy cores involved with cancer or;
- Gleason score 3 + 4 with \( \leq 33\% \) of biopsy cores involved with cancer;
- an initial PSA level of \( \leq 10 \text{ ng/mL} \);
- a prostate volume of \( < 50 \text{ cm}^3 \);
- an International Prostatic Symptom Score (IPSS) \( \leq 12 \) and maximal flow rate \( > 15 \text{ mL/min} \) on urinary flow tests [408].

Low-dose rate brachytherapy uses radioactive seeds permanently implanted into the prostate. Patients with low- and favourable intermediate-risk PCa are the most suitable candidates for LDR brachytherapy as monotherapy. The use of guidelines is strongly recommended [479-481]. There have been no RCTs comparing brachytherapy as monotherapy with other curative treatment modalities. Outcome data are available from a number of large population cohorts with mature follow-up [482-489]. The BDFS for Gleason 6 patients after five and ten years has been reported to range from 71% to 93% and 65% to 85%, respectively [482-489].

A significant correlation has been shown between the implanted dose and recurrence rates [490]. Patients receiving a D90 (dose covering 90% of the prostate volume) of \( > 140 \text{ Gy} \) had a significantly higher biochemical control rate (PSA \( < 1.0 \text{ ng/mL} \)) after four years than patients who received less than 140 Gy (92 vs. 68%).

In men with intermediate- or high-risk PCa, LDR brachytherapy boost with supplemental EBRT and hormonal treatment [491] may be considered. Dose-escalated EBRT has been compared with EBRT and LDR brachytherapy boost in intermediate-risk and high-risk patients in a RCT [492]. The ASCENDE-RT (Androgen Suppression Combined with Elective Nodal and Dose Escalated Radiation Therapy) multi-centre Canadian trial compared EBRT (total dose of 78 Gy) to EBRT (total dose 46 Gy) followed by LDR brachytherapy boost (prescribed dose 115 Gy). The use of LDR boost resulted in five- and seven-year PSA PFS rates of 89% and 86%, respectively compared to 84% and 75% in those treated with EBRT alone. This improvement in PSA control came with an increase in late urinary toxicity with 18% experiencing G3+ toxicity in the LDR boost arm as compared to 8% in the EBRT alone arm. Toxicity was mainly due to urethral strictures and incontinence and great care should be taken during treatment planning.

6.3.5.2 High-Dose Rate (HDR) brachytherapy

High-dose rate brachytherapy uses a radioactive source temporarily introduced into the prostate to deliver radiation. The technical differences are outlined in the table below. The use of published guidelines is strongly recommended [493]. High-dose rate brachytherapy can be delivered in single or multiple fractions and is often combined with EBRT of at least 45 Gy [494]. A single RCT of EBRT vs. EBRT and HDR brachytherapy boost has been reported [495]. A total of 218 patients with organ-confined PCa were randomised to EBRT alone with a dose of 55 Gy in twenty fractions, or EBRT with a dose of 35.75 Gy in thirteen fractions, followed by HDR brachytherapy with a dose of 17 Gy in two fractions over 24 hours. In comparison with EBRT alone, the combination of EBRT and HDR brachytherapy showed a significant improvement in the BDFR \( (p = 0.04) \) with five-, seven- and ten-year estimates of biochemical control of 75%, 66% and 46% for combination treatment compared to 61%, 48% and 39% for external beam alone. There were no differences in the rates of late bowel, urinary or sexual patient QoL over a ten-year follow-up period. However, a very high, uncommon rate of early recurrences was observed in the EBRT arm alone, even after two years, possibly due to a dose lower than the current standard used [495]. A SR of non-randomised trials has suggested the possibility that outcomes with EBRT plus HDR brachytherapy are superior to brachytherapy alone, but this needs confirmation in a prospective RCT [496].

Fractionated HDR brachytherapy as monotherapy can be offered to patients with low and intermediate-risk PCa, who should be informed that results are only available from limited series in very experienced centres [497, 498]. Five year PSA control rates over 90% are reported, with late G3+ genito-urinary toxicity rates \( < 5\% \) and no, or very minimal, G3+ gastro-intestinal toxicity rates [497, 498].
Differences in prostate brachytherapy techniques

| Low Dose Rate (LDR) | • Permanent seeds implanted  
|• Uses I-125 (most common), Pd-103 or Cs-131 isotopes  
|• Radiation dose delivered over weeks and months  
|• Acute side effects resolve over months  
|• Radiation protection issues for patient and carers |
| High Dose Rate (HDR) | • Temporary implantation  
|• Ir-192 isotope introduced through implanted needles or catheters  
|• Radiation dose delivered in minutes  
|• Acute side effects resolve over weeks  
|• No radiation protection issues for patient or carers |

A SR and meta-analysis of observational studies comparing patients exposed or unexposed to RT in the course of treatment for PCas demonstrate an increased risk of developing second cancers for bladder (OR 1.39), colorectal (OR 1.68) and rectum (OR 1.62) with similar risks over lag times of five and ten years. Absolute risks over ten years are small (1-4%) but should be discussed with younger men in particular [499].

6.3.6 Immediate (adjuvant) post-operative external irradiation after RP (cN0 or pN0) (Table 6.3.5)
Extracapsular invasion (pT3), Gleason score ≥ 7 and positive surgical margins (R1) are associated with a risk of local recurrence, which can be as high as 50% after five years [500]. Three prospective RCTs have assessed the role of immediate post-operative RT (adjuvant RT [ART]), as follows:

6.3.6.1 EORTC 22911
EORTC 22911 [501], with a target sample size of 1,005 patients, compared immediate post-operative RT (60 Gy) with RT delayed until local recurrence (70 Gy) in patients classified as pT3 pN0 with risk factors R1 and pT2R1 after radical retropubic prostatectomy (RRP). Grade 4 toxicity was not observed (for criteria: see Tables 8.2.2 and 8.2.3). The rate of Grade 3 GU toxicity was 5.3% vs. 2.5% in the observation group after ten years. For patients younger than 70 years, the study concluded that immediate post-operative RT after surgery significantly improved the ten-year biological PFS to 60.6% vs. 41.1% in the observation group. Loco-regional control was better in the long-term follow-up at ten years after immediate irradiation (HR: 0.45; p < 0.0001). However, ART patients with pT2-3 R1 also showed an improved clinical PFS after ten years (HR: 0.69; p = 0.008). Overall survival did not differ significantly between the treatment arms. After re-evaluation using a central pathological review, the highest impact of ART was on biochemical progression (HR reduced to 0.3) seen in patients with positive margins, but there was also a positive effect of 10% after five years for pT3 with negative margins and other risk factors [501].

6.3.6.2 ARO trial
The conclusions of ARO trial 96-02 (n = 385) appear to support those of the EORTC study. After a median follow-up period of 112 months, the RT group (60 Gy) demonstrated a significant improvement in BDFR of 56% vs. 35%, respectively (p = 0.0001). However, unlike other studies, and of major interest, the randomisation of patients was carried out after they had achieved an undetectable PSA level following RP (< 0.1 ng/mL) and only pT3 tumours were included. This result indicates that ART is effective, even in the setting of an undetectable PSA after RP and additional risk factors [502].

6.3.6.3 SWOG 8794 trial
Conversely, the updated results, with a median follow-up of more than twelve years, of the SWOG 8794 trial, which randomly assigned 425 pT3 patients, showed that adjuvant radiation significantly improved the metastasis-free survival, with a ten-year metastasis-free survival of 71% vs. 61% (median prolongation of 1.8 years, p = 0.016) and a ten-year OS of 74% vs. 66% (median: 1.9 years prolongation; p = 0.023) [503, 504].

6.3.6.4 Conclusion
Thus, for patients classified as pT3 pN0 with a high risk of local failure after RP due to positive margins (highest impact), capsule rupture, and/or invasion of the seminal vesicles, who present with a PSA level of < 0.1 ng/mL, two options can be offered in the framework of informed consent. These are:
• immediate ART to the surgical bed [501, 502, 504] after recovery of urinary function.
• or clinical and biological monitoring followed by salvage radiotherapy (SRT) before the PSA exceeds 0.5 ng/mL [505, 506] (see Section 6.10.5.1).
Table 6.3.4: Overview of all three randomised trials for adjuvant radiation therapy after radical prostatectomy*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Inclusion criteria</th>
<th>Randomisation</th>
<th>Definition of BCR PSA (ng/mL)</th>
<th>Median FU (mo)</th>
<th>Biochemical PFS survival</th>
<th>OS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SWOG 8794, 2009 [504]</td>
<td>431</td>
<td>pT3 cN0 ± involved SM</td>
<td>60-64 Gy vs. observation</td>
<td>&gt; 0.4</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>10 yr: 53% vs. 30% (p &lt; 0.05)</td>
<td>10 yr: 74% vs. 66% Median time: 15.2 vs. 13.3 yr. p = 0.023</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EORTC 22911, 2012 [501]</td>
<td>1,005</td>
<td>pT3 ± involved SM pN0 pT2 involved SM pN0</td>
<td>60 Gy vs. observation</td>
<td>&gt; 0.2</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>10 yr: 60.6% vs. 41% (p &lt; 0.001)</td>
<td>81% vs. 77% n.s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARO 96-02, 2014 [502]</td>
<td>388</td>
<td>pT3 (± involved SM) pN0 PSA post-RP undetectable</td>
<td>60 Gy vs. observation</td>
<td>&gt; 0.05 + confirmation</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>10 yr: 56% vs. 35% (p = 0.0001)</td>
<td>10 yr: 82% vs. 86% n.s.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See Section 6.10.5.1 for delayed (salvage) post-radical prostatectomy external irradiation.

BCR = biochemical recurrence; n = number of patients; OS = overall survival; PFS = progression-free survival; PSA = prostate-specific antigen; RP = radical prostatectomy; SM = surgical margin.

6.3.7 Summary of evidence and guidelines for definitive radiotherapy

Summary of evidence LE
The highest effect of adjuvant radiotherapy is seen in patients with pT3R1 PCa. 1a
The optimum duration of androgen deprivation therapy (ADT) with external beam radiation therapy (EBRT) is well established in the literature. There is no evidence that these durations should change when using brachytherapy boost with EBRT. 1b
Limited data, from experienced centres only, are available for the use of fractionated high-dose-rate brachytherapy as monotherapy in patients with low and intermediate-risk PCa. 2a

Recommendations LE GR
Offer external beam radiation therapy (EBRT) to all risk groups of non-metastatic PCa 1b A
In low-risk PCa, use a total dose of 74 to 78 Gy. 1a A
In patients with low-risk PCa, and selected intermediate-risk PCa, without a previous transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) and with a good International Prostate Symptom Score and a prostate volume < 50 mL, offer low-dose rate (LDR) brachytherapy. 2a A
In patients with intermediate-risk PCa use a total dose of 76-78 Gy, in combination with short-term ADT (four to six months). 1b A
In patients with high-risk localised PCa and locally advanced cN0 PCa, use EBRT to a dose of 76-78 Gy, or combined EBRT with brachytherapy boost (either high-dose rate [HDR] or LDR). Radiotherapy should be given in combination with long-term androgen deprivation therapy (two to three years). 1a A
Offer intensity-modulated radiotherapy (IMRT) for definitive treatment of PCa by EBRT. 2a A
Moderate hypofractionation (HFX) with IMRT including image-guided radiation therapy (IGRT) to the prostate only can be offered to carefully selected patients with localised disease (as discussed in the text). 1a A
Moderate HFX should adhere to radiotherapy-protocols from trials with equivalent outcome and toxicity, i.e. 60 Gy/20 fractions in four weeks or 70 Gy/28 fractions in six weeks. 1a A
| In patients with cN+ or pN+ PCa offer pelvic external irradiation in combination with immediate long-term ADT. | 2b | B |
| In patients with pT3, N0M0 PCa and an undetectable prostate-specific antigen (PSA) following radical prostatectomy, discuss adjuvant EBRT because it improves at least biochemical-free survival. | 1a | A |
| Inform patients with an undetectable PSA following RP about salvage irradiation as an alternative to adjuvant irradiation when PSA increases (see Section 6.9.5.1). | 1b | A |

### 6.4 Treatment: Options other than surgery and radiotherapy for the primary treatment of localised prostate cancer

#### 6.4.1 Background

Besides RP, EBRT and brachytherapy, other modalities have emerged as therapeutic options in patients with clinically localised PCa [507-510]. In this section, both whole gland and focal treatment will be considered, looking particularly at high-intensity focused US (HIFU) and cryosurgical ablation of the prostate (CSAP) as sufficient data are available to form the basis of some initial judgements on these latest additions to the management of PCa. Other options - such as photodynamic therapy, radiofrequency ablation and electroporation, among others - are considered to be in the early phases of evaluation and will therefore not be discussed in this edition of the Guidelines. Both HIFU and CSAP have been developed as minimally invasive procedures with the aim of providing equivalent oncological safety, reduced toxicity and improved functional outcomes. In addition, a relatively newer development is focal ablative therapy, whereby lesion-targeted ablation is undertaken in a precise, organ-sparing manner.

#### 6.4.2 Cryosurgery

Cryosurgery uses freezing techniques to induce cell death by:
- dehydration resulting in protein denaturation;
- direct rupture of cellular membranes by ice crystals;
- vascular stasis and microthrombi, resulting in stagnation of the microcirculation with consecutive ischaemic apoptosis [507-510].

Freezing of the prostate is ensured by the placement of 12-15 x 17 gauge cryoneedles under TRUS guidance, placement of thermosensors at the level of the external sphincter and bladder neck, and insertion of a urethral warmer. Two freeze-thaw cycles are used under TRUS guidance, resulting in a temperature of -40°C in the mid-gland and at the neurovascular bundle. Currently, third and fourth generation cryosurgery devices are mainly used.

Potential candidates for CSAP are those who have organ-confined PCa and those identified as having minimal tumour extension beyond the prostate [507-509]. The PSA should be < 20 ng/mL, and the Gleason score should be < 7:
- patients with low-risk PCa, or intermediate-risk PCa whose condition prohibits RT or surgery;
- at the time of therapy, the size of the prostate should be < 40 mL; volume reduction may be achieved by androgen ablation to avoid any technical difficulty in placing cryoprobes under the pubic arch.

It is important that patients with a life expectancy > 10 years should be fully informed that there are limited data on the long-term outcome for cancer control > 10 years and that this treatment modality is still considered as experimental.

#### 6.4.2.1 Results of cryosurgery for PCa

A comparative assessment of primary ablative therapies for localised PCa, including CSAP, was recently undertaken by Ramsay et al. [511]. The SR and network meta-analysis compared CSAP vs. RP and EBRT. Data from 3,995 patients across nineteen studies (including one RCT, four non-randomised comparative studies, and fourteen case series) were included. In the short-term, there was conflicting evidence relating to cancer-specific outcomes when CSAP was compared with either EBRT or RP. The only finding that reached statistical significance was one-year DFS, which was worse for cryotherapy than for either EBRT or RP. However, none of the other cancer-specific outcomes, such as BCF or OS, showed any significant differences. Overall, because of the high risk of bias across the studies, the findings for cancer-specific outcomes were considered inconclusive. The review noted significant inconsistencies in outcome definitions, measurement and reporting in the evidence base, in particular BCR.

#### 6.4.3 High-intensity focused ultrasound of the prostate

High-intensity focused ultrasound consists of focused US waves, emitted from a transducer, that cause tissue
damage by mechanical and thermal effects as well as by cavitation [512]. The goal of HIFU is to heat malignant tissues above 65°C so that it is destroyed by coagulative necrosis. High-intensity focused ultrasound is performed under general or spinal anaesthesia, with the patient lying in the lateral position. Potential candidates are patients with low-to-moderate risk as part of clinical trials. The patient should be informed about the lack of long-term outcome data at > 10 years (see Section 7.4.4.2).

6.4.3.1 Results of high-intensity focused ultrasound in PCa
As with CSAP, various PSA thresholds are defined for biochemical cure, and no international consensus exists on objective response criteria. The Stuttgart criteria (> PSA nadir + 1.2 ng/mL) have been proposed to define BCR after HIFU treatment [513].

A recent SR and comparative assessment by network meta-analysis [511] compared HIFU vs. RP and EBRT as primary treatment for localised PCa. Data from 4,000 patients across 21 studies (including one non-randomised comparative study and 20 case series) were included. There was some evidence that BCF rates were significantly higher at one year with HIFU than with EBRT. However, the difference was no longer statistically significant at five years. Similar statistically significant findings were observed with regard to DFS at one year, with worse outcomes for HIFU than for EBRT. The differences were no longer significant at three years. At four years, in contrast to OS, the biochemical result was higher when using HIFU.

In an earlier SR and meta-analysis [514], 150 papers related to HIFU were identified and evaluated with regard to various oncological and functional outcome parameters [514]. No RCT was available for analysis, and no survival data were presented. No validated biochemical surrogate end-point was available for HIFU therapy. The review found HIFU to be associated with a PFS (based on PSA ± biopsy data) of 63-87% (projected three-to five-year data), but median follow up in the studies ranged from 12-24 months only.

6.4.4 Focal therapy of PCa
During the past two decades, there has been a trend towards earlier diagnosis of PCa as a result of greater public and professional awareness, leading to the adoption of both formal and informal screening strategies. The effect of this has been to identify men at an earlier stage with smaller tumours that occupy only 5-10% of the prostate volume, with a greater propensity for unifocal or unilateral disease [515-517]. Most focal therapies to date have been achieved with ablative technologies: cryotherapy, HIFU, photodynamic therapy, electroporation, and focal RT by brachytherapy or CyberKnife Robotic Radiosurgery System technology (Accuray Inc., Sunnyvale, CA, USA). The main purpose of focal therapy is to ablate tumours selectively whilst limiting toxicity by sparing the neurovascular bundles, sphincter and urethra [518-520].

Ramsay et al.'s [502] SR and network meta-analysis of ablative therapy in men with localised PCa performed a sub-group analysis of focal therapy vs. RP and EBRT. Nine case series reporting on focal therapy were identified (five studies reporting on focal CSAP, three studies on focal HIFU, and one study reporting on both). For focal CSAP vs. RP or EBRT, no statistically significant differences were found for BCR at three years. For focal HIFU vs. RP or EBRT, there were no comparable data on oncological, continence nor potency outcomes at one year or more. More recently, Valerio et al. [521] performed a SR to summarise the evidence regarding the effectiveness of focal therapy in localised PCa. Data from 3,230 patients across 37 studies were included, covering different energy sources including HIFU, CSAP, photodynamic therapy, laser interstitial thermotherapy, focal brachytherapy, irreversible electroporation and radiofrequency ablation. The overall quality of the evidence was low, due to the majority of studies being single-centre, non-comparative and retrospective in design, heterogeneity of definitions, approaches, follow-up strategies, outcomes, and duration of follow-up. Although the review suggests that focal therapy has a favourable toxicity profile in the short to medium-term, its oncological effectiveness remains unproven due to lack of reliable comparative data against standard interventions such as RP and EBRT. Robust prospective trials reporting standardised outcomes [522] are needed before recommendations in support of focal therapy for routine clinical practice can be made.
6.4.5  **Summary of evidence and guidelines for experimental therapeutic options to treat clinically localised prostate cancer**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The available short-term data regarding cryosurgery and high-intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU) does not prove equivalence to standard interventions.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no reliable long-term comparative data to indicate that cryosurgery or HIFU leads to equivalent oncological outcomes compared with radical prostatectomy or external beam radiation therapy.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostate specific antigen nadir values after ablative therapies may have prognostic value.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal therapy of any sort appears promising but remains investigational, with uncertainties surrounding outcome definitions, follow-up and re-treatment criteria.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Only offer cryotherapy and high-intensity focused ultrasound within a clinical trial setting.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only offer focal therapy within a clinical trial setting.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.5  **Treatment: Hormonal therapy - rationale and available drugs**

6.5.1  **Introduction**

6.5.1.1  **Different types of hormonal therapy**

Androgen deprivation can be achieved by either suppressing the secretion of testicular androgens or inhibiting the action of circulating androgens at the level of their receptor. These two methods can be combined to achieve what is known as complete (or maximal or total) androgen blockade (CAB) [523].

6.5.2  **Testosterone-lowering therapy (castration)**

6.5.2.1  **Castration level**

Surgical castration is still considered the primary treatment modality for ADT. It leads to a considerable decline in testosterone levels: the ‘castration level’.

The castrate level is < 50 ng/dL (1.7 nmol/L), which was defined more than 40 years ago, when testosterone testing was limited. Current methods have shown that the mean value after surgical castration is 15 ng/dL [524]. Therefore, a more appropriate level is defined as < 20 ng/dL (1 nmol/L). This new definition is important as better results are repeatedly observed with lower testosterone levels compared to 50 ng/dL [525-527]. However, the castrate level considered by the regulatory authorities and in clinical trials addressing castration in PCa is still < 50 ng/dL (1.7 mmol/L).

6.5.2.2  **Bilateral orchiectomy**

Bilateral orchiectomy, or subcapsular pulpectomy, is a simple, cheap and virtually complication-free surgical procedure. It is easily performed under local anaesthesia [528] and it is the quickest way to achieve a castration level, which is usually reached within less than twelve hours. It is irreversible and does not allow for intermittent treatment.

6.5.3  **Oestrogens**

Treatment with oestrogens results in testosterone suppression and is not associated with bone loss [529]. Early studies tested oral diethylstilboestrol (DES) at several doses. Due to severe side effects, especially thromboembolic complications, even at lower doses [530, 531] these drugs are not considered as standard first-line treatment.

6.5.4  **Luteinising-hormone-releasing hormone agonists**

Long-acting LHRH agonists are currently the main forms of ADT. These synthetic analogues of LHRH, are delivered as depot injections on a 1-, 2-, 3-, 6-monthly, or yearly basis. After the first injection, they induce a transient rise in luteinising hormone (LH) and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) leading to the ‘testosterone surge’ or ‘flare-up’ phenomenon, which starts two to three days after administration and lasts for about one week. The different products have practical differences that need to be considered in everyday practice, including the storage temperature, whether a drug is ready for immediate use or requires reconstitution, and whether a drug is given by subcutaneous or intramuscular injection.

6.5.4.1  **Achievement of castration levels**

Chronic exposure to LHRH agonists results in the down-regulation of LHRH-receptors, suppressing LH and
FSH secretion and therefore testosterone production. A castration level is usually obtained within two to four weeks [532]. Although there is no formal direct comparison between the various compounds, they are considered to be equally effective [533] and comparable to orchiectomy [533, 534].

6.5.4.2 ‘Flare-up’ phenomenon
The ‘flare-up’ phenomenon might lead to detrimental clinical effects (the clinical flare) such as increased bone pain, acute bladder outlet obstruction, obstructive renal failure, spinal cord compression, and cardiovascular death due to hypercoagulation status [535].

Patients at risk are usually those with high-volume, symptomatic, bony disease. Concomitant therapy with an anti-androgen decreases the incidence of clinical flare, but does not completely remove the risk.

6.5.5 Luteinising-hormone-releasing hormone antagonists
Luteinising-hormone releasing hormone antagonists immediately bind to LHRH receptors, leading to a rapid decrease in LH, FSH and testosterone levels without any flare. The practical shortcoming of these compounds is the lack of a long-acting depot formulation with only monthly formulations being available.

Degarelix
Degarelix is an LHRH antagonist. The standard dosage is 240 mg in the first month, followed by monthly injections of 80 mg. Most patients achieve a castrate level at day three [536]. An extended follow-up has been published, suggesting a better PFS compared to monthly leuprorelin [536]. Its definitive superiority over the LHRH analogues remains to be proven.

6.5.6 Anti-androgens
These oral compounds are classified according to their chemical structure as:

• steroidal, e.g. cyproterone acetate (CPA), megestrol acetate and medroxyprogesterone acetate;
• non-steroidal or pure, e.g. nilutamide, flutamide and bicalutamide.

Both classes compete with androgens at the receptor level. This is the sole action of non-steroidal anti-androgens and leads to an unchanged or slightly elevated testosterone level. Conversely, steroidal anti-androgens have progesterational properties leading to central inhibition by crossing the blood-brain barrier.

6.5.6.1 Steroidal anti-androgens
These compounds are synthetic derivatives of hydroxyprogesterone. Their main pharmacological side-effects are secondary to castration (gynaecomastia is quite rare) whilst the non-pharmacological side effects are cardiovascular toxicity (4–40% for cyproterone acetate [CPA]) and hepatotoxicity.

6.5.6.1.1 Cyproterone acetate
Cyproterone acetate was the first licensed anti-androgen, but the least studied. Its most effective dose as monotherapy is still unknown. Although CPA has a relatively long half-life (31–41 hours), it is usually administered in two or three fractionated doses of 100 mg each. In one RCT [537] CPA showed a poorer OS when compared with LHRH analogues. An underpowered RCT comparing CPA monotherapy with flutamide in M1b PCa did not show any difference in disease-specific and OS at a median follow-up of 8.6 years [538]. Other CPA monotherapy studies suffer from methodological limitations preventing firm conclusions.

6.5.6.2 Non-steroidal anti-androgens
Non-steroidal anti-androgen monotherapy does not suppress testosterone secretion and it is claimed that libido, overall physical performance and bone mineral density (BMD) are frequently preserved [539]. Non-androgen pharmacological side effects differ between agents, with bicalutamide showing a more favourable safety and tolerability profile than flutamide and nilutamide [540]. All three agents share a common potential liver toxicity (occasionally fatal), requiring regular monitoring of patients’ liver enzymes.

6.5.6.2.1 Nilutamide
Nilutamide monotherapy has not been compared to castration and is not licensed for monotherapy. Non-androgen pharmacological side effects are visual disturbances (i.e. delayed adaptation to darkness), alcohol intolerance, nausea, and specifically severe interstitial pneumonitis (potentially life-threatening).

6.5.6.2.2 Flutamide
Flutamide has been studied as monotherapy. Flutamide is a pro-drug, and the half-life of the active metabolite is five-six hours, allowing for a three times daily dose. The recommended total daily dosage is 750 mg. The
non-androgen pharmacological side-effect of flutamide is diarrhoea.

6.5.6.2.3 Bicalutamide
The dosage licensed for use in CAB is 50 mg/day, and 150 mg for monotherapy. The androgen pharmacological side-effects are mainly gynaecomastia (70%) and breast pain (68%). However, bicalutamide monotherapy offers clear bone protection compared with LHRH analogues and probably LHRH antagonists [539, 541].

6.5.7 New compounds (for castrate-resistant patients only)
During castration, the occurrence of castration-resistance (CRPC) is systemic. It is considered to be mediated through two main overlapping mechanisms, which are androgen-receptor (AR)-independent and AR-dependent (see Section 6.10 - Castrate-resistant PCa). In CRPC, the intracellular androgen level is increased compared to androgen sensitive cells, and an over-expression of the AR has been observed, suggesting an adaptive mechanism [542]. This has led to the development of two new compounds targeting the androgen axis: abiraterone acetate and enzalutamide. Both are currently approved for mCRPC only.

6.5.7.1 Abiraterone acetate
Abiraterone acetate (AA) is a CYP17 inhibitor (a combination of 17α-hydrolase and 17,20-lyase inhibition). By blocking CYP17, AA significantly decreases the intracellular testosterone level by suppressing its synthesis at the adrenal level and inside the cancer cells (intracrine mechanism). This compound must be used together with prednisone/prednisolone (2 x 5 mg) to prevent drug-induced hyperaldosteronism.

6.5.7.2 Enzalutamide
Enzalutamide is a novel anti-androgen with a higher affinity than bicalutamide for the AR receptor. While non-steroidal anti-androgens still allow transfer of ARs to the nucleus, enzalutamide also blocks AR transfer and therefore suppresses any possible agonist-like activity.

6.5.8 Cost-effectiveness of hormonal therapy options
A formal meta-analysis evaluated the cost-effectiveness of various long-term androgen suppression options in advanced PCa. For men who can accept it, bilateral orchiectomy is the most cost-effective form of ADT, providing a higher quality-adjusted survival, while CAB is the least economically attractive option, yielding small health benefits at relatively high costs. Furthermore, the greatest QoL gains and least costs may be obtained by starting ADT when symptoms from distant metastases have occurred [543]. Finally, once ADT is started and if a major response is obtained, intermittent androgen deprivation (IAD) may be an effective option to lower treatment costs.

6.6 Treatment: Metastatic prostate cancer
6.6.1 Introduction
A SR of ADT in PCa has recently been published [523].

6.6.2 Prognostic factors
Median survival of patients with newly diagnosed metastases is at least 42 months [544] but the M1 population is very heterogeneous. Several prognostic factors for survival have been suggested including the number and location of bone metastases, visceral metastases, Gleason score, PS status and initial PSA [545], alkaline phosphatase [546], but none of these have been validated in a direct comparison. In clinical trials, the number and location of bone metastases and the presence of visceral lesion are the prognostic factors most often used [547].

Based on a large SWOG 9346 cohort, the PSA level after seven months of ADT was used to create three prognostic groups, group 1 with a PSA < 0.2 ng/mL and a median survival of 75 months, group 2 with a PSA < 4 ng/mL with a median survival of 44 months and group 3 with a PSA > 4 ng/mL and only thirteen months median survival [548]. This grouping, however, requires independent confirmation.

6.6.3 First-line hormonal treatment
Primary ADT has been the standard of care for over 50 years [523]. There is no level 1 evidence for, or against, a specific type of ADT; whether orchiectomy, an LHRH analogue or antagonist, except in patients with impending spinal cord compression for whom either a bilateral orchidectomy, or an LHRH antagonist are the preferred options.
6.6.3.1 Prevention of ‘flare-up’
The initial testosterone flare associated with LHRH agonists can be prevented by co-administration of an anti-androgen [549]. Prevention of ‘flare-up’ is important in symptomatic patients or when a clinical flare might lead to severe complications. Anti-androgen therapy is usually continued for four weeks but neither the timing nor the duration of anti-androgen therapy are based on strong evidence. In addition, the long-term impact of preventing ‘flare-up’ is unknown [550].

6.6.4 Combination therapies
6.6.4.1 Complete androgen blockade
The largest RCT in 1,286 M1b patients found no difference between surgical castration with or without flutamide [551]. However, results with other anti-androgens or castration modalities have differed and SRs have shown that CAB using a non-steroidal anti-androgen (NSAA) appears to provide a small survival advantage (< 5%) vs. monotherapy (surgical castration or LHRH agonists) [552, 553] beyond five years of survival [554] but this minimal advantage in a small subset of patients must be balanced against the increased side effects associated with long-term use of NSAAs.

6.6.4.2 Non-steroidal anti-androgen monotherapy
Based on a Cochrane SR [555] comparing NSAA monotherapy to castration (either medical or surgical), NSAA was considered to be less effective in terms of OS, clinical progression, treatment failure and treatment discontinuation due to adverse events. The evidence quality of the studies included in this review was rated as moderate.

6.6.4.3 Intermittent versus continuous androgen deprivation therapy
Three independent reviews [556-558] and two meta-analyses [559, 560], looked at the clinical efficacy of IAD therapy. All of these reviews included eight RCTs of which only three were conducted in patients with exclusively M1 disease. The five remaining trials included different patient groups, mainly locally advanced and metastatic patients relapsing.

So far, the SWOG 9346 [561] is the largest trial conducted in M1b patients. Out of 3,040 selected patients, only 1,535 were randomised based on the inclusion criteria set. This highlights that, at best, only 50% of M1b patients might be candidates for IAD, i.e. the best PSA responders. This was a non-inferiority trial leading to inconclusive results: (HR: 1.1; CI: 0.99-1.23), with the upper limit being above the pre-specified 90% upper limit of 1.2. The pre-specified non-inferiority limit was not achieved, and the results did not show a significant inferiority for any treatment arm. However, inferior survival with IAD cannot be completely ruled out based on this study.

Other trials did not show any survival difference with a HR for OS of 1.04 (0.91-1.19). These reviews and the meta-analyses came to the conclusion that there was no difference in OS or CSS between IAD and continuous androgen deprivation. A recent review of the available phase III trials highlighted the limitations of most trials and suggests a cautious interpretation of the non-inferiority results [562]. None of the trials addressing M1 patients only showed a survival benefit, but there was a trend favouring continuous treatment for OS and PFS. Most of these trials, however, were non-inferiority trials. There is a trend favouring IAD in terms of QoL, especially regarding treatment-related side effects, such as hot flushes. In some cohorts the negative impact on sexual function was less pronounced with IAD. Two prospective trials came to the same conclusions [563, 564].

Other possible long-term benefits of IAD include bone protection [565] and a protective effect against metabolic syndrome. This possible protective effect has been challenged recently [566] with an increased risk for thrombotic and ischaemic events, while no benefit was observed for the endocrine, psychiatric, sexual and neurological side effects based on a detailed analysis from the SWOG 9346 trial. Testosterone recovery was observed in most studies [567] leading to intermittent castration. This, as well as the lack of any survival benefit in M1 patients, suggests that this modality must only be considered as an option in a well-informed patient bothered by significant side effects and willing to avoid them.

The PSA threshold at which ADT must be stopped or resumed still needs to be defined in prospective studies [557, 567]. Nevertheless, there is consensus amongst authors on some statements:
- Intermittent androgen deprivation is based on intermittent castration; therefore, only drugs leading to castration are suitable.
- Luteinising-hormone releasing hormone antagonist might be a valid alternative to an agonist.
- The induction cycle cannot be longer than nine months, otherwise testosterone recovery is unlikely.
- Androgen deprivation therapy should be stopped only if patients have fulfilled all of the following criteria:
- well-informed and compliant patient;
- no clinical progression;
- a clear PSA response, empirically defined as a PSA < 4 ng/mL in metastatic disease.

- Strict follow-up is mandatory, with clinical examination every three to six months. The more advanced the disease, the closer the follow-up should be. The same laboratory should be used to assess the PSA level.
- Treatment is resumed when the patient progresses clinically, or has a PSA rising above a pre-determined (empirically set) threshold: usually 10-20 ng/mL in metastatic patients.
- The same treatment is used for at least three to six months.
- Subsequent cycles of treatment are based on the same principles until the first sign of castration resistance becomes apparent.
- The group of patients who will benefit most from IAD still has to be defined but the most important factor seems to be the patient’s response to the first cycle of IAD, e.g. the PSA level response [557].

6.6.4.4 Immediate versus deferred androgen deprivation therapy

In symptomatic patients, immediate treatment is mandatory. However, controversy still exists for asymptomatic metastatic patients due to the lack of quality studies. A Cochrane review extracted four good-quality RCTs: the VACURG I and II trials, the MRC trial, and the ECOG 7887 study [555]. All of these studies were conducted in the pre-PSA era and included patients with advanced PCa, who had received early vs. deferred ADT, either as primary therapy or as adjuvant therapy after RP [568]. No improvement in OS was observed in the M1a/b population, although early ADT significantly reduced disease progression and associated complications.

6.6.5 Hormonal treatment combined with chemotherapy

Three large RCT were conducted [473, 547, 569]. All trials compared ADT alone as the standard of care with ADT combined with immediate docetaxel (75 mg/sqm, every three weeks) (within three months of ADT initiation). The primary objective in all three studies was OS. The key findings are summarised in Table 6.6.1.

Table 6.6.1: Key findings - Hormonal treatment combined with chemotherapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Population</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Med FU (mo)</th>
<th>Median OS (mo)</th>
<th>HR</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gravis, et al. [569]</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>385</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>58.9</td>
<td>54.2</td>
<td>1.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASCO GU 2015 [570]</td>
<td>HV: 47%</td>
<td>82.9</td>
<td>60.9</td>
<td>46.5</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.7-1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweeney, et al. [547]</td>
<td>M1 HV: 65%</td>
<td>790</td>
<td>28.9</td>
<td>57.6</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>0.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAMPEDE [473]</td>
<td>M1 [61%]/N+ [15%]/relapse</td>
<td>1,184 /593 (D)</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.66-0.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M1 only</td>
<td>725</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.62-0.92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D = docetaxel; FU = follow-up; HR = hazard ratio; HV = high volume: either visceral metastases or more than four bone metastases, with at least one outside the spine and pelvis; n = number of patients; ZA = zoledronic acid.

In the GETUG 15 trial [569], all patients had newly diagnosed M1 PCa, either primary or after a primary treatment. They were stratified based on previous treatment, and Glass risk factors [545]. In the Chemohormonal Therapy versus Androgen Ablation Randomized Trial for Extensive Disease in Prostate Cancer (CHAARTED) trial, the same inclusion criteria applied and patients were stratified according to disease volume; high volume being defined as either presence of visceral metastases or four, or more, bone metastases, with at least one outside the spine and pelvis [547].

STAMPEDE is a multi-arm multi-stage trial in which the reference arm (ADT monotherapy) included 1,184 patients. One of the experimental arms was docetaxel combined with ADT (n = 593 patients), another was docetaxel combined with zoledronic acid (n = 593). Patients were included with either M1, or N1 or having two criteria out of three: T3/4, PSA ≥ 40 ng/mL, Gleason 8-10. Also relapsed patients after local treatment were included if they met one of the following criteria: PSA ≥ 4 ng/mL with a PSA-DT < 6 months, a PSA ≥ 20 ng/mL, N1 or M1. No stratification was used regarding metastatic disease volume (high/low volume) [473].

In the three trials toxicity was mainly haematological with around 12-15% Grade 3-4 neutropenia, and 6-12% Grade 3-4 febrile neutropenia. Determination of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor receptor (GCSF) was shown to be helpful and its use should be based on available guidelines [571, 572].
Based on these data, upfront docetaxel combined with ADT should be considered as a new standard in men presenting with metastases at first presentation, provided they are fit enough to receive the drug [571]. Docetaxel is used at the standard regimen of 75 mg/sqm combined with steroids premedication, but without prolonged corticotherapy.

6.6.6 **Prostate targeted therapy in newly diagnosed metastatic disease**

Data from the retrospective SEER data-base [573] and the Munich cancer registry [574] suggest an OS and CSS benefit when RP or brachytherapy are added to ADT in newly diagnosed M1 patients. A small prospective experimental cohort of well selected patients responding to six months ADT and with ≤ 3 bone spots confirmed the feasibility and after a median 34 months follow up suggested a better CSS [575]. However, these results must be considered as experimental and deserve prospective trials (already underway) before being adopted in daily practice.

6.6.7 **Metastasis-directed therapy**

In patients relapsing after a local treatment, a metastases-targeting therapy has been proposed, with the aim to delay systemic treatment. A recent SR clearly highlighted that at this time this approach must, as yet, be considered as experimental [576].

6.6.8 **Imaging as marker of response in metastatic prostate cancer**

Treatment response in soft-tissue metastases can be assessed by morphological imaging methods (CT or MRI) using the Response Evaluation Criteria in Solid Tumours (RECIST) criteria. However, these criteria cannot be used in bone where response assessment is difficult [577, 578].

Quantitative estimation of tracer uptake at BS can be obtained through automated methods such as the Bone Scan Index [579]. Nonetheless, BS is limited by the so-called ‘flare’ phenomenon which is defined by the development of new images induced by treatment on a first follow-up scan that actually represent a favourable response on longer observation. Flare is observed within eight-twelve weeks of treatment initiation and can lead to false-positive diagnosis of disease progression. As a result, the Prostate Cancer Clinical Trials Working Group (PCWG) suggested that all patients with at least two new lesions on the first follow-up BS require a confirmatory BS at least six weeks later while the treatment is continued [580]. This means that a management change for primary therapy resistance cannot occur until after at least fourteen weeks of treatment. Computed tomography cannot be used to monitor sclerotic bone lesions because bone sclerosis can occur under effective treatment and reflects bone healing. The ability of choline PET/CT to assess response has been assessed in a few studies that showed changes in disease extent and specific uptake values. It is noteworthy that the flare phenomenon can also be observed with choline PET/CT. Magnetic resonance imaging can directly assess the bone marrow and could assess progression based on morphologic criteria or changes in apparent diffusion coefficient. However, a large-scale validation of these criteria has not been performed [577, 578].

In practice, imaging to assess progression leading to treatment change must be limited to a clear progression: RECIST criteria for non-bone lesions; for bone lesions, only BS progression (occurrence of two new hot spots, later confirmed) should be considered. The practical impact of mpMRI in assessing bone progression remains unclear.

6.6.9 **Guidelines for the first-line treatment of metastatic prostate cancer**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer castration combined with chemotherapy (docetaxel) to all patients whose first presentation is M1 disease and who are fit enough for chemotherapy.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer castration alone, with or without an anti-androgen, to patients unfit for, or unwilling to consider, castration combined with chemotherapy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not prescribe abiraterone acetate or enzalutamide outside of a clinical trial.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use castration combined with any local treatment (radiotherapy/surgery) in an investigational setting only.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Guidelines for hormonal treatment of metastatic prostate cancer

### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In M1 symptomatic patients, offer immediate castration to palliate symptoms and reduce the risk for potentially catastrophic sequelae of advanced disease (spinal cord compression, pathological fractures, ureteral obstruction, extra-skeletal metastasis).</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In M1 asymptomatic patients, offer immediate castration to defer progression to a symptomatic stage and prevent serious disease progression-related complications.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In newly diagnosed M1 patients, offer castration combined with docetaxel, provided patients are fit enough to receive chemotherapy.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In M1 asymptomatic patients, discuss deferred castration with a well-informed patient since it lowers the treatment side effects, provided the patient is closely monitored.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Anti-androgens**

In M1 patients treated with a luteinising-hormone releasing hormone (LHRH) agonist, offer short-term administration of anti-androgens to reduce the risk of the ‘flare-up’ phenomenon. | 2a  | A  |

Start anti-androgens used for ‘flare-up’ prevention on the same day as an LHRH analogue is started or for up to seven days before the first LHRH analogue injection if the patient has symptoms. Treat for four weeks. | 3   | A  |

Do not offer anti-androgen monotherapy. | 1a  | A  |

**Intermittent treatment**

In asymptomatic M1 patients, offer intermittent treatment to highly motivated men, with a major prostate-specific antigen (PSA) response after the induction period. | 1b  | B  |

- In M1 patients, follow the schedules used in published clinical trials on timing of intermittent treatment. | 4   | C  |
- Stop treatment when the PSA level is < 4 ng/mL after six to seven months of treatment. |
- Resume treatment when the PSA level is > 10-20 ng/mL (or returned to the initial level of < 20 ng/mL). |

In M1 patients, offer combined treatment with LHRH agonists and a non-steroidal anti-androgen. | 1b  | A  |

Offer LHRH antagonists, especially in patients with an impending spinal cord compression or bladder outlet obstruction. | 2   | B  |

### 6.7 Management of prostate cancer in older men

#### 6.7.1 Evaluating health status in senior adults

**Introduction**

With a median age at diagnosis of 68 years, PCa is common in men aged > 70 years. However, in the USA, the increase in men aged > 65 years being diagnosed will result in an estimated 70% increase in annual diagnosis of PCa by 2030 [581]. A similar increase is expected in Europe [582].

The SEER database shows that 71% of PCa-related deaths occur in men aged ≥ 75 years [583], probably due to the higher incidence of advanced/metastatic disease [584-586].

Despite the high incidence and mortality rates in senior adults, they may be under-treated [587, 588]. In the USA, only 41% of patients aged > 75 years with intermediate- and high-risk disease receive curative treatment compared to 88% aged 65-74 [589].

**Evaluation of life expectancy, comorbidity and health status**

In localised disease, > 10 years life expectancy is considered mandatory for any benefit from local treatment. However, comorbidity is more important than age in predicting overall mortality in localised PCa [322]. Besides comorbidities, dependence in daily activities, malnutrition and cognitive impairment are associated with worse survival.

**Comorbidity**

Comorbidity is a major predictor of non-cancer-specific death in localised PCa treated with RP [590]. This can be explained by the observations from a study in which patients did not receive active local treatment for their PCa [322]. At ten years, most men with a CCI score > 2 had died from competing causes, irrespective of age or tumour aggressiveness.

Currently, the Cumulative Illness Score Rating-Geriatrics (CISR-G; Table 6.7.1) [591] is the best tool for assessing mortality risk unrelated to PCa [592].
Table 6.7.1: Cumulative Illness Score Rating-Geriatrics (CISR-G)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cumulative Illness Rating Scale</th>
<th>Rating strategy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mild (or past significant problem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Moderate (moderate disability or morbidity, requires first-line therapy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Severe (constant significant disability/uncontrollable chronic problems)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Extremely severe (immediate treatment required/end organ failure/severe impairment in function)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Score

Heart
Vascular
Respiratory
Eyes, ears, nose, throat and larynx
Upper GI
Lower GI
Hepatic
Renal
Genitourinary
Musculoskeletal/integument
Neurological
Endocrine/metabolic
Psychiatric illness

Total score

Patients are considered fit if they have no Grade 3 score
Frail: one or two Grade 3 scores
Disabled: > 2 Grade 3, or any Grade 4 scores
Too sick: multiple Grade 4 scores

6.7.1.2.2 Dependence in daily activities
The level of dependence in daily activities influences survival in senior adults [593-595]. The Activities of Daily Living (ADL) scale rates accomplishment of basic activities of daily living, while the Instrumental Activities of Daily Living (IADL) scale rates activities requiring higher cognition and judgement.

6.7.1.2.3 Malnutrition
Malnutrition is associated with increased mortality in senior patients [596]. Nutritional status can be estimated from body weight during the previous three months:
- Good nutritional status < 5% weight loss;
- Risk of malnutrition: 5-10% weight loss;
- Severe malnutrition: > 10% weight loss.

6.7.1.2.4 Cognitive impairment
Cognitive impairment is associated with increased mortality risk in senior adults [597]. In patients undergoing major elective surgery, there is an association between baseline cognitive impairment and long-term post-operative complications and mortality [598]. Intervention is unlikely to reverse cognitive impairment, except in depression [599]. The mini-COG is the best available tool to evaluate cognitive function in order to assess the patient's ability to make an informed decision [600].
**Figure 6.7.1: Decision tree to determine patient health status** * [599]

**Screening with G8 and mini-COG™**

- **Score > 14**
  - No simplified geriatric evaluation is needed

- **Score ≤ 14**
  - Simplified geriatric evaluation is mandatory

  **Reversible**
  - Abnormal ADL: 1 or 2
  - Weight loss 5–10%
  - Comorbidities CIRS-G grades 1-2

  **Nonreversible**
  - Abnormal ADL: > 2
  - Weight loss > 10%
  - Comorbidities CIRS-G grades 3-4

  CGA then geriatric intervention

  - **Fit**
  - **Frail**
  - **Disabled/severe comorbidities**

---


6.7.2.5 Baseline screening using the G8 screening tool

The International Society of Geriatric Oncology (SIOG) PCa Working Group (PCWG) recommends that treatment for senior adults should be based on a systematic evaluation of health status [599].

The G8 (Geriatric 8) health status screening tool is described in Table 6.7.2, the Karnofsky and ECOG Scores in Table 6.7.3 [601].
Table 6.7.2: G8 screening tool (Adapted from [602])

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Possible responses (score)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A Has food intake declined over the past 3 months due to loss of appetite, digestive problems, chewing, or swallowing difficulties?</td>
<td>0 = severe decrease in food intake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = moderate decrease in food intake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 = no decrease in food intake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B Weight loss during the last 3 months?</td>
<td>0 = weight loss &gt; 3 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = does not know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 = weight loss between 1 and 3 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 = no weight loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C Mobility?</td>
<td>0 = bed or chair bound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = able to get out of bed/chair but does not go out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 = goes out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E Neuropsychological problems?</td>
<td>0 = severe dementia or depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = mild dementia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 = no psychological problems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F BMI? (weight in kg)/(height in m²)</td>
<td>0 = BMI &lt; 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = BMI 19 to &lt; 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 = BMI 21 to &lt; 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 = BMI ≥ 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H Takes more than three prescription drugs per day?</td>
<td>0 = yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P In comparison with other people of the same age, how does the patient consider his/her health status?</td>
<td>0.0 = not as good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.5 = does not know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0 = as good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.0 = better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>0: &gt; 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1: 80-85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2: &lt; 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total score</strong></td>
<td><strong>0-17</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A G8 score > 14 shows that patients should receive the same treatment as younger patients. Patients with score G8 ≤ 14 should undergo a full geriatric evaluation, assessing comorbidity, nutritional status, and cognitive and physical functions, to determine if the impairment is reversible [602]. Patients with reversible impairment (frail patients) should be treated according to the EAU-ESTRO-ESUR-SIOG Prostate Cancer Guidelines. Patients with irreversible impairment (disabled patients) should receive adapted treatment [599].
Table 6.7.3: Performance Scales - Karnofsky & ECOG Scores [601]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Karnofsky Status</th>
<th>Karnofsky Grade</th>
<th>ECOG Grade</th>
<th>ECOG Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal, no complaints.</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Fully active, able to carry on all pre-disease performance without restriction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Able to carry on normal activities. Minor signs or symptoms of disease.</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Restricted in physically strenuous activity but ambulatory and able to carry out work of a light or sedentary nature, e.g., light house work, office work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal activity with effort.</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Restricted in physically strenuous activity but ambulatory and able to carry out work of a light or sedentary nature, e.g., light house work, office work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Care for self. Unable to carry on normal activity or to do active work.</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Ambulatory and capable of all selfcare but unable to carry out any work activities. Up and about more than 50% of waking hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requires occasional assistance, but able to care for most of his needs.</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Ambulatory and capable of all selfcare but unable to carry out any work activities. Up and about more than 50% of waking hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requires considerable assistance and frequent medical care.</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Capable of only limited selfcare, confined to bed or chair more than 50% of waking hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabled. Requires special care and assistance.</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Capable of only limited selfcare, confined to bed or chair more than 50% of waking hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severely disabled. Hospitalisation indicated though death non-imminent.</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Completely disabled. Cannot carry on any selfcare. Totally confined to bed or chair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very sick. Hospitalisation necessary. Active supportive treatment necessary.</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Completely disabled. Cannot carry on any selfcare. Totally confined to bed or chair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moribund.</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Completely disabled. Cannot carry on any selfcare. Totally confined to bed or chair.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.7.1.2.6 Conclusions
Systematic assessment, using the G8 tool, is recommended by the SIOG PCWG [599]. Patients with G8 score < 14 should undergo complete geriatric assessment to evaluate reversibility of any impairments [599].

Senior adults can be classified into one of four groups regarding health status based on G8 score > 14 (patient considered fit), or score < 14 (patient considered frail or disabled). The treatment policy is then:
- fit or healthy older men should receive standard treatment;
- frail patients may receive standard treatment after resolution of any geriatric problems;
- disabled patients (i.e. non-reversible problems) should receive adapted treatment;
- patients who are too sick with terminal illness should receive only palliative treatment [599].

After resolution of reversible impairments, a similar urological approach should be carried out in fit or frail patients [1, 2]. Older men with PCa should be managed according to their individual health status, which is directed by the presence of any associated comorbidity and not age.
6.7.1.3 Guidelines for the evaluation of health status in elderly men

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations for assessment</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform systematic health status screening in senior adults with localised PCa.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the G8 screening tool for health status screening.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a full specialist geriatric evaluation in patients with G8 score ≤ 14.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment options for senior adults according to their health status:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. offer standard treatment to fit or healthy older men;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. offer standard treatment to frail patients (reversible impairment) after resolution of geriatric problems;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. offer adapted treatment to disabled patients (irreversible impairment);</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. offer only symptomatic palliative treatment to patients who are too sick with terminal illness.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.7.2 Specific aspects of PCa treatment in older men

6.7.2.1 Localised PCa
6.7.2.1.1 Deferred treatment (active surveillance, watchful waiting)
Deferred treatment is addressed in Section 6.1. Active treatment mostly benefits patients with intermediate- or high-risk disease and longest expected survival. A recent study assessed the effect of age, health status and patient preferences on outcomes of surgery vs. AS for low-risk PCa. As expected, older age and worse
baseline health status were associated with a smaller benefit in PCSM and life expectancy with surgery, and increased incremental years with treatment side effects. Older men and men in poor health were likely to have better quality-adjusted life expectancy with AS [603].

6.7.2.1.2 Radical prostatectomy
Senior adults (aged ≥ 75 years) are more likely to present with very advanced disease and have a greater risk of death from PCa, despite higher death rates from competing causes [584]. In the most recent update of the SPCG-4 study, randomising patients with localised PCa to RP vs. WW, the benefit of surgery with respect to death from PCa was largest in men < 65 years of age (RR, 0.45). However, RP was associated with a reduced risk of metastases and use of androgen deprivation therapy among older men (RR: 0.68 and 0.60, respectively) [333]. Risk of short-term complications after RP is related more to comorbidity severity than age. Conversely, risk of long-term incontinence is influenced more by increasing age [604, 605].

6.7.2.1.3 External beam radiotherapy
External beam radiotherapy and RP have similar cancer control and treatment-related comorbidity, regardless of age, assuming a dose of > 72 Gy when using intensity-modulated or image-guided RT [606].

Cardiac status should be assessed because ADT in patients with pre-existing heart conditions is associated with increased morbidity and mortality. Patients with moderate-to-severe comorbidities might not have a significant survival-benefit when combining ADT with EBRT [454].

6.7.2.1.4 Minimally invasive therapies
Minimally invasive energy-ablative therapies are being developed rapidly, but there is still a lack of evidence to support their use.

6.7.2.1.5 Androgen deprivation therapy
In patients with non-metastatic localised PCa not suitable for curative treatment, immediate ADT should be used only in patients requiring symptom palliation. In locally advanced T3-T4 disease, immediate ADT may benefit patients with PSA > 50 ng/mL and PSA-DT < 12 months [328, 607].

6.7.2.2 Advanced PCa
6.7.2.2.1 Hormone-naïve metastatic PCAs
Androgen deprivation therapy is the first-line treatment in hormone-sensitive metastatic PCa. The SIOG PCWG recommends evaluation of baseline bone mineral density and prevention of osteoporosis by calcium and vitamin D supplements [599].

Routine bisphosphonates or denosumab to prevent skeletal complications in ADT is not recommended, unless there is a risk of fracture [608].

6.7.2.2.2 Metastatic CRPC
In metastatic CRPC, docetaxel is standard in fit and frail older men [609], with comparable response and tolerance to younger patients [610]. Tolerability has not been specifically studied in disabled older men. In elderly and disabled patients, granulocyte colony-stimulating factor prophylaxis should be considered.

Cabazitaxel, abiraterone acetate, enzalutamide, and sipuleucel-T increase survival in chemotherapy-treated and chemotherapy-naïve senior adults [611-617].

Palliative treatment includes surgery, radiopharmaceuticals, EBRT, and medical treatment for pain and symptoms.

6.7.3 Guidelines for the treatment of senior adults (> 70 years of age)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations for assessment</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform systematic health status screening in senior adults with localised PCa.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the G8 screening tool for health status screening.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a full specialist geriatric evaluation in patients with G8 score ≤ 14.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment options for senior adults according to their health status:</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Offer standard treatment to fit or healthy older men;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Offer standard treatment to frail patients (reversible impairment) after resolution of geriatric problems;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Offer adapted treatment to disabled patients (irreversible impairment);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Offer only symptomatic palliative treatment to patients who are too sick with terminal illness.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Recommendations for treatment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Localised disease</strong></th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer standard treatment to fit and frail senior adults (after status optimisation) with a life expectancy &gt; 10 years.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer individualised treatment based on life expectancy, symptoms and risk factors to senior adults with a life expectancy &lt; 10 years.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In disabled or ‘too-sick’ senior adults, offer immediate androgen deprivation therapy only for symptom palliation.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer minimally invasive energy-ablative therapies only to selected fit and frail senior adults with intermediate-risk disease.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Advanced disease (locally advanced/metastatic disease)**

Evaluate bone mineral status and prevent osteoporosis-related fractures in senior adults. | 2b | A |

Offer new chemotherapeutic and hormonal agents to fit and frail adults. | 1b | B |

---

### 6.8 Summary of guidelines for the primary treatment of prostate cancer

**Table 6.8.1: EAU risk groups for biochemical recurrence of localised and locally advanced prostate cancer**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Low-risk</th>
<th>Intermediate-risk</th>
<th>High-risk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Localised</strong></td>
<td>PSA &lt; 10 ng/mL and GS &lt; 7 (ISUP grade 1) and cT1-2a</td>
<td>PSA 10-20 ng/mL or GS 7 (ISUP grade 2/3) or cT2b</td>
<td>PSA &gt; 20 ng/mL or GS &gt; 7 (ISUP grade 4/5) or cT2c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Locally advanced</strong></td>
<td>any PSA or any ISUP grade or cT3-4 or cN+</td>
<td>Locally advanced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*PSA = prostate-specific antigen.*

**Guidelines overview - Primary treatment of PCa**

**Primary treatment of prostate cancer - general recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>GR</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Offer external beam radiotherapy (EBRT) to all risk groups of non-metastatic PCa.** | A |

**Offer intensity-modulated radiation therapy (IMRT) for definitive treatment of PCa by EBRT.** | A |

**Moderate hypofractionation (HFX) with IMRT including image-guided radiation therapy (IGRT) to the prostate can only be offered to carefully selected patients with localised disease.** | A |

**Moderate HFX should adhere to radiotherapy-protocols from trials with equivalent outcome and toxicity, i.e. 60 Gy/20 fractions in four weeks or 70 Gy/28 fractions in six weeks.** | A |

---

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Low-risk PCa</strong></th>
<th><strong>GR</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Active surveillance</strong></td>
<td>Offer active surveillance (AS) to patients with the lowest risk of cancer progression: &gt; 10 years life expectancy, cT1/2, prostate-specific antigen (PSA) ≤ 10 ng/mL, biopsy Gleason score ≤ 6, ≤ 2 positive biopsies, minimal biopsy core involvement (≤ 50% cancer per biopsy).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Base follow up on digital rectal examination (DRE), PSA and repeated biopsies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Counsel patients about the possibility of needing further treatment in the future.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Radical prostatectomy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Radical prostatectomy</strong></th>
<th><strong>GR</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer both radical prostatectomy (RP) and radiotherapy (RT) in patients with low- and intermediate-risk PCa and a life expectancy &gt; 10 years.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform a lymph node dissection (LND) in low-risk PCa.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Radiotherapy
In low-risk PCa, use a total dose of 74 to 78 Gy for external beam radiotherapy (EBRT). In patients with low-risk PCa, without a previous transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) and with a good International Prostate Symptom Score (IPSS) and a prostate volume < 50 mL, offer low-dose-rate (LDR) brachytherapy.

### Cryotherapy, HIFU
Only offer cryotherapy and high-intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU) within a clinical trial setting. The lack of long-term efficacy compared to standard modality must be discussed with patients.

### Focal treatment
Do not offer focal therapy of PCa as a therapeutic alternative outside clinical trials.

### Androgen suppression
Unsuitable.

### Watchful waiting
Offer watchful waiting (WW) to patients not eligible for local curative treatment and with a short life expectancy.

### Intermediate-risk PCa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment Type</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active surveillance</td>
<td>Not an option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radical prostatectomy</td>
<td>Offer both RP and RT in patients with low- and intermediate-risk disease and a life expectancy &gt; 10 years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Offer nerve-sparing surgery in patients with a low risk of extracapsular disease (refer to nomograms).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging (mpMRI) as a decision tool to select patients for nerve-sparing procedures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Perform an extended LND (eLND) if the estimated risk for positive lymph nodes (LNs) exceeds 5%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do not perform a limited LND.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with pT3,N0M0 PCa and an undetectable PSA following RP, discuss adjuvant EBRT because it at least improves biochemical-free survival.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inform patients with pT3,N0M0 PCa and an undetectable PSA following RP about salvage irradiation as an alternative to adjuvant irradiation when PSA increases.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer adjuvant hormonal therapy (HT) after RP for pN0 disease.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Radiotherapy
In intermediate-risk PCa use a total dose of 76-78 Gy, in combination with short-term androgen deprivation therapy (ADT) (four to six months). In selected intermediate-risk patients, without a previous TURP and with a good IPSS and a prostate volume < 50 mL, offer LDR brachytherapy.

### Androgen suppression monotherapy
No place in asymptomatic patients.

### Watchful waiting
Offer WW to patients not eligible for local curative treatment and with a short life expectancy.

### High-risk PCa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment Type</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Watchful waiting</td>
<td><strong>High risk localised:</strong> Offer WW to patients not eligible for local curative treatment and with a short life expectancy. <strong>High risk locally advanced:</strong> In locally advanced M0 patients unwilling or unable to receive any form of local treatment, offer a deferred treatment policy to asymptomatic patients with a PSA-DT &gt; 12 months and a PSA &lt; 50 ng/mL and non-poorly differentiated tumour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active surveillance</td>
<td>Not appropriate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radical prostatectomy</td>
<td>Do not offer neoadjuvant hormonal therapy before RP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Offer RP in selected patients with locally advanced (cT3a) disease and a life expectancy &gt; 10 years only as part of multi-modal therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Offer nerve-sparing surgery in patients with a low risk of extracapsular disease (refer to nomograms).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Perform an eLND in high-risk PCa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High risk localised:</td>
<td>Offer RP in patients with high-risk localised PCa and a life expectancy of &gt; 10 years only as part of multi-modal therapy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In high-risk disease, use mpMRI as a decision-making tool to select patients for nerve-sparing procedures.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>High risk locally advanced:</strong> Offer RP in highly selected patients with (cT3b-T4 N0 or any T N1) only as part of multi-modal therapy.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with pT3,N0M0 PCa and an undetectable PSA following RP, discuss adjuvant EBRT because it at least improves biochemical-free survival.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inform patients with pT3,N0M0 PCa and an undetectable PSA following RP about salvage irradiation as an alternative to adjuvant irradiation when PSA increases.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Radiotherapy

| Inform patients with an undetectable PSA following RP about salvage irradiation as an alternative to adjuvant irradiation when PSA increases (see Section 6.9.5.1). | A |
| In patients with high-risk localised PCa and locally advanced cN0 PCa, use EBRT to a dose of 76-78 Gy, or combined EBRT with brachytherapy boost (either high-dose rate [HDR] or LDR). Radiotherapy should be given in combination with long-term ADT (two to three years). | A |
| In patients with locally advanced cN0 PCa, offer RT in combination with long-term ADT (two to three years is recommended). | A |

### Androgen suppression monotherapy

| Reserved for those patients unwilling or unable to receive any form of local treatment and that are either symptomatic or asymptomatic with a PSA-DT < 12 months and a PSA > 50 ng/mL and a poorly differentiated tumour. | A |
| Do not offer ADT to patients with a PSA-DT > 12 months | A |

### N1 patients

| cN1 | In patients with cN+ PCa, offer pelvic external beam irradiation in combination with immediate long-term ADT. | B |
| pN1 after extended lymph node dissection (eLND) | Offer adjuvant ADT for node-positive (pN+). | B |
| Offer adjuvant ADT with additional radiotherapy. | A |
| Offer observation (expectant management) to a patient after eLND and ≤ 2 nodes with microscopic involvement, and a PSA < 0.1 ng/mL and absence of extranodal extension. | B |

### Metastatic PCa

| Active surveillance | Unsuitable. | A |
| Radial prostatectomy | Unsuitable outside clinical trial. | A |
| Radiotherapy to the prostate | Unsuitable outside clinical trial. | A |
| Androgen suppression | Offer surgical or medical castration (luteinising-hormone-releasing hormone [LHRH] agonist or antagonist) as androgen deprivation therapy. | A |
| Offer castration combined with chemotherapy (docetaxel) to all patients whose first presentation is M1 disease and who are fit enough for chemotherapy. | A |
| Offer castration alone, with or without an anti-androgen, to patients unfit for, or unwilling to consider, castration combined with chemotherapy. | A |
| Do not prescribe abiraterone acetate or enzalutamide outside of a clinical trial. | A |
| In M1 symptomatic patients, offer immediate castration to palliate symptoms and reduce the risk for potentially catastrophic sequelae of advanced disease (spinal cord compression, pathological fractures, urethral obstruction, extra-skeletal metastases). | A |
| In M1 asymptomatic patients, offer immediate castration to defer progression to a symptomatic stage and prevent serious disease progression-related complications. | A |
| In M1 asymptomatic patients, discuss deferred castration with a well-informed patient since it lowers the treatment side effects, provided the patient is closely monitored. | B |
Do not routinely offer ADT to asymptomatic men with biochemical recurrence. A

In M1 patients treated with an LHRH agonist, offer short-term administration of anti-androgens to reduce the risk of the ‘flare-up’ phenomenon. A

Start anti-androgens used for ‘flare-up’ prevention on the same day as an LHRH analogue is started or for up to seven days before the first LHRH analogue injection if the patient has symptoms. Treat for four weeks. A

Do not offer anti-androgen monotherapy in M1 patients. A

Offer LHRH antagonists, especially in patients with an impending spinal cord compression or bladder outlet obstruction. B

In asymptomatic M1 patients, offer intermittent treatment to highly motivated patients, with a major PSA response after the induction period. B

In M1 patients follow the schedules used in published clinical trials on timing of intermittent treatment. B

Stop treatment when the PSA level is $< 4 \text{ ng/mL}$ after six to seven months of treatment. B

Resume treatment when the PSA level is $> 10-20 \text{ ng/mL}$ (or back to the original level, if $< 20 \text{ ng/mL}$). C

Guidelines for the treatment of senior adults (> 70 years of age)

**Recommendations for assessment**

Perform systematic health status screening in senior adults with localised PCa. A

Use the G8 screening tool for health status screening. A

Perform a full specialist geriatric evaluation in patients with G8 score $\leq 14$. A

Treatment options for senior adults according to their health status:

1. offer standard treatment to fit or healthy older men;
2. offer standard treatment to frail patients (reversible impairment) after resolution of geriatric problems;
3. offer adapted treatment to disabled patients (irreversible impairment);
4. offer only symptomatic palliative treatment to patients who are too sick with terminal illness.

**Recommendations for treatment**

**Localised disease**

Offer standard treatment to fit and frail senior adults (after status optimisation) with a life expectancy $> 10$ years. 2b A

Offer individualised treatment based on life expectancy, symptoms and risk factors to senior adults with a life expectancy $< 10$ years. 2b A

In disabled or “too–sick” senior adults, offer immediate androgen deprivation therapy only for symptom palliation. 1b A

Offer minimally invasive energy-ablative therapies only to selected fit and frail senior adults with intermediate-risk disease. 3 B

**Advanced disease (locally advanced/metastatic disease)**

Evaluate bone mineral status and prevent osteoporosis-related fractures in senior adults. 2b A

Offer new chemotherapeutic and hormonal agents to fit and frail adults. 1b B

### 6.9 Treatment - Management of PSA-only recurrence after treatment with curative intent

**Background**

Between 27% and 53% of all patients undergoing RP or RT develop PSA-recurrence (see Sections 6.2 and 6.3). Whilst a rising PSA level universally precedes metastatic progression, physicians must inform the patient that the natural history of PSA-only recurrence may be prolonged and that a measurable PSA may not necessarily lead to clinically apparent metastatic disease. Physicians treating patients with PSA-only recurrence face a difficult set of decisions in attempting to delay the onset of metastatic disease and death while avoiding over-treating patients whose disease may never affect their OS or QoL. It should be emphasised that the treatment recommendations for these patients should be given after discussion in a multidisciplinary team.
6.9.2 Definitions

6.9.2.1 Definition of biochemical recurrence

The PSA level that defines treatment failure depends on the primary treatment. After RP, recurrent cancer is defined by two consecutive PSA values of > 0.2 ng/mL and rising [618-620].

After primary RT, with or without short-term hormonal manipulation, the RTOG-ASTRO Phoenix Consensus Conference definition of PSA failure (with an accuracy of > 80%) is any PSA increase ≥ 2 ng/mL higher than the PSA nadir value, regardless of the serum concentration of the nadir [621].

Importantly, patients with PSA-recurrence after RP or primary RT have different risks of subsequent symptomatic metastatic disease. Therefore, physicians should carefully interpret BCR endpoints when comparing treatments.

6.9.3 Natural history of biochemical recurrence

Once a PSA relapse has been diagnosed, it is important to determine, as far as possible, whether the recurrence has developed at local or distant sites. The risk of subsequent metastases and PCSM may be predicted by the initial clinical and pathologic factors (e.g. T-category, PSA, Gleason score) and PSA kinetics (PSA-DT and interval to PSA failure).

6.9.3.1 Post-radical prostatectomy biochemical recurrence

Not all patients with BCR after RP will develop clinical recurrences. In two studies of 1,997 and 2,400 men treated by RP, only 23-34% of those with BCR develop a clinical recurrence and 6% died of PCa [378, 622].

Several studies have attempted to identify risk factors for metastases and PCSM in patients experiencing PSA-only recurrence following RP. A PSA-DT < 3 months, SVI (pT3b), specimen Gleason score 8-10, or time to PSA-recurrence < 3 years indicate a high risk of metastases and PCSM. Conversely, a PSA-recurrence > 3 years following surgery, specimen Gleason score < 7, pathologic organ-confined disease or limited extracapsular extension (pT3a), and PSA-DT > 12 months indicate a low risk of metastases and PCSM [623-626]. Patients in the low-risk subgroup typically respond very well to SRT with a high probability of PSA being undetectable [627]. However, it must be stressed that most patients within the low-risk subgroup have an excellent outcome even without any salvage treatment. Patients within the high-risk subgroup need early and aggressive salvage treatment [628]. Trock et al. demonstrated that SRT was associated with a significant three-fold increase in PCa-specific survival relative to those who received no salvage treatment. The increase in PCa-specific survival associated with SRT was limited to men with a PSA-DT of < 6 months and remained after adjustment for pathological stage and other established prognostic factors. Salvage RT initiated > 2 years after recurrence provided no significant increase in PCa-specific survival [628].

6.9.3.2 Post-radiotherapy biochemical recurrence

In patients experiencing PSA-recurrence after RT, PSA-DT < 3 months, time to biochemical progression < 3 years, biopsy Gleason score 8-10 or clinical stage cT3b-T4 also indicate a high risk of metastases and PCSM. Conversely, PSADT > 15 months, biopsy Gleason score < 7, clinical stage < cT3a and time to BCR > 3 years indicate a low risk of metastases and PCSM [625, 629, 630].

Zumsteg et al. have designed a risk score to further subdivide patients who develop PSA recurrence following RT. Those with > 2 high-risk factors (PSA-DT < 3 months, time to BCR < 3 years, biopsy Gleason score 8-10 and clinical stage cT3b-T4) have an increased risk of developing metastases and PCSM as compared to those with 0 or 1 risk factor [630].

6.9.4 Assessment of metastases

6.9.4.1 Bone scan and abdominopelvic computed tomography

Biochemical recurrence after RP or RT precedes clinical metastases by seven to eight years on average, and consequently the diagnostic yield of common imaging techniques is poor in asymptomatic patients [631]. In men with PSA-only relapse after RP, the probability of a positive BS is < 5%, when the PSA level is < 7 ng/mL [632, 633].

Only 11-14% of patients with BCR after RP have a positive CT and rarely in situations when salvage treatment might be considered [632]. In a series of 132 men with BCR after RP, the mean PSA level and PSA velocity associated with a positive CT was 27.4 ng/mL and 1.8 ng/mL/month, respectively [634]. Therefore, bone scan and abdominopelvic CT should only be considered in patients with BCR after RP who have a high baseline PSA (> 10 ng/mL) or high PSA kinetics (PSA-DT < 6 months or PSA velocity > 0.5 ng/mL/month) or in patients with symptoms of bone disease [632, 634].
6.9.4.2 **Choline PET/CT**

In two different meta-analyses, the combined sensitivities and specificities of choline PET/CT for all sites of recurrence in patients with BCR were 86-89% and 89-93%, respectively [635, 636]. Choline PET/CT may detect multiple bone metastases in patients showing a single metastasis on BS [637] and may be positive for bone metastases in up to 15% of patients with BCR after RP and negative BS [638]. The specificity of choline PET/CT is also higher than BS with less false-positive and indeterminate findings [257]. Detection of LN metastases using choline PET/CT remains limited by the relatively poor sensitivity of the technique (see Section 5.3.4.1.)

Choline PET/CT sensitivity is strongly dependent on the PSA level and kinetics [249, 639-641]. In patients with BCR after RP, PET/CT detection rates are only 5-24% when the PSA level is < 1 ng/mL, but rises to 67-100% when the PSA level is > 5 ng/mL. In a meta-analysis, choline PET/CT detection rates were 65% (95% CI: 58%-71%) when the PSA-DT was < 6 months, and were 71% (95% CI: 66%-76%) and 77% (95% CI: 71%-82%) when the PSA velocity was > 1 and > 2 ng/mL/year, respectively [639].

Despite these limitations, choline PET/CT may change medical management in 18-48% of patients with BCR after primary treatment [642-644]. In a retrospective bi-centric study of 150 patients, 14 of the 55 (25.5%) patients scheduled for palliative treatment were switched to salvage therapy based on choline PET/CT results. Salvage therapy induced a complete biochemical response in 35.7% of these patients at the end of a median follow-up of 18.3 months (range, 10-48 months) [644] suggesting it continues to miss small volume metastasis. In patients not considered fit enough for curative salvage treatments choline PET/CT should be avoided.

After RP, the optimal PSA cut-off level for choline PET/CT analysis seems to be between 1 and 2 ng/mL. Choline PET/CT detection rate was 26% in patients showing PSA < 1 ng/mL but raised up to 44% in the population with PSA values between 1 and 2 (moreover 37% of them were oligo-metastatic) [645]. It has been suggested that a PSA-DT < 6 months and a PSA velocity > 2 ng/mL/year might also select men in whom choline PET/CT could be recommended [646].

After RT, the PSA cut-off level is unclear due to the lack of sufficient data and because the PSA level is more difficult to interpret due to the “physiological” amount of measurable PSA produced by the non-tumoural prostate [640]. In a study of 46 patients with PSA relapse after RT or brachytherapy, the choline PET/CT detection rate was 54.5%, 81%, 89% and 100% when the PSA level was 1-2 ng/mL, 2-4 ng/mL, 4-6 ng/mL and > 6 ng/mL, respectively [647]. In another study of 140 patients the choline PET/CT detection rate was not influenced by the PSA level, but only by PSA kinetics [648].

6.9.4.3 **Other radionuclide techniques**

**18F-Fluoride PET and PET/CT** have a higher sensitivity than BS in detecting bone metastases [649]. However, **18F-Fluoride PET and PET/CT** is limited by a relative lack of specificity and by the fact that it does not assess soft-tissue metastases [650].

**68Ga-PSMA PET/CT** has shown promising potential in patients with BCR. Detection rates of 58% and 76% have been reported for PSA ranges of 0.2-1 and 1-2 ng/mL, respectively [256]. This suggests that **68Ga-PSMA** is substantially more sensitive at low PSA levels than choline PET/CT. Two head-to-head comparisons confirmed this finding [651, 652]. However, studies incorporated varying proportions of initial therapy (RP or RT) and a majority of studies included patients on current ADT. Further prospective studies on homogeneous populations are needed to better define the role of **68Ga-PSMA PET/CT** in patients with BCR. Therefore it cannot yet be considered as a standard evaluation tool. However, in case local salvage treatment is planned and **68Ga-PSMA PET/CT** is available, it should be considered as a valuable assessment option.

6.9.4.4 **Whole-body and axial magnetic resonance imaging**

Little is known regarding the accuracy of whole-body or axial MRI in patients with BCR after RP or RT [653]. Therefore, the role of these techniques in detecting occult bone or LN metastases in the case of BCR remains to be assessed.

6.9.4.5 **Assessment of local recurrences**

6.9.4.5.1 **Local recurrence after radical prostatectomy**

The precise localisation of the local recurrence by imaging techniques is needed only if the localisation could change treatment planning. Transrectal US is neither sensitive nor specific in detecting local recurrences after RP. Even with TRUS guidance, the sensitivity of anastomotic biopsies remains low: 40-71% for PSA levels > 1 ng/mL and 14-45% for PSA levels < 1 ng/mL [631].

Choline PET/CT can detect local recurrences, but is less sensitive than MRI [654] and although **68Ga-PSMA PET/CT** has improved sensitivity at low PSA levels, it is still unknown if it can reliably detect local...
recurrences in the prostate bed, an area that is frequently obscured by tracer excretion in the bladder [655].

Several studies have reported promising results in the detection of local recurrences using MRI, particularly dynamic contrast-enhanced MRI which showed sensitivities and specificities of 76-90% and 82-100%, respectively [656-659]. However, the mean PSA level in these studies was 0.7-1.9 ng/mL, which is higher than the 0.5 ng/mL threshold usually used for salvage therapy. Two studies evaluated mpMRI in patients with a PSA level < 0.5 ng/mL. One found a sensitivity of only 13% in men with PSA level < 0.3 ng/mL [660], while the other reported a sensitivity of 86% in patients with a PSA level < 0.4 ng/mL [661]. It remains to be seen whether MRI can correctly detect local recurrences in patients with a PSA level < 0.5 ng/mL in order to allow a stereotactic boost to the recurrence site during SRT. Therefore, SRT is usually decided on the basis of BCR, without histological proof of the local recurrence. The dose delivered to the prostatic bed also tends to be uniform as it has not been demonstrated that a focal dose escalation at the site of recurrence improves the outcome. Thus, most patients undergo SRT without local imaging.

6.9.4.5.2 Local recurrence after radiation therapy

In patients with BCR after RT, the biopsy status is a major predictor of outcome, provided the biopsies are obtained 18-24 months after treatment. Given the morbidity of local salvage options, it is thus mandatory to obtain histological proof of the local recurrence before treating the patient [631] especially if a local salvage curative treatment is considered.

Transrectal US is not reliable in depicting local recurrences after RT. In contrast, mpMRI has yielded excellent results [631, 662-664] and can be used for biopsy targeting and guiding local salvage treatment. Detection of recurrent cancer is also feasible with choline PET/CT [648], and a nomogram able to predict the probability of extra pelvic disease has been proposed [665]. It is also too soon to know if ⁶⁸Ga-PSMA PET/CT could play a role in the detection of local recurrences after RT [256].

6.9.4.6 Guidelines for imaging in patients with biochemical recurrence

| Prostate-specific antigen (PSA) recurrence after radical prostatectomy | LE | GR | Evid |-Level 
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PSA &lt; 1 ng/mL: no imaging is recommended.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSA ≥ 1 ng/mL: positon emission tomography (PET)/computed tomography (CT) imaging is recommended using choline or prostate-specific membrane antigen (PMSA).</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform bone scan and/or abdominopelvic CT only in patients with PSA &gt; 10 ng/mL or with adverse PSA kinetics (PSA-doubling time (DT) &lt; 6 months, PSA velocity &gt; 0.5 ng/mL/month).</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PSA recurrence after radiotherapy**

- Perform prostate multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging (mpMRI) only in patients who are considered candidates for local salvage therapy, use mpMRI to localise abnormal areas and guide biopsies.
- Choline PET/CT imaging is recommended to rule out lymph nodes or distant metastases in patients fit enough for curative salvage treatment.
- Perform bone scan and/or abdominopelvic CT only in patients with PSA > 10 ng/mL or with adverse PSA kinetics (PSA-DT < 6 months, PSA velocity > 0.5 ng/mL/month).

6.9.5 Treatment of PSA-only recurrences

The timing and mode of treatment for PSA-only recurrences after RP or RT are still controversial. After RP, the therapeutic options are:

- radiotherapy at least to the prostatic bed;
- (complete) androgen deprivation;
- intermittent androgen deprivation;
- observation.

After RT, the therapeutic options are:

- salvage RP;
- HIFU;
- cryotherapy;
- brachytherapy;
- androgen deprivation;
- observation.
6.9.5.1 Radiotherapy (salvage radiotherapy - with or without androgen-deprivation therapy for PSA-only recurrence after radical prostatectomy)

Early SRT provides a possibility of cure for patients with an increasing or persistent PSA after RP. More than 60% of patients who are treated before the PSA level rises to > 0.5 ng/mL will achieve an undetectable PSA level [505, 666-668], providing patients with a ~80% chance of being progression-free five years later [506]. A retrospective analysis of 635 patients who were followed after RP and experienced BCR and/or local recurrence and either received no salvage treatment (n = 397) or SRT alone (n = 160) within two years of BCR, showed that salvage RT was associated with a three-fold increase in PCa-specific survival relative to those who received no salvage treatment (p < 0.001). Salvage RT has also been effective in patients with a short PSA-DT [628]. Despite the indication for salvage RT, a “wait and see” strategy is an option in patients with a long PSA-DT of > 12 months [622]. For an overview see Table 6.9.1.

Table 6.9.1: Selected studies on post-prostatectomy salvage radiotherapy, sorted by pre-salvage radiotherapy PSA level*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>HT (%)</th>
<th>pre-SRT PSA (ng/mL) median</th>
<th>Median dose (Gy)</th>
<th>bNED/PFS (yr)</th>
<th>5-yr results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Siegmann, et al.</td>
<td>301</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>66.6/70.2</td>
<td>74% (2)</td>
<td>55% vs. 88% @ 66.6 vs. 70.2 Gy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiegel, et al.</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>66.6</td>
<td>54% (3.5)</td>
<td>60% vs. 33% @ PSA ≤ 0.5 vs. &gt; 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goenka, et al.</td>
<td>285</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>&gt; 70 (72%)</td>
<td>37% (7)</td>
<td>39%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cremers, et al.</td>
<td>197</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>63 /2.25 frct. (88%)</td>
<td>59% (5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bernard, et al.</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>64.8</td>
<td>50% (5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buskirk, et al.</td>
<td>368</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>64.8</td>
<td>46% (5)</td>
<td>63% vs. 51% @ PSA &lt; 0.5 vs. 0.5 - 1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pazona, et al.</td>
<td>223</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>40/25% (5/10)</td>
<td>42% vs. 30% @ &lt; 1.3 vs. ≥ 1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pisansky, et al.</td>
<td>166</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>46% (5)</td>
<td>61% vs. 36% @ PSA ≤ 1 vs. &gt; 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soto, et al.</td>
<td>441</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>&lt; 1 (58%)</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>63/55% (3) HT/no HT</td>
<td>44/40% HT/no HT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stephenson, et al.</td>
<td>1,540</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>64.8</td>
<td>32% (6)</td>
<td>37%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Hormone suppression treatment (HT) can influence the outcome 'biochemically no evidence of disease (bNED)' or 'progression-free survival (PFS). Therefore, data sets without HT are highlighted. To facilitate comparisons, 5-year bNED/PFS read-outs from Kaplan-Meier plots are included. bNED/PFS = biochemically no evidence of disease/progression-free survival; HT = hormone suppression treatment; n = number of patients; SRT = salvage radiotherapy.

Addition of androgen deprivation to SRT improves outcomes. The Radiation Therapy Oncology Group RTOG 96-01 comparing RT + placebo vs. a combination of RT + bicalutamide (150 mg daily) for 24 months in the post-operative setting reported improved overall survival (82% vs 78% at ten years) [677]. The investigators concluded that 24 months of HT also, significantly reduces metastatic disease, reduces death from CaP (from 7.5% to 2.3%, NNT = 17), reduced overall death (from 22% to 18%) and reduced tumour progression. They found that toxicity was similar in both arms, and that gynaecomastia was extremely common in the bicalutamide group. The GETUG-AFU 16 study [678] confirmed improved bPFS and clinical progression at five years when combining six months of goserelin with SRT, but survival remained unchanged.

6.9.5.1.1 Dose and toxicity

The optimal SRT dose has not been well defined. It should be at least 66 Gy to the prostatic fossa (plus/minus the bed of the seminal vesicles dependent upon the pathological stage at RP) [666]. Similarly, a joint AUA/ASTRO Guideline Panel regarded 64-65 Gy as the minimum dose that should be delivered post-RP [679]. However, more recent data suggest that higher total doses can achieve higher rates of biochemical control.
at three to five years [672]. In a SR, the pre-salvage RT PSA level and SRT-dose were correlated with BCR, showing that the relapse-free survival decreased by 2.6% per 0.1 ng/mL PSA and improved by 2% per Gy, suggesting that a treatment dose above 70 Gy should be administered at the lowest possible PSA level [666, 680, 681]. However, with dose escalation (72 Gy) or up to a median of 76 Gy, the rate of severe side effects especially for the genitourinary system clearly increases, even with newer planning and treatment techniques [682, 683]. Of note, compared with 3D-CRT, IMRT was associated with a reduction in Grade 2 GI toxicity from 10.2 to 1.9% (p = 0.02), while RT technique had no differential effect on the relatively high level of GU toxicity (five-year: 3D-CRT 15.8% vs. IMRT 16.8%) [682]. After a median salvage IMRT dose of 76 Gy, the five-year risk of Grade 2-3 toxicity rose to 22% for GU and 8% for GI symptoms, respectively [683].

6.9.5.1.2 Comparison of adjuvant radiotherapy (ART) and salvage radiotherapy
The largest retrospective case-matching study to evaluate ART vs. early SRT included pT3N0 R0/R1 patients only (HT was excluded), 390 out of 500 observation-plus-early-SRT patients (median pre-SRT PSA was 0.2 ng/mL) were propensity matched with 390 ART patients. Two and five years after surgery, biochemically no evidence of disease (bNED) rates were 91% and 78% for ART vs. 93% and 82% after salvage RT, respectively. Subgroup analyses did not yield significant differences for the two approaches. It was concluded that early SRT does not impair PCa control, but clearly helps to reduce over-treatment which is a major issue in ART [684]. Both approaches (ART and SRT) together with the efficacy of neoadjuvant HT are currently being compared in three prospective RCTs: the Medical Research Council (MRC) Radiotherapy and Androgen Deprivation In Combination After Local Surgery (RADICALS) in the United Kingdom, the Trans-Tasman Oncology Group (TROG) Radiotherapy Adjuvant Versus Early Salvage (RAVES), and Groupe d’Etude des Tumeurs Uro-Génitales (GETUG 17).

Decision-making on whether to proceed with adjuvant RT for high-risk PCa - pT3-4 pN0 M0 with undetectable PSA after RP, or to postpone RT as an early salvage procedure in the case of biochemical relapse, remains difficult. In everyday practice, the urologist should explain to the patient before RP that adjuvant RT may be administered if the patient has negative prognostic risk factors.

6.9.5.2 Hormonal therapy
Currently there is only one underpowered still unpublished RCT comparing the effect of salvage ADT, although retrospective comparative studies are available. The EAU Guidelines Panel conducted a SR including studies published from 2000 onwards [685]. The key findings are summarised below:

Conflicting results on the clinical effectiveness of HT after previous curative therapy of the primary tumour were found. Some studies reported a favourable effect of HT, including the only RCT addressing the research question of this review (86% vs. 79% advantage in OS in the early HT group) [686]. Other studies did not find any differences between early vs. delayed, or no, HT. One study found an unfavourable effect of HT [687]. This may be the result of selecting clinically unfavourable cases for (early) HT and more intensive diagnostic work-up and follow-up in these patients.

The studied population is highly heterogeneous regarding their tumour biology and therefore clinical course. The following factors were found predictive for poor outcomes (CRPC, distant metastases [DM], CSS, OS): short PSA-DT, high Gleason score, high PSA, increased age and comorbidities. In some studies, such as the Boorjian, et al. study [622], high-risk patients, mainly defined by a high Gleason score and a short PSA-DT (most often < 6 months), seem to benefit most from (early) HT and more intensive diagnostic work-up and follow-up in these patients.

No data were found on the effectiveness of different types of HT, although it is unlikely that this will have a significant impact on survival outcomes in this setting. Non-steroidal anti-androgens have been claimed to be inferior compared to castration, but this difference was not seen in M0 patients [628]. One of the included RCTs suggested that intermittent HT is not inferior to continuous HT in terms of OS and CSS [688]. A small advantage was found in some QoL domains but not overall QoL outcomes. An important limitation of this RCT is the lack of any stratifying criteria such as PSA-DT or initial risk factors.

Based on the lack of definitive efficacy and the undoubtedly associated significant side effects, not all patients with recurrence after primary curative therapy should receive standard HT. Only a minority of them will progress to metastases or PCa-caused death. The objective of HT should be to improve OS, postpone DM, and improve QoL. Biochemical response to only HT holds no clinical benefit for a patient. For older patients and those with comorbidities, the side effects of HT may even decrease life expectancy; in particular, cardiovascular risk factors need to be considered [689, 690]. Early HT should be reserved for those at highest risk of disease progression, defined mainly by a short PSA-DT at relapse (< 6-12 months) or a high initial Gleason score (> 7), and a long life expectancy. In all other situations, the potential benefits of salvage HT should be judiciously considered and balanced against its potential harms.
6.9.5.3  Observation
Observation until the development of clinically evident metastatic disease may represent a viable option for patients with low-risk features (PSA-DT > 12 months, time to BCR > 3 years, GS ≤ 7 and stage ≤ T3a) or unfit patients with a life expectancy < 10 years and/or are unwilling to undergo salvage treatment. In unselected relapsing patients, the median actuarial time to the development of metastasis will be eight years and the median time from metastasis to death will be a further five years [378].

6.9.6  Management of PSA failures after radiation therapy
Therapeutic options in these patients are ADT or local procedures such as SRP, cryotherapy, interstitial brachytherapy and HIFU [691-700]. Strong recommendations regarding the choice of any of these techniques cannot be made as the available evidence for these treatment options is of (very) low quality. The following is an overview of the most important findings regarding each of these techniques with a proposal for their indications.

6.9.6.1  Salvage radical prostatectomy
Salvage RP (SRP) after RT has the longest history and best likelihood of local control relative to other salvage treatments. However, this must be weighed against the possible adverse events, which are increased compared to primary surgery because of the risk of fibrosis and poor wound healing due to radiation.

6.9.6.1.1  Oncological outcomes
In a recent SR of the literature, Chade, et al. showed that SRP gave five- and ten-year BCR-free survival (BCR-FS) estimates ranging from 47-82% and from 28-53%, respectively. The ten-year CSS and OS rates ranged from 70-83% and from 54-89%, respectively. The pre-SRP PSA value and prostate biopsy Gleason score were the strongest predictors of the presence of organ-confined disease, progression, and CSS [701].

In most contemporary series, organ-confined disease, negative surgical margins (SM), and the absence of seminal vesicle and/or LN metastases were favourable prognostic indicators associated with a better DFS of approximately 70-80%, in comparison with 40-60% in patients with locally advanced PCa [700].

Table 6.9.2: Oncological results of selected salvage radical prostatectomy case series, including at least 30 patients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Median FU (mo)</th>
<th>Pathologic organ-confined (%)</th>
<th>PSM (%)</th>
<th>Lymph-node involvement (%)</th>
<th>BCR-free probability (%)</th>
<th>CSS (%)</th>
<th>Time probability (yr)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sanderson, et al.</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>et al. 2006</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[702]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leonardo, et al.</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>et al. 2009</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[703]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heidenreich, et al.</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>23 (2-56)</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2010 [699]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chade, et al.</td>
<td>404</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2011 [704]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BCR = biochemical recurrence; FU = follow-up; mo = months; n = number of patients; PSM = positive surgical margin; CSS = cancer-specific survival.

6.9.6.1.2  Morbidity
Compared to primary open RP, SRP is associated with a higher risk of later anastomotic stricture (47 vs. 5.8%), urinary retention (25.3% vs 3.5%), urinary fistula (4.1% vs 0.06%), abscess (3.2% vs 0.7%) and rectal injury (9.2 vs. 0.6%) [705]. In more recent series, these complications appear to be less common [698, 701]. Functional outcomes are also worse compared to primary surgery, with urinary incontinence ranging from 21% to 90% and ED in nearly all patients [701].
Table 6.9.3: Perioperative morbidity in selected salvage radical prostatectomy case series, including at least 30 patients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Rectal injury (%)</th>
<th>Anastomotic stricture (%)</th>
<th>Clavien 3-5 (%)</th>
<th>Blood loss, mL, mean, range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stephenson, et al. 2004 [698]</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>15 vs. 2*</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>33 vs. 13*</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ward, et al. 2005 [706]</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanderson, et al. 2006 [702]</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gotto, et al. 2010 [705]</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* SRP performed before vs. after 1993.

n = number of patients.

6.9.6.2 Summary of salvage radical prostatectomy

In general, SRP should be considered only for patients with low comorbidity, a life expectancy of at least ten years, a pre-SRP PSA < 10 ng/mL and biopsy Gleason score ≤ 7, no LN involvement or evidence of distant metastatic disease pre-SRP, and who’s initial clinical staging was T1 or T2 [701]. A meta-regression analysis suggested that SRP may be associated with worse continence outcomes than non-surgical approaches [707].

6.9.7 Salvage cryoablation of the prostate

6.9.7.1 Oncological outcomes

In cases in which RT fails, salvage cryoablation of the prostate (SCAP) has been proposed as an alternative to SRP, as it has a potentially lower risk of morbidity and equal efficacy. However, the very few studies available have shown disappointing results. In a review of the use of SCAP for recurrent cancer after RT, the five-year BDFS estimates ranged from 50-70%. A durable response can be achieved in ~50% of patients with a pre-SCAP PSA < 10 ng/mL [708]. In a multicentre study reporting the current outcome of SCAP in 279 patients, the five-year BCR-free survival (BCR-FS) estimate according to the Phoenix criteria was 54.5 ± 4.9%. Positive biopsies were observed in 15/46 patients (32.6%) who underwent prostate biopsy after SCAP [709].

A case-matched control study comparing SRP and SCAP was performed in men with recurrent PCa after RT. The authors compared the oncological outcomes of the two salvage treatment options after mean follow-up periods of 7.8 (SRP group) and 5.5 years (SCAP group). The five-year BCR-FS was 61% following SRP, significantly better than the 21% detected after SCAP. The five-year OS was also significantly higher in the SRP group (95% vs. 85%) [710].

Table 6.9.4: Oncological results of selected salvage cryoablation of the prostate case series, including at least 50 patients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Median FU (mo)</th>
<th>BCR-free probability (%)</th>
<th>Time probability (yr)</th>
<th>Definition of failure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pisters, et al. 1997 [710]</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Nadir + 0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahn, et al. 2003 [711]</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>PSA &gt; 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ismail, et al. 2007 [708]</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>73 (low risk)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>ASTRO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pisters, et al. 2008 [709]</td>
<td>279</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>ASTRO and Phoenix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spiess, et al. 2010 [713]</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>40.8</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>PSA &gt; 0.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BCR = biochemical recurrence; FU = follow-up; mo = months; n = number of patients.

6.9.7.2 Morbidity

According to Cespedes, et al. [714], the risks of urinary incontinence and ED at least twelve months after SCAP were as high as 28% and 90%, respectively. In addition, 8-40% of patients reported persistent rectal pain, and an additional 4% of patients underwent surgical procedures for the management of treatment-associated complications. In a recent study by Pisters, et al., the urinary incontinence rate was 4.4%. The rectal fistulae rate was 1.2% and 3.2% of patients required a TURP for removal of sloughed tissue [709]. With the use of third-generation technology, complications such as urinary incontinence and obstruction/retention have significantly decreased during the last decade (see Table 6.9.5) [715].
Table 6.9.5: Perioperative morbidity, erectile function and urinary incontinence in selected salvage cryoablation of the prostate case series, including at least 50 patients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Incontinence (%)</th>
<th>Obstruction/Retention (%)</th>
<th>Rectourethral fistula (%)</th>
<th>ED (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bahn, et al. 2003 [711]</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ismail, et al. 2007 [708]</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pisters, et al. 2008 [709]</td>
<td>279</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad, et al. 2013 [717]</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ED = erectile dysfunction; n = number of patients.

6.9.7.3 Summary of salvage cryoablation of the prostate
In general, SCAP should be considered only for patients with low comorbidity, a life expectancy of at least ten years, an initial organ-confined PCa cT1c to cT2, initial Gleason score < 7, a pre-salvage PSA-DT > 16 months and a pre-salvage PSA < 10 ng/mL.

6.9.8 Salvage brachytherapy for radiotherapy failure
Although there is no role for salvage EBRT following local recurrence after previous definitive RT, for carefully selected patients with primary localised PCa and histologically proven local recurrence, HDR- or LDR brachytherapy remain effective treatment options with an acceptable toxicity profile [718-720]. However, the published series are relatively small and consequently this treatment should be offered in experienced centres only. Fifty-two patients were treated at the Scripps Clinic with HDR-brachytherapy over a period of nine years [718]. With a median follow-up of 60 months the five-year biochemical control was 51% and only 2% Grade 3 GU toxicities were reported. Comparable with these data, 42 patients were treated in a phase-II-trial at MSKCC in New York [721]. Of note, the median pre-treatment dose was 81 Gy given with IMRT and the prescription HDR-dose of 32 Gy was delivered in four fractions over 30 hours. The biochemical relapse-free survival after five years was 69% (median follow-up 36 months). Grade 2 late side effects were seen in 15% and one patient developed Grade 3 incontinence. However, older data with higher rates of side effects have been reported [722].

Using LDR-brachytherapy with $^{100}\text{Pd}$, long-term outcome was reported in 37 patients with a median follow-up of 86 months [719]. The biochemical control rate after ten years was 54%. However, the crude rate of ≥ Grade 2 toxicity was 46% and ≥ Grade 3 toxicity was 11%. These side effects were comparable with a series of 31 patients treated with salvage I-125 brachytherapy in the Netherlands. Therefore, in these small series, late side effects seem to be lower with HDR-brachytherapy [723]. In conclusion, freedom from BCR after salvage HDR and LDR-brachytherapy is promising and the rate of severe side effects in experienced centres seems to be acceptable. Salvage brachytherapy remains a treatment option for selected patients with histologically proven local recurrence after RT.

6.9.9 Salvage high-intensity focused ultrasound
6.9.9.1 Oncological outcomes
Salvage HIFU has more recently emerged as an alternative thermal ablation option for radiation-recurrent PCa. Most of the data were generated by one high-volume centre. Median follow-up was very short, and outcome measures were non-standardised.

Table 6.9.6: Oncological results of selected salvage high-intensity focused ultrasound case series, including at least 20 patients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Median FU (mo)</th>
<th>BCR-free probability (%)</th>
<th>Negative biopsy rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gelet, et al. 2000 [725]</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gelet, et al. 2004 [726]</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uchida, et al. 2011 [727]</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>59 (Phoenix) (24 mo.)</td>
<td>92 (only 12 biopsied)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berge, et al. 2011 [728]</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>60.9 (9 mo)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FU = follow-up; mo = months; n = number of patients.
6.9.9.2 Morbidity
Again, most of the data were generated by one high-volume HIFU centre. Important complication rates were mentioned and are at least comparable to other salvage treatment options.

6.9.9.3 Summary of salvage high-intensity focused ultrasound
There is a lack of data which prohibits any recommendation regarding the indications for salvage HIFU.

6.9.10 Observation
Patients who have signs of only local recurrence (i.e., low-risk patients with late recurrence and a slow PSA rise) who do not wish to undergo second-line curative options are best managed by observation alone. A retrospective cohort analysis of HT vs. WW in 248 men with PSA failure after RT showed no advantage for HT in the subgroup of men with a PSA-DT of > 12 months after RT. The five-year metastasis-free survival rate was 88% with HT vs. 92% with WW (p = 0.74) [729].

6.9.11 Salvage lymph node dissection
Novel imaging modalities improve the early detection of nodal metastases [730]. The surgical management of (recurrent) nodal metastases in the pelvis has been the topic of several retrospective analyses [730-732]. The majority of treated patients showed biochemical recurrence but clinical recurrence-free and cancer specific ten-year survival over 70% has been reported [731, 733]. Neither the template nor the real value of nodal salvage dissection is available. It must however be remembered that the imaging modalities under-evaluate the real nodal involvement. Biochemical recurrence rates were found to be dependent on PSA at surgery and location and number of positive nodes [576]. Addition of RT to the lymphatic template after salvage LND may improve the BCR rate [734]. The real efficacy of this salvage procedure remains unproven, as is its impact on survival [735].

6.9.11.1 Guidelines for salvage lymph node dissection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Discuss salvage lymph node dissection (LND) with men experiencing nodal recurrence after local treatment but it should be considered experimental and biochemical recurrence after salvage LND occurs in the majority of cases.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.9.12 Guidelines for second-line therapy after treatment with curative intent

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Local salvage treatment</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recommendations for biochemical recurrence after radical prostatectomy</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer patients with a prostate-specific antigen (PSA) rise from the undetectable range and favourable prognostic factors (≤ pT3a, time to biochemical recurrence &gt; 3 year, PSA-doubling time [DT] &gt; 12 months, Gleason score ≤ 7), active surveillance and possibly delayed salvage radiotherapy.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat patients with a PSA rise from the undetectable range with salvage radiotherapy (SRT). The total dose of SRT should be at least 66 Gy and should be given early (PSA &lt; 0.5 ng/mL).</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recommendations for biochemical recurrence after radiotherapy</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat highly selected patients with localised PCa and a histologically proven local recurrence with salvage radical prostatectomy (SRP).</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Due to the increased rate of side effects, perform SRP in experienced centres.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer/discuss high intensity focused ultrasound, cryosurgical ablation and salvage brachytherapy to/with patients without evidence of metastasis and with histologically proven local recurrence. Inform patients about the experimental nature of these approaches.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recommendations for systemic salvage treatment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not routinely offer androgen-deprivation therapy (ADT) to asymptomatic men with biochemical recurrence.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer ADT to patients with a PSA-DT &gt; 12 months.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If salvage ADT (post-primary radiotherapy) is started, offer intermittent therapy to responding patients.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.10 Treatment: Castration-resistant PCa (CRPC)

Table 6.10.1: Definition of Castration-resistant PCa (CRPC)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Castrate serum testosterone &lt; 50 ng/dL or 1.7 nmol/L, plus either;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a) Biochemical progression: Three consecutive rises in PSA one week apart resulting in two 50% increases over the nadir, and a PSA &gt; 2 ng/mL or,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) Radiological progression: The appearance of new lesions: either two or more new bone lesions on bone scan or a soft tissue lesion using RECIST (Response Evaluation Criteria in Solid Tumours) [736]. Symptomatic progression alone must be questioned and subject to further investigation. It is not sufficient to diagnose CRPC.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.10.1 Non-metastatic castration-resistant PCa

Frequent post-treatment PSA surveillance has resulted in earlier detection of progression. Although approximately one-third of men with a rising PSA will develop bone metastases within two years [737], there are no available studies suggesting a benefit for immediate treatment.

In men with CRPC and no detectable clinical metastases, baseline PSA level, PSA velocity and PSA-DT have been associated with time to first bone metastasis, bone metastasis-free and OS [737, 738]. These factors may be used when deciding which patients should be evaluated for metastatic disease. A consensus statement by the PCa Radiographic Assessments for Detection of Advanced Recurrence (RADAR) group [739] suggested a bone scan and a CT scan when the PSA reached 2 ng/mL and if this was negative it should be repeated when the PSA reached 5 ng/mL and again after every doubling of the PSA based on PSA-testing every three months for asymptomatic men. Symptomatic patients should undergo relevant investigation regardless of PSA level.

6.10.2 Metastatic castration-resistant PCa

The remainder of this Section focuses on the management of men with proven metastatic CRPC (mCRPC).

6.10.2.1 Conventional androgen deprivation in castration-resistant PCa

Eventually men with PCa show evidence of disease progression despite castration. Two trials have shown only a marginal survival benefit for patients remaining on LHRH analogues during second- and third-line therapies [740, 741]. However, in the absence of prospective data, the modest potential benefits of a continuing castration outweigh the minimal risk of treatment. In addition, all subsequent treatments have been studied in men with ongoing androgen suppression and therefore it should be continued indefinitely in these patients.

Table 6.10.2: Randomised phase III controlled trials - first-line treatment of metastatic castration-resistant PCa*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>Comparison</th>
<th>Selection Criteria</th>
<th>Main outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SWOG 99-16 2004 [742]</td>
<td>docetaxel/EMP, every 3 weeks, 60 mg/m², EMP 3 x 280 mg/day</td>
<td>mitoxantrone, every 3 weeks, 12 mg/m², prednisone 5 mg BID</td>
<td>OS: 17.52 vs. 15.6 mo. (p = 0.02, HR: 0.80; 95% CI: 0.67-0.97)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAX 327 2008 [609, 743]</td>
<td>docetaxel, every 3 weeks, 75 mg/m², prednisone 5 mg BID Or, docetaxel, weekly, 30 mg/m², prednisone 5 mg BID</td>
<td>mitoxantrone, every 3 weeks, 12 mg/m², Prednisone 5 mg BID</td>
<td>OS: 19.2 for 3 weekly vs. 17.8 mo. for weekly and 16.3 in the control group. (p = 0.004, HR: 0.79; 95% CI: 0.67-0.93)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ABIRATERONE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Comparator</th>
<th>Selection Criteria</th>
<th>OS</th>
<th>FU</th>
<th>rPFS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COU-AA-302 Ryan, et al. 2013 [744-746]</td>
<td>abiraterone + prednisone</td>
<td>placebo + prednisone</td>
<td>- No previous docetaxel. - ECOG 0-1. - PSA or radiographic progression. - No or mild symptoms. - No visceral metastases.</td>
<td>OS: 34.7 vs. 30.3 mo. (HR: 0.81 p = 0.0033).</td>
<td>FU: 49.2 mo.</td>
<td>rPFS: 16.5 vs. 8.3 mo. (p &lt; 0.0001)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ENZALUTAMIDE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Comparator</th>
<th>Selection Criteria</th>
<th>OS</th>
<th>FU</th>
<th>rPFS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PREVAIL Beer, et al. 2014 [747]</td>
<td>enzalutamide</td>
<td>placebo</td>
<td>- No previous docetaxel. - ECOG 0-1. - PSA or radiographic progression. - No or mild symptoms. - 10% had visceral mets.</td>
<td>OS: 32.4 vs. 30.2 mo. (p &lt; .001). FU: 22 mo. (p &lt; 0.001 HR: 0.71, 95% CI: 0.60-0.84)</td>
<td>rPFS: 20.0 mo. vs. 5.4 mo. HR: 0.186 (95% CI: 0.15-0.23) (p &lt; 0.0001)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SIPULEUCEL-T

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Comparator</th>
<th>Selection Criteria</th>
<th>OS</th>
<th>FU</th>
<th>PFS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kantoff, et al. 2010 [748]</td>
<td>sipuleucel-T [615]</td>
<td>placebo [615]</td>
<td>- Some with previous docetaxel. - ECOG 0-1. - Asymptomatic or minimally symptomatic.</td>
<td>OS: 25.8 vs. 21.7 mo. (p = 0.03 HR: 0.78, 95% CI: 0.61-0.98).</td>
<td>FU: 34.1 mo. PFS: 3.7 vs. 3.6 mo. (no difference)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BID = twice a day; ECOG = Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group; EMP = estramustine; FU = follow-up; PFS = progression-free survival; rPFS = radiographic progression free survival; OS = overall survival.

6.10.3 First-line treatment of metastatic castration-resistant PCA

6.10.3.1 Abiraterone

Abiraterone was evaluated in 1,088 chemo-naïve mCRPC patients in the phase III trial COU-AA-302. Patients were randomised to abiraterone acetate or placebo, both combined with prednisone [744]. The main stratification factors were Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group (ECOG) PS 0 or 1 and asymptomatic or mildly symptomatic disease. Overall survival and radiographic PFS (rPFS) were the co-primary endpoints. After a median follow-up of 22.2 months, there was significant improvement of rPFS (median 16.5 vs. 8.2 months, HR: 0.52, p < 0.001) and the trial was unblinded. At the final analysis with a median follow-up of 49.2 months the OS endpoint was significantly positive (34.7 vs. 30.3 months, HR: 0.81, 95% CI: 0.70-0.93, p = 0.0033) [746]. Adverse events (AEs) related to mineralocorticoid excess and liver function abnormalities were more frequent with abiraterone, but mostly Grade 1-2. Sub-set analysis of this trial showed the drug to be equally effective in an elderly population (> 75 years) [750].

6.10.3.2 Enzalutamide

A randomised phase III trial (PREVAIL) [747] included a similar patient population and compared enzalutamide and placebo. Men with visceral metastases were accepted although the numbers were small. Corticosteroids were allowed but not mandatory. PREVAIL was conducted in a chemo-naïve mCRPC population of 1,717 men and showed a significant improvement in both co-primary endpoints, rPFS (HR: 0.186; CI: 0.15-0.23, p < 0.0001), and OS (HR: 0.706; CI: 0.6-0.84, p < 0.001). A ≥ 50% decrease in PSA was seen in 78% of patients. The most common clinically relevant AEs were fatigue and hypertension and again it was equally well tolerated in men > 75 years [751] as well as in those with or without visceral metastases [752]. For the subgroup of visceral metastases, there seems to be limited benefit concerning OS [752]. Enzalutamide has also been compared with bicalutamide in a phase II study [753] revealing a significant improvement in PFS (15.7 months vs. 5.8 months, HR 0.44, p < 0.0001).

6.10.3.3 Docetaxel regimen

A significant improvement in median survival of 2-2.9 months occurred with docetaxel-based chemotherapy
compared to mitoxantrone + prednisone therapy [742, 743]. The standard first-line chemotherapy is docetaxel 75 mg/m² three-weekly doses combined with prednisone 5 mg BID, up to ten cycles. Prednisone can be omitted if there are contraindications or no major symptoms.

Several poor prognostic factors have been described before docetaxel treatment: PSA > 114 ng/mL, PSA-DT < 55 days, or the presence of visceral metastases [754]. A better risk group definition was subsequently presented, again based on the TAX 327 study cohort: the independent prognostic factors were visceral metastases, pain, anaemia (Hb < 13 g/dL), bone scan progression, and prior estramustine. Patients were categorised into three risk groups: low risk (0 or 1 factor), intermediate (2 factors) and high risk (3 or 4 factors), showing three significantly different median OS estimates of 25.7, 18.7 and 12.8 months, respectively [755].

Age by itself is not a contraindication to docetaxel [610] but attention must be paid to closer monitoring and comorbidities as discussed in Section 6.7.2.2.2.2 [756]. In men with mCRPC who are thought to be unable to tolerate the standard regime the data shows that docetaxel 50 mg/m² every two weeks seems well tolerated with less Grade 3-4 AEs and suggest a prolonged time to treatment failure [757].

### 6.10.3.4 Sipuleucel-T

In 2010, a phase III trial of sipuleucel-T showed a survival benefit in 512 asymptomatic or minimally symptomatic mCRPC patients [738]. After a median follow-up of 34 months, the median survival was 25.8 months in the sipuleucel-T group compared to 21.7 months in the placebo group, leading to a significant HR of 0.78 (p = 0.03). No PSA decline was observed and PFS was equivalent in both arms. The overall tolerance was very good, with more cytokine-related AEs Grade 1-2 in the sipuleucel-T group, but the same Grade 3-4 AEs in both arms. In Europe, sipuleucel-T is not available.

### Table 6.10.3: Randomised controlled phase III - second-line trials in metastatic castration-resistant PCa* 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>Comparison</th>
<th>Selection criteria</th>
<th>Main outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ABIRATERONE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fizazi, et al. 2012 [614]</td>
<td>abiraterone + prednisone HR</td>
<td>placebo + prednisone</td>
<td>Previous docetaxel. ECOG 0-2. PSA or radiographic progression.</td>
<td>OS: 15.8 vs. 11.2 mo (p &lt; 0.0001). FU: 20.2 mo. Radiologic PFS: no change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de Bono, et al. 2011 [611]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OS: 14.8 vs. 10.9 mo. (p &lt; 0.001 HR: 0.65; 95% CI: 0.54-0.77). FU: 12.8 mo. Radiologic PFS: 5.6 vs. 3.6 mo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Radium-223</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parker, et al. 2013 [758]</td>
<td>radium-223</td>
<td>Placebo</td>
<td>Previous or no previous docetaxel. ECOG 0-2. Two or more symptomatic bone metastases. No visceral metastases.</td>
<td>OS: 14.9 vs. 11.3 mo. (p = 0.002, HR: 0.61; 95% CI: 0.46-0.81). All secondary endpoints show a benefit over best standard of care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CABAZITAXEL</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahl, et al. 2013 [617]</td>
<td>cabazitaxel + prednisone</td>
<td>mitoxantrone + prednisone</td>
<td>Previous docetaxel. ECOG 0-2.</td>
<td>OS: 318/378 vs. 346/377 events (odds ratio 2.11; 95% CI: 1.33-3.33). FU: 25.5 months OS ≥ 2y 27% vs. 16% PFS: -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deBono, et al. 2010 [613]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OS: 15.1 vs. 12.7 mo. (p &lt; 0.0001, HR: 0.70; 95% CI: 0.59-0.83). FU: 12.8 mo. PFS: 2.8 vs. 1.4 mo. (p &lt; 0.0001, HR: 0.74; 95% CI: 0.64-0.86)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ENZALUTAMIDE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scher, et al. 2012 [612]</th>
<th>enzalutamide</th>
<th>Placebo</th>
<th>Previous docetaxel. ECOG 0-2.</th>
<th>OS: 18.4 vs. 13.6 mo. (p &lt; 0.001 HR: 0.63; 95% CI: 0.53-0.75). FU: 14.4 mo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Radiologic PFS: 8.3 vs. 2.9 mo. HR: 0.40; 95% CI: 0.35-0.47 (p &lt; 0.0001)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Only studies reporting survival outcomes as primary endpoints have been included.
OS = overall survival; PFS = progression-free survival.

6.10.4 **Second-line treatment for mCRPC**

All patients who receive treatment for mCRPC will eventually progress. All treatment options in this setting are presented in Section 6.10.3.

6.10.4.1 **Cabazitaxel**

Cabazitaxel is a novel taxane with activity in docetaxel-resistant cancers. It was studied in a large prospective, randomised, phase III trial (TROPIC trial) comparing cabazitaxel + prednisone vs. mitoxantrone + prednisone in 755 patients with mCRPC, who had progressed after or during docetaxel-based chemotherapy [613]. Patients received a maximum of ten cycles of cabazitaxel (25 mg/m²) or mitoxantrone (12 mg/m²) + prednisone (10 mg/day), respectively. Overall survival was the primary end-point, which was significantly longer with cabazitaxel (median: 15.1 vs. 12.7 months p < 0.0001). There was also a significant improvement in PFS (median: 2.8 vs. 1.4 months, p < 0.0001), objective RECIST response (14.4% vs. 4.4%, p < 0.005), and PSA response rate (39.2% vs. 17.8%, p < 0.0002). Treatment-associated WHO Grade 3-4 AEs developed significantly more often in the cabazitaxel arm, particularly haematological (68.2% vs. 47.3%, p < 0.0002) but also non-haematological (57.4 vs. 39.8%, p < 0.0002) toxicity [759]. In two post marketing randomised phase 3 trials, firstly, cabazitaxel was shown not to be superior to docetaxel in the first line setting and, secondly, it was seen that in the second line setting, 20 mg/m² cabazitaxel is not inferior to 25 mg/m² in terms of OS, but less toxic. Therefore, the lower dose should be preferred [760, 761]. In any case, cabazitaxel should be administered by physicians with expertise in handling neutropenia and sepsis, preferably with prophylactic granulocyte colony-stimulating factor at least in the high-risk patient population [762].

6.10.4.2 **Abiraterone acetate after prior docetaxel**

Positive preliminary results of the large phase III COU-AA-301 trial were reported after a median follow-up of 12.8 months [611] and the final results have been reported more recently [614]. A total of 1,195 patients with mCRPC were randomised 2:1 to abiraterone acetate + prednisone or placebo + prednisone. All patients had progressive disease based on the PCWG2 criteria after docetaxel therapy (with a maximum of two previous chemotherapeutic regimens). The primary end-point was OS, with a planned HR of 0.8 in favour of abiraterone. After a median follow-up of 20.2 months, the median survival in the abiraterone group was 15.8 months compared to 11.2 months in the placebo arm (HR: 0.74, p < 0.0001). The benefit was observed in all subgroups and all the secondary objectives were in favour of abiraterone (PSA, radiologic tissue response, time to PSA or objective progression). The incidence of the most common Grade 3-4 AEs did not differ significantly between the arms, but mineralocorticoid-related side effects were more frequent in the abiraterone group, mainly Grade 1-2 (fluid retention, oedema and hypokalaemia).

6.10.4.3 **Enzalutamide after docetaxel**

The planned preliminary analysis of the AFFIRM study was published in 2012 [612]. This trial randomised 1,199 patients with mCRPC in a 2:1 fashion to enzalutamide or placebo. The patients had progressed after docetaxel treatment, according to the PCWG2 criteria. Corticosteroids were not mandatory, but could be prescribed, and were received by 30% of the population. The primary end-point was OS, with an expected HR benefit of 0.76 in favour of enzalutamide. After a median follow-up of 14.4 months, the median survival in the enzalutamide group was 18.4 months compared to 13.6 months in the placebo arm (HR: 0.63, p < 0.001). This led to the recommendation that the study be halted and unblinded. The benefit was observed irrespective of age, baseline pain intensity, and type of progression. All the secondary objectives were in favour of enzalutamide (PSA, soft tissue response, QoL, time to PSA or objective progression). No difference in terms of side effects was observed in the two groups, with a lower incidence of Grade 3-4 AEs in the enzalutamide arm. There was a 0.6% incidence of seizures in the enzalutamide group compared to none in the placebo arm.

6.10.4.4 **Radium-223**

The only bone-specific drug that is associated with a survival benefit is radium-223, an α-emitter. In a large
phase III trial (ALSYMPCA), 921 patients with symptomatic mCRPC, who failed or were unfit for docetaxel, were randomised to six injections of 50 kBq/kg radium-223 or placebo, plus standard of care. The primary end-point was OS. Radium-223 significantly improved median OS by 3.6 months (HR: 0.70; p < 0.001) [758]. It was also associated with prolonged time to first skeletal event, improvement in pain scores and improvement in QoL. The associated toxicity was mild and, apart from slightly more haematologic toxicity and diarrhoea with radium-223, this did not differ significantly from that in the placebo arm [758]. Radium-223 was effective and safe no matter if the patients were docetaxel pre-treated, or not [763].

6.10.5 **Treatment after docetaxel and one line of hormonal treatment for mCRPC**
The choice of further treatment after docetaxel and one line of hormonal treatment for mCRPC is open. Either further HT (enzalutamide or abiraterone) or second-line chemotherapy (cabazitaxel) are reasonable options albeit with low levels of evidence. PARP inhibitors have shown high rates of response in men with somatic homologous recombination deficiency (HRD) in initial studies. Men previously treated with both docetaxel and at least one novel hormonal agent and whose tumours demonstrated homozygous deletions or deleterious mutations in DNA-repair genes showed an 88% response rate [764]. Patients without HRD did not clearly benefit from olaparib. Although not yet available they offer an exciting opportunity to tailor therapy based on the mutation profile contained within a tumour.

In general however, and in unslected patients, subsequent treatments can be expected to have a smaller response [765, 766] with evidence of cross-resistance between enzalutamide and abiraterone [767].

6.10.6 **Monitoring of treatment**
Baseline examinations should include history and clinical examination as well as baseline bloods (PSA, FBC, renal function, LFTs, ALP), bone scan and CT of chest abdomen and pelvis [768]. Prostate-specific antigen alone is not reliable enough [769] for monitoring disease activity in advanced CRPC, since visceral metastases may develop in men without rising PSA [770]. Instead PCWG2 recommends a combination of bone scintigraphy and CT scans, PSA measurements and clinical benefit in assessing men with CRPC [742]. A majority of experts at a recent consensus meeting suggested regular review and repeat blood profile every two to three months with bone scintigraphy and CT scans at least every six months, even in the absence of a clinical indication [768]. This reflects that the agents with a proven OS survival benefit all have potential toxicity and considerable cost and patients with no objective benefit should have treatment modified. This panel stressed that such treatments should not be stopped for PSA progression alone. Instead at least two of three criteria (PSA progression, radiographic progression and clinical deterioration) should be fulfilled to stop treatment. For trial purposes, the updated PCWG3 put more weight on the importance of documenting progression in existing lesions and introduced the concept of “no longer clinically benefiting” to underscore the distinction between first evidence of progression and the clinical need to terminate or change treatment [771]. These recommendations also seem valid for clinical practice outside trials.

6.10.7 **When to change treatments**
The timing of mCRPC treatment change remains a matter of debate in mCRPC although it is clearly advisable to start or change treatment immediately in men with symptomatic progressing metastatic disease. As the number of effective treatments increases and without head to head trials or data assessing the effectiveness of different sequencing options, it is not clear how to choose the appropriate “second-line” treatment. In the absence of other data, the inclusion criteria from licensing trials have been used to prioritise treatment sequencing.

The Eastern Cooperative Oncology group PS have been used to stratify patients. Generally men with a PS of 0-1 are likely to tolerate treatments and those with PS of 2 or more are less likely to benefit. However, it is important that treatment decisions are individualised. This applies particularly where symptoms related to disease progression are determining PS. In such cases it may be appropriate to trial novel treatments to establish if treatment would improve PS. A summary of the issues regarding sequencing are discussed in a paper published following the St. Gallen Consensus Conference [768].

6.10.8 **Symptomatic management in metastatic castration-resistant PCa**
Castration-resistant PCa is usually a debilitating disease, often affecting the elderly male. A multidisciplinary approach is often required with input from urologists, medical oncologists, radiation oncologists, nurses, psychologists and social workers [772]. Critical issues of palliation must be addressed when considering additional systemic treatment, including management of pain, constipation, anorexia, nausea, fatigue and depression, which often occur.

6.10.8.1 **Common complications due to bone metastases**
Most patients with CRPC have painful bone metastases. External beam radiotherapy is highly effective [773],
even as a single fraction [774]. A single infusion of a third generation bisphosphonate could be considered when RT is not available [775]. Common complications due to bone metastases include vertebral collapse or deformity, pathological fractures and spinal cord compression. Cementation can be an effective treatment for painful spinal fracture, whatever its origin, clearly improving both pain and QoL [776]. However, it is still important to offer standard palliative surgery, which can be effective for managing osteoblastic metastases [777, 778]. Impending spinal cord compression is an emergency. It must be recognised early and patients should be educated to recognise the warning signs. Once suspected, high-dose corticosteroids must be given and MRI performed as soon as possible. A systematic neurosurgery consultation should be planned to discuss a possible decompression, followed by EBRT [779]. Otherwise, EBRT, with or without systemic therapy, is the treatment of choice.

6.10.9 Preventing skeletal-related events

6.10.9.1 Bisphosphonates

Zoledronic acid has been evaluated in mCRPC to reduce skeletal-related events (SRE). This study was conducted when no active anticancer treatments but docetaxel were available. 643 patients who had CRPC [780] with bone metastases were randomised to receive zoledronic acid, 4 or 8 mg every three weeks for fifteen consecutive months, or placebo. The 8 mg dose was poorly tolerated and reduced to 4 mg but did not show a significant benefit. However, at fifteen and 24 months of follow-up, patients treated with 4 mg zoledronic acid had fewer skeletal-related events (SREs) compared to the placebo group (44 vs. 33%, p = 0.021) and in particular fewer pathological fractures (13.1 vs. 22.1%, p = 0.015). Furthermore, the time to first SRE was longer in the zoledronic acid group. No survival benefit has been seen in any prospective trial with bisphosphonates.

6.10.9.2 RANK ligand inhibitors

Denosumab is a fully human monoclonal antibody directed against RANKL (receptor activator of nuclear factor κB ligand), a key mediator of osteoclast formation, function, and survival. In M0 CRPC, denosumab has been associated with increased bone-metastasis-free survival compared to placebo (median benefit: 4.2 months, HR: 0.85, p = 0.028) [779]. This benefit did not translate into a survival difference (43.9 compared to 44.8 months, respectively) and neither the FDA nor the EMA have approved denosumab for this indication [781].

The efficacy and safety of denosumab (n = 950) compared with zoledronic acid (n = 951) in patients with metastatic CRPC was assessed in a phase III trial. Denosumab was superior to zoledronic acid in delaying or preventing SREs, as shown by time to first on-study SRE (pathological fracture, radiation or surgery to bone, or spinal cord compression) of 20.7 vs. 17.1 months, respectively (HR: 0.82; p = 0.008). Both urinary N-telopeptide (NTX) and bone-specific alkaline phosphatase (BAP) were significantly suppressed in the denosumab arm compared with the zoledronic acid arm (p < 0.0001 for both). However, these findings were not associated with any survival benefit and in a recent post-hoc re-evaluation of endpoints, denosumab showed identical results when comparing skeletal-related events and symptomatic skeletal events [782].

The potential toxicity (e.g., osteonecrosis of the jaw) of these drugs, must always be kept in mind [773, 779]. Patients should have a dental examination before starting therapy as the risk of jaw necrosis is increased by a history of trauma, dental surgery or dental infection [783].

6.10.10 Summary of evidence and guidelines for life-prolonging treatments of castrate-resistant PCa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No definitive strategy regarding first treatment choice (which drug/drug family first) can be devised.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No clear-cut recommendation can be made for the most effective drug for secondary treatment (i.e. hormone therapy, chemotherapy or radium-223) as no clear predictive factors exist.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ensure that testosterone levels are confirmed to be &lt; 50 ng/mL, before diagnosing castration-resistant PCa (CRPC).</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not treat patients for non-metastatic CRPC outside of a clinical trial.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counsel, manage and treat patients with metastatic (m)CRPC in a multidisciplinary team.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat patients with mCRPC with life prolonging agents. Base the choice of first line treatment on the performance status, symptoms, comorbidities, location and extent of disease (alphabetical order: abiraterone, docetaxel, enzalutamide, radium-223, sipuleucel-T).</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.10.11  **Guidelines for cytotoxic treatment in castrate-resistant PCa**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Counsel, manage and treat patients with metastatic castration-resistant PCa (mCRPC) in a multidisciplinary team.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer patients with mCRPC who are candidates for cytotoxic therapy docetaxel with 75 mg/m² every three weeks.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with mCRPC and progression following docetaxel chemotherapy offer further life-prolonging treatment options, which include cabazitaxel, abiraterone, enzalutamide and radium-223.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base second-line treatment decisions of mCRPC on pre-treatment performance status, comorbidities and extent of disease.</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.10.12  **Guidelines for supportive care of castrate-resistant PCa**

These recommendations are in addition to appropriate systemic therapy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer bone protective agents to patients with metastatic castration-resistant PCa (mCRPC) and skeletal metastases to prevent osseous complications.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer calcium and vitamin D supplementation when prescribing either denosumab or bisphosphonates.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat painful bone metastases early on with palliative measures such as external beam radiotherapy, and adequate use of analgesics.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with spinal cord compression start immediate high-dose corticosteroids and assess for spinal surgery followed by irradiation. Offer radiation therapy alone if surgery is not appropriate.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.  **FOLLOW-UP**

7.1  **Follow-up: After local treatment**

7.1.1  **Definition**

Local treatment is defined as RP or RT, either by EBRT or low- or high-dose brachytherapy, or any combination of these. Unestablished alternative treatments, such as HIFU and cryosurgery do not have a well-defined, validated PSA cut-off to define BCF, but do follow the general principles as presented in this section.

7.1.2  **Why follow-up?**

Recurrence occurs after primary therapy in many patients who have previously received treatment with intent to cure. Reasons for follow-up vary depending on treatment, patient age, comorbidity and the patient’s own wishes. Patients who receive curative therapy are followed up to:

- assess immediate- and long-term oncological results, side effects or complications of therapy, functional outcomes and to provide psychological support to PCa survivors;
- discuss the possibility of second-line treatment with curative intent; early HT or WW with the patient.

7.1.3  **How to follow-up?**

The procedures indicated at follow-up visits vary according to clinical situation. The examinations discussed below are routinely used to detect PCa progression or residual disease. Prostate specific antigen level and DRE are the only tests that should be performed routinely. A disease-specific history is mandatory at every follow-up visit and includes psychological aspects, signs of disease progression, and treatment-related complications. Evaluation of treatment-related complications must be individualised, which is beyond the scope of these Guidelines. The examinations used most often for cancer-related follow-up after curative surgery or RT are discussed below.

7.1.3.1  **Prostate-specific antigen monitoring**

Measurement of PSA is a cornerstone in follow-up after local treatment. Expectations differ after RP and RT, but PSA recurrence often precedes clinical recurrence [784, 785]. A single, elevated, serum PSA level should
be confirmed before starting second-line therapy based solely on PSA elevation.

### 7.1.3.2 Definition of prostate-specific antigen progression

The PSA level for definition of treatment failure differs between RP and RT. International consensus defines recurrent cancer after RP by two consecutive PSA rises ≥ 0.2 ng/mL [786]. However, others have argued for a higher cut-off of 0.4 ng/mL for patients at high risk of clinical progression [785].

Ultrasensitive PSA assay remains controversial for routine follow-up after RP. Men with a ultrasensitive PSA nadir < 0.01 ng/mL have a 4% likelihood of early biochemical relapse [787]. Detectable postoperative ultrasensitive PSA does not predict BCR in all cases, although it adds prognostic value. In men with ultrasensitive PSA > 0.05 ng/mL, 66.8% remained free of biochemical disease at five years [788]. If survival is improved by early adjuvant treatment after RP (before PSA reaches > 0.2 ng/mL), higher PSA nadir levels may help identify suitable candidates.

At the 2006 RTOG-ASTRO Consensus conference, a new definition of radiation failure was proposed to establish better correlation between definition and clinical outcome, namely, an increase of 2 ng/mL above the post-treatment PSA nadir [621]. It applies to patients with or without HT.

After HIFU or cryotherapy, no endpoints have been validated against clinical progression or survival; therefore, it is not possible to give a firm recommendation of BCF after these alternative local treatments.

### 7.1.3.3 Prostate-specific antigen monitoring after radical prostatectomy

Prostate-specific antigen is expected to be undetectable within six weeks after successful RP [789]. Persistently elevated PSA in patients treated with RP is thought to be due to residual cancer, either micrometastases or residual pelvic disease.

A rapidly increasing PSA level suggests distant metastases, whereas a later, slowly increasing, level most likely suggests local recurrence. Time to PSA recurrence and tumour differentiation are important predictive factors distinguishing local and systemic recurrence [790]. Local treatment failure and distant metastases occur with undetectable PSA levels. This is rare and occurs mostly in patients with undifferentiated tumours [791].

Thus, in patients with favourable pathology (< pT3, pN0, Gleason score < 8), PSA measurement and disease-specific history could be a single test in follow-up after RP.

### 7.1.3.4 PSA monitoring after radiotherapy

Prostate-specific antigen level falls slowly after RT compared with RP. A nadir < 0.5 ng/mL is associated with a favourable outcome after RT [792], although the optimal value is controversial. The interval before reaching the nadir can be up to 3 years or more. After RT, PSA-DT is correlated with site of recurrence; patients with local recurrence have a doubling time of thirteen months compared to three months for those with distant failure [793].

### 7.1.3.5 Digital rectal examination

Local recurrence after curative treatment is possible without a concomitant rise in PSA level [791]. However, this has only been proven in patients with unfavourable pathology, namely, undifferentiated tumours. Prostate-specific antigen measurement and DRE comprise the most useful combination for first-line examination in follow-up after RT or RP, but PSA measurement may be the only test in cases with favourable pathology (< pT3, pN0, Gleason < 8) after RP [794].

### 7.1.3.6 Imaging techniques have no place in routine follow-up of localised PCa. They are only justified in patients with BCF or in patients with symptoms for whom the findings affect treatment decisions. (See Section 6.9.4.5 for a more detailed discussion).

### 7.1.3.6.1 Transrectal ultrasound/magnetic resonance imaging guided biopsy.

Biopsy of the prostate bed and urethrovesical anastomosis or of the remaining prostate after radiotherapy, are only indicated if local recurrence affects treatment decisions.

### 7.1.4 When to follow-up?

Most patients who fail treatment for PCa do so early, even if failure only becomes clinically obvious after years. Patients should be followed up more closely during the initial post-treatment period when risk of failure is highest. Prostate-specific antigen measurement, disease-specific history and DRE are recommended at three, six and twelve months post-operatively, every six months thereafter until three years, and then annually.

The first post-treatment clinic visit mainly focuses on detecting treatment-related complications
and assist patients in coping with their new situation. Tumour or patient characteristics may allow alterations to this schedule. Patients with poorly differentiated and locally advanced tumours or with positive margins may be followed-up more closely than those with a well-differentiated, intracapsular or specimen-confined tumour. Advanced age or associated comorbidity may make further follow-up in asymptomatic patients superfluous.

7.1.5  **Summary of evidence and guidelines for follow-up after treatment with curative intent**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>After radical prostatectomy serum prostate-specific antigen (PSA) level &gt; 0.2 ng/mL is associated with residual or recurrent disease.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After radiotherapy, an increase in PSA &gt; 2 ng/mL above the nadir, rather than a specific threshold value, is the most reliable sign of recurrence.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palpable nodules and increasing serum PSA are signs of local recurrence.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Routinely follow-up asymptomatic patients, by obtaining a disease-specific history and serum prostate-specific antigen (PSA) measurement supplemented by digital rectal examination (DRE). These should be performed at three, six and twelve months after treatment, then every six months until three years, and then annually.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imaging to detect local recurrence is only recommended if it affects treatment planning. Biopsy is usually not necessary before second-line therapy.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not routinely offer bone scans and other imaging modalities to asymptomatic patients if there are no signs of biochemical relapse. In case patients have bone pain or other symptoms of progression, re-staging should be considered irrespective of serum PSA level.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.2  **Follow-up: During hormonal treatment**

7.2.1  **Introduction**

Follow up must be individualised as BCF might be associated with rapid symptomatic progression or evolve without progression on imaging or symptoms over years.

7.2.2  **Purpose of follow-up**

The main objectives of follow-up in these patients are to ensure treatment compliance, to monitor treatment response and side effects, and to guide the treatment at the time of CRPC. Complementary investigations must be restricted to those that are clinically helpful to avoid unnecessary examinations and costs. Based on current knowledge, it is not possible to formulate level 1 evidence guidelines for follow-up during HT.

7.2.3  **Methods of follow-up**

7.2.3.1  **Clinical follow-up**

Clinical follow-up is mandatory on a regular basis, and cannot be replaced, neither by laboratory test biology nor imaging modalities. Of utmost importance in metastatic situations is to advise patients about early signs of spinal cord compression, check for occult cord compression, urinary tract complications (ureteral obstruction, bladder outlet obstruction) or bone lesions that are at an increased fracture risk.

7.2.3.1.1  **Prostate-specific antigen monitoring**

Prostate-specific antigen is a key marker for following the course of androgen sensitive PCa. Treatment response may be assessed using the change in serum PSA level as a surrogate endpoint for survival in patients with newly diagnosed metastatic PCa in locally advanced and metastatic PCa [795], as in salvage ADT for relapse following treatments with curative intent [796].

For intermittent ADT Section 6.6.4.3 may be consulted.

A rise in PSA level usually precedes the onset of clinical symptoms by several months. Importantly, taking into account the PSA level alone is insufficient to define progression as clinical progression (usually bone pain) with a stable PSA has been reported.

7.2.3.1.2  **Creatinine, haemoglobin and liver function monitoring**

Creatinine monitoring is good clinical practice as an increase may be linked to bilateral ureteral obstruction or bladder retention. Liver function tests may suggest treatment toxicity (especially NSAA), or rarely disease
progression. A decline in haemoglobin after three months of ADT is independently associated with a shorter progression-free and OS rate [797] and might explain significant fatigue. Alkaline phosphatase may increase secondary to bone metastases and androgen-induced osteoporosis [798]. Therefore, it may be helpful to determine bone-specific isoenzymes as none are directly influenced by HT.

7.2.3.1.3 Bone scan, ultrasound and chest X-ray
Asymptomatic patients with a stable PSA level should not undergo imaging at regular intervals [799]. New symptomatic bone lesions require a bone scan, as well as a PSA progression suggesting CRPC status, if a treatment modification is considered. The Prostate Cancer Clinical Trials Working Group has clarified the definition of bone scan progression as the appearance of at least two new lesions [742], later confirmed.

Suspicion of disease progression indicates the need for additional imaging modalities, guided by symptoms or possible subsequent treatments. In CRPC, imaging must be individualised with the aim of maintaining the patient's QoL.

7.2.3.1.4 Testosterone monitoring
This should be considered part of clinical practice for men on LHRH therapy. Most patients receiving LHRH analogues will achieve castrate serum testosterone levels (< 50 ng/mL). However, approximately 13-38% of patients fail to achieve this goal and up to 24% of men may experience temporary testosterone surges (testosterone > 50 ng/dL) during long-term treatment [525], known as the ‘acute on-chronic effect’ or ‘breakthrough response’.

The timing of measurements is not clearly defined. A three to six-month testosterone level assessment is suggested to ensure castration is achieved and maintained. If not, switching to another agonist or antagonist, or to an orchietomy should be considered. In patients with rising PSA and/or clinical progression, serum testosterone must be evaluated in all cases to confirm a castrate-resistant state.

7.2.3.1.5 Monitoring of metabolic complications
Androgen deprivation therapy has a greater range of complications than might be expected. The most severe are metabolic syndrome, cardiovascular morbidity and bone problems, (see Section 8.2.4.5). The patient's general practitioner should probably be more involved at this stage.

All patients should be screened for diabetes by checking fasting glucose and HbA1c (at baseline and regularly), as for blood lipid levels. Men with impaired glucose tolerance and/or diabetes should be referred for an endocrine consultation. A cardiology consultation should be considered in men with a history of cardiovascular disease and men older than 65 years prior to starting ADT. Monitoring serum levels of vitamin D and calcium is important (see Section 6.7.2.2.1). It is suggested that routine bone monitoring should be performed every two years during castration [800], or yearly if there are other risk factors [801, 802]. However, there is no high level evidence that this recommendation improves bone complications due to ADT, and prospective trials are needed.

Patients on ADT should be given advice on modifying their lifestyle (e.g. diet, exercise, smoking cessation, etc.) and should be treated for any existing conditions, such as diabetes, hyperlipidaemia, and/or hypertension [797, 798]. Furthermore, the risk-to-benefit ratio of ADT must be considered in patients with a higher risk of cardiovascular complications, especially if it is possible to delay starting ADT.

7.2.4 When to follow-up
After the initiation of ADT, it is recommended that patients are followed at three to six months intervals. This must be individualised and each patient should be advised to contact his physician in the event of troublesome symptoms.

7.2.4.1 Stage M0 - M1 patients
If there is a good treatment response, i.e. PSA response (< 4 ng/mL), symptomatic improvement, good psychological coping, good treatment compliance, follow-up visits are scheduled every three to six months.

7.2.4.2 Castration-refractory PCa
Patients whose disease progresses, or who do not respond according to the criteria mentioned above, warrant an individualised follow-up scheme.
7.2.5 Guidelines for follow-up during hormonal treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Evaluate patients at three to six months after the initiation of treatment.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As a minimum, tests should include serum prostate-specific antigen (PSA) measurement, digital rectal examination (DRE), serum testosterone, and careful evaluation of symptoms in order to assess the treatment response and side effects.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients undergoing intermittent androgen deprivation, monitor PSA and testosterone at fixed intervals during the treatment pause (monthly or at three-month intervals).</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adapt follow-up to the individual patient, according to stage of disease, prior symptoms, prognostic factors and the treatment given.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with stage M0 disease with a good treatment response, schedule follow-up every six months. As a minimum requirement, include a disease-specific history, DRE and serum PSA determination in the diagnostic work-up.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with stage M1 disease with a good treatment response, schedule follow-up every three to six months. As a minimum requirement, include a disease-specific history, DRE, serum PSA, haemoglobin, serum creatinine and alkaline phosphatase measurements in the diagnostic work-up. The testosterone level should be checked, especially during the first year.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counsel patients (especially with M1b status) about the clinical signs suggestive of spinal cord compression.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When disease progression occurs, or if the patient does not respond to treatment, adapt/individualise follow up.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with suspected progression, assess the testosterone level. By definition, castration-resistant PCa (CRPC) requires a testosterone level &lt; 50 ng/mL (&lt; 1 mL/L).</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer routine imaging to otherwise stable patients.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. QUALITY OF LIFE OUTCOMES IN PROSTATE CANCER

This chapter is presented in two parts. The first will summarise consequences of therapies for PCa. Based on two SRs, the second will evaluate the evidence for adverse effects of treatments over the longer-term (twelve months +) and also make evidence-based recommendations for supportive interventions aimed at improving disease-specific QoL across all stages of disease.

8.1 Introduction

Quality of life and personalised care go hand in hand. Treating prostate cancer can affect an individual both physically and mentally, as well as his close relations and his work or vocation. These multifaceted issues all have a bearing on his perception of ‘quality of life’ [803]. Approaching care from a holistic point of view requires the intervention of a multi-disciplinary team ranging from urologist, medical oncologist, radiation oncologist, oncology nurse to psychologists and many others. Attention to the psychosocial concerns of men with prostate cancer is integral to quality clinical care, and this includes the needs of carers and partners [762]. Prostate cancer care should not be reduced to focusing on the organ in isolation: side effects or late adverse effects of treatment can manifest systemically and have a major influence on the patient’s QoL. Taking QoL into consideration relies on understanding the patient’s wishes and preferences so that optimal treatment proposals can be formulated and discussed.

8.2 Adverse effects of prostate cancer therapies

8.2.1 Surgery

Post-operative incontinence and ED are common problems following surgery for PCa. A key consideration is whether these problems are reduced by using newer techniques such as RALP. Recent SRs have documented complication rates after RALP [388, 390-393], and can be compared with contemporaneous reports after RRP [398]. From these reports, the mean continence rates at twelve months were 89-100% for patients treated with RALP and 80-97% for patients treated with RRP. There is, as yet, no evidence from retrospective studies of differences in urinary incontinence at twelve months and there was insufficient evidence to draw conclusions on differences in cancer-related, patient-driven or ED outcomes. The major limitations of the included studies
were the retrospective study design and the use of different assessment tools preventing comparison between
techniques and series. Recently, a prospective, controlled, non-randomised trial of patients undergoing RP in
fourteen centres using RALP or RRP was published. At twelve months after RALP, 21.3% were incontinent, as
were 20.2% after RRP. The adjusted OR was 1.08 (95% CI: 0.87-1.34). Erectile dysfunction was observed in
70.4% after RALP and 74.7% after RRP. The adjusted OR was 0.81 (95% CI: 0.66-0.98) [394]. A recent RCT
comparing RALP and RRP, has reported outcomes at twelve weeks in 326 patients [334]. Functional outcomes
were similar in the two groups, but longer follow up is needed to report on longer term effects. The intra-and
peri-operative complications of retropubic RP and RALP are listed in Table 8.2.1.

Table 8.2.1: Intra-and peri-operative complications of retropubic RP and RALP ( Adapted from [388])

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predicted probability of event</th>
<th>RALP (%)</th>
<th>Laparoscopic RP (%)</th>
<th>RRP (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bladder neck contracture</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>4.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anastomotic leak</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organ injury</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ileus</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep-vein thrombosis</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predicted rates of event</th>
<th>RALP (%)</th>
<th>Laparoscopic RP (%)</th>
<th>RRP (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clavien I</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clavien II</td>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>17.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clavien IIIa</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clavien IIIb</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clavien IVa</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clavien V</td>
<td>&lt; 0.1</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RALP = robot-assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy; RP = radical prostatectomy; RRP = radical retropubic
prostatectomy.

8.2.1.1 Early complications of extended lymph node dissection
Pelvic eLND increases morbidity in the treatment of PCa. Overall complication rates of 19.8% vs. 8.2% were
noted for eLND vs. limited LND, respectively, with lymphoceles (10.3% vs. 4.6%) being the most common
adverse event. Other authors have reported more acceptable complication rates [804]. Similar rates of
lymphoceles have been observed in RALP series, however, in one subgroup analysis, lymphoceles were more
common with the extraperitoneal approach (19%) vs. the transperitoneal approach (0%) [805, 806]. Briganti
et al. [807] also showed more complications after extended compared to limited LND. 20% of men suffer a
complication of some sort after eLND. Thromboembolic events occur in less than 1% of cases.

8.2.2 Radiotherapy
8.2.2.1 Side effects of external beam radiotherapy
Retrospective studies suggest that RT affects erectile function to a lesser degree than surgery of patients
[808], and this has been borne out by the recent ProtecT study results (see below). A meta-analysis has
shown that the one-year probability rates for maintaining erectile function were 0.76 after brachytherapy, 0.60
after brachytherapy + EBRT, 0.55 after EBRT, 0.34 after nerve-sparing RP, and 0.25 after standard RP. When
studies with more than two years of follow-up were selected (i.e. excluding brachytherapy), the rates became
0.60, 0.52, 0.25, and 0.25, respectively, with a greater spread between the radiation techniques and surgical
approaches [809].

Studies have demonstrated a significantly increased risk of developing secondary malignancies of the
rectum and bladder following EBRT [810, 811]. In a retrospective evaluation of 30,552 and 55,263 men, who
had undergone either EBRT or RP, the risk of being diagnosed with rectal cancer increased by 1.7-fold in
comparison with the surgery group [810]. Another analysis [811] showed that the relative risk of developing
bladder cancer increased by 2.34-fold in comparison with a healthy control population. On the other hand,
a re-analysis of SEER data including more than 100,000 patients, demonstrated a risk of about 0.16% (i.e.
160 cases per 100,000 patients) of radiation-induced malignant tumours [812]. The Memorial Sloan-Kettering
Cancer Center group have also reported corresponding data on late toxicity from their experience in 1,571
patients with T1-T3 disease treated with either 3D-CRT or IMRT at doses of between 66 Gy and 81 Gy, with
a median follow-up of ten years [813]. Both acute gastrointestinal and GU toxicity appeared to be predictive
for corresponding late toxicity. The overall rate of NCIC/Common Toxicity Criteria (CTC) Grade 2 or more

88
gastrointestinal toxicity was 5% with IMRT vs. 13% with 3D-CRT. The incidence of Grade 2 or higher late GU toxicity was 20% in patients treated with 81 Gy vs. 12% in patients treated with lower doses. The overall incidences of Grade 3 toxicity were 1% for gastrointestinal toxicity and 3% for GU toxicity. These data suggest that IMRT can successfully protect against late gastrointestinal toxicity. Interestingly, with dose escalation, GU toxicity may become the predominant type of morbidity [813].

8.2.2.2 Side effects from brachytherapy
Some patients experience significant urinary complications following implantation, such as urinary retention (1.5-22%), with post-implantation TURP reported as being required in up to 8.7% of cases, and incontinence (0-19%) [814]. A small RCT has suggested that prophylactic tamsulosin does not reduce the rates of acute urinary retention, but may improve urinary morbidity [815]. This observation requires further study in a larger number of patients. Chronic urinary morbidity can occur in up to 20% of patients, depending on the severity of the symptoms before brachytherapy. Previous TURP for BPH increases the risk of post-implantation incontinence and urinary morbidity. Prevention of morbidity depends on careful patient selection, and expert assessment of IPSS score, backed up by urodynamic studies if needed is key to this.

A small RCT has suggested that using stranded rather than loose seeds is associated with better seed retention and less seed migration, and this should be the standard choice [816].

Table 8.2.2: Acute gastrointestinal and genitourinary complications according to the Radiation Therapy Oncology Group (RTOG)/European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer morbidity scale (adaptations with regard to the original RTOG scale in italics) according to Huang et al. [817]*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade 1</th>
<th>Grade 2</th>
<th>Grade 3</th>
<th>Grade 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GI</td>
<td>Increased frequency or change in quality of bowel habits not requiring medication. Rectal discomfort not requiring analgesics.</td>
<td>Diarrhoea requiring parasympatholytic drugs. Mucous discharge not necessitating sanitary pads. Rectal or abdominal pain requiring analgesics.</td>
<td>Diarrhoea requiring parenteral support. Severe mucous or blood discharge necessitating sanitary pads. Abdominal distension (flat plate radiograph demonstrates distended bowel loops).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GU</td>
<td>Frequency of urination or nocturia twice pretreatment habit. Dysuria or urgency not requiring medication.</td>
<td>Frequency of urination is less frequent than every hour (day: 12-16 times; nocturia 5-8 times). Dysuria, urgency, bladder spasm requiring local anaesthetic.</td>
<td>Frequency of urination is more frequent than every hour (day: &gt;16 times; nocturia: &gt; 8 times). Dysuria, bladder spasm, urgency requiring frequent regular narcotic. Gross haematuria complaints requiring permanent or suprapubic catheter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GI = gastrointestinal; GU = genito-urinary.
### Table 8.2.3: Late gastrointestinal and genitourinary complications according to the Radiation Therapy Oncology Group (RTOG)/European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) morbidity scale (adaptations with regard to the original RTOG/EORTC scale in italics) according to Huang et al. [817]*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade 1</th>
<th>Grade 2</th>
<th>Grade 3</th>
<th>Grade 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>GI</strong></td>
<td>Mild diarrhoea</td>
<td>Moderate diarrhoea</td>
<td>Watery diarrhoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mild cramping</td>
<td>Intermittent, severe cramping.</td>
<td>Obstruction requiring surgery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bowel movements 2-5 per day</td>
<td>Bowel movements (5 per day)</td>
<td>Bleeding requiring surgery or 2 laser treatments or transfusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slight rectal discharge or bleeding</td>
<td>Moderate excessive, rectal discharge.</td>
<td>Necrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Intermittent, frequent bleeding (3 single laser treatments or transfusion).</td>
<td>Perforation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fistula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Abdominal pain or tenesmus requiring tube decompression or bowel diversion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GU</strong></td>
<td>Frequency during day 0.5-1 h</td>
<td>1-2 h</td>
<td>Frequency during day: 2 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nocturia 2-3/night</td>
<td>Nocturia 4-6/night</td>
<td>Nocturia 6/night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slight dysuria or microscopic haematuria requiring no medication</td>
<td>Moderate dysuria or intermittent (mild, moderate) haematuria requiring medication†</td>
<td>Severe dysuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slight epithelial atrophy, minor telangiectasia</td>
<td>Moderate telangiectasia</td>
<td>Frequent (severe) haematuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bladder capacity &gt; 300 mL</td>
<td>Bladder capacity: 150-300 mL</td>
<td>Severe telangiectasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bladder capacity: 100-150 mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Benign urethral strictures requiring TURP, dilation, or suprapubic or permanent catheter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The difference between grade 1 and grade 2 GI pain, mucosal loss, or bleeding is most easily made when grade 2 is defined as morbidity requiring specific medication: grade 1 = stool softener, diet modification, occasional (< 2/wk) non-narcotic drug, occasional antidiarrhoeal agent (2/wk), occasional use of incontinence pads (1-2 d/wk); grade 2 = regular (≥2/wk) use of (non)narcotic drugs for pain, regular (2/wk) antidiarrhoeals, steroid suppositories, one laser.

† With the exception of antibiotics.


GI = gastrointestinal; GU = genito-urinary; TURP = transurethral resection of the prostate.

### 8.2.3 Local treatments other than surgery or radiotherapy

#### 8.2.3.1 Cryosurgery

In Ramsay et al.’s systematic review and meta-analysis [511], there was evidence that the rate of urinary incontinence at one year was lower for CSAP than for RP, but the size of the difference decreased with longer follow-up. There was no significant difference between CSAP vs. EBRT in terms of urinary incontinence at one year (< 1%), CSAP had a similar ED rate (range 0-40%) to RP at one year. There was insufficient data to compare CSAP vs. EBRT in terms of ED. There was a general trend for CSAP to have fewer procedural complications, apart from urinary retention. The only difference that reached statistical significance was for urethral stricture, which was less frequent after CSAP than after RP. However, the data underlying this comparison are weak and are, of course, not based on a RCT.

#### 8.2.3.2 High-intensity focused ultrasound

In terms of toxicity, there are insufficient data on urinary incontinence, ED or bowel dysfunction to draw any conclusions, although at one year HIFU had lower statistically significant incontinence rates than RP [511]. The safety profile for HIFU was generally good, the commonest reported complications being dysuria (22-30%), acute urinary retention (range 2-24%), urethral sloughing (up to 22%) and UTI (up to 17%). However, HIFU appeared to have a slightly higher incidence of urethral stricture than EBRT which was statistically significant. The quality of the evidence was poor, due to high risks of bias across studies and heterogeneity of outcome definition, measurement and reporting.
The incontinence rates at one year for focal CSAP were very low. Procedural complication rates were generally low, with the commonest complication being acute urinary retention (range 1.2-8.0%).

8.2.4 Hormonal therapy

There is a lack of data on the effects of HT on QoL, with only a single, large, prospective, RCT comparing orchiectomy + flutamide or placebo in M1 patients. Combined therapy resulted in a lower QoL in the first six months, with more frequent diarrhoea and worse emotional functioning, compared with castration alone [818]. A small RCT evaluated the HRQoL at one-year follow-up in patients with non-localised PCa, between various ADT regimens, or no treatment. Both sexual and cognitive function significantly declined with ADT, while emotional distress significantly increased in the no treatment patient group [819]. A prospective observational study of non-metastatic PCa, found that immediate ADT was associated with a lower overall QoL compared to deferred treatment [820]. Another retrospective, non-randomised study suggested that men receiving LHRH agonists reported more worry and physical discomfort and poorer overall health, and were less likely to believe themselves free of cancer than orchiectomised patients. The stage at diagnosis had no effect on health outcomes [821].

Using a specific non-validated questionnaire, bicalutamide monotherapy showed a significant advantage over castration in the domains of physical capacity and sexual interest (not sexual function) at twelve months [822]. A post-hoc analysis, including only patients with sexual interest suggested that bicalutamide was associated with better sexual preservation, including maintained sexual interest, feeling sexually attractive [823], preserved libido and erectile function [824].

Intermittent androgen deprivation has been discussed elsewhere (see Section 6.6 - Metastatic PCa - Hormonal therapy).

8.2.4.1 Sexual function

Loss of libido and ED are common. The management of acquired ED is mostly non-specific [825].

8.2.4.2 Hot flushes

Hot flushes are the most common side-effect of ADT. They appear three months after starting ADT, usually persist long-term and have a significant impact on QoL.

Oestrogen-receptor modulators or low-dose oestrogen therapies, e.g. DES, 0.5-1 mg/day, reduce the frequency and severity of hot flushes. Both treatments carry a risk of cardiovascular complications. Soy phytoestrogens have shown an efficacy in breast cancer patients, but have not been evaluated in men. Progesterone-based treatments have demonstrated efficacy with 80% of patients showing an improvement [826].

Serotonin re-uptake inhibitors (e.g. venlafaxine or sertraline) appear to be effective in men, but less than HT based on a prospective randomised trial comparing venlafaxine, 75 mg daily, with medroxyprogesterone, 20 mg daily, or CPA, 100 mg daily [827]. After six months of LHRH (n = 919), 311 men had significant hot flushes and were randomised to one of the treatments. Venlafaxine was clearly inferior compared to the hormonal agents, which showed similar efficacy to each other.

With a placebo effect influencing up to 30% of patients [828], the efficacy of clonidine, veralipride, gabapentine [829] and acupuncture [830] must be compared in prospective RCTs.

8.2.4.3 Other systemic side-effects of androgen-deprivation therapy

Androgen-deprivation therapy is associated with significant side effects which may lead to significantly increased morbidity or even mortality.

8.2.4.4 Non-metastatic bone fractures

Due to increased bone turnover and decreased BMD in a time-dependent manner, ADT use is linked to an increased risk of fracture (up to 45% relative risk with long-term ADT) [831]. Hip fractures in men are associated with a significant risk of death [832]. A precise evaluation of BMD should be performed by dual emission X-ray absorptiometry (DEXA) before starting long-term ADT. An initial low BMD (T-score < -2.5 or < -1, with other risk factors) indicates a high risk of subsequent non-metastatic fracture. The WHO FRAX tool (http://www.shef.ac.uk/FRAX) should be used to evaluate individual risk. Obesity (increase in body fat mass by up to 10%) and sarcopenia (decrease in lean tissue mass by up to 3%) are common and occur during the first year of ADT [833]. Both changes increase the fracture risk.

8.2.4.4.1 Lifestyle changes before starting long-term androgen-deprivation therapy

Patients should be encouraged to adopt lifestyle changes, e.g. increased physical activity, cessation of smoking, decreased alcohol consumption, and to normalise their BMI. Calcium and vitamin D supplements
should be considered if low values are detected (normal values: calcium: 2.2-2.6 nmol/L, vitamin D: 100-160 nmol/L). A daily intake of at least 1,200 mg/day of calcium and 1,000 UI of vitamin D is useful.

8.2.4.4.2 Hormonal treatment modalities
Bicalutamide monotherapy could be a bone-protective treatment [834, 835], but is limited by its suboptimal efficacy (see Section 6.6 - Metastatic PCa - Hormonal Therapy). The intermittent modality might be associated with less bone impact [565].

8.2.4.4.3 Bisphosphonates
Bisphosphonates increase BMD in the hip and spine by up to 7% in 1 year. The optimal regimen for zoledronic acid remains unclear: quarterly [836] or yearly [837] injections. The question is relevant as the risk of jaw necrosis is both dose- and time-related [838]. A quarterly regimen could be considered for a BMD ≤ 2.5 as a yearly injection is unlikely to provide sufficient protection [839].

In contrast to breast cancer, a significant benefit in OS has only been demonstrated in PCa in a post-hoc analysis for the oral first-generation clodronate with an absolute 8% OS increase after eight years of follow-up [840]. This benefit has never been observed with more recent bisphosphonates.

Denosumab (a fully human monoclonal antibody against receptor activator of NF-κB ligand [RANKL])
In M0 patients, denosumab has been shown to increase the lumbar BMD by 5.6% compared to a 1% decrease in the placebo arm after two years, using a 60 mg subcutaneous regimen every six months [841]. This was associated with a significant decrease in vertebral fracture risk (1.5% vs. 3.9%, p = 0.006). The benefits were similar whatever the age (< or > 70 years), the duration or type of ADT, the initial BMD, the patient's weight or the initial BMI. This benefit was not associated with any significant toxicity, e.g. jaw osteonecrosis or delayed healing in vertebral fractures. In M0 patients, with the use of a higher dosage (120 mg every four weeks), a delay in bone metastases of 4.2 months has been shown [782] without any impact on OS, but with an increase in side effects. Therefore, this later regimen cannot be recommended.

8.2.4.5 Metabolic effects
Lipid alterations are common and may occur as early as the first 3 months of treatment [833]. ADT also decreases insulin sensitivity and increases fasting plasma insulin levels, which is a marker of insulin resistance. Once again, exercise is strongly recommended for its protective effect. In diabetic patients, metformin appears to be an attractive option for protection against metabolic effects based on retrospective analysis [842], but there is insufficient data to recommend its use in non-diabetic patients.

Metabolic syndrome is an association of independent cardiovascular disease risk factors, often associated with insulin resistance. The definition requires at least three of the following criteria [843]:
- waist circumference > 102 cm;
- serum triglyceride > 1.7 mmol/L;
- blood pressure > 130/80 mmHg or use of medication for hypertension;
- high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol < 1 mmol/L;
- glycaemia > 5.6 mmol/L or the use of medication for hyperglycaemia.

The prevalence of a metabolic-like syndrome is higher during ADT compared with men not receiving ADT [844].

8.2.4.6 Cardiovascular morbidity
Cardiovascular mortality is now the most common cause of death in PCa patients, even exceeding PCa mortality [845]. Several studies showed that ADT, after only six months, was associated with an increased risk of diabetes mellitus, cardiovascular disease, and myocardial infarction [846]. The RTOG 92-02 [847] and 94-08 [415] trials confirmed an increased cardiovascular risk, unrelated to the duration of ADT and not accompanied by an overall increased cardiovascular mortality. No increase in cardiovascular mortality has been reported in a systematic meta-analysis of trials RTOG 8531, 8610, 9202, EORTC 30891 or EORTC 22863 [848]. However, an increase in cardiovascular mortality has been reported in patients suffering from previous congestive heart failure or myocardial infarction in a retrospective database analysis [849] or presenting with a metabolic syndrome [850].

It has been suggested that LHRH antagonists might be associated with less cardiovascular morbidity compared to agonists [851]. However, the methodology used in these studies does not provide convincing evidence to show a clear superiority of these compounds.

These data resulted in an FDA warning and consensus paper from the American Heart, Cancer Society and Urological Associations [689]. Preventive advice includes non-specific measures such as loss of
weight, increased exercise, improved nutrition and smoking cessation.

8.2.4.7 Fatigue
Fatigue often develops as a side-effect of ADT. Regular exercise appears to be the best protective measure [852, 853], with prolonged efficacy [854] and improved specific survival [855].

Anaemia may be a cause of fatigue. Anaemia requires an etiological diagnosis (medullar invasion, mainly inflammatory, renal insufficiency, iron deficiency, chronic bleeding) and individualised treatment. Iron supplementation (using injectable formulations only) must be systematic if deficiency is observed. Regular blood transfusions are required if severe anaemia is present. Erythropoiesis-stimulating agents might be considered in dedicated cases, taking into account the possible increased risk of thrombovascular events [856].

8.2.4.8 neurological side effects
Castration seems also to be associated with an increased risk of stroke [857], and is suspect to be associated with an increased risk for depression and cognitive decline such as Alzheimer disease [858].

8.3 Overall quality of life in men with prostate cancer
Living longer with prostate cancer, does not necessarily equate to living well [803, 762]. There is clear evidence of unmet needs and ongoing support requirements for some men after diagnosis and treatment for prostate cancer [859]. Radical treatment for prostate cancer can negatively impact long-term QoL (e.g. sexual, urinary and bowel dysfunction), as can ADT used in short or long-term treatment e.g. loss of muscle mass, sexual problems, fatigue, psychological morbidity, adverse metabolic sequelae increased cardiovascular and bone fracture risk [860, 861]. Direct symptoms from advanced or metastatic cancer e.g. pain, hypercalcaemia, spinal cord compression, pathological fractures, also adversely affect health [862, 863]. Men’s QoL including domains such as sexual function, urinary function and bowel function is worse after treatment for PCa compared to non-cancer controls [864, 865].

The concept of ‘quality of life’ is subjective and can mean different things to different men, but there are some generally common features across virtually all patients. Drawing from these common features, specific tools or ‘patient reported outcome measures’ (PROMs) have been developed and validated for men with prostate cancer. These questionnaires assess common issues that affect men after prostate cancer diagnosis and treatment and generate scores which reflect the impact on perceptions of HRQoL. During the process of undertaking two dedicated SRs around cancer-specific QoL outcomes in men with PCa as the foundation for our guideline recommendations, the following validated PROMs were found in our searches (see Table 8.3.1).

Table 8.3.1: PROMs assessing cancer specific quality of life

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questionnaire</th>
<th>Domains / items</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(FACT-G) [866]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functional Assessment of Cancer Therapy-Prostate</td>
<td>12 cancer site specific items to assess for prostate related symptoms. Can be combined with FACT-G or reported separately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(FACT-P) [867]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer QLQ-C30 (EORTC QLQ-C30) [868]</td>
<td>Five functional scales (physical, role, cognitive, emotional, and social); Three symptom scales (fatigue, pain, and nausea and vomiting); Global health status / QoL scale; and a number of single items assessing additional symptoms commonly reported by cancer patients (dyspnoea, loss of appetite, insomnia, constipation and diarrhoea) and perceived financial impact of the disease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expanded prostate cancer index composite (EPIC)</td>
<td>Urinary, bowel, sexual, and hormonal symptoms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[870]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expanded prostate cancer index composite short form 26 (EPIC 26) [871]</td>
<td>Urinary, sexual, bowel, and hormonal domains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCLA Prostate Cancer Index (UCLA PCI) [872]</td>
<td>Urinary, bowel, and sexual domains.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.3.1 Long-term (≥ 12 months) quality of life outcomes in men with localised disease.

Men undergoing local treatments

Recently the results of the Prostate Testing for Cancer and Treatment (ProtecT) trial (n = 1,643 men) were published [875]. The study reported no difference in EORTC QLQ-C30 assessed global QoL, up to five years of follow-up in men aged 50-69 years with T1-T2 disease randomised for treatment with AM, RP or RT [875]. However, EPIC urinary summary scores (at 6 years) were worse in men treated with RP compared to AM or RT (88.7 vs. 89.0 vs. 91.4, respectively) as were urinary incontinence (80.9 vs. 85.8 vs. 89.4, respectively) and sexual summary, function and bother scores (32.3 vs. 40.6 vs. 41.3 for sexual summary, 23.7 vs. 32.5 vs. 32.7 for sexual function and 51.4 vs. 57.9 vs. 60.1 for sexual bother, respectively) at six years of follow-up. Minimal clinically important differences for the 50 item EPIC questionnaire are not to our knowledge available. For men receiving RT, EPIC bowel scores were poorer compared to AM and RP in all domains: function (90.8 vs. 92.3 vs. 92.3, respectively), bother (91.7 vs. 94.2 vs. 93.7, respectively) and summary (91.2 vs. 93.2 vs. 93.0, respectively) at six years of follow-up in the ProtecT trial.

The findings regarding RP and RT are supported by other observational studies, the most important being The Prostate Cancer Outcomes Study (PCOS) [876] that studied a cohort of 1,655 men, of whom 1,164 had undergone RP and 491 RT. The study reported that at five years of follow-up, men who underwent RP had a higher prevalence of urinary incontinence and ED, while men treated with RT had a higher prevalence of bowel dysfunction. However, despite these differences detected at five years, there were no significant differences in the adjusted odds of urinary incontinence, bowel dysfunction or ED between RP and RT at fifteen years.

With respect to brachytherapy cancer-specific QoL outcomes, the best available evidence come from one small RCT (n = 200) evaluating bilateral nerve sparing RP and brachytherapy in men with localised disease (up to T2a), which reported worsening of physical functioning as well as irritative urinary symptomatology in 20% of brachytherapy patients at one year of follow-up. However, there were no significant differences in EORTC-QLQ-C30/PR-25 scores at five years of follow-up when comparing to pre-treatment values [877]. It should be noted of this trial within group tests only were reported.

### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Advise eligible patients for active surveillance, that global quality of life is equivalent for up to five years compared to radical prostatectomy or radiotherapy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discuss the negative impact of surgery on urinary and sexual function, as well as the negative impact of radiotherapy on bowel function with patients.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advise patients treated with brachytherapy of the negative impact on irritative urinary symptomatology at one year but not after five years.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.3.2 Improving quality of life in men who have been diagnosed with prostate cancer

Men undergoing local treatments

In men with localised disease, nurse led multi-disciplinary rehabilitation (addressing sexual functioning, cancer worry, dyadic adjustment, depression, managing bowel and urinary function problems) provided positive short-term effects (four months) on sexual function (effect size 0.45) and long-term (twelve months) positive effects on sexual limitation (effect size 0.5) and cancer worry (effect size 0.51) [878].

The use of PDE5 inhibitors in penile rehabilitation has been subject to some debate. A single centre, double blind RCT of 100 men undergoing nerve-sparing surgery reported no benefit of nightly sildenafil (50 mg) compared to on-demand use [405]. However, a multi-centre double blind RCT (n = 423) in men aged < 68 years, with normal pre-treatment erectile function undergoing either open, conventional or robot assisted laparoscopic nerve-sparing RP, Tadalafil (5 mg) once per day improved participants EPIC sexual domain-scores (least squares mean difference +9.6: 95% CI: 3.1-16.0) when compared to 20 mg ‘on demand’ or placebo at nine months of follow-up [406]. Therefore, based on discordant results, no clear recommendation is possible, even if a trend exists for early use of PDE5 inhibitors after RP for penile rehabilitation. A detailed discussion can be found in the EAU Male Sexual Dysfunction Guidelines [879].

Men undergoing systemic treatments

Similar to men treated with a radical approach (see above) men with T1-T3 disease undergoing RT and ADT a combined nurse led psychological support and physiotherapist led multi-disciplinary rehabilitation has reported
improvements in QoL. Specifically this intervention involved action planning around patients’ needs related to lifestyle changes, weight control, toilet habits, sexuality, and psychological problems. This was complemented with pelvic floor muscle therapy. Improvements in urinary (adjusted mean 4.5: 95% CI 0.6-8.4), irritative (adjusted mean 5.8: 95% CI: 1.4-10.3) and hormonal (adjusted mean 4.8: 95% CI: 0.8-8.8) EPIC domains were found up to 22 weeks of follow-up [880].

Providing supervised aerobic and resistance exercise training of a moderate intensity improves EORTC QLQ-C30 role (adjusted mean 15.8: 95% CI: 6.6-24.9) and cognitive domain outcomes (adjusted mean 11.4: 95% CI: 3.3-19.6) as well as symptom scales for fatigue (adjusted mean −11.0: 95% CI: −20.2,—1.7), nausea (adjusted mean −4.0: 95% CI: −7.4,—0.25), and dyspnoea (adjusted mean −12.4: 95% CI: −22.5,—2.3) up to three months in men treated with ADT [852]. Such interventions have also reported clinically relevant improvements in FACT-P (mean difference 8.9: 95% CI: 3.7-14.2) in men on long-term ADT [881, 882]. These finding are supported by a recent SR which reported improvements up to twelve weeks in cancer-specific QoL in a meta-analysis of high quality trials (SMD 0.33: 95%, CI: 0.08-0.58) [883].

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer men on androgen deprivation therapy, twelve weeks of supervised (by trained exercise specialists) combined aerobic and resistance exercise.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer men with T1-T3 disease specialist nurse led, multi-disciplinary rehabilitation based on the patients’ personal goals addressing incontinence, sexuality, depression and fear of recurrence, social support and positive lifestyle changes after any radical treatment.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REFERENCES**


Garcia C. Does transperineal prostate biopsy reduce complications compared with transrectal biopsy? a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. 2016. 195:4 SUPPL. 1 p. e328.


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10962312


http://www.jurology.com/article/S0022-5347(14)02593-2/abstract


   http://ascopubs.org/doi/abs/10.1200/jco.2007.25.18_suppl.5058


761. de Bono, J.S., et al. Phase III non-inferiority study of cabazitaxel (C) 20 mg/m² (C20) versus 25 mg/m² (C25) in patients (pts) with metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer (mCRPC) previously treated with docetaxel (D). J Clin Oncol 2016. 34: abstr 5008. http://meetinglibrary.asco.org/content/169889-176


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16474786


PROSTATE CANCER - UPDATE MARCH 2017
10. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the EAU - ESTRO – ESUR – SIOG Prostate Cancer Guidelines working panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have that might be perceived to be a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publicly accessible through the European Association of Urology website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/.

This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation, and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION  
   1.1 Aims and scope  
   1.2 Panel composition  
   1.3 Available publications  
   1.4 Publication history and summary of changes  
      1.4.1 Publication history  
      1.4.2 Summary of changes  

2. METHODS  
   2.1 Data identification  
   2.2 Review  
   2.3 Future goals  

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY  
   3.1 Epidemiology  
      3.1.1 Summary of evidence and recommendation  
   3.2 Histological diagnosis  
      3.2.1 Clear cell renal cell cancer  
      3.2.2 Papillary renal cell cancer  
      3.2.3 Chromophobe (chRCC)  
   3.3 Other renal tumours  
      3.3.1 Carcinoma associated with end-stage renal disease; acquired cystic disease-associated RCC  
      3.3.2 Papillary adenoma  
      3.3.3 Hereditary kidney tumours  
      3.3.4 Angiomyolipoma  
         3.3.4.1 Treatment  
         3.3.4.2 Summary  
   3.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of other renal tumours  

4. STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS  
   4.1 Staging  
   4.2 Anatomic classification systems  

5. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION  
   5.1 Symptoms  
      5.1.1 Physical examination  
      5.1.2 Laboratory findings  
   5.2 Imaging investigations  
      5.2.1 Presence of enhancement  
      5.2.2 Computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging  
      5.2.3 Other investigations  
      5.2.4 Radiographic investigations to evaluate RCC metastases  
      5.2.5 Bosniak classification of renal cystic masses  
   5.3 Renal tumour biopsy  
   5.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the diagnostic assessment of renal cell cancer  

6. PROGNOSTIC FACTORS  
   6.1 Classification  
   6.2 Anatomical factors  
   6.3 Histological factors  
   6.4 Clinical factors  
   6.5 Molecular factors  
   6.6 Prognostic systems and nomograms  
   6.7 Summary of evidence and recommendations for prognostic factors  

5  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
13  
15  
18  

7. DISEASE MANAGEMENT 22

7.1 Treatment of localised RCC 22

7.1.1 Introduction 22

7.1.2 Surgical treatment 22

7.1.2.1 Nephron-sparing surgery vs. radical nephrectomy 22

7.1.2.2 Associated procedures 23

7.1.2.2.1 Adrenalectomy 23

7.1.2.2.2 Lymph node dissection for clinically negative lymph nodes (cN0) 23

7.1.2.2.3 Embolisation 23

7.1.2.2.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations 24

7.1.3 Radical and partial nephrectomy techniques 24

7.1.3.1 Radical nephrectomy techniques 24

7.1.3.2 Partial nephrectomy techniques 24

7.1.3.3 Positive margins on histopathological specimens of resected tumours 25

7.1.3.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations 25

7.1.4 Therapeutic approaches as alternatives to surgery 26

7.1.4.1 Surgical versus non-surgical treatment 26

7.1.4.2 Surveillance 26

7.1.4.3 Ablative therapies 26

7.1.4.3.1 Cryoablation 26

7.1.4.3.2 Cryoablation versus partial nephrectomy 26

7.1.4.3.3 Radiofrequency ablation 27

7.1.4.3.4 Radiofrequency ablation versus partial nephrectomy 27

7.1.4.3.5 Cryoablation versus radiofrequency ablation 27

7.1.4.3.6 Other ablative techniques 27

7.1.4.3.7 Summary of evidence and recommendation for therapeutic approaches as alternative to surgery 27

7.2 Treatment of locally advanced RCC 28

7.2.1 Introduction 28

7.2.2 Management of clinically positive lymph nodes (cN+) 28

7.2.3 Management of locally advanced unresectable RCC 28

7.2.4 Management of RCC with venous tumour thrombus 28

7.2.4.1 The evidence base for surgery in patients with venous tumour thrombus 28

7.2.4.2 The evidence base for different surgical strategies 28

7.2.4.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of RCC with venous tumour thrombus 28

7.2.5 Adjuvant therapy 29

7.2.5.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for adjuvant therapy 29

7.3 Advanced/metastatic RCC 29

7.3.1 Local therapy of advanced/metastatic RCC 29

7.3.1.1 Cytoreductive nephrectomy 29

7.3.1.1.1 Embolisation of the primary tumour 29

7.3.1.1.2 Summary of evidence and recommendation for local therapy of advanced/metastatic RCC 30

7.3.2 Local therapy of metastases in mRCC 30

7.3.2.1 Complete versus no/incomplete metastasectomy 30

7.3.2.2 Local therapies for RCC bone metastases 30

7.3.2.3 Local therapies for RCC brain metastases 30

7.3.2.4 Embolisation of metastases 31

7.3.2.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for local therapy of metastases in metastatic RCC 31

7.4 Systemic therapy for advanced/metastatic RCC 31

7.4.1 Chemotherapy 31

7.4.1.1 Summary of evidence and recommendation for systemic therapy for advanced/metastatic renal cell cancer 31

7.4.2 Immunotherapy 32

7.4.2.1 IFN-α monotherapy and combined with bevacizumab 32
7.4.2 Interleukin-2
7.4.3 Vaccines and targeted immunotherapy
7.4.4 Immune checkpoint blockade
7.4.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for
immunotherapy in mRCC

7.4.3 Targeted therapies
7.4.3.1 Tyrosine kinase inhibitors
7.4.3.1.1 Sorafenib
7.4.3.1.2 Sunitinib
7.4.3.1.3 Pazopanib
7.4.3.1.4 Axitinib
7.4.3.1.5 Cabozantinib
7.4.3.1.6 Lenvatinib

7.4.4 Monoclonal antibody against circulating VEGF
7.4.4.1 Bevacizumab monotherapy and bevacizumab + IFN-α

7.4.5 mTOR inhibitors
7.4.5.1 Temsirolimus
7.4.5.2 Everolimus

7.4.6 Therapeutic strategies
7.4.6.1 Therapy for treatment-naïve patients with clear-cell mRCC
7.4.6.1.1 Sequencing targeted therapy
7.4.6.1.1.1 Following progression of disease
with one or more lines of
VEGF-targeted therapy
7.4.6.1.1.2 Treatment after progression of
disease with mTOR inhibition
7.4.6.1.1.3 Treatment after progression of
disease with cytokines
7.4.6.1.1.4 Treatment after second-line
targeted therapy
7.4.6.1.1.4.1 Treatment after two
VEGF-targeted therapies
7.4.6.1.1.4.2 Treatment after VEGFR-
and mTOR inhibition
7.4.6.1.1.4.3 Combination of targeted agents
7.4.6.2 Non-clear-cell renal cancer
7.4.6.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for
systemic therapy in metastatic renal cell cancer

7.5 Recurrent RCC
7.5.1 Introduction
7.5.2 Summary of evidence and recommendation for advanced/metastatic RCC

8. FOLLOW-UP IN RCC
8.1 Introduction
8.2 Which investigations for which patients, and when?
8.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for surveillance
following RN or PN or ablative therapies in RCC
8.4 Research priorities

9. REFERENCES

10. CONFLICT OF INTEREST
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aims and scope
The European Association of Urology (EAU) Renal Cell Cancer (RCC) Guidelines Panel has compiled these clinical guidelines to provide urologists with evidence-based information and recommendations for the management of RCC.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise and judgement when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions whilst also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition
The RCC Guidelines Panel is an international group of clinicians consisting of urological surgeons, oncologists, methodologists, a pathologist and a radiologist, with particular expertise in the field of renal cancer care. Since 2015, the panel has incorporated a patient advocate to provide a consumer perspective for its guidelines.

All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements, which can be viewed on the EAU website Uroweb: http://uroweb.org/guideline/renal-cell-carcinoma/.

Acknowledgement
The RCC Guidelines Panel is most grateful for the methodological and scientific support provided by Prof. Dr. O. Hes (pathologist, Pilzen, Czech Republic) for two sections of this document: Histological diagnosis and Other renal tumours.

1.3 Available publications
A quick reference document (Pocket Guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices, presenting the main findings of the RCC Guidelines. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text version. Several scientific publications are available, as are a number of translations of all versions of the EAU RCC Guidelines [1, 2]. All documents can be accessed on the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guideline/renal-cell-carcinoma/.

1.4 Publication history and summary of changes
1.4.1 Publication history
The EAU RCC Guidelines were first published in 2000. This 2017 RCC Guidelines document presents a limited update of the 2016 publication.

1.4.2 Summary of changes
All chapters of the 2017 RCC Guidelines have been updated, based on the 2016 version of the guideline. References have been added throughout the document.

Key changes in this 2017 print:
• Section 3.3.3 - Hereditary kidney tumours: This section has been expanded
• Section 5.2 - Imaging evaluations: The findings of a systematic review have been incorporated.

New data and recommendations have been included in the following sections:

5.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the diagnostic assessment of renal cell cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contrast enhanced multi-phasic CT has a high sensitivity and specificity for characterisation and detection of RCC, invasion, tumour thrombus and metastatic RCC.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI has a slightly higher sensitivity and specificity for small renal masses and tumour thrombus as compared to CT.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEUS has a high sensitivity and specificity for characterisation of renal masses.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US, Power-Doppler US and PET-CT have a low sensitivity and specificity for detection and characterisation of RCC.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommendations | grade |
--- | --- |
Use multi-phasic contrast-enhanced computed tomography (CT) for general staging and detection of renal cell cancer (RCC). | strong ↑↑ |
Use axial abdominal imaging and CT of the chest for staging of RCC. | strong ↑↑ |
Use non-ionising modalities, mainly contrast enhanced ultrasound (CEUS), for further characterisation of small renal masses, tumour thrombus and differentiation of unclear renal masses. | weak ↑ |
Do not use bone scan and/or positron-emission tomography (PET)-CT for staging of RCC. | weak ↓ |
Perform a renal tumour biopsy before ablative therapy and systemic therapy without previous pathology. | strong ↑↑ |
Perform a percutaneous biopsy in select patients who are considered for active surveillance. | weak ↑ |
When performing a renal tumour biopsy technique, use a coaxial technique. | strong ↑↑ |
Do not perform a renal tumour biopsy of cystic renal masses. | weak ↓ |

7.2.5.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for adjuvant therapy

Summary of evidence | LE |
--- | --- |
Adjuvant cytokines do not improve survival after nephrectomy. | 1b |
Adjuvant sunitinib improved disease-free survival in one of the two available studies, but not overall survival, after nephrectomy in selected high-risk patients. | 1b |

Recommendations | grade |
--- | --- |
Do not offer adjuvant therapy with sorafenib. | strong ↓↓ |
Do not offer adjuvant sunitinib following surgically resected high-risk clear-cell renal cell cancer. | weak ↓ |

7.3.2.5 Recommendations for local therapy of metastases in metastatic RCC

Recommendation | grade |
--- | --- |
Consider local therapy for metastatic disease (including metastasectomy) in patients with a favourable risk profile in whom complete resection is achievable or when local symptoms need to be controlled. | weak ↑ |

7.4.1.1 Summary of evidence and recommendation for systemic therapy for advanced/metastatic renal cell cancer

Summary of evidence | LE |
--- | --- |
In metastatic RCC, 5-FU combined with immunotherapy has equivalent efficacy to INF-α. | 1b |
In metastatic RCC, chemotherapy is otherwise not effective with the exception of gemcitabine and doxorubicin in sarcomatoid and rapidly progressive disease. | 3 |

Recommendations | grade |
--- | --- |
Do not offer chemotherapy as first-line therapy in patients with metastatic clear-cell renal cell cancer (RCC). | strong ↓↓ |
Consider offering a combination of gemcitabine and doxorubicin to patients with sarcomatoid or rapidly progressive RCC. | weak ↑ |

7.4.6.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for systemic therapy in metastatic renal cell cancer

Summary of evidence | LE |
--- | --- |
First line pazopanib is not inferior to sunitinib in clear-cell mRCC patients. | 1b |
Cabozantinib is superior to everolimus in terms of PFS and OS in patients failing one or more lines of VEGF-targeted therapy. | 1b |
Everolimus prolongs PFS in patients who have previously failed or are intolerant of VEGF-targeted therapy when compared to placebo. | 1b |
No combination has proven to be better than single-agent therapy, with the exception of the combination of lenvatinib plus everolimus. | 1a |
Recommendations | grade
---|---
Offer sunitinib or pazopanib as first-line therapy for metastatic clear-cell renal cell cancer (ccRCC). | strong ↑↑
Consider offering bevacizumab + Interferon (IFN)-α as first-line therapy for metastatic RCC in favourable-risk and intermediate-risk ccRCC. | weak ↑
Consider offering temsirolimus as first-line treatment in poor-risk RCC patients. | weak ↑
Offer cabozantinib for ccRCC after one or two lines of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)-targeted therapy in metastatic RCC. | strong ↑↑
Sunitinib can be offered as first-line therapy for non-clear cell mRCC. | weak ↑

2. METHODS

2.1 Data identification

For the 2017 Guidelines, new and relevant evidence has been identified, collated and appraised through a structured assessment of the literature for the chapters as listed in Table 2.1.

A broad and comprehensive scoping exercise was performed. The search was limited to studies representing high levels of evidence (i.e. systematic reviews [SRs] with meta-analysis [MA], randomised controlled trials [RCTs], and prospective non-randomised comparative studies only) published in the English language. The search was restricted to articles published between July 30th 2015 and June 30th 2016. Databases covered included Medline, EMBASE, and the Cochrane Library. A total of 1,602 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance. A search strategy is published online: https://uroweb.org/guideline/renal-cell-carcinoma/?type=appendices-publications.

Specific chapters were updated by way of SRs, commissioned and undertaken by the panel in conjunction with the EAU Guidelines Office, based on topics or questions prioritised by the Guidelines Panel. These reviews were performed using standard Cochrane SR methodology http://www.cochranelibrary.com/about/about-cochrane-systematic-reviews.html.

A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address.

The EAU Guidelines Office are in the process of introducing modified GRADE methodology across all 20 guidelines [3, 4]. This will be a phased introduction, with the RCC Guidelines Panel already incorporating these changes in their 2017 Guidelines print.

The Summary of Evidence (SOE) tables provided for each recommendation within the guidelines address a number of key elements:

1. the overall quality of the evidence which exists for the recommendation;
2. the magnitude of the effect (individual or combined effects);
3. the certainty of the results (precision, consistency, heterogeneity and other statistical or study related factors);
4. the balance between desirable and undesirable outcomes;
5. the impact of patient values and preferences on the intervention;
6. the certainty of those patient values and preferences.

These key elements are the basis which panels use to define the strength of each recommendation. The strength of each recommendation is represented by the words ‘strong’ or ‘weak’ and is directional, either ‘do it’ (as represented by arrows pointing upwards) or ‘do not do it’ (arrows pointing downwards) [5]. The strength of each recommendation is determined by the balance between desirable and undesirable consequences of alternative management strategies, the quality of the evidence (including certainty of estimates), and nature and variability of patient values and preferences. The SOE tables will be posted online for consultation.
Table 2.1: Description of update and summary of review methodology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Brief description of review methodology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introduction</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Methods</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Epidemiology, aetiology and pathology</td>
<td>This chapter was updated by a traditional narrative review, based on a structured literature assessment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Staging and grading classification systems</td>
<td>This chapter was updated by a traditional narrative review, based on a structured literature assessment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Diagnostic evaluation</td>
<td>Section 5.2 (Diagnostic imaging) was revised based on a SR [6]. The remainder of the chapter was updated by a structured literature assessment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Prognosis</td>
<td>This chapter was updated by a traditional narrative review, based on a structured literature assessment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Treatment (Disease management)</td>
<td>Chapters 7.1.2 and 7.2.4 (Treatment of localised and locally advanced disease) were revised based on an updated SR. The remainder of the chapter was updated using a structured literature assessment. Systemic therapy for metastatic disease: this section was updated by a SR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Surveillance following radical or partial nephrectomy or ablative therapies</td>
<td>This chapter was updated by a traditional narrative review, based on a structured literature assessment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The findings of a number of SR topics have been incorporated in this 2017 update:
- What is the best surgical treatment option for clinical > T2, N0M0 tumours? What is the best way of performing this procedure? [7];
- A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis Comparing the Effectiveness and Adverse Effects of Different Systemic Treatments for Non-clear Cell Renal Cell Carcinoma [8].

2.2 Review

Chapter 7 ‘Disease management’ was peer reviewed prior to publication. Publications ensuing from SRs have all been peer reviewed. The other sections of the RCC Guidelines were peer reviewed prior to publication in 2015.

2.3 Future goals

For their future updates, the RCC Guideline Panel aims to focus on patient-reported outcomes.

The use of clinical quality indicators is an area of interest for the RCC Panel. A number of key quality indicators for this patient group have been selected:
- thorax computed tomography (CT) for staging of pulmonary metastasis;
- proportion of patients with T1aN0M0 tumours undergoing nephron-sparing surgery as first treatment;
- the proportion of patients treated within six weeks after diagnosis;
- the proportion of patients with metastatic RCC offered treatment with targeting agents;
- the proportion of patients who undergo minimally invasive or operative treatment as first treatment who die within 30 days;

Panel members have set up a database to capture current practice of follow-up of RCC patients in a number of European Centres. Assessing patterns of recurrence and use of imaging techniques are primary outcomes for this project.

The results of ongoing and new SRs will be included in the 2018 update of the RCC Guidelines.

Topics of ongoing SRs:
- What is the best treatment option for T1-T2 tumours? (updated review);
- What is the best treatment option for T1a tumours?;
- What is the best treatment option for T1b-T2a tumours? (updated review);
- What is the best treatment option for T2b tumours;
- Systematic review and meta-analysis of systemic therapy of renal tumours (Cochrane Review).
3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY

3.1 Epidemiology
Renal cell cancer represents 2-3% of all cancers [9], with the highest incidence in Western countries. Over the last two decades the incidence of RCC increased by about 2%, both worldwide and in Europe. In Western European countries this incidence stabilised over the past decade [10]. In 2012, there were approximately 84,400 new cases of RCC and 34,700 kidney-cancer-related deaths in the European Union [11]. In Europe, overall mortality rates for RCC increased up to the early 1990s, and stabilised or declined thereafter [12]. Mortality has decreased since the 1980s in Scandinavian countries and since the early 1990s in France, Germany, Austria, the Netherlands, and Italy. However, in some European countries (Croatia, Estonia, Greece, Ireland, Slovakia), mortality rates still show an upward trend [12]. Data from the United States also show increased incidence [13].

There is a 1.5:1 male predominance, with a peak incidence between 60 and 70 years. Aetiological factors include smoking, obesity [14] and hypertension. Having a first-degree relative with RCC also increases the risk of RCC [15]. A number of other factors associated with higher or lower RCC-risk include specific dietary habits, occupational exposure to specific carcinogens, acetaminophen and non-aspirin non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs [16], cruciferous vegetables [17], nephrolithiasis [18], and viral hepatitis [19-23]. However, data from the literature are still inconclusive [24, 25]. Moderate alcohol consumption appears to have a protective effect for unknown reasons [26-28]. Effective prophylaxis includes avoidance of cigarette smoking and obesity.

Due to increased detection of tumours by ultrasound (US) and computed tomography (CT), the number of incidentally diagnosed RCCs has increased. These tumours are usually smaller and of lower stage [29-31].

3.1.1 Summary of evidence and recommendation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Several verified risk factors have been identified including smoking, obesity and hypertension. These are considered definite risk factors for RCC.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For the most important primary prevention of RCC, eliminate cigarette smoking and reduce weight.</td>
<td>strong 1↑ 1↑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2 Histological diagnosis
Renal cell carcinomas comprise a broad spectrum of histopathological entities described in the 2016 World Health Organization (WHO) classification [32, 33]. There are three main RCC types: clear cell (ccRCC), papillary (pRCC - type I and II) and chromophobe (chRCC). Renal cell cancer type classification has been confirmed by cytogenetic and genetic analyses [32, 33] (LE: 2b). Collecting duct carcinoma and other infrequent renal tumours are discussed in Section 3.3.

Histological diagnosis includes, besides RCC type; evaluation of nuclear grade, sarcomatoid features, vascular invasion, tumour necrosis, and invasion of the collecting system and peri-renal fat, pT or even pN categories. The four-tiered WHO/ISUP (International Society of Urological Pathology) grading system has replaced the Fuhrman grading system [32, 33].

3.2.1 Clear cell renal cell cancer
Overall, clear-cell RCC (ccRCC) is well circumscribed and a capsule is usually absent. The cut surface is golden-yellow, often with haemorrhage and necrosis. Loss of chromosome 3p and mutation of the von Hippel-Lindau (VHL) gene at chromosome 3p25 are frequently found, including additional tumour suppressor genes including SETD2, BAP1, and PBRM1; all genes are identified near the VHL gene within a region that is frequently deleted in ccRCC [34]. In general, ccRCC has a worse prognosis compared to pRCC and chRCC [35, 36] even after stratification for stage and grade [37]. The five-year cancer-specific-survival (CSS) rate was 91%, 74%, 67% and 32% for TNM stages I, II, III and IV (patients treated between 1987-1998) [38]. For more details, see Section 6.3 - Histological factors.
3.2.2 **Papillary renal cell cancer**

Papillary RCC (pRCC) is the second most commonly encountered morphotype of RCC. Papillary RCC has traditionally been subdivided into two types [33]. Type 1 and 2 pRCC, which were shown to be clinically and biologically distinct; pRCC type 1 is associated with activating germline mutations of MET and pRCC type 2 is associated with activation of the NRF2-ARE pathway with at least three subtypes [39]. Macroscopically, pRCC is well circumscribed with pseudocapsule, yellow or brown in colour, and a soft structure. Compared to ccRCC, pRCC has a significantly higher rate of organ-confined tumour (pT1-2N0M0) and a higher five-year CSS rate [40]. Papillary RCC type 1 is more common and generally considered to have a better prognosis than pRCC type 2 [33, 41]. Exophytic spherical growth, pseudo-necrotic changes and pseudo-capsule are typical signs of pRCC type 1. Tumours are fragile. On post-contrast CT, a hypodense central area of tumour surrounded by vital tumour tissue is seen, presented as a serpiginous contrast-enhancing margin on CT [42].

3.2.3 **Chromophobe (chRCC)**

Overall, chRCC is a pale tan, relatively homogenous and tough, well-demarcated mass without a capsule. Chromophobe RCC cannot be graded (by the Fuhrman grading system), because of its innate nuclear atypia. An alternative grading system has been proposed, but has yet to be validated [32, 33]. Loss of chromosomes Y, 1, 2, 6, 10, 13, 17 and 21 are typical genetic changes [32, 33]. The prognosis is relatively good, with high five-year recurrence-free survival (RFS), and ten-year CSS [43]. The new WHO/ISUP Grading system merges former entity hybrid oncocytic chromophobe tumour with chRCC.

3.3 **Other renal tumours**

Other renal tumours constitute the remaining 10-15% of renal cortical tumours. These include a variety of uncommon, sporadic, and familial carcinomas, some only recently described, as well as a group of unclassified carcinomas. A summary of these tumours is provided in Table 3.1, but some clinically relevant tumours and extremely rare entities are mentioned below.

3.3.1 **Carcinoma associated with end-stage renal disease; acquired cystic disease-associated RCC**

Cystic degenerative changes (acquired cystic kidney disease [ACKD]) and a higher incidence of RCC are typical features of ESKD (end-stage kidney disease). Renal cell cancers of native end-stage kidneys are found in about 4% of patients. Their lifetime risk of developing RCCs is at least ten times higher than in the general population. Compared with sporadic RCCs, RCCs associated with ESKD are generally multicentric and bilateral, found in younger patients (mostly male), and are less aggressive [44, 45]. The relatively indolent outcome of tumours in ESKD is due to the mode of diagnosis and a specific ACKD-related molecular pathway which has still to be determined [45]. Although the histological spectrum of ESKD tumours is similar to that of sporadic RCC, the predominant form is pRCC. The remaining tumours are mostly ccRCC [44-46]. A specific subtype of RCC occurring only in end-stage kidneys has been described as Acquired Cystic Disease-associated RCC (ACD-RCC) [47] with indolent clinical behaviour, likely due to early detection in patients with ESKD on periodic follow-up [33].

3.3.2 **Papillary adenoma**

These tumours have a papillary or tubular architecture of low nuclear grade and may be up to 15 mm in diameter, or smaller [48], according to the WHO 2016 classification [33].

3.3.3 **Hereditary kidney tumours**

Five to eight percent of RCC is hereditary; to date there are ten hereditary RCC syndromes known, associated with specific germline mutations, RCC histology, and comorbidities. Hereditary RCC syndromes are often suggested by family history, age of onset and presence of other lesions typical for the respective syndromes. Median age for hereditary RCC is 37 years; 70% of hereditary RCC tumours are found in the lowest decile (< 46 years old) of all RCC tumours [49]. Hereditary kidney tumours are found in the following entities: VHL syndrome, hereditary pRCC, Birt-Hogg-Dubé syndrome (see Hybrid oncocytoma-chromophobe carcinoma), hereditary leiomyomatosis and RCC (HLRCC), tuberous sclerosis (TS), germ line succinate dehydrogenase (SDH) mutation, non-polypsis colorectal cancer syndrome, hyperparathyroidism-jaw tumour syndrome, phosphatase and tensin homolog (PTEN) harartoma syndrome (PHTS), constitutional chromosome 3 translocation, and familial nonsyndromic ccRCC. Renal medullary carcinoma can be included because of its association with hereditary haemoglobinopathies [47, 48, 50, 51].

Patients with hereditary kidney cancer syndromes may require repeated surgical interventions [52, 53]. Appropriately timed nephron-sparing approaches are recommended with the exception of Hereditary Leiomyomatosis and RCC (HLRCC) and succinate dehydrogenase (SDH) syndromes, for which surveillance is recommended until the largest solid tumour reaches 3 cm in diameter, to reduce interventions [54]. Active
surveillance for VHL, BDH and HPRCC should, in individual patients, follow the growth kinetics, size and location of the tumours rather than apply a standardised fixed follow-up interval. Regular screening for both renal and extra-renal lesions should follow international guidelines for these syndromes. Multi-disciplinary and co-ordinated care should be offered, where appropriate [55].

Although not hereditary, somatic fusion translocations of TFE3 and TFEB may affect 15% of patients with RCC younger than 45 years and 20-45% of children and young adults with RCC [56].

3.3.4 Angiomyolipoma

Angiomyolipoma (AML) is a benign mesenchymal tumour, which can occur sporadically, and is four times more common in females [57]. Angiomyolipoma also occurs in tuberous sclerosis and accounts for approximately 1% of surgically removed tumours. Ultrasound, CT, and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) often lead to diagnosis due to the presence of adipose tissue. Biopsy is rarely useful. Pre-operatively, it may be difficult to differentiate between smooth muscle cell tumours and epithelial tumours. Angiomyolipoma can be found in tuberous sclerosis in lymph nodes (LNs), but it is not metastasis, and has a multicentric genesis. Angiomyolipoma can be due to angiotrophic-type growth extending into the renal vein or the inferior vena cava. Angiomyolipoma with LN involvement and tumorous thrombus is benign. Only epithelioid AML is potentially malignant [48, 58]. Angiomyolipoma has a slow and consistent growth rate, and minimal morbidity [59]. The main complications of renal AML are retroperitoneal bleeding or bleeding into the urinary collection system, which can be life-threatening [60]. The bleeding tendency is related to the angiogenic component of the tumour that includes irregular and aneurysmatic blood vessels [60]. The major risk factors for bleeding are tumour size, grade of the angiogenic component, and the presence of tuberous sclerosis [60, 61]. Indications for intervention are pain, bleeding, or suspected malignancy.

3.3.4.1 Treatment

Active surveillance (AS) is the most appropriate option for most AMLs [57, 59, 62] (LE: 3). Risk factors for delayed intervention include tumour size > 4 cm and symptoms at diagnosis [62]. Selective arterial embolisation (SAE) seems to be the first-line option used for active treatment after AS is discontinued [62] (LE: 3). Selective arterial embolisation is an efficient treatment for AML devascularisation, but only for volume reduction [63].

Although SAE controls haemorrhage in the acute setting, it has limited value long-term [64, 65]. If surgery is selected, most cases of AML can be managed by conservative nephron-sparing surgery (NSS), although some patients may require complete nephrectomy [61] (LE: 3). Radiofrequency ablation (RFA) can be an option as well [59, 60, 66]. The volume of AML can be reduced by the mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) inhibitor everolimus [67]. A clinical phase II trial and its open-label extension of medical management with everolimus in AMLs not requiring surgical intervention, showed a response rate of 81.6 (64.5%) (≥ 50% or 30% tumour volume reduction) by week 96, confirming the long-term safety profile of everolimus [67]. Sirolimus can be combined with deferred surgery [68].
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Clinical relevant notes</th>
<th>Malignant potential</th>
<th>Treatment of localised tumour/metastatic tumour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sarcomatoid variants of RCC</td>
<td>Sign of high-grade transformation without being a distinct histological entity.</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Surgery. Sunitinib, gemcitabine plus doxorubicin is also an option [69].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiilocular cystic renal neoplasm of low malignant potential</td>
<td>Formerly multilocular cystic RCC</td>
<td>Benign</td>
<td>Surgery, nephron-sparing surgery (NSS).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma of the collecting ducts of Bellini</td>
<td>Rare, often presenting at an advanced stage (N+ 44% and M1 33% at diagnosis). The hazard ratio (HR) CSS in comparison with ccRCC is 4.49 [36].</td>
<td>High, very aggressive. Median survival 30 months [70].</td>
<td>Surgery. Response to targeted therapies is poor [71].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal medullary carcinoma</td>
<td>Very rare. Mainly young black men with sickle cell trait.</td>
<td>High, very aggressive, median survival is five months [70].</td>
<td>Surgery. Different chemotherapy regimes, radiosensitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translocation RCC (TRCC) Xp11.2</td>
<td>Rare, mainly younger patients &lt; 40, more common in females. It constitutes with TRCC 6p21 MiT translocation RCCs [72].</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Surgery. Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)-targeted therapy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translocation RCC (6;11)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Low/intermediate</td>
<td>Surgery, NSS. VEGF-targeted therapy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous tubular and spindle cell carcinoma</td>
<td>Tumour is associated with the loop of Henle.</td>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>Surgery, NSS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acquired cystic disease-associated RCC</td>
<td></td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Surgery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear cell papillary RCC</td>
<td>Also reported as renal angiomyomatous tumour (RAT).</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Surgery, NSS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereditary leiomyomatosis and RCC-associated RCC</td>
<td>Rare, new entity in the 2016 WHO classification, caused by a germline mutation of the fumarate hydratase gene [33].</td>
<td>Aggressive</td>
<td>Surgery. No data about treatment of metastatic disease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubulocystic RCC</td>
<td>Mainly men, imaging can be Bosniak III or IV.</td>
<td>Low (90% indolent)</td>
<td>Surgery, NSS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Succinate dehydrogenase-deficient RCC</td>
<td>Rare.</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Surgery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metanephric tumours</td>
<td>Divided into metanephric adenoma, adenofibroma, and metanephric stromal tumours.</td>
<td>Benign</td>
<td>Surgery, NSS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic nephroma/Mixed Epithelial and Stromal Tumour</td>
<td>Term renal epithelial and stromal tumours (REST) is used as well. Imaging – Bosniak type III or II/IV.</td>
<td>Low/benign</td>
<td>Surgery, NSS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oncocytoma</td>
<td>3-7% of all renal tumours. Imaging characteristics alone are unreliable when differentiating between oncocytoma and RCC. Histopathological diagnosis remains the reference standard [73, 74].</td>
<td>Benign</td>
<td>Observation (when histologically confirmed) [75-77]. NSS.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3.3.4.2 Summary

A variety of renal tumours exist, and about 15% are benign. All kidney lesions require examination for malignant behaviour.

### 3.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of other renal tumours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treat Bosniak type III or IV cysts the same as RCC.</td>
<td>strong ⬡️ ⬡️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat angiomyolipoma (AML) with selective arterial embolisation or nephron-sparing surgery, in:</td>
<td>weak ⬡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• large tumours (a recommended threshold of intervention does not exist, the formerly recommended size of &gt; 4 cm wide is disputed);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• females of childbearing age;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• patients in whom follow-up or access to emergency care may be inadequate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat AMLs that are not candidates for active treatment with active surveillance.</td>
<td>weak ⬡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In AML &gt; 3 cm not requiring surgical intervention, medical treatment with everolimus can be considered.</td>
<td>weak ⬡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer active surveillance to patients with biopsy-proven oncocytomas.</td>
<td>weak ⬡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For advanced uncommon renal tumours, develop individualised oncological treatment plans for each patient.</td>
<td>strong ⬡️ ⬡️</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4. STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS

#### 4.1 Staging

The Tumour Node Metastasis (TNM) classification system is recommended for clinical and scientific use [78], but requires continuous re-assessment [79] with the latest version published in 2017. A supplement was published in 2012 (Table 4.1), and the latter’s prognostic value was confirmed in single and multi-institution studies [80, 81]. Tumour size, venous invasion, renal capsular invasion, adrenal involvement, and LN and distant metastasis are included in the TNM classification system (Table 4.1). However, some uncertainties remain:

- The sub-classification of T1 tumours using a cut-off of 4 cm might not be optimal in NSS for localised cancer.
- The value of size stratification of T2 tumours has been questioned [82].
- Since the 2002 version, tumours with renal sinus fat invasion have been classified as pT3a.
- Renal sinus fat invasion might carry a worse prognosis than perinephric fat invasion but is nevertheless included in the same pT3a stage group [83-85] (LE: 3).
- Sub T-stages (pT2b, pT3a, pT3c and pT4) may overlap [81].
- For adequate M staging, accurate pre-operative imaging (chest and abdominal CT) should be performed [86, 87] (LE: 4).
Table 4.1: 2017 TNM classification system [78] and TNM supplement 2012 [88]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T - Primary Tumour</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> X</td>
<td>Primary tumour cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> 0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> 1</td>
<td>Tumour ≤ 7 cm or less in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> 1a</td>
<td>Tumour ≤ 4 cm or less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> 1b</td>
<td>Tumour &gt; 4 cm but ≤ 7 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> 2</td>
<td>Tumour &gt; 7 cm in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> 2a</td>
<td>Tumour &gt; 7 cm but ≤ 10 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> 2b</td>
<td>Tumours &gt; 10 cm, limited to the kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> 3</td>
<td>Tumour extends into major veins or perinephric tissues but not into the ipsilateral adrenal gland and not beyond Gerota fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> 3a</td>
<td>Tumour grossly extends into the renal vein or its segmental (muscle-containing) branches, or tumour invades perirenal and/or renal sinus fat (peripelvic fat), but not beyond Gerota fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> 3b</td>
<td>Tumour grossly extends into the vena cava below diaphragm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> 3c</td>
<td>Tumour grossly extends into vena cava above the diaphragm or invades the wall of the vena cava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> 4</td>
<td>Tumour invades beyond Gerota fascia (including contiguous extension into the ipsilateral adrenal gland)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N - Regional Lymph Nodes</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>N</strong> X</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N</strong> 0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N</strong> 1</td>
<td>Metastasis in regional lymph node(s)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M - Distant Metastasis</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M</strong> 0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M</strong> 1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM stage grouping</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage I</strong></td>
<td><strong>T1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage II</strong></td>
<td><strong>T2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage III</strong></td>
<td><strong>T3</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>T1, T2, T3</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage IV</strong></td>
<td><strong>T4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any <strong>T</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A help desk for specific questions about TNM classification is available at http://www.uicc.org/tnm.

4.2 Anatomic classification systems

Objective anatomical classification systems, such as the Preoperative Aspects and Dimensions Used for an Anatomical (PADUA) classification system, the R.E.N.A.L. nephrometry score, the C-index, an Arterial Based Complexity (ABC) Scoring System and Zonal NePhRO scoring system, have been proposed to standardise the description of renal tumours [89-91]. These systems include assessment of tumour size, exophytic/endophytic properties, proximity to the collecting system and renal sinus, and anterior/posterior or lower/upper pole location.

The use of such a system is helpful as it allows objective prediction of potential morbidity of NSS and tumour ablation techniques. These tools provide information for treatment planning, patient counselling, and comparison of partial nephrectomy (PN) and tumour ablation series. However, when selecting the most optimal treatment option, anatomic scores must always be considered together with patient features and surgeon experience.
5. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

5.1 Symptoms
Many renal masses remain asymptomatic until the late disease stages. More than 50% of RCCs are detected incidentally by non-invasive imaging investigating various non-specific symptoms and other abdominal diseases [81, 92] (LE: 3). The classic triad of flank pain, visible haematuria, and palpable abdominal mass is rare (6-10%) and correlates with aggressive histology and advanced disease [93, 94] (LE: 3).

Paraneoplastic syndromes are found in approximately 30% of patients with symptomatic RCCs (LE: 4). Some symptomatic patients present with symptoms caused by metastatic disease, such as bone pain or persistent cough [95] (LE: 3).

5.1.1 Physical examination
Physical examination has a limited role in RCC diagnosis. However, the following findings should prompt radiological examinations:

• palpable abdominal mass;
• palpable cervical lymphadenopathy;
• non-reducing varicocele and bilateral lower extremity oedema, which suggests venous involvement.

5.1.2 Laboratory findings
Commonly assessed laboratory parameters are serum creatinine, glomerular filtration rate (GFR), complete cell blood count, erythrocyte sedimentation rate, liver function study, alkaline phosphatase, lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), serum corrected calcium [96], coagulation study, and urinalysis (LE: 4). For central renal masses abutting or invading the collecting system, urinary cytology and possibly endoscopic assessment should be considered in order to exclude urothelial cancer (LE: 4).

Split renal function should be estimated using renal scintigraphy in the following situations [97, 98] (LE: 2b):

• when renal function is compromised, as indicated by increased serum creatinine or significantly decreased GFR;

• when renal function is clinically important - e.g., in patients with a solitary kidney or multiple or bilateral tumours.

Renal scintigraphy is an additional diagnostic option in patients at risk of future renal impairment due to comorbid disorders.

5.2 Imaging investigations
Most renal tumours are diagnosed by abdominal US or CT performed for other medical reasons [92] (LE: 3). Renal masses are classified as solid or cystic based on imaging findings.

5.2.1 Presence of enhancement
With solid renal masses, the most important criterion for differentiating malignant lesions is the presence of enhancement [99] (LE: 3). Traditionally, US, CT and MRI are used for detecting and characterising renal masses. Most renal masses are diagnosed accurately by imaging alone. Contrast-enhanced US can be helpful in specific cases [100-102] (LE: 3).

5.2.2 Computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging
Computed tomography or MRI are used to characterise renal masses. Imaging must be performed before and after administration of intravenous contrast material to demonstrate enhancement. In CT imaging, enhancement in renal masses is determined by comparing Hounsfield units (HUs) before and after contrast administration. A change of fifteen, or more, HUs demonstrates enhancement [103] (LE: 3). Computed tomography or MRI allow accurate diagnosis of RCC, but cannot reliably distinguish oncocytoma and fat-free AML from malignant renal neoplasms [73, 104-106] (LE: 3). Abdominal CT provides information on [107]:

• function and morphology of the contralateral kidney [108] (LE: 3);

• primary tumour extension;

• venous involvement;

• enlargement of locoregional LNs;

• condition of the adrenal glands and other solid organs (LE: 3).

Abdominal contrast-enhanced CT angiography is useful in selected cases for detailed information on renal vascular supply [109, 110]. If the results of CT are indeterminate, contrast enhanced ultrasound (CEUS) is a valuable alternative to further characterise renal lesions [6] (LE: 1b).
Magnetic resonance imaging may provide additional information on venous involvement if the extent of an inferior vena cava (IVC) tumour thrombus is poorly defined on CT [111-114] (LE: 3). Magnetic resonance imaging is indicated in patients who are allergic to intravenous CT contrast medium and in pregnancy without renal failure [112, 115] (LE: 3). Advanced MRI techniques such as diffusion-weighted and perfusion-weighted imaging are being explored for renal mass assessment [116].

In patients with hereditary RCC who are worried about the radiation exposure of frequent CT scans, MRI may be offered as alternative.

5.2.3 Other investigations
Renal arteriography and inferior venacavography have a limited role in the work-up of selected RCC patients (LE: 3). In patients with any sign of impaired renal function, an isotope renogram and total renal function evaluation should be considered to optimise treatment decision making [97, 98] (LE: 2a).

Positron-emission tomography (PET) is not recommended [6, 117] (LE: 1b).

5.2.4 Radiographic investigations to evaluate RCC metastases
Chest CT is accurate for chest staging [86, 87, 118-120] (LE: 3). There is a consensus that most bone metastases are symptomatic at diagnosis; thus, routine bone imaging is not generally indicated [118, 121, 122] (LE: 3). However, bone scan, brain CT, or MRI may be used in the presence of specific clinical or laboratory signs and symptoms [121, 123, 124] (LE: 3).

5.2.5 Bosniak classification of renal cystic masses
This classification system classifies renal cysts into five categories, based on CT imaging appearance, to predict malignancy risk [125, 126] (LE: 3). This system also advocates treatment for each category (Table 5.1).

Table 5.1: Bosniak classification of renal cysts [125]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bosniak category</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Work-up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Simple benign cyst with a hairline-thin wall without septa, calcification, or solid components. Same density as water and does not enhance with contrast medium.</td>
<td>Benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Benign cyst that may contain a few hairline-thin septa. Fine calcification may be present in the wall or septa. Uniformly high-attenuation lesions &lt; 3 cm in size, with sharp margins without enhancement.</td>
<td>Benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIF</td>
<td>These may contain more hairline-thin septa. Minimal enhancement of a hairline-thin septum or wall. Minimal thickening of the septa or wall. The cyst may contain calcification, which may be nodular and thick, with no contrast enhancement. No enhancing soft-tissue elements. This category also includes totally intrarenal, non-enhancing, high attenuation renal lesions ≥ 3 cm. Generally well-marginated.</td>
<td>Follow-up, up to five years. Some are malignant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>These are indeterminate cystic masses with thickened irregular walls or septa with enhancement.</td>
<td>Surgery or active surveillance – see Chapter 7. Over 50% are malignant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Clearly malignant containing enhancing soft-tissue components.</td>
<td>Surgery. Most are malignant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3 Renal tumour biopsy
Percutaneous renal tumour biopsy can reveal histology of radiologically indeterminate renal masses and can be considered in patients who are candidates for AS of small masses, to obtain histology before ablative treatments, and to select the most suitable form of medical and surgical treatment strategy in the setting of metastatic disease [127-132] (LE: 3).

Renal biopsy is not indicated for comorbid and frail patients who can be considered only for conservative management (watchful waiting) regardless of biopsy results. Due to the high diagnostic accuracy of abdominal imaging, renal tumour biopsy is not necessary in patients with a contrast-enhancing renal mass for whom surgery is planned (LE: 4).

Percutaneous sampling can be performed under local anaesthesia with needle core biopsy and/or fine needle
aspiration (FNA). Biopsies can be performed with US or CT guidance, with a similar diagnostic yield [130, 133] (LE: 2b). Eighteen-gauge needles are ideal for core biopsies, as they result in low morbidity and provide sufficient tissue for diagnosis [127-131, 134] (LE: 2b). A coaxial technique allowing multiple biopsies through a coaxial cannula should always be used to avoid potential tumour seeding [127-131] (LE: 3).

Core biopsies should be preferred for the characterisation of solid renal masses (LE: 2a). A SR and meta-analysis of the diagnostic performance and complications of renal tumour biopsy (RTB) was recently performed by this Panel. Fifty-seven articles including a total of 5,228 patients were included in the analysis. Needle core biopsies were found to have better accuracy for the diagnosis of malignancy compared with FNA [135]. Other studies showed that solid pattern, larger tumour size and exophytic location are predictors of a diagnostic core biopsy [127, 130, 133] (LE: 2b).

In experienced centres, core biopsies have a high diagnostic yield, specificity, and sensitivity for the diagnosis of malignancy. The above-mentioned meta-analysis showed that sensitivity and specificity of diagnostic core biopsies for the diagnosis of malignancy are 99.1% and 99.9%, respectively [135] (LE: 2b). However, 0-22.6% of core biopsies are non-diagnostic (8% in the meta-analysis) [128-134, 136] (LE: 2a). If a biopsy is non-diagnostic, and radiologic findings are suspicious for malignancy, a further biopsy or surgical exploration should be considered (LE: 4). Repeat biopsies have been reported to be diagnostic in a high proportion of cases (83-100%) [127, 137-139].

Accuracy of RTBs for the diagnosis of tumour histotype is good. The median concordance rate between tumour histotype on RTBs and on the surgical specimen of the following PN or radical nephrectomy (RN) was 90.3% in the pooled analysis [135].

Assessment of tumour grade on core biopsies is challenging. In the pooled analysis the overall accuracy for nuclear grading was poor (62.5%), but significantly improved (87%) using a simplified two-tier system (high grade vs. low grade) [135] (LE: 2a).

The ideal number and location of core biopsies are not defined. However, at least two good quality cores should be obtained, and necrotic areas should be avoided to maximise diagnostic yield [127, 130, 140, 141] (LE: 4). Peripheral cores are preferable for larger tumours, to avoid areas of central necrosis [142] (LE: 2b). In cT2 or greater renal masses multiple core biopsies taken from at least four separate solid enhancing areas in the tumour were shown to achieve a higher diagnostic yield and a higher accuracy to identify sarcomatoid features without increasing the complication rate [143].

Core biopsies of cystic renal masses have a lower diagnostic yield and accuracy and are not recommended alone, unless areas with a solid pattern are present (Bosniak IV cysts) [127, 130, 135] (LE: 2b). Combined FNA and core biopsies can provide complementary results, especially for complex cystic lesions [131, 136, 137, 144, 145] (LE: 3).

Overall, percutaneous biopsies have a low morbidity [135]. Tumour seeding along the needle tract is anecdotal. Spontaneously resolving subcapsular/perinephric haematomas are reported in 4.3% of cases in a pooled analysis, but clinically significant bleeding is unusual (0-1.4%; 0.7% in the pooled analysis) and generally self-limiting [135].

5.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the diagnostic assessment of renal cell cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contrast enhanced multi-phasic CT has a high sensitivity and specificity for characterisation and detection of RCC, invasion, tumour thrombus and metastatic RCC.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI has a slightly higher sensitivity and specificity for small renal masses and tumour thrombus as compared to CT.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEUS has a high sensitivity and specificity for characterisation of renal masses.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US, Power-Doppler US and PET-CT have a low sensitivity and specificity for detection and characterisation of RCC.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommendations | grade
--- | ---
Use multi-phasic contrast-enhanced computed tomography (CT) for general staging and detection of RCC. | strong ↑↑
Use axial abdominal imaging and CT of the chest for staging of RCC. | strong ↑↑
Use non-ionising modalities, mainly contrast enhanced ultrasound (CEUS), for further characterisation of small renal masses, tumour thrombus and differentiation of unclear renal masses. | weak ↑
Do not use bone scan and/or positron-emission tomography (PET)-CT for staging of RCC. | weak ↓
Perform a renal tumour biopsy before ablative therapy and systemic therapy without previous pathology. | strong ↑↑
Perform a percutaneous biopsy in select patients who are considered for active surveillance. | weak ↑
Use a coaxial technique when performing a renal tumour biopsy. | strong ↑↑
Do not perform a renal tumour biopsy of cystic renal masses. | weak ↓

### 6. PROGNOSTIC FACTORS

#### 6.1 Classification
Prognostic factors can be classified into: anatomical, histological, clinical, and molecular.

#### 6.2 Anatomical factors
Tumour size, venous invasion, renal capsular invasion, adrenal involvement, and LN and distant metastasis are included in the TNM classification system [78] (Table 4.1).

#### 6.3 Histological factors
Histological factors include tumour grade, RCC subtype, sarcomatoid features, microvascular invasion, tumour necrosis, and invasion of the collecting system [146]. Fuhrman nuclear grade is the most widely accepted grading system [147]. Although affected by intra- and inter-observer discrepancies, Fuhrman nuclear grade is an independent prognostic factor [148]. A simplified two- or three-strata system may be as accurate for prognostication as the classical four-tiered grading scheme [149, 150] (LE: 3). The new WHO/ISUP (International Society of Urological Pathology) grading system [151] that will replace the Fuhrman grading, needs to be validated for prognostic systems and nomograms.

In a univariate analysis, patients with cRCC vs. pRCC vs. ccRCC had a better prognosis [152, 153]. However, prognostic information provided by the RCC type is lost when stratified to tumour stage [35, 153] (LE: 3).

Differences in tumour stage, grade and CSS between the RCC types are illustrated in Table 6.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Percentage of RCC</th>
<th>Advanced disease at diagnosis (T3-4, N+, M+)</th>
<th>Fuhrman grade 3 or 4 [155]</th>
<th>CSS (HR)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clear-cell RCC</td>
<td>80-90%</td>
<td>28%</td>
<td>28.5%</td>
<td>Referent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>papillary RCC</td>
<td>6-15%</td>
<td>17.6%</td>
<td>28.8%</td>
<td>0.64 - 0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chromophobe RCC</td>
<td>2-5%</td>
<td>16.9%</td>
<td>32.7%*</td>
<td>0.24 - 0.56</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The Fuhrman grading system is validated for ccRCC, but is unreliable for chRCC. HR = hazard ratio.

In all RCC types, prognosis worsens with stage and histopathological grade (Tables 6.2 and 6.3). The five-year overall survival (OS) for all types of RCC is 49%, which has improved since 2006 probably due to an increase in incidentally detected RCCs and the introduction of tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs) [156, 157]. Sarcomatoid changes can be found in all RCC types and are equivalent to high grade and very aggressive tumours.
Table 6.2: Cancer-specific survival by stage and histopathological grade in RCCs - HR (95% CI) [36].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>HR (95% CI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1N0M0</td>
<td>Referent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2N0M0</td>
<td>2.71 (2.17-3.39)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N0M0</td>
<td>5.20 (4.36-6.21)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4N0M0</td>
<td>16.88 (12.40-22.98)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N+M0</td>
<td>16.33 (12.89-20.73)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M+</td>
<td>33.23 (28.18-39.18)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 1</td>
<td>Referent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 2</td>
<td>1.16 (0.94-1.42)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 3</td>
<td>1.97 (1.60-2.43)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 4</td>
<td>2.82 (2.08-3.31)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CI = confidential interval. HR = hazard ratio.

Long-term survival in RCC patients treated by RN or PN between 1970 and 2003; for unilateral, sporadic ccRCC, pRCC or chRCC in a cohort study [154] (Table 6.3).

Table 6.3: Cancer-specific survival of surgically treated patients by RCC type (estimated survival rate in percentage [95% CI]).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Survival time</th>
<th>clear-cell RCC</th>
<th>papillary RCC</th>
<th>chromophobe RCC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5 years (%)</td>
<td>71 (69-73)</td>
<td>91 (88-94)</td>
<td>88 (83-94)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 years (%)</td>
<td>62 (60-64)</td>
<td>86 (82-89)</td>
<td>86 (80-92)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 years (%)</td>
<td>56 (53-58)</td>
<td>85 (81-89)</td>
<td>84 (77-91)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 years (%)</td>
<td>52 (49-55)</td>
<td>83 (78-88)</td>
<td>81 (72-90)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Two subgroups of pRCC with different outcomes have been identified [158]. Type 1 have a favourable prognosis. Type 2 are mostly high-grade tumours with a propensity for metastases (LE: 3). For more details, see Section 3.2 Histological diagnosis. Renal cell cancer with Xp 11.2 translocation has a poor prognosis [159]. Its incidence is low, but it should be systematically addressed in young patients. Renal cell cancer type classification has been confirmed by cytogenetic and genetic analyses [155, 160, 161] (LE: 2b).

### 6.4 Clinical factors
These include performance status (PS), local symptoms, cachexia, anaemia, platelet count, neutrophil/lymphocyte ratio, C-reactive protein (CRP) and albumin [95, 162-166] (LE: 3).

### 6.5 Molecular factors
Numerous molecular markers such as carbonic anhydrase IX (CAIX), vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), hypoxia-inducible factor (HIF), Ki67 (proliferation), p53, p21 [167], PTEN (phosphatase and tensin homolog) (cell cycle), E-cadherin, osteopontin [168] CD44 (cell adhesion) [169, 170], CXCR4 [171], and other cell cycle and proliferative markers [64, 172] are being investigated (LE: 3). None of these markers have clearly improved the predictive accuracy of current prognostic systems, none have been externally validated, and their routine use in clinical practice is at present not recommended. Several retrospective studies and large molecular screening programmes have identified mutated genes in ccRCC with distinct clinical outcomes. The expression of the BAP1 and PBRM1 genes, situated on chromosome 3p in a region that is deleted in more than 90% of ccRCCs, have shown to be independent prognostic factors for tumour recurrence [173-175]. These published reports suggest that patients with BAP1-mutant tumours have worse outcomes compared with patients with PBRM1-mutant tumours [174]. Validated data from surgical series can predict relapse using a sixteen gene signature. This signature is likely to be adopted in clinical trials and may be helpful in the clinical setting in due time [176].

The recognition of the potential relevance of immunotherapy as an approach to RCC management is growing. Prognostic information of cytokines and blockade of immune-inhibitory molecules such as PD-L1 have shown promising therapeutic results. Emerging evidence of chromosomal alterations, through Genome-Wide Association Studies (GWAS), miRNA, SNPs and gene methylations all contribute to improving diagnostic and prognostic information. A number of studies have confirmed prognostic information based on gain of chromosomal regions 7q, 8q and 20q, and chromosomal losses of regions 9p, 9q and 14q, which are associated with poor survival. CpG-methylation-based assays also independently predict survival in ccRCC [177, 178]. An international collaboration is currently investigating GWAS loci for prognostic information.
6.6 Prognostic systems and nomograms
Post-operative prognostic systems and nomograms combining independent prognostic factors have been developed and externally validated [179-185]. These may be more accurate than TNM stage or Fuhrman grade alone for predicting survival (LE: 3). An advantage of nomograms is their ability to measure predictive accuracy (PA), allowing all new predictive parameters to be objectively evaluated. Before being adopted, new prognostic variables or systems should demonstrate that its PA is superior to conventional post-operative prognostic schemes [186]. Recently, new pre-operative nomograms with excellent PA have been designed [187, 188].

Table 6.4 summarises the current most relevant prognostic systems.

6.7 Summary of evidence and recommendations for prognostic factors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In RCC patients, TNM stage, tumour nuclear grade, and RCC subtype provide important prognostic information [22].</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the current Tumour, Node, Metastasis classification system.</td>
<td>strong ↑↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use grading systems and classify RCC subtype.</td>
<td>strong ↑↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use prognostic systems in the metastatic setting.</td>
<td>strong ↑↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In localised disease do not routinely use integrated prognostic systems or nomograms for patient selection. Prognostic systems or nomograms can provide a rational for enrolling patients into clinical trials.</td>
<td>weak ↓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use molecular prognostic markers in routine clinical practice.</td>
<td>weak ↓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients receiving targeted treatments, use molecular prognostic markers to predict response.</td>
<td>weak ↑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 6.4: Anatomical, histological, and clinical variables in the commonly used prognostic models for localised and metastatic RCC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prognostic Models</th>
<th>Variables</th>
<th>( \text{TNM Stage} )</th>
<th>( ECOG ) PS</th>
<th>Karnofsky PS</th>
<th>RCC related symptoms</th>
<th>Fuhrman grade</th>
<th>Tumour necrosis</th>
<th>Tumour size</th>
<th>Delay between diagnosis and treatment</th>
<th>LDH</th>
<th>Corrected calcium</th>
<th>Haemoglobin count</th>
<th>Neutrophil count</th>
<th>Platelet count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Localised RCC</td>
<td>UISS</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SSIGN</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Post-operative Karakiewicz's nomogram</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastatic RCC</td>
<td>MSKCC prognostic system</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IMDC</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heng's model</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ECOG-PS = Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group - performance status; IMDC = International Metastatic Renal Cancer Database Consortium; LDH = lactate dehydrogenase; MSKCC = Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Center; PS = performance status; SSIGN = Stage Size Grade Necrosis; UISS = University of California Los Angeles integrated staging system.
7. **DISEASE MANAGEMENT**

7.1 **Treatment of localised RCC**

7.1.1 **Introduction**

A SR underpins the findings of sections 7.1.2 to 7.2.4.2. The review included all relevant published literature comparing surgical management of localised RCC (T1-2N0M0) [189, 190]. Randomised or quasi-RCTs were included. However, due to the very limited number of RCTs, non-randomised studies (NRS), prospective observational studies with controls, retrospective matched-pair studies, and comparative studies from the databases of well-defined registries were also included.

7.1.2 **Surgical treatment**

7.1.2.1 **Nephron-sparing surgery vs. radical nephrectomy**

Multiple retrospective series as well as one prospective RCT including patients with organ-confined RCC of limited size, respectively T-stage (pT1), have demonstrated a comparable CSS for PN vs. RN [191-195]. However, trials that directly compared both approaches in terms of their oncological safety are rarely available, therefore, the data presented is based on a comparison of data available from retrospective series that have included patient cohorts of different and, in part, limited size.

In addition, PN vs. RN was demonstrated to better preserve general kidney function, thereby lowering the risk of development of metabolic or cardiovascular disorders.

When compared with a radical surgical approach, for NSS, several retrospective analyses of large databases have suggested a decreased cardiac-specific mortality [196, 197] as well as improved OS as compared to RN. However, in some series this held true only for a younger patient population and/or patients without significant comorbidity at the time of the surgical intervention [198, 199]. An analysis of the Medicare database [200] could not demonstrate an OS benefit for patients > 75 years of age when RN or PN were compared with non-surgical management. Another series that addressed this question and also included Medicare patients suggested an OS benefit in an older RCC patient population (75-80 years) when subjected to surgery rather than non-surgical management. Shuch et al. compared patients subjected to PN for RCC with a non-cancer, healthy control group via a retrospective database analysis, showing an OS benefit for the cancer cohort, [201]. These conflicting results indicate that unknown statistical confounders hamper the retrospective analysis of population-based tumour registries.

In contrast, the only prospectively randomised but prematurely closed and heavily underpowered, trial available so far did not demonstrate an inferiority of RN vs. PN in terms of OS. Taken together, the OS advantage suggested for PN vs. RN remains an unresolved issue.

It has been suggested that the more pronounced deterioration of renal function after RN negatively affects patients’ OS [98, 202]. Patients with a normal pre-operative renal function and a decreased GFR due to surgical treatment, generally present with a stable renal function longer term [203]. In contrast, adverse OS in patients with a pre-existing GFR reduction does not seem to result from further renal function impairment following surgery, but rather from other medical comorbidities causing pre-surgical CKD. However, in particular in patients with pre-existing CKD, PN is the treatment of choice to limit the risk of development of ESKD which requires haemodialysis.

Only a limited number of studies are available addressing quality of life (QoL) following PN vs. RN irrespective of the surgical approach used (open- vs. minimally invasive). Quality of life was ranked higher following PN as compared to RN, but in general, patients’ health status deteriorated following both approaches [191, 192, 194, 204-208].

In terms of the intra- and peri-operative morbidity/complications associated with PN vs. RN, there was no difference in the length of hospital stay [192, 193, 207], the number of red blood cell (RBC) units applied [192, 207, 208], or the mean intra-operative blood loss [192, 207]. Complication rates were inconsistently reported and one intervention was not favoured over another [209]. One study indicated a longer operation time for open PN [209], but this was not confirmed by others [210].

In view of the above and since oncological safety (CSS and FS) of PN has been proven to be similar for RN, PN is the treatment of choice for T1b RCC since it preserves kidney function better and in the long term limits development of metabolic as well as cardiovascular disorders. Whether decreased mortality from any cause can be attributed to PN is still unresolved, but in patients with pre-existing CKD, PN is the preferred surgical treatment option as it avoids further deterioration of kidney function, the latter being associated with a higher risk of development of ESKD and the need for haemodialysis.
Partial nephrectomy is unsuitable in some patients with localised RCC due to:

- insufficient volume of remaining parenchyma to maintain proper organ function;
- renal vein thrombosis;
- unfavourable tumour location e.g. adherence to the renal vessels;
- use of anticoagulants.

In these situations the curative therapy is RN including removal of the tumour-bearing kidney. Complete resection of the primary tumour by open- or laparoscopic surgery offers a reasonable chance of cure.

### 7.1.2.2 Associated procedures

#### 7.1.2.2.1 Adrenalectomy

One prospective NRS compared the outcomes of RN or PN with, or without, ipsilateral adrenalectomy [211]. Multivariate analysis showed that upper pole location was not predictive of adrenal involvement, but tumour size was. No difference in OS at five or ten years was seen, with, or without, adrenalectomy. Adrenalectomy was justified using criteria based on radiographic and intra-operative findings. Only 48 of 2,065 patients underwent concurrent ipsilateral adrenalectomy of which 42 were for benign lesions.

#### 7.1.2.2.2 Lymph node dissection for clinically negative lymph nodes (cN0)

The indication for lymph node dissection (LND) together with PN or RN is still controversial [212]. The clinical assessment of LN status is based on the detection of an enlargement of LNs; either by CT/MRI or the intra-operative palpability of enlarged nodes. Less than 20% of suspected metastatic nodes (cN+) are positive for metastatic disease at histopathological examination (pN+) [213]. Both CT and MRI are unsuitable for detecting malignant disease in nodes of normal shape and size [214]. For clinically positive LNs (cN+) see Section 7.2.2.

For patients with clinically negative LNs (cN0) six clinical trials have evaluated the clinical value of LND [212], the latter including one RCT [213] and five comparative studies [215-219]. Smaller retrospective studies have suggested a clinical benefit associated with a more or less extensive lymphadenectomy preferably in patients at high risk for lymphogenic spread. The number of LN metastases (< / > 4) as well as the intra- and extracapsular extension of intranodal metastasis correlated with the patients’ clinical prognosis in some studies [214, 220-222]. Better survival outcomes were seen in patients with a low number of positive LNs (< 4) and no extranodal extension. On the basis of a retrospective SEER database analysis of > 9,000 patients no effects of an extended LND on the disease-specific survival (DSS) of patients with pathologically confined negative nodes was demonstrated [223]. However, in patients with pathologically proven lymphogenic spread (pN+), an increase of ten for the number of nodes dissected resulted in a 10% absolute increase in DSS. In addition, in a larger cohort of 1,983 patients Capitano et al. demonstrated that extended LND results in a significant prolongation of CSS in patients with unfavourable prognostic features (e.g., sarcomatoid differentiation, large tumour size) [224].

Only one prospective RCT evaluating the clinical value of LND combined with surgical treatment of primary RCC has been published so far. With an incidence of only 4%, lymphatic spread appears to be very low. Recognising the latter, only a staging effect was attributed to a (super)extended LND [213]. This trial included a very high percentage of patients with pT2 tumours, which are not at increased risk for LN metastases. Additionally, only 25% of patients with pT3 tumours were subjected to a complete LND. The LN template used by the authors was also not clearly stated.

The most optimal surgical approach remains controversial. Retrospective studies suggest that an extended LND should involve the LNs surrounding the ipsilateral great vessel and the inter-aortocaval region from the crus of the diaphragm to the common iliac artery. Involvement of inter-aortocaval LNs without regional hilar involvement is reported in up to 35-45% of cases [214, 215, 225]. At least fifteen LNs should be removed [224, 226]. Sentinel LND is an investigational technique [227, 228].

#### 7.1.2.2.3 Embolisation

Before routine nephrectomy, tumour embolisation has no benefit [229, 230]. In patients unfit for surgery, or with non-resectable disease, embolisation can control symptoms, including visible haematuria or flank pain [231-233]. These indications will be repeated in Sections 7.2 and 7.3 with cross reference to the summary of evidence and recommendations below.
7.1.2.2.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The oncological outcome in terms of DSS following PN equals that of a radical approach in patients with c/p T1 RCC.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipsilateral adrenalectomy, in the absence of clinical evident adrenal involvement during RN or PN, has no survival advantage.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with localised disease without evidence of lymph node metastases, a survival advantage of LND in conjunction with RN is not demonstrated in randomised trials.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients unfit for surgery with massive haematuria or flank pain, embolisation can be a beneficial palliative approach.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer surgery to achieve cure in localised renal cell cancer.</td>
<td>strong ↑↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer partial nephrectomy to patients with T1 tumours.</td>
<td>strong ↑↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform ipsilateral adrenalectomy if there is no clinical evidence of invasion of the adrenal gland.</td>
<td>strong ↓↓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider an extended lymph node dissection in patients with adverse clinical features including a large diameter of the primary tumour or sarcomatoid histological features.</td>
<td>weak ↑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.1.3 Radical and partial nephrectomy techniques

7.1.3.1 Radical nephrectomy techniques

No RCTs have assessed oncological outcomes of laparoscopic vs. open RN. A cohort study [234] and retrospective database reviews are available, mostly of low methodological quality [192, 235, 236]. Similar oncological outcomes for laparoscopic vs. open RN were found. Data from one RCT [237] and two NRSs [192, 234] showed a significantly shorter hospital stay and lower analgesic requirement for the laparoscopic RN group as compared with the open group. Convalescence time was also significantly shorter [234]. No difference in the number of patients receiving blood transfusions was observed, but peri-operative blood loss was significantly less in the laparoscopic arm in all three studies [192, 234, 237]. Surgical complication rates were low with very wide confidence intervals. There was no difference in complications, but operation time was significantly shorter in the open nephrectomy arm. Post-operative QoL scores were similar [192].

Some comparative studies focused on the peri-operative outcomes of laparoscopic vs. RN for renal tumours ≥ T2. Overall, patients who underwent laparoscopic RN were shown to have lower estimated blood loss, less post-operative pain, shorter length of hospital stay and convalescence compared to those who underwent open RN [234, 238-240]. Intra-operative and post-operative complications were similar in the two groups [234, 238-241]. No significant differences in CSS, PFS and OS were reported [226, 234, 239, 241, 242] (LE: 2b).

The best approach for RN was the retroperitoneal or transperitoneal approach with similar oncological outcomes in the two RTCs [243, 244] and one quasi-randomised study [245]. Quality of life variables were similar for both approaches.

Hand-assisted vs. standard laparoscopic RN was compared in one RCT [245] and one database review [209]. Estimated five-year OS, CSS, and RFS rates were comparable. Duration of surgery was significantly shorter in the hand-assisted approach, while length of hospital stay and time to non-strenuous activities were shorter for the standard laparoscopic RN cohort [209, 245]. However, the sample size was small.

Robot-assisted laparoscopic RN vs. laparoscopic RN was compared in one study [246]. There were no local recurrences, port-site or distant metastases, but the sample size was small and follow-up was short. Similar results were seen in observational cohort studies comparing 'portless' and 3-port laparoscopic RN [247, 248]. Peri-operative outcomes were similar.

7.1.3.2 Partial nephrectomy techniques

Studies comparing laparoscopic PN and open PN found no difference in PFS [249-252] and OS [251, 252] in centres with laparoscopic expertise. The mean estimated blood loss was lower with the laparoscopic approach [249, 251, 253], while post-operative mortality, deep vein thrombosis, and pulmonary embolism events are similar [249, 251]. Operative time is generally longer with the laparoscopic approach [250-252] and warm ischaemia time is shorter with the open approach [249, 251, 253, 254]. In a matched-pair comparison, GFR decline was greater in the laparoscopic PN group in the immediate post-operative period [252], but not after follow-up of 3.6 years. In another comparative study, the surgical approach was not an independent predictor for post-operative CKD [254]. Retroperitoneal and transperitoneal laparoscopic PN have similar peri-operative
outcomes [255]. Simple tumour enucleation also had similar PFS and CSS rates compared to standard PN and RN in a large study [256, 257].

Hand-assisted laparoscopic PN (HALPN) is rarely performed. A recent comparative study of open vs. HALPN showed no difference in OS or RFS at intermediate-term follow-up. The authors observed a lower rate of intra-operative and all-grade post-operative 30-day complications in HALPN than in open PN patients, but there was no significant difference in high Clavien Grade complications. Glomerular filtration rate three months after operation was lower in the HALPN than in the open PN group [258].

The feasibility of off-clamp laparoscopic PN and laparo-endoscopic single-site PN has been shown in selected patients but larger studies are needed to confirm their safety and clinical role [259, 260].

At present, the oncological outcomes of robot-assisted vs. laparoscopic or open PN have been compared only in studies with short-term follow-up. One recent study prospectively compared the peri-operative outcomes of a series of robot-assisted and open PN performed by the same experienced surgeon. Robot-assisted PN was superior to open PN in terms of lower estimated blood loss and shorter hospital stay. Warm ischaemia time, operative time, immediate- early- and short-term complications, variation of creatinine levels, and pathologic margins were similar among the groups [261].

A recent meta-analysis, including a series of NSS, with variable methodological quality compared the peri-operative outcomes of robot-assisted and laparoscopic PN. The robotic group had a significantly lower rate of conversion to open surgery and to radical surgery, shorter warm ischaemia time, smaller change in estimated GFR after surgery and shorter length of stay. No significant difference was observed between the two groups regarding complications, change of serum creatinine after surgery, operative time, estimated blood loss and positive surgical margins (PSMs) [262].

7.1.3.3 Positive margins on histopathological specimens of resected tumours
A positive surgical margin is encountered in about 8% of PN [263]. Studies comparing different resection techniques (open, laparoscopic, robotic) are inconclusive [264, 265]. Most trials showed that intra-operative frozen section analysis had no influence on the risk of definite PSMs [266]. A PSM status occurs more frequently in cases in which surgery is imperative, including bilateral tumours [267, 268]. Positive surgical margins increase the risk of disease recurrence, primarily in patients with adverse pathological features (pT2a-pT3a, grade III-IV) [263, 267, 268]. The effect of margin status on long-term oncologic outcomes remains to be determined [264], but PSMs need not translate into worse CSS [267, 268]. Therefore, RN or re-resection of margins presents overtreatment in many cases, but a small percentage of patients will harbour residual malignancy [269]. Patients with PSMs should be informed that they will be subjected to a more intense surveillance (imaging) programme and are at increased risk for secondary local therapies [267, 270]. However, protection from recurrence is not ensured by negative surgical margins [271].

7.1.3.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopic radical nephrectomy has lower morbidity than open surgery.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oncological outcomes for T1-T2a tumours are equivalent between laparoscopic and open radical nephrectomy.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial nephrectomy can be performed, either with an open, pure laparoscopic or robot-assisted approach, based on surgeon’s expertise and skills.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial nephrectomy is associated with a higher percentage of positive surgical margins compared with radical nephrectomy.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer laparoscopic radical nephrectomy to patients with T2 tumours and localised masses not treatable by partial nephrectomy.</td>
<td>strong ↑↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform radical nephrectomy in patients with T1 tumours for whom partial nephrectomy is indicated.</td>
<td>strong ↓↓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.1.4 **Therapeutic approaches as alternatives to surgery**  

7.1.4.1 **Surgical versus non-surgical treatment**  
Population-based studies compared the oncological outcomes of surgery (RN or PN) and non-surgical management for tumours < 4 cm. The analyses showed a significantly lower cancer-specific mortality in patients treated with surgery [200, 272]. However, the patients assigned to the surveillance arm were older and likely to be frailer and less suitable candidates for surgery. Other-cause mortality rates in the non-surgical group significantly exceeded that of the surgical group [272]. Analyses of older patients (> 75 years) failed to show the same benefit in cancer-specific mortality for surgical treatment [273-275].

7.1.4.2 **Surveillance**  
Elderly and comorbid patients with incidental small renal masses have a low RCC-specific mortality and significant competing-cause mortality [276, 277]. Active surveillance is defined as the initial monitoring of tumour size by serial abdominal imaging (US, CT, or MRI) with delayed intervention reserved for tumours showing clinical progression during follow-up [278]. The concept of AS differs from the concept of watchful waiting. Watchful waiting is reserved for patients whose comorbidities contraindicate any subsequent active treatment and do not require follow-up imaging, unless clinically indicated.  

In the largest reported series of AS, the growth of renal tumours was low and progression to metastatic disease was reported in only a limited number of patients [279, 280].  

A single-institutional comparative study evaluating patients aged ≥ 75 years showed decreased OS for those who underwent surveillance and nephrectomy relative to NSS for clinically T1 renal tumours. However, patients selected for surveillance were older with greater comorbidity. At multi-variate analysis, management type was not associated with OS after adjusting for age, comorbidity, and other variables [276]. No statistically significant difference in OS and CSS were observed in another study of RN vs. PN vs. AS for T1a renal masses with a follow-up of 34 months [281].  

The initial results of the multi-institutional Delayed Intervention and Surveillance for Small Renal Masses (DISSRM) registry were recently published. This prospective, NRS enrolled 497 patients with solid renal masses < 4 cm in size who chose AS or primary active intervention. Patients who selected AS were older, had worse ECOG scores, more comorbidities, smaller tumours, and more often multiple and bilateral lesions. Overall survival for primary intervention and AS was 98% and 96% at two years, and 92% and 75% at five years, respectively (p = 0.06). At five years, CSS was 99% and 100%, respectively (p = 0.3). Active surveillance was not predictive of OS or CSS in regression modelling with relatively short follow up [282].  

Overall, both short- and intermediate-term oncological outcomes indicate that in selected patients with advanced age and/or comorbidities, AS is appropriate to initially monitor small renal masses, followed, if required, by treatment for progression [278-280, 283-286].  

A multicentre study assessed QoL of patients undergoing immediate intervention vs. AS. Patients undergoing immediate intervention had higher QoL scores at baseline, specifically for physical health. The perceived benefit in physical health persisted for at least one year following intervention. Mental health, which includes domains of depression and anxiety, was not adversely affected while on AS [287].

7.1.4.3 **Ablative therapies**  

7.1.4.3.1 **Cryoablation**  
Cryoablation is performed using either a percutaneous or a laparoscopic-assisted approach. In comparative studies, there was no significant difference in the overall complication rates between laparoscopic and percutaneous cryoablation [288-290]. One comparative study reported similar OS, CSS, and RFS in 172 laparoscopic patients with a longer follow up compared with 123 patients treated percutaneously with a shorter follow up [289]. A shorter average length of hospital stay was found with the percutaneous technique [289, 290]. No studies are available comparing surveillance strategies to cryoablation.  

A recent SR including 82 articles reported complication rates ranging between 8 and 20% with most complications being minor [291]. Although a precise definition of tumour recurrence is lacking, the authors reported a lower RFS as compared to that of PN.

7.1.4.3.2 **Cryoablation versus partial nephrectomy**  
Studies compared open, laparoscopic or robotic PN with percutaneous or laparoscopic cryoablation. Oncological outcomes were mixed, with some studies showing no difference in OS, CSS, RFS, DFS, local recurrence or progression to metastatic disease [292, 293], with some showing significant benefit for the PN techniques for some or all of these outcomes [294-297]. Not all studies reported all outcomes listed, and some were small and included benign tumours. No study showed an oncological benefit for cryoablation over PN.  

Peri-operative outcomes, complication rates and other QoL measures were mixed. Some studies found the length of hospital stay was shorter and surgical blood loss was less with cryoablation [292-294], whilst also finding no differences in other peri-operative outcomes such as recovery times, complication rates
RENAL CELL CARCINOMA - LIMITED UPDATE MARCH 2017

or post-operative serum creatinine levels. Two studies [296, 297] reported specific Clavien rates, with mostly non-significant differences, which were mixed for intra-operative vs. post-operative complications. Estimated GFRs were not significantly different in two of the studies, but in favour of cryoablation in a third [295-297]. Estimates of new CKD were also mixed, with one study in favour of cryoablation [295], another strongly in favour of PN [296], and the third showing no difference [297]. One study compared PN with ablation therapy, either cryoablation or RFA [223], and showed significantly improved DSS at both five and ten years for PN.

A recent study compared 1,057 patients treated by PN to 180 treated by RFA and 187 treated by cryoablation for a cT1 tumour and found no difference regarding RFS between the three techniques. Metastasis-free survival was superior after PN and cryoablation compared to RFA for cT1a patients. However, follow-up of patients treated by thermal ablations was shorter [198].

7.1.4.3.3 Radiofrequency ablation

Radiofrequency ablation is performed laparoscopically or percutaneously. Four studies compared patients with T1a tumours treated by laparoscopic or percutaneous RFA [298-301].

Complications occurred in up to 29% of patients but were mostly minor. Complication rates were similar in patients treated laparoscopically or percutaneously. One study with a limited number of patients [300] found a higher rate of incomplete ablation in patients treated by percutaneous RFA. However, no differences in recurrence or CSS were found in the three comparative studies.

7.1.4.3.4 Radiofrequency ablation versus partial nephrectomy

Most publications about RFA are retrospective cohort studies with a low number of patients and limited follow-up. Three studies retrospectively compared RFA to surgery in patients with T1a tumours [302-304].

One study [303] compared T1a patients who underwent either RFA (percutaneous or laparoscopic) or PN and found no difference in OS and CSS. Another study retrospectively reviewed 105 T1a patients treated by percutaneous RFA or RN. Cancer-specific survival was 100% in both groups. Overall survival was lower in the RFA group but patients treated with surgery were younger [302].

In a monocentric study that compared 34 RFA patients to sixteen open PN patients, a higher rate of complications and transfusions was shown in the PN group. Although the tumours were larger in PN patients, progression rates were similar (0%) [304].

A recent meta-analysis [305] reported comparable complication rates and post-operative eGFRs between RFA and PN. The local tumour recurrence rate was higher in the RFA group than in the PN group (OR = 1.81) but there was no difference regarding the occurrence of distant metastasis.

7.1.4.3.5 Cryoablation versus radiofrequency ablation

Two studies compared RFA and cryoablation [306, 307]. No significant differences were reported for OS, CSS, or RFS in either study. For local RFS at five years, one study [306] reported improvement with RFA, while the other [307] reported a benefit with cryoablation. One study [306] reported no differences in Clavien complication rates between the techniques.

7.1.4.3.6 Other ablative techniques

Some studies have shown the feasibility of other ablative techniques, such as microwave ablation, laser ablation, and high-intensity focused US ablation. However, these techniques are considered experimental.

7.1.4.3.7 Summary of evidence and recommendation for therapeutic approaches as alternative to surgery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Most population-based analyses show a significantly lower cancer-specific mortality for patients treated with surgery compared to non-surgical management.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In active surveillance cohorts, the growth of small renal masses is low in most cases and progression to metastatic disease is rare (1-2%).</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality of the available data does not allow definitive conclusions regarding morbidity and oncological outcomes of cryoablation and radiofrequency ablation.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low quality studies suggest a higher local recurrence rate for thermal ablation therapies compared to partial nephrectomy.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.2 Treatment of locally advanced RCC

7.2.1 Introduction
In addition to the summary of evidence and recommendations outlined in Section 7.1 for localised RCC, certain therapeutic strategies arise in specific situations for locally advanced disease.

7.2.2 Management of clinically positive lymph nodes (cN+)
In the presence of clinically positive LNs (cN+), LND is always justified [38]. However, the extent of LND remains controversial [214].

7.2.3 Management of locally advanced unresectable RCC
In patients with non-resectable disease, embolisation can control symptoms, including visible haematuria or flank pain [231-233]. The use of neoadjuvant targeted therapy to downsize tumours is experimental and cannot be recommended outside clinical trials.

7.2.4 Management of RCC with venous tumour thrombus
Tumour thrombus formation in the IVC in RCC patients is a significant adverse prognostic factor. Traditionally, patients with venous tumour thrombus undergo surgery to remove the kidney and tumour thrombus. Aggressive surgical resection is widely accepted as the default management option for patients with venous tumour thrombus [308-316]. However, uncertainties remain over the best approach for surgical treatment of these patients.

7.2.4.1 The evidence base for surgery in patients with venous tumour thrombus
The data on whether patients with venous tumour thrombus should undergo surgery is derived from case series. In one of the largest published studies [313] a higher level of thrombus was not associated with increased tumour dissemination to LNs, perinephric fat or distant metastasis. Thus, all patients with non-metastatic disease and venous tumour thrombus, and an acceptable PS, should be considered for surgical intervention, irrespective of the extent of tumour thrombus at presentation (LE: 3). The surgical technique and approach for each case should be selected based on the extent of tumour thrombus (LE: 3).

7.2.4.2 The evidence base for different surgical strategies
A SR was undertaken which included comparison-only studies on the management of venous tumour thrombus, in non-metastatic RCC [317, 318]. Only five studies were eligible for final inclusion, with high risks of bias across all studies.

Minimal access techniques resulted in significantly shorter operating time compared with traditional median sternotomy [319, 320]. Pre-operative embolisation [321] was associated with increased operating time, blood loss, hospital stay and peri-operative mortality in patients with T3 RCC.

No significant differences in oncological and process outcomes were observed between cardiopulmonary bypass with deep hypothermic circulatory arrest or partial bypass under normothermia or single caval clamp without circulatory support [322].

No surgical method was shown to be superior for the excision of venous tumour thrombus. The surgical method was dependent on the level of tumour thrombus, and the grade of occlusion of the IVC [317, 319, 320, 322]. The relative benefits and harms of other strategies and approaches regarding access to the IVC and the role of IVC filters and bypass procedures remain uncertain.

7.2.4.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of RCC with venous tumour thrombus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In patients with locally advanced disease due to clinically enlarged lymph nodes, the survival benefit of lymph node dissection is unclear but lymph node dissection can add staging information.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low quality data suggest that tumour thrombus excision in non-metastatic disease may be beneficial.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour embolisation or inferior vena cava filter do not appear to offer any benefits.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In patients with clinically enlarged lymph nodes, perform lymph node dissection for staging purposes or local control.</td>
<td>weak ↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with non-metastatic RCC, excise the kidney tumour and the vena cava thrombus.</td>
<td>strong ↑↑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.2.5 Adjuvant therapy

There is currently no evidence from randomised phase III trials that adjuvant therapy offers a survival benefit. The impact on OS of adjuvant tumour vaccination in selected patients undergoing nephrectomy for T3 renal carcinomas remains unconfirmed [323-327] (LE: 1b). Results from prior adjuvant trials studying interferon-alpha (IFN-α) and interleukin-2 (IL-2) did not show a survival benefit [328]. Heat shock protein-peptide complex-96 (vitespen) [329], may have a benefit in a subgroup of patients but the overall data from phase III trials were negative. A similar observation was made in an adjuvant trial of girentuximab, a monoclonal antibody against carboanhydrase IX (CAIX) (ARISER) [330]. No difference in DFS was observed in the overall trial analysis, but a subgroup evaluation of patients with high CAIX expression suggests a potential benefit of girentuximab in this population. Several RCTs investigating adjuvant sunitinib, sorafenib, pazopanib, axitinib and everolimus are ongoing. At present, there is no evidence for the use of adjuvant VEGF-R or mTOR inhibitors. One of the largest adjuvant trials of sunitinib vs. sorafenib vs. placebo reported in 2015 (ASSURE) after an interim analysis performed with 62% of the data available. Results demonstrated no significant differences in DFS or OS between the experimental arms and placebo and it was concluded that adjuvant therapy with sunitinib or sorafenib should not be given [162]. The S-TRAC study included 615 patients in a 1:1 randomisation (HR: 0.76; 95% CI: 0.59-0.98; p = 0.03 for DFS and an immature OS). Grade 3/4 toxicity in the study was 60.5% for patients receiving sunitinib, which translated into significant differences in QoL for loss of appetite and diarrhoea. Based on the conflicting results in the two available studies, the Panel rated the quality of the evidence, harms-benefits ratio, patient preferences and costs. Finally, the panel, including representatives from a patient advocacy group (IKCC), voted and reached a consensus decision to not recommend adjuvant therapy with sunitinib for patients with high-risk RCC after nephrectomy [331].

#### 7.2.5.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for adjuvant therapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adjuvant cytokines do not improve survival after nephrectomy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjuvant sunitinib improved disease-free survival in one of the two available studies, but not overall survival, after nephrectomy in selected high-risk patients.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer adjuvant therapy with sorafenib.</td>
<td>strong ↓↓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer adjuvant sunitinib following surgically resected high-risk clear-cell renal cell cancer.</td>
<td>weak ↓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.3 Advanced/metastatic RCC

#### 7.3.1 Local therapy of advanced/metastatic RCC

##### 7.3.1.1 Cytoreductive nephrectomy

Tumour resection is curative only if all tumour deposits are excised. This includes patients with the primary tumour in place and single- or oligo-metastatic resectable disease. For most patients with metastatic disease, cytoreductive nephrectomy (CN) is palliative and systemic treatments are necessary. In a meta-analysis comparing CN+ immunotherapy vs. immunotherapy only, increased long-term survival was found in patients treated with CN [332]. Only retrospective non-comparative data for CN combined with targeting agents, such as sunitinib, sorafenib and others, are available. Cytoreductive nephrectomy is currently recommended in mRCC patients with a good PS, large primary tumours and low metastatic volume. In patients with poor PS or Metastatic Renal Cancer Database Consortium (IMDC) risk, small primaries and high metastatic volume and/or a sarcomatoid tumour, CN is not recommended.

#### 7.3.1.1 Embolisation of the primary tumour

In patients unfit for surgery, or with non-resectable disease, embolisation can control symptoms, including visible haematuria or flank pain [231-233] (see recommendation Section 7.1.2.2.4).
7.3.1.1.2 Summary of evidence and recommendation for local therapy of advanced/metastatic RCC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cytoreductive nephrectomy combined with interferon-alpha improves survival in patients with metastatic RCC and good performance status.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytoreductive nephrectomy for patients with simultaneous complete resection of a single metastasis or oligometastases may improve survival and delay systemic therapy.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer cytoreductive nephrectomy to favourable- and intermediate-risk patients with metastatic RCC.</td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.3.2 Local therapy of metastases in mRCC

A systematic review of the local treatment of metastases from RCC in any organ was undertaken [333]. Interventions included metastasectomy, various radiotherapy modalities, and no local treatment. The outcomes assessed were OS, CSS and PFS, local symptom control and adverse events. A risk-of-bias assessment was conducted [334]. Of the 2,235 studies identified only sixteen non-randomised comparative studies were included.

Eight studies reported on local therapies of RCC-metastases in various organs [335-342]. This included metastases to any single organ or multiple organs. Three studies reported on local therapies of RCC metastases in bone, including the spine [343-345], two in the brain [346, 347] and one each in the liver [348] lung [349] and pancreas [350]. Three studies [339, 341, 349] were abstracts. Data were too heterogeneous for meta-analysis. There was considerable variation in the type and distribution of systemic therapies (cytokines and VEGF-inhibitors) and in reporting the results.

7.3.2.1 Complete versus no/incomplete metastasectomy

All eight studies [335-342] on RCC metastases in various organs compared complete vs. no and/or incomplete metastasectomy. However, in one study [338], complete resections were achieved in only 45% of the metastasectomy cohort, which was compared with no metastasectomy. Non-surgical modalities were not applied. Six studies [335, 337-339, 341, 342] reported a significantly longer median OS or CSS following complete metastasectomy (the median value for OS or CSS was 40.75 months, range 23-122 months) compared with incomplete and/or no metastasectomy (the median value for OS or CSS was 14.8 months, range 8.4-55.5 months). Of the two remaining studies, one [336] showed no significant difference in CSS between complete and no metastasectomy, and one [340] reported a longer median OS for metastasectomy albeit no p-value was provided.

Three studies reported on treatment of RCC metastases to the lung [349], liver [348], and pancreas [350], respectively. The lung study reported a significantly higher median OS for metastasectomy vs. medical therapy only for both target therapy and immunotherapy. Similarly, the liver and pancreas study reported a significantly higher median OS and five-year OS for metastasectomy vs. no metastasectomy.

7.3.2.2 Local therapies for RCC bone metastases

Of the three studies identified, one compared single-dose image-guided radiotherapy (IGRT) with hypofractionated IGRT in patients with RCC bone metastases [345]. Single-dose IGRT (≥ 24 Gray) had a significantly better three-year actuarial PFS rate, also shown by Cox regression analysis. Another study [343] compared metastasectomy/curettage and local stabilisation with no surgery of solitary RCC bone metastases in various locations. A significantly higher five-year CSS rate was observed in the intervention group.

After adjusting for prior nephrectomy, gender and age, multi-variate analysis still favoured metastasectomy/curettage and stabilisation. A third study compared the efficacy and durability of pain relief between single-dose stereotactic body radiotherapy (SBRT) and conventional radiotherapy (CRT) in patients with RCC bone metastases to the spine [344]. Pain, objective response rate (ORR), time-to-pain relief and duration of pain relief were similar.

7.3.2.3 Local therapies for RCC brain metastases

Two studies on RCC brain metastases were included. A three-armed study [346] compared stereotactic radiosurgery (SRS) vs. whole brain radiotherapy (WBRT) vs. SRS + WBRT. Each group was further subdivided into recursive partitioning analysis (RPA) classes I to III (I favourable, II moderate and III poor patient status). Two-year OS and intracerebral control were equivalent in patients treated with SRS alone and SRS + WBRT.
Both treatments were superior to WBRT alone in the general study population and in the RPA subgroup analyses. A comparison of SRS vs. SRS + WBRT in a subgroup analysis of RPA class I showed significantly better two-year OS and intracerebral control for SRS + WBRT based on only three participants. The other study compared fractionated stereotactic radiotherapy (FSRT) with metastasectomy (MTS) + CRT or CRT alone [347]. Several patients in all groups underwent alternative surgical and non-surgical treatments after initial treatment. One-, two- and three-year survival rates were higher but not significantly so for FSRT as for metastasectomy + CRT, or CRT alone. Fractionated stereotactic radiotherapy did not result in a significantly better two-year local control rate compared with MTS + CRT.

7.3.2.4 Embolisation of metastases

Embolisation prior to resection of hypervascular bone or spinal metastases can reduce intra-operative blood loss [351]. In selected patients with painful bone or paravertebral metastases, embolisation can relieve symptoms [352] (see recommendation Section 7.1.2.2.4).

7.3.2.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for local therapy of metastases in metastatic RCC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All included studies were retrospective non-randomised comparative studies, resulting in a high risk of bias associated with non-randomisation, attrition, and selective reporting.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With the exception of brain and possibly bone metastases, metastasectomy remains by default the only local treatment for most sites.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrospective comparative studies consistently point towards a benefit of complete metastasectomy in mRCC patients in terms of overall survival, cancer-specific survival and delay of systemic therapy.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiotherapy to bone and brain metastases from RCC can induce significant relief from local symptoms (e.g. pain).</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consider local therapy for metastatic disease (including metastasectomy) in patients with a favourable risk profile in whom complete resection is achievable or when local symptoms need to be controlled.</td>
<td>weak ↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereotactic radiotherapy for clinically relevant bone or brain metastases can be considered for local control and symptom relief.</td>
<td>weak ↑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.4 Systemic therapy for advanced/metastatic RCC

7.4.1 Chemotherapy

Chemotherapy is moderately effective only if 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) is combined with immunotherapeutic agents [353]. However, in one study, interferon-alpha (IFN-α) showed equivalent efficacy to IFN-α + interleukin-2 (IL-2) + 5-FU [354].

A combination of gemcitabine and doxorubicin could be an option in sarcomatoid and rapidly progressive RCC [69, 355].

7.4.1.1 Summary of evidence and recommendation for systemic therapy for advanced/metastatic renal cell cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In metastatic RCC, 5-FU combined with immunotherapy has equivalent efficacy to INF-α.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In metastatic RCC, chemotherapy is otherwise not effective with the exception of gemcitabine and doxorubicine in sarcomatoid and rapidly progressive disease.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer chemotherapy as first-line therapy in patients with metastatic clear-cell renal cell cancer (RCC).</td>
<td>strong ↓↓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider offering a combination of gemcitabine and doxorubicin to patients with sarcomatoid or rapidly progressive RCC.</td>
<td>weak ↑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.4.2 Immunotherapy

7.4.2.1 IFN-α monotherapy and combined with bevacizumab

Conflicting results exist for IFN-α in clear-cell (cc) mRCC. Several studies showed that IFN-α in mRCC has a survival advantage similar to that of hormonal therapy [356]. Interferon-α resulted in a response rate of 6-15%, a 25% decrease in tumour progression risk and a modest survival benefit compared to placebo [357, 358]. However, patients with intermediate-risk disease, failed to confirm this benefit [359].

Interferon-α may only be effective in some patient subgroups, including patients with ccRCC, favourable-risk criteria, as defined by the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center (MSKCC) and lung metastases only [356]. The moderate efficacy of immunotherapy was confirmed in a Cochrane meta-analysis [358]. Bevacizumab + IFN-α increased response rates and PFS in first-line therapy compared with IFN-α monotherapy [360]. All studies comparing targeted drugs to IFN-α monotherapy showed superiority for sunitinib, bevacizumab + IFN-α, and temsirolimus [360-363]. Interferon-α has been superseded by targeted therapy in cc-mRCC.

Table 7.1: The Metastatic Renal Cancer Database Consortium (IMDC) risk model [364]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk factors**</th>
<th>Cut-off point used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Karnofsky performance status</td>
<td>&lt; 80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time from diagnosis to treatment</td>
<td>&lt; 12 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemoglobin</td>
<td>&lt; Lower limit of laboratory reference range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corrected serum calcium</td>
<td>&gt; 10.0 mg/dL (2.4 mmol/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolute neutrophil count (neutrophilia)</td>
<td>&gt; upper limit of normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platelets (thrombocytosis)</td>
<td>&gt; upper limit of normal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The MSKCC (Motzer) criteria are also widely used in this setting [357].
** Favourable (low) risk, no risk factors; intermediate risk, one or two risk factors; poor (high) risk, three to six risk factors.

7.4.2.2 Interleukin-2

Interleukin-2 has been used to treat mRCC since 1985, with response rates ranging from 7% to 27% [363, 365, 366]. Complete and durable responses have been achieved with high-dose bolus IL-2, however IL-2 remains the only drug to date that can cure a small percentage of RCC patients. [367]. The toxicity of IL-2 is substantially greater than that of IFN-α [358].

7.4.2.3 Vaccines and targeted immunotherapy

A vaccine trial with tumour antigen ST4 + first-line standard therapy (i.e. sunitinib, IL-2 or IFN-α) showed no survival benefit compared with placebo and first-line standard therapy [368]. Several vaccination studies are ongoing. Monoclonal antibodies against programmed death-1 (PD-1) or its ligand (PD-1L), which have efficacy and acceptable toxicity in patients with RCC [369], are currently being investigated in phase III trials.

7.4.2.4 Immune checkpoint blockade

Immune checkpoint blockade with monoclonal antibodies target and block the inhibitory T-cell receptor PD-1 or cytotoxic T-lymphocyte associated antigen 4 (CTLA-4)signalling to restore tumour specific T-cell immunity [370]. A randomised dose-ranging phase II trial of nivolumab in metastatic RCC patients revealed a high objective response rate with rapid and durable responses in heavily pre-treated patients [371]. A phase III trial of nivolumab vs. everolimus after one or two lines of VEGF-targeted therapy (CheckMate 025, NCT01668784) reported a longer OS, better QoL and fewer Grade 3 or 4 adverse events with nivolumab than with everolimus [172, 372, 373]. Nivolumab has superior OS to everolimus (HR: 0.73, 95% CI: 0.57-0.93, p < 0.002) in VEGF-refractory RCC with a median OS of 25 months for nivolumab and 19.6 months for everolimus (LE: 1b). Patients who had failed multiple lines of VEGF-targeted therapy were included in this trial making the results broadly applicable. The trial included 15% MSKCC poor-risk patients. There was no PFS advantage with nivolumab despite the OS advantage. A phase III trial is currently investigating the combination of nivolumab and ipilimumab vs. sunitinib in first-line treatment (CheckMate 214, NCT 02231749) [167]. Combinations of VEGF-targeted therapy and immune therapy are also being investigated and include:

- Javelin Renal 101 - NCT02684006;
- IMmotion151 - NCT02420821;
- pembrolizumab + axitinib - NCT02133742;
- lenvatinib + everolimus or pembrolizumab - NCT02811861.
7.4.2.5  Summary of evidence and recommendations for immunotherapy in mRCC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interferon-α monotherapy is inferior to VEG-targeted therapy or mTOR inhibition in mRCC.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interleukin-2 monotherapy may have an effect in selected cases (good PS, ccRCC, lung metastases only).</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL-2 has more side-effects than IFN-α.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High dose (HD)-IL-2 is associated with durable complete responses in a limited number of patients. However, no clinical factors or biomarkers exist to accurately predict a durable response in patients treated with HD-IL-2.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bevacizumab plus IFN-α is more effective than IFN-α treatment-naïve, low-risk and intermediate-risk ccRCC.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaccination therapy with tumour antigen 5T4 showed no survival benefit over first-line standard therapy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytokine combinations, with or without additional chemotherapy, do not improve OS compared with monotherapy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nivolumab leads to superior OS compared to everolimus in patients failing one or two lines of VEGF-targeted therapy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer nivolumab after one or two lines of vascular endothelial growth factor-targeted therapy in metastatic RCC.</td>
<td>strong ↑↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer monotherapy with interferon-α or high-dose bolus interleukin-2 as first-line therapy in metastatic RCC.</td>
<td>weak ↓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.4.3  Targeted therapies

In sporadic ccRCC, hypoxia-inducible factor (HIF) accumulation due to VHL-inactivation results in overexpression of VEGF and platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), which promote neo-angiogenesis [374-376]. This process substantially contributes to the development and progression of RCC. There are several targeting drugs approved for treating mRCC in both the USA and Europe.

Most published trials have selected for clear-cell carcinoma subtypes, thus no robust evidence-based recommendations can be given for non-ccRCC subtypes.

In major trials leading to registration of the approved targeted agents, patients were stratified according to the MSKCC risk model [356] (Table 7.1). Since the MSKCC (Motzer) criteria were developed during the cytokine era, the IMDC risk model has been established and validated to aid accurate prognosis of patients treated in the era of targeted therapy. Neutrophilia and thrombocytosis have been added to the list of MSKCC risk factors, while LDH has been removed [364].

The IMDC published data on conditional survival which may be used in patient counselling [377]. The IMDC risk model has been validated and compared with the Cleveland Clinic Foundation (CCF) model, the French model, MSKCC model, and the International Kidney Cancer Working Group (IKCWG) model. The IMDC model did not differ from the other models, indicating that a ceiling has been reached in predicting prognosis based solely on clinical factors [378]. Both the MSKCC and IMDC developed models for second-line treatment in the era of targeted therapy based, in part, on their risk models for treatment-naïve patients [379].
Table 7.2: Median OS and percentage of patients surviving two years treated in the era of targeted therapy per IMDC risk group (based on references [364, 378])

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMDC Model</th>
<th>Patients**</th>
<th>Median OS* (months)</th>
<th>2-y OS (95% CI)**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Favourable</td>
<td>157 18</td>
<td>43.2</td>
<td>75% (65-82%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>440 52</td>
<td>22.5</td>
<td>53% (46-59%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor</td>
<td>252 30</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>7% (2-16%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Based on [378]; ** based on [364]

Cl = confidence interval; IMDC = Metastatic Renal Cancer Database Consortium; OS = overall survival.

7.4.3.1 Tyrosine kinase inhibitors

7.4.3.1.1 Sorafenib

Sorafenib is an oral multi-kinase inhibitor. A trial compared sorafenib and placebo after failure of prior systemic immunotherapy or in patients unfit for immunotherapy. Sorafenib improved PFS [380] (HR: 0.44; 95% CI: 0.35-0.55; p < 0.01). Overall survival improved in patients initially assigned to placebo who were censored at crossover [381]. In patients with previously untreated mRCC sorafenib was not superior to IFN-α (phase II study). A number of studies have used sorafenib as the control arm in sunitinib-refractory disease vs. axitinib, dovitinib and temsirolimus. None showed superior survival for the study drug compared to sorafenib.

7.4.3.1.2 Sunitinib

Sunitinib is an oral tyrosine kinase (TK) inhibitor and has anti-tumour and anti-angiogenic activity. Sunitinib as second-line monotherapy (after cytokines) in patients with mRCC demonstrated a partial response in 34-40% and stable disease at > 3 months in 27-29% of patients [382]. First-line monotherapy with sunitinib demonstrated significantly longer PFS compared with IFN-α. Overall survival was greater in patients treated with sunitinib (26.4) vs. INF-α (21.8 months) despite crossover [383].

In the EFFECT trial, sunitinib 50 mg/day (four weeks on/two weeks off) was compared with continuous uninterrupted sunitinib 37.5 mg/day in patients with cc-mRCC [384]. Median time to progression (TTP) with sunitinib 50 mg was numerically longer than the 37.5 mg arm (9.9 months vs. 7.1 months). No significant differences in OS were seen (23.1 vs. 23.5 months; p = 0.615). Toxicity was comparable in both arms. Because of the non-significant, but numerically longer TTP with the standard 50 mg dosage, the authors recommended using this regimen. Alternate scheduling of sunitinib (two weeks on/one week off) is being used to manage toxicity, but robust data to support its use is lacking [385].

7.4.3.1.3 Pazopanib

Pazopanib is an oral angiogenesis inhibitor. In a trial of pazopanib vs. placebo in treatment-naïve mRCC patients and cytokine-treated patients, a significant improvement in PFS and tumour response was observed [386]. Median PFS with pazopanib compared with placebo was:

- 9.2 vs. 4.2 months in the overall study population;
- 11.1 vs. 2.8 months for the treatment-naïve subpopulation;
- 7.4 vs. 4.2 months for the cytokine-pre-treated subpopulation.

A trial comparing pazopanib with sunitinib (COMPARZ) established pazopanib as another first-line option. It showed that pazopanib was associated with significantly worse PFS or OS compared to sunitinib. The two drugs had different toxicity profiles [387], and QoL was better with pazopanib. In another patient-preference study (PISCES), patients preferred pazopanib to sunitinib (70% vs. 22%; p < 0.05) due to symptomatic toxicity [388]. Both studies were limited in that intermittent therapy (sunitinib) was compared with continuous therapy (pazopanib).

7.4.3.1.4 Axitinib

Axitinib is an oral selective second-generation inhibitor of VEGFR-1, -2, and -3. Axitinib was first evaluated as second-line treatment. In the AXIS trial, axitinib was compared to sorafenib in patients with previously failed cytokine treatment or targeted agents (mainly sunitinib) [389].

The overall median PFS was greater for axitinib than sorafenib. The difference in PFS was greatest in patients in whom cytokine treatment had failed. For those in whom sunitinib had failed, axitinib was associated with a greater PFS than sorafenib (4.8 vs. 3.4 months). Axitinib showed > Grade 3 diarrhoea in 11%, hypertension in 16%, and fatigue in 11%. Across all grades, nausea was recorded in 32%, vomiting in 24%, and asthenia in 21%. Overall survival was a secondary end-point of the trial in which crossover was not permitted. Final analysis of OS showed no significant differences between axitinib or sorafenib [390, 391].
In a randomised phase III trial of axitinib vs. sorafenib in first-line treatment-naïve cc-mRCC, a significant difference in median PFS between the treatment groups was not demonstrated [392]. As a result of this study, axitinib is not approved for first-line therapy.

7.4.3.1.5 Cabozantinib
Cabozantinib is an oral inhibitor of TK, including MET, VEGF and AXL. Cabozantinib was investigated in a phase I study in patients resistant to VEGFR and mTOR inhibitors demonstrating objective responses and disease control [171]. Based on these results a randomised phase III trial investigated cabozantinib vs. everolimus in patients with ccRCC failing one or more VEGF-targeted therapies (METEOR) [64]. Cabozantinib delayed PFS compared to everolimus in VEGF-targeted therapy refractory disease by 42% (HR: 0.58 95% CI: 0.45-0.75) [64] (LE: 1b). The median PFS for cabozantinib was 7.4 months (95% CI: 5.6-9.1) vs. 3.8 months (95% CI: 3.7-5.4) for everolimus. The trial recruited 658 patients although PFS was assessed on the first 375 patients. The median OS was 21.4 months (95% CI: 18.7 to not estimable) with cabozantinib and 16.5 months (95% CI 14.7-18.8) with everolimus in VEGF- resistant RCC. The HR for death was 0.66 (95% CI: 0.53-0.83; p = 0.003) [393]. Grade 3 or 4 adverse events were reported in 74% with cabozantinib and 65% with everolimus. Adverse events were managed with dose reductions; doses were reduced in 60% of the patients who received cabozantinib. Discontinuation due to toxicity was not significantly different for the two drugs. The trial included 16% MSKCC poor-risk patients.

7.4.3.1.6 Lenvatinib
Lenvatinib is an oral multi-target TKI of VEGFR1, VEGFR2, and VEGFR3, with inhibitory activity against fibroblast growth factor receptors (FGFR1, FGFR2, FGFR3, and FGFR4), platelet growth factor receptor α (PDGFRα), re-arranged during transfection (RET), and receptor for stem cell factor (KIT). It has recently been investigated in randomised phase II study in combination with everolimus vs. lenvatinib or everolimus alone (see Section 7.4.6.1.1.5 for discussion of results).

7.4.4 Monoclonal antibody against circulating VEGF
7.4.4.1 Bevacizumab monotherapy and bevacizumab + IFN-α
Bevacizumab is a humanised monoclonal antibody. The double-blind AVOREN study compared bevacizumab + IFN-α with IFN-α monotherapy in mRCC [360]. Overall response was higher in the bevacizumab + IFN-α group. Median PFS increased from 5.4 months with IFN-α to 10.2 months with bevacizumab + IFN-α. No benefit was seen in MSKCC poor-risk patients. Median OS in this trial, which allowed crossover after progression, was not greater in the bevacizumab/IFN-α group (23.3 vs. 21.3) [394].

An open-label trial (CALGB 90206) [395, 396], of bevacizumab + IFN-α vs. IFN-α showed a higher median PFS for the combination group. Objective response rate was also higher in the combination group. Overall toxicity was greater for bevacizumab + IFN-α, with significantly more Grade 3 hypertension, anorexia, fatigue, and proteinuria.

7.4.5 mTOR inhibitors
7.4.5.1 Temsirolimus
Temsirolimus is a specific inhibitor of mTOR [397]. Patients with modified high-risk mRCC in the NCT00065468 trial received first-line temsirolimus or IFN-α monotherapy, or a combination of both [362]. Median OS was higher in the temsirolimus group. However, OS in the temsirolimus + IFN-α group was not significantly superior to IFN-α alone [362], Interferon-α toxicity was marked, partly due to the high doses used. The INTORSECT trial investigated temsirolimus vs. sorafenib in patients who had previously failed sunitinib. Although no benefit in PFS was observed, a significant OS benefit for sorafenib was noted [398]. Based on these results, temsirolimus is not recommended in patients with VEGF TKI-refractory disease.

7.4.5.2 Everolimus
Everolimus is an oral mTOR inhibitor, which is established in the treatment of VEGF-refractory disease. The RECORD-1 study compared everolimus + best supportive care (BSC) vs. placebo + BSC in patients with previously failed anti-VEGFR treatment (or previously intolerant of VEGF-targeted therapy) [399]. The initial data showed a median PFS of four months vs. 1.9 months for everolimus and placebo, respectively [399]. This was extended to 4.9 months in the final analysis (HR: 0.33) [400]. Subset analysis of PFS for patients receiving only one previous VEGF TKI was 5.4 months [401]. This included some patients who were intolerant rather than progressed on therapy (PFS was also 5.4 months) [402]. RECORD-1 included patients who failed multiple lines of VEGF-targeted therapy, and received everolimus in a third- and fourth-line setting [399].

The RECORD-3 randomised phase II study of sequential first-line sunitinib and second-line everolimus vs. sequential first-line everolimus and second-line sunitinib in treatment-naïve mRCC reported a higher median
PFS for first-line treatment in the sunitinib group [403]. Primary endpoint was to assess PFS non-inferiority of first-line everolimus to first-line sunitinib. A large number of the crossover patients did not receive the planned subsequent therapy making further analysis complex and underpowered.

7.4.6 Therapeutic strategies
7.4.6.1 Therapy for treatment-naïve patients with clear-cell mRCC

Key trials have established sunitinib, pazopanib and bevacizumab plus IFN-α as first-line treatment options in treatment-naïve patients with cc-mRCC and a favourable-to-intermediate risk score. The evidence for subsequent therapies after temsirolimus in poor-risk patients is unclear. It is therefore more appealing to treat poor-risk patients with sunitinib or pazopanib, both of which were tested in pivotal trials in this population.

7.4.6.1.1 Sequencing targeted therapy
7.4.6.1.1.1 Following progression of disease with one or more lines of VEGF-targeted therapy

Several trials investigated therapeutic options for patients who progressed on first-line VEGF-targeted therapy, including studies which investigated options after one or more lines of VEGF-targeted therapy. RECORD-1 established VEGF TKI therapy until disease progression, followed by everolimus as one of the treatment options for patients with mRCC [399]. However, both nivolumab and cabozantinib were superior to everolimus following a similar trial design as RECORD-1 [172]. Both of these agents should be considered a new standard of care in patients of all risk categories who have failed one or more VEGF-targeted therapies (Figure 7.1).

Nivolumab should be considered for all patients in whom it is not contraindicated in the VEGF-refractory setting owing to a significant OS advantage compared to everolimus, as well as its attractive tolerability profile. Cabozantinib is the first TKI to have both a superior PFS and OS compared to everolimus. Both nivolumab and cabozantinib have different toxicity profiles.

Axitinib is superior to sorafenib in terms of PFS in sunitinib-refractory ccRCC [388]. Neither nivolumab nor cabozantinib has been tested directly against axitinib in the second-line setting. However, the OS advantage of both drugs and tolerability of nivolumab over everolimus in this setting makes them preferable to axitinib.

Tolerability is an important consideration when recommendations cannot be made for efficacy alone. Both everolimus and sorafenib have been outperformed by other agents in VEGF-refractory disease and should not be the standard of care in pure VEGF-refractory disease where superior alternatives are available. It is not currently possible to determine therapy based on baseline characteristics or biomarker expression for any of the above drugs.

Direct comparison of RECORD-1, Checkmate-25 and METEOR data with AXIS data is not advised due to differences in patient populations [389-391, 399].

INTORSECT compared temsirolimus vs. sorafenib after disease progression on sunitinib [398]. Median PFS was higher, but not significant, in the temsirolimus group. However, there was a significant difference in OS in favour of sorafenib. Neither of these agents are recommended or widely used in this setting. These data are not necessarily relevant to other mTOR inhibitors such as everolimus.

Based on difference in OS, recommendations can currently be made as to the best sequence of targeted therapy (Figure 7.1). Two major trials, testing nivolumab and cabozantinib, have changed treatment paradigms in VEGF-refractory RCC (LE: 1a). There is a strong rationale for using both drugs in sequence in the second and third line following VEGF-targeted therapy. This creates a new a standard for the majority of patients.

7.4.6.1.1.2 Treatment after progression of disease with mTOR inhibition

There are limited data addressing this issue. In view of the efficacy of VEGF-targeted therapy in renal cancer, a switch to VEGF-targeted therapy is advised (Panel consensus in conjunction with Motzer et al. [404]).

7.4.6.1.3 Treatment after progression of disease with cytokines

Trials have established sorafenib, axitinib and pazopanib as therapeutic options in this setting with a median PFS of 5.5, 12.1 and 7.4 months, respectively. Based on trial data, axitinib is superior to sorafenib in patients previously treated with cytokine therapy [389-391].

7.4.6.1.4 Treatment after second-line targeted therapy

7.4.6.1.4.1 Treatment after two VEGF-targeted therapies

Based on the results of the nivolumab and cabozantinib trials, a strong rationale exists for preferring both drugs as third-line treatment upon failure of two VEGF-targeted therapies [64, 172] (Figure 7.1).
7.4.6.1.4.2 Treatment after VEGFR- and mTOR inhibition

Although the GOLD trial failed to demonstrate superior efficacy of dovitinib over sorafenib in patients with mRCC who experienced disease progression after receiving prior VEGF- and mTOR-targeted therapies, the results suggest efficacy and safety of sorafenib in the third-line setting [404]. This sequence is not recommended when alternative superior drugs are available.

7.4.6.1.4.3 Combination of targeted agents

No combinations of targeted agents are currently recommended, however, there have been a number of trials with VEGF-targeted therapy and mTOR inhibitors [405-409]. A small randomised phase II trial in which 153 patients received either lenvatinib plus everolimus (n = 51), single-agent lenvatinib (n = 52), or single-agent everolimus (n = 50) demonstrated a PFS benefit for the combination [410]. Lenvatinib plus everolimus significantly prolonged PFS compared with everolimus alone (median 14.6 months [95% CI: 5.9-20.1] vs. 5.5 months [3.5-7.1]; HR: 0.40; 95% CI: 0.24-0.68; p = 0.0005), but not compared with lenvatinib alone (7.4 months [95% CI: 5.6-10.2]; HR: 0.66; 95% CI: 0.30-1.10; p = 0.12). In a post-hoc updated analysis (data cut-off Dec 10, 2014), the difference in OS between lenvatinib plus everolimus vs. single-agent everolimus was significantly increased, median OS 25.5 months [95% CI: 16.4-NE] vs. 15.4 months [11.8-19.6]; HR: 0.51; 95% CI: 0.30-0.88; p = 0.024. Grade 3 or worse serious adverse events occurred in 23 (45%) patients allocated to lenvatinib plus everolimus, 23 (44%) allocated to single-agent lenvatinib, and 19 (38%) allocated to single-agent everolimus.

7.4.6.2 Non-clear-cell renal cancer

No phase III trials of patients with non-ccRCC have been reported. Expanded access programmes and subset analysis from RCC studies suggest the outcome of these patients with targeted therapy is poorer than for ccRCC. Targeted treatment in non-ccRCC has focused on temsirolimus, everolimus, sorafenib and sunitinib [362, 411-413].

The most common non-clear-cell subtypes are papillary type 1 and non-type 1 papillary RCCs. There are small single-arm trials for sunitinib and everolimus [413-416]. A trial of both types of pRCC treated with everolimus (RAPTOR) [416], showed a median PFS of 3.7 months per central review in the intention-to-treat population with a median OS of 21.0 months.

Another trial investigated foretinib (a dual MET/VEGFR2 inhibitor) in patients with pRCC. Toxicity was acceptable with a high relative risk in patients with germline MET mutations [417]. However, a randomised phase II trial of everolimus vs. sunitinib (ESPN) with crossover design in non-cc-mRCC including 73 patients (27 with pRCC) was stopped after a futility analysis for PFS and OS [418]. The final results presented at the 2014 annual meeting of the American Society of Clinical Oncology showed a non-significant trend favouring sunitinib (6.1 vs. 4.1 months). Based on a SR including subgroup analysis of the ESPN, RECORD-3 and another phase II trial (ASPEN) sunitinib and everolimus remain options in this population, with a preference for sunitinib [136, 419, 420]. Patients with non-cc-mRCC should be referred to a clinical trial where appropriate.

Collecting-duct cancers are resistant to systemic therapy. There is a lack of data to support specific therapy in these patients. There is limited data supporting the use of targeted therapy in other histological subtypes such as chromophobe tumours [362, 411].
Figure 7.1: Recommendations for patients with metastatic ccRCC who have failed one or more lines of VEGF targeted therapy

1 Switch to therapies not given previously.
2 Nivolumab and cabozantinib have not been given after everolimus and therefore cannot be recommended above other agents.
3 Sorafenib has an inferior progression-free survival to axitinib.
4 These drugs have shown a survival advantage in VEGF-resistant disease but not in this specific setting.
5 These drugs were given after progression in the pivotal cabozantinib or nivolumab trials [64, 172].
6 Sunitinib and pazopanib can be recommended in all MSKCC risk groups. Bevacizumab/interferon (favourable-intermediate-risk disease) and temsirolimus (poor-risk disease) have not been widely used as first-line therapy in the pivotal VEGF-resistant trials and therefore recommendations are not possible.

Table 7.3: EAU 2017 evidence-based recommendations for systemic therapy in patients with mRCC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RCC type</th>
<th>MSKCC risk group [356]</th>
<th>First-line</th>
<th>LE*</th>
<th>Second-Line after VEGF therapy*</th>
<th>LE*</th>
<th>Third-line*</th>
<th>LE*</th>
<th>Later lines</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clear cell* Favourable, intermediate and poor</td>
<td>sunitinib pazopanib bevacizumab + IFN-α (favourable-intermediate only)</td>
<td>1b 1b 1b</td>
<td>based on OS: nivolumab cabozantinib based on PFS: axitinib sorafenib everolimus</td>
<td>2b 2b 2b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>any targeted agent</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear cell* poor¶</td>
<td>temsirolimus sunitinib pazopanib</td>
<td>1b 2b</td>
<td>any targeted agent</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Non-clear cell § any sunitinib 1b^^ Any targeted agent 4

IFN-α = interferon alpha; LE = level of evidence; MSKCC = Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center; mTOR = mammalian target of rapamycin inhibitor; RCC = renal cell cancer; TKI = tyrosine kinase inhibitor; VEGF = vascular endothelial growth factor.

*Doses: IFN-α - 9 MU three times per week subcutaneously, bevacizumab 10 mg/kg bi-weekly intravenously; sunitinib 50 mg daily orally for four weeks, followed by two weeks of rest (37.5 mg continuous dosing did not show significant differences); temsirolimus 25 mg weekly intravenously; pazopanib 800 mg daily orally.

Axitinib 5 mg twice daily, to be increased to 7 mg twice daily, unless greater than Grade 2 toxicity, blood pressure higher than 150/90 mmHg, or the patient is receiving antihypertensive medication. Everolimus, 10 mg daily orally.

§ No standard treatment available. Patients should be treated in the framework of clinical trials or a decision can be made in consultation with the patient to perform treatment in line with ccRCC.

¶ Poor risk criteria in the NCT00065468 trial consisted of MSKCC risk plus metastases in multiple organs. Evidence for subsequent therapies unclear, making this option less appealing.

# Sorafenib was inferior to axitinib in a RCT in terms of PFS but not OS [391].

^ Level of evidence was downgraded in instances when data were obtained from subgroup analysis within a RCT.

& Everolimus was inferior in terms of OS to nivolumab and in terms of PFS to cabozantinib and should not routinely be given where other superior agents are available.

^^ Based on a SR [420].

7.4.6.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for systemic therapy in metastatic renal cell cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VEGF and TKIs increase PFS and/or OS as both first-line and second-line treatments for clear-cell mRCC.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axitinib has proven efficacy and superiority in PFS as a second-line treatment after failure of cytokines and VEGF-targeted therapy in comparison with sorafenib.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunitinib is more effective than IFN-α in treatment-naïve patients.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bevacizumab plus IFN-α is more effective than IFN-α in treatment-naïve low-risk and intermediate-risk patients.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pazopanib is superior to placebo in both naïve mRCC patients and post-cytokine patients.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First line pazopanib is not inferior to sunitinib in clear-cell mRCC patients.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temsirolimus monotherapy prolongs OS compared to IFN-α in poor-risk mRCC.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nivolumab is superior to everolimus in terms of OS and adverse events in patients failing one or two lines of VEGF-targeted therapy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cabozantinib is superior to everolimus in terms of PFS and OS in patients failing one or more lines of VEGF-targeted therapy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Everolimus prolongs PFS in patients who have previously failed or are intolerant of VEGF-targeted therapy when compared to placebo.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorafenib has broad activity in a spectrum of settings in ccRCC patients previously treated with cytokine or targeted therapies. It is inferior to axitinib in both sunitinib or cytokine pre-treated patients.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both mTOR inhibitors (everolimus and temsirolimus) and VEGF-targeted therapies (sunitinib or sorafenib) can be used in non-clear cell RCC.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No combination has proven to be better than single-agent therapy, with the exception of the combination of lenvatinib plus everolimus.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommendations</td>
<td>grade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer sunitinib or pazopanib as first-line therapy for metastatic clear-cell renal cancer (ccRCC).</td>
<td>strong ↑↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider offering bevacizumab + Interferon (IFN)-α as first-line therapy for metastatic RCC in favourable and intermediate-risk ccRCC.</td>
<td>weak ↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider offering temsirolimus as first-line treatment in poor-risk RCC patients.</td>
<td>weak ↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer cabozantinib for ccRCC after one or two lines of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)-targeted therapy in metastatic RCC.</td>
<td>strong ↑↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer nivolumab after one or two lines of VEGF-targeted therapy in metastatic RCC.</td>
<td>strong ↑↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer axitinib or everolimus to ccRCC patients who failed VEGF-targeted therapy, and when nivolumab or cabozantinib are not safe, tolerable or available.</td>
<td>strong ↑↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence targeted agents in treating metastatic RCC.</td>
<td>strong ↑↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunitinib can be offered as first-line therapy for non-clear cell mRCC.</td>
<td>weak ↑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.5 Recurrent RCC

#### 7.5.1 Introduction

Locally recurrent disease can occur after RN, PN and thermal ablation. After nephron-sparing treatment the recurrence may be intrarenal and/or regional, e.g. venous tumour thrombi or retroperitoneal LN metastases. Both are often summarised as loco-regional recurrences. Recurrence for pT1 tumours after PN are observed in 2.2% and are generally managed surgically depending on the extent of the loco-regional recurrence [421]. After thermal ablation loco-regional recurrences (intrarenal and regional) have been described in up to 12% [422]. Repeated ablation has often been recommended for intrarenal recurrences following thermal ablation. For loco-regional recurrences surgical resection is mandatory and has been described for isolated local recurrences following nephrectomy.

After nephrectomy locally recurrent disease is defined as disease recurring in the renal fossa or remnant kidney. However, metastasis in the non-removed ipsilateral adrenal or non-resected LNs makes interpretation of the true incidence of isolated recurrence in the renal fossa difficult. Treatment of adrenal metastases or LN metastases are often described in series of metastasectomy (see Section 7.3). Isolated local recurrence, however, is rare.

The largest series on the treatment of isolated recurrence was published in 2009 [423]. In 2,945 patients who underwent nephrectomy the authors identified 54 isolated local recurrences in the renal fossa. These, however, included recurrences to the ipsilateral adrenal and LNs. Exclusively retrospective non-comparative data exist which suggest that aggressive local resection offers durable local tumour control and improves survival. Adverse prognostic factors were, a positive surgical margin after resection, the size of the recurrence and sarcomatoid histologic features [423]. In cases where complete surgical removal is not feasible due to advanced tumour growth and pain, palliative treatments including radiation treatment can be considered.

#### 7.5.2 Summary of evidence and recommendation for advanced/metastatic RCC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Isolated recurrence in the local renal fossa is rare.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients who undergo resection of local recurrences in the absence of sarcomatoid features may benefit from durable local control and improved survival.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer surgical resection of local recurrent disease, when feasible.</td>
<td>weak ↑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. FOLLOW-UP IN RCC

8.1 Introduction
Surveillance after treatment for RCC allows the urologist to monitor or identify:
• post-operative complications;
• renal function;
• local recurrence;
• recurrence in the contralateral kidney;
• development of metastases.

There is no consensus on surveillance after RCC treatment, and there is no evidence that early vs. later diagnosis of recurrences improves survival. However, follow-up is important to increase the available information on RCC, and should be performed by a urologist, who should record the time to recurrence or the development of metastases. Patients undergoing follow-up seem to have a longer OS when compared to patients not undergoing routine follow-up [424].

An individualised, risk-based, approach to RCC surveillance was recently proposed. The authors use competing risk models, incorporating patient age, pathologic stage, relapse location and comorbidities, to calculate when the risk of non-RCC death exceeds the risk of RCC recurrence [425]. For patients with low-stage disease but with a Charlson comorbidity index ≥ 2, the risk of non-RCC death exceeded that of abdominal recurrence risk already one month after surgery, regardless of patient age.

Renal function is assessed by the measurement of serum creatinine and eGFR. Repeated long-term monitoring of eGFR is indicated in case of impaired renal function before, or after, surgery. Renal function [426, 427] and non-cancer survival [196, 428, 429] can be optimised by performing NSS, whenever possible, for T1 and T2 tumours [430] (LE: 3). Recurrence after PN is rare, but early diagnosis is useful, as the most effective treatment is redux surgery [431, 432]. Recurrence in the contralateral kidney is also rare and might be related to positive margins, multifocality, and grade [433] (LE: 3). Surveillance can identify local recurrences or metastases at an early stage. In metastatic disease, extended tumour growth can limit the opportunity for surgical resection, which is considered the standard therapy in cases of resectable and preferably solitary lesions. In addition, early diagnosis of tumour recurrence may enhance the efficacy of systemic treatment if the tumour burden is low.

8.2 Which investigations for which patients, and when?
There is no high level evidence to support any surveillance scheme. However, intensive radiological surveillance for all patients is not necessary. The outcome after surgery for T1a low-grade tumours is almost always excellent. It is therefore reasonable to stratify the follow up, taking into account the risk of developing recurrence or metastases. Although there is no randomised evidence, large studies have examined prognostic factors with long follow-up periods [35, 434, 435] (LE: 4). One study has shown a survival benefit for patients who were followed within a structured surveillance protocol vs. patients who were not [424]:

• The sensitivity of chest radiography and US for small metastases is poor. Surveillance with these imaging modalities should not be done [436].
• In low-risk tumours, surveillance intervals should be adapted taking into account radiation exposure and benefit. To reduce radiation exposure, MRI can be used outside the thorax.
• When the risk of relapse is intermediate or high, CT of the chest and abdomen should be performed.
• Surveillance should also include evaluation of renal function and cardiovascular risk factors.
• Positron-emission tomography and PET-CT as well as bone scintigraphy should not be used in RCC surveillance, due to their limited specificity and sensitivity.
• The risk of acute renal failure seems to be negligible in patients with a GFR > 20 mL/min and chronic renal impairment [437].

Controversy exists on the optimal duration of follow-up. Some argue that follow-up with imaging is not cost-effective after five years; however, late metastases are more likely to be solitary and justify more aggressive therapy with curative intent. In addition, patients with tumours that develop in the contralateral kidney can be treated with NSS if the tumours are detected early. For tumours < 4 cm, there is no difference between PN and RN with regard to recurrences during follow up [438] (LE: 3).

Several authors [182, 184, 439, 440], have designed scoring systems and nomograms to quantify the likelihood of patients developing tumour recurrences, metastases, and subsequent death. These systems have been compared and validated [441] (LE: 2). Using prognostic variables, several stage-based surveillance...
regimens have been proposed [442, 443], but none include ablative therapies. A post-operative nomogram is available to estimate the likelihood of freedom from recurrence at five years [179]. Recently, a pre-operative prognostic model based on age, symptoms, and TNM staging has been published and validated [188] (LE: 3). A surveillance algorithm for monitoring patients after treatment for RCC is needed, recognising not only the patient’s risk profile, but also efficacy of the treatment given (Table 8.1). These prognostic systems can be used to adapt the surveillance schedule according to suspected risk of recurrence.

Data from adjuvant trials are generally based on the University of California Los Angeles integrated staging system (UISS) risk stratification, which makes it the most widely used, and validated system [162, 444].

Table 8.1: Proposed surveillance schedule following treatment for RCC, taking into account patient risk profile and treatment efficacy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk profile</th>
<th>Surveillance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 mo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>US</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>CT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CT = computed tomography of chest and abdomen, alternatively use MRI; US = ultrasound of abdomen, kidneys and renal bed.

8.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for surveillance following RN or PN or ablative therapies in RCC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Surveillance can detect local recurrence or metastatic disease while the patient is</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>still surgically curable.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After NSS, there is an increased risk of recurrence for larger (&gt; 7 cm) tumours,</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or when there is a positive surgical margin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients undergoing surveillance have a better overall survival than patients not</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undergoing surveillance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base follow-up after RCC on the risk of recurrence.</td>
<td>strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For low-risk disease, computed tomography (CT)/magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) can be used infrequently.</td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In intermediate-risk patients, offer intensified follow-up, including chest and abdominal CT/MRI scans at regular intervals in accordance with a risk-stratified nomogram.</td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In high-risk patients, include chest and abdominal CT/MRI scans in follow-up examinations.</td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intensify follow-up in patients after NSS for tumours &gt; 7 cm or in patients with a positive surgical margin.</td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base risk stratification on pre-existing classification systems such as the University of California Los Angeles integrated staging system integrated risk assessment score (<a href="http://urology.ucla.edu/body.cfm?id=449">http://urology.ucla.edu/body.cfm?id=449</a>).</td>
<td>strong</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

UISS = University of California Los Angeles integrated staging system.

8.4 Research priorities

There is a clear need for future research to determine whether follow-up can optimise patient survival. Further information should be sought at what time point restaging has the highest chance to detect recurrence. Prognostic markers at surgery should be investigated to determine the risk of relapse over time.
9. REFERENCES


http://www.jurology.com/article/S0022-5347(12)01914-3/abstract


10. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the Renal Cell Cancer working group have provided disclosure statements of all relationships that they have that might be perceived as a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publically accessible through the European Association of Urology website: https://uroweb.org/guideline/renal-cell-carcinoma/?type=panel/

This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION 5
   1.1 Aim and objectives 5
   1.2 Panel composition 5
   1.3 Available publications 5
   1.4 Publication history and summary of changes 5
      1.4.1 Publication history 5
      1.4.2 Summary of changes 5

2. METHODS 7
   2.1 Review 7
   2.2 Future goals 7

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY 7
   3.1 Epidemiology 7
   3.2 Pathological classification 8

4. STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS 9
   4.1 Diagnostic tools 9
   4.2 Serum tumour markers: post-orchiectomy half-life kinetics 9
   4.3 Retroperitoneal, mediastinal and supraclavicular lymph nodes and viscera 9
   4.4 Staging and prognostic classifications 10

5. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION 13
   5.1 Clinical examination 13
   5.2 Imaging of the testis 13
   5.3 Serum tumour markers at diagnosis 13
   5.4 Inguinal exploration and orchiectomy 13
   5.5 Organ-sparing surgery 13
   5.6 Pathological examination of the testis 14
   5.7 Germ cell tumours histological markers 14
   5.8 Diagnosis and treatment of germ cell neoplasia in situ (GCNIS) 15
   5.9 Screening 15
   5.10 Guidelines for the diagnosis and staging of testicular cancer 15

6. PROGNOSIS 16
   6.1 Risk factors for metastatic relapse in clinical stage I 16

7. DISEASE MANAGEMENT 16
   7.1 Impact on fertility and fertility-associated issues 16
   7.2 Stage I Germ cell tumours 16
      7.2.1 Stage I seminoma 16
          7.2.1.1 Surveillance 16
          7.2.1.2 Adjuvant chemotherapy 17
          7.2.1.3 Adjuvant radiotherapy and risk-adapted treatment 17
          7.2.1.4 Risk-adapted treatment 17
          7.2.1.5 Guidelines for the treatment of stage I seminoma 17
      7.2.2 NSGCT clinical stage I 17
          7.2.2.1 Surveillance 18
          7.2.2.2 Adjuvant chemotherapy 18
          7.2.2.3 Risk-adapted treatment 18
          7.2.2.4 Retroperitoneal lymph node dissection 19
          7.2.2.5 Guidelines for the treatment of stage 1 non-seminomatous germ cell tumour 19
          7.2.2.6 Risk-adapted treatment for clinical stage 1 based on vascular invasion 20
   7.3 Metastatic germ cell tumours 21
      7.3.1 CS1S with (persistently) elevated serum tumour markers 21
      7.3.2 Metastatic disease (stage II/III) 21
7.3.2.1 Stage IIA/B seminoma  
7.3.2.2 Stage IIA/B non-seminoma  
7.3.3 Metastatic disease (stage IIC and III)  
7.3.3.1 Primary chemotherapy  
7.3.3.1.1 Good prognosis risk group - SGCT  
7.3.3.1.2 Intermediate prognosis risk group - seminomatous germ cell tumour  
7.3.3.1.3 Good prognosis risk group – non-seminomatous germ cell tumour  
7.3.3.1.4 Intermediate prognosis risk group – non-seminomatous germ cell tumour  
7.3.3.1.5 Poor prognosis risk group - NSGCT  
7.4 Restaging and further treatment  
7.4.1 Restaging  
7.4.2 Residual tumour resection  
7.4.2.1 Seminoma  
7.4.2.2 Non-seminoma  
7.4.3 Timing of surgery in the case of multiple sites  
7.4.3.1 Quality and intensity of surgery  
7.4.3.2 Salvage and desperation surgery.  
7.4.3.3 Consolidation chemotherapy after secondary surgery  
7.4.4 Systemic salvage treatment for relapse or refractory disease  
7.4.5 Second relapse  
7.4.5.1 Late relapse (> two years after end of first-line treatment)  
7.4.5.2 Treatment of brain metastases  
7.4.6 Guidelines for the treatment of metastatic germ cell tumours  
8. FOLLOW UP AFTER CURATIVE THERAPY  
8.1 Rationale for follow-up  
8.2 Quality of life and long-term toxicities after cure of testicular cancer  
8.2.1 Second malignant neoplasms (SMN)  
8.2.2 Leukaemia  
8.2.3 Infections  
8.2.4 Pulmonary complications  
8.2.5 Cardiovascular toxicity  
8.2.6 Raynaud-like phenomena  
8.2.7 Neurotoxicity  
8.2.8 Ototoxicity  
8.2.9 Nephrotoxicity  
8.2.10 Hypogonadism  
8.2.11 Fatigue  
8.2.12 Quality of life  
9. TESTICULAR STROMAL TUMOURS  
9.1 Classification  
9.1.1 Epidemiology and prognosis  
9.2 Leydig cell tumours  
9.2.1 Epidemiology  
9.2.2 Pathology of Leydig cell tumours  
9.2.3 Diagnosis  
9.3 Sertoli cell tumours  
9.3.1 Epidemiology  
9.3.2 Pathology of Sertoli cell tumours  
9.3.2.1 Classification  
9.3.3 Diagnosis  
9.4 Treatment of Leydig- and Sertoli cell tumours  
9.5 Follow-up of Leydig- and Sertoli cell tumours  
9.6 Granulosa cell tumour  
9.7 Thecoma/fibroma group of tumours  
9.8 Other sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours
9.9  Tumours containing germ cell and sex cord/gonadal stroma (gonadoblastoma)  
9.10  Miscellaneous tumours of the testis  
   9.10.1  Tumours of ovarian epithelial types  
   9.10.2  Tumours of the collecting ducts and rete testis  
   9.10.3  Tumours (benign and malignant) of non-specific stroma  

10.  REFERENCES  

11.  CONFLICT OF INTEREST
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim and objectives
The aim of these guidelines is to present the current evidence for the diagnosis and treatment of patients with cancer of the testis. Testicular cancer represents 5% of urological tumours affecting mostly younger males. This document addresses germ-cell tumours and sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition
The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Panel on Testicular Cancer consists of a multidisciplinary group of clinicians including, urologists, oncologists, radiotherapists and a pathologist. Members of this panel have been selected, based on their expertise, to represent the professionals treating patients suspected of having testis cancer. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements which can be viewed on the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/testicular-cancer/.

1.3 Available publications
A quick reference document (Pocket guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text version. Several scientific publications are available as are a number of translations of all versions of the EAU Testicular Cancer Guidelines. All documents can be viewed on the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/testicular-cancer/.

1.4 Publication history and summary of changes

1.4.1 Publication history
The European Association of Urology (EAU) published the first guidelines on Testicular Cancer in 2001. Since 2008, the Testicular Cancer Guidelines contain a separate chapter on testicular stromal tumours. This document presents a limited update of the 2016 publication. Review papers have been published in the society's scientific journal European Urology, the latest version dating to 2015 [1].

1.4.2 Summary of changes
For the 2017 Testicular Cancer Guidelines, new references have been added throughout the 2017 Testicular Cancer Guidelines document. Key changes in this publication include:

• Section 5.7 - Germ cell tumours histological markers. This is a new table.
• Table 7.2 - An alternative schedule for salvage chemotherapy has been included.
• Chapter 8 - Section 8.1 Rationale for follow up, has been completely replaced, including three new tables, based on the findings of an ESMO Testis Cancer Consensus Committee.

Recommendations were changed in the following sections:

5.9 Guidelines for the diagnosis and staging of testicular cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Advise patients with a familiar history of testis cancer, as well as their family members, to perform regular testicular self-examination.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.2.2.6 Risk-adapted treatment for clinical stage 1 based on vascular invasion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage 1B (pT2-pT4): high risk</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer surveillance to patients not willing to undergo adjuvant chemotherapy.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer nerve-sparing RPLND to highly selected patients only; those with contraindication to adjuvant chemotherapy and unwilling to accept surveillance.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.
7.4.6 Guidelines for the treatment of metastatic germ cell tumours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initially offer radiotherapy for seminoma CS IIA.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When necessary, use chemotherapy as a salvage treatment with the same schedule as for the corresponding prognostic groups of NSGCT.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initially offer chemotherapy in seminoma stage CS IIB (BEP x 3 or etoposide, cisplatin (EP) x 4, in good prognosis) as an alternative to radiotherapy.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8.1: Recommended minimal follow-up for seminoma stage I on active surveillance or after adjuvant treatment (carboplatin or radiotherapy)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modality</th>
<th>Year 1</th>
<th>Year 2</th>
<th>Year 3</th>
<th>Years 4 &amp; 5</th>
<th>After 5 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumour markers ± doctor visit</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>1-2 times</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest X-ray</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominopelvic computed tomography/magnetic resonance imaging</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>Once at 36 months</td>
<td>Once at 60 months</td>
<td>Further management according to survivorship care plan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8.2: Recommended minimal follow-up for non-seminoma stage I on active surveillance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modality</th>
<th>Year 1</th>
<th>Year 2</th>
<th>Year 3</th>
<th>Years 4 &amp; 5</th>
<th>After 5 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumour markers ± doctor visit</td>
<td>4 times**</td>
<td>4 times</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>1-2 times</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest X-ray</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>Once, in case of LVI+</td>
<td>At 60 months if LVI+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominopelvic computed tomography/magnetic resonance imaging</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>At 24 months***</td>
<td>Once at 36 months*</td>
<td>Once at 60 months*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Recommended by 50% of consensus group members.
**In case of high risk (LVI+) a minority of consensus group members recommended six times.
***In case of high risk (LVI+) a majority of consensus group members recommended an additional CT at eighteen months.

Table 8.3: Recommended minimal follow up after adjuvant treatment or complete remission for advanced disease (excluded: poor prognosis and no remission)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modality</th>
<th>Year 1</th>
<th>Year 2</th>
<th>Year 3</th>
<th>Years 4 &amp; 5</th>
<th>After 5 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumour markers ± doctor visit</td>
<td>4 times</td>
<td>4 times</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest X-ray</td>
<td>1-2 times</td>
<td>Once</td>
<td>Once</td>
<td>Once</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominopelvic computed tomography/magnetic resonance imaging</td>
<td>1-2 times</td>
<td>At 24 months</td>
<td>Once at 36 months</td>
<td>Once at 60 months</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thorax CT</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Same time points as abdomino-pelvic CT/MRI in case of pulmonary metastases at diagnosis.
**In case of teratoma in resected residual disease: patient should remain with uro-oncologist.
2. METHODS

For Germ Cell Tumour section, new and relevant evidence has been identified, collated and appraised through a structured assessment of the literature. The search was limited to studies representing high levels of evidence only (i.e. systematic reviews with meta-analysis, randomised controlled trials (RCTs), and prospective non-randomised comparative studies) published in the English language. The search was restricted to articles published between Jan 1st 2010 and September 28th, 2016. Databases covered by the search included Pubmed, Ovid, EMBASE and the Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials and the Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. After deduplication, a total of 1,735 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance. A detailed search strategy is available online: https://uroweb.org/guideline/non-muscle-invasive-bladder-cancer/?type=appendices-publications.

For Testicular Stromal tumours additional literature has been added. A formal scoping search covering the time frame between Jan 1st, 2009 and October 13th, 2014 was performed, without restrictions applied on data level.

Recommendations in this text are assessed according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [2]. Additional information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guidelines/.

A list of associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address.

2.1 Review

This document was subjected to peer review prior to publication in 2015.

2.2 Future goals

The results of an ongoing systematic review, performed using standard Cochrane systematic review methodology, will be included in 2018 update of the Testicular Cancer Guidelines: http://www.cochranelibrary.com/about/about-cochrane-systematic-reviews.html.

Ongoing systematic review:
- Tumour size and rete testis invasion in the radical orchiectomy specimens of patients with clinical stage I seminoma testis undergoing active surveillance risk factors for developing disease recurrence [3].

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY

3.1 Epidemiology

Testicular cancer represents 1% of male neoplasms and 5% of urological tumours, with 3-10 new cases occurring per 100,000 males/per year in Western societies [4, 5]. Its incidence has been increasing during the last decades especially in industrialised countries [5-7]. Data from the Surveillance Epidemiology and End Results programme (1992 to 2011) show a continuing increased risk among Caucasian men in the USA for seminoma [8].

At diagnosis, 1-2% of cases are bilateral and the predominant histology is germ cell tumour (90-95% of cases) [4]. Peak incidence is in the third decade of life for non-seminoma, and in the fourth decade for pure seminoma.

Testicular cancers (TC) show excellent cure rates based on, their chemosensitivity especially to cisplatin-based chemotherapy [9], careful staging at diagnosis, adequate early treatment based on a multidisciplinary approach and strict follow-up and salvage therapies. A decrease in the meantime of delay to diagnosis and treatment has been observed. Although early stages can be successfully treated in a non-reference centre, the relapse rate is higher [10, 11]. In poor prognosis non-seminomatous germ cell tumours (NSGCT), overall survival (OS) within a clinical trial depends on the number of patients treated at the participating centre (worse if < 5 patients enrolled) [12]. In the same context, the frequency of post-chemotherapy residual tumour resection is associated with peri-operative mortality and OS [13, 14]. Establishment of second-opinion clinics for testicular cancer patients may prevent over- and under-treatment [15].
Genetic changes have been described in patients with TC. A specific genetic marker, an isochromosome of the short arm of chromosome 12 - i(12p) - has been described in all histological types of germ cell tumours [16] and in germ cell neoplasia in situ (GCNIS). Alterations in the p53 locus have been identified in 66% of cases of GCNIS [17] and association between genetic polymorphism in the PTEN tumours suppressor gene and risk of testicular germ cell tumours (TGCT) has been recently described [18]. A deregulation in the pluripotent programme of foetal germ cells (identified by specific markers, M2A, C-KIT and OCT4/NANOG) is likely responsible for the development of GCNIS and germ cell neoplasia. In line with this, significant association between markers at loci 4q22.2, 7p22.3, 16q22.3 and 17q22, all of which encoding proteins for male cell germ development and susceptibility for TGCT has been described [19]. There is overlap in the development to seminoma and embryonal carcinoma as shown by genome-wide expression analysis and detection of alphafetoprotein (AFP) mRNA in some atypical seminoma [20, 21].

Epidemiological risk factors for the development of testicular tumours are components of the testicular dysgenesis syndrome (i.e. cryptorchidism, hypospadias, decreased spermatogenesis evidenced by sub- or infertility) [22, 23], familial history of testicular tumours among first-grade relatives and the presence of a contralateral tumour or GCNIS [16, 22, 24-28]. A recent systematic review confirmed the association between height and TGCT with an odds ratio (OR) of 1.13 per 5 cm increase in height [29].

3.2 Pathological classification

The recommended pathological classification shown below is based on the 2016 update of the World Health Organization (WHO) pathological classification [30].

1. Germ cell tumours
   - Derived from germ cell neoplasia in situ (GCNIS)
   - Germ cell neoplasia in situ
   
   Seminoma
   - Embryonal carcinoma
   - Yolk sac tumour, post-pubertal type
   - Trophoblastic tumours
   - Teratoma, post-pubertal type
   - Teratoma with somatic-type malignancies
   - Mixed germ cell tumours

2. Germ cell tumours unrelated to GCNIS
   - Spermatocytic tumour
   - Yolk sac tumour, pre-pubertal type
   - Mixed germ cell tumour, pre-pubertal type

3. Sex cord/stromal tumours
   - Leydig cell tumour
     - Malignant Leydig cell tumour
   - Sertoli cell tumour
     - Malignant Sertoli cell tumour
     - Large cell calcifying Sertoli cell tumour
     - Intratubular large cell hyalinising Sertoli cell neoplasia
   - Granulosa cell tumour
     - Adult type
     - Juvenile type
   - Thecoma/fibroma group of tumours
   - Other sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours
     - Mixed
     - Unclassified
   - Tumours containing both germ cell and sex cord/gonadal stromal
     - Gonadoblastoma

4. Miscellaneous non-specific stromal tumours
   - Ovarian epithelial tumours
   - Tumours of the collecting ducts and rete testis
     - Adenoma
     - Carcinoma
• Tumours of paratesticular structures
  - Adenomatoid tumour
  - Mesothelioma (epithelioid, biphasic)
  - Epididymal tumours
• Cystadenoma of the epididymis
• Papillary cystadenoma
• Adenocarcinoma of the epididymis
• Mesenchymal tumours of the spermatic cord and testicular adnexae.

4. STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS

4.1 Diagnostic tools
To determine the presence of macroscopic or occult metastatic disease, the half-life kinetics of serum tumour markers as well as the presence of nodal or visceral metastases need to be assessed. Consequently, it is mandatory to assess:
• the pre- and post-orchiectomy half-life kinetics of serum tumour markers;
• the status of retroperitoneal and supraclavicular lymph nodes, bone and liver;
• the presence or absence of mediastinal nodal involvement and lung metastases;
• the status of brain and bone in cases of suspicious symptoms or high-risk disease, e.g. poor International Germ Cell Cancer Collaborative Group (IGCCCG) risk group, high human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) and/or multiple pulmonary metastases.

The minimum mandatory tests are:
• serial blood sampling;
• abdominopelvic and chest computed tomography (CT).

4.2 Serum tumour markers: post-orchiectomy half-life kinetics
The mean serum half-life of AFP and hCG is five to seven days and two to three days, respectively [31]. Tumour markers need to be re-evaluated after orchiectomy to determine half-life kinetics. Marker decline in patients with clinical stage (CS) I disease should be assessed until normalisation has occurred. Markers before the start of chemotherapy are important to classify the patient according to the IGCCCG risk classification [32]. The persistence of elevated serum tumour markers after orchiectomy might indicate the presence of metastatic disease (macro- or microscopically), while the normalisation of marker levels after orchiectomy does not rule out the presence of tumour metastases. During chemotherapy, the markers should decline; persistence has an adverse prognostic value [33, 34]. Slow marker decline in patients with poor prognosis during the first cycle of standard bleomycin, etoposide and cisplatin (BEP) chemotherapy can be used as an indication for early chemotherapy dose intensification [35].

4.3 Retroperitoneal, mediastinal and supraclavicular lymph nodes and viscera
Retroperitoneal and mediastinal lymph nodes are best assessed by CT. The supraclavicular nodes are best assessed by physical examination followed by CT in cases of suspicion.
Abdominopelvic CT offers a sensitivity of 70-80% in determining the state of the retroperitoneal nodes. Its accuracy depends on the size and shape of the nodes; sensitivity and the negative predictive value increase using a 3 mm threshold to define metastatic nodes in the landing zones [36]. Those figures decrease slightly in stages I and II [37, 38], with a rate of understaging of 25-30% [39].
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) produces similar results to CT in the detection of retroperitoneal nodal enlargement [40, 41]. Again, the main objections to its routine use are its high cost and limited availability. Nevertheless, MRI can be helpful when abdominopelvic CT or ultrasound (US) are inconclusive [40], when CT is contraindicated because of allergy to contrast media containing iodine, or when the physician or the patient are concerned about radiation dose. MRI is an optional test, and there are currently no indications for its systematic use in the staging of TC.

A chest CT is the most sensitive way to evaluate the thorax and mediastinal nodes. This exploration is recommended in all patients with TC as up to 10% of cases can present with small subpleural nodes that are not visible on an X-ray [42]. A CT has high sensitivity, but low specificity.
There is no evidence to support the use of fluorodeoxyglucose-positron emission tomography (PET) (FDG-PET) in the staging of testis cancer [43, 44]. It is recommended in the follow up of patients with seminoma with a residual mass larger than 3 cm and should not be performed before eight weeks after
completing the last cycle of chemotherapy in order to decide on watchful waiting or active treatment [45, 46]. Fluorodeoxyglucose-PET is not recommended in the re-staging of patients with NSGCT after chemotherapy [47].

Other examinations, such as brain or spinal CT, bone scan or liver US, should be performed if there is suspicion of metastases to these organs. A CT or MRI of the brain is advisable in patients with NSGCT, multiple lung metastases and poor prognosis IGCCG risk group (e.g. high beta-hCG values). Table 4.1 shows the recommended tests at staging.

Table 4.1: Recommended tests for staging at diagnosis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Serum tumour markers</td>
<td>Alpha-fetoprotein</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>human chorionic gonadotrophin (hCG)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lactate dehydrogenase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominopelvic computed tomography (CT)</td>
<td>All patients</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest CT</td>
<td>All patients</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testis ultrasound (bilateral)</td>
<td>All patients</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bone scan or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) columna</td>
<td>In case of symptoms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain scan (CT/MRI)</td>
<td>In case of symptoms and patients with metastatic disease with multiple lung metastases and/or high beta-hCG values.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Further investigations

Fertility investigations:
- Total testosterone
- Luteinising hormone
- Follicle-stimulating hormone
- Semen analysis

Discuss sperm banking with all men prior to starting treatment for testicular cancer. A

4.4 Staging and prognostic classifications

The staging system recommended in these guidelines is the 2017 Tumour, Node, Metastasis (TNM) of the International Union Against Cancer (UICC) (Table 4.2) [30]. This includes:
- determination of the anatomical extent of disease;
- assessment of serum tumour markers, including nadir values of hCG, AFP and LDH after orchiectomy (S category);
- definition of regional nodes;
- N-category modifications related to node size.

Table 4.2: TNM classification for testicular cancer (UICC, 2017, 8th edn. [30])

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pT</th>
<th>Primary Tumour¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pTX</td>
<td>Primary tumour cannot be assessed (see note 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumour (e.g. histological scar in testis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pTis</td>
<td>Intratubular germ cell neoplasia (carcinoma in situ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT1</td>
<td>Tumour limited to testis and epididymis without vascular/lymphatic invasion; tumour may invade tunica albuginea but not tunica vaginalis*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT2</td>
<td>Tumour limited to testis and epididymis with vascular/lymphatic invasion, or tumour extending through tunica albuginea with involvement of tunica vaginalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT3</td>
<td>Tumour invades spermatic cord with or without vascular/lymphatic invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT4</td>
<td>Tumour invades scrotum with or without vascular/lymphatic invasion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N - Regional Lymph Nodes - Clinical

| NX  | Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed |
| N0  | No regional lymph node metastasis |
| N1  | Metastasis with a lymph node mass 2 cm or less in greatest dimension or multiple lymph nodes, none more than 2 cm in greatest dimension |
| N2  | Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension, or multiple lymph nodes, any one mass more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension. |
### Regional Lymph Nodes - Pathological

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N3</th>
<th>Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 5 cm in greatest dimension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pNX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN1</td>
<td>Metastasis with a lymph node mass 2 cm or less in greatest dimension and 5 or fewer positive nodes, none more than 2 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN2</td>
<td>Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension; or more than 5 nodes positive, none more than 5 cm; or evidence or extranodal extension of tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN3</td>
<td>Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 5 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Distant Metastasis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M</th>
<th>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MX</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis other than non-regional lymph nodes and lung</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Serum Tumour Markers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th>Serum marker studies not available or not performed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SX</td>
<td>Serum marker study levels within normal limits</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LDH (U/l)</th>
<th>hCG (mIU/mL)</th>
<th>AFP (ng/mL)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S1</td>
<td>&lt; 1.5 x N and</td>
<td>&lt; 5,000 and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S2</td>
<td>1.5-10 x N or</td>
<td>5,000-50,000 or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S3</td>
<td>&gt; 10 x N or</td>
<td>&gt; 50,000 or</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N indicates the upper limit of normal for the LDH assay.

LDH = lactate dehydrogenase; hCG = human chorionic gonadotrophin; AFP = alpha-fetoprotein.

AJCC subdivides T1 by T1a and T1b depending on size no greater than 3 cm or greater than 3 cm in greatest dimension.

Stage grouping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage grouping</th>
<th>pTis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
<th>S0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>pTis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>pT1-T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>SX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>pT1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>pT2 - pT4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IS</td>
<td>Any patient/TX</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>Any patient/TX</td>
<td>N1-N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>SX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>Any patient/TX</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>Any patient/TX</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>Any patient/TX</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>Any patient/TX</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>Any patient/TX</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>Any patient/TX</td>
<td>N1-N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>Any patient/TX</td>
<td>N1-N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Except for pTis and pT4, where radical orchidectomy is not always necessary for classification purposes, the extent of the primary tumour is classified after radical orchidectomy; see pT. In other circumstances, TX is used if no radical orchidectomy has been performed.

According to the 2009 TNM classification, stage I testicular cancer includes the following substages:
Stage IA patients have primary tumours limited to the testis and epididymis, with no evidence of microscopic vascular or lymphatic invasion by tumour cells on microscopy, no sign of metastases on clinical examination or imaging, and post-orchiectomy serum tumour marker levels within normal limits. Marker decline in patients with CS I disease should be assessed until normalisation.

Stage IB patients have a more locally invasive primary tumour, but no sign of metastatic disease.

Stage IS patients have persistently elevated (and usually increasing) serum tumour marker levels after orchiectomy, indicating subclinical metastatic disease (or possibly a second germ cell tumour in the remaining testis).

In large population-based patient series, 75-80% of seminoma patients, and about 55% of patients with NSGCT cancer have stage I disease at diagnosis [48, 49]. True stage IS (persistently elevated or increasing serum marker levels after orchiectomy) is found in about 5% of non-seminoma patients.

In 1997, the IGCCCG defined a prognostic factor-based staging system for metastatic testis tumours based on identification of clinically independent adverse factors. This staging system has been incorporated into the TNM Classification and uses histology, location of the primary tumour, location of metastases and pre-chemotherapy marker levels in serum as prognostic factors to categorise patients into 'good', 'intermediate' or 'poor' prognosis (Table 4.3) [33].

Table 4.3: Prognostic-based staging system for metastatic germ cell cancer
(International Germ Cell Cancer Collaborative Group [50]*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Good-prognosis group</th>
<th>5-year PFS 89%</th>
<th>5-year survival 92%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-seminoma (56% of cases)</td>
<td>All of the following criteria:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testis/retro-peritoneal primary</td>
<td>• No non-pulmonary visceral metastases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFP &lt; 1,000 ng/mL</td>
<td>• hCG &lt; 5,000 IU/L (1,000 ng/mL)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDH &lt; 1.5 x ULN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seminoma (90% of cases)</td>
<td>All of the following criteria:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any primary site</td>
<td>• No non-pulmonary visceral metastases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal AFP</td>
<td>Any hCG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any LDH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intermediate prognosis group</th>
<th>5-year PFS 75%</th>
<th>5-year survival 80%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-seminoma (28% of cases)</td>
<td>Any of the following criteria:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testis/retro-peritoneal primary</td>
<td>• No non-pulmonary visceral metastases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFP 1,000 - 10,000 ng/mL or</td>
<td>• hCG 5,000 - 50,000 IU/L or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDH 1.5 - 10 x ULN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seminoma (10% of cases)</td>
<td>All of the following criteria:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any primary site</td>
<td>• Non-pulmonary visceral metastases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal AFP</td>
<td>Any hCG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any LDH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Poor prognosis group</th>
<th>5-year PFS 41%</th>
<th>5-year survival 48%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-seminoma (16% of cases)</td>
<td>Any of the following criteria:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mediastinal primary</td>
<td>• Non-pulmonary visceral metastases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFP &gt; 10,000 ng/mL or</td>
<td>• hCG &gt; 50,000 IU/L (10,000 ng/mL) or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDH &gt; 10 x ULN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seminoma</td>
<td>No patients classified as poor prognosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Pre-chemotherapy serum tumour markers should be assessed immediately prior to the administration of chemotherapy (same day). PFS = progression-free survival; AFP = alpha-fetoprotein; hCG = human chorionic gonadotrophin; LDH = lactate dehydrogenase.
5. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

5.1 Clinical examination
Testicular cancer usually presents as a painless, unilateral testicular scrotal mass, as a casual US finding or is revealed by a scrotal trauma [51]. Scrotal pain may be the first symptom in 20% of cases and it is present in up to 27% of patients with TC [51, 52]. Gynaecomastia appears in 7% of cases (more common in non-seminomatous tumours). Back and flank pain due to metastasis is present in about 11% of cases [52].

Diagnosis is delayed in around 10% of cases of testicular tumour that mimic orchioepididymitis [52], physical examination reveals the features of the mass and must always be carried out together with a general examination to find possible (supraclavicular) distant metastases, a palpable abdominal mass or gynaecomastia. Ultrasound must be performed in any doubtful case. A correct diagnosis must be established in all patients with an intrascrotal mass [53].

5.2 Imaging of the testis
Currently, US is used to confirm the presence of a testicular mass and explore the contralateral testis. Ultrasound sensitivity is almost 100%, and US has an important role in determining whether a mass is intra- or extra-testicular [54]. Ultrasound is an inexpensive test and should be performed even in the presence of clinically evident testicular tumour [55].

Ultrasound of the testis should be performed in young men with retroperitoneal or visceral masses and/or elevated serum hCG or AFP and/or consulting for fertility problems and without a palpable testicular mass [56, 57].

Magnetic resonance imaging of the scrotum offers higher sensitivity and specificity than US in the diagnosis of TC, but its high cost does not justify its routine use for diagnosis [54, 58].

5.3 Serum tumour markers at diagnosis
Serum tumour markers are prognostic factors and contribute to diagnosis and staging [59]. The following markers should be determined before, and 5-7 days after, orchiectomy:

- alpha-fetoprotein (produced by yolk sac cells);
- human chorionic gonadotrophin (expression of trophoblasts);
- lactate dehydrogenase.

Tumour markers are of value for diagnosis (before orchiectomy) as well as for prognosis (after orchiectomy). They are increased in approximately every second patient with TC [51, 60]. Alpha-fetoprotein and hCG are increased in 50-70% and in 40-60% of patients with NSGCT, respectively. About 90% of NSGCT present with a rise in one or both of the markers. Up to 30% of seminomas can present or develop an elevated hCG level during the course of the disease [31].

Lactase dehydrogenase is a less specific marker, its concentration being proportional to tumour volume. Its level may be elevated in 80% of patients with advanced TC [31]. Of note, negative marker levels do not exclude the diagnosis of a germ cell tumour. Placental alkaline phosphatase (PLAP), is an optional marker in monitoring patients with pure seminoma, but not recommended in smokers [61].

Cytogenetic and molecular markers are available in specific centres, but at present only contribute to research. There is preliminary evidence that some micro-RNAs (miRNA 371-373) may be of diagnostic value in the future [62].

5.4 Inguinal exploration and orchiectomy
Every patient with a suspected testicular mass must undergo inguinal exploration with exteriorisation of the testis within its tunics. Orchiectomy with division of the spermatic cord at the internal inguinal ring must be performed if a malignant tumour is found. If the diagnosis is not clear, a testicular biopsy (and enucleation of the intraparenchymal tumour) is taken for frozen (fresh tissue) section histological examination. Even though only limited data are available, it has been shown that during orchiectomy, a testicular prosthesis can be inserted without increased infectious complications or rejection rates [63].

In cases of life-threatening disseminated disease, lifesaving chemotherapy should be given up-front, especially when the clinical picture is very likely TC and/or tumour markers are increased. Orchiectomy may be delayed until clinical stabilisation occurs or in combination with resection of residual lesions.

5.5 Organ-sparing surgery
Although organ-sparing surgery is not indicated in the presence of non-tumoural contralateral testis, it can be attempted in special cases with all the necessary precautions. In synchronous bilateral testicular tumours, metachronous contralateral tumours, or in a tumour in a solitary testis with normal pre-operative testosterone levels, organ preserving surgery can be performed when tumour volume is less than approximately 30% of
the testicular volume and surgical rules are respected. In those cases, the rate of associated GCNIS is high (at least up to 82%) (see Section 5.7.)

5.6 Pathological examination of the testis

Mandatory pathological requirements:
- macroscopic features: side, testis size, maximum tumour size, and macroscopic features of the epididymis, spermatic cord, and tunica vaginalis;
- sampling: a 1 cm² section for every centimetre of maximum tumour diameter, including normal macroscopic parenchyma (if present), albuginea and epididymis, with selection of suspected areas;
- at least one proximal and one distal section of spermatic cord plus any suspected area;
- microscopic features and diagnosis: histological type (specify individual components and estimate amount as percentage) according to WHO 2004 [64];
  - presence or absence of peri-tumoural venous and/or lymphatic invasion;
  - presence or absence of albuginea, tunica vaginalis, rete testis, epididymis or spermatic cord invasion;
  - presence or absence of GCNIS in non-tumour parenchyma.

- pT category according to TNM 2016 [30];
- immunohistochemical studies: in seminoma and mixed germ cell tumour, AFP and hCG.

Advisable immunohistochemical markers, in cases of doubt, are:
- in seminoma: cytokeratins (CAM 5.2), PLAP, c-kit;
- in ITGCN: PLAP, c-kit;
- other advisable markers: chromogranin A (Cg A), Ki-67 (MIB-1).

5.7 Germ cell tumours histological markers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marker</th>
<th>GCNIS</th>
<th>Seminoma</th>
<th>Post-puberal yolk sac tumour</th>
<th>Embryonal Carcinoma</th>
<th>Trophoblastic Cyto</th>
<th>Trophoblastic Syncytiotumour</th>
<th>Spermatocytic tumour</th>
<th>Pre-puberal yolk sac tumour</th>
<th>Sex cord gonadal stromal tumours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OCT3/4</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SALL 4</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>50-90% (weak)</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glypican3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>100% (irregular)</td>
<td>100% (irregular)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD30</td>
<td>&lt;10%</td>
<td>&lt;10%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFP</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>33%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β-hCG</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD117</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>90/100%</td>
<td>60% (focal)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+/- (weak)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLAP</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>86/95%</td>
<td>53%</td>
<td>86%</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>100% (weak)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-inhibin</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Sertoli: 30-50%</td>
<td>Sertoli: Leydig: 100%</td>
<td>+/-(Sertoli: Leydig: 42%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calretinin</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE1/AE3</td>
<td>20/36%</td>
<td>20/36%</td>
<td>95% (weak)</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Sertoli: 64%</td>
<td>Sertoli: 100%</td>
<td>+/-(Sertoli: 100%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMA</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>46%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>46%</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>+/-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEA</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GATA 3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>40% (focal)</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hPL</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CgA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sertoli: 82%</td>
<td>Sertoli: Leydig: 92%</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synapto</td>
<td>45%</td>
<td>Sertoli: 45%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p63</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Leydig: 70%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OCT3/4 = homeodomain transcription factor of the POU family; SALL 4 = transcription factor encoded by a member of the Spalt-like (SALL) gene family; Glypican 3 (GPC3) = a membrane-bound heparin sulphate proteoglycan; CD30 = immunohistochemical marker; AFP = alpha-fetoprotein; hCG = human chorionic gonadotrophin; CD117(c-KIT) = immunohistochemical marker; PLAP = placental alkaline phosphatase; α-inhibin = peptide hormone; Calretinin = 29 kD calcium-binding protein; AE1/AE3 = cytokeratins; EMA = epithelial membrane antigen; CEA = carcinoembryonic antigen; GATA 3 = transcription factor; hPL = human placental lactogen; CgA = Chromogranin A; Synapto = neuroendocrine markers; p63 = transformation-related protein 63.

### 5.8 Diagnosis and treatment of germ cell neoplasia in situ (GCNIS)

Contralateral biopsy has been advocated to rule out the presence of GCNIS [65]. Although routine policy in some countries [66], the low incidence of GCNIS and contralateral metachronous testicular tumours (up to 9% and approximately 2.5%, respectively) [67, 68] the morbidity of GCNIS treatment, and the fact that most of metachronous tumours are at a low stage at presentation make it controversial to recommend a systematic contralateral biopsy in all patients [69, 70].

It is still difficult to reach a consensus on whether the existence of contralateral GCNIS must be identified in all cases. However, biopsy of the contralateral testis should be offered to patients at high risk for contralateral GCNIS, i.e. testicular volume < 12 mL, a history of cryptorchidism or poor spermatogenesis (Johnson Score 1-3). A contralateral biopsy is not necessary in patients older than 40 years without risk factors [36, 49, 71-73]. A double biopsy increases sensitivity [72]. Patients should be informed that a testicular tumour may arise in spite of a negative biopsy [74].

Once GCNIS is diagnosed, local radiotherapy (16-20 Gy in fractions of 2 Gy) is the treatment of choice in the case of a solitary testis. Testicular radiotherapy in a solitary testis will result in infertility and increased long-term risk of Leydig cell insufficiency [37, 69, 75, 76]. Fertile patients who wish to father children may delay radiation therapy and be followed by regular testicular US [72]. Chemotherapy is significantly less effective and the cure rates are dose-dependent [77].

If GCNIS is diagnosed and the contralateral testis is healthy, the options for management are orchiectomy or close observation (with a 5-year risk of developing TC of 50%) [78].

### 5.9 Screening

There are no high level evidence studies proving the advantages of screening programmes [79], but it has been demonstrated that stage and prognosis are directly related to early diagnosis. In the presence of clinical risk factors, and especially in patients with a family history of testis cancer, family members and the patient should be informed about the importance of physical self-examination [80].

### 5.10 Guidelines for the diagnosis and staging of testicular cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform testicular ultrasound in all patients with suspicion of testicular cancer.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer biopsy of the contralateral testis and discuss its consequences with patients at high risk for contralateral germ cell neoplasia in situ.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform orchiectomy and pathological examination of the testis to confirm the diagnosis and to define the local extension (pT category). In a life-threatening situation due to extensive metastasis, start chemotherapy before orchiectomy.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform serum determination of tumour markers (alpha-fetoprotein, human chorionic gonadotrophin, and lactate dehydrogenase), both before and five-seven days after orchiectomy for staging and prognostic reasons.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess the state of the retroperitoneal, mediastinal and supraclavicular nodes and viscera in testicular cancer.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advise patients with a familiar history of testis cancer, as well as their family members, to perform regular testicular self-examination.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. PROGNOSIS

6.1 Risk factors for metastatic relapse in clinical stage I
Retrospectively, for seminoma stage I, tumour size (> 4 cm) and invasion of the rete testis have been identified as predictors for relapse in a pooled analysis [81]. The absence of both factors indicated a low recurrence rate (6%) [82]. Although the original model was not found to apply in a further retrospective report [83], other prospective series [84, 85, 96] confirm the prognostic importance of tumour size and stromal invasion of the rete testis.

With modern imaging, CS I patients with seminoma face a risk of occult metastasis, independent of risk factors, of < 15% in all recently published series.

For non-seminoma stage I, vascular invasion of the primary tumour in blood or lymphatic vessels is the most important predictor of occult metastatic disease. The proliferation rate, as well as the percentage of embryonal carcinoma, are additional predictors that improve upon the positive and negative predictive value of vascular invasion [86]. Whether the absence of teratoma (as qualitative data, as opposed to the more subjective assessment of percentage of embryonal carcinoma) can independently complement vascular invasion as a predictive factor of relapse requires validation [87].

The significant prognostic pathological risk factors for stage I TC are listed in Table 6.1.

Table 6.1: Risk factors for occult metastatic disease in stage I testicular cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathological (for stage I)</th>
<th>For seminoma</th>
<th>For non-seminoma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Histopathological type</td>
<td>Tumour size (&gt; 4 cm)</td>
<td>Vascular/lymphatic in or peri-tumoural invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Invasion of the rete testis</td>
<td>Proliferation rate &gt; 70%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Percentage of embryonal carcinoma &gt; 50%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. DISEASE MANAGEMENT

7.1 Impact on fertility and fertility-associated issues
Sperm abnormalities are frequently found in patients with testis tumours. Furthermore, chemotherapy and radiation treatment can additionally impair fertility, however long-term infertility is rare after radiotherapy and dose-cumulative-dependant after chemotherapy [88, 89]. In patients in the reproductive age group, pre-treatment fertility assessment (testosterone, luteinising hormone [LH] and follicle stimulating hormone [FSH] levels) should be performed, and semen analysis and cryopreservation should be offered. If cryopreservation is desired, it should preferably be performed before orchiectomy, but in any case prior to chemotherapy [75, 88-91]. In cases of bilateral orchiectomy or low testosterone levels after treatment of GCNIS, life-long testosterone supplementation is necessary [92]. Patients with unilateral or bilateral orchiectomy should be offered a testicular prosthesis [93]. For more detailed information, the reader is referred to the EAU Male Infertility Guidelines [94].

7.2 Stage I Germ cell tumours
7.2.1 Stage I seminoma
After modern staging procedures, less than 15% of stage I seminoma patients have subclinical metastatic disease, usually in the retroperitoneum, and will relapse after orchiectomy alone [83, 95-97].

The decision regarding adjuvant treatment should always be based on a thorough discussion with the patient, taking into account the described advantages and disadvantages, as well as the individual situation of the patient.

7.2.1.1 Surveillance
Several prospective non-randomised surveillance studies have been conducted during the past decade, the largest study from Canada with > 1,500 patients [98]. Previous analyses from four studies showed an actuarial five-year relapse-free rate of 82.3%. The Princess Margaret Hospital series (n = 1,559) showed an overall relapse rate in unselected patients of 16.8%. The actuarial relapse rate is in the order of 15-20% at five years,
and most of the relapses are first detected in infra-diaphragmatic lymph nodes [99]. In patients with low risk (tumour size < 4 cm and no rete testis invasion), the recurrence under surveillance is as low as 6% [85]. Chemotherapy, according to the IGCCCG classification, is a possible treatment for seminoma relapse under surveillance. However, 70% of patients with relapse are suitable for treatment with radiotherapy alone because of small volume disease at the time of recurrence. Patients who relapse after salvage radiotherapy can be effectively treated with chemotherapy [100]. The combination of carboplatin chemotherapy and modern radiotherapy for treatment of low stage seminoma relapse (IIA/IIB) is under investigation.

The overall cancer-specific survival (CSS) rate reported under surveillance performed by experienced centres is 97-100% for seminoma stage I [99, 100]. The main drawback of surveillance is the need for more intensive follow-up, especially with repeated imaging examinations of the retroperitoneal lymph nodes.

7.2.1.2 Adjuvant chemotherapy
A joint trial by the Medical Research Council (MRC) and the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC), which compared one cycle of carboplatin area under curve (AUC) 7 with adjuvant radiotherapy, did not show a significant difference with regard to recurrence rate, time to recurrence and survival after a median follow up of four years [101-103]. Therefore, adjuvant carboplatin therapy using a dosage of one course of AUC 7 is an alternative to radiotherapy or surveillance in stage I seminoma [99, 101-103]. Two courses of adjuvant carboplatin seem to further reduce the relapse rate to the order of 1-3% [82, 104]. Long-term data report the recurrence rate after three years after adjuvant carboplatin as 15%. Not all of these patients were cured [105].

7.2.1.3 Adjuvant radiotherapy and risk-adapted treatment
Seminoma cells are extremely radiosensitive. Adjuvant radiotherapy to a para-aortic (PA) field or to a PA and ipsilateral field (PA and ipsilateral iliac nodes), with moderate doses (total 20-24 Gy), will reduce the relapse rate to 1-3% [106-108]. Adjuvant irradiation of supra-diaphragmatic lymph nodes is not indicated.

With regard to the irradiation dose, a large Medical Research Council (MRC) randomised trial of 20 Gy vs. 30 Gy PA radiation in stage I seminoma showed non-inferiority in terms of recurrence rates [107]. The rate of severe radiation induced long-term toxicity is less than 2%. Moderate chronic gastrointestinal (GI) side-effects are seen in about 5% of patients, and moderate acute GI toxicity in about 60% [106]. The main concern surrounding adjuvant radiotherapy is the increased risk of radiation-induced second non-germ cell malignancies [109-111].

A scrotal shield should be considered during adjuvant radiotherapy in order to prevent scattered radiation toxicity in the contralateral testis [109].

7.2.1.4 Risk-adapted treatment
Using tumour size > 4 cm and rete testis invasion, patients with seminoma stage I may be subdivided into a low- and high-risk groups for occult metastatic disease. Patients with and without both risk factors have a 32% and 12% risk of occult disease respectively. These risk factors were introduced through an analysis of retrospective trials [81], and then confirmed in prospective studies [85, 96, 112]. A prospective trial based on one or no risk factors, showed the feasibility of a risk-adapted approach; the group without risk factors were managed with surveillance, whilst the group with both risk factors received two courses of carboplatin, AUC 7. Early data with limited follow up indicated that patients without either risk factor have a very low risk, 6.0% - 15%, of relapse at five years. Patients in the high-risk group treated with two courses of carboplatin experienced a 1.4% - 3.2% relapse rate at mean follow up of 34 months [85, 112].

7.2.1.5 Guidelines for the treatment of stage I seminoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer surveillance as a management option if facilities are available and the patient is compliant.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer one course at area under curve (AUC) 7, if carboplatin chemotherapy is considered.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform adjuvant treatment in patients at very low risk (no risk factors).</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform radiotherapy as adjuvant treatment.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

7.2.2 NSGCT clinical stage I
Up to 30% of NSGCT patients with CS1 disease have subclinical metastases and will relapse during surveillance. The decision regarding adjuvant treatment should always be based on a thorough discussion with
the patient, taking into account the described advantages and disadvantages, as well as the individual situation of the patient.

7.2.2.1 Surveillance

Improvements in clinical staging and follow-up methods, and the availability of effective salvage treatment with cisplatin-based chemotherapy and post-chemotherapy surgery, have led to studies of only close surveillance after orchiectomy in CS1 NSGCT patients. The largest reports of the surveillance strategy indicate a cumulative relapse rate of about 30%, with 80% of relapses occurring during the first twelve months of follow up, 12% during the second year and 6% during the third year, decreasing to 1% during the fourth and fifth years, and occasionally even later [114, 115]. Approximately 35% of relapsing patients have normal levels of serum tumour markers at relapse, with 60% of relapses occurring in the retroperitoneum. Despite very close follow-up, 11% of relapsing patients presented with large-volume recurrent disease.

The somewhat lower relapse rates reported from surveillance studies compared with some series of patients staged by RPLND [116] can be explained by the fact that some patients (presumably at higher risk) are excluded once surveillance is advised. Based on the overall CSS data, surveillance within an experienced surveillance programme can safely be offered to patients with non-risk stratified CSI non-seminoma as long as they are compliant and informed about the expected recurrence rate as well as the salvage treatment [117, 118].

7.2.2.2 Adjuvant chemotherapy

Patients with CS1 NSGCT have a 14-48% risk of recurrence within two years after orchiectomy. Adjuvant chemotherapy with two courses of BEP was introduced in 1996 by a prospective MRC trial [119]. Subsequently, adjuvant chemotherapy was mainly given in high-risk patients (vascular invasion present) [119-121]. In these series, including 200 patients, some with a median follow-up of nearly 7.9 years [119], a relapse rate of only 2.7% was reported, with very little long-term toxicity. Two cycles of cisplatin-based adjuvant chemotherapy do not seem to adversely affect fertility or sexual activity [122]. However, the very-long term (>20 years) side effects of adjuvant chemotherapy in this setting are currently unknown, especially the long-term cardio-vascular effects of chemotherapy [123]. This should be taken into consideration during decision-making.

In 2008, a randomised trial of nerve-sparing RPLND or one course of BEP as adjuvant treatment in CS1 NSGCT without risk-adaption reported [124]. Adjuvant chemotherapy significantly increased the two-year recurrence-free survival rate to 99.41% (CI: 95.87%, 99.92%) as opposed to surgery, which had a two-year recurrence-free survival rate of 92.37% (CI: 87.21%, 95.50%). The difference was 7.04%, (CI: 2.52%, 11.56%) and, therefore, the main endpoint of the trial was reached. The hazard ratio to experience a tumour recurrence with surgery as opposed to chemotherapy was 7.937, (CI: 1.808, 34.48). Of the 174 patients having received one course of BEP, 43% had high-risk features (> pT1) [124].

A community-based prospective study recommended one course of BEP in LVI+ patients, while LVI-patients chose between surveillance and BEP x 1 [125]. The relapse-rate of the 490 patients who received BEP x 1 at five years was 3.2% for LVI+ patients and 1.6% for LVI- patients. After a median follow up of 8.1 years the relapse rate was 2.3%, 3.4% and 1.3% for all, LVI+, and LVI-, respectively [126]. These numbers imply that >90% of relapses were prevented by adjuvant chemotherapy and, importantly, no relapses were observed later than 3.3 years. Reduction from two to one cycle of BEP improves the risk-benefit ratio of adjuvant chemotherapy considerably.

In addition, it is important to be aware of slow-growing retroperitoneal teratomas after primary chemotherapy [109]. Until now, only a limited number of patients with long-term follow-up and toxicity data have been reported on [127].

The results of cost analyses comparing surveillance, RPLND and primary chemotherapy show different results among the reported studies, possibly because of differences in intensity and costs related to follow-up procedures [128]. With low frequency follow-up CTs (a surveillance strategy which has been proven to be effective in non-seminoma CS1), the costs of follow up can be considerably reduced [129].

7.2.2.3 Risk-adapted treatment

Risk-adapted treatment is an alternative to surveillance for all patients with CS1 NSGCT. Risk-adapted treatment is based on the risk factor of vascular invasion. Stratifying patients with CS1 NSGCT according to their presumed risk of relapse is a rational option, as several studies have reported similar survival rates and a final cure rate close to 100% with all available treatment options using the risk-stratifying approach [119-121, 125, 126, 130-132].
If the risk-adapted policy is applied, patients with vascular invasion are recommended to undergo adjuvant chemotherapy and patients with absent vascular invasion are recommended a surveillance strategy. In the past, two cycles of BEP have been recommended for adjuvant treatment. In view of the low rates of recurrence (2-3%) and equivalent CSS rates including salvage strategies in large prospective trials with sufficient follow-up, one cycle of BEP is now recommended as adjuvant chemotherapy in patients with vascular invasion.

In cases of relapse after BEP x 1, three courses of BEP are recommended. However, there is not a large body of evidence to support any one specific salvage regimen.

7.2.2.4 Retroperitoneal lymph node dissection

In view of the high CSS rates of surveillance with salvage treatment in cases of relapse and the low relapse rates if adjuvant chemotherapy is chosen, the role of primary diagnostic RPLND has diminished. A randomised phase III trial compared RPLND to BEP x 1 as adjuvant treatment, with a 7% difference in favour of chemotherapy. One course of BEP showed a significantly lower recurrence rate as compared to surgery [124].

When RPLND is performed in a multicentre setting, higher rates of in-field recurrences and complications were reported [124, 133]. Therefore, nerve-sparing RPLND - if indicated - should be performed by an experienced surgeon in specialised centres.

About 18-30% of patients are found to have retroperitoneal lymph node metastases on RPLND, corresponding to pathological stage II (PS2) disease [133, 134]. If no retroperitoneal metastases are found at RPLND (PS1), approximately 10% of the PS1 patients relapse at distant sites [86, 134]. If metastases are present and not treated with adjuvant chemotherapy, recurrence will occur in 31% of patients [134].

The presence of vascular invasion, predominant embryonal carcinoma, pT category as well as a high number of extranodal extension in metastatic nodes may be associated with an increased risk of recurrence in PS2 cases without adjuvant chemotherapy. As yet, the clinical significance of these further parameters remains limited and not applicable in clinical practice [134, 135].

The follow-up after RPLND is simpler and less costly than that carried out during post-orchiectomy surveillance because of the reduced need for abdominal CT scans [136]. If there is an indication to perform a staging RPLND, a laparoscopic or robot-assisted RPLND is feasible in expert hands. This minimal-invasive approach cannot be recommended as the standard approach outside of a specialised laparoscopic centre [137].

7.2.2.5 Guidelines for the treatment of stage 1 non-seminomatous germ cell tumour

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inform patients with stage 1 non-seminomatous germ cell tumour (NSGCT) about all adjuvant treatment options after orchiectomy (surveillance, adjuvant chemotherapy, and retroperitoneal lymph node dissection [RPLND]) including treatment-specific recurrence rates as well as acute and long-term side effects.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with stage 1 NSGCT, offer surveillance or risk-adapted treatment based on vascular invasion (see below).</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If patients are not willing to undergo surveillance, offer one course of cisplatin, etoposide, bleomycin (BEP) as an adjuvant treatment alternative since it has proven to be superior to RPLND in terms of recurrence rates.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with marker-positive recurrent and/or progressing lesion during surveillance, perform salvage treatment consisting of three or four courses of BEP chemotherapy according to the International Germ Cell Cancer Collaborative Group classification, followed by post-chemotherapy retroperitoneal lymph node dissection if necessary.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.*
### 7.2.2.6 Risk-adapted treatment for clinical stage 1 based on vascular invasion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage IA (pT1, no vascular invasion): low risk</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer surveillance if the patient is willing and able to comply.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In low-risk patients not willing (or unsuitable) to undergo surveillance, offer adjuvant chemotherapy with one course of cisplatin, etoposide, bleomycin (BEP).</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage IB (pT2-pT4): high risk</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer primary chemotherapy with one course of BEP.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inform patients having adjuvant chemotherapy about the advantages and disadvantages of one vs. two cycles of BEP.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer surveillance to patients not willing to undergo adjuvant chemotherapy.</td>
<td></td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer nerve-sparing retroperitoneal lymph node dissection to highly selected patients only; those with contraindication to adjuvant chemotherapy and unwilling to accept surveillance.</td>
<td></td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

Figure 1 provides a treatment algorithm for patients with NSGCT stage I.

**Figure 1: Risk-adapted treatment in patients with clinical stage 1 non-seminoma NSGCT CS1 [138]*

*All treatment options will need discussing with individual patients, to allow for them to make an informed decision as to their further care.
7.3 Metastatic germ cell tumours
The first-line treatment of metastatic germ cell tumours depends on:
- the histology of the primary tumour;
- prognostic groups as defined by the IGCCCG based on 5,202 non-seminoma and 660 seminoma cases (Table 4.3) [139];
- Marker decline during the first cycle of chemotherapy in “poor prognosis” patients

In relapsed patients a new prognostic score has been developed including response to first-line therapy which can be used to estimate patient outcome following salvage chemotherapy (see below).

7.3.1 CS1S with (persistently) elevated serum tumour markers
Serum tumour markers should be followed closely until levels fall into the reference values according to the expected half-life values for AFP and hCG. The clinical significance of persistently elevated LDH after orchiectomy in stage I disease is unclear. If the marker level for AFP or HCG increases after orchiectomy, the patient has residual disease. An US examination of the contralateral testicle must be performed. In case of NSGCT, if RPLND is performed, up to 87% of these patients have pathologically documented nodes in the retroperitoneum [140]. The treatment of true CS1S NSGT patients is still controversial. They may be treated with chemotherapy and with follow-up as for CS1B patients (high risk, see below) after primary chemotherapy [141], or by RPLND [129].

A population-based study reported on persistently elevated LDH or β-hCG in 19 and 15% of stage I seminoma patients, respectively. These patients frequently had more advanced T stage, but both CSS and OS did not differ from stage I A/B patients independent of treatment [142].

In all patients with germ cell tumours and rising markers, only after orchidectomy, a repeated imaging to detect metastasis is justified in order to individually tailor treatment.

7.3.2 Metastatic disease (stage IIA/B)

7.3.2.1 Stage IIA/B seminoma
Slightly enlarged retroperitoneal lymph nodes < 2 cm in patients without elevated tumour markers offer a diagnostic problem. These lymph nodes may be benign or represent metastases. An observation period of eight weeks with a second staging is recommended unless a biopsy verifies metastatic disease. Treatment should not be initiated unless metastatic disease is unequivocal, (e.g. growth or positive biopsy).

Specific trials (e.g. including RPLND or involved field radiation combined with a single course of carboplatin chemotherapy) are addressing the role of treatment options with potentially lower toxicity as compared to either radiotherapy or chemotherapy with three cycles of BEP.

Until recently, the standard treatment for stage IIA/B seminoma has been radiotherapy with reported relapse rates of 9-24% [143, 144]. Accumulating data on long-term morbidity, such as increased risk of cardiovascular events and increased risk of second malignancies following radiotherapy has led to concern. One study displaying a long-term follow-up of 19 years, reports a mortality not due to seminoma seven-fold greater than mortality due to seminoma [145]. Most reports refer to patients irradiated with larger target volumes and higher doses but there are also more recent studies reporting on patients treated with more modern radiotherapy [146]. The radiation dose recommended in stage IIA and IIB is 30 Gy and 36 Gy, respectively. The standard radiation field compared with stage I will be extended from the PA region to the ipsilateral iliac field. In stage IIB, the lateral borders should include the metastatic lymph nodes with a safety margin of 1.0-1.5 cm. This technique yields a relapse-free survival in stage IIA and IIB of 92% and 90%, respectively [143, 144]. Conversely, dose reduction to 27 Gy has been associated with 11% of relapses in stage IIA patients [100, 146].

In patients with stage IIA/B seminoma, chemotherapy with three courses of BEP or four courses of etoposide and cisplatin (EP), in cases with contraindications to bleomycin, is an alternative to radiotherapy. There are no randomised studies comparing radiotherapy vs. chemotherapy. A recent meta-analysis of thirteen high quality studies compared efficacy and toxicity of radiotherapy and chemotherapy in stage IIA and IIB patients [147]. Radiotherapy and chemotherapy appeared to be similarly effective in both stages. Nonetheless a non-significant trend toward a greater efficacy of chemotherapy (HR: 2.17) was shown in stage IIB seminoma. Acute toxicity was almost exclusively reported following chemotherapy, while long-term toxicity was more frequent.
following radiotherapy, mainly represented by bowel toxicity and by a higher occurrence of second cancers, almost all occurring in the irradiated field. This may favour the use of chemotherapy, BEP x 3, in stage IIB as standard treatment. In stage IIA, radiotherapy should present the initial treatment option.

Single-agent carboplatin is not an alternative to standard EP or BEP chemotherapy for metastatic disease [148].

**Figure 2: Treatment options in patients with seminoma clinical stage IIA and B**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical stage II A</th>
<th>Clinical stage II B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Radiotherapy</td>
<td>Radiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Gy x 15 to a</td>
<td>2 Gy x 15 to a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target dose of</td>
<td>target dose of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 Gy to paraaortic</td>
<td>30 Gy to paraaortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and ipsilateral</td>
<td>and ipsilateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iliac field</td>
<td>iliac field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Follow-up**

Residual tumour to be followed

*BEP = cisplatin, etoposide, bleomycin; EP = etoposide, cisplatin.*

### 7.3.2.2 Stage IIA/B non-seminoma

There is a general consensus that treatment should start with initial chemotherapy in all advanced cases of NSGCT except for stage IIA NSGCT disease and pure teratoma without elevated tumour markers, which can be managed by primary RPLND or surveillance to clarify stage [128, 149].

If surveillance is chosen, one follow-up evaluation after six weeks is indicated to document whether the lesion is growing, remaining stable or shrinking. A shrinking lesion is probably non-malignant in origin and should be observed further. A stable or growing lesion indicates either teratoma or an undifferentiated malignant tumour. If the lesion is growing without a corresponding increase in the tumour markers AFP or ß-hCG, teratoma is suspected. In such cases “nerve-sparing” RPLND represents the first treatment option and should be performed by an experienced surgeon [149]. Patients with a growing lesion and a concomitant increase in the tumour markers AFP or ß-hCG require primary chemotherapy according to the treatment algorithm for patients with metastatic disease and IGCCCG recommendations (Figure 2). A CT-or US-guided biopsy, if technically possible, may represent an alternative to surveillance strategy in stage IIA non-seminoma patients. When a marker negative stage IIA/B relapse is diagnosed two or more years following initial diagnosis, a CT-or US-guided biopsy should be advised to confirm the diagnosis of germ cell tumour (GCT) relapse. There is insufficient published data on PET scans in this situation to provide a recommendation on.

Primary chemotherapy and primary ‘nerve-sparing’ RPLND are comparable options in terms of outcome, but early and long-term side-effects and toxicity are different, allowing for involvement of the patient in selecting the treatment of choice [150]. The cure rate with either approach will be close to 98% [151-153].
Figure 3 presents the treatment options for patients with NSGCT CS IIA.

**Figure 3: Treatment options in patients with non-seminoma clinical stage IIA**

- **IIA Marker +**
  - Chemotherapy: BEP X 3
  - Follow-up: Independant of vascular invasion
  - Residual tumour

- **CS IIA, Marker -**
  - Follow-up After 6 weeks
  - or
  - NS-RPLND

- **PS I**
  - Follow-up
  - 2 cycles BEP
  - PS IIA/B

- **PS IIA/B**
  - 3 cycles PEB +/- Resection of residual tumour
  - NS-RPLND or chemotherapy
  - NS-RPLND
  - Further Follow-up

- **Residual tumour**
  - Either

- **CS IIB, Marker +**
  - Either

- **Regression**

**BEP = cisplatin, etoposide, bleomycin; NS = nerve-sparing; RPLND = retroperitoneal lymph node dissection; PS = pathological stage; PD = progressive disease; NC = no change.**

### 7.3.3 Metastatic disease (stage IIC and III)

#### 7.3.3.1 Primary chemotherapy

**Good prognosis risk group - SGCT**

For metastatic seminoma, only very limited data are available from randomised trials and they indicate that a cisplatin-based regimen should be preferred to carboplatin chemotherapy [154]. Recent data indicate that EP x 4 results in cure in almost all cases of good-prognosis seminomatous germ cell cancers [155]. Standard treatment in good-prognosis seminoma should therefore be, BEP x 3 or EP x 4. In the case of contraindications to bleomycin, EP x 4 should be given [156]. Post-chemotherapy masses should be managed as described in Section 7.5.2.

**Intermediate prognosis risk group - seminomatous germ cell tumour**

For patients with intermediate-risk seminoma, BEP x 4 or etoposide, cisplatin, ifosfamide (VIP) (in the case of contraindications to bleomycin) are recommended options, although no randomised trial has focused specifically on this group of rare patients [157]. A risk adapted approach with EP x 4 for patients with good prognosis and VIP x 4 for patients with intermediate prognosis metastatic seminoma yielded an OS of 99% and 87% for good and intermediate prognosis patients, respectively [155].

**Good prognosis risk group – non-seminomatosus germ cell tumour**

For non-seminoma, the primary treatment of choice for metastatic disease in patients with good prognosis risk disease, according to the IGCCC risk classification, is BEP x 3 (Table 7.1). This regimen was proven superior to cisplatin, vinblastine and bleomycin (PVB) in patients with advanced disease [158, 159]. While data support a three-day regimen of administering combination chemotherapy to be equally effective as a five-day regimen, this is associated with increased toxicity when four cycles are used [160], thus the five-day BEP regimen is recommended.
Table 7.1: cisplatin, etoposide, bleomycin (BEP) regimen (interval 21 days)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
<th>Duration of cycles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisplatin</td>
<td>20 mg/m²</td>
<td>Days 1-5*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etoposide</td>
<td>100 mg/m²</td>
<td>Days 1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bleomycin</td>
<td>30 mg</td>
<td>Days 1, 8, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Plus hydration.

In selected cases where bleomycin is contraindicated, EP x 4 can be given [139, 159]. A randomised trial from the French Groupe d’Etude des Tumeurs Genito-Urinaires (GETUG) suggested that when BEP is used in this setting the mortality rate was half that of EP, although the difference did not reach statistical significance [161]. Furthermore, the incidence of active cancer in the retroperitoneal specimen at post-chemotherapy retroperitoneal lymph node dissection was, however, to significantly higher in patients who received EP x 4 as compared to BEP x 3 (31.9% vs. 7.8%, p. < 0.0.01) [162, 163]. The risk of requiring post-RPLND adjuvant chemotherapy could be higher after EP x 4 which could thereby offset a hoped-for less toxic treatment.

Higher age is an adverse factor for the efficacy of BEP x 3 [164].

Therapy should be given without reduction of the doses at 21-day intervals; delaying the following chemotherapy cycle is justified only in cases of fever with granulocytopenia < 1,000/mm³ or thrombocytopenia < 100,000/IU. Neutropenia without fever is not by itself a reason to delay the next cycle. There is no indication for prophylactic application of haematopoietic growth factors such as granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF). However, if infectious complications have occurred during chemotherapy or the treatment interval was delayed due to myelotoxicity, prophylactic administration of G-CSF is recommended for the following cycles [165].

7.3.3.1.4 Intermediate prognosis risk group – non-seminomatous germ cell tumour

The ‘intermediate prognosis’ group in the IGCCCG has been defined as patients with a five-year survival rate of about 80%. The available data support BEP x 4 as standard treatment [139, 166]. A randomised trial compared BEP x 4 to BEP x 4 with the addition of paclitaxel (T-BEP) with no significant improvement in OS [167]. The overall toxicity with T-BEP was higher than with BEP, therefore it cannot be recommended as a standard approach.

7.3.3.1.5 Poor prognosis risk group - NSGCT

For patients with a ‘poor prognosis’ non-seminoma as defined by the IGCCCG, standard treatment consists of BEP x 4. Four cycles of cisplatin, etoposide and ifosfamide (PEI) have the same effect, but are more myelotoxic [168, 169]. The five-year PFS is between 45% and 50%. Four randomised trials have shown no advantage in OS for high-dose chemotherapy in the overall ‘poor prognosis’ patients group [33, 170-172]. However, patients with a slow tumour marker decline after the first or second cycle represent a prognostically inferior subgroup [33, 34]. An online calculator is available at www.igr.fr/calculation-tumor/NSGCT.xls. Recently, an international randomised phase III trial (GETUG 13) conducted in 263 patients with IGCCCG poor-risk NSGCT demonstrated that intensifying treatment with dose-dense chemotherapy improves PFS, but not OS in patients with an early unfavourable tumour marker decline [35]. Based on the results from this trial, patients with an unfavourable tumour marker decline after BEP x 1 should be switched to a more intensive chemotherapy regimen [173, 174]. Further prospective trials/registries are planned to validate this approach.

Additional patient groups that may benefit from up-front dose intensification are those with mediastinal primary non-seminoma and patients with brain metastases at initial diagnosis [175, 176].

Since a matched-pair analysis comparing high-dose to conventional treatment resulted in a better survival rate [34, 177], poor prognosis patients should still be treated in ongoing prospective trials or registries, whenever possible. Patients meeting ‘poor-prognosis’ criteria should be transferred to a reference centre as a better outcome was reported for intermediate and poor prognosis patients who had been treated within a clinical trial in a high volume centre [12, 155]. There are no general recommendations for treatment modifications for patients with a poor general condition (Karnofsky < 50%) or extended liver infiltration (> 50%), but two small reports indicate that a first cycle of dose-reduced therapy may reduce acute mortality without compromising long-term outcome. However, the number of subsequent cycles of full-dose therapy should not be reduced after a first low-dose induction cycle [178, 179].

Patients with extended pulmonary infiltration are at risk for acute respiratory distress syndrome: adapting the doses of the BEP regimen in the first cycle of chemotherapy (only three days of EP without bleomycin) was suggested to reduce the risk of early death in this setting [178].
7.4 Restaging and further treatment

7.4.1 Restaging

Restaging is performed by imaging investigations and re-evaluation of tumour markers. Upon marker decline and stable or regressive tumour manifestation, chemotherapy will be completed (three or four cycles, depending on the initial stage) [139, 180, 181]. In the case of marker decline, but growing metastases, resection of the tumour is obligatory after termination of induction therapy, other than in an emergency, according to local tumour growth [182].

Patients with clear upfront progression (primary cisplatin refractory) should be switched to experimental new drug trials [183]. Patients with slow marker decline after the first one-two cycles of chemotherapy are candidates for dose intensification (see Section 7.4.3.1.5.). Patients with a low-level hCG marker plateau post-treatment should be observed to see whether complete normalisation occurs. In patients with a low plateau serum AFP level after chemotherapy, surgery of residual masses should be performed, with post-surgery AFP monitoring. Salvage chemotherapy is indicated for documented marker rise only [184, 185].

7.4.2 Residual tumour resection

7.4.2.1 Seminoma

A residual mass of seminoma should not be primarily resected, irrespective of the size, but controlled by imaging investigations and tumour markers [186-189].

Fluorodeoxyglucose-positron emission tomography has a high negative predictive value in patients with residual masses after treatment of seminoma. False positive results are less frequent when scans are scheduled > 2 months after chemotherapy. In patients with residuals of > 3 cm, FDG-PET should be performed in order to gain more information on the viability of these residuals. In patients with residuals of < 3 cm, the use of FDG-PET is optional [45].

In the case of a post-chemotherapy mass that is still positive at reclassification FDG-PET with no volume increase, a second FDG-PET should be performed six weeks later. Alternatively, a biopsy should be taken to ascertain persistent disease. In these cases as well as in those with progressive disease (i.e. a growing mass which up-takes contrast medium at CT scans or radionuclide tracer at FDG-PET), salvage therapy is indicated (usually chemotherapy or radiotherapy) [190-192]. Patients with persistent and progressing hCG elevation after first line chemotherapy should immediately proceed with salvage chemotherapy. Progressing patients without hCG progression should undergo histological verification (e.g. by biopsy or mini-invasive or open surgery) before salvage chemotherapy is given.

When RPLND is indicated, this should be performed in referral centres, as residuals from seminoma may be difficult to remove due to intense fibrosis [191]. Ejaculation may be preserved in these cases [193].

7.4.2.2 Non-seminoma

Following first-line BEP chemotherapy, only 6-10% of residual masses contain viable cancer, 50% contain mature teratoma, and 40% contain necrotic-fibrotic tissue [194]. FDG-PET is not indicated to re-stage patients after chemotherapy [47]. In cases of complete remission after first line chemotherapy (no visible tumour), tumour resection is not indicated [195, 196]. Residual tumour resection is mandatory in all patients with a residual mass > 1 cm in the short axis at cross-sectional CT imaging [197-200].

The role of surgery is debated in patients with retroperitoneal residual lesions < 1 cm. There is still a risk of residual cancer or teratoma although the vast majority of patients (> 70%) harbour fibro-necrotic tissue [201]. Proponents of post-chemotherapy-RPLND for all patients refer to the fact that both teratoma and vital malignant germ cell tumours are still found after radiologic complete remission in lesions < 10 mm [202]. The alternative is to put patients with residual disease < 1 cm on an observation protocol based on recurrence data of 6-9% depending on the time of follow-up [195, 196]. In the series with a longer observation of 15.5 years, 12 of 141 patients (9%) relapsed after having achieved a complete response after primary treatment [196], but eight of the 12 relapsing patients were cured. Therefore, patients treated with first-line chemotherapy should be informed about this life-long risk of recurrence in the order of 10% before consenting to observe residual lesions < 1 cm. Patients after salvage chemotherapy or high-dose chemotherapy in first or subsequent salvage situations harbour vital tumour at a much higher rate [203]. Therefore, there is an indication to perform surgery in salvage patients even with residual disease < 1 cm [195, 196].

If residual surgery is indicated, all areas of primary metastatic sites must be completely resected within two–six weeks of completion of chemotherapy. If technically feasible, a bilateral nerve-sparing procedure should be performed. There is growing evidence that template resections with unilateral preservation of nerves in selected patients yield equivalent long-term results compared to bilateral systematic resections in all patients. The mere resection of the residual tumour (so called lumpectomy) should not be performed [196, 201, 204-207].
In persistent larger volume retroperitoneal disease, all areas of primary metastatic sites must be completely resected within two-six weeks of completion of chemotherapy. If technically feasible, a nerve-sparing procedure should be performed [196, 201, 204]. Laparoscopic RPLND may yield similar outcomes to the open procedure in very selected cases of very low residual disease and in very experienced hands, but it is not recommended outside a specialised laparoscopic centre [208-210].

7.4.3 Timing of surgery in the case of multiple sites
In general, residual surgery should start at the location with the highest volume of residual disease. The histology may diverge in different organ sites [197]. In cases of retroperitoneal and lung residual masses, the presence of fibro-necrotic tissue in the retroperitoneum is associated with a probability as high as 90% that lung masses contain the same histology [211].

Resection of contralateral pulmonary lesions is not mandatory in cases where pathologic examination of the lesions from the first lung show complete necrosis. However, discordant histology between both lungs may occur in up to 20% of patients [212, 213].

7.4.3.1 Quality and intensity of surgery
Post-chemotherapy surgery is always demanding. Most of the time, post-chemo RPLND does not require further interventions on abdominal or retroperitoneal organs. About a third of patients may require a planned intervention where removal of organs affected by the disease (for example kidney, psoas muscle or gross vessels) is performed and followed by ad hoc reconstructive surgery (e.g. vascular interventions such as vena cava or aortic prostheses) [214, 215]. In patients with intermediate- or poor-risk and residual disease > 5 cm the probability of vascular procedures is as high as 20% [216]. This surgery must therefore be referred to specialised centres capable of interdisciplinary surgery (hepatic resections, vessel replacement, spinal neurosurgery, thoracic surgery). Even with centralisation of treatment the median number of RPLNDs performed per surgeon/year in the U.K. is six [217]. Nevertheless, patients treated within such centres benefit from a significant reduction in peri-operative mortality from 6% to 0.8% [13]. In addition, specialised urologic surgeons are capable of reducing the local recurrence rate from 16% to 3% with a higher rate of complete resections [14].

7.4.3.2 Salvage and desperation surgery.
Surgery of resectable disease after salvage treatment remains a potentially curative option in all patients with any residual mass following salvage chemotherapy. Survival after surgery and first salvage chemotherapy was improved, 70% at 10 years, following taxane-containing regimens [218]. Also, in the case of extensive salvage chemotherapy, surgery remains a fundamental tool to achieve durable complete remissions in up to 20% of patients [219, 220].

Desperation surgery refers to resection of non-responsive or progressive (e.g. rising markers) disease following salvage chemotherapy. When the disease is resectable, a significant proportion of these patients can be rendered disease-free in the long term [221].

7.4.3.3 Consolidation chemotherapy after secondary surgery
After resection of necrosis or mature/immature teratoma, no further treatment is required. In cases of incomplete resection of viable cancer, two adjuvant cycles of conventionally dosed cisplatin-based chemotherapy may be given in certain subgroups (e.g. ‘poor prognosis’ patients) [205] (caution: cumulative doses of bleomycin). After complete resection of ‘vital’ tumour < 10% of the total volume, especially in patients in an initially good prognosis group according to IGCCCG, the relapse rate is very low and adjuvant chemotherapy is not beneficial for preventing further relapse [222]. The prognosis will definitely deteriorate if vital malignant neoplasm is found in resection specimens after second- and third-line chemotherapy. In this latter situation, post-operative chemotherapy is not indicated and is unable to improve the prognosis [223].

7.4.4 Systemic salvage treatment for relapse or refractory disease
Cisplatin-based combination salvage chemotherapy will result in long-term remissions in about 50% of the patients who relapse after first-line chemotherapy, but the results are highly dependent on several prognostic factors [224]. The regimens of choice are four cycles of a triplet regimen including cisplatin and ifosfamide plus a third agent: etoposide (PEI/VIP), paclitaxel (TIP), or potentially gemcitabine (GIP) (Table 7.2) [225]. No randomised trial has compared these regimens. Due to their potentially lethal risk of haematological toxicity, these regimens should be used with G-CSF support and by well-trained oncologists.

The only available randomised trial comparing standard-dose vs. high-dose chemotherapy plus transplant in the salvage setting showed no benefit in OS in patients treated with three cycles of vinblastine, ifosfamide, and cisplatin (VeIP) plus one cycle of consolidation high-dose chemotherapy, compared with VeIP x 4 [226]. Due to several methodological reasons this trial design can no longer be considered state of the art.
There is clear evidence from large retrospective analyses that there are different prognostic groups in the case of relapse after first-line chemotherapy [227, 228], and the Lorch-Beyer score has resulted in five prognostic subgroups (Table 7.3). Several recent trials have confirmed this score [229, 230]. As in first-line therapy, the prognostic impact of tumour marker decline has also been demonstrated in the salvage setting [231]. While progression to induction chemotherapy was negative for OS, prior use of paclitaxel was not significantly associated with a negative outcome [232].

A second large analysis in this cohort of 1,600 patients showed an improvement of about 10-15% in OS in patients from all prognostic subgroups when treated with high-dose salvage therapy compared to standard dose therapy. To prospectively confirm this finding, an international randomised trial of high-dose vs. conventional dose chemotherapy in patients with first-line relapse has started (Tiger trial). If high-dose chemotherapy is used as a salvage treatment, sequential treatment cycles of high-dose carboplatin and etoposide HD-CE should be preferred to a single high-dose regimen because the former is associated with less toxicity-related deaths [233].

It is clearly of the utmost importance that these rare patients with relapse are treated within clinical trials and at experienced centres.

Table 7.2: Standard PEI/VIP, TIP and GIP chemotherapy (interval 21 days)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regimen</th>
<th>Chemotherapy agents</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
<th>Duration of cycles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PEI/VIP</td>
<td>Cisplatin*</td>
<td>20 mg/m^2</td>
<td>Days 1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Etoposide</td>
<td>75-100 mg/m^2</td>
<td>Days 1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ifosfamide†</td>
<td>1.2 g/m^2</td>
<td>Days 1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIP</td>
<td>Paclitaxel</td>
<td>250 mg/m^2</td>
<td>24 hour continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ifosfamide†</td>
<td>1.5 g/ m^2</td>
<td>infusion day 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisplatin*</td>
<td>25 mg/m^2</td>
<td>Days 2-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternative schedule</td>
<td>Paclitaxel</td>
<td>175 mg/m^2</td>
<td>Day 1, 3 hour infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ifosfamide†</td>
<td>1.2 g/ m^2</td>
<td>Days 1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisplatin*</td>
<td>20 mg/m^2</td>
<td>Days 1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GIP</td>
<td>Gemcitabine</td>
<td>1000 mg/m^2</td>
<td>Day 1 + 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ifosfamide</td>
<td>1200 mg/m^2</td>
<td>Days 1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisplatin</td>
<td>20 mg/m^2</td>
<td>Days 1-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Plus hydration.
† Plus mesna protection.
xx An MRC schedule uses paclitaxel at 175 mg/m^2 in a 3 hour infusion [234].

The International Prognostic Factors Study Group score, comprised of seven important factors, is listed in Table 7.3. Using these factors, 5 risk groups (very low risk = -1 points; low risk = 0 points; intermediate-risk = 1-2 points, high risk = 3-4 points; and very high risk > 5 points) were identified with significant differences in PFS and OS. Table 4.3 illustrates the five risk groups and the corresponding two-year PFS and three-year OS rates [235].

Table 7.3: The International Prognostic Factors Study Group Score Construction [228]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Points</th>
<th>-1</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>Seminoma</td>
<td>Non-seminoma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary site</td>
<td>Gonadal</td>
<td>Retroperitoneal</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Response</td>
<td>CR/PRm-</td>
<td>PRm+/SD</td>
<td>PD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFI</td>
<td>&gt; 3 months</td>
<td>≤ 3 months</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFP salvage</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>&lt; 1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hCG salvage</td>
<td>&lt; 1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LBB</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AFP = alpha-fetoprotein; hCG = human chorionic gonadotrophin; LBB = liver, bone, brain metastases; PD = progressive disease; PFI = progression-free interval.
Table 7.4: PFS and OS estimates for all patients according to IGCCCG-2 prognostic score [228]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Score (n = 1,435)</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>HR</th>
<th>2-years PFS</th>
<th>3-year OS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Very Low</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>5.30</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>75.1</td>
<td>77.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>17.9</td>
<td>2.07</td>
<td>52.6</td>
<td>69.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>646</td>
<td>45.0</td>
<td>2.88</td>
<td>42.8</td>
<td>57.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>24.5</td>
<td>4.81</td>
<td>26.4</td>
<td>31.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very High</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>8.95</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>14.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missing</td>
<td>159</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.4.5 Second relapse

There are no randomised trials for patients with second relapse; however, conventional therapy does not appear to be very effective. For patients having received two series of conventionally dosed therapy (first-line and first salvage), High-dose (HD) chemotherapy with autologous stem cell support should be used [228]. Even with HD-therapy the chance of cure is only 20-25%.

Refractory disease: Patients relapsing within four-eight weeks after platinum-based therapy or who are progressing despite platinum-based therapy as well as those relapsing shortly after HD chemotherapy are considered cisplatinum refractory. For those patients, combinations of gemcitabine and oxaliplatin or the triple combination of gemcitabine, oxaliplatin and paclitaxel have resulted in response rates of 25-45%. Targeted agents have mostly failed [236-238]. Cisplatin re-challenge in association with gemcitabine and paclitaxel, could be considered in patients with good renal function [239].

Patients with a good response undergoing subsequent resection of residual tumour lesions may still have a 15-20% chance of long-term cure [219, 240]. Immunotherapy with PD1- checkpoint inhibitors is currently studied due a substantial expression of PDL1 in germ cell tumours, in most series about 50% of tumour cells or tumour infiltration cells express PDL1.

7.4.5.1 Late relapse (> two years after end of first-line treatment)

Late relapse is defined as recurrence more than two years following cure after chemotherapy for metastatic TC, with, or without, residual tumour surgery and occurs, according to a pooled analysis, in 1.4% and 3.2% in seminoma and non-seminoma patients, respectively [241, 242]. If feasible, all lesions of late relapsing non-seminoma patients should be removed by radical surgery.

Patients with rapidly rising hCG may benefit from induction salvage chemotherapy before complete resection, but in most patients surgery should be performed irrespective of the level of their tumour markers in order to completely resect all undifferentiated germ-cell tumour, mature teratoma with or without somatic transformation [204, 243, 244].

Survival strongly depends on the histology of the removed lesions rather than on the initial germ cell cancer. Interestingly, in a population-based study all late-relapsing seminoma patients had viable germ cell tumour, whereas teratoma or necrosis was found in half of the patients with initial non-seminoma [245].

If the lesions are not completely resectable, biopsies should be obtained for histological assessment, and salvage chemotherapy should be initiated according to the histological results. In these cases, consultation of an experienced pathologist is required to avoid misinterpretation of the therapeutic morphological changes in the germ cell neoplasms [246]. If the patient responds to salvage chemotherapy, secondary surgery should be conducted whenever possible. In the case of unresectable, but localised, refractory disease, stereotactic or conventional radiotherapy may be considered. To avoid excess mortality, late relapses should be treated only at centres experienced in managing such patients [247].

7.4.5.2 Treatment of brain metastases

Brain metastases occur in the frame of the initial diagnosis of metastatic disease or a systemic relapse and rarely as an isolated relapse. The long-term survival of patients presenting with brain metastases at initial diagnosis is poor (30-50%), but it is even poorer when brain metastasis develops as recurrent disease (the five-year survival-rate is 2-5%) [248, 249]. A large international database comprising 523 patients reported 48% three-year OS rates in patients with brain metastases at initial diagnoses and 27% three-year OS rates for patients with brain metastases at relapse [250]. Chemotherapy was the initial treatment in this case, which proved particularly effective in a first line setting (potentially even as dose-intensified therapy upfront) while data support the use of multimodal treatment particularly in relapsed patients [250]. Consolidation radiotherapy, even in the case of a total response after chemotherapy should thus be used in patient with brain metastases.
at relapse, but this option must be carefully discussed in a first-line setting [251]. Surgery can be considered in the case of a persistent solitary metastasis, depending on the systemic state, the histology of the primary tumour and the location of the metastasis.

7.4.6 Guidelines for the treatment of metastatic germ cell tumours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treat low volume non-seminomatous germ cell tumour (NSGCT) stage IIA/B with elevated markers like ‘good or intermediate prognosis’ advanced NSGCT, with three or four cycles of cisplatin, etoposide, bleomycin (BEP).</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In stage IIA/B NSGCT without marker elevation, exclude marker negative embryonal carcinoma by obtaining histology by either retroperitoneal lymph node dissection (RPLND) or biopsy. If not possible, repeat staging after six weeks of surveillance before making a final decision on further treatment.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In metastatic NSGCT with an intermediate prognosis, treat with four courses of standard BEP.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In metastatic NSGCT with a poor prognosis, treat with one cycle of BEP, followed by tumour marker assessment after three weeks: in the case of an unfavourable decline, initiate chemotherapy intensification. In the case of a favourable decline, continue BEP up to a total of four cycles.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform surgical resection of residual masses after chemotherapy in NSGCT in the case of visible residual masses and when serum levels of tumour markers are normal or normalising.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initially offer radiotherapy for seminoma CS IIA. When necessary, use chemotherapy as a salvage treatment with the same schedule as for the corresponding prognostic groups of NSGCT.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initially offer chemotherapy in seminoma stage CS IIB (BEP x 3 or etoposide, cisplatin x 4, in good prognosis) as an alternative to radiotherapy.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat seminoma stage IIC and higher, with primary chemotherapy according to the same principles used for NSGCT.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. FOLLOW UP AFTER CURATIVE THERAPY

8.1 Rationale for follow-up

The primary aim of follow-up in the first five years is the timely diagnosis of recurrent disease in order to be able to treat the patient with curative intent with the least aggressive therapy [241]. An adequate follow-up relies on the profound knowledge about TC with regards to histology, stage, primary treatment and treatment success. Follow-up has to be tailored to each individual patient and the schedule has to be acceptable to the patient, the physician, as well as the health care system. The interval of follow-up visits and the clinical investigations to be performed at each visit should depend on the risk of relapse, in general, and on the likely site of relapse in an individual patient [252]. Only one RCT was published addressing the implication of different follow-up schedules and the use of imaging and tumour markers [129]. Several recent publications have added valuable information and recommendations [84, 96, 97, 101, 103, 126, 253-255], contributing to the development of consensus recommendations and by the European Society for Medical Oncology Testicular Cancer Consensus Committee [256].

In recognition of the ionizing radiation exposure risks associated with repeated CT scanning [257] a reduction in the number of follow up CT scans advised has been seen in these past years [1, 258].

Looking at the different risks of relapse depending on diagnosis and initial treatment three major follow-up groups can be defined:

1. patients with seminoma stage I;
2. patients with non-seminoma stage I on active surveillance;
3. all patients having received either adjuvant treatment or curative chemotherapy for good- and intermediate-prognosis metastatic disease (according to the IGCCCG) achieving a complete remission with, or without, surgery (for seminoma this includes residual lesions < 3 cm, or residual lesions > 3 cm that are PET-negative).

It is important to note that patients not achieving a complete remission or presenting with poor prognosis disease should be followed up individually in specialised centres.
Tables 8.1-8.3 show the minimal recommendations for follow up of the three different groups based on recommendations developed at a consensus conference [256].

Generally, MRI of the abdomen can be used instead of CT in experienced centres. Regarding the use of US of the contralateral testis, the majority of the consensus meeting participants voted against repeat US investigation, both in case of negative biopsy (21/31) and also if no contralateral biopsy has been performed (17/32).

Follow up for relapse beyond five years is generally not recommended. A very late relapse (VLR) after five years is a rare event occurring in approximately 0.5% of patients according to a population-based analysis [245]. The aim of follow up beyond five years therefore shifts to detection of late side effects of treatment.

Most patients with VLR are diagnosed due to symptoms, however in up to 50% elevated tumour markers can be found in both seminomatous and non-seminomatous germ cell tumours [245, 259]. Patient education about relapse symptoms and physician awareness is a very important part of survivorship management. The early use of imaging and tumour markers in case of suspicion of relapse is encouraged.

**Table 8.1: Recommended minimal follow-up for seminoma stage I on active surveillance or after adjuvant treatment (carboplatin or radiotherapy)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modality</th>
<th>Year 1</th>
<th>Year 2</th>
<th>Year 3</th>
<th>Years 4 &amp; 5</th>
<th>After 5 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumour markers ± doctor visit</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>once</td>
<td>Further management according to survivorship care plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest X-ray</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominopelvic computed tomography/magnetic resonance imaging</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>Once at 36 months</td>
<td>Once at 60 months</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 8.2: Recommended minimal follow-up for non-seminoma stage I on active surveillance**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modality</th>
<th>Year 1</th>
<th>Year 2</th>
<th>Year 3</th>
<th>Years 4 &amp; 5</th>
<th>After 5 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumour markers ± doctor visit</td>
<td>4 times</td>
<td>4 times**</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>1-2 times</td>
<td>Further management according to survivorship care plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest X-ray</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>Once in case of LVI+</td>
<td>At 60 months if LVI+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominopelvic computed tomography/magnetic resonance imaging</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>At 24 months***</td>
<td>Once at 36 months*</td>
<td>Once at 60 months*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Recommended by 50% of the consensus group members.
**In case of high risk (LVI+) a minority of the consensus group members recommended six times.
***In case of high risk (LVI+) a majority of the consensus group members recommended an additional CT at eighteen months.

**Table 8.3: Recommended minimal follow up after adjuvant treatment or complete remission for advanced disease (excluded: poor prognosis and no remission)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modality</th>
<th>Year 1</th>
<th>Year 2</th>
<th>Year 3</th>
<th>Years 4 &amp; 5</th>
<th>After 5 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumour markers ± doctor visit</td>
<td>4 times</td>
<td>4 times</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>2 times</td>
<td>Further management according to survivorship care plan**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest X-ray</td>
<td>1-2 times</td>
<td>Once</td>
<td>Once</td>
<td>Once</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominopelvic computed tomography (CT)/magnetic resonance imaging</td>
<td>1-2 times</td>
<td>At 24 months</td>
<td>Once at 36 months</td>
<td>Once at 60 months</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thorax CT</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Same time points as abdominopelvic CT/MRI in case of pulmonary metastases at diagnosis.
**In case of teratoma in resected residual disease: the patient should remain with the uro-oncologist.
8.2 Quality of life and long-term toxicities after cure of testicular cancer

The vast majority of patients will be cured and five-year relative survival rates approximate 95% in Western Europe. Furthermore, TC patients are usually between 18 and 40 years at diagnosis such that life expectancy after cure extends over several decades [260]. Patients should be informed before treatment of common long-term toxicities, which are probably best avoided by adherence to international guidelines. Treatment of stage I TC is controversial with some experts advocating surveillance for all, thereby avoiding unnecessary adjuvant chemotherapy [118], whereas others highlight the importance of patient autonomy and consider the prospect of avoiding salvage treatment with its known long-term toxicities as quite appealing [261]. Unfortunately, it is not known which treatment spares most patients long-term toxicities, which so far seem to be absent or mild after adjuvant chemotherapy [120, 127, 262].

During follow-up, patients should be screened and treated for known risk factors such as high blood pressure, hyperlipidaemia and testosterone deficiency. When follow-up by the TC expert is discontinued, a written cancer survivorship plan addressing late toxic effects, lifestyle recommendations, recurrence risk, and cancer-specific follow-up might be helpful [241, 263]. The following overview is not complete and interested readers are referred to review articles on this topic [260, 263, 264].

8.2.1 Second malignant neoplasms (SMN)

Treatment-induced SMN usually occur after the first ten years [263]. The risk for solid SMN increases with younger age at radio- or chemotherapy and remains significantly elevated for at least 35 years [110, 265-267]. Radiotherapy-related SMN are primarily localised within or close to the RT field (colon, stomach, pancreas, bladder and the urinary tract) [110, 111, 266-269]. Hauptmann et al. could demonstrate a remarkably clear radiation-dose relationship to gastric- and pancreatic cancer [175, 250]. Fung et al. demonstrated that modern cisplatin-based chemotherapy was associated with a 40% increased risk of a solid SMN [270].

8.2.2 Leukaemia

In a series of 40,576 TC survivors, the observed/expected ratio for developing a leukaemia, mostly acute myeloid (AML) and lymphoblastic leukaemia was 2.6 [271]. The risk of AML seems to be both related to the dose of cisplatin and etoposide. Doses of etoposide exceeding 2 g/m² have been shown to increase the subsequent risk of AML [272]. It is important to keep in mind that the majority of TC patients do receive much lower doses of etoposide such that the absolute risk of AML after three to four courses of BEP is very low, and in patients requiring high-dose chemotherapy with cumulative etoposide doses exceeding this threshold, less than 1.5% have been reported to suffer from AML. There is a cumulative dose-disease relationship regarding cisplatin and AML. Chemotherapy-induced leukaemia is usually diagnosed within the first ten years after treatment for TC and has a very poor prognosis [273].

8.2.3 Infections

Chemotherapy-treated TC survivors (TCSs) have a higher risk of dying from infections than the normal population, (SMR 2.48, 95% CI: 1.70 to 3.50) [274]. This is possibly due to long-term depression of the bone-marrow, but also complications of subsequent salvage treatment (which was not reliably registered) or extensive or subsequent surgical treatment might lie behind these numbers. Furthermore, asymptomatic pulmonary fibrosis by mediastinal radiotherapy and/or bleomycin may render TCSs vulnerable to potentially deadly pneumonias many years after treatment.
8.2.4 **Pulmonary complications**
Chemotherapy exposed TCSs have a nearly three-fold increased risk of dying of pulmonary diseases than the normal population [274]. Bleomycin-induced lung toxicity may affect 7% to 21% of patients in the long term, resulting in death in 1%-3% [275]. TCSs treated with high cumulative cisplatin doses and/or pulmonary surgery, have a poorer pulmonary function than those cured by surgery only [276]. Intriguingly, long-term pulmonary complications were associated with the cumulative cisplatin dose and not to the dose of bleomycin [276]. Pulmonary function recovered during repeated assessments over five years in almost all other assessed 565 TCSs [277]. Of note, an association with risk factors such as reduced renal function, age, tobacco-smoking, and cumulative chemotherapy, were not associated with pulmonary function, but with pulmonary embolism, lung surgery, and poor IGCCCG risk group [277].

8.2.5 **Cardiovascular toxicity**
Thromboembolic events (mostly venous) occur more frequently in patients with GCT receiving chemotherapy than in other young male adults treated with chemotherapy for other cancers [278]. Low-dose heparins used during the course of chemotherapy may prevent the onset of thromboembolic events [279], though level 1 evidence is lacking. Mortality from cardiovascular disease (CVD) is higher in TCSs than in the general population [274, 280]. Furthermore, CVD is more common in chemotherapy-treated TCSs than in those who underwent surgery only [123, 281]. A recent report estimated even a 0.24% incidence of major vascular events during cisplatinum-based chemotherapy [278]. The metabolic syndrome is a strong predictor for CVD and its components, hypertension, obesity and hypercholesterolemia, increase with treatment intensity [282, 283]. Circulating residual serum platinum might exert endothelial stress and thereby possibly lead to hypertension [284].[285]. Furthermore, exposure to circulating platinum has been shown to be associated with paraesthesia, hypogonadism, and hypercholesterolaemia [285].

8.2.6 **Raynaud-like phenomena**
Chemotherapy-related Raynaud-like phenomena were reported before the introduction of cisplatin and are usually ascribed to the application of bleomycin [286, 287]. Cisplatin is believed to contribute to cold-induced vasospasms. Vogelzang et al. reported that the incidence of Raynaud’s phenomenon was higher after treatment with CVB than after vinblastine and bleomycin only, 41% vs. 21%, respectively [288].

8.2.7 **Neurotoxicity**
Cisplatin induces a symmetric dose-dependent sensory, distal, length-dependent glove and stocking paraesthesias, affecting 29% of TCSs who received cisplatin-based chemotherapy as opposed to 10% after orchiectomy alone [289]. Application of five or more cycles increases the frequency of this symptom to 46%. Paclitaxel-induced acute neuropathy consists of an acute pain syndrome, which usually develops within three days of paclitaxel administration, or within a week. Platinum is measurable in the serum of TCSs many years after its application and the intensity of paraesthesias is more strongly associated with platinum serum level than with the cumulative dose of applied cisplatin [284].

8.2.8 **Ototoxicity**
Cisplatin-induced ototoxicity comprises tinnitus and hearing impairment, particularly frequencies of 4,000 Hz and higher, and is caused by damage to the outer hair cells in the inner ear [290-292]. Both hearing impairment and tinnitus are considerably increased after application of 50 mg/m² cisplatin over two days as compared to 20 mg/m² over five days (odds ratio 5.1 and 7.3, respectively), indicating a higher impact of serum peak concentrations than cumulative doses [289]. A significant association between glutathione S-transferases (GST) genotypes and the risk of cisplatin-induced ototoxicity has been demonstrated [293, 294]. Hopefully, increasing insight into the pathogenesis of and vulnerability for this complication will lead to more individualised treatment in the future.

8.2.9 **Nephrotoxicity**
Cisplatin-based chemotherapy may lead to long-term renal function impairment in 20-30% of TCSs [289-292]. In TC patients, reduced renal elimination of cisplatin and bleomycin might increase the risk of other toxicities, e.g. bleomycin-related pneumonitis [295, 296]. However, a comprehensive assessment of 1,206 Danish TCSs did not reveal a significant association between chemotherapy-induced impaired renal function and other toxicities [279]. Renal recovery was poor after 5 or more cycles of BEP as compared to after BEP x3 [279].

8.2.10 **Hypogonadism**
Testicular endocrine dysfunction comprises insufficient testosterone production and/or compensatory increased Luteinizing hormone (LH) levels. Subnormal testosterone levels have been reported in TCSs treated with chemotherapy, when compared to those treated with surgery only or the general population [262, 297].
8.2.11 Fatigue
Chronic fatigue (CF) is described as a subjective feeling of emotional, physical and/or cognitive tiredness that is not relieved by rest, and persists for more than six months. Significantly higher levels of C-reactive protein and interleukin-1 receptor antagonist are measured in TCSs with CF [298]. Also, a significantly higher frequency of CF (16%) was reported in a cross-sectional Norwegian study of long-term TCSs at a median of twelve years after treatment for TC when compared with the age-matched Norwegian population (10%) [299]. Of note, the prevalence of CF increased from 15% to 27% during a 10 year period in long-term TCSs [300].

8.2.12 Quality of life
Quality of life (QoL) is transiently reduced by chemotherapy, during which patients experience a loss of appetite, increased fatigue, increased dyspnoea and reduced social and physical functions [299]. When comparing three or four cycles of BEP in good risk patients, all outcomes favour treatment with three courses [160]. After one and two years, one third of patients reported an improvement in global QoL after chemotherapy, while one fifth of patients reported deterioration, with no difference between treatment groups. In adjuvant treatment of non-seminoma stage I patients, there was no difference in short-term or long-term (5 year) QoL between RPLND or one course of BEP [301]

9. TESTICULAR STROMAL TUMOURS

9.1 Classification
Non-germ-cell tumours of the testicle include sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours and miscellaneous nonspecific stromal tumours. The different histological subtypes of testicular tumours are defined according to the WHO classification 2016 (adapted) [30].

9.1.1 Epidemiology and prognosis
Sex cord stromal tumours comprise less than 5% of testicular neoplasms. Data from the National Cancer Data Base, published in 2016, showed that 0.39% of patients (315/79,120) were diagnosed with primary malignant Leydig or Sertoli cell tumours [113]. Of these 315 patients 250 (79%) had malignant Leydig cell tumours and 65 (21%) had malignant Sertoli cell tumours. Overall survival at one and five years for CS Leydig cell tumours was 98% (95% CI: 96-100) and 91% (95% CI: 85-96), respectively, and for CSI Sertoli cell tumours OS was 93% (95% CI: 83-100) and 77% (95% CI: 62-95), respectively (p = 0.015).

Conclusion is that five-year survival estimates of stage I Leydig and Sertoli cell tumours are significantly lower compared to those of stage I germ cell tumours with Sertoli cell tumours significantly worse than Leydig cell tumours.

A recent systematic review [285] analysing the impact of previously identified pathologic risk factors on harbouring occult metastatic disease (OMD) in patients with CS I testicular stromal tumours showed an increased risk of occult metastatic disease for each additional risk factor (P < .001). Five-year occult metastatic disease-free survival was 98.1% for those with < 2 risk factors vs. 44.9% for those with ≥ 2 risk factors (P < .001). Whilst the existing literature does not support making firm recommendations, it seems to be of interest to risk-stratify patients for future research and initiate adjuvant therapy in higher-risk patients.

These data support the importance of large databases to evaluate the efficacy of treatment in rare neoplasms.

9.2 Leydig cell tumours
9.2.1 Epidemiology
Leydig cell tumours constitute about 1-3% of adult testicular tumours [302, 303] and 3% of testicular tumours in infants and children [303]. These tumours are most common in the third to sixth decade in adults, with a similar incidence observed in each decade. Another peak incidence is seen in children aged between three and nine years. Only 3% of Leydig cell tumours are bilateral [302]. These tumours occur in about 8% of patients with Klinefelter’s syndrome [303].

9.2.2 Pathology of Leydig cell tumours
Leydig cell tumours are the most common type of sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours. Histopathologically, they are well delineated and usually up to 5 cm in diameter. They are solid, yellow to tan in colour, with haemorrhage and/or necrosis in 30% of cases. Microscopically, the cells are polygonal, with eosinophilic cytoplasm and occasional Reinke crystals, regular nucleus, solid arrangement and capillary stroma. The cells express vimentin, inhibin, protein S-100, steroid hormones, calretinin and cytokeratin (focally) [64].
Approximately 10% of Leydig cell tumours are malignant and present with the following parameters [304, 305]:
- large size (> 5 cm);
- older age;
- increased mitotic activity (> 3 per 10 high-power field [HPF]);
- vascular invasion;
- cytological atypia;
- increased MIB-1 expression;
- necrosis;
- infiltrative margins;
- extension beyond the testicular parenchyma;
- DNA aneuploidy.

9.2.3 Diagnosis
Patients either present with a painless enlarged testis or the tumour is found incidentally on US. In up to 80% of cases, hormonal disorders with high oestrogen and oestradiol levels, low testosterone, and increased levels of LH and FSH are reported [306, 307], while negative results are always obtained for the testicular germ cell tumour-markers AFP, hCG, LDH and PLAP. Up to 10% of adult patients present with gynaecomastia [307, 308].

Diagnostic work-up must include markers, hormones (at least testosterone, LH and FSH; if not conclusive, also oestrogen, oestradiol, progesterone and cortisol), US of both testes, and CT of chest and abdomen. On US, it may be possible to observe well-defined, small, hypoechogenic lesions with hypervascularisation, however, the appearance is variable and is indistinguishable from germ-cell tumours [309]. Contrast-enhanced US [310] or contrast-enhanced MRI [311] may improve the diagnosis. The proportion of metastatic tumours in all published case reports is less than 10%. In three old series with long follow-up, eighteen metastatic tumours were found in a total of 83 cases (21.7%) [302, 304, 312], while 5 recently published studies with long follow-up reported only 2 metastatic tumours in 156 patients (1.3%) [113, 307, 308, 313, 314].

9.3 Sertoli cell tumours
9.3.1 Epidemiology
Sertoli cell tumours account for fewer than 1% of testicular tumours, and the mean age at diagnosis is around 45 years, with sporadic cases under 20 years of age [315, 316]. On rare occasions, these tumours may develop in patients with androgen insensitivity syndrome and Peutz-Jeghers syndrome.

9.3.2 Pathology of Sertoli cell tumours
These tumours are well circumscribed, yellow, tan or white in colour, with an average diameter of 3.5 cm [315]. Microscopically, the cells are eosinophilic to pale with vacuolated cytoplasm. The nuclei are regular with grooves and inclusions may be present. The arrangement of the cells is tubular or solid; a cord-like or retiform pattern is possible. The stroma is fine with capillaries, but in some cases a sclerosing aspect predominates. The cells express vimentin, cytokeratins, inhibin (40%) and protein S-100 (30%) [315]. The rate of malignancy ranges between 10% and 22%. Signs of a malignant Sertoli tumour are as follows [317, 318]:
- large size (> 5 cm);
- increased mitotic activity (> 5 per 10 HPF);
- pleomorphic nuclei with nucleoli;
- necrosis;
- vascular invasion.

9.3.2.1 Classification
Three subtypes have been described [316]:
- classic Sertoli cell tumour [315];
- large cell calcifying form with characteristic calcifications [319, 320];
- sclerosing form [321, 322].

9.3.3 Diagnosis
Patients present either with an enlarged testis or the tumour is found incidentally on US. Most classic Sertoli cell tumours are unilateral and unifocal. Hormonal disorders are infrequent, although gynaecomastia is sometimes seen [315]. The testicular tumour-markers AFP, hCG, LDH and PLAP are always negative. Diagnostic work-up must include tumour markers, hormones (at least testosterone, LH and FSH; if not conclusive, also oestrogen, oestradiol, progesterone and cortisol), US of both testes and CT of chest and
abdomen. Sertoli cell tumours are generally hypoechoic on US, but they can be of variant appearance and thus cannot be safely distinguished from germ-cell tumours [316]. Only the large cell calcifying form has a characteristic image with bright echogenic foci due to calcification [323]. Metastatic disease of 12% in classic Sertoli cell tumour has been reported. In general, affected patients are older, tumours are nearly always palpable, and show more than one sign of malignancy [315].

The large cell calcifying form is diagnosed in younger men and is associated with genetic dysplastic syndromes (Carney’s complex [324] and Peutz-Jeghers syndrome [325]) or, in about 40% of cases, endocrine disorders. Forty-four percent of cases are bilateral, either synchronous or metachronous, and 28% show multifocality with good prognosis [320].

Up to 20% of the large cell calcifying forms are malignant. It has been suggested that discrimination between an early and late onset type may define a different risk for metastatic disease (5.5% compared to 23%) [316].

The sclerosing subtype is very rare, unilateral, with a mean age around 40 years and metastases are infrequent [322].

9.4 Treatment of Leydig- and Sertoli cell tumours
Asymptomatic, small volume testicular tumours are often misinterpreted as germ-cell tumours, and inguinal orchidectomy is performed. An organ-sparing procedure in every small US-detected, nonpalpable intraparenchymal lesion is highly recommended in order to obtain a histological diagnosis. The incidence of benign definitive histology is high at approximately 80% [326]. In patients with symptoms of gynaecomastia or hormonal disorders, a non-germ-cell tumour should be considered and immediate orchidectomy avoided. In cases with germ-cell tumour in either frozen section or paraffin histology, orchidectomy is recommended as long as a contralateral normal testicle is present.

When diagnosed and treated early, long-term favourable outcomes are seen at follow-up in Leydig cell tumours, even with its potential metastatic behaviour. In stromal tumours with histological signs of malignancy, especially in older patients, orchidectomy and early retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy may be an option to prevent metastases [113, 327] or to achieve long-term cure in stage IIA cases [328]. Prophylactic RPLND is unjustified for patients with CS I disease without high-risk features [329].

Tumours that have metastasised to lymph nodes, lung, liver or bone respond poorly to chemotherapy or radiation and survival is poor [113, 327]. No recommendations are available for the treatment of these patients.

9.5 Follow-up of Leydig- and Sertoli cell tumours
Without clinical signs of malignancy, an individualised surveillance strategy after orchidectomy is recommended in patients with one, or more, pathological features of malignancy. Follow-up is recommended in all high-risk patients; every three to six months with physical examination, hormone assays, scrotal and abdominal US, chest radiography, and CT [307].

9.6 Granulosa cell tumour
This is a rare tumour with two variants: juvenile and adult. Less than 100 cases are reported with a predominance of the juvenile type.

• The juvenile type is benign. It is the most frequent congenital testicular tumour and represents about 1-5% of all pre-pubertal testicular neoplasms. The cystic appearance is characteristic of this tumour type [330, 331].

• The average age of the adult type at presentation is 45 years. The typical morphology is a homogeneous, yellow-grey tumour, with elongated cells with grooves in microfollicular and Call-Exner body arrangements [332].

Malignant tumours represent around 20% of cases. Lymphovascular invasion, necrosis, infiltrative borders and size > 4 cm may help in identifying cases with aggressive behaviour. Mitotic counts vary and do not appear to be of prognostic significance [333].

9.7 Thecoma/fibroma group of tumours
These tumours are rare with variable histology such as minimal invasion into surrounding testis, high cellularity, and increased mitotic rate. Their immunoprofile is variable and typically not diagnostic. They seem to be uniformly benign [334].
9.8 Other sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours
Sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours may be incompletely differentiated or in mixed forms. There is limited experience with incompletely differentiated sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours and no reported cases of metastasis [37]. In mixed tumour forms, all the histological components should be reported. However, the clinical behaviour most likely reflects the predominant pattern or the most aggressive component of the tumour [335].

9.9 Tumours containing germ cell and sex cord/gonadal stroma (gonadoblastoma)
Some patients with disorders of sex development (DSDs) have abnormal gonadal development with ambiguous genitalia and an increased risk of germ-cell tumours. If the arrangement of the germ cells is in a nested pattern and the rest of the tumour is composed of sex cord/gonadal stroma, the term gonadoblastoma is used. Bilateral tumours are present in 40% of cases. The prognosis correlates with the invasive growth of the germinal component [336, 337].

In the case of a diffuse arrangement of the different components, there are some doubts about the neoplastic nature of the germinal cells and some authors consider them to be entrapped rather than neoplastic [338].

9.10 Miscellaneous tumours of the testis
9.10.1 Tumours of ovarian epithelial types
These tumours resemble epithelial tumours of the ovary. A cystic appearance with occasional mucinous material can be observed. Microscopically, the aspect is identical to their ovarian counterparts, and their evolution is similar to that of the different epithelial ovarian subtypes. Some Brenner types are malignant [64].

9.10.2 Tumours of the collecting ducts and rete testis
These tumours are very rare. Benign (adenoma) and malignant (adenocarcinoma) variants have been reported, with malignant tumours showing local growth with a mortality rate of 40% within one year [339].

9.10.3 Tumours (benign and malignant) of non-specific stroma
These are very uncommon and have similar criteria, prognosis and treatment to soft tissue sarcomas.

10. REFERENCES


http://www.uicc.org/resources/tnm/publications-resources


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7537800


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26786931


Cancer Treat Rep, 1980. 64: 921. 


http://meetinglibrary.asco.org/content/133252-144


11. CONFLICT OF INTEREST
All members of the Testicular Cancer Guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements of all relationships that they have that might be perceived as a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publicly accessible through the European Association of Urology website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/.

This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Aim and objectives</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Panel composition</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Available publications</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 Publication history</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. METHODS</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Data identification</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Review</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 Future goals</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Definition of penile cancer</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Epidemiology</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 Risk factors and prevention</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 Pathology</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.1 Gross handling of pathology specimens</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2 Pathology report</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3 Grading</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.4 Pathological prognostic factors</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.5 Penile cancer and HPV</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.6 Molecular biology</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.7 Penile biopsy</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.8 Intra-operative frozen sections and surgical margins</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1 TNM classification</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION AND STAGING</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1 Primary lesion</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2 Regional lymph nodes</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2.1 Non-palpable inguinal nodes</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2.2 Palpable inguinal nodes</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3 Distant metastases</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the diagnosis and staging of penile cancer</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.1 Summary of evidence for diagnosis</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.2 Recommendations for the diagnosis and staging of penile cancer</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. DISEASE MANAGEMENT</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1 Treatment of the primary tumour</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.1 Treatment of superficial non-invasive disease (CIS)</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.2 Treatment of invasive disease confined to the glans (category Ta/T1a)</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.3 Results of different surgical organ-preserving treatments</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.3.1 Laser therapy</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.3.2 Moh’s micrographic surgery</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.3.3 Glans resurfacing</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.3.4 Glansectomy</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.3.5 Partial penectomy</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.3.6 Summary of results of surgical techniques</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.4 Results of radiotherapy for T1 and T2 disease</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.5 Summary of treatment recommendations for non-invasive and localised superficially invasive penile cancer</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.5.1 Treatment of invasive disease confined to the corpus spongiosum/glans (T2)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.5.2 Treatment of disease invading the corpora cavernosa and/or urethra (T2/T3)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.1.5.3 Treatment of locally advanced disease invading adjacent structures (T3/T4) 15
6.1.5.4 Local recurrence after organ-conserving surgery 15
6.1.6 Guidelines for stage-dependent local treatment of penile carcinoma 15
6.2 Management of regional lymph nodes 16
6.2.1 Management of patients with clinically normal inguinal lymph nodes (cN0) 16
6.2.1.1 Surveillance 16
6.2.1.2 Invasive nodal staging 16
6.2.2 Management of patients with palpable inguinal nodes (cN1/cN2) 17
6.2.2.1 Radical inguinal lymphadenectomy 17
6.2.2.2 Pelvic lymphadenectomy 17
6.2.2.3 Adjuvant treatment 18
6.2.3 Management of patients with fixed inguinal nodes (cN3) 18
6.2.4 Management of lymph node recurrence 18
6.2.5 The role of radiotherapy for the treatment of lymph node disease 18
6.2.6 Guidelines for treatment strategies for nodal metastases 19
6.3 Chemotherapy 19
6.3.1 Adjuvant chemotherapy in node-positive patients after radical inguinal lymphadenectomy 19
6.3.2 Neoadjuvant chemotherapy in patients with fixed or relapsed inguinal nodes 19
6.3.3 Palliative chemotherapy in advanced and relapsed disease 20
6.3.4 Intra-arterial chemotherapy 20
6.3.5 Targeted therapy 20
6.3.6 Guidelines for chemotherapy in penile cancer patients 20

7. FOLLOW-UP 21
7.1 Rationale for follow-up 21
7.1.1 When and how to follow-up 21
7.1.2 Recurrence of the primary tumour 21
7.1.3 Regional recurrence 21
7.1.4 Guidelines for follow-up in penile cancer 22
7.2 Quality of life 22
7.2.1 Consequences after penile cancer treatment 22
7.2.2 Sexual activity and quality of life after laser treatment 22
7.2.3 Sexual activity after glans resurfacing 22
7.2.4 Sexual activity after glansectomy 22
7.2.5 Sexual function after partial penectomy 23
7.2.6 Quality of life after partial penectomy 23
7.3 Total phallic reconstruction 23
7.4 Specialised care 23

8. REFERENCES 23

9. CONFLICT OF INTEREST 33
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim and objectives

The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines on Penile Cancer provides up-to-date information on the diagnosis and management of penile squamous cell carcinoma (SCC).

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition

The EAU Penile Cancer Guidelines Panel consists of an international multi-disciplinary group of clinicians, including a pathologist and an oncologist. Members of this panel have been selected based on their expertise and to represent the professionals treating patients suspected of having penile cancer. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements, which can be viewed on the EAU website Uroweb: http://uroweb.org/guideline/penile-cancer/.

1.3 Available publications

A quick reference document (Pocket guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text version. Several scientific publications are available, the most recent dating back to 2014 [1], as are a number of translations of all versions of the Penile Cancer Guidelines. All documents are available through the EAU website Uroweb: http://uroweb.org/guideline/penile-cancer/.

1.4 Publication history

The EAU Penile Cancer Guidelines were first published in 2000 with the most recent full update undertaken in 2014.

2. METHODS

2.1 Data identification

A systematic literature search on penile cancer was performed between August 2008 and November 2013. All articles relating to penile cancer (n = 1,602) in the relevant literature databases were reviewed and 352 papers were considered suitable for addition to the research base of the Guidelines. Fully revised Guidelines were produced using the updated research base, together with several national and international guidelines on penile cancer (National Comprehensive Cancer Network [2], French Association of Urology [3] and the European Society of Medical Oncology [4]). Recommendations in this text are assessed according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [5]. Additional information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guideline/. A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address.

2.2 Review

This document was subjected to independent peer review prior to publication in 2014.

2.3 Future goals

The results of an ongoing systematic review will be included in the 2018 update of the Penile Cancer Guidelines. This review is performed using standard Cochrane systematic review methodology: http://www.cochranelibrary.com/about/about-cochrane-systematic-reviews.html.

Ongoing systematic review:

- What are the risks and benefits of adjuvant radiotherapy after inguinal lymphadenectomy for penile cancer? [6]
3. **EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY**

3.1 **Definition of penile cancer**
Penile carcinoma is usually a SCC, although there are other types of penile cancer (see Table 3). Penile SCC usually arises from the epithelium of the inner prepuce or the glans. Penile SCC exists in several histological subtypes. Its pathology is similar to SCC of the oropharynx, female genitalia (cervix, vagina and vulva) and anus and shares some of their natural history.

3.2 **Epidemiology**
In the Western World, primary penile cancer is uncommon, with an overall incidence of < 1.00/100,000 males in Europe and the USA [7, 8] although there are several geographical areas in Europe with an incidence over 1.00/100,000 (Figure 1) [9]. In North America [7], the incidence of penile cancer is also affected by race and ethnicity, with the incidence highest in white Hispanics (1.01/100,000) compared to Alaskans, Native American Indians (0.77/100,000), African Americans (0.62/100,000) and white non-Hispanics (0.51/100,000), respectively. In contrast, other parts of the world, such as South America, South East Asia and parts of Africa, have a much higher incidence, with penile cancer accounting for 1-2% of malignant diseases in men [9].

Penile cancer is common in regions with a high prevalence of human papilloma virus (HPV), which may account for the variation in incidence, as the worldwide HPV prevalence varies considerably [7]. The annual age-adjusted incidence is 0.7-3.0/100,000 men in India, 8.3/100,000 men in Brazil and even higher in Uganda, where it is the most commonly diagnosed male cancer [9, 10]. The majority of knowledge about penile cancer comes from countries with a high incidence rate.

There is also a less noticeable variation in incidence between European regions (Figure 1). At least one third of cases can be attributed to HPV-related carcinogenesis. There is no data linking penile cancer to human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) or acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS).

In the USA, the overall age-adjusted incidence rate decreased from 1973 to 2002 from 0.84/100,000 in 1973-1982 to 0.69/100,000 in 1983-1992, and to 0.58/100,000 in 1993-2002 [7]. In Europe, the overall incidence has been stable from the 1980s until 2013 [8], with an increased incidence reported in Denmark [11] and the UK. A UK longitudinal study confirmed a 21% increase in incidence from 1979-2009 [12].

The incidence of penile cancer increases with age [8]. The peak age is during the sixth decade of life, though the disease does occur in younger men [13].
3.3 Risk factors and prevention

A review of the published literature from 1966-2000 identified several risk factors for penile cancer [14] (Table 1) (LE: 2a).

Table 1: Recognised aetiological and epidemiological risk factors for penile cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk factors</th>
<th>Relevance</th>
<th>Ref</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phimosis</td>
<td>Odds ratio 11-16 vs. no phimosis</td>
<td>[15, 16]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic penile inflammation (balanoposthitis related to phimosis)</td>
<td>Risk</td>
<td>[17]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balanitis xerotica obliterans (lichen sclerosus)</td>
<td>Incidence rate ratio 9.51 with &gt; 250 treatments</td>
<td>[18]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sporalene and ultraviolet A phototherapy for</td>
<td>Five-fold increased risk (95% Confidence</td>
<td>[15, 16, 19]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>various dermatological conditions such as psoriasis</td>
<td>interval: 2.0-10.1) vs. nonsmokers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking</td>
<td>Human papilloma virus infection condylomata</td>
<td>[7, 20]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>acuminata</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22.4% in verrucous squamous cell carcinoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36-66.3% in basaloid-warty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural areas, low socio-economic status, unmarried</td>
<td>Three to five-fold increased risk of penile</td>
<td>[14, 16, 25]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cancer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Human papilloma virus infection (HPV) is an important risk factor; HPV DNA was found in 70-100% of intra-epithelial neoplasia and in 30-40% of invasive penile cancer tissue samples (LE: 2a). It is thought to be a cofactor in the carcinogenesis of some variants of penile SCC [20] through interaction with oncogenes and tumour suppressor genes (P53, Rb genes) [26]. The commonest HPV subtypes in penile cancer are types 16 and 18 [27] and the risk of penile cancer is increased in patients with condyloma acuminata [28] (LE: 2b).
It remains unclear whether HPV-associated penile cancer has a different prognosis to non-HPV-associated penile cancer. A significantly better five-year disease-specific survival (DSS) rate was reported for HPV-positive vs. HPV-negative cases (93% vs. 78%) [29], while others reported no difference in lymph node metastases and ten-year survival rates [30]. There is no direct association between the incidence of penile cancer and cervical cancer. However, both cancers are independently linked with the prevalence of HPV infections [31, 32]. Female sexual partners of patients with penile cancer do not have an increased incidence of cervical cancer.

There is no current recommendation for HPV vaccination in males because of the different HPV-associated risk patterns in penile and cervical cancer. The epidemiological effects of HPV vaccination in girls are also awaited [33, 34].

Phimosis is strongly associated with invasive penile cancer [16, 21, 35, 36], probably due to associated chronic infection since smegma is not a carcinogen [35]. A further risk factor suggested by epidemiological studies is cigarette smoking, 4.5-fold increased risk (95% CI: 2.0-10.1) [36]. The incidence of lichen sclerosus (balanitis xerotica obliterans) in patients with penile cancer is relatively high but is not associated with increased rates of adverse histopathological features, including carcinoma in situ (CIS). Other epidemiological risk factors are low levels of socio-economic status and education [21].

Countries and cultures practising routine neonatal circumcision have a lower incidence of penile cancer. Israeli Jews have the lowest incidence at 0.3/100,000/year. Neonatal circumcision removes approximately half the tissue that can develop into penile cancer. A USA study of a 100 matched case-control pairs found that the protective effect of neonatal circumcision against invasive penile cancer (OR 0.41) became much weaker when the comparative analysis was only against men without a history of phimosis (OR 0.79, 95% CI: 0.29-2 [16]). Neonatal circumcision does not reduce the risk of CIS [16].

### 3.4 Pathology

Squamous cell carcinoma accounts for > 95% of cases of penile malignancies (Tables 2 and 3). It is not known how often SCC is preceded by premalignant lesions (Table 3) [37-40]. Some variants of primary penile cancer have not yet been included in the World Health Organisation (WHO) classification, including pseudohyperplastic carcinoma, carcinoma cuniculatum, pseudoglandular carcinoma, and warty-basaloid carcinoma.

There are many mixed forms of SCC, including the warty-basaloid form (50-60% of mixed penile SCC), usual-verrucous (hybrid), usual-warty, usual-basaloid or usual-papillary and other rarer combinations.

Other penile malignant lesions include melanocytic lesions, mesenchymal tumours, lymphomas and metastases which are unrelated to penile cancer, and rarer. Aggressive penile sarcoma has been reported. Penile metastases from other neoplasias often have a prostatic or colorectal origin.

#### Table 2: Premalignant penile lesions (precursor lesions)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesions sporadically associated with squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) of the penis:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Cutaneous horn of the penis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Bowenoid papulosis of the penis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lichen sclerosus (balanitis xerotica obliterans)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Premalignant lesions (up to one-third transform to invasive SCC):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Intra-epithelial neoplasia grade III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Giant condylomata (Buschke-Löwenstein)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Erythroplasia of Queyrat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Bowen’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Paget’s disease (intradermal ADK)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3: Histological subtypes of penile carcinomas, their frequency and outcome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subtype</th>
<th>Frequency (% of cases)</th>
<th>Prognosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common squamous cell carcinoma (SCC)</td>
<td>48-65</td>
<td>Depends on location, stage and grade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basaloid carcinoma</td>
<td>4-10</td>
<td>Poor prognosis, frequently early inguinal nodal metastasis [41]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warty carcinoma</td>
<td>7-10</td>
<td>Good prognosis, metastasis rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verrucous carcinoma</td>
<td>3-8</td>
<td>Good prognosis, no metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillary carcinoma</td>
<td>5-15</td>
<td>Good prognosis, metastasis rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarcomatoid carcinoma</td>
<td>1-3</td>
<td>Very poor prognosis, early vascular metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed carcinoma</td>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>Heterogeneous group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudohyperplastic carcinoma</td>
<td>&lt; 1</td>
<td>Foreskin, related to lichen sclerosus, good prognosis, metastasis not reported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcimoma cuniculatum</td>
<td>&lt; 1</td>
<td>Variant of verrucous carcinoma, good prognosis, metastasis not reported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudoglandular carcinoma</td>
<td>&lt; 1</td>
<td>High-grade carcinoma, early metastasis, poor prognosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warty-basaloid carcinoma</td>
<td>9-14</td>
<td>Poor prognosis, high metastastic potential [42] (higher than in warty, lower than in basaloid SCC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenosquamous carcinoma</td>
<td>&lt; 1</td>
<td>Central and peri-meatal glans, high-grade carcinoma, high metastatic potential but low mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucopidermoid carcinoma</td>
<td>&lt; 1</td>
<td>Highly aggressive, poor prognosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear cell variant of penile carcinoma</td>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>Exceedingly rare, associated with human papilloma virus, aggressive, early metastasis, poor prognosis, outcome is lesion-dependent, frequent lymphatic metastasis [43]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.1 Gross handling of pathology specimens
Tissue sections must include entire small lesions and at least three to four blocks of larger lesions. Lymph nodes must be included in their entirety to ensure the detection of micrometastases. Surgical margins must also be completely included.

3.4.2 Pathology report
The pathology report must include the anatomical site of the primary tumour, the histological type/subtypes, grade, perineural invasion, depth of invasion, vascular invasion (venous/lymphatic), irregular growth and front of invasion, urethral invasion, invasion of corpus spongiosum/cavernosum and surgical margins.

3.4.3 Grading
The Tumour, Node, Metastasis (TNM) classification for penile cancer includes tumour grade, due to its prognostic relevance (Table 4). Both Broder’s classification and the WHO grading system for grading penile cancer are highly observer dependent and are no longer used [44].

3.4.4 Pathological prognostic factors
Carcinomas limited to the foreskin have a better prognosis and lower risk of regional metastasis [45]. Perineural invasion and histological grade are very strong predictors of poor prognosis and cancer-specific mortality [46]. Although tumour grade is a predictor of metastatic spread, it can be difficult to grade heterogeneous tumours. Lymphatic invasion is an independent predictor of metastasis. Venous embolism is often seen in advanced stages.

Types of penile SCC with an excellent prognosis include: verrucous, papillary, warty, pseudohyperplastic and carcinoma cuniculatum. These SCCs are locally destructive, rarely metastasise and have a very low cancer-related mortality.

High-risk SCC variants are the basaloid, sarcomatoid, adenosquamous and poorly differentiated types. They metastasise early and mortality rates are high. The intermediate-risk SCC group comprises the most common SCC, mixed forms and the pleomorphic form of warty carcinomas.

Stage pT3 tumours that invade the distal (glandular) urethra (25% of cases) do not have a worse outcome [47]. However, invasion of the more proximal urethra, also classified as stage pT3, is due to a highly aggressive SCC with a poor prognosis (see Table 3). The inclusion in the one pT2 group of cancers which invade the corpus spongiosum and the corpora cavernosa is confusing clinically as these conditions have very different prognoses. After a mean follow-up of three years, higher rates of local recurrence (35% vs. 17%)
and mortality (30% vs. 21%) were reported in pT2 tumours (n = 72) with tunica or cavernosal involvement vs. glans-only invasion, respectively [48] (LE: 2b). The Panel proposed defining T2a with spongiosum-only invasion and T2b with tunica and/or corpus cavernosum invasion. A similar prognostic difference was observed in a retrospective analysis of 513 patients treated between 1956 and 2006 [49].

Long-term survival is similar in patients with T2 and T3 tumours and in patients with N1 and N2 disease, using the 1987-2002 TNM classification [49] (LE: 2a).

Two nomograms, based only on small numbers, were developed to estimate prognosis in penile cancer. One study suggested that pT1G1 tumours are low-risk tumours, with 0% developing lymph node metastases, in contrast to high-risk pT2/3 G2/3 tumours, with 83% developing lymph node metastases [50]. Remaining tumours were intermediate-risk tumours with 33% developing metastases. Another study reported similar findings and recommended prophylactic lymphadenectomy for high-risk patients [51]. There is also a ‘prognostic index’, which ranks several pathological parameters (grade, deepest anatomical level, perineural invasion) to predict the likelihood of inguinal lymph node metastases and five-year survival [52]. The lower the score, the higher the probability of 95% survival at five years.

3.4.5 Penile cancer and HPV
A high prevalence of HPV infection is found in basaloid (76%), mixed warty-basaloid (82%) and warty penile (39%) SCCs. The commonest HPV-types in penile SCC are HPV 16 (72%), HPV 6 (9%) and HPV 18 (6%). Verrucous and papillary penile SCCs are HPV-negative. Overall, only one-third of penile SCCs show HPV infection, but those that do are usually infected by several HPV strains.

3.4.6 Molecular biology
Little is known about the role of chromosomal abnormalities in penile SCC in relation to biological behaviour and patient outcome [25]. Lower DNA copy and alteration numbers are linked to poorer survival. Alterations in the locus 8q24 may play a major role and are implicated in other neoplasms such as prostate cancer [53, 54]. Telomerase activity has been shown in invasive penile carcinoma [55], and some authors have shown that aneuploidy changed according to tumour grade [56].

Epigenetic alterations evaluating the methylation pattern of CpG islands in CDKN2A have been described. CDKN2A encodes for two tumour suppressor proteins (p16INK4A and p14ARF) which control cell growth through Rb and p53 pathways. Poetsch et al. showed that 62% of invasive SCC of the penis displayed allelic loss of p16 and 42% displayed promoter hypermethylation. Tumours immunohistochemically negative for p16 showed hypermethylation of and/or loss of heterozygosity (LOH) near the p16INK4A locus. In that study, p16 negativity was linked to lymph node metastasis, in another study to prognosis [57]. Allelic loss of the p53 gene is a frequent event in penile SCC (42%) [58] and p53 expression has been linked to poor prognosis [59]. Another element influencing lymph node metastasis is the metastasis suppressor protein KAI1/CD82; decreased expression of this protein favours lymph node metastasis [60].

3.4.7 Penile biopsy
The diagnosis of penile cancer must be confirmed by biopsy. Although penile cancer is usually obvious, very occasionally it may be confused with non-SCC penile carcinoma or inflammatory lesions. Histological confirmation is necessary to guide management when:

- there is doubt about the exact nature of the lesion (e.g. CIS, metastasis or melanoma);
- treatment is planned with topical agents, radiotherapy or laser surgery;
- lymph node treatment is based on pre-operative histological information (risk-adapted strategy).

Biopsy size is important; in biopsies with an average size of 0.1 cm, it is difficult to evaluate the depth of invasion in 91% of biopsies. The grade at biopsy and in the final specimen may differ in up to 30% of cases with failure to detect cancer in 3.5% of cases [37]. Furthermore, vascular and lymphatic tumour emboli were detected in only 9-11% of cases. Although a punch biopsy may be sufficient for superficial lesions, an excisional biopsy is preferred as it should be deep enough to properly assess the degree of invasion and stage.

3.4.8 Intra-operative frozen sections and surgical margins
The aim of surgical treatment is complete removal of the penile carcinoma and negative surgical margins. The width of negative surgical margins should follow a risk-adapted strategy based on tumour grade. Negative surgical margins may be confirmed intra-operatively by frozen section [61]. If surgical margins are studied following these criteria (including urethral and periurethral tissue), only 5 mm of tumour-free tissue is sufficient to consider the surgical margins to be negative [62].

4. STAGING AND CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS

4.1 TNM classification

The 2016 UICC TNM classification for penile cancer [63] introduced some changes as compared to prior editions. The T1 category is stratified into two prognostically different risk groups, depending on the presence or absence of lymphovascular invasion, and grading (Table 4). The classification T2 denotes invasion of the corpus spongiosum, while the T3 category is defined as invasion of the corpora cavernosa, recognising the fact that these two invasion patterns differ prognostically [48, 49]. The current pN1 group consists of one or two inguinal lymph node metastases, pN2 is more than two uni- or bilateral metastatic nodes, and pN3 any pelvic nodes, uni- or bilateral as well as any extranodal extension [63].

Retropertioneal lymph node metastases are extra-regional nodal and therefore distant metastases.

Table 4: 2016 TNM clinical and pathological classification of penile cancer [63]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>T - Primary Tumour</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TX  Primary tumour cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0  No evidence of primary tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta Non-invasive verrucous carcinoma*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue without lymphovascular invasion and is not poorly differentiated (T1G1-2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue with lymphovascular invasion or is poorly differentiated (T1G3-4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 Tumour invades corpus spongiosum with or without invasion of the urethra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 Tumour invades corpus cavernosum with or without invasion of the urethra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4 Tumour invades other adjacent structures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N - Regional Lymph Nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0 No palpable or visibly enlarged inguinal lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1 Palpable mobile unilateral inguinal lymph node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2 Palpable mobile multiple or bilateral inguinal lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3 Fixed inguinal nodal mass or pelvic lymphadenopathy, unilateral or bilateral</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M - Distant Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0 No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1 Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathological classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The pT categories correspond to the clinical T categories. The pN categories are based upon biopsy or surgical excision</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pN - Regional Lymph Nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pNX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0 No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN1 Metastasis in one or two inguinal lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN2 Metastasis in more than two unilateral inguinal nodes or bilateral inguinal lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN3 Metastasis in pelvic lymph node(s), unilateral or bilateral extranodal extension of regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pM - Distant Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pM0 No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pM1 Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G - Histopathological Grading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GX Grade of differentiation cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G1 Well differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G2 Moderately differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G3-4 Poorly differentiated/undifferentiated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Verrucous carcinoma not associated with destructive invasion.
5. Diagnostic Evaluation and Staging

Penile cancer can be cured in over 80% of cases if diagnosed early. Local treatment, although potentially lifesaving, can be mutilating and devastating for the patient’s psychological well-being.

5.1 Primary lesion

Penile carcinoma is usually a clinically obvious lesion; however, it may be hidden under a phimosis. Physical examination should include palpation of the penis to assess the extent of local invasion. Ultrasound (US) can give information about infiltration of the corpora [64, 65]. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) with an artificially induced erection can help to exclude tumour invasion of the corpora cavernosa if preservation of the penis is planned [66, 67].

5.2 Regional lymph nodes

Careful palpation of both groins for enlarged inguinal lymph nodes must be part of the initial physical examination of patients with penile cancer.

5.2.1 Non-palpable inguinal nodes

If there are no palpable lymph nodes, the likelihood of micrometastatic disease is about 25%. Imaging studies are not helpful in staging clinically normal inguinal regions, though imaging may be helpful in obese patients in whom palpation is unreliable or impossible:

- Inguinal US (7.5 MHz) can reveal abnormal nodes with some enlargement. The longitudinal/transverse diameter ratio and absence of the lymph node hilum are findings with relatively high specificity [68].
- Conventional computed tomography (CT) or MRI scans cannot detect micrometastases reliably [69].
- Imaging with 18FDG-positron emission tomography (PET)/CT does not detect lymph node metastases < 10 mm [70, 71].

The further diagnostic management of patients with normal inguinal nodes should be guided by pathological risk factors. Lymphovascular invasion, local stage and grade are risk factors for the likelihood of lymphatic metastasis [72, 73]. Existing nomograms are not accurate enough. Invasive lymph node staging is required in patients at intermediate or high risk of lymphatic spread (see Section 6.2).

5.2.2 Palpable inguinal nodes

Palpable lymph nodes are highly indicative of lymph node metastases. Physical examination should note the number of palpable nodes on each side and whether these are fixed or mobile. Additional inguinal imaging does not alter management (see Section 6) and is usually not required.

A pelvic CT scan can be used to assess the pelvic lymph nodes. Imaging with 18FDG-PET/CT has shown a high sensitivity of 88-100%, with a specificity of 98-100%, for confirming metastatic nodes in patients with palpable inguinal lymph nodes [71, 74].

5.3 Distant metastases

An assessment of distant metastases should be performed in patients with positive inguinal nodes [75-77] (LE: 2b). Computed tomography of the abdomen and pelvis and a chest X-ray are recommended. Thoracic CT is more sensitive than chest X-ray. Positron emission tomography/computed tomography is an option for identifying pelvic nodal and distant metastases in patients with positive inguinal nodes [78]. There is no established tumour marker for penile cancer. The SCC antigen (SCC Ag) is increased in < 25% of penile cancer patients. One study found that SCC Ag did not predict occult metastatic disease, but was an indicator of disease-free survival (DFS) in lymph-node-positive patients [79].

5.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the diagnosis and staging of penile cancer

5.4.1 Summary of evidence for diagnosis

| Examination should include morphology, extent and invasion of penile structures. |
| Both groins should be examined and the number, laterality and characteristics of nodes recorded. |
| Computed tomography of chest, abdomen and pelvis is recommended for patients with inguinal lymph node metastasis. |
| Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) with artificial erection improves local staging for men being considered for organ preserving surgery. |
5.4.2  Recommendations for the diagnosis and staging of penile cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Primary tumour</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a physical examination, record morphology, extent and invasion of penile structures.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obtain MRI with artificial erection in cases for which organ-preserving surgery is intended.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inguinal lymph nodes</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a physical examination of both groins, record the number, laterality and characteristics of inguinal nodes and:</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• if nodes are not palpable, offer invasive lymph node staging in high-risk patients;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• if nodes are palpable, stage with a pelvic computed tomography (CT) or positron emission tomography (PET)/CT.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distant metastases</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In N+ patients, obtain an abdominopelvic CT scan and chest X-ray for systemic staging. Alternatively, stage with a PET/CT scan.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with systemic disease or with relevant symptoms, obtain a bone scan.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.  DISEASE MANAGEMENT

6.1  Treatment of the primary tumour

Treatment of the primary penile cancer lesion aims to remove the tumour completely, while preserving as much of the penis as possible without compromising radicality. Local recurrence has little effect on long-term survival so that organ preservation strategies can be used [80].

The overall quality of the available research evidence is low. There are no randomised controlled trials or observational studies for surgical management of localised penile cancer nor studies comparing surgical and non-surgical modalities.

Penile preservation appears to be superior in functional and cosmetic outcomes. It is the primary treatment method for men with localised penile cancer. However, there are no randomised studies comparing organ-preserving and ablative treatment strategies, only retrospective studies with a LE: 3, or less.

Histological diagnosis with local staging must be obtained in all cases, especially if considering non-surgical treatment modalities. Treatment of the primary tumour and of the regional nodes can be staged. It is mandatory to remove all malignant tissue with negative surgical margins. Patients must be counselled about all relevant treatment modalities.

Local treatment modalities for small and localised penile cancer include excisional surgery, external beam radiotherapy (EBRT), brachytherapy and laser ablation.

6.1.1  Treatment of superficial non-invasive disease (CIS)

For penile CIS, topical chemotherapy with imiquimod or 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) can be an effective first-line treatment. Both agents have relatively low toxicity and adverse events, but efficacy is limited. Complete responses have been reported in up to 57% of CIS cases [81]. Due to the high rate of persistence and/or recurrence, close and long-term surveillance of such patients is required. If topical treatment fails, it should not be repeated.

Laser treatment can be used for CIS. Photodynamic control may be used in conjunction with carbon dioxide (CO\(_2\)) laser treatment [82].

Alternatively, total or partial glans resurfacing can be offered as a primary treatment modality for CIS and as a secondary treatment in case of treatment failure with topical chemotherapy or laser therapy. Glans resurfacing is a surgical technique which consists of complete abrasion of the glandular epithelium followed by covering with a split skin graft. With glans resurfacing for presumed non-invasive disease, up to 20% of patients are found to have superficial invasive disease [83].

6.1.2  Treatment of invasive disease confined to the glans (category Ta/T1a)

A penis-preserving strategy is recommended for small and localised invasive lesions (Ta/T1a). It is mandatory to do a biopsy to confirm diagnosis prior to using conservative treatments. All patients must be circumcised before considering conservative non-surgical treatments. For tumours confined to the prepuce, radical circumcision alone may be curative provided that negative surgical margins are confirmed by definitive histology.
For all surgical treatment options, the intra-operative assessment of surgical margins by frozen section is recommended as tumour-positive margins lead to local recurrence [84]. Total removal of the glans (glansectomy) and prepuce has the lowest recurrence rate for the treatment of small penile lesions (2%) [84]. Negative surgical margins are imperative when using penile-conserving treatments and a margin of 5 mm is considered oncologically safe [84, 85].

Treatment choice depends on tumour size, histology, including stage and grade, localisation (especially relative to the meatus) and patient preference as there are no documented differences in long-term local recurrence rates between surgery, laser and radiation therapy.

6.1.3 Results of different surgical organ-preserving treatments
There are only retrospective case series for these treatments. The results have been reported heterogeneously; therefore, the database for assessment is of limited quality.

6.1.3.1 Laser therapy
Laser ablation is carried out with a neodymium:yttrium-aluminum garnet (Nd:YAG) laser or a CO₂ laser [86-91]. Visualisation may be improved by photodynamic diagnosis.

The results of CO₂ laser treatment have been reported by three studies all from the same institution [86-88]. Laser treatment was given in combination with radiotherapy or chemotherapy to patients with CIS or T1 penile cancers. Follow-up was five years (median) in all three studies. There is some overlap between the cohorts reported, with a total of 195 patients included in these retrospective series.

No cancer-specific deaths were reported. One study reported an estimated cumulative risk of local recurrence at five years of 10% with CIS (n = 106) and 16% with T1 (n = 78) tumours [86]. Taking all three series together, local recurrence ranged from 14% for CIS [88] to 23% for T1 tumours [87]. The reported rate of inguinal nodal recurrence after local CO₂ laser treatment was 0% [88] and 4% [87]. Secondary partial penectomy at ten years was 3% and 10%, depending on the tumour (CIS vs. T1) and whether or not combination treatment had been given [86].

Four studies on the results of Nd:YAG laser treatment [89-92] reported on a total of 150 patients with a follow-up of at least four years. Local recurrence rates at last follow-up ranged across the four studies from 10% [89] to 48% [90]. In one study [91], recurrence-free survival rates were reported as 100%, 95% and 89% at one, two and five years, respectively. Inguinal nodal recurrence was reported in 21% of patients [89]. Cancer-related deaths were reported in 2% [92] and 9% of patients [90], respectively. Three studies from the same institution, probably including overlapping patient cohorts, reported overall survival (OS) rates by censored or uncensored data which ranged from 100% at four years [89] and 95% [91] to 85% [93] at seven years. The rate of secondary partial penectomy after initial Nd:YAG laser treatment was reported as 4% [91] and 45% [90], respectively. Complications, urinary and sexual function outcomes were assessed in only one study with 29 patients [89], none of which reported complications or a change in urinary and sexual function after successful Nd:YAG laser treatment.

Other studies have presented data on a variety of laser treatments with either a CO₂ laser, Nd:YAG laser, a combination of both, or a potassium titanyl phosphate (KTP) laser [94-97], with a mean follow-up of 32-60 months with stages CIS to T3 included. These studies reported on a total of 138 patients. The cancer-specific survival (CSS) probability at five years was 95% in one study using the Kaplan-Meier method [95]. This was consistent with the finding from another study in which the cancer-specific mortality rate was relatively low at 2% at a mean follow-up of approximately five years [95]. Local recurrence rates were 11% [96], 19% [95] and 26% [97]. In one study recurrence-free survival at five years was estimated to be 88% [95].

6.1.3.2 Moh’s micrographic surgery
Moh’s micrographic surgery is a technique by which histological margins are taken in a geometrical fashion around a conus of excision. This technique has not been widely used. Only two studies reported a total of 66 patients [98, 99]. The original description [98] consisted of 33 consecutive patients treated between 1936 and 1986 and reported on 29 patients with at least five years follow-up. In each study there was one secondary penile amputation and one death from penile cancer. In Moh’s series, 79% were cured at five years [98]. In the other series, 68% were recurrence-free after a median of 37 months and 8% had inguinal nodal recurrence and died of disease [99]. The local recurrence rate was 32% in one series [99].

6.1.3.3 Glans resurfacing
Three studies have reported results with glans resurfacing [83, 100, 101] in a total of 71 patients with CIS or T1. The range of the median duration of follow-up in the three studies was 21-30 months. No cancer-specific deaths were reported and the rates of local recurrence were 0% [100] and 6% [101], without reports of nodal recurrence. There were no reported complications.
6.1.3.4 Glansectomy

Results of another relatively new technique, glansectomy, was reported in three studies [84, 102, 103], whilst a fourth study also reported on glans-preserving surgery [103]. A total of 68 patients with a follow-up of 114 months [102] and 63 months [103] were included. One patient (8%) had a local recurrence [102] and six patients (9%) had inguinal nodal metastases. No cancer-specific deaths were reported. Another group reported 87 patients with six local (6.9%), eleven regional (12.6%) and two systemic recurrences (2.3%), during a mean follow-up of 42 months [84].

6.1.3.5 Partial penectomy

Results of partial penectomy were reported in eight rather heterogeneous studies [88, 103-109] with 184 patients, with T1-T3 tumours, and follow-up between 40-194 months. Cancer-specific mortality ranged from 0-27%, with local recurrence rates ranging from 4-50%. The five-year OS rate was reported by three of the studies and ranged from 59-89% [106, 107, 109].

6.1.3.6 Summary of results of surgical techniques

There is insufficient evidence to suggest a difference regarding the outcomes of different penis-sparing strategies, all generally appear to show good oncological outcomes. Although conservative surgery may improve quality of life (QoL), local recurrence is more likely than after radical surgery, e.g. partial penectomy (5-12% vs. 5%). In a large cohort of patients undergoing conservative surgery, isolated local recurrence was 8.9%, with a five-year DSS rate of 91.7%. Tumour grade, stage and lymphovascular invasion appear to be predictors of local recurrence.

6.1.4 Results of radiotherapy for T1 and T2 disease

Radiation treatment of the primary tumour is an alternative organ-preserving approach with good results in selected patients with T1-2 lesions < 4 cm in diameter [110-115] (LE: 2b). External radiotherapy is given with a minimum dose of 60 Gy combined with a brachytherapy boost or brachytherapy on its own [111, 113]. Radiotherapy results are best with penile brachytherapy with local control rates ranging from 70-90% [111, 113]. The American Brachytherapy Society and the Groupe Européen de Curiethérapie-European Society of Therapeutic Radiation Oncology (ABS-GEC-ESTRO) consensus statement for penile brachytherapy reported good tumour control rates, acceptable morbidity and functional organ preservation for penile brachytherapy for T1 and T2 penile cancers [116]. The rates of local recurrence after radiotherapy are higher than after partial penectomy. With local failure after radiotherapy, salvage surgery can achieve local control [117]. Patients with lesions > 4 cm are not candidates for brachytherapy.

Common complications with radiotherapy include urethral stenosis (20-35%), glans necrosis (10-20%) and late fibrosis of the corpora cavernosa [118] (LE: 3). With brachytherapy, meatal stenosis occurs in > 40% of cases.

Table 5: Summary of reported complications and oncological outcomes of local treatments*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Complications</th>
<th>Local recurrence</th>
<th>Nodal recurrence</th>
<th>Cancer-specific deaths</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neodymium: yttrium-aluminum garnet laser</td>
<td>None reported</td>
<td>10-48%</td>
<td>21%</td>
<td>2-9%</td>
<td>[89-92]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon dioxide laser</td>
<td>Bleeding, meatal stenosis both &lt; 1%</td>
<td>14-23%</td>
<td>2-4%</td>
<td>None reported</td>
<td>[86-88]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lasers (unspecified)</td>
<td>Bleeding 8%, local infection 2%</td>
<td>11-26%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>2-3%</td>
<td>[94-97]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moh’s micrographic surgery</td>
<td>Local infection 3%, meatal stenosis 6%</td>
<td>32%</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>3-4%</td>
<td>[98, 99]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glans resurfacing</td>
<td>None reported</td>
<td>4-6%</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>[83, 100, 101]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glansectomy</td>
<td>None reported</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>None reported</td>
<td>[102, 103]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial penectomy</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>4-13%</td>
<td>14-19%</td>
<td>11-27%</td>
<td>[88, 106, 107, 109]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brachytherapy</td>
<td>Meatal stenosis &gt; 40%</td>
<td>10-30%</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>[110, 111, 113]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiotherapy</td>
<td>Urethral stenosis 20-35%, glans necrosis 10-20%</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>[112, 115-118]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The ranges are the lowest and highest number of occurrences reported in different series.
6.1.5 Summary of treatment recommendations for non-invasive and localised superficially invasive penile cancer

6.1.5.1 Treatment of invasive disease confined to the corpus spongiosum/glans (T2)
Total glansectomy, with or without resurfacing of the corporeal heads, is recommended [104] (LE: 3). Radiotherapy is an option (see Section 6.1.6). Partial amputation should be considered in patients unfit for reconstructive surgery [117].

6.1.5.2 Treatment of disease invading the corpora cavernosa and/or urethra (T2/T3)
Partial amputation with a tumour-free margin and reconstruction is standard [114]. A surgical margin of 5 mm is considered safe [84, 85]. Patients should remain under close follow-up. Radiotherapy is an option.

6.1.5.3 Treatment of locally advanced disease invading adjacent structures (T3/T4)
These are relatively rare (Europe 5%, Brazil 13%) [85]. Total penectomy with perineal urethrostomy is standard surgical treatment for T3 tumours [85]. In more advanced disease (T4), neoadjuvant chemotherapy may be advisable, followed by surgery in responders, as in the treatment of patients with fixed enlarged inguinal nodes (see Section 6.2.4). Otherwise, adjuvant chemotherapy or palliative radiotherapy are options (see Sections 6.2.4 and 6.1.6).

6.1.5.4 Local recurrence after organ-conserving surgery
A second organ-conserving procedure can be performed if there is no corpus cavernosum invasion [62, 82, 85, 114]. For large or high-stage recurrence, partial or total amputation is required [118]. A total phallic reconstruction may be offered to patients undergoing total/subtotal amputation [119, 120].

6.1.6 Guidelines for stage-dependent local treatment of penile carcinoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary tumour</th>
<th>Use organ-preserving treatment whenever possible</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Topical treatment with 5-fluorouracil or imiquimod for superficial lesions with or without photodynamic control.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laser ablation with carbon dioxide (CO₂) or neodymium:yttrium-aluminium-garnet (Nd:YAG) laser.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glans resurfacing.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta, T1a (G1, G2)</td>
<td>Wide local excision with circumcision, CO₂ or Nd:YAG laser surgery with circumcision.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laser ablation with CO₂ or Nd:YAG laser.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glans resurfacing.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glansectomy with reconstructive surgery, with or without skin grafting.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Radiotherapy by external beam or as brachytherapy for lesions &lt; 4 cm.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b (G3) and T2 confined to the glans</td>
<td>Wide local excision plus reconstructive surgery, with or without skin grafting.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laser ablation with circumcision.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glansectomy with circumcision and reconstruction.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Radiotherapy by external beam or brachytherapy for lesions &lt; 4 cm in diameter.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 with invasion of the corpora cavernosa</td>
<td>Partial amputation and reconstruction or radiotherapy by external beam or brachytherapy for lesions &lt; 4 cm in diameter.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 with invasion of the urethra</td>
<td>Partial penectomy or total penectomy with perineal urethrostomy.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4 with invasion of other adjacent structures</td>
<td>Neoadjuvant chemotherapy followed by surgery in responders. Alternatively: palliative external beam radiation.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local recurrence after conservative treatment</td>
<td>Salvage surgery with penis-sparing treatment in small recurrences or partial amputation.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Large or high-stage recurrence: partial or total amputation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.2 Management of regional lymph nodes

The development of lymphatic metastases in penile cancer follows the route of anatomical drainage. Inguinal and pelvic lymph nodes provide the regional drainage system for the penis, and the superficial and deep inguinal lymph nodes are the first regional nodal group to manifest lymphatic metastatic spread, which can be unilateral or bilateral [80].

All inguinal sentinel nodes appear to be located in the superior and central inguinal zones, with most in the medial superior zone [81]. No lymphatic drainage has been observed from the penis to the two inferior regions of the groin and no direct drainage to the pelvic nodes has been visualised. [82, 83]. These findings confirm earlier studies.

The second regional lymph node groups are the ipsilateral pelvic lymph nodes. Pelvic nodal disease does not seem to occur without ipsilateral inguinal lymph node metastasis and there are no reports of crossover metastatic spread from one inguinal side to the other pelvic side. Further metastatic lymph node spread from the pelvic nodes to para-aortic and para-caval nodes is outside the regional lymph node drainage system of the penis and is classified as systemic metastatic disease.

The management of regional lymph nodes is decisive for long-term patient survival. Cure can be achieved in metastatic disease confined to the regional lymph nodes. Lymphadenectomy is the treatment of choice for inguinal lymph node metastases. Multimodal treatment combining surgery and polychemotherapy is often indicated.

Management of regional lymph nodes is stage-dependent. In clinically node-negative patients (cN0), micrometastatic disease occurs in about 25% of cases and is related to the local tumour stage and grade. In clinically positive lymph nodes (cN1/cN2), metastatic disease is highly likely and no time should be wasted on antibiotic treatment. Enlarged fixed inguinal lymph nodes (cN3) require multimodal treatment by chemotherapy and surgery. Even if present in only one node, capsular penetration and extra-nodal extension in lymph node metastasis carries a high-risk of progression and is classified as pN3, which also requires multimodal treatment.

6.2.1 Management of patients with clinically normal inguinal lymph nodes (cN0)

Risk stratification for the management of patients with clinically normal lymph nodes depends on stage, grade and the presence or absence of lymphovascular invasion in the primary tumour [84]. Tumours with low risk of metastatic disease are those with superficial penile cancer (pTa, pTis) and low grade. pT1 tumours are a heterogeneous risk group: low risk if they are well differentiated (pT1G1) intermediate-risk group (pT1G2) [85] or high risk (pT1G3 and all higher stages).

Early inguinal lymphadenectomy in clinically node-negative patients is far superior for long-term patient survival compared to therapeutic lymphadenectomy when regional nodal recurrence occurs [86, 87]. One prospective study comparing bilateral lymphadenectomy, radiotherapy and surveillance in clinically node-negative patients reported that five-year OS was significantly better with inguinal lymphadenectomy vs. immediate inguinal radiotherapy or that observed with a surveillance strategy (74% vs. 66% and 63%, respectively) [88].

6.2.1.1 Surveillance

The surveillance of regional lymph nodes carries the risk of regional recurrence arising later from existing micrometastatic disease. Patient survival is over 90% with early lymphadenectomy and below 40% with lymphadenectomy for later regional recurrence [89, 90]. This risk must be taken into account when considering surveillance and informing the patient. Surveillance can only be recommended in patients with pTis and pTa penile cancer and with the appropriate caveats in pT1G1 tumours [89-91]. A prerequisite for surveillance is good patient information and compliance.

6.2.1.2 Invasive nodal staging

Staging of the inguinal lymph nodes in cN0 penile cancer requires an invasive procedure since all imaging techniques (US, CT, MRI) are unreliable in excluding small and micrometastatic lymph node involvement. Although CT criteria other than size have been defined for retrospective detection of lymph node metastases, these have not been validated prospectively [92]. Nomograms are unreliable in predicting node involvement [89, 93, 94] (LE: 2b). Fine-needle aspiration cytology does not reliably exclude micrometastatic disease and is not recommended. Instead, pathological risk factors are used to stratify node-negative patients [87, 95] (LE: 2b).

There are two invasive diagnostic procedures, whose efficacy is evidence-based: modified inguinal lymphadenectomy (miLND) and dynamic sentinel-node biopsy (DSNB). Both are standard approaches for invasive diagnosis of inguinal lymph nodes in clinically node-negative patients.

Modified ILND is the standard surgical approach. Both the superficial inguinal lymph nodes from at least the central and both superior Daseler’s zones are removed bilaterally [80, 96] (LE: 3), leaving behind the greater saphenous vein.
Dynamic sentinel node biopsy (DSNB) is based on the assumption that primary lymphatic drainage from a penile cancer initially goes to one or only a few inguinal sentinel nodes on each side before further dissemination to more inguinal nodes. Technetium-99m (99mTc) nanocolloid is injected around the penile cancer site on the day before surgery; patent blue can be injected as well before surgery. A gamma-ray detection probe is used intra-operatively to detect the sentinel node in 97% of cases. The protocol has been standardised for routine use and has a short learning curve [97]. Dynamic sentinel node biopsy has a reported high sensitivity (90-94%) [97, 98] (LE: 2b). In a pooled meta-analysis of eighteen studies, pooled sensitivity was 88%, which improved to 90% with the addition of patent blue [99].

Both methods of invasive regional lymph node staging in cN0 patients may miss micrometastatic disease leading to regional recurrence and greatly reduced long-term survival [86]. The false-negative rate may be as high as 12-15% for DSNB, even in experienced centres [90, 91]. The false-negative rate of mLND is unknown. The patient must be informed of the risk of a false-negative result and the method being used. If lymph node metastasis is found with either method, an ipsilateral radical inguinal lymphadenectomy is indicated.

6.2.2 Management of patients with palpable inguinal nodes (cN1/cN2)

With uni- or bilateral palpable inguinal lymph nodes (cN1/cN2), metastatic lymph node disease is very likely and the traditional clinical advice to prescribe antibiotic treatment to exclude lymph node enlargement due to infection is no longer correct. Instead, appropriate oncological diagnosis and treatment should be undertaken without delay before further metastatic spread occurs. In clinically doubtful cases, US-guided fine needle aspiration cytology is an option [121].

With palpably enlarged inguinal lymph nodes, additional staging using imaging is not useful, except in very obese patients. However, CT or MRI can provide information about the pelvic nodal status. 18F-FDGPET/CT can identify additional metastases in lymph-node positive patients [122]. Dynamic sentinel node biopsy is not reliable in patients with palpably enlarged and suspicious inguinal lymph nodes and should not be used [123] (LE: 3).

6.2.2.1 Radical inguinal lymphadenectomy

In clinically lymph node positive patients, surgical staging by inguinal lymphadenectomy is indicated. Intra-operative frozen sections may be used to confirm lymph node metastasis, for which an ipsilateral radical inguinal lymphadenectomy is necessary [80, 85].

Radical inguinal lymphadenectomy carries a significant morbidity due to impaired lymph drainage from the legs and often problematic wound healing. Morbidity can be as high as 50% [124] in the presence of significant risk factors such as increased body mass index. However, recent series have reported lower morbidities of about 25% [125, 126] (LE: 2b). Therapeutic radical inguinal lymphadenectomy can be life-saving and should not be underused for fear of associated morbidity [127]. Lymph node density is a prognostic factor [128].

Tissue handling must be meticulous and take into account the absence of smooth muscle in lymphatic vessel walls. Lymphatic vessels therefore cannot be electrocoagulated and must be closed by ligation or possibly liberal use of clips [129, 130]. Post-operative morbidity is reduced by additional measures to improve drainage, such as stockings, bandaging, inguinal pressure dressings or vacuum suction [131] and prophylactic antibiotics. Advanced cases may require reconstructive surgery for primary wound closure.

The most commonly reported complications in recent series were wound infections (1.2-1.4%), skin necrosis (0.6-4.7%), lymphoedema (5-13.9%) and lymphocele formation (2.1-4%) [125, 126].

Laparoscopic and robot-assisted inguinal lymphadenectomy is feasible, but may not provide any advantage [132-135].

6.2.2.2 Pelvic lymphadenectomy

Patients with positive pelvic nodes have a worse prognosis compared to patients with only inguinal nodal metastasis (five-year CSS 71.0% vs. 33.2%) [136]. In the same study with 142 node-positive patients, significant risk factors for pelvic nodal metastasis were the number of positive inguinal nodes (cut-off three), the diameter of inguinal metastatic nodes (cut-off 30 mm) and extra-nodal extension. The percentage of pelvic nodal metastases was 0% without any of these risk factors and 57.1% with all three risk factors [136].

If two or more positive lymph nodes, or one node with extracapsular extension (pN3), are found unilaterally, an ipsilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy is indicated. There is no direct lymphatic drainage from penile tumours to the pelvic lymph nodes [137] and lymphadenectomy is therefore not indicated if there is no involvement of inguinal nodes on that side. This recommendation is based on a study in which the rate of positive pelvic nodes was found to be 23% in cases with more than two positive inguinal nodes and 56% in those with more than three positive inguinal nodes, or if there was extracapsular involvement in at least one inguinal node [85, 138] (LE: 2b).
Pelvic lymphadenectomy may be performed simultaneously or as a secondary procedure following definitive histology. If bilateral pelvic dissection is indicated, it can be performed through a midline suprapubic extraperitoneal incision. It is important to avoid unnecessary delay if these procedures are indicated [139].

6.2.2.3 **Adjuvant treatment**

In patients with pN2/pN3 disease, adjuvant chemotherapy is recommended [140] (see Section 6.3.1). This is because a retrospective study reported long-term DFS of 84% in node-positive patients with adjuvant chemotherapy after radical lymph node surgery vs. 39% in historical controls without chemotherapy after lymphadenectomy [140].

Although adjuvant radiotherapy has been used after inguinal lymphadenectomy, the data are very limited and it is not generally recommended (see Section 6.2.5). There are no data for neoadjuvant inguinal radiotherapy.

6.2.3 **Management of patients with fixed inguinal nodes (cN3)**

Metastatic disease is always present in these cases. Staging by thoracic, abdominal and pelvic CT scan is necessary to assess the presence of further pelvic nodal disease and systemic metastatic disease. In clinically unequivocal cases, histological verification by biopsy is not required. Rare cases with reasonable doubt require an excisional or core needle biopsy.

These patients have a poor prognosis and are unlikely to be cured by surgery alone. Upfront surgery is not generally recommended as it is non-curative and usually destructive. Multimodal treatment with neoadjuvant chemotherapy followed by radical lymphadenectomy in clinically responsive cases is recommended [141-143]. Responders to neoadjuvant chemotherapy with post-chemotherapy surgery have been reported to achieve long-term survival in 37% of cases [141]. There may be individual patients with reasons for upfront surgery followed by adjuvant treatment.

6.2.4 **Management of lymph node recurrence**

Patients with regional recurrence after surveillance should be treated similarly to patients with primary cN1/cN2 disease (see Section 6.2.2). Patients with regional recurrence following negative invasive staging by DSNB or modified inguinal lymphadenectomy already have disordered inguinal lymphatic drainage and are at a high risk of irregular metastatic progression. Patients with inguinal nodal recurrence after therapeutic radical inguinal lymphadenectomy have a five-year CSS rate of 16% [144].

There is no evidence for the best management in such cases. Multimodal treatment with neoadjuvant and/or adjuvant chemotherapy after radical lymph node surgery is advised.

6.2.5 **The role of radiotherapy for the treatment of lymph node disease**

The use of radiotherapy for nodal disease follows tradition and single-institution policies and is not evidence based. Despite the lack of data, radiotherapy is widely used in some European countries to manage regional lymph node metastasis in penile cancer.

It has not been reported that neoadjuvant or adjuvant radiotherapy improves oncological outcome in node-positive penile cancer [145]. One prospective trial found that inguinal node dissection was superior to inguinal radiotherapy [146]. Another study reported poor long-term survival in patients with adjuvant inguinal and pelvic radiotherapy [147]. Adjuvant chemotherapy has been reported to be far superior to adjuvant radiotherapy after radical inguinal lymphadenectomy in node-positive patients in one retrospective series [140]. Using the National Cancer Institute Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results (SEER) Program database, treatment results of 2,458 penile cancer patients treated with either surgery alone or surgery plus EBRT showed that the addition of adjuvant radiotherapy ‘had neither a harmful nor a beneficial effect on CSS’ [148].

Due to the lack of evidence, radiotherapy in the treatment of lymph node disease in penile cancer is not generally recommended. Prophylactic radiotherapy for cN0 disease is not indicated. Adjuvant inguinal radiotherapy may be considered as an option in selected patients with extracapsular nodal extension (cN3) or as a palliative treatment for surgically irresectable disease.
### Guidelines for treatment strategies for nodal metastases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional lymph nodes</th>
<th>Management of regional lymph nodes is fundamental in the treatment of penile cancer</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No palpable inguinal nodes (cN0)</td>
<td>Tis, Ta G1, T1G1: surveillance.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; T1G2: invasive lymph node staging by bilateral modified inguinal lymphadenectomy or dynamic sentinel node biopsy.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palpable inguinal nodes (cN1/cN2)</td>
<td>Radical inguinal lymphadenectomy.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed inguinal lymph nodes (cN3)</td>
<td>Neoadjuvant chemotherapy followed by radical inguinal lymphadenectomy in responders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic lymphadenopathy</td>
<td>Ipsilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy if two or more inguinal nodes are involved on one side (pN2) and if extracapsular nodal metastasis (pN3) is confirmed.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjuvant chemotherapy</td>
<td>In pN2/pN3 patients after radical lymphadenectomy.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiotherapy</td>
<td>Do not use for the treatment of nodal disease in penile cancer.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chemotherapy

#### Adjuvant chemotherapy in node-positive patients after radical inguinal lymphadenectomy

Multimodal treatment can improve patient outcome in many tumour types. Adjuvant chemotherapy after resection of nodal metastases in penile carcinoma has been reported in a few small and heterogeneous series [141, 149-152]. Comparing different small-scale clinical studies is fraught with difficulty.

The value of adjuvant chemotherapy after radical inguinal lymphadenectomy in node-positive penile cancer was demonstrated by an Italian group who reported long-term (DFS) of 84% in 25 consecutive patients treated with twelve adjuvant weekly courses of vincristine, bleomycin, and methotrexate (VBM) during the period 1979-1990 and compared this to a historical control group of 38 consecutive node-positive patients with radical lymphadenectomy (with- or without adjuvant inguinal radiotherapy) who had achieved a DFS rate of only 39% [141].

This group has also published results of a chemotherapy regimen adjuvant to radical lymphadenectomy in stage pN2-3 patients receiving three courses of cisplatin and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) which they had been using since 1991 with lower toxicity and even better results compared to VBM [151] (LE: 2b). The same group has been using an adjuvant taxane-based regimen since 2004, cisplatin, 5-FU plus paclitaxel or docetaxel (TPF), in nineteen node-positive patients receiving three to four cycles of TPF after resection of pN2-3 disease [152]. Of those patients, 52.6% were disease-free after a median follow up of 42 months and tolerability was good. Results of adjuvant treatment with paclitaxel and cisplatin also improved outcome [153].

The use of adjuvant chemotherapy is recommended, in particular when the administration of the triple combination chemotherapy is feasible, and curative treatment is aimed for (LE: 2b). No data for the adjuvant chemotherapeutic treatment of penile carcinoma in stage pN1 are available. The administration of an adjuvant treatment in pN1 disease is therefore recommended only in clinical trials.

#### Neoadjuvant chemotherapy in patients with fixed or relapsed inguinal nodes

Bulky inguinal lymph node enlargement (cN3) indicates extensive lymphatic metastatic disease. Primary lymph node surgery is not generally recommended (GR: B). Complete surgical resection is unlikely and only a few patients will benefit from surgery alone.

Very limited data is available on neoadjuvant chemotherapy before inguinal lymph node surgery. This approach enables early treatment of likely systemic disease and down-staging of inguinal lymph node disease. Complete surgical treatment is possible with a good clinical response.

Results were modest in retrospective studies of five to twenty patients treated with bleomycin-vincristinemethotrexate (BVM) and bleomycin-methotrexate-cisplatin (BMP) treatments [142, 143, 154] and in the confirmatory BMP trial of the Southwest Oncology Group [155]. However, treatment-related toxicity was unacceptable due to bleomycin-related mortality.

Cisplatin/5-FU (PF) chemotherapy achieved a response rate of 25-50% with more acceptable tolerability [156, 157]. Over a period of 30 years, five different neoadjuvant chemotherapy regimens were used in twenty patients [80], with long-term survival in 37% of chemotherapy responders who underwent surgery. In the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer study 30992, 26 patients with locally advanced or metastatic disease received irinotecan and cisplatin chemotherapy. Although the study did not meet its primary endpoint (response rate), there were three cases of pathologically complete remissions (pCR) [158].
A phase II trial evaluated treatment with four cycles of neoadjuvant paclitaxel, cisplatin, and ifosfamide (TIP). An objective response was reported in fifteen out of 30 patients, including three pCRs, which was a marginally significant predictor of survival. The estimated median time to progression (TTP) was 8.1 months and the median OS rate was 17.1 months [159] (LE: 2a).

Similarities between penile SCC and head and neck SCC led to the evaluation in penile cancer of chemotherapy regimens with an efficacy in head and neck SCC, including taxanes. The combination of cisplatin and 5-FU plus a taxane has been used in a neoadjuvant and adjuvant setting [152]. An overall objective response rate of 44% was reported in 28 patients treated neoadjuvantly, including 14% pCR (LE: 2b).

Similarly, a Cancer Research UK phase II trial with TPF (using only docetaxel) reported an objective response of 38.5% in 29 locally advanced or metastatic patients, although the study did not meet its primary endpoint. However, there was significant toxicity [160] (LE: 2a).

Overall, these results support the use of neoadjuvant chemotherapy in patients with fixed, unresectable nodal disease, particularly with a triple combination, including cisplatin and a taxane, whenever feasible (LE: 2a).

There are hardly any data concerning radiochemotherapy with lymph-node surgery in penile cancer. Radiochemotherapy should only be offered in clinical trials [161].

6.3.3 **Palliative chemotherapy in advanced and relapsed disease**

A recent retrospective study of individual patient data of 140 men with advanced penile SCC reported that visceral metastases and an ECOG-performance status greater than one were independent prognostic factors, and that cisplatin-based regimens had better outcomes than non-cisplatin-based regimens after adjusting for prognostic factors [162] (LE: 3).

In clinical practice, however, first-line chemotherapy regimens are variable. Before taxanes were introduced, the data were limited by small numbers, patient heterogeneity and its retrospective nature (except for the EORTC trial [158]). Initial response rates ranged from 25% to 100%, with very few sustained responses and very few long-term survivors. The introduction of taxanes into penile cancer chemotherapy has enhanced the activity and efficacy of the regimens used [80, 142, 143, 153-160, 163].

There are virtually no data on second-line chemotherapy in penile cancer. One report using second-line paclitaxel monotherapy reported an initial response rate under 30%. Therefore, this may be a reasonable option; however, no patients survived [164] (LE: 2a; GR: B). Anecdotally, a benefit has been observed by combining cisplatin with gemcitabine [165] (LE: 4).

6.3.4 **Intra-arterial chemotherapy**

Intra-arterial chemotherapy has been trialled in locally advanced cases, especially cisplatin and gemcitabine in small case series [166-169]. Apart from a limited clinical response, outcome was not significantly improved.

6.3.5 **Targeted therapy**

Targeted drugs have been used as second-line treatment and they could be considered as single-agent treatment in refractory cases. Anti-epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) targeted monotherapy has been trialled as EGFR is expressed in penile SCC [166, 167] and the assumed similarities with head and neck SCC [166, 167]. There have been other studies, particularly with the anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies, panitumumab and cetuximab. Some activity of tyrosine kinase inhibitors has been reported as well [169]. Further clinical studies are needed (LE: 4).

6.3.6 **Guidelines for chemotherapy in penile cancer patients**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treat patients with pN2-3 tumours with adjuvant chemotherapy (three-four cycles of cisplatin, 5-fluorouracil, paclitaxel or docetaxel).</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat patients with non-resectable or recurrent lymph node metastases with neoadjuvant chemotherapy (4 cycles of a cisplatin and taxane-based regimen) followed by radical surgery.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat patients with systemic disease and a limited metastatic load with chemotherapy.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. FOLLOW-UP

7.1 Rationale for follow-up

The early detection of recurrence during follow-up increases the likelihood of curative treatment. Local recurrence does not significantly reduce long-term survival if successfully treated. In contrast, disease that has spread to the inguinal lymph nodes greatly reduces the rate of long-term DSS. Follow-up is also important in the detection and management of treatment-related complications.

Local or regional nodal recurrences usually occur within two years of primary treatment [80]. After five years, all recurrences were either local recurrences or new primary lesions [80]. These results support an intensive follow-up regimen during the first two years, with a less intensive follow up after this for a total of at least five years. Follow up after five years may be omitted in motivated patients reliably able to continue to carry out regular self-examination [80].

7.1.1 When and how to follow-up

In patients with negative inguinal nodes after local treatment, follow-up should include physical examination of the penis and the groins for local and/or regional recurrence. Additional imaging has no proven benefit. Follow up also depends on the primary treatment modality. Histology from the glans should be obtained to confirm disease-free status following laser ablation or topical chemotherapy.

After potentially curative treatment for inguinal nodal metastases, CT or MRI imaging for the detection of systemic disease should be performed at three-monthly intervals for the first two years, so patients can benefit from adjuvant chemotherapy.

Although rarely, late local recurrences may still occur, with life-threatening metastases becoming very unusual after five years. This means regular follow up can be stopped after five years, provided the patient understands the need to report any local changes immediately [170]. In patients unlikely to self-examine, long-term follow up may be necessary.

7.1.2 Recurrence of the primary tumour

Local recurrence is more likely with all types of local organ-preserving treatment, i.e. after local excision, laser treatment, brachytherapy and associated therapies. However, it is very unlikely to increase the risk of dying from the disease in contrast to regional recurrence [80, 171]. Local recurrence occurred during the first two years in up to 27% of patients treated with penis-preserving modalities [172]. After partial penectomy, the risk of local recurrence is about 4-5% [80, 171, 172].

Local recurrence is easily detected by physical examination by the patient himself or his physician. Patient education is an essential part of follow-up and the patient should be urged to visit a specialist if any changes are seen.

7.1.3 Regional recurrence

Most regional recurrences occur during the first two years after diagnosis and treatment, irrespective of whether a surveillance strategy has been used or a sentinel-node based management or modified inguinal lymphadenectomy.

Although very unlikely, regional recurrence can occur unexpectedly after two years. It is therefore wise to continue close follow up in these patients, for whom self-examination is very important [173]. The highest rate of regional recurrence (9%) occurs in patients managed using a surveillance strategy, while the lowest is in patients who have undergone invasive nodal staging by modified inguinal lymphadenectomy or DSNB and whose lymph nodes were negative (2.3%).

The use of US and fine needle aspiration cytology (FNAC) in suspicious cases has improved the early detection rate of regional recurrence [68, 173, 174]. There are no data to support the routine use of CT or MRI for the follow-up of regional nodes.

Patients who have had surgical treatment for lymph node metastases without adjuvant treatment have an increased risk of regional recurrence of 19% [80]. Regional recurrence requires timely treatment by radical inguinal lymphadenectomy and adjuvant therapy (see Section 6).
7.1.4 Guidelines for follow-up in penile cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interval of follow-up</th>
<th>Examinations and investigations</th>
<th>Minimum duration of follow-up</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Years one to two</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Years three to five</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations for follow-up of the primary tumour**

- **Penile-preserving treatment**
  - Three months
  - Six months
  - Regular physician or self-examination. Repeat biopsy after topical or laser treatment for carcinoma in situ.
  - Five years

- **Amputation**
  - Three months
  - One year
  - Regular physician or self-examination.
  - Five years

**Recommendations for follow-up of the inguinal lymph nodes**

- **Surveillance**
  - Three months
  - Six months
  - Regular physician or self-examination.
  - Five years

- **pN0 at initial treatment**
  - Three months
  - One year
  - Regular physician or self-examination. Ultrasound with fine-needle aspiration biopsy optional.
  - Five years

- **pN+ at initial treatment**
  - Three months
  - Six months
  - Regular physician or self-examination. Ultrasound with fine-needle aspiration cytology optional, computed tomography / magnetic resonance imaging optional.
  - Five years

7.2 Quality of life

7.2.1 Consequences after penile cancer treatment

In patients with long-term survival after penile cancer treatment, sexual dysfunction, voiding problems and cosmetic penile appearance may adversely affect the patient’s QoL [175]. There is very little data on sexual function and QoL after treatment for penile cancer.

7.2.2 Sexual activity and quality of life after laser treatment

A retrospective interview-based Swedish study after laser treatment for penile CIS [94] in 58 out of 67 surviving patients with a mean age of 63 years, of whom 46 participated, reported a marked decrease in some sexual practices, such as manual stimulation, caressing and fellatio, but a general satisfaction rate with life overall including their sex lifes, similar to that of the general Swedish population.

A large study on CO₂ laser treatment of penile cancer in 224 patients reported no problems with erectile capability or sexual function following treatment [86]. In another study [97], no sexual dysfunction occurred in nineteen patients treated.

7.2.3 Sexual activity after glans resurfacing

In one study with ten patients [100], seven out of ten completed questionnaires (International Index of Erectile Function [IIEF-5] and a non-validated 9-item questionnaire) at their six-month follow-up visit. There was no erectile dysfunction according to the median IIEF-5 score of 24. All patients who were sexually active before treatment were active again within three to five months. According to the (non-validated) questionnaire, seven out of seven patients stated that the sensation at the tip of their penis was either no different or better after surgery and that they had erections within two to three weeks of surgery. Six out of seven patients had had sexual intercourse within three months of surgery and five out of seven patients felt that their sex life had improved. Overall patient satisfaction with glans resurfacing was high.

7.2.4 Sexual activity after glansectomy

Two studies reported sexual function after glansectomy [101, 102]. In one study (n = 68) with unclear methodology [102], 79% did not report any decline in spontaneous erection, rigidity and penetrative capacity after surgery, while 75% reported recovery of orgasm. In another study [103], all twelve patients had returned to “normal” sexual activity one month after surgery.
7.2.5 Sexual function after partial penectomy
Sexual function after partial penectomy was reported by three studies [176-178]. The IIEF questionnaire was used in eighteen patients with a mean age of 52 years [176]. Post-operative scores were statistically worse for all domains of sexual function after partial penectomy. After surgery, 55.6% of patients had erectile function that allowed sexual intercourse. In patients who did not resume sexual intercourse after partial penectomy, 50% were ashamed of their small penis and missing glans, while another third blamed surgical complications. Of those who had resumed sexual intercourse, 66.7% reported the same frequency and level of sexual activity as before surgery, while 72.2% continued to have ejaculation and orgasm every time they had sexual activity. Overall, only 33.3% maintained their pre-operative frequency of sexual intercourse and were satisfied with their sex life.

An ‘Overall Sexual Functioning Questionnaire’ was used in fourteen out of eighteen patients with a median time since surgery of 11.5 months (range 6-72) [177]. Prior to surgery, all patients had normal erectile function and intercourse at least once a month. In nine out of fourteen patients, sexual functioning was ‘normal’ or ‘slightly decreased’, while three out of fourteen patients had no sexual intercourse after surgery. Alei et al. showed an improvement in erectile function over time [178].

7.2.6 Quality of life after partial penectomy
Several qualitative and quantitative instruments were used to assess ‘psychological behaviour and adjustment’ and ‘social activity’ as QoL indicators [177]. Patients reported fears of mutilation and of loss of sexual pleasure, as well as fear of dying and what this would mean for their families. Patients said family and partners were important in overcoming difficulties following surgery. The study reported no significant levels of anxiety and depression on the GHQ-12 (General Health Questionnaire) and HAD scale (Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale). ‘Social activity’ remained the same after surgery in terms of living conditions, family life and social interactions.

7.3 Total phallic reconstruction
There is very limited data about total phallic reconstruction [119, 179, 180] following full- or near-total penile amputation. It is not possible to restore function. Cosmetically acceptable results are obtainable.

7.4 Specialised care
It is possible to cure almost 80% of penile cancer patients at all stages. Whenever possible, organ-preserving treatment should be offered [49] as it permits better QoL and sexual function than with partial penectomy. Patients should be referred to an experienced centre. Psychological support is very important for penile cancer patients.

8. REFERENCES


28


9. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the Penile Cancer Guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements of all relationships that they have that might be perceived as a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publicly accessible through the European Association of Urology website: http://uroweb.org/guideline/penile-cancer/. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a nonprofit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Management of Non-Neurogenic Male Lower Urinary Tract Symptoms (LUTS), incl. Benign Prostatic Obstruction (BPO)

S. Gravas (Chair), T. Bach, M. Drake, M. Gacci, C. Gratzke, T.R.W. Herrmann, S. Madersbacher, C. Mamoulakis, K.A.O. Tikkinen

Guidelines Associates: M. Karavitakis, S. Malde, V. Sakkalis, R. Umbach

© European Association of Urology 2017
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. **INTRODUCTION**  
   1.1 Aim and objectives  
   1.2 Panel composition  
   1.3 Available publications  
   1.4 Publication history  

2. **METHODS**  
   2.1 Introduction  
   2.2 Review  
   2.3 Patients to whom the guidelines apply  

3. **EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOPHYSIOLOGY**  

4. **DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION**  
   4.1 Medical History  
   4.2 Symptom score questionnaires  
   4.2.1 The International Prostate Symptom Score (IPSS)  
   4.2.2 The International Consultation on Incontinence Questionnaire (ICIQ-MLUTS)  
   4.2.3 Danish Prostate Symptom Score (DAN-PSS)  
   4.3 Frequency volume charts and bladder diaries  
   4.4 Physical examination and digital-rectal examination  
   4.4.1 Digital-rectal examination and prostate size evaluation  
   4.5 Urinalysis  
   4.6 Prostate-specific antigen (PSA)  
   4.6.1 PSA and the prediction of prostatic volume  
   4.6.2 PSA and the probability of PCa  
   4.6.3 PSA and the prediction of BPO-related outcomes  
   4.7 Renal function measurement  
   4.8 Post-void residual urine  
   4.9 Uroflowmetry  
   4.10 Imaging  
   4.10.1 Upper urinary tract  
   4.10.2 Prostate  
   4.10.2.1 Prostate size and shape  
   4.10.3 Voiding cysto-urethrogram  
   4.11 Urethroctoscopy  
   4.12 Urodynamics  
   4.12.1 Diagnosing bladder outlet obstruction  
   4.12.2 Videourodynamics  
   4.13 Non-invasive tests in diagnosing bladder outlet obstruction in men with LUTS  
   4.13.1 Prostatic configuration/intravesical prostatic protrusion (IPP)  
   4.13.2 Bladder/detrusor wall thickness and ultrasound-estimated bladder weight  
   4.13.3 Non-invasive pressure-flow testing  
   4.13.4 The diagnostic performance of non-invasive tests in diagnosing bladder outlet obstruction in men with LUTS compared with pressure-flow studies  

5. **DISEASE MANAGEMENT**  
   5.1 Conservative treatment  
   5.1.1 Watchful waiting  
   5.1.2 Behavioural and dietary modifications  
   5.1.3 Practical considerations  
   5.2 Pharmacological treatment  
   5.2.1 α1-Adrenoceptor antagonists (α1-blockers)  
   5.2.2 5α-reductase inhibitors  
   5.2.3 Muscarinic receptor antagonists  
   5.2.4 Phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitors  
   5.2.5 Plant extracts - phyotherapy
5.2.6 Beta-3 agonist
5.2.7 Combination therapies
  5.2.7.1 \(\alpha_1\)-blockers + 5\(\alpha\)-reductase inhibitors
  5.2.7.2 \(\alpha_1\)-blockers + muscarinic receptor antagonists

5.3 Surgical treatment
  5.3.1 Transurethral resection of the prostate and transurethral incision of the prostate
  5.3.1.1 Modifications of TURP: bipolar TURP
  5.3.2 Open prostatectomy
  5.3.3 Transurethral microwave therapy (TUMT)
  5.3.4 Transurethral needle ablation of the prostate
  5.3.5 Laser treatments of the prostate
    5.3.5.1 Holmium laser enucleation and holmium laser resection of the prostate
    5.3.5.2 532 nm (‘Greenlight’) laser vaporisation of prostate
    5.3.5.3 Diode laser vaporisation of the prostate
    5.3.5.4 Thulium:yttrium-aluminium-garnet laser (Tm:YAG)
  5.3.6 Prostatic stents
  5.3.7 Prostatic urethral lift
  5.3.8 Novel interventions
    5.3.8.1 Intra-prostatic injections
    5.3.8.2 Minimal invasive simple prostatectomy

5.4 Patient selection
5.5 Management of Nocturia in men with lower urinary tract symptoms
  5.5.1 Diagnostic assessment
  5.5.2 Medical conditions and sleep disorders
    Shared Care Pathway
  5.5.3 Treatment for Nocturia
    5.5.3.1 Antidiuretic therapy
    5.5.3.2 Medications to treat LUTD
    5.5.3.3 Other medications

6. FOLLOW-UP
  6.1 Watchful waiting (behavioural)
  6.2 Medical treatment
  6.3 Surgical treatment

7. REFERENCES

8. CONFLICT OF INTEREST
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim and objectives
Lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS) are a common complaint in adult men with a major impact on quality of life (QoL), and substantial economic burden. The present Guidelines offer practical evidence-based guidance on the assessment and treatment of men aged 40 years or older with various non-neurogenic benign forms of LUTS. The understanding of the LUT as a functional unit, and the multifactorial aetiology of associated symptoms, means that LUTS now constitute the main focus, rather than the former emphasis on Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia (BPH). It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts. However, following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition
The EAU Non-neurogenic Male LUTS Guidelines Panel consists of an international group of experts with urological and clinical epidemiological backgrounds. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements which can be viewed on the EAU website Uroweb: http://uroweb.org/guideline/treatment-of-non-neurogenic-male-luts/.

1.3 Available publications
A quick reference document (Pocket Guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text version. All documents are accessible through the EAU website Uroweb: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/treatment-of-non-neurogenic-male-luts/.

1.4 Publication history
The Non-neurogenic Male LUTS Guidelines were first published in 2000. Standard procedure for EAU Guidelines includes an annual assessment of newly published literature in the field to guide future updates. The 2017 document presents a comprehensive update of the 2016 publication. The literature was assessed for all chapters.

2. METHODS

2.1 Introduction
For the 2017 Management of Non-Neurogenic Male LUTS Guidelines, new and relevant evidence has been identified, collated and appraised through a structured assessment of the literature. A broad and comprehensive literature search, covering all sections of the Non-Neurogenic Male LUTS Guidelines was performed. The search was limited to studies representing high levels of evidence, i.e. systematic reviews with meta-analysis, randomised controlled trials (RCTs), and prospective non-randomised comparative studies, published in the English language. Databases searched included Medline, EMBASE, and the Cochrane Libraries, covering a time frame between April 1st 2015 and May 31st 2016. A total of 1,622 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance. A detailed search strategy is available online: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/treatment-of-non-neurogenic-male-luts-supplementary-material.

References used in this text are assessed according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [1]. Additional methodology information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/. A list of all Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address.

2.2 Review
The Non-Neurogenic Male LUTS Guidelines were peer reviewed prior to publication in 2016.

2.3 Patients to whom the guidelines apply
Recommendations apply to men aged 40 years or older who seek professional help for LUTS in various
non-neurogenic and non-malignant conditions such as LUTS/Benign Prostatic Obstruction (BPO), detrusor overactivity/overactive bladder (OAB), or nocturnal polyuria. Men with other contexts of LUT disease (e.g. concomitant neurological diseases, young age, prior LUT disease or surgery) usually require a more extensive work-up, which is not covered in these Guidelines, but may include several tests mentioned in the following sections. EAU Guidelines on Neuro-Urology, Urinary Incontinence, Urological Infections, Urolithiasis, or malignant diseases of the LUT have been developed by other EAU Guidelines Panels and are available online: www.uroweb.org/guidelines/.

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Lower urinary tract symptoms can be divided into storage, voiding and post-micturition symptoms [2]. Lower urinary tract symptoms are prevalent, cause bother and impair QoL [3-6]. An increasing awareness of LUTS and storage symptoms in particular, is warranted to discuss management options that could increase QoL [7]. Lower urinary tract symptoms are strongly associated with ageing [3, 4], associated costs and burden are therefore likely to increase with future demographic changes [4, 8]. Lower urinary tract symptoms are also associated with a number of modifiable risk factors, suggesting potential targets for prevention (e.g. metabolic syndrome) [9]. Most elderly men have at least one LUTS [4], however, symptoms are often mild or not very bothersome [6, 7, 10]. Lower urinary tract symptoms progress dynamically: for some individuals LUTS persist and progress over long time periods, and for others they remit [4]. LUTS have traditionally been related to bladder outlet obstruction (BOO), which is often caused by benign prostatic enlargement (BPE) resulting from the histologic condition of BPH [2, 5]. However, recent studies have shown that LUTS are often unrelated to the prostate [4, 11]. Bladder dysfunction may also cause LUTS, including detrusor overactivity/OAB, detrusor underactivity/underactive bladder, as well as other structural or functional abnormalities of the urinary tract and its surrounding tissues [11]. Prostatic inflammation also appears to play a role in BPH pathogenesis and progression [12, 13]. In addition, many non-urological conditions also contribute to urinary symptoms, especially nocturia [4].

The definitions of the most common conditions related to male LUTS are presented below:

- Acute retention of urine is defined as a painful, palpable or percussible bladder, when the patient is unable to pass any urine [2];
- Chronic retention of urine is defined as a non-painful bladder, which remains palpable or percussible after the patient has passed urine. Such patients may be incontinent [2];
- Bladder outlet obstruction is the generic term for obstruction during voiding and is characterised by increasing detrusor pressure and reduced urine flow rate. It is usually diagnosed by studying the synchronous values of flow-rate and detrusor pressure [2];
- Benign prostatic obstruction is a form of BOO and may be diagnosed when the cause of outlet obstruction is known to be BPE [2]. In the Guidelines either the term BPO or BOO is used as reported by the original studies;
- Benign prostatic hyperplasia is a term used (and reserved) for the typical histological pattern, which defines the disease;
- Detrusor overactivity (DO) is a urodynamic observation characterised by involuntary detrusor contractions during the filling phase which may be spontaneous or provoked [2];
- Overactive bladder syndrome is characterised by urinary urgency, with or without urgency urinary incontinence, usually with increased daytime frequency and nocturia, if there is no proven infection or other obvious pathology [14].

Figure 1 illustrates the potential causes of LUTS. In any man complaining of LUTS, it is common for more than one of these factors to be present.
4. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

Tests are useful for diagnosis, monitoring, assessing the risk of disease progression, treatment planning, and the prediction of treatment outcomes. The clinical assessment of patients with LUTS has two main objectives:

• to identify the differential diagnoses, since the origin of male LUTS is multifactorial, the relevant EAU Guidelines on the management of applicable conditions should be followed in these cases;
• to define the clinical profile (including the risk of disease progression) of men with LUTS in order to provide appropriate care.

4.1 Medical history

The importance of assessing the patient's history is well recognised [15-17]. A medical history aims to identify the potential causes and relevant comorbidities, including medical and neurological diseases. In addition, current medication, lifestyle habits, emotional and psychological factors must be reviewed. The Panel recognises the need to discuss LUTS and the therapeutic pathway from the patient's perspective. This includes reassuring the patient that there is no definite link between LUTS and prostate cancer (PCa) [18, 19].

As part of the urological/surgical history, a self-completed validated symptom questionnaire (see section 4.2) should be obtained to objectify and quantify LUTS. Voiding diaries are particularly beneficial when assessing patients with nocturia and/or storage symptoms (see section 4.3). When relevant, sexual function should be assessed, preferably with validated symptom questionnaires such as the International Index for Erectile Function (IIEF).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take a complete medical history from men with LUTS.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on Panel consensus.
4.2  Symptom score questionnaires
All published guidelines for male LUTS/BPH recommend using validated symptom score questionnaires [15, 17]. Several questionnaires have been developed which are sensitive to symptom changes and can be used to monitor treatment [20-26]. Symptom scores are helpful in quantifying LUTS and in identifying which type of symptoms are predominant, yet they are not disease-, or age-specific. A systematic review evaluating the diagnostic accuracy of individual symptoms and questionnaires, compared with urodynamic studies (the reference standard) for the diagnosis of BOO in males with LUTS found that individual symptoms and questionnaires for diagnosing BOO were not significantly associated with one another [27].

4.2.1  The International Prostate Symptom Score (IPSS)
The IPSS is an 8-item questionnaire, consisting of seven symptom questions and one QoL question [21]. The IPSS score is categorised as ‘asymptomatic’ (0 points), ‘mildly symptomatic’ (1-7 points), ‘moderately symptomatic’ (8-19 points), and ‘severely symptomatic’ (20-35 points). Limitations include lack of assessment of incontinence, post-micturition symptoms, and bother caused by each separate symptom.

4.2.2  The International Consultation on Incontinence Questionnaire (ICIQ-MLUTS)
The ICIQ-MLUTS was created from the ICS Male questionnaire. It is a widely used and validated patient completed questionnaire [22]. It contains 13 items, with subscales for nocturia and OAB, and is available in 17 languages.

4.2.3  Danish Prostate Symptom Score (DAN-PSS)
The DAN-PSS [25] is a symptom score used mainly in Denmark and Finland. The ICIQ-MLUTS and DAN-PSS measure the bother of each individual LUTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use a validated symptom score questionnaire including quality of life assessment during the assessment of male LUTS and for re-evaluation during and/or after treatment.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3  Frequency volume charts and bladder diaries
The recording of volume and time of each void by the patient is referred to as a frequency volume chart (FVC). Inclusion of additional information such as fluid intake, use of pads, activities during recording, or symptom scores is termed a bladder diary [2]. Parameters that can be derived from the FVC and bladder diary include: daytime and night-time voiding frequency, total voided volume, the fraction of urine production during the night (nocturnal polyuria index), and volume of individual voids.

The mean 24-hour urine production is subject to considerable variation. Likewise, circumstantial influence and intra-individual variation cause FVC parameters to fluctuate, though there is comparatively little data [28, 29]. The FVC diary is particularly relevant in nocturia, where it underpins the categorisation of underlying mechanism(s) [30-32]. The use of FVCs may cause a ‘bladder training effect’, and influence the frequency of nocturnal voids [33].

The duration of the FVC needs to be long enough to avoid sampling errors, but short enough to avoid non-compliance [34]. A systematic review of the available literature recommended FVC should continue for three or more days [35].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use a bladder diary to assess male LUTS with a prominent storage component or nocturia.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tell the patient to complete a bladder diary for the duration of at least three days.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.4  Physical examination and digital-rectal examination
Physical examination to seek potential influences on LUTS, particularly focusing on the suprapubic area, the external genitalia, the perineum and lower limbs should be performed. Urethral discharge, meatal stenosis, phimosis and penile cancer must be excluded.

4.4.1  Digital-rectal examination and prostate size evaluation
Digital-rectal examination (DRE) is the simplest way to assess prostate volume, but the correlation to prostate volume is poor. Quality-control procedures for DRE have been described [36]. Transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) is more accurate in determining prostate volume than DRE. Underestimation of prostate volume by DRE increases with increasing TRUS volume, particularly where the volume is > 30 mL [37]. A model of visual aids
has been developed to help urologists estimate prostate volume more accurately [38]. One study concluded that DRE was sufficient to discriminate between prostate volumes > or < than 50 mL [39].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform a physical examination including digital rectal examination in the assessment of male LUTS.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.5 Urinalysis
Urinalysis (dipstick or sediment) must be included in the primary evaluation of any patient presenting with LUTS to identify conditions, such as urinary tract infections (UTI), microhaematuria and diabetes mellitus. If abnormal findings are detected further tests are recommended according to other EAU Guidelines, including Guidelines on urinary tract cancers and urological infections [40-43].

Urinalysis is recommended in most Guidelines in the primary management of patients with LUTS [44, 45]. There is limited evidence, yet general expert consensus that the benefits outweigh the costs [46]. The value of urinary dipstick/microscopy for diagnosing UTI in men with LUTS without acute frequency and dysuria has recently been questioned [47].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use urinalysis (by dipstick or urinary sediment) in the assessment of male LUTS.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on Panel consensus.

### 4.6 Prostate-specific antigen (PSA)

#### 4.6.1 PSA and the prediction of prostatic volume
Pooled analysis of placebo-controlled BPH trials showed that PSA has a good predictive value for assessing prostate volume, with areas under the curve (AUC) of 0.76-0.78 for various prostate volume thresholds (30 mL, 40 mL, and 50 mL). To achieve a specificity of 70%, whilst maintaining a sensitivity between 65-70%, approximate age-specific criteria for detecting men with prostate glands exceeding 40 mL are PSA > 1.6 ng/mL, > 2.0 ng/mL, and > 2.3 ng/mL, for men with BPH in their 50s, 60s, and 70s, respectively [48].

A strong association between PSA and prostate volume was found in a large community-based study in the Netherlands [49]. A PSA threshold value of 1.5 ng/mL could best predict a prostate volume of > 30 mL, with a positive predictive value (PPV) of 78%. The prediction of prostate volume can also be based on total and free PSA. Both PSA forms predict the TRUS prostate volume (± 20%) in > 90% of the cases [50, 51].

#### 4.6.2 PSA and the probability of PCa
The role of PSA in the diagnosis of PCa is presented by the EAU Guidelines on Prostate Cancer [52]. The potential benefits and harms of using serum PSA testing to diagnose PCa in men with LUTS should be discussed.

#### 4.6.3 PSA and the prediction of BPO-related outcomes
Serum PSA is a stronger predictor of prostate growth than prostate volume [53]. In addition, the PLESS study showed that PSA also predicted the changes in symptoms, QoL/bother, and maximum flow-rate (Qmax) [54]. In a longitudinal study of men managed conservatively, PSA was a highly significant predictor of clinical progression [55].

In the placebo arms of large double-blind studies, baseline serum PSA predicted the risk of acute urinary retention (AUR) and BPE-related surgery [56, 57]. An equivalent link was also confirmed by the Olmsted County Study. The risk for treatment was higher in men with a baseline PSA of > 1.4 ng/mL [58]. Patients with BPO seem to have a higher PSA level and larger prostate volumes. The PPV of PSA for the detection of BPO was recently shown to be 68% [59]. Furthermore, in an epidemiological study, elevated free PSA levels could predict clinical BPH, independent of total PSA levels [60].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Measure prostate-specific antigen (PSA) if a diagnosis of prostate cancer will change management.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measure PSA if it assists in the treatment and/or decision making process.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.7 Renal function measurement
Renal function may be assessed by serum creatinine or estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR). Hydronephrosis, renal insufficiency or urinary retention are more prevalent in patients with signs or symptoms of BPO [61]. Even though BPO may be responsible for these complications, there is no conclusive evidence on the mechanism [62].

One study reported that 11% of men with LUTS had renal insufficiency [61]. Neither symptom score nor QoL was associated with the serum creatinine level. Diabetes mellitus or hypertension were the most likely causes of the elevated creatinine concentration. Comiter et al. [63] reported that non-neurogenic voiding dysfunction is not a risk factor for elevated creatinine levels. Koch et al. [64] concluded that only those with an elevated creatinine level require investigational ultrasound (US) of the kidney.

In the Olmsted County community-dwelling men, there was a cross-sectional association between signs and symptoms of BPO (though not prostate volume) and chronic kidney disease (CKD) [65]. In 2,741 consecutive patients who presented with LUTS, decreased Q_max, a history of hypertension and/or diabetes were associated with CKD [66]. Another study demonstrated a correlation between Q_max and eGFR in middle-aged men with moderate-to-severe LUTS [67]. Patients with renal insufficiency are at an increased risk of developing post-operative complications [68].

**Recommendation**
Assess renal function if renal impairment is suspected based on history and clinical examination, or in the presence of hydronephrosis, or when considering surgical treatment for male LUTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assess renal function if renal impairment is suspected based on history and clinical examination, or in the presence of hydronephrosis, or when considering surgical treatment for male LUTS.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on Panel consensus.

4.8 Post-void residual urine
Post-void residual (PVR) urine can be assessed by transabdominal US, bladder scan or catheterisation. Post-void residual is not necessarily associated with BOO, since high PVR volumes can be a consequence of obstruction and/or poor detrusor function (detrusor underactivity) [69, 70]. Using a PVR threshold of 50 mL, the diagnostic accuracy of PVR measurement has a PPV of 63% and a negative predictive value (NPV) of 52% for the predict BOO [71]. A large PVR is not a contraindication to watchful waiting (WW) or medical therapy, although a large PVR may indicate a poor response to treatment and especially to WW. In both the MTOPS and ALTESS studies, a high baseline PVR was associated with an increased risk of symptom progression [56, 57].

Monitoring of changes in PVR over time may allow for identification of patients at risk of acute urinary retention (AUR) [57]. This is of particular importance for the treatment of patients using antimuscarinic medication. In contrast, baseline PVR has little prognostic value for the risk of BPE-related invasive therapy in patients on α1-blocker or WW [72]. However, due to large test-retest variability and lack of outcome studies, no PVR threshold for treatment decision has yet been established and this is a research priority.

**Recommendation**
Measure post-void residual in the assessment of male LUTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Measure post-void residual in the assessment of male LUTS.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.9 Uroflowmetry
Urinary flow rate assessment is a widely used non-invasive urodynamic test. Key parameters are Q_max and flow pattern. Uroflowmetry parameters should preferably be evaluated with voided volume > 150 mL. As Q_max is prone to within-subject variation [73, 74], it is useful to repeat uroflowmetry measurements, especially if thevoided volume is < 150 mL, or Q_max or flow pattern is abnormal.

The diagnostic accuracy of uroflowmetry for detecting BOO varies considerably, and is substantially influenced by threshold values. A threshold Q_max of 10 mL/s has a specificity of 70%, a PPV of 70% and a sensitivity of 47% for BOO. The specificity using a threshold Q_max of 15 mL/s was 38%, the PPV 67% and the sensitivity 82% [75]. If Q_max is > 15 mL/s, physiological compensatory processes mean that BOO cannot be excluded. Low Q_max can arise as a consequence of BOO [76], detrusor underactivity or an under-filled bladder [77]. Therefore, it is limited as a diagnostic test as it is unable to discriminate between the underlying mechanisms. Specificity can be improved by repeated flow rate testing. Uroflowmetry can be used for monitoring treatment outcomes [78] and correlating symptoms with objective findings.
**Recommendation**

Uroflowmetry in the initial assessment of male LUTS may be performed and should be performed prior to any treatment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.10 Imaging

#### 4.10.1 Upper urinary tract

Routine imaging of the upper urinary tract in men with LUTS is not recommended, as these men are not at increased risk for upper tract malignancy or other abnormalities when compared to the overall population [64, 79-81]. Several arguments support the use of renal US in preference to intravenous urography (IVU). Ultrasound allows for better characterisation of renal masses, the possibility of investigating the liver and retroperitoneum, and simultaneous evaluation of the bladder, PVR and prostate, together with a lower cost, radiation dose and less side effects [79].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform ultrasound of the upper urinary tract in men with LUTS and a large post-void residual, or haematuria, or a history of urolithiasis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 4.10.2 Prostate

Imaging of the prostate can be performed by transabdominal US, TRUS, computed tomography (CT), and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). However, in daily practice, prostate imaging is performed by transabdominal US or TRUS [79].

#### 4.10.2.1 Prostate size and shape

Assessment of prostate size is important for the selection of interventional treatment, i.e. open prostatectomy, enucleation techniques, transurethral resection, transurethral incision of the prostate (TUIP), or minimally invasive therapies. It is also important prior to treatment with 5α-reductase inhibitors (5-ARIs). Prostate volume predicts symptom progression and the risk of complications [81].

Transrectal US is superior to suprapubic (transabdominal) volume measurement [82, 83]. The presence of a median lobe may guide treatment choice in patients scheduled for a minimally invasive approach.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform imaging of the prostate (either by transrectal or transabdominal ultrasound) when considering medical treatment for male LUTS, if it assists in the choice of the appropriate drug.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform imaging of the prostate (either by transrectal or transabdominal ultrasound) when considering surgical treatment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 4.10.3 Voiding cysto-urethrogram

Voiding cysto-urethrogram (VCUG) is not recommended in the routine diagnostic work-up of men with LUTS, but it may be useful for the detection of vesico-ureteral reflux, bladder diverticula, or urethral pathologies. Retrograde urethrography may additionally be useful for the evaluation of urethral strictures where suspected.

### 4.11 Urethrocystoscopy

Patients with a history of microscopic or gross haematuria, urethral stricture, or bladder cancer, who present with LUTS, should undergo urethrocystoscopy during diagnostic evaluation.

Shoukry et al. evaluated 122 patients with LUTS using uroflowmetry and urethrocystoscopy [84]. The pre-operative Q$_{\text{max}}$ was normal in 25% of 60 patients who had no bladder trabeculation, 21% of 73 patients with mild trabeculation and 12% of 40 patients with marked trabeculation on cystoscopy. All 21 patients who presented with diverticula had a reduced Q$_{\text{max}}$.

Anikwe showed that there was no significant correlation between the degree of bladder trabeculation (graded from I to IV), and the pre-operative Q$_{\text{max}}$ value in 39 symptomatic men aged 53-83 years [85]. The largest study published on this issue examined the relation of urethrocopscopic findings to urodynamic studies in 492 elderly men with LUTS [86]. The authors noted a correlation between cystoscopic appearance (grade of bladder trabeculation and urethral occlusion) and urodynamic indices, DO and low compliance. It should be noted, however, that BOO was present in 15% of patients with normal cystoscopic findings, while 8% of patients had no obstruction, even in the presence of severe trabeculation [86].
4.12  **Urodynamics**

In male LUTS, the most widespread invasive urodynamic techniques employed are filling cystometry and pressure flow studies (PFS). The major goal of urodynamics is to explore the functional mechanisms of LUTS and to identify risk factors for adverse outcomes (for informed/shared decision-making). Most terms and conditions (e.g. DO, low compliance, BOO/BPO, DUA) are defined by urodynamic investigation.

4.12.1  **Diagnosing bladder outlet obstruction**

Pressure flow studies are the basis for the definition of BOO, which is characterised by increased detrusor pressure and decreased urinary flow rate during voiding. Bladder outlet obstruction/BPO has to be differentiated from DUA, which signifies decreased detrusor pressure during voiding in combination with decreased urinary flow rate [2].

Urodynamic testing may also identify DO. Studies have described an association between BOO and DO [87, 88]. In men with LUTS attributed to BPE, DO was present in 61% and independently associated with BOO grade and ageing [87].

The prevalence of DUA in men with LUTS is 11-40% [89, 90]. Detrusor contractility does not appear to decline in long-term BOO and surgical relief of BOO does not improve contractility [91, 92]. There are no published RCTs in men with LUTS and possible BPO that compare the standard practice investigation (uroflowmetry and PVR measurement) with PFS with respect to the outcome of treatment but one such study is ongoing in the UK.

A Cochrane meta-analysis was done to determine whether performing invasive urodynamic investigation reduces the number of men with continuing symptoms of voiding dysfunction. Two trials with 350 patients were included. Invasive urodynamic testing changed clinical decision making, patients who underwent urodynamics were less likely to undergo surgery; however, no evidence was found to demonstrate whether this led to reduced symptoms of voiding dysfunction after treatment [93].

Due to the invasive nature of the test, a urodynamic investigation is generally only offered if conservative treatment has failed. The Guidelines Panel attempted to identify specific indications for PFS based on age, findings from other diagnostic tests, and previous treatments. The Panel allocated a different degree of obligation for PFS in men > 80 years and men < 50 years, which may reflect the lack of evidence. In addition, there was no consensus whether PFS should or may be performed when considering surgery in men with bothersome predominantly voiding LUTS and $Q_{\text{max}} > 10 \text{ mL/s}$, although the Panel recognised that with a $Q_{\text{max}} < 10 \text{ mL/s}$, BOO is likely and PFS is not necessarily needed.

Patients with neurological disease, including those with previous radical pelvic surgery, should be assessed according to the EAU Guidelines on Neuro-Urology [94].

4.12.2  **Videourodynamic**

Videourodynamic provides additional anatomical and functional information and may be recommended if the clinician considers this is needed to understand the pathophysiological mechanism of an individual patient’s LUTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform pressure-flow studies (PFS) only in individual patients with specific indications prior to invasive treatment or when evaluation of the underlying pathophysiology of LUTS is warranted.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform PFS in men who have had previously unsuccessful (invasive) treatment for LUTS.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When considering invasive treatment, pressure-flow studies may be used for patients who cannot void $&gt; 150 \text{ mL}$.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When considering invasive treatment in men with bothersome voiding LUTS, PFS may be performed in men with a post-void residual $&gt; 300 \text{ mL}$.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When considering invasive treatment in men with bothersome, predominantly voiding LUTS, PFS may be performed in men aged $&gt; 80$ years.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When considering invasive treatment in men with bothersome, predominantly voiding LUTS, perform PFS in men aged $&lt; 50$ years.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.13 Non-invasive tests in diagnosing bladder outlet obstruction in men with LUTS

4.13.1 Prostatic configuration/intravesical prostatic protrusion (IPP)

Prostatic configuration can be evaluated with TRUS, using the concept of the presumed circle area ratio (PCAR) [95]. The PCAR evaluates how closely the transverse US image of the prostate approaches a circular shape. The ratio tends toward one as the prostate becomes more circular. The sensitivity of PCAR was 77% for diagnosing BPO when PCAR was > 0.8, with 75% specificity [95].

Ultrasound measurement of IPP assesses the distance between the tip of the prostate median lobe and bladder neck in the midsagittal plane, using a suprapubically positioned US scanner, with a bladder volume of 150-250 mL; grade I protrusion is 0-4.9 mm, grade II is 5-10 mm and grade III is > 10 mm.

Intravesical prostatic protrusion correlates well with BPO (presence and severity) on urodynamic testing, with a PPV of 94% and a NPV of 79% [96]. Intravesical prostatic protrusion may also correlate with prostate volume, DO, bladder compliance, detrusor pressure at maximum urinary flow, BOO index and PVR, and negatively correlates with Q_max [97]. Furthermore, IPP also appears to successfully predict the outcome of a trial without catheter (TWOC) after AUR [98, 99]. However, no information with regard to intra- or inter-observer variability and learning curve is yet available. Therefore, IPP may be a feasible option to infer BPO in men with LUTS. The role of IPP as a non-invasive alternative to PFS in the assessment of male LUTS is under evaluation.

4.13.2 Bladder/detrusor wall thickness and ultrasound-estimated bladder weight

For bladder wall thickness (BWT) assessment, the distance between the mucosa and the adventitia is measured. For detrusor wall thickness (DWT) assessment, the only measurement needed is the detrusor sandwiched between the mucosa and adventitia [100].

A correlation between BWT and PFS parameters has been reported. A threshold value of 5 mm at the anterior bladder wall with a bladder filling of 150 mL was best at differentiating between patients with or without BOO [101]. Detrusor wall thickness at the anterior bladder wall with a bladder filling > 250 mL (threshold value for BOO > 2 mm) has a PPV of 94% and a specificity of 95%, achieving 89% agreement with PFS [71]. Threshold values of 2.0, 2.5, or 2.9 mm for DWT in patients with LUTS are able to identify 81%, 89%, and 100% of patients with BOO, respectively [102].

All studies found that BWT or DWT measurements have a higher diagnostic accuracy for detecting BOO than Q_max or Q_ave of free uroflowmetry, measurements of PVR, prostate volume, or symptom severity. One study could not demonstrate any difference in BWT between patients with normal urodynamics, BOO or DO. However, the study did not use a specific bladder filling volume for measuring BWT [103]. Disadvantages of the method include the lack of standardisation, and lack of evidence to indicate which measurement (BWT/DWT) is preferable [104]. Measurement of BWT/DWT is therefore not recommended for the diagnostic work-up of men with LUTS.

Ultrasound-estimated bladder weight (UEBW) may identify BOO with a diagnostic accuracy of 86% at a cut-off value of 35 g [105, 106]. Severe LUTS and a high UEBW (> 35 g) are risk factors for prostate/BPH surgery in men on α-blockers [107].

4.13.3 Non-invasive pressure-flow testing

The penile cuff method, in which flow is interrupted to estimate isovolumetric bladder pressure, shows promising data, with good test repeatability [108] and interobserver agreement [109]. A nomogram has also been derived [110] whilst a method in which flow is not interrupted is also under investigation [111].

The data generated with the external condom method [112] correlates with invasive PFS in a high proportion of patients [113]. Resistive index [114] and prostatic urethral angle [115] have also been proposed, but are still experimental.

4.13.4 The diagnostic performance of non-invasive tests in diagnosing bladder outlet obstruction in men with LUTS compared with pressure-flow studies

The diagnostic performance of non-invasive tests in diagnosing BOO in men with LUTS compared with PFS has been investigated by a systematic review performed by the Panel [116].

A total of 42 studies were included in this review, this summary print version is supplemented by a detailed online version (http://uroweb.org/guideline/treatment-of-non-neurogenic-male-luts/). The majority were prospective cohort studies, and the diagnostic accuracy of the following non-invasive tests were assessed: penile cuff test; uroflowmetry; detrusor/bladder wall thickness; bladder weight; external condom catheter method; IPP; doppler US; prostate volume/height; near-infrared spectroscopy. Overall, although the majority of studies have a low risk of bias, data regarding the diagnostic accuracy of these non-invasive tests is limited by the heterogeneity of the studies in terms of the threshold values used to define BOO, the different urodynamic definitions of BOO used across different studies and the small number of studies for each test. It was found that specificity, sensitivity, PPV and NPV of the non-invasive tests were highly variable. Therefore, even though...
several tests have shown promising results regarding non-invasive diagnosis of BOO, invasive urodynamics remains the modality of choice.

**Recommendation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

None of the non-invasive tests in diagnosing bladder outlet obstruction in men with LUTS can currently be recommended as an alternative to pressure-flow studies.

**Figure 2: Assessment algorithm of LUTS in men aged 40 years or older**

Readers are strongly recommended to read the full text that highlights the current position of each test in detail.

---

*DRE = digital-rectal examination; FVC = frequency volume chart; LUTS = lower urinary tract symptoms; PCa = prostate cancer; PSA = prostate specific antigen; PVR = post-void residual; US = ultrasound.*
5. DISEASE MANAGEMENT

5.1 Conservative treatment

5.1.1 Watchful waiting

Many men with LUTS are not troubled enough by their symptoms to need drug treatment or surgical intervention. All men with LUTS should be formally assessed prior to any allocation of treatment in order to establish symptom severity and to differentiate between men with uncomplicated (the majority) and complicated LUTS. Watchful waiting is a viable option for many men with non-bothersome LUTS as few will progress to AUR and complications (e.g. renal insufficiency or stones) [117, 118], whilst others can remain stable for years [119]. In one study, approximately 85% of men with mild LUTS were stable on WW at one year [120].

A study comparing WW and transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) in men with moderate LUTS showed the surgical group had improved bladder function (flow rates and PVR volumes), especially in those with high levels of bother; 36% of WW patients crossed over to surgery within five years, leaving 64% doing well in the WW group [121, 122]. Increasing symptom bother and PVR volumes are the strongest predictors of clinical failure. Men with mild-to-moderate uncomplicated LUTS who are not too troubled by their symptoms are suitable for WW.

5.1.2 Behavioural and dietary modifications

It is customary for this type of management to include the following components:

- education (about the patient’s condition);
- reassurance (that cancer is not a cause of the urinary symptoms);
- periodic monitoring;
- lifestyle advice [119, 120, 123, 124] such as:
  - reduction of fluid intake at specific times aimed at reducing urinary frequency when most inconvenient (e.g. at night or when going out in public);
  - avoidance/moderation of intake of caffeine or alcohol, which may have a diuretic and irritant effect, thereby increasing fluid output and enhancing frequency, urgency and nocturia;
  - use of relaxed and double-voiding techniques;
  - urethral milking to prevent post-micturition dribble;
  - distraction techniques such as penile squeeze, breathing exercises, perineal pressure, and mental tricks to take the mind off the bladder and toilet, to help control storage symptoms;
  - bladder retraining that encourages men to hold on when they have sensory urgency to increase their bladder capacity and the time between voids;
  - reviewing the medication and optimising the time of administration or substituting drugs for others that have fewer urinary effects (these recommendations apply especially to diuretics);
  - providing necessary assistance when there is impairment of dexterity, mobility, or mental state;
  - treatment of constipation.

There now exists evidence (LE: 1b) that self-management as part of WW reduces both symptoms and progression [123, 124] (online supplementary Table S.12). Men randomised to three self-management sessions in addition to standard care had better symptom improvement and QoL than men treated with standard care only for up to a year [123].

5.1.3 Practical considerations

The components of self-management have not been individually studied. The above components of lifestyle advice have been derived from formal consensus methodology [125]. Further research in this area is required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer men with mild/moderate symptoms, minimally bothered by their symptoms, watchful waiting.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer men with LUTS lifestyle advice prior to or concurrent with treatment.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2 Pharmacological treatment

5.2.1 \(\alpha\)-1-Adrenoceptor antagonists (\(\alpha\)-1-blockers)

Mechanism of action: \(\alpha\)-1-blockers aim to inhibit the effect of endogenously released noradrenaline on smooth muscle cells in the prostate and thereby reduce prostate tone and BOO [126]. However, \(\alpha\)-1-blockers have little effect on urodynamically determined bladder outlet resistance [127], and treatment-associated improvement of LUTS correlates poorly with obstruction [128]. Thus, other mechanisms of action may be relevant.
α1-adrenoceptors located outside the prostate (e.g., urinary bladder and/or spinal cord) and α1-adrenoceptor subtypes (α1B- or α1D-adrenoceptors) may play a role as mediators of effects. α1-adrenoceptors in blood vessels, other non-prostatic smooth muscle cells, and the central nervous system may mediate adverse events.

α1-blockers currently available are: alfuzosin hydrochloride (alfuzosin); doxazosin mesylate (doxazosin); silodosin; tamsulosin hydrochloride (tamsulosin); terazosin hydrochloride (terazosin). α1-blockers exist in different formulations (online supplementary Table S.13). Although different formulations result in different pharmacokinetic and tolerability profiles, the overall clinical impact of the different formulations is modest.

Efficacy: Indirect comparisons and limited direct comparisons between α1-blockers demonstrate that all α1-blockers have a similar efficacy in appropriate doses [129]. Effects take a few weeks to develop fully, but significant efficacy over placebo can occur within hours to days [130].

Controlled studies show that α1-blockers typically reduce IPSS by approximately 30-40% and increase Q\text{max} by approximately 20-25% (online supplementary Table S.14). However, considerable improvements also occurred in the corresponding placebo arms [55, 130]. In open-label studies, an IPSS improvement of up to 50% and Q\text{max} increase of up to 40% were documented [55, 130].

α1-blockers can reduce both storage and voiding LUTS. Prostate size does not affect α1-blocker efficacy in studies with follow-up periods of less than one year, but α1-blockers do seem to be more efficacious in patients with smaller prostates (< 40 mL) in longer-term studies [56, 131-134]. α1-blocker efficacy is similar across age groups [130]. α1-blockers neither reduce prostate size nor prevent AUR in long-term studies [132-134]. Nevertheless, IPSS reduction and Q\text{max} improvement during α1-blocker treatment appears to be maintained over at least four years.

Tolerability and safety: Tissue distribution, subtype selectivity, and pharmacokinetic profiles of certain formulations may contribute to the tolerability profile of specific drugs. The most frequent adverse events of α1-blockers are asthenia, dizziness and (orthostatic) hypotension. Vasodilating effects are most pronounced with doxazosin and terazosin, and are less common for alfuzosin and tamsulosin [135]. Patients with cardiovascular comorbidity and/or vaso-active co-medication may be susceptible to α1-blocker-induced vasodilatation [136]. In contrast, the frequency of hypotension with the α1A-selective blocker silodosin is comparable with placebo [137]. In a large retrospective cohort analysis of men aged ≥ 66 years treated with α1 blockers, the risks of falling (odds ratio [OR] 1.14) and of sustaining a fracture (OR 1.16) was increased, most likely as a result of induced hypotension [138].

An adverse ocular event termed intra-operative floppy iris syndrome (IFIS) was reported in 2005, affecting cataract surgery [139]. A meta-analysis on IFIS after alfuzosin, doxazosin, tamsulosin or terazosin exposure showed an increased risk for all α1-blockers [140]. However, the OR for IFIS was much higher for tamsulosin. It appears prudent not to initiate α1-blocker treatment prior to scheduled cataract surgery, and the ophthalmologist should be informed about α1-blocker use.

A systematic review concluded that α1-blockers do not adversely affect libido, have a small beneficial effect on erectile function, but sometimes cause abnormal ejaculation [141]. Originally, abnormal ejaculation was thought to be retrograde, but more recent data demonstrate that it is due to a decrease or absence of seminal fluid during ejaculation, with young age being an apparent risk factor. In a recent meta-analysis ejaculatory dysfunction (EJD) was significantly more common with α1-blockers than with placebo (OR 5.88). In particular, EJD was significantly more commonly related with tamsulosin or silodosin (OR: 8.57 and 32.5) than placebo, while both doxazosin and terazosin (OR 0.80 and 1.78) were associated with a low risk of EJD [142]. In the meta-regression, the occurrence of EJD was independently associated with the improvement of urinary symptoms and flow rate, suggesting that the more effective the α1-blocker is the greater the incidence of EJD.

Practical considerations: α1-blockers are often considered the first line drug treatment of male LUTS because of their rapid onset of action, good efficacy, and low rate and severity of adverse events. However, α1-blockers do not prevent occurrence of urinary retention or need for surgery. Ophthalmologists should be informed about α1-blocker use prior to cataract surgery. Elderly patients treated with non-selective α1-blockers should be informed about the risk of orthostatic hypotension. Sexually active patients treated with selective α1-blockers should be counselled about the risk of EJD.
5.2.2 5α-reductase inhibitors

Mechanism of action: Androgen effects on the prostate are mediated by dihydrotestosterone (DHT), which is converted from testosterone by the enzyme 5α-reductase, a nuclear-bound steroid enzyme [143]. Two isoforms of this enzyme exist:

- 5α-reductase type 1, with minor expression and activity in the prostate but predominant activity in extraprostatic tissues, such as skin and liver.
- 5α-reductase type 2, with predominant expression and activity in the prostate.

Two 5α-reductase inhibitors (5-ARIs) are available for clinical use: dutasteride and finasteride (online supplementary Table S.15). Finasteride inhibits only 5α-reductase type 2, whereas dutasteride inhibits 5α-reductase types 1 and 2 with similar potency (dual 5-ARI). 5-ARIs act by inducing apoptosis of prostate epithelial cells [144] leading to prostate size reduction of about 18-28% and a decrease in circulating PSA levels of about 50% after six to twelve months of treatment [145]. Mean prostate volume reduction and PSA decrease may be even more pronounced after long-term treatment. Continuous treatment reduces the serum DHT concentration by approximately 70% with finasteride and 95% with dutasteride. However, prostate DHT concentration is reduced to a similar level (85-90%) by both 5-ARIs.

Efficacy: Clinical effects relative to placebo are seen after a minimum treatment duration of at least six to twelve months. After two to four years of treatment, 5-ARIs improve IPSS by approximately 15-30%, decrease prostate volume by 18-28%, and increase Q\text{max} by 1.5-2.0 mL/s in patients with LUTS due to prostate enlargement (online supplementary Table S.16) [56, 133, 134, 146-152]. A indirect comparison and one direct comparative trial (twelve months duration) indicate that dutasteride and finasteride are equally effective in the treatment of LUTS [145, 153]. Symptom reduction depends on initial prostate size.

Finasteride may not be more efficacious than placebo in patients with prostates < 40 mL [154]. However, dutasteride seems to reduce IPSS, prostate volume, and the risk of AUR, and to increase Q\text{max} even in patients with prostate volumes of between 30 and 40 mL at baseline [155, 156]. A long-term trial with dutasteride in symptomatic men with prostate volumes > 30 mL and increased risk for disease progression showed that dutasteride reduced LUTS at least as much as, or even more effectively than, the α-blocker tamsulosin [133, 152, 157]. The greater the baseline prostate volume (or serum PSA concentration), the faster and more pronounced the symptomatic benefit of dutasteride as compared to tamsulosin.

5-ARIs, but not α1-blockers, reduce the long-term (> one year) risk of AUR or need for surgery [56, 150, 158]. In the PLESS study, finasteride treatment reduced the relative risk of AUR by 57%, and surgery by 55% at four years, compared with placebo [150]. In the MTOPS study, a significant reduction in the risk of AUR and surgery in the finasteride arm compared with placebo was reported (68% and 64%, respectively) [56]. A pooled analysis of randomised trials with two-year follow-up data, reported that treatment with finasteride significantly decreased the occurrence of AUR by 57%, and surgical intervention by 34%, in moderately symptomatic LUTS [159]. Dutasteride has also demonstrated efficacy in reducing the risks for AUR and BPH-related surgery. Open-label trials have demonstrated relevant changes in urodynamic parameters [160, 161].

Finasteride might reduce blood loss during transurethral prostate surgery, probably due to its effects on prostatic vascularisation [162].

Tolerability and safety: The most relevant adverse effects of 5-ARIs are related to sexual function, and include reduced libido, erectile dysfunction (ED) and less frequently, ejaculation disorders such as retrograde ejaculation, ejaculation failure, or decreased semen volume [56, 134, 145]. The incidence of sexual dysfunction and other adverse events is low and even decreased with trial duration. Gynaecomastia (with breast or nipple tenderness) develops in 1-2% of patients.

Data from two trials on PCa chemoprevention (the Prostate Cancer Prevention Trial and the Reduction by Dutasteride of Prostate Cancer Events trial) found a higher incidence of high-grade cancers in the 5-ARIs arms [163, 164]. Although no causal relationship with high-grade PCa has been proven, men taking 5-ARIs should be followed-up regularly using serial PSA testing and any confirmed PSA increase should be evaluated accordingly. There is a long-standing debate regarding potential cardiovascular side effects of 5-ARIs, in particular dutasteride [165]. In a five year population-based study performed in Taiwan, Hsieh et al. could not identify an association between the use of 5-ARIs and increased cardiovascular side effects, in elderly men (> 65 years) [165].

Practical considerations: Treatment with 5-ARIs should be considered in men with moderate-to-severe LUTS.
and an enlarged prostate (> 40 mL) and/or elevated PSA concentration (> 1.4-1.6 ng/mL). 5α-reductase inhibitors can prevent disease progression with regard to acute urinary retention and the need for surgery. Due to the slow onset of action, they are suitable only for long-term treatment (years). Their effect on the serum PSA concentration needs to be considered in relation to PCA screening.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use 5α-reductase inhibitors in men who have moderate-to-severe LUTS and an enlarged prostate (&gt; 40 mL).</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counsel patients about the delayed symptom improvement with 5α-reductase inhibitors.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2.3 Muscarinic receptor antagonists

**Mechanism of action:** The detrusor is innervated by parasympathetic nerves whose main neurotransmitter is acetylcholine, which stimulates muscarinic receptors (M-cholinoreceptors) on the smooth muscle cells. Muscarinic receptors are also present on other cell types, such as bladder urothelial cells, epithelial cells of the salivary glands, or the peripheral or central nervous system. Five muscarinic receptor subtypes (M1-M5) have been described, of which M2 and M3 are predominant in the detrusor. M2 are more numerous, but the M3 subtype is functionally more important in bladder contractions in healthy humans [166, 167]. Antimuscarinic effects might also be induced or modulated through other cell types, such as the bladder urothelium or by the central nervous system [168, 169].

The following muscarinic receptor antagonists are licensed for treating overactive bladder/storage symptoms (online supplementary Table S.17): darifenacin hydrobromide (darifenacin); fesoterodine fumarate (fesoterodine); oxybutynin hydrochloride (oxybutynin); propiverine hydrochloride (propiverine); solifenacin succinate (solifenacin); tolterodine tartrate (tolterodine); trospium chloride. Transdermal preparations of oxybutynin have been formulated and evaluated in clinical trials [170, 171].

**Efficacy:** Antimuscarinics were mainly tested in females in the past, as it was believed that LUTS in men were caused by the prostate, so should be treated with prostate-specific drugs. However, there is no scientific data for this assumption [172]. A sub-analysis of an open-label trial of OAB patients showed that age but not gender had an impact on urgency, frequency, or urgency incontinence [173]. In a pooled analysis, which included a sub-analysis of male patients, fesoterodine 8 mg was superior to tolterodine extended release (ER) 4 mg for the improvement of severe urgency episodes/24 hours and the OAB-q Symptom Bother score at week twelve, the urinary retention rate was around 2% [174].

The efficacy of antimuscarinics as single agents in men with OAB in the absence of BOO have been tested (online supplementary Table S.18) [175-180]. Most trials lasted only twelve weeks. Four post hoc analyses of large RCTs on the treatment of OAB in women and men without presumed BOO were performed focusing only on the men [176, 178, 181]. Tolterodine can significantly reduce urgency incontinence, daytime or 24-hour frequency and urgency-related voiding whilst improving patient perception of treatment benefit. Solifenacin significantly improved mean patient perception of bladder condition scores, mean OAB questionnaire scores, and overall perception of bladder problems. Fesoterodine improved micturition frequency, urgency urinary incontinence (UUI) episodes. In open-label trials with tolterodine, daytime frequency, nocturia, UUI, and IPSS were significantly reduced compared with baseline values after 12-25 weeks [177, 180].

In the Tolterodine and Tamsulosin in Men with LUTS including OAB: Evaluation of Efficacy and Safety Study, men who received tolterodine monotherapy saw improvement only in urgency incontinence, but not urgency, IPSS (total or storage subscore), or the overall percentage of patients reporting treatment benefit compared with placebo [179].

A further analysis showed that men with PSA levels of < 1.3 ng/mL (smaller prostates) might benefit more from antimuscarinic drugs [182]. Two other studies found a positive effect of antimuscarinics in patients with OAB and concomitant BPO [180, 183]. In a small RCT without placebo, propiverine improved frequency and urgency episodes [183]. In an open-label study, tolterodine decreased 24-hour micturition, nocturia, and American Urological Association Symptom Index scores [180].

**Tolerability and safety:** Antimuscarinic drug trials generally show approximately 3-10% withdrawals, which is similar to placebo. Drug-related adverse events include dry mouth (up to 16%), constipation (up to 4%), micturition difficulties (up to 2%), nasopharyngitis (up to 3%), and dizziness (up to 5%).

Increased PVR in men without BOO is minimal and similar to placebo. Nevertheless, fesoterodine 8 mg showed higher PVRs (+20.2 mL) than placebo (-0.6 mL) or fesoterodine 4 mg (+9.6 mL) [179]. Incidence of urinary retention in men without BOO was similar to placebo for tolterodine (0-1.3% vs. 0-1.4%). With fesoterodine 8 mg, 5.3% had symptoms, which was higher than placebo or fesoterodine 4 mg (both 0.8%).
These symptoms appeared during the first two weeks of treatment and mainly affected men aged 66 years or older.

Theoretically antimuscarinics might decrease bladder strength, and hence might be associated with PVR urine or urinary retention. A twelve week safety study on men with mild to moderate BOO showed that tolterodine increased the PVR (49 mL vs. 16 mL) but not acute urinary retention (3% in both arms) [184]. The urodynamic effects included larger bladder volumes at first detrusor contraction, higher maximum cystometric capacity, and decreased bladder contractility index. $Q_{\text{max}}$ was unchanged. This trial indicated that short-term treatment with antimuscarinics in men with BOO is safe [184].

**Practical considerations:** Not all antimuscarinics have been tested in elderly men, and long-term studies on the efficacy of muscarinic receptor antagonists in men of any age with LUTS are not yet available. In addition, only patients with low PVR volumes at baseline were included in the studies. These drugs should therefore be prescribed with caution, and regular re-evaluation of IPSS and PVR urine is advised. Men should be advised to discontinue medication if worsening voiding LUTS or urinary stream is noted after initiation of therapy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use muscarinic receptor antagonists in men with moderate-to-severe LUTS who mainly have bladder storage symptoms.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribe antimuscarinics with caution in men with a post-void residual volume &gt; 150 mL</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.2.4 Phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitors

**Mechanism of action:** Phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitors (PDE5Is) increase intracellular cyclic guanosine monophosphate, thus reducing smooth muscle tone of the detrusor, prostate and urethra. Nitric oxide and PDEs might also alter reflex pathways in the spinal cord and neurotransmission in the urethra, prostate, or bladder [185]. Moreover, chronic treatment with PDE5Is seems to increase blood perfusion and oxygenation in the LUT [186]. Finally, PDE5Is could reduce chronic inflammation in the prostate and bladder [187]. The exact mechanism of PDE5Is on LUTS remains unclear.

**Available drugs:** Although clinical trials of several selective oral PDE5Is have been conducted in men with LUTS, only tadalafil (5 mg once daily) has been licensed for the treatment of male LUTS.

**Efficacy:** Several RCTs have demonstrated that PDE5Is reduce IPSS, storage and voiding LUTS, and improve QoL (online supplementary Table S.19). However, $Q_{\text{max}}$ did not significantly differ from placebo in most trials. In a meta-analysis, PDE5Is were found to improve IPSS and IIEF score, but not $Q_{\text{max}}$ [188].

Tadalafil 5 mg reduces IPSS by 22-37% (online supplementary Table S.19), and improvement may be seen within a week of initiation of treatment [189]. A three point or greater total IPSS improvement was observed in 59.8% of tadalafil treated men within one week and in 79.3% within four weeks [190]. The maximum trial (open label) duration was 52 weeks [191]. A subgroup analysis of pooled data from four RCTs demonstrated a significant reduction in LUTS, regardless of baseline severity, age, previous use of $\alpha$-blockers or PDE5Is, total testosterone level or predicted prostate volume [192]. In a recent post hoc analysis of pooled data from four RCTs, tadalafil was shown to also be effective in men with cardiovascular risk factors/comorbidities except for patients receiving more than one antihypertensive medication. The use of diuretics may contribute to patients’ perception of a negated efficacy [193]. Among sexually active men > 45 years with comorbid LUTS/BPH and ED, tadalafil improved both conditions [194].

An integrated data analyses from four placebo controlled clinical studies showed that total IPSS improvement was largely attributed to direct (92.5%, $p < 0.001$) vs. indirect (7.5%, $p = 0.32$) treatment effects via IIEF-EF improvement [195]. Another analysis showed a small but significant increase in $Q_{\text{max}}$ without any effect on PVR [196].

A combination of PDE5Is and $\alpha$-blockers has also been evaluated. A meta-analysis of five RCTs (two studies with tadalafil 20 mg, two with sildenafil 25 mg, and one with vardenafil 20 mg), showed that combination therapy significantly improved IPSS score (-1.8), IIEF score (+3.6) and $Q_{\text{max}}$ (+1.5 mL/s) compared with $\alpha$-blockers alone [188]. The effects of tadalafil 5 mg combined with finasteride 5 mg were assessed in a 26-week placebo-controlled RCT. The combination of tadalafil and finasteride provided an early improvement in urinary symptoms ($p < 0.022$ after 4, 12 and 26 weeks), with a significant improvement of storage and voiding symptoms and QoL. Combination therapy was well tolerated and improved erectile function [197]. However, only tadalafil 5 mg has been licensed in the context of LUTS management while data on combinations of PDE5Is and other LUTS medications is emerging.
Tolerability and safety: Reported adverse effects in RCTs comparing the effect of all PDE5Is vs. placebo in men with LUTS include flushing, gastroesophageal reflux, headache, dyspepsia, back pain and nasal congestion [188]. Discontinuation rate due to adverse effects for tadalafil was 2.0% [198] and did not differ by age, LUTS severity, testosterone levels, or prostate volume in the pooled data analyses [192].

PDE5Is are contraindicated in patients using nitrates, the potassium channel opener nicorandil, or the α1-blockers doxazosin and terazosin. They are also contraindicated in patients who have unstable angina pectoris, have had a recent myocardial infarction (< three months) or stroke (< six months), myocardial insufficiency (New York Heart Association stage > 2), hypotension, poorly controlled blood pressure, significant hepatic or renal insufficiency, or if anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy with sudden loss of vision is known or was reported after previous use of PDE5Is.

Practical considerations: To date, only tadalafil 5 mg once daily has been officially licensed for the treatment of male LUTS with or without ED. The meta-regression suggested that younger men with low body mass index and more severe LUTS benefit the most from treatment with PDE5Is [188]. Long-term experience with tadalafil in men with LUTS is limited to one trial with a one year follow-up [191], therefore conclusions about its efficacy or tolerability greater than one year are not possible. There is limited information on reduction of prostate size and no data on disease progression.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors in men with moderate-to-severe LUTS with or without erectile dysfunction.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2.5 Plant extracts - phytotherapy
Mechanism of action: Herbal drug preparations are made of roots, seeds, pollen, bark, or fruits. There are single plant preparations (mono-preparations) and preparations combining two or more plants in one pill (combination preparations). The most widely used plants are Cucurbita pepo (pumpkin seeds), Hypoxis rooperi (South African star grass), Pygeum africanum (bark of the African plum tree), Secale cereale (rye pollen), Serenoa repens (syn. Sabal serrulata; saw palmetto) and Urtica dioica (roots of the stinging nettle).

Possible relevant compounds include phytosterols, β-sitosterol, fatty acids, and lectins [199]. In vitro, plant extracts can have anti-inflammatory, anti-androgenic and oestrogenic effects; decrease sexual hormone binding globulin; inhibit aromatase, lipoxygenase, growth factor-stimulated proliferation of prostatic cells, α-adrenoceptors, 5 α-reductase, muscarinic cholinceptors, dihydropyridine receptors and vanilloid receptors; and neutralise free radicals [199-201]. These effects have not been confirmed in vivo, and the precise mechanisms of plant extracts remain unclear.

Efficacy: The extracts of the same plant produced by different companies do not necessarily have the same biological or clinical effects, therefore the effects of one brand cannot be extrapolated to others [202]. In addition, batches from the same producer may contain different concentrations of active ingredients [203]. A review of recent extraction techniques and their impact on the composition/biological activity of Serenoa repens based available products showed that results from different clinical trials must be compared strictly according to the same validated extraction technique and/or content of active compounds [204]. Thus the pharmacokinetic properties can vary significantly.

Online supplementary Table S.20 presents the trials with the highest LE for each plant extract. In general, no phytotherapeutic agent has been shown to reduce prostate size, and no trial has proven a reduction of BOO or a decrease in disease progression.

A cochrane meta-analyses suggest that men treated with Pygeum africanum were twice as likely to report symptom improvement whilst men treated with Secale cereale were twice as likely to benefit from therapy compared to placebo and that Serenoa repens was not superior to placebo, finasteride, or tamsulosin for IPSS (similar levels of IPSS improvements in trials with finasteride or tamsulosin might be interpreted as treatment equivalence) [205-207].

Recently, short-term studies on the combination of plant extracts with tamsulosin have been published with promising results [208, 209]. Combination treatment with Serenoa Repens (SeR), lycopene (Ly), selenium (Se) and tamsulosin was more effective than single therapies (SeR-Ly-Se or tamsulosin) in improving IPSS and increasing $Q_{\text{max}}$ in patients with LUTS at twelve months. The combination treatment of Serenoa repens and tamsulosin was shown to be more effective than tamsulosin monotherapy in reducing storage symptoms but changes in IPSS, voiding subscore, QoL, $Q_{\text{max}}$, PVR, PSA, and prostate volume showed no significant differences between the two groups.
Tolerability and safety: Side-effects during phytotherapy are generally mild and comparable to placebo. Serious adverse events were not related to the study medication. Gastrointestinal complaints were the most commonly reported. In formulations with Hypoxis rooperi, ED was reported in 0.5% of patients.

Practical considerations: Phytotherapeutic agents are a heterogeneous group and may contain differing concentrations of active ingredients. Hence, meta-analyses may not be justified and results of any analyses have to be interpreted with caution.

Panel interpretation: The Guidelines Panel has not made any specific recommendations on phytotherapy for the treatment of male LUTS due to product heterogeneity, a limited regulatory framework, and methodological limitations of the published trials and meta-analyses.

5.2.6 Beta-3 agonist

Mechanism of action: Beta-3 adrenoceptors are the predominant beta receptors expressed in the smooth muscle cells of the detrusor and their stimulation is thought to induce detrusor relaxation.

Efficacy: Mirabegron 50 mg is the first clinically available beta-3 agonist with approval for use in adults with OAB. Mirabegron has undergone extensive evaluation in RCTs conducted in Europe, Australia, North America and Japan [210-214]. Mirabegron demonstrated significant efficacy in treating the symptoms of OAB, including micturition frequency, urgency incontinence, and urgency and also patient perception of treatment benefit. These studies had a predominantly female study population.

Mirabegron as an add-on therapy has been studied in OAB patients with incontinence despite antimuscarinic therapy [215], again in a predominantly-female study population. An Asian study with a higher proportion of male subjects (approximately one third) reported superiority over placebo in reducing frequency of micturition, but did not report the results separately for the genders [216].

Tolerability and safety: The most common treatment-related adverse events in the mirabegron groups were hypertension, UTI, headache and nasopharyngitis [210-213]. Mirabegron is contraindicated in patients with severe uncontrolled hypertension (systolic blood pressure ≥ 180 mmHg or diastolic blood pressure ≥ 110 mmHg, or both). Blood pressure should be measured before starting treatment and monitored regularly during treatment. The proportion of patients with dry mouth and constipation in the mirabegron groups was notably lower than reported in RCTs of other OAB agents or of the active control tolterodine [210]. Evaluation of urodynamic parameters in men with combined BOO and OAB concluded that mirabegron did not adversely affect voiding urodynamic parameters compared to placebo in terms of Q\textsubscript{max}, detrusor pressure at maximum flow and bladder contractility index [217]. The overall change in PVR with mirabegron is small [217].

Practical considerations: Long-term studies on the efficacy and safety of mirabegron in men of any age with LUTS are not yet available. Studies on the use of mirabegron in combination with other pharmacotherapeutic agents for male LUTS are pending. However, pharmacokinetic interaction upon add-on of mirabegron or tamsulosin to existing tamsulosin or mirabegron therapy does not cause clinically relevant changes in safety profiles [218]. One small study has looked at change in symptom scores in men receiving mirabegron with tamsulosin 0.2 mg daily [219]. A phase four study, with a small proportion of male subjects, reported addition of mirabegron in people with persisting urgency despite solifenacin in a Japanese population [220].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use beta-3 agonists in men with moderate-to-severe LUTS who mainly have bladder storage symptoms.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2.7 Combination therapies

5.2.7.1 α1-blockers + 5α-reductase inhibitors

Mechanism of action: Combination therapy consists of an α1-blocker (Section 5.2.1) together with a 5-ARI (Section 5.2.2). The α1-blocker exhibits clinical effects within hours or days, whereas the 5-ARI needs several months to develop full clinical efficacy. Finasteride has been tested in clinical trials with alfuzosin, terazosin, doxazosin or terazosin, and dutasteride with tamsulosin.

Efficacy: Several studies have investigated the efficacy of combination therapy against an α1-blocker, 5-ARI or placebo alone (online supplementary Table S.21). Initial studies with follow-up periods of six to twelve months demonstrated that the α1-blocker was superior to finasteride in symptom reduction, whereas combination therapy of both agents was not superior to α1-blocker monotherapy [147, 148, 221]. In studies with a placebo
arm, the α1-blocker was consistently more effective than placebo, but finasteride was not. Data at one year in the MTOPS study showed similar results [56].

Long-term data (four years) from MTOPS, and Combination of Avodart and Tamsulosin (CombAT) studies showed that combination treatment is superior to monotherapy for symptoms and Q\textsubscript{max}, and superior to α-blocker alone in reducing the risk of AUR or need for surgery [56, 133, 134].

The CombAT study demonstrated that combination treatment is superior to either monotherapy regarding symptoms and flow rate starting from month nine, and superior to α1-blocker for AUR and the need for surgery after eight months [134]. Thus the differences in MTOPS may reflect different inclusion and exclusion criteria and baseline patient characteristics.

Discontinuation of the α1-blocker after six to nine months of combination therapy was investigated by an RCT and an open-label multicentre trial [222, 223]. The first trial evaluated the combination of tamsulosin with dutasteride and the impact of tamsulosin discontinuation after six months [222], with almost three-quarters of patients reporting no worsening of symptoms. However, patients with severe symptoms (IPSS > 20) at baseline may benefit from longer combination therapy.

A more recent trial evaluated the symptomatic outcome of finasteride monotherapy at three and nine months after discontinuation of nine-month combination therapy [223]. LUTS improvement after combination therapy was sustained at three months (IPSS difference 1.24) and nine months (IPSS difference 0.4). The limitations of the studies include the short duration and the short follow-up period after discontinuation.

In both the MTOPS and CombAT studies, combination therapy was superior to monotherapy in preventing clinical progression as defined by an IPSS increase of at least four points, AUR, UTI, incontinence, or an increase in creatinine > 50%. The MTOPS study found that the risk of long-term clinical progression (primarily due to increasing IPSS) was reduced by 66% with combined therapy vs. placebo and to a greater extent than with either finasteride or doxazosin monotherapy (34% and 39%, respectively) [56]. In addition, finasteride (alone or in combination), but not doxazosin, significantly reduced both the risks of AUR and the need for BPH related surgery over the four-year study. In the CombAT study, combination therapy reduced the relative risks of AUR by 68%, BPH-related surgery by 71%, and symptom deterioration by 41% compared with tamsulosin, after four years [224]. To prevent one case of urinary retention and/or surgical treatment thirteen patients need to be treated for four years with dutasteride and tamsulosin combination therapy compared to tamsulosin monotherapy while the absolute risk reduction (risk difference) was 7.7%.

The CONDUCT study compared efficacy and safety of a fixed-dose combination of dutasteride and tamsulosin to a WW approach with the potential initiation of tamsulosin (step-up approach) in a two year RCT with a total of 742 patients. In both arms detailed lifestyle advice was given. This fixed-dose combination resulted in a rapid and sustained improvement in men with moderate LUTS at risk of disease progression, the difference in IPSS at 24 months was 1.8 points (p < 0.001) [225]. Furthermore, tamsulosin plus dutasteride significantly reduced the relative risk of clinical progression (mainly characterised as a worsening in symptoms) by 43.1% when compared with WW, with an absolute risk reduction of 11.3% (number needed to treat [NNT] = 9).

The influence of baseline variables on changes in IPSS after combination therapy with dutasteride plus tamsulosin or either monotherapy was tested based on the four year results of the CombAT study. Combination therapy provided consistent improvement of LUTS over tamsulosin across all analysed baseline variables at 48 months [226].

More recently, a combination of the 5-ARI, finasteride, and tadalafil 5 mg was tested in a large scale RCT against finasteride monotherapy. This study supports the concept of this novel combination therapy and is described in more detail in the chapter on PDE5Is [197].

Tolerability and safety: Adverse events for both drug classes have been reported with combination treatment [56, 133, 134]. The adverse events observed during combination treatment were typical of α1-blockers and 5-ARIs. The frequency of adverse events was significantly higher for combination therapy.

Practical considerations: Compared with α1-blockers or 5-ARI monotherapy, combination therapy results in a greater improvement in LUTS and increase in Q\textsubscript{max}, and is superior in prevention of disease progression. However, combination therapy is also associated with a higher rate of adverse events. Combination therapy should therefore be prescribed primarily in men who have moderate-to-severe LUTS and are at risk of disease progression (higher prostate volume, higher PSA concentration, advanced age, higher PVR, lower Q\textsubscript{max}, etc.). Combination therapy should only be used when long-term treatment (more than twelve months) is intended and patients should be informed about this. Discontinuation of the α1-blocker after six months might be considered in men with moderate LUTS.
Recommendation LE GR

Use combination treatment of an \(\alpha\)-blocker and 5\(\alpha\)-reductase inhibitor in men with moderate-to-severe LUTS and risk of disease progression (e.g. prostate volume > 40 mL).

1b A

5.2.7.2 \(\alpha\)-blockers + muscarinic receptor antagonists

Mechanism of action: Combination treatment consists of an \(\alpha\)-blocker together with an antimuscarinic aiming to antagonise both \(\alpha\)-adrenoceptors and muscarinic receptors. The possible combinations have not all been tested in clinical trials yet.

Efficacy: Several RCTs and prospective studies investigated combination therapy, lasting four to twelve weeks, either as an initial treatment in men with OAB and presumed BPO or as a sequential treatment for storage symptoms persisting while on an \(\alpha\)-blocker [179, 180, 224, 227-233] (online supplementary Table S.22). One trial used the \(\alpha\)-blocker naftopidil (not registered in most European countries) with and without antimuscarinics [234]. A high proportion of men with voiding and storage LUTS need to add anticholinergics after \(\alpha\)-blocker monotherapy, particularly those with longer duration of symptoms at presentation, and men with storage symptoms and a small prostate volume [235].

Combination treatment is more efficacious in reducing urgency, UUI, voiding frequency, nocturia, or IPSS compared with \(\alpha\)-blockers or placebo alone, and improves QoL [179, 236]. Symptom improvement is higher regardless of PSA concentration, whereas tolterodine alone improved symptoms mainly in men with a serum PSA of < 1.3 ng/mL [182].

Persistent LUTS during \(\alpha\)-blocker treatment can be reduced by the additional use of an antimuscarinic, [180, 224, 227, 233, 237, 238]. Two systematic reviews of the efficacy and safety of antimuscarinics in men suggested that combination treatment provides significant benefit [239, 240]. Effectiveness of therapy is evident primarily in those men with moderate-to-severe storage LUTS [241]. Long term use of combination therapy has been reported in patients receiving treatment for up to a year, showing symptomatic response is maintained, with a low incidence of AUR [242]. In men with moderate-to-severe storage symptoms, voiding symptoms and PVR < 150 mL, the reduction in symptoms using combination therapy is associated with patient-relevant improvements in health related quality of life (HRQoL) compared with placebo and \(\alpha\)-blocker monotherapy [243].

Tolerability and safety: Adverse events of both drug classes are seen with combined treatment using \(\alpha\)-blockers and antimuscarinics. The most common side-effect is xerostomia. Some side-effects (e.g. xerostomia or ejaculation failure) may show increased incidence which cannot simply be explained by summing the incidence with the drugs used separately. Increased PVR may be seen, but is usually not clinically significant, and risk of AUR is low [239, 240]. Antimuscarinics do not cause evident deterioration in maximum flow rate used in conjunction with an \(\alpha\)-blocker in men with OAB symptoms [236, 244].

A recent RCT investigated safety in terms of maximum detrusor pressure and \(Q\text{max}\) for solifenacin (6 mg or 9 mg) with tamsulosin in men with LUTS and BOO compared with placebo [245]. The combination therapy was not inferior to placebo for the primary urodynamic variables; \(Q\text{max}\) was increased versus placebo [245].

Practical considerations: Class effects are likely to underlie efficacy and QoL using an \(\alpha\)-blocker and antimuscarinic. Trials used mainly storage symptom endpoints, were of short duration, and included only men with low PVR volumes at baseline. Therefore, measuring PVR is recommended during combination treatment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use combination treatment of an (\alpha)-blocker with a muscarinic receptor antagonist in patients with moderate-to-severe LUTS if relief of storage symptoms has been insufficient with monotherapy with either drug.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prescribe combination treatment with caution in men with a post-void residual volume &gt; 150 mL.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3 Surgical treatment

5.3.1 Transurethral resection of the prostate and transurethral incision of the prostate

Mechanism of action: Transurethral resection of the prostate removes tissue from the transition zone of the gland. Transurethral incision of the prostate (TUIP) involves incising the bladder outlet without tissue removal. This technique may replace TURP in selected cases, especially in prostate sizes < 30 mL without a middle lobe.
Efficacy: In a recent analysis of 20 contemporary RCTs with a maximum follow-up of five years, TURP resulted in a substantial mean Q_max improvement (+162%), a significant reduction in IPSS (-70%), QoL score (-69%), and PVR (-77%) [246]. TURP delivers durable outcomes as shown by studies with a follow-up of 8-22 years. There are no similar data on durability for any other surgical treatment for BPO [247]. One study with a mean follow-up of thirteen years reported a significant and sustained decrease in most symptoms and improvement in urodynamic parameters. Failures were associated with DUA rather than re-development of BPO [92].

Online supplementary Table S.24 presents RCTs comparing TUIP with TURP [248-255]. A meta-analysis of short- and long-term data from ten RCTs found similar LUTS improvements and lower but insignificant improvements in Q_max for TUIP [250]. In this meta-analysis, an upper limit of prostate size was reported as an entry criterion for eight studies with five < 30 mL and three < 60 mL.

A second prostatic operation, usually re-TURP, has been reported at a constant annual rate of approximately 1-2%. A review analysing 29 RCTs found a retreatment rate of 2.6% after a mean follow-up of sixteen months [256]. In a large-scale study of 20,671 men, the overall retreatment rates (re-TURP, urethrotomy and bladder neck incision) were 5.8%, 12.3%, and 14.7%, at one, five, and eight years, respectively, and the respective incidence of re-TURP was 2.9%, 5.8% and 7.4% [257]. A meta-analysis of six trials showed that re-operation was more common after TUIP (18.4%) than after TURP (7.2%) [250].

Tolerability and safety: Peri-operative mortality and morbidity have decreased over time, but the latter remains considerable (0.1% and 11.1%, respectively) [258]. The possibility of increased long-term mortality compared to open surgery [259] has not been verified [260-262]. Data from 20,671 TURPs and 2,452 open prostatectomies (OP) showed that short- and long-term procedural mortality was similar (0.7% vs. 0.9% at 90 days, 2.8% vs. 2.7% at one year, 12.7% vs. 11.8% at five years, 20% vs. 20.9% at eight years) and that the eight year myocardial infarction rates were identical (4.8% vs. 4.9%) [257].

The risk of TUR-syndrome decreased to < 1.1% [256, 263]. No case has been recorded after TUIP. Data from 10,654 TURPs reported bleeding requiring transfusion in 2.9% [258]. The risk after TUIP is negligible. Similar results for TURP complications were reported by an analysis of contemporary RCTs using TURP as a comparator: bleeding requiring transfusion 2% (0-9%), TUR-syndrome 0.8% (0-5%), AUR 4.5% (0-13.3%), clot retention 4.9% (0-39%), and UTI 4.1% (0-22%) [246]. Long-term complications comprise urinary incontinence (1.8% after TUIP vs. 2.2% after TURP), urinary retention and UTIs, bladder neck contracture (BNC) (4.7% after TURP), urethral stricture (3.8% after TURP vs. 4.1% after TUIP), retrograde ejaculation (65.4% after TURP vs. 18.2% after TUIP), and ED (6.5% after TURP) [256].

Practical considerations: TURP and TUIP are effective treatments for moderate-to-severe LUTS secondary to BPO. The choice should be based primarily on prostate volume (< 30 mL and 30-80 mL suitable for TUIP and TURP, respectively). No studies on the optimal cut-off value exist but the complication rates increase with prostate size [258]. The upper limit for TURP is suggested as 80 mL (based on Panel expert opinion, under the assumption that this limit depends on the surgeon’s experience, resection speed, and choice of resectoscope size).

5.3.1.1 Modifications of TURP: bipolar TURP

Mechanism of action: Bipolar TURP (B-TURP) addresses a major limitation of monopolar TURP (M-TURP) by allowing performance in normal saline. Contrary to M-TURP, in B-TURP systems, the energy does not travel through the body to reach a skin pad. Bipolar circuitry is completed locally; energy is confined between an active (resection loop) and a passive pole situated on the resectoscope tip (“true” bipolar systems) or the sheath (“quasi” bipolar systems). Prostatic tissue removal is identical to M-TURP; however, B-TURP requires less energy/voltage because there is a smaller amount of interpolated tissue. Energy from the loop is transmitted to the saline solution, resulting in excitation of sodium ions to form plasma; molecules are then easily cleaved under relatively low voltage enabling resection. During coagulation, heat dissipates within vessel walls, creating a sealing coagulum and collagen shrinkage. The various bipolar devices available differ in the way in which current flow is delivered [264, 265].

Efficacy: Bipolar TURP is the most widely and thoroughly investigated alternative to M-TURP. Results from > 40 RCTs [266] have been reported, of which around half have been pooled in RCT-based meta-analyses [246, 267-270]. Early pooled results concluded that no clinically relevant differences exist in short-term (up to twelve months) efficacy (IPSS, QoL score and Q_max) [268]. Subsequent meta-analyses supported these conclusions [246, 267, 269, 270], though trial quality was generally poor. Data from RCTs with a follow-up of 12-60 months show no differences in efficacy parameters (online supplementary Table S.25) [271-277].

A meta-analysis has been recently conducted to specifically evaluate the quasi-bipolar Transurethral Resection in Saline (TURIs, Olympus Medical) system vs. M-TURP, (http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/mtg23/)
Ten unique RCTs (1,870 patients) were included. It was concluded that TURis was of equivalent efficacy to M-TURP.

**Tolerability and safety:** Early pooled results concluded that no differences exist in short-term (up to twelve months) urethral stricture/BNC rates, but B-TURP is preferable due to a more favourable peri-operative safety profile (elimination of TUR-syndrome; lower clot retention/blood transfusion rates; shorter irrigation, catheterisation, and possibly hospitalisation times) [268]. Subsequent meta-analyses supported these conclusions [246, 267, 269, 270]. However, trial quality was relatively poor and limited follow-up might cause under-reporting of late complications, such as urethral stricture/BNC [268]. Data from individual RCTs with a follow-up of 12-60 months showed no differences in urethral stricture/BNC rates [270] (online supplementary Table S.25). However, in a recent RCT, a significantly higher stricture (urethral stricture + BNC) rate was detected for the first time in the B-TURP arm [278]. In this trial, 136 patients were randomised 1:1 to B-TURP (TURis) or M-TURP arm and followed up for 36 months. The primary endpoint was safety, including long-term complications such as strictures (urethral stricture + BNC). A significant difference in stricture rates favouring M-TURP was detected (6.6% vs. 19.0%). When patients were stratified according to prostate volume, no difference was detected in stricture rates between the arms in those with a prostate volume of up to 70 mL (TURis 3/40 [7.5%] vs. M-TURP: 3/39 [7.7%]; P = 1.00). However, in patients with prostate volume > 70 mL, a significantly higher stricture rate was seen in those submitted to TURis (9/23 [39.1] vs. 1/22 [4.6%]; P = 0.01).

Furthermore, in another RCT, a significantly higher BNC (but not urethral stricture) rate was detected for the first time in the B-TURP arm [279]. In this trial 137 patients were randomised 1:1 to B-TURP (performed with a “true” bipolar system [Gyrus PK SuperPulse, Olympus Medical]) or M-TURP arm and followed up to twelve months [279]. A significant difference in BNC rates favouring M-TURP was detected (0.0% vs. 8.5%; P=0.02), reinforcing a previously expressed potential association of BNC formation with the extremely focused electrical activity of a “true” bipolar system at the prostate level and thus, in close proximity to the bladder neck [276].

A RCT using the erectile function domain of the IIEF (IIEF-ED) showed that M-TURP and B-TURP have a similar effect on erectile function [280]. A comparative evaluation of the effects on overall sexual function, quantified with IIEF-15, showed no differences between B-TURP and M-TURP at twelve months follow-up (erection, orgasmic function, sexual desire, intercourse satisfaction, overall satisfaction) [281].

A meta-analysis (http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/mtg23/resources/the-turis-system-for-transurethral-resection-of-the-prostate-64371933166021) has shown that TURis reduces the risk of TUR-syndrome and the need for blood transfusion compared to M-TURP. It is plausible that TURis reduces length of hospital stay and re-admissions after surgery, although the evidence on these outcomes is limited.

**Practical considerations:** B-TURP offers an attractive alternative to M-TURP in patients with moderate-to-severe LUTS secondary to BPO, with similar efficacy but lower peri-operative morbidity [268]. The duration of improvements with B-TURP were documented in a number of RCTs with a follow-up of greater than twelve months. Mid-term results (up to five years) for B-TURP showed that safety and efficacy are comparable to M-TURP. The choice of B-TURP should be based on equipment availability, surgeon’s experience, and patient’s preference.

### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer transurethral incision of the prostate to surgically treat moderate-to-severe LUTS in men with prostate size &lt; 30 mL, without a middle lobe.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer bipolar- or monopolar- transurethral resection of the prostate to surgically treat moderate-to-severe LUTS in men with prostate size of 30-80 mL.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.3.2 Open prostatectomy

**Mechanism of action:** Open prostatectomy is the oldest surgical treatment for moderate-to-severe LUTS secondary to BPO. Obstructive adenomas are enucleated using the index finger, approaching from within the bladder (Freyer procedure) or through the anterior prostatic capsule (Millin procedure). It is used for substantially enlarged glands (> 80-100 mL).

**Efficacy:** A few RCTs showed that holmium laser enucleation of the prostate (HoLEP), photosensitive vaporisation of the prostate (PVP) and more recently, enucleation of the prostate using bipolar circuitry lead to similar outcomes compared to OP in men with large glands at a significantly lower complication rate [282-289]. Open prostatectomy reduces LUTS by 63-86% (12.5-23.3 IPSS points), improves QoL score by 60-87%, increases mean Qmax by 375% (+16.5-20.2 mL/s), and reduces PVR by 86-98% [282-284, 290, 291]. Efficacy is maintained for up to six years [292].

Two RCT-based meta-analysis evaluated the overall efficacy of endoscopic enucleation of the prostate...
prostate (EEP) vs. OP for treating patients with large glands [293, 294]. The larger study included RCTs involving 758 patients. Five RCTs compared OP with HoLEP [282, 283, 287] and four RCTs compared OP with EEP using bipolar circuitry [272-274, 278]. Open prostatectomy was performed via a transvesical approach in all RCTs. At 3-, 6-, 12- and 24-month follow-up, there were no significant differences in Qmax between EEP and OP. Post-void residual, PSA, IPSS and QoL score also showed no significant difference at 1-, 3-, 6- and 12-months. Furthermore, IIEF also showed no significant difference at 3-, 6- and 12-months. It was concluded that EEP appears to be an effective minimally invasive option for treating large prostates.

Tolerability and safety: Open prostatectomy mortality has decreased significantly during the past two decades (< 0.25%) [291]. The estimated transfusion rate is about 7-14% [282, 290, 291, 293]. Long-term complications include transient urinary incontinence (up to 10%), BNC and urethral stricture (about 6%) [282-284, 293, 295].

Two recent RCT-based meta-analysis evaluated the overall safety of EEP vs. OP for treating patients with large glands [293, 294]. Operation time was significantly longer for EEP, due to a significantly longer operation time needed for HoLEP (no difference was detected between OP and EEP using bipolar circuitry). Catheterisation and hospitalisation time was significantly shorter with EEP whilst IIEF-5 showed no significant difference between OP and EEP at twelve months [283, 286, 294]. Endoscopic enucleation of the prostate was also associated with fewer blood transfusions but there were no significant differences regarding other complications. It was concluded that EEP appears to be a minimally invasive option for treating large prostates.

Practical considerations: Open prostatectomy is the most invasive surgical method but it is an effective and durable procedure for the treatment of LUTS/BPO. Endoscopic enucleation techniques require experience and relevant endoscopic skills. In the absence of an endourological armamentarium including a holmium laser or a bipolar system, OP is the surgical treatment of choice for men with prostates > 80 mL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer endoscopic enucleation of the prostate or open prostatectomy to treat moderate-to-severe LUTS in men with prostate size &gt; 80 mL.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3.3 Transurethral microwave therapy (TUMT)

Mechanism of action: Microwave thermotherapy works by emitting microwave radiation through an intraurethral antenna that delivers heat into the prostate. Tissue is destroyed (coagulation necrosis) by being heated at temperatures above cytotoxic thresholds (> 45°C). The heat may also cause apoptosis and denervation of α-receptors, thereby decreasing the smooth muscle tone of the prostatic urethra.

Efficacy: A systematic review and meta-analysis assessed therapeutic efficacy in different devices/software, including Prostatron (Prostasoft 2.0 and 2.5) and ProstaLund Feedback (online supplementary Table S.27) [281]. Symptom score after TUMT decreased by 65% in twelve months, compared to 77% after TURP. Transurethral resection of the prostate also achieved greater improvement in Qmax (119% vs. 70%) [296].

In one pooled analysis of three studies (two RCTs and one cohort study), with a twelve month follow-up, responder rate was 85.3% for ProstaLund Feedback TUMT (PLFT) and 85.9% for TURP [297]. The IPSS showed a subjective, non-inferior improvement with PLFT [297]. However, although both PLFT and TURP improved Qmax significantly, PLFT was inferior.

Previously, urinary retention was considered a contraindication for TUMT. Nowadays, LE:2b studies have reported a 77-93% short-term success rate for TUMT, defined as the percentage of patients who regained their ability to void spontaneously [298-301]. In one study with longer follow-up, cumulative retreatment risk at five years was estimated to be 42% for those without retention and 59% for those with retention at the baseline [302].

An RCT-based systematic review [296] (though the trials had different follow-up periods) found that TUMT patients (7.54/100 person-years) were more likely than TURP patients (1.05/100 person-years) to require retreatment for symptoms.

In a multicentre RCT with a five year follow-up, no significant differences were found in Qmax and IPSS between TUMT (PLFT; the Core-Therm device) and TURP. Additional treatment was needed in 10% after TUMT and in 4.3% after TURP. However, one must be cautious when interpreting these data because there was substantial loss to follow-up; less than half of the patients were analysed at four to five years. In addition, patients who remained in the study were likely to represent the best data (responders).

Tolerability and safety: Treatment is well tolerated, although most patients experience perineal discomfort and urinary urgency, and require pain medication for therapy. Pooled morbidity data comparing TUMT and TURP have been published [296, 297, 303]. In the Cochrane review of RCTs, catheterisation time, dysuria/urgency
and urinary retention rates were significantly smaller with TURP. On the other hand, hospitalisation time, haematuria, clot retention, transfusion, TUR-syndrome, sexual dysfunction and retreatment rates for urethral stricture/BNC were significantly smaller for TUMT [296].

Practical considerations: Endoscopy prior to TUMT is essential to identify the presence of a prostate middle lobe or an insufficient length of the prostatic urethra. Due to the low peri- and post-operative morbidity and lack of need for anaesthesia, TUMT is a true outpatient procedure and an option for (elderly) patients with comorbidities or greater anaesthesia risks [304].

### 5.3.4 Transurethral needle ablation of the prostate

**Mechanism of action:** The transurethral needle ablation (TUNA™) device delivers low-level radiofrequency energy to the prostate via needles inserted transurethrally into the parenchyma under direct vision using an attachment to the standard cystoscope. The energy induces coagulation necrosis in the transition zone resulting in reduction of prostate volume and BPO.

**Efficacy:** A meta-analysis of two RCTs, two non-randomised comparative and ten single-arm studies showed that TUNA™ achieved a 50% decrease in IPSS and a 70% improvement in Qmax at one year [305]. These findings are supported by a more recent meta-analysis of 35 studies (9 comparative, 26 non-comparative) [306]. Transurethral needle ablation of the prostate significantly improved IPSS and Qmax, but compared to TURP these improvements were significantly lower at twelve months. Mean differences in TURP vs. TUNA™ were 4.7 for IPSS and 5.9 mL/s for Qmax [306].

Clinical studies on the impact of TUNA™ on BPO [307, 308] showed a significant decrease in maximum detrusor pressure or detrusor pressure at Qmax. However, one out of six patients were still obstructed at one year [307].

The overall retreatment rate after TUNA™ was 19% based on an analysis of seventeen non-comparative studies (median follow-up unreported; only three out of seventeen studies had follow-up exceeding two years [306]); a rate considerably higher than that seen with TURP.

**Tolerability and safety:** Transient urinary retention and storage LUTS are common for weeks post-operatively [309, 310]. Generally, TUNA™ is associated with fewer adverse events compared to TURP, including mild haematuria, UTIs, strictures, incontinence, ED, and ejaculation disorders [305].

**Practical considerations:** Transurethral needle ablation of the prostate can be performed as a day-case procedure under local anaesthesia or sedation [309]. However, TUNA™ is not suitable for prostates > 75 mL or isolated bladder neck obstruction. In addition, TUNA™ cannot effectively treat prostatic middle lobes. There are also concerns about the durability of the effects achieved by TUNA™.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transurethral microwave therapy achieves symptom improvement comparable with, transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) but transurethral microwave therapy is associated with decreased morbidity and lower flow improvements.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Durability is in favour of TURP which has lower retreatment rates compared to transurethral microwave therapy.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.3.5 Laser treatments of the prostate

#### 5.3.5.1 Holmium laser enucleation and holmium laser resection of the prostate

**Mechanism of action:** The holmium:yttrium-aluminium garnet (Ho:YAG) laser (wavelength 2,140 nm) is a pulsed solid-state laser that is absorbed by water and water-containing tissues. Tissue coagulation and necrosis are limited to 3-4 mm, which is enough to obtain adequate haemostasis [311]. Holmium laser resection of the prostate (HoLRP) or holmium laser enucleation of the prostate (HoLEP) result in BPO relief and, secondarily, in LUTS reduction.
Efficacy: In a meta-analysis of studies comparing HoLRP with TURP, no difference in symptom improvement could be detected at six or twelve months post-operatively (online supplementary Table S.29) [312]. One RCT comparing TURP with HoLRP with a minimum follow-up of four years showed no difference in urodynamics after 48 months [313]. Three meta-analyses covering trials on HoLEP vs. TURP found that symptom improvement was comparable or superior with HoLEP (online supplementary Table S.29) [314-316]. One RCT comparing photosselective vapourisation of the prostate (PVP) and HoLEP in patients with prostates > 60 mL showed comparable symptom improvement but significantly higher flow rates and lower PVR volume after HoLEP [317]. Another RCT on HoLAP and 80-W PVP showed comparable functional improvement within a median follow-up of 71 months [318].

RCTs indicate that HoLEP is as effective as OP for improving micturition in large prostates [282, 283], with similar re-operation rates after five years (5% vs. 6.7%, respectively) [282]. One RCT comparing HoLEP with TURP in a small number of patients with a seven year follow-up found that the functional long term results of HoLEP were comparable with TURP [319]. A retrospective study of HoLEP with the longest follow-up of up to ten years (mean 62 months) reported durable functional results with low re-operation rates [320].

Tolerability and safety: Dysuria is the most common post-operative complication [311, 314]. Compared to TURP, HoLRP has shorter catheterisation and hospitalisation times [312, 321]. Potency, continence, and major morbidity at 48 months were identical between HoLRP and TURP [313]. Three meta-analyses found that HoLEP has shorter catheterisation time and hospital stay, reduced blood loss, and fewer blood transfusions, but a longer operation time compared with TURP [314-316]. In a meta-analysis, no significant differences were noted between HoLEP and TURP for urethral stricture (2.6% vs. 4.4%), stress urinary incontinence (1.5% vs. 1.5%), and re-intervention (4.3% vs. 8.8%) [300]. HoLEP is superior to OP for blood loss, catheterisation and hospitalisation time [282, 283].

HoLEP has been safely performed in patients using anticoagulant medications [322, 323]. In a study of 83 patients, blood transfusion was required in seven patients (8%) [324]. A retrospective study compared the safety results of HoLEP in 39 patients who were on anticoagulant therapy at the time of their surgery, and 37 controls [323]. No transfusions were required and bleeding complication rates were not significantly different [323]. Short-term studies showed that patients with urinary retention could be treated with HoLEP [325, 326].

The impact on erectile function and retrograde ejaculation is comparable between HoLEP and TURP/OP [283, 327]. Erectile function did not decrease from baseline in either group; three quarters of sexually active patients had retrograde ejaculation after HoLEP.

Practical considerations: Holmium laser operations are surgical procedures that require experience and relevant endoscopic skills. The experience of the surgeon was the most important factor affecting the overall occurrence of complications [322, 328].

5.3.5.2 532 nm ("Greenlight") laser vapourisation of prostate

Mechanism of action: The Kalium-Titanyl-Phosphate (KTP) and the lithium triborate (LBO) lasers work at a wavelength of 532 nm. Laser energy is absorbed by haemoglobin, but not by water. Vaporisation leads to immediate removal of prostatic tissue, relief of BPO, and reduction of LUTS. In 2016 the standard Greenlight procedure was the 180-W-XPS laser, but the majority of evidence is published with the former 80-W (KTP) or 120-W HPS (LBO) laser systems. These three “Greenlight” laser systems differ not only in maximum power output, but more significantly in fibre design and the associated energy tissue interaction of each.

Efficacy: A meta-analysis of the nine available RCTs comparing PVP using the 80-W and 120-W lasers with TURP was performed in 2012 (online supplementary Table S.29) [329]. No differences were found in Qmax and IPSS between 80-W-PVP and TURP, but only three RCTs provided sufficient twelve month data to be included in the meta-analysis [330-332]. With the 180-W (XPS) laser efficacy is comparable to TURP in terms of IPSS, Qmax, PVR volume, prostate volume reduction, PSA decrease and QoL questionnaires. The XPS laser prostatectomy is superior to TURP in terms of catheterisation time, length of hospital stay and time to stable health status.

The longest RCT using the 80-W KTP laser has a follow-up of only twelve months [330]. A case series showed durable functional outcomes with the 80-W KTP laser, with an overall retreatment rate of 8.9% at five years [333]. Another case series of 500 patients treated with the 80-W system with a mean follow-up of 30.6 months reported a retreatment rate of 14.8% [334]. At twelve months self-reported urinary incontinence was 2.9% with XPS and 3.0% with TURP. Surgical re-intervention was comparably low after twelve months for both XPS and TURP.

Significant improvements in voiding parameters at a follow-up of twelve months were demonstrated urodynamically [335]. The longest RCT comparing the 120-W HPS laser with TURP had a follow-up of 36 months and showed a comparable improvement in IPSS, Qmax and PVR [336]. The re-operation rate was
higher after PVP (11% vs. 1.8%; p = 0.04) [336]. Similar improvement of IPSS, QoL, Q\textsubscript{max} or urodynamic parameters was reported from two RCTs with a maximum follow-up of 24 months [331, 337].

A multicentre case series of the 180-W laser demonstrated comparable safety and symptom improvement for the 180-W laser and the former Greenlight laser systems [338].

**Tolerability and safety:** A meta-analysis of the RCTs comparing the 80-W and 120-W lasers with TURP showed a significantly longer operating time but shorter catheterisation time and length of hospital stay after PVP [329]. Blood transfusions and clot retention were less with PVP. No difference was noted in post-operative urinary retention, infection, meatal stenosis, urethral stricture, or bladder neck stenosis [329]. According to the Goliath Study, 180-W Greenlight laser prostatectomy is non-inferior to TURP in terms of peri-operative complications, including post-operative dysuria rate (XPS 19.1%; TURP 21.8%). Post-operative Clavien III re-interventions are more likely within the first 30 days after TURP compared to XPS (3.8% vs. 9.8%; p = 0.04), but comparable after twelve months follow-up. There are more severe bleeding complications within 30 days after TURP and more mild bleeding complications after XPS laser prostatectomy over twelve months, leading to a comparable overall incidence between both techniques.

The Greenlight laser appears to be safe in high-risk patients under anticoagulation treatment [339-343]. In one study, anticoagulant patients had significantly higher rates of bladder irrigation (17.2%) compared with those not taking anticoagulants (5.4%) [342]. Safety in patients with urinary retention, or prostates > 80 mL was shown in various prospective non-randomised trials [343-345].

The impact of Greenlight laser on sexual function and abnormal ejaculation was similar to that of TURP after twelve months [346]. In addition, no difference was reported between OP/TURP and Greenlight PVP for erectile function [347, 348], IIEF-5 scores are maintained after treatment. However, in patients with pre-operative IIEF-5 > 19, the post-operative IIEF-5 scores were significantly decreased at 6, 12, and 24 months [349].

**Practical considerations:** The 180-W XPS laser should be regarded as the reference for Greenlight laser prostatectomy. However, many former studies were done with the out-dated 80-W and 120-W lasers therefore, results need to be interpreted accordingly. Long-term results from the Goliath Study (180-W XPS vs. TURP) are pending. The intermediate two year follow-up data showed efficacy and safety outcomes similar to TURP [350].

5.3.5.3 **Diode laser vapourisation of the prostate**

**Mechanism of action:** For prostate surgery, diode lasers with a wavelength of 940, 980, 1,318, and 1,470 nm (depending on the semiconductor used) are marketed for vapourisation and enucleation. Only a few have been evaluated in clinical trials [351].

**Efficacy:** Case series, and two comparative studies of vapourisation using a 980 nm diode laser or a 120-W HPS laser, are available [352-358]. Quality of life, IPSS, Q\textsubscript{max} and PVR improved significantly in all studies compared to baseline and were similar for both laser, at six and twelve months [352, 353].

One RCT with a twelve month follow-up compared the 980 nm diode laser with bipolar enucleation and found equal clinical outcome [359]. One small RCT with a six month follow-up comparing laser enucleation using a 1,318 nm diode laser with B-TURP reported similar efficacy (online supplementary Table S.29) [360]. This data is further supported by one RCT, comparing 980 nm diode laser vapourisation vs. TURP within a two year follow-up [361]. Redo TURP was more frequent in the diode laser group (online supplementary Table S.29) [359].

**Tolerability and safety:** Published studies on 980 nm laser vapourisation indicate high haemostatic potential, although anticoagulants or platelet aggregation inhibitors were taken in 24% and 52% of patients, respectively [352, 353]. Post-operatively, a high rate of dysuria was reported [352-354, 361]. Fibre modifications led to a significant reduction in surgical time [355]. Furthermore, the literature on diode vapourisation reports high re-operation rates (8-33%) and persisting stress urinary incontinence (9.1%) [352-354, 361]. In contrast, the two RCTs on diode laser enucleation showed that blood loss, hospitalisation and catheterisation time were in favour of diode laser enucleation, with equivalent clinical outcome for either bipolar enucleation [359] or TURP [360] during follow-up.

**Practical considerations:** Diode laser vapourisation leads to immediate improvement of LUTS due to BPO and provides good haemostatic properties. Diode laser enucleation seems to offer similar efficacy and safety when compared to either TURP or bipolar enucleation. Based on the limited number, mainly low quality RCTs and controversial data on the retreatment rate, results for diode laser vapourisation should be evaluated in further higher quality RCTs.
5.3.5.4 Thulium:yttrium-aluminium-garnet laser (Tm:YAG)

Mechanism of action: In the Tm:YAG laser, a wavelength between 1,940 and 2,013 nm is emitted in continuous wave mode. The laser is primarily used in front-fire applications [351, 362]. Different applications, ranging from vaporisation (ThuVaP), vaporesection (ThuVaRP), and enucleation (ThuVEP/ThuLEP: similar enucleating techniques) are published.

Efficacy: One RCT with a four year follow-up comparing ThuVaRP to M-TURP, showed comparable efficacy and favourable re-operation rates in the ThuVaRP group [363] (online supplementary Table S.29). One RCT and one non-RCT compared ThuVaRP with M-TURP [364, 365], while two RCTs comparing ThuVaRP and B-TURP were published recently [366, 367]. In summary, studies show comparable improvement of symptoms and voiding parameters. There are only a few case studies on ThuVEP showing a significant improvement in IPSS, Q\(_{\text{max}}\), and PVR after treatment [368-371]. ThuLEP and HoLEP were compared in one RCT with eighteen months follow-up with comparable outcomes in both arms (online supplementary Table S.29) [356]. Furthermore, ThuLEP and bipolar enucleation were compared in one RCT with twelve months follow-up. The outcome showed no difference with regard to efficacy whilst the decrease in hemoglobin level and catheter time were significantly lower for ThuLEP [372].

Tolerability and safety: Thulium laser prostatectomy shows high intra-operative safety in RCTs [363, 364], as well as in case series in patients with large prostates [368] and anticoagulation or bleeding disorders [369, 373]. Catheterisation time, hospital stay, and blood loss were shorter compared to TURP [364-366]. The rate of post-operative urethral strictures after ThuVaRP was 1.9%, the rate of bladder neck contracture was 1.8%, and the re-operation rate was 0-7.1% during follow-up [364, 365, 374]. Urethral stricture after ThuVEP occurred in 1.6%, and the overall retreatment rate was 3.4% (mean follow-up 16.5 months) [375]. No urethral and bladder neck strictures after ThuLEP were reported during the eighteen months follow-up [376]. Recently, a study focused on post-operative complications after ThuVEP (vapoenucleation) reported adverse events in 31% of cases, with 6.6% complications greater than Clavien grade II [377]. One case control study on ThuVEP with 48-month follow-up reported long-term durability of voiding improvements and overall re-operation rates of 2.4% [373]. Two studies (one case control, one RCT vs. TURP) addressed the impact of ThuVEP on sexual function, demonstrating no effect on erectile function with increased prevalence of retrograde ejaculation post-operatively [378, 379].

A prospective multicentre study on ThuVARP, including 2,216 patients, showed durable post-operative improvement in IPSS, QoL, Q\(_{\text{max}}\), and PVR for the entire eight years of follow-up. Urethral stricture and bladder neck contracture accounted for 2.6% and 1.6% of patients, respectively. Persistent stress incontinence was found in 0.1% whilst, re-operation due to BPH recurrence was required in 1.2% of patients [380].

In two RCTs on ThuLEP versus TURP, one RCT on ThuLEP versus bipolar enucleation and one RCT on ThuLEP versus HoLEP, ThuLEP appeared to be equivalent with regard to clinical efficacy and superior with regard to intra-operative haemostasis. The same was demonstrated for ThuVEP vs. TURP in one RCT [381].

Practical considerations: The limited number of RCTs and only a few studies with long-term follow-up (up to 48 months) support the efficacy of thulium laser prostatectomy therefore, there is a need for ongoing confirmation.
Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Holmium laser enucleation and 532-nm laser vaporisation of the prostate are alternatives to transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) in men with moderate-to-severe LUTS leading to immediate, objective, and subjective improvements comparable with TURP.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The short-term and mid-term functional results of 532-nm laser vaporisation of the prostate are comparable with TURP.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The long-term functional results of holmium laser enucleation are comparable with TURP or open prostatectomy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thulium enucleation may be an alternative to TURP and holmium laser enucleation in men with moderate-to-severe LUTS leading to immediate and mid-term objective and subjective improvements.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode laser operations lead to short-term objective and subjective improvement.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tm:YAG vaporesection is an alternative to TURP for small- and medium-size prostates.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With regard to intra-operative safety and haemostatic properties, diode and thulium lasers appear to be safe.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With regard to intra-operative safety, 532-nm laser vaporisation is superior to TURP.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532-nm laser vapourisation should be considered in patients receiving anticoagulant medication or with a high cardiovascular risk.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3.6 Prostatic stents

Mechanism of action: The use of an endoprosthesis to preserve luminal patency is a well-established concept. Prostatic stents were primarily designed as an alternative to an indwelling catheter but have also been assessed as a primary treatment option in patients without significant comorbidities [382, 383].

A prostatic stent requires a functioning detrusor [384]. Permanent stents are biocompatible, allowing for epithelialisation. Temporary stents do not epithelialise and may be either biostable or biodegradable. Temporary stents can provide short-term relief from BPO in patients temporarily unfit for surgery, or after minimally invasive treatment [384].

Efficacy: Several small case studies on a range of stents of different designs and materials provide low level evidence for their use. Online supplementary Table S.30 describes the most important studies [382, 383, 385-388]. There was a substantial loss to follow-up in all studies. There are no studies comparing stents with sham or other treatment modalities, and only one RCT compared two versions of a prostatic stent for BPO [389].

The main representative of the permanent stents is the UroLume prosthesis. A systematic review identified 20 case series (990 patients), with differing follow-ups [390]. These studies reported relevant symptom improvement and $Q_{\text{max}}$ increase [390]. The pooled data from studies with patients who were catheter dependent showed that 84% of patients (148/176) regained the ability to void spontaneously after UroLume treatment [390, 391].

The data on non-epithelialising prostatic stents was summarised in a systematic review on the efficacy of Memokath, a self-expanding metallic prostatic stent [392]. Overall, IPSS was reduced by 11-19 points and $Q_{\text{max}}$ increased by 3-11 mL/s [392].

Tolerability and safety: In general, stents are subject to misplacement, migration, and poor tolerability because of exacerbation of LUTS and encrustation [384]. The most immediate and common adverse events include perineal pain or bladder storage symptoms.

Practical considerations: Due to common side effects and a high migration rate, prostatic stents have a limited role in the treatment of moderate-to-severe LUTS. Temporary stents can provide short-term relief from LUTS secondary to BPO in patients temporarily unfit for surgery or after minimally invasive treatment [384].

Recommendation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer prostatic stents as an alternative to catheterisation in men unfit for surgery.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3.7 Prostatic urethral lift

Mechanism of action: The prostatic urethral lift (PUL) represents a novel minimally invasive approach under local or general anaesthesia. Encroaching lateral lobes are compressed by small permanent suture-based implants delivered under cystoscopic guidance (Urolift®) resulting in an opening of the prostatic urethra that leaves a continuous anterior channel through the prostatic fossa ranging from the bladder neck to the verumontanum.
Efficacy: The available studies on PUL are presented in online supplementary Table S.31 [393-398]. In general, PUL achieves a significant improvement in IPSS (-39% to -52%), $Q_{\text{max}}$ (+32% to +59%) and QoL (-48% to -53%). There is only one RCT comparing PUL with sham [393]. The primary endpoint was met at three months with a 50% reduction in AUA-SI from 22.1 to 11.0 points and remained stable up to twelve months. Change for AUA-SI was 88% greater for the treatment group than sham control. Also $Q_{\text{max}}$ increased significantly from 8.1 to 12.4 mL/s relative to baseline at three months and this result could still be confirmed at twelve months. The difference in clinical response for $Q_{\text{max}}$ between both groups was of statistical significance. A relevant benefit with regard to PVR was not demonstrated compared to baseline nor relative to sham control.

An RCT of 80 patients, conducted in nine European countries, comparing PUL to TURP was published in 2015. At twelve months, IPSS improvement was -11.4 for PUL and -15.4 for TURP. There was no retrograde ejaculation among PUL patients, while 40% of TURP patients lost the ability to ejaculate. Surgical recovery was measured using a validated instrument and confirmed that recovery from PUL is more rapid and more extensive in the first three to six months [399]. However, TURP resulted in much greater improvements in $Q_{\text{max}}$ (+13.7 ± 10.4 mL/s) after twelve months compared to PUL. (4.0 ± 4.8 mL/s).

In a recent meta-analysis of retrospective and prospective trials, pooled estimates showed an overall improvement following PUL, including IPSS (-7.2 to -8.7 points), $Q_{\text{max}}$ (3.8 to 4.0 mL/s), and Qol (-2.2 to -2.4 points) [398]. Sexual function was preserved with a small improvement estimated at twelve months.

A multi-centre, randomised and blinded trial of PUL in men with bothersome LUTS due to BPH showed that at three years, average improvements from baseline were significant for total IPSS (41.1%), QoL (48.8%), $Q_{\text{max}}$ (53.1%) and individual IPSS symptoms. Symptomatic improvement was independent of prostate size. There were no de novo, sustained ejaculatory or erectile dysfunction events and all sexual function assessments showed average stability or improvement after PUL [400].

Tolerability and safety: The most common complications reported post-operatively included haematuria (16-63%), dysuria (25-58%), pelvic pain (5-17.9%), urgency (7.1-10%), transient incontinence (3.6-16%), and UTI (2.9-11%). Most symptoms were mild-to-moderate in severity and resolved within two to four weeks after the procedure.

Prostatic urethral lift seems to have no significant impact on sexual function. Evaluation of sexual function as measured by IIEF-5, Male Sexual Health Questionnaire-Ejaculatory Dysfunction, and Male Sexual Health Questionnaire-Bother in patients undergoing PUL showed that erectile and ejaculatory function were preserved [393-397].

Practical considerations: An obstructed/protruding median lobe cannot be effectively treated, and the effectiveness in large prostate glands has not been shown yet. Long-term studies are needed to evaluate the duration of the effect in comparison to other techniques.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer Prostatic urethral lift (Urolift®) to men with LUTS interested in preserving ejaculatory function, with prostates &lt; 70 mL and no middle lobe. Inform patients that long-term effects have not been evaluated.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3.8 Novel interventions

5.3.8.1 Intra-prostatic injections

Mechanism of action: Various substances have been injected directly into the prostate in order to improve LUTS, these include Botulinum toxin-A (BoNT-A), NX-1207 and PRX302. The primary mechanism of action of BoNT-A is through the inhibition of neurotransmitter release from cholinergic neurons via cleavage of synaptosome-associated protein 25 (SNAP-25). However, BoNT-A also appears to act at various other levels by modulating the neurotransmissions of sympathetic, parasympathetic and sensory nerve terminals in the prostate, leading to a reduction in growth and apoptosis of the prostate [401]. The detailed mechanisms of action for the injectables NX-1207 and PRX302 are not completely understood, but experimental data associates apoptosis-induced atrophy of the prostate with both drugs [401].

Efficacy: Results from clinical trials have shown only modest clinical benefits, that do not seem to be superior to placebo, for BoNT-A [402, 403] (see online supplementary Table S.32). A recent systematic review and meta-analysis showed no differences in efficacy compared with placebo, and concluded that there is no evidence of clinical benefits in medical practice [404]. With regard to NX-1207 and PRX302, the positive results from Phase II-studies have not been confirmed in Phase III-trials thus far [405, 406].
Safety: Studies including safety assessments have reported only a few mild and self-limiting adverse events for all injectable drugs [401]. Furthermore, a recent systematic review and meta-analysis showed low incident rates of procedure-related adverse events [404].

Practical considerations: Although experimental evidence for compounds such as NX-1207, PRX302 and BoNT-A was promising for their transition to clinical use, randomised, controlled studies of all three of these injectable agents have not been able to reveal any significant clinical benefits.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer Botulinum toxin injection treatment to patients with male LUTS.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3.8.2 Minimal invasive simple prostatectomy

Mechanism of action: The term minimal invasive simple prostatectomy (MISP) includes laparoscopic simple prostatectomy (LSP) and robot-assisted simple prostatectomy (RASP). The technique for LSP was first described in 2002 [407], while the first RASP was reported in 2008 [408]. Both LSP and RASP are performed using different personalised techniques, developed based on the transcapsular (Millin) or transvesical (Freyer) techniques of OP. An extraperitoneal approach is mostly used for LSP, while a transperitoneal approach is mostly used for RASP.

Efficacy: A recent systematic review and meta-analysis showed that in 27 observational studies including 764 patients, the mean increase in Qmax was 14.3 mL/s (95% CI 13.1-15.6), and the mean improvement in IPSS was 17.2 (95% CI 15.2-19.2). Mean duration of operation was 141 min (95% CI 124-159), and the mean intra-operative blood loss was 284 mL (95% CI 243-325). One hundred and four patients (13.6%) developed a surgical complication. In comparative studies to OP, length of hospital stay (WMD -1.6 days, p = 0.02), length of catheter use (WMD -1.3 days, p = 0.04) and estimated blood loss (WMD -187 mL, p = 0.015) were significantly lower in the MISP group, while the duration of operation was longer than in OP (WMD 37.8 min, p < 0.0001). There were no differences in improvements in Qmax, IPSS and peri-operative complications between both procedures (see online supplementary Table S.33).

Two recent retrospective series on RASP are now available which were not included in the meta-analysis which confirm these findings [409, 410]. The largest retrospective series reports 1,330 consecutive cases including 487 robotic (36.6%) and 843 laparoscopic (63.4%) simple prostatectomy cases. The authors confirm that both techniques can be safely and effectively done in selected centres [409]. Technical variations also include an intrafasical (IF) approach. Comparing laparoscopic, robotic and robotic IF simple prostatectomy, the IF-RSP technique is safe and effective, with results at one year follow-up for continence, IPSS and Sexual Health Inventory for Men scores similar to those for the LSP and RSP techniques [411].

Tolerability and safety: In the largest series, the post-operative complication rate was 10.6% (7.1% for LSP and 16.6% for RASP), most of the complications being of low grade. The most common complications in the RASP series were hematuria requiring irrigation, UTI and AUR; in the LSP series, the most common complications were UTI, ileus and AUR.

Practical considerations: Data on MISP are increasing from selected centres. MISP seems comparable to OP in terms of efficacy and safety, providing similar improvements in Qmax and IPSS [412]. However, most studies are of a retrospective nature. High quality studies are needed to compare the efficacy, safety, and hospitalisation times of MISP and both OP and endoscopic methods. Long-term outcomes, learning curve and cost of MISP should also be evaluated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence Statement</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimal invasive simple prostatectomy seems to be feasible in men with prostate sizes &gt; 80 mL needing surgical treatment; however, RCTs are needed.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4 Patient selection

The choice of treatment depends on the assessed findings of patient evaluation, ability of the treatment to change the findings, treatment preferences of the individual patient, and the expectations to be met in terms of speed of onset, efficacy, side effects, QoL, and disease progression. Online supplementary Table S.34 provides differential information about speed of onset and influence on basic parameters of conservative, medical or surgical treatment options.

Behavioural modifications, with or without medical treatments, are usually the first choice of therapy.
Figure 3 provides a flow chart illustrating treatment choice according to evidence-based medicine and patient profiles.

Surgical treatment is usually required when patients have experienced recurrent or refractory urinary retention, overflow incontinence, recurrent UTIs, bladder stones or diverticula, treatment-resistant macroscopic haematuria due to BPH/BPE, or dilatation of the upper urinary tract due to BPO, with or without renal insufficiency (absolute operation indications, need for surgery).

Additionally, surgery is usually needed when patients have not obtained adequate relief from LUTS or PVR using conservative or medical treatments (relative operation indications). The choice of surgical technique depends on prostate size, comorbidities of the patient, ability to have anaesthesia, patients’ preferences, willingness to accept surgery-associated specific side-effects, availability of the surgical armamentarium, and experience of the surgeon with these surgical techniques. An algorithm for surgical approaches according to evidence-based medicine and the patient’s profile is provided in figure 4.

**Figure 3: Treatment algorithm of male LUTS using medical and/or conservative treatment options.**

**Treatment decisions depend on results assessed during initial evaluation.**

**Note that patients’ preferences may result in different treatment decisions.**

---

**Male LUTS (without indications for surgery)**

- **Bothersome symptoms?**
  - **Yes**
    - **Nocturnal polyuria predominant**
      - **No**
        - **Storage symptoms predominant?**
          - **Yes**
            - **Prostate volume > 40 mL?**
              - **No**
                - **Education + lifestyle advice with or without α₁-blocker/PDE5i**
              - **Yes**
                - **Add muscarinic receptor antagonist/beta-3 agonist**
            - **Yes**
              - **Education + lifestyle advice with or without 5α-reductase inhibitor + α₁-blocker/PDE5i**
        - **No**
          - **Residual storage symptoms**
            - **Watchful waiting with or without education + lifestyle advice**
      - **Yes**
        - **Long-term treatment?**
          - **No**
            - **Education + lifestyle advice with or without muscarinic receptor antagonist/beta-3 agonist**
          - **Yes**
            - **Education + lifestyle advice with or without vasopressin analogue**

---

*LUTS = lower urinary tract symptoms; PDE5i = phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors.*

*Notice: Readers are strongly recommended to read the full text that highlights the current position of each treatment in detail.*
Figure 4: Treatment algorithm of bothersome LUTS refractory to conservative/medical treatment or in cases of absolute operation indications. The flowchart was stratified by the patient’s ability to have anaesthesia, cardiovascular risk, and prostate size.

Male LUTS with absolute indications for surgery or non-responders to medical treatment or those who do not want medical treatment but request active treatment

- High-risk patients?
  - Can have surgery under anaesthesia?
    - no
  - Can stop anticoagulation/antiplatelet therapy?
    - yes
      - Prostate volume
        - < 30 mL
          - TUIP (1)
          - TURP
        - > 80 mL
      - 30 – 80 mL
        - Open prostatectomy (1)
        - HoLEP (1)
        - Laser enucleation (1)
        - Laser vaporisation (1)
        - TURP
        - TUMT
        - TUNA
        - PU lift

(1) Current standard/first choice. The alternative treatments are presented in alphabetical order.

Laser vaporisation includes GreenLight, thulium, and diode lasers vaporisation; Laser enucleation includes holmium and thulium laser enucleation.

HoLEP = holmium laser enucleation; TUIP = transurethral incision of the prostate; TUMT = transurethral microwave therapy; TUNA = transurethral needle ablation; TURP = transurethral resection of the prostate.

5.5 Management of Nocturia in men with lower urinary tract symptoms

The following section reports a systematic review of therapy for the management of nocturia in men with LUTS. It also emphasises the need to consider the wide range of possible causes of nocturia. This summary
Nocturia is defined as the complaint of waking at night to void [2]. It reflects the relationship between the amount of urine produced while asleep, and the ability of the bladder to store the urine received. Nocturia can occur as part of lower urinary tract dysfunction (LUTD), such as OAB and chronic pelvic pain syndrome. Nocturia can also occur in association with other forms of LUTD, such as BOO, but here it is debated whether the link is one of causation or simply the co-existence of two common conditions. Crucially, nocturia may have behavioural, sleep disturbance (primary or secondary) or systemic causes unrelated to LUTD (Table 1). Differing causes often co-exist and each has to be considered in all cases. Only where LUTD is contributory should nocturia be termed a LUTS.

Table 1: Categories of nocturia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>Disproportionate urine production (at all times, or during sleep)</th>
<th>Low volume of each void (at all times, or overnight)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Behavioural</td>
<td>Inappropriate fluid intake</td>
<td>“Bladder awareness” due to secondary sleep disturbance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic</td>
<td>Water, salt and metabolite output</td>
<td>“Bladder awareness” due to primary sleep disturbance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep disorder</td>
<td>Variable water and salt output</td>
<td>Impaired storage function and increased filling sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUTD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.5.1 Diagnostic assessment

Evaluation is outlined in Figure 5:
1. Evaluate for LUTD according to the relevant guidelines. The severity and bother of individual LUTS should be identified with a symptom score, supplemented by directed questioning if needed. A validated bladder diary is mandatory.
2. Review whether behavioural factors affecting fluid balance and sleep are contributing.
3. Review of medical history and medications, including directed evaluation for key conditions, such as renal failure, diabetes mellitus, cardiac failure, and obstructive sleep apnoea. If systemic factors or sleep disorders are potentially important, consider involving appropriate medical expertise (see Figure 6). This is appropriate where a known condition is sub-optimally managed, or symptoms and signs suggest an undiagnosed condition.
Figure 5. Evaluation of Nocturia in non-neurogenic Male LUTS.

Assessment must establish whether the patient has polyuria, LUTS, sleep disorder or a combination. Therapy may be driven by the bother it causes, but non-bothersome nocturia may warrant assessment of a frequency volume chart (indicated by the dotted line) depending on history and clinical examination since potential presence of a serious underlying medical condition must be considered.

FVC = frequency volume chart; DRE = digital rectal examination; NP = nocturnal polyuria; MoA = mechanism of action; PVR = post-void residual.

5.5.2 Medical conditions and sleep disorders Shared Care Pathway

Causative categories for nocturia comprise [413]:
1. Bladder storage problems;
2. 24-hour (global) polyuria (> 40 mL/kg urine output over a 24-hour period);
3. Nocturnal polyuria (NP: nocturnal output exceeding 20% of 24-hour urine output in the young, or 33% of urine output in people > 65 [2]);
4. Sleep disorders;
5. Mixed aetiology;

Potentially relevant systemic conditions are those which impair physiological fluid balance, including influences on: levels of free water, salt, other solutes and plasma oncotic pressure; endocrine regulation e.g. by antidiuretic hormone (ADH), natriuretic peptides; cardiovascular and autonomic control; renal function; neurological regulation, e.g. circadian regulation of the pineal gland, and renal innervation. As nocturia is commonly referred to the specialty without full insight into cause, the urologist must review the likely mechanisms underlying a presentation with nocturia, and instigate review by relevant specialties accordingly. Thus, the managing urologist needs to evaluate nocturia patients in a context where additional medical
expertise is available (Figure 6). They should not proceed along any LUTD management pathway unless a 
causative link with LUTD is justifiably suspected, and systemic or sleep abnormalities have been considered. 
In patients with non-bothersome nocturia, the medical evaluation (history and physical examination) 
should consider the possibility of early stages of systemic disease, and whether there is possibility of earlier 
diagnosis or therapy adjustment. 

Some important potentially treatable non-urological causes of nocturia include; obstructive sleep 
apnoea (OSA), congestive cardiac failure, poorly controlled diabetes mellitus and medications (e.g. diuretics, or 
lithium).

Figure 6: Shared care pathway for nocturia, highlighting the need to manage potentially complex 
patients using relevant expertise for the causative factors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UROLOGICAL CONTRIBUTION</th>
<th>SHARED CARE</th>
<th>MEDICAL CONTRIBUTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis of LUTD</td>
<td></td>
<td>Diagnosis of conditions causing NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Urological/LUTS evaluation</td>
<td>• Evaluate patient’s known conditions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Nocturia symptom scores</td>
<td>• Screening for sleep disorders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Bladder diary</td>
<td>• Screening for potential causes of polyuria*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Conservative management

Behavioural therapy

• Fluid/sleep habits advice
• Drugs for storage LUTS
• (Drugs for voiding LUTS)
• ISC/catherisation

Conservative management

• Antidiuretic
• Diuretics
• Drugs to aid sleep

Management

• Initiation of therapy for new diagnosis
• Optimised therapy of known conditions

* Potential causes of polyuria

NEPHROLOGICAL DISEASE

• Tubular dysfunction
• Global renal dysfunction
CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE

• Cardiac disease
• Vascular disease
ENDOCRINE DISEASE

• Diabetes insipidus/mellitus
• Hormones affecting diuresis/natriuresis
NEUROLOGICAL DISEASE

• Pituitary and renal innervation
• Autonomic dysfunction
RESPIRATORY DISEASE

• Obstructive sleep apnoea
BIOCHEMICAL

• Altered blood oncotic pressure

5.5.3 Treatment for Nocturia

5.5.3.1 Antidiuretic therapy

The antidiuretic hormone arginine vasopressin (AVP) plays a key role in body water homeostasis and control 
of urine production by binding to V2 receptors in the renal collecting ducts. Arginine vasopressin increases 
water re-absorption and urinary osmolality, so decreasing water excretion and total urine volume. Arginine 
vasopressin also has V1 receptor mediated vasoconstrictive/hypertensive effects and a very short serum half-
life, which makes the hormone unsuitable for treating nocturia/nocturnal polyuria.

Desmopressin is a synthetic analogue of AVP with high V2 receptor affinity and no relevant V1 
receptor affinity. It has been investigated for treating nocturia [414], with specific doses, titrated dosing, 
differing formulations, and options for route of administration. Antidiuretic therapy using desmopressin, with 
dose titration to achieve clinical response, is more effective than placebo in terms of reduced nocturnal voiding 
frequency and other outcome measures. Three studies evaluating titrated-dose desmopressin in which men 
were included, reported seven serious adverse events in 530 patients, with one death. There were seventeen 
cases of hyponatraemia and seven of hypertension. Headache was reported in 53 and nausea in fifteen.

Practical considerations

Desmopressin is taken once daily before sleeping. Because the optimal dose differs between patients, 
desmopressin treatment should be initiated at a low dose (0.1 mg/day) and may be gradually increased up to 
a dosage of 0.4 mg/day every week until maximum efficacy is reached. Patients should avoid drinking fluids at 
least one hour before and for eight hours after dosing. In men aged 65 years or older, desmopressin should not 
be used if the serum sodium concentration is below normal: all patients should be monitored for hyponatraemia. 
Men with nocturia should be advised regarding off-label use.
5.5.3.2 Medications to treat LUTD
Where LUTD is diagnosed and considered causative of nocturia, relevant medications for storage (and voiding) LUTS may be considered. However, effect size of these medications is generally small, or not significantly different from placebo when used to treat nocturia. Applicable medications include; selective $\alpha_1$-adrenergic antagonists [415], antimuscarinics [416-418], 5$\alpha$-reductase inhibitors [419] and PDE5Is [420].

5.5.3.3 Other medications
Diuretics, agents to promote sleep [421], diuretics [422], non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents (NSAIDs) [423] and phytotherapy [424]. Effect size of these medications in nocturia is generally small, or not significantly different from placebo. Larger responses have been reported for some medications, but larger scale confirmatory RCTs are lacking. Agents to promote sleep do not appear to reduce nocturnal voiding frequency, but may help patients return to sleep.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treatment should aim to address underlying causative factors, which may be behavioural, systemic condition(s), sleep disorders, lower urinary tract dysfunction, or a combination of factors.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discuss lifestyle changes to reduce nocturnal urine volume and episodes of nocturia, and improve sleep quality.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desmopressin may be prescribed to decrease nocturia due to nocturnal polyuria in men under the age of 65. Screening for hyponatremia must be undertaken at baseline, during dose titration and during treatment.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha_1$-adrenergic antagonists may be offered to men with nocturia associated with LUTS.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antimuscarinic drugs may be offered to men with nocturia associated with overactive bladder.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$5\alpha$-reductase inhibitors may be offered to men with nocturia who have moderate-to-severe LUTS and an enlarged prostate (&gt; 40 mL).</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors for the treatment of nocturia.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A trial of timed diuretic therapy may be offered to men with nocturia due to nocturnal polyuria. Screening for hyponatremia should be undertaken at baseline and during treatment.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agents to promote sleep may be used to aid return to sleep in men with nocturia.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on Panel consensus.

6. FOLLOW-UP

6.1 Watchful waiting (behavioural)
Patients who elect to pursue a WW policy should be reviewed at six months and then annually, provided there is no deterioration of symptoms or development of absolute indications for surgical treatment. The following are recommended at follow-up visits: history, IPSS, uroflowmetry, and PVR volume.

6.2 Medical treatment
Patients receiving $\alpha_1$-blockers, muscarinic receptor antagonists, beta-3 agonists, PDE5Is or the combination of $\alpha_1$-blockers and 5-ARIs or muscarinic receptor antagonists should be reviewed four to six weeks after drug initiation to determine the treatment response. If patients gain symptomatic relief in the absence of troublesome adverse events, drug therapy may be continued. Patients should be reviewed at six months and then annually, provided there is no deterioration of symptoms or development of absolute indications for surgical treatment. The following are recommended at follow-up visits: history, IPSS, uroflowmetry, and PVR volume. FVC or bladder diaries should be used to assess response to treatment for predominant storage symptoms or nocturnal polyuria.

Patients receiving 5-ARIs should be reviewed after twelve weeks and six months to determine their response and adverse events. The following are recommended at follow-up visits: history, IPSS, uroflowmetry and PVR volume.

Men taking 5-ARIs should be followed up regularly using serial PSA testing if life expectancy is greater than ten years and if a diagnosis of PCa could alter management. A new baseline PSA should be determined at six months, and any confirmed increase in PSA while on 5-ARIs should be evaluated.

In patients receiving desmopressin, serum sodium concentration should be measured at day three and seven as well as after one month, and if serum sodium concentration has remained normal, every three
months subsequently. The following tests are recommended at follow-up visits: serum-sodium concentration and frequency volume chart. The follow-up sequence should be restarted after dose escalation.

6.3 Surgical treatment
Patients after prostate surgery should be reviewed four to six weeks after catheter removal to evaluate treatment response and adverse events. If patients have symptomatic relief and are without adverse events, no further re-assessment is necessary.

The following tests are recommended at follow-up visit after four to six weeks: IPSS, uroflowmetry and PVR volume.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Follow-up for all conservative, medical, or operative treatment modalities is based on empirical data or theoretical considerations, but not on evidence-based studies.</td>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. REFERENCES


http://eu-acme.org/europeanurology/upload_articles/Novara2.pdf


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18657204


8. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the EAU Non-neurogenic Male LUTS Guidelines Panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have that might be perceived to be a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publically accessible through the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/. These Guidelines were developed with the financial support of the EAU. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation, and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Urinary Incontinence in Adults

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introduction</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Aim and objectives</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Panel composition</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Available publications</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 Publication history</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.1 Summary of changes</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. METHODS</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Introduction</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Review</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 Terminology</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 History and physical examination</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Patient questionnaires</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1 Questions</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2 Evidence</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 Voiding diaries</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1 Question</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2 Evidence</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 Urinalysis and urinary tract infection</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.1 Question</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2 Evidence</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5 Post-void residual volume</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.1 Question</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.2 Evidence</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6 Urodynamics</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.1 Question</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.2 Evidence</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.2.1 Variability</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.2.2 Diagnostic accuracy</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.2.3 Question</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.2.4 Evidence</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.2.5 Question</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.2.6 Evidence</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.2.7 Question</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.2.8 Evidence</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.2.9 Question</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.2.10 Evidence</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.3 Research priority</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7 Pad testing</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7.1 Questions</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7.2 Evidence</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7.3 Research priority</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8 Imaging</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.1 Questions</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.2 Evidence</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3 Research priority</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. DISEASE MANAGEMENT</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1 Conservative management</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.1 Simple clinical interventions</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.1.1 Underlying disease/cognitive impairment</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.1.1.1 Question</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.1.1.2 Evidence</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.1.2 Adjustment of other (non-incontinence) medication</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.1.2.1 Question</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.1.2.2 Evidence</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.1.3 Constipation
4.1.3.1 Question
4.1.3.2 Evidence
4.1.3.3 Research priority

4.1.4 Containment
4.1.4.1 Question
4.1.4.2 Evidence
4.1.4.3 Question
4.1.4.4 Evidence
4.1.4.5 Question
4.1.4.6 Evidence
4.1.4.7 Question
4.1.4.8 Evidence
4.1.4.9 Research priority

4.2 Lifestyle interventions

4.2.1 Caffeine reduction
4.2.1.1 Question
4.2.1.2 Evidence

4.2.2 Physical exercise
4.2.2.1 Question
4.2.2.2 Evidence

4.2.3 Fluid intake
4.2.3.1 Question
4.2.3.2 Evidence

4.2.4 Obesity and weight loss
4.2.4.1 Question
4.2.4.2 Evidence

4.2.5 Smoking
4.2.5.1 Question
4.2.5.2 Evidence

4.2.6 Recommendations for lifestyle interventions
4.2.7 Research priority

4.3 Behavioural and Physical therapies

4.3.1 Prompted voiding

4.3.2 Bladder Training
4.3.2.1 Questions
4.3.2.2 Evidence

4.3.3 Pelvic floor muscle training (PFMT)
4.3.3.1 Question
4.3.3.2 Evidence
4.3.3.3 Efficacy of PFMT in SUI, UUI and MUI in women
4.3.3.4 PFMT in the elderly
4.3.3.5 PFMT and Radical prostatectomy
4.3.3.6 Electrical stimulation
4.3.3.7 Question
4.3.3.8 Evidence

4.3.4 Posterior tibial nerve stimulation
4.3.4.1 Question
4.3.4.2 Evidence

4.3.5 Recommendations for behavioural and physical therapies

4.4 Conservative therapy in mixed urinary incontinence

4.4.1 Question
4.4.2 Evidence
4.4.3 Recommendations conservative therapy in mixed urinary incontinence

4.5 Pharmacological management

4.5.1 Antimuscarinic drugs
4.5.1.1 Question
4.5.1.2 Evidence
4.5.1.2.1 Darifenacin
4.2.1.2.2 Transcutaneous oxybutynin 30

4.2.2 Comparison of antimuscarinic agents 30
4.2.2.1 Question 30
4.2.2.2 Evidence 30

4.2.3 Antimuscarinic drugs vs. conservative treatment 31
4.2.3.1 Question 31
4.2.3.2 Evidence 31
4.2.3.3 Recommendations for antimuscarinic drugs 32

4.2.4 Antimuscarinic agents: adherence and persistence 32
4.2.4.1 Question 32
4.2.4.2 Evidence 32

4.2.5 Antimuscarinic and beta3 agonist agents, the elderly and cognition 33
4.2.5.1 Question 33
4.2.5.2 Evidence 33
4.2.5.2.1 Oxybutynin 33
4.2.5.2.2 Solifenacin 33
4.2.5.2.3 Tolterodine 33
4.2.5.2.4 Darifenacin 33
4.2.5.2.5 Trospium chloride 34
4.2.5.2.6 Fesoterodine 34
4.2.5.2.7 Duloxetine in the elderly 34
4.2.5.2.8 Mirabegron 34
4.2.5.2.9 Applicability of evidence to general elderly population 34
4.2.5.2.10 Anticholinergic load 34
4.2.5.2.11 Question 34
4.2.5.2.12 Evidence 34
4.2.5.2.13 Additional recommendations for antimuscarinic drugs in the elderly 35

4.2.5.3 Research priorities 35

4.2.6 Mirabegron 35

4.2.7 Drugs for stress urinary incontinence 36
4.2.7.1 Questions 36
4.2.7.2 Evidence 36

4.2.8 Oestrogen 36
4.2.8.1 Questions 37
4.2.8.2 Evidence 37

4.2.9 Desmopressin 38
4.2.9.1 Questions 38
4.2.9.2 Evidence 38
4.2.9.2.1 Improvement of incontinence 38
4.2.9.2.2 Monitoring for hyponatraemia 38

4.2.10 Drug treatment in mixed urinary incontinence 38
4.2.10.1 Question 38
4.2.10.2 Evidence 38

4.3 Surgical management 39

4.3.1 Women with uncomplicated stress urinary incontinence 39
4.3.1.1 Mid-urethral slings 39
4.3.1.1.1 Questions 39
4.3.1.1.2 Evidence 40
4.3.1.2 Adjustability 40
4.3.1.2.1 Questions 40
4.3.1.2.2 Evidence 40
4.3.1.3 Single-incision slings 40
4.3.1.3.1 Questions 40
4.3.1.3.2 Evidence 40
4.3.1.4 Open and laparoscopic surgery for stress urinary incontinence 42
4.3.1.4.1 Question 42
4.3.1.4.2 Evidence 42
4.3.1.5 Bulking agents 43
4.3.1.5.1 Question 43
4.3.1.5.2 Evidence 43

4.3.2 Complicated stress urinary incontinence in women 44
   4.3.2.1 Colposuspension or sling following failed surgery 44
      4.3.2.1.1 Question 44
      4.3.2.1.2 Evidence 44
   4.3.2.2 External compression devices 45
      4.3.2.2.1 Questions 45
      4.3.2.2.2 Evidence 45

4.3.3 Women with both stress urinary incontinence and pelvic organ prolapse 46
   4.3.3.1 Questions 46
   4.3.3.2 Evidence 47

4.3.4 Urethral diverticulum 48
   4.3.4.1 Question 49
   4.3.4.2 Evidence 49
   4.3.4.3 Question 49
   4.3.4.4 Surgical treatment 49

4.3.5 Men with stress urinary incontinence 49
   4.3.5.1 Drug therapy 49
   4.3.5.2 Bulking agents in men 49
      4.3.5.2.1 Question 50
      4.3.5.2.2 Evidence 50
   4.3.5.3 Fixed male sling 50
      4.3.5.3.1 Question 50
      4.3.5.3.2 Evidence 50
   4.3.5.4 Adjustable slings in males 51
      4.3.5.4.1 Question 51
      4.3.5.4.2 Evidence 51
   4.3.5.5 Compression devices in males 51
      4.3.5.5.1 Question 51
      4.3.5.5.2 Evidence 51

4.3.6 Surgical interventions for refractory detrusor-overactivity 53
   4.3.6.1 Bladder wall injection of botulinum toxin A 53
      4.3.6.1.1 Question 53
      4.3.6.1.2 Evidence 53
   4.3.6.2 Sacral nerve stimulation (neuromodulation) 54
      4.3.6.2.1 Question 54
      4.3.6.2.2 Evidence 54
      4.3.6.2.3 Research priority 55
   4.3.6.3 Cystoplasty/urinary diversion 55
      4.3.6.3.1 Augmentation cystoplasty 55
      4.3.6.3.2 Detrusor myectomy (bladder auto-augmentation) 55
      4.3.6.3.3 Urinary diversion 55

4.3.7 Surgery in patients with mixed urinary incontinence 56
   4.3.7.1 Question 56
   4.3.7.2 Evidence 56
   4.3.7.3 Research priorities 57

4.3.8 Surgery for urinary incontinence in the elderly 57

APPENDIX A: NON OBSTETRIC URINARY FISTULA 62
   A.1 Introduction 62
   A.2 Diagnosis of fistula 62
   A.3 Management of vesicovaginal fistula 62
      A.3.1 Conservative management 62
      A.3.2 Surgical management 62
      A.3.2.1 Surgical approaches 62
   A.4 Management of radiation fistula 63
   A.5 Management of ureteric fistula 63
   A.6 Management of urethrovaginal fistula 63
      A.6.1 Diagnosis 64
      A.6.2 Surgical repair 64
A.6.2.1 Vaginal approach  64
A.6.2.2 Abdominal approach  64

5. REFERENCES 66

6. CONFLICT OF INTEREST 91
1. INTRODUCTION

Urinary incontinence (UI) is an extremely common complaint in every part of the world. It causes a great deal of distress and embarrassment, as well as significant costs, to both individuals and societies. Estimates of prevalence vary according to the definition of incontinence and the population studied. However, there is universal agreement about the importance of the problem in terms of human suffering and economic cost.

1.1 Aim and objectives

These Guidelines from the European Association of Urology (EAU) Working Panel on Urinary Incontinence are written by a multidisciplinary group, primarily for urologists, and are likely to be referred to by other professional groups. They aim to provide sensible and practical evidence-based guidance on the clinical problem of UI rather than an exhaustive narrative review. Such a review is already available from the International Consultation on Incontinence [1], and so the EAU Guidelines do not describe the causation, basic science, epidemiology and psychology of UI. The focus of these Guidelines is entirely on assessment and treatment reflecting clinical practice. The Guidelines also do not consider patients with UI caused by neurological disease, or in children, as this is covered by complementary EAU Guidelines [2, 3].

The elderly

The Panel decided to include a separate but complimentary set of recommendations referring to the elderly population within each section. Older people with UI deserve special consideration for a number of reasons. Physiological changes with natural ageing mean that all types of UI become more common with increasing age. Urinary incontinence commonly co-exists with other comorbid conditions, reduced mobility, and impaired cognition and may require specific interventions, such as assisted toileting.

For the elderly person expectations of assessment and treatment may need to be modified to fit in with specific circumstances, needs, and preferences, while also taking into account any loss of capacity for consent. When the urologist is dealing with a frail elderly patient with urinary incontinence, collaboration with other healthcare professionals such as elderly care physicians is recommended.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts. However, following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition

The EAU Urinary Incontinence Panel consists of a multidisciplinary group of experts, including urologists, a gynaecologist and a physiotherapist. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements which can be viewed on the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/urinary-incontinence.

1.3 Available publications

A quick reference document (Pocket Guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text versions. Two scientific publications in the journal European Urology are also available [4, 5]. All documents are accessible through the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/urinary-incontinence.

1.4 Publication history

The EAU published the first Urinary Incontinence Guidelines in 2001. This 2017 publication presents a limited update of the 2016 Urinary Incontinence Guidelines.

1.4.1 Summary of changes.

Section 4.2 Pharmacological management has been revised for this 2017 print, including the addition of a new section 4.3.5.1 on Drug therapy.

Changed evidence summaries and recommendations can be found in sections:
4.2.1 Antimuscarinic drugs

Summary of evidence | LE
---|---
There is limited evidence that one antimuscarinic drug is superior to an alternative antimuscarinic drug for cure or improvement of urgency urinary incontinence. | 1b
Higher doses of antimuscarinic drugs are more effective to cure or improve urgency urinary incontinence, but with a higher risk of side effects. | 1b
Once daily (extended release) formulations are associated with lower rates of adverse events compared to immediate release ones, although similar discontinuation rates are reported in clinical trials. | 1b
Dose escalation of antimuscarinic drugs may be appropriate in selected patients to improve treatment effect although higher rates of adverse events can be expected. | 1b
Transdermal oxybutynin (patch) is associated with lower rates of dry mouth than oral antimuscarinic drugs, but has a high rate of withdrawal due to skin reaction. | 1b

4.2.3.3 Recommendations for antimuscarinic drugs

Recommendations | GR
---|---
Offer antimuscarinic drugs for adults with urgency urinary incontinence who failed conservative treatment. | A
Consider extended release formulations in patients who do not tolerate immediate release antimuscarinics. | A
If antimuscarinic treatment proves ineffective, consider dose escalation or offering an alternative treatment. | B
Consider using transdermal oxybutynin if oral antimuscarinic agents cannot be tolerated due to dry mouth. | B
Offer and encourage early review (of efficacy and side effects) of patients on antimuscarinic medication for urgency urinary incontinence. | C

4.2.4 Antimuscarinic agents: adherence and persistence

Summary of evidence | LE
---|---
Adherence to antimuscarinic treatment is low and decreases over time because of lack of efficacy, adverse events and/or cost. | 2
Most patients will stop antimuscarinic agents within the first three months. | 2

4.2.5 Antimuscarinic and beta3 agonist agents, the elderly and cognition

Summary of evidence | LE
---|---
Antimuscarinic drugs are effective in elderly patients. | 1b
Mirabegron has been shown to efficacious and safe in elderly patients. | 1b
In older people, the cognitive impact of drugs which have anticholinergic effects is cumulative and increases with length of exposure. | 2
Oxybutynin may worsen cognitive function in elderly patients. | 2
Solifenacin, darifenacin, fesoterodine and trospium have been shown not to cause cognitive dysfunction in elderly people in short-term studies. | 1b

4.2.5.2.13 Additional recommendations for antimuscarinic drugs in the elderly

Recommendations | GR
---|---
In older people being treated for urinary incontinence, every effort should be made to employ nonpharmacological treatments first. | C
Long-term antimuscarinic treatment should be used with caution in elderly patients especially those who are at risk of, or have, cognitive dysfunction. | B*
When prescribing antimuscarinic for urgency urinary incontinence, consider the total antimuscarinic load in older people on multiple drugs. | C
Consider the use of Mirabegron in elderly patients if additional antimuscarinic load is to be avoided. | C

*Recommendation based on expert opinion.
4.2.6 Mirabegron

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mirabegron is better than placebo and as efficacious as antimuscarinics for improvement of urgency urinary incontinence symptoms.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverse event rates with mirabegron are similar to placebo.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients inadequately treated with solifenacin 5 mg may benefit more from the addition of mirabegron than dose escalation of solifenacin.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In patients with urgency urinary incontinence and an inadequate response to conservative treatments, offer mirabegron unless they have uncontrolled hypertension.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2.7 Drugs for stress urinary incontinence

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duloxetine, 40 mg twice daily improves stress urinary incontinence in women.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duloxetine causes significant gastrointestinal and central nervous system (CNS) side effects leading to a high rate of treatment discontinuation, although these symptoms are limited to the first weeks of treatment.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duloxetine can be used with caution to treat women with symptoms of stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duloxetine should be initiated using dose titration because of high adverse event rates.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2.8 Oestrogen

Recommendation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vaginal oestrogen therapy for vulvovaginal atrophy should be prescribed long-term. In women with a history of breast cancer, the treating oncologist needs to be consulted.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2.9.2.2 Monitoring for hyponatraemia

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consider offering desmopressin to patients requiring occasional short-term relief from daytime urinary incontinence and inform them that this drug is not licensed for this indication.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor plasma sodium levels in patients on desmopressin.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Recommendation based on expert opinion.

4.2.10 Drug treatment in mixed urinary incontinence

Recommendation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer antimuscarinic drugs or beta3 agonists to patients with urgency-predominant mixed urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Recommendation based on expert opinion.

4.3.5.1 Drug therapy

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duloxetine, either alone or combined with conservative treatment, can hasten recovery of continence but does not improve continence rate following prostate surgery.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.3.5.5 Compression devices in males

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consider offering duloxetine to hasten recovery of continence after prostate surgery but inform the patient about the possible adverse events.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. METHODS

2.1 Introduction

For the 2017 Urinary Incontinence Guidelines, the literature has been assessed for Section 4.2 – Pharmacological management. Databases searched included Medline, EMBASE, and the Cochrane Libraries, covering a time frame between January 2012 and April 20th, 2016. A total of 1164 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance. A detailed search strategy is available online: https://uroweb.org/guideline/urinary-incontinence/?type=appendices-publications.

A systematic review was performed assessing nocturia and nocturnal incontinence in both men and women, in collaboration with the EAU Non-Neurogenic Male LUTS Guidelines Panel [6].

Due to the paucity of literature addressing nocturnal incontinence, the Panel did not include new information on this topic. The findings relating to nocturia in males are presented in the Non-Neurogenic Male LUTS Guidelines.

References used in this text are assessed according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [7]. Additional methodology information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/. A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address.

The current Guidelines provide:

- A clear pathway (algorithm) for common clinical problems. This can provide the basis for thinking through a patient’s management and also for planning and designing clinical services.
- A brief but authoritative summary of the current state of evidence on clinical topics, complete with references to the original sources.
- Clear guidance on what to do or not to do, in most clinical circumstances. This should be particularly helpful in those areas of practice for which there is little or no high-quality evidence.

In this edition the Panel has continued to focus, largely, on the management of a ‘standard’ patient. The Panel has referred in places to patients with ‘complicated incontinence’, by which we mean patients with associated morbidity, a history of previous pelvic surgery, surgery for UI, radiotherapy and women with associated genitourinary prolapse. An appendix is included on non-obstetric genitourinary fistulae. The subject of prevention of urinary incontinence has not been addressed. A systematic review on nocturnal incontinence found no studies on the topic. The Panel are of the opinion that nocturnal incontinence should be considered in future research studies.

2.2 Review

This document was subjected to peer review prior to publication in 2015. The decision for re-review is made based on the extent of the revision. A major revision resulting in significant changes to the clinical recommendations presented in the text will warrant re-review.

2.3 Terminology

Evidence summaries provide a succinct summary of what the currently available evidence tells us about an individual clinical question. They are presented according to the levels of evidence used by the EAU. Recommendations have been deliberately written as ‘action-based’ sentences. The following words or phrases are used consistently throughout the Guidelines:

- **Consider** an action. This word is used when there is not enough evidence to say whether the action causes benefit or risk to the patient. However, in the opinion of the Panel, the action may be justified in some circumstances. Action is optional.
• Offer an action. This word is used when there is good evidence to suggest that the action is effective, or that, in the opinion of the Panel, it is the best action. Action is advisable.

• Carry out (perform) an action. Do something. This phrase is used when there is strong evidence that this is the only best action in a certain clinical situation. Action is mandatory.

• Do not perform (i.e. avoid) an action. This phrase is used when there is high-level evidence that the action is either ineffective or is harmful to the patient. Action is contraindicated.

Future goals:
• An extended literature search revisiting the topic of female nocturia will be undertaken in collaboration with the Non-neurogenic male LUTS Guidelines Panel.
• An Algorithm for the management of nocturia in both males and females will be presented in the 2018 Urinary Incontinence Guidelines publication.

3. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

3.1 History and physical examination
Taking a careful clinical history is fundamental to the clinical process. Despite the lack of formal evidence, there is universal agreement that taking a history should be the first step in the assessment of anyone with UI. The history should include details of the type, timing and severity of UI, associated voiding and other urinary symptoms. The history should allow UI to be categorised into stress urinary incontinence (SUI), urgency urinary incontinence (UUI) or mixed urinary incontinence (MUI). It should also identify patients who need rapid referral to an appropriate specialist. These include patients with associated pain, haematuria, a history of recurrent urinary tract infection (UTI), pelvic surgery (particularly prostate surgery) or radiotherapy, constant leakage suggesting a fistula, voiding difficulty or suspected neurological disease. In women, an obstetric and gynaecological history may help to understand the underlying cause and identify factors that may impact on treatment decisions. The patient should also be asked about other ill health and for the details of current medications, as these may impact on symptoms of UI.

Similarly, there is little evidence from clinical trials that carrying out a clinical examination improves care, but wide consensus suggests that it remains an essential part of assessment of people with UI. It should include abdominal examination, to detect an enlarged bladder or other abdominal mass, and perineal and digital examination of the rectum (prostate) and/or vagina. Examination of the perineum in women includes an assessment of oestrogen status and a careful assessment of any associated pelvic organ prolapse (POP). A cough test may reveal SUI if the bladder is sufficiently full while pelvic floor contraction together with urethral mobility can be assessed digitally.

3.2 Patient questionnaires
This section includes symptom scores, symptom questionnaires, scales, indexes, patient reported outcome measures (PROMs) and health-related quality of life (HRQoL) measures. The latter include generic or condition specific measures. Questionnaires should have been validated for the language in which they are being used, and, if used for outcome evaluation, must have been shown to be sensitive to change. The US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) published guidance for industry on patient-reported outcome instruments (questionnaires) in 2009 [8].

3.2.1 Questions
• In patients with UI, can the use of Questionnaires/PROMs differentiate between stress, urgency and mixed incontinence, and does this differentiation impact on quality of life (QoL) after treatment?
• In adults with UI, does assessment using either urinary symptom or QoL questionnaires improve treatment outcome for UI?
• In adults with UI, does assessment of the patient perspective (concerns or expectations) improve patient outcomes, regarding either urinary symptoms or QoL, compared to no patient-reported assessment?

3.2.2 Evidence
Although many studies have investigated the validity and reliability of urinary symptom questionnaires and PROMs most of these studies did not include adult patients diagnosed with UI. This limits the extent to which results and conclusions from these studies can be applied in adults with UI. Some questionnaires (QUID, 3IQ) have potential to discriminate UI types in women [9, 10]. In men ICIQ-UI-SF score does not differentiate UI
types [11]. Some questionnaires are responsive to change and may be used to measure outcomes, though evidence on their sensitivity is inconsistent [12-14]. No evidence was found to indicate whether use of QoL or condition specific questionnaires have an impact on outcome of treatment.

Table 1 shows a summary of the ICUD review (2012) with recent additions. Criteria on which questionnaires are assessed include validity, reliability and responsiveness to change.

**Table 1: Summary of the ICUD review 2012**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category A (all 3 criteria fulfilled)*</th>
<th>Category B (2 criteria fulfilled)*</th>
<th>Category C (only 1 criterion fulfilled)*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Symptom measures and health-related QOL measures</td>
<td>ICIQ-UI Short Form, ICIQFLUTS, ICIQ-MLUTS, IICQ-7, I-QOL (ICIQ-Uqol), ISS, KHQ, LIS (?-interview), N-QoL, OAB-q SF, OAB-q (ICIQOABqol), PFDI and PFDI-20, PFIQ and PFIQ-7, PRAFAB, UISS</td>
<td>Contilife, EPIQ, LUTS tool IOQ, YIPS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measure of patient satisfaction (patient’s measure of treatment satisfaction)</td>
<td>BSW, OAB-S, OABSAT-q, TBS</td>
<td>PPQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goal attainment scales</td>
<td></td>
<td>EPI, GPI, PSQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screening tools (used to identify patients with UI)</td>
<td>B-SAQ, OAB-SS, OABV8, OAB-V3, QUID</td>
<td>ISQ, USP 3IQ, CLSS, MESA, PUF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient symptom scale</td>
<td>3IQ, CLSS, MESA, PUF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment of symptom bother and overall bother</td>
<td>PPBC, UDI or UDI-6, LUSQ, PGI-I and PGI-S</td>
<td>PFBQ, SSI and SII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment of the impact of urgency</td>
<td>IUSS, U-IIQ, UU Scale, U-UDI</td>
<td>PPIUS, SUIQ, UPScore, UPScale, UQ, USIQ-QOL, USIQ-S, USS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questionnaires to assess sexual function and urinary symptoms</td>
<td>FSFI, ICIQ-VS, PISQ, SQoL-F</td>
<td>SFQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment adherence Measures</td>
<td></td>
<td>MASRI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* For all abbreviations please see the Abbreviations list in the Appendix at the end of the full Guidelines.

** Criteria on which questionnaires are assessed include validity, reliability and responsiveness to change.

To date, there is no one questionnaire that fulfils all requirements for assessment of people with UI. Clinicians must evaluate the tools which exist, for use alone or in combination, for assessment and monitoring of treatment outcome [15].


**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Validated condition specific symptom scores assist in the screening for, and categorisation of, urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validated symptom scores measure the severity of urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both condition specific and general health status questionnaires measure current health status, and change following treatment.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommendation

* Recommendation based on expert opinion.

3.3 Voiding diaries

Measurement of the frequency and severity of LUTS is an important step in the evaluation and management of lower urinary tract (LUT) dysfunction, including UI. Voiding diaries are a semi-objective method of quantifying symptoms, such as frequency of UI episodes. They also quantify urodynamic variables, such as voided volume and 24-hour or nocturnal total urine volume. Voiding diaries are also known as micturition time charts, frequency/volume charts and bladder diaries.

Discrepancy between diary recordings and the patient rating of symptoms, e.g. frequency or UI, can be useful in patient counselling. In addition, voided volume measurement can be used to support diagnoses, such as overactive bladder (OAB) or polyuria. Diaries can also be used to monitor treatment response and are widely used in clinical trials. In patients with severe UI, a voiding diary is unlikely to accurately report 24-hour urine output and so voided volume may be lower than total bladder capacity.

3.3.1 Question

• In adults with UI, what is the reliability, diagnostic accuracy and predictive value of a voiding diary compared to patient history or symptom score?

3.3.2 Evidence

Two articles have suggested a consensus has been reached in the terminology used in voiding [16, 17]. However, the terms micturition diary, frequency voiding chart and voiding diary, have been used interchangeably for many years and include information on fluid intake, times of voiding, voided volumes, incontinence episodes, pad usage, degree of urgency and degree of UI recorded for at least 24 hours. When reviewing the evidence all possible terminology has been included.

Two studies have demonstrated the reproducibility of voiding diaries in both men and women [18, 19]. Further studies have demonstrated variability of diary data within a 24-hour period and compared voided volumes recorded in diaries with those recorded by uroflowmetry [20, 21]. Another study found that keeping a voiding diary had a therapeutic benefit [22].

A number of observational studies have demonstrated a close correlation between data obtained from voiding diaries and standard symptom evaluation [23-26].

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voiding diaries of three to seven days duration are a reliable tool for the objective measurement of mean voided volume, day time and night time frequency, and incontinence episode frequency.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voiding diaries are sensitive to change and are a reliable measure of outcome.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ask patients with urinary incontinence to complete a voiding diary.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use a diary duration of between three and seven days.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4 Urinalysis and urinary tract infection

Reagent strip (‘dipstick’) urinalysis may indicate urinary tract infection (UTI), proteinuria, haematuria or glycosuria requiring further assessment. Refer to the Urological Infections Guidelines for diagnosis and treatment of UTI [27].

3.4.1 Question

• In adults with UI, what is the diagnostic accuracy of urinalysis to detect UTI?
• In adults with UI does treatment of UTI or asymptomatic bacteriuria cure or improve UI compared to no treatment?

3.4.2 Evidence

Urinalysis negative for nitrite and leucocyte esterase reliably excludes UTI in people with UI [28] and should be included, with urine culture when necessary, in the evaluation of all patients with UI. Urinary incontinence may
occur during symptomatic UTI [29] and existing UI may worsen during UTI [30]. The rate and severity of UI was unchanged after eradication of asymptomatic bacteriuria in nursing home residents [31].

**Summary of evidence LE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Urinalysis negative for nitrite and leucocyte esterase reliably excludes urinary tract infection.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary incontinence may be a symptom during urinary tract infection.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The presence of a symptomatic urinary tract infection worsens symptoms of urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elderly nursing home patients with urinary incontinence do not benefit from treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations GR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform urinalysis as a part of the initial assessment of a patient with urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If a symptomatic urinary tract infection is present with urinary incontinence, reassess the patient after treatment.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not routinely treat asymptomatic bacteriuria in elderly patients to improve urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Recommendation based on expert opinion.

### 3.5 Post-void residual volume

Post-void residual (PVR) volume is the amount of urine that remains in the bladder after voiding. It indicates poor voiding efficiency, which may result from a number of contributing factors. It is important because it may worsen symptoms and, more rarely, may be associated with UTI, upper urinary tract (UUT) dilatation and renal insufficiency. Both bladder outlet obstruction and detrusor underactivity contribute to the development of PVR. Post-void residual can be measured by catheterisation or ultrasound (US). The prevalence of PVR in patients with UI is uncertain, partly because of the lack of a standard definition of an abnormal PVR volume.

#### 3.5.1 Question

In adults with UI, what is the value of measuring PVR?

#### 3.5.2 Evidence

Most studies investigating PVR have not included patients with UI. Although some studies have included women with UI and men and women with LUTS, they have also included children and adults with neurogenic UI. In general, the data on PVR can be applied with caution to adults with non-neurogenic UI. The results of studies investigating the best method of measuring PVR [32-37] have led to the consensus that US measurement of PVR is preferable to catheterisation.

In peri- and post-menopausal women without significant LUTS or pelvic organ symptoms, 95% of women had a PVR < 100 mL [38]. In women with UUI, a PVR > 100 mL was found in 10% of cases [39]. Other research has found that a high PVR is associated with POP, voiding symptoms and an absence of SUI [38, 40-42].

In women with SUI, the mean PVR was 39 mL measured by catheterisation and 63 mL measured by US, with 16% of women having a PVR > 100 mL [39].

**Summary of evidence LE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lower urinary tract symptoms coexisting with Urinary incontinence are associated with a higher rate of post-void residual compared to asymptomatic subjects.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations GR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When measuring post-void residual urine volume, use ultrasound.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measure post-void residual in patients with urinary incontinence who have voiding symptoms.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measure post-void residual when assessing patients with complicated urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-void residual should be monitored in patients receiving treatments that may cause or worsen voiding dysfunction, including surgery for stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Recommendation based on expert opinion.
3.6 Urodynamics

Urodynamic testing is widely used as an adjunct to clinical diagnosis, in the belief that it may help to provide or confirm diagnosis, predict treatment outcome, or facilitate discussion during counselling. For all these reasons, urodynamics is often performed prior to invasive treatment for UI. These Guidelines will focus on invasive tests, including multichannel cystometry, ambulatory monitoring and video-urodynamics, and different tests of urethral function, such as urethral pressure profilometry, Valsalva leak point pressure estimation, and retrograde urethral resistance measurement.

3.6.1 Question

In adults with UI, what is the reproducibility, diagnostic accuracy and predictive value of urodynamic testing?

3.6.2 Evidence

3.6.2.1 Variability
In common with most physiological tests there is variability in urodynamics results. A number of small studies, assessing same-session repeatability of urodynamic testing, present contradictory findings [43, 44]. Measurement of urethral closure pressure (MUCP) correlates poorly with incontinence severity [45] and there is conflicting evidence about its reproducibility [46, 47]. One method of recording MUCP cannot be compared meaningfully to another [48].

Valsalva leak point pressures are not standardised and there is minimal evidence about reproducibility. Valsalva leak point pressure did not reliably assess incontinence severity in a cohort of women selected for surgical treatment of SUI [49]. The predictive value of the tests, regarding the outcome of treatment, remains unclear. No studies on the reproducibility of ambulatory monitoring were found.

3.6.2.2 Diagnostic accuracy
The diagnostic accuracy of urodynamics is assessed in terms of its correlation with clinical diagnosis of UI and incontinence severity. The problem is that clinical diagnosis and urodynamic findings often do not correlate [50, 51], and normal healthy people may have urodynamic abnormalities.

The diagnostic accuracy of urethral pressure profilometry [45] and ‘urethral retro-resistance’ is generally poor [52]. Urethral reflectometry may have greater diagnostic accuracy but its clinical role remains unclear [53].

Ambulatory urodynamics may detect unexpected physiological variance from normal more often than conventional cystometry, but the clinical relevance of this is uncertain [54, 55].

3.6.2.3 Question
Does urodynamics influence the outcome of conservative therapy?

3.6.2.4 Evidence
A Cochrane review of seven RCTs showed that use of urodynamic tests increased the likelihood of prescribing drugs or avoiding surgery. However, there was no evidence that this influence on decision making altered the clinical outcome of treatment [56]. Subanalysis of an RCT comparing fesoterodine to placebo [57, 58] showed no predictive value for treatment response, by the urodynamic diagnosis of detrusor overactivity (DO).

3.6.2.5 Question
Does urodynamics influence the outcome of surgery for urinary incontinence?

3.6.2.6 Evidence
A high-quality RCT (n = 630) compared office evaluation alone to office evaluation and urodynamics in women with clinical demonstrable SUI about to undergo surgery for SUI. Whilst urodynamics changed the clinical diagnosis in 56% of women [59], there was no difference in levels of UI or any secondary outcome at twelve months follow-up after surgery [60]. Another similar study closed with only 59 women included due to recruitment problems, found that the omission of urodynamics was not inferior in the pre-operative work up of SUI [61]. This study was then redesigned so that patients in whom urodynamics were discordant with clinical assessment (n = 109) were randomly allocated to receive either immediate surgery or individually tailored therapy based on urodynamics. In this trial, performing immediate surgery, irrespective of the result of urodynamics, did not result in inferior outcomes [62].

In observational studies there is no consistent correlation between the result of urethral function tests and subsequent success or failure of SUI surgery [24-27]. The same is true for a secondary analysis of an RCT [63].
Augmentation cystoplasty is only performed in patients with a urodynamic diagnosis of DO, so no statement can be made about predictive value for this group [58].

The Panel recognise that it may be valuable to use urodynamic test results to select the optimum surgical procedure but, at the time of this review, there is inconsistent evidence regarding any predictive value that would support this approach.

3.6.2.7 Question
Does urodynamics help to predict complications of surgery for UI?

3.6.2.8 Evidence
There have been no RCTs designed to answer this question.

The presence of pre-operative DO has been associated with post-operative UUI, but did not predict overall treatment failure following mid-urethral sling [63] or following sling surgery or colposuspension.

Whilst low pre-operative flow rate has been shown to correlate with post-operative voiding dysfunction [64, 65], post hoc analysis of two high-quality surgical trials showed that no pre-operative urodynamic parameter had the ability to predict post-operative voiding dysfunction in a selected population of women with low pre-operative PVR [66, 67].

3.6.2.9 Question
Does urodynamics influence the outcome of treatment for post-prostatectomy urinary incontinence in men?

3.6.2.10 Evidence
There are no RCTs examining the clinical usefulness of urodynamics in post-prostatectomy UI. Whilst urodynamics will distinguish causes of incontinence, its ability to predict outcome of surgery for incontinence for these men is uncertain [68, 69].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Most urodynamic parameters show variability within the same session and over time,</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and this limits their clinical usefulness.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Different techniques of measuring urethral function may have good test-retest</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reliability, but do not consistently correlate to other urodynamic tests or to the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>severity of urinary incontinence.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is limited evidence that ambulatory urodynamics is more sensitive than</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conventional urodynamics for diagnosing stress urinary incontinence or detrusor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overactivity.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There may be inconsistency between history and urodynamic results.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preliminary urodynamics can influence the choice of treatment for urinary incontinence, but does not affect the outcome of conservative therapy or drug therapy for stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-operative urodynamics in women with uncomplicated, clinically demonstrable stress urinary incontinence does not improve the outcome of surgery for stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no consistent correlation between the result of urethral function tests and subsequent success or failure of stress urinary incontinence surgery.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no consistent evidence that pre-operative detrusor overactivity is associated with surgical failure of mid-urethral sling in women.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The presence of pre-operative detrusor overactivity may be associated with persistence of urgency post-operatively.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence that urodynamics predicts the outcomes of treatment for post-prostatectomy urinary incontinence in men.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommendations
(NB: Concerning only neurologically intact adults with urinary incontinence)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinicians carrying out urodynamics in patients with urinary incontinence should:</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• ensure that the test replicates the patient's symptoms;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• interpret results in the context of the clinical problem;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• check recordings for quality control;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• remember there may be physiological variability within the same individual.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advise patients that the results of urodynamics may be useful in discussing treatment options, although there is limited evidence that performing urodynamics will predict the outcome of treatment for uncomplicated urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not routinely carry out urodynamics when offering treatment for uncomplicated urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform urodynamics if the findings may change the choice of invasive treatment.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use urethral pressure profilometry or leak point pressure to grade severity of incontinence or predict the outcome of treatment.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urodynamic practitioners should adhere to standards defined by the International Continence Society.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.6.3 Research priority
Does any individual urodynamic test, or combination of tests, influence the choice of treatments or prediction of treatment outcome for UI?

3.7 Pad testing
Measurement of urine loss using an absorbent pad worn over a set period of time or during a protocol of physical exercise can be used to quantify the presence and severity of UI, as well as a patient’s response to treatment.

3.7.1 Questions
• In adults with UI, what is the reliability, diagnostic accuracy and predictive value of pad testing?
• In adults with UI, is one type of pad test better than another?

3.7.2 Evidence
The clinical usefulness of pad tests for people with UI has been assessed in two systematic reviews [70, 71]. A one-hour pad test using a standardised exercise protocol and a diagnostic threshold of 1.4 g shows good specificity but lower sensitivity for symptoms of SUI and MUI. A 24-hour pad test using a threshold of 4.4 g is more reproducible but is difficult to standardise with variation according to activity level [72]. Pad test with a specific short graded exercise protocol also has diagnostic value but a negative test should be repeated or the degree of provocation increased [73]. The usefulness of pad tests in quantifying severity and predicting outcome of treatment is uncertain [70, 74] although early post-operative testing may predict future continence in men after prostatectomy [75]. Pad test is responsive to change following successful treatment [76]. There is no evidence that one type of pad test is superior to another.

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A pad test can diagnose urinary incontinence accurately.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standardisation of bladder volume and degree of provocation improves reproducibility.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twenty-four hours is sufficient duration for home-based testing balancing diagnostic accuracy and adherence.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change in leaked urine volume on pad tests can be used to measure treatment outcome.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have a standardised duration and activity protocol for pad test.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use a pad test when quantification of urinary incontinence is required.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use repeat pad test after treatment if an objective outcome measure is required.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.7.3 Research priority
• Do the results of pad testing influence the choice of treatments or the prediction of the outcome of treatment for UI?
• Does the amount of physical activity influence the outcome of 24-hour pad testing leading to overestimation of the severity of incontinence?
3.8 Imaging

Imaging improves our understanding of the anatomical and functional abnormalities that may cause UI. In clinical research, imaging is used to understand the relationship between anatomy and function, between conditions of the central nervous system (CNS) or of the lower urinary tract (LUT) and UI, and to investigate the relationship between LUT and pelvic floor imaging and treatment outcome.

Ultrasound and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) have largely replaced X-ray imaging. Ultrasound is preferred to MRI because of its ability to produce three-dimensional and four-dimensional (dynamic) images at lower cost and wider availability. Studies on LUT imaging in patients with UI often include an evaluation of surgical outcomes, making design and conduct of these trials challenging.

3.8.1 Questions

In adults with UI:
- What is the reliability and accuracy of imaging in the diagnosis of UI?
- Do the results of imaging influence the choice of treatment for UI?
- Do the results of imaging help predict outcome of treatment for UI?
- Do the results of imaging help evaluate outcome of treatments for UI?

3.8.2 Evidence

Many studies have evaluated the imaging of bladder neck mobility by US and MRI, and concluded that UI cannot be identified by a particular pattern of urethrovesical movements [77]. In addition, the generalised increase in urethral mobility after childbirth does not appear to be associated with de novo SUI [78].

There is a general consensus that MRI provides good global pelvic floor assessment, including POP, defecatory function and integrity of the pelvic floor support [79]. However, there is a large variation in MRI interpretation between observers [80] and little evidence to support its clinical usefulness in the management of UI.

Studies have assessed the use of imaging to assess the mechanism of mid-urethral sling insertion for SUI. One study suggested that mid-urethral sling placement decreased mobility of the mid-urethra but not mobility of the bladder neck [81]. Following mid-urethral sling, a wider gap between symphysis and sling (assessed by imaging) has been shown to correlate with a lower chance of cure of SUI [82].

Several imaging studies have investigated the relationship between sphincter volume and function in women [83] and between sphincter volume and surgery outcome, in men and women [84, 85]. In patients undergoing radical prostatectomy, longer membranous urethra before and after surgery was associated with a higher rate of continence [86]. However, no imaging test has been shown to predict the outcome of treatment for UI. Imaging of the pelvic floor can identify levator ani detachment and hiatus size, although there is little evidence of a relationship to clinical benefit after treatment of UI.

**Detrusor wall thickness**

As overactive bladder syndrome (OAB) has been linked to detrusor over-activity, it has been hypothesised that frequent detrusor contractions may increase detrusor/bladder wall thickness (DWT/BWT). However, there is no evidence that BWT/DWT imaging improves management of OAB in practice. No consensus exists as to the relationship between OAB and increased BWT/DWT [87].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imaging can reliably be used to measure bladder neck and urethral mobility, although there is no evidence of clinical benefit for patients with urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no consistent evidence that bladder (detrusor) wall thickness measurement is useful in the management of urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendation**

Do not routinely carry out imaging of the upper or lower urinary tract as part of the assessment of urinary incontinence.

3.8.3 Research priority

More research is needed into the relationship between sling position, as determined by imaging, and surgical outcome.
4. DISEASE MANAGEMENT

4.1 Conservative management
In clinical practice, it is the convention that non-surgical therapies are tried first because they usually carry the least risk of harm. They are often used in combination which makes it difficult to determine which components are effective. Containment devices play an important role, especially for individuals who prefer to avoid the risks of interventional treatments, or in whom active treatment is impossible for any reason.

4.1.1 Simple clinical interventions

4.1.1.1 Underlying disease/cognitive impairment
Urinary incontinence, especially in the elderly, has been associated with multiple comorbid conditions including:
- cardiac failure;
- chronic renal failure;
- diabetes;
- chronic obstructive pulmonary disease;
- neurological disease including stroke and multiple sclerosis;
- general cognitive impairment;
- sleep disturbances, e.g. sleep apnoea;
- depression;
- metabolic syndrome.

It is possible that improvement of associated disease may reduce the severity of urinary symptoms. However, this is often difficult to assess as patients frequently suffer from more than one condition. In addition, interventions may be combined and individualised, making it impossible to decide which alteration in an underlying disease has affected a patient’s UI.

4.1.1.1.1 Question
In adults with UI, does improving an associated condition improve UI compared to no correction of that condition?

4.1.1.1.2 Evidence
There is compelling evidence that there is a higher prevalence of UI in women with type 2 diabetes. One study showed no correlation between earlier intensive treatment of type 1 diabetes mellitus and the prevalence of UI in later life vs. conventional treatment [88].

Summary of evidence LE
There is a lack of evidence that improving any associated condition improves urinary incontinence, with the exception of weight loss (see section 4.1.2.4 Obesity and weight loss).

Recommendation GR
Patients with urinary incontinence who have associated conditions, should have appropriate treatment for those conditions in line with good medical practice.

* Recommendation based on expert opinion.

4.1.1.2 Adjustment of other (non-incontinence) medication
Although UI is listed as an adverse effect of many drugs in drug compendia, this mainly results from uncontrolled individual patient reports and post-marketing surveillance. Few controlled studies have used the occurrence of UI as a primary outcome, or were powered to assess the occurrence of statistically significant UI, or worsening rates against placebo. In most cases, it is therefore not possible to be sure that a drug causes UI.

In patients with existing UI, particularly the elderly, it may be difficult or impossible to distinguish between the effects of medication, comorbidity or ageing on UI. Although changing drug regimens for underlying disease may be considered as a possible early intervention for UI, there is very little evidence of benefit [50]. There is also a risk that stopping or altering medication may result in more harm than benefit.

4.1.1.2.1 Question
In adults with UI, does adjustment of other (non-incontinence) medication improve UI compared to no change in treatment?
4.1.1.2 Evidence
Structured literature review failed to identify any studies addressing whether adjustment of specific medications could alter existing symptoms of UI. Also, there is little evidence relating to the occurrence or worsening of UI in relation to prescription of any specific drugs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is very little evidence that alteration of non-incontinence medication can cure or improve symptoms of urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take a drug history from all patients with urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review any new medication associated with the development or worsening of urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.1.1.3 Constipation
Several studies have shown strong associations between constipation and UI. Constipation can be improved by behavioural, physical and medical treatments.

4.1.1.3.1 Question
Does treatment for constipation improve UI?

4.1.1.3.2 Evidence
Two, large, cross-sectional population-based studies [89, 90] and two longitudinal studies [91, 92] showed that constipation was a risk factor for LUTS. An observational study comparing women with UI and women with pelvic organ prolapse (POP) to controls found that a history of constipation was associated with both prolapse and UI [93]. One RCT found that a multimodal intervention in elderly patients, involving assisted toileting, fluid intake, etc., reduced the occurrence of UI and constipation, while behavioural therapy appeared to improve both [94].

In conclusion, constipation appears to be associated with UI. However, there is no evidence to show whether or not treating constipation improves UI, although both constipation and UI appear to be improved by certain behavioural interventions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is a consistent association between a history of constipation and the development of urinary incontinence and pelvic organ prolapse.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no consistent evidence in adults that treatment of constipation alone improves urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendation

| Adults with urinary incontinence who also suffer from constipation should be given advice about bowel management in line with good medical practice. | C |

4.1.1.3.3 Research priority
Does the normalisation of bowel habit improve UI in patients who are constipated?

4.1.1.4 Containment
Containment is important for people with UI when active treatment does not cure the problem, or when it is not available or not possible. Some individuals may prefer containment rather than undergo active treatment with its associated risks. This includes the use of absorbent pads, urinary catheters, external collection devices, penile clamps for men and intravaginal devices for women. Studies of catheter use are not specific to patients with non-neurogenic UI. Detailed literature summaries can be found in the current ICUD monograph [1] and in European Association of Urological Nurses guidance documents [95-97]. A useful resource for health care professionals and patients can be found at: www.continenceproductadvisor.org.

4.1.1.4.1 Question
For adults with UI, is one type of containment device better than another?

4.1.1.4.2 Evidence
One RCT involving elderly women in care comparing management with pads to indwelling urethral catheter found no difference in dependency level or skin integrity score at six months [98]. Use of an external sheath was compared with indwelling catheterisation over 30 days in an RCT involving elderly men resident in hospital [99]; there were no differences in bacteriuria or symptomatic UTI but the sheath was more comfortable. A short-term (two weeks) crossover RCT in men with UI found that disease specific QoL was better when using an external sheath and more men preferred it, compared to pads [100].

4.1.1.4.3 Question
For men or women with UI, is one type of pad better than another?

4.1.1.4.4 Evidence
A systematic review of six RCTs comparing different types of pads found that pads filled with superabsorbent material were better than standard pads, whilst evidence that disposable pads were better than washable pads was inconsistent [101]. For men with light UI, a randomised crossover trial found that a leaf-shaped type of pad was preferred to rectangular pads [102]. A series of three crossover RCTs examined performance of different pad designs for differing populations [103]. For women with light UI, disposable insert pads (within washable pouch pants) were more effective. In adults with moderate/severe incontinence, disposable pull-up pants were more effective for women, whilst for men disposable diapers were more effective during the day and washable diapers at night.

4.1.1.4.5 Question
For men or women with UI, is one type of catheter or external collection device better than another?

4.1.1.4.6 Evidence
A Cochrane review summarised three RCTs comparing different types of long-term indwelling catheters and found no evidence that one catheter material or type of catheter was superior to another [104]. A systematic review of non-randomised studies found no differences in UTI outcome or UUT changes between use of suprapubic or urethral catheter drainage; however, patients with suprapubic catheters were less likely to have urethral complications [105]. For people using intermittent catheterisation, a Cochrane review found no evidence that one type of catheter or regimen of catheterisation was better than another [106]. However, there is recent evidence from a narrative review suggesting that in certain populations using single-use catheters may reduce urethral trauma and UTI [107]. A Cochrane review summarising five trials comparing washout policies in adults with indwelling urinary catheters found inconsistent evidence of benefit [108].

A further Cochrane review summarising eight trials testing whether antibiotic prophylaxis was beneficial for adults using intermittent or indwelling catheterisation found it reduced incidence of symptomatic UTI but possible harms were not assessed [109].

4.1.1.4.7 Question
For men and women with UI, are external pressure devices more effective than standard treatment and is one device better than another?

4.1.1.4.8 Evidence
A crossover RCT in twelve men with post-prostatectomy incontinence found a hinge-type penile clamp to be more effective than circular clamps for control of UI and that the hinge-type penile clamp was preferred by participants, although it reduced penile blood flow [110].

A Cochrane review summarised seven trials comparing mechanical devices in women with UI finding limited evidence that SUI was reduced by intravaginal devices, no evidence on the effectiveness of intra-urethral devices, and that there was no difference in control of Ulns between intravaginal and intra-urethral devices [111]. There was no difference in outcome at twelve months in women with SUI between vaginal pessary alone; pelvic floor muscle training (PFMT) alone; and vaginal pessary + PFMT, although vaginal pessary was inferior to PFMT at three months for bother from UI.

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Pads are effective in containing urine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td>Hinge-type penile clamps are more effective than circular clamps to control stress urinary incontinence in men.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td>Vaginal devices may improve stress urinary incontinence in women in selective groups.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ensure that adults with urinary incontinence and/or their carers are informed regarding available treatment options before deciding on containment alone.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggest use of disposable insert pads for women and men with light urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In collaboration with other healthcare professionals with expertise in urinary incontinence, help adults with moderate/severe urinary incontinence to select the individually best containment regimen considering pads, external devices and catheters, balancing benefits and harms.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choice of pad, from the wide variety of different absorbent materials and designs available, should be made with consideration of the individual patient’s circumstance, degree of incontinence and preference.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Recommendation based on expert opinion.

4.1.1.4.9 Research priority
To develop methods for assessing the best method of containment for individual adults with UI.

4.1.2 Lifestyle interventions
Examples of lifestyle factors that may be associated with incontinence include obesity, smoking, level of physical activity and diet. Modification of these factors may improve UI.

4.1.2.1 Caffeine reduction
Many drinks contain caffeine, particularly tea, coffee and cola. Anecdotal evidence of urinary symptoms being aggravated by excessive caffeine intake has focused attention on whether caffeine reduction may improve UI. However, a cross-sectional population survey found no statistical association between caffeine intake and UI [112]. Lack of knowledge about the caffeine content of different drinks has made the role of caffeine reduction in alleviating UI difficult to assess.

4.1.2.1.1 Question
In adults with UI, does caffeine reduction improve UI or QoL compared to no caffeine reduction?

4.1.2.1.2 Evidence
Four studies were found on the effect of caffeine reduction on UI [113-116]. They were of moderate quality and the results were inconsistent. The studies were mainly in women, so results can only be cautiously generalised to men [114, 115]. One RCT showed that reducing caffeine intake as an adjunct to behavioural therapy resulted in reduced urgency but not reduced UI compared to behavioural therapy alone [114]. Another RCT found that reducing caffeine had no benefit for UI [115]. A further interventional study in the elderly showed borderline significance for the benefit of reducing caffeine intake on UI [116]. In a large prospective cohort study there was no evidence that caffeine reduction reduced the risk of progression of UI over two years [117].

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reduction of caffeine intake does not improve urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduction in caffeine intake may improve symptoms of urgency and frequency.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.1.2.2 Physical exercise
Regular physical activity may strengthen the pelvic floor musculature and possibly decrease the risk of developing UI, especially SUI. However, it is also possible that heavy physical exercise may aggravate UI.

4.1.2.2.1 Question
Does physical exercise cause, improve or exacerbate UI in adults?

4.1.2.2.2 Evidence
The association between exercise and UI is unclear. Four studies [112, 118-120] in differing populations concluded that strenuous physical exercise increases the risk of SUI during periods of physical activity. There is also consistent evidence that physically active females and elite athletes experience higher levels of SUI than control populations [121-126]. On the other hand, the presence of UI may prevent women from taking exercise [127]. There is no evidence that strenuous exercise predisposes athletes to the development of SUI later in life [128]. Lower levels of UI have been observed in cohorts of women who undertake moderate exercise, but it remains unclear whether taking exercise can prevent development of UI [129, 130].

The elderly
Three RCTs in the elderly confirmed that exercise, as a component of a multidimensional regime including PFMT and weight loss, was effective in improving UI in women. It is not clear which component of such a scheme is most important [94, 131, 132].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Female athletes may experience urinary incontinence during intense physical activity but not during common activities.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strenuous physical activity does not predispose for women to urinary incontinence later in life.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate exercise is associated with lower rates of urinary incontinence in middle-aged or older women.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.1.2.3 Fluid intake

Modification of fluid intake, particularly restriction, is a strategy commonly used by people with UI to relieve symptoms. Advice on fluid intake given by healthcare professionals should be based on 24-hour fluid intake and urine output measurements. From a general health point of view, it should be advised that fluid intake should be sufficient to avoid thirst and that low or high 24-hour urine output should be investigated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In adults with UI, what is the effect of modifying fluid intake compared to not modifying fluid intake on symptoms and QoL?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The few RCTs [115, 133, 134] provide inconsistent evidence. In most studies, the instructions for fluid intake were individualised and it is difficult to assess participant adherence to protocol. All available studies were in women. An RCT [134] showed that a reduction in fluid intake by 25% improved symptoms in patients with OAB but not UI. Personalised fluid advice compared to generic advice made no difference to continence outcomes in people receiving antimuscarinics for OAB, according to an RCT comparing drug therapy alone to drug therapy with behavioural advice [135].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is conflicting evidence on whether fluid modification improves urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.1.2.4 Obesity and weight loss

Being overweight or obese has been identified as a risk factor for UI in many epidemiological studies [136, 137]. There is evidence that the prevalence of both UUI and SUI increases proportionately with rising body mass index [138]. The proportion of patients who undergo surgery for incontinence who are overweight or obese is higher than that of the general population [139].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In adults with UI, does weight loss lead to an improvement in symptoms of UI or QoL?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All the available evidence relates to women. Three systematic reviews plus two large RCTs concluded that weight loss was beneficial in improving UI [136, 137, 140]. Five further RCTs reported a similar beneficial effect on incontinence following surgical weight reduction programmes [141-144]. Two large studies in women with diabetes, for whom weight loss was the main lifestyle intervention, showed UI did not improve but there was a lower subsequent incidence of UI among those who lost weight [141, 145]. There have been other cohort studies and case-control studies suggesting similar effects, including surgery for the morbidly obese [146-150].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Obesity is a risk factor for urinary incontinence in women.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-surgical weight loss in overweight and obese women improves urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical weight loss improves urinary incontinence in obese women.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight loss in obese women improves urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight loss in obese adults with diabetes mellitus reduces the risk of developing urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.1.2.5 Smoking
Smoking cessation is now a generalised public health measure and has been shown to be weakly associated with improving urgency frequency and UI [112, 151].

4.1.2.5.1 Question
In adults with UI, does smoking cessation improve patient outcomes regarding either urinary symptoms or QoL compared to continued smoking?

4.1.2.5.2 Evidence
The effect of smoking cessation on UI was described as uncertain in a NIHR review [152].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence that smoking cessation will improve the symptoms of urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.1.2.6 Recommendations for lifestyle interventions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Encourage obese women with urinary incontinence to lose weight and maintain weight loss.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advise adults with urinary incontinence that reducing caffeine intake may improve symptoms of urgency and frequency but not incontinence.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients with abnormally high or abnormally low fluid intake should be advised to modify their fluid intake appropriately in line with good medical practice.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counsel female athletes experiencing urinary incontinence with intense physical activity that it will not predispose them to urinary incontinence in later life.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients with urinary incontinence who smoke should be given smoking cessation advice in line with good medical practice.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.1.2.7 Research priority
Which lifestyle modifications are effective for the cure or sustained improvement of UI?

4.1.3 Behavioural and Physical therapies
Terminology relating to behavioural and physical therapies remains confusing because of the wide variety of ways in which treatment regimens and combinations of treatments have been delivered in different studies [153]. The terms are used to encompass all treatments which require a form of self-motivated personal retraining by the patient and also include techniques which are used to augment this effect.

Approaches include bladder training (BT) and pelvic floor muscle training (PFMT), but terms such as bladder drill, bladder discipline and bladder re-education and behaviour modification are also used. Almost always in clinical practice, these will be introduced as part of a package of care including lifestyle changes, patient education and possibly some cognitive therapy as well. The extent to which individual therapists motivate, supervise and monitor these interventions is likely to vary but it is recognised that these influences are important components of the whole treatment package.

4.1.3.1 Prompted voiding
The term ‘prompted voiding’ implies that carers, rather than the patient, initiate the decision to void and this applies largely to an assisted care setting.

Two systematic reviews (nine RCTs) [154, 155] confirmed a positive effect on continence outcomes for prompted voiding in comparison to standard care [155]. Timed voiding is defined as fixed, pre-determined, time intervals between toileting, applicable for those with or without cognitive impairment. A Cochrane review of timed voiding reviewed two RCTs, finding inconsistent improvement in continence compared with standard care in cognitively impaired adults [156].

4.1.3.2 Bladder Training
Bladder training (also referred to in the past as bladder drill, bladder discipline, bladder re-education, bladder retraining): A programme of patient education along with a scheduled voiding regimen with gradually adjusted voiding intervals. Specific goals are to correct faulty habit patterns of frequent urination, improve control over bladder urgency, prolong voiding intervals, increase bladder capacity, reduce incontinent episodes and restore
patient confidence in controlling bladder function. The ideal form or intensity of a BT programme for UI is unclear. It is also unclear whether or not BT can prevent the development of UI.

4.1.3.2.1 Questions
In adults with UI:
• Is BT better than no treatment for cure or improvement of UI?
• Is BT better than other conservative treatments for cure or improvement of UI?
• Does BT, as an adjunct to other conservative treatments, cure or improve UI?
• Are the benefits of BT durable in the longer term?
• Are there any patient groups for whom BT is more effective?

4.1.3.2.2 Evidence
There have been three systematic reviews on the effect of BT compared to standard care [50, 152, 157] confirming that BT is more effective than no treatment in improving UUI. The addition of BT to anticholinergic therapy did not improve UI compared to antimuscarinics alone but it did improve frequency and nocturia [158].

This review identified seven RCTs in which BT was compared to drug therapy alone and showed only a benefit for oxybutynin in cure and improvement of UI [158].

Bladder training alone is inferior to a high-intensity programme of PFMT to improve SUI in elderly women [159]. Bladder training is better than intravaginal pessaries to control SUI, although the improvement may only be short term. Whatever the method of training used, any benefit of BT on UI is likely to be of short duration unless the BT programme is practised repeatedly. No adverse events have been reported with BT. Biofeedback combined with BT increased continence rates and improved MUI in two RCTs [157].

Summary of evidence LE
Bladder training is effective for improvement of urinary incontinence in women. 1b
The effectiveness of bladder training diminishes after the treatment has ceased. 2
The comparative benefit of bladder training and drugs for the improvement of urgency urinary incontinence remains uncertain. 2
The combination of bladder training with antimuscarinic drugs does not result in greater improvement of urinary incontinence but may improve frequency and nocturia. 1b
Bladder training is better than pessary alone. 1b
Prompted voiding, either alone or as part of a behavioural modification programme, improves continence in elderly, care-dependent people. 1b

For recommendations see section 4.1.3.5.

4.1.3.3 Pelvic floor muscle training (PFMT)
Pelvic floor muscle training is used to improve function of the pelvic floor, improving urethral stability. There is some evidence that improving pelvic floor function may inhibit bladder contraction in patients with OAB [160]. Pelvic floor muscle training may be used to prevent UI, e.g. in childbearing women before birth, in men about to undergo radical prostatectomy, or as part of a planned recovery programme after childbirth or surgery. Most often, PFMT is used to treat existing UI, and may be augmented with biofeedback (using visual, tactile or auditory stimuli), surface electrical stimulation or vaginal cones.

4.1.3.3.1 Question
In adult men and women suffering from UI, does treatment with PFMT, given either alone or augmented with biofeedback, electrical stimulation or vaginal cones, improve or cure UI or improve QoL, compared to no treatment, sham treatment or other conservative treatments, e.g. bladder training, electrical stimulation or vaginal cones?

4.1.3.3.2 Evidence
In a recent UK Health Technology Appraisal (HTA), the role of PFMT in the care of women with SUI was analysed in a direct comparison of treatments using a mixed treatment comparison model, which compared different ‘packages’ of care [152]. This extensive meta-analysis reviewed data from 37 interventions and 68 direct comparisons, while the mixed treatment comparisons examined combinations of fourteen different types of intervention from 55 separate trials. The mixed treatment comparison used both indirect and direct comparisons and may provide more accurate estimates of effect. Where relevant, the Health Technology Appraisal has influenced the evidence and recommendations in these Guidelines. The Agency for Healthcare
Research and Quality (AHRQ) review of nonsurgical treatment of UI in adult women also included indirect comparison methods as well as conventional meta-analysis [157].

4.1.3.3 Efficacy of PFMT in SUI, UUI and MUI in women

This question has been addressed by several systematic reviews [152, 157, 161], all report inconsistency between studies because of poor reporting of technique and different outcome measures. Meta-analysis showed that PFMT was effective for cure or improvement of incontinence, and improvement in QoL. The effect applies in women with SUI, UUI and MUI though the effect in MUI is lower than in women with pure SUI. A Cochrane review comparing different approaches to delivery of PFMT (21 RCTs) concluded that increased intensity of delivery of the therapy improves response and that there is no consistent difference between group therapy and individualised treatment sessions [162]. No other consistent differences between techniques were found.

With regard to the durability of PFMT, another RCT reported fifteen-year follow-up outcomes of an earlier RCT, showing that long-term adherence to treatment was poor and half of patients had progressed to surgery [163]. Numerous systematic reviews have addressed the question of whether the effects of PFMT and BT are additive [152, 157, 164]. These reviews are confounded by differences in patient selection and have arrived at conflicting conclusions leaving uncertainty about the extent to which one treatment may augment the other. Similarly, there remains uncertainty about the additional value of biofeedback with systematic reviews reaching differing conclusions [157, 164].

Comparison of PFMT to other treatments was extensively reviewed by both AHRQ and the 2010 UK HTA [152, 157], which considered additional non-randomised data as part of a mixed treatment comparison. The UK HTA resulted in a number of different findings from those based solely on direct comparisons. In conclusion, the HTA, using a revised methodology, supporting the general principle that greater efficacy was achieved by adding together different types of treatment and by increasing intensity.

**Efficacy of PFMT in childbearing women**

Two systematic reviews [165, 166] reviewed RCTs in pregnant or postpartum women, which included PFMT in one arm of the trial. Treatment of UI with PFMT in the postpartum period increased the chances of continence at 12 months’ postpartum.

4.1.3.3.4 PFMT in the elderly

The effect of PFMT in women with SUI does not seem to decrease with increased age: in trials with older women with SUI it appeared both primary and secondary outcome measures were comparable to those in trials focused on younger women [131, 159, 167].

4.1.3.3.5 PFMT and Radical prostatectomy

A 2015 Cochrane review concluded that there was no overall benefit at twelve months post-surgery for men who received post-operative PFMT for the treatment of post-prostatectomy urinary incontinence (PPI) and that the benefits of conservative treatment of PPI remain uncertain [168]. A meta-analysis within this review showed that a greater proportion of men were dry from between three and twelve months suggesting that PFMT may speed recovery of continence. A subsequent study adds to this evidence [169].

Two additional RCTs have shown that written instructions alone offer similar levels of improvement to supervised PFMT [170, 171]. One RCT found that PFMT was helpful in men who had been incontinent for at least one year after prostatectomy, and who had had no previous therapy [172].

One RCT compared PFMT to no treatment in men undergoing TURP. There was no demonstrable difference in the incidence of post-operative incontinence up to twelve months [173].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pelvic floor muscle training (PFMT) for women with urinary incontinence</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic floor muscle training is better than no treatment for improving urinary incontinence and QoL in women with stress urinary incontinence and mixed urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Higher-intensity, supervised treatment regimes, and the addition of biofeedback, confer greater benefit in women receiving PFMT.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short-term benefits of intensive PFMT are not maintained at fifteen-year follow-up.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic floor muscle training commencing in the early postpartum period improves urinary incontinence in women for up to twelve months.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pelvic floor muscle training for post-prostatectomy urinary incontinence

Pelvic floor muscle training appears to speed the recovery of continence following radical prostatectomy. 1b

Pelvic floor muscle training does not cure urinary incontinence in men post radical prostatectomy or transurethral prostatectomy. 1b

There is conflicting evidence on whether the addition of bladder training, electrical stimulation or biofeedback increases the effectiveness of PFMT alone. 2

Pre-operative PFMT does not confer additional benefit to men undergoing radical prostatectomy. 1b

For recommendations see section 4.1.3.5.

4.1.3.3.6 Electrical stimulation
The details and methods of delivery of electrical stimulation vary considerably. Electrical stimulation (ES) of the pelvic floor can also be combined with other forms of conservative therapy, e.g. PFMT and biofeedback. Electrical stimulation is often used to assist women who cannot initiate contractions to identify their pelvic floor muscles. Electrical stimulation is also used in patients with OAB and UUI, for detrusor inhibition. It has been suggested that ES probably targets the pelvic floor directly in SUI and the detrusor muscle or pelvic floor muscle or afferent innervation in UUI.

4.1.3.3.7 Question
In adults with UI, does treatment with ES improve or cure symptoms of UI or QoL compared to no/sham treatment or antimuscarinics?

4.1.3.3.8 Evidence
Most evidence on ES refers to women with SUI. The topic has been included in two HTAs [152, 157] and three systematic reviews [50, 174, 175]. The reviews include analysis of fifteen trials and use different comparison methods, but differ in their assessment of whether ES is more effective than sham stimulation and whether ES adds to the benefit of PFMT alone. Studies were considered to be of generally low quality, with a variety of stimulation parameters, treatment regimens and outcome parameters [168].

A subanalysis in a systematic review on one small low quality RCT in which ES had been compared to oxybutynin and PFMT in patients with UI, showed no difference in incontinence outcomes [176].

A Cochrane review of ES in men with UI (six RCTs) concluded that there was some evidence that electrical stimulation enhanced the effect of PFMT in the short-term but not after six months. Electrical Stimulation was also more effective than sham stimulation at six, but not twelve months. There were, however, more adverse effects (pain or discomfort) with ES [177].

Electromagnetic stimulation has been promoted as treatment for UI but weak evidence of the short-term and long-term effects has been found in systematic reviews [178, 179].

Summary of evidence LE

| In adults with urinary incontinence, electrical stimulation may improve urinary incontinence compared to sham treatment and antimuscarinics. | 2 |
| Electrical stimulation may add benefit to pelvic floor muscle training in the short-term. | 2 |

For recommendations see section 4.1.3.5.

4.1.3.4 Posterior tibial nerve stimulation
Electrical stimulation of the posterior tibial nerve (PTNS) delivers electrical stimuli to the sacral micturition centre via the S2-S4 sacral nerve plexus. Stimulation is done percutaneously with a fine, 34-G, needle, inserted just above the medial aspect of the ankle (P-PTNS). Transcutaneous stimulation is also available (T-PTNS). Treatment cycles typically consist of twelve weekly treatments of 30 minutes.

4.1.3.4.1 Question
In adults suffering from UUI, what is the clinical effectiveness of PTNS compared to sham treatment or alternative treatment such as antimuscarinic drugs?

4.1.3.4.2 Evidence
P-PTNS

The reviewed studies included two twelve-week RCTs of PTNS against sham treatment [180, 181], one
comparing PTNS to tolterodine, and a three-year extension trial utilising a maintenance protocol in patients with UII [182, 183]. The results of studies of PTNS in women with refractory UII are consistent. Considered together, these results suggest that PTNS improves UII in women who have had no benefit from antimuscarinic therapy or who are not able to tolerate these drugs. However, there is no evidence that PTNS cures UII in women. In addition, PTNS is no more effective than tolterodine for improvement of UII in women. In men there is insufficient evidence to reach a conclusion about efficacy.

T-PTNS
A small RCT compared transcutaneous PTNS plus standard treatment (PFMT and BT) with PFMT and BT alone in older women [184]. Women in the T-TPNS group were more likely to achieve improvement at the end of therapy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Percutaneous posterior tibial nerve stimulation (P-PTNS) appears effective for improvement of urgency urinary incontinence in women who have had no benefit from antimuscarinic medication.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A maintenance programme of P-PTNS has been shown to be effective up to three years.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percutaneous posterior tibial nerve stimulation has comparable effectiveness to tolterodine for improvement of urgency urinary incontinence in women.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No serious adverse events have been reported for P-PTNS in urgency urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is limited evidence for effectiveness of transcutaneous posterior tibial nerve stimulation (PTNS).</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence that P-PTNS cures urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.1.3.5 Recommendations for behavioural and physical therapies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer bladder training as a first-line therapy to adults with urgency urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer prompted voiding for adults with incontinence who are cognitively impaired.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer supervised intensive pelvic floor muscle training (PFMT), lasting at least three months, as a first-line therapy to women with stress urinary incontinence or mixed urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic floor muscle training programmes should be as intensive as possible.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer PFMT to elderly women with urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer PFMT to post-natal women with urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider using biofeedback as an adjunct in women with stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer PFMT to men undergoing radical prostatectomy to speed recovery of incontinence.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer electrical stimulation with surface electrodes (skin, vaginal, anal) alone for the treatment of stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider offering electrical stimulation as an adjunct to behavioural therapy in patients with urgency urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer magnetic stimulation for the treatment of incontinence or overactive bladder in adult women.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer, if available, PTNS as an option for improvement of urgency urinary incontinence in women who have not benefitted from antimuscarinic medication.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support other healthcare professionals in use of rehabilitation programmes including prompted voiding for elderly care-dependent people with urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.1.4 Conservative therapy in mixed urinary incontinence
About one-third of women with UI have MUI with symptoms of both SUI and UII, and this becomes more common with increasing age. In terms of evidence base, many studies include patients with MUI, but it is rare for these studies to provide a separate analysis of patients with MUI.

4.1.4.1 Question
In adults with MUI, is the outcome of conservative therapy different to that obtained with the same treatment in patients with either pure SUI or pure UII?

4.1.4.2 Evidence
No specific systematic reviews were found that addressed the above question. However, a Cochrane report on
pelvic floor muscle training (PFMT) [161] concluded that training was less likely to result in a cure in patients with MUI than in patients with pure SUI, though it is not clear from the report how this conclusion was reached.

A small RCT (n = 71) compared delivery of PFMT, with or without an instructive audiotape. It showed equal efficacy for different types of UI [185].

Following a RCT of PFMT, a review of 88 women available for follow-up at five years found that outcomes were less satisfactory in women with MUI than in women with pure SUI [186].

### Summary of evidence

| Pelvic floor muscle training appears less effective for mixed urinary incontinence than for stress urinary incontinence alone. | LE 2 |
| Electrical stimulation is equally effective for mixed urinary incontinence and stress urinary incontinence. | LE 1b |

### Recommendations conservative therapy in mixed urinary incontinence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treat the most bothersome symptom first in patients with mixed urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn patients with mixed urinary incontinence that the chance of success of pelvic floor muscle training is lower than for stress urinary incontinence alone.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.2 Pharmacological management

#### 4.2.1 Antimuscarinic drugs

Antimuscarinic (anticholinergic) drugs are currently the mainstay of treatment for UUI. They differ in their pharmacological profiles, e.g. muscarinic receptor affinity and other modes of action, in their pharmacokinetic properties, e.g. lipid solubility and half-life, and in their formulation.

The evaluation of cure or improvement of UI is made harder by the lack of a standard definition of improvement and the failure to use cure as a primary outcome. In general, systematic reviews note that the overall treatment effect of drugs is usually small but larger than placebo.

Dry mouth is the commonest side effect, though constipation, blurred vision, fatigue and cognitive dysfunction may occur [157].

The immediate release (IR) formulation of oxybutynin is the archetype drug in the treatment of UUI. Oxybutynin IR provides maximum dosage flexibility, including an off-label 'on-demand' use. Immediate-release drugs have a greater risk of side effects than extended release (ER) formulations because of differing pharmacokinetics. A transdermal delivery system (TDS) and gel developed for oxybutynin gives a further alternative formulation.

#### 4.2.1.1 Question

In adults with UUI, are antimuscarinic drugs better than placebo for improvement or cure of UUI and for the risk of adverse effects?

#### 4.2.1.2 Evidence

Seven systematic reviews of individual antimuscarinic drugs vs. placebo were reviewed for this section [157, 187-192] as well as studies published since these reviews up until April 2016. Most studies included patients with a mean age of 55-60 years. Both female and male subjects were included in different studies but results cannot be generalised across sexes. Only short-term rates for improvement or cure of UUI are reported.

The evidence reviewed was consistent, indicating that ER and IR formulations of antimuscarinics offer clinically significant short-term cure and improvement rates for UUI compared to placebo. On balance, IR formulations tend to be associated with more side effects compared to ER formulations [191].

Cure of UI was deemed to be the most important outcome measure. Risk of adverse events was best represented by withdrawal from a trial because of adverse events, although this does not reflect practice. Table 2 shows a summary of the findings from a systematic review [157]. In summary, every drug where cure of UI was available shows superiority compared to placebo in achieving UI, but the absolute size of effect is small.
### Table 2: Summary of cure rates and discontinuation rates of antimuscarinic drugs from RCTs which reported these outcomes [157]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>No. of studies</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Relative risk (95% CI) of curing UI</th>
<th>Number needed to treat (95% CI) to achieve one cure of UI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cure of incontinence</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fesoterodine</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2,465</td>
<td>1.3 (1.1-1.5)</td>
<td>8 (5-17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxybutynin (includes IR)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>992</td>
<td>1.7 (1.3-2.1)</td>
<td>9 (6-16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propiverine (includes IR)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>691</td>
<td>1.4 (1.2-1.7)</td>
<td>6 (4-12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solifenacin</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6,304</td>
<td>1.5 (1.4-1.6)</td>
<td>9 (6-17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolterodine (includes IR)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3,404</td>
<td>1.2 (1.1-1.4)</td>
<td>12 (8-25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trospium (includes IR)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2,677</td>
<td>1.7 (1.5-2.0)</td>
<td>9 (7-12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discontinuation due to adverse events</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darifenacin</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3,138</td>
<td>1.2 (0.8-1.8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fesoterodine</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4,433</td>
<td>2.0 (1.3-3.1)</td>
<td>33 (18-102)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxybutynin (includes IR)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1,483</td>
<td>1.7 (1.1-2.5)</td>
<td>16 (8-86)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propiverine (includes IR)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1,401</td>
<td>2.6 (1.4-5)</td>
<td>29 (16-77)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solifenacin</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9,080</td>
<td>1.3 (1.1-1.7)</td>
<td>78 (39-823)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolterodine (includes IR)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>4,466</td>
<td>1.0 (0.6-1.7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trospium (includes IR)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3,936</td>
<td>1.5 (1.1-1.9)</td>
<td>56 (30-228)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2.1.2.1 Darifenacin
The cure rates for darifenacin were not included in the AHRQ review. Continence rates were 29-33% for darifenacin compared to 17-18% for placebo [157].

4.2.1.2.2 Transcutaneous oxybutynin
Transdermal oxybutynin has shown a significant improvement in the number of incontinence episodes and micturitions per day vs. placebo and other oral formulations but continence was not reported as an outcome [157].

Oxybutynin topical gel was superior to placebo for improvement of UUI with a higher proportion of participants being cured [157, 193].

There is limited evidence that patients who do not respond to a first-line antimuscarinic treatment may respond to a higher dose or a different antimuscarinic agent [194, 195].

4.2.2 Comparison of antimuscarinic agents
Head-to-head comparison trials of the efficacy and side effects of different antimuscarinic agents are of interest for decision making in practice.

4.2.2.1 Question
In adults with UUI, does one type of antimuscarinic drug result in a greater likelihood of cure or improvement in UUI, and/or a greater improvement in QoL, and/or a lesser likelihood of adverse effects compared to an alternative antimuscarinic drug?

4.2.2.2 Evidence
There are over 40 RCTs and eight systematic reviews [157, 176, 187, 189, 192, 196-198]. Nearly all the primary studies were industry sponsored. Upward dose titration is often included in the protocol for the experimental arm, but not for the comparator arm.

In general, these studies have been designed for regulatory approval. They have short treatment durations (twelve weeks) and a primary outcome of a change in OAB symptoms rather than a cure of, or an improvement in, UUI, which were generally analysed as secondary outcomes. The clinical utility of these trials in real life practice is questionable. Most trials were of low or moderate quality [189]. The 2012 Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ) review included a specific section addressing comparisons of antimuscarinic drugs (Table 2).
**Fesoterodine**

Results of an RCT of fesoterodine 4 versus 8 mg suggested a larger therapeutic effect on UUI with the higher dose but with more adverse events [194].

No antimuscarinic agent improved QoL more than another agent [189]. Dry mouth is the most prevalent adverse effect. Good evidence indicates that, in general, higher doses of any drug are likely to be associated with higher rates of adverse events. Also, ER formulations of short-acting drugs and longer-acting drugs are generally associated with lower rates of dry mouth than IR preparations [189, 196]. Oxybutynin IR showed higher rates of dry mouth than tolterodine IR and trospium IR, but lower rates of dry mouth than darifenacin, 15 mg daily [189, 196]. Overall, oxybutynin ER has higher rates of dry mouth than tolterodine ER, although the incidence of moderate or severe dry mouth were similar. Transdermal oxybutynin had a lower rate of dry mouth than oxybutynin IR and tolterodine ER, but had an overall higher rate of withdrawal due to an adverse skin reaction [189]. Solifenacin, 10 mg daily, had higher rates of dry mouth than tolterodine ER [189]. Fesoterodine, 8 mg daily, had a higher rate of dry mouth than tolterodine, 4 mg daily [199-201]. In general, similar discontinuation rates were observed, irrespective of differences in the occurrence of dry mouth (doses have been given were the evidence relates to a specific dose level typically from trials with a dose escalation element).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is limited evidence that one antimuscarinic drug is superior to an alternative antimuscarinic drug for cure or improvement of urgency urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Higher doses of antimuscarinic drugs are more effective to cure or improve urgency urinary incontinence, but with a higher risk of side effects.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Once daily (extended release) formulations are associated with lower rates of adverse events compared to immediate release ones, although similar discontinuation rates are reported in clinical trials.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dose escalation of antimuscarinic drugs may be appropriate in selected patients to improve treatment effect although higher rates of adverse events can be expected.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transdermal oxybutynin (patch) is associated with lower rates of dry mouth than oral antimuscarinic drugs, but has a high rate of withdrawal due to skin reaction.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2.3 **Antimuscarinic drugs vs. conservative treatment**

The choice of drug vs. conservative treatment of UUI is an important question.

**4.2.3.1 Question**

In adults with UUI, does one type of antimuscarinic drug result in a greater likelihood of cure or improvement in UUI and/or greater improvement in QoL, and/or lesser likelihood of adverse effects compared to conservative treatment?

**4.2.3.2 Evidence**

More than 100 RCTs and high-quality reviews are available [158, 176, 189, 190, 202, 203]. Most of these studies were independent. A US HTA [176] found that trials were of a low- or moderate-quality. The main focus of the review was to compare the different drugs used to treat UUI. In one study, multicomponent behavioural modification produced significantly greater reductions in incontinence episodes compared to oxybutynin and higher patient satisfaction for behavioural vs. drug treatment. In men with storage LUTS no difference in efficacy was found between oxybutynin and behavioural therapy [204].

The combination of BT and solifenacin in women with OAB conferred no additional benefit in terms of continence [205]. A recent Cochrane review on the benefit of adding PFMT to other active treatments of UI in women showed insufficient evidence of any benefit in adding PFMT to drug treatment [206].

One RCT [207] reported a similar improvement in subjective parameters with either transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (T-PTNS) or oxybutynin. One study compared tolterodine ER to transvaginal/anal electrical stimulation without differences in UI outcomes [208].
Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is no consistent evidence to show superiority of drug therapy over conservative therapy for treatment of urgency urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behavioural treatment has higher patient satisfaction than drug treatment.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is insufficient evidence as to the benefit of adding pelvic floor muscle training to drug treatment for urgency urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2.3.3 Recommendations for antimuscarinic drugs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer antimuscarinic drugs for adults with urgency urinary incontinence who failed conservative treatment.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider extended release formulations in patients who do not tolerate immediate release antimuscarinics.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If antimuscarinic treatment proves ineffective, consider dose escalation or offering an alternative treatment.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider using transdermal oxybutynin if oral antimuscarinic agents cannot be tolerated due to dry mouth.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer and encourage early review (of efficacy and side effects) of patients on antimuscarinic medication for urgency urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2.4 Antimuscarinic agents: adherence and persistence

Most studies on antimuscarinic medication are short term (twelve weeks). Adherence in clinical trials is considered to be much higher than in clinical practice [209].

4.2.4.1 Question
Do patients with UUI adhere to antimuscarinic drug treatment and persist with prescribed treatment in clinical practice?

4.2.4.2 Evidence
This topic has been reviewed for the development of these Guidelines [210]. Two open-label extensions of RCTs of fesoterodine 8 mg showed adherence rates at two years of 49-84% [211, 212]. The main drugs studied were oxybutynin and tolterodine IR and ER. Non-persistence rates were high for tolterodine at twelve months, and particularly high (68-95%) for oxybutynin.

Five articles reported ‘median days to discontinuation’ as between < 30 days and 50 days [213-217]. In a military health system where free medication was provided, the median time to discontinuation extended to 273 days [214].

Data on adherence/persistence from open-label extension populations are questionable as these patients are self-selected to be compliant. A Longitudinal Disease Analyser database study has indicated an increasing discontinuation rate from 74.8% at one year to 87% at three years [218].

Several of the RCT trials tried to identify the factors associated with low/lower, adherence or persistence of antimuscarinics. These were identified as:
- low level of efficacy (41.3%);
- adverse events (22.4%);
- cost (18.7%), higher adherence rates were observed when drugs were provided at no cost to the patient [214].

Other reasons for poor adherence included:
- IR vs. ER formulations;
- age (lower persistence among younger adults);
- unrealistic expectations of treatment;
- gender distribution (better adherence/persistence in female patients);
- ethnic group (African-Americans and other ethnic minorities are more likely to discontinue or switch treatment).

In addition, the data source influenced the adherence figures.
Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adherence to antimuscarinic treatment is low and decreases over time because of lack of efficacy, adverse events and/or cost.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most patients will stop antimuscarinic agents within the first three months.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2.5 **Antimuscarinic and beta3 agonist agents, the elderly and cognition**

Trials have been conducted in elderly people with UI. Considerations in this patient group include the multifactorial aetiology of UI in the elderly, comorbidities such as cognitive impairment, the effect of co-medications and the risk of adverse events.

The effects of antimuscarinic agents on cognition have been studied in more detail.

4.2.5.1 **Question**

What is the comparative efficacy, and risk of adverse effects, particularly the cognitive impact, of treatment with antimuscarinic medication in elderly men and women with UUI?

4.2.5.2 **Evidence**

Two systematic reviews focusing on elderly patients are available [219, 220]. A community-based cohort study found a high incidence of cognitive dysfunction [221]. Other systematic reviews have included sections on the efficacy and safety of antimuscarinics in elderly patients [157, 189]. A systematic review in 2012 found inconclusive evidence as to the impact of antimuscarinics on cognition [222].

Two recent longitudinal cohort studies in patients using drugs with antimuscarinic effect showed a deterioration in cognitive function, alteration in CNS metabolism and an association with brain atrophy [223, 224]. In general, the long-term impact of antimuscarinic agents specifically approved for OAB treatment on specific patient cohorts is poorly understood [225-228].

4.2.5.2.1 **Oxybutynin**

There is evidence that oxybutynin IR may cause/worsen cognitive dysfunction in adults [225, 227, 229-233]. Recent evidence has emerged from a prospective cohort study showing cumulative cognitive deterioration associated with prolonged use of antimuscarinic medication including oxybutynin [223].

More rapid functional deterioration might result from the combined use of cholinesterase inhibitors with antimuscarinic agents in elderly patients with cognitive dysfunction [234].

4.2.5.2.2 **Solifenacin**

One pooled analysis [235] has shown that solifenacin does not increase cognitive impairment in the elderly. No age-related differences in the pharmacokinetics of solifenacin in different age groups was found, although more frequent adverse events in subjects over 80 years of age were observed. No cognitive effect on healthy elderly volunteers was shown [233]. In a subanalysis of a large trial, solifenacin 5-10 mg improved symptoms and QoL in people ≥ 75 years who had not responded to tolterodine [236]. In patients with mild cognitive impairment, ≥ 65 years, solifenacin showed no difference in efficacy between age groups and a lower incidence of most side effects compared to oxybutynin IR [232, 237].

4.2.5.2.3 **Tolterodine**

No change in efficacy or side effects related to age have been reported, although a higher discontinuation rate was found for both tolterodine and placebo in elderly patients [225]. Two RCTs in the elderly found a similar efficacy and side effect profile to younger patients [238-241]. Post-hoc analysis has shown little effect on cognition. One non-randomised comparison showed lower rates of depression in elderly participants treated with tolterodine ER compared to oxybutynin IR [242].

4.2.5.2.4 **Darifenacin**

Two RCTs in the elderly population (one in patients with UUI and the other in volunteers) concluded that darifenacin was effective with no risk of cognitive change, measured as memory scanning tests, compared to placebo [243, 244]. Another study on darifenacin and oxybutynin ER in elderly subjects concluded that the two agents had a similar efficacy, but that cognitive function was more often affected in the oxybutynin ER arm [227].
4.2.5.2.5 Trospium chloride
Trospium does not appear to cross the blood brain barrier in significant amounts in healthy individuals due to its molecular characteristics (quaternary amine structure and hydrophilic properties). Two (EEG) studies in healthy volunteers showed no effect from trospium whilst tolterodine caused occasional changes and oxybutynin caused consistent changes [245, 246]. No evidence as to the comparative efficacy and side effect profiles of trospium in different age groups is available. However, there is some evidence that trospium does not impair cognitive function [228, 247] and that it is effective compared to placebo in the elderly [248].

4.2.5.2.6 Fesoterodine
Pooled analyses of the RCTs of fesoterodine confirmed the efficacy of the 8 mg but not the 4 mg dose in over-75-year olds [211]. Adherence was lower in the over-75 year-old group but the effect on mental status was not reported [201, 211, 249]. A more recent RCT showed efficacy of fesoterodine in the vulnerable elderly with no differences in cognitive function at twelve weeks [250].

4.2.5.2.7 Duloxetine in the elderly
RCTs comparing duloxetine and placebo included women up to 85 years, but no age stratification of the results is available [190, 251, 252].

4.2.5.2.8 Mirabegron
Analysis of pooled data from three RCTs showed efficacy and safety of mirabegron in elderly patients [253].

4.2.5.2.9 Applicability of evidence to general elderly population
It is not clear how much the data from pooled analyses and subgroup analyses from large RCTs can be extrapolated to a general ageing population. Community-based studies of the prevalence of antimuscarinic side effects may be the most helpful [221]. When starting anticholinergics in elderly patients, mental function should be assessed objectively and monitored [254]. No consensus exists as to the best mental function test to detect changes in cognition [234, 255].

4.2.5.2.10 Anticholinergic load
A number of medications have anticholinergic effects and their cumulative effects on cognition should be considered [256].

4.2.5.2.11 Question
In older people suffering from UI, what is the effect of anticholinergic burden (defined by anticholinergic cognitive burden scale) on cognitive function?

4.2.5.2.12 Evidence
No studies were identified specifically in older people with UI, but evidence was available from observational cohort studies relating to the risk in a general population of older people. Lists of drugs with anticholinergic properties are available from two sources [256, 257].

Two systematic reviews of largely retrospective cohort studies showed a consistent association between long-term anticholinergic use and cognitive dysfunction [258, 259].

Longitudinal studies in older people over two to four years have found increased rate of decline in cognitive function for patients on anticholinergics or drugs with anticholinergic effects [223, 224, 260, 261].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Antimuscarinic drugs are effective in elderly patients.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirabegron has been shown to be efficacious and safe in elderly patients.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In older people, the cognitive impact of drugs which have anticholinergic effects is cumulative and increases with length of exposure.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxybutynin may worsen cognitive function in elderly patients.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solifenacin, darifenacin, fesoterodine and trospium have been shown not to cause cognitive dysfunction in elderly people in short-term studies.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2.5.2.13 Additional recommendations for antimuscarinic drugs in the elderly

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In older people being treated for urinary incontinence, every effort should be made to employ nonpharmacological treatments first.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term antimuscarinic treatment should be used with caution in elderly patients especially those who are at risk of, or have, cognitive dysfunction.</td>
<td>B*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When prescribing antimuscarinic for urgency urinary incontinence, consider the total antimuscarinic load in older people on multiple drugs.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider the use of mirabegron in elderly patients if additional antimuscarinic load is to be avoided.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Recommendation based on expert opinion.

4.2.5.3 Research priorities
- All drug trials should report cure rates for urinary incontinence based on a bladder diary.
- What is the relative incidence of cognitive side effects of antimuscarinic drugs?

4.2.6 Mirabegron
Mirabegron is the first clinically available beta3 agonist, available from 2013. Beta3 adrenoceptors are the predominant beta receptors expressed in the smooth muscle cells of the detrusor and their stimulation is thought to induce detrusor relaxation.

Mirabegron has undergone evaluation in industry-sponsored phase 2 and phase 3 trials [262-265]. Three systematic reviews assessing the clinical effectiveness of mirabegron [262, 263, 266] reported that mirabegron at doses of 25, 50 and 100 mg, results in significantly greater reduction in incontinence episodes, urgency episodes and micturition frequency/24 hours than placebo, with no difference in the rate of common adverse events [262]. The placebo dry rates in most of these trials are between 35-40%, and 43 and 50% for mirabegron. In all trials the statistically significant difference is consistent only for improvement but not for cure of UI. Similar improvement in frequency of incontinence episodes and micturitions/24 hours was found in people who had previously tried and those who had not previously tried antimuscarinic agents. One systematic review showed that mirabegron is similarly efficacious as most antimuscarinics in reducing UUI episodes [267].

The most common treatment adverse events in the mirabegron groups were hypertension (7.3%), nasopharyngitis (3.4%) and UTI (3%), with the overall rate similar to placebo [262, 265, 266].

In a twelve-month, active-controlled RCT of mirabegron 50/100 mg vs. tolterodine ER 4 mg, the improvement in efficacy seen at twelve weeks was sustained at twelve-month evaluation in all groups. The reported dry rates at twelve months were 43%, 45% and 45% for mirabegron 50 mg, 100 mg and tolterodine 4 mg respectively [268]. Post hoc analyses of RCTs showed that clinical improvement observed in parameters of OAB severity translates to an improvement in HRQoL and efficacy is maintained in patients with more severe degree of UI [269, 270].

No risk of QTc prolongation on electrocardiogram [271] and raised intraocular pressure [272] were observed up to 100 mg dose; however, patients with uncontrolled hypertension or cardiac arrhythmia were excluded from these trials. There is no significant difference in rate of side effects at different doses of mirabegron [268]. Data from a large Canadian Private Drug Plan database suggest a higher adherence rate for mirabegron compared to antimuscarinics [273]. Patients on certain concurrent medications (i.e. metoprolol) should be counselled that, due to common metabolism pathways, their medication dosage may need to be adjusted. In the case of patients taking metoprolol, blood pressure should be monitored after starting mirabegron and, if necessary, metoprolol dosing changed.

Evaluation of urodynamic parameters in men with combined BOO and OAB concluded that mirabegron (50 or 100 mg) did not adversely affect voiding urodynamic parameters compared to placebo [274].

Equivalent adherence was observed for tolterodine and mirabegron at twelve months (5.5% and 3.6%), although the incidence of dry mouth was significantly higher in the tolterodine group [268]. In mirabegron treated patients, improvement in objective outcome measures correlates directly with clinically relevant PROMs (OAB-q and PPBC) [269, 275].

An RCT in patients who had inadequate response to solifenacin monotherapy 5 mg, demonstrated that
combination treatment with mirabegron 50 mg had a higher chance of achieving clinically meaningful improvement in UI as compared to dose escalation of solifenacin [276].

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mirabegron is better than placebo and as efficacious as antimuscarinics for improvement of urgency urinary incontinence symptoms.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverse event rates with mirabegron are similar to placebo.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients inadequately treated with solifenacin 5 mg may benefit more from the addition of mirabegron than dose escalation of solifenacin.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In patients with UUI and an inadequate response to conservative treatments offer mirabegron, unless they have uncontrolled hypertension.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2.7 **Drugs for stress urinary incontinence**

Duloxetine inhibits the presynaptic re-uptake of neurotransmitters, serotonin (5-HT) and norepinephrine (NE). In the sacral spinal cord, an increased concentration of 5-HT and NE in the synaptic cleft increases stimulation of 5-HT and NE receptors on the pudendal motor neurones, which in turn increases the resting tone and contraction strength of the urethral striated sphincter.

4.2.7.1 **Questions**

- In adults with SUI, does duloxetine cure or improve UI and/or improve QoL compared to no treatment?
- In adults with SUI, does duloxetine result in a greater cure or improvement of UI, or a greater improvement in QoL, or a lesser likelihood of adverse effects, compared to any other intervention?

4.2.7.2 **Evidence**

Duloxetine was evaluated as a treatment for female SUI or MUI in three systematic reviews [190, 251, 252]. Improvement in UI compared to placebo was observed with no clear differences between SUI and MUI. One study reported cure for UI in about 10% of patients. An improvement in I-QoL was not found in the study using I-QoL as a primary endpoint. In a further study comparing duloxetine, 80 mg daily, with PFMT alone, PFMT + duloxetine, and placebo [277], duloxetine reduced leakage compared to PFMT or no treatment. Global improvement and QoL were better for combined therapy than no treatment. There was no significant difference between PFMT and no treatment.

Two open-label studies with a follow-up of one year or more evaluated the long-term effect of duloxetine in controlling SUI; however, both had high discontinuation rates [278, 279]. All studies had a high patient withdrawal rate, which was caused by a lack of efficacy and high incidence of adverse events, including nausea and vomiting (40% or more of patients), dry mouth, constipation, dizziness, insomnia, somnolence and fatigue, amongst other causes [278, 279]. A systematic review showed significant efficacy for duloxetine compared to placebo in women with UI but with increased risk of adverse events [252].

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duloxetine, 40 mg twice daily improves stress urinary incontinence in women.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duloxetine causes significant gastrointestinal and central nervous system side effects leading to a high rate of treatment discontinuation, although these symptoms are limited to the first weeks of treatment.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duloxetine can be used with caution to treat women with symptoms of stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duloxetine should be initiated using dose titration because of high adverse event rates.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2.8 **Oestrogen**

Oestrogenic drugs including conjugated equine oestrogens, oestradiol, tibolone and raloxifene, are used as hormone replacement therapy (HRT) for women with natural or therapeutic menopause.
Oestrogen treatment for UI has been tested using oral, transdermal and vaginal routes of administration. Available evidence suggests that vaginal oestrogen treatment with oestradiol and oestriol is not associated with the increased risk of thromboembolism, endometrial hypertrophy, and breast cancer seen with systemic administration [280-282]. Vaginal (local) treatment is primarily used to treat symptoms of vaginal atrophy in postmenopausal women.

4.2.8.1 Questions
- In women with UI, does vaginal (local) oestrogen cure or improve UI compared to no treatment or other active treatment?
- In women with UI, does oral (systemic) oestrogen cure or improve UI compared to no treatment?

4.2.8.2 Evidence

Vaginal oestrogens
A Cochrane systematic review looked at the use of oestrogen therapy in postmenopausal women [280] given local oestrogen therapy. There is also a more recent narrative review of oestrogen therapy in urogenital diseases [283]. The Cochrane review (search date cut off June 2012) found that vaginal oestrogen treatment improved symptoms of UI in the short term [280]. The review found small, low quality trials comparing vaginal oestrogen treatment with phenylpropanolamine, PFMT, electrical stimulation and its use as an adjunct to surgery for SUI. Local oestrogen was less likely to improve UI than PFMT but no differences in UI outcomes were observed for the other comparisons. A single trial of local oestrogen therapy comparing a ring device to pessaries found no difference in UI outcomes although more women preferred the ring device. No adverse effects of vaginal administration of oestradiol for vulvovaginal atrophy over two years was seen in one trial [284].

Vaginal oestrogen therapy can be given as conjugated equine oestrogen, oestriol or oestradiol in vaginal pessaries, vaginal rings or creams. The ideal treatment duration and the long-term effects are uncertain. A standardised review of local oestrogen showed improvement of UI over placebo with vaginal rings favoured subjectively over pessaries; no significant difference between vaginal and oral oestrogen treatments was found [285].

One RCT in postmenopausal women showed benefit in adding intravaginal oestriol to vaginal ES and PFMT [286].

Systemic oestrogens
Studies of HRT with non-urogenital primary outcomes have looked for change in urinary continence in secondary analyses. Large trials using conjugated equine oestrogens showed a higher rate of development or worsening of UI compared to placebo [287-290]. In a single RCT, use of raloxifene was not associated with development or worsening of UI [291]. Three small RCTs using oral oestriol or oestradiol as HRT for vulvovaginal atrophy suggested that UI symptoms were improved although the evidence was unclear [50, 292, 293].

Summary of evidence LE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vaginal oestrogen therapy improves urinary incontinence for post-menopausal women in the short term.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neoadjuvant or adjuvant use of local oestrogens are ineffective as an adjunct to surgery for urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic hormone replacement therapy using conjugate equine oestrogens in previously continent women increases the risk of developing urinary incontinence and worsens pre-existing urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations GR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer post-menopausal women with urinary incontinence vaginal oestrogen therapy, particularly if other symptoms of vulvovaginal atrophy are present.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaginal oestrogen therapy for vulvovaginal atrophy should be prescribed long-term. In women with a history of breast cancer, the treating oncologist needs to be consulted.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For women taking oral conjugated equine oestrogen as hormone replacement therapy who develop or experience worsening urinary incontinence, discuss alternative hormone replacement therapies.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advise women who are taking systemic oestradiol who suffer from urinary incontinence that stopping the oestradiol is unlikely to improve their incontinence.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2.9 **Desmopressin**

Desmopressin is a synthetic analogue of vasopressin (also known as antidiuretic hormone). It can be taken orally, nasally or by injection. Desmopressin is most commonly used to treat diabetes insipidus and, when used at night, to treat nocturnal enuresis.

4.2.9.1 **Questions**
- In adults with UI, does desmopressin cure or improve UI and/or improve QoL compared to no treatment?
- In adults with UI, does desmopressin result in a lesser likelihood of adverse effects, compared to any other intervention?

4.2.9.2 **Evidence**

4.2.9.2.1 Improvement of incontinence

Few studies have examined the use of desmopressin exclusively for the treatment of UI. No evidence was found that demonstrated any effect of desmopressin on nocturnal incontinence, though evidence does exist for it reducing nocturnal polyuria, particularly in children [294]. One RCT compared desmopressin to placebo with daytime UI as an outcome measure, with improved continence shown during the first four hours after taking desmopressin in women [295]. There is no evidence reporting desmopressin cure rates for UI and no evidence that compares desmopressin with other non-drug treatments for UI.

4.2.9.2.2 Monitoring for hyponatraemia

The use of desmopressin carries a risk of developing hyponatraemia (please refer to the EAU Guidelines on Male LUTS [27]).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The risk of urinary incontinence is reduced within four hours of taking oral desmopressin, but not after four hours.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous use of desmopressin does not improve or cure urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular use of desmopressin may lead to hyponatraemia.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consider offering desmopressin to patients requiring occasional short-term relief from daytime urinary incontinence and inform them that this drug is not licensed for this indication.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor plasma sodium levels in patients on desmopressin.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use desmopressin for long-term control of urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Recommendation based on expert opinion.

4.2.10 **Drug treatment in mixed urinary incontinence**

4.2.10.1 **Question**

In adults with MUI, is the outcome of a drug treatment different to that for the same treatment in patients with either pure SUI or UUI?

4.2.10.2 **Evidence**

Many RCTs include patients with MUI with predominant symptoms of either SUI or UUI but few report outcomes separately for those with MUI compared to pure SUI or UUI groups.

**Tolterodine**

In an RCT of 854 women with MUI, tolterodine ER was effective for improvement of UUI, but not SUI suggesting that the efficacy of tolterodine for UUI was not altered by the presence of SUI [296]. In another study (n = 1380) tolterodine was equally effective in reducing urgency and UUI symptoms, regardless of whether there was associated SUI [297]. Similar results were found for solifenacin [298, 299].

**Duloxetine**

In one RCT of duloxetine vs. placebo in 588 women, subjects were stratified into either stress-predominant, urgency-predominant or balanced MUI groups. Duloxetine was effective for improvement of incontinence and QoL in all subgroups [300].

Duloxetine was found to have equal efficacy for SUI and MUI in an RCT (n = 553) following secondary analysis of respective subpopulations [301].
Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Limited evidence suggests that antimuscarinic drugs are effective for improvement of the urgency urinary incontinence component in patients with mixed urinary incontinence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Duloxetine is effective for improvement of both stress urinary incontinence and urgency urinary incontinence in patients with mixed urinary incontinence.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Treat the most bothersome symptom first in patients with mixed urinary incontinence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A*</td>
<td>Offer antimuscarinic drugs or beta3 agonists to patients with urgency-predominant mixed urinary incontinence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Consider duloxetine for patients with mixed urinary incontinence unresponsive to other conservative treatments and who are not seeking cure.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Recommendation based on expert opinion.

4.3 Surgical management

In line with the recommendations from the UK National Institute for Healthcare and Clinical Excellence (NICE) [50], the Panel agreed that surgeons and centres performing surgery should:

- be properly trained in each procedure;
- not be trained by someone who is not surgically qualified;
- perform sufficient numbers of a procedure to maintain expertise of him/herself and the surgical team;
- be able to offer alternative surgical treatments;
- be able to deal with the complications of surgery;
- provide suitable arrangements for follow-up, long-term if necessary.

This section considers surgical options for the following situations:

- Women with uncomplicated SUI: This means no history of previous surgery, no neurogenic LUT dysfunction, no bothersome genitourinary prolapse, and women not considering further pregnancy.
- Women with complicated SUI: Neurogenic LUT dysfunction is reviewed in the EAU Guidelines on Neuro-Urology [2].
- Associated genitourinary prolapse has been included in these Guidelines in terms of treating incontinence, but no attempt has been made to comment on treatment of prolapse itself.
- Men with SUI: mainly men with post-prostatectomy incontinence without neurological disease affecting the lower urinary tract.
- Patients with refractory DO incontinence.

Although the outcome of surgical procedures should be considered in absolute terms, it is also important to consider any associated complications, adverse events and costs. The outcome parameters used to evaluate surgery for SUI have included:

- continence rate and number of incontinence episodes;
- general and procedure-specific complications;
- generic, specific (UI) and correlated (sexual and bowel) QoL.

The Panel has tried to acknowledge emerging techniques as they considered appropriate and have made a strong recommendation (section 4.3.1.5.2) that new devices are only used as part of a structured research programme.

4.3.1 Women with uncomplicated stress urinary incontinence

4.3.1.1 Mid-urethral slings

Early clinical studies identified that slings should be made from monofilament, non-absorbable material, typically polypropylene, and constructed as a 1-2 cm wide mesh with a relatively large pore size (macroporous). Mid-urethral slings are now the most frequently used surgical intervention in Europe for women with SUI.

4.3.1.1.1 Questions

In women with SUI, what is the effectiveness in curing SUI and adverse effects at one year for:

- mid-urethral synthetic sling insertion compared to Burch colposuspension?
- one method of insertion of a mid-urethral synthetic sling compared to another method?
- one direction of insertion of a mid-urethral synthetic sling compared to another direction of insertion?
4.3.1.1.2 Evidence

For the purpose of these Guidelines, a new meta-analysis was performed.

**Mid-urethral sling insertion compared to colposuspension**

Thirteen RCTs (n = 1037) compared mid-urethral sling (retropubic) and colposuspension (open and laparoscopic). The meta-analysis found no difference in patient-reported cure rates at twelve months [302-312]. The overall patient-reported cure rate was 75%. There was weak evidence of higher clinician-reported cure rates at twelve months after mid-urethral sling (83%) compared to colposuspension (78%) [305-312]. Longer-term follow-up for up to five years reported no difference in effectiveness, though the numbers of participants lost to follow-up was high [76, 304]. Voiding dysfunction was more likely for colposuspension (relative risk 0.34, 95% CI 0.16-0.7) whilst bladder perforation was higher for the mid-urethral sling (15% vs. 9%, and 7% vs. 2%, respectively) [303, 305, 313-315].

**Transobturator route vs. retropubic route**

The EAU Panel meta-analysis identified 34 RCTs (5,786 women) comparing insertion of the mid-urethral sling by the retropubic and transobturator routes. There was no difference in cure rates at twelve months in either patient-reported or clinically reported cure rates (77% and 85%, respectively) [5]. Voiding dysfunction was less common (4%) following transobturator insertion compared to retropubic insertion (7%), as was the risk of bladder perforation (0.3%) or urethral perforation (0.5%). The risks of de novo urgency and vaginal perforation were 6% and 1.7%, respectively. Chronic perineal or groin/thigh pain at twelve months after surgery was reported by 21 trials and meta-analysis showed a higher rate in women undergoing transobturator insertion (7%) compared to retropubic insertion (3%).

**Insertion using a skin-to-vagina direction vs. a vagina-to-skin direction**

A Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis found that the skin-to-vagina direction (top - down) for retropubic insertion of mid-urethral slings was less effective than the vagina-to-skin (bottom - up) direction and was associated with higher rates of voiding dysfunction, bladder perforation and vaginal erosion [316]. A further systematic review and meta-analysis found that the skin-to-vagina (outside in) direction of transobturator insertion of mid-urethral slings was equally effective compared to the vagina-to-skin route (inside out) using direct comparison. However, indirect comparative analysis gave weak evidence for a higher rate of voiding dysfunction and bladder injury [317].

4.3.1.2 Adjustability

4.3.1.2.1 Questions

- In women with SUI, does an adjustable sling cure SUI and improve QoL or does it cause adverse outcome(s)?
- How does an adjustable sling compare to other surgical treatments for SUI?

4.3.1.2.2 Evidence

There are no RCTs investigating outcome of adjustable sling insertion for women with SUI. There are limited data from cohort studies on adjustable tension slings with variable selection criteria and outcome definitions. Few studies include sufficient numbers of patients or have a long enough follow-up to provide useful evidence. The available devices have differing designs, making it difficult to draw general conclusions about adjustable slings as a class of procedure.

4.3.1.3 Single-incision slings

4.3.1.3.1 Questions

- In women with SUI, do single-incision slings cure UI or improve QoL, or cause adverse outcomes?
- How does a single-incision sling compare to other surgical treatments for SUI?

4.3.1.3.2 Evidence

Although there have been many studies published on single-incision devices, it should be noted that there are significant differences in technical design between devices and it may be misleading to make general statements about them as a class of operations. It should also be noted that some devices have been withdrawn from the market (e.g. TVT Secur®, Minitape), and yet evidence relating to these may be included in current meta-analyses. There was evidence to suggest single-incision slings are quicker to perform and cause less post-operative thigh pain, but there was no difference in the rate of chronic pain. There was not enough evidence to conclude any difference between single-incision slings in direct comparisons.
The most recent meta-analysis [318] and a re-analysis of the Cochrane review data by the Panel (excluding TVT Secur® data) have demonstrated that there was no difference in efficacy between available single-incision devices and conventional mid-urethral slings. However, not all single-incision devices have been subjected to RCT evaluation and it may be unsafe to assume that they are collectively technically similar devices.

**Generalisability of evidence to adult women with SUI**

Analysis of the population studied in trials included in this meta-analysis suggests that the evidence is generalisable to women who have predominantly SUI, and no other clinically severe lower genitourinary tract dysfunction. The evidence is not adequate to guide choice of surgical treatment for those women with MUI, severe POP, or a history of previous surgery for SUI. The results of the EAU Panel meta-analysis [5] were consistent with those of the Cochrane systematic review [316], except that in the EAU Panel meta-analysis the objective cure rates appeared slightly higher for retropubic (88%) compared to transobturator insertion (84%). The EAU Panel finding is consistent with an additional systematic review and meta-analysis [319] and the difference may result from the Panel’s decision to only consider trial data with at least twelve months of follow-up.

**Sexual function after mid-urethral tape surgery**

A systematic review concluded there was a lack of RCTs addressing the effects of incontinence surgery on sexual function but noting a reduction in coital incontinence [320]. One RCT [321] and another cohort study [322] have shown that overall sexual activity improves after sling surgery.

**SUI surgery in the elderly**

There are no RCTs comparing surgical treatment in older vs. younger women, although subgroup analyses of some RCTs have included a comparison of older with younger cohorts. Definitions of elderly vary from one study to another so no attempt was made to define the term here. Instead, the Panel attempted to identify those studies which have addressed age difference as an important variable.

A RCT of 537 women comparing retropubic to transobturator tape, showed that increasing age was an independent risk factor for failure of surgery over the age of 50 [323]. An RCT assessing risk factors for the failure of TVT vs. transobturator tension-free vaginal tape (TVT-O) in 162 women found that age is a specific risk factor (adjusted OR 1.7 per decade) for recurrence at one year [324]. In a subanalysis of a trial cohort of 655 women at 2 years’ follow-up, it was shown that elderly women were more likely to have a positive stress test at follow-up (OR 3.7, 95% CI 1.7-7.97), are less likely to report objective or subjective improvement in stress and urgency UI, and are more likely to undergo retreatment for SUI (OR 3.9, 95% CI 1.3-11.48). There was no difference in time to post-operative normal voiding [325].

Another RCT comparing immediate TVT vs. no surgery (delayed TVT) in older women, confirmed efficacy of surgery in terms of QOL and satisfaction, but with higher complication rates [326].

A cohort study of 256 women undergoing inside-out transobturator tape reported similar efficacy in older vs. younger women, but found a higher risk of de novo urgency in older patients [327].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compared to colposuspension, the retropubic insertion of a mid-urethral synthetic sling provides equivalent patient-reported cure of stress urinary incontinence at five years.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid-urethral synthetic sling inserted by either the transobturator or retropubic route provides equivalent patient-reported outcome at twelve months.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid-urethral sling insertion is associated with a lower rate of a new symptom of urgency, and voiding dysfunction, compared to colposuspension.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The retropubic route of insertion is associated with a higher intra-operative risk of bladder perforation and a higher rate of voiding dysfunction than the transobturator route.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The transobturator route of insertion is associated with a higher risk of chronic pain and vaginal erosion and extrusion at twelve months, than that found with the retropubic route.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The skin-to-vagina direction of both retropubic and transobturator insertion is associated with a higher risk of post-operative voiding dysfunction.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustable mid-urethral synthetic sling devices may be effective for cure or improvement of stress urinary incontinence in women.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence that adjustable slings are superior to standard mid-urethral slings.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The comparative efficacy of single-incision slings against conventional mid-urethral slings is uncertain.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Operation times for insertion of single-incision mid-urethral slings are shorter than for standard retropubic slings. 1b

Blood loss and immediate post-operative pain are lower for insertion of single-incision slings compared with conventional mid-urethral slings. 1b

There is no evidence that other adverse outcomes from surgery are more or less likely with single-incision slings than with conventional mid-urethral slings. 1b

Older women benefit from surgical treatment for urinary incontinence. 1

The risk of failure from surgical repair of stress urinary incontinence, or suffering adverse events, appears to increase with age. 2

There is no evidence that any surgical procedure has greater efficacy or safety in older women than another procedure. 4

In women undergoing surgery for stress urinary incontinence, coital incontinence is likely to improve. 3

Overall, sexual function is unlikely to deteriorate following stress urinary incontinence surgery. 3

There is no consistent evidence that the risk of post-operative sexual dysfunction differs between midurethral sling procedures. 3

NB: Most evidence on single-incision slings is from studies using the tension-free vaginal tape secure (TVTS) device and although this device is no longer available, many women still have the device in place.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4.3.1.4</th>
<th>Open and laparoscopic surgery for stress urinary incontinence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open colposuspension was previously considered the most appropriate surgical intervention for SUI, and was used as the comparator in RCTs of newer, less invasive, surgical techniques. These include laparoscopic techniques, which have enabled colposuspension to be performed with a minimally invasive approach.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3.1.4.1 Question

In women with SUI, what is the effectiveness of open and laparoscopic surgery, compared to other surgical procedures, measured in terms of cure or improvement of incontinence or QoL, or the risk of adverse events?

4.3.1.4.2 Evidence

Four systematic reviews were found, which covered the subject of open surgery for SUI, including 46 RCTs [2, 328-330], but no RCTs comparing any operation to a sham procedure were identified.

Open colposuspension

The Cochrane review [330] included 46 trials in which 4,738 women had open colposuspension. In most of these trials, open colposuspension was used as the comparator to an experimental procedure. Consequently, for this review we have only considered the absolute effect of colposuspension, but have not reviewed all of these comparisons. No additional trials have been reported since this review.

Within the first year, complete continence rates of approximately 85-90% were achieved for open colposuspension, while failure rates for UI were 17% up to five years and 21% over five years. The re-operation rate for UI was 2%. Colposuspension was associated with a higher rate of development, at five years, of enterocoele/vault/cervical prolapse (42%) and rectocele (49%) compared to tension-free vaginal tape (TVT) (23% and 32%, respectively). The rate of cystocoele was similar in colposuspension (37%) and with TVT (41%).

Four trials compared Burch colposuspension to the Marshall Marchetti Krantz procedure and one trial evaluated Burch colposuspension with paravaginal repair. All showed fewer surgical failures up to five years with colposuspension but otherwise reported similar outcomes.

Anterior colporrhaphy

Anterior colporrhaphy is now considered an obsolete operation for UI. In a Cochrane review [329], ten trials compared anterior colporrhaphy (n = 385) with colposuspension (n = 627). The failure rate for UI at follow-up of up to five years was worse for anterior colporrhaphy with a higher requirement for re-operation for incontinence.

Autologous fascial sling

The Cochrane review [329, 331] described 26 RCTs, including 2,284 women undergoing autologous sling procedure in comparison to other operations.
There were seven trials of autologous fascial sling vs. colposuspension. Except for one very high-quality study [49] showing superiority of fascial sling most of the studies were of variable quality, with a few very small studies and short follow-up. The meta-analysis showed that fascial sling and colposuspension had a similar cure rate at one year. Colposuspension had a lower risk of voiding difficulty and UTIs, but a higher risk of bladder perforation.

In twelve trials of autologous fascial sling vs. mid-urethral synthetic slings, the procedures showed similar efficacy. However, use of the synthetic sling resulted in shorter operating times and lower rates of complications, including voiding difficulty. Six trials compared autologous fascial slings with other materials of different origins, with results favouring traditional autologous fascial slings. Post-hoc analysis of an RCT comparing the autologous fascial sling to Burch colposuspension showed inferior outcomes for women who suffered pre-operative urgency [325].

**Laparoscopic colposuspension**

The Cochrane review [328] identified 22 RCTs, of which ten trials compared laparoscopic colposuspension to open colposuspension. No other trials have been identified. Although these procedures had a similar subjective cure rate, there was limited evidence suggesting the objective outcomes were less good for laparoscopic colposuspension. However, laparoscopic colposuspension had a lower risk of complications and shorter duration of hospital stay.

In eight RCTs comparing laparoscopic colposuspension to mid-urethral slings, the subjective cure rates were similar, while the objective cure rate favoured the mid-urethral sling at eighteen months. Complication rates were similar for the two procedures and operating times were shorter for the mid-urethral sling. Comparisons of colposuspension to mid-urethral sling are covered in section 4.3.1.1.

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autologous fascial sling is more effective than colposuspension for improvement of stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopic colposuspension has similar efficacy to open colposuspension for cure of stress urinary incontinence and a similar risk of voiding difficulty or de novo urgency.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopic colposuspension has a lower risk of other complications and shorter hospital stay than open colposuspension.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autologous fascial sling has a higher risk of operative complications than open colposuspension, particularly voiding dysfunction and post-operative urinary tract infection.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3.1.5 **Bulking agents**

4.3.1.5.1 **Question**

In women with SUI, does injection of a urethral bulking agent cure SUI or improve QoL, or cause adverse outcomes?

4.3.1.5.2 **Evidence**

There have been two Cochrane systematic reviews [332, 333] and one independent systematic review [334], which reported on twelve RCTs or quasi-RCTs of injectable agents. In general, the trials were only of moderate quality and small, with many of them only being reported in abstract form. Wide confidence intervals meant a meta-analysis was not possible. Since the Cochrane review, two further RCTs have been reported [335, 336].

Each injectable product has been the subject of many case series. Short-term efficacy in reducing the symptoms of SUI has been demonstrated for all materials used. In 2006, NICE published an extensive review of these case series [50]. These case series have added very little to the evidence provided by RCTs. There has been only one placebo-controlled RCT, in which an autologous fat injection was compared with the placebo of a saline injection.

**Comparison with open surgery**

Two RCTs compared collagen injection to conventional surgery for SUI (autologous sling vs. silicon particles and collagen vs. assorted procedures). The studies reported greater efficacy but higher complication rates for open surgery. In comparison, collagen injections showed inferior efficacy but equivalent levels of satisfaction and fewer serious complications [50, 337].
Another trial found that a peri-urethral route of injection can carry a higher risk of urinary retention compared to a transurethral injection [338]. A recent small RCT found no difference in efficacy between mid-urethral and bladder neck injection of collagen [335].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peri-urethral injection of bulking agent may provide short-term improvement in symptoms (three months), but not cure, in women with stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat injections to achieve therapeutic effect are often required.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulking agents are less effective than colposuspension or autologous sling for cure of stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverse effect rates are lower compared to open surgery.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence that one type of bulking agent is better than another type.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transperineal route of injection may be associated with a higher risk of urinary retention compared to the transurethral route.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer the mid-urethral sling to women with uncomplicated stress urinary incontinence as the preferred surgical intervention whenever available.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn women who are being offered a retropubic insertion of mid-urethral sling about the relatively higher risk of peri-operative complications compared to transobturator insertion.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn women who are being offered transobturator insertion of mid-urethral sling about the higher risk of pain and dyspareunia in the longer term.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn women who are being offered a single-incision sling that long-term efficacy remains uncertain.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do a cystourethroscopy as part of the insertion of a mid-urethral sling.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer colposuspension (open or laparoscopic) or autologous fascial sling for women with stress urinary incontinence if mid-urethral sling cannot be considered.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn women undergoing autologous fascial sling that there is a high risk of voiding difficulty and the need to perform clean intermittent self-catheterisation; ensure they are willing and able to do so.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inform older women with stress urinary incontinence about the increased risks associated with surgery, including the lower probability of success.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inform women that any vaginal surgery may have an impact on sexual function.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only offer new devices, for which there is no level 1 evidence base, as part of a structured research programme.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only offer adjustable mid-urethral sling as a primary surgical treatment for stress urinary incontinence as part of a structured research programme.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer bulking agents to women who are seeking a permanent cure for stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Recommendation based on expert opinion.

4.3.2 Complicated stress urinary incontinence in women
This section will address surgical treatment for women who have had previous surgery for SUI, which has failed, or those women who have undergone previous radiotherapy affecting the vaginal or urethral tissues. Neurogenic LUT dysfunction is reviewed by the EAU Guidelines on Neuro-Urology [2]. Women with associated genitourinary prolapse are included in this edition (see section 4.3.3).

4.3.2.1 Colposuspension or sling following failed surgery
There may be persistent or recurrent SUI, or the development of de novo UUI. This means that careful evaluation including urodynamics becomes an essential part of the work-up of these patients.

4.3.2.1.1 Question
In women who have had failed surgery for SUI, what is the effectiveness of any second-line operation, compared to any other second-line operation, in terms of cure or improvement of UI, QoL or adverse events?

4.3.2.1.2 Evidence
Most of the data on surgery for SUI refer to primary operations. Even when secondary procedures have been included, it is unusual for the outcomes in this subgroup to be separately reported. When they are, the numbers of patients is usually too small to allow meaningful comparisons.
The 4th International Consultation on Incontinence includes a review of this topic [1] up to 2008, and the subject has also been reviewed by Ashok [339] and Lovatsis et al. [340]. A further literature review has been carried out since that time by the Panel.

Cochrane reviews of individual operative techniques have not included separate evaluation of outcomes in women undergoing second-line surgery. However, there is a current protocol to address this issue [341]. Only one RCT was found (abstract only) comparing TVT to laparoscopic colposuspension in women with recurrent SUI. This small study found similar cure rates and adverse events in the short term for both procedures [315].

Post-hoc subgroup analysis of high-quality RCTs comparing one procedure to another have shown conflicting evidence of relative effectiveness [74, 325, 342, 343]. One large non-randomised comparative series suggested that cure rates after more than two previous operations were 0% for open colposuspension and 38% for fascial sling [344].

Several cohort studies have reported outcomes for TVT specifically for primary and secondary cases. Evidence on the effectiveness of second-line retropubic tapes conflicts with some series showing equivalent outcomes for primary and secondary cases [345, 346], whilst other research has shown inferior outcomes for secondary surgery [347, 348]. Other confounding variables make meaningful conclusions difficult.

Systematic review of older trials of open surgery for SUI suggest that the longer-term outcomes of redo open colposuspension may be poor compared to autologous fascial slings [349]. Successful results have been reported from mid-urethral slings after various types of primary surgery, while good outcomes are reported for both repeat TVT and for ‘tightening’ of TVT, but data are limited to small case series only.

### Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is conflicting evidence whether prior surgery for stress incontinence or prolapse results in inferior outcomes from repeat operations for stress urinary incontinence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most procedures will be less effective when used as a second-line procedure than when used for primary surgery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In women who have had more than two procedures for stress urinary incontinence, the results of open colposuspension are inferior to autologous fascial sling.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3.2.2 External compression devices

External compression devices are still widely used in the treatment of recurrent SUI after the failure of previous surgery and if there is thought to be profound intrinsic failure of the sphincter mechanism, characterised by very low leak point pressures or low urethral closure pressures. This should be confirmed by urodynamic evaluation.

The two intracorporeal external urethral compression devices available are the adjustable compression therapy (ACT) device and the artificial urinary sphincter (AUS). Using ultrasound or fluoroscopic guidance, the ACT device is inserted by placement of two inflatable spherical balloons on either side of the bladder neck. The volume of each balloon can be adjusted through a subcutaneous port placed within the labia majora. More recently, an adjustable artificial urinary sphincter (Flowsecure™) has been introduced. It has the added benefit of ‘conditional occlusion’, enabling it to respond to rapid changes in intra-abdominal pressure.

#### 4.3.2.2.1 Questions

- In women with SUI, does insertion of an external compressive device cure SUI, improve QoL or cause adverse outcomes?
- How do external compression devices compare to other surgical treatments for SUI?

#### 4.3.2.2.2 Evidence

The major advantage of AUS over other anti-incontinence procedures is the perceived ability to be able to void normally [111]. However, voiding dysfunction is a known side effect, with a lack of data making it difficult to assess its importance. Because of significant differences in design between devices and in selection criteria between case series, results obtained with specific devices cannot be extrapolated generally to the use of adjustable devices. A recent consensus report has standardised the terminology used for reporting complications arising from implantation of materials into the pelvic floor region [17].
Artificial urinary sphincter (AUS)
A previous review of mechanical devices concluded that there was insufficient evidence to support the use of AUS in women [350].

There are a few case series in women, including four series (n = 611), with study populations ranging from 45 to 215 patients and follow-up ranging from one month to 25 years [351-354]. Case series have been confounded by varying selection criteria, especially the proportion of women who have neurological dysfunction or who have had previous surgery. Most patients achieved an improvement in SUI, with reported subjective cures in 59-88%. Common side effects included mechanical failure requiring revision (up to 42% at ten years) and explantation (5.9-15%). In a retrospective series of 215 women followed up for a mean of six years, the risk factors for failure were older age, previous Burch colposuspension and pelvic radiotherapy [354]. Peri-operative injury to the urethra, bladder or rectum was also a high-risk factor for explantation [352].

A newly introduced artificial sphincter using an adjustable balloon capacity through a self-sealing port, and stress responsive design, has been introduced to clinical use. A series of 100 patients reported 28% explantation at four years but the device has undergone redesign and more up-to-date evidence is awaited [355]. Early reports of laparoscopically implanted AUS do not have sufficient patient populations and/or sufficient follow-up to be able to draw any conclusions [356, 357].

Adjustable compression device (ACT)
There are four case series (n = 349), with follow-up ranging from five to 84 months [358-361]. Reported outcome ranged from 47% objective cure to 100% subjective improvement. However, most patients required adjustment to achieve continence and 21% required explantation.

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence Statement</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Implantation of an artificial sphincter can improve or cure incontinence in women with stress urinary incontinence caused by sphincter insufficiency.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implantation of the adjustable compression therapy (ACT) device may improve complicated urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complications, mechanical failure and device explantation often occur with both the artificial sphincter and the adjustable compression device.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explantation is more frequent in older women and among those who have had previous Burch colposuspension or pelvic radiotherapy.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Management of complicated stress urinary incontinence should only be offered in expert** centres.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The choice of surgery for recurrent stress urinary incontinence should be based on careful evaluation of the individual patient including multichannel urodynamics and imaging as appropriate.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn women with recurrent stress urinary incontinence that the outcome of a surgical procedure, when used as a second-line treatment, is generally inferior to its use as a first-line treatment, both in terms of reduced efficacy and increased risk of complications.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider secondary synthetic sling, colposuspension or autologous sling as first options for women with complicated stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn women receiving artificial urinary sphincter or ACT device that, even in expert centres, there is a high risk of complications, mechanical failure or a need for explantation.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Recommendation based on expert opinion.
** Expert centres refers to the comments on surgeon volume in the introduction to the surgical chapter.

4.3.3 Women with both stress urinary incontinence and pelvic organ prolapse
There is a clear association between the presence of POP and SUI. Although the subject of prolapse is not part of the remit of these Guidelines, the extent to which it impacts on the management of SUI will be addressed. The aim is to assess the options available to women who require surgery for POP and who have associated UI (either symptomatic or after reduction of prolapse), and to assess the value of prophylactic anti-incontinence surgery in women with no evidence of UI.

4.3.3.1 Questions
1. In women with POP and UI, does combined surgery for POP and SUI reduce the incidence of post-operative UI compared to POP surgery alone?
2. In continent women with POP, does combined surgery for POP and SUI reduce the incidence of post-operative de novo UI compared to POP surgery alone?

3. In women with POP and occult SUI, (i.e. seen only on prolapse reduction stress testing/urodynamics), does combined surgery for POP and SUI reduce the incidence of post-operative UI compared to POP surgery alone?

4. In women with POP and OAB, does surgery for POP improve OAB symptoms?

5. In adults with POP, what is the reliability, the diagnostic accuracy and predictive value of a prolapse reduction test to identify patients at risk from de novo SUI following prolapse repair?

### Evidence

A Cochrane review in 2013 included sixteen trials concerning bladder function after surgery for pelvic organ prolapse [362]. After prolapse surgery 434 of 2125 women (20.4%) reported new subjective SUI, in sixteen trials. New voiding dysfunction was reported in 109 of 1,209 (9%) women, in twelve trials.

1. In women with POP does combined surgery for POP and SUI reduce the incidence of post-operative UI compared to POP surgery alone?

   There are two well-designed RCTs relating to the prevalence of post-operative SUI in women who underwent prolapse surgery with and without an anti-incontinence procedure. Both of these trials involved women with POP who did not complain of symptoms of stress incontinence regardless of objective findings.

   One trial compared abdominal sacrocolpopexy with and without Burch colposuspension [363], the other compared vaginal repair with and without a mid-urethral sling [364]. In both trials addition of an anti-incontinence surgery reduced the risk of SUI at twelve months. In one trial there was a higher rate of adverse events reported in the combined surgery group [364]. This was also the finding of the Cochrane review and meta-analysis.

   Two trials addressed post-operative SUI in patients who had had SUI pre-operatively. Borstad et al., in a multicentre trial, randomised women with POP and SUI to have a tension-free vaginal tape (TVT) at the time of prolapse repair or three months later, if they still had SUI. (n = 53). One year after surgery there was no difference between the groups regarding continence; however, 44% of the women without initial TVT never required surgery and 29% were dry [365].

   In contrast, Costantini et al. followed-up women with POP and SUI randomised to abdominal POP repair with or without Burch colposuspension (after a median of 97 months), finding that additional SUI surgery did not improve outcome [366]. On the contrary, a higher number of patients had de novo storage symptoms when a Burch colposuspension was performed.

   In summary, it is difficult to generalise the results of trials using very different procedures to treat both POP and UI. It seems that with a combined procedure the rate of SUI post-operatively is lower. Studies using midurethral slings have generally shown more significant differences in UI outcomes with combined procedures than when other types of anti-incontinence procedure have been used. Individual patient characteristics may play the most important role in shaping treatment decisions. It must be taken into account that, although more women may be dry after combined surgery, the risks of repeat surgery, should it become necessary, may outweigh the potential benefits.

2. Continent women with POP

   The 2013 Cochrane review included 6 trials showing that post-operative incontinence rates at < twelve months were 15% in the combined surgery group vs. 32% in POP surgery alone. In this group of 438 women, undergoing continent surgery at the time of prolapse prevented 62 (14%) women from developing de novo SUI post-prolapse surgery. A long-term update of a previously published RCT comparing POP surgery with or without Burch colposuspension in continent women suggested higher UI rates in women undergoing colposuspension [364].

3. Women with POP and occult SUI

   The 2013 Cochrane review included five trials addressing this point. Overall, there was a significantly higher rate of post-operative patient-reported SUI with prolapse surgery alone than compared with combined surgery.

4. Women with POP and OAB

   There are three case series evaluating patients with concomitant OAB and pelvic organ prolapse which
assess incontinence/OAB symptom scores post-surgical repair. Costantini et al. assessed the effect of posterior repair on OAB/DO and reported a 70-75% improvement rate in both parameters along with a 93% anatomic success rate [367]. Kummeling et al. assessed the effect of a modified laparoscopic sacrocolpopexy on urodynamic parameters and reported an improvement with no evidence to support a concomitant prophylactic colposuspension [368]. Lee et al. assessed the value of pre-op urodynamic study and bladder outlet obstruction index (BOOI) in predicting the degree of OAB symptoms post anterior prolapse repair. They reported a significant correlation between low pre-op BOOI and improvement in OAB symptom scores post-op [369].

5. Prolapse reduction stress test (PRST)
Data concerning PRST were made available from the CARE trial, where significant differences were noted in the detection of urodynamic stress incontinence with prolapse reduction among the various methods studied, ranging from 6% (pessary) to 30% (speculum). Manual, swab and forceps showed detection rates of 16%, 20% and 21%, respectively [370]. In the study by Duecy, about one third of women were diagnosed with occult SUI using a pessary while two thirds were diagnosed with manual reduction of the prolapse [371]. In a further study occult SUI was only detected by a pessary test in 19% of patients, not by urodynamics, history or clinical examination [372].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Women with prolapse + urinary incontinence</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgery for pelvic organ prolapse (POP) + stress urinary incontinence shows a higher rate of cure of urinary incontinence in the short term than POP surgery alone.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is conflicting evidence on the relative long-term benefit of surgery for POP + stress urinary incontinence vs. POP surgery alone.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined surgery for POP + stress urinary incontinence carries a higher risk of adverse events.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Continent women with pelvic organ prolapse</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are at risk of developing urinary incontinence post-operatively.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The addition of a prophylactic anti-incontinence procedure reduces the risk of post-operative urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The addition of a prophylactic anti-incontinence procedure increases the risk of adverse events.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Women with pelvic organ prolapse and overactive bladder</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is some low-level inconsistent evidence to suggest that surgical repair of POP can improve symptoms of overactive bladder.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgery for POP + occult stress urinary incontinence shows a higher rate of cure of occult stress urinary incontinence in the short term than POP surgery alone.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined surgery for POP + stress urinary incontinence carries a higher risk of adverse events than POP surgery alone.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations for women requiring surgery for bothersome pelvic organ prolapse who have symptomatic or unmasked stress urinary incontinence</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer simultaneous surgery for pelvic organ prolapse and stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn women of the increased risk of adverse events with combined surgery compared to prolapse surgery alone.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations for women requiring surgery for bothersome pelvic organ prolapse without symptomatic or unmasked stress urinary incontinence.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Warn women that there is a risk of developing de novo stress urinary incontinence after prolapse surgery.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inform women that the benefit of prophylactic stress urinary incontinence surgery is uncertain.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn women that the benefit of surgery for stress urinary incontinence may be outweighed by the increased risk of adverse events with combined surgery compared to prolapse surgery alone.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3.4 **Urethral diverticulum**
A female urethral diverticulum is a sac-like protrusion made up by the entire urethral wall or only by the urethral mucosa situated between the periurethral tissues and the anterior vaginal wall. Urethral diverticulum give rise to a variety of symptoms that include pain, urgency, frequency, recurrent UTIs, vaginal discharge, dyspareunia, voiding difficulties or urinary incontinence.
4.3.4.1 Question
In a woman with the clinical suspicion of having a urethral diverticulum, what is the best test to confirm the diagnosis?

4.3.4.2 Evidence
No robust diagnostic accuracy studies address this question. However, a case series of 27 patients concluded that endoluminal (vaginal or rectal) MRI has better diagnostic accuracy than voiding cystourethrography (VCUG) [373]. In a case series of 60 subjects Pathi, et al. reported that the sensitivity, specificity, positive predictive value and negative predictive value of MRI is 100%, 83%, 92% and 100%, respectively [374]. Dvarkasing et al. also reports 100% specificity and sensitivity of MRI in a case series of 60 patients [375]. However, in a case series of 41 patients, a study reported 25% discrepancy between MRI and surgical findings [376].

4.3.4.3 Question
In a woman who has a bothersome urethral diverticulum, what is the relative effectiveness of available surgical treatments?

4.3.4.4 Surgical treatment
No RCTs were found. Surgical removal is the most commonly reported treatment in contemporary case series. However, recurrence may occur; Han et al. found a recurrence rate of 33% in U-shaped and of 60% in circumferential diverticulum within one year [377], Ingber et al. found a 10.7% recurrence rate in 122 women undergoing diverticulectomy, with a higher risk of recurrence in those with proximal or multiple diverticula or after previous pelvic surgery [378]. SUI may occur in up to 20% of women after diverticulectomy, requiring additional correction [379-382]. De novo SUI seems to be more common in proximal and in large size (>30 mm) diverticula.

Diverticula may undergo neoplastic alterations (6%) including invasive adenocarcinomas [383].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Magnetic resonance imaging has good sensitivity and specificity for the diagnosis of urethral diverticula; however, there is a risk of misdiagnosis and missing potential intraluminal neoplastic change.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical removal of symptomatic urethral diverticula provides good long-term results; however, women should be counselled of the risk of recurrence and de novo stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendation

Symptomatic urethral diverticula should be completely surgically removed.

* Recommendation based on expert opinion.

4.3.5 Men with stress urinary incontinence

In men who fail conservative treatment (see chapter 4.1.3.3.5) other treatments can be considered.

4.3.5.1 Drug therapy

Three RCTs suggest an earlier recovery of continence in men receiving duloxetine either alone [384], or in addition to PFMT, for post prostate surgery SUI [385, 386].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duloxetine, either alone or combined with conservative treatment, can hasten recovery of continence but does not improve continence rate following prostate surgery.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3.5.2 Bulking agents in men

Injection of bulking agents has been used to try and improve the coaptation of a damaged sphincter zone. Initial reports showed limited efficacy in treating incontinence following radical prostatectomy incontinence [387, 388].
4.3.5.2.1 Question
In men with post-prostatectomy incontinence or SUI, does injection of a urethral bulking agent cure SUI, improve QoL, or cause adverse outcomes?

4.3.5.2.2 Evidence
Most studies are case series with small sample sizes. Small cohort studies showed a lack of benefit using a number of different materials [389, 390]. However, polyacrylamide hydrogel resulted in limited improvement in QoL without curing the UI [389]. A Cochrane review on the surgical treatment of post-prostatectomy incontinence found only one study that fulfilled the inclusion criteria [391]. A prospective, randomised study compared the AUS to silicon particles (Macroplastique™) in 45 patients. Eighty-two per cent of patients receiving an AUS were continent compared to 46% receiving silicone particles. In patients with severe incontinence, outcome was significantly worse after silicon bulking injection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence that bulking agents cure post-prostatectomy incontinence.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is weak evidence that bulking agents can offer temporary, short-term, improvement in QoL in men with post-prostatectomy incontinence.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence that one bulking agent is superior to another.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3.5.3 Fixed male sling
In addition to external compression devices and bulking agents, slings have been introduced to treat post-prostatectomy incontinence. Fixed slings are positioned under the urethra and fixed by a retropubic or transobturator approach. The tension is adjusted during the surgery and cannot be re-adjusted post-operatively.

For the restoration of continence by these male slings, two concepts are now being proposed:
- continence restoration by urethral compression (InVance®, Istop TOMS, Argus®);
- continence restoration by repositioning the bulb of urethra (AdVance™) [392].

In principle, the AUS can be used for all degrees of post-prostatectomy incontinence, while male slings are advocated for mild-to-moderate UI. However, the definitions of mild and moderate UI are not clear. The definition of cure, used in most studies, was no pad use or one security pad per 24 hours. Some authors used a stricter criterion of less than 2 g urine loss in a 24-hour pad test [393].

4.3.5.3.1 Question
In men with post-prostatectomy SUI, does insertion of a fixed suburethral sling cure SUI, improve QoL, or cause adverse outcomes?

4.3.5.3.2 Evidence
Concerning the surgical treatment of post-prostatectomy incontinence, three recent literature reviews are available [394-396]. There are a large number of uncontrolled case series concerning men implanted with several types of slings [397, 398].

For the repositioning sling (AdVance™), the benefit after a mean follow-up of three years has been published on 136 patients [399]. Earlier data were available from other cohort studies, totalling at least 614 patients with a mean follow-up of between three months and three years. Subjective cure rates for the device vary between 8.6% and 73.7%, with a mean of 49.5%. Radiotherapy was a negative prognostic factor [397]. Post-operative voiding dysfunction occurred in 5.7-1.3%, while erosions and chronic pain were uncommon (0-0.4%) [393, 399-401]. The overall failure rate was about 20%.

The previously available ‘InVance®’ device has now been removed from the market in some countries.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is limited short-term evidence that fixed male slings cure or improve post-prostatectomy incontinence in patients with mild-to-moderate incontinence.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men with severe incontinence, previous radiotherapy or urethral stricture surgery may have less benefit from fixed male slings.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence that one type of male sling is better than another.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.3.5.4 Adjustable slings in males
Adjustability in male sling surgery attempts to adjust the tension of the sling post-operatively. Three main systems have been used in men: the Remeex® system, the Argus® system and the ATOMS® system.

4.3.5.4.1 Question
In men with post-prostatectomy incontinence or SUI, does insertion of an adjustable suburethral sling cure or improve SUI, improve QoL, or cause adverse outcomes?

4.3.5.4.2 Evidence
There are no RCTs. Most studies consist of prospective or retrospective case series, with variable follow-up and different definitions of success. Some have been published only as conference abstracts.

For the Remeex® system, only two abstracts, with conflicting findings, have been published. One study followed nineteen patients for nearly seven years and reported 70% success, with no explants, infections or erosions. The second study followed fourteen patients for 25 months. Only 36% of patients were satisfied and multiple re-adjustments were needed. Mechanical failure was reported in 21% [402].

Argus® system
Data on the Argus® system has been reported for 404 men, but only four series have reported on more than 50 patients [403, 404], with the longest follow-up being 2.4 years. Success rates varied between 17% and 91.6%, with a mean of 57.8% predominantly reporting a subjective cure. The number of implants requiring re-adjustment was reported as between 22.9% and 41.5% [404]. Infection of the device occurred in 5.4-8% [403]. Erosions were reported in 5-10% [405]. Urethral perforations occurred in 2.7-16% [403]. Pain at the implant site was usually only temporary, but chronic pain has been reported [403, 405]. These complications resulted in explantation rates of 10-15% [404].

The ATOMS® system consists of a mesh implant with an integrated adjustable cushion, which uses a titanium port left in the subcutaneous tissue of the lower abdomen or scrotum for adjustment of cushion volume. Initial reports show objective cure rates of 60.5% and improvement rates of 23.7% but with the need for up to nine post-operative adjustments [406, 407].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is limited evidence that adjustable male slings can cure or improve stress urinary incontinence in men.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is limited evidence that early explantation rates are high.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence that adjustability of the male sling offers additional benefit over other types of sling.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3.5.5 Compression devices in males
External compression devices can be divided into two types: circumferential and non-circumferential compression of the urethral lumen [394]. The artificial urinary sphincter (AUS) is the standard treatment for moderate-to-severe male SUI. Most data available on the efficacy and adverse effects of AUS implantation are from older retrospective cohort studies with RCTs not performed due to the lack of a comparator. Men considering insertion of an AUS should understand that if the ability of an individual to operate the pump is uncertain, it may not be appropriate to implant an AUS. There are several recognised complications of AUS implantation, e.g. mechanical dysfunction, urethral constriction by fibrous tissue, erosion and infection. The non-circumferential compression devices consist of two balloons placed close to the vesico-urethral anastomotic site. The balloons can be filled and their volume can be adjusted post-operatively through an intra-scrotal port. Men who develop cognitive impairment or lose manual dexterity will have difficulty operating an AUS.

4.3.5.5.1 Question
In men with post-prostatectomy SUI, does insertion of an external compression device cure SUI, improve QoL, or cause adverse outcomes?

4.3.5.5.2 Evidence
Artificial urinary sphincter
Although the AUS is considered to be the standard treatment for men with SUI, there are two systematic reviews [391, 396] presenting limited evidence, of generally poor quality, except for one RCT comparing AUS with bulking agents [387]. A continence rate of about 80% can be expected, while this may be lower in men...
who have undergone pelvic radiotherapy [394].

Trigo Rocha et al. published a prospective cohort study on 40 patients with a mean follow-up of 53 months, showing that from all urodynamic parameters only low bladder compliance had a negative impact on the outcome [408]. Another retrospective study showed that no urodynamic factors adversely altered the outcome of AUS implantation [409].

The transcorporeal technique of placement can be used for repeat surgery but evidence of effectiveness is lacking [410]. The dual-cuff placement was introduced to treat patients who remained incontinent with a single 4 cm cuff in place. However, it has not improved control of UI, while the availability of a 3.5 cm cuff may have eliminated the need for a dual cuff [411, 412]. Patients who experienced complete continence after AUS implantation had a higher erosion risk [413]. One small series reported results of AUS implantation after failure of previous AdVance™ sling, showing no difference in efficacy between secondary and primary implantation [414].

Non-circumferential compression device (ProAct®)

There have been trials to treat post-prostatectomy SUI by insertion of a device consisting of balloons with adjustable volume external to the proximal bulbar urethra. A prospective cohort study (n = 128) described the functional outcome as ‘good’ in 68%, while 18% of the devices had to be explanted [415]. A subgroup of radiotherapy patients only had 46% success and a higher percentage of urethral erosions.

A quasi-randomised trial comparing a non-circumferential compression device (ProAct®) with bone-anchored male slings found that both types of device resulted in similar improvement of SUI (68% vs. 65%, respectively) [416]. Other prospective series have shown that adverse events were frequent, leading to an explantation rate of 11-58% [396, 417-420]. A questionnaire study showed that 50% of patients were still bothered significantly by persistent incontinence [421]. Other designs of artificial sphincter remain the subject of ongoing evaluation though they may have been introduced onto the market.

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is evidence that primary artificial urinary sphincter (AUS) implantation is effective for cure of stress urinary incontinence in men.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term failure rate for AUS is high although device replacement can be performed.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are conflicting data on whether previous pelvic radiotherapy affects the outcome of AUS implantation.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The usefulness of tandem-cuff placement is uncertain.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is insufficient evidence to state whether one surgical approach for cuff placement is superior to another.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very limited short-term evidence suggests that the non-circumferential compression device (ProACT®) is effective for treatment of post-prostatectomy stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The non-circumferential compression device (ProACT®) is associated with a high failure and complication rate leading to frequent explantation.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The rate of explantation of the AUS because of infection or erosion remains high (up to 24% in some series).</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical failure is common with the AUS.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revision and re-implantation of AUS is possible after previous explantation or for mechanical failure.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consider offering duloxetine to hasten recovery of continence after prostate surgery but inform the patient about the possible adverse events.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only offer bulking agents to men with mild post-prostatectomy incontinence who desire temporary relief of incontinence symptoms.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer bulking agents to men with severe post-prostatectomy incontinence.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer fixed slings to men with mild-to-moderate post-prostatectomy incontinence.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn men that severe incontinence, prior pelvic radiotherapy or urethral stricture surgery, may worsen the outcome of fixed male sling surgery.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer AUS to men with moderate-to-severe post-prostatectomy incontinence.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implantation of AUS or artificial compression device (ACT) for men should only be offered in expert centres.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Warn men receiving AUS or ACT that, even in expert centres, there is a high risk of complications, mechanical failure or a need for explantation.

Do not offer non-circumferential compression device (ProACT®) to men who have had pelvic radiotherapy.

* The terms mild and moderate post-prostatectomy incontinence remain undefined.

### 4.3.6 Surgical interventions for refractory detrusor-overactivity

#### 4.3.6.1 Bladder wall injection of botulinum toxin A

Onabotulinum toxin A (onabotA; BOTOX®) 100 U dissolved in 10 mL of saline and injected in 20 points of the bladder wall above the trigone (0.5 mL per injection site) is licenced in Europe to treat OAB with persistent or refractory UUI in adults of both gender, despite the small number of males included in the registration trials [422, 423]. Surgeons must realise that other doses of onabotA and other formulations of botulinum toxin A, abobotulinum toxinA and incobotulinum toxin A, are not licensed for use in UUI. Doses for onabotA are not transposable to the other brands of botulinum toxin A. The continued efficacy of repeat injections is the rule but discontinuation rate may be high. The most important adverse events related to onabotA 100 U injection detected in the regulatory trials were UTI and an increase in PVR that may require clean intermittent catheterisation [424].

#### 4.3.6.1.1 Question

In adults with UUI, is bladder wall injection of onabotA better than no treatment for cure or improvement?

#### 4.3.6.1.2 Evidence

Following a dose ranging study in which the 100 U of onabotA was established as the ideal dose, two phase III trials randomised (1:1) 1,105 OAB incontinent patients whose symptoms were not adequately managed with anticholinergics to receive bladder wall injections of onabotA (100 U) or saline. At baseline the population had on average more than five episodes of UUI, around twelve micturitions per day and small PVR. At week twelve, in patients treated with onabotA UUI episodes/day were halved and number of micturitions/day reduced by more than two. A total of 22.9% of the patients in the onabotA arm were fully dry, against 6.5% in the saline arm [425].

Quality of life was substantially improved in the onabotA arm, as shown by the more than 60% of positive responses in the TBS questionnaire at week twelve, which was double the positive responses in the saline arm. Cohort studies have shown the effectiveness of bladder wall injections of onabotA in the elderly and frail elderly [426], though the success rate might be lower and the PVR (> 150 mL) higher in this group.

The median time to request retreatment in the pooled analysis of the two RCTs was 24 weeks [424, 425].

A recent RCT compared onabotA injection 100 U to solifenacin (with dose escalation or switch to trospium possible in the solifenacin group) and showed similar rates of improvement in UUI over the course of six months [427]. However, patients receiving onabotA were not only more likely to have cure of UUI (27% vs. 13%, p = 0.003), but also had higher rates of urinary retention during the initial two months (5% vs. 0%) and of UTIs (33% vs. 13%). Patients taking antimuscarinics were more likely to have dry mouth.

Identification of DO in urodynamics does not influence the outcome of onabotulinum toxin A injections in patients with UUI [58].

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>A single treatment session of onabotulinum toxin A (100 U) injected in the bladder wall is more effective than placebo at curing and improving urgency urinary incontinence and QoL.</strong></th>
<th>1a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>There is no evidence that repeated injections of onabotulinum toxin A have reduced efficacy.</strong></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>There is a high risk of increased post-void residual when injecting elderly frail patients.</strong></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The risk of bacteriuria after onabotulinum toxin A (100 U) injection is high but the clinical significance of this remains uncertain.</strong></td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Onabotulinum toxin A (100 U) is superior to solifenacin for cure of urgency urinary incontinence, but rates of improvement were equivalent.</strong></td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer bladder wall injections of onabotulinum toxin A (100 U) to patients with urgency urinary incontinence refractory to conservative therapy (such as pelvic floor muscle training and/or transdermal drug treatment).</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn patients of the limited duration of response, risk of urinary tract infection and the possible prolonged need to self-catheterise (ensure that they are willing and able to do so).</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**4.3.6.2 Sacral nerve stimulation (neuromodulation)**

In the first stage of a two-stage implantation, an electrode is placed percutaneously under fluoroscopic control in the sacral foramen alongside a sacral nerve, usually S3. In earlier techniques, a temporary wire electrode was used. More recently, a permanent tined electrode has been used for a longer test phase. Patients, in whom selected symptoms of UUI are reduced by more than 50% during the test phase, are candidates for the full implant, including the pulse generator and reported results only apply to this sub population.

**4.3.6.2.1 Question**

In adults suffering from refractory UUI, what is the clinical effectiveness of sacral nerve neuromodulation compared to alternative treatments?

**4.3.6.2.2 Evidence**

All randomised studies suffer from the limitation that assessors and patients were not blind to the treatment allocation since all recruited subjects had to respond to a test phase before randomisation. A Cochrane review of the literature until March 2008 [428] identified three RCTs that investigated sacral nerve stimulation in patients with refractory UUI.

One study compared implantation to controls who stayed on medical treatment and received delayed implantation at six months. Fifty percent of the immediately implanted group had > 90% improvement in UUI at six months compared to 1.6% of the control group [429]. The other RCT [430] achieved similar results, although these patients had already been included in the first report [429]. However, Weil et al. [430] showed that the effect on generic QoL measured by the SF-36, was unclear as it differed between the groups in only one of the eight dimensions.

The results of seventeen case series of patients with UUI, who were treated early in the experience with sacral nerve stimulation, were reviewed [431]. After a follow-up duration of between one and three years, approximately 50% of patients with UUI demonstrated > 90% reduction in UI, 25% demonstrated 50-90% improvement, and another 25% demonstrated < 50% improvement. Two case series describing the outcome of sacral nerve neuromodulation, with a mean or median follow-up of at least four years [432, 433] reported continued success (> 50% improvement on original symptoms) in patients available for follow-up. Cure rates for UUI were 15% [433].

Adverse events occurred in 50% of implanted cases, with surgical revision necessary in 33-41% [432, 433]. In a subanalysis of the RCT, the outcomes of UUI patients, with or without pre-implant DO, were compared. Similar success rates were found in patients with and without urodynamic DO [434].

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sacral nerve neuromodulation is more effective than continuation of failed conservative treatment for cure of urgency urinary incontinence, but no sham controls have been used.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In those patients who have been implanted, at long-term, 50% improvement of urgency urinary incontinence is maintained in at least 50% of patients and 15% may remain cured.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The use of tined, permanent electrodes in a staged approach results in more patients receiving the final implant than occurs with temporary test stimulation.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer sacral nerve modulation to patients who have urgency urinary incontinence refractory to antimuscarinic therapy.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.3.6.2.3 Research priority
An RCT comparing a strategy of botulinum toxin injection, repeated as required, against a strategy of test and permanent sacral nerve neuromodulation, with accompanying health economic analysis, is ongoing.

4.3.6.3 Cystoplasty/urinary diversion
4.3.6.3.1 Augmentation cystoplasty
In augmentation cystoplasty (also known as clam cystoplasty), a detubularised segment of bowel is inserted into the bivalved bladder wall. The distal ileum is the bowel segment most often used but any bowel segment can be used if it has the appropriate mesenteric length. One study did not find any difference between bivalving the bladder in the sagittal or in the coronal plane [435, 436].

There are no RCTs comparing bladder augmentation to other treatments for patients with UUI. Most often, bladder augmentation is used to correct neurogenic DO or small-capacity, low-compliant, bladders caused by fibrosis, tuberculosis, radiation or chronic infection.

The largest case series of bladder augmentation in a mixed population of idiopathic and neurogenic UUI included 51 women [437]. At an average follow-up of 74.5 months, only 53% were continent and satisfied with the surgery, whereas 25% had occasional leaks and 18% continued to have disabling UUI. It seems that the results for patients with idiopathic DO (58%) appeared to be less satisfactory than for patients with neurogenic UUI (90%).

Adverse effects were common and have been summarised in a review over five to seventeen years of more than 267 cases, 61 of whom had non-neurogenic UUI [438]. In addition, many patients may require clean intermittent self-catheterisation to obtain adequate bladder emptying (Table 3).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3: Complications of bladder augmentation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Short-term complications</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affected patients (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowel obstruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thromboembolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bleeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fistula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Long-term complications</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affected patients (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean intermittent self-catheterisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary tract infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary tract stones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic disturbance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deterioration in renal function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder perforation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change in bowel symptoms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3.6.3.2 Detrusor myectomy (bladder auto-augmentation)
Detrusor myectomy aims to increase bladder capacity and reduce storage pressures by incising or excising a portion of the detrusor muscle, to create a bladder mucosal ‘bulge’ or pseudo-diverticulum. It was initially described as an alternative to bladder augmentation in children [439]. Two case series [440, 441] in adult patients with idiopathic and neurogenic bladder dysfunction, demonstrated poor long-term results caused by fibrosis of the pseudo-diverticulum. This technique is rarely, if ever, used nowadays.

4.3.6.3.3 Urinary diversion
Urinary diversion remains a reconstructive option for patients who decline repeated surgery for UI. However, there are no studies that have specifically examined this technique in the treatment of non-neurogenic UI [435].

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is limited evidence on the effectiveness of augmentation cystoplasty and urinary diversion in treatment of idiopathic detrusor overactivity.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Augmentation cystoplasty and urinary diversion are associated with high risks of short-term and long-term severe complications.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The need to perform clean intermittent self-catheterisation following augmentation cystoplasty is very common. 3

There is no evidence comparing the efficacy or adverse effects of augmentation cystoplasty with urinary diversion. 3

Detrusor myectomy is ineffective in adults with urinary incontinence. 3

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Only offer augmentation cystoplasty to patients with detrusor overactivity incontinence who have failed conservative therapy, in whom the possibility of botulinum toxin and sacral nerve stimulation has been discussed.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn patients undergoing augmentation cystoplasty of the high risk of having to perform clean intermittent self-catheterisation; ensure they are willing and able to do so.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer detrusor myectomy as a treatment for urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only offer urinary diversion to patients who have failed less invasive therapies for the treatment of urinary incontinence and who will accept a stoma.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn patients undergoing augmentation cystoplasty or urinary diversion of the high risk of short-term and long-term complications, and the possible small risk of malignancy.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifelong follow-up is mandatory in patients who have undergone augmentation cystoplasty or urinary diversion.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3.7 **Surgery in patients with mixed urinary incontinence**

4.3.7.1 **Question**

In adults with MUI, is the outcome of surgery different to that obtained with the same treatment in patients with either pure SUI or pure UUI?

4.3.7.2 **Evidence**

Many RCTs include both patients with pure SUI or pure UUI and patients with MUI. However, very few RCTs report separate outcomes for MUI and pure UI groups.

**Transvaginal obturator tape**

In an RCT including 96 women with MUI, objective improvement was better for patients treated with transvaginal obturator tape + the Ingelman Sundberg operation vs. patients treated with obturator tape alone [442].

Post-hoc analysis of the SISTER trial showed that in women undergoing either autologous fascial sling or Burch colposuspension, the outcomes were poorer for women with a concomitant complaint of pre-operative urgency [325]. A similar post-hoc review of another RCT comparing transobturator and retropubic mid-urethral slings showed that the greater the severity of pre-operative urgency the more likely that treatment would fail [74]. However, an earlier study had found that surgery provided similar outcomes, whether or not urgency was present prior to surgery (this study included only a few patients with urodynamic DO).

Case series tend to show poorer results in patients with MUI compared with those with pure SUI. In a case series of 192 women undergoing mid-urethral sling insertion, overall satisfaction rates were lower for women with mixed symptoms and detrusor overactivity on pre-operative urodynamics compared to those with pure SUI and normal urodynamics (75% vs. 98%, respectively) [443]. A comparison of two parallel cohorts of patients undergoing surgery for SUI, with and without DO, found inferior outcomes in women with MUI [444].

One cohort of 450 women, showed that in urgency-predominant MUI, the success rate fell to 52% compared to 80% in stress-predominant MUI [445]. In a study with 1,113 women treated with transvaginal obturator tape, SUI was cured equally in stress-predominant MUI or urgency-predominant MUI. However, women with stress-predominant MUI were found to have significantly better overall outcomes than women with urgency predominant MUI [446].

Overall, the outcome for women with pre-existing urgency incontinence remains uncertain.
**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence Statement</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Women with mixed urinary incontinence are less likely to be cured of their urinary incontinence by stress urinary incontinence surgery than women with stress urinary incontinence alone.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The response of pre-existing urgency symptoms to stress urinary incontinence surgery is unpredictable and symptoms may improve or worsen.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treat the most bothersome symptom first in patients with mixed urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn patients with mixed urinary incontinence that surgery is less likely to be successful than surgery in patients with stress urinary incontinence alone.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn patients with mixed urinary incontinence that one single treatment may not cure urinary incontinence; it may be necessary to treat other components of the incontinence problem as well as the most bothersome symptom.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Upgraded following panel consensus.

**4.3.7.3 Research priorities**

Research trials should define accurately what is meant by ‘mixed urinary incontinence’. There is a need for well-designed trials comparing treatments in populations with MUI, and in which the type of MUI has been accurately defined.

**4.3.8 Surgery for urinary incontinence in the elderly**

There are no RCTs comparing surgical treatment in older vs. younger women although subgroup analyses of some RCTs have included a comparison of older with younger cohorts.

An RCT of 537 women comparing retropubic to transobturator tape, showed that cure rates decreased and failure increased with each decade over the age of 50 [447]. An RCT assessing risk factors for failure of tension free vaginal tape (TVT) vs. transobturator tension-free vaginal tape (TVT-O) in 162 women found that age is a specific risk factor (adjusted OR 1.7 per decade) for recurrence at one year [324]. In a subanalysis of the SISTER trial cohort of 655 women at 2 years of follow-up, it was shown that elderly women were more likely to have a positive stress test at follow-up (OR 3.7, 95% CI 1.7-7.97), are less likely to report objective or subjective improvement in stress and urgency UI, and are more likely to undergo retreatment for SUI (OR 3.9, 95% CI 1.3-11.48). There was no difference in time to normal post-operative voiding [325].

Another RCT compared immediate TVT vs. delayed TVT in older women, confirming significant efficacy for the women operated upon, but the cohort as a whole suffered higher complication rates, particularly bladder perforation (22%) and urinary retention (13%) [326].

A cohort study of 256 women undergoing inside-out TVT-O reported similar efficacy in older vs. younger women, but there was a higher risk of de novo urgency in older patients [327].

Cohort studies have shown the effectiveness of onabotulinum toxin A injections in the elderly and frail elderly [426, 448], although a comparison of cohort groups suggests that there is a lower success rate in the frail elderly and also a higher rate of increased PVR (> 150 mL) in this group.

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence Statement</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Older women benefit from surgical treatment for incontinence.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The risk of failure from surgical repair of stress urinary incontinence, or of suffering adverse events, appears to increase with age.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence that any surgical procedure has greater efficacy or safety in older women than another procedure.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inform older women with urinary incontinence about the increased risks associated with surgery (including onabotA injection), together with the lower probability of benefit.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 1: Management and treatment of women presenting with urinary incontinence.

Women presenting with urinary incontinence

Initial assessment
- History
- Physical examination
- Questionnaire optional
- Voiding diary
- Urinalysis
- Post-void residual if voiding difficulty
- Pad test if quantification of leakage is desired

Further assessment

Haematuria
Pain
Recurrent UTI
Grade 3 or symptomatic prolapse
Previous pelvic radiotherapy
Previous surgery for UI
Pelvic mass
Suspicion of fistula

Discuss management

Mixed incontinence
Stress incontinence
Urgency incontinence

Individualised behavioural and physical therapies including pelvic floor muscle training

Advise on bowels, drugs, co-morbidity, fluid intake
Advise on weight loss
Offer pads or other containment device if needed
Offer desmopressin for short-term symptom relief
Offer timed or promoted voiding in elderly/care-dependent people

Failed conservative or drug therapy - discuss surgical options

Anti-muscarinics
or mirabegron
Consider P-PTNS

No response
Surgical treatment in women

Failed conservative or drug therapy

Offer urodynamics if findings may change choice of surgery B

Stress incontinence

Offer MUS A

Offer fascial sling or colposuspension if MUS unavailable A

Failure

Re-evaluate patient and consider second-line surgery A

Mixed incontinence

Advise onabotulinumtoxin A or sacral nerve stimulation A

Urgency incontinence

Discuss bladder augmentation or urinary diversion C

*Based on expert opinion*
Figure 2: Management and treatment of men presenting with urinary incontinence.

**Men presenting with urinary incontinence**

**Initial assessment**
- History A*
- Physical examination A*
- Questionnaire optional B
- Voiding diary A
- Urinalysis A*
- Post-void residual if voiding difficulty B
- Pad test if quantification of leakage is desired C

**Further assessment**
- Haematuria
- Pain
- Recurrent UTI
- Previous pelvic radiotherapy
- Abnormal DRE
- Findings suspicious of voiding dysfunction

**Discuss management options**

**Individualised behavioural and physical therapies including pelvic floor muscle training**

**Stress incontinence**
- Advise on bowel function, drugs, co-morbidity, fluid intake C
- Advise on weight loss A
- Offer pads or other containment device if needed A*
- Offer desmopressin for short term symptom relief B
- Offer timed or promoted voiding in elderly/care-dependent people A

**Mixed incontinence**

**Urgency incontinence**
- Anti-muscarinics A
  or mirabegron B

**No response**
- Consider P-PTNS B

**Failed conservative or drug therapy - discuss surgical options**
Failed conservative or drug therapy

Perform urodynamics, cystoscopy and consider imaging of lower urinary tract
• to exclude bladder outlet obstruction
• if the result would alter the choice of surgery

Surgical treatment in men with UI

Stress incontinence

Mixed incontinence

Urgency incontinence

Offer AUS to men with PPI depending on severity

Consider fixed sling for men with PPI

Advise onabotulinumtoxin A or sacral nerve stimulation

Discuss bladder augmentation or urinary diversion

* Based on expert opinion

** Available evidence on onabotulinumtoxin A and sacral nerve stimulation refers mainly to women.
APPENDIX A: NON OBSTETRIC URINARY FISTULA

A.1 Introduction
The evidence relating to diagnosis and treatment of urinary fistulae is generally poor and this review inevitably relies largely on numerous case series and other consensus statements. In particular, the epidemiology, aetiology, diagnosis, treatment and prevention of non-obstetric fistulae have been described in detail during the recent International Consultations on Incontinence [449, 450]. Most non-obstetric fistulae are iatrogenic in origin, with causes including pelvic surgery (particularly hysterectomy for benign or malignant conditions, caesarean section and obstetric injuries). The risks during pelvic surgery increase relative to the complexity of the resection, the extent of primary disease and when there has been prior radiotherapy (especially for recurrent disease). When a fistula occurs following radiotherapy for primary treatment, this may be an indication of tumour recurrence.

A.2 Diagnosis of fistula

Clinical diagnosis
Leakage of urine is the hallmark sign of a fistula. The leakage is usually painless, may be intermittent if it is position dependent, or may be constant. Unfortunately, intra-operative diagnosis of a GU or GI injury is made in only about half of the cases that result in fistula [451].

The diagnosis of vesicovaginal fistula (VVF) usually requires clinical assessment often in combination with appropriate imaging or laboratory studies. Direct visual inspection, cystoscopy, retrograde bladder filling with a coloured fluid or placement of a tampon into the vagina to identify staining may facilitate the diagnosis of a VVF. A double-dye test to differentiate between a ureterovaginal and VVF may be useful in some cases [452]. Testing the creatinine level in either the extravasated fluid or the accumulated ascites and comparing this to the serum creatinine level will confirm urinary leakage.

Contrast-enhanced CT with late excretory phase reliably diagnoses urinary fistulae and provides information about ureteric integrity and the presence of associated urinoma. Magnetic resonance imaging, in particular with T2 weighting, also provides optimal diagnostic information regarding fistulae and may be preferred for urinary - intestinal fistulae [453].

A.3 Management of vesicovaginal fistula

A.3.1 Conservative management
Before epithelialisation is complete an abnormal communication between viscera will tend to close spontaneously, provided that the natural outflow is unobstructed or if urine is diverted. Combining available data gives an overall spontaneous closure rate of 13% ± 23% [2], though this applies largely to small fistulae [450]. Hence, immediate management should be by urinary catheterisation or diversion.

A.3.2 Surgical management
Timing of surgery
Findings from uncontrolled case series suggest no difference in success rates for early or delayed closure of VVF.

A.3.2.1 Surgical approaches
Vaginal procedures
There are two main types of closure techniques applied to the repair of urinary fistulae, the classical saucerisation/partial colpocleisis [454] and the more commonly used dissection and repair in layers or ‘flapsplitting’ technique [455]. There are no data comparing their outcomes.

Abdominal procedures
Repair by the abdominal route is indicated when high fistulae are fixed in the vault and are inaccessible through the vagina. A transvesical repair has the advantage of being entirely extraperitoneal. A simple transperitoneal repair is used less often although it is favoured by some using the laparoscopic approach. A combined transperitoneal and transvesical procedure is favoured by many urologists and is particularly useful for fistula repair following Caesarean section. There are no randomised studies comparing abdominal and vaginal approaches. Results of secondary and subsequent repairs are not as good as primary repair [456].

A single RCT compared trimming of the fistula edge with no trimming [457]. There was no difference in success rates but failed repairs in trimmed cases ended up with larger recurrences than untrimmed cases, which were smaller.
Laparoscopic and Robotic
Very small series (single figures) have been reported using these techniques, but whilst laparoscopic repair is feasible with and without robotic assistance, it is not possible to compare outcomes with alternative surgical approaches.

Tissue Interposition
Tissue flaps are often added as an additional layer of repair during VVF surgery. Most commonly, such flaps are utilised in the setting of recurrence after a prior attempt at repair, for VVF related to previous radiotherapy (described later), ischemic or obstetrical fistulae, large fistulae, and finally those associated with a difficult or tenuous closure due to poor tissue quality. However, there is no high-level evidence that the use of such flaps improves outcomes for either complicated or uncomplicated VVF.

Post-operative management
There is no high-level evidence to support any particular practice in post-operative management but most reported series used catheter drainage for at least ten days and longer periods in radiation-associated fistulae (up to three weeks).

A.4 Management of radiation fistula
Modified surgical techniques are often required, and indeed, where the same techniques have been applied to both surgical and post-radiation fistulae, the results from the latter have been consistently poorer [458]. Due to the wide field abnormality surrounding many radiotherapy-associated fistulae, approaches include, on the one hand, permanent urinary and/or faecal diversion [459, 460] or alternatively preliminary urinary and faecal diversion, with later undiversion in selected cases following reconstruction. This may in some cases extend life perhaps inappropriately, and where life expectancy is deemed to be very short, ureteric occlusion might be more appropriate.

A.5 Management of ureteric fistula
General principles
Patients at higher risk of ureteric injury require experienced surgeons who can identify and protect the ureter and its blood supply to prevent injury and also recognise injury promptly when it occurs. Immediate repair of any intra-operative injury should be performed observing the principles of debridement, adequate blood supply and tension free anastomosis with internal drainage using stents [461]. Delayed presentation of upper tract injury should be suspected in patients whose recovery after relevant abdominal or pelvic surgery is slower than expected, if there is any fluid leak, and if there is any unexpected dilatation of the pelvicalyceal system. Whilst there is no evidence to support the use of one surgical approach over another, there is consensus that repair should adhere to the standard principles of tissue repair and safe anastomosis, and be undertaken by an experienced team. Conservative management is possible with internal or external drainage, endoluminal management using nephrostomy and stenting where available, and early (< two weeks) or delayed (> three months) surgical repair when required [462]. Functional and anatomical imaging should be used to follow up patients after repair to guard against development of ureteric stricture and deterioration in renal function.

Ureterovaginal fistula
Ureterovaginal fistula occurring in the early post-operative phase predominantly after hysterectomy is the most frequent presentation of upper urinary tract fistulae in urological practice. An RCT in 3,141 women undergoing open or laparoscopic gynaecological surgery found that prophylactic insertion of ureteric stents made no difference to the low risk (1%) of ureteric injury [463].

Endoscopic management is sometimes possible [464] by retrograde stenting, percutaneous nephrostomy and antegrade stenting if there is pelvicalyceal dilatation, or ureteroscopic realignment [465].

If endoluminal techniques fail or result in secondary stricture, the abdominal approach to repair is standard and may require end-to-end anastomosis, re-implantation into the bladder using psoas hitch or Boari flap, or replacement with bowel segments with or without reconfiguration.

A.6 Management of urethrovaginal fistula
Aetiology
Whilst they are rare, most urethrovaginal fistulae in adults have an iatrogenic aetiology. Causes include surgical treatment of stress incontinence with bulking agents or synthetic slings, surgery for urethral diverticulum and genital reconstruction in adults. Irradiation and even conservative treatment of prolapse with pessaries can lead to the formation of fistulae.
A.6.1 **Diagnosis**
Clinical vaginal examination, including the three swab test, is often sufficient to diagnose the presence of a urethrovaginal fistula. Urethroscopy and cystoscopy can be performed to assess the extent and location of the fistulae. In cases of difficult diagnosis, voiding cystourethrography (VCUG) or ultrasound can be useful. 3D MRI or CT scan is becoming utilised more widely to clarify anatomy [466, 467].

A.6.2 **Surgical repair**
Choice of surgery will depend on the size, localisation and aetiology of the fistula and the amount of tissue loss. Principles of reconstruction include identifying the fistula, creation of a plane between vaginal wall and urethra, watertight closure of urethral wall, eventual interposition of tissue, and closure of the vaginal wall.

A.6.2.1 **Vaginal approach**
Goodwin described in his series that a vaginal approach yielded a success rate of 70% at first attempt and 92% at second attempt, but that an abdominal approach only leads to a successful closure in 58% of cases. A vaginal approach required less operating time, had less blood loss and a shorter hospitalisation time.

Most authors describe surgical principles that are identical to those of vesicovaginal fistula repair; primary closure rates of 53-95.4% have been described. Pushkar et al. described a series of 71 women, treated for urethrovaginal fistula. 90.1% of fistulae were closed at the first vaginal intervention. Additionally, 7.4% were closed during a second vaginal intervention. Despite successful closure, stress incontinence developed in 52%. The stress incontinent patients were treated with synthetic or autologous slings and nearly 60% became dry and an additional 32% improved. Urethral obstruction occurred in 5.6% and was managed by urethral dilation or urethrotomy [468].

**Flaps and neo-urethra.**
The simplest flap is a vaginal advancement flap to cover the urethral suture line. Labial tissue can be harvested as a pedicled skin flap. This labial skin can be used as a patch to cover the urethral defect, but can also be used to create a tubular neo-urethra [469, 470]. The construction of a neo-urethra has mostly been described in traumatic aetiologies. In some cases a transpubic approach has been used [471]. The numbers of patients reported are small and there are no data on the long-term outcome of fistula closure and continence rates. The underlying bulbocavernous tissue can be incorporated in the pedicled flap and probably offers a better vascularisation and more bulking to the repair. This could allow a safer placement of a sling afterwards, in those cases where bothersome stress incontinence would occur post-operatively [472, 473].

**Martius flap**
While in obstetrical fistula repair it was not found to have any benefit, in a large retrospective study in 440 women the labial bulbocavernosus muscle/fat flap by Martius is still considered by some to be an important adjunctive measure in the treatment of genitourinary fistulae where additional bulking with well vascularised tissue is needed [474]. The series of non-obstetrical aetiology are small and all of them are retrospective. There are no prospective data, nor randomised studies [475]. The indications for Martius flap in the repair of all types of fistulae remain unclear.

**Rectus muscle flap**
Rectus abdominis muscle flaps have been described by some authors [476, 477].

A.6.2.2 **Abdominal approach**
A retropubic retrourethral technique has been described by Korian [478]. This approach allows a urethrovesical flap tube to be fashioned to form a continent neo-urethra.
## Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Spontaneous closure of surgical fistulae does occur, although it is not possible to establish the rate with any certainty.</strong></th>
<th>LE 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>There is no evidence that the timing of repair makes a difference to the chances of successful closure of a fistula.</strong></td>
<td>LE 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>There is no high-quality evidence of differing success rates for repair of vesicovaginal fistulae data by vaginal, abdominal, transvesical and transperitoneal approaches.</strong></td>
<td>LE 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A period of continuous bladder drainage is crucial to successful fistula repair but there is no high-level evidence to support one regime over another.</strong></td>
<td>LE 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A variety of interpositional grafts can be used in either abdominal or vaginal procedures, although there is little evidence to support their use in any specific setting.</strong></td>
<td>LE 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Post-radiation fistula

| **Successful repair of irradiated fistulae requires prior urinary diversion and the use of non-irradiated tissues to effect repair.** | LE 3 |

### Ureteric fistula

| **Prophylactic ureteric stent insertion does not reduce risk of ureteric injury during gynaecological surgery.** | LE 2 |
| **Antegrade endoluminal distal ureteric occlusion combined with nephrostomy tube diversion often palliates urinary leakage due to malignant fistula in the terminal phase.** | LE 4 |

### Urethrovaginal fistula

| **Urethrovaginal fistula repair may be complicated by stress incontinence, urethral stricture and urethral shortening necessitating long-term follow-up.** | LE 3 |

## Recommendations

### General

| **Surgeons undertaking complex pelvic surgery should be competent at identifying, preserving and repairing the ureter.** | GR C |
| **Do not routinely use ureteric stents as prophylaxis against injury during routine gynaecological surgery.** | GR B |
| **Suspect ureteric injury or fistula in patients following pelvic surgery if a fluid leak or pelvicalyceal dilatation occurs post-operatively or if drainage fluid contains high levels of creatinine.** | GR C |
| **Suspect uretero-arterial fistula in patients presenting with haematuria with a history of relevant surgery.** | GR C |
| **Use three dimensional imaging techniques to diagnose and localise urinary fistulae.** | GR C |
| **Manage upper urinary tract fistulae by conservative or endoluminal technique where such expertise and facilities exists.** | GR B |

### Surgical principles

| **Surgeons involved in fistula surgery should have appropriate training, skills, and experience to select an appropriate procedure for each patient.** | GR C |
| **Attention should be given as appropriate to skin care, nutrition, rehabilitation, counselling and support prior to and following fistula repair.** | GR C |
| **If a vesicovaginal fistula is diagnosed within six weeks of surgery, consider indwelling catheterisation for a period of up to twelve weeks after the causative event.** | GR C |
| **Tailor the timing of fistula repair to the individual patient and surgeon requirements once any oedema, inflammation, tissue necrosis, or infection, are resolved.** | GR B |
| **Where concurrent ureteric re-implantation or augmentation cystoplasty are required, the abdominal approach is necessary.** | GR C |
| **Ensure that the bladder is continuously drained following fistula repair until healing is confirmed (expert opinion suggests: 10-14 days for simple and/or postsurgical fistulae; 14-21 days for complex and/or post-radiation fistulae).** | GR C |
| **Where urinary and/or faecal diversions are required, avoid using irradiated tissue for repair.** | GR C |
| **Use interposition grafts when repair of radiation associated fistulae is undertaken.** | GR C |
| **In patients with intractable urinary incontinence from radiation-associated fistula, where life expectancy is very short, consider performing ureteric occlusion.** | GR C |
| **Repair persistent ureterovaginal fistula by an abdominal approach using open, laparoscopic or robotic techniques according to availability and competence.** | GR C |
| **Consider palliation by nephrostomy tube diversion and endoluminal distal ureteric occlusion for patients with ureteric fistula associated with advanced pelvic cancer and poor performance status.** | GR C |
| **Urethrovaginal fistulae should preferably be repaired by a vaginal approach.** | GR C |
5. REFERENCES

   http://www.crd.york.ac.uk/PROSPERO/display_record.asp?ID=CRD42015027092
   http://training.cochrane.org/handbook
   http://www.jurology.com/article/S0022-5347(13)03402-2/abstract


6. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the Urinary Incontinence Guidelines Panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is publically accessible through the European Association of Urology website: http://uroweb.org/guideline/. This document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Neuro-Urology

B. Blok (Co-chair), J. Pannek (Co-chair) D. Castro-Diaz, G. del Popolo, J. Groen, R. Hamid, G. Karsenty, T.M. Kessler

© European Association of Urology 2017
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Aim and objectives</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Panel composition</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Available publications</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 Publication history</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 Background</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. METHODS</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Introduction</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Review</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. THE GUIDELINE</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1 Introduction</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Classification systems</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1 Introduction</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2 Definitions</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 Diagnostic evaluation</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1 Introduction</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2 Classification systems</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.3 Timing of diagnosis and treatment</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.4 Patient history</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.4.1 Bladder diaries</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.5 Patient quality of life questionnaires</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.5.1 Questions</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.5.2 Evidence</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6 Physical examination</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.1 Autonomic dysreflexia</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.2 Recommendations for history taking and physical examination</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.7 Urodynamics</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.7.1 Introduction</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.7.2 Urodynamic tests</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.7.3 Specialist uro-neurophysiological tests</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.7.4 Recommendations for urodynamics and uro-neurophysiology</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.8 Renal function</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 Disease management</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.1 Introduction</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2 Non-invasive conservative treatment</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.1 Assisted bladder emptying - Credé manoeuvre, Valsalva manoeuvre, triggered reflex voiding</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.2 Neuro-urological rehabilitation</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.2.1 Bladder rehabilitation including electrical stimulation</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.3 Drug treatment</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.3.1 Drugs for storage symptoms</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.3.2 Drugs for voiding symptoms</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.4 Recommendations for drug treatments</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.5 Minimally invasive treatment</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.5.1 Catheterisation</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.5.2 Recommendations for catheterisation</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.5.3 Intravesical drug treatment</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.5.4 Botulinum toxin injections in the bladder</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.5.5 Bladder neck and urethral procedures</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2.5.6 Recommendations for minimal invasive treatment*</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3 Surgical treatment</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3.1 Bladder neck and urethral procedures</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3.2 Denervation, deafferentation, sacral neuromodulation</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3.3 Bladder covering by striated muscle</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3.4 Bladder augmentation</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim and objectives
The European Association of Urology (EAU) Neuro-Urology Guidelines aim to provide information for clinical practitioners on the incidence, definitions, diagnosis, therapy, and follow-up of neuro-urological disorders. These Guidelines reflect the current opinion of experts in this specific pathology and represent a state-of-the-art reference for all clinicians, as of the publication date.

The terminology used and the diagnostic procedures advised throughout these Guidelines follow the recommendations for investigations of the lower urinary tract (LUT) as published by the International Continence Society (ICS) [1-3]. Readers are advised to consult other EAU Guidelines that may address different aspects of the topics discussed in this document.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition
The EAU Neuro-Urology Guidelines Panel consists of an international multidisciplinary group of neuro-urological experts. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements which can be viewed on the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/neuro-urology/.

1.3 Available publications
A quick reference document, the Pocket Guidelines, is also available, both in print and as a mobile application. These are abridged versions which may require consultation with the full text version. A guideline summary has also been published in European Urology [4]. All are available through the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/neurourology/.

1.4 Publication history
The EAU published the first Neuro-Urology Guidelines in 2003 with updates in 2008, 2014, and 2016. This 2017 document represents a limited update of the 2016 publication. The literature was assessed for all chapters.

1.5 Background
The function of the LUT is mainly storage and voiding of urine, which is regulated by the nervous system that co-ordinates the activity of the urinary bladder and bladder outlet. The part of the nervous system that regulates LUT function is disseminated from the peripheral nerves in the pelvis to highly specialised cortical areas. Any disturbance of the nervous system involved, can result in neuro-urological symptoms. The extent and location of the disturbance will determine the type of LUT dysfunction, which can be symptomatic or asymptomatic. Neuro-urological symptoms can cause a variety of long-term complications; the most significant being deterioration of renal function. Since symptoms and long-term complications do not correlate [5], it is important to identify patients with neuro-urological symptoms, and establish if they have a low or high risk of subsequent complications. The risk of developing upper urinary tract (UUT) damage and renal failure is much lower in patients with slowly progressive non-traumatic neurological disorders than in those with spinal cord injury or spina bifida [6]. In summary, treatment and intensity of follow-up examinations are based on the type of neuro-urological disorder and the underlying cause.

2. METHODS

2.1 Introduction
For the 2017 Neuro-Urology Guidelines, new and relevant evidence has been identified, collated and appraised through a structured assessment of the literature. A broad and comprehensive literature search, covering all sections of the Neuro-Urology Guidelines was performed. Databases searched included Medline, EMBASE, and the Cochrane Libraries, covering a time frame between January 1st 2013 and June 30th 2016. A total of 2,221 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance. A detailed search strategy is available online: http://uroweb.org/guideline/neuro-urology/?type=appendices-publications

Specific sections were updated by way of systematic reviews based on topics or questions prioritised by the Guideline Panel. These reviews were performed using standard Cochrane systematic review methodology: http://www.cochranelibrary.com/about/about-cochrane-systematicreviews.html.
Systematic review results included in the 2017 Neuro-Urology Guidelines are:

1. Continent catheterisable tubes/stomas in neuro-urological patients: A systematic review [7].
2. What is the long-term effectiveness and complication rate for bladder augmentation in patients with neurogenic bladder dysfunction [8]?

References used in this text are graded according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [9]. Additional information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/. A list of associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address.

2.2 Review
Publications ensuing from the systematic reviews have all been peer-reviewed. The 2015 Neuro-Urology Guidelines were subject to peer review prior to publication.

3. THE GUIDELINE

3.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

3.1.1 Introduction
Neuro-urological symptoms may be caused by a variety of diseases and events affecting the nervous system controlling the LUT. The resulting neuro-urological symptoms depend predominantly on the location and the extent of the neurological lesion. There are no exact figures on the overall prevalence of neuro-urological disorders in the general population, but data are available on the prevalence of the underlying conditions and the relative risk of these for the development of neuro-urological symptoms. It is important to note that the majority of the data shows a very wide range of prevalence/incidence. This reflects the variability in the cohort (e.g. early or late stage disease) and the frequently small sample sizes, resulting in a low level of evidence in most published data (summarised in Table 1).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neurological Disease</th>
<th>Frequency in General Population</th>
<th>Type and Frequency of Neuro-Urological Symptoms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cerebrovascular accident (Strokes)</td>
<td>450 cases/100,000/yr (Europe) [10], 10% of cardiovascular mortality.</td>
<td>Nocturia - overactive bladder (OAB)-urgency urinary incontinence (UUI) - detrusor overactivity (DO), other patterns less frequent [11]. 57-83% of neuro-urological symptoms at 1 month post stroke, 71-80% spontaneous recovery at 6 months [12]. Persistence of urinary incontinence (UI) correlates with poor prognosis [13].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dementias: Alzheimer’s disease (80%) Vascular (10%) Other (10%)</td>
<td>6.4% of adults &gt; 65 yrs [14].</td>
<td>OAB - UUI - DO 25% of incontinence in Alzheimer’s disease, &gt; 25% in other dementias: Lewy body, NPH, Binswanger, Nasu-Hakola, Pick Disease [15]. Incontinence 3 times more frequent in geriatric patients with dementia than without [16].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1: Epidemiology of Neuro-Urological Disorders
Parkinsonian syndrome (PS)  
Idiopathic Parkinson’s disease (IPD): 75-80% of PS  
Non-IPD: Parkinson’s-plus (18%):  
- Multiple system atrophy (MSA);  
- Progressive supranuclear palsy;  
- Corticobasal degeneration;  
- Dementia with Lewy bodies.  
Secondary Parkinson’s (2%)  
2nd most prevalent neurodegenerative disease after Alzheimer’s disease.  
Rising prevalence of IPD with age [17].  
MSA is the most frequent non-IPD PS.  
LUTS frequency 30% at onset, 70% after 5 yrs.  
Storage phase symptoms: Nocturia (78%) OAB - UUI - DO [18].  
OAB and DO at the initial phase, intrinsic sphincter deficiency and impaired contractility appear as the disease progress. Complications of neuro-urological symptoms (infections) account for a major cause of mortality in MSA [19].  
Impaired detrusor contractility seems to be the urodynamic finding distinguishing MSA from IPD [20, 21].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesions and diseases between caudal brainstem and sacral spinal cord</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord injury (SCI)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spina bifida (SB)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesions and diseases of the peripheral nervous system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Lumbar spine  
Degenerative disease  
Disk prolapse  
Lumbar canal stenosis  
Iatrogenic pelvic nerve lesions  
Peripheral neuropathy  
Diabetes  
Other causes of peripheral neuropathy causing neuro-urological symptoms: alcohol abuse; lumbosacral zona and genital herpes; Guillain Barré syndrome; porphyria; sarcoidosis | Male (5%) and female (3%) > 35 yr have had a lumboscutic episode related to disc prolapse.  
Incidence: approx. 5/100,000/yr More common in females > 45 yr.  
Rectal cancer.  
Cervical cancer (multimodal therapy, radiotherapy and surgery).  
Endometriosis surgery.  
Worldwide, prevalence of pharmacologically treated diabetes 8.3% [34]. | 26% difficulty to void and accontractile detrusor [32].  
Detrusor underactivity (up to 83%) [29].  
After abdomino-perineal resection (APR): 50% urinary retention. After total mesorectal excision (TME): 10-30% voiding dysfunction [33].  
Urgency/frequency +/-incontinence [35].  
Hyposensitive and detrusor underactivity at later phase [35]. |

| Brain tumours | 26.8/100,000/yr in adults (> 19 yrs), (17.9 benign, 8.9 malignant) [22]. | Incontinence occurs mainly in frontal location (part of frontal syndrome or isolated in frontal location) [23]. |
| Cerebral palsy | Cerebral palsy: 3.1-3.6/1,000 in children aged 8 yrs [24]. | 62% of women and 58% of men with cerebral palsy suffer from UI [25] 70% detrusor overactivity. Recurrent urinary tract infection (UTI) and radiologic abnormalities in > 10% of cases [24, 25]. |
| Traumatic brain injury | 235/100,000/yr [26] | 44% storage dysfunction. 38% voiding dysfunction, 60% urodynamic abnormalities [27]. |
### Disseminated central diseases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Prevalence: 83/100,000 in Europe [36].</th>
<th>10% of MS patients present with voiding dysfunction at disease onset, 75% of patients will develop it after 10 yrs of MS [37].</th>
<th>DO: 86% [37].</th>
<th>DSD: 35% [37].</th>
<th>Detrusor underactivity: 25% [37].</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### 3.2 Classification systems

#### 3.2.1 Introduction
Relevant definitions are found in the general ICS standardisation report [1, 2]. Section 3.2.2 lists the definitions from these references, partly adapted, and other definitions considered useful for clinical practice (Tables 2 and 3).

#### 3.2.2 Definitions

**Table 2: Definitions useful in clinical practice**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autonomic dysreflexia (AD)</td>
<td>An autonomic dysreflexia is a sudden and exaggerated autonomic response to various stimuli in patients with SCI or spinal dysfunction at or above level Th 6. It is defined as an increase in SBP &gt; 20 mmHg from baseline [38]. Autonomic dysreflexia may be symptomatic (headache, blurred vision, stuffy nose, piloerection, flushing, sweating above the lesion level (vasodilatation), pale and cold skin (vasoconstriction) below the lesion level or asymptomatic (silent).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder expression</td>
<td>Various manoeuvres aimed at increasing intravesical pressure in order to facilitate bladder emptying (abdominal straining, Valsalva's manoeuvre and Crede’s manoeuvre) [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder reflex triggering</td>
<td>Various manoeuvres performed by the patient or the therapist in order to elicit reflex detrusor contraction by exteroceptive stimuli (suprapubic tapping, thigh scratching and anal/rectal manipulation) [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder sensation, absent</td>
<td>During history taking, the patient reports no sensation of bladder filling or desire to void [3]. During filling cystometry, the patient has no bladder sensation [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder sensation, normal</td>
<td>During history taking, the patient is aware of bladder filling and increasing sensation up to a strong desire to void [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First sensation of bladder filling</td>
<td>The feeling, during filling cystometry, when the patient first becomes aware of the bladder filling [3]. During filling cystometry, can further be judged by the two following defined points and evaluated in relation to the bladder volume at that moment and in relation to the patient’s symptomatic complaints [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First desire to void</td>
<td>The feeling, during filling cystometry, that would lead the patient to pass urine at the next convenient moment, but voiding can be delayed if necessary [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strong desire to void</td>
<td>Persistent desire to void, during filling cystometry, without the fear of leakage [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder sensation, increased</td>
<td>During history taking, the patient feels an early and persistent desire to void [3]. During filling cystometry, an early first sensation of bladder filling (or an early desire to void) and/or an early strong desire to void, which occurs at low bladder volume and which persists. It is a subjective assessment, not possible to quantify [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder sensation, non-specific</td>
<td>During history taking, the patient reports no specific bladder sensation but may perceive bladder filling as abdominal fullness, vegetative symptoms, or spasticity [3]. During filling cystometry, may make the patient aware of bladder filling, for example, abdominal fullness or vegetative symptoms [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder sensation, reduced</td>
<td>During history taking, the patient is aware of bladder filling but does not feel a definite desire to void [3]. During filling cystometry, a diminished sensation throughout bladder filling [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catheterisation</td>
<td>Technique for bladder emptying employing a catheter to drain the bladder or a urinary reservoir [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catheterisation, indwelling</td>
<td>An indwelling catheter remains in the bladder, urinary reservoir or urinary conduit for a period of time longer than one emptying [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catheterisation, intermittent (IC)</td>
<td>Drainage or aspiration of the bladder or a urinary reservoir with subsequent removal of the catheter [3]. When not specified “self”, it is performed by an attendant (e.g. doctor, nurse or relative).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aseptic IC</td>
<td>Use of a sterile technique. This implies genital disinfection and the use of sterile catheters and instruments/gloves [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean IC</td>
<td>Use of a clean technique. This implies ordinary washing techniques and use of disposable or cleansed reusable catheters [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermittent self-catheterisation</td>
<td>Performed by the patient him/herself [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daytime frequency, increased</td>
<td>Complaint by the patient who considers that he/she voids too often by day. This term is equivalent to pollakiuria used in many countries [3]. Many population-based studies of OAB have defined frequency as either eight or more voids/day, or eight or more voids/24 hours [39].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diary, bladder</td>
<td>Records the times of micturitions and voided volumes, incontinence episodes, pad usage and other information such as fluid intake, the degree of urgency and the degree of incontinence [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency volume chart (FVC)</td>
<td>Records the volumes voided as well as the time of each micturition, day and night, for at least 24 hours [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micturition time chart</td>
<td>Records only the times of micturitions, day and night, for at least 24 hours [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enuresis</td>
<td>Any involuntary loss of urine. If it is used to denote incontinence during sleep, it should always be qualified with the adjective “nocturnal” [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hesitancy</td>
<td>Difficulty in initiating micturition resulting in a delay in the onset of voiding after the individual is ready to pass urine [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermittent stream (Intermittency)</td>
<td>Urine flow which stops and starts, on one or more occasions, during micturition [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motor neuron lesion, lower (LMNBL)</td>
<td>Lesion resulting from damage to motor neurons of the ventral horns or motor neuron of the cranial nerve nuclei, or resulting from interruption of the final common pathway connecting the neuron via its axon with the muscle fibres it innervates (the motor unit) [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motor neuron lesion, upper (UMNBL)</td>
<td>Lesion resulting from damage to cortical neurons that give rise to corticospinal and corticobulbar tracts. It may occur at all levels of the neuraxis from the cerebral cortex to the spinal cord. When rostral to the pyramidal decussation of the caudal medulla, they result in deficits below the lesion, on the contralateral side. When caudal to the pyramidal decussation, they result in deficits below the lesion, on the ipsilateral side [40].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurogenic shock</td>
<td>Loss of vascular tone in part of the body deprived of supraspinal control. It commonly occurs during the acute period following spinal cord injury (SCI) and is associated with failure of the sympathetic nervous system. In this condition, systolic blood pressure &lt; 90 mmHg in the supine posture is not the result of low intravascular volume (e.g. blood loss, dehydration, sepsis, cardiac disorders) [38].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal shock</td>
<td>Characterised by marked reductions in spinal reflex activity below the level of injury [38].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nocturia</td>
<td>The complaint that the individual has to wake at night one or more times to void [3]. Each void is preceded and followed by sleep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nocturnal polyuria</td>
<td>It is present when an increased proportion of the 24-hour output occurs at night (normally during the 8 hours whilst the patient is in bed). The night time urine output excludes the last void before sleep but includes the first void of the morning [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction (NLUTD)</td>
<td>Lower urinary tract dysfunction (LUTD) secondary to confirmed pathology of the nervous supply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthostatic hypotension</td>
<td>Symptomatic (dizziness, headache or neck ache, fatigue) or asymptomatic decrease in blood pressure defined as a drop of at least 20 mmHg systolic or 10 mmHg diastolic within 3 minutes of moving from the supine to an upright position [2, 39].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overactive bladder syndrome (also urge syndrome or urgency-frequency syndrome)</td>
<td>Urgency, with or without urge incontinence, usually with frequency and nocturia [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain, genital and lower urinary tract</td>
<td>Abnormal sensations felt by the individual as pain, discomfort and pressure. Should be characterised by type, frequency, duration, precipitating and relieving factors and by location [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder pain</td>
<td>During history taking, pain that is felt suprapubically or retropubically, and usually increases with bladder filling, it may persist after voiding [3]. During filling cystometry, is an abnormal finding [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic pain</td>
<td>Is less well defined than, for example, bladder, urethral or perineal pain and is less clearly related to the micturition cycle or to bowel function and is not localised to any single pelvic organ [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perineal pain</td>
<td>In females, between the posterior fourchette (posterior lip of the introitus) and the anus. In males, between the scrotum and the anus [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scrotal pain</td>
<td>May or may not be localised, for example to the testis, epididymis, cord structures or scrotal skin [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral pain</td>
<td>Pain that is felt in the urethra and the individual indicates the urethra as the site [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaginal pain</td>
<td>Is felt internally, above the introitus [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vulvar pain</td>
<td>Is felt in and around the external genitalia [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic organ prolapse</td>
<td>Descent of one or more of the anterior vaginal wall, the posterior vaginal wall, and the apex of the vagina (cervix/uterus) or vault (cuff) after hysterectomy. Absence of prolapse is defined as stage 0 support; prolapse can be staged from stage I to stage IV [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow stream</td>
<td>Perception of reduced urine flow, usually compared to previous performance or in comparison to others [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord injury</td>
<td>Incomplete: if partial preservation of sensory and/or motor functions is found below the neurological level and includes the lowest sacral segment. Complete: when there is an absence of sensory and motor function in the lowest sacral segment [41].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cauda equina</td>
<td>Injuries affecting the cauda equina and generally causing an acontractile or lower motor neuron picture affecting the LUT, distal bowel and sexual function [38].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conal</td>
<td>Injuries affecting the conus medullaris of the spinal cord and often causing a mixed lesion to the LUT, distal bowel and sexual functions with a resultant either overactive or acontractile picture [38].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supraconal</td>
<td>Injuries occurring above the conus medullaris. In general, supraconal injuries cause an overactive or upper motor neuron pattern of damage affecting the LUT, distal bowel and sexual functions [38].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straining to void</td>
<td>Muscular effort used to either initiate, maintain or improve the urinary stream [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal dribble</td>
<td>Prolonged final part of micturition, when the flow has slowed to a trickle/dribble [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urgency</td>
<td>The complaint of a sudden compelling desire to pass urine which is difficult to defer [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary incontinence (UI)</td>
<td>Complaint of any involuntary leakage of urine [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stress urinary incontinence (SUI)</td>
<td>Complaint of involuntary leakage on effort or exertion, or on sneezing or coughing [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urge urinary incontinence (UUI)</td>
<td>Complaint of involuntary leakage accompanied by or immediately preceded by urgency [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed urinary incontinence</td>
<td>Complaint of involuntary leakage associated with urgency and also with exertion, effort, sneezing or coughing [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous urinary incontinence</td>
<td>Complaint of continuous leakage [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voided volume, maximum</td>
<td>The largest volume of urine voided during a single micturition which is determined either from the frequency/volume chart or bladder diary [3].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3: Definitions useful when interpreting urodynamic studies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bladder compliance</td>
<td>Relationship between change in bladder volume and change in detrusor pressure. Compliance is calculated by dividing the volume change ($\Delta V$) by the associated change in detrusor pressure ($\Delta p_{det}$) during the change in bladder volume ($C = \Delta V/\Delta p_{det}$). It is expressed in mL/cm H$_2$O [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder filling, artificial</td>
<td>Filling the bladder, via a catheter, with a specified liquid at a specified rate [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder filling, natural</td>
<td>The bladder is filled by the production of urine rather than by an artificial medium [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder outlet obstruction</td>
<td>Generic term for obstruction during voiding, characterised by increased detrusor pressure and reduced urine flow rate. It is usually diagnosed by studying the synchronous values of flow rate and detrusor pressure [40].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystometric capacity</td>
<td>The bladder volume at the end of the filling cystometrogram, when “permission to void” is usually given. The volume voided together with any residual urine [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum anaesthetic bladder capacity</td>
<td>The volume to which the bladder can be filled under deep general or spinal anaesthetic and should be qualified according to the type of anaesthesia used, the speed, the length of time, and the pressure at which the bladder is filled [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum cystometric capacity</td>
<td>In patients with normal sensation, the volume at which the patient feels they can no longer delay micturition (has a strong desire to void) [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detrusor function, normal</td>
<td>Allows bladder filling with little or no change in pressure. No involuntary phasic contractions occur despite provocation [40]. Normal voiding is achieved by a voluntarily initiated continuous detrusor contraction that leads to complete bladder emptying within a normal time span, and in the absence of obstruction. For a given detrusor contraction, the magnitude of the recorded pressure rise will depend on the degree of outlet resistance [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detrusor overactivity</td>
<td>Urodynamic observation characterised by involuntary detrusor contractions during the filling phase which may be spontaneous or provoked [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detrusor overactivity incontinence</td>
<td>Incontinence due to an involuntary detrusor contraction [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idiopathic detrusor overactivity</td>
<td>When there is no defined cause [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phasic detrusor overactivity</td>
<td>Is defined by a characteristic wave form and may or may not lead to UI [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurogenic detrusor overactivity</td>
<td>When there is a relevant neurological condition present [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal detrusor overactivity</td>
<td>A single, involuntary detrusor contraction, occurring at cystometric capacity, which cannot be suppressed and results in incontinence usually resulting in bladder emptying (voiding) [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detrusor sphincter dyssynergia (DSD)</td>
<td>A detrusor contraction concurrent with an involuntary contraction of the urethral and/or periurethral striated muscle. Occasionally, flow may be prevented altogether [3]. This term is specific to patients with a neurological diagnosis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detrusor underactivity</td>
<td>Contraction of reduced strength and/or duration, resulting in prolonged bladder emptying and/or a failure to achieve complete bladder emptying within a normal time span [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acontractile detrusor</td>
<td>Detrusor that cannot be demonstrated to contract during urodynamic studies [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysfunctional voiding</td>
<td>Intermittent and/or fluctuating flow rate due to involuntary intermittent contractions of the peri-urethral striated muscle during voiding in neurologically normal individuals [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filling cystometry</td>
<td>Method by which the pressure/volume relationship of the bladder is measured during bladder filling [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filling rate, physiological</td>
<td>Filling rate less than the predicted maximum - body weight (kg) /4 in mL/min [3, 42].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filling rate, non-physiological</td>
<td>Filling rate greater than the predicted maximum filling rate [3, 42].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leak point pressure, abdominal (ALPP)</td>
<td>The intravesical pressure at which urine leakage occurs due to increased abdominal pressure in the absence of a detrusor contraction [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leak point pressure, detrusor (DLPP)</td>
<td>The lowest detrusor pressure at which urine leakage occurs in the absence of either a detrusor contraction or increased abdominal pressure [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-relaxing urethral sphincter obstruction</td>
<td>Characterised by a non-relaxing, obstructing urethra resulting in reduced urine flow. Usually occurs in individuals with a neurological lesion [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post void residual (PVR)</td>
<td>The volume of urine left in the bladder at the end of micturition [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure flow study</td>
<td>Method by which the relationship between pressure in the bladder and urine flow rate is measured during bladder emptying [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provocative manoeuvres</td>
<td>Techniques used during urodynamics in an effort to provoke detrusor overactivity, for example, rapid filling, use of cooled or acid medium, postural changes and hand washing [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral closure mechanism, incompetent</td>
<td>Allows leakage of urine in the absence of a detrusor contraction [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral relaxation incontinence</td>
<td>Leakage due to urethral relaxation in the absence of raised abdominal pressure or detrusor overactivity [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral closure mechanism, normal</td>
<td>Maintains a positive urethral closure pressure during bladder filling even in the presence of increased abdominal pressure, although it may be overcome by detrusor overactivity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral pressure</td>
<td>The fluid pressure needed to just open a closed urethra [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral pressure, maximum</td>
<td>The maximum pressure of the measured profile [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral pressure profile</td>
<td>A graph indicating the intraluminal pressure along the length of the urethra [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral closure pressure profile</td>
<td>Is given by the subtraction of intravesical pressure from urethral pressure [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral closure pressure, maximum (MUCP)</td>
<td>The maximum difference between the urethral pressure and the intravesical pressure [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral functional profile length</td>
<td>The length of the urethra along which the urethral pressure exceeds intravesical pressure in women [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral pressure “transmission” ratio</td>
<td>The increment in urethral pressure on stress as a percentage of the simultaneously recorded increment in intravesical pressure [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urodynamic stress incontinence</td>
<td>The involuntary leakage of urine during increased abdominal pressure, in the absence of a detrusor contraction [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urodynamic study, ambulatory</td>
<td>Functional test of the lower urinary tract, utilising natural filling, and reproducing the subject’s every day activities [3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urodynamic study, conventional</td>
<td>Normally takes place in the urodynamic laboratory and usually involve artificial bladder filling [3].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.3 Diagnostic evaluation

#### 3.3.1 Introduction

The normal physiological function of the LUT depends on an intricate interplay between the sensory and motor nervous systems. When diagnosing neuro-urological symptoms, the aim is to describe the type of dysfunction...
involved. A thorough medical history, physical examination and bladder diary are mandatory before any additional diagnostic investigations can be planned. Results of the initial evaluation are used to decide the patient’s long-term treatment and follow-up.

3.3.2 Classification systems
The pattern of LUT dysfunction following neurological disease is determined by the site and nature of the lesion. A very simple classification system for use in daily clinical practice to decide on the appropriate therapeutic approach is provided in Figure 1 [6].

Figure 1: Patterns of lower urinary tract dysfunction following neurological disease

The pattern of LUT dysfunction following neurological disease is determined by the site and nature of the lesion. Panel (A) denotes the region above the pons, panel (B) the region between the pons and the sacral cord and panel (C) the sacral cord and infrasacral region. Figures on the right show the expected dysfunctional states of the detrusor-sphincter system. Figure adapted from Panicker et al. [6] with permission from Elsevier. PVR = post-void residual.

3.3.3 Timing of diagnosis and treatment
Early diagnosis and treatment are essential in both congenital and acquired neuro-urological disorders [43]. This helps to prevent irreversible changes within the LUT, even in the presence of normal reflexes [44, 45]. Furthermore, urological symptoms can be the presenting feature of neurological pathology [46, 47]. Early intervention can prevent irreversible deterioration of the LUT and UUT [48].

3.3.4 Patient history
History taking should include past and present symptoms and disorders (Table 4). It is the cornerstone of evaluation, as the answers will aid in diagnostic investigations and treatment options.

- In non-traumatic neuro-urological patients with an insidious onset, a detailed history may find that the condition started in childhood or adolescence [49].
- Urinary history consists of symptoms associated with both urine storage and emptying.
- Bowel history is important because patients with neuro-urological symptoms may also have related neurogenic bowel dysfunction [50].
- Sexual function may be impaired because of the neuro-urological condition [51].
- Special attention should be paid to possible warning signs and symptoms (e.g. pain, infection, haematuria and fever) requiring further investigation.
- Patients with SCI usually find it difficult to report UTI-related symptoms accurately [52, 53].
- The presence of urinary, bowel and sexual symptoms without neurological symptoms could be suggestive of an underlying neurological disease or condition.
- Ambulatory status after acute SCI does not predict presence or absence of unfavourable urodynamic parameters [54].

**Table 4: History taking in patients with suspected neuro-urological disorder**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past history</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Childhood through to adolescence and into adulthood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereditary or familial risk factors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific female: Menarche (age); this may suggest a metabolic disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstetric history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History of diabetes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diseases, e.g. multiple sclerosis, parkinsonism, encephalitis, syphilis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accidents and operations, especially those involving the spine and central nervous system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present history</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present medication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifestyle (smoking, alcohol and drugs); may influence urinary, sexual and bowel function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality of life</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specific urinary history</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Onset of urological history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relief after voiding; to detect the extent of a neurological lesion in the absence of obstructive uropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiation of micturition (normal, precipitate, reflex, strain, Credé)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interruption of micturition (normal, paradoxical, passive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enuresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode and type of voiding (catheterisation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency, voided volume, incontinence, urgency episodes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sexual history</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genital or sexual dysfunction symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensation in genital area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific male: erection, (lack of) orgasm, ejaculation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific female: dyspareunia, (lack of) orgasm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bowel history</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frequency and faecal incontinence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desire to defecate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defecation pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectal sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiation of defecation (digitation)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neurological history</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acquired or congenital neurological condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mental status and comprehension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurological symptoms (somatic and sensory), with onset, evolution and any treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spasticity or autonomic dysreflexia (especially in lesions at or above level Th 6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobility and hand function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3.3.4.1 Bladder diaries**

Bladder diaries provide data on the number of voids, voided volume, pad weight and incontinence and urgency episodes. Although a 24 hour bladder diary (recording should be done for three consecutive days) is reliable in women with UI [55, 56], no research has been done on bladder diaries in neuro-urological patients.
Nevertheless, bladder diaries are considered a valuable diagnostic tool.

### 3.3.5 Patient quality of life questionnaires

An assessment of the patient's present and expected future quality of life (QoL) is important to evaluate the effect of any therapy. Quality of life is an essential aspect of the overall management of neuro-urological patients, for example when evaluating treatment related changes on a patient's QoL [57]. The type of bladder management has been shown to affect health-related QoL (HRQoL) in patients with SCI [58] and MS [59]. Other research has also highlighted the importance of urological treatment and its impact on the urodynamic functionality of the neuro-urological patient in determining patient QoL [60].

In recent years a proliferation in the number of questionnaires to evaluate symptoms and QoL has been seen. Condition-specific questionnaires can be used to assess symptom severity and the impact of symptoms on QoL. A patient's overall QoL can be assessed using generic questionnaires. It is important that the questionnaire of choice has been validated in the neuro-urological population, and that it is available in the language that it is to be used in.

#### 3.3.5.1 Questions

- Which validated patient questionnaires are available for neuro-urological patients?
- Which questionnaires are the most appropriate for use in neuro-urological patients?

#### 3.3.5.2 Evidence

Three condition-specific questionnaires for urinary or bowel dysfunction and QoL have been developed specifically for adult neuro-urological patients [61]. In MS and SCI patients the Qualiveen [62, 63] is validated and can be used for urinary symptoms. A short form of the Qualiveen is available [62, 63] and it has been translated into various languages [64-67]. The Neurogenic Bladder Symptom Score (NBSS) has been validated in neurological patients to measure urinary symptoms and their consequences [68]. The QoL scoring tool related to Bowel Management (QoL-BM) [69] can be used to assess bowel dysfunction in MS and SCI patients.

In addition, sixteen validated questionnaires that evaluate QoL and assess urinary symptoms as a subscale or question in neuro-urological patients have been identified [70] (Table 5). The condition-specific Incontinence-Quality of Life (I-QoL) questionnaire which was initially developed for the non-neurological population has now also been validated for neuro-urological patients [71].

A patient's overall QoL can be assessed by generic HRQoL questionnaires, the most commonly used being the Incontinence Quality of Life Instrument (I-QOL), King's Health Questionnaire (KHQ), or the Short Form 36-item and 12-item Health Survey Questionnaires (SF-36, SF-12) [61]. In addition, the quality-adjusted life year (QALY), quantifies outcomes, by weighing years of life spent in a specified health state, adjusted by a factor representing the value placed by society or patients on their specific health state [72].

No evidence was found for which validated questionnaires are the most appropriate for use, since no quality criteria for validated questionnaires have been assessed [73].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questionnaire</th>
<th>Underlying neurological disorder</th>
<th>Bladder</th>
<th>Bowel</th>
<th>Sexual function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FAMS [74]</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FILMS [75]</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAQUAMS [76]</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IQOL [71]</td>
<td>MS, SCI</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDS [77]</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSISQ-15 / MSISQ-19 [78, 79]</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSQOL [80]</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSQoL-L-54 [81]</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSWDO [82]</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NBSS [83]</td>
<td>MS, SCI, Congenital neurogenic bladder</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QoL-BM [69]</td>
<td>SCI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualiveen/SF-Qualiveen [63, 84]</td>
<td>MS, SCI</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAYS [85]</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHSCIR [86]</td>
<td>SCI</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Franceschini [85]</td>
<td>SCI</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.3.6  **Physical examination**

In addition to a detailed patient history, attention should be paid to possible physical and intellectual disabilities with respect to the planned investigations. Neuro-urological status should be described as completely as possible (Figure 2). Patients with a high spinal cord lesion or supraspinal neurological lesions may suffer from a significant drop in blood pressure when moved into a sitting or standing position. All sensations and reflexes in the urogenital area must be tested. Furthermore, detailed testing of the anal sphincter and pelvic floor functions must be performed (Figure 2). It is essential to have this clinical information to reliably interpret later diagnostic investigations.

3.3.6.1  **Autonomic dysreflexia**

Autonomic dysreflexia is a sudden and exaggerated autonomic response to various stimuli in patients with SCI or spinal dysfunction. It generally manifests at or above level Th 6. The stimulus can be distended bladder or bowel. For example, iatrogenic stimuli during cystoscopy or urodynamics can trigger AD [87]. It can also be secondary to sexual stimulation or a noxious stimulus, e.g. infected toe nail or pressure sore. Autonomic dysreflexia is defined by an increase in systolic blood pressure > 20 mmHg from baseline [38] and can have life-threatening consequences if not properly managed [88].

**Figure 2: Lumbosacral dermatomes, cutaneous nerves, and reflexes**

The physical examination includes testing sensations and reflexes mediated through the lower spinal cord. Abnormal findings would suggest a lesion affecting the lumbosacral segments; mapping out distinct areas of sensory impairment helps to further localise the site of the lesion. Distribution of dermatomes (areas of skin mainly supplied by a single spinal nerve) and cutaneous nerves over the perianal region and back of the upper thigh (A), the perineum [89] (B), male external genitalia [90] (C) and root values of lower spinal cord reflexes (D). Figure adapted from Panicker et al. [6] with parts A-C adapted from Standring [91], both with permission from Elsevier.
Table 6: Neurological items to be specified

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sensation S2-S5 (both sides)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Presence (increased/normal/reduced/absent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type (light touch/pin prick)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affected dermatomes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reflexes (increased/normal/reduced/absent)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bulbocavernous reflex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perianal/anal reflex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knee and ankle reflexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plantar responses (Babinski)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anal sphincter tone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Presence (increased/normal/reduced/absent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voluntary contractions of anal sphincter and pelvic muscles (increased/normal/reduced/absent)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prostate palpation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Descensus (prolapse) of pelvic organs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.3.6.2 Recommendations for history taking and physical examination

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>History taking</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take an extensive general history, concentrating on past and present symptoms including urinary, sexual, bowel, and neurological functions.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pay special attention to the possible existence of alarm signs (e.g. pain, infection, haematuria, fever) that warrant further specific diagnosis.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take a specific history for each of the four mentioned functions.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess quality of life when evaluating and treating the neuro-urological patient.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use available validated tools including the Qualiveen and I-QoL for urinary symptoms and the QoL-BM for bowel dysfunction in multiple sclerosis and spinal cord injury patients. In addition, generic (SF-36 or KHQ) questionnaires can be used.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Physical examination</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acknowledge individual patient disabilities when planning further investigations.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Describe the neurological status as completely as possible, sensations and reflexes in the urogenital area must all be tested.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test the anal sphincter and pelvic floor functions.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform urinalysis, blood chemistry, bladder diary, residual and free flowmetry, incontinence quantification and urinary tract imaging.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* All grade A recommendations are based on panel consensus.

i-QoL = Incontinence Quality of Life Instrument; QoL-BM = Quality of Life Bowel Management scoring tool; KHQ = King's Health Questionnaire; SF-36 = Short Form 36-item Health Survey Questionnaires.

3.3.7 Urodynamics

3.3.7.1 Introduction

Urodynamic investigation is the only method that can objectively assess the function and dysfunction of the LUT. In neuro-urological patients, invasive urodynamic investigation is even more challenging than in general patients. Any technical source of artefacts must be critically considered. It is essential to maintain the quality of the urodynamic recording and its interpretation [1]. Same session repeat urodynamic investigations are crucial in clinical decision making, since repeat measurements may yield completely different results [92].

In patients at risk for AD, it is advisable to measure blood pressure during the urodynamic study [93]. The rectal ampulla should be empty of stool before the start of the investigation. All urodynamic findings must be reported in detail and performed, according to the ICS technical recommendations and standards [1, 94].

3.3.7.2 Urodynamic tests

*Free uroflowmetry and assessment of residual urine:* Provides a first impression of the voiding function and is compulsory prior to planning any invasive urodynamics in patients able to void. For reliable information, it should be repeated at least two to three times [1]. Possible pathological findings include a low flow rate, low voided volume, intermittent flow, hesitancy and residual urine. Care must be taken when assessing the results in patients unable to void in a normal position, as both flow pattern and rate may be modified by inappropriate positions.
**Filling cystometry:** This test is the only method for quantifying the patient’s filling function. The status of LUT function must be documented during the filling phase. However, this technique has limited use as a solitary procedure. It is much more effective combined with bladder pressure measurement during micturition and is even more effective in video-urodynamics.

The bladder should be empty at the start of filling. A physiological filling rate should be used with body-warm saline. Possible pathological findings include DO, low bladder compliance, abnormal bladder sensations, incontinence, and an incompetent or relaxing urethra.

**Detrusor leak point pressure (DLPP) [95]:** Appears to have no use as a diagnostic tool. Some positive findings have been reported [96, 97], but sensitivity is too low to estimate the risk to the UUT or for secondary bladder damage [98, 99].

**Pressure flow study:** Reflects the co-ordination between detrusor and urethra or pelvic floor during the voiding phase. It is even more powerful if combined with filling cystometry and video-urodynamics. Lower urinary tract function must be recorded during the voiding phase. Possible pathological findings include detrusor underactivity, bladder outlet obstruction (BOO), DSD, a high urethral resistance, and residual urine.

Most types of obstruction caused by neuro-urological disorders are due to DSD [100, 101], non-relaxing urethra, or non-relaxing bladder neck [102, 103]. Pressure-flow analysis mainly assesses the amount of mechanical obstruction caused by the urethra’s inherent mechanical and anatomical properties and has limited value in patients with neuro-urological disorders.

**Electromyography (EMG):** Reflects the activity of the external urethral sphincter, the peri-urethral striated musculature, the anal sphincter and the striated pelvic floor muscles. Correct interpretation may be difficult due to artefacts introduced by other equipment. In the urodynamic setting, an EMG is useful as a gross indication of the patient’s ability to control the pelvic floor. Possible pathological findings include inadequate recruitment upon specific stimuli (e.g. bladder filling, involuntary detrusor contractions, onset of voiding, coughing, Valsalva manoeuvre) suggesting a diagnosis of DSD [104].

**Urethral pressure measurement:** Has a very limited role in neuro-urological disorders. There is no consensus on parameters indicating pathological findings [105].

**Video-urodynamics:** Is the combination of filling cystometry and pressure flow studies with imaging. It is the optimum procedure for urodynamic investigation in neuro-urological disorders. Possible pathological findings include all those described in the cystometry and the pressure flow study sections, and any morphological pathology of the LUT and reflux to the UUT [106].

**Ambulatory urodynamics:** This is the functional investigation of the urinary tract, which predominantly uses the natural filling of the urinary tract to reproduce the patient’s normal activity. Although this type of study might be considered when conventional urodynamics does not reproduce the patient’s symptoms, its role in the neuro-urological patient still needs to be determined [107, 108].

**Triggered tests during urodynamics:** Lower urinary tract function can be provoked by coughing, triggered voiding, or anal stretch. Fast-filling cystometry with cooled saline (the ‘ice water test’) will discriminate between upper and lower motor neuron lesions [109, 110]. Patients with UMNL develop a detrusor contraction if the detrusor is intact, while patients with LMNL do not. However, the test does not seem to be fully discriminative in other types of patients [111].

Previously, a positive bethanechol test [112] (detrusor contraction > 25 cm H$_2$O) was thought to indicate detrusor denervation hypersensitivity and the muscular integrity of an acontractile detrusor. However, in practice, the test has given equivocal results. A variation of this method was reported using intravesical electromotive administration of the bethanechol [113], but there was no published follow-up. Currently, there is no indication for this test.

### 3.3.7.3 Specialist uro-neurophysiological tests

The following tests are advised as part of the neurological work-up [114]:

- electromyography (in a neurophysiological setting) of pelvic floor muscles, urethral sphincter and/or anal sphincter;
- nerve conduction studies of pudendal nerve;
- reflex latency measurements of bulbocavernosus and anal reflex arcs;
- evoked responses from clitoris or glans penis;
- sensory testing on bladder and urethra.
Other elective tests, for specific conditions, may become obvious during the work-up and urodynamic investigations.

3.3.7.4 Recommendations for urodynamics and uro-neurophysiology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Record a bladder diary.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-invasive testing is mandatory before invasive urodynamics is planned.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a urodynamic investigation to detect and specify lower urinary tract (dys-)function, use same session repeat measurement as it is crucial in clinical decision making.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use video-urodynamics for invasive urodynamics in neuro-urological patients. If this is not available, then perform a filling cystometry continuing into a pressure flow study.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use a physiological filling rate and body-warm saline.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific uro-neurophysiological tests are elective procedures and should only be carried out in specialised settings.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.3.8 Renal function

In many patients with neuro-urological disorders, the UUT is at risk, particularly in patients who develop high detrusor pressure during the filling phase. Although effective treatment can reduce this risk, there is still a relatively high incidence of renal morbidity [115]. Patients with SCI or SB have a substantially higher risk of developing renal failure compared with patients with slowly progressive non-traumatic neurological disorders, such as MS and Parkinson’s disease (PD) [116].

Caregivers must be informed of this risk and instructed to watch carefully for any signs or symptoms of a possible deterioration in the patient’s renal function. There are no high level evidence publications available which show the optimal management to preserve renal function in these patients [117].

3.4 Disease management

3.4.1 Introduction

The primary aims for treatment of neuro-urological symptoms, and their priorities, are [118, 119]:

- protection of the UUT;
- achievement (or maintenance) of urinary continence;
- restoration of the LUT function;
- improvement of the patient’s QoL.

Further considerations are the patient’s disability, cost-effectiveness, technical complexity and possible complications [119].

Renal failure is the main mortality factor in SCI patients who survive the trauma [120, 121]. Keeping the detrusor pressure during both the filling and voiding phases within safe limits significantly reduces the mortality from urological causes in these patients [122-124] and has consequently become the top priority in the treatment of patients with neuro-urological symptoms [118, 119].

In patients with high detrusor pressure during the filling phase (DO, low bladder compliance), treatment is aimed primarily at conversion of an overactive, high-pressure bladder into a low-pressure reservoir despite the resulting residual urine [118]. Reduction of the detrusor pressure contributes to urinary continence, and consequently to social rehabilitation and QoL. It is also pivotal in preventing UTIs [125, 126]. Complete continence, however, cannot always be obtained.

3.4.2 Non-invasive conservative treatment

3.4.2.1 Assisted bladder emptying - Credé manoeuvre, Valsalva manoeuvre, triggered reflex voiding

Incomplete bladder emptying is a serious risk factor for UTI, high intravesical pressure during the filling phase, and incontinence. Methods to improve the voiding process are therefore practiced.

Bladder expression (Credé manoeuvre) and voiding by abdominal straining (Valsalva manoeuvre): The downwards movement of the lower abdomen by suprapubic compression (Credé) or by abdominal straining (Valsalva) leads to an increase in intravesical pressure, and generally also causes a reflex sphincter contraction [127, 128]. The latter may increase bladder outlet resistance and lead to inefficient emptying. The high pressures created during these procedures are hazardous for the urinary tract [129, 130]. Therefore, their use should be discouraged unless urodynamics show that the intravesical pressure remains within safe limits [119].
Long-term complications are unavoidable for both methods of bladder emptying [128]. The already weak pelvic floor function may be further impaired, thus introducing or exacerbating already existing stress urinary incontinence (SUI) [130].

**Triggered reflex voiding:** Stimulation of the sacral or lumbar dermatomes in patients with UMNL can elicit a reflex detrusor contraction [130]. The risk of high pressure voiding is present and interventions to decrease outlet resistance may be necessary [131]. Triggering can induce AD, especially in patients with high level SCI (at or above Th 6) [132]. All assisted bladder emptying techniques require low outlet resistance. Even then, high detrusor pressures may still be present. Hence, patients need dedicated education and close urodynamic and urological surveillance [130, 133-135].

Note: In the literature, including some of the references cited here, the concept “reflex voiding” is sometimes used to cover all three assisted voiding techniques described in this section.

**External appliances:** Social continence may be achieved by collecting urine during incontinence, for instance using pads [119]. Condom catheters with urine collection devices are a practical method for men [119]. The infection risk must be closely observed [119]. The penile clamp is absolutely contraindicated in case of DO or low bladder compliance because of the risk of developing high intravesical pressure and pressure sores/necrosis in cases of altered/absent sensations.

### 3.4.2.2 Neuro-urological rehabilitation

#### 3.4.2.2.1 Bladder rehabilitation including electrical stimulation

The term bladder rehabilitation summarises treatment options that aim to re-establish bladder function in patients with neuro-urological symptoms. Strong contraction of the urethral sphincter and/or pelvic floor, as well as anal dilatation, manipulation of the genital region, and physical activity inhibit micturition in a reflex manner [119, 136]. The first mechanism is affected by activation of efferent nerve fibres, and the latter ones are produced by activation of afferent fibres [98]. Electrical stimulation of the pudendal nerve afferents strongly inhibits the micturition reflex and detrusor contraction [137]. This stimulation might then support the restoration of the balance between excitatory and inhibitory inputs at the spinal or supraspinal level [119, 138]. Evidence for bladder rehabilitation using electrical stimulation in neurological patients is mainly based on small non-comparative studies with high risk of bias.

**Peripheral temporary electrostimulation:** Tibial nerve stimulation and transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation might be effective and safe for treating neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction, but more reliable evidence from well-designed RCTs is required to reach definitive conclusions [138, 139].

**Peripheral temporary electrostimulation combined with pelvic floor muscle training and biofeedback:** In MS patients, combining active neuromuscular electrical stimulation with pelvic floor muscle training and EMG biofeedback can achieve a substantial reduction of neuro-urological symptoms [140]. This treatment combination seems to be more effective than either therapy alone [141, 142].

**Intravesical electrostimulation:** Intravesical electrostimulation can increase bladder capacity and improve bladder compliance and bladder filling sensation in patients with incomplete SCI or myelomeningocele (MMC) [143]. In patients with neurogenic detrusor underactivity, intravesical electrostimulation may also improve voiding and reduce residual volume [144, 145].

**Repetitive transcranial magnetic stimulation:** Although improvement of neuro-urological symptoms has been described in PD and MS patients, this technique is still under investigation [146, 147].

**Summary:** To date, bladder rehabilitation techniques are mainly based on electrical or magnetic stimulation. However, there is a lack of well-designed studies.

#### 3.4.2.3 Drug treatment

A single, optimal, medical therapy for neuro-urological symptoms is not yet available. Commonly, a combination of different therapies (e.g. intermittent catheterisation and antimuscarinic drugs) is advised to prevent urinary tract damage and improve long-term outcomes, particularly in patients with a suprasacral SCI or MS [130, 148-150].

#### 3.4.2.3.1 Drugs for storage symptoms

**Antimuscarinic drugs:** They are the first-line choice for treating NDO, increasing bladder capacity and
reducing episodes of UI secondary to NDO by the inhibition of parasympathetic pathways [119, 151-157]. Antimuscarinic drugs have been used for many years to treat patients with NDO [154, 155, 158], and the responses of individual patients to antimuscarinic treatment are variable. Despite a meta-analysis confirming the clinical and urodynamic efficacy of antimuscarinic therapy compared to placebo in adult NDO, a more recent integrative review has indicated that the information provided is still too limited for clinicians to be able to match trial data to the needs of individual patients with SCI mainly because of the lack of standardised clinical evaluation tools such as the ASIA, bladder diary and validated symptoms score. [155, 159].

Higher doses or a combination of antimuscarinic agents may be an option to maximise outcomes in neurological patients [156, 157, 160-163]. However, these drugs have a high incidence of adverse events, which may lead to early discontinuation of therapy [155, 156].

Choice of antimuscarinic agent: Oxybutynin [119, 154-157, 164], trospium [155, 162, 165], tolterodine [166] and propiverine [155, 167] are established, effective and well tolerated treatments even in long-term use [154, 155, 168, 169]. Darifenacin [170, 171] and solifenacin [169, 172] have been evaluated in NDO secondary to SCI and MS [155, 170, 171, 173] with results similar to other antimuscarinic drugs. A pilot study using solifenacin in NDO due to PD showed an improvement in UI [174]. The relatively new drug, fesoterodine, an active metabolite of tolterodine, has also been introduced, even though to date there has been no published clinical evidence of its use in the treatment of neuro-urological disorders. Favourable results with the new drug imidafenacin have been reported [175].

Side effects: Controlled-release antimuscarinics have some minor side effects, e.g. dry mouth [176, 177]. It has been suggested that different ways of administration may help to reduce side effects. Moreover, imidafenacine has been safely used in neurological patients with no worsening of cognitive function [175].

Other agents
Beta-3-adrenergic receptor agonists have recently been introduced and evaluated in OAB, but clinical experience in neuro-urological patients is limited [178]. Studies on safety and effectiveness in NDO are ongoing [179]. Depending on the results of these studies, combined therapy with antimuscarinics may be an attractive option [180].

3.4.2.3.2 Drugs for voiding symptoms
Detrusor underactivity: Cholinergic drugs, such as bethanechol and distigmine, have been considered to enhance detrusor contractility and promote bladder emptying, but are not frequently used in clinical practice [181]. Only preclinical studies have documented the potential benefits of cannabinoid agonists on improving detrusor contractility when administered intravesically [182, 183]. Conversely, RCTs on the use of nabiximols, D-9-tetrahydrocannabinol or oral cannabis extract did not report any significant reduction of incontinence episodes in MS patients [184].

Decreasing bladder outlet resistance: α-blockers (e.g. tamsulosin, naftopidil and silodosin) seem to be effective for decreasing bladder outlet resistance, post-void residual and AD [185-187].

Increasing bladder outlet resistance: Several drugs have shown efficacy in selected cases of mild SUI, but there are no high-level evidence studies in neurological patients [119].

3.4.2.4 Recommendations for drug treatments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use antimuscarinic therapy as the first-line medical treatment for neurogenic detrusor overactivity.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternative routes of administration (i.e., transdermal or intravesical) of antimuscarinic agents may be used.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximise outcomes for neurogenic detrusor overactivity by considering a combination of antimuscarinic agents.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribe α-blockers to decrease bladder outlet resistance.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not prescribe parasympathomimetics for underactive detrusor.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not prescribe drug treatment in neurogenic stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.
3.4.2.5 Minimally invasive treatment

3.4.2.5.1 Catheterisation

Intermittent self- or third-party catheterisation [188, 189] is the preferred management for neuro-urological patients who cannot effectively empty their bladders [119]. Sterile IC, as originally proposed by Guttmann and Frankel [188], significantly reduces the risk of UTI and bacteriuria [119, 190, 191], compared with clean IC introduced by Lapides et al. [189]. However, it has not yet been established whether or not the incidence of UTI, other complications and user satisfaction are affected by either sterile or clean IC, coated or uncoated catheters or by any other strategy.

Sterile IC cannot be considered a routine procedure [119, 191]. Aseptic IC is an alternative to sterile IC [192]. Contributing factors to contamination are insufficient patient education and the inherently greater risk of UTI in neuro-urological patients [119, 193-197]. The average frequency of catheterisations per day is four to six times [198] and the catheter size most often used is between 12-16 Fr. In aseptic IC, an optimum frequency of five times showed a reduction of UTI [198]. Ideally, bladder volume at catheterisation should, as a rule, not exceed 400-500 mL.

Indwelling transurethral catheterisation and, to a lesser extent, suprapubic cystostomy are associated with a range of complications as well as an enhanced risk for UTI [119, 199-207]. Therefore, both procedures should be avoided, when possible. Silicone catheters are preferred as they are less susceptible to encrustation and because of the high incidence of latex allergy in the neuro-urological patient population [208].

3.4.2.5.2 Recommendations for catheterisation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use intermittent catheterisation, whenever possible aseptic technique, as a standard treatment for patients who are unable to empty their bladder.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thoroughly instruct patients in the technique and risks of intermittent catheterisation.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use a catheter size between 12-16 Fr.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>B*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoid indwelling transurethral and suprapubic catheterisation whenever possible.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.4.2.5.3 Intravesical drug treatment

To reduce DO, antimuscarinics can also be administered intravesically [209-213]. The efficacy, safety and tolerability of intravesical administration of 0.1% oxybutynin hydrochloride compared to its oral administration for treatment of NDO has been demonstrated in a recent randomised controlled study [213]. This approach may reduce adverse effects due to the fact that the antimuscarinic drug is metabolised differently [210] and a greater amount is sequestered in the bladder, even more than with electromotive administration [209].

The vanilloids, capsaicin and resiniferatoxin, desensitise the C-fibres and thereby decrease DO, for a period of a few months, until the sensation of these fibres has been restored [214-216]. The dosage is 1-2 mMol capsaicin in 100 mL 30% alcohol, or 10-100 nMol resiniferatoxin in 100 mL 10% alcohol for 30 minutes. Resiniferatoxin has about a 1,000-fold potency compared to capsaicin, with less pain during the instillation, and is effective in a patient refractory to capsaicin. Clinical studies have shown that resiniferatoxin has limited clinical efficacy compared to botulinum toxin A (BTX-A) injections in the detrusor [215]. Currently, there is no indication for the use of these substances, which are not licensed for intravesical treatment.

3.4.2.5.4 Botulinum toxin injections in the bladder

Botulinum toxin A causes a long-lasting but reversible chemical denervation that lasts for about nine months [217, 218]. The toxin injections are mapped over the detrusor in a dosage that depends on the preparation used. Botulinum toxin A has been proven effective in patients with neuro-urological disorders due to MS or SCI in phase III RCTs [219, 220] and systematic reviews [221, 222]. Repeated injections seem to be possible without loss of efficacy [217, 223, 224]. The most frequent side effects are UTIs and elevated PVR [220, 223]. Intermittent catheterisation may become necessary. Rare but severe adverse events include AD and respiratory problems. Generalised muscular weakness may occur [217, 220, 224].

3.4.2.5.5 Bladder neck and urethral procedures

Reduction of the bladder outlet resistance may be necessary to protect the UUT. This can be achieved by chemical denervation of the sphincter or by surgical interventions (bladder neck or sphincter incision or urethral stent). Incontinence may result and can be managed by external devices (see Section 3.4.2.1).
**Botulinum toxin A**: This can be used to treat DSD effectively by injection at a dose that depends on the preparation used. The dyssynergia is abolished for a few months, necessitating repeat injections. The efficacy of this treatment has been reported to be high and with few adverse effects [225-227]. However, a recent Cochrane report concluded that because of limited evidence future RCTs assessing the effectiveness of BTX-A injections also need to address the uncertainty about the optimal dose and mode of injection [228]. In addition, this therapy is not licensed.

**Balloon dilatation**: Favourable immediate results were reported [229], but there have been no further reports since 1994 therefore, this method is no longer recommended.

**Sphincterotomy**: By staged incision, bladder outlet resistance can be reduced without completely losing the closure function of the urethra [118, 119, 219]. Different techniques are used, and laser treatment appears to be advantageous [230, 231]. Sphincterotomy needs to be repeated at regular intervals in many patients [232], but it is efficient and does not cause severe adverse effects [118, 229]. Secondary narrowing of the bladder neck may occur, for which combined bladder neck incision might be considered [233].

**Bladder neck incision**: This is indicated only for secondary changes at the bladder neck (fibrosis) [118, 230]. This procedure is not recommended in patients with detrusor hypertrophy, which causes thickening of the bladder neck [118].

**Stents**: Implantation of urethral stents results in continence being dependent on adequate closure of the bladder neck [119]. The results are comparable with sphincterotomy and the stenting procedure has a shorter duration of surgery and hospital stay [234, 235]. However, the costs [118], possible complications and re-interventions [236, 237] are limiting factors in their use [238-241].

**Increasing bladder outlet resistance**: This can improve the continence condition. Despite early positive results with urethral bulking agents, a relative early loss of continence is reported in patients with neuro-urological disorders [119, 242, 243].

**Urethral inserts**: Urethral plugs or valves for the management of (female) stress incontinence have not been applied in neuro-urological patients. The experience with active pumping urethral prosthesis for treatment of the underactive or acontractile detrusor were disappointing [244].

### 3.4.2.5.6 Recommendations for minimal invasive treatment*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use botulinum toxin injection in the detrusor to reduce neurogenic detrusor overactivity in multiple sclerosis or spinal cord injury patients if antimuscarinic therapy is ineffective.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder neck incision is effective in a fibrotic bladder neck.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Recommendations for catheterisation are listed separately under Section 3.4.2.5.2.

### 3.4.3 Surgical treatment

#### 3.4.3.1 Bladder neck and urethral procedures

Increasing the bladder outlet resistance has the inherent risk of causing high intravesical pressure. Procedures to treat sphincteric incontinence are therefore suitable only when the detrusor activity can be controlled and when no significant reflux is present. A simultaneous bladder augmentation and IC may be necessary [119].

**Urethral sling**: Various materials have been used for this procedure with enduring positive results. The procedure is established in women with the ability to self-catheterise [119, 245-250]. There is growing evidence that synthetic slings can be used effectively with acceptable medium to long-term results and minimal morbidity in neurological patients [251, 252]. Besides the pubovaginal sling, which has been considered the procedure of choice in this subgroup of patients, recent reports suggest that both the transobturator and the retropubic approaches may also be considered, with similar failure rates and a reduction in the need for IC. However, for both approaches a higher incidence of de novo urgency was reported [252, 253]. In men, both autologous and synthetic slings may also be an alternative [251, 252, 254-256].

**Artificial urinary sphincter**: This device was introduced by Light and Scott [257] for patients with neuro-urological disorders [119]. It has stood the test of time and acceptable long-term outcomes can be obtained [258-263].
**Functional sphincter augmentation:** Transposing the gracilis muscle to the bladder neck [264] or proximal urethra [265], can enable the possible creation of a functional autologous sphincter by electrical stimulation [264-266]. Therefore, raising the prospect of restoring control over the urethral closure.

**Bladder neck and urethra reconstruction:** The classical Young-Dees-Leadbetter procedure [267] for bladder neck reconstruction in children with bladder exstrophy, and Kropp urethra lengthening [268] improved by Salle [269], are established methods to restore continence provided that IC is practiced and/or bladder augmentation is performed [119, 270].

**Urethral inserts:** See section 3.4.2.5.5.

**3.4.3.2 Denervation, deafferentation, sacral neuromodulation**

Sacral rhizotomy, also known as sacral deafferentation, has achieved some success in reducing DO [271-273], but nowadays, it is used mostly as an adjuvant to sacral anterior root stimulation (SARS) [274-278]. Alternatives to rhizotomy are sought in this treatment combination [279-281].

Sacral anterior root stimulation is aimed at producing detrusor contraction. The technique was developed by Brindley [282] and is only applicable to complete lesions above the implant location, as its stimulation amplitude is over the pain threshold. The urethral sphincter efferents are also stimulated, but because the striated muscle relaxes faster than the smooth muscle of the detrusor, so-called “post-stimulus voiding” occurs. This approach has been successful in highly selected patients [275, 283, 284]. By changing the stimulation parameters, this method can also induce defecation or erection. A recent study reports that Charcot spinal arthropathy should be considered as a potential long-term complication of SARS, leading to spinal instability and to SARS dysfunction [285].

Sacral neuromodulation [286] might be effective and safe for treating neuro-urological symptoms, but there is a lack of RCTs and it is unclear which neurological patients are most suitable [287-290].

**3.4.3.3 Bladder covering by striated muscle**

When the bladder is covered by striated muscle that can be stimulated electrically, or ideally that can be contracted voluntarily, voiding function can be restored to an acontractile bladder. The rectus abdominis [291] and latissimus dorsi [292] have been used successfully in patients with neuro-urological symptoms [293, 294].

**3.4.3.4 Bladder augmentation**

The aim of auto-augmentation (detrusor myectomy) is to reduce DO or improve low bladder compliance. The advantages are: low surgical burden, low rate of long-term adverse effects, positive effect on patient QoL, and it does not preclude further interventions [118, 119, 295-301].

Replacing or expanding the bladder by intestine or other passive expandable coverage will improve bladder compliance and at least reduce the pressure effect of DO [302, 303]. Inherent complications associated with these procedures are: recurrent infection, stone formation, perforation or diverticula, possible malignant changes, and for the intestine, metabolic abnormality, mucus production and impaired bowel function [119, 304-306]. The procedure should be used with caution in patients with neuro-urological symptoms, but may become necessary if all less-invasive treatment methods have failed. Special attention should be paid to patients with pre-operative renal scars since metabolic acidosis can develop [307].

Bladder augmentation is a valid option to decrease detrusor pressure and increase bladder capacity, whenever more conservative approaches have failed. Several different techniques have been published, with comparable and satisfactory results [297, 308-316]. Bladder substitution, even by performing a supratrigonal cystectomy [317], to create a low-pressure reservoir is indicated in patients with a severely thick and fibrotic bladder wall [119]. Intermittent catheterisation may become necessary after this procedure. A significant improvement in QoL has been reported, probably related to the perception of better health and the resolution/improvement of urinary incontinence [318].

**3.4.3.5 Urinary diversion**

When no other therapy is successful, urinary diversion must be considered for the protection of the UUT and for the patient’s QoL [119].

**Continent diversion:** This should be the first choice for urinary diversion. Patients with limited dexterity may prefer a stoma instead of using the urethra for catheterisation. A continent stoma can be created using various techniques. However, all of them have frequent complications, including leakage or stenosis. The short-term continence rates are > 80% and good protection of the UUT is achieved [119, 319-331]. For cosmetic reasons, the umbilicus is often used for the stoma site [326, 329, 330, 332-334].
Incontinent diversion: If catheterisation is impossible, incontinent diversion with a urine-collecting device is indicated. Ultimately, it could be considered in patients who are wheelchair bound or bed-ridden with intractable and untreatable incontinence, in patients with LUT destruction, when the UUT is severely compromised, and in patients who refuse other therapy [119]. An ileal segment is used for the deviation in most cases [119, 335-338]. Patients gain better functional status and QoL after surgery [339].

Undiversion: Long-standing diversions may be successfully undiverted or an incontinent diversion changed to a continent one with the emergence of new and better techniques for control of detrusor pressure and incontinence [119]. The patient must be carefully counselled and must comply meticulously with the instructions [119]. Successful undiversion can then be performed [340].

### 3.4.3.6 Recommendations for surgical treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform bladder augmentation in order to treat refractory neurogenic detrusor overactivity.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place an autologous urethral sling in female patients with neurogenic stress urinary incontinence who are able to self-catheterise.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>B*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insert an artificial urinary sphincter in male patients with neurogenic stress urinary incontinence.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded bases on panel consensus.

### 3.5 Urinary tract infection in neuro-urological patients

#### 3.5.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Urinary tract infection is the onset of signs and/or symptoms accompanied by laboratory findings of a UTI (bacteriuria, leukocyturia and positive urine culture) [332]. There are no evidence-based cut-off values for the quantification of these findings. The published consensus is that a significant bacteriuria in persons performing IC is present with > 10^2 cfu/mL, > 10^4 cfu/mL in clean-void specimens and any detectable concentration in suprapubic aspirates. Regarding leukocyturia, 10 or more leukocytes in centrifuged urine samples per microscopic field (400x) are regarded as significant [332].

The pathogenesis of UTI in neuro-urological patients is multifactorial. Male gender seems to be a risk factor for febrile UTI [341]. Several etiological factors have been described: altered intrinsic defence mechanisms, impaired washout and catheterisation [342]. The exact working mechanisms, however, still remain unknown. The presence of asymptomatic bacteriuria in SCI patients is higher than in the general population, and varies depending on bladder management. Prevalence of bacteriuria in those performing clean IC varies from 23-89% [343]. Sphincterotomy and condom catheter drainage has a 57% prevalence [344]. Asymptomatic bacteria should not be routinely screened for in this population [345].

Individuals with neuro-urological symptoms, especially those with SCI, may have other signs and symptoms in addition to or instead of traditional signs and symptoms of a UTI in able-bodied individuals. Other problems, such as AD, may develop or worsen due to a UTI [346]. The most common signs and symptoms suspicious of a UTI in those with neuro-urological disorders are fever, new onset or increase in incontinence, including leaking around an indwelling catheter, increased spasticity, malaise, lethargy or sense of unease, cloudy urine with increased urine odour, discomfort or pain over the kidney or bladder, dysuria, or AD [346, 347].

#### 3.5.2 Diagnostic evaluation

The gold standard for diagnosis is urine culture and urinalysis. A dipstick test may be more useful to exclude than to prove UTI [348, 349]. As bacterial strains and resistance patterns in persons with neuro-urological disorders may differ from those of able-bodied patients, microbiologic testing is mandatory [350].

#### 3.5.3 Disease management

Bacteriuria in patients with neuro-urological disorders should not be treated. Treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria results in significantly more resistant bacterial strains without improving the outcome [351]. Urinary tract infections in persons with neuro-urological disorders are by definition a complicated UTI. Therefore, single-dose treatment is not advised. There is no consensus in the literature about the duration of treatment, it depends on the severity of the UTI and the involvement of kidneys and the prostate. Generally, a five to seven day course of antibiotic treatment is advised, which can be extended up to fourteen days according to the extent of the infection [351]. The choice of antibiotic therapy should be based on the results of the microbiologic testing. If immediate treatment is mandatory (e.g. fever, septicaemia, intolerable clinical...
symptoms, extensive AD), the choice of treatment should be based on local and individual resistance profiles [352].

3.5.3.1 Recurrent UTI
Recurrent UTI in patients with neuro-urological disorders may indicate suboptimal management of the underlying functional problem, e.g. high bladder pressure during storage and voiding, incomplete voiding or bladder stones. The improvement of bladder function, by treating DO by BTX-A injection in the detrusor [353], and the removal of bladder stones or other direct supporting factors, especially indwelling catheters, as early as possible, are mandatory [350].

3.5.3.2 Prevention
If the improvement of bladder function and removal of foreign bodies/stones is not successful, additional UTI prevention strategies should be utilised. The use of hydrophilic catheters was associated with a lower rate of UTI in a recent meta-analysis [354]. Bladder irrigation has not been proven effective [355].

Various medical approaches have been tested for UTI prophylaxis in patients with neuro-urological disorders. The benefit of cranberry juice for the prevention of UTI could not be demonstrated in RCTs [356]. Methenamine hippurate is not effective in individuals with neuro-urological symptoms [357]. There is no sufficient evidence to support the use of L-methionine for urine acidification to prevent recurrent UTI [358]. There is only weak evidence that oral immunotherapy reduces bacteriuria in patients with SCI, and no evidence that recurrent UTIs are reduced [359]. Low-dose, long-term, antibiotic prophylaxis cannot reduce UTI frequency, but increases bacterial resistance and is therefore not recommended [351].

An application scheme of antibiotic substances for antibiotic prophylaxis provided long-term positive results, but the results of this trial need to be confirmed in further studies [360]. Another possible future option, the inoculation of apathogenic *Escherichia coli* strains into the bladder, has provided positive results in initial studies, but because of the paucity of data [361], cannot be recommended as a treatment option.

In summary, based on the criteria of evidence-based medicine, there is currently no preventive measure for recurrent UTI in patients with neuro-urological disorders that can be recommended without limitations. Therefore, individualised concepts should be taken into consideration, including immunostimulation, phytotherapy and complementary medicine [362]. Prophylaxis in patients with neuro-urological disorders is important to pursue, but since there are no data favouring one approach over another, prophylaxis is essentially a trial and error approach.

3.5.4 Recommendations for the treatment of UTI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not screen for or treat asymptomatic bacteriuria in patients with neuro-urological disorders.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoid the use of long-term antibiotics for recurrent urinary tract infections (UTIs).</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with recurrent UTI, optimise treatment of neuro-urological symptoms and remove foreign bodies (e.g. stones, indwelling catheters) from the urinary tract.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with neuro-urological disorders, UTI prophylaxis must be individualised since there is no optimal prophylactic measure available.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.6 Sexual (dys)function and fertility
These Guidelines specifically focus on sexual dysfunction and infertility in patients with a neurological disease [363, 364]. Non-neurogenic, male sexual dysfunction and infertility are covered in separate EAU Guidelines [365, 366]. In neuro-urological patients sexual problems can be identified at three levels: primary (direct neurological damage), secondary (general physical disabilities) and tertiary (psychosocial and emotional issues) sexual dysfunction [367]. Adopting a systematic approach, such as the PLISSIT model (Permission, Limited Information, Specific Suggestions and Intensive Therapy) [368], provides a framework for counselling and treatment involving a stepwise approach to the management of neurogenic sexual dysfunction. Sexual dysfunction is associated with neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction in patients with MS [369] and spina bifida [370]. Although various patient-reported outcome measures (PROMs) are available to evaluate sexual function, the evidence for good PROMs is limited and studies with high methodological quality are needed [371].
3.6.1 erectile dysfunction (ED)

3.6.1.1 Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors (PDE5Is)

Questions:
- What is the effectiveness of the various PDE5Is in the different neuro-urological patient groups?
- What common side-effects are described?

Evidence:
Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors (PDE5Is) are recommended as first-line treatment in neurogenic erectile dysfunction (ED) [363, 372]. In SCI patients, tadalafil, vardenafil, and sildenafil have all improved retrograde ejaculation and improved erectile function and satisfaction on IIEF-15. Tadalafil 10 mg was shown to be more effective than sildenafil 50 mg. All currently available PDE5Is appear to be effective and safe, although there are no high level evidence studies in neuro-urological patients investigating the efficacy and side effects across different PDE5Is, dosages and formulations [373].

For MS patients two studies reported significant improvement in ED when using sildenafil and tadalafil. One study, however, showed no improvement in ED with sildenafil.

In PD normal erectile function was described in over half of the patients using sildenafil 100 mg and a significant improvement in IIEF-15 score was found compared to placebo. While most neuro-urological patients require long-term therapy for ED some have a low compliance rate or stop therapy because of side effects [374, 375], most commonly headache and flushing [372]. In addition, PDE5Is may induce relevant hypotension in patients with tetraplegia/high-level paraplegia and multiple system atrophy [374, 375]. As a prerequisite for successful PDE5I-therapy, some residual nerve function is required to induce erection. Since many patients with SCI use on-demand nitrates for the treatment of AD, they must be counselled that PDE5Is are contraindicated when using nitrate medication.

3.6.1.2 Drug therapy other than PDE5Is

Fampridine to treat neurogenic spasticity has been shown to be beneficial in improving ED in two domains of the IIEF-15 in SCI and MS patients, however, with a significant discontinuation rate due to severe adverse events [376]. Sublingual apomorphine was shown to have poor results on ED in SCI patients and side-effects in half of the patients [377]. In PD pergolide mesylate showed a significant improvement in IIEF-15 scores up to twelve months follow-up [378].

3.6.1.3 Mechanical devices

Mechanical devices (vacuum tumescence devices and penile rings) may be effective but are less popular [379-383].

3.6.1.4 Intracavernous injections and intraurethral application

Patients not responding to oral drugs may be offered intracavernous injections (alprostadil, papaverine and phentolamine) that have been shown to be effective in a number of neurological conditions, including SCI, MS, and diabetes mellitus [384-390] but their use requires careful dose titration and some precautions. Complications of intracavernous drugs include pain, priapism and corpora cavernosa fibrosis.

Intracavernous vasoactive drug injection is the first-line therapeutic option in patients taking nitrate medications, as well as those with concerns about drug interactions with PDE5Is, or in whom PDE5Is are ineffective. The impact of intracavernous injections on ejaculation and orgasmic function, their early use for increasing the recovery rate of a spontaneous erection, and their effectiveness and tolerability in the long-term are unclear [374]. Intraurethral alprostadil application is an alternative but a less effective route of administration [390, 391].

3.6.1.5 Sacral neuromodulation

Sacral neuromodulation for LUT dysfunction may improve sexual function but high level evidence studies are lacking [372].

3.6.1.6 Penile prostheses

Penile prostheses may be considered for treatment of neurogenic ED when all conservative treatments have failed. At a mean follow-up of seven years 83.7% of patients with SCI were able to have sexual intercourse [372]. Serious complications, including infection and prosthesis perforation, may occur in about 10% of patients, depending on implant type [392-394].
### 3.6.1.7 Recommendations for erectile dysfunction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prescribe oral phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors as first-line medical treatment in neurogenic erectile dysfunction.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Give intracavernous injections of vasoactive drugs (alone or in combination) as second-line medical treatment in neurogenic erectile dysfunction.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer mechanical devices such as vacuum devices and rings to patients with neurogenic erectile dysfunction.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reserve penile prostheses for selected patients with neurogenic erectile dysfunction.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>B*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

### 3.6.2 Male fertility

Male fertility can be compromised in the neurological patient by ED, ejaculation disorder, impaired sperm quality or various combinations of these three disorders. Among the major conditions contributing to neurogenic infertility are pelvic and retroperitoneal surgery, diabetes mellitus, SB, MS and SCI [395]. Erectile dysfunction is managed as described previously. Retrograde ejaculation may be reversed by sympathomimetic agents contracting the bladder neck, including imipramine, ephedrine, pseudoephedrine, and phenylpropanolamine [395]. The use of a balloon catheter to obstruct the bladder neck may be effective in obtaining antegrade ejaculation [396]. If antegrade ejaculation is not achieved, the harvest of semen from the urine may be considered [397].

Prostatic massage is safe and easy to use for obtaining semen in men with lesions above Th 10 [398]. In several patients, vibrostimulation or transrectal electroejaculation are needed for sperm retrieval [390, 395, 399, 400]. Semen retrieval is more likely with vibrostimulation in men with lesions above Th 10 [401-403]. In men with SCI, especially at or above Th 6, AD might occur during sexual activity and ejaculation [404, 405]; patients at risk and fertility clinics must be informed and aware of this potentially life-threatening condition. In SCI patients the use of oral midodrine can improve sperm retrieval at vibrostimulation [406].

In men with MS, use of disease modifying drugs during the conception phase, has not been associated with altered pregnancy outcomes [407]. Surgical procedures, such as, microsurgical epididymal sperm aspiration (MESA) or testicular sperm extraction (TESE), may be used if vibrostimulation and electroejaculation are not successful [408, 409]. Pregnancy rates in patients with SCI are lower than in the general population, but since the introduction of intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI), men with SCI now have a good chance of becoming biological fathers [410-412].

#### 3.6.2.1 Sperm quality and motility

The following has been reported on sperm quality and motility:

- bladder management with clean IC may improve semen quality compared to indwelling catheterisation, reflex voiding or bladder expression [413];
- in SCI patients sperm quality decreases at the early post traumatic phase demonstrating lower spermatozoid vitality (necrospermia), reduced motility (asthenospermia) and leucospermia [408];
- long-term valproate treatment for epilepsy negatively influences sperm count and motility [414];
- vibrostimulation produces samples with better sperm motility than electrostimulation [415, 416];
- electroejaculation with interrupted current produces better sperm motility than continuous current [417];
- freezing of sperm is unlikely to improve fertility rates in men with SCI [418].

#### 3.6.2.2 Recommendations for male fertility

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform vibrostimulation and transrectal electroejaculation for sperm retrieval in men with spinal cord injury.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform microsurgical epididymal sperm aspiration, testicular sperm extraction and intracytoplasmic sperm injection after failed vibrostimulation and/or transrectal electroejaculation in men with spinal cord injury.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counsel men with spinal cord injury at or above Th 6 and fertility clinics about the potentially life-threatening condition of autonomic dysreflexia.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.
3.6.3 **Female sexuality**

The most relevant publications on neurogenic female sexual dysfunction are in women with SCI and MS. After SCI, about 65-80% of women continue to be sexually active, but to a much lesser extent than before the injury, and about 25% report a decreased satisfaction with their sexual life [419-421]. Although sexual dysfunction is very common in women with MS, it is still often overlooked by medical professionals [422, 423].

The greatest physical barrier to sexual activity is UI. A correlation has been found between the urodynamic outcomes of low bladder capacity, compliance and high maximum detrusor pressure and sexual dysfunction in MS patients. Problems with positioning and spasticity affect mainly tetraplegic patients. Peer support may help to optimise the sexual adjustment of women with SCI in achieving a more positive self-image, self-esteem and feelings of being attractive to themselves and others [419, 424-426].

Along with the use of specific drugs for sexual dysfunction, is indicated to treat inadequate lubrication. Data on sildenafil for treating female sexual dysfunction are poor and controversial [427]. Although good evidence exists that psychological interventions are effective in the treatment of female hypoactive sexual desire disorder and female orgasmic disorder [428], there is a lack of high-evidence level studies in the neurological population.

Neurophysiological studies have shown that women with the ability to perceive Th 11-L2 pin-prick sensations may have psychogenic genital vasocongestion. Reflex lubrication and orgasm is more prevalent in women with SCI who have preserved the sacral reflex arc (S2-S5), even when it has not been shown in an individual woman that a specific level and degree of lesion is the cause of a particular sexual dysfunction. In SCI women with a complete lesion of the sacral reflex, arousal and orgasm may be evoked through stimulation of other erogenous zones above the level of lesions [429-431].

Sacral neuromodulation for LUT dysfunction may improve sexual function but high-evidence studies are lacking [427].

Women with SCI reported dissatisfaction with the quality and quantity of sexuality-related rehabilitation services and were less likely to receive sexual information than men [429, 432, 433].

3.6.3.1 **Recommendation for female sexuality**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer medical therapy for the treatment of neurogenic sexual dysfunction in women.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.6.4 **Female fertility**

There are few studies on female fertility in neurological patients. More than a third (38%) of women with epilepsy had infertility and the relevant predictors were exposure to multiple (three or more) antiepileptic drugs, older age and lower education [434].

Although it seems that the reproductive capacity of women with SCI is only temporarily affected by SCI with cessation of menstruation for approximately six months after SCI [435], there are no high-evidence level studies. About 70% of sexually active women use some form of contraception after injury, but fewer women use the birth control pill compared to before their injury [436].

Women with SCI are more likely to suffer complications during pregnancy, labour and delivery compared to able-bodied women. Complications of labour and delivery include bladder problems, spasticity, pressure sores, anaemia, and AD [437, 438]. Obstetric outcomes include higher rates of Caesarean sections and an increased incidence of low birth-weight babies [436].

Epidural anaesthesia is chosen and effective for most patients with AD during labour and delivery [439, 440].

There is very little published data on women’s experience of the menopause following SCI [441]. Women with MS who plan a pregnancy should evaluate their current drug treatment with their treating physician [442]. Clinical management should be individualised to optimise both the mother’s reproductive outcomes and MS course [443].
### 3.6.4.1 Recommendation for female fertility

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take a multidisciplinary approach, tailored to individual patient’s needs and preferences, in the management of fertility, pregnancy and delivery in women with neurological diseases.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

### 3.7 Follow-up

#### 3.7.1 Introduction

Neuro-urological disorders are often unstable and the symptoms may vary considerably, even within a relatively short period. Regular follow-up is therefore necessary [117].

Depending on the type of the underlying neurological pathology and the current stability of the neuro-urological symptoms, the interval between initial investigations and control diagnostics may vary and in many cases should not exceed one to two years. In high-risk neuro-urological patients this interval should be much shorter. Urinalysis should be performed regularly; the frequency to be guided by patient symptoms. The UUT should be checked by ultrasonography at regular intervals in high-risk patients; about once every six months. In these patients, physical examination and urine laboratory should take place every year. Any significant clinical change warrants further, specialised, investigation. However, there is a complete lack of high level evidence studies on this topic and every recommendation must be viewed critically in each individual neuro-urological patient [117].

In addition, bladder wall thickness can be measured on ultrasonography as an additional risk assessment for upper tract damage [444], although a ‘safe’ cut-off threshold for this has not been agreed [445]. The utility of DMSA for follow-up of neuro-urological patients has not been fully evaluated [446].

#### 3.7.2 Recommendations for follow-up

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assess the upper urinary tract at regular intervals in high risk patients.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a physical examination and urine laboratory every year in high risk patients.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any significant clinical changes should instigate further, specialised, investigation.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform urodynamic investigation as a mandatory baseline diagnostic intervention in high-risk patients at regular intervals.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

### 3.8 Conclusions

Neuro-urological disorders have a multi-faceted pathology. They require an extensive and specific diagnosis before one can embark on an individualised therapy, which takes into account the medical and physical condition of the patient and the patient’s expectations about their future. The urologist can select from a wealth of therapeutic options, each with its own pros and cons. Notwithstanding the success of any therapy embarked upon, close surveillance is necessary for the patient’s entire life.

These Guidelines offer you expert advice on how to define the patient's neuro-urological symptoms as precisely as possible and how to select, together with the patient, the appropriate therapy. This last choice, as always, is governed by the golden rule: as effective as needed, as non-invasive as possible.

### 4. REFERENCES


NEURO-UROLOGY - LIMITED UPDATE MARCH 2017
35


393. Kimoto, Y., et al. Penile prostheses for the management of the neuropathic bladder and sexual...


5. **CONFLICT OF INTEREST**

All members of the EAU Neuro-urology Guidelines Panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have that might be perceived to be a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publically accessible through the EAU website: [http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/](http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/). These Guidelines were developed with the financial support of the EAU. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation, and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Erectile Dysfunction, Premature Ejaculation, Penile Curvature and Priapism

K. Hatzimouratidis (Chair), F. Giuliano, I. Moncada, A. Muneer, A. Salonia (Vice-chair), P. Verze

© European Association of Urology 2017
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.</th>
<th>INTRODUCTION</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>Aim</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>Publication history</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>Available Publications</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>Panel composition</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2.</th>
<th>METHODS</th>
<th>7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>Review</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>Future goals</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3.</th>
<th>MALE SEXUAL DYSFUNCTION</th>
<th>7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Erectile dysfunction</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1</td>
<td>Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1.1</td>
<td>Epidemiology</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1.2</td>
<td>Risk factors</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1.3</td>
<td>Pathophysiology</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1.3.1</td>
<td>Post-radical prostatectomy ED, post-radiotherapy ED &amp; post-brachytherapy ED</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1.3.2</td>
<td>Summary of evidence on the epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology of ED</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.2</td>
<td>Classification</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3</td>
<td>Diagnostic evaluation</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.1</td>
<td>Basic work-up</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.1.1</td>
<td>Sexual history</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.1.2</td>
<td>Physical examination</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.1.3</td>
<td>Laboratory testing</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.1.4</td>
<td>Cardiovascular system and sexual activity: the patient at risk</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.1.4.1</td>
<td>Low-risk category</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.1.4.2</td>
<td>Intermediate- or indeterminate-risk category</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.1.4.3</td>
<td>High-risk category</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.2</td>
<td>Specialised diagnostic tests</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.2.1</td>
<td>Nocturnal penile tumescence and rigidity test</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.2.2</td>
<td>Intracavernous injection test</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.2.3</td>
<td>Duplex ultrasound of the penis</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.2.4</td>
<td>Arteriography and dynamic infusion cavernosometry or cavernosography</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.2.5</td>
<td>Psychiatric assessment</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.2.6</td>
<td>Penile abnormalities</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.3</td>
<td>Patient education - consultation and referrals</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.4</td>
<td>Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of ED</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4</td>
<td>Disease management</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.1</td>
<td>Treatment options</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.1.1</td>
<td>Lifestyle management of ED with concomitant risk factors</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.1.2</td>
<td>Erectile dysfunction after radical prostatectomy</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.1.3</td>
<td>Causes of ED that can be potentially treated with a curative intent</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.1.3.1</td>
<td>Hormonal causes</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.1.3.2</td>
<td>Post-traumatic arteriogenic ED in young patients</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.1.3.3</td>
<td>Psychosexual counselling and therapy</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.2</td>
<td>First-line therapy</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.2.1</td>
<td>Oral pharmacotherapy</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.2.2</td>
<td>Vacuum erection devices</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.2.3</td>
<td>Shockwave therapy</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.1.4.3 Second-line therapy
  3.1.4.3.1 Intracavernous injections
    3.1.4.3.1.1 Alprostadil
    3.1.4.3.1.2 Combination therapy
    3.1.4.3.1.3 Intraurethral/topical alprostadil
  3.1.4.4 Third-line therapy (penile prostheses)
    3.1.4.4.1 Complications
    3.1.4.4.2 Conclusions third-line therapy
  3.1.4.5 Recommendations for the treatment of ED
  3.1.4.6 Follow-up

3.2 Premature ejaculation
  3.2.1 Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology
    3.2.1.1 Epidemiology
    3.2.1.2 Pathophysiology and risk factors
    3.2.1.3 Impact of PE on QoL
  3.2.2 Classification
  3.2.3 Diagnostic evaluation
    3.2.3.1 Intravaginal ejaculatory latency time
    3.2.3.2 PE assessment questionnaires
    3.2.3.3 Physical examination and investigations
    3.2.3.4 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of PE
  3.2.4 Disease management
    3.2.4.1 Psychological/behavioural strategies
    3.2.4.2 Pharmacotherapy
      3.2.4.2.1 Dapoxetine
      3.2.4.2.2 Off-label use of antidepressants: SSRIs and clomipramine
      3.2.4.2.3 Topical anaesthetic agents
        3.2.4.2.3.1 Lidocaine-prilocaine cream
        3.2.4.2.3.2 Tramadol
      3.2.4.2.4 Other drugs
      3.2.4.2.4.1 Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors
    3.2.4.3 Summary of evidence on the epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology of PE
    3.2.4.4 Recommendations for the treatment of PE

3.3 Penile curvature
  3.3.1 Congenital penile curvature
    3.3.1.1 Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology
    3.3.1.2 Diagnostic evaluation
    3.3.1.3 Disease management
    3.3.1.4 Summary of evidence and recommendation for congenital penile curvature
  3.3.2 Peyronie's Disease
    3.3.2.1 Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology
      3.3.2.1.1 Epidemiology
      3.3.2.1.2 Aetiology
      3.3.2.1.3 Risk factors
      3.3.2.1.4 Pathophysiology
      3.3.2.1.5 Summary of evidence on Peyronie's disease
    3.3.2.2 Diagnostic evaluation
      3.3.2.2.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the diagnosis of Peyronie's disease
    3.3.2.3 Disease management
      3.3.2.3.1 Non-operative treatment
        3.3.2.3.1.1 Oral treatment
        3.3.2.3.1.2 Intraliesional treatment
        3.3.2.3.1.3 Topical treatments
        3.3.2.3.1.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for non-operative treatment of Peyronie's disease
3.3.2.3.2 Surgical treatment
3.3.2.3.2.1 Penile shortening procedures
3.3.2.3.2.2 Penile lengthening procedures
3.3.2.3.2.3 Penile prosthesis
3.3.2.3.2.4 Recommendations for the surgical treatment of penile curvature

3.4 Priapism
3.4.1 Ischaemic (Low-Flow or Veno-Occlusive) Priapism
3.4.1.1 Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology
3.4.1.1.1 Summary of evidence on the epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology of ischaemic priapism
3.4.1.2 Classification
3.4.1.3 Diagnostic evaluation
3.4.1.3.1 History
3.4.1.3.2 Physical examination
3.4.1.3.3 Laboratory testing
3.4.1.3.4 Penile imaging
3.4.1.3.5 Recommendations for the diagnosis of ischaemic priapism
3.4.1.4 Disease management
3.4.1.4.1 First-line treatments
3.4.1.4.1.1 Penile anaesthesia/systemic analgesia
3.4.1.4.1.2 Aspiration ± irrigation with 0.9% w/v saline solution
3.4.1.4.1.3 Aspiration ± irrigation with 0.9% w/v saline solution in combination with intracavernous injection of pharmacological agents
3.4.1.4.2 Second-line treatments
3.4.1.4.3 Penile shunt surgery
3.4.1.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the treatment of ischaemic priapism
3.4.1.6 Follow-up

3.4.2 Arterial (high-flow or non-ischaemic) priapism
3.4.2.1 Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology
3.4.2.1.1 Summary of evidence on the epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology of arterial priapism
3.4.2.2 Classification
3.4.2.3 Diagnostic evaluation
3.4.2.3.1 History
3.4.2.3.2 Physical examination
3.4.2.3.3 Laboratory testing
3.4.2.3.4 Penile imaging
3.4.2.3.5 Recommendations for the diagnosis of arterial priapism
3.4.2.4 Disease management
3.4.2.4.1 Conservative management
3.4.2.4.1.1 Selective arterial embolisation
3.4.2.4.2 Surgical management
3.4.2.4.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the treatment of arterial priapism
3.4.2.4.4 Follow-up

3.4.3 Stuttering (recurrent or intermittent) priapism
3.4.3.1 Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology
3.4.3.1.1 Summary of evidence on the epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology of stuttering priapism
3.4.3.2 Classification
3.4.3.3 Diagnostic evaluation
3.4.3.3.1 History
3.4.3.3.2 Physical examination
3.4.3.3 Laboratory testing 55
3.4.3.4 Penile imaging 55
3.4.3.5 Recommendations for the diagnosis of stuttering priapism 55

3.4.3.4 Disease management 55
3.4.3.4.1 α-adrenergic agonists 55
3.4.3.4.2 Hormonal manipulations of circulating testosterone 56
3.4.3.4.3 Digoxin 56
3.4.3.4.4 Terbutaline 56
3.4.3.4.5 Gabapentin 56
3.4.3.4.6 Baclofen 56
3.4.3.4.7 Hydroxyurea 56
3.4.3.4.8 Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors 57
3.4.3.4.9 Intracavernosal injections 57
3.4.3.4.10 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the treatment of stuttering priapism 57

3.4.3.5 Follow-up 57

4. REFERENCES 58

5. CONFLICT OF INTEREST 89
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim
These guidelines include four sections. The aim of the first two sections is to present the current evidence for the diagnosis and treatment of patients suffering from erectile dysfunction (ED) and premature ejaculation (PE). Erectile Dysfunction and PE are the two main complaints in male sexual medicine [1, 2]. Pharmacological therapies have completely changed the diagnostic and therapeutic approach to ED.

The aim of the third section is to provide the practicing urologist with the most recent evidence on the diagnosis and management of penile curvature in order to assist in their decision-making. Penile curvature is a common urological disorder which can be congenital or acquired. Congenital curvature is briefly discussed in these guidelines as a distinct pathology in the adult population without any other concomitant abnormality present (such as urethral abnormalities). For paediatric congenital penile curvature, please refer to the EAU Guidelines on Paediatric Urology, Chapter on Congenital Penile Curvature [3]. Acquired curvature is mainly due to Peyronie's disease but can also be due to the development of fibrosis following penile fracture.

The aim of the fourth section is to present the current evidence for the diagnosis and treatment of patients suffering from priapism. Priapism is a pathological condition representing a true disorder of penile erection that persists for more than four hours and beyond, or is unrelated to, sexual interest or stimulation [4]. Overall, erections lasting up to four hours are by consensus defined as 'prolonged'. Priapism may occur at all ages. The incidence rate of priapism in the general population is low (0.5-0.9 cases per 100,000 person-years) [5, 6]. In men with sickle cell disease, the prevalence of priapism is up to 3.6% in men less than eighteen years of age [7] increasing up to 42% in men more than eighteen years of age [8-11].

The Guidelines Office of the European Association of Urology (EAU) has appointed an Expert Panel to update previously published EAU guidelines for ED, PE, penile curvature and priapism.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts. However, following guidelines recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not and should not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Publication history
The first EAU Guidelines on Erectile Dysfunction were published in 2000 with subsequent updates in 2001, 2002, 2004, 2005, 2009, 2013 and 2014. In particular, the 2009 document presented a significant update of the previous publication with the inclusion of the topic “Premature Ejaculation” and the text was renamed “EAU Guidelines on Male Sexual Dysfunction” [12]. In 2011 the Panel decided to develop new guidelines addressing Penile Curvature, which resulted in a new publication in 2012 [13]. In 2014 a guideline on Priapism was completed [14].

The 2016 edition merged the previous EAU guidelines for ED, PE, penile curvature and priapism into one guideline [15].

1.3 Available Publications
Alongside several scientific summaries published in the EAU scientific journal, European Urology [16-20], a quick reference document (Pocket Guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices, presenting the main findings of the Male Sexual Dysfunction guidelines. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text version. All available material can be viewed and downloaded at the EAU website, which also includes a selection of translations produced by national urological associations: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

1.4 Panel composition
The EAU Guidelines Panel on Male Sexual Dysfunction consists of urologists. Members of this Panel have been selected based on their expertise to represent the professionals treating patients suffering from ED, PE, penile curvature and priapism.
2. METHODS

2.1 Introduction
References used in this text are assessed according to their Level of Evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a Grade of Recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [21]. Additional methodology information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/. A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be reviewed online at the above address.

For the 2016 print, a scoping search was performed covering all areas of the guideline covering the period May 2015 to June 2016. Embase, Medline and the Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials (RCTs) databases were searched, with a limitation to systematic reviews, meta-analyses or randomised controlled trials. A total of 2,783 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance, of which 56 were selected for inclusion. A detailed search strategy is available online: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/male-sexual-dysfunction/.

2.2 Review
This document was subject to peer review prior to publication in 2015.

2.3 Future goals
The results of ongoing and new systematic reviews will be included in the 2018 update of the Male Sexual Dysfunction Guidelines. Ongoing systematic reviews include:

1. What is the effectiveness (efficacy and safety) of non-operative treatment for Peyronie’s disease?
2. What is the effectiveness (efficacy and safety) of surgical treatment for Peyronie’s disease?
3. What are the benefits and harms of testosterone treatment for male sexual dysfunction? [22].

3. MALE SEXUAL DYSFUNCTION

3.1 Erectile dysfunction

3.1.1 Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology
Penile erection is a complex phenomenon which implies a delicate and co-ordinated equilibrium among the neurological, vascular and the tissue compartments. It includes arterial dilation, trabecular smooth muscle relaxation, and activation of the corporeal veno-occlusive mechanism [23]. Erectile Dysfunction is defined as the persistent inability to attain and maintain an erection sufficient to permit satisfactory sexual performance [24]. Erectile Dysfunction should not be regarded only as a Quality of Life (QoL), but also as a potential warning sign of cardiovascular disease (CVD) [28-30].

3.1.1.1 Epidemiology
Epidemiological data have shown a high prevalence and incidence of ED worldwide. Among others, the Massachusetts Male Aging Study (MMAS) [25] reported an overall prevalence of 52% ED in non-institutionalised men aged 40-70 years in the Boston area; specific prevalence for minimal, moderate, and complete ED was 17.2%, 25.2%, and 9.6%, respectively. In the Cologne study of men aged 30-80 years, the prevalence of ED was 19.2%, with a steep age-related increase from 2.3% to 53.4% [31]. The incidence rate of ED (new cases per 1,000 men annually) was 26 in the long-term data from the MMAS study [32] and 19.2 (mean follow-up of 4.2 years) in a Dutch study [33]. In a cross-sectional real-life study among men seeking first medical help for new-onset ED, one in four patients was younger than 40 years, with almost 50% of the young men complaining of severe ED [34]. Differences between these studies can be explained by differences in methodology, in the ages, and socio-economic and cultural status of the populations studied.

3.1.1.2 Risk factors
Erectile Dysfunction shares both unmodifiable and modifiable common risk factors with CVD (e.g., obesity, diabetes mellitus, dyslipidemia, metabolic syndrome, lack of exercise, and smoking) [27, 35-37]. Recent reports confirmed the association between ED status and age, diabetes mellitus duration, poor glycemic control and body mass index (BMI) [38].
A number of studies have shown some evidence that lifestyle modification [29, 39] and pharmacotherapy [39, 40] for CVD risk factors may be of help in improving sexual function in men with ED. However, it should be emphasised that more controlled prospective studies are necessary to determine the effects of exercise or other lifestyle changes in the prevention or treatment of ED [30].

Epidemiological studies have also demonstrated consistent evidence for an association between lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS)/benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) and sexual dysfunction, regardless of age, other comorbidities and various lifestyle factors [41]. The Multinational Survey on the Aging Male (MSAM-7) study - performed in the US, France, Germany, Italy, Netherlands, Spain, and the UK - systematically investigated the relationship between LUTS and sexual dysfunction in > 12,000 men aged 50-80 years. From the 83% of men who self-reported to be sexually active, the overall prevalence of LUTS was 90%, with the overall prevalence of ED being 49%, and a reported complete absence of erection in 10% of patients. Moreover, the overall prevalence of ejaculatory disorders was 46% [42].

The most recent epidemiological data collection have also highlighted other unexpected risk factors potentially associated with ED including psoriasis [43], ankylosing spondylitis [44], non-alcoholic fatty liver [45], and transrectal ultrasound (TRUS)-guided prostate biopsy [46].

3.1.1.3 Pathophysiology

The pathophysiology of ED may be vasculogenic, neurogenic, anatomical, hormonal, drug-induced and/or psychogenic (Table 1) [23].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathophysiology of ED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vasculogenic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiovascular disease (hypertension, coronary artery disease, peripheral vasculopathy, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes mellitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperlipidaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major pelvic surgery (radical prostatectomy (RP)) or radiotherapy (pelvis or retroperitoneum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neurogenic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central causes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degenerative disorders (multiple sclerosis, Parkinson’s disease, multiple atrophy, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord trauma or diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stroke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central nervous system tumours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peripheral causes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 1 and 2 diabetes mellitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic renal failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyneuropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgery (major surgery of pelvis/retroperitoneum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgery of the urethra (urethral stricture, urethroplasty, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anatomical or structural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypospadias, epispadias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micropenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peyronie’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penile cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phimosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hormonal</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypogonadism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperprolactinaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyper- and hypothyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyper- and hypocortisolism (Cushing’s disease, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panhypopituitarism and multiple endocrine disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drug-induced</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihypertensives (thiazide diuretics, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antidepressants (selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, tricyclics)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Antipsychotics (neuroleptics, etc.)
Antianalids (GnRH analogues and antagonists)
Recreational drugs (alcohol, heroin, cocaine, marijuana, methadone, synthetic drugs, anabolic steroids, etc.)

Psychogenic
Generalised type (e.g., lack of arousability and disorders of sexual intimacy)
Situational type (e.g., partner-related, performance-related issues or due to distress)

Trauma
Penile fracture
Pelvic fractures

3.1.1.3.1 Post-radical prostatectomy ED, post-radiotherapy ED & post-brachytherapy ED

Radical prostatectomy (RP) in any form (open, laparoscopic, or robotic) is a widely performed procedure for patients with clinically localised prostate cancer (PCa) and a life expectancy of at least ten years [47]. This procedure may lead to treatment-specific sequelae affecting health-related QoL. This outcome has become increasingly important with the more frequent diagnosis of PCa in younger men [48, 49]. Research has shown that 25-75% of men experience post-RP ED [50]. Of clinical relevance, the rate of unassisted post-operative erectile function recovery is in the range between 20 and 25% in most studies; (these rates emerged not to have been substantially improved or changed over the past seventeen years [51]. Given the growing clinical importance of robot-assisted RP (RARP), this type of surgery is becoming the paradigm for post-operative functional results. A systematic review (SR) has shown a significant advantage in favour of RARP in comparison with open retropubic RP in terms of 12-month potency rates [52], without significant differences between laparoscopic RP and RARP. Some recent reports confirm that the possibility of achieving erectile function recovery is about twice as high for the RARP compared with the open RP [53]. Recently a prospective, controlled, non-randomised trial of patients undergoing RP in fourteen Swedish centres comparing RARP versus retropubic RP, showed a small improvement regarding erectile function (EF) after RARP [54]. Conversely, a randomised controlled phase 3 study of men assigned to open RP or RARP showed that the two techniques yielded similar functional outcomes at twelve weeks [55]. As a whole, more controlled prospective studies, with longer term follow-up, are necessary to determine if RARP is superior to open RP in terms of post-operative ED rates [56]. Overall, patient age and surgical volume, with the consequent ability to preserve the neurovascular bundles, seem to be the main factors in promoting the highest rates of post-operative potency [48, 50].

Pre-operative potency is a major factor associated with the recovery of EF after surgery [49]. Patients being considered for nerve-sparing RP (NSRP) should ideally be potent pre-operatively [48, 49]. Overall, the chronological aspects are of major clinical importance in terms of post-operative recovery of erectile function. Available data confirm that post-operative erectile function recovery can also occur years following RP (up to 48 months) [57]. Likewise, it is shared opinion that the timing of post-operative therapy (any type) should be commenced as close as possible to the surgical procedure [48, 50].

Erectile Dysfunction is also a common sequela after external beam radiotherapy and brachytherapy for PCa [58, 59]. The mechanisms contributing to ED after prostate irradiation involve injury to the neurovascular bundles, penile vasculature, and cavernosal structural tissue [58]. Alternative treatments for PCa including cryotherapy and high-intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU) are also associated with equivalent or higher rates of ED compared to surgery or radiation therapy [60, 61].

3.1.1.3.2 Summary of evidence on the epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology of ED

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ED is common worldwide.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ED shares common risk factors with cardiovascular disease.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifestyle modification (regular exercise and decrease in body mass index) can improve erectile function.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ED is a symptom, not a disease. Some patients may not be properly evaluated or receive treatment for an underlying disease or condition that may be causing ED.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ED is common after RP, irrespective of the surgical technique used.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ED is common after external radiotherapy and brachytherapy.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ED is common after cryotherapy and high-intensity focused US.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.1.2 Classification

Erectile Dysfunction is commonly classified into three categories based on its aetiology. These include organic, psychogenic and mixed ED. However, this classification should be used with caution since most cases are actually of mixed aetiology. It is therefore suggested to use the term primary organic or primary psychogenic.

3.1.3 Diagnostic evaluation

3.1.3.1 Basic work-up

The first step in evaluating ED is always a detailed medical and sexual history of patients and, when available, their partners [62]. In this context, taking a comprehensive medical history may reveal one of the many common disorders associated with ED [62]. It is important to establish a relaxed atmosphere during history-taking. This will make it easier to i) ask questions about erectile function and other aspects of the sexual history; and, ii) to explain the diagnosis and therapeutic approach to the patient and his partner. Figure 1 lists the minimal diagnostic evaluation (basic work-up) in patients with ED.

3.1.3.1.1 Sexual history

The sexual history must include information about sexual orientation, previous and current sexual relationships, current emotional status, onset and duration of the erectile problem, and previous consultations and treatments. The sexual health status of the partner(s) (when available) can also be useful.

A detailed description should be made of the rigidity and duration of both sexually-stimulated and morning erections and of problems with sexual desire, arousal, ejaculation, and orgasm [63, 64]. Validated psychometric questionnaires, such as the International Index for Erectile Function (IIEF) [65] or its short version the Sexual Health Inventory for Men (SHIM) [66], help to assess the different sexual function domains (i.e. sexual desire, erectile function, orgasmic function, intercourse, and overall satisfaction), as well as the potential impact of a specific treatment modality.

Psychometric analyses also support the use of the erectile hardness score for the assessment of penile rigidity in practice and in clinical trials research [67]. In cases of clinical depression, the use of a 2-question scale for depression is recommended in everyday clinical practice: “During the past month have you often been bothered by feeling down, depressed or hopeless? During the past month have you often been bothered by little interest or pleasure, doing things?” [68]. Patients should always be screened for symptoms of possible hypogonadism (= testosterone deficiency), including decreased energy, libido, fatigue and cognitive impairment, as well as for LUTS. In this regard, although LUTS/BPH in itself does not represent a contraindication to treat a patient for late onset hypogonadism, screening for LUTS severity is clinically relevant [69].

3.1.3.1.2 Physical examination

Every patient must be given a physical examination focused on the genitourinary, endocrine, vascular and neurological systems [70, 71]. A physical examination may reveal unsuspected diagnoses, such as Peyronie’s disease, pre-malignant or malignant genital lesions, prostatic enlargement or irregularity/nodularity, or signs and symptoms suggesting hypogonadism (small testes, alterations in secondary sexual characteristics etc.). Blood pressure and heart rate should be measured if they have not been assessed in the previous three to six months. Likewise either BMI calculation or waist circumference measurement should be taken into consideration in every patient with comorbid conditions.

3.1.3.1.3 Laboratory testing

Laboratory testing must be tailored to the patient’s complaints and risk factors. Patients may need a fasting blood glucose or HbA1c and lipid profile if they have not recently been assessed. Hormonal tests include an early morning total testosterone. If indicated, the bio-available or calculated-free testosterone may be needed to corroborate total testosterone measurements. However, the threshold of testosterone required to maintain an erection is low and ED is usually a symptom of more severe cases of hypogonadism [35, 72-74]. For levels > 8 nmol/l the relationship between circulating testosterone and sexual functioning is very low [35, 72-74]. Additional laboratory tests may be considered in selected patients (e.g., prostate-specific antigen (PSA) [75]; prolactin, and luteinising hormone [76]. Although physical examination and laboratory evaluation of most men with ED may not reveal the exact diagnosis, these present opportunities to identify critical comorbid conditions that should not be missed [71].
ED = erectile dysfunction; IIEF = International Index of Erectile Function.

3.1.3.1.4 Cardiovascular system and sexual activity: the patient at risk
Patients who seek treatment for sexual dysfunction have a high prevalence of CVDs. Epidemiological surveys have emphasised the association between cardiovascular and metabolic risk factors and sexual dysfunction in both men [77] and women [78]. Overall, ED can improve the sensitivity of screening for asymptomatic CVD in men with diabetes [79, 80]. ED significantly increases the risk of CVD, coronary heart disease, stroke, and all these cause mortality, and the increase is probably independent of conventional cardiovascular risk factors [28, 29, 81]. Longitudinal data from an observational population-based study of 965 men without CVD, showed that younger men (< 50 years) with persistent ED have an increased Framingham risk that is independent of traditional CVD risk factors [82].

The EAU Guidelines for diagnosing and treating men with ED have been adapted from previously published recommendations from the Princeton Consensus conferences on sexual dysfunction and cardiac risk [83]. The Princeton Consensus (Expert Panel) Conference is dedicated to optimising sexual function and preserving cardiovascular health [83-85]. Accordingly, patients with ED can be stratified into three cardiovascular risk categories (Table 2), which can be used as the basis for a treatment algorithm for initiating or resuming sexual activity (Figure 2). It is also possible for the clinician to estimate the risk of sexual activity in most patients from their level of exercise tolerance, which can be determined when taking the patient's history [40].
Table 2: Cardiac risk stratification (based on 2nd and 3rd Princeton Consensus [83, 85])

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Low-risk category</th>
<th>Intermediate-risk category</th>
<th>High-risk category</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asymptomatic, &lt; 3 risk factors for CAD (excluding sex)</td>
<td>≥ 3 risk factors for CAD (excluding sex)</td>
<td>High-risk arrhythmias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild, stable angina (evaluated and/or being treated)</td>
<td>Moderate, stable angina</td>
<td>Unstable or refractory angina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncomplicated previous MI</td>
<td>Recent MI (&gt; 2, &lt; 6 weeks)</td>
<td>Recent MI (&lt; 2 weeks)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVD/CHF (NYHA class I or II)</td>
<td>LVD/CHF (NYHA class III)</td>
<td>LVD/CHF (NYHA class IV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-successful coronary revascularisation</td>
<td>Non-cardiac sequelae of atherosclerotic disease (e.g., stroke, peripheral vascular disease)</td>
<td>Hypertrophic obstructive and other cardiomyopathies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlled hypertension</td>
<td></td>
<td>Uncontrolled hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild valvular disease</td>
<td></td>
<td>Moderate-to-severe valvular disease</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CAD = coronary artery disease; CHF = congestive heart failure; LVD = left ventricular dysfunction; MI = myocardial infarction; NYHA = New York Heart Association.

Figure 2: Treatment algorithm for determining level of sexual activity according to cardiac risk in Erectile Dysfunction (based on 3rd Princeton Consensus) [83]

Sexual inquiry of all men

ED confirmed

Exercise ability

Low risk

Intermediate risk

Stress test

Pass

Low risk

Advice, treat ED

Fail

High risk

Cardiologist

a Sexual activity is equivalent to walking 1 mile on the flat in 20 minutes or briskly climbing two flights of stairs in 10 seconds.

b Sexual activity is equivalent to four minutes of the Bruce treadmill protocol.
3.1.3.1.4.1 Low-risk category
The low-risk category includes patients who do not have any significant cardiac risk associated with sexual activity. Low-risk is typically implied by the ability to perform exercise of modest intensity, which is defined as, \( \geq 6 \) metabolic equivalents of energy expenditure in the resting state without symptoms. According to current knowledge of the exercise demand or emotional stress associated with sexual activity, low-risk patients do not need cardiac testing or evaluation before the initiation or resumption of sexual activity or therapy for sexual dysfunction.

3.1.3.1.4.2 Intermediate- or indeterminate-risk category
The intermediate- or indeterminate-risk category consists of patients with an uncertain cardiac condition or patients whose risk profile requires testing or evaluation before the resumption of sexual activity. Based upon the results of testing, these patients may be moved to either the high- or low-risk group. A cardiology consultation may be needed in some patients to help the primary physician determine the safety of sexual activity.

3.1.3.1.4.3 High-risk category
High-risk patients have a cardiac condition that is sufficiently severe and/or unstable for sexual activity to carry a significant risk. Most high-risk patients have moderate-to-severe symptomatic heart disease. High-risk individuals should be referred for cardiac assessment and treatment. Sexual activity should be stopped until the patient's cardiac condition has been stabilised by treatment, or a decision made by the cardiologist and/or internist that it is safe to resume sexual activity.

3.1.3.2 Specialised diagnostic tests
Most patients with ED can be managed within the sexual care setting; conversely, some patients may need specific diagnostic tests (Tables 3 and 4).

3.1.3.2.1 Nocturnal penile tumescence and rigidity test
The nocturnal penile tumescence and rigidity assessment should be performed on at least two separate nights. A functional erectile mechanism is indicated by an erectile event of at least 60% rigidity recorded on the tip of the penis that lasts for ten or more minutes [86].

3.1.3.2.2 Intracavernous injection test
The intracavernous injection test gives limited information about the vascular status. A positive test is a rigid erectile response (unable to bend the penis) that appears within ten minutes after the intracavernous injection and lasts for 30 minutes [87]. Overall, the test is inconclusive as a diagnostic procedure and a duplex Doppler study of the penis should be requested, if clinically warranted.

3.1.3.2.3 Duplex ultrasound of the penis
A peak systolic blood flow > 30 cm/s, an end-diastolic velocity of \(< 3 \text{ cm/s} \) and a resistance index > 0.8 are generally considered normal [88]. Further vascular investigation is unnecessary when a duplex ultrasound (US) examination is normal.

3.1.3.2.4 Arteriography and dynamic infusion cavernosometry or cavernosography
Arteriography and dynamic infusion cavernosometry or cavernosography should be performed only in patients who are being considered for vascular reconstructive surgery [89].

3.1.3.2.5 Psychiatric assessment
Whenever clinically indicated, patients with psychiatric disorders should be referred to a psychiatrist who is particularly interested in sexual health. In younger patients (< 40 years) with long-term primary ED [34], psychiatric assessment may be helpful before any organic assessment is carried out.

3.1.3.2.6 Penile abnormalities
Surgical correction may be needed in patients with ED and penile abnormalities (e.g. hypospadias, congenital curvature, or Peyronie’s disease with preserved rigidity).

3.1.3.3 Patient education - consultation and referrals
Consultation with the patient should include a discussion of the expectations and needs of both the patient and their sexual partner. It should also review both the patient's and partner's understanding of ED and the results of diagnostic tests, and provide a rational selection of treatment options [90]. Patient and partner education is an essential part of ED management [90, 91].
### Table 3: Indications for specific diagnostic tests

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary ED (not caused by organic disease or psychogenic disorder).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young patients with a history of pelvic or perineal trauma, who could benefit from potentially curative revascularisation surgery or angioplasty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients with penile deformities which might require surgical correction (e.g., Peyronie’s disease, congenital penile curvature).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients with complex psychiatric or psychosexual disorders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients with complex endocrine disorders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific tests may be indicated at the request of the patient or his partner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medico-legal reasons (e.g., implantation of penile prosthesis to document end stage ED, sexual abuse).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 4: Specific diagnostic tests

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specific diagnostic tests</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nocturnal Penile Tumescence and Rigidity (NTPR) using Rigiscan®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vascular studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Intracavernous vasoactive drug injection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Penile Dynamic Duplex Ultrasonography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Penile Dynamic Infusion Cavernosometry and Cavernosography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Internal pudendal arteriography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurological studies (e.g., bulbocavernosus reflex latency, nerve conduction studies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endocrinological studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialised psychodiagnostic evaluation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.1.3.4 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of ED

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take a comprehensive medical and sexual history in every patient.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use a validated questionnaire related to erectile dysfunction to assess all sexual function domains and the effect of a specific treatment modality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include a physical examination in the initial assessment of men with erectile dysfunction (ED) to identify underlying medical conditions that may be associated with ED.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess routine laboratory tests, including glucose-lipid profile and total testosterone, to identify and treat any reversible risk factors and lifestyle factors that can be modified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include specific diagnostic tests in the initial evaluation only in the presence of the conditions presented in Table 3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.1.4 Disease management

#### 3.1.4.1 Treatment options

Erectile dysfunction may be associated with modifiable or reversible risk factors, including lifestyle or drug-related factors [30]. These factors may be modified either before, or at the same time as, specific therapies are used. Likewise, ED may be associated with concomitant and underlying conditions (such as, endocrine disorders and metabolic disorders - e.g. diabetes - some cardiovascular problems - e.g. hypertension) which should always be well-controlled as the first step of ED treatment [92]. As a rule, ED can be treated successfully with current treatment options, but it cannot be cured. The only exceptions are psychogenic ED, post-traumatic arteriogenic ED in young patients, and hormonal causes (e.g. hypogonadism and hyperprolactinaemia) [73, 76], which potentially can be cured with specific treatment. Most men with ED will be treated with therapeutic options that are not cause specific. This results in a structured treatment strategy that depends on efficacy, safety, invasiveness and cost, as well as patient preference [90]. In this context, physician-patient (partner) dialogue is essential throughout the management of ED. The assessment of treatment options must be tailored according to patient and partner satisfaction, QoL factors as well as treatment-related safety and efficacy. A treatment algorithm for ED is shown in Figure 3.

#### 3.1.4.1.1 Lifestyle management of ED with concomitant risk factors

The basic work-up of the patient must identify reversible risk factors for ED. Lifestyle changes and risk factor modification must precede or accompany any pharmacological treatment. Major clinical potential benefits of lifestyle changes may be obtained in men with specific comorbid cardiovascular or metabolic disorders, such as diabetes or hypertension [30, 93].
3.1.4.1.2 Erectile dysfunction after radical prostatectomy

Use of pro-erectile drugs following RP is important in achieving post-operative erectile function. Several trials have shown higher rates of erectile function recovery after RP in patients receiving any drug (therapeutic or prophylactic) for ED. Early compared with delayed erectile function treatment seems to impact on the natural healing time of potency [48]. Currently available therapeutic armamentarium follows the treatment algorithm for ED which is shown in Figure 3.

The management of post-RP ED has been revolutionised by the advent of phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitors (PDE5Is), with their demonstrated efficacy, ease of use, good tolerability, excellent safety, and positive impact on QoL. It must be emphasised that post-RP ED patients are poor responders to PDE5Is. However, PDE5Is are considered as the first-line therapy in patients who have undergone nerve-sparing (NS) surgery regardless of the surgical technique used [48, 49]. A number of clinical parameters have been identified as potential predictors of PDE5Is in men undergoing RP. Patient age and quality of NS technique are key factors in preserving post-RP erectile function [48, 49, 52]. The response rate to sildenafil treatment for ED after RP in different trials has ranged from 35% to 75% among those who underwent NSRP and from 0% to 15% among those who underwent non-NSRP [48, 94]. Early use of high-dose sildenafil after RP has been suggested to be associated with preservation of smooth muscle within the corpora cavernosa [95]. Daily sildenafil also results in a greater return of spontaneous normal erectile function after RP compared to placebo following bilateral NSRP in patients who were fully potent before surgery [96]. Conversely, a recent prospective, randomised, placebo-controlled study, which assessed the effects of nightly sildenafil citrate therapy during penile rehabilitation using nocturnal penile rigidity in addition to the IIEF-EF, showed no therapeutic benefit for nightly sildenafil when compared to on-demand dosing in determining recovery of erectile function post-prostatectomy [97].

The effectiveness of tadalafl and vardenafil as on-demand treatment has been evaluated in post-RP ED. A large multicentre trial in Europe and the USA has studied tadalafl in patients with ED following bilateral NS surgery. Erectile function was improved in 71% of patients treated with 20 mg tadalafl vs. 24% of those treated with placebo, while the rate of successful intercourse attempts was 52% with 20 mg tadalafl vs. 26% with placebo [98]. Similarly, vardenafil has been tested in patients with ED following NSRP in a randomised, multicentre, prospective, placebo-controlled study in North America [99]. Following bilateral NSRP, erectile function improved by 71% and 60% with 10 and 20 mg vardenafil, respectively. An extended analysis of the same cohort of patients showed the benefit of vardenafil compared to placebo in terms of intercourse satisfaction, hardness of erection, orgasmic function, and overall satisfaction with sexual experience [100]. Moreover, a randomised, double-blind, double-dummy trial in men < 68 years of age and normal pre-operative erectile function who underwent NSRP at 50 centres from nine European countries and Canada, compared tadalafl once daily with placebo [101]. Tadalafl was most effective for drug-assisted erectile function in men with ED following NSRP, and data suggested a potential role for tadalafl once daily - provided early after surgery - in contributing to the recovery of post-operative erectile function and possibly protecting penile structural changes [101]. Unassisted erectile function was not improved after cessation of active therapy for nine months [101]. Moreover, taking tadalafl once daily significantly shortened time to erectile function recovery versus placebo over the nine month double-blind treatment period. Conversely tadalafl on demand did not [102]. Likewise, tadalafl once daily improved QoL post-operatively, both at double-blind treatment and open label treatment period [103].

A randomised, double-blind, double-dummy, multicentre, parallel-group study in 87 centres across Europe, Canada, South Africa and the USA, compared on-demand and nightly dosing of vardenafil in men with ED following bilateral NSRP [104]. In patients whose pre-operative erectile function domain score was > 26, vardenafil was efficacious when used on demand, supporting a paradigm shift towards on-demand dosing with PDE5Is in post-RP ED [104]. A double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel-group study in 298 patients with ED after bilateral NSRP randomised to 100 or 200 mg avanafil or placebo (taken 30 minutes before sexual activity) for twelve weeks showed significantly greater increases in sexual encounter profile (SEP) question 2 and SEP3 as well as in mean change of IIEF erectile function domain score with 100 and 200 mg avanafil vs. placebo (p < 0.01) [85].

For dosing with avanafil 36.4% (28 of 77) of sexual attempts (SEP3) at fifteen minutes or less were successful vs. 4.5% (2 of 44) for placebo (p < 0.01) [105]. A recently conducted meta-analysis confirmed that avanafil had comparable efficacy with sildenafil, vardenafil and tadalafl treatments [106]. Although some authors reported improved erectile function when long-term tadalafl 5 mg once daily is combined with sildenafil as needed [107], more safety analyses are required to recommend such a therapy.

Historically, the treatment options for post-RP ED have included intracavernous injections [108], urethral microsuppository [48, 109], vacuum device therapy [48, 110], and penile implants [48, 111, 112].
Intracavernous injections and penile implants are still suggested as second- and third-line treatments, respectively, when oral PDE5Is are not adequately effective or contraindicated for post-operative patients (Sections 3.1.4.3 and 3.1.4.4). Recently, the data from a human phase 1 trial with a single intracavernosal injection of autologous adipose-derived regenerative cells (ADRCs) freshly isolated after a liposuction in post-prostatectomy ED patients, showed promising results in restoring normal erectile function with only minor side-effects [113].

**Figure 3: Treatment algorithm for erectile dysfunction**

- **Identify and treat ‘curable’ causes of erectile dysfunction**
- **Lifestyle changes and risk factor modification**
- **Provide education and counselling to patients and partners**
- **Identify patient needs and expectations**
  - Shared decision-making
  - Offer conjoint psychosocial and medical treatment

- **PDE5 inhibitors**
- **Intracavernous injections**
  - Vacuum devices
  - Intraurethral/topical alprostadil

- **Assess therapeutic outcome:**
  - Erectile response
  - Side-effects
  - Treatment satisfaction

- **Inadequate treatment outcome**
  - Assess adequate use of treatment options
  - Provide new instructions and counselling
  - Re-trial
  - Consider alternative or combination therapy

- **Inadequate treatment outcome**
  - Consider penile prosthesis implantation
3.1.4.1.3 Causes of ED that can be potentially treated with a curative intent

3.1.4.1.3.1 Hormonal causes

The advice of an endocrinologist may be beneficial for managing patients with hormonal abnormalities [76]. Testosterone deficiency is either a result of primary testicular failure or secondary to pituitary/hypothalamic causes (e.g., a functional pituitary tumour resulting in hyperprolactinaemia) [76, 114]. When clinically indicated [115], testosterone supplementation (TS) (intramuscular, oral, or transdermal) is effective, but should only be used after other endocrinological causes for testicular failure have been excluded [35, 73, 116]. Before initiating TS, digital rectal examination (DRE), serum PSA test, haematocrit, liver function tests and lipid profile should be performed [35, 73, 117]. Patients who are given TS should be monitored for clinical response, elevation of haematocrit and development of hepatic or prostatic disorders [35, 73, 117]. Testosterone supplementation is controversial in men with a history of PCa (LE: 4) [118]. Since there is limited evidence suggesting that TS may not pose an undue risk of PCa recurrence or progression, TS is contraindicated in patients with untreated PCa (LE: 4).

Testosterone supplementation is contraindicated in patients with unstable cardiac disease [69, 119]. Conversely, the role of testosterone in the cardiovascular health of men is controversial. Clinical trials examining TS have been insufficiently powered to provide definitive and unequivocal evidence of adverse events in terms of cardiovascular outcomes [120-125]. Current guidelines from the Endocrine Society make no recommendations on whether patients with heart disease should be screened for hypogonadism and do not recommend supplementing testosterone in patients with heart disease to improve survival [72]. However, a recent comprehensive SR and meta-analysis of all placebo-controlled RCTs on the effect of TS on cardiovascular-related problems did not support a causal role between TS and adverse cardiovascular events [119].

3.1.4.1.3.2 Post-traumatic arteriogenic ED in young patients

In young patients with pelvic or perineal trauma, surgical penile revascularisation has a 60-70% long-term success rate [126]. The lesion must be confirmed by penile pharmaco-arteriography. Corporeal veno-occlusive dysfunction is a contraindication to revascularisation and must be excluded by dynamic infusion cavernosometry or cavernosography. Vascular surgery for veno-occlusive dysfunction is no longer recommended because of poor long-term results [126].

3.1.4.1.3.3 Psychosexual counselling and therapy

For patients with a significant psychological problem, psychosexual therapy may be given either alone or with another therapeutic approach in order to improve couple sexual satisfaction and female sexual function [127]. Psychosexual therapy requires ongoing follow-up and has had variable results [128].

3.1.4.2 First-line therapy

3.1.4.2.1 Oral pharmacotherapy

Phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitor hydrolyses cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP) in the cavernosal tissue. Inhibition of PDE5 results in smooth muscle relaxation with increased arterial blood flow, leading to compression of the subtunical venous plexus followed by penile erection [129]. Four potent selective PDE5Is have been approved by the European Medicines Agency (EMA) for the treatment of ED [130]. They are not initiators of erection and require sexual stimulation to facilitate an erection. Efficacy is defined as an erection with rigidity sufficient for penetration.

Sildenafil

Sildenafil was launched in 1998 and was the first PDE5I available on the market [131]. It is administered in doses of 25, 50 and 100 mg. The recommended starting dose is 50 mg and should be adapted according to the patient’s response and side-effects [131]. Sildenafil is effective from 30-60 minutes after administration [131]. Its efficacy is reduced after a heavy, fatty meal due to delayed absorption. Efficacy may be maintained for up to twelve hours [132]. The pharmacokinetic data of sildenafil are presented in Table 5. Adverse events (Table 6) are generally mild in nature and self-limited by continuous use [133, 134]. After 24 weeks in a dose-response study, improved erections were reported by 56%, 77% and 84% of a general ED population taking 25, 50 and 100 mg sildenafil, respectively, compared to 25% of men taking placebo [135]. Sildenafil significantly improved patient scores for IIEF, SEP2, SEP3, and General Assessment Questionnaire (GAQ) and treatment satisfaction. The efficacy of sildenafil in almost every subgroup of patients with ED has been successfully established. (LE: 1). Recently, an orally disintegrating tablet (ODT) of sildenafil citrate at the dosage of 50 mg has been developed mainly for the benefit of patients who have difficulty swallowing solid dosage forms.
Tadalafil
Tadalafil was licensed for treatment of ED in February 2003 and is effective from 30 minutes after administration, with peak efficacy after about two hours [136]. Efficacy is maintained for up to 36 hours [136] and is not affected by food. It is administered in on-demand doses of 10 and 20 mg and also an alternative daily dose of 5 mg. The recommended on-demand starting dose is 10 mg and should be adapted according to the patient’s response and side-effects [136, 137]. Pharmacokinetic data of tadalafil are presented in Table 5. Adverse events (Table 6) are generally mild in nature and self-limited by continuous use. In pre-marketing studies, after twelve weeks of treatment and in a dose-response study, improved erections were reported by 67% and 81% of a general ED population taking 10 and 20 mg tadalafil, respectively, compared to 35% of men in the control placebo group [136]. Tadalafil significantly improved patient scores for IIEF, SEP2, SEP3, and GAQ and treatment satisfaction [136].

Efficacy has been confirmed in post-marketing studies [130, 138]. The efficacy of tadalafil in almost every subgroup of patients with ED, including difficult-to-treat subgroups (e.g. diabetes mellitus), has been successfully established [139]. Daily tadalafil has also been licensed for the treatment of LUTS secondary to BPH. Therefore, it is useful in patients with concomitant ED and LUTS [140].

Vardenafil
Vardenafil became commercially available in March 2003 and is effective from 30 minutes after administration [139]. Its effect is reduced by a heavy, fatty meal (> 57% fat). 5, 10 and 20 mg doses have been approved for on-demand treatment of ED. The recommended starting dose is 10 mg and should be adapted according to the patient’s response and side-effects [141]. Pharmacokinetic data of vardenafil are presented in Table 5. Adverse events (Table 6) are generally mild in nature and self-limited by continuous use [141]. After twelve weeks in a dose-response study, improved erections were reported by 66%, 76% and 80% of a general ED population taking 5, 10 and 20 mg vardenafil, respectively, compared with 30% of men taking placebo [141, 142]. Vardenafil significantly improved patient scores for IIEF, SEP2, SEP3, and GAQ and treatment satisfaction. Efficacy has been confirmed in post-marketing studies [142]. The efficacy of vardenafil in almost every subgroup of patients with ED, including difficult-to-treat subgroups (e.g. diabetes mellitus), has been successfully established. More recently, an ODT form of vardenafil has been released [142]. Orodispersable tablet formulations offer improved convenience over film-coated formulations and may be preferred by patients. Absorption is unrelated to food intake and they exhibit better bio-availability compared to film-coated tablets [143]. The efficacy of vardenafil ODT has been demonstrated in several RCTs and did not seem to differ from the regular formulation [143-145].

Avanafil
Avanafil is a highly-selective PDE5I that became commercially available in 2013 [146]. Avanafil has a high ratio of inhibiting PDE5 as compared with other PDE subtypes allowing for the drug to be used for ED while minimising adverse effects [147]. 50 mg, 100 mg, and 200 mg doses have been approved for on-demand treatment of ED [146]. The recommended starting dose is 100 mg taken as needed approximately 15 to 30 minutes before sexual activity and the dosage may be adapted according to efficacy and tolerability [146, 148, 149]. In the general population with ED, the mean percentage of attempts resulting in successful intercourse was approximately 47%, 58%, and 59% for the 50 mg, 100 mg, and 200 mg avanafil groups, respectively, as compared with approximately 28% for placebo [146, 148]. Data from sexual attempts made within fifteen minutes of dosing showed successful attempts in 64%, 67%, and 71% of cases, with avanafil 50, 100, and 200 mg, respectively. The maximum recommended dosing frequency is once per day. Dosage adjustments are not warranted based on renal function, hepatic function, age or gender [148]. Pharmacokinetic data of avanafil are presented in Table 5 [146, 148]. Adverse events are generally mild in nature (Table 6) [146, 148]. Pairwise meta-analytic data from available studies suggested that avanafil significantly improved patient scores for IIEF, SEP2, SEP3, and GAQ, with an evident dose-response relationship [146, 150]. Administration with food may delay the onset of effect compared with administration in the fasting state but avanafil can be taken with or without food. The efficacy of avanafil in many groups of patients with ED, including difficult-to-treat subgroups (e.g. diabetes mellitus), has been successfully established.

Choice or preference between the different PDE5Is
To date, no data are available from double- or triple-blind multicentre studies comparing the efficacy and/or patient preference for sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil, and avanafil. Choice of drug will depend on the frequency of intercourse (occasional use or regular therapy, three to four times weekly) and the patient’s personal experience. Patients need to know whether a drug is short- or long-acting, its possible disadvantages, and how to use it. A recent meta-analysis demonstrated that ED patients who prioritise high efficacy must use sildenafil 50 mg whereas those who optimise tolerability should initiate with tadalafil 10 mg treatment and switch to udenafil 100 mg if the treatment is not sufficient [138]. Of clinical relevance, udenafil is not an EMEA or FDA
approved drug. Results of another clinical trial revealed that tadalafil 5 mg once daily may improve the erectile function outcomes among men who had a partial response to on-demand PDE5I therapy [151].

Continuous use of PDE5Is
Animal studies have shown that chronic use of PDE5 inhibitors significantly improves or prevents the intracavernous structure alterations due to age, diabetes, or surgical damage [152-156]. No data exists for a human population. In humans, it has been clinically demonstrated that treatment with tadalafil 5 mg once daily in men complaining of ED of various severities was well tolerated and effective [157]. In 2007, tadalafil 2.5 and 5 mg were approved by the EMA for daily treatment of ED. According to EMA, a once daily regimen with tadalafil 2.5 mg or 5 mg might be considered suitable, based on patient choice and the physician’s judgement. In these patients, the recommended dose is 5 mg, taken once a day at approximately the same time. Overall, tadalafil, 5 mg once daily, provides an alternative to on-demand dosing of tadalafil for couples who prefer spontaneous rather than scheduled sexual activities or who anticipate frequent sexual activity, with the advantage that dosing and sexual activity no longer need to be temporally linked. The appropriateness of the continuous use of a daily regimen should be re-assessed periodically [157, 158]. Continuous dosing may also be used in the comorbid patient with LUTS and ED.

Table 5: Summary of the key pharmacokinetic data for the four PDE5Is currently EMA-approved to treat ED

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Sildenafil, 100 mg</th>
<th>Tadalafil, 20 mg</th>
<th>Vardenafil, 20 mg</th>
<th>Avanafil 200mg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;max&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>560 μg/L</td>
<td>378 μg/L</td>
<td>18.7 μg/L</td>
<td>5.2 μg/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T&lt;sub&gt;max&lt;/sub&gt; (median)</td>
<td>0.8-1 hours</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>0.9 hours</td>
<td>0.5-0.75 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T&lt;sub&gt;1/2&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>2.6-3.7 hours</td>
<td>17.5 hours</td>
<td>3.9 hours</td>
<td>6-17 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUC</td>
<td>1,685 μg.h/L</td>
<td>8,066 μg.h/L</td>
<td>56.8 μg.h/L</td>
<td>11.6 μg.h/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein binding</td>
<td>96%</td>
<td>94%</td>
<td>94%</td>
<td>99%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bioavailability</td>
<td>41%</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>8-10%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Fasted state, higher recommended dose. Data adapted from EMA statements on product characteristics.

C<sub>max</sub>: maximal concentration, T<sub>max</sub>: time-to-maximum plasma concentration; T<sub>1/2</sub>: plasma elimination halftime; AUC: area under curve or serum concentration time curve.

Table 6: Common adverse events of the four PDE5Is currently EMA-approved to treat ED

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverse event</th>
<th>Sildenafil</th>
<th>Tadalafil</th>
<th>Vardenafil</th>
<th>Avanafil 200mg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Headache</td>
<td>12.8%</td>
<td>14.5%</td>
<td>16%</td>
<td>9.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flushing</td>
<td>10.4%</td>
<td>4.1%</td>
<td>12%</td>
<td>3.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyspepsia</td>
<td>4.6%</td>
<td>12.3%</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal congestion</td>
<td>1.1%</td>
<td>4.3%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>1.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dizziness</td>
<td>1.2%</td>
<td>2.3%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abnormal vision</td>
<td>1.9%</td>
<td>&lt; 2%</td>
<td>&lt; 2%</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back pain</td>
<td>6.5%</td>
<td>&lt; 2%</td>
<td>&lt; 2%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myalgia</td>
<td>5.7%</td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; 2%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Adapted from EMA statements on product characteristics.

Safety issues for PDE5Is

(i) Cardiovascular safety
Clinical trial results for the four PDE5Is and post-marketing data of sildenafil, tadalafil, and vardenafil have demonstrated no increase in myocardial infarction rates in patients receiving PDE5Is, as part of either RCTs or open-label studies, or compared to expected rates in age-matched male populations. None of the PDE5Is had an adverse effect on total exercise time or time-to-ischaemia during exercise testing in men with stable angina. Chronic or on-demand use is well tolerated with a similar safety profile. All PDE5Is are contraindicated in:

i) patients who have suffered from a myocardial infarction, stroke, or life-threatening arrhythmia within the last six months; ii) patients with resting hypotension (blood pressure < 90/50 mmHg) or hypertension (blood pressure > 170/100 mmHg); iii) patients with unstable angina, angina with sexual intercourse, or congestive heart failure categorised as New York Heart Association Class IV [83, 159-161].
(ii) Nitrates are contraindicated with PDE5Is
Absolute contraindication to PDE5Is is represented by patients who are using any form of organic nitrate (e.g., nitroglycerine, isosorbide mononitrate, and isosorbide dinitrate) or nitric oxide (NO) donors (e.g., other nitrate preparations used to treat angina, as well as amyl nitrite or amyl nitrate such as “poppers” which is used for recreation). They result in cGMP accumulation and unpredictable falls in blood pressure and symptoms of hypotension. The duration of interaction between organic nitrates and PDE5Is depends upon the PDE5I and nitrate used. If a PDE5I is taken and the patient develops chest pain, nitroglycerine must be withheld for at least 24 hours if sildenafil (and probably also vardenafil) is used (half-life, four hours), or at least 48 hours if tadalafil is used (half-life, 17.5 hours), and for no less than twelve hours if avanafil is used (half-life, 6-17 hours) [162].

(iii) Antihypertensive drugs
Co-administration of PDE5Is with antihypertensive agents (angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, angiotensin-receptor blockers, calcium blockers, β-blockers, and diuretics) may result in small additive decreases in blood pressure, which are usually minor [83]. In general, the adverse event profile of a PDE5I is not worsened by a background of antihypertensive medication, even when the patient is taking several antihypertensive agents [163].

α-Blocker interactions
All PDE5Is show some interaction with α-blockers, which under some conditions may result in orthostatic hypotension.

- Sildenafil labelling advises that 50 or 100 mg sildenafil should be used with caution in patients taking an α-blocker (especially doxazosin). Hypotension is more likely to occur within four hours following treatment with an α-blocker. A starting dose of 25 mg is recommended [133].
- Concomitant treatment with vardenafil should only be initiated if the patient has been stabilised on his α-blocker therapy. Co-administration of vardenafil with tamsulosin is not associated with clinically significant hypotension [139, 141, 142].
- Tadalafil is not recommended in patients taking doxazosin, but this is not the case for tamsulosin [136, 164].
- Avanafil labelling currently reports that patients should be stable on α-blocker therapy prior to initiating avanafil. In these patients, avanafil should be initiated at the lowest dose of 50 mg. Conversely, in those patients already taking an optimised dose of avanafil, α-blocker therapy should be initiated at the lowest dose.

Dosage adjustment
Drugs that inhibit the CYP34A pathway will inhibit the metabolic breakdown of PDE5Is, thus increasing PDE5Is blood levels (e.g., ketoconazole, ritonavir, atazanavir, clarithromycin, indinavir, ltraconazole, nefazodone, nelfinavir, saquinavir and telithromycin). Therefore, lower doses of PDE5Is are necessary. However, other agents, such as rifampin, phenobarbital, phenytoin and carbamazepine, may induce CYP3A4 and enhance the breakdown of PDE5Is, so that higher doses of PDE5Is are required. Severe kidney or hepatic dysfunction may require dose adjustments or warnings.

Management of non-responders to PDE5Is
The two main reasons why patients fail to respond to a PDE5I are either incorrect drug use or lack of efficacy of the drug. Data suggest that an adequate trial involves at least six attempts with a particular drug [165]. The management of non-responders depends upon identifying the underlying cause. Check that the patient has been using a licensed medication. There is a large counterfeit market in PDE5Is. The amount of active drug in these medications varies enormously and it is important to check how and from which source the patient has obtained his medication.

Check that the medication has been properly prescribed and correctly used. The main reason why patients fail to use their medication correctly is inadequate counselling from their physician. The most common causes of incorrect drug use are: i) failure to use adequate sexual stimulation; ii) failure to use an adequate dose; and, iii) failure to wait an adequate amount of time between taking the medication and attempting sexual intercourse.

PDE5I action is dependent on the release of NO by the parasympathetic nerve endings in the erectile tissue of the penis. The usual stimulus for NO release is sexual stimulation, and without adequate sexual stimulation (and NO release), the medication is ineffective. Oral PDE5Is take different times to reach maximal plasma concentrations [132, 134, 143, 150, 166-168]. Although pharmacological activity is achieved at plasma levels well below the maximal plasma concentration, there will be a period of time following oral ingestion of the medication during which the drug is ineffective. Even though all four drugs have an onset of
action in some patients within 15-30 minutes of oral ingestion [134, 143, 150, 166-168], most patients require a longer delay between taking the medication [141, 150, 169, 170]. Absorption of sildenafil can be delayed by a meal, and absorption of vardenafil can be delayed by a fatty meal [171]. Absorption of tadalafil is less affected provided there is enough delay between oral ingestion and an attempt at sexual intercourse [166]. When avanafil is taken with a high fat meal, the rate of absorption is reduced with a mean delay in $T_{\text{max}}$ of 1.25 hours and a mean reduction in $C_{\text{max}}$ of 39% (200 mg). There is no effect on the extent of exposure (AUC). The small changes in avanafil $C_{\text{max}}$ are considered to be of minimal clinical significance [146, 147, 150].

It is possible to wait too long after taking the medication before attempting sexual intercourse. The half-life of sildenafil and vardenafil is about four hours, suggesting that the normal window of efficacy is six to eight hours following drug ingestion, although responses following this time period are well recognised. The half-life of avanafil is six to seventeen hours. Tadalafil has a longer half-life of ~17.5 hours, so the window of efficacy is much longer at ~36 hours. Data from uncontrolled studies suggest patient education can help salvage an apparent non-responder to a PDE5I [172-176]. After emphasising the importance of dose, timing, and sexual stimulation to the patient, erectile function can be effectively restored following re-administration of the relevant PDE5I [172-174].

Very recently, data suggested that response to sildenafil treatment was also dependent on polymorphism in the PDE5A gene, which encodes the principal cGMP-catalyzing enzyme in the penis, regulating cGMP clearance, and it is the primary target of sildenafil [177]. Overall, the findings of a meta-regression aimed at evaluating the effectiveness and prognostic factors of PDE5I to treat ED showed that PDE5Is are more effective in Caucasians than Asians, and in patients with more severe ED [178].

**Clinical strategies in patients correctly using a PDE5Is**

There is controversial evidence suggesting that, in patients with testosterone deficiency, TS might improve a patient's response to a PDE5I [73, 179-181]. Modification of other risk factors may also be beneficial as discussed in section 3.1.4.1.1. Limited data suggest that some patients might respond better to one PDE5I than to another [182]. Although these differences might be explained by variations in drug pharmacokinetics, they do raise the possibility that, despite an identical mode of action, switching to a different PDE5I might be helpful. Moreover, mainly in patients with severe ED, it has been suggested to combine tadalafil daily dosing with short acting PDE5I (such as sildenafil), without any significant increase in terms of side-effects [183]. If drug treatment fails, then patients should be offered an alternative therapy such as intracavernous injection therapy or use of a vacuum erection device (VED).

The combination of long-acting injectable testosterone undecanoate and tadalafil 5 mg once daily produced a significant improvement in terms of EF of combined treatment [184]. Moreover, the improvement in EF was well maintained, even after the cessation of treatment.

3.1.4.2.2  Vacuum erection devices

Vacuum erection devices (VED) provide passive engorgement of the corpora cavernosa, together with a constrictor ring placed at the base of the penis to retain blood within the corpora. Published data report that efficacy, in terms of erections satisfactory for intercourse, is as high as 90%, regardless of the cause of ED and satisfaction rates range between 27% and 94% [185, 186]. Most men who discontinue use of VEDs do so within three months. Long-term use of VEDs decreases to 50-64% after two years [187]. The most common adverse events include pain, inability to ejaculate, petechiae, bruising, and numbness, which occur in < 30% of patients [186]. Serious adverse events (skin necrosis) can be avoided if patients remove the constriction ring within 30 minutes after intercourse. Vacuum erection devices are contraindicated in patients with bleeding disorders or on anticoagulant therapy. Vacuum erection devices may be the treatment of choice in well-informed older patients with infrequent sexual intercourse and comorbidity requiring non-invasive, drug-free management of ED [185, 186].

3.1.4.2.3  Shockwave therapy

The use of low-intensity extracorporeal shockwave therapy (LI-SWT) was proposed as a novel treatment for ED [188-192]. In this context, the number of studies of LI-SWT for ED has increased dramatically throughout recent years. Overall, most of these studies reported encouraging results, regardless of variation in LI-SWT set-up parameters or treatment protocols. As a whole these studies suggest that LI-SWT could significantly improve the IIEF and Erection Hardness Score of ED patients [193]. The publication of robust evidence from additional RCTs and longer-term follow-up would provide more confidence regarding use of LI-SWT for ED patients. Therefore clear recommendations cannot be given.
3.1.4.3 Second-line therapy

Patients not responding to oral drugs may be offered intracavernous injections. The success rate is high (85%) [194, 195]. Intracavernous administration of vasoactive drugs was the first medical treatment for ED introduced more than twenty years ago [176, 196].

3.1.4.3.1 Intracavernous injections

3.1.4.3.1.1 Alprostadil

Alprostadil (CaverjectTM, Edex/ViridalTM) was the first and only drug approved for intracavernous treatment of ED [176, 196]. Intracavernous alprostadil is most efficacious as monotherapy at a dose of 5-40 μg (of note, 40 μg dose is not registered in every European country). The erection appears after five to fifteen minutes and lasts according to the dose injected. An office-training programme is required for the patient to learn the correct injection process. In cases of limited manual dexterity, the technique may be taught to their partners. The use of an automatic special pen that avoids a view of the needle can resolve fear of penile puncture and simplifies the technique. Efficacy rates for intracavernous alprostadil of > 70% have been found in the general ED populations, as well as in patient subgroups (e.g. diabetes or CVD), with reported sexual activity of 94% after the injections and satisfaction rates of 87-93.5% in patients and 86-90.3% in partners [176, 196]. Complications of intracavernous alprostadil include penile pain (50% of patients reported pain only after 11% of total injections), prolonged erections (5%), priapism (1%), and fibrosis (2%) [176, 196, 197]. Pain is usually self-limited after prolonged use. It can be alleviated with the addition of sodium bicarbonate or local anaesthesia [176, 196, 198]. Cavernosal fibrosis (from a small haematoma) usually clears within a few months after temporary discontinuation of the injection programme. However, tunical fibrosis suggests early onset of Peyronie’s disease and may indicate stopping intracavernous injections indefinitely. Systemic side-effects are uncommon. The most common is mild hypotension, especially when using higher doses. Contraindications include men with a history of hypersensitivity to alprostadil, men at risk of priapism, and men with bleeding disorders. Despite these favourable data, drop-out rates of 41-68% have been described for intracavernous pharmacotherapy [176, 196, 199, 200], with most drop-outs occurring within the first two to three months. In a comparative study, alprostadil monotherapy had the lowest discontinuation rate (27.5%) compared to overall drug combinations (37.6%), with an attrition rate after the first few months of therapy of 10% per year. Reasons for discontinuation included desire for a permanent modality of therapy (29%), lack of a suitable partner (26%), poor response (23%) (especially among early drop-out patients), fear of needles (23%), fear of complications (22%), and lack of spontaneity (21%). Careful counselling of patients during the office-training phase as well as close follow-up is important in addressing patient withdrawal from an intracavernous injection programme [201].

3.1.4.3.1.2 Combination therapy

Combination therapy enables a patient to take advantage of the different modes of action of the drugs being used, as well as alleviating side-effects by using lower doses of each drug.

- Papaverine (20-80 mg) was the first oral drug used for intracavernous injections. It is most commonly used in combination therapy due to its high incidence of side-effects as monotherapy. Papaverine is currently not licensed for the treatment of ED.

- Phentolamine has been used in combination therapy to increase efficacy. As monotherapy, it produces a poor erectile response.

- Sparse data in the literature support the use of other drugs, such as vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP), NO donors (linsidomine), forskolin, potassium channel openers, moxisylyte or calcitonin gene-related peptide, usually combined with the main drugs [202, 203]. Most combinations are not standardised and some drugs have limited availability worldwide.

- Papaverine (7.5-45 mg) plus phentolamine (0.25-1.5 mg), and papaverine (8-16 mg) plus phentolamine (0.2-0.4 mg) plus alprostadil (10-20 μg), have been widely used with improved efficacy rates, although they have never been licensed for ED [204, 205]. The triple combination regimen of papaverine, phentolamine and alprostadil has the highest efficacy rates, reaching 92%; this combination has similar side-effects as alprostadil monotherapy, but a lower incidence of penile pain due to lower doses of alprostadil. However, fibrosis is more common (5-10%) when papaverine is used (depending on total dose).

- Vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP) (25 μg) plus phentolamine mesylate (1-2 mg) (InvicorpTM, currently licensed in Scandinavia), is a combination of two active components with complementary modes of action. Clinical studies showed that the combination is an effective treatment for intracavernous injections in > 80% of men with ED, including those who have failed to respond to other therapies and, unlike existing intracavernous therapies, is associated with a very low incidence of penile pain and virtually negligible risk of priapism [206].
Despite high efficacy rates, 5-10% of patients do not respond to combination intracavernous injections. The combination of sildenafil with intracavernous injection of the triple combination regimen may salvage as many as 31% of patients who do not respond to the triple combination alone [207]. However, combination therapy is associated with an increased incidence of adverse effects in 33% of patients, including dizziness in 20% of patients. This strategy can be considered in carefully selected patients before proceeding to a penile implant (LE: 4).

3.1.4.3.1.3 Intraurethral/topical alprostadil
A specific formulation of alprostadil (125-1000 μg) in a medicated pellet (MUSE™) has been approved as a treatment for ED [208]. Erections sufficient for intercourse are achieved in 30-65.9% of patients. In clinical practice, only the higher doses (500 and 1,000 μg) have been used with low consistency response rates [208-210]. The application of a constriction ring at the root of the penis (ACTIS™) may improve efficacy [209, 210].

The most common adverse events are local pain (29-41%) and dizziness with possible hypotension (1.9-14%). Penile fibrosis and priapism are very rare (< 1%). Urethral bleeding (5%) and urinary tract infections (0.2%) are adverse events related to the mode of administration. Efficacy rates are significantly lower than intracavernous pharmacotherapy [195]. Intraurethral pharmacotherapy is a second-line therapy and provides an alternative to intracavernous injections in patients who prefer a less-invasive, although less- efficacious treatment.

Topical alprostadil is another way of administering alprostadil. It is a cream that includes a permeation enhancer in order to facilitate absorption of alprostadil (200 and 300μg) through the urethral meatus [211]. Clinical data are limited. Significant improvement compared to placebo was recorded for IIEF, SEP2 and SEP3 in a broad range of patients with mild-to-severe ED [212]. Side-effects include penile erythema, penile burning and pain. Systemic side-effects are very rare. Topical alprostadil is approved and is only available in some European countries.

3.1.4.4 Third-line therapy (penile prostheses)
The surgical implantation of a penile prosthesis may be considered in patients who do not respond to pharmacotherapy or who prefer a permanent solution to their problem [213]. The two currently available classes of penile implants include inflatable (2- and 3-piece) and malleable devices [48, 111, 214, 215]. Most patients prefer the 3-piece inflatable devices due to the more “natural” erections obtained. Likewise, 3-piece inflatable devices provide the best rigidity and the best flaccidity because they will fill every part of the corporal bodies. However, the 2-piece inflatable prosthesis can be a viable option among patients who are deemed at high-risk of complications with reservoir placements. Malleable prostheses result in a firm penis, which may be manually placed in an erect or flaccid state [48, 111, 214, 215].

There are two main surgical approaches for penile prosthesis implantation: penoscrotal and infrapubic [214-217]. The penoscrotal approach provides an excellent exposure, it affords proximal crural exposure if necessary, avoids dorsal nerve injury and permits direct visualisation of pump placement. However, with this approach, the reservoir is blindly placed into the retropubic space, which can be a problem in patients with a history of major pelvic surgery (mainly radical cystectomy). The infrapubic approach has the advantage of reservoir placement under direct vision, but the implantation of the pump may be more challenging, and patients are at a slightly increased risk of penile dorsal nerve injury. Revision surgery is associated with decreased outcomes and may be more challenging. Regardless of the indication, prosthesis implantation has one of the highest satisfaction rates (92-100% in patients and 91-95% in partners) among the treatment options for ED based on appropriate consultation [48, 111, 214, 218-224]. In patients with favourable oncologic prognosis after RP for PCa, combination surgery for treatment of ED, with the implant of a penile prosthesis, and stress urinary incontinence (male sling or artificial urinary sphincter) is effective and durable and has an established, definitive role to address this problem [48, 111, 225-227]. A structured psychosexual counselling may improve sexual activities and erotic functions in both patients and their partners after penile implants [228].

3.1.4.4.1 Complications
The two main complications of penile prosthesis implantation are mechanical failure and infection. Several technical modifications of the most commonly used 3-piece prosthesis (AMS 700CX/CXRTM and Coloplast Alpha ITM) resulted in mechanical failure rates of < 5% after five years of follow-up [111, 229, 230]. Careful surgical techniques with proper antibiotic prophylaxis against Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria reduces infection rates to 2-3% with primary implantation in low-risk patients and in high volume centres [231-233]. The infection rate may be further reduced to 1-2% by implanting an antibiotic-impregnated prosthesis (AMS Inhibizone™) or hydrophilic-coated prosthesis (Coloplast Titan™) [111, 231, 234-237]. Higher-risk populations include patients undergoing revision surgery, those with impaired host defenses
(immunosuppression, diabetes mellitus, spinal cord injury) or those with penile corporal fibrosis [17, 111, 214, 233, 238, 239]. Infection requires removal of the prosthesis and antibiotic administration. Alternatively, removal of the infected device with immediate replacement with a new prosthesis has been described using a washout protocol with successful salvages achieved in > 80% of cases [232, 233, 238]. The majority of revisions are secondary to mechanical failure and combined erosion or infection [236, 240]. 93% of cases are successfully revised, providing functioning penile prosthesis [231-233, 241, 242].

3.1.4.4.2 Conclusions third-line therapy
Penile implants are an attractive solution for patients who do not respond to more conservative therapies. There is sufficient evidence to recommend this approach in patients not responding to less-invasive treatments due to its high efficacy, safety and satisfaction rates.

3.1.4.5 Recommendations for the treatment of ED

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enact lifestyle changes and risk factor modification prior to or accompanying erectile dysfunction (ED) treatment.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start pro-erectile treatments at the earliest opportunity after radical prostatectomy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat a curable cause of ED first, when found.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors (PDE5Is) as first-line therapy.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess all patients for inadequate/incorrect prescriptions and poor patient education, since they are the main causes of a lack of response to PDE5Is.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use vacuum erection devices as a first-line therapy in well-informed older patients with infrequent sexual intercourse and comorbidity requiring non-invasive, drug-free management of ED.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use intracavernous injections as second-line therapy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use implantation of a penile prosthesis as third-line therapy.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.4.6 Follow-up
Follow-up is important in order to assess efficacy and safety of the treatment provided. It is also essential to assess patient satisfaction since successful treatment for ED goes beyond efficacy and safety. Physicians must be aware that there is no single treatment that fits all patients or all situations as described in detail in the previous section.

3.2 Premature ejaculation

3.2.1 Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology
Although premature ejaculation (PE) is a common male sexual dysfunction, it is poorly understood. Patients are often unwilling to discuss their symptoms and many physicians do not know about effective treatments. As a result, patients may be misdiagnosed or mistreated [2].

3.2.1.1 Epidemiology
The major problem in assessing the prevalence of PE is the lack of an accurate (validated) definition at the time the surveys were conducted [243]. The highest prevalence rate of 31% (men aged 18-59 years) was found by the USA National Health and Social Life Survey (NHLS) study [244]. Prevalence rates were 30% (18-29 years), 32% (30-39 years), 28% (40-49 years) and 55% (50-59 years). It is, however, unlikely that the PE prevalence is as high as 20-30% based on the relatively low number of men who present for treatment of PE. These high prevalence rates may be a result of the dichotomous scale (yes/no) in a single question asking if ejaculation occurred too early, as the prevalence rates in European studies have been significantly lower [245]. According to the four PE subtypes proposed by Waldinger et al. [246], the prevalence rates were 2.3% (lifelong PE), 3.9% (acquired PE), 8.5% (natural variable PE) and 5.1% (premature-like ejaculatory dysfunction) [247]. An approximately 5% prevalence of acquired PE and lifelong PE in general populations is consistent with epidemiological data indicating that around 5% of the population have an ejaculation latency of less than 2 minutes [248].

3.2.1.2 Pathophysiology and risk factors
The aetiology of PE is unknown, with little data to support suggested biological and psychological hypotheses, including anxiety, penile hypersensitivity, and 5-HT receptor dysfunction [249]. In addition, the pathophysiology of PE is largely unknown. All the physiological events leading up to the forceful expulsion of sperm at the urethral meatus are not impaired in PE patients. A significant proportion of men with ED also experience PE
High levels of performance anxiety related to ED may worsen PE, with a risk of misdiagnosing PE instead of the underlying ED. According to the NHLS, the prevalence of PE is not affected by age [244, 245], unlike ED, which increases with age. PE is not affected by marital or income status [244]. However, PE is more common in Black men, Hispanic men and men from Islamic backgrounds [252, 253] and may be higher in men with a lower educational level [244, 250]. Other risk factors may include a genetic pre-disposition [254], poor overall health status and obesity [244], prostate inflammation [255-257], thyroid hormone disorders [258], diabetes [259], emotional problems and stress [244, 260], and traumatic sexual experiences [244, 250]. In the only published study on risk modification/prevention strategies [261], successful eradication of causative organisms in patients with chronic prostatitis and PE produced marked improvements in intravaginal ejaculatory latency time (IELT) and ejaculatory control compared to untreated patients [262].

3.2.1.3 Impact of PE on QoL
Men with PE are more likely to report low satisfaction with their sexual relationship, low satisfaction with sexual intercourse, difficulty relaxing during intercourse, and less frequent intercourse [263, 264]. However, the negative impact of PE extends beyond sexual dysfunction. Premature ejaculation can have a detrimental effect on self-confidence and the relationship with the partner, and may sometimes cause mental distress, anxiety, embarrassment and depression [263, 265]. Sex drive and overall interest in sex does not appear to be affected by PE [266]. However, the partner's satisfaction with the sexual relationship decreases with increasing severity of the man's condition [267]. Despite the possible serious psychological and QoL consequences of PE, few men seek treatment. In the Global Study of Sexual Attitudes and Behaviors survey, 78% of men who self-reported a sexual dysfunction sought no professional help or advice for their sexual problems [250], with men more likely to seek treatment for ED than for PE [250]. In the Premature Ejaculation Prevalence and Attitudes survey, only 9% of men with self-reported PE consulted a doctor [245]. The main reasons for not discussing PE with their physician are embarrassment and a belief that there is no treatment. Physicians are often uncomfortable discussing sexuality with their patients usually because of embarrassment and a lack of training or expertise in treating PE [268, 269]. Physicians need to encourage their patients to talk about PE.

3.2.2 Classification
There have previously been two official definitions of PE, neither of which have been universally accepted:

In the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders IV-Text Revision (DSM-IV-TR), PE is defined as a ‘persistent or recurrent ejaculation with minimal sexual stimulation before, on, or shortly after penetration and before the person wishes it. The clinician must take into account factors that affect duration of the excitement phase, such as age, novelty of the sexual partner or situation, and recent frequency of sexual activity’ [270]. This DSM definition has been recently updated in the DSM V edition [271].

The International Society for Sexual Medicine (ISSM) has adopted a completely new definition of PE which is the first evidence-based definition [272]. Premature ejaculation (lifelong and acquired) is a male sexual dysfunction characterised by the following:

1. Ejaculation that always or nearly always occurs prior to or within about 1 minute of vaginal penetration (lifelong PE) or a clinically significant and bothersome reduction in latency time, often to about three minutes or less (acquired PE).
2. The inability to delay ejaculation on all or nearly all vaginal penetrations.
3. Negative personal consequences, such as distress, bother, frustration, and/or the avoidance of sexual intimacy.

Two more PE syndromes have been proposed [273]:
- ‘Variable PE’ is characterised by inconsistent and irregular early ejaculations, representing a normal variation in sexual performance.
- ‘Subjective PE’ is characterised by subjective perception of consistent or inconsistent rapid ejaculation during intercourse, while ejaculation latency time is in the normal range or can even last longer. It should not be regarded as a symptom or manifestation of true medical pathology.

The addition of these new types may aid patient stratification, diagnosis and treatment, but their exact role remains to be defined [274].

3.2.3 Diagnostic evaluation
Diagnosis of PE is based on the patient’s medical and sexual history [275, 276]. History should classify PE as lifelong or acquired and determine whether PE is situational (under specific circumstances or with a specific partner) or consistent. Special attention should be given to the duration time of ejaculation, degree of sexual
stimulus, impact on sexual activity and QoL, and drug use or abuse. It is also important to distinguish PE from ED. Many patients with ED develop secondary PE caused by the anxiety associated with difficulty in attaining and maintaining an erection [251, 277]. Furthermore, some patients are not aware that loss of erection after ejaculation is normal and may erroneously complain of ED, while the actual problem is PE [278]. There are several overlapping definitions of PE, with four shared factors (Table 7), resulting in a multidimensional diagnosis [279].

Table 7: Common factors in different definitions of PE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time to ejaculation assessed by IELT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perceived control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interpersonal difficulty related to the ejaculatory dysfunction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.3.1 Intravaginal ejaculatory latency time

The use of IELT alone is not sufficient to define PE, as there is significant overlap between men with and without PE [280, 281]. Intravaginal ejaculatory latency time has a significant direct effect on perceived control over ejaculation, but not a significant direct effect on ejaculation-related personal distress or satisfaction with sexual intercourse [282]. In addition, perceived control over ejaculation has a significant direct effect on both ejaculation-related personal distress and satisfaction with sexual intercourse (each showing direct effects on interpersonal difficulty related to ejaculation). In everyday clinical practice, self-estimated IELT is sufficient [283]. Self-estimated and stopwatch-measured IELT are interchangeable and correctly assign PE status with 80% sensitivity and 80% specificity [284]. Specificity can be improved further to 96% by combining IELT with a single-item patient-reported outcome (PRO) on control over ejaculation and satisfaction with sexual intercourse (scale ranging from 0 = very poor to 4 = very good) and on personal distress and interpersonal difficulty (0 = not at all, to 4 = extremely). However, self-estimated IELT may be over-estimated by approximately one minute and therefore it must be carefully substituted with stopwatch-measured IELT while identifying men with the complaint of lifelong PE in a clinical setting [285]. Stopwatch-measured IELT is necessary in clinical trials. While IELT is an objective tool for PE assessment, a recent study reported that sexual satisfaction and distress correlated more strongly with the feeling of control than with the self-reported latency time [286].

3.2.3.2 PE assessment questionnaires

The need to assess PE objectively has led to the development of several questionnaires based on the use of PROs [279]. Only two questionnaires can discriminate between patients who have PE and those who do not:

- Premature Ejaculation Diagnostic Tool (PEDT); five-item questionnaire based on focus groups and interviews from the USA, Germany and Spain. Assesses control, frequency, minimal stimulation, distress and interpersonal difficulty [287, 288]. A total score > 11 suggests a diagnosis of PE, a score of 9 or 10 suggests a probable diagnosis of PE while a score of < 8 indicates a low likelihood of PE.
- Arabic Index of Premature Ejaculation (AIPE): seven-item questionnaire developed in Saudi Arabia assesses sexual desire, hard erections for sufficient intercourse, time to ejaculation, control, satisfaction for the patient and partner, anxiety or depression [289]. A cut-off score of 30 (range of scores 7-35) discriminated best PE diagnosis. Severity of PE was classified as severe (score: 7-13), moderate (score: 14-19), mild-to-moderate (score: 20-25) and mild (score: 26-30).

The most widely used tool is the PEDT. However, there is a low correlation between a diagnosis provided by PEDT and a self-reported diagnosis. A recent study reported that only 40% of men with PEDT-diagnosed PE and 19% of men with probable PE self-reported the condition [290]. Questionnaires are a significant step in simplifying the methodology of PE drug studies, although further cross-cultural validation is needed [291]. Other questionnaires used to characterise PE and determine treatment effects include the PEP [281], Index of Premature Ejaculation (IPE) [292] and Male Sexual Health Questionnaire Ejaculatory Dysfunction (MSHQ-EjD) [293]. Currently, their role is optional in everyday clinical practice.

3.2.3.3 Physical examination and investigations

Physical examination may be part of the initial assessment of men with PE. It may include a brief examination of the endocrine and neurological systems to identify underlying medical conditions associated with PE or other sexual dysfunctions, such as endocrinopathy, Peyronie’s disease, urethritis or prostatitis. Laboratory or physiological testing should be directed by specific findings from history or physical examination and is not routinely recommended [275].
3.2.3.4 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of PE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform the diagnosis and classification of premature ejaculation (PE) based on medical and sexual history, which should include assessment of intravaginal ejaculatory latency time (IELT) (self-estimated), perceived control, distress and interpersonal difficulty due to the ejaculatory dysfunction.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use stopwatch-measured IELT in clinical practice.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use patient-reported outcomes in clinical practice.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include physical examination in the initial assessment of PE to identify anatomical abnormalities that may be associated with PE or other sexual dysfunctions, particularly erectile dysfunction.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform routine laboratory or neurophysiological tests. They should only be directed by specific findings from history or physical examination.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.4 Disease management

In men for whom PE causes few, if any, problems, treatment is limited to psychosexual counselling and education. Before beginning treatment, it is essential to discuss the patient’s expectations thoroughly. Furthermore, it is important firstly to treat, if present, ED and possibly prostatitis. Various behavioural techniques have been beneficial in treating PE and are indicated for patients uncomfortable with pharmacological therapy. In lifelong PE, behavioural techniques are not recommended for first-line treatment. They are time-intensive, require the support of a partner and can be difficult to perform. In addition, long-term outcomes of behavioural techniques for PE are unknown. Pharmacotherapy is the basis of treatment in lifelong PE. Dapoxetine is the only on-demand pharmacological treatment approved for PE in many countries except for the USA. All other medications used in PE are off-label indications. Chronic antidepressants including selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors (SSRIs) and clomipramine, a tricyclic antidepressant and on-demand topical anaesthetic agents have consistently shown efficacy in PE. Long-term outcomes for pharmacological treatments are unknown. An evidence-based analysis of all current treatment modalities was performed. Levels of evidence and grades of recommendation are provided and a treatment algorithm is presented (Figure 4).

3.2.4.1 Psychological/behavioural strategies

Behavioural strategies mainly include the ‘stop-start’ programme developed by Semans [294] and its modification, the ‘squeeze’ technique, proposed by Masters and Johnson [295]:

- In the ‘stop-start’ programme, the partner stimulates the penis until the patient feels the urge to ejaculate. At this point, he instructs his partner to stop, waits for the sensation to pass and then stimulation is resumed.
- The ‘squeeze’ technique is similar but the partner applies manual pressure to the glans just before ejaculation until the patient loses his urge.

Both these procedures are typically applied in a cycle of three pauses before proceeding to orgasm. Behavioural strategies are based on the hypothesis that PE occurs because the man fails to appreciate the sensations of heightened arousal and to recognise the feelings of ejaculatory inevitability. Re-training may attenuate stimulus-response connections by gradually exposing the patient to progressively more intense and more prolonged stimulation, while maintaining the intensity and duration of the stimulus just below the threshold for triggering the response. There are several modifications of these techniques making comparison difficult.

Masturbation before anticipation of sexual intercourse is a technique used by younger men. Following masturbation, the penis is desensitised resulting in greater ejaculatory delay after the refractory period is over. In a different approach, the man learns to recognise the signs of increased sexual arousal and how to keep his level of sexual excitement below the intensity that elicits the ejaculatory reflex. Efficacy is similar to the ‘stop-start’ programme [296].

Psychological factors may be associated with PE and should be addressed in treatment. These factors mainly relate to anxiety, but could also include relationship factors [264]. The limited studies available suggest that behavioural therapy, as well as functional sexological treatment, lead to improvement in the duration of intercourse and sexual satisfaction [297, 298].

Overall, short-term success rates of 50-60% have been reported [297, 298], with limited evidence on the efficacy of these behavioural therapies on IELT improvement [299]. A double-blind, randomised, crossover
study showed that pharmacological treatment (chlorimipramine, sertraline, paroxetine and sildenafil) resulted in greater IELT prolongation than behavioural therapy [300]. Furthermore, clinical experience suggests that improvements achieved with these techniques are generally not maintained long-term [301, 302]. Behavioural therapy may be most effective when used to ‘add value’ to medical interventions. Combination of dapoxetine and behavioural treatment was more effective than dapoxetine alone in patients with lifelong PE in a prospective, randomised trial [303]. Validated assessment instruments need to be used as end-points. Longer follow-up periods are necessary to confirm these findings.

3.2.4.2 Pharmacotherapy

3.2.4.2.1 Dapoxetine

Dapoxetine hydrochloride is a short-acting SSRI, with a pharmacokinetic profile suitable for on-demand treatment for PE. It has a rapid T_max (1.3 hours) and a short half-life (95% clearance rate after 24 hours) [304]. Dapoxetine has been investigated in 6,081 subjects to date [305]. It is approved for on-demand treatment of PE in European countries and elsewhere, but not in the USA. Both available doses of dapoxetine (30 mg and 60 mg) have shown 2.5- and 3.0-fold increases, respectively, in IELT overall, rising to 3.4- and 4.3-fold in patients with baseline average IELT < 0.5 minutes [306, 307]. In RCTs, dapoxetine, 30 mg or 60 mg one to two hours before intercourse, was effective from the first dose on IELT and increased ejaculatory control, decreased distress, and increased satisfaction. Dapoxetine has shown a similar efficacy profile in men with lifelong and acquired PE [307-309]. Treatment-related side-effects were dose-dependent and included nausea, diarrhoea, headache and dizziness. Side-effects were responsible for study discontinuation in 4% (30 mg) and 10% (60 mg) of subjects [283]. There was no indication of an increased risk of suicidal ideation or suicide attempts and little indication of withdrawal symptoms with abrupt dapoxetine cessation [310]. Moreover, dapoxetine is found to be safer compared with other anti-depressants which are used for the treatment of PE [311].

Regarding a combination of PDE5Is with dapoxetine, the addition of dapoxetine to a given regimen of PDE5Is may increase the risk of possible prodromal symptoms that may progress to syncope compared to both PDE5Is inhibitors and SSRIs administered alone. Generally, when dapoxetine is co-administered with PDE5Is, it is well tolerated, with a safety profile consistent with previous phase 3 studies of dapoxetine alone [312]. A low rate of vasovagal syncope was reported in phase 3 studies. According to the summary of product characteristics, orthostatic vital signs (blood pressure and heart rate) must be measured prior to starting dapoxetine. No cases of syncope were observed in a post-marketing observational study, which had identified patients at risk for orthostatic reaction using the patient’s medical history and orthostatic testing [313].

The mechanism of action of short-acting SSRIs in PE is still speculative. Dapoxetine resembles the antidepressant SSRIs in the following ways: the drug binds specifically to the 5-HT re-uptake transporter at subnanomolar levels, has only a limited affinity for 5-HT receptors and is a weak antagonist of the 1A-adrenoceptors, dopamine D1 and 5-HT2B receptors. The rapid absorption of dapoxetine might lead to an abrupt increase in extracellular 5-HT following administration that might be sufficient to overwhelm the compensating autoregulation processes. Does the mechanism of action of short-acting SSRIs differ from that of the conventional chronic SSRI mechanism of action? Either such agents do not cause the auto-receptor activation and compensation reported using chronic SSRIs, or these effects occur, but they simply cannot prevent the action of short-acting SSRIs [314].

3.2.4.2.2 Off-label use of antidepressants: SSRIs and clomipramine

Ejaculation is commanded by a spinal ejaculation generator [315, 316] under excitatory or inhibitory influences from the brain and the periphery [259]. 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT or serotonin) is involved in ejaculatory control, with its ejaculation-retarding effects likely to be attributable to activation of 5-HT1B and 5-HT2C receptors, both spinally and supraspinally. By contrast, stimulation of 5-HT1A receptors precipitates ejaculation [314].

Selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors are used to treat mood disorders, but can delay ejaculation and are therefore widely used ‘off-label’ for PE. As for depression, SSRIs must be given for one to two weeks to be effective in PE [314]. Administration of chronic SSRIs causes prolonged increases in synaptic cleft serotonin, which desensitises the 5-HT1A and 5-HT1B receptors [317]. Clomipramine, the most serotoninergic tricyclic antidepressant, was first reported in 1973 as an effective PE treatment [318]. Selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors have revolutionised treatment of PE, but they have also changed our understanding of PE since the first publication on paroxetine in 1970 [319]. Before dapoxetine, daily treatment with SSRIs was the first choice of treatment in PE. Commonly used SSRIs include citalopram, fluoxetine, fluvoxamine, paroxetine and sertraline, all of which have a similar pharmacological mechanism of action.
Several SRs and meta-analyses of all drug treatment studies reported that, despite methodological problems in most studies, there still remained several, well-designed, double-blind, placebo-controlled trials supporting the therapeutic effect of daily SSRIs on PE [320, 321]. Nevertheless, despite significant increase in IELT, there are no data available concerning the PROs in PE patients treated with daily SSRIs. Based on this meta-analysis, SSRIs were expected to increase the geometric mean IELT by 2.6-fold to 13.2-fold. Paroxetine was found to be superior to fluoxetine, clomipramine and sertraline. Sertraline was superior to fluoxetine, whereas the efficacy of clomipramine was not significantly different from fluoxetine and sertraline. Paroxetine was evaluated in doses of 20-40 mg, sertraline 25-200 mg, fluoxetine 10-60 mg and clomipramine 25-50 mg; there was no significant relationship between dose and response among the various drugs. There is limited evidence that citalopram may be less efficacious compared to other SSRIs, while fluvoxamine may not be effective [322, 323].

Ejaculation delay may start a few days after drug intake, but it is more evident after one to two weeks since receptor de-sensitisation requires time to occur. Although efficacy may be maintained for several years, tachyphylaxis (decreasing response to a drug following chronic administration) may occur after six to twelve months [318]. Common side-effects of SSRIs include fatigue, drowsiness, yawning, nausea, vomiting, dry mouth, diarrhoea and perspiration; which are usually mild and gradually improve after two to three weeks [274, 306]. Decreased libido, anorgasmia, anejaculation and ED have also been reported.

Because of a theoretical risk of suicidal ideation or suicide attempts, caution is suggested in prescribing SSRIs to young adolescents with PE aged eighteen years or less, and to men with PE and a comorbid depressive disorder, particularly when associated with suicidal ideation. Patients should be advised to avoid sudden cessation or rapid dose reduction of daily dosed SSRIs which may be associated with a SSRI withdrawal syndrome [283].

In one controlled trial, on-demand use of clomipramine (but not paroxetine), three to five hours before intercourse, was reported to be efficacious, though IELT improvement was inferior compared to daily treatment with the same drug [324]. However, on-demand treatment may be combined with an initial trial of daily treatment or concomitant low-dose daily treatment reducing adverse effects [325, 326]. Individual countries’ regulatory authorities strongly advise against prescribing medication for indications if the medication in question is not licensed/approved and prescription of off-label medication may present difficulties for physicians.

### 3.2.4.2.3 Topical anaesthetic agents

The use of local anaesthetics to delay ejaculation is the oldest form of pharmacological therapy for PE [327]. Several trials [328, 329] support the hypothesis that topical desensitising agents reduce the sensitivity of the glans penis thereby delaying ejaculatory latency, but without adversely affecting the sensation of ejaculation. A recent meta-analysis confirmed the efficacy and safety of these agents for the treatment of PE [330].

#### 3.2.4.2.3.1 Lidocaine-prilocaine cream

In a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, lidocaine-prilocaine cream increased the IELT from one minute in the placebo group to 6.7 minutes in the treatment group [331]. In another randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, lidocaine-prilocaine cream significantly increased the stop-watch-measured IELT from 1.49 to 8.45 minutes while no difference was recorded in the placebo group (1.67 to 1.95 minutes) [332]. Lidocaine-prilocaine cream (5%) is applied for 20-30 minutes prior to intercourse. Prolonged application of topical anaesthetic (30-45 minutes) may result in loss of erection due to numbness of the penis in a significant percentage of men [331]. A condom will prevent diffusion of the topical anaesthetic agent into the vaginal wall causing numbness in the partner.

Alternatively, the condom may be removed prior to sexual intercourse and the penis washed clean of any residual active compound. Although no significant side-effects have been reported, topical anaesthetics are contraindicated in patients or partners with an allergy to any ingredient in the product.

An experimental aerosol formulation of lidocaine, 7.5 mg, plus prilocaine, 2.5 mg (Topical Eutectic Mixture for Premature Ejaculation [TEMPE]), was applied five minutes before sexual intercourse in 539 males. There was an increase in the geometric mean IELT from a baseline of 0.58 minutes to 3.17 minutes during three months of double-blind treatment; a 3.3-fold delay in ejaculation compared with placebo (p < 0.001) [333].

#### 3.2.4.2.3.2 Tramadol

Tramadol is a centrally acting analgesic agent that combines opioid receptor activation and re-uptake inhibition
of serotonin and noradrenaline. Tramadol is readily absorbed after oral administration and has an elimination half-life of five to seven hours. For analgesic purposes, tramadol can be administered between three and four times daily in tablets of 50-100 mg. Side-effects were reported at doses used for analgesic purposes (up to 400 mg daily) and include constipation, sedation and dry mouth. Tramadol is a mild-opioid receptor agonist, but it also displays antagonistic properties on transporters of noradrenaline and 5-HT [334]. This mechanism of action distinguishes tramadol from other opioids, including morphine. However, in May 2009, the US Food and Drug Administration released a warning letter about tramadol’s potential to cause addiction and difficulty in breathing [335].

A large, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multi-centre twelve week study was carried out to evaluate the efficacy and safety of two doses of tramadol (62 and 89 mg) by ODT in the treatment of PE [336]. A bioequivalence study had previously been performed that demonstrated equivalence between tramadol ODT and tramadol HCl. In patients with a history of lifelong PE and an IELT < 2 minutes, increases in the median IELT of 0.6 minutes (1.6-fold), 1.2 minutes (2.4-fold) and 1.5 minutes (2.5-fold) were reported for placebo, 62 mg of tramadol ODT, and 89 mg of tramadol ODT, respectively. It should be noted that there was no dose-response effect with tramadol. The tolerability during the twelve-week study period was acceptable. Several other studies also reported that tramadol exhibits a significant dose-related efficacy and side-effects over placebo for treatment of PE [337]. Moreover, the efficacy and safety of tramadol have been confirmed in SRs and meta-analyses [338, 339].

Tramadol has shown a moderate beneficial effect with a similar efficacy as dapoxetine. From what is known about the neuropharmacology of ejaculation and the mechanism of action of tramadol, the delaying effect on ejaculation could be explained by combined CNS μ-opioid receptor stimulation and increased brain 5-HT availability. However, efficacy and tolerability of tramadol would have to be confirmed in more patients and longer-term.

3.2.4.2.4 Other drugs
3.2.4.2.4.1 Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors

There is only one well-designed, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study comparing sildenafil to placebo [340]. Although IELT was not significantly improved, sildenafil increased confidence, the perception of ejaculatory control and overall sexual satisfaction, reduced anxiety and decreased the refractory time to achieve a second erection after ejaculation.

Several open-label studies showed that PDE5Is combined with an SSRI is superior to SSRI monotherapy:
- Sildenafil combined with paroxetine improved IELT significantly and satisfaction vs. paroxetine alone [341];
- Sildenafil combined with sertraline improved IELT and satisfaction significantly vs. sertraline alone [342];
- Sildenafil combined with paroxetine and psychological and behavioural counselling significantly improved IELT and satisfaction in patients in whom other treatments failed [343];
- Tadalafil combined with paroxetine significantly improved IELT and satisfaction vs. paroxetine and tadalafil alone [344];
- Finally, sildenafil combined with behaviour therapy significantly improved IELT and satisfaction vs. behavioural therapy alone [345].

There are very limited data on the efficacy of other PDE5Is (tadalafil and vardenafil) [346, 347]. However, recent meta-analyses demonstrated that the combined use of SSRIs and PDE5Is may be more effective compared with SSRIs or PDE5Is monotherapy [348-350].

3.2.4.3 Summary of evidence on the epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology of PE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pharmacotherapy includes either dapoxetine on demand (a short-acting SSRI that is the only approved pharmacological treatment for premature ejaculation) or other off-label antidepressants, i.e. daily SSRIs and clomipramine, that are not amenable to on-demand dosing. With all antidepressant treatment for premature ejaculation, recurrence is likely after treatment cessation.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.2.4.4 Recommendations for the treatment of PE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treat erectile dysfunction, other sexual dysfunction or genitourinary infection (e.g. prostatitis first).</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use pharmacotherapy as first-line treatment of lifelong premature ejaculation (PE).</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use off-label topical anaesthetic agents as a viable alternative to oral treatment with selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitor (SSRI’s).</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use tramadol on demand as a weak alternative to SSRI’s.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use PDE5Is in patients with premature ejaculation without erectile dysfunction.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use psychological/behavioural therapies in combination with pharmacological treatment in the management of acquired PE.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 4: Management of Premature Ejaculation*

Clinical diagnosis of premature ejaculation based on patient +/- partner history

- Time to ejaculation (IELT)
- Perceived degree of ejaculatory control
- Degree of bother/stress
- Onset and duration of PE
- Psychosocial/relationship issues
- Medical history
- Physical examination

Treatment of premature ejaculation

Patient counselling/education
Discussion of treatment options
If PE is secondary to ED, treat ED first or concomitantly

- Pharmacotherapy (recommended as first-line treatment option in lifelong PE)
  - Dapoxetine for on-demand use (the only approved drug for PE)
  - Off-label treatments include chronic daily use of antidepressants (SSRIs or clomipramine) and topical anaesthetics or oral tramadol on demand
- Behavioural therapy, includes stop-start technique, squeeze and sensate focus
- Combination treatment

* Adapted from Lue et al. 2004 [351].

ED = erectile dysfunction; PE = premature ejaculation; IELT = intravaginal ejaculatory latency time; SSRI = selective serotonin receptor inhibitor.

3.3 Penile curvature

3.3.1 Congenital penile curvature

Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology

Congenital curvature is rare. One well-performed study reports an incidence of less than 1% [352] while there
are reports from quality studies which claim that it is more common with prevalence rates of 4-10% in the absence of hypospadias [353].

Congenital penile curvature results from disproportionate development of the tunica albuginea of the corporal bodies and is not associated with urethral malformation. In the majority of cases the curvature is ventral but it can also be lateral and rarely dorsal.

3.3.1.2 Diagnostic evaluation
Taking a medical and sexual history is usually sufficient to establish the diagnosis of congenital penile curvature. Patients usually present after reaching puberty as the curvature becomes more apparent with erections, and severe curvature can make intercourse difficult or impossible. Physical examination during erection (autophotograph or after intracavernous injection of vasoactive drugs) is useful to document curvature and exclude other pathologies [354].

3.3.1.3 Disease management
The treatment of this disorder is surgical correction deferred until after puberty. Results from a recent survey suggest that men with possible untreated ventral penile curvature reported more dissatisfaction with penile appearance, increased difficulty with intercourse, and more unhealthy mental days therefore supporting correction of congenital penile curvature in childhood [355]. Surgical treatments for congenital penile curvature generally share the same principles as in Peyronie's disease (presented in detail in the next section). Nesbit procedure with excision of an ellipse of the tunica albuginea is the gold standard of treatment but many other techniques have been described and employed. Plication techniques are widely used including techniques producing a de-rotation of the corporal bodies [356]. A new modification of the latter technique has been suggested; Shaeer's corporal rotation enables correction of ventral congenital penile curvature, with minimal narrowing and shortening [357]. Most of the time, dissection of the dorsal neurovascular bundle is required in order to avoid loss of sensation and ischaemic lesions in the glans penis [358-360].

3.3.1.4 Summary of evidence and recommendation for congenital penile curvature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Medical and sexual history are usually sufficient to establish the diagnosis of</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>congenital penile curvature. Physical examination during erection is useful for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentation of the curvature and exclusion of other pathologies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgery is the only treatment option which is deferred until after puberty and can</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be performed at any time in adult life.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use Nesbit and other plication techniques for the treatment of congenital</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>penile curvature in patients who undergo surgery.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.3.2 Peyronie's Disease
3.3.2.1 Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology
3.3.2.1.1 Epidemiology
Epidemiological data on Peyronie’s disease (PD) are limited. Prevalence rates of 0.4-9% have been published, with a higher prevalence in patients with ED and diabetes [361-368]. A recent, well conducted survey indicates that the prevalence of definitive and probable cases of PD in the US is 0.7% and 11%, respectively, suggesting that PD is an under-diagnosed problem [369]. The typical age of a patient with PD is 55-60 years.

3.3.2.1.2 Aetiology
The aetiology of PD is unknown. However, an insult (repetitive microvascular injury or trauma) to the tunica albuginea is the most widely accepted hypothesis on the aetiology of the disease [370]. A prolonged inflammatory response will result in the remodelling of connective tissue into a fibrotic plaque [370-372]. Penile plaque formation can result in curvature which, if severe, may prevent penetrative sexual intercourse.

3.3.2.1.3 Risk factors
The most commonly associated comorbidities and risk factors are diabetes, hypertension, lipid abnormalities, ischaemic cardiopathy, ED, smoking, and excessive consumption of alcohol [364, 368, 373, 374]. Dupuytren's contracture is more common in patients with PD affecting 9-39% of patients [365, 375-377] while 4% of patients with Dupuytren's contracture reported Peyronie's disease [376].
3.3.2.1.4 Pathophysiology

Two phases of the disease can be distinguished [378]. The first is the acute inflammatory phase, which may be associated with pain in the flaccid state or painful erections and a palpable nodule or plaque in the tunica of the penis; typically a penile curvature begins to develop. The second is the fibrotic phase (chronic phase) with the formation of hard palpable plaques that can be calcified, which also results in disease stabilisation and no further progressive curvature. With time, penile curvature is expected to worsen in 30-50% of patients or stabilise in 47-67% of patients, while spontaneous improvement has been reported by only 3-13% of patients [373, 379, 380]. Pain is present in 35-45% of patients during the early stages of the disease [381]. Pain tends to resolve with time in 90% of men, usually during the first twelve months after the onset of the disease [379, 380].

In addition to the physiological and functional alteration of the penis, affected men also suffer significant distress. Validated mental health questionnaires have shown that 48% of men with Peyronie’s disease have mild or moderate depression, sufficient to warrant medical evaluation [382].

3.3.2.1.5 Summary of evidence on Peyronie’s disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peyronie’s disease is a connective tissue disorder, characterised by the formation of a fibrotic lesion or plaque in the tunica albuginea, which leads to penile deformity.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The contribution of associated comorbidities or risk factors (e.g. diabetes, hypertension, lipid abnormalities and Dupuytren’s contracture) to the pathophysiology of Peyronie’s disease is still unclear.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two phases of the disease can be distinguished. The first phase is the acute inflammatory phase (painful erections, ‘soft’ nodule/plaque), and the second phase is the fibrotic/calcifying phase with formation of hard palpable plaques (disease stabilisation).</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spontaneous resolution is uncommon (3-13%) and most patients experience disease progression (30-50%) or stabilisation (47-67%). Pain is usually present during the early stages of the disease but tends to resolve with time in 90% of men.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.3.2.2 Diagnostic evaluation

The aim of the initial evaluation is to provide information on the presenting symptoms and their duration (erectile pain, palpable nodules, curvature, length, rigidity, and girth) and erectile function status. It is mandatory to obtain information on the distress provoked by the symptoms and the potential risk factors for ED and Peyronie’s disease. A disease-specific questionnaire (Peyronie’s disease questionnaire (PDQ)) has been designed to collect data, and it has been validated for use in clinical practice [383]. Also, the utility of the PDQ for monitoring PD-specific psychosexual symptom severity, progression, and treatment response, both clinically and in trials of men with PD has been reported [384].

Major attention should be given to whether the disease is still active, as this will influence medical treatment or the timing of surgery. Patients who are still likely to have an active disease are those with a short symptom duration, pain during erection, or a recent change in penile curvature. Resolution of pain and stability of the curvature for at least three months are well-accepted criteria of disease stabilisation and patients’ referral for surgical intervention when indicated [379].

The examination should start with a routine genitourinary assessment, which is then extended to the hands and feet for detecting possible Dupuytren’s contracture or Ledderhose scarring of the plantar fascia [380]. Penile examination is performed to assess the presence of a palpable node or plaque. There is no correlation between plaque size and the degree of curvature [385]. Measurement of penile length during erection is important because it may have impact on the subsequent treatment decisions [386].

An objective assessment of penile curvature with an erection is mandatory. This can be obtained by a home (self) photograph of a natural erection (preferably) or using a vacuum-assisted erection test or an intracavernous injection using vasoactive agents [387]. Erectile function can be assessed using validated instruments such as the IIEF although this has not been validated in PD patients [65]. Erectile dysfunction is common in patients with PD (> 50%) but it is important to define whether it pre- or post-dates the onset of Peyronie’s disease. It is mainly due to penile vascular disease [373], [385]. The presence of ED and psychological factors may impact on the treatment strategy [388].

Ultrasound measurement of the plaque’s size is inaccurate and it is not recommended in everyday clinical practice [389]. Doppler US may be required for the assessment of vascular parameters [388].
3.3.2.2.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the diagnosis of Peyronie's disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ultrasound (US) measurement of the plaque's size is inaccurate and operator dependent.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doppler US is required to ascertain vascular parameters associated with ED.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In the medical and sexual history of patients with Peyronie’s disease, include duration of the disease, penile pain, change of penile deformity, difficulty in vaginal intromission due to deformity, and erectile dysfunction.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the physical examination, include assessment of palpable plaques, penile length, extent of curvature (self-photograph, vacuum-assisted erection test or pharmacological-induced erection) and any other possibly related diseases (Dupuytren's contracture, Ledderhose disease).</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use Peyronie’s disease specific questionnaire in everyday clinical practice.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use ultrasound (US) measurement of plaque size in everyday clinical practice.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Doppler US only in the case of diagnostic evaluation of erectile dysfunction, to ascertain vascular parameters associated with erectile dysfunction.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.3.2.3 Disease management
3.3.2.3.1 Non-operative treatment

Conservative treatment of Peyronie’s disease is primarily focused on patients in the early stage of the disease [380, 390]. Several options have been suggested, including oral pharmacotherapy, intraleisional injection therapy and other topical treatments (Table 8). Shockwave treatment of calcified plaques and clostridial collagenase (CH) injection in patients with densely fibrotic or calcified plaques have also been suggested [378, 391]. Clostridium collagenase is the only drug approved for the treatment of PD by the FDA. No single drug has been approved by the EMA for the treatment of PD at this time. The results of the studies on conservative treatment for PD are often contradictory making it difficult to provide recommendations in the everyday, real-life setting. This is due to several methodological problems including uncontrolled studies, limited number of patients treated, short-term follow-up and different outcome measures [391]. Moreover, the efficacy of conservative treatment in distinct patient populations in terms of early (inflammatory) or late (fibrotic) phases of the disease is not yet available.

Table 8: Non-operative treatments for Peyronie’s disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oral treatments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium para-aminobenzoate (Potaba)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tamoxifen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colchicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetyl esters of carnitine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentoxifylline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intraleisional treatments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steroids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verapamil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clostridium collagenase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interferon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topical treatments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Verapamil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iontophoresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extracorporeal shockwave treatment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Traction devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
3.3.2.3.1.1 Oral treatment

**Vitamin E**

Vitamin E (tocopherol, a fat-soluble compound that acts as a natural antioxidant to reduce the number of oxygen-free radicals produced in energy metabolism) is commonly prescribed by the majority of urologists at once or twice daily doses of 400 IU because of its wide availability, low cost and safety [392]. A double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover study failed to show a significant effect on penile deformity or plaque size [393]. Moreover, there is conflicting evidence as to the long-term cardiovascular effects of vitamin E usage at the large doses, which urologists use for penile deformity treatment [394].

**Potassium para-aminobenzoate (Potaba™)**

Potassium para-aminobenzoate is thought to exert an antifibrotic effect through an increase in oxygen uptake by the tissues, a rise in the secretion of glycosaminoglycans, and an enhancement of the activity of monoamine oxidases [395]. Preliminary studies reported an improvement in penile curvature, penile plaque size, and penile pain during erection [396]. In a prospective double-blinded controlled study in 41 patients with PD, Potaba (12 g/day for twelve months) improved penile pain significantly, but not penile curvature or penile plaque size [397]. In another similar study in 103 patients with PD, Potaba decreased penile plaque size significantly, but had no effect on penile curvature or penile pain [398]. However, the pre-existing curvature under Potaba remained stable, suggesting a protective effect on the deterioration of penile curvature. Treatment-related adverse events are nausea, anorexia, pruritus, anxiety, chills, cold sweats, confusion and difficulty concentrating, but no serious adverse events were reported [399].

**Tamoxifen**

Tamoxifen is a non-steroidal oestrogen receptor antagonist modulating transforming growth factor β1 (TGF-β1) secretion by fibroblasts. Preliminary studies reported that tamoxifen (20 mg twice daily for three months) improved penile pain, penile curvature, and reduced the size of penile plaque [400]. However, a placebo-controlled, randomised study (in only 25 patients, at a late stage of the disease with a mean duration of twenty months) using the same treatment protocol, failed to show any significant improvement in pain, curvature, or plaque size in patients with PD [401].

**Colchicine**

Colchicine has been introduced into the treatment of PD on the basis of its anti-inflammatory effect [402]. Clinical data should be interpreted with caution since they come from only uncontrolled studies. Preliminary results showed that half of the men given colchicine (0.6-1.2 mg daily for three to five months) found that painful erections and penile curvature improved, while penile plaque decreased or disappeared in 50% of 24 men [403]. In another study in 60 men (colchicine 0.5-1 mg daily for three to five months with escalation to 2 mg twice daily), penile pain resolved in 95% and penile curvature improved in 30% [402]. Similar results have been reported in another uncontrolled retrospective study in 118 patients [404]. Reported treatment-related adverse events with colchicine are gastrointestinal effects (nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea) that can be improved with dose escalation [402].

The combination of vitamin E and colchicine (600 mg/day and 1 mg every twelve hours, respectively for six months) in patients with early-stage PD resulted in significant improvement in plaque size and curvature, but not in pain compared to ibuprofen 400 mg/day for six months [405].

**Acetyl esters of carnitine**

Acetyl-L-carnitine and propionyl-L-carnitine are proposed to inhibit acetyl coenzyme-A and produce an anti-proliferative effect on human endothelial cells. This may eventually suppress fibroblast proliferation and collagen production, thus reducing penile fibrosis. In a randomised, double-blind study in 48 patients with early-stage PD, patients were randomised to acetyl-L-carnitine (1 g twice daily) compared to tamoxifen (20 mg twice daily). After three months, acetyl-L-carnitine was significantly more effective than tamoxifen in pain and curvature reduction and inhibition of disease progression, but not in penile plaque size reduction (both drugs significantly reduced plaque size) [406]. Tamoxifen induced significantly more side-effects.

Finally, the combination of intralesional verapamil (10 mg weekly for ten weeks) with propionyl-L-carnitine (2 g/day for three months) significantly reduced penile curvature, plaque size, and disease progression compared to intralesional verapamil combined with tamoxifen (40 mg/day) for three months [407].

**Pentoxifylline**

Pentoxifylline is a non-specific phosphodiesterase inhibitor which down-regulates TGF β1 and increases fibrinolytic activity [408]. Moreover, an increase of NO levels may be effective in preventing progression of PD.
or reversing fibrosis [409]. Preliminary data from a case report showed that pentoxifylline (400 mg three times daily for six months) improved penile curvature and the findings on US of the plaque [409]. In another study in 62 patients with PD, pentoxifylline treatment for six months appeared to stabilise or reduce calcium content in penile plaques [410].

**Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors**

The rationale for the use of PDE5Is in PD comes from animal studies showing that they can reduce the collagen/smooth muscle and collagen III/I ratios and increase the apoptotic index in the PD-like plaque [411]. In a retrospective controlled study, daily tadalafil (2.5 mg for six months) resulted in statistically significant (p < 0.05) resolution of septal scar in 69% of patients compared to 10% in the control group (no treatment). However, this study included patients with isolated septal scars without evidence of penile deformity [412]. Therefore, no recommendation can be given for PDE5Is in patients with PD.

### 3.3.2.3.1.2 Intralesional treatment

Injection of pharmacologically active agents directly into penile plaques represents another treatment option. It allows a localised delivery of a particular agent that provides higher concentrations of the drug inside the plaque. However, delivery of the compound to the target area is difficult to ensure particularly when a dense or calcified plaque is present.

**Steroids**

Intralesional steroids are thought to act by opposing the inflammatory milieu responsible for Peyronie's plaque progression via inhibition of phospholipase A2, suppression of the immune response and by decreasing collagen synthesis [413]. In small, non-randomised studies, a decrease in penile plaque size and pain resolution was reported [414, 415]. In the only single-blind, placebo-controlled study with intralesional administration of betamethasone, no statistically significant changes in penile deformity, penile plaque size, and penile pain during erection were reported [416]. Adverse effects include tissue atrophy, thinning of the skin and immunosuppression [414].

**Verapamil**

The rationale for intralesional use of verapamil (a calcium channel antagonist) in patients with Peyronie's disease is based on in-vitro research [417, 418]. A number of studies have reported that intralesional verapamil injection may induce a significant reduction in penile curvature and plaque volume [419-423]. These findings suggested that intralesional verapamil injections could be advocated for the treatment of non-calcified acute phase or chronic plaques to stabilise disease progression or possibly reduce penile deformity, although large scale, placebo-controlled trials have not yet been conducted [422]. Side-effects are uncommon (4%). Minor side-effects include nausea, light-headedness, penile pain, and ecchymosis [422]. However, in the only randomised, placebo-controlled study, no statistically significant differences on plaque size, penile curvature, penile pain during erection or plaque 'softening' were reported [424]. Younger age and larger baseline penile curvature were found to be predictive of favourable curvature outcomes in a case-series study [425].

**Clostridium collagenase**

Clostridium collagenase (CCH) is a chromatographically purified bacterial enzyme that selectively attacks collagen, which is known to be the primary component of the PD plaque [426-428]. Clostridium collagenase is now approved by the FDA for PD in adult men with a palpable plaque and a curvature deformity of at least 30° at the start of therapy. Findings from two independent, double-blind, placebo controlled studies, reveal the efficacy and tolerability of CCH for improving the co-primary outcomes of physical penile curvature and the psychological subject reported PD symptom bother domain of the PDQ in adults with PD. Participants were given up to four treatment cycles of CCH or placebo and were then followed for 52 weeks. Overall, of the 551 treated men with CCH 60.8% were global responders compared with 29.5% of the 281 patients who received the placebo. The most commonly reported side-effects were penile pain, penile swelling, and ecchymosis at the site of injection [427]. The data from these two large RCTs were analysed by subgroups including: baseline penile curvature deformity, PD duration, degree of penile calcification, and baseline erectile function severity with better results in patients with less than 60° of curvature, more than two years of evolution, no calcification in the plaque and good erectile function [429].

Clostridium collagenase was approved by the EMA in 2014 specifying that CCH should be administered by a healthcare professional who is experienced in the treatment of male urological diseases. The Risk Management Plan (RMP) requires participating healthcare professionals to be certified within the programme by enrolling and completing training in the administration of CCH treatment for PD [430].
A recent paper which studied a pooled safety analysis of 1,044 CCH-treated patients from six clinical studies showed that the majority of Peyronie’s patients experienced at least one adverse reaction (Global Safety database, 92.5%). Most adverse reactions were localised to the penis or groin and the majority of these events were of a mild or moderate severity. Most of these resolved within fourteen days of the injection. The adverse reaction profile was similar after each injection, regardless of the number of injections administered. The most frequently reported treatment-related adverse events in the clinical trials in subjects with PD (Global Safety database) were penile hematoma (50.2%), penile pain (33.5%), penile swelling (28.9%) and injection site pain (24.1%) [431].

**Interferon**

Interferon α-2b has been shown to decrease fibroblast proliferation, extracellular matrix production and collagen production from fibroblasts and improve the wound healing process from PD plaques in-vitro [432]. Intraleansional injections (5 x 106 units of interferon α-2b in 10 mL saline, two times per week for twelve weeks) significantly improved penile curvature, plaque size and density, and pain compared to placebo [433, 434]. Side-effects include myalgias, arthralgia, sinusitis, fever and flu-like symptoms. They can be effectively treated with non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs before interferon injection.

**Hyaluronic Acid**

In a prospective, single-arm, multicentre pilot study, 65 patients underwent a ten week cycle of weekly intraplaque injections with hyaluronic acid. Plaque size significantly decreased, penile curvature decreased in 37%, as well as overall sexual satisfaction and seems preferably indicated in the early (active) phase of the disease [435].

3.3.2.3.1.3 Topical treatments

**Topical verapamil**

There is no evidence that topical treatments applied to the penile shaft result in adequate levels of the active compound within the tunica albuginea. Verapamil gel has been used in this context [436]. Iontophoresis - now known as transdermal electromotive drug administration (EMDA) - has been introduced to try and overcome limitations on the local uptake of the drugs themselves. Small studies using Iontophoresis with verapamil 5 mg and dexamethasone 8 mg resulted in inconsistent results [437, 438].

**H-100 Gel**

H-100 Gel is composed of nicardipine, superoxide dismutase and emu oil. Twenty-two patients (PD twelve months duration) were studied in a prospective randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. H-100 showed significant improvement in all PD parameters at six months: mean stretched penile length increase (22.6%, P = 0.0002), mean curvature reduction (40.8%, P = 0.0014), and mean pain level reduction (85.7%, P = 0.004). Placebo group showed no significant improvement except for mean stretched penile length increase (6.8%, P = 0.009). Crossover patients from placebo to H-100 showed significant improvement in all parameters: mean stretched penile length increase (17.5%, P = 0.000007), mean curvature reduction (37.1%, P = 0.006), and mean pain level reduction (40%, P = 0.17). Treatment was well tolerated. A self-limited rash was the only side-effect in three patients. Statistically significant improvements in flaccid-stretched penile length, curvature and pain suggest that H-100 is a safe and possibly effective non-invasive, topically applied treatment for acute phase PD [439].

**Extracorporeal shockwave treatment**

The mechanism of action involved in shockwave treatment (ESWT) for PD is still unclear, but there are two hypotheses. In the first hypothesis, shockwave therapy works by directly damaging and remodelling the penile plaque. In the second hypothesis, shockwave lithotripsy increases the vascularity of the area by generating heat resulting in an inflammatory reaction, with increased macrophage activity causing plaque lysis and eventually leading to plaque resorption [440]. Most uncontrolled studies failed to show significant improvements in patients with PD [441-443]. In a prospective, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study, four weekly treatment sessions of ESWT, with each session consisting of 2,000 focused shockwaves, resulted in significant improvement only for penile pain [444].

**Traction devices**

The application of continuous traction in Dupuytren’s contracture increases the activity of degradative enzymes [445]. This initially leads to a loss of tensile strength and ultimately to solubilisation. It is followed by an increase in newly synthesised collagen [445]. This concept has been applied in an uncontrolled study, including ten patients with Peyronie’s disease. The FastSize Penile Extender was applied as the only treatment for two to eight hours per day for six months [111]. Reduced penile curvature of 10-40° was found in all men with an
average reduction of 33% (range: 51-34°). The stretched penile length increased 0.5-2.0 cm and the erect girth increased 0.5-1.0 cm, with a correction of hinge effect in four out of four men. Treatment can be uncomfortable and inconvenient due to use of the device for two to eight hours daily for an extended period, but has been shown to be tolerated by highly motivated patients [376]. There were no serious adverse events, including skin changes, ulcerations, hypoesthesia or diminished rigidity.

In another prospective study, there was a significant reduction in penile curvature (mean 20° reduction). Erectile function and erection hardness also improved significantly. The percentage of patients who were not able to achieve penetration decreased from 62% to 20% (p < 0.03). Importantly, the need for surgery was reduced in 40% of patients who would otherwise have been candidates for surgery and simplified the complexity of the surgical procedure (from grafting to plication) in one in three patients [446].

3.3.2.3.1.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for non-operative treatment of Peyronie’s disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conservative treatment for PD is primarily aimed at treating patients in the early stage of the disease.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral treatment with potassium para-aminobenzoate may result in a significant reduction in penile plaque size and penile pain as well as penile curvature stabilisation.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intraleosional treatment with verapamil may induce a significant reduction in penile curvature and plaque volume.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intraleosional treatment with CCH showed significant decreases in the deviation angle, plaque width and plaque length.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intraleosional treatment with interferon may improve penile curvature, plaque size and density, and pain.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topical verapamil gel 15% may improve penile curvature and plaque size.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iontophoresis with verapamil 5 mg and dexamethasone 8 mg may improve penile curvature and plaque size.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extracorporeal shockwave treatment does not improve penile curvature and plaque size, but it may be offered for penile pain.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intraleosional treatment with steroids is not associated with significant reduction in penile curvature, plaque size or penile pain.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use conservative treatment in patients not fit for surgery or when surgery is not acceptable to the patient.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use extracorporeal shockwave treatment to improve penile curvature and reduce plaque size.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use penile traction devices and vacuum devices to reduce penile deformity and increase penile length.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use intraleosional treatment with steroids to reduce penile curvature, plaque size or pain.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use oral treatment with vitamin E and tamoxifen for significant reduction in penile curvature or plaque size.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer other oral treatments (acetyl esters of carnitine, pentoxifylline, colchicine).</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.3.2.3.2 Surgical treatment

Although conservative treatment for PD should resolve painful erections in most men, only a small percentage will experience any significant straightening of the penis. The aim of surgery is to correct curvature and allow satisfactory intercourse. Surgery is indicated in patients with penile curvature that does not allow satisfactory intercourse and which is associated with sexual bother [90]. Patients must have a stable disease for at least three months, although a six to twelve month period has also been suggested [447].

The potential aims and risks of surgery should be discussed with the patient so that he can make an informed decision. Specific issues that should be mentioned during this discussion are the risks of penile shortening, ED, penile numbness, the risk of recurrent curvature, the potential for palpation of knots and stitches underneath the skin, and the potential need for circumcision at the time of surgery [378]. Two major types of repair may be considered for both congenital penile curvature and PD: penile shortening and penile lengthening procedures [448].
Penile shortening procedures include the Nesbit wedge resection and the plication techniques performed on the convex side of the penis. Penile lengthening procedures are performed on the concave side of the penis and require the use of a graft. They aim to minimise penile shortening caused by Nesbit or plication of the tunica albuginea or correct complex deformities. Penile degloving with associated circumcision (as a means of preventing post-operative phimosis) is considered the standard approach for all types of procedures [448]. However, recent data suggest that circumcision is not always necessary e.g. in cases where the foreskin is normal pre-operatively [449]. Finally, in patients with PD and ED not responding to medical treatments, surgical correction of the curvature with concomitant penile prosthesis implantation should be considered [450].

Selection of the most appropriate surgical intervention is based on penile length assessment, curvature severity and erectile function status, including response to pharmacotherapy in cases of ED [378]. Patient expectations from surgery must also be included in the pre-operative assessment. There are no standardised questionnaires for the evaluation of surgical outcomes [90]. Data from well-designed prospective studies are scarce, with a low level of evidence. Most data are mainly based on retrospective studies, typically non-comparative and non-randomised, or on expert opinion [378, 451].

3.3.2.3.2.1 Penile shortening procedures
In 1965, Nesbit was the first to describe the removal of the tunical ellipses opposite a non-elastic corporal segment to treat congenital penile curvature [452]. Fourteen years later, this technique became a successful treatment option, also for PD [453]. This operation is based on a 5-10 mm transverse elliptical excision of the tunica albuginea or approximately 1 mm for each 10° of curvature [448]. The overall short- and long-term results of the Nesbit operation are excellent. Complete penile straightening is achieved in more than 80% of patients [454]. Recurrence of the curvature and penile hypoesthesia are uncommon (about 10%) and the risk of post-operative ED is minimal [448, 455]. Penile shortening is the most commonly reported outcome of the Nesbit procedure [455]. However, shortening of only 1-1.5 cm has been reported for about 85% of patients, which is rarely the cause of post-operative sexual dysfunction [453, 456]. Patients often perceive the loss of length as greater than it actually is [454, 455]. It is therefore advisable to measure and document the penile length peri-operatively, both before and after the straightening procedure, whatever the technique used. Only one modification of the Nesbit procedure has been described (partial thickness shaving instead of conventional excision of a wedge of tunica albuginea) [457].

Plication procedures are based on the same principle as the Nesbit operation but are simpler to perform. Many of them have been described as Nesbit modifications in the older literature. They are based on single or multiple longitudinal incisions on the convex side of the penis closed in a horizontal way, applying the Heineke-Miculicz principle, or plication is performed without making an incision [458-463]. Another modification has been described as the ‘16 dot’ technique with minimal tension under local anaesthesia [464]. The use of non-absorbable sutures reduced recurrence of the curvature. Results and satisfaction rates are similar to the Nesbit procedure [448]. However, numerous different modifications have been described and the level of evidence is not sufficient to recommend one method over the other.

3.3.2.3.2.2 Penile lengthening procedures
Tunical lengthening procedures entail an incision in the short (concave) side of the tunica to increase the length of this side, creating a tunical defect, which is covered by a graft. However, plaque removal may be associated with high rates of post-operative ED due to venous leak [465].

Devine and Horton introduced dermal grafting in 1974 [466]. Since then, a variety of grafting materials and techniques have been reported (Table 10) [467-481]. Unfortunately, the ideal material for grafting has yet to be identified. In addition, grafting procedures are associated with ED rates as high as 25%. Despite excellent initial surgical results, graft contracture and long-term failures resulted in a 17% re-operation rate [482].

Vein grafts have the theoretical advantage of endothelial-to-endothelial contact when grafted to underlying cavernosal tissue. The Saphenous vein is the most common vein draft used, followed by dorsal penile vein [448]. In the first case, a secondary incision for graft harvesting is avoided. Post-operative curvature (20%), penile shortening (17%) and graft herniation (5%) have been reported after vein graft surgery [472, 477, 480]. Tunica vaginalis is relatively avascular, easy to harvest and has little tendency to contract due to its low metabolic requirements [470].

Dermal grafts are commonly associated with contracture resulting in recurrent penile curvature (35%), progressive shortening (40%), and a 17% re-operation rate at ten years [483]. Cadaveric pericardium (Tutoplast®) offers good results by coupling excellent tensile strength and multi-directional elasticity/expansion.
by 30% [481]. In a retrospective telephone interview, 44% of patients with pericardium grafting reported recurrent curvature, although most of them continued to have successful intercourse and were pleased with their outcomes [481, 483].

Small intestinal submucosa (SIS, a collagen-based xenogenic graft derived from the submucosal layer of the porcine small intestine) has been shown to promote tissue-specific regeneration, and supports the growth of endothelial cells. Small intestinal submucosa acts as a scaffold to promote angiogenesis, host cell migration and differentiation, resulting in tissue structurally and functionally similar to the original. It has been used successfully to repair severe chordee and Peyronie's disease, without significant contraction or histological alterations, but data are limited [478].

More recently the use of buccal mucosa grafts (BMG) has been advocated. Buccal mucosa grafts provided excellent short-term results, suggested by the fast return of spontaneous erections and prevented shrinkage, which is the main cause of graft failure. It also proved to be safe and reproducible, thus representing a valuable treatment option for PD [469].

Grafting by collagen fleece (TachoSil®) in PD is feasible and promising. Major advantages are decreased operative times and easy application. Moreover, an additional haemostatic effect is provided [484].

Tunical incision, preferably with grafting, offers an excellent surgical option for men with curvatures over 60° as well as patients with an hour-glass deformity and good erectile function that are willing to risk a higher rate of post-operative ED [485]. The presence of pre-operative ED, the use of larger grafts, age more than 60 years, and ventral curvature are considered poor prognostic factors for functional outcome after grafting surgery [450]. Although the risk for penile shortening is significantly less compared to the Nesbit or plication procedures, it is still an issue and patients must be informed accordingly [448]. The use of geometric principles introduced by Egydio helps to determine the exact site of the incision, and the shape and size of the defect to be grafted [471].

The use of a penile extender device on an eight to twelve hour daily regimen has been advocated as an effective and safe treatment for loss of penile length in patients operated on for PD [486].

Table 9: Types of grafts used in Peyronie’s disease surgery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Autologous grafts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dermis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vein grafts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunica albuginea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunica vaginalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporalis fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buccal mucosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allografts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadaveric pericardium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadaveric fascia lata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadaveric dura matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadaveric dermis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xenografts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine small intestinal submucosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bovine pericardium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcine dermis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synthetic grafts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gore-Tex®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dacron®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collagen fleece (TachoSil®)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.3.2.3.2.3 Penile prosthesis

Penile prosthesis (PP) implantation is typically reserved for the treatment of PD in patients with ED, especially when they are non-responders to PED5Is [376]. Although all types of penile prosthesis can be used, the implantation of inflatable penile prosthesis seems to be most effective in these patients [480].

Most patients with mild-to-moderate curvature can expect an excellent outcome simply by cylinder insertion. In cases of severe deformity, intra-operative ‘modelling’ of the penis over the inflated cylinders (manually bent on the opposite side of the curvature for 90 seconds, often accompanied by an audible crack) has been introduced as an effective treatment [487, 488]. If there is a residual curvature of less than 30°, no further treatment is recommended, as the prosthesis will act as a tissue expander and will result in complete correction of curvature after a few months of cycling the prosthesis [487]. While this technique is effective in most patients, a Nesbit/plication procedure or plaque excision/incision and grafting may be required in order to achieve adequate straightening [489-491].

The risk of complications (infection, malformation, etc.) is not increased compared to the general population. However, a small risk of urethral perforation (3%) has been reported in patients with ‘modelling’ over the inflated prosthesis [488].

In selected cases of end-stage PD with ED and significant penile shortening, a lengthening procedure, which involves simultaneous PP implantation and penile length restoration, such as the ‘sliding’ technique, can be considered but only in the hands of experienced high-volume surgeons [492].

Table 10: Results of surgical treatments for Peyronie’s disease (data from different, non-comparable studies) [453, 455-481, 483, 485]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Tunical shortening procedures</th>
<th>Tunical lengthening procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tunical shortening procedures</td>
<td>Nesbit</td>
<td>Plication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penile shortening</td>
<td>4.7-30.8%</td>
<td>41-90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penile straightening</td>
<td>79-100%</td>
<td>58-100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persistent or recurrent curvature</td>
<td>4-26.9%</td>
<td>7.7-10.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-operative erectile dysfunction</td>
<td>0-13%</td>
<td>0-22.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penile hypoesthesia</td>
<td>2-21%</td>
<td>0-21.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical modifications</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>At least 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Treatment algorithm

The decision on the most appropriate surgical procedure to correct penile curvature is based on pre-operative assessment of penile length, the degree of the curvature and erectile function status. If the degree of curvature is less than 60°, penile shortening is acceptable and the Nesbit or plication procedures are usually the method of choice. This is typically the case for congenital penile curvature. If the degree of curvature is over 60° or is a complex curvature, or if the penis is significantly shortened in patients with a good erectile function (with or without pharmacological treatment), then a grafting procedure is feasible. If there is ED, which is not responding to pharmacological treatment, the best option is the implantation of an inflatable PP, with or without an associated procedure over the penis (modelling, plication or even grafting plus the prosthesis). The treatment algorithm is presented in Figure 5.
Figure 5: Treatment algorithm for Peyronie’s disease

**Treatment of Peyronie’s disease**

Discuss natural history of the disease
Reassure patient that Peyronie’s is a benign disease
Discuss current treatment modalities
Shared decision-making

**Active disease**
(pain, deformity deterioration, no calcification on US)

Conservative treatment

**Stable disease**
(no pain, no deformity deterioration, calcification plaques on US)

Curvature < 30°
No severe deformity
(hour-glass, hinge)
No ED

No further treatment

Curvature > 30°
Severe deformity
ED

Surgical treatment

*ED* = erectile dysfunction; US = ultrasound.

The results of the different surgical approaches are presented in Table 10. It must be emphasised that there are no RCTs available addressing surgery in PD. The risk of ED seems to be greater for penile lengthening procedures [378, 448]. Recurrent curvature implies either failure to wait until the disease has stabilised, a re-activation of the condition following the development of stable disease, or the use of re-absorbable sutures that lose their strength before fibrosis has resulted in acceptable strength of the repair [120]. Accordingly, it is recommended that only non-absorbable sutures or slowly re-absorbed absorbable sutures be used. Although with non-absorbable sutures, the knot should be buried to avoid troublesome irritation of the penile skin but this issue may be alleviated by the use of slowly re-absorbed absorbable sutures [455]. Penile numbness is a potential risk of any surgical procedure involving mobilisation of the dorsal neurovascular bundle. This will usually be a neuropraxia, due to bruising of the dorsal sensory nerves. Given that the usual deformity is a dorsal deformity, the procedure most likely to induce this complication is a lengthening (grafting) procedure [448].
3.3.2.3.2.4 Recommendations for the surgical treatment of penile curvature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform surgery only when Peyronie’s disease has been stable for at least three months (without pain or deformity deterioration), which is usually the case after twelve months from the onset of symptoms, and intercourse is compromised due to deformity.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior to surgery, assess penile length, curvature severity, erectile function (including response to pharmacotherapy in case of erectile dysfunction) and patient expectations.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use tunical shortening procedures, especially plication techniques as the first treatment option for congenital penile curvature and for Peyronie’s disease with adequate penile length, curvature &lt; 60° and absence of special deformities (hour-glass, hinge).</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use grafting techniques for patients with Peyronie’s disease and normal erectile function, with no adequate penile length, curvature &gt; 60° and presence of special deformities (hour-glass, hinge).</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use penile prosthesis implantation, with or without any additional procedure (modelling, plication or grafting), in Peyronie’s disease patients with erectile dysfunction not responding to pharmacotherapy.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4 Priapism

3.4.1 Ischaemic (Low-Flow or Veno-Occlusive) Priapism

3.4.1.1 Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology

Ischaemic priapism is the most common form of priapism, accounting for more than 95% of all priapism episodes [493, 494]. It is usually painful, with a rigid erection characterised clinically by absent or reduced intracavernous arterial inflow (often proximally there is a compensated high velocity picture with little flow distally). In ischaemic priapism, there are time-dependent alterations in the corporal metabolic environment, progressively leading to hypoxia, hypercapnia, glucopenia and acidosis [495].

Ischaemic priapism beyond four hours is considered the same as a compartment syndrome, characterised by supraphysiological pressure within the closed space of the corpora cavernosa, which severely compromises cavernous circulation. Emergency medical intervention is required to minimise potential irreversible consequences, such as smooth muscle necrosis, corporal fibrosis and permanent ED [496, 497]. The duration of priapism represents the most significant predictor for the development of ED. In this context, interventions beyond 48-72 hours of onset may help to relieve the erection and pain, but have little benefit in preventing long-term ED.

Histologically, by twelve hours, corporal smooth muscle biopsies show interstitial oedema, progressing to destruction of the sinusoidal endothelium, exposure of the basement membrane and thrombocyte adherence at 24 hours. At 48 hours, thrombolytic can be found in the sinusoidal spaces and smooth muscle necrosis with fibroblast-like cell transformation is evident [422]. In terms of the pathophysiology (Table 11), no specific cause can be identified in the majority of cases [494, 498]. However, ischaemic priapism can be associated with sickle cell disease, haematological dyscrasias, neoplastic syndromes, and with the use of a number of pharmacological agents. Ischaemic priapism may occur (0.4-35%) after intracavernous injections of erectogenic agents [194, 494, 496, 499, 500]. The risk is highest with papaverine-based combinations, while the risk of priapism is < 1% following prostaglandin E1 injection [501].

Since their introduction on the market, a few cases of priapism have been described in men who have taken PDE5Is [494]. Most of these men however, had other risk factors for priapism, and it is unclear whether PDE5Is alone can cause ischaemic priapism [494]. Since most men who experienced priapism following PDE5I use had additional risk factors for ischaemic priapism, PDE5I use is usually not regarded a risk factor in itself. Sickle cell disease is the most common cause in childhood, accounting for 63% of the cases. It is the primary aetiology in 23% of adult cases [501], with a lifetime probability of developing ischaemic priapism of 29-42% in men with sickle cell disease [501-503] (LE: 4). Mechanisms of sickle cell disease associated priapism may involve dysfunctional NO synthase and Rho-associated protein kinase (ROCK) signaling, and increased oxidative stress associated with nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase mediated signaling [504].
Priapism resulting from metastatic or regional infiltration is rare and usually reflects an infiltrative process [505]. As such, the recommendations for pharmacological treatment are unlikely to work and certainly all of these men should have a magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scan of the penis and be offered supportive care and medical intervention for their primary cancer.

Priapism in children is extremely rare and is most commonly related to malignancy, haematological or otherwise. The investigative focus should be on identifying any underlying causes.

Partial priapism, or idiopathic partial segmental thrombosis of the corpus cavernosum, is a very rare condition. It is an often classified as subtype of priapism limited to a single crura but ischaemia does not develop, rather it is a thrombus within the corpus. Its aetiology is unknown, but bicycle riding, trauma, drug usage, sexual intercourse, haematological diseases and α-blockers have been associated with partial priapism [506]. There may be a congenital web in the corpora which poses a risk factor [507].

**Table 11: Potential causative factors for ischaemic priapism**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiopathic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Haematological dyscrasias (sickle cell disease, thalassemia, leukaemia; multiple myeloma, Hb Olmsted variant, fat emboli during hyperalimentation, haemodialysis, glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, Factor V Leiden mutation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infections (toxin-mediated) (i.e. scorpion sting, spider bite, rabies, malaria)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic disorders (i.e. amyloidosis, Fabry's disease, gout)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurogenic disorders (i.e. syphilis, spinal cord injury, cauda equina syndrome, autonomic neuropathy, lumbar disc herniation, spinal stenosis, cerebrovascular accident, brain tumour, spinal anaesthesia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neoplasms (metastatic or regional infiltration) (i.e. prostate, urethra, testis, bladder, rectal, lung, kidney)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Vasoactive erectile agents (i.e. papaverine, phentolamine, prostaglandin E1/alprostadil, combination of intracavernous therapies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- α-adrenergic receptor antagonists (i.e. prazosin, terazosin, doxazosin, tamsulosin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Anti-anxiety agents (hydroxyzine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Anticoagulants (heparin, warfarin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Antidepressants and antipsychotics (i.e. trazodone, bupropion, fluoxetine, sertraline, lithium, clozapine, risperidone, olanzapine, chlorpromazine, thioridazine, phenothiazines)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Antihypertensives (i.e. hydralazine, guanethidine, propranolol)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Hormones (i.e. gonadotropin-releasing hormone, testosterone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Recreational drugs (i.e. alcohol, marijuana, cocaine [intranasal and topical], crack, cocaine)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.4.1.1 Summary of evidence on the epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology of ischaemic priapism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ischaemic priapism is most common, accounting for more than 95% of all cases.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ischaemic priapism is identified as idiopathic in the vast majority of patients, while sickle cell anaemia is the most common cause in childhood.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ischaemic priapism occurs relatively often (up to 35%) after intracavernous injections of papaverine based combinations, while it is rare (&lt; 1%) after prostaglandin E1 monotherapy.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priapism is rare in men who have taken PDE5Is with only sporadic cases reported.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.4.1.2 Classification

Ischaemic priapism is a persistent erection marked by rigidity of the corpora cavernosa and by little or no cavernous arterial inflow [494]. The patient typically complains of penile pain and examination reveals a rigid erection. Resolution of ischaemic priapism is characterised by return to a flaccid non-painful state. However, in many cases, persistent penile oedema, ecchymosis and partial erections can occur and may mimic unresolved priapism. The partial erections may reflect reactive hyperaemia and are sometimes misdiagnosed as persistent priapism. When left untreated, resolution may take days and ED invariably results.
3.4.1.3 Diagnostic evaluation

**Figure 6: Differential diagnosis of priapism**

- **Ischaemic priapism**
  - History
  - Penile blood gas analysis
  - Painful, rigid erection
  - Dark blood; hypoxia, hypercapnia and acidosis
  - Sluggish or non-existent blood flow
- **High-flow priapism**
  - History
  - Penile blood gas analysis
  - Perineal or penile trauma; painless, fluctuating erection
  - Bright red blood; arterial blood gas values
  - Normal arterial flow and may show turbulent flow at the site of a fistula

3.4.1.3.1 History
Taking a comprehensive history is the mainstay in priapism diagnosis [494, 508]. The medical history must include asking about a history of sickle cell disease or any other haematological abnormality [9, 509] and a history of pelvic, genital or perineal trauma. The sexual history must include complete details of the duration of the erection, the presence and degree of pain, prior medical drug use, any previous history of priapism and erectile function prior to the last priapism episode (Table 12). The history can help to determine the underlying subtype of priapism (Table 13). Ischaemic priapism is classically associated with progressive penile pain and the erection is rigid.

**Table 12: Key points in taking the history of priapism (adapted from Broderick et al. [494])**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Duration of erection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Presence and degree of pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous episodes of priapism and method of treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current erectile function, especially the use of any erectogenic therapies prescription or nutritional supplements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medications and recreational drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sickle cell disease, haemoglobinopathies, hypercoagulable states</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma to the pelvis, perineum, or penis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.1.3.2 Physical examination
In ischaemic priapism, the corpora are fully rigid and tender, but the glans penis is soft. The patient complains of pain. Pelvic examination may reveal cases of underlying malignancy.

3.4.1.3.3 Laboratory testing
Laboratory testing should include a complete blood count, white blood count with blood cell differential, platelet count and coagulation profile to assess anaemia and detect haematological abnormalities [494, 508].

Blood aspiration from the corpora cavernosa shows dark ischaemic blood (Table 13) (LE: 2b). Blood gas analysis is essential to differentiate between ischaemic and arterial priapism (Table 14). Further laboratory
testing should be directed by history, clinical and laboratory findings. These may include specific tests for the diagnosis of sickle cell anaemia or other haemoglobinopathies (e.g. haemoglobin electrophoresis) or urine and plasma toxicological studies when there is suspected use of recreational psychoactive drugs.

3.4.1.3.4 Penile imaging

Colour Doppler US of the penis and perineum is recommended and can differentiate ischaemic from arterial priapism as an alternative or adjunct to blood gas analysis [510-512] (LE: 2b). Scanning of the penis should be performed before corporal blood aspiration in ischaemic priapism.

Examination of the penile shaft and perineum is recommended. In ischaemic priapism there will be an absence of blood flow in the cavernous arteries. The return of the cavernous artery waveform will result in successful detumescence [494, 512, 513]. After aspiration, a reactive hyperaemia may develop with a high arterial flow proximally that may mislead the diagnosis as arterial priapism.

The role of MRI in the diagnostic evaluation of priapism is controversial. It may be helpful in cases of ischaemic priapism to assess the viability of the corpora cavernosa and the presence of penile fibrosis. In a prospective study in 38 patients with ischaemic priapism, the sensitivity of MRI in predicting non-viable smooth muscle was 100%, as confirmed by corporal biopsy [514]. In this study, all patients with viable smooth muscle on MRI maintained erectile function on clinical follow-up (LE: 3).

| Table 13: Key findings in priapism (adapted from Broderick et al. [494]) |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| **Ischaemic priapism** | **Arterial priapism** |
| Corpora cavernosa fully rigid | Usually | Seldom |
| Penile pain | Usually | Seldom |
| Abnormal penile blood gas | Usually | Seldom |
| Haematological abnormalities | Usually | Seldom |
| Recent intracorporal injection | Sometimes | Sometimes |
| Perineal trauma | Seldom | Usually |

| Table 14: Typical blood gas values (adapted from Broderick et al. [494]) |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| **Source** | **pO₂ (mmHg)** | **pCO₂ (mmHg)** | **pH** |
| Normal arterial blood (room air) [similar values are found in arterial priapism] | > 90 | < 40 | 7.40 |
| Normal mixed venous blood (room air) | 40 | 50 | 7.35 |
| Ischaemic priapism (first corporal aspirate) | < 30 | > 60 | < 7.25 |

3.4.1.3.5 Recommendations for the diagnosis of ischaemic priapism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take a comprehensive history for diagnosis which can help to determine the underlying type of priapism.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include physical examination of the genitalia, the perineum and the abdomen in the diagnostic evaluation.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For laboratory testing, include complete blood count, white blood count with blood cell differential, platelet count and coagulation profile. Direct further laboratory testing by history, clinical and laboratory findings. In children with priapism, perform a complete evaluation of all possible causes.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analyse blood gas of blood aspirated from the penis for the differentiation between ischaemic and arterial priapism.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform colour duplex ultrasound of the penis and perineum for the differentiation between ischaemic and arterial priapism as an alternative or adjunct to blood gas analysis.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In cases of prolonged ischaemic priapism, use magnetic resonance imaging of the penis to predict smooth muscle viability and confirm erectile function restoration.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform selected pudendal arteriogram when embolisation is planned for the management of arterial priapism.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Initial conservative measures
- Local anaesthesia of the penis
- Insert wide bore butterfly ( ) through the glans into the corpora cavernosa
- Aspiration cavernosal blood until bright red arterial blood is obtained

### Cavernosal irrigation
- Irrigate with 0.90% w/v saline solution

### Intracavernosal therapy
- Inject intracavernosal adrenoceptor agonist
- Current first-line therapy is phenylephrine* with aliquots of 200 µg being injected every 3-5 minutes until detumescence is achieved (Maximum dose of phenylephrine is 1mg within 1 hour)*

### Surgical therapy
- Surgical shunting
- Consider primary penile implantation if priapism has been present for more than 36 hours

(*) *The dose of phenylephrine should be reduced in children. It can result in significant hypertension and should be used with caution in men with cardiovascular disease and monitoring of pulse, blood pressure and electrocardiogram (ECG) is advisable in all patients during administration and for 60 minutes afterwards. Its use is contraindicated in men with a history of cerebro-vascular disease and significant hypertension.*

3.4.1.4.1 First-line treatments
First-line treatments in ischaemic priapism of more than four hours duration are strongly recommended before any surgical treatment (LE: 4). Conversely, first-line treatments initiated beyond 72 hours while relieving the priapism have little documented benefit in terms of long-term potency preservation (LE: 4).

Historically, several first-line treatments have been described including exercise, ejaculation, ice packs, cold baths, and cold water enemas [494]. However, there is lack of evidence of benefit for such measures.

Partial priapism usually resolves spontaneously with analgesic treatment while surgical intervention is rarely needed [515].

3.4.1.4.1.1 Penile anaesthesia/systemic analgesia
It is possible to perform blood aspiration and intracavernous injection of a sympathomimetic agent without any anaesthesia. However, anaesthesia may be necessary when there is severe penile pain. While it is recognised that the anaesthesia may not alleviate the ischaemic pain, cutaneous anaesthesia will facilitate subsequent therapies. The treatment options for penile anaesthesia/systemic analgesia include:
• dorsal nerve block;
• circumferential penile block;
• subcutaneous local penile shaft block;
• oral conscious sedation (for paediatric patients).

3.4.1.4.1.2 Aspiration ± irrigation with 0.9% w/v saline solution
The first intervention for an episode of priapism lasting more than four hours consists of corporal aspiration (LE: 4) to drain stagnant blood from the corporal bodies, making it possible to relieve the compartment syndrome-like condition of the penis. Blood aspiration may be performed with intracorporeal access either through the glans or via percutaneous needle access on the lateral aspect of the proximal penile shaft, using a 16 G or 18 G angiocatheter or butterfly needle. The needle must penetrate the skin, the subcutaneous tissue and the tunica albuginea to drain the corpus cavernosum (LE: 4).

Some clinicians use two angiocatheters or butterfly needles at the same time to accelerate drainage, as well as aspirating and irrigating simultaneously with a saline solution [502] (LE: 4). Aspiration should be continued until fresh red, oxygenated, blood is aspirated (LE: 4).

This approach has up to a 30% chance of resolving the priapism. There are insufficient data to determine whether aspiration followed by saline intracorporeal irrigation is more effective than aspiration alone (LE: 4).

3.4.1.4.1.3 Aspiration ± irrigation with 0.90% w/v saline solution in combination with intracavernous injection of pharmacological agents.
This combination is currently considered the standard of care in the treatment of ischaemic priapism [4, 494, 516] (LE: 4). Pharmacological agents include sympathomimetic drugs or α-adrenergic agonists. Options for intracavernous sympathomimetic agents include phenylephrine, etilephrine, ephedrine, epinephrine, norepinephrine and metaraminol with a resolution rate of up to 80%. [494, 516-524] (LE: 2b). The use of intracavernous adrenaline injection alone has also been sporadically reported [525].

Phenylephrine
Phenylephrine is currently the drug of choice due to its high selectivity for the α-1-adrenergic receptor, without concomitant β-mediated inotropic and chronotropic cardiac effects [517, 521, 522] (LE: 4).

Phenylephrine is diluted in normal saline to a concentration of 100-500 μg/mL. Usually 200 μg are given every three to five minutes directly into the corpus cavernosum. Maximum dosage is 1 mg within one hour (LE: 4). A lower concentration or volume is applicable for children and patients with severe cardiovascular disease (LE: 4).

Phenylephrine use has potential cardiovascular side-effects [494, 516-518, 521, 522] and it is recommended that blood pressure and pulse are monitored every fifteen minutes for an hour after the injection. This is particularly important in older men with existing cardiovascular diseases. After injection, the puncture site should be compressed and the corpora cavernosa massaged to facilitate drug distribution.

The potential treatment-related side-effects of intracavernous phenylephrine (and other sympathomimetic agents) include headache, dizziness, hypertension, reflex bradycardia, tachycardia and palpitations, irregular cardiac rhythms and sporadic subarachnoid haemorrhage [39]. Monitoring of blood pressure and pulse with ECG should be performed during intracavernous administration of sympathomimetic agents.

Overall, the administration of intracavernous sympathomimetic agents is contraindicated in patients suffering from malignant or poorly controlled hypertension and in those who are concurrently taking monoamine oxidase inhibitors (LE: 4).

Etilephrine
Etilephine is the second most widely used sympathomimetic agent, administered by intracavernous injection at a concentration of 2.5 mg in 1-2 mL normal saline [518] (LE: 3).

Methylene blue
Methylene blue is a guanylate cyclase inhibitor, which may be a potential inhibitor of endothelial-mediated cavernous relaxation. It has therefore been suggested for treating short-term pharmacologically induced priapism [526, 527] (LE: 3). Methylene blue, 50-100 mg [526], should be injected intracavernously and left for five minutes. It is then aspirated and the penis compressed for an additional five minutes [527]. Treatment-related side-effects include a transient burning sensation and blue discolouration of the penis.
Adrenaline
Intracavernosal adrenaline (dosage of 2 mL of 1/100,000 adrenaline solution up to five times over a 20-minute period [525]), has been used in patients with ischaemic priapism due to an intracavernous injection of vasoactive agents. A success rate of over 50% after a single injection, with an overall success rate of 95% with repeated injections is achieved (LE: 3).

Oral terbutaline
Oral terbutaline is a β-2-agonist with minor β-1 effects and some α-agonist activity. A dose of 5 mg has been suggested to treat prolonged erections lasting more than 2.5 hours, after intracavernous injection of vasoactive agents, although the mechanism of action is not yet fully understood [528-530] (LE: 1b). Its main use is in the prevention of recurrent episodes of prolonged erection. Terbutaline should be given cautiously in patients with coronary artery disease, increased intravascular fluid volume, oedema and hypokalaemia [530].

Table 15: Medical treatment of ischaemic priapism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Dosage/Instructions for use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phenylephrine</td>
<td>• Intracavernous injection of 200 μg every three to five minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Maximum dosage is 1 mg within one hour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The lower doses are recommended in children and patients with severe cardiovascular disease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etillephtrine</td>
<td>• Intracavernosal injection at a concentration of 2.5 mg in 1-2 mL normal saline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylene blue</td>
<td>• Intracavernous injection of 50-100 mg, left for five minutes. It is then aspirated and the penis compressed for an additional five minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrenaline</td>
<td>• Intracavernous injection of 2 mL of 1/100,000 adrenaline solution up to five times over a twenty-minute period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terbutaline</td>
<td>• Oral administration of 5 mg for prolonged erections lasting more than 2.5 hours, after intracavernous injection of vasoactive agents.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Management of sickle cell disease related priapism
Rapid intervention is essential (LE: 4) and the general approach is similar to that described in other cases of ischaemic priapism and should be co-ordinated with a haematologist [531-533] (LE: 4).

However, as with other haematological disorders, other therapeutic practices may also need to be implemented [531, 533, 534]. Specific measures for sickle cell disease related priapism include intravenous hydration and parental narcotic analgesia while preparing the patient for aspiration and irrigation. In addition, supplemental oxygen administration and alkalinisation with bicarbonate can be helpful [503, 532].

Exchange blood transfusion has also been proposed, with the aim of increasing the tissue delivery of oxygen [535]. The transfused blood should be HbS negative, Rh and Kell antigen matched [536]. However, the evidence is inconclusive as to whether exchange transfusion itself helps to resolve the priapism in these men. It should also be noted that several reports suggest that this treatment may result in serious neurological sequelae [537]. Because of these considerations, the routine use of this therapy is not recommended (LE: 4).

3.4.1.4.2 Second-line treatments
Second-line intervention typically refers to surgical intervention in the form of penile shunt surgery and should only be considered when conservative management options fail (LE: 4). There is no evidence detailing the amount of time allowed for first-line treatment before moving on to surgery. Consensus recommendations suggest a period of at least one hour of first-line therapy prior to moving to surgery (LE: 4). A number of clinical indicators suggest failure of first-line treatment including continuing corporal rigidity, cavernosal acidosis and anoxia, absence of cavernosal artery inflow by penile colour duplex US, and elevated intracorporal pressures by pressure monitoring (LE: 4).

3.4.1.4.3 Penile shunt surgery
Penile shunt surgery aims to produce an exit for ischaemic blood from the corpora cavernosa thereby allowing the restoration of normal circulation within these structures. Accordingly, any shunt creates an opening in the tunica albuginea, which may communicate with either the glans, the corpus spongiosum or a vein for blood drainage [494, 516, 538].
In general, the type of shunt procedure chosen is according to the surgeon’s preference and familiarity with the procedure. It is conventional for distal shunt procedures to be tried before proximal shunting is considered (LE: 4). Cavernous biopsy has been used to identify smooth muscle necrosis (which, if present, would suggest that shunting is likely to fail) although this is mainly performed for medico-legal purposes and patient counselling.

It is important to assess the success of surgery by either direct observation or by investigation (e.g. cavernous blood gas testing, penile colour duplex US) (LE: 4) [494, 516].

The recovery rates of erectile function in men undergoing shunt surgery for prolonged erections are low and directly relate to the duration of the priapism [539, 540]. Priapism for more than 36 hours appears to irreversibly impair erectile tissue both structurally and functionally [539]. In general, shunt procedures undertaken after this time period may only serve to limit pain without any benefit for erectile function (LE: 4) [541, 542].

Four categories of shunt procedures have been reported [4, 494, 538, 542]. The limited available data preclude any recommendation for one procedure over another based on outcome (LE: 4).

**Percutaneous distal (corpora-glanular) shunts**

Winter’s procedure: this procedure uses a Trucut biopsy needle to create a fistula between the glans penis and each corpora cavernosa [4, 494, 501, 543, 544] (LE: 3). Post-operative sequelae are uncommon [545]. Winter’s shunt is easy to perform, but has been reported as the least successful operation to create a distal shunt [540].

Ebbehøj’s technique: this technique involves making multiple tunical incision windows between the glans and each tip of the corpus cavernosum by means of a size 11 blade scalpel passed several times percutaneously [4, 494, 543, 546, 547] (LE: 3).

T-Shunt: this technique involves performing a bilateral procedure using a size 10 blade scalpel placed vertically through the glans just lateral to the meatus until fully within the corpus cavernosum. The blade is then rotated 90° away from the urethra and pulled out [4, 494, 543, 548] (LE: 3). This is followed by a tunneling procedure using a size 8 dilator inserted through the glans and into the corpora which can be performed using US for guidance, mainly in order to avoid urethral injury [548].

**Open distal (corpora-glanular) shunts**

Al-Ghorab’s procedure: this procedure consists of an open bilateral excision of circular cone segments of the distal tunica albuginea via the glans penis, along with a subsequent glans closure by means of a running suture with absorbable material [4, 494, 534, 549, 550] (LE: 3).

Burnett’s technique (Snake manoeuvre): a modification of the Al-Ghorab corpora-glanular shunt surgery involves the retrograde insertion of a 7/8 Hegar dilator into the distal end of each corpus cavernosum through the original Al-Ghorab glanular excision. After removal of the dilator from the corpus cavernosum, blood evacuation is facilitated by manual compression of the penis sequentially from a proximal to distal direction. After detumescence, the glans penis skin is closed as in the Al-Ghorab procedure [4, 494, 543, 551, 552] (LE: 3). Reported complications include wound infection, penile skin necrosis and a urethrocutaneous fistula [552].

**Open proximal (corporospongiosal) shunts**

Quackles’s technique: through a trans-scrotal or perineal approach, a proximal open shunt technique creates a communication between the corpus cavenosum and the corpus spongiosum. The most frequent complications include an unwanted urethro-cavernous fistula and urethral stricture or the development of cavernositis [4, 494, 538, 553]. The risk of urethral injury is less with a perineal approach to the bulb of the corpus spongiosum (LE: 3).

**Vein anastomoses/shunts**

Grayhack’s procedure: this mobilises the saphenous vein below the junction of the femoral vein and anastomoses the vein end-to-side onto the corpus cavernosum. Venous shunts may be complicated by saphenofemoral thrombus formation and by pulmonary embolism [4, 494, 554-556] (LE: 3).

**Immediate surgical prosthesis implantation**

Refractory, therapy-resistant, acute ischaemic priapism or episodes lasting more than 48-72 hours usually result in complete ED, possibly along with major penile deformity. In these cases, immediate penile prosthesis surgery has been suggested [557-560] (LE: 3).
The immediate insertion of a malleable penile prosthesis has been recommended to avoid the difficulty and complications of delayed surgery in the presence of corporal fibrosis. Potential complications that could compromise immediate penile prosthesis implantation include distal erosion and cavernositis [557, 559], along with a small rate of revision surgery [557]. Early surgery also offers the opportunity to maintain penile size, and prevent penile curvature due to cavernosal fibrosis. The prosthesis can be exchanged for an inflatable prosthesis at a later date which also allows upsizing of the implant cylinders [561].

Currently, there are no clear indications for immediately implanting a penile prosthesis in a man with acute ischaemic priapism [516]. Relative indications include [494] (LE: 4):

- ischaemia that has been presented for more than 36 hours [560];
- failure of aspiration and sympathomimetic intracavernous injections;
- failure of distal and proximal shunting (although in delayed cases, implantation might be considered ahead of shunt surgery);
- Magnetic resonance imaging or corporal biopsy evidence of corporal smooth muscle necrosis [494, 557] (LE: 4).

Surgery for non-acute sequelae after ischaemic priapism
Structural changes may occur after ischaemic priapism including cavernosal tissue necrosis and fibrosis with consequent penile scarring, megalophallic deformities, penile shortening, and occasional penile loss, [538, 557, 562, 563]. Erectile dysfunction is also often observed [494, 564]. Unfortunately, these outcomes can still occur despite apparently successful first-line or second-line treatment.

Prosthesis implantation is occasionally indicated in sickle cell patients with severe ED since other therapeutic options such as PDE5Is and intracavernous injections are avoided as they may provoke a further priapism event [494, 516]. In severe corporal fibrosis, semi-rigid prosthetic devices are preferable to inflatable implants [557, 565] (LE: 3). Following severe priapism that has resulted in penile destruction with complicated deformities or even loss of penile tissue, penile reconstruction and concomitant prosthesis implant may be considered [566] (LE: 3).

3.4.1.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the treatment of ischaemic priapism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intervene rapidly for ischaemic priapism, which is an emergency condition.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment aims to restore painless penile flaccidity, in order to prevent chronic damage to the corpora cavernosa.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erectile function preservation is directly related to the duration of ischaemic priapism.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenylephrine is the recommended drug due to its favourable safety profile on the cardiovascular system compared to other drugs. Phenylephrine is usually diluted in normal saline with a concentration of 100-500 μg/mL and given in 200 μg doses every three to five minutes directly into the corpus cavernosum. Maximum dosage is 1 mg within one hour. Patients at high cardiovascular risk should be given lower doses. Patient monitoring is highly recommended.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The efficacy of shunt procedures for ischaemic priapism is questionable. Diagnose smooth muscle necrosis when needed with cavernous biopsy. No clear recommendation on one type of shunt over another can be given.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erectile dysfunction is inevitable in prolonged cases or priapism. Implantation of penile prosthesis at a later stage can be difficult due to severe corporal fibrosis.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start management of ischaemic priapism as early as possible (within four to six hours) and follow a stepwise approach.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First, decompress the corpora cavernosa by penile aspiration until fresh red blood is obtained.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In priapism secondary to intracavernous injections of vasoactive agents, replace blood aspiration with intracavernous injection of a sympathomimetic drug as the first step.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In priapism that persists despite aspiration, proceed to the next step, which is intracavernous injection of a sympathomimetic drug.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In cases that persist despite aspiration and intracavernous injection of a sympathomimetic drug, repeat these steps several times before considering surgical intervention.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat ischaemic priapism due to sickle cell anaemia in the same fashion as idiopathic ischaemic priapism. Provide other supportive measures (intravenous hydration, oxygen administration with alkalisation with bicarbonates, blood exchange transfusions), but do not delay initial treatment to the penis.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proceed to surgical treatment only when blood aspiration and intracavernous injection of sympathomimetic drugs have failed or for priapism events lasting &lt; 72 hours.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform distal shunt surgical procedures first followed by proximal procedures in case of failure.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discuss the immediate implantation of a penile prosthesis with the patient in cases of priapism presenting &gt; 36 hours after onset, or in cases for which all other interventions have failed.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 3.4.1.6 Follow-up

Follow-up of ischaemic priapism after successful treatment should include modification of risk factors (if any) in order to avoid a new event and assessment of erectile function since it may be severely compromised especially after surgical treatment with a shunt. Penile fibrosis is usually easily identified with clinical examination of the penis.

#### 3.4.2 Arterial (high-flow or non-ischaemic) priapism

**3.4.2.1 Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology**

Epidemiological data on arterial priapism are almost exclusively derived from small case series [494, 512, 513, 567, 568]. The most frequent cause of high-flow priapism is blunt perineal or penile trauma [569]. The injury results in a laceration in the cavernosal artery leading to a high-flow fistula between the artery and the lacunar spaces of the sinusoidal tissue [568]. This unregulated flow results in a persistent erection, and has been proposed to occur via a mechanism that involves stimulation of endothelial NO synthase by the turbulent blood flow [570]. Partial erections are enhanced after sexual stimulation, as the trabecular smooth muscle fully relaxes, activating the corporal veno-occlusive mechanism [568, 571].

There is often a delay between the injury and the development of the priapism that may be up to two to three weeks [571]. This has been suggested to reflect either spasm or ischaemic necrosis of the injured artery, with the fistula only developing as the spasm resolves or when the ischaemic segment blows out.

Occasional cases are associated with metastatic malignancy to the penis [572, 573], with acute spinal cord injury [574] and occasionally following intracavernous injections or aspiration due to a lacerated cavernous artery or branch [575, 576]. Under these circumstances, it may complicate low-flow priapism. It has also been reported to occur following internal urethrotomy [577] and a Nesbit procedure [578]. Although sickle cell disease is usually associated with low-flow priapism, occasional cases of high-flow priapism have been reported [579].

**3.4.2.1.1 Summary of Evidence on the epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology of arterial priapism**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arterial priapism usually occurs after blunt perineal or penile trauma.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3.4.2.2 Classification**

Arterial priapism is a persistent erection caused by unregulated cavernous arterial inflow [494]. The patient typically reports an erection that is not fully rigid and is not associated with pain although fully rigid erections may occur with sexual stimulation.
3.4.2.3 Diagnostic evaluation

3.4.2.3.1 History
A comprehensive history is also mandatory in arterial priapism diagnosis and follows the same principles as described in Table 12. Arterial priapism is suspected when there is no pain and erections are not fully rigid (Table 13). It can be associated with full erections under sexual stimulation and when there is a history of coital trauma or blunt trauma to the penis. The onset of post-traumatic high-flow priapism in adults and children may be delayed by hours to days following the initial injury. Sexual intercourse is usually not compromised.

3.4.2.3.2 Physical examination
In arterial priapism, the corpora are tumescent but not fully rigid (Table 13). Abdominal, penile and perineal examination may reveal evidence of trauma.

3.4.2.3.3 Laboratory testing
Blood aspiration from the corpora cavernosa shows bright red arterial blood in arterial priapism, while blood is dark in ischaemic priapism (Table 13) (LE: 2b). Blood gas analysis is essential to differentiate between arterial and ischaemic priapism (Table 14).

3.4.2.3.4 Penile imaging
Colour duplex US of the penis and perineum is recommended and can differentiate arterial from ischaemic priapism as an alternative or adjunct to blood gas analysis [510-512] (LE: 2b). Examination of the penile shaft and perineum is recommended. In arterial priapism US will show turbulent flow at the fistula, which helps to localise the site of trauma since patients with arterial priapism have normal to high blood velocities in the cavernous arteries.

A selective pudendal arteriogram can reveal a characteristic blush at the site of the injury to the cavernosal artery in arterial priapism [580, 581]. However, due to its invasiveness it should be reserved for the management of arterial priapism, when embolisation is being considered [494, 508] (LE: 3). The role of MRI in the diagnostic evaluation of priapism is controversial. In arterial priapism, its role is limited since the small penile vessels and arteriovenous fistulae cannot be easily demonstrated [582].

3.4.2.3.5 Recommendations for the diagnosis of arterial priapism
The same recommendations as in section 3.4.1.3.5 apply.

3.4.2.4 Disease management
The management of high-flow priapism is not an emergency because the penis is not ischaemic. Definitive management can therefore be considered and should be discussed with the patient so that they understand the risks and complications of treatment [494, 508] (LE: 3).

3.4.2.4.1 Conservative management
This may include applying ice to the perineum or site-specific perineal compression [512, 567, 583, 584]. It is an option in all cases, particularly children [585] (LE: 3). The fistula occasionally closes spontaneously. Even in those cases when it does not, the response to a sexual stimulus does allow for intercourse. Androgen deprivation therapy (leuprolide injections, bicalutamide and ketoconazole) has been reported in case series to enable closure of the fistula reducing spontaneous and sleep-related erections [586]. However, sexual dysfunction due to these treatments must be considered.

Blood aspiration is not helpful for the treatment of arterial priapism and the use of α-adrenergic antagonists is not recommended due to potential severe adverse effects, e.g. transfer of the drug into the systemic circulation.

3.4.2.4.1.1 Selective arterial embolisation
Selective arterial embolisation can be performed using either an autologous clot [587-589], gel foam or sponge [588, 590], or more permanent substances, such as coils [588, 590-592] or acrylic glue [593] (LE: 3). Success rates of up to 89% have been reported [594] in relatively small, non-randomised studies. There are no robust data to demonstrate the relative merits of the different substances. At least theoretically, the use of an autologous clot has some attractions. It temporarily seals the fistula, but when the clot is lysed, the arterial damage has usually resolved and the blood flow of the penis can return to normal. The use of a permanent device, such as a coil, would permanently block an artery and may lead to adverse effects upon spontaneous sexual function. Other potential complications include penile gangrene, gluteal ischaemia, cavernositis and perineal abscess [494, 595].
Following percutaneous embolisation, a follow-up is appropriate within one to two weeks. Assessment by clinical examination and by colour duplex US can determine whether the embolisation has been successful [511]. If there is doubt, a repeat arteriogram is required. Recurrence rates of 7-27% after a single treatment with embolisation have been reported [588, 589, 596] (LE: 3). In a few cases, repeat embolisation is necessary. Sexual function following embolisation can be adversely affected although there is full restoration of potency in around 80% of men [596, 597] (LE: 3).

Embolisation in children, although reportedly successful, is technically challenging and requires treatment within a specialist paediatric vascular radiology department [520, 598].

3.4.2.4.2 Surgical management
Selective ligation of the fistula through a transcorporeal approach under the guidance of colour duplex US is possible [4, 509, 599]. Surgery is technically challenging and may pose significant risks, mainly ED due to accidental ligation of the cavernous artery instead of the fistula. It is rarely performed and should only be considered when there are contraindications for selective embolisation, no availability of the technique or embolisation failure (LE: 4).

3.4.2.4.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the treatment of arterial priapism

### Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Because high-flow priapism is not an emergency, perform definitive management at the discretion of the treating physician.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conservative management with the use of ice applied to the perineum or site-specific perineal compression may be successful particularly in children. The use of androgen deprivation therapy may enable closure of the fistula reducing spontaneous and sleep-related erections.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artery embolisation, using temporary or permanent substances, has high success rates. No definitive statement can be made on the best substance for embolisation in terms of sexual function preservation.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat the procedure for the recurrence of arterial priapism following selective artery embolisation.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reserve selective surgical ligation of the fistula as a last treatment option when embolisation has failed.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Because high-flow priapism is not an emergency, perform definitive management at the discretion of the treating physician.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage conservatively with the use of ice applied to the perineum or site-specific perineal compression as the first step, especially in children. Use androgen deprivation therapy only in adults.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform selective artery embolisation, using temporary or permanent substances.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat the procedure for the recurrence of arterial priapism following selective artery embolisation.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reserve selective surgical ligation of the fistula as a last treatment option when embolisation has failed.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.2.4.4 Follow-up
Follow-up after successful treatment of arterial priapism should include assessment of erectile function and clinical examination to identify signs of recurrence especially after embolisation.

3.4.3 Stuttering (recurrent or intermittent) priapism

3.4.3.1 Epidemiology/aetiology/pathophysiology
Robust epidemiological studies of stuttering priapism are lacking [8, 600]. However, recurrent priapism episodes are common in men with sickle cell disease (42-64%) [601, 602] while in adolescents and young men the incidence of priapism is 35%, of whom 72% have a history of stuttering priapism [8].

The aetiology of stuttering priapism is similar to that of ischaemic priapism. While sickle cell disease is the most common cause, idiopathic cases and cases due to a neurological disorder have been reported. Moreover, men who have suffered from an acute ischaemic priapic event, especially one which has been prolonged (more than four hours) are at risk for developing stuttering priapism [564].
Recently, several studies have proposed alternative mechanisms including inflammation, cellular adhesion, NO metabolism, vascular reactivity and coagulation [494, 504, 532, 603, 604].

### 3.4.3.1 Summary of evidence on the epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology of stuttering priapism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stuttering priapism is similar to ischaemic priapism in that it is low-flow, ischaemic and, if left untreated would result in significant penile damage, with sickle cell disease being the most common cause. But the cause can also be idiopathic and in rare cases may be due to a neurological disorder.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.4.3.2 Classification

Stuttering priapism, also termed intermittent or recurrent priapism, is a distinct condition that is characterised by repetitive and painful episodes of prolonged erections. Erections are self-limited with intervening periods of detumescence [532, 603]. These are analogous to repeated episodes of low-flow (or ischaemic) priapism. The duration of the erectile episodes is generally shorter than in ischaemic priapism [4]. The frequency and/or duration of these episodes is variable and a single episode can sometimes progress into a major ischaemic priapic episode.

### 3.4.3.3 Diagnostic evaluation

#### 3.4.3.3.1 History

A comprehensive history is mandatory and follows the same principles as described in Table 12. There is a history of recurrent episodes of prolonged erections. The onset of the priapic episodes usually occurs during sleep and detumescence does not occur upon waking. Many of these priapic episodes are painful and may be the reason that the patient seeks medical help.

#### 3.4.3.3.2 Physical examination

Erections are painful and the penis is rigid as in ischaemic priapism, but the duration of events is usually shorter. Between erections the penis is usually normal, but in some cases signs of fibrosis can be found. Rarely, the penis may become enlarged, a condition known as megalophallus.

#### 3.4.3.3.3 Laboratory testing

Laboratory testing follows the same principles as in the two other types of priapism. It is recommended to identify possible causes and should be directed by history, clinical and laboratory findings.

#### 3.4.3.3.4 Penile imaging

There are no specific findings for stuttering priapism. Colour duplex US of the penis and perineum and MRI are recommended and can differentiate arterial from ischaemic type of priapism.

#### 3.4.3.3.5 Recommendations for the diagnosis of stuttering priapism

The same recommendations as described in section 3.4.1.3.5 apply. Stuttering priapism is a recurrent or intermittent type of ischaemic priapism.

### 3.4.3.4 Disease management

The primary goal in the management of patients with stuttering priapism is the prevention of future episodes, which can usually be achieved pharmacologically. The management of each acute episode is similar to that for ischaemic priapism; aspiration/irrigation in combination with intracavernous injections of $\alpha$-adrenergic agonists. Unfortunately, the efficacy and safety of the various treatment modalities reported in the medical literature are poorly characterised. Specifically, most reports are from small case series and the Panel is not aware of any published, well-designed, controlled studies on the efficacy and safety of these treatments [503, 532, 603].

#### 3.4.3.4.1 $\alpha$-adrenergic agonists

Studies of oral $\alpha$-adrenergic agonists have suggested some benefit for daily dosing of these agents as effective prevention [605]. Side-effects include tachycardia and palpitations. Pseudoephedrine, widely used as an oral decongestant, can also be used as a first-line treatment [529]. However, its effect on corporal smooth muscle is not fully understood. Etilephrine has been used successfully to prevent stuttering priapism due to sickle cell anaemia. It is taken orally at doses of 50-100 mg daily, with response rates of up to 72% [11, 606, 607]. In one randomised, placebo-controlled, clinical study looking at medical prophylaxis with etilephrine and ephedrine, there was no difference in efficacy between the two drugs.
3.4.3.4.2 Hormonal manipulations of circulating testosterone

The aim of hormonal manipulation is to down-regulate circulating testosterone levels to suppress the action of androgens on penile erection [503, 532, 608]. This can be done through the use of GnRH agonists or antagonists, antiandrogens or oestrogens [609] (LE: 4). Potential side-effects may include hot flushes, gynaecomastia, impaired erectile function, loss of libido and asthenia. All approaches have a similar efficacy profile (LE: 4) while the potential cardiovascular toxicity of oestrogens limits their clinical use. Alternative endocrine approaches that have been used with some success include 5-α-reductase inhibitors [610] (LE: 3) and ketoconazole, an antifungal agent that reduces adrenal and testicular androgen production [608, 611] (LE: 4).

Of the hormonal agents suggested for preventing priapism, GnRH agonists and anti-androgens appear to be the most efficacious and safe. They are recommended as primary treatments for the management of stuttering priapism in adult men (LE: 4).

The duration of hormonal treatment for effective suppression of recurrent priapic events is problematic. It is not possible to make any conclusions on the efficacy, dose and the duration of treatment. Moreover, hormonal agents have a contraceptive effect and interfere with normal sexual maturation. Caution is therefore strongly advised when prescribing hormonal treatments to pre-pubertal boys, adolescents or men who are trying with their female partner to conceive. Castrate levels of testosterone, which have a contraceptive effect, interfere with growth, and significantly affect sexual function.

3.4.3.4.3 Digoxin

Digoxin (a cardiac glycoside and a positive inotrope) is used to treat patients with congestive heart failure. Digoxin regulates smooth muscle tone through a number of different pathways leading to penile detumescence [503, 532, 612]. The use of maintenance digoxin doses (0.25-0.5 mg daily) in idiopathic stuttering priapism has been shown to reduce the number of hospital visits and to improve QoL [532]. A small, clinical, double-blind, placebo-controlled study, using digoxin, produced a decrease in sexual desire and excitement with a concomitant reduction in penile rigidity, regardless of any significant change in plasma levels of testosterone, oestrogens and luteinising hormone [612] (LE: 2b). Side-effects may include a decreased libido, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, confusion, blurred vision, headache, gynaecomastia, rash and arrhythmia.

3.4.3.4.4 Terbutaline

Terbutaline is a β-agonist that causes vasodilation, resulting in smooth muscle relaxation of the vasculature [503, 532] and has been used to prevent stuttering priapism with detumescence rates of 36% in patients with alprostadil-induced priapism [529] (LE: 3). The only randomised, placebo-controlled study (n = 68) in patients with pharmacologically-induced priapism, showed detumescence in 42% of the terbutaline-treated group compared to only 15% in the placebo-treated group [530] (LE: 1b). Side-effects include nervousness, shakiness, drowsiness, heart palpitations, headache, dizziness, hot flashes, nausea and weakness.

3.4.3.4.5 Gabapentin

Gabapentin has anticonvulsant, antinociceptive and anxiolytic properties and is widely used as an analgesic and antiepileptic agent. Its proposed mechanism of action is to inhibit voltage-gated calcium channels, which attenuates synaptic transmission [608], and reduces testosterone- and FSH levels [613]. It is given at a dose of 400 mg, four times a day, up to 2,400 mg daily, until complete penile detumescence occurs, with subsequent maintenance administration of gabapentin, 300 mg daily [614] (LE: 4). Side-effects include anorgasmia and impaired erectile function.

3.4.3.4.6 Baclofen

Baclofen is a gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) derivative that acts as a muscle relaxant and anti-muscle spasm agent. It can inhibit penile erection and ejaculation through GABA activity and prevents recurrent reflexogenic erections or prolonged erections from neurological diseases [503]. Oral baclofen has little efficacy and it is not usually used in stuttering priapism but intrathecal baclofen dosing is more effective [532, 615-617] (LE: 4). Side-effects include drowsiness, confusion, dizziness, weakness, fatigue, headache, hypotension and nausea.

3.4.3.4.7 Hydroxyurea

Hydroxyurea blocks the synthesis of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) by inhibiting ribonucleotide reductase, which has the effect of arresting cells in the S-phase [608, 618]. It is an established treatment for ameliorating sickle cell disease and improving patient life expectancy [531, 619]. For such patients with recurrent priapism there is limited evidence to suggest a medical prophylactic role (LE: 3), [608, 618, 620]. Side-effects include oligozoospermia and leg ulcers.
3.4.3.4.8 Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors
Low doses of PDE5Is have a paradoxical effect in alleviating and preventing stuttering priapism, mainly in patients with idiopathic and sickle cell disease-associated priapism [503, 532, 621-625] (LE: 3). It is important to remember that therapy should be started when the penis is in its flaccid state and not during an acute episode. There is a delay of one week before treatment is effective. There are no reported impairments in male sexual function (LE: 3). Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors probably act in priapism by increasing the concentration of cGMP in the smooth muscle in a NO dysfunctional state. This can occur in priapism and may result in a change in the NO pathway, with down-regulation of cavernosal PDE5 thereby preventing the complete degradation of cGMP in the corpora cavernosa [503, 532, 621, 624].

3.4.3.4.9 Intracavernosal injections
Some patients with stuttering priapism, who have been started on systemic treatments to prevent recurrence of unwanted erections, may not see therapeutic benefits immediately and may temporarily require intracavernous self-injections at home with sympathomimetic agents [503, 532]. The most commonly used drugs are phenylephrine and etilephrine (as described in the treatment of ischaemic priapism) [4, 494, 600, 607] (LE: 3). Side-effects include hypertension, coronary ischaemia and cardiac arrhythmias.

Tissue plasminogen activator (TPA) is a secreted serine protease that converts the pro-enzyme plasminogen to plasmin, which acts as a fibrinolytic enzyme. Limited clinical data have suggested that a single intracavernous injection of TPA can successfully treat patients with recalcitrant priapism [608, 626] (LE: 3). Mild bleeding is the most commonly observed side-effect.

3.4.3.4.10 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the treatment of stuttering priapism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The primary goal in the management of patients with stuttering priapism is the prevention of future episodes, which can generally be achieved pharmacologically.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDE5Is have a paradoxical effect in alleviating and preventing stuttering priapism, mainly in patients with idiopathic and sickle cell disease associated priapism.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The evidence with other systemic drugs (digoxin, α-adrenergic agonists, baclofen, gabapentin, terbutaline) is very limited.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manage each acute episode similar to that for ischaemic priapism.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use hormonal therapies (mainly gonadotropin-receptor hormone agonists or antagonists) and/or antiandrogens for the prevention of future episodes in patients with frequent relapses. Do not use them before sexual maturation is reached.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiate treatment with phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors (PDE5Is) only when the penis is in its flaccid state.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use digoxin, α-adrenergic agonists, baclofen, gabapentin or terbutaline only in patients with very frequent and uncontrolled relapses.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use intracavernous self-injections at home of sympathomimetic drugs for the treatment of acute episodes on an interim basis until ischaemic priapism has been alleviated.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.3.5 Follow-up
Follow-up for stuttering priapism include history and clinical examination to assess the efficacy of treatments in preventing or alleviating erectile events as well as assessing erectile function and penile fibrosis.
4. REFERENCES


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23616415


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26198796


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17850935


228. Pisano, F., et al. The importance of psychosexual counselling in the re-establishment of organic and


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16409229


5. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the EAU Male Sexual Dysfunction Guidelines Panel have provided disclosure statements of all relationships which they have and which may be perceived as a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is publically accessible through the EAU website https://uroweb.org/guideline/. This document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Male Infertility

A. Jungwirth (Chair), T. Diemer (Vice-chair), Z. Kopa, C. Krausz, H. Tournaye
Guidelines Associates: B. Kelly, R. Pal

© European Association of Urology 2017
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION  
   1.1 Aim  
   1.2 Publication history  
   1.3 Available Publications  
   1.4 Panel composition  

2. METHODS  
   2.1 Introduction  
   2.2 Review  
   2.3 Future goals  

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY AND AETIOLOGY – GENERAL PRINCIPLES  
   3.1 Introduction  
   3.2 Recommendations on epidemiology and aetiology  

4. PROGNOSTIC FACTORS AND DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION - GENERAL PRINCIPLES  
   4.1 Prognostic factors  
   4.2 Diagnostic evaluation  
      4.2.1 Semen analysis  
      4.2.1.1 Frequency of semen analysis  
      4.2.2 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of male infertility  

5. CONDITIONS CAUSING MALE INFERTILITY  
   5.1 Primary Spermatogenic Failure  
      5.1.1 Aetiology  
      5.1.2 Diagnostic evaluation  
         5.1.2.1 Semen analysis  
         5.1.2.2 Hormonal determinations  
         5.1.2.3 Ultrasonography  
         5.1.2.4 Testicular biopsy  
      5.1.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations  
   5.2 Genetic disorders in infertility  
      5.2.1 Chromosomal abnormalities  
         5.2.1.1 Sex chromosome abnormalities (Klinefelter’s syndrome and variants [47,XXY; 46,XY/47, XXY mosaicism])  
         5.2.1.2 Autosomal abnormalities  
         5.2.1.3 Sperm chromosomal abnormalities  
      5.2.2 Genetic defects  
         5.2.2.1 X-linked genetic disorders and male fertility  
         5.2.2.2 Kallmann syndrome  
         5.2.2.3 Mild androgen insensitivity syndrome  
         5.2.2.4 Other X-disorders  
      5.2.3 Y-chromosome and male infertility  
         5.2.3.1 Clinical implications of Y microdeletions  
            5.2.3.1.1 Testing for Y microdeletions  
            5.2.3.1.2 Genetic counselling for AZF deletions  
            5.2.3.1.3 Y-chromosome: ‘gr/gr’ deletion  
            5.2.3.1.4 Autosomal defects with severe phenotypic abnormalities and infertility  
      5.2.4 Cystic fibrosis mutations and male infertility  
         5.2.4.1 Unilateral or bilateral absence/abnormality of the vas and renal anomalies  
         5.2.4.2 Unknown genetic disorders  
         5.2.4.3 DNA fragmentation in spermatozoa  
         5.2.4.4 Genetic counselling and ICSI  
      5.2.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for genetic disorders in male infertility  

PAGE  
5  
5  
5  
5  
6  
6  
7  
8  
8  
8  
9  
9  
9  
9  
10  
10  
10  
10  
10  
10  
10  
11  
11  
11  
12  
12  
12  
12  
12  
12  
12  
12  
13  
13  
13  
13  
13  
13  
14  
14  
14  
14  
15  
15  
15
5.3 Obstructive azoospermia

5.3.1 Classification

5.3.1.1 Intratesticular obstruction
5.3.1.2 Epididymal obstruction
5.3.1.3 Vas deferens obstruction
5.3.1.4 Ejaculatory duct obstruction
5.3.1.5 Functional obstruction of the distal seminal ducts

5.3.2 Diagnostic evaluation

5.3.2.1 Clinical history
5.3.2.2 Clinical examination
5.3.2.3 Semen analysis
5.3.2.4 Hormone levels
5.3.2.5 Testicular biopsy

5.3.3 Disease management

5.3.3.1 Intratesticular obstruction
5.3.3.2 Epididymal obstruction
5.3.3.3 Proximal vas deferens obstruction
5.3.3.4 Distal vas deferens obstruction
5.3.3.5 Ejaculatory duct obstruction

5.3.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for obstructive azoospermia

5.4 Varicocele

5.4.1 Classification
5.4.2 Diagnostic evaluation
5.4.3 Basic considerations

5.4.3.1 Varicocele and fertility
5.4.3.2 Varicocelectomy
5.4.3.3 Prophylactic Varicocelectomy

5.4.4 Disease management
5.4.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for varicocele

5.5 Hypogonadism

5.5.1 Epidemiology and aetiology
5.5.2 Idiopathic hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism: aetiology, diagnosis and therapeutic management
5.5.3 Hypergonadotropic hypogonadism: aetiology, diagnosis and therapeutic management
5.5.4 Recommendations for hypogonadism

5.6 Cryptorchidism

5.6.1 Aetiology and pathophysiology

5.6.1.1 Pathophysiological effects in maldescended testes
5.6.1.1.1 Degeneration of germ cells
5.6.1.1.2 Relationship with fertility
5.6.1.1.3 Germ cell tumours

5.6.2 Disease management

5.6.2.1 Hormonal treatment
5.6.2.2 Surgical treatment

5.6.3 Summary of evidence recommendations for cryptorchidism

5.7 Idiopathic male infertility

5.7.1 Disease management

5.7.1.1 Empirical treatments

5.7.2 Recommendation for idiopathic male infertility

5.8 Male contraception

5.8.1 Vasectomy

5.8.1.1 Surgical techniques
5.8.1.1.1 Complications
5.8.1.1.2 Vasectomy failure

5.8.2 Counselling

5.8.3 Vasectomy reversal

5.8.3.1 Length of time since vasectomy
5.8.3.2 Tubulovasostomy
5.8.3.3 Microsurgical vasectomy reversal vs. epididymal or testicular sperm retrieval and ICSI

5.8.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for male contraception

5.9 Male accessory gland infections and infertility

5.9.1 Introduction

5.9.2 Diagnostic evaluation

5.9.2.1 Ejaculate analysis

5.9.2.2 Microbiological findings

5.9.2.3 White blood cells

5.9.2.4 Sperm quality

5.9.2.5 Seminal plasma alterations

5.9.2.6 Glandular secretory dysfunction

5.9.2.7 Reactive oxygen species

5.9.2.8 Disease management

5.9.3 Epididymitis

5.9.3.1 Diagnostic evaluation

5.9.3.2 Disease management

5.9.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for male accessory gland infections

5.10 Germ cell malignancy and testicular microcalcification

5.10.1 Germ cell malignancy and male infertility

5.10.2 Testicular germ cell cancer and reproductive function

5.10.3 Testicular microlithiasis (TM)

5.10.4 Recommendations for germ cell malignancy and testicular microcalcification

5.11 Disorders of ejaculation

5.11.1 Classification and aetiology

5.11.1.1 Anejaculation

5.11.1.2 Anorgasmia

5.11.1.3 Delayed ejaculation

5.11.1.4 Retrograde ejaculation

5.11.1.5 Asthenic ejaculation

5.11.1.6 Premature ejaculation

5.11.2 Diagnostic evaluation

5.11.2.1 Clinical history

5.11.2.2 Physical examination

5.11.2.3 Post-ejaculatory urinalysis

5.11.2.4 Microbiological examination

5.11.2.5 Optional diagnostic work-up

5.11.3 Disease management

5.11.3.1 Aetiological treatment

5.11.3.2 Symptomatic treatment

5.11.3.2.1 Premature ejaculation

5.11.3.2.2 Retrograde ejaculation

5.11.3.2.3 Anejaculation

5.11.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for disorders of ejaculation

5.12 Semen cryopreservation

5.12.1 Indications for storage

5.12.2 Precautions and techniques

5.12.2.1 Freezing and thawing process

5.12.2.2 Cryopreservation of small numbers of sperm

5.12.2.3 Testing for infections and preventing cross-contamination

5.12.2.4 Fail-safe precautions to prevent loss of stored materials

5.12.2.5 Orphan samples

5.12.3 Biological aspects

5.12.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for semen cryopreservation

6. REFERENCES

7. CONFLICT OF INTEREST
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim
The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Panel on Male Infertility has prepared these Guidelines to assist urologists and healthcare professionals from related specialties in the treatment of male infertility. Urologists are usually the initial specialty responsible for assessing men when male infertility is suspected. However, infertility can be a multifactorial condition requiring multidisciplinary involvement.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts. However following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not and should not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Publication history
The EAU Male Infertility Guidelines were first published in 2001, followed by full-text updates in 2004, 2007, 2010, 2013, 2014 and 2015. In 2016 a scoping search was performed, covering all areas of the guideline and it was updated accordingly.

1.3 Available Publications
A quick reference document (Pocket Guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices, presenting the main findings of the Male Infertility Guidelines. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text versions. The Male Infertility Panel published a number of scientific publications in the EAU journal European Urology [1-3]. A separate scientific paper on Vasectomy was published in 2012 [2]. All texts can be viewed and downloaded for personal use at the society website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/male-infertility/.

1.4 Panel composition
The Male Infertility Guidelines Panel consists of urologists, endocrinologists and gynaecologists with special training in andrology and experience in the diagnosis and treatment of male infertility. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements which can be viewed on the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/male-infertility/.

2. METHODS

2.1 Introduction
References used in this text are graded according to their Level of Evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a Grade of Recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence [4]. Additional methodology information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/.

A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address. In particular, the Male Infertility Guidelines have been endorsed by the Hellenic Society of Reproductive Medicine.

The recommendations provided in these guidelines are based on a systematic literature search performed by the panel members. The controlled vocabulary of the MeSH database was used alongside a free text protocol, combining “male infertility” with the terms “diagnosis”, “epidemiology”, “investigations”, “treatment”, “spermatogenic failure”, “genetic abnormalities”, “obstruction”, “hypogonadism”, “varicocele”, “cryptorchidism”, “testicular cancer”, “male accessory gland infection”, “idiopathic”, “contraception”, “ejaculatory dysfunction”, and “cryopreservation”.

For the 2017 print a scoping search was performed, covering all areas of the guideline, starting from the last cut-off date April 2015 with a cut-off date of April 2016. Embase, Medline and the Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials databases were searched, with a limitation to reviews, meta-analyses or meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. A total of 409 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance, of which nine publications were selected for inclusion. A detailed search strategy is available online: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/male-infertility/.
2.2 Review
This document was subject to peer review prior to publication in 2015.

2.3 Future goals
The results of ongoing and new systematic reviews will be included in the 2018 update of the Male Infertility Guidelines. Ongoing systematic reviews include:

- What are the benefits of nutritional and/or medical therapy on the pregnancy rate and semen parameters and harms in males with idiopathic infertility? [5].

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY AND AETIOLOGY – GENERAL PRINCIPLES

3.1 Introduction
Definition
"Infertility is the inability of a sexually active, non-contracepting couple to achieve spontaneous pregnancy in one year", World Health Organization (WHO) [6].

About 15% of couples do not achieve pregnancy within one year and seek medical treatment for infertility. One in eight couples encounter problems when attempting to conceive a first child and one in six when attempting to conceive a subsequent child. Three percent of women remain involuntarily childless, while 6% of parous women are not able to have as many children as they would wish [7]. Infertility affects both men and women. In 50% of voluntarily childless couples, a male-infertility-associated factor is found together with with abnormal semen parameters. A fertile partner may compensate for the fertility problem of the man and thus infertility usually manifests if both partners have reduced fertility [6]. Male fertility can be reduced as a result of [6]:

- congenital or acquired urogenital abnormalities;
- malignancies;
- urogenital tract infections;
- increased scrotal temperature (e.g. as a consequence of varicocele);
- endocrine disturbances;
- genetic abnormalities;
- immunological factors.

In 30-40% of cases, no male-infertility-associated factor is found (idiopathic male infertility). These men present with no previous history of diseases affecting fertility and have normal findings on physical examination and endocrine, genetic and biochemical laboratory testing. However, semen analysis might reveal pathological findings in the spermiogram (see 4.2.1). Table 1 summarises the main male-infertility-associated factors. Idiopathic male infertility is assumed to be caused by several factors, including endocrine disruption as a result of environmental pollution, reactive oxygen species, or genetic and epigenetic abnormalities.
Table 1: Male infertility causes and associated factors and percentage of distribution in 10,469 patients [8]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
<th>Unselected patients (n = 12,945)</th>
<th>Azoospermic patients (n = 1,446)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>11.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infertility of known (possible) cause</td>
<td>42.6%</td>
<td>42.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maldescended testes</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>17.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Varicocele</td>
<td>14.8</td>
<td>10.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sperm autoantibodies</td>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testicular tumour</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idiopathic infertility</td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>13.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypogonadism</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>16.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Klinefelter's syndrome (47, XXY)</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>13.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX male</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary hypogonadism of unknown cause</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary (hypogonadotropic) hypogonadism</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kallmann syndrome</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idiopathic hypogonadotropic hypogonadism</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residual after pituitary surgery</td>
<td>&lt; 0.1</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late-onset hypogonadism</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constitutional delay of puberty</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General/systemic disease</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryopreservation due to malignant disease</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>12.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testicular tumour</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphoma</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leukaemia</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarcoma</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disturbance of erection/ejaculation</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstruction</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vasectomy</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic fibrosis (CBAVD)</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CBAVD = Congenital Bilateral Absence of the Vas Deferens

3.2 Recommendations on epidemiology and aetiology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Investigate both partners simultaneously, to categorise infertility.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include the fertility status of the female partner in the diagnosis and management of male subfertility because this might determine the final outcome.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examine all men diagnosed with fertility problems, including men with abnormal semen parameters for urogenital abnormalities.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.  PROGNOSTIC FACTORS AND DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION - GENERAL PRINCIPLES

4.1  Prognostic factors

Prognostic factors for male infertility are:
- duration of infertility;
- primary or secondary infertility;
- results of semen analysis;
- age and fertility status of female partner.

The cumulative pregnancy rate is 27% in infertile couples with two years of follow-up and oligozoospermia as the primary cause of infertility [9]. Female age is the most important single variable influencing outcome in assisted reproduction [10]. Compared to a woman aged 25 years, the fertility potential of a woman aged 35 years is reduced to 50%, to 25% at 38 years, and less than 5% at over 40 years. In many Western countries, women postpone their first pregnancy until after their education and starting a career.

4.2  Diagnostic evaluation

4.2.1  Semen analysis

A medical history and physical examination are standard assessments in all men, including scrotal ultrasound (US) [11] and semen analysis. A comprehensive andrological examination is indicated if semen analysis shows abnormalities compared with reference values (Table 2). Important treatment decisions are based on the results of semen analysis, therefore, it is essential that the complete laboratory work-up is standardised.

Ejaculate analysis has been standardised by the WHO and disseminated by publication of the WHO Laboratory Manual for the Examination and Processing of Human Semen (5th edn.) [12]. It is the consensus that modern spermatology must follow these guidelines.

Table 2: Lower reference limits (5th centiles and their 95% CIs) for semen characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Lower reference limit (range)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Semen volume (mL)</td>
<td>1.5 (1.4-1.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total sperm number (10⁶/ejaculate)</td>
<td>39 (33-46)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sperm concentration (10⁶/mL)</td>
<td>15 (12-16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total motility (PR + NP)</td>
<td>40 (38-42)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive motility (PR, %)</td>
<td>32 (31-34)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitality (live spermatozoa, %)</td>
<td>58 (55-63)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sperm morphology (normal forms, %)</td>
<td>4 (3.0-4.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional investigations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pH</td>
<td>&gt; 7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peroxidase-positive leukocytes (10⁶/mL)</td>
<td>&lt; 1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seminal zinc (μmol/ejaculate)</td>
<td>&gt; 2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seminal fructose (μmol/ejaculate)</td>
<td>&gt; 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seminal neutral glucosidase (mU/ejaculate)</td>
<td>&lt; 20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CIs = confidence intervals; MAR = mixed antiglobulin reaction NP = non-progressive; PR = progressive.

4.2.1.1  Frequency of semen analysis

If the results of semen analysis are normal according to WHO criteria, one test is sufficient. If the results are abnormal in at least two tests, further andrological investigation is indicated. It is important to differentiate between the following:
- oligozoospermia: < 15 million spermatozoa/mL;
- asthenozoospermia: < 32% progressive motile spermatozoa;
- teratozoospermia: < 4% normal forms.
Often, all three anomalies occur simultaneously, which is defined as oligo-astheno-teratozoospermia (OAT) syndrome. As in azoospermia, in extreme cases of oligozoospermia (spermatozoa < 1 million/mL), there is an increased incidence of obstruction of the male genital tract and genetic abnormalities.

4.2.2 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of male infertility

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform semen analyses according to the guidelines of the WHO Laboratory Manual</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the Examination and Processing of Human Semen (5th edn).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform further andrological assessment when semen analysis is abnormal in</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at least two tests.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhere to the 2010 WHO Manual for the standardised investigation, diagnosis</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and management of the infertile male for diagnosis and evaluation of male</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subfertility.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

5. CONDITIONS CAUSING MALE INFERTILITY

5.1 Primary Spermatogenic Failure

5.1.1 Aetiology

The causes of testicular deficiency are summarised in Table 3.

Table 3: Causes of testicular deficiency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factors</th>
<th>Causes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Congenital</td>
<td>Anorchia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Testicular dysgenesis/cryptorchidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Genetic abnormalities (karyotype, Y-chromosome deletions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acquired</td>
<td>Trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Testicular torsion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Post-inflammatory forms, particularly mumps orchitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exogenous factors (medications, cytotoxic or anabolic drugs, irradiation,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>heat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Systemic diseases (liver cirrhosis, renal failure)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Testicular tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Varicocele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Surgery that may compromise vascularity of the testes and lead to testi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cular atrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idiopathic</td>
<td>Unknown aetiology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unknown pathogenesis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.1.2 Diagnostic evaluation

Routine investigations include semen analysis and hormonal determinations. Other investigations may be required depending on the individual situation.

Typical findings from the history and physical examination of a patient with testicular deficiency are:

- cryptorchidism (uni-or bilateral);
- testicular torsion and trauma;
- genitourinary infection;
- exposure to environmental toxins;
- gonadotoxic medication (anabolic drugs, SSRIs, etc);
- exposure to radiation or cytotoxic agents;
- testicular cancer;
- absence of testes;
- abnormal secondary sexual characteristics;
- gynaecomastia;
- abnormal testicular volume and/or consistency; and
- varicocele.
5.1.2.1 Semen analysis
In non-obstructive azoospermia (NOA), semen analysis shows normal ejaculate volume and azoospermia after centrifugation. A recommended method is semen centrifugation at 3000 g for fifteen minutes and a thorough microscopic examination by phase contrast optics at ×200 magnification of the pellet. All samples can be stained and re-examined microscopically [12].

5.1.2.2 Hormonal determinations
In men with testicular deficiency, Hypergonadotropic hypogonadism is usually present, with high levels of follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinising hormone (LH), and sometimes low levels of testosterone. Generally, the levels of FSH correlate with the number of spermatogonia: when spermatogonia are absent or markedly diminished, FSH values are usually elevated; when the number of spermatogonia is normal, but maturation arrest exists at the spermatocyte or spermatid level, FSH values are within the normal range. However, for an individual patient, FSH levels do not accurately predict the spermatogenesis status because men with maturation arrest histology could have normal FSH and testis volume and still be azoospermic [13, 14].

5.1.2.3 Ultrasonography
In addition to physical examination, a scrotal US may be helpful in finding signs of obstruction (e.g., dilatation of rete testis, enlarged epididymis with cystic lesions, or absent vas deferens) and may demonstrate signs of testicular dysgenesis (e.g., non-homogeneous testicular architecture and microcalcifications) and testis tumours. For patients with a low seminal volume and in whom distal obstruction is suspected, transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) is essential [11].

5.1.2.4 Testicular biopsy
Testicular biopsy can be part of intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) treatment in patients with clinical evidence of NOA. Testicular sperm extraction (TESE) is the technique of choice. Spermatogenesis may be focal, which means that in about 50% of men with NOA, spermatozoa can be found and used for ICSI. There is a good correlation between the histology found upon diagnostic biopsy and the likelihood of finding mature sperm cells during testicular sperm retrieval and ICSI [15-17]. However, no threshold value has been found for FSH, inhibin B, or testicular volume and successful sperm harvesting. When there are complete AZFa and AZFb microdeletions, the likelihood of sperm retrieval is virtually zero and therefore TESE procedures are contraindicated. Microsurgical TESE yields the highest sperm retrieval rates, and multiple TESE is superior to conventional TESE. Microsurgical TESE should be preferred in severe cases of non-obstructive azoospermia [18-22].

The results of ICSI are worse when using sperm retrieved from men with NOA compared to sperm from ejaculated semen and from men with obstructive azoospermia (OA) [23-27]. Birth rates are lower in NOA vs. OA (19% vs 28%) [28, 29]. ICSI results in significantly lower fertilisation and implantation rates. In longitudinal studies including patients with NOA as defined by testicular histopathology, only one out of seven NOA patients embarking for TESE and eventually ICSI will father their genetically-own child [30]. Neonatal health in terms of birth parameters, major anomalies and chromosomal aberrations in a large cohort of children born after use of non-ejaculated sperm are comparable to the outcome of children born after use of ejaculated sperm [31].

5.1.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The WHO laboratory manual proposes reference values based on fertility therefore these reference values do not allow classification of men as infertile.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impaired spermatogenesis is often associated with elevated FSH concentration.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For patients with NOA who have spermatozoa in their testicular biopsy, intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) with fresh or cryopreserved spermatozoa is the only therapeutic option. Spermatozoa are found by a TESE procedure in about 50% of patients with NOA.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancies and live births are eventually obtained in 30-50% of couples with NOA, when spermatozoa have been found in the testicular biopsy.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For men who are candidates for sperm retrieval, give appropriate genetic counselling even when testing for genetic abnormalities was negative.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In men with non-obstructive azoospermia (NOA), perform simultaneous testicular biopsy with multiple testicular sperm extraction (TESE) (or micro-TESE) to define spermatogenesis and diagnose intratubular germ cell neoplasia of unclassified type (ITGCNU) and eventually kryopreservation of sperm.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2 Genetic disorders in infertility

All urologists working in andrology must have an understanding of genetic abnormalities associated with infertility, so that they can provide correct advice to couples seeking fertility treatment. Men with very low sperm counts can be offered a reasonable chance of paternity, using in vitro fertilisation (IVF), ICSI and sperm harvesting from the testes in case of azoospermia. However, the spermatozoa of infertile men show an increased rate of aneuploidy, structural chromosomal abnormalities, and DNA damage, carrying the risk of passing genetic abnormalities to the next generation. Current routine clinical practice is based on the screening of genomic DNA from peripheral blood samples, however, screening of chromosomal anomalies in spermatozoa is also feasible and can be performed in selected cases [32].

5.2.1 Chromosomal abnormalities

Chromosome abnormalities can be numerical (e.g. trisomy) or structural (e.g. inversions or translocations). In a survey of pooled data from eleven publications, including 9,766 infertile men, the incidence of chromosomal abnormalities was 5.8% [33]. Of these, sex chromosome abnormalities accounted for 4.2% and autosomal abnormalities for 1.5%. In comparison, the incidence of abnormalities was 0.38% in pooled data from three series, with a total of 94,465 newborn male infants, of which 131 (0.14%) were sex chromosome abnormalities and 232 (0.25%) autosomal abnormalities [33]. The frequency of chromosomal abnormalities increases as testicular deficiency becomes more severe. Patients with a spermatozoa count < 5 million/mL already show a 10-fold higher incidence (4%) of mainly autosomal structural abnormalities compared with the general population [34, 35]. Men with NOA are at highest risk, especially for sex chromosomal anomalies.

Based on the frequencies of chromosomal aberrations in patients with different sperm concentration, karyotype analysis is indicated in men with azoospermia or oligozoospermia (spermatozoa < 10 million/mL) [35]. A recent study proposes to restrict karyotype to NOA men with the purpose to prevent adverse pregnancy outcomes [36]. If there is a family history of recurrent spontaneous abortions, malformations or mental retardation, karyotype analysis should be requested, regardless of the sperm concentration.

5.2.1.1 Sex chromosome abnormalities (Klinefelter’s syndrome and variants [47,XXY; 46,XY/47, XXY mosaicism])

Klinefelter’s syndrome is the most common sex chromosome abnormality [37]. Adult men with Klinefelter’s syndrome have small firm testicles, devoid of germ cells. The phenotype varies from a normally virilised man to one with the stigmata of androgen deficiency, including female hair distribution, scant body hair, and long arms and legs due to late epiphyseal closure. Leydig cell function is commonly impaired in men with Klinefelter’s syndrome [38]. Testosterone levels may be normal or low, oestradiol levels normal or elevated, and FSH levels increased. Libido is often normal despite low testosterone levels, but androgen replacement may be needed as the patient ages.

Germ cell presence and sperm production are variable in men with Klinefelter’s mosaicism, 46,XY/47,XXY. Based on sperm fluorescence in situ hybridisation (FISH) studies showing an increased frequency of sex chromosomal abnormalities and increased incidence of autosomal aneuploidy (disomy for chromosomes 13, 18 and 21), concerns have been raised about the chromosomal normality of the embryos generated through ICSI [39].

The production of 24,XY sperm has been reported in 0.9% and 7.0% of men with Klinefelter’s mosaicism [40, 41] and in 1.36-25% of men with somatic karyotype 47,XXY [42-45]. In patients with azoospermia, TESE (42%) or micro-TESE (57%) can be proposed as a therapeutic option since spermatozoa can be recovered in about 50% of cases [46]. There is growing evidence that TESE or micro TESE yields higher sperm recovery rates when done at younger age. Numerous healthy children have been born using ICSI without pre-implantation genetic diagnosis (PGD) and the conception of one 47,XXY foetus has been reported [37]. However, a study of ICSI combined with PGD in 113 embryos reported a significant fall in the rate of normal embryos for couples with Klinefelter’s syndrome with respect to controls (54% vs. 77.2%) [45]. Due to the significant increase of sex chromosomal and autosomal abnormalities in the embryos of Klinefelter’s patients, PGD or amniocentesis analysis should be considered.
Follow-up (possibly every year) of men with Klinefelter’s syndrome is required and androgen replacement therapy should be started after fertility issues have been addressed and when testosterone level is in the range of hypoandrogenism.

TESE in peripubertal or pre-pubertal Klinefelter boys aiming at cryopreservation of testicular spermatogonial stem cells is to be considered experimental and should only be performed within a research protocol [47].

5.2.1.2 Autosomal abnormalities
Genetic counselling should be offered to all couples seeking fertility treatment (including IVF/ICSI) when the male partner has an autosomal karyotype abnormality. The most common autosomal karyotype abnormalities are Robertsonian translocations, reciprocal translocations, paracentric inversions, and marker chromosomes. It is important to look for these structural chromosomal anomalies because there is an increased associated risk of aneuploidy or unbalanced chromosomal complements in the foetus. As with Klinefelter’s syndrome, sperm FISH analysis provides a more accurate risk estimation of affected offspring, however, the diffusion of this genetic test is largely limited by the availability of laboratories able to perform this analysis. When IVF/ICSI is carried out for men with translocations, PGD or amniocentesis should be performed [48, 49].

5.2.1.3 Sperm chromosomal abnormalities
Sperm can be examined for their chromosomal constitution using multicolour FISH both in men with normal karyotype and with anomalies. Aneuploidy in sperm, particularly sex chromosome aneuploidy, is associated with severe damage to spermatogenesis [33, 50-52] and with translocations [53]. Fluorescence in situ hybridisation analysis of spermatozoa is only indicated for specific andrology conditions e.g. macrocephalia [52].

5.2.2 Genetic defects
5.2.2.1 X-linked genetic disorders and male fertility
Each man has only one X-chromosome. An X-linked recessive disorder manifests in males. The defect will be transmitted to daughters, but not to sons.

5.2.2.2 Kallmann syndrome
Patients with Kallmann syndrome have hypogonadotropic hypogonadism and anosmia, but may also have other clinical features, including facial asymmetry, cleft palate, colour blindness, deafness, maldescended testes, and unilateral renal aplasia. This syndrome can be due to mutation in the Kalg-1 gene [on the X-chromosome] or in several other autosomal genes and should be tested [52, 53].

Spermatogenesis can be relatively easily induced by hormonal treatment [54], therefore, genetic screening prior to therapy is advisable although it is limited by the rarity of specialised genetic laboratories that can offer this genetic test. Treatment with gonadotropins allows natural conception in most cases, even for men with a relatively low sperm count. Thus, identification of the involved gene (X-linked, autosomal dominant or recessive) can help to provide more accurate genetic counselling, that is, risk estimation for transmission to the offspring.

5.2.2.3 Mild androgen insensitivity syndrome
The Androgen Receptor (AR) gene is located on the long arm of the X-chromosome. Mutations in the AR gene may result in mild to complete androgen insensitivity. The phenotypic features of complete androgen insensitivity syndrome are female external genitalia and absence of pubic hair (Morris syndrome). In partial androgen insensitivity syndrome, phenotypes range from predominantly female phenotype through ambiguous genitalia, to predominantly male phenotype with micropenis, perineal hypospadias, and cryptorchidism. The latter phenotype is also termed Reifenstein syndrome. In the forementioned severe forms of androgen resistance, there is no risk of transmission because affected men cannot generate their own biological children using the current technologies. Patients with mild androgen insensitivity syndrome have male infertility as their primary or even sole symptom. Disorders of the androgen receptor causing infertility in the absence of any genital abnormality are rare, and only a few mutations have been reported in infertile [55-58] or fertile [59] men.

5.2.2.4 Other X-disorders
An unexpectedly high number of genes with a testis-specific or enriched expression pattern have been identified on the X-chromosome, and in particular, premeiotic genes are over-represented on the X-chromosome compared with autosomal chromosomes [60]. Nevertheless, to date only a few genes have been screened in relatively small populations and none of them appear relevant for male infertility [61, 62]. On the other hand, two recent independent studies showed a significantly higher deletion load on the X-chromosome in men with spermatogenic failure with respect to normozoospermic controls [63, 64].
5.2.3  **Y-chromosome and male infertility**

Microdeletions on the Y-chromosome are termed AZFa, AZFb and AZFc [65]. Clinically relevant deletions remove partially, or in most cases completely, one or more of the AZF regions, and are the most frequent molecular genetic cause of severe oligozoospermia and azoospermia [66]. In each AZF region, there are several spermatogenesis candidate genes [67]. Deletions occur en bloc (i.e. removing more than one gene), thus, it is not possible to determine the role of a single AZF gene from the AZF deletion phenotype and it is unclear if they all participate in spermatogenesis. Gene-specific deletions, which remove a single gene, have been reported only in the AZFa region and concern the USP9Y gene. These studies have suggested that USP9Y is most likely to be a “fine tuner” of sperm production, and its specific screening is not advised [68].

5.2.3.1  **Clinical implications of Y microdeletions**

The clinical significance of Yq microdeletions can be summarised as follows:

- They are not found in normozoospermic men, proving there is a clear cut cause-and-effect relationship between Y-deletions and spermatogenic failure [69].
- The highest frequency of Y-deletions is found in azoospermic men (8-12%), followed by oligozoospermic (3-7%) men.
- Deletions are extremely rare with a sperm concentration > 5 million/mL (~0.7%).
- AZFc deletions are most common (65-70%), followed by Y-deletions of the AZFb and AZFb+c or AZFa+b+c regions (25-30%); AZFa region deletions are rare (5%).
- Complete removal of the AZFa region is associated with severe testicular phenotype (Sertoli cell only syndrome), while complete removal of the AZFb region is associated with spermatogenic rest. Complete removal of the AZFc region causes a variable phenotype ranging from azoospermia to oligozoospermia.
- Classical (complete) AZF deletions do not confer a risk for cryptorchidism or testicular cancer [66].

The specificity and genotype/phenotype correlation reported above means that Y-deletion analysis has both a diagnostic and prognostic value for testicular sperm retrieval [66].

5.2.3.1.1  **Testing for Y microdeletions**

Indications for AZF deletion screening are based on sperm count and include azoospermia and severe oligozoospermia (spermatozoa count < 5 million/mL). Thanks to the European Academy of Andrology (EAA) guidelines [66] and the EAA/EMQN (European Molecular Genetics Quality Network) external quality control programme (http://www.emqn.org/emqn/), Yq testing has become more reliable in different routine genetic laboratories. The EAA guidelines provide a set of primers capable of detecting > 95% of clinically relevant deletions [70].

5.2.3.1.2  **Genetic counselling for AZF deletions**

After conception, any Y-deletions are transmitted obligatorily to the male offspring, and genetic counselling is therefore mandatory. In most cases, father and son have the same microdeletion [70], but occasionally the son has a larger one [71]. The extent of spermatogenic failure (still in the range of azoo-/oligozoospermia) cannot be predicted entirely in the son, due to the different genetic background and the presence or absence of environmental factors with potential toxicity for reproductive function. A significant proportion of spermatozoa from men with complete AZFc deletion are nullisomic for sex chromosomes [72, 73], indicating a potential risk for any offspring to develop 45,X0 Turner’s syndrome and other phenotypic anomalies associated with sex chromosome mosaicism, including ambiguous genitalia [74]. Despite this theoretical risk, babies born from fathers affected by Yq microdeletions are phenotypically normal [66, 70]. This could be due to the reduced implantation rate and a likely higher risk of spontaneous abortion of embryos bearing a 45,X0 karyotype. When ICSI is used in the presence of a Y microdeletion, long-term follow-up of any male children is needed with respect to their fertility status, and cryopreservation of spermatozoa at a young age can be considered.

5.2.3.1.3  **Y-chromosome: ‘gr/gr’ deletion**

A new type of Yq deletion, known as the gr/gr deletion, has been described in the AZFc region [75]. This deletion removes half of the gene content of the AZFc region, affecting the dosage of multicopy genes mapping inside this region. This type of deletion confers a 2.5-8 fold increased risk for oligozoospermia [70, 76-78]. The frequency of gr/gr deletion in oligozoospermic patients is ~4%.

According to four meta-analyses, gr/gr deletion is a significant risk factor for impaired sperm production [77, 78]. It is worth noting that both the frequency of gr/gr deletion and its phenotypic expression vary between different ethnic groups, depending on the Y-chromosome background. For example, in some Y haplogroups, the deletion is fixed and appears to have no negative effect on spermatogenesis. Consequently, the routine screening for gr/gr deletion is still a debated issue, especially in those laboratories serving diverse ethnic
and geographic populations. A large multicentre study has shown that gr/gr deletion is a potential risk factor for testicular germ cell tumours [79]. However, these data need further confirmation in an ethnically and geographically matched case-control study setting. For genetic counselling it is worth noting that partial AZFc deletions, gr/gr and b2/b3, may predispose to complete AZFc deletion in the next generation [80, 81].

5.2.3.1.4 Autosomal defects with severe phenotypic abnormalities and infertility
Several inherited disorders are associated with severe or considerable generalised abnormalities and infertility. Among them, Prader-Willy Syndrome, Bardet-Biedl Syndrome, Noonan’s Syndrome, Myotonic dystrophy, dominant polycystic kidney disease, 5-α-reductase deficiency, etc. Patients with these defects will be well known to doctors, often from childhood. A fertility problem must be managed in the context of the care of the man as a whole including the couple’s ability to care for a child.

5.2.4 Cystic fibrosis mutations and male infertility
Cystic fibrosis (CF) is a fatal autosomal-recessive disorder. It is the most common genetic disease of Caucasians; 4% are carriers of gene mutations involving the CF transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) gene located on chromosome 7p. It encodes a membrane protein that functions as an ion channel and influences the formation of the ejaculatory duct, seminal vesicle, vas deferens and distal two-thirds of the epididymis.

Congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens (CBAVD) is associated with CFTR gene mutations and was found in ~2% of men with OA attending a clinic in Edinburgh, UK [82]. The incidence in men with OA varies between different countries. The clinical diagnosis of absent vasa is easy to miss and all men with azoospermia should be very carefully examined to exclude CBAVD, particularly those with a semen volume < 1.5 mL and pH < 7.0. Approximately 1,500 mutations are listed on the CFTR database http://www.genet Hickids.on.ca/cftr/. The most frequently found mutations are the F508, R117H and W1282X, but their frequency and the presence of other mutations largely depend on the ethnicity of the patient [83, 84]. Given the functional relevance of a DNA variant (the 5T allele) in a non-coding region of CFTR [79], it is now considered a mild CFTR mutation rather than a polymorphism and it should be analysed in each CBAVD patient. As more mutations are defined and tested for, almost all men with CBAVD will probably be found to have mutations. It is not practical to test for all known mutations, because many have a very low prevalence in a particular population. Routine testing is usually restricted to the most common mutations in a particular community through the analysis of a mutation panel. Given that this is a recessive disease if a second mutation is not found with the routine panel, a second step analysis is advised which comprises the direct sequencing of the entire gene. Men with CBAVD often have mild clinical stigmata of CF (e.g., history of chest infections). When a man has CBAVD, it is important to test also his partner for CF mutations. If the female partner is found to be a carrier of CFTR mutations, the couple must consider very carefully whether to proceed with ICSI using the male’s sperm, as the risk of having a child with CF or CBAVD will be 50%, depending on the type of mutations carried by the parents. If the female partner is negative for known mutations, the risk of being a carrier of unknown mutations is ~0.4% [85].

5.2.4.1 Unilateral or bilateral absence/abnormality of the vas and renal anomalies
Unilateral absence of the vas deferens is usually associated with ipsilateral absence of the kidney and probably has a different genetic causation [86]. Consequently, in these subjects CFTR mutation screening is not indicated. Men with unilateral absence of the vas deferens are usually fertile, and the condition is most commonly encountered as an incidental finding in the vasectomy clinic. CFTR gene mutation screening is indicated in men with unilateral absence of the vas deferens with normal kidneys. An abdominal ultrasound should be undertaken both in unilateral and bilateral absence of vas deferens. Findings may range from unilateral absence of the vas deferens with ipsilateral absence of the kidney, to bilateral vessel and renal abnormalities, such as pelvic kidney [87].

5.2.4.2 Unknown genetic disorders
Considering the predicted high number of genes involved in male gametogenesis, it is likely that most idiopathic forms of spermatogenic disturbances are caused by mutations or polymorphisms in spermatogenesis candidate genes [61]. However, despite an intensive search for new genetic factors, no clinically relevant gene mutations or polymorphisms (except those related to the Y-chromosome) have so far been identified [61, 85, 88]. The introduction of new analytical approaches has provided evidence for the importance of Copy Number Variations (CNVs) [83, 64] and further advances are expected with Next Generation Sequencing. Intracytoplasmic sperm injection is used to enable men with severely damaged spermatogenesis to father children in situations formerly considered hopeless and where very few spermatozoa can be obtained. This has led to concern that children may be born with a foetal abnormality, because ICSI may enable defective sperm to bypass the selective processes of the female genital tract and egg covering.
Intracytoplasmic sperm injection babies have a higher risk of de novo sex chromosomal aberrations (about a threefold increase compared with natural conceptions) and paternally inherited structural abnormalities. Treatment with assisted reproductive technology was associated with increased risk of cardiovascular, musculoskeletal, urogenital, and gastrointestinal defects and cerebral palsy [89-91].

5.2.4.3 DNA fragmentation in spermatozoa
There is increased DNA damage in spermatozoa from men with oligozoospermia. This increase is associated with reduced chances of natural conception and an increased chance of early pregnancy loss [92].

5.2.4.4 Genetic counselling and ICSI
Initially, the couple should be given full information about the risks to the child in order to help them decide whether to proceed with ICSI. Where there is conflict between the wishes of the couple and the interests of the future child, it may be ethically correct to withhold therapy. When both partners are known to carry defects (e.g., CFTR mutations), there is up to a 50% chance of the child developing a clinical condition. Many clinicians and infertility clinic personnel may consider it unethical to proceed because their duty of care to the future child and the interests of society outweigh the wishes of the individual couple. If there is a conflict that cannot be resolved by agreement, the interests of a future child probably take precedence over the interests of a couple. The couple also needs to give consideration to pre-implantation diagnosis.

5.2.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for genetic disorders in male infertility

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In men with spermatogenic damage there is a higher prevalence of chromosome abnormalities, reaching the highest frequency in NOA men.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AZF deletions are clear-cut causes of spermatogenic impairments with diagnostic and prognostic value for TESE.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AZF deletions will be transmitted to the son.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gr/gr deletion has been confirmed as a significant risk factor for impaired sperm production, whereas further evidence of the prognostic significance of gr/gr and development of a testicular germ cell tumour is needed.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Obtain standard karyotype analysis in all men with damaged spermatogenesis (spermatozoa &lt; 10 million/mL) who are seeking fertility treatment by in vitro fertilisation (IVF).</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provide genetic counselling in all couples with a genetic abnormality found in clinical or genetic investigation and in patients who carry a (potential) inheritable disease.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For all men with Klinefelter’s syndrome, provide long-term endocrine follow-up and androgen replacement therapy, if necessary.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not test for microdeletions in men with obstructive azoospermia (OA) when intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) is used because spermatogenesis should be normal.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inform men with Yq microdeletion and their partners who wish to proceed with intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) that microdeletions will be passed to sons, but not to daughters.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In men with structural abnormalities of the vas deferens (unilateral or bilateral absence), test the man and his partner for cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) gene mutations.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3 Obstructive azoospermia
Obstructive azoospermia (OA) is the absence of spermatozoa and spermatogenetic cells in semen and post-ejaculate urine due to obstruction. OA is less common than NOA and occurs in 15-20% of men with azoospermia. Men with OA present with normal FSH, normal size testes, and epididymal enlargement. Sometimes, the vas deferens is absent (CBAVD or Congenital Unilateral Absence of the Vas Deferens (CUAVD)). Obstruction in primary infertile men is frequently present at the epididymal level.

5.3.1 Classification
5.3.1.1 Intratesticular obstruction
Intratesticular obstruction occurs in 15% of men with OA [93]. Congenital forms are less common than acquired forms (post-inflammatory or post-traumatic).
5.3.1.2  **Epididymal obstruction**

Epididymal obstruction is the most common cause of OA, affecting 30-67% of azoospermic men [93-97]. Congenital epididymal obstruction usually manifests as CBAVD, which is associated with at least one mutation of the CF gene in 82% of cases [96]. Congenital forms of epididymal obstruction include chronic sinopulmonary infections (Young’s syndrome) [98]. Acquired forms secondary to acute (e.g., gonococcal) and subclinical (e.g., chlamydial) epididymitis are most common [99, 100]. Other causes may be trauma or surgical intervention [101, 102].

5.3.1.3  **Vas deferens obstruction**

Vas deferens obstruction is the most common cause of acquired obstruction following vasectomy [99]. Approximately 2-6% of these men request vasectomy reversal (see Chapter 5.6). Vasal obstruction may also occur after hernia repair [103, 104]. The most common congenital vasal obstruction is CBAVD, often accompanied by CF. Unilateral agenesis or a partial defect is associated with contralateral seminal duct anomalies or renal agenesis in 80% and 26% of cases, respectively [105] (see Chapter 5.2).

5.3.1.4  **Ejaculatory duct obstruction**

Ejaculatory duct obstruction is found in 1-3% of cases of OA [93] and is classified as either cystic or post-inflammatory. Cystic obstructions are usually congenital (i.e., Mullerian duct cyst or urogenital sinus/ejaculatory duct cysts) and are typically midline. In urogenital sinus abnormalities, one or both ejaculatory ducts empty into the cyst [106], while in Mullerian duct anomalies, the ejaculatory ducts are laterally displaced and compressed by the cyst [107]. Paramedian or lateral intraprostatic cysts are rare [108]. Post-inflammatory obstructions of the ejaculatory duct are usually secondary to urethral prostatitis [109]. Congenital or acquired complete obstructions of the ejaculatory ducts are commonly associated with low semen volume, decreased or absent seminal fructose, and acid pH. The seminal vesicles are usually dilated (antero-posterior diameter > 15 mm) [109, 110].

5.3.1.5  **Functional obstruction of the distal seminal ducts**

Functional obstruction of the distal seminal ducts might be attributed to local neuropathy [111]. This abnormality is often associated with urodynamic dysfunction. Impaired sperm transport may be idiopathic or associated with selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) medication as well.

5.3.2  **Diagnostic evaluation**

5.3.2.1  **Clinical history**

Clinical history taking should follow the suggestions for the diagnostic evaluation of infertile men (See Chapter 4.2).

5.3.2.2  **Clinical examination**

Clinical examination should follow suggestions for the diagnostic evaluation of infertile men. OA is indicated by at least one testis with a volume > 15 mL, although a smaller volume may be found in some patients with:

- OA and concomitant partial testicular failure;
- enlarged and hardened epididymis;
- nodules in the epididymis or vas deferens;
- absence or partial atresia of the vas.

5.3.2.3  **Semen analysis**

At least two examinations must be carried out at an interval of two to three months, according to the WHO (see Chapter 4.2). Azoospermia means the inability to detect spermatozoa after centrifugation at ×400 magnification. When semen volume is low, a search must be made for spermatozoa in urine after ejaculation. Absence of spermatozoa and immature germ cells in semen smears suggest complete seminal duct obstruction.

5.3.2.4  **Hormone levels**

Serum FSH levels should be normal, but do not exclude a testicular cause of azoospermia. FSH level is normal in 40% of men with primary spermatogenic failure. Inhibin B seems to have a higher predictive value for normal spermatogenesis [97].

5.3.2.5  **Testicular biopsy**

In selected cases, testicular biopsy is indicated to exclude spermatogenic failure. Testicular biopsy should be combined with extraction of testicular spermatozoa (i.e., TESE) for cryopreservation.
5.3.3 **Disease management**

5.3.3.1 **Intratesticular obstruction**

Only TESE allows sperm retrieval in these patients and is therefore recommended.

5.3.3.2 **Epididymal obstruction**

Microsurgical epididymal sperm aspiration (MESA) [112] is indicated in men with CBAVD. TESE and PESA (limited cryopreservation) are also viable options [113]. Usually, one MESA procedure provides sufficient material for several ICSI cycles [114] and it produces high pregnancy and fertilisation rates [115]. In patients with azoospermia due to acquired epididymal obstruction, microsurgical reconstruction is recommended, with the preferred technique being microsurgical intussusception tubulovasostomy [116]. Anatomical recanalisation following surgery may require three to eighteen months. Before microsurgery, and in all cases where recanalisation is impossible, epididymal spermatozoa should be aspirated and cryopreserved for use in ICSI [114]. Patency rates range between 60% and 87% [102, 117] and cumulative pregnancy rates between 10% and 43%. Recanalisation success rates may be adversely affected by pre-operative and intra-operative findings.

5.3.3.3 **Proximal vas deferens obstruction**

Proximal vas deferens obstruction after vasectomy requires microsurgical vasectomy reversal. Vasovasostomy is also required in rare cases of proximal vasal obstructions. The absence of spermatozoa in the intra-operative vas deferens fluid suggests the presence of a secondary epididymal obstruction, especially if the seminal fluid of the proximal vas has a thick “toothpaste” appearance. Microsurgical tubulovasostomy is then indicated.

5.3.3.4 **Distal vas deferens obstruction**

It is usually impossible to correct large bilateral vas deferens defects, resulting from involuntary excision of the vasa deferentia during hernia surgery in early childhood or previous orchiopexy [118]. In these cases TESE/MESA or proximal vas deferens sperm aspiration [119] can be used for cryopreservation for future ICSI.

5.3.3.5 **Ejaculatory duct obstruction**

The treatment of ejaculatory duct obstruction depends on its aetiology. Transurethral resection of the ejaculatory ducts (TURED) [109] can be used in large post-inflammatory obstruction and when one or both ejaculatory ducts empty into an intraprostatic midline cyst. Resection may remove part of the verumontanum. In cases of obstruction due to a midline intraprostatic cyst, incision or unroofing of the cyst is required [109]. Intra-operative transrectal US (TRUS) makes this procedure safer. If distal seminal tract evaluation is carried out at the time of the procedure, installation of methylene blue dye into the vas deferens can help to document opening of the ducts. The limited success rate of surgical treatment of ejaculatory duct obstruction in terms of spontaneous pregnancies should be weighed against sperm aspiration and ICSI. Complications following TURED include retrograde ejaculation due to bladder neck injury and urine reflux into the ejaculatory ducts, seminal vesicles, and vasa. The alternatives to TURED are MESA, TESE, proximal vas deferens sperm aspiration, seminal vesicle ultrasonically guided aspiration, and direct cyst aspiration. Spermatozoa can then be retrieved by antegrade seminal tract washout [120].

5.3.4 **Summary of evidence and recommendations for obstructive azoospermia**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Obstructive lesions of the seminal tract are frequent in azoospermic or severely oligozoospermic patients with normal-sized testes and normal reproductive hormones.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform microsurgical vasovasostomy or tubulovasostomy for azoospermia caused by vasal or epididymal obstruction.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use sperm retrieval techniques, such as microsurgical epididymal sperm aspiration (MESA), testicular sperm extraction (TESE) and percutaneous epididymal sperm aspiration (PESA) only when cryostorage of the material obtained is available.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.4 Varicocele

Varicocele is a common abnormality which may be associated with the following andrological conditions:

- Failure of ipsilateral testicular growth and development,
- Symptoms of pain and discomfort,
- Male subfertility,
- Hypogonadism.

5.4.1 Classification

The following classification of varicocele [121] is useful in clinical practice:

- Subclinical: not palpable or visible at rest or during Valsava manoeuvre, but can be shown by special tests (Doppler ultrasound studies),
- Grade 1: palpable during Valsava manoeuvre, but not otherwise,
- Grade 2: palpable at rest, but not visible,
- Grade 3: visible and palpable at rest.

5.4.2 Diagnostic evaluation

The diagnosis of varicocele is made by clinical examination and should be confirmed by US investigation and colour Duplex analysis [121]. In centres where treatment is carried out by antegrade or retrograde sclerotherapy or embolisation, diagnosis is additionally confirmed by X-ray.

5.4.3 Basic considerations

5.4.3.1 Varicocele and fertility

Varicocele is a physical abnormality present in 11.7% of adult men and in 25.4% of men with abnormal semen analysis [122]. The exact association between reduced male fertility and varicocele is unknown, but a recent meta-analysis showed that semen improvement is usually observed after surgical correction [123]. Varicocelectomy can reverse sperm DNA damage [124].

5.4.3.2 Varicocelectomy

Varicocele repair has been a subject of debate for several decades. A meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials (RCTs) and observational studies in men with only clinical varicoceles showed that surgical varicocelectomy significantly improves semen parameters in men with abnormal semen parameters including men with non-obstructive azoospermia [123, 125, 126].

In randomised controlled studies, varicocele repair in men with a subclinical varicocele was found to be ineffective in increasing the chance of spontaneous pregnancies [127]. Also, in randomised studies that included mainly men with normal semen parameters no benefit was found in favour of treatment over observation [128]. A Cochrane review from 2013 concluded that there is evidence to suggest that treatment of a varicocele in men from couples with otherwise unexplained subfertility may improve a couple’s chance of pregnancy [129]. In a subgroup analyses of five RCTs comparing treatment to observation in men with a clinical varicocele, oligospermia and otherwise unexplained infertility, the analyses favoured treatment, with a combined odds ratio (OR) of 2.39 (95% CI 1.56 to 3.66) [129].

5.4.3.3 Prophylactic Varicocelectomy

In adolescents with a varicocele there is a significant risk of over-treatment since most adolescents with a varicocele will have no problem achieving pregnancy later in life [130]. Prophylactic treatment is only advised in case of documented growth deterioration of the testis as documented by serial clinical examinations and impaired semen quality.

5.4.4 Disease management

Several treatments are available for varicocele (Table 4). Current evidence indicates that microsurgical varicocelectomy is the most effective method among the different varicocelectomy techniques [130]. Microsurgical repair results in fewer complications and lower recurrence rates compared to the other techniques. This procedure, however, requires microsurgical training. The various other techniques are still considered viable options, although recurrences and hydrocele formation are more likely to occur.
Table 4: Recurrence and complication rates associated with treatments for varicocele

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
<th>Recurrence/ Persistence %</th>
<th>Complication rates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Antegrade sclerotherapy</td>
<td>[131]</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Complication rate 0.3-2.2%: testicular atrophy, scrotal haematoma, epididymitis, left-flank erythema.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrograde sclerotherapy</td>
<td>[132]</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>Adverse reaction to contrast medium, flank pain, persistent thrombophlebitis, vascular perforation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrograde embolisation</td>
<td>[133, 134]</td>
<td>3.8-10</td>
<td>Pain due to thrombophlebitis, bleeding haematoma, infection, venous perforation, hydrocele, radiological complication (e.g., reaction to contrast media), misplacement or migration of coils, retroperitoneal haemorrhage, fibrosis, ureteric obstruction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open operation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scrotal operation</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Testicular atrophy, arterial damage with risk of devascularisation and testicular gangrene, scrotal haematoma, post-operative hydrocele.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inguinal approach</td>
<td>[135]</td>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>Possibility of missing out a branch of testicular vein.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High ligation</td>
<td>[136]</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>5-10% incidence of hydrocele (&lt; 1%).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsurgical inguinal or subinguinal</td>
<td>[137, 138]</td>
<td>0.8-4</td>
<td>Post-operative hydrocele arterial injury, scrotal haematoma.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopy</td>
<td>[139, 140]</td>
<td>3-7</td>
<td>Injury to testicular artery and lymph vessels; intestinal, vascular and nerve damage; pulmonary embolism; peritonitis; bleeding; post-operative pain in right shoulder (due to diaphragmatic stretching during pneumoperitoneum); pneumoscrotum; wound infection.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for varicocele

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>The presence of varicocele in some men is associated with progressive testicular damage from adolescence onwards and a consequent reduction in fertility.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td>Although the treatment of varicocele in adolescents may be effective, there is a significant risk of overtreatment: the majority of boys with a varicocele will have no fertility problems later in life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Varicocele repair was shown to be effective in men with oligospermia, a clinical varicocele and otherwise unexplained infertility.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Treat varicoceles in adolescents with progressive failure of testicular development documented by serial clinical examination.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Do not treat varicoceles in infertile men who have normal semen analysis and in men with a subclinical varicocele.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Treat varicoceles in men with a clinical varicocele, oligospermia and otherwise unexplained infertility in the couple.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.5 Hypogonadism

Hypogonadism is characterised by impaired testicular function, which may affect spermatogenesis and/or testosterone synthesis. The symptoms of hypogonadism depend on the degree of androgen deficiency and if the condition develops before or after pubertal development of the secondary sex characteristics.

5.5.1 Epidemiology and aetiology

The aetiological and pathogenetic mechanisms of male hypogonadism can be divided into three main categories:
- Primary (hypergonadotrophic) hypogonadism due to testicular failure.
• Secondary (hypogonadotropic) hypogonadism caused by insufficient gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) and/or gonadotropin (FSH, LH) secretion.
• Androgen insensitivity (end-organ resistance).

The most common conditions within these three categories are given in Table 5 (see also Chapter 3.3).

Table 5: Disorders associated with male hypogonadism*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary (Hypergonadotropic) hypogonadism (testicular failure)*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anorchia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maldescended testes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Klinefelter’s syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y-chromosome microdeletions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerical and structural chromosomal anomalies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma, testicular torsion, orchitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iatrogenic (surgery, medications, irradiation, or cytostatic drugs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exogenous factors (toxins, heat, or occupational hazards)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic diseases (liver cirrhosis, or renal failure)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testicular tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Varicocele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idiopathic (e.g., late-onset hypogonadism)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Secondary (hypogonadotropic) hypogonadism (secondary testicular failure)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Congenital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idiopathic hypogonadotropic hypogonadism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normosmic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiposmic/anosmic (Kallmann syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acquired (tumours in the following regions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diencephalon (craniopharyngioma or meningioma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothalamus or pituitary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empty sella syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Granulomatous illnesses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fractures of the skull base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ischaemic or haemorrhagic lesions in hypothalamic area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperprolactinaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drugs/anabolic steroids, radiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target organ resistance to androgens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testicular feminisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reifenstein syndrome</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Modified from Nieschlag et al. [8].

5.5.2 **Idiopathic hypogonadotropic hypogonadism: aetiology, diagnosis and therapeutic management**

Idiopathic hypogonadotropic hypogonadism is characterised by low levels of gonadotropins and sex steroid in the absence of anatomical or functional abnormalities of the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis [141]. Idiopathic hypogonadotropic hypogonadism may be an isolated condition or may be associated with anosmia/hyposmia (Kallmann syndrome). Genetic factors causing a deficit of gonadotropins may act at the hypothalamic or pituitary level. Mutations in candidate genes (X-linked or autosomal) can be found in ~30% of congenital cases [141] and should be screened for prior to assisted reproduction [142]. Acquired hypogonadotropic hypogonadism can be caused by some drugs, hormones, anabolic steroids, or tumours. A suspected tumour requires imaging [computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)] of the sella region and a complete endocrine work-up. Normal androgen levels and subsequent development of secondary sex characteristics (in cases of onset of hypogonadism before puberty) and a eugonadal state can be achieved by androgen replacement alone. However, stimulation of sperm production requires treatment with human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) combined with recombinant FSH, urinary FSH or human menopausal gonadotropins (HMGs) [143]. If hypogonadotropic hypogonadism is hypothalamic in origin, an alternative to hCG treatment is pulsatile GnRH [144]. In patients who have developed hypogonadism before puberty and have not been treated with gonadotropins or GnRH, one to two years of therapy may be needed to achieve sperm production.
5.5.3 Hypergonadotropic hypogonadism: aetiology, diagnosis and therapeutic management

Many conditions in men with testicular failure are associated with hypergonadotropic hypogonadism (Table 5, see also Chapter 5.2). Most conditions listed in Table 5 only affect the reproductive function of the testes so that only the FSH level is elevated. However, it has been reported that men with infertility are at higher risk for developing impaired Leydig cell function [145], while men with Klinefelter's syndrome often show high LH values and develop hypoandrogenism with ageing [146]. A decrease in testosterone blood concentrations after extensive testicular biopsy in the context of TESE/ICSI has been observed, raising questions about the need for long-term endocrine follow-up of these patients [147]. Laboratory diagnosis of hypergonadotropic hypogonadism is based on a high level of FSH, decreased serum testosterone, and increased LH levels [142]. Testosterone levels should be evaluated in view of the serum concentration of sex hormone binding globulin (SHBG). Based on levels of total testosterone, albumin and SHBG, free and bioavailable testosterone can be calculated. Due to diurnal variation, blood samples for testosterone assessment should be taken before 10.00 am.

Generally, androgen replacement should not be given to men who are considering parenthood or in case of male infertility. Testosterone suppresses pituitary production of LH and FSH, therefore, replacement therapy should not be given for infertility. In obese men, low levels of testosterone may exist due to the conversion of testosterone to oestradiol by the enzyme aromatase [148]. Anti-oestrogens and aromatase inhibitors may help in these patients elevating FSH and LH and potentially increase sperm quality, next to weight reduction. See also EAU Guidelines on Male Hypogonadism [149].

5.5.4 Recommendations for hypogonadism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provide testosterone replacement therapy for symptomatic patients with primary and secondary hypogonadism who are not considering parenthood.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In men with hypogonadotropic hypogonadism, induce spermatogenesis by an effective drug therapy (human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), human menopausal gonadotropins (hMG), recombinant follicle-stimulating hormone (rFSH)).</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use testosterone replacement for the treatment of male infertility.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

5.6 Cryptorchidism

Cryptorchidism is the most common congenital abnormality of the male genitalia, at one year of age nearly 1% of all full-term male infants have cryptorchidism [150]. Approximately 30% of undescended testes are nonpalpable and may be located within the abdominal cavity. This guideline only deals with the management in adults.

5.6.1 Aetiology and pathophysiology

It has been postulated that cryptorchidism may be a part of the so-called testicular dysgenesis syndrome (TDS), which is a developmental disorder of the gonads caused by environmental and/or genetic influences early in pregnancy. Besides cryptorchidism, TDS includes hypospadias, reduced fertility, increased risk of malignancy, and Leydig cell dysfunction [151].

5.6.1.1 Pathophysiological effects in maldescended testes

5.6.1.1.1 Degeneration of germ cells

The degeneration of germ cells in maldescended testes is apparent after the first year of life and varies, depending on the position of the testis [152]. During the second year, the number of germ cells declines. Early treatment is therefore recommended (after the age of six months surgery should be performed within the subsequent year with age eighteen months the latest) to conserve spermatogenesis and hormone production, as well as to decrease the risk for tumours [153]. Surgical treatment is the most effective. Medical treatment with GnRH may be beneficial but long-term follow-up data are required. It has been reported that hCG treatment may be harmful to future spermatogenesis therefore, the Nordic Consensus Statement on treatment of undescended testes does not recommend it on a routine basis [154]. See also EAU Guidelines on Paediatric Urology [155].

5.6.1.2 Relationship with fertility

Semen parameters are often impaired in men with a history of cryptorchidism [156]. Early surgical treatment may have a positive effect on subsequent fertility [157]. In men with a history of unilateral cryptorchidism,
paternity is almost equal (89.7%) to that in men without cryptorchidism (93.7%). In men with bilateral cryptorchidism, oligozoospermia can be found in 31% and azoospermia in 42%. In cases of bilateral cryptorchidism, the rate of paternity is only 35-53% [158].

5.6.1.1.3 Germ cell tumours
As a component of the Testicular Dysgenesis Syndrome cryptorchidism is a risk factor for testicular cancer and is associated with testicular microcalcification and intratubular germ cell neoplasia of unclassified type (ITGCNU); formerly carcinoma in situ (CIS) of the testes. In 5-10% of testicular cancers, there is a history of cryptorchidism [159]. The risk of a germ cell tumour (GCT) is 3.6-7.4 times higher than in the general population and 2-6% of men with a history of cryptorchidism will develop a testicular tumour [150]. Orchidopexy performed before the age of puberty has been reported to decrease the risk of testicular cancer [160].

5.6.2 Disease management
5.6.2.1 Hormonal treatment
Human chorionic gonadotropin or GnRH is not recommended for the treatment of cryptorchidism in adulthood.

5.6.2.2 Surgical treatment
In adolescence removal of intra-abdominal testis (with a normal contralateral testis) can be recommended, because of the theoretical risk of later malignancy [161]. In adulthood, a palpable undescended testis should not be removed because it still produces testosterone. Furthermore, as indicated above, correction of bilateral cryptorchidism, even in adulthood, can lead to sperm production in previously azoospermic men [158]. Vascular damage is the most severe complication of orchidopexy and can cause testicular atrophy in 1-2% of cases. In men with non-palpable testes, the post-operative atrophy rate was 12% in those cases with long vascular pedicles that enabled scrotal positioning. Post-operative atrophy in staged orchidopexy has been reported in up to 40% of patients [162]. At the time of orchidopexy, performed in adulthood, testicular biopsy for detection of ITGCNU is recommended. At the time of orchiectomy in the treatment of germ cell tumours biopsy of the contralateral testis should be offered to patients at high risk for ITGCNU (i.e. history of cryptorchidism, < 12 ml. testicular volume, poor spermatogenesis [163]).

5.6.3 Summary of evidence recommendations for cryptorchidism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cryptorchidism is multifactorial in origin and can be caused by genetic factors and endocrine disruption early in pregnancy.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryptorchidism is often associated with testicular dysgenesis and is a risk factor for infertility and germ cell tumours.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paternity in men with unilateral cryptorchidism is almost equal to that in men without cryptorchidism.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilateral cryptorchidism significantly reduces the likelihood of paternity.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not use hormonal treatment of cryptorchidism in adults.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If undescended testes are corrected in adulthood, perform simultaneous testicular biopsy for detection of intratubular germ cell neoplasia of unclassified type (ITGCNU) (formerly carcinoma in situ (CIS)).</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.7 Idiopathic male infertility
No demonstrable cause of infertility is found in at least 44% of infertile men [164].

5.7.1 Disease management
5.7.1.1 Empirical treatments
A wide variety of empirical drug treatments of idiopathic male infertility have been used. However, there is little scientific evidence for an empirical approach [165]. Clomiphen citrate and tamoxifen have been widely used in idiopathic OAT; a recent meta-analysis reported some improvement in sperm quality and spontaneous pregnancy rates [166]. Androgens, bromocriptine, α-blockers, systemic corticosteroids and magnesium supplementation are not effective in the treatment of OAT syndrome. Although gonadotrophins (HMG/rFSH) might be beneficial in regards to pregnancy rates and live birth in idiopathic male factor subfertility, however, their use should be cautious given the high risk of bias and heterogeneity of available studies [167]. Men taking oral antioxidants had an associated significant increase in sperm parameters [168] and in live birth rates in IVF
patients in a Cochrane analysis [169]. Concerning natural conception the role of antioxidants needs further investigations [170].

5.7.2 Recommendation for idiopathic male infertility

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Medically treat male infertility only for cases of hypogonadotropic hypogonadism.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No clear recommendation can be made for treatment with gonadotropins, anti-oestrogens and antioxidants even for a subset of patients.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.8 Male contraception

Development of male contraceptive methods is important because up to 40% of women have an unmet need for family planning, with approximately 80 million women every year having unintended or unwanted pregnancies [171]. Three of the four methods of male contraception have been in use for hundreds of years (i.e., condoms, periodic abstinence, and withdrawal). The typical first-year failure rates of traditional male methods are high (withdrawal 19%, periodic abstinence 20%, and condoms 3-14%) compared to the failure rates of 0.1-3% for modern reversible female methods [172]. For men, male contraceptive methods must be acceptable, cheap, reversible, and effective. The method nearest to being generally available clinically is hormonal male contraception, which is based on the suppression of gonadotropins and testosterone substitution to maintain male sexual function and bone mineralisation, and to prevent muscle wasting [173]. Various contraceptive regimens have been developed and tested, including testosterone monotherapy, androgen/progestin combinations, testosterone with GnRH analogues, and selective androgen- and progesterin receptor modulators [174]. There are racial differences in the response to androgens alone. However, a combination of testosterone with progestin results in complete suppression of spermatogenesis in all races, and provides contraceptive efficacy equivalent to female hormonal methods [175].

5.8.1 Vasectomy

Vasectomy is an effective method of permanent male surgical sterilisation [168]. Extensive guidelines on vasectomy were published by the EAU in 2012 [2]. Before vasectomy, the couple should be fully informed about the benefits and risks, especially as an Australian telephone survey found that 9.2% of respondents regretted having a vasectomy [176].

5.8.1.1 Surgical techniques

Various techniques are available for vasectomy. The least invasive approach is no-scalpel vasectomy which is also associated with a low rate of complications [177, 178]. The most effective occlusion technique is cauterisation of the lumen of the vas deferens and fascial interposition [179-181]. Most techniques can be carried out safely under local anaesthesia in an outpatient clinic.

5.8.1.1.1 Complications

Vasectomy does not significantly alter spermatogenesis and Leydig cell function. The volume of ejaculate remains unchanged. Potential systemic effects of vasectomy, including atherosclerosis, have not been proven, and there is no evidence of a significant increase in any systemic disease after vasectomy. An increased rate of prostate cancer in men who underwent vasectomy has not been detected [182, 183]. Acute local complications associated with vasectomy include haematoma, wound infection, and epididymitis in up to 5% of cases [182]. The potential long-term complications (e.g., chronic testicular pain) [184] must be discussed with the patient before the procedure.

5.8.1.1.2 Vasectomy failure

If an effective occlusion technique is used, the risk of recanalisation after vasectomy should be < 1% [185]. However, patients should be informed pre-operatively that, although rare, long-term recanalisation might occur [186]. No motile spermatozoa should be detected three months after vasectomy. Persistent motility is a sign of vasectomy failure, and the procedure will need to be repeated. A “special clearance” given by the urologist with non-motile spermatozoa < 100,000/mL is still under discussion [187].

5.8.2 Counselling

Counselling with regard to vasectomy must address the following aspects:

- Vasectomy should be considered irreversible,
- Vasectomy is associated with a low complication rate; however, because it is an elective operation, even small risks must be explained, because men (and their partners) might wish to consider these before giving consent,
• Vasectomy can fail, although the failure rate is low,
• Couples should be advised to continue with other effective contraception until clearance is confirmed,
• All available data indicate that vasectomy is not associated with any serious, long-term, side-effects [188],
• Vasectomy involving cautery and fascial interposition appears to be the most effective technique in the prevention of early recanalisation [179, 185, 189].

5.8.3 Vasectomy reversal
A wide range of surgical success rates have been published for vasectomy reversal (up to 90%), depending on the time between vasectomy and re-fertilisation, type of vasectomy (e.g., open-ended or sealed), type of reversal (vasovasostomy or vasoepididymostomy), and whether reversal was unilateral or bilateral. Microsurgical techniques should be used [190].

5.8.3.1 Length of time since vasectomy
Vasovasostomy results have shown patency rates up to 90%. The longer the interval is from vasectomy to reversal, the lower the pregnancy rate is. In a study of 1,469 men who had undergone microsurgical vasectomy reversal, patency and pregnancy rates were 97% and 76%, respectively, for an interval up to three years after vasectomy; 88% and 53% for three to eight years, 79% and 44% for nine to fourteen years, and 71% and 30% for > fifteen years [191].

5.8.3.2 Tubulovasostomy
The chance of secondary epididymal obstruction after vasectomy increases with time. After an interval of ten years, 25% of men appear to have epididymal blockage. If secondary epididymal obstruction occurs, tubulovasostomy is needed to reverse the vasectomy (see Chapter 5.3) [192].

5.8.3.3 Microsurgical vasectomy reversal vs. epididymal or testicular sperm retrieval and ICSI
According to the calculations of cost per delivery for vasectomy reversal vs. sperm retrieval/ICSI, under a wide variety of initial assumptions, it is clear that vasectomy reversal is associated with a considerably lower cost per delivery and higher delivery rates [80, 113, 193, 194]. Sperm retrieval and ICSI must yield an 81% pregnancy rate per cycle to achieve equal costs to vasectomy reversal.

5.8.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for male contraception

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vasectomy meets best the criteria for male contribution to permanent contraception, with regard to efficacy, safety and side effects.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All available data indicate that vasectomy is not associated with any serious, long-term side-effects.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsurgical vasectomy reversal is a low-risk and cost-effective method of restoring fertility.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods of male contraception other than vasectomy are associated with high failure rates or are still experimental (e.g., hormonal approach).</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cauterisation and fascial interposition are the most effective techniques for the prevention of early recanalisation.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inform patients seeking vasectomy about the surgical method, risk of failure, potential irreversibility, the need for post-procedure contraception until clearance, and the risk of complications.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To achieve pregnancy, microsurgical epididymal sperm aspiration (MESA)/ percutaneous epididymal sperm aspiration (PESA)/testicular sperm extraction (TESE) - together with intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) is a second-line option for men who decline a vasectomy reversal and those with failed vasectomy reversal surgery.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus

5.9 Male accessory gland infections and infertility

5.9.1 Introduction
Infections of the male urogenital tract are potentially curable causes of male infertility [121, 195, 196]. The WHO considers urethritis, prostatitis, orchitis and epididymitis to be male accessory gland infections (MAGI) [121]. However, specific data are not available to confirm that these diseases have a negative influence on sperm quality and male fertility in general.
5.9.2 Diagnostic evaluation

5.9.2.1 Ejaculate analysis
Ejaculate analysis (see Chapter 4.2) clarifies whether the prostate is involved as part of a generalised MAGI and provides information about sperm quality. In addition, leukocyte analysis allows differentiation between inflammatory and non-inflammatory chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CP/CPPS) (NIH IIa vs. NIH 3b National Institutes of Health classification for CP/CPPS).

5.9.2.2 Microbiological findings
After exclusion of urethritis and bladder infection, >10^6 peroxidase-positive white blood cells (WBCs) per millilitre of ejaculate indicate an inflammatory process. In this case, a culture should be performed for common urinary tract pathogens. A concentration of >10^3 cfu/mL urinary tract pathogens in the ejaculate is indicative of significant bacteriospermia. The sampling time can influence the positive rate of microorganisms in semen and the frequency of isolation of different strains [197]. The ideal diagnostic test for *Chlamydia trachomatis* in semen has not yet been established [198]. In contrast to serological findings in women, antibody tests for *C. trachomatis* in seminal plasma are not indicative if no type-specific methods are used [198]. *Ureaplasma urealyticum* is pathogenic only in high concentrations (>10^5 cfu/mL ejaculate). No more than 10% of samples analysed for ureaplasma exceed this concentration [199]. Normal colonisation of the urethra hampers the clarification of mycoplasma-associated urogenital infections, using samples such as the ejaculate [200].

5.9.2.3 White blood cells
The clinical significance of an increased concentration of leukocytes in the ejaculate is controversial [201]. Infection is indicated only by an increased level of leukocytes. Although leukocytospermia is a sign of inflammation, it is not necessarily associated with bacterial or viral infections [202]. According to the WHO classification, leukocytospermia is defined as >10^6 WBCs/mL. Only two studies have analysed alterations of WBCs in the ejaculate of patients with proven prostatitis [203, 204]. Both studies found more leukocytes in men with prostatitis compared to those without inflammation (CPPS, type NIH 3B).

5.9.2.4 Sperm quality
The deleterious effects of chronic prostatitis on sperm density, motility and morphology are under debate [196]. All investigations have given contradictory results, and have not confirmed that chronic prostatitis has a decisive role in altering conventional semen parameters [205-207].

5.9.2.5 Seminal plasma alterations
Seminal plasma elastase is a biochemical indicator of polymorphonuclear lymphocyte activity in the ejaculate [196, 208, 209], with a suggested cut-off level of approximately 600 ng/mL [194]. Various cytokines are involved in inflammation and can influence sperm function. Several studies have investigated the association between interleukin (IL) concentration, leukocytes, and sperm function [210-212], but no correlations have been found. The prostate is the main site of origin of IL-6 and IL-8 in the seminal plasma. Cytokines, especially IL-6, play an important role in the male accessory gland inflammatory process [213]. However, elevated cytokine levels do not depend on the number of leukocytes in expressed prostatic secretion (EPS) [214].

5.9.2.6 Glandular secretory dysfunction
Infections of the sex glands can impair their excretory function. Decreased quantities of citric acid, phosphatase, fructose, zinc, and α-glutamyl-transferase activity are indicators of disturbed prostatic secretory parameters [196]. Reduced fructose concentration indicates impaired vesicular function [199, 215].

5.9.2.7 Reactive oxygen species
Reactive oxygen species might be increased in chronic urogenital infections associated with increased leukocyte numbers [216]. However, their biological significance in prostatitis remains unclear [196].

5.9.2.8 Disease management
Treatment of chronic prostatitis is usually targeted at relieving symptoms [217, 218]. The aims of therapy for altered semen composition in male adnexitis are:
- reduction or eradication of microorganisms in prostatic secretions and semen;
- normalisation of inflammatory (e.g., leukocytes) and secretory parameters;
- improvement of sperm parameters to counteract fertility impairment [219].

Only antibiotic therapy of chronic bacterial prostatitis (NIH II according to the classification) has provided symptomatic relief, eradication of microorganisms, and a decrease in cellular and humoral inflammatory parameters in urogenital secretions. Although antibiotics might improve sperm quality [219], there is no evidence that treatment of chronic prostatitis increases the probability of conception [196, 220].
5.9.3 Epididymitis

Inflammation of the epididymis causes unilateral pain and swelling, usually with acute onset. Among sexually active men < 35 years of age, epididymitis is most often caused by C. trachomatis or Neisseria gonorrhoea [221, 222]. Sexually transmitted epididymitis is usually accompanied by urethritis. Non-sexually transmitted epididymitis is associated with urinary tract infection and occurs more often in men aged > 35 years [223].

5.9.3.1 Diagnostic evaluation

5.9.3.1.1 Ejaculate analysis

Ejaculate analysis according to WHO criteria, might indicate persistent inflammatory activity. Transiently decreased sperm counts and forward motility are observed [221, 224, 225]. Semen culture might help to identify pathogenic microorganisms. Development of stenosis in the epididymal duct, reduction of sperm count, and azoospermia are more important in the follow-up of bilateral epididymitis (see Chapter 5.3).

5.9.3.1.2 Disease management

Antibiotic therapy is indicated before culture results are available.

Treatment of epididymitis results in:

- microbiological cure of infection;
- improvement of clinical signs and symptoms;
- prevention of potential testicular damage;
- prevention of transmission;
- decrease of potential complications (e.g., infertility or chronic pain).

Patients with epididymitis known or suspected to be caused by N. gonorrhoeae or C. trachomatis must be told to refer their sexual partners for evaluation and treatment [226].

5.9.4 Summary of evidence and recommendation for male accessory gland infections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Urethritis and prostatitis are not clearly associated with male infertility.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibiotic treatment often only eradicates microorganisms; it has no positive effect on inflammatory alterations and cannot reverse functional deficits and anatomical dysfunction.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Although antibiotic treatment for MAGI might provide improvement in sperm quality, it does not necessarily enhance the probability of conception.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Instruct patients with epididymitis that is known or suspected to be caused by N. gonorrhoeae or C. trachomatis to refer their sexual partners for evaluation and treatment.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.10 Germ cell malignancy and testicular microcalcification

5.10.1 Germ cell malignancy and male infertility

Testicular germ cell tumour (TGCT) is the most common malignancy in Caucasian men aged 15-40 years, and affects approximately 1% of subfertile men. The lifetime risk of TGCT varies between ethnic groups and countries. The highest annual incidence of TGCT occurs in Caucasians, and varies from 10/100,000 (e.g., in Denmark and Norway) to 2/100,000 (e.g., in Finland and the Baltic countries). Generally, seminomas and nonseminomas are preceded by CIS, and untreated ITGCNU will eventually progress to invasive cancer [227, 228]. The most convincing evidence for a general decline in male reproductive health is the increase in testicular cancer seen in western countries [229, 230]. In almost all countries with reliable cancer registers, the incidence of testicular cancer has increased [66, 231]. Cryptorchidism and hypospadias are associated with an increased risk of testicular cancer; men with cryptorchidism and/or hypospadias are over-represented among patients with testicular cancer. Men with dysgenic testes have an increased risk of developing testicular cancer in adulthood. These cancers arise from premalignant gonocytes or CIS cells [232]. Testicular microlithiasis (TM), seen on US, can be associated with GCT and CIS of the testes.

5.10.2 Testicular germ cell cancer and reproductive function

Men with TGCT have decreased semen quality, even before cancer is diagnosed [233]. Orchidectomy implies a risk of azoospermia in these men, with sperm found in the ejaculate before the tumour-bearing testis has been removed. Semen cryopreservation before orchidectomy should therefore be considered (see Chapter 5.12).
Treatment of TGCT can result in additional impairment of semen quality [234]. In addition to spermatogenic failure, patients with TGCT have Leydig cell dysfunction, even in the contralateral testis [235]. The risk of hypogonadism may therefore be increased in men treated for TGCT. The measurement of pre-treatment levels of testosterone, SHBG, LH and oestradiol might help to anticipate post-treatment hypogonadism. Men who have had TGCT and have low normal androgen levels should receive long-term follow-up because they are at risk of developing hypogonadism as a result of an age-related decrease in testosterone production [236]. The risk of hypogonadism is most pronounced in TGCT patients treated with > three cycles of chemotherapy or irradiation of retroperitoneal lymph nodes. However, this risk is greatest at six to twelve months post-treatment. This suggests there may be some improvement in Leydig cell function, and why it is reasonable to expect initiation of androgen replacement, until the patient shows continuous signs of testosterone deficiency, even at two years follow-up [227]. The risk of low libido and erectile dysfunction is also increased in TGCT patients [237]. In case of azoospermia, testicular sperm may be recovered to safeguard patient’s fertility (Onco-TESE) [238].

5.10.3  Testicular microlithiasis (TM)
Microcalcification inside the testicular parenchyma can be found in 0.6-9% of men referred for testicular US [239-241]. Although the true incidence of microcalcification in the general population is unknown, it is probably rare. However, US findings of TM are common in men with TGCT, cryptorchidism, testicular dysgenesis, infertility, testicular torsion and atrophy, Klinefelter’s syndrome, hypogonadism, male pseudohermaphroditism, varicocele, epididymal cysts, pulmonary microlithiasis, and non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma. The incidence reported seems to be higher with high-frequency US machines [242]. The relationship between TM and infertility is unclear, but probably relates to dysgenesis of the testes, with degenerate cells being sloughed inside an obstructed seminiferous tubule and failure of the Sertoli cells to phagocytose the debris. Subsequently, calcification occurs. Testicular microlithiasis is found in testes at risk of malignant development. The reported incidence of TM in men with TGCT is 6-46% [243-245]. TM should therefore be considered premalignant. Testicular biopsies from men with TM have found a higher prevalence of CIS, especially in those with bilateral microlithiasis [246]. However, TM is found most often in men with a benign testicular condition and the microcalcification itself is not malignant. Further investigation of the association between TM and CIS will require testicular biopsies in large series of men without signs of TGCT. However, available data indicate that men in whom TM is found by US, and who have an increased risk of TGCT, should be offered testicular biopsy for detection of CIS. The list of high-risk patients includes men with infertility and bilateral TM, atrophic testes, undescended testes, a history of TGCT, and contralateral TM [230].

5.10.4  Recommendations for germ cell malignancy and testicular microcalcification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>As for all men, encourage patients with testicular microlithiasis (TM) and without special risk factors (see below) to perform self-examination because this might result in early detection of testicular germ cell tumour (TGCT).</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform testicular biopsy, follow-up scrotal ultrasound, routine use of biochemical tumour markers, or abdominal or pelvic computed tomography (CT), in men with isolated TM without associated risk factors (e.g. infertility, cryptorchidism, testicular cancer, and atrophic testis).</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform testicular biopsy for men with TM, who belong to one of the following high-risk groups: infertile and bilateral TM, atrophic testes, undescended testes, a history of TGCT.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If there are suspicious findings on physical examination or ultrasound in patients with TM and associated lesions, perform surgical exploration with testicular biopsy or orchidectomy.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follow men with TGCT because they are at increased risk of developing hypogonadism and sexual dysfunction.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.11  Disorders of ejaculation
Disorders of ejaculation are uncommon, but important causes of male infertility.

5.11.1  Classification and aetiology
5.11.1.1  Anejaculation
Anejaculation involves complete absence of antegrade or retrograde ejaculation. It is caused by failure of semen emission from the seminal vesicles, prostate and ejaculatory ducts into the urethra [247]. True anejaculation is usually associated with a normal orgasmic sensation. True anejaculation is always associated with central or peripheral nervous system dysfunction or with drugs [248] (Table 6).
5.11.1.2 Anorgasmia
Anorgasmia is the inability to reach orgasm and can give rise to anejaculation. Anorgasmia is often a primary condition and its cause is usually psychological.

5.11.1.3 Delayed ejaculation
In delayed ejaculation, abnormal stimulation of the erect penis is needed to achieve orgasm with ejaculation [247]. Delayed ejaculation can be considered a mild form of anorgasmia. The causes of delayed ejaculation can be psychological, organic (e.g., incomplete spinal cord lesion [249] or iatrogenic penile nerve damage [250]), or pharmacological (e.g. selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors (SSRIs), antihypertensives, or antipsychotics) [251].

5.11.1.4 Retrograde ejaculation
Retrograde ejaculation is the total, or sometimes partial, absence of antegrade ejaculation as a result of semen passing backwards through the bladder neck into the bladder. Patients experience a normal or decreased orgasmic sensation. The causes of retrograde ejaculation can be divided into neurogenic, pharmacological, urethral, or bladder neck incompetence (Table 6).

Table 6: Aetiology of anejaculation and retrograde ejaculation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neurogenic</th>
<th>Pharmacological</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord injury</td>
<td>Antihypertensives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cauda equina lesions</td>
<td>α1-adrenoceptor antagonists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple sclerosis</td>
<td>Antipsychotics and antidepressants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autonomic neuropathy (diabetes mellitus)</td>
<td>Alcohol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sympathectomy or aortoiliac surgery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colorectal and anal surgery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parkinson’s disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral</td>
<td>Bladder neck incompetence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ectopic ureterocele</td>
<td>Congenital defects/dysfunction of hemitrigone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral stricture</td>
<td>Bladder extrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral valves or verumontaneum hyperplasia</td>
<td>Bladder neck resection (transurethral resection of the prostate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital dopamine β-hydroxylase deficiency</td>
<td>Prostatectomy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.11.1.5 Asthenic ejaculation
Asthenic ejaculation is characterised by an altered propulsive phase, with a normal emission phase [251]. The orgasmic sensation is reduced and the typically rhythmical contractions associated with ejaculation are missing. Asthenic ejaculation does not usually affect semen quality.

5.11.1.6 Premature ejaculation
The International Society for Sexual Medicine (ISSM) has adopted the first evidence-based definition of lifelong premature ejaculation (PE): “Premature ejaculation is a male sexual dysfunction characterised by ejaculation which always or nearly always occurs prior to or within about one minute of vaginal penetration; and inability to delay ejaculation on all or nearly all vaginal penetrations; and negative personal consequences, such as distress, bother, frustration and/or the avoidance of sexual intimacy”. Premature ejaculation may be strictly organic (e.g., prostatitis-related) or psychogenic, partner-related or non-selective, and can be associated with erectile dysfunction. It does not impair fertility, provided intravaginal ejaculation occurs.

5.11.2 Diagnostic evaluation
Diagnostic management includes the following recommended procedures.

5.11.2.1 Clinical history
The patient must be carefully checked for diabetes, neuropathy, trauma, urogenital infection, previous surgery, and medication. Particular attention must be paid to the characteristics of micturition and ejaculation (presence of nocturnal emission, ejaculatory ability in given circumstances, and primary or acquired disorder), as well as to psychosexual aspects.
5.11.2.2 Physical examination
Genital and rectal examinations are conducted, including evaluation of the prostate, bulbocavernous reflex and anal sphincter tone.

5.11.2.3 Post-ejaculatory urinalysis
Post-ejaculatory urinalysis of centrifuged urine can be used to determine if there is total or partial retrograde ejaculation.

5.11.2.4 Microbiological examination
Initial, mid-stream urine, expressed prostatic secretion, and/or urine after prostatic massage are cultured for evidence of prostatic infection. In cases of increased leukocytes in semen, semen culture or biochemical infection marker tests are also suggested [252].

5.11.2.5 Optional diagnostic work-up
This diagnostic work-up can include:
- neurophysiological tests (bulbocavernous evoked response and dorsal nerve somatosensory evoked potentials);
- tests for autonomic neuropathy;
- psychosexual evaluation;
- videocystometry;
- cystoscopy;
- transrectal ultrasonography;
- uroflowmetry;
- vibratory stimulation of the penis.

5.11.3 Disease management
Infertility caused by disorders of ejaculation is seldom treated on the basis of aetiology. Treatment usually involves retrieval of spermatozoa for use in assisted reproduction techniques (ARTs). The following aspects must be considered when selecting treatment:
- age of patient and his partner;
- psychological problems of the patient and his partner;
- couple’s willingness and acceptance of different fertility procedures;
- associated pathology;
- psychosexual counselling.

5.11.3.1 Aetiological treatment
If possible, any pharmacological treatment that is interfering with ejaculation should be stopped. In painful ejaculation, tamsulosin can be administered during antidepressant treatment [253]. Treatment should be given for urogenital infections (i.e., in case of painful ejaculation) [252]. Dapoxetin is an SSRI that has been introduced for the therapy of PE [254], because it appears that PE is related to serotonin levels. Psychotherapy is usually not very effective.

5.11.3.2 Symptomatic treatment
5.11.3.2.1 Premature ejaculation
Premature ejaculation can be treated with the SSRI dapoxetine or topical anaesthetic agents to increase intravaginal ejaculation latency time, behavioural therapy, and/or psychotherapy.

5.11.3.2.2 Retrograde ejaculation
In the absence of spinal cord injury, anatomical anomalies of the urethra, or pharmacological agents, drug treatment must be used to induce antegrade ejaculation (Table 7). Alternatively, the patient can be encouraged to ejaculate when his bladder is full to increase bladder neck closure [255].
Table 7: Drug therapy for retrograde ejaculation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Dosage regimen</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ephedrine sulphate</td>
<td>10-15 mg four times daily</td>
<td>[256]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudoephedrine</td>
<td>60 mg four times daily</td>
<td>[257]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midodrine</td>
<td>7.5–15 mg daily</td>
<td>[257]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imipramine</td>
<td>25 mg twice daily</td>
<td>[257]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brompheniramine maleate</td>
<td>8 mg twice daily</td>
<td>[258]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desipramine</td>
<td>50 mg every second day</td>
<td>[259]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sperm collection from post-orgasmic urine for use in ART is recommended if:
- drug treatment is ineffective or intolerable as a result of side-effects;
- the patient has a spinal cord injury;
- drug therapy inducing retrograde ejaculation cannot be interrupted.

If the biological sperm preparation is not of sufficient quality for intrauterine insemination, the couple must undergo in vitro reproductive procedures (e.g. ICSI). In the case of insufficient drug therapy, testicular (TESE or PESA) or epididymal (MESA) sperm retrieval techniques can be used for assisted reproduction.

5.11.3.2.3 Anejaculation
Drug treatment for anejaculation caused by lymphadenectomy and neuropathy, or psychosexual therapy for anorgasmia is not very effective. In all these cases, and in men who have a spinal cord injury, vibrostimulation (i.e., application of a vibrator to the penis) is first-line therapy. In anejaculation, vibrostimulation evokes the ejaculation reflex [260], which requires an intact lumbosacral spinal cord segment. If the quality of semen is poor, or ejaculation is retrograde, the couple may enter an IVF programme. If vibrostimulation has failed, electro-ejaculation can be the therapy of choice [261]. When electro-ejaculation fails or cannot be carried out, sperm can be retrieved from the seminal ducts by aspiration from the vas deferens [262] (see Chapter 5.3) or seminal tract washout [263]. TESE can then be used [252, 264]. Anejaculation following either surgery for testicular cancer or total mesorectal excision can be prevented using monolateral lymphadenectomy or autonomic nerve preservation [264], respectively.

5.11.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for disorders of ejaculation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ejaculation disorders can be treated using a wide range of drugs and physical</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stimulation (eg vibratory stimulation), with a high level of efficacy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmacotherapy includes either dapoxetine on demand (a short-acting SSRI that is</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the only approved pharmacological treatment for PE) or other off-label</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antidepressants, i.e. daily SSRIs and clomipramine, that are not amenable to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on-demand dosing. Alternatively use topical anesthetics (LE: 1b) or tramadol (LE:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In men with spinal cord injury, vibrostimulation and/or electro-ejaculation are</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effective methods of sperm retrieval.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer aetiological treatments for ejaculatory disorders before performing</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sperm collection and assisted reproduction technique (ART).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To treat disorders of ejaculation, offer pharmacological treatment of either</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dapoxetine on demand (a short-acting selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(SSRI) that is the only approved pharmacological treatment for premature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ejaculation), or other off-label antidepressants, i.e. daily SSRIs and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clomipramine, that are not amenable to on-demand dosing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternatively offer topical anaesthetics or tramadol.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.12 Semen cryopreservation
Cryopreservation is the storage of biological material at sub-zero temperatures [e.g., - 80 or -196°C (the boiling point of liquid nitrogen)], at which the biochemical processes of cell metabolism are slowed or interrupted. At -196°C, the biochemical reactions that lead to cell death are stopped.
5.12.1 **Indications for storage**
Storage of sperm is available in many clinics for the following indications:

- before potentially sterilising chemotherapy or radiotherapy for cancer (onco-TESE) or for non-malignant diseases [265];
- for men with progressive decrease in semen quality as a result of diseases that have an associated risk of subsequent azoospermia (i.e., pituitary macroadenoma, craniopharyngioma, empty sella syndrome, chronic nephropathy, uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, and multiple sclerosis);
- for men with progressive decrease in semen quality as a result of diseases that have an associated risk of subsequent azoospermia (i.e., pituitary macroadenoma, craniopharyngioma, empty sella syndrome, chronic nephropathy, uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, and multiple sclerosis);
- for men with paraplegia when sperm have been obtained by electro-ejaculation or obtained by penile vibratory stimulation;
- for men with psychogenic anejaculation, after sperm have been obtained either by electro-ejaculation or a sperm retrieval procedure;
- after gonadotropin treatment has induced spermatogenesis in men with hypogonadotropic hypogonadism;
- for men with NOA, the chance of finding sperm using micro-TESE is ~50%.

Cryopreservation can be used for sperm collected through TESE, avoiding repeated sperm retrieval procedures and unnecessary hyperstimulation of the female partner:

- in any situation in which sperm have been obtained by a sperm retrieval procedure (e.g., after failed vasectomy reversal, or in some cases of epididymal obstruction not amenable to surgery);
- for storage of donor sperm, because cryopreservation reduces the risk of transmission of infection from sperm donors. According to the European directives 2004/23 EC and 2006/17 EC fresh sperm are no longer to be used for non-partner donations.

5.12.2 **Precautions and techniques**

5.12.2.1 Freezing and thawing process

The cryopreservation techniques currently used are not yet optimal because damage occurs to cells during cryopreservation and prolonged storage. Most damage occurs during freezing and thawing. Major causes of damage during freezing are ice crystal formation and cell dehydration, which disrupt the cell wall and intracellular organelles. Sperm morphology, motility and vitality decrease significantly after thawing, and cryopreservation increases the damage done to sperm DNA [266-269]. Further damage can be caused by contamination of samples with microorganisms and high levels of superoxide radicals [270, 271]. To reduce ice crystal formation, a cryopreservation solution is added before freezing. Various cryopreservation solutions are available commercially, most of which contain varying proportions of glycerol and albumin. After freezing, the samples are immersed in liquid nitrogen.

Several techniques have been developed to try to reduce damage caused by freezing and thawing, including:

- one-step freezing method [272, 273]: sample is held in the vapour phase for ten minutes before being plunged into liquid nitrogen;
- slow or multi-step method [274]: sample is gradually cooled in the vapour phase for approximately 40 minutes. A programmable automatic freezing machine, which is preset to cool at a rate of 1-10°C per minute is used.

The method available depends on the resources of the laboratory. Whichever freezing technique is used, it should be tested using donor sperm and post-thaw examination, and should regularly undergo a quality-control programme. The likelihood of sperm survival decreases with repeated freezing and thawing. The maximum viable storage time for human sperm is not known.

5.12.2.2 Cryopreservation of small numbers of sperm

Standard cryopreservation in straws is an efficient way of storing large numbers of sperm (e.g., for a donor insemination programme). However, in micro-TESE, few sperm might be obtained, and the choice is either to freeze testicular tissue and find sperm after thawing the tissue, or to freeze small numbers of sperm. If sperm are frozen in straws, it can be difficult to find any sperm after thawing. Instead, the sperm should be frozen in a pellet [275] or in a container [276].

5.12.2.3 Testing for infections and preventing cross-contamination
Sperm storage in straws is used extensively. Large numbers of straws are stored in canisters, with the straws being bathed in a pool of liquid nitrogen. Microbial contamination of the pool of liquid nitrogen results in contamination of the outside of all the straws [277]. The most widely used safeguard is to use so-called
high security closed straws. According to the European directives 2004/23 and 2006/17, samples should be tested for hepatitis B and C and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). In case of non-partner donation, samples are also tested for *C. Trachomatis* (by Nucleic Acid Testing [NAT]) and syphilis, as well as genetics, that is, karyotype and most prevalent genetic disorders in the population to which the non-partner donor belongs. Until the test results are known, samples must be stored in an individual quarantine vessel (separate storage). If open straws are used (e.g., for vitrification purposes) some laboratories use the additional safeguard of doublewrapping the straws before freezing, although this is more costly. Some centres carry out cytomegalovirus testing and store negative and positive samples separately. Considerable ethical issues surround the storage of samples before cancer chemotherapy in men who are hepatitis-virus- or HIV-positive. Few clinics have separate storage facilities for HIV-positive samples. However, the success of antiretroviral treatment is increasing the number of HIV-positive men who may wish to store sperm. There is also concern about HIV transmission to children conceived using HIV-positive sperm, because sperm-washing techniques fail in ~5% of cases.

### 5.12.2.4 Fail-safe precautions to prevent loss of stored materials

Any laboratory that undertakes long-term storage of human biological materials should have procedures that guard against accidental loss of material caused by storage vessel failure. This is particularly important for sperm stored before potentially sterilising cancer chemotherapy, because these patients may not be able to obtain further sperm.

### 5.12.2.5 Orphan samples

In malignancy and some other situations, several years might pass before stored samples are required. Inevitably, during this time, the owners of some samples might disappear or die, leaving behind orphan samples for which the owner is no longer contactable. The duty of the laboratory and the legal ownership of these samples can create considerable problems.

### 5.12.3 Biological aspects

Cryopreservation induces deterioration of semen quality. After the sample has been thawed, motility [278] and morphology [279, 280] are worsened, including mitochondrial acrosomal and sperm tail damage [262]. Sperm freezing decreases motility by 31% and mitochondrial activity by 36%, and causes morphological disruption in 37% of sperm [273]. Motility is correlated best with IVF capacity of the thawed sample. Further improvement can be achieved by selecting the subpopulation of sperm with the best motility and DNA integrity and freezing these sperm in seminal plasma [275].

### 5.12.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for semen cryopreservation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The purpose of sperm cryopreservation is to enable future assisted reproduction technique procedures.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryopreservation techniques are not optimal, and future efforts are needed to improve the outcome of sperm banking.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer cryopreservation of semen to all men who are candidates for chemotherapy, radiation or surgical interventions that might interfere with spermatogenesis or cause ejaculatory disorders.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer simultaneous sperm cryopreservation if testicular biopsies will be performed for fertility diagnosis.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If cryopreservation is not available locally, inform patients about the possibility of visiting, or transferring to a cryopreservation unit before therapy starts.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take precautions to prevent transmission of viral, sexually transmitted or any other infection by cryostored materials from donor to recipient, and to prevent contamination of stored samples. These precautions include testing of the patient and the use of rapid testing and quarantine of samples until test results are known. Do not store samples from men who are positive for hepatitis virus or HIV in the same container as samples from men who have been tested and are free from infection.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. REFERENCES


http://www.crd.york.ac.uk/prospero/display_record.asp?src=trip&ID=CRD42016032976


http://www.who.int/reproductivehealth/publications/infertility/9789241547789/en/


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24612408


   https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9043501
   http://link.springer.com/chapter/10.1007%2F978-1-4471-1029-3_17#page-1


MALE INFERTILITY - LIMITED UPDATE MARCH 2017

45


7. **CONFLICT OF INTEREST**

All members of the EAU Chronic Pelvic Pain Guidelines working panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is publicly accessible through the European Association of Urology website [http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines](http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines). This document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Male Hypogonadism

G.R. Dohle (Chair), S. Arver, C. Bettocchi, T.H. Jones, S. Kliesch

© European Association of Urology 2017
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION  
   1.1 Aim  
   1.2 Publication history  
   1.3 Available Publications  
   1.4 Panel composition  

2. METHODS  
   2.1 Introduction  
   2.2 Review  
   2.3 Future goals  

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY  
   3.1 Epidemiology  
   3.1.1 Role of testosterone for male reproductive health  
   3.2 Physiology  
   3.2.1 The androgen receptor  
   3.3 Aetiology  
   3.4 Classification  
   3.4.1 Male hypogonadism of testicular origin (primary hypogonadism)  
   3.4.2 Male hypogonadism of hypothalamic-hypopituitary origin (secondary hypogonadism)  
   3.4.3 Male hypogonadism due to mixed dysfunction of hypothalamus/pituitary and gonads (Adult-onset hypogonadism)  
   3.4.4 Male hypogonadism due to defects of androgen target organs  

4. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION  
   4.1 Clinical symptoms and laboratory testing  
   4.2 History-taking and questionnaires  
   4.3 Physical examination  
   4.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation  
   4.5 Clinical consequences of hypogonadism  
   4.5.1 Prenatal androgen deficiency  
   4.5.2 Prepubertal onset of androgen deficiency  
   4.5.3 Adult-onset hypogonadism  
   4.5.4 Hypogonadism in Type 2 Diabetes  
   4.5.4.1 Recommendations for screening men with adult-onset hypogonadism  

5. DISEASE MANAGEMENT  
   5.1 Indications and contraindications for treatment  
   5.2 Benefits of treatment  
   5.3 Choice of treatment  
   5.3.1 Preparations  
   5.3.1.1 Testosterone undecanoate  
   5.3.1.2 Testosterone cypionate and enanthate  
   5.3.1.3 Transdermal testosterone  
   5.3.1.4 Future perspectives  
   5.4 Hypogonadism and fertility issues  
   5.5 Recommendations for testosterone replacement therapy  
   5.6 Risk factors in testosterone treatment  
   5.6.1 Male breast cancer  
   5.6.2 Risk for prostate cancer  
   5.6.3 Cardiovascular diseases  
   5.6.4 Obstructive sleep apnoea  
   5.6.5 Anabolic steroid–induced hypogonadism  
   5.7 Summary of evidence and recommendations on risk factors in testosterone replacement treatment
6. FOLLOW-UP
   6.1 Monitoring of patients receiving testosterone replacement therapy
   6.2 Testosterone level
   6.3 Bone density
   6.4 Haematocrit
   6.5 Prostate safety
   6.6 Cardiovascular monitoring
   6.7 Recommendations for follow-up

7. REFERENCES

8. CONFLICT OF INTEREST
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim
Androgens play a crucial role in the development and maintenance of male reproductive and sexual functions, body composition, erythropoiesis, muscle and bone health, and cognitive functions. Low levels of circulating androgens in utero can cause disturbances in male sexual development, resulting in congenital abnormalities of the male reproductive tract, such as testicular dysfunction, testicular maldescensus and hypospadias. Later in life, this may result in reduced male fertility, sexual dysfunction, decreased muscle formation and bone mineralisation, disturbances of fat metabolism and cognitive dysfunction and may contribute to the development of testicular tumours. Testosterone levels decrease slightly as a process of ageing; risks factors for developing adult onset hypogonadism are: obesity, chronic diseases and a poor general health. Symptomatic hypogonadal patients may benefit from testosterone treatment. This document presents the European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines on the diagnosis and treatment of male hypogonadism, with the aim to provide practical recommendations on how to deal with primary and secondary forms of hypogonadism, ageing-related decline in testosterone in men, as well as the treatment of testosterone deficiencies.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts. However following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not and should not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Publication history

1.3 Available Publications
A quick reference document (Pocket Guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices, presenting the main findings of the Male Hypogonadism Guidelines. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text versions. All available material can be viewed and downloaded for personal use at the EAU website. The EAU website also includes a selection of EAU guidelines articles as well as translations produced by national urological associations: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

1.4 Panel composition
The EAU Male Hypogonadism Panel consists of a multidisciplinary group of experts, including urologists specialising in andrology and endocrinologists.

2. METHODS

2.1 Introduction
References used in this text are assessed according to their Level of Evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a Grade of Recommendation (GR) according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence [1]. Additional methodology information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/. A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address.

The recommendations provided in these guidelines are based on a systematic literature search and review performed by the panel members in 2016. MedLine, Embase and Cochrane databases were searched to identify original articles and review articles. The controlled vocabulary of the Medical Subject Headings (MeSH) database was used alongside a ‘free-text’ protocol, combining ‘male hypogonadism’ with the terms ‘diagnosis’, ‘epidemiology’, ‘investigations’, ‘treatment’, ‘testosterone’, ‘androgens’ and ‘hypogonadism’.

For the 2017 update, a scoping search was performed, covering all areas of the guideline and the search terms ‘hypogonadism’, ‘eugonadal or hypogonadism or hypogonadal or gonadal’, and ‘low or lower testosterone’, starting from 2011 with a cut-off date of April 2016. Embase, Medline and the Cochrane Central Register
of Controlled Trials databases were searched, with a limitation to reviews, meta-analyses or meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. A total of 2,252 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance, of which 51 publications were selected for inclusion. A detail search strategy is available online: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/male-hypogonadism/.

2.2 Review
This document was subject to peer review prior to publication in 2015.

2.3 Future goals
The results of ongoing and new systematic reviews will be included in the 2018 update of the Male Hypogonadism Guidelines. Ongoing systematic reviews are:-
• What are the risks of major cardiovascular events from testosterone replacement therapy (TRT)? [2].
• What are the benefits and harms of testosterone treatment for male sexual dysfunction? [3].

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY

3.1 Epidemiology
Definition: male hypogonadism is a clinical syndrome caused by androgen deficiency which may adversely affect multiple organ functions and quality of life (QoL) [4]. A diagnosis of male hypogonadism must comprise both persistent clinical symptoms and biochemical evidence of testosterone deficiency.

Androgen deficiency increases slightly with age also in healthy men [5, 6]. In middle-aged men, the incidence of biochemical hypogonadism varies from 2.1-12.8% [7]. The incidence of low testosterone and symptoms of hypogonadism in men aged 40-79 varies form 2.1-5.7% [6, 7]. Hypogonadism is more prevalent in older men, in men with obesity, those with co-morbidities, and in men with a poor health status.

3.1.1 Role of testosterone for male reproductive health
Androgens, which are produced by the testis and by the adrenal glands, play a pivotal role in male reproductive and sexual function. Androgens are crucial for the development of male reproductive organs, such as the epididymis, vas deferens, seminal vesicle, prostate and penis. In addition, androgens are needed for puberty, male fertility, male sexual function, muscle formation, body composition, bone mineralisation, fat metabolism, and cognitive functions [8].

3.2 Physiology
Male sexual development starts between the 7th and 12th week of gestation. The undifferentiated gonads develop into a foetal testis through expression of multiple genes, including the sex-determining region of the Y chromosome (SRY gene complex) and the SOX genes [9]. The foetal testis produces three hormones: testosterone, insulin-like peptide 3 (INSL3) and anti-Müllerian hormone (AMH). Testosterone is needed for the stabilisation of the Wolffian ducts, resulting in formation of the epididymis, vas deferens and seminal vesicle. Anti-Müllerian hormone activity results in regression of the Müllerian ducts (Figure 1). INSL3, AMH and testosterone regulate testicular descent.

Under the influence of intratesticular testosterone, the number of gonocytes per tubule increases threefold during the foetal period [10]. In addition, testosterone is needed for development of the prostate, penis and scrotum. However, in these organs testosterone is converted into the more potent metabolite 5α-dihydrotestosterone (DHT) by the enzyme 5α-reductase. Testosterone and DHT are required for penile growth, both activating the androgen receptor [11].

Intratesticular testosterone is needed to maintain the spermatogenic process and to inhibit germ cell apoptosis [12]. The seminiferous tubules of the testes are exposed to concentrations of testosterone 25-100 times greater than circulating levels. Suppression of gonadotropins (e.g. through excessive testosterone abuse) results in a reduced number of spermatocytes in the ejaculate and hypospermatogenesis [13]. Complete inhibition of intratesticular testosterone results in full cessation of meiosis up to the level of round spermatids [14, 15]. Testosterone does not appear to act directly on the germ cells, but functions through the Sertoli cells by expression of the androgen receptor (AR) and influencing the seminiferous tubular microenvironment [15].
Testosterone can also be metabolised into oestradiol by aromatase, present in fat tissue, the prostate, the testes and bone. Oestradiol is also essential for bone mineralisation in men [16]. The production of testosterone is controlled in the foetus by placental chorion gonadotropin (hCG) and after birth by luteinising hormone (LH) from the pituitary gland. Immediately after birth, serum testosterone levels reach adult concentrations over several months (mini puberty). Thereafter and until puberty, testosterone levels are low, thus preventing male virilisation. Puberty starts with the production of gonadotropins, initiated by gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) secretion from the hypothalamus and results in testosterone production, male sexual characteristics and spermatogenesis [17]. Figure 1 shows the development of the male reproductive system.

### 3.2.1 The androgen receptor

Testosterone exerts its action through the androgen receptor (AR), located in the cytoplasm and nucleus of target cells. During the foetal period, testosterone increases the number of ARs by increasing the number of cells with the AR and by increasing the number of ARs in each individual cell [11, 16]. The AR gene is located on the X chromosome (Xq 11-12): defects and mutations in the AR gene can result in male sexual maldevelopment, which may cause testicular feminisation or low virilisation (i.e. disorder of sexual development (DSD)). Less severe mutations in the AR gene may cause mild forms of androgen resistance and male infertility [18]. In exon 1 of the gene, the transactivation domain consists of a trinucleotide tract (cytosine-adenine-guanine (CAG) repeats) of variable length. Androgen sensitivity may be influenced by the length of the CAG repeats in exon 1 of the AR gene [18]. Shorter repeats have been associated with an increased risk for prostate disease, and longer repeats with reduced androgen action in several tissues [19]. CAG repeat number may influence androgenic phenotypical effects, even in case of normal testosterone levels [20].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Summary of evidence</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Testosterone is essential for normal male development.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.3 Aetiology

Hypogonadism results from testicular failure, or is due to the disruption of one or several levels of the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis (Figure 2).

Male hypogonadism can be classified in accordance with disturbances at the level of:

- the testes (primary hypogonadism);
- the hypothalamus and pituitary (secondary hypogonadism);
- the hypothalamus/pituitary and gonads (common in adult-onset hypogonadism);
- androgen target organs (androgen insensitivity/resistance).

3.4 Classification

3.4.1 Male hypogonadism of testicular origin (primary hypogonadism)

Primary testicular failure is the most frequent cause of hypogonadism and results in low testosterone levels, impairment of spermatogenesis and elevated gonadotropins (high LH and FSH). The most common clinical forms of primary hypogonadism are Klinefelter syndrome and testicular tumours.

- Klinefelter syndrome affects 0.2% of the male population. It is the most frequent form of male hypogonadism and the most common numerical chromosomal aberration, with 47,XXY in 90% of cases [21]. It arises due to non-disjunction during paternal or maternal meiotic division of germ cells [22].
- Testicular tumours are the most frequent type of cancer in young males after puberty. Risk factors are contralateral germ cell cancer, maldescended testes, gonadal dysgenesis, infertility, testicular atrophy and familial germ cell cancer. Twenty-five per cent of men with testicular tumours develop testosterone deficiency after treatment [23-25].

The main reasons for primary hypogonadism are summarised in Table 1.
Male hypogonadism of hypothalamic-hypopituitary origin (secondary hypogonadism)

Central defects of the hypothalamus or pituitary cause secondary testicular failure. Identifying secondary hypogonadism is of clinical importance, as it can be a consequence of pituitary pathology (including prolactinomas) and can cause infertility, which can be restored by hormonal stimulation in most patients with secondary hypogonadism.

The most relevant forms of secondary hypogonadism are:

- **Hyperprolactinemia (HP)**, caused by prolactin-secreting pituitary adenomas (prolactinomas) (microprolactinomas < 10 mm in diameter vs. macroprolactinomas) or drug-induced (by dopamine-antagonistic effects of substances such as phenothiazine, imipramine, risperidone and metoclopramide); additional causes may be chronic renal failure or hypothyroidism. Testosterone levels may however be normal despite the presence of a prolactinoma [26].

- **Isolated** (formerly termed idiopathic) or congenital hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism (IHH, CHH).

- **Kallmann’s syndrome** (hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism with anosmia, genetically determined, prevalence one in 10,000 males).

These disorders are characterised by disturbed hypothalamic secretion (low LH and FSH) or low levels of gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH). An inborn error of migration and homing of GnRH-secreting neurons results in Kallmann’s syndrome [27, 28]. The most important symptom is the constitutional delay of puberty: it is the most common cause of delayed puberty (pubertas tarda) [29]. Other rare forms of secondary hypogonadism are listed in Table 2.

Male hypogonadism due to mixed dysfunction of hypothalamus/pituitary and gonads (Adult-onset hypogonadism)

Combined primary and secondary testicular failure results in low testosterone levels and variable gonadotropin levels. Gonadotropin levels depend predominantly on primary or secondary failure. What has also been labelled as late-onset hypogonadism and age-related hypogonadism is comprised of these two types of hypogonadism [30-32].

Male hypogonadism due to defects of androgen target organs

These forms are primarily rare defects and will not be further discussed in detail in these guidelines. There are AR defects with complete, partial and minimal androgen insensitivity syndrome; Reifenstein syndrome; bulbospinal muscular atrophy (Kennedy disease); as well as 5α-reductase deficiency (for a review, see Nieschlag et al. 2010) [33].

The classification of hypogonadism has therapeutic implications. In patients with secondary hypogonadism, hormonal stimulation with hCG and FSH or alternatively pulsatile GnRH treatment can restore fertility in most cases [34, 35]. Detailed evaluation may, for example, detect pituitary tumours, systemic disease, or testicular tumours. Combined forms of primary and secondary hypogonadism can be observed in ageing, mostly obese men, with a concomitant age-related decline in testosterone levels resulting from defects in testicular as well as hypothalamic-pituitary function.
Table 1: Forms of primary hypogonadism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Causes of deficiency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maldescended or ectopic testes</td>
<td>Failure of testicular descent, maldevelopment of the testis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Klinefelter syndrome 47,XXY</td>
<td>Sex-chromosomal non-disjunction in germ cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testicular cancer</td>
<td>Testicular maldevelopment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orchitis</td>
<td>Viral or unspecific orchitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acquired anorchia</td>
<td>Trauma, tumour, torsion, inflammation, iatrogenic, surgical removal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary testicular dysfunction</td>
<td>Medication, drugs, toxins, systemic diseases, varicocele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Idiopathic) testicular atrophy/testicular dysgenesis</td>
<td>Male infertility (idiopathic or specific causes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital anorchia (bilateral in 1 in 20,000 males, unilateral 4 times as often)</td>
<td>Intrauterine torsion is the most probable cause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46,XYZ disorders of sexual development (DSD) (formerly male pseudohermaphroditism)</td>
<td>Disturbed testosterone synthesis due to enzymatic defects of steroid biosynthesis (17,20- hydroxylase defect, 17ß-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase defect)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gonadal dysgenesis (synonym ‘streak gonads’)</td>
<td>XY gonadal dysgenesis can be caused by mutations in different genes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46,XX male syndrome (prevalence of 1 in 10,000-20,000)</td>
<td>Males with presence of genetic information from the Y chromosome after translocation of a DNA segment of the Y to the X chromosome during paternal meiosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noonan syndrome (prevalence of 1 in 1,000 to 1 in 5,000)</td>
<td>Short stature, congenital heart diseases, cryptorchidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inactivating LH receptor mutations, Leydig cell hypoplasia (prevalence of 1 in 1,000,000 to 1 in 20,000)</td>
<td>Leydig cells are unable to develop due to the mutation [36]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2: Forms of secondary hypogonadism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Causes of deficiency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hyperprolactinemia</td>
<td>Prolactin-secreting pituitary adenomas (prolactinomas) or drug-induced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolated hypogonadotropic hypogonadism (IH) (formerly termed idiopathic hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism)</td>
<td>Specific (or unknown) mutations affecting GnRH synthesis or action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kallmann’s syndrome (hypogonadotropic hypogonadism with anosmia, prevalence 1 in 10,000)</td>
<td>GnRH deficiency and anosmia, genetically determined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary GnRH deficiency</td>
<td>Medication, drugs, toxins, systemic diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypopituitarism</td>
<td>Radiotherapy, trauma, infections, haemochromatosis and vascular insufficiency or congenital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pituitary adenomas</td>
<td>Hormone-secreting adenomas; hormone-inactive pituitary adenomas; metastases to the pituitary or pituitary stalk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prader-Willi syndrome (PWS) (formerly Prader-Labhart-Willi syndrome, prevalence 1 in 10,000 individuals)</td>
<td>Congenital disturbance of GnRH secretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital adrenal hypoplasia with hypogonadotropic hypogonadism (prevalence 1 in 12,500 individuals)</td>
<td>X-chromosomal recessive disease, in the majority of patients caused by mutations in the DAX1 gene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pasqualini syndrome</td>
<td>Isolated LH deficiency</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendation

Differentiate the two forms of hypogonadism (primary and secondary hypogonadism) by determining luteinising hormone and follicle-stimulating hormone levels, as this has implications for patient evaluation and treatment and makes it possible to identify patients with associated health problems and infertility. LE GR

1b B
4. **DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION**

Hypogonadism is diagnosed on the basis of persistent signs and symptoms related to androgen deficiency and assessment of consistently low testosterone levels (on at least two occasions) with a reliable method [7, 37-40]. It should be noted that over-time there is a substantial portion of men who recover from secondary hypogonadism, prompting the importance of re-evaluation if testosterone therapy has been instituted in men without defined hypothalamic or pituitary disease [41].

4.1 **Clinical symptoms and laboratory testing**

Low levels of circulating androgens may be associated with signs and symptoms (Table 3) [7, 42, 43].

---

*FSH = follicle-stimulating hormone; GnRH = Gonadotropin-releasing hormone; LH = luteinising hormone.*
Clinical symptoms and signs suggestive for androgen deficiency:

Reduced testis volume
Male-factor infertility
Decreased body hair
Gynaecomastia
Decrease in lean body mass and muscle strength
Visceral obesity
Metabolic syndrome
Insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes mellitus
Decrease in bone mineral density (osteoporosis) with low trauma fractures
Mild anaemia

Sexual symptoms:
Reduced sexual desire and sexual activity
Erectile dysfunction
Fewer and diminished nocturnal erections

Cognitive and psychovegetative symptoms:
Hot flushes
Changes in mood, fatigue and anger
Sleep disturbances
Depression
Diminished cognitive function

The most prevalent symptoms of male hypogonadism in ageing men are reduced sexual desire and sexual activity, erectile dysfunction, loss of vigour and changes in mood [7, 43]. Other factors found associated with low testosterone are obesity and a poor general health status [7]. Signs and symptoms of androgen deficiency vary depending on age of onset, duration and the severity of the deficiency. Reference ranges for the lower normal level of testosterone (2.5%) have been compiled from three large community-based samples, suggesting a cut-off of 12.1 nmol/L for total serum testosterone and 243 pmol/L for free testosterone, to distinguish between normal levels and levels possibly associated with deficiency [44]. Symptoms suggesting the presence of hypogonadism [7, 43] are summarised in Table 3. It should, however, be noted that these symptoms are also found in men with normal testosterone levels and may have causes other than androgen deficiency.

In men aged 40-79 years, the threshold for total testosterone was 8 nmol/L for decreased frequency of sexual thoughts, 8.5 nmol/L for erectile dysfunction, 11 nmol/L for decreased frequency of morning erections and 13 nmol/L for diminished vigour [45, 46]. The strongest predictor for hypogonadism in this age group was three sexual symptoms (decreased sexual thoughts, weakened morning erections, erectile dysfunction) and either a total testosterone level of < 8 nmol/L or serum testosterone in the range of 8-11 nmol/L and free testosterone < 220 pmol/L. These data are based on serum samples taken in the morning, when mean levels are highest and most reproducible in younger men [47].

Laboratory testing of testosterone should reflect on the diurnal variation of testosterone. In most cases two morning (7.00 to 11.00) samples are sufficient, but should trigger further evaluation if the difference is > 20% [48]. Both immunoassay and mass spectrometry based assays can produce reliable results, as long as they are well-validated. Evaluation should be based on reference ranges for normal men provided by the laboratory measuring the samples.

In cases with discrepancy between testosterone levels and symptoms, free testosterone (FT) levels should be analysed. For determination of FT levels, the calculation of FT with the help of the sex hormone binding globulin (SHBG) is recommended.

Hypogonadism may be more subtle and not always evident by low testosterone levels. For example, men with primary testicular damage often have normal testosterone levels but high LH. This could be considered a sub-clinical or compensated form of hypogonadism. The clinical consequences of an isolated elevation of LH is not clear yet, but potentially, these men may become hypogonadal in the future.

To differentiate between primary and secondary forms of hypogonadism and to clarify hypogonadism in adult men, determination of LH serum levels is required. Both LH and testosterone serum levels should be analysed twice within 30 days, preferably in a fasting state [49].
4.2 History-taking and questionnaires
Symptoms of hypogonadism are listed in Table 3 and 4 and should be addressed during history-taking. Early onset of hypogonadism causes a lack of or minimal pubertal development, lack of development of secondary sex characteristics, possibly eunuchoid body proportions and a high-pitched voice. These signs and symptoms strongly suggest secondary hypogonadism. Adult-onset hypogonadism is characterised by sexual dysfunction, obesity and loss of vigour. Published questionnaires are unreliable, have low specificity and they are not effective for case-finding [50-53]. It is important to assess and exclude systemic illnesses, signs of malnutrition and malabsorption, as well as ongoing acute disease. Pharmacological treatments with corticosteroids, abuse of drugs such as marihuana, opiates and alcohol and previous treatment or use of testosterone and abuse of anabolic steroids should also be included in history-taking [54, 55].

4.3 Physical examination
Assessment of body mass index (BMI), the waist-hip ratio (or sagittal abdominal diameter), body hair, male pattern hair loss, presence of gynaecomastia, testicular size (measured with an orchidometer or ultrasound [US]) and examination of the penis as well as a digital rectal examination (DRE) of the prostate should be included.

4.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The diagnosis of male hypogonadism is based on signs and symptoms of androgen deficiency, together with consistently low serum testosterone levels.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Restrict the diagnosis of testosterone deficiency to men with persistent symptoms suggesting hypogonadism (Tables 3 and 4).</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measure testosterone in the morning before 11.00 hours, preferably in the fasting state.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat total testosterone on at least two occasions with a reliable method. In addition, measure the free testosterone level in men with:</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Total testosterone levels close to the lower normal range (8-12 nmol/L), to strengthen the laboratory assessment.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Suspected or known abnormal sex hormone-binding globulin (SHBG) levels.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess testosterone in men with a disease or treatment in which testosterone deficiency is common and in whom treatment may be indicated.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This includes men with:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Sexual dysfunction.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Type 2 diabetes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Metabolic syndrome.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Obesity.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Pituitary mass, following radiation involving the sellar region and other diseases in the hypothalamic and sellar region.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Treatment with medications that cause suppression of testosterone levels - e.g. corticosteroids and opiates.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Moderate to severe chronic obstructive lung disease.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Infertility.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Osteoporosis or low-trauma fractures.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- HIV infection with sarcopenia.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analyse LH serum levels to differentiate between primary and secondary forms of hypogonadism.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.5 Clinical consequences of hypogonadism
The clinical consequences of hypogonadism are determined by the age of onset and the severity of hypogonadism.

4.5.1 Prenatal androgen deficiency
During the first fourteen weeks of gestation, the presence of testosterone is crucial for normal virilisation of the external male genitalia. Androgen deficiency or androgen resistance due to deficient AR or LH receptor function during this stage of life may result in abnormal genital development, ranging from hypospadias to...
female external genitalia with intra-abdominal testis. Frequently, patients with disorders of sexual development are diagnosed at an early age because of clearly abnormal external genitalia. However, patients at both ends of the phenotypic spectrum may go unnoticed in childhood and are diagnosed during puberty because of delayed pubertal development.

4.5.2 **Prepubertal onset of androgen deficiency**

At the start of puberty, rising gonadotropin levels result in increasing testicular volume and the activation of spermatogenesis and testosterone secretion. During puberty, rising testosterone levels result in the development of male secondary sex characteristics, comprising deepening of the voice, development of terminal body hair, stimulation of hair growth in sex-specific regions, facial hair, increasing penile size, increase in muscle mass and bone size and mass, growth spur induction and eventually closing of the epiphyses.

In addition, testosterone has explicit psychosexual effects, including increased libido. Delayed puberty is defined as an absence of testicular enlargement at the age of fourteen [56]. As this is a ‘statistical’ definition, based on reference ranges for the onset of puberty in the normal population, delayed puberty does not necessarily indicate the presence of a disease. In cases of severe androgen deficiency, the clinical picture of prepubertal onset hypogonadism is evident (Table 4) and diagnosis and treatment are fairly straightforward. The major challenge in younger individuals with presumed isolated (congenital) hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism is to differentiate the condition from a constitutional delay in puberty and to determine when to start androgen treatment. In milder cases of androgen deficiency, as seen in patients with Klinefelter syndrome, pubertal development can be normal, incomplete or delayed, resulting in a more subtle phenotypic picture. In these patients, several clues may lead to a diagnosis of hypogonadism. These include: small testes, (a history of) cryptorchidism, gynaecomastia, sparse body hair, eunuchoid habitus, low bone mass and sub-fertility [57].

**Table 4: Signs and symptoms suggesting prepubertal-onset hypogonadism**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Delayed puberty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Small testes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryptorchidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gynaecomastia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-pitched voice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unclosed epiphyses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linear growth into adulthood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eunuchoid habitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sparse body hair/facial hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infertility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low bone mass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarcopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced sexual desire/activity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.5.3 **Adult-onset hypogonadism**

Adult-onset hypogonadism is defined as testosterone deficiency, usually associated with clinical symptoms or signs in a person who has had normal pubertal development and, as a result, developed normal male secondary sex characteristics.

Depending on the underlying cause of hypogonadism, the decline in gonadal function may be gradual and partial. The resulting clinical picture may be variable, and the signs and symptoms may be obscured by the physiological phenotypic variation. Symptoms that have been associated with adult-onset hypogonadism are summarised in Table 3. Most of these symptoms have a multi-factorial aetiology, are reminiscent of normal ageing and can also be found in men with completely normal testosterone levels [5]. As a result, signs and symptoms of adult-onset hypogonadism may be non-specific, and confirmation of a clinical suspicion by hormonal testing is mandatory. For many of the symptoms mentioned above, the probability of their presence increases with lower plasma testosterone levels. Most studies indicate a threshold level below which the prevalence of symptoms starts to increase [43, 58]. This threshold level is near the lower level of the normal range for plasma testosterone levels in young men, but there appears to be a wide variation between individuals and, even within one individual, the threshold level may be different for different target organs. Androgen receptor activity may also contribute to this variance [59, 60].
4.5.4  **Hypogonadism in Type 2 Diabetes**

There is a high prevalence of hypogonadism in men with type 2 diabetes mellitus [61-63]. The commonest symptom and main indication for treatment is that of sexual dysfunction. Erectile dysfunction has been reported in up to 70% of men with diabetes but may be caused by different or combined aetiologies (vasculopathy, neuropathy, medications, psychological factors) as well as hypogonadism in approximately 30%. Testosterone therapy alone may be insufficient and a combination with PDE5 inhibitors may be necessary. Testosterone deficiency is also associated with a failure of PDE5 inhibitor therapy [64]. Randomised controlled trials of at least six months duration testosterone treatment therapy (TRT) have reported significant improvement in sexual desire, but not erectile function [65-67] in men with type 2 diabetes, although one study did not find a benefit on sexual desire [68].

Testosterone deficiency is associated with an adverse cardiovascular risk profile in men with type 2 diabetes and TRT can improve insulin resistance and glycaemic control in some studies, reduce percentage body fat, and waist circumference and lower total and LDL-cholesterol, lipoprotein (a), and a small fall in HDL-cholesterol may occur. There is some evidence that it may reduce mortality [65, 69, 70]. These benefits, however, are not currently stand alone indications for TRT in type 2 diabetes and require further research but, could be considered as potential added benefits when used in conjunction when subjects are treated for sexual dysfunction.

4.5.4.1  **Recommendations for screening men with adult-onset hypogonadism**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Screen for testosterone deficiency only in adult men with consistent and multiple signs and symptoms listed in Table 3.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young men with testicular dysfunction and men older than 50 years of age with low testosterone should additionally be screened for osteoporosis.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.  **DISEASE MANAGEMENT**

5.1  **Indications and contraindications for treatment**

Testosterone treatment aims to restore testosterone levels to the physiological range in men with consistently low levels of serum testosterone and associated symptoms of androgen deficiency. The aim of testosterone treatment is to restore physiological androgen dependent functions and to improve QoL, e.g. sense of well-being, sexual function, muscle strength and bone mineral density. Table 5 highlights the main indications for testosterone treatment. Table 6 lists the main contraindications against testosterone treatment.

Table 5: Main indications for testosterone treatment

| Delayed puberty (constitutional or congenital forms (HH, Kallmann’s syndrome)) |
| Klinefelter syndrome with hypogonadism                                      |
| Sexual dysfunction and low testosterone                                     |
| Low bone mass in hypogonadism                                                |
| Adult men with low testosterone and consistent and preferably multiple signs and symptoms of hypogonadism following unsuccessful treatment of obesity and comorbidities (listed in Table 3) |
| Hypopituitarism                                                              |
| Testicular dysfunctions and hypogonadism                                     |
| Type 2 diabetes mellitus with hypogonadanism                                 |

Table 6: Contraindications against testosterone treatment

| Locally advanced or metastatic prostate cancer                               |
| Male breast cancer                                                         |
| Men with an active desire to have children                                  |
| Haematocrit > 0.54                                                         |
| Severe chronic cardiac failure/New York Heart Association Class IV          |
5.2 Benefits of treatment

In congenital hypogonadotropic hypogonadism, treatment is usually indicated. In these patients hormonal stimulation with hCG and FSH or alternatively pulsatile GnRH treatment can induce puberty, restore fertility in most cases and normalise bone mineralisation [35, 71, 72]. If active desire to have children is not the focus of treatment after puberty induction, life-long testosterone substitution is recommended [73].

In adult-onset hypogonadism testosterone treatment may improve symptoms, but many hypogonadal men are sick and/or obese, and weight reduction, lifestyle modification and good treatment of comorbidities are more important than just testosterone treatment [74a, 74b].

Testosterone treatment may present several benefits regarding body composition, metabolic control, psychological and sexual parameters. Observational trials show a correlation between restored physiological testosterone levels, muscle mass and strength measured as leg press strength and quadriceps muscle volume [42, 75-77]. Low testosterone levels are common in men with chronic renal failure on haemodialysis and there is also a worsening of prognosis associated to lower testosterone levels. There, is however, a lack of interventions studies evaluating eventual benefits of testosterone therapy in this group of men [78]. Similar positive results are shown in meta-analysis designed to address the value of the role of exogenous testosterone in bone mineral density: it is evident how testosterone therapy improves mineral density at the lumbar spine producing a reduction in bone resorption markers. Available trials failed to demonstrate a similar effect at the femoral neck. At present though, bone mineral density seems to remain a surrogate marker of bone health and there are no RCTs detailing actual bone fracture risk [76, 79-81]. Improvement in bone mineral density and bone structure in men with Klinefelter syndrome has also been reported [82]. Body composition is influenced by testosterone therapy in hypogonadal men, with a consequent decrease of fat mass and an increase in lean body mass [76, 83]. Men with hypogonadism are at an increased risk of having osteoporosis and osteopenia. Young men with testicular dysfunction and men older than 50 years of age with low testosterone should additionally be screened for osteoporosis [84].

Several studies based on testosterone undecanoate, demonstrate a significant reduction in trunk and waist fat with an evident decrease in waist size [85-87]. In the same trials, testosterone undecanoate administration showed an improvement in body weight, body mass index and lipid profile after three months of therapy [85].

A strong correlation between decreased testosterone levels and increased cardiovascular mortality has been reported in meta-analyses and retrospective studies showing that total-testosterone and free-testosterone in the normal range are related moreover to reduced all-cause mortality [88-94]. It is suggested that low testosterone is a biomarker for a poor health condition and as such is a marker for increased risk of cardiovascular disease [95]. Of interest is also the observation that testosterone treatment (transdermal) over a three year period compared to placebo did not cause any change in dynamics of atherosclerotic plaque development in the intima media of the carotids [96].

Sexual dysfunction and testosterone treatment

Sexual dysfunction symptoms are the most predictive determinant sign of potential male hypogonadism: 23 to 36% of men with sexual dysfunction are hypogonadal [97]. Testosterone therapy was shown to moderately increase sexual function in hypogonadal men [98]. In a large RCT, testosterone therapy resulted in a significant improvement of sexual arousal, interest and drive [99]. Two RCTs have reported that testosterone therapy has a benefit on sexual function in men with type 2 diabetes [65, 100]. In a recent meta-analyses of RCTs on testosterone therapy and sexual function, testosterone showed to have a positive influence on sexual function but only in clearly hypogonadal men (T < 8 nmol/L) [66]. Improvement of sexual symptoms will largely depend on the aetiology of the dysfunction: testosterone therapy in men with normal testosterone levels is not very effective, but testosterone therapy may help improve response to PDE5 inhibitors in hypogonadal men [101], although a recent meta analyses of studies with daily PDE5 inhibitors in men with low testosterone showed that PDE5 inhibitors were equally effective in men with low testosterone as in men with normal testosterone [102]. The advantage of the use of PDE5 inhibitors for erectile dysfunction is that these drugs are usually very effective and work fast. In contrast, testosterone treatment for erectile dysfunction may take up to several months to become effective. The use of a PDE5 inhibitor may also increase serum testosterone levels [103].

In a small RCT, testosterone therapy did not improve cognitive functions but had a positive effect on verbal memory and depressive symptoms [104]. Significant improvement of depressive symptoms in men treated with testosterone undecanoate were reported in a recent randomised trial [67]. Meta-analysis of data from randomised placebo-controlled trials has shown a significant positive impact of testosterone on mood [105].
In a recent review it is highlighted that QoL and physical function appears to improve in frail men with low testosterone, when treated with testosterone [46].

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Testosterone treatment may improve symptoms, but many hypogonadal men have a chronic illness and are obese. Weight reduction, lifestyle modification and good treatment of comorbidities can increase testosterone and reduce associated risks for diabetes and cardiovascular diseases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Testosterone treatment can improve body composition, bone mineralisation, signs of the metabolic syndrome, male sexual problems, diabetes regulations, memory and depressive symptoms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A reduction in BMI and waist size, improved glycaemic control and lipid profile are observed in hypogonadal men receiving testosterone treatment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>Recommendations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Improve lifestyle, reduce weight in case of obesity and treat comorbidities before starting testosterone therapy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>In hypogonadal men with erectile dysfunction start with a PDE5-inhibitor as first line treatment and add testosterone in case of a poor response to PDE5i treatment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td>Consider testosterone therapy in hypogonadal men with diabetes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3 **Choice of treatment**

The aim of testosterone treatment is to restore physiological testosterone levels in hypogonadal men [106]. Several preparations are available, which differ in the route of administration, pharmacokinetics and adverse events, and the selection should be a joint decision by both the patient and the physician [107]. Short-acting preparations are preferred to long-acting depot administration in the initial treatment phase, so that any adverse events that may develop can be observed early and treatment can be discontinued if needed [108]. The available agents are oral preparations, intramuscular injections and transdermal gel and patches.

5.3.1 **Preparations**

5.3.1.1 **Testosterone undecanoate**

Testosterone undecanoate (TU) is the most widely used and safest oral delivery system. It rarely causes a rise in testosterone levels above the mid-range and it is therefore infrequently associated with side-effects [106]. In oral administration, resorption depends on simultaneous intake of fatty food. Testosterone undecanoate is also available as a long-acting intramuscular injection (with intervals of up to three months). This long period of action ensures a normal testosterone serum concentration for the entire period, but the relatively long wash-out period may cause problems if complications appear [109]. In the recent IPASS study, a total worldwide sample of 1,438 men was evaluated during nine to twelve months of treatment with injectable TU: TU was effective and well-tolerated, with marked improvements in several psychosexual functions and waist circumference. Adverse events and adverse drug reactions (more common: increase in hematocrit, increase in PSA, and injection site pain) were 12% and 6% respectively, mostly mild to moderate, and with no increase in prostate cancer observed [87].

5.3.1.2 **Testosterone cypionate and enanthate**

Testosterone cypionate and enanthate are available as short-acting intramuscular delivery systems (with intervals of 2-3 weeks) and represent safe and valid preparations. However, these preparations may cause fluctuations in serum testosterone from high levels to subnormal levels, and they are consequently associated with periods of well-being alternating with periods of unsatisfactory clinical response [110, 111]. They are also associated with increased rates of erytrocytosis.

5.3.1.3 **Transdermal testosterone**

Transdermal testosterone preparations are available as 1% or 2% gel. They provide a uniform and normal serum testosterone level for 24 hours (daily interval). Common side-effects are the risk of interpersonal transfer if appropriate precautions are not taken [112, 113]. The topical application of Testosterone 2% to the axillae has been demonstrated to have a safe and effective profile in a multinational open-label clinical study and has been approved in the United States and Europe [114-116]. It should be noted that patients with high BMI may require higher doses since obesity seems to affect the pharmacokinetics of transdermal testosterone preparations [117, 118].
5.3.1.4 Future perspectives

A randomised phase II clinical trial detailing the efficacy and safety of Enclomiphene Citrate (EC) as an alternative to testosterone preparations is available. Enclomiphene Citrate should provide adequate supplementation of testosterone while preventing oligospermia with a sufficient safety profile. At present it is used as an off-label medication for male hypogonadism [119-122].

5.4 Hypogonadism and fertility issues

Exogenous testosterone reduces endogenous testosterone production by negative feedback on the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis. If hypogonadism coincides with fertility issues, hCG treatment should be considered, especially in men with low gonadotropins (secondary hypogonadism). Human chorionic gonadotropin stimulates testosterone production of Leydig cells. Normal physiological serum levels can be achieved with a standard dosage of 1,500-5,000 IU administered intramuscularly or subcutaneously twice weekly. In patients with secondary hypogonadism hCG treatment is combined with FSH treatment (usually 150 IU three times weekly intramuscular or subcutaneous): to induce HCG alone may lead to suppression of FSH (negative feedback of testosterone production).

Human chorionic gonadotropin treatment has higher costs than testosterone treatment. There is insufficient information about the therapeutic and adverse effects of long-term hCG treatment. This type of treatment can therefore not be recommended for long-term treatment of male hypogonadism, except in patients in whom fertility treatment is indicated. Previous testosterone treatment does not seem to affect the efficacy of gonadotropin therapy [71, 73]. Anti-oestrogens and aromatase inhibitors are further options for hypogonadal patients with an active child wish, though evidence is limited [123].

Table 7: Testosterone preparations for replacement therapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Testosterone undecanoate</td>
<td>Oral; 2-6 cps every 6 hours</td>
<td>Absorbed through the lymphatic system, with consequent reduction of liver involvement.</td>
<td>Variable levels of testosterone above and below the mid-range [106]. Need for several doses per day with intake of fatty food.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testosterone cypionate</td>
<td>Intramuscular; one injection every two to three weeks</td>
<td>Short-acting preparation that allows drug withdrawal in case of onset of side-effects.</td>
<td>Possible fluctuation of testosterone levels [110].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testosterone enanthate</td>
<td>Intramuscular; one injection every two to three weeks</td>
<td>Short-acting preparation that allows drug withdrawal in case of onset of side-effects.</td>
<td>Fluctuation of testosterone levels [109, 110].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testosterone undecanoate</td>
<td>Intramuscular; one injection every ten to fourteen weeks</td>
<td>Steady-state testosterone levels without fluctuation.</td>
<td>Long-acting preparation that cannot allow drug withdrawal in case of onset of side-effects [111].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transdermal testosterone</td>
<td>Gel; daily application</td>
<td>Steady-state testosterone level without fluctuation.</td>
<td>Risk of interpersonal transfer [112, 113].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subdermal depots</td>
<td>Subdermal implant every five to seven months</td>
<td>Long duration and constant serum testosterone level.</td>
<td>Risk of infection and extrusion of the implants [106, 124, 125].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.5 Recommendations for testosterone replacement therapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fully inform the patient about expected benefits and side-effects of the treatment option. Select the preparation with a joint decision by an informed patient and the physician.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use short-acting preparations rather than long-acting depot administration when starting the initial treatment, so that therapy can be adjusted or stopped in case of adverse side-effects.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use testosterone therapy in patients with male infertility and active child wish since it may suppress spermatogenesis.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only use human chorionic gonadotropin treatment for hypogonadotrophic hypogonadal patients with simultaneous fertility treatment.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with adult-onset hypogonadism, only prescribe testosterone treatment in men with multiple symptoms and if weight loss, lifestyle modification and good treatment balance of comorbidities have proven unsuccessful.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.6 Risk factors in testosterone treatment

Physicians are often reluctant to offer testosterone treatment especially in elderly men due to the potential risk of this therapy. The most common doubts are represented by the possible consequences on the prostate and cardiovascular risks.

5.6.1 Male breast cancer
Male breast cancer is a rare disease with an incidence of less than 1% of all male cancers [126]. The incidence is higher in men with Klinefelter syndrome. Testosterone treatment is contraindicated in men with a history of breast cancer [31]. Association between testosterone treatment and development of breast cancer is not supported by strong evidence although there are some reports based on small numbers of patients [127].

5.6.2 Risk for prostate cancer
Prostate cancer growth may be influenced by testosterone: studies report that hypogonadism is associated with a lower incidence of prostate cancer, but if prostate cancer occurs in hypogonadal men it usually has an advanced stage and a higher Gleason score [128, 129]. Short-term randomised controlled trials support the hypothesis that testosterone treatment does not result in changes in prostatic histology nor in a significant increase in intraprostatic testosterone and DHT [130, 131]. Observational studies indicate that testosterone therapy does not increase the risk of developing prostate cancer or results in more aggressive prostate tumours [87, 130, 132, 133].

Testosterone treatment is clearly contraindicated in men with advanced prostate cancer. A topic under debate is the use of testosterone treatment in hypogonadal men with history of prostate cancer and no evidence of active disease. So far only studies with a limited number of patients and a relatively short period of follow-up are available and indicate no increased risk for prostate cancer recurrence [134, 135]. According to a recent retrospective study on hypogonadal men with previous history of prostate cancer receiving testosterone following cancer diagnosis, treatment was not associated with increased overall or cancer-specific mortality, but testosterone treatment was more likely to be prescribed in patients undergoing radical prostatectomy for well-differentiated tumours [136]. No randomised placebo-controlled trials are available yet to document its long-term safety in these patients [106]. Symptomatic hypogonadal men who have been surgically treated for localised prostate cancer and who are currently without evidence of active disease (i.e. measurable PSA, abnormal rectal examination, evidence of bone/visceral metastasis) can be cautiously considered for testosterone treatment [137]. In these men, treatment should be restricted to those patients with a low risk for recurrent prostate cancer (i.e. Gleason score < 8; pathological stage pT1-2; pre-operative PSA < 10 ng/ml). It is advised that therapy should not start before one year of follow-up after surgery and patients should be without PSA recurrence [138].

Patients who underwent brachytherapy or external beam radiation (EBRT) for low-risk prostate cancer can also be cautiously considered for testosterone treatment in case of symptomatic hypogonadism with a close monitoring of prostate cancer recurrence [136, 138, 139], although no long-term safety data are available in these patients.

5.6.3 Cardiovascular diseases
There is good evidence that testosterone deficiency, as well as erectile dysfunction, are both independent biomarkers, but not necessarily the cause, of cardiovascular disease and also for all-cause and cardiovascular
Two studies have reported that men with testosterone levels in the upper quartile of the normal range have a reduced number of cardiovascular events when compared to the combined data from the lower three quartiles [141, 142]. The knowledge that hypogonadism and erectile dysfunction are biomarkers of cardiovascular disease demonstrates that patients should be assessed for cardiovascular risk factors and where appropriate referred to cardiology. Individual cardiovascular risk factors (e.g. lifestyle, diet, exercise, smoking, hypertension, diabetes, dyslipidaemia) should be treated in men with pre-existing cardiovascular disease. Their secondary prevention should be optimised as best possible.

Testosterone treatment has also demonstrated in some studies beneficial effects on certain cardiovascular prevention should be optimised as best possible.

Observational studies have reported that testosterone treatment improves survival when compared to men who were not treated [69, 158]. These findings are supported by a large retrospective analysis of 6,355 men treated with testosterone compared to 19,065 non-users which did not demonstrate any increased risk of myocardial infarction with testosterone treatment [159].

The European Medicines Agency (EMA) has stated ‘The Co-ordination Group for Mutual Recognition and Decentralised Procedures - Human (CMDh), a regulatory body representing EU Member States, has agreed by consensus that there is no consistent evidence of an increased risk of heart problems with testosterone medicines in men who lack the hormone (a condition known as hypogonadism). However, the product information is to be updated in line with the most current available evidence on safety, and with warnings that the lack of testosterone should be confirmed by signs and symptoms and laboratory tests before treating men with these medicines.’

A recent comprehensive and detailed meta-analysis of available evaluable randomised placebo-controlled trials concluded that the data did not support a causal role between testosterone treatment and adverse cardiovascular events [89]. There are however no long-term studies or RCTs that provide a definitive answer. Observational studies have reported that testosterone treatment improves survival when compared to men who were not treated [69, 158]. These findings are supported by a large retrospective analysis of 6,355 men treated with testosterone compared to 19,065 non-users which did not demonstrate any increased risk of myocardial infarction with testosterone treatment [159].
Caution should, however, be used in men with pre-existing cardiovascular disease. Firstly, hypogonadism must be carefully diagnosed beyond reasonable doubt. Secondly, if testosterone is prescribed then testosterone levels should not exceed the mid-normal range and the haematocrit should not exceed 0.54 [160]. Testosterone dose adjustment may be required and/or venesection (500 mL) should be considered and repeated if necessary if the haematocrit is greater than 0.54. The haematocrit value of > 54 is based on the increased risk of cardiovascular mortality from the Framingham Heart Study [161], which was recently confirmed in another study [162]. This value is also supported by the known increased risk of thrombosis in the congenital condition of idiopathic erythropoiesis [163]. The majority of patients with cardiovascular disease will be receiving anti-platelet therapy. An electrocardiogram prior to testosterone treatment in the assessment of hypogonadism could be considered.

Two large retrospective studies have not shown any evidence that testosterone treatment is associated with an increased incidence of venous thromboembolism [164, 165]. Venous thromboembolism in one study of men on testosterone treatment reported 42 (38 men) cases, 40 of which had evidence of underlying thrombophilia (which included Factor V Leiden deficiency, prothrombin mutations, homocysteinuria) of which 39 had their condition diagnosed after an event [166]. In addition, high endogenous levels of testosterone and/or oestradiol are not associated with an increased risk of venous thromboembolism [164, 165, 167]. Testosterone treatment is contraindicated in men with severe chronic cardiac failure as fluid retention may lead to an exacerbation of the condition. Some studies including one of twelve months duration have shown that men with moderate chronic cardiac failure (NYHA class III) may benefit from low doses of testosterone, which achieve mid-normal range testosterone levels [75, 168, 169]. If a decision is made to treat hypogonadism in men with chronic cardiac failure it is essential that the patient is followed carefully with clinical assessment and testosterone and hematocrit measurements, on a regular basis. An interesting observation is that testosterone deficiency increased the re-admission and mortality rate in men with heart failure [93].

5.6.4 Obstructive sleep apnoea
There is no consistent evidence correlating testosterone treatment with obstructive sleep apnoea (OSA). There is also no evidence that testosterone treatment can result in the onset or worsening of the condition [170].

5.6.5 Anabolic steroid–induced hypogonadism
Non-prescription anabolic-androgenic steroids (AAS) are used in order to obtain a boost in athletic performances. Use of AAS results in hypogonadotropic hypogonadism by feedback suppression of the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal (HPG) axis via inhibition of pulsatile GnRH release and a subsequent decrease in LH and FSH. The duration of suppression and the resultant symptomatic hypogonadism is highly variable and due to multiple factors, including differences in the choices of drugs, amounts used, and durations of use. After a complete endocrine and metabolic assessment, the condition may be treated with hCG, and selective oestrogen receptor modulators (SERM) [171], until the reproductive endocrine axis has been restored.

5.7 Summary of evidence and recommendations on risk factors in testosterone replacement treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case reports and small cohort studies point to a possible correlation between testosterone treatment and the onset of breast cancer, but there is as yet a lack of strong evidence for this relationship.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Randomised controlled trials support the hypothesis that testosterone treatment does not result in changes in prostatic histology.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recent studies indicate that testosterone treatment does not increase the risk of prostate cancer, but long-term follow-up data are not yet available.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence for a relationship between testosterone treatment and obstructive sleep apnoea.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no substantive evidence that testosterone treatment, when replaced to the normal physiological range, is related to the development of major adverse cardiovascular events.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In hypogonadal men testosterone treatment has been demonstrated to have a positive impact on cardiovascular risks [89].</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform haematological, cardiovascular, breast and prostatic assessment before the start of treatment.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor testosterone, haematocrit, haemoglobin and prostate-specific antigen (PSA) during testosterone treatment.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer testosterone treatment cautiously in symptomatic hypogonadal men who have been surgically treated for localised prostate cancer and who are currently without evidence of active disease (i.e. measurable PSA, abnormal rectal examination, evidence of bone/visceral metastasis); treatment should be restricted to those patients with a low risk for recurrent prostate cancer (i.e. Gleason score &lt; 8; pathological stage pT1-2; pre-operative PSA &lt; 10 ng/mL) and should not start before one year of follow-up.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess for cardiovascular risk factors before commencing testosterone treatment and optimise secondary prevention in men with pre-existing cardiovascular disease.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat men with hypogonadism and either pre-existing cardiovascular disease, venous thromboembolism or chronic cardiac failure who require testosterone treatment with caution by monitoring carefully with clinical assessment, haematocrit (not exceeding 0.54) and testosterone levels maintained as best possible for age within the mid-normal healthy range.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6. FOLLOW-UP

#### 6.1 Monitoring of patients receiving testosterone replacement therapy

Regular follow-up is needed in patients receiving testosterone treatment, as potentially androgen-dependent symptoms and conditions may occur. The side-effects of testosterone treatment are limited, but their incidence and clinical relevance is as yet unclear. The primary aim of testosterone treatment is to alleviate the clinical symptoms of testosterone deficiency. Careful monitoring of changes in the clinical manifestations of testosterone deficiency should therefore be an essential part of every follow-up visit. Effects of testosterone treatment on sexual interest may already appear after three weeks of treatment, and reach a plateau at six weeks [76]. Changes in erectile function and ejaculation may require up to six months [76]. Effects on QoL, and also on depressive mood, may become detectable within one month, but the maximum effect may take longer [76].

#### 6.2 Testosterone level

There are as yet insufficient data to define optimal serum levels of testosterone during testosterone treatment. Expert opinion suggests that testosterone treatment should restore the serum testosterone level to the mid-normal range of specific age groups of men, which is usually sufficient to alleviate various manifestations of hormone deficiency. An optimal monitoring schedule for serum testosterone level is also dependent on the formulation of testosterone used. It is of importance to evaluate symptom regression and lack of response prompts termination of treatment and eventual re-assessment of the diagnosis.

#### 6.3 Bone density

Bone mineral density (BMD) should be monitored only in men whose BMD was abnormal before initiation of testosterone treatment. An increase in lumbar spine BMD may already be detectable after six months of treatment and may continue for three more years [76].

#### 6.4 Haematocrit

It is important to use only minimal or no venous occlusion when taking a blood sample for haematocrit measurements [163]. Elevated haematocrit is the most frequent side-effect of testosterone treatment. The clinical significance of a high haematocrit level is unclear, but it may be associated with hyperviscosity and thrombosis [167]. The effect of erythropoiesis may become evident at three months and peaks at twelve months [76].

#### 6.5 Prostate safety

Testosterone replacement therapy results in a marginal increase in PSA and prostate volume, plateauing at twelve months [76]. Previous fears that testosterone treatment might increase the risk of prostate cancer have been contradicted by a number of meta-analyses [107, 130, 134, 172]. However, there are insufficient long-term data available to conclude that there is safety regarding the development of prostate cancer with testosterone treatment. Prostate monitoring therefore remains indicated. Subjects with substantial or continuous increase of PSA level need to be investigated to exclude prostate cancer.
6.6 Cardiovascular monitoring
Caution should be used in men with pre-existing cardiovascular disease. In men with chronic heart failure, testosterone treatment can result in fluid retention and an exacerbation of the condition [168, 169]. If a decision is made to treat hypogonadism in men with chronic cardiac diseases it is essential that the patient is followed carefully with clinical assessment and testosterone and hematocrit measurements, on a regular basis.

6.7 Recommendations for follow-up

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assess the response to testosterone treatment at three, six and twelve months after the onset of treatment, and thereafter annually.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor testosterone, haematocrit at three, six and twelve months and thereafter annually. Decrease the testosterone dosage or switch testosterone preparation from parenteral to topical or venesection, if haematocrit is above 0.54. If haematocrit remains elevated, stop testosterone and reintroduce at a lower dose once haematocrit has normalised.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess prostate health by digital rectal examination and prostate-specific antigen (PSA) before the start of testosterone replacement therapy (TRT). Follow-up by PSA tests at three, six and twelve months and thereafter annually.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess men with cardiovascular diseases for cardiovascular symptoms before testosterone treatment is initiated and continue close clinical assessment during treatment.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. REFERENCES


150. FDA. Briefing Information for the September 17, 2014 Joint Meeting of the Bone, Reproductive and Urologic Drugs Advisory Committee (BRUDAC) and the Drug Safety and Risk Management (DSaRM) Advisory Committee Meeting. http://www.fda.gov/AdvisoryCommittees/ucm404905.htm


8. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the EAU Male Hypogonadism Guidelines Panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have that might be perceived to be a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publically accessible through the European Association of Urology website: [http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/]. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation, and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Urological Infections

G. Bonkat (Co-chair), R. Pickard (Co-chair), R. Bartoletti, F. Bruyère, S.E. Geerlings, F. Wagenlehner, B. Wullt

© European Association of Urology 2017
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Aim and objectives</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Panel composition</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Available publications</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 Publication history</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. METHODS</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Introduction</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Review</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. THE GUIDELINE</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Classification</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Antimicrobial stewardship</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 Asymptomatic bacteriuria in adults</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1 Evidence question</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2 Background</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.3 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.4 Diagnostic evaluation</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.5 Evidence summary</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6 Disease management</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.1 Patients without identified risk factors</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.2 Patients with ABU and recurrent UTI, otherwise healthy</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.3 Pregnant women</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.3.1 Is treatment of ABU beneficial in pregnant women?</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.3.2 Which treatment duration should be applied to treat ABU in pregnancy?</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.3.2.1 Single dose vs. short course treatment</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.4 Patients with identified risk-factors</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.4.1 Diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.4.2 ABU in post-menopausal women</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.4.3 Elderly institutionalised patients</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.4.4 Patients with renal transplants</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.4.5 Patients with dysfunctional and/or reconstructed lower urinary tracts</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.4.6 Patients with catheters in the urinary tract</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.4.7 Patients with ABU subjected to catheter placements/exchanges</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.4.8 Immuno-comprised and severely diseased patients, patients with candiduria</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.5 Prior to urological surgery</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.6 Prior to orthopaedic surgery</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6.7 Pharmacological management</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.7 Follow-up</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.8 Recommendations for the management of ABU</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 Uncomplicated cystitis</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.1 Introduction</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3 Diagnostic evaluation</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3.1 Clinical diagnosis</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3.2 Differential diagnosis</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3.3 Laboratory diagnosis</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3.4 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of uncomplicated cystitis</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.4 Disease management</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.4.1 Cystitis in pregnancy</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.4.2 Cystitis in men</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.4.3 Renal insufficiency</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.4.4 Recommendations for antimicrobial therapy for uncomplicated cystitis</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.4.5 Follow-up
3.5 Recurrent UTIs
3.5.1 Introduction
3.5.2 Diagnostic evaluation
3.5.3 Disease management and follow-up
3.5.3.1 Behavioural modifications
3.5.3.2 Non-antimicrobial prophylaxis
3.5.3.2.1 Hormonal replacement
3.5.3.2.2 Immunoactive prophylaxis
3.5.3.2.3 Prophylaxis with probiotics (*Lactobacillus* spp.)
3.5.3.2.4 Prophylaxis with cranberry
3.5.3.2.5 Prophylaxis with D-mannose
3.5.3.2.6 Endovesical instillation
3.5.3.3 Antimicrobials for preventing rUTI
3.5.3.3.1 Continuous low-dose antimicrobial prophylaxis and post-coital prophylaxis
3.5.3.3.2 Self-diagnosis and self-treatment
3.5.4 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation and treatment of rUTIs
3.6 Uncomplicated pyelonephritis
3.6.1 Diagnostic evaluation
3.6.1.1 Clinical diagnosis
3.6.1.2 Differential diagnosis
3.6.1.3 Laboratory diagnosis
3.6.1.4 Imaging diagnosis
3.6.2 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of uncomplicated pyelonephritis
3.6.3 Disease management
3.6.3.1 Outpatient treatment
3.6.3.2 Inpatient treatment
3.6.4 Follow-up
3.7 Complicated UTIs
3.7.1 Introduction
3.7.2 Diagnostic evaluation
3.7.2.1 Clinical presentation
3.7.2.2 Urine culture
3.7.3 Microbiology (spectrum and antimicrobial resistance)
3.7.4 General principles of cUTI treatment
3.7.4.1 Choice of antimicrobials
3.7.4.2 Duration of antimicrobial therapy
3.7.5 Recommendations for the treatment of complicated UTIs.
3.8 Catheter-associated UTIs
3.8.1 Introduction
3.8.2 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology
3.8.3 Diagnostic evaluation
3.8.3.1 Clinical diagnosis
3.8.3.2 Laboratory diagnosis
3.8.3.3 Recommendations for diagnostic evaluation of CA-UTI
3.8.4 Disease management
3.8.4.1 Recommendations for disease management and prevention of CA-UTI
3.8.5 Follow-up
3.9 Urosepsis
3.9.1 Introduction
3.9.2 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology
3.9.3 Diagnostic evaluation
3.9.4 Physiology and biochemical markers
3.9.4.1 Cytokines as markers of the septic response
3.9.4.2 Procalcitonin and mid-regional proadrenomedulline

3.9.5 Disease management

3.9.5.1 Prevention

3.9.5.1.1 Preventive measures of proven or probable efficacy

3.9.5.1.2 Appropriate peri-operative antimicrobial prophylaxis

3.9.5.2 Treatment

3.9.5.2.1 Antimicrobial therapy

3.9.5.2.1.1 Recommendations for parenteral antimicrobial therapy of urosepsis

3.9.5.2.2 Source control

3.9.5.2.3 Adjunctive measures

3.10 Urethritis

3.10.1 Introduction

3.10.2 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathogenesis

3.10.3 Diagnostic evaluation

3.10.3.1 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of urethritis

3.10.4 Disease management

3.10.4.1 Recommendations for antimicrobial therapy of Urethritis

3.10.5 Follow-up

3.11 Bacterial Prostatitis

3.11.1 Introduction

3.11.2 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathogenesis

3.11.3 Diagnostic evaluation

3.11.3.1 History and symptoms

3.11.3.2 Symptom questionnaires

3.11.4 Clinical findings

3.11.4.1 Urine cultures and expressed prostatic secretion

3.11.4.2 Prostate biopsy

3.11.4.3 Other tests

3.11.4.4 Additional investigations

3.11.4.4.1 Ejaculate analysis

3.11.4.4.2 Prostate specific antigen

3.11.5 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of bacterial prostatitis

3.11.6 Disease management

3.11.6.1 Antimicrobials

3.11.6.2 Recommendations for the disease management of bacterial prostatitis

3.11.6.3 Intraprostatic injection of antimicrobials

3.11.6.4 Drainage and surgery

3.11.7 Follow-up

3.12 Acute Infective Epididymitis

3.12.1 Evidence question

3.12.2 Epidemiology, Aetiology and Pathophysiology

3.12.3 Diagnostic Evaluation

3.12.4 Disease Management

3.12.5 Evidence Summary

3.12.6 Recommendations for the treatment of acute infective epididymitis

3.13 Fournier’s Gangrene

3.13.1 Introduction

3.13.2 Diagnostic evaluation

3.13.2.1 Microbiology

3.13.3 Disease management

3.13.3.1 Recommendations for the disease management of Fournier’s Gangrene

3.14 Detection of bacteriuria prior to urological procedures

3.14.1 Evidence question

3.14.2 Background

3.14.3 Evidence summary

3.14.3.1 Reagents strip (dipstick) urinalysis

3.14.3.2 Automated microscopy
3.15 Peri-operative antibacterial prophylaxis in urology

3.15.1 Introduction

3.15.2 Risk factors

3.15.3 Principles of antimicrobial prophylaxis

3.15.3.1 Timing

3.15.3.2 Route of administration

3.15.3.3 Duration of the regimen

3.15.3.4 Choice of antimicrobials

3.15.4 Antimicrobial prophylaxis by procedure

3.15.4.1 Diagnostic procedures

3.15.4.2 Endourological treatment procedures (urinary tract entered)

3.15.4.3 Laparoscopic surgery

3.15.4.4 Nephrectomy, adrenalectomy

3.15.4.5 Prostatectomy

3.15.4.6 Cystectomy with bowel use

3.15.4.7 Post-operative drainage of the urinary tract

3.15.4.8 Implantation of prosthetic devices: testis, penile prosthesis and artificial sphincter

3.15.5 Recommendations for peri-operative antibacterial prophylaxis in urology

3.16 Prostate biopsy

3.16.1 Evidence question

3.16.2 Epidemiology, Aetiology and Pathophysiology

3.16.3 Diagnostic Evaluation

3.16.4 Disease Management

3.16.5 Evidence summary

3.16.6 Non-antimicrobial interventions

3.16.7 Antimicrobial prophylaxis

4. REFERENCES

5. CONFLICT OF INTEREST
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim and objectives
The European Association of Urology (EAU) Urological Infections Guidelines Panel has compiled these clinical guidelines to provide medical professionals with evidence-based information and recommendations for the prevention and treatment of urological tract infections (UTIs). These guidelines also aim to address the important public health aspects of infection control and antimicrobial stewardship. Separate EAU guidelines documents are available addressing paediatric urological infections [1] and infections in patients with neurological urinary tract dysfunction [2].

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts. However, following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition
The EAU Urological Infections Guidelines Panel consists of a multi-disciplinary group of urologists, with particular expertise in this area, and an infectious disease specialist. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements, which can be viewed on the EAU website Uroweb: http://uroweb.org/guideline/urological-infections/.

1.3 Available publications
A quick reference document (Pocket Guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices. These are abridged versions, which may require consultation together with the full text version. All documents are accessible through the EAU website Uroweb: http://uroweb.org/guideline/urologicalinfections/.

1.4 Publication history
The Urological Infections Guidelines were first published in 2001. The 2016 document consisted of the first completed sections of an entirely new Urological Infections Guideline formulated following new EAU guideline production methodology. This 2017 document is an amalgamation of the 2015 and 2016 Guidelines and will be updated over the coming year to cover all key clinical questions related to UTIs.

2. METHODS

2.1 Introduction
For the 2017 Urological Infections Guidelines, specific chapters were updated based on systematic reviews of topics or questions prioritised by the Guideline Panel. These reviews were performed using standard Cochrane systematic review methodology, http://www.cochranelibrary.com/ about/about-cochrane-systematicreviews.html.

Systematic review results for the following evidence questions are included in the 2017 Urological Infections Guidelines:

1. What is the most effective management for adults with asymptomatic bacteriuria [3]?
2. What is the best antimicrobial prophylaxis strategy to reduce risk of infectious complication of prostate biopsy [4]?

References used in this text are graded according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [5]. Additional information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/. A list of associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address.

2.2 Review
This document was subject to independent peer review prior to publication in 2015 and 2016.
3. **THE GUIDELINE**

3.1 **Classification**

Different classification systems of UTI exist. Most widely used are those developed by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) [6], Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA) [7], European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases (ESCMID) [8] as well as the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) [9, 10]. Current UTI guidelines frequently use the concept of uncomplicated and complicated UTI with a number of modifications (Figure 1). In 2011 the EAU/EAU Section of Infections in Urology proposed the ORENUC classification system based on the clinical presentation of the UTI, categorisation of risk factors and availability of appropriate antimicrobial therapy [11].

**Figure 1 – Concept of uncomplicated and complicated UTI**

The following classification of UTIs is adopted in the EAU Urological Infections Guidelines:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification of UTI</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uncomplicated UTIs</td>
<td>Acute, sporadic or recurrent lower (uncomplicated cystitis) and/or upper (uncomplicated pyelonephritis) UTI, limited to non-pregnant, pre-menopausal women with no known anatomical and functional abnormalities within the urinary tract or comorbidities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complicated UTIs</td>
<td>All UTIs which are not defined as uncomplicated. Meaning in a narrower sense UTIs in a patient with an increased chance of a complicated course: i.e. all men, pregnant women, patients with anatomical or functional abnormalities of the urinary tract, indwelling urinary catheters, renal diseases, and/or with other concomitant immunocompromising diseases for example, diabetes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recurrent UTIs</td>
<td>Recurrences of uncomplicated and/or complicated UTIs, with a frequency of at least three UTIs/year or two UTIs in the last six months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catheter-associated UTIs</td>
<td>Catheter-associated urinary tract infection (CA-UTI) refers to UTIs occurring in a person whose urinary tract is currently catheterised or has been catheterised within the past 48 hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urosepsis</td>
<td>A systemic, deleterious host response to infection originating from the urinary tract and/or male genital organs. Urosepsis is accompanied by signs of systemic inflammation, presence of symptoms of organ dysfunction and persistent hypotension associated with tissue anoxia.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2 **Antimicrobial stewardship**

Antimicrobial stewardship programmes aim to optimise the outcome of prevention and treatment of infection whilst curbing overuse and misuse of antimicrobial agents [12-16]. Measures of success include regulating antimicrobial prescribing, and reduction in both the rate of healthcare associated infections such as *Clostridium difficile* and the emergence of resistant organisms [16]. In urology, antimicrobial stewardship programmes should include a series of measures to ensure rational, evidence based use of antimicrobials in the prevention and treatment of infections of the urinary tract and male accessory glands, as well as non-antimicrobial strategies. Programmes require a stewardship team approach comprising urologists, infectious diseases
The most important components of antimicrobial stewardship programmes are [14]:

- regular training of staff in best use of antimicrobial agents;
- adherence to local, national or international guidelines;
- regular ward visits and consultation with infectious diseases physicians, with audit;
- treatment outcome evaluation;
- monitoring and regular feedback to prescribers of their antimicrobial prescribing performance and local pathogen resistance profiles.

Several studies in hospital settings have shown that regular ward visits and audit of practice by infectious disease physicians markedly reduce overall use of antimicrobial agents by promoting shorter duration of therapy, earlier step-down to oral medication and avoidance of antimicrobial use when patient outcome is unlikely to be compromised [16, 17]. Studies specific to the urology setting are lacking but a case-control study showed reduction in antimicrobial usage and bacterial resistance in hospitalised urology patients when EAU Guidelines on peri-operative prophylaxis were adhered to, without change in the rate of infectious complications [18].

### 3.3 Asymptomatic bacteriuria in adults

#### 3.3.1 Evidence question

What is the most effective management for people with asymptomatic bacteriuria?

#### 3.3.2 Background

Urinary growth of bacteria in an asymptomatic individual, asymptomatic bacteriuria (ABU), is common, and relates to commensal colonisation [19]. Clinical studies have shown that ABU may protect against superinfecting symptomatic UTI, therefore, treatment of ABU should be performed only in cases of proven benefit for the patient to avoid the risk of selecting for antimicrobial resistance and eradicating a potentially protective ABU strain [20, 21]. The aim of this section is to support the clinician in deciding when ABU should or should not be treated.

#### 3.3.3 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Asymptomatic bacteriuria occurs in an estimated 1-5% of healthy pre-menopausal females, increasing to 4-19% in otherwise healthy elderly females and men, 0.7-27% in patients with diabetes, 2-10% in pregnant women, 15-50% in institutionalised elderly populations, and 23-89% in patients with spinal cord injuries [22]. Asymptomatic bacteriuria in younger men is uncommon, but when detected, chronic bacterial prostatitis must be considered. The spectrum of bacteria in ABU is similar to species found in uncomplicated or complicated UTIs, depending on the presence of risk factors (see sections 3.4 and 3.7).

#### 3.3.4 Diagnostic evaluation

Asymptomatic bacteriuria in an individual without urinary tract symptoms is defined by a mid-stream sample of urine (MSU), showing bacterial growth ≥ 10^5 cfu/mL, in two consecutive samples in women [23] and in a single sample in men [24]. In a single catheterised sample bacterial growth may be as low as 10^2 cfu/mL to be considered representing true bacteriuria in both men and women [22, 25]. Diagnostic work-up should include measurement of residual urine. Cystoscopy and/or imaging of the upper urinary tract is not mandatory if the patient’s medical history is otherwise without remark. If persistent growth of urease producing bacteria, i.e. *Proteus mirabilis* is detected, stone formation in the urinary tract must be excluded [26]. In men, a digital rectal examination (DRE) has to be performed to rule out prostate diseases (see section 3.11).

#### 3.3.5 Evidence summary

A systematic search of the literature from January 2000 to September 2016 identified 2,853 titles of which 218 titles were selected for full text review, 61 of these texts were included in the final review [21, 27-83]. For the subgroups of pregnancy, patients scheduled for urologic surgeries, post-menopausal women and institutionalised elderly patients only data from randomised-controlled trials (RCT) was included, on which a meta-analysis was performed. For the remaining subgroups non-RCTs were also included in a narrative synthesis of the evidence. The following patient populations were not covered by the systematic review: immuno-compromised patients, patients with candiduria, dysfunctional and/or reconstructed lower urinary tracts and patients with indwelling catheters.
3.3.6 Disease management

3.3.6.1 Patients without identified risk factors
Asymptomatic bacteriuria does not cause renal disease or damage [84]. Only one prospective, non-randomised study investigated the effect of treatment of ABU in adult, non-diabetic, non-pregnant women [61], and found no difference in the rate of symptomatic UTIs. Furthermore, as the treatment of ABU has been proven to be unnecessary in high-risk patient subgroups, there is panel consensus that the results of these subgroups can also be applied to patients without identified risk factors. Therefore, screening and treatment of ABU is not recommended in patients without risk factors.

3.3.6.2 Patients with ABU and recurrent UTI, otherwise healthy
One RCT investigated the effect of ABU treatment in female patients with recurrent symptomatic UTI and without identified risk factors [21] and demonstrated that treatment of ABU increases the risk of a subsequent symptomatic UTI episode, as compared to non-treated patients (RR 0.28, 95% CI 0.21 to 0.38; 673 patients). This protective effect of spontaneously developed ABU can be used as part of prevention in female patients with recurrent symptomatic UTI. Therefore, treatment of ABU is not recommended. However, occasionally the eradication of a strain considered the causative agent of recurrent episodes of UTI, may be justified. In men with recurrent symptomatic UTI and ABU, chronic bacterial prostatitis must be considered and, if diagnosed, treated (see chapter 3.11).

3.3.6.3 Pregnant women

3.3.6.3.1 Is treatment of ABU beneficial in pregnant women?
Twelve RCTs comparing antimicrobial treatment of ABU with placebo controls or no treatment [27, 29, 38, 39, 42, 44, 45, 48, 50, 54, 55, 57], with different antibiotic doses and regimens were identified. Eleven RCTs (n=2,002) reported on the rate of symptomatic UTIs [27, 29, 33, 38, 42, 44, 45, 48, 50, 54, 55]. Antibiotic treatment significantly reduced the number of symptomatic UTIs compared to placebo or no treatment (average (RR) 0.20, 95% CI 0.10 to 0.39).

Six RCTs reported on the resolution of bacteriuria [38, 39, 42, 44, 50, 55]. Antibiotic treatment was effective in the resolution of bacteriuria compared to placebo (average RR 2.99, 95% CI 1.65 to 5.39; n=716). Eight RCTs reported on the rate of low birthweights [27, 33, 38, 42, 44, 45, 54, 57]. Antibiotic treatment was associated with lower rates of low birthweight compared to placebo or no treatment (average RR 0.58, 95% CI 0.36 to 0.94; n=1,689). Four RCTs reported on the rate of pre-term deliveries [33, 54, 55, 57]. Antibiotic treatment was associated with lower rate of pre-term delivery compared to placebo or no treatment (average RR 0.34, 95% CI 0.18 to 0.66; n=854).

Based on the beneficial maternal and fetal effects of antibiotic treatment pregnant women should be screened and treated for ABU. However, the panel would like to emphasise that most available studies have low methodological quality and are from the 60’s to 80’s. Diagnostic and treatment protocols and accessibility to medical services has dramatically changed since then; therefore, the quality of evidence for this recommendation is low. In newer studies of higher methodological quality the beneficial effects of antibiotic treatment are not as evident [33]. Therefore, it is advisable to also consult national recommendations for the treatment of ABU in pregnant women.

3.3.6.3.2 Which treatment duration should be applied to treat ABU in pregnancy?
Sixteen RCTs comparing the efficacy of different antibiotic treatments in pregnant women with ABU were identified [28, 32, 34-37, 40, 41, 43, 46, 47, 49, 51-53, 56]. There was significant heterogeneity amongst the studies. Studies compared different antibiotic regimes or the same antibiotic regimens with different durations. The duration of treatment ranged from single dose to continuous treatment (until delivery). For practical purposes the grouping strategy used by the previously published Cochrane Review by Widmer et. al., was adopted with some modifications [85]. The following treatment groups were used for comparison:

1. single dose (single day);
2. short course (2-7 days);
3. long course (8-14 days);
4. continuous (until delivery).

Nine studies compared single dose to short course treatment [28, 34, 35, 40, 41, 46, 47, 49, 53], one study compared single dose to long course treatment [52] and one study compared long course to continuous treatment [56]. As long term and continuous antibiotic treatment is not used in current practice, only studies comparing single dose to standard short course treatment are presented.
3.3.6.3.2.1 Single dose vs. short course treatment

Three RCTs reported on the rate of symptomatic UTIs [34, 40, 46], with no significant difference between the two durations (average RR 1.00, 95% CI 0.58 to 1.71; n=891). Nine RCTs reported on the rate of ABU resolution [28, 34, 35, 40, 41, 46, 47, 49, 53], with no significant difference between the two durations (average RR 0.95, 95% CI 0.90 to 1.01; 1268 women). Six RCTs reported on the rate of side effects [34, 35, 40, 41, 49, 53]. Single dose treatment was associated with significantly less side effects compared to short course treatment (average RR 0.34, 95% CI 0.19 to 0.62; 458 women). Three RCTs reported on the rate of pre-term deliveries [34, 46, 51], with no significant difference between the two durations (average RR 1.15, 95% CI 0.75 to 1.76; 814 women). One RCT reported on the rate of low birthweights [46]. There were significantly more babies with low birthweight in the single dose regimen compared to short course treatment (average RR 1.65, 95% CI 1.06 to 2.57; 714 women).

According to the data analysis, single dose treatment was associated with a significantly lower rate of side effects but a significantly higher rate of low birthweight. Therefore, standard short course treatment should be applied to treat ABU in pregnancy, however it should be emphasised that the overall quality of the scientific evidence backing this recommendation is low.

3.3.6.4 Patients with identified risk-factors

3.3.6.4.1 Diabetes mellitus

Diabetes mellitus, even when well regulated, is reported to correlate to a higher frequency of ABU [86]. One RCT demonstrated that eradicating ABU did not reduce the risk of symptomatic UTI and infectious complications in patients with diabetes mellitus. The time to first symptomatic episode was also similar in both groups. Furthermore, untreated ABU did not correlate to diabetic nephropathy [87]. Screening and treatment of ABU in well-regulated diabetes mellitus is therefore not recommended. However, poorly regulated diabetes is a risk factor for symptomatic UTI and infectious complications.

3.3.6.4.2 ABU in post-menopausal women

Elderly women have an increased incidence of ABU [88]. Four RCTs compared antibiotic treatment of ABU with placebo controls or no treatment, in a post-menopausal female population, with different antibiotic doses and regimens [65-67, 70]. Women in these studies were mostly nursing home residents, which may bias the results of this analysis. Three RCTs reported on the rate of symptomatic UTIs (average RR 0.71, 95% CI 0.49 to 1.05; 208 women) and the resolution of bacteriuria (average RR 1.28, 95% CI 0.50 to 3.24; 203 women) [34, 40, 46], with no significant benefit of antibiotic treatment. Therefore, ABU in post-menopausal women does not require treatment, and should be managed as for pre-menopausal women.

3.3.6.4.3 Elderly institutionalised patients

The rate of ABU is 15-50% in elderly institutionalised patients [89]. Differential diagnosis of ABU from symptomatic UTI is difficult in the multi-diseased and mentally deteriorated patient, and is probably a cause of unnecessary antibiotic treatment [90, 91]. Seven RCTs compared antibiotic treatment of ABU with placebo controls or no treatment in elderly patients, with different antibiotic doses and regimens [63, 65-67, 70, 72, 73].

Three RCTs reported on the rate of symptomatic UTIs [63, 65, 67]. Antibiotic treatment was not significantly beneficial in reducing the rate of symptomatic UTIs compared to placebo or no treatment (average RR 0.68, 95% CI 0.46 to 1.00; 210 patients). Six RCTs reported on the resolution of bacteriuria [63, 65, 67, 70, 72, 73]. There was no benefit of antibiotic treatment compared to placebo in the resolution of ABU (average RR 1.33, 95% CI 0.63 to 2.79; 328 patients). One RCT compared the rates of incontinence in this patient group before and after the eradication of ABU, and found no effect of antibiotic treatment [71]. Therefore, screening and treatment of ABU is not recommended in this patient group.

3.3.6.4.4 Patients with renal transplants

One RCT, one prospective non-randomised and two retrospective studies compared the effect of antibiotic treatment to no treatment in renal transplant patients [74-76, 80]. None of the studies found antibiotic treatment beneficial in terms of reducing the rate of ABU or symptomatic UTIs. Furthermore, there were no significant differences in the rate of graft loss or change in renal function during long-term follow-up [74-76, 80]. Therefore, treatment of ABU is not recommended in renal transplant recipients.

3.3.6.4.5 Patients with dysfunctional and/or reconstructed lower urinary tracts

Patients with lower urinary tract dysfunction (LUTD) (e.g. neurogenic bladder patients secondary to multiple sclerosis, spinal cord injury patients, patients with incomplete bladder emptying, patients with neo-bladder and ileo-cystoplasty, patients using clean intermittent catheterisation (CIC), and patients with ileal conduits, orthotopic bladder replacement and continent reservoirs) frequently become colonised [92, 93]. Studies have shown no benefit in ABU treatment in these patient groups [92, 94]. Furthermore, in LUTD patients who do not
spontaneously develop ABU, deliberate colonisation with an ABU strain (Escherichia coli 83972) has shown a protective effect against symptomatic recurrences [95, 96]. Screening and treatment of ABU in these patient groups is therefore, not recommended. If these patient groups develop recurrent symptomatic UTI (see section 3.5) the potential protective effect of a spontaneously developed ABU against lower UTI must be considered before any treatment.

3.3.6.4.6 Patients with catheters in the urinary tract
Patients with indwelling or suprapubic catheters, and nephrostomy tubes, invariably become carriers of ABU, with antibiotic treatment showing no benefit. This is also applicable for patients with ABU and indwelling ureteral stents [97]. Routine treatment of catheter associated bacteriuria is not recommended. For detailed recommendations see section 3.8.

3.3.6.4.7 Patients with ABU subjected to catheter placements/exchanges
In patients subjected to uncomplicated placement/exchanges of indwelling catheters ABU is not considered a risk factor in itself, and should not be screened or treated [98]. In patients subjected to placement/exchanges of nephrostomy tubes and indwelling ureteral stents, ABU is considered a risk factor for infectious complications [99]. Therefore, screening and treatment prior to the procedure is recommended.

3.3.6.4.8 Immuno-compromised and severely diseased patients, patients with candiduria
These patient groups have to be considered individually and the benefit of screening and treatment of ABU should be reviewed in each case. Patients with asymptomatic candiduria may, but not necessarily, have an underlying disorder or defect. Treatment of asymptomatic candiduria is not recommended in patients with an otherwise uncomplicated medical history [100].

3.3.6.5 Prior to urological surgery
In diagnostic and therapeutic procedures not entering the urinary tract, ABU is generally not considered as a risk factor, and screening and treatment are not considered necessary. On the other hand, in procedures entering the urinary tract and breaching the mucosa, particularly in endoscopic urological surgery, bacteriuria is a definite risk factor.

Two RCTs [78, 81] and two prospective non-randomised studies [82, 83] compared the effect of antibiotic treatment to no treatment prior to transurethral prostate or bladder tumour resection. Antibiotic treatment significantly reduced the number of post-operative symptomatic UTIs compared to no treatment in the meta-analysis of the two RCTs (average RR 0.19, 95% CI 0.05 to 0.82; 167 patients). The rates of post-operative fever and sepsicaemia were also significantly lower in case of antibiotic treatment compared to no treatment in the two RCTs.

A urine culture must therefore be taken prior to such interventions and in case of ABU, pre-operative treatment should be given. The recommendations for antibiotic prophylaxis in different urological procedures are given in section 3.15.

3.3.6.6 Prior to orthopaedic surgery
One RCT and one multicentre cohort study comparing the treatment of ABU with no treatment prior to orthopaedic surgery (hip arthroplasty/hemiarthroplasty or total knee arthroplasty) were identified [101, 102]. None of the studies showed a beneficial effect of antibiotic treatment in terms of prosthetic joint infection. One study measured the rate of post-operative symptomatic UTIs and found no significant difference between antibiotic treatment and no treatment [102]. Therefore, treatment of bacteriuria is not recommended prior to arthroplasty surgery.

3.3.6.7 Pharmacological management
If the decision is taken to eradicate ABU, the same choice of antibiotics and treatment duration as in symptomatic uncomplicated (section 3.4.4.4) or complicated (section 3.7.5) UTI could be given, depending on gender, medical background and presence of complicating factors. Treatment should be tailored and not empirical. Based on clinical experience, if ABU patients complain of odour and mild dysuria, methenamine hippurate 1 g two to three times daily, and/or increased water intake, may be considered.

3.3.7 Follow-up
There are no studies focusing on follow-up after treatment of ABU. However, if the resolution of ABU has a clinical significance (e.g. in pregnancy), follow-up with subsequent urine culture is needed to secure the treatment effect.
3.3.8 Recommendations for the management of ABU

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not screen or treat asymptomatic bacteriuria in the following conditions:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• women without risk factors;</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• patients with well-regulated diabetes mellitus;</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• post-menopausal women;</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• elderly institutionalised patients;</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• patients with dysfunctional and/or reconstructed lower urinary tracts;</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• patients with catheters in the urinary tract;</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• patients with renal transplants;</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• patients prior to arthroplasty surgeries;</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• patients with recurrent urinary tract infections.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen for and treat asymptomatic bacteriuria prior to urological procedures breaching the mucosa.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen for and treat asymptomatic bacteriuria in pregnant women with standard short course treatment.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take a urine culture following treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria to secure treatment effect.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Upgraded based on panel consensus

3.4 Uncomplicated cystitis

3.4.1 Introduction

Uncomplicated cystitis is defined as acute, sporadic or recurrent cystitis limited to non-pregnant, pre-menopausal women with no known anatomical and functional abnormalities within the urinary tract or comorbidities.

3.4.2 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Almost half of all women will experience at least one episode of cystitis during their lifetime. Nearly one in three women will have had at least one episode of cystitis by the age of 24 years [103]. Risk factors include sexual intercourse, use of spermicide, a new sexual partner, a mother with a history of UTI and a history of UTI during childhood. The spectrum of aetiological agents is similar in uncomplicated cystitis and pyelonephritis, with *E. coli* being the causative pathogen in 70-95% of cases and *Staphylococcus saprophyticus* in 5-10%. Occasionally, other Enterobacteriaceae, such as *P. mirabilis* and *Klebsiella spp.*, are isolated [104].

3.4.3 Diagnostic evaluation

3.4.3.1 Clinical diagnosis

The diagnosis of uncomplicated cystitis can be made with a high probability based on a focused history of lower urinary tract symptoms (dysuria, frequency and urgency) and the absence of vaginal discharge or irritation [105, 106]. In elderly women genitourinary symptoms are not necessarily related to cystitis [107].

3.4.3.2 Differential diagnosis

Uncomplicated cystitis should be differentiated from ABU, which is considered not to be infection but rather a commensal colonisation, which should not be treated and therefore not screened for, except if it is considered a risk factor in clearly defined situations see section 3.3.

3.4.3.3 Laboratory diagnosis

Urine dipstick testing is a reasonable alternative to culture for diagnosis of uncomplicated cystitis [108, 109]. Urine cultures are recommended in the following situations:

- suspected acute pyelonephritis;
- symptoms that do not resolve or recur within two to four weeks after the completion of treatment;
- women who present with atypical symptoms [110, 111];
- pregnant women;
- males with suspected UTI.

A colony count of $10^3$ cfu/mL of uropathogens is microbiologically diagnostic in women who present with symptoms of uncomplicated cystitis [112]. Women who present with atypical symptoms of either uncomplicated cystitis or uncomplicated pyelonephritis, as well as those who fail to respond to appropriate antimicrobial therapy should be considered for additional diagnostic studies.
3.4.3.4 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of uncomplicated cystitis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diagnose uncomplicated cystitis based on:</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• a focused history of lower urinary tract symptoms (dysuria, frequency and urgency);</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• the absence of vaginal discharge or irritation, in women who have no other risk factors for complicated urinary tract infections.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use urine dipstick testing, as an alternative to culture for diagnosis of acute uncomplicated cystitis.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urine cultures should be done in the following situations:</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>B*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• suspected acute pyelonephritis;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• symptoms that do not resolve or recur within two-four weeks after the completion of treatment;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• women who present with atypical symptoms;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• pregnant women.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Upgraded based on panel consensus

3.4.4 Disease management

Antimicrobial therapy is recommended because clinical success is significantly more likely in women treated with antimicrobials compared with placebo [113]. The choice of antimicrobial therapy should be guided by [105]:

- spectrum and susceptibility patterns of the aetiological pathogens;
- efficacy for the particular indication in clinical studies;
- tolerability and adverse reactions;
- adverse ecological effects;
- costs;
- availability.

According to these principles and the available susceptibility patterns in Europe, fosfomycin trometamol 3 g single dose, pivmecillinam 400 mg three times a day for three to five days, and nitrofurantoin macrocrystal 100 mg twice daily for 5 days, are considered as drugs of first choice, when available [114-116].

Alternative antimicrobials include trimethoprim alone or combined with a sulphonamide. Co-trimoxazole (160/800 mg twice daily of three days) or trimethoprim (200 mg twice daily for five days) should only be considered as drugs of first choice in areas with known resistance rates for E. coli of < 20% [117, 118]. Despite lower resistance rates in certain countries, fluoroquinolones are not considered first choice because of adverse effects including negative ecological effects and selection for resistance.

Aminopenicillins are no longer suitable for empirical therapy because of worldwide high E. coli resistance. Aminopenicillins in combination with a beta-lactamase inhibitor such as ampicillin/sulbactam or amoxicillin/clavulanic acid and oral cephalosporins are in general not effective as short-term therapy and are not recommended for empirical therapy due to ecological collateral damage, but may be used in selected cases [119, 120].

3.4.4.1 Cystitis in pregnancy

Short courses of antimicrobial therapy can also be considered for treatment of cystitis in pregnancy [121], but not all antimicrobials are suitable during pregnancy. In general penicillins, cephalosporins, fosfomycin, nitrofurantoin (not in case of glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency and during the end of pregnancy), trimethoprim (not in the first trimenon) and sulphonamides (not in the last trimenon), can be considered.

3.4.4.2 Cystitis in men

Uncomplicated cystitis without involvement of the prostate is uncommon, and therefore treatment with antimicrobials penetrating into the prostate tissue is needed in males with symptoms of UTI. A treatment duration of at least seven days is recommended, preferably with trimethoprim sulphamethoxazole or a fluoroquinolone if in accordance with susceptibility testing (see section 3.4.4.4) [122].
3.4.4.3 Renal insufficiency
In patients with renal insufficiency the choice of antimicrobials may be influenced by decreased renal excretion. However, most antimicrobials, have a wide therapeutic index. No adjustment of dose is necessary until glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is < 20 mL/min, except for antimicrobials with nephrotoxic potential, e.g. aminoglycosides. Combination of loop diuretics (e.g. furosemide) and a cephalosporin is nephrotoxic. Nitrofurantoin and tetracyclines are contraindicated, but not doxycycline [122].

3.4.4.4 Recommendations for antimicrobial therapy for uncomplicated cystitis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Daily dose</th>
<th>Duration of therapy</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First choice</strong></td>
<td>Fosfomycin trometamol</td>
<td>3 g SD</td>
<td>1 day</td>
<td>Recommended in women not men.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nitrofurantoin macrocrystal</td>
<td>100 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pivmecillinam</td>
<td>400 mg t.i.d</td>
<td>3-5 days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alternatives</strong></td>
<td>Cephalosporins (e.g. cefadroxil)</td>
<td>500 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>3 days</td>
<td>Or comparable.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>If the local resistance pattern for E. coli is &lt; 20%</strong></td>
<td>Trimethoprim</td>
<td>200 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td>Not in the first trimenon of pregnancy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole</td>
<td>160/800 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>3 days</td>
<td>Not in the last trimenon of pregnancy.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Treatment in men</strong></td>
<td>Trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole</td>
<td>160/800 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>7 days</td>
<td>Restricted to men, fluoroquinolones can also be prescribed in accordance with local susceptibility testing.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SD = single dose; b.i.d = twice daily; t.i.d = three times daily.

3.4.5 Follow-up
Routine post-treatment urinalysis or urine cultures in asymptomatic patients are not indicated [123]. In women whose symptoms do not resolve by end of treatment, and in those whose symptoms resolve but recur within two weeks, urine culture and antimicrobial susceptibility testing should be performed [124]. For therapy in this situation, one should assume that the infecting organism is not susceptible to the agent originally used. Retreatment with a seven day regimen using another agent should be considered [124].

3.5 Recurrent UTIs
3.5.1 Introduction
Recurrent UTIs (rUTIs) are recurrences of uncomplicated and/or complicated UTIs, with a frequency of at least three UTIs/year or two UTIs in the last six months. Although rUTIs include both lower tract infection (cystitis) and upper tract infection (pyelonephritis), repeated pyelonephritis should prompt consideration of a complicated aetiology.

3.5.2 Diagnostic evaluation
Recurrent UTIs are common. Risk factors are outlined in Table 1. Diagnosis of rUTI should be confirmed by urine culture. An extensive routine workup including cystoscopy, imaging, etc. is not routinely recommended as the diagnostic yield is low [125]. However, it should be performed without delay in atypical cases, for example, if renal calculi or outflow obstruction is suspected.
Table 1: Age-related risk factors for rUTI in women [89, 107, 126]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Young and pre-menopausal women</th>
<th>Post-menopausal and elderly women</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sexual intercourse</td>
<td>History of UTI before menopause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of spermicide</td>
<td>Urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A new sexual partner</td>
<td>Atrophic vaginitis due to oestrogen deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A mother with a history of UTI</td>
<td>Cystocele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History of UTI during childhood</td>
<td>Increased post-void urine volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood group antigen secretory status</td>
<td>Blood group antigen secretory status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Urine catheterisation and functional status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Deterioration in elderly institutionalised women</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.5.3 Disease management and follow-up
Prevention of rUTIs includes counselling regarding avoidance of risk factors, non-antimicrobial measures and antimicrobial prophylaxis [124]. These interventions should be attempted in this order. Any urological risk factors must be identified and treated. Significant residual urine should be treated optimally, including clean intermittent catheterisation when judged to be appropriate.

3.5.3.1 Behavioural modifications
A number of behavioural and personal hygiene measures (e.g. reduced fluid intake, habitual and post-coital delayed urination, wiping from back to front after defection, douching and wearing occlusive underwear) have been suggested to decrease the risk of rUTI. However, studies that have explored these risk factors have consistently documented the lack of association with rUTI [124].

3.5.3.2 Non-antimicrobial prophylaxis
There are many non-antimicrobial measures recommended for rUTIs but only a few are supported by well-designed studies [127, 128].

3.5.3.2.1 Hormonal replacement
In post-menopausal women vaginal oestrogen replacement, but not oral oestrogen, showed a trend towards preventing rUTI [127, 129].

3.5.3.2.2 Immunoactive prophylaxis
OM-89 (Uro-Vaxom®) is sufficiently well documented and has been shown to be more effective than placebo in several randomised trials with a good safety profile. Therefore, it can be recommended for immunoprophylaxis in female patients with rUTIs [127, 130-132]. Efficacy in other groups of patients and relative to antimicrobial prophylaxis remains to be established.

The vaginal vaccine Urovac® slightly reduced rUTIs. Primary immunisation followed by booster immunisation increased time to re-infection [127].

3.5.3.2.3 Prophylaxis with probiotics (Lactobacillus spp.)
Pooled data from a recent meta-analysis shows no convincing benefit of lactobacillus products as prophylaxis for rUTI [133]. However, differences in effectiveness between available preparations suggest further trials are needed before any definitive recommendation for or against their use can be made.

3.5.3.2.4 Prophylaxis with cranberry
Limited studies have suggested that cranberry is useful in reducing the rate of lower UTIs in women [134, 135]. However, a meta-analysis including 24 studies and comprising 4,473 participants showed that cranberry products did not significantly reduce the occurrence of symptomatic UTI for women with rUTI [136]. Due to these contradictory results, no recommendation on the daily consumption of cranberry products can be made.

3.5.3.2.5 Prophylaxis with D-mannose
In a randomised placebo-controlled non-blinded clinical trial, it was shown that a daily dose of 2 g D-mannose was significantly superior to placebo and as effective as 50 mg nitrofurantoin in preventing rUTI [137]. This is indicative but not sufficient for a recommendation therefore, D-mannose should at present only be used within the context of clinical investigations.

3.5.3.2.6 Endovesical instillation
Endovesical instillation of hyaluronic acid and chondroitin sulphate have been used for glycosaminoglycan
(GAG) layer replenishment in the therapy of interstitial cystitis, overactive bladder, radiation cystitis, and for prevention of rUTI [138]. A recent review of 27 clinical studies concluded that large-scale trials are urgently needed to assess the benefit of this type of therapy [139]. Therefore, no general recommendation is possible at this stage.

3.5.3.3 Antimicrobials for preventing rUTI

3.5.3.3.1 Continuous low-dose antimicrobial prophylaxis and post-coital prophylaxis

Antimicrobials may be given as continuous low-dose prophylaxis for longer periods (three to six months), or as post-coital prophylaxis, as both regimens reduce the rate of rUTI [140]. It is mandatory to offer both options after counselling, and when behavioural modifications and non-antimicrobial measures have been unsuccessful. Regimens include nitrofurantoin 50 mg or 100 mg once daily, fosfomycin trometamol 3 g every ten days, and during pregnancy cephalexin 125 mg or 250 mg or cefaclor 250 mg once daily [124]. Post-coital prophylaxis should be considered in pregnant women with a history of frequent UTIs before onset of pregnancy, to reduce their risk of UTI [141].

3.5.3.3.2 Self-diagnosis and self-treatment

In patients with good compliance, self-diagnosis and self-treatment with a short course regimen of an antimicrobial agent should be considered [142]. The choice of antimicrobials is the same as for sporadic acute uncomplicated UTI (section 3.4.4.4).

3.5.4 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation and treatment of rUTIs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform an extensive routine workup in women with recurrent UTI without risk factors.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advise patients on behavioural modifications which might reduce the risk of recurrent UTI.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use vaginal oestrogen replacement in post-menopausal women to prevent recurrent UTI.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use immunoactive prophylaxis to reduce recurrent UTI in all age groups.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When non-antimicrobial interventions have failed, continuous or post-coital antimicrobial prophylaxis should be used to prevent recurrent UTI, but patients should be counselled regarding possible side effects.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For patients with good compliance, self-administrated short term antimicrobial therapy should be considered.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.6 Uncomplicated pyelonephritis

Uncomplicated pyelonephritis is defined as pyelonephritis limited to non-pregnant, pre-menopausal women with no known urological abnormalities or comorbidities.

3.6.1 Diagnostic evaluation

3.6.1.1 Clinical diagnosis

Pyelonephritis is suggested by fever (> 38°C), chills, flank pain, nausea, vomiting, or costovertebral angle tenderness, with or without the typical symptoms of cystitis [143]. Pregnant women with acute pyelonephritis need special attention, as this kind of infection may have not only an adverse effect on the mother with anaemia, renal and respiratory insufficiency, but also on the unborn child with more frequent pre-term labour and birth [144].

3.6.1.2 Differential diagnosis.

It is vital to differentiate as soon as possible between uncomplicated and complicated mostly obstructive pyelonephritis, as the latter can rapidly lead to urosepsis. This differential diagnosis should be made by the appropriate imaging technique (see section 3.6.1.4).

3.6.1.3 Laboratory diagnosis

Urinalysis including the assessment of white and red blood cells and nitrite, is recommended for routine diagnosis [145]. In addition, urine culture and antimicrobial susceptibility testing should be performed in all cases of pyelonephritis.

3.6.1.4 Imaging diagnosis

Evaluation of the upper urinary tract with ultrasound (US) should be performed to rule out urinary obstruction or renal stone disease [146]. Additional investigations, such as an unenhanced helical computed tomography
(CT), excretory urography, or dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA) scanning, should be considered if the patient remains febrile after 72 hours of treatment [146]. For diagnosis of complicating factors in pregnant women, US or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) should be used preferentially to avoid radiation risk to the foetus [146].

3.6.2 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of uncomplicated pyelonephritis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform urinalysis (e.g. using a dipstick method), including the assessment of white and red blood cells and nitrite, for routine diagnosis.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform urine culture and antimicrobial susceptibility testing in patients with pyelonephritis.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform ultrasound of the upper urinary tract to exclude obstructive pyelonephritis.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional imaging investigations, such as an unenhanced helical computed tomography should be done if the patient remains febrile after 72 hours of treatment or in patients with suspected complications e.g. sepsis.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.6.3 Disease management

3.6.3.1 Outpatient treatment

Fluoroquinolones and cephalosporines are the only microbial agents that can be recommended for oral empirical treatment of uncomplicated pyelonephritis. However, oral cephalosporines achieve significantly lower concentrations than intravenous cephalosporines. Local fluoroquinolone resistance should be < 10%. Other agents such as nitrofurantoin, fosfomycin, and pivmecillinam should be avoided because these agents do not achieve adequate renal tissue levels [147]. In the setting of fluoroquinolone hypersensitivity or known resistance, other acceptable choices include trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (160/800 mg) or an oral beta-lactam, if the uropathogen is known to be susceptible. If such agents are used in the absence of antimicrobial susceptibility results, an initial intravenous dose of a long-acting parenteral antimicrobial (e.g. ceftriaxone) should be administered.

3.6.3.2 Inpatient treatment

Patients with uncomplicated pyelonephritis requiring hospitalisation should be treated initially with an intravenous antimicrobial regimen such as a fluoroquinolone, an aminoglycoside (with or without ampicillin), an extended-spectrum cephalosporin, an extended-spectrum penicillin, or a carbapenem [148]. The choice between these agents should be based on local resistance patterns and optimised on the basis of drug susceptibility results. In patients presenting with signs of urosepsis empiric antimicrobial coverage for extended-spectrum beta-lactamases (ESBL)-producing organisms is warranted [149]. Patients initially treated with parenteral therapy who improve clinically and can tolerate oral fluids may transition to oral antimicrobial therapy [150].

3.6.3.2.1 Recommendations for empirical oral antimicrobial therapy in uncomplicated pyelonephritis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Daily dose</th>
<th>Duration of therapy</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ciprofloxacin</td>
<td>500-750 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>7-10 days</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Fluoroquinolone resistance should be less than 10 percent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levofloxacin</td>
<td>750 mg q.d</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim sulphamethoxazol</td>
<td>160/800 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>7-14 days</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>If such agents are used empirically, an initial intravenous dose of a long-acting parenteral antimicrobial (e.g. ceftriaxone) should be administered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cefpodoxime</td>
<td>200 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>10 days</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>B*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceftriaxime</td>
<td>400 mg q.d</td>
<td>10 days</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>B*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

b.i.d = twice daily; q.d = every day.
### 3.6.3.2.2 Recommendations for empirical parenteral antimicrobial therapy in uncomplicated pyelonephritis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antimicrobials</th>
<th>Daily dose</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ciprofloxacin</td>
<td>400 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levofloxacin</td>
<td>750 mg q.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cefotaxime</td>
<td>2 g t.i.d</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A*</td>
<td>Not studied as monotherapy in acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceftazidime</td>
<td>1-2 g t.i.d</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A*</td>
<td>Not studied as monotherapy in acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotamoxiclav</td>
<td>1.5 g t.i.d</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Not studied as monotherapy in acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceftriaxone</td>
<td>1-2 g q.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A*</td>
<td>Lower dose studied, but higher dose recommended. Same protocol for acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis and complicated UTI (stratification not always possible).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cefepime</td>
<td>1-2 g b.i.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piperacillin/tazobactam</td>
<td>2.5-4.5 g t.i.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A*</td>
<td>In pregnant women with pyelonephritis, outpatient management with appropriate antimicrobials may also be considered, provided symptoms are mild and close follow-up is feasible [151, 152]. In more severe cases of pyelonephritis, hospitalisation and supportive care are usually required. After clinical improvement parenteral therapy can also be switched to oral therapy for a total treatment duration of seven to ten days. In men with febrile UTI, pyelonephritis, or recurrent infection, or whenever a complicating factor is suspected a minimum treatment duration of two weeks is recommended, preferably with a fluoroquinolone since prostatic involvement is frequent [153].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceftazidime/avibactam</td>
<td>1.5 g t.i.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentamicin</td>
<td>5 mg/kg q.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>In pregnant women with pyelonephritis, outpatient management with appropriate antimicrobials may also be considered, provided symptoms are mild and close follow-up is feasible [151, 152]. In more severe cases of pyelonephritis, hospitalisation and supportive care are usually required. After clinical improvement parenteral therapy can also be switched to oral therapy for a total treatment duration of seven to ten days. In men with febrile UTI, pyelonephritis, or recurrent infection, or whenever a complicating factor is suspected a minimum treatment duration of two weeks is recommended, preferably with a fluoroquinolone since prostatic involvement is frequent [153].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amikacin</td>
<td>15 mg/kg q.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Uncomplicated pyelonephritis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ertapenem</td>
<td>1 g q.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Same protocol for acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis and complicated UTI (stratification not always possible).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imipenem/cilastatin</td>
<td>0.5/0.5 g t.i.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meropenem</td>
<td>1 g t.i.d</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doripenem</td>
<td>0.5 g t.i.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Upgraded based on panel consensus.

b.i.d = twice daily; t.i.d = three times daily; q.d = every day.

In pregnant women with pyelonephritis, outpatient management with appropriate antimicrobials may also be considered, provided symptoms are mild and close follow-up is feasible [151, 152]. In more severe cases of pyelonephritis, hospitalisation and supportive care are usually required. After clinical improvement parenteral therapy can also be switched to oral therapy for a total treatment duration of seven to ten days. In men with febrile UTI, pyelonephritis, or recurrent infection, or whenever a complicating factor is suspected a minimum treatment duration of two weeks is recommended, preferably with a fluoroquinolone since prostatic involvement is frequent [153].

### 3.6.4 Follow-up

Routine post-treatment urinalysis or urine cultures in asymptomatic patients are not indicated, except in pregnant women, if asymptomatic bacteriuria is an issue (see section 3.3.6.3).

### 3.7 Complicated UTIs

#### 3.7.1 Introduction

A complicated UTI (cUTI) occurs in an individual in whom factors related to the host (e.g. underlying diabetes or immunosuppression) or specific anatomical or functional abnormalities related to the urinary tract (e.g. obstruction, incomplete voiding due to detrusor muscle dysfunction) are believed to result in an infection that will be more difficult to eradicate than an uncomplicated infection [154-156]. The underlying factors that are generally accepted to result in a cUTI are outlined in Table 2. The designation of cUTI encompasses a wide variety of underlying conditions that result in a remarkably heterogeneous patient population. Therefore, it is readily apparent that a universal approach to the evaluation and treatment of cUTIs is not sufficient, although there are general principles of management that can be applied to the majority of patients with cUTIs. The following recommendations are based on the Stichting Werkgroep Antibioticabeleid (SWAB) Guidelines from the Dutch Working Party on Antibiotic Policy [157].
Table 2: Factors associated with complicated UTIs [154-156]

| Obstruction at any site in the urinary tract | UTI in males |
| Foreign body | Pregnancy |
| Incomplete voiding | Diabetes |
| Vesicoureteral reflux | Immunosuppression |
| Recent history of instrumentation | Healthcare-associated infections |

3.7.2 **Diagnostic evaluation**

3.7.2.1 **Clinical presentation**
A cUTI is associated with clinical symptoms (e.g. dysuria, urgency, frequency, flank pain, costovertebral angle tenderness, suprapubic pain and fever), although in some clinical situations the symptoms may be atypical for example, in neuropathic bladder disturbances or catheter-associated UTI (CA-UTI). Clinical presentation can vary from severe obstructive acute pyelonephritis with imminent urosepsis to a post-operative CA-UTI, which might disappear spontaneously as soon as the catheter is removed. Clinicians must also recognise that symptoms, especially lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS), are not only caused by UTIs but also by other urological disorders, such as, for example, benign prostatic hyperplasia and autonomic dysfunction in patients with spinal lesions and neurogenic bladders. Concomitant medical conditions, such as diabetes mellitus and renal failure, which can be related to urological abnormalities, are often also present in a cUTI.

3.7.2.2 **Urine culture**
Laboratory urine culture is the recommended method to determine the presence or absence of clinically significant bacteriuria in patients suspected of having a cUTI.

3.7.3 **Microbiology (spectrum and antimicrobial resistance)**
A broad range of microorganisms cause cUTIs. The spectrum is much larger than in uncomplicated UTIs and the bacteria are more likely to be resistant (especially in treatment-related cUTI) than those isolated in uncomplicated UTIs [158, 159]. *E. coli*, *Proteus spp.*, *Klebsiella spp.*, *Pseudomonas spp.*, *Serratia spp.* and *Enterococcus spp.* are the most common strains found in cultures. Enterobacteriaceae predominate (60-75%), with *E. coli* as the most common pathogen; particularly if the UTI is a first infection. Otherwise, the bacterial spectrum may vary over time and from one hospital to another [160].

3.7.4 **General principles of cUTI treatment**
Appropriate management of the urological abnormality or the underlying complicating factor is mandatory. Optimal antimicrobial therapy for cUTI depends on the severity of illness at presentation, as well as local resistance patterns and specific host factors (such as allergies). In addition, urine culture and susceptibility testing should be performed, and initial empirical therapy should be tailored and followed by (oral) administration of an appropriate antimicrobial agent on the basis of the isolated uropathogen.

3.7.4.1 **Choice of antimicrobials**
In the recently updated IDSA guidelines for the treatment of uncomplicated UTI, it is recommended that the resistance percentages of causative micro-organisms must be < 20% to consider an agent suitable for empirical treatment of a lower UTI and must be < 10% for treatment of an upper UTI. Considering the current resistance percentages of amoxicillin, co-amoxiclav, trimethoprim and trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole, it can be concluded that these agents are not suitable for the empirical treatment of pyelonephritis in a normal host and, therefore, also not for treatment of all cUTIs [161]. The same applies to ciprofloxacin and other fluoroquinolones in urological patients [161].

Patients with a UTI with systemic symptoms requiring hospitalisation should be initially treated with an intravenous antimicrobial regimen, such as an aminoglycoside with or without amoxicillin or a second or third generation cephalosporin or an extended-spectrum penicillin with or without an aminoglycoside [157]. The choice between these agents should be based on local resistance data, and the regimen should be tailored on the basis of susceptibility results [147]. These recommendations are not only suitable for pyelonephritis but for all other cUTIs.

In view of the high degree of resistance, particularly among patients admitted to the department of urology, fluoroquinolones are not automatically suitable as empirical antimicrobial therapy, especially when the patient has used ciprofloxacin in the last six months [162]. Fluoroquinolones can only be recommended as empirical treatment when the patient is not seriously ill and it is considered safe to start initial oral treatment or if the patient has had an anaphylactic reaction to beta-lactam antimicrobials.
3.7.4.2 Duration of antimicrobial therapy
Treatment for seven to fourteen days is generally recommended, but the duration should be closely related to
the treatment of the underlying abnormality [7].

3.7.5 Recommendations for the treatment of complicated UTIs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not use amoxicillin, co-amoxiclav, trimethoprim and trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole for empirical treatment of complicated UTI.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the combination of:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• amoxicillin plus an aminoglycoside;</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• a second generation cephalosporin plus an aminoglycoside;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• a third generation cephalosporin intravenously as empirical treatment of complicated UTI with systemic symptoms.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only use ciprofloxacin provided that the local resistance percentages are &lt; 10% when;</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• the entire treatment is given orally;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• patients do not require hospitalisation;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• patient has an anaphylaxis for beta-lactam antimicrobials.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use ciprofloxacin and other fluoroquinolones for the empirical treatment of complicated UTI in patients from the urology department or when patients have used fluoroquinolones in the last six months.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use an initial one-time intravenous dose of a long-acting antimicrobial, such as a third generation cephalosporin or an aminoglycoside if the prevalence of fluoroquinolone resistance is thought to be &gt; 10% and resistance data are pending.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If the prevalence of fluoroquinolone resistance is thought to be &gt; 10% and the patient has contra indications for third generation cephalosporins or an aminoglycoside, ciprofloxacin can be prescribed as an empirical treatment in women with uncomplicated pyelonephritis.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the event of hypersensitivity to penicillin, a third generation cephalosporin can still be prescribed, with the exception of systemic anaphylaxis in the past.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with a UTI with systemic symptoms, empirical treatment should cover ESBL in the initial treatment only in patients who are colonised with ESBL-producing micro-organisms. The resistance pattern of the ESBL strain should guide empirical therapy.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ESBL = Extended-spectrum beta-lactamase.

3.8 Catheter-associated UTIs

3.8.1 Introduction
Catheter-associated UTI refers to UTIs occurring in a person whose urinary tract is currently catheterised
or has been catheterised within the past 48 hours. The urinary catheter literature is problematic as many
published studies use the term CA-bacteriuria without providing information on what proportion are CA-ABU
and CA-UTI, and some studies use the term CA-UTI when referring to CA-ABU or CA-bacteriuria [158]. The
following recommendations are based on the Stichting Werkgroep Antibioticabeleid (SWAB) Guidelines from
the Dutch Working Party on Antibiotic Policy [157] as well as the IDSA Guidelines [158].

3.8.2 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology
Catheter-associated UTIs are the leading cause of secondary health care-associated bacteraemia. Approximately 20% of hospital-acquired bacteraemias arise from the urinary tract, and the mortality associated with this condition is approximately 10% [163]. The incidence of bacteriuria associated with indwelling catheterisation is 3-8% per day [164-168]. The duration of catheterisation is presumable the most important risk factor for the development of a CA-UTI [169, 170]. Urinary catheterisation perturbs host defence mechanisms and provides easier access of uropathogens to the bladder. Indwelling urinary catheters facilitate colonisation with uropathogens by providing a surface for the attachment of host cell binding receptors recognised by bacterial adhesins, thus enhancing microbial adhesion. In addition, the uroepithelial mucosa is disrupted, exposing new binding sites for bacterial adhesins, and residual urine in the bladder is increased through pooling below the catheter bulb [171]. Catheter-associated UTIs are often polymicrobial and caused by multiple-drug resistant uropathogens.

3.8.3 Diagnostic evaluation
3.8.3.1 Clinical diagnosis
Signs and symptoms compatible with CA-UTI include new onset or worsening of fever, rigors, altered mental
status, malaise, or lethargy with no other identified cause, flank pain, costovertebral angle tenderness, acute haematuria, pelvic discomfort and in those whose catheters have been removed dysuria, urgent or frequent urination and suprapubic pain or tenderness [157]. In the catheterised patient, the presence or absence of odorous or cloudy urine alone should not be used to differentiate CA-ABU from CA-UTI [157, 158].

3.8.3.2 Laboratory diagnosis

Microbiologically CA-UTI is defined by microbial growth of ≥ 10^3 cfu/mL of one or more bacterial species in a single catheter urine specimen or in a midstream voided urine specimen from a patient whose urethral, suprapubic, or condom catheter has been removed within the previous 48 hours. In catheterised patients, pyuria is not diagnostic for CA-UTI. The presence, absence, or degree of pyuria should not be used to differentiate CA-ABU from CA-UTI. Pyuria accompanying CA-ABU should not be interpreted as an indication for antimicrobial treatment. The absence of pyuria in a symptomatic patient suggests a diagnosis other than CA-UTI [158].

3.8.3.3 Recommendations for diagnostic evaluation of CA-UTI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not carry out routine urine culture in an asymptomatic catheterised patients.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use pyuria as an indicator for catheter-associated UTI.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use the presence, absence, or degree of pyuria to differentiate catheter-associated asymptomatic bacteriuria from catheter-associated UTI.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use the presence or absence of odorous or cloudy urine alone to differentiate catheter-associated asymptomatic bacteriuria from catheter-associated UTI.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.8.4 Disease management

A urine specimen for culture should be obtained prior to initiating antimicrobial therapy for presumed CA-UTI due to the wide spectrum of potential infecting organisms and the increased likelihood of antimicrobial resistance. The urine culture should be obtained from the freshly placed catheter prior to the initiation of antimicrobial therapy [158].

Seven days is the recommended duration of antimicrobial treatment for patients with CA-UTI who have prompt resolution of symptoms, and two to fourteen days of treatment is recommended for those with a delayed response, regardless of whether the patient remains catheterised or not [158]. A five-day regimen of levofloxacin may be considered in patients with CA-UTI who are not severely ill. Data are insufficient to make such a recommendation about other fluoroquinolones.

A three-day antimicrobial regimen may be considered for women aged ≤ 65 years who develop CA-UTI without upper urinary tract symptoms after an indwelling catheter has been removed. If an indwelling catheter has been in place for twelve weeks at the onset of CA-UTI and is still indicated, the catheter should be replaced to hasten resolution of symptoms and to reduce the risk of subsequent CA-bacteriuria and CA-UTI. If use of the catheter can be discontinued, a culture of a voided midstream urine specimen should be obtained prior to the initiation of antimicrobial therapy to help guide treatment [158].

3.8.4.1 Recommendations for disease management and prevention of CA-UTI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take a urine culture prior to initiating antimicrobial therapy in catheterised patients in whom the catheter has been removed.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not treat catheter-associated asymptomatic bacteriuria in general.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat catheter-associated asymptomatic bacteriuria prior to traumatic urinary tract interventions (e.g., transurethral resection of the prostate).</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace or remove the indwelling catheter before starting antimicrobial therapy.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>B*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not apply topical antiseptics or antimicrobials to the catheter, urethra or meatus.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use prophylactic antimicrobials to prevent catheter-associated UTIs.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The duration of catheterisation should be minimal.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove an indwelling catheter after non-urological operation within the same day.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change long-term indwelling catheters at intervals adapted to the individual patient.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Upgraded based on panel consensus.
3.8.5 **Follow-up**

Routine post-treatment urinalysis or urine cultures in asymptomatic patients are not indicated.

3.9 **Urosepsis**

3.9.1 **Introduction**

Patients with urosepsis should be diagnosed at an early stage, especially in the case of a cUTI. Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), characterised by fever or hypothermia, hyperleukocytosis or leukopenia, tachycardia and tachypnoea, is recognised as the first event in a cascade leading to multi-organ failure (Figure 2). Mortality is considerably increased the more severe the sepsis is.

The treatment of urosepsis involves adequate life-supporting care, appropriate and prompt antimicrobial therapy, adjunctive measures and the optimal management of urinary tract disorders [172]. The decompression of any obstruction and drainage of larger infectious abscess in the urinary tract is essential as first-line focus control [172]. Urologists are recommended to treat patients in collaboration with intensive care and infectious diseases specialists.

Urosepsis is seen in both community-acquired and healthcare associated infections. Nosocomial urosepsis may be reduced by measures used to prevent nosocomial infection, e.g. reduction of hospital stay, early removal of indwelling urethral catheters, avoidance of unnecessary urethral catheterisation, correct use of closed catheter systems, and attention to simple daily aseptic techniques to avoid cross-infection.

Sepsis is diagnosed when clinical evidence of infection is accompanied by signs of systemic inflammation, presence of symptoms of organ dysfunction and persistent hypotension associated with tissue anoxia.

3.9.2 **Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology**

Urinary tract infections can manifest from bacteriuria with limited clinical symptoms to sepsis or severe sepsis, depending on localised and potential systemic extension. It is important to note that a patient can move from an almost harmless state to severe sepsis in a very short time.

Mortality rates associated with severe sepsis vary depending on the organ source [173] with urinary tract sepsis generally having a lower mortality than that from other sources [174]. Sepsis is more common in men than in women [175]. In recent years, the overall incidence of sepsis arising from all sources has increased by 8.7% per year [173], but the associated mortality has decreased, which suggests improved management of patients (total in-hospital mortality rate fell from 27.8% to 17.9% from 1995 to 2000) [176]. Although sepsis due to fungal organisms from some sites has increased and Gram-positive bacteria have become the predominant pathogen overall, Gram-negative bacteria remain predominant in urosepsis [177, 178].

In urosepsis, as in other types of sepsis, the severity depends mostly upon the host response. Patients who are more likely to develop urosepsis include elderly patients, diabetics, immunosuppressed patients, such as transplant recipients and patients receiving cancer chemotherapy or corticosteroids. Urosepsis also depends on local factors, such as urinary tract calculi, obstruction at any level in the urinary tract, congenital uropathy, neurogenic bladder disorders, or endoscopic manoeuvres. However, all patients can be affected by bacterial species that are capable of inducing inflammation within the urinary tract.

3.9.3 **Diagnostic evaluation**

Clinical diagnosis of a UTI is based on symptoms, physical examination, sonographic and radiological features, and laboratory data, such as bacteriuria and leukocyturia. Table 3 details the current criteria for the diagnosis of sepsis and septic shock.
Table 3. Definition and criteria of sepsis and septic shock [179-181]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Systematic inflammatory response</td>
<td>Response to a wide variety of clinical insults, which can be infectious, as in sepsis but may also be non-infectious in aetiology (e.g. burns, or pancreatitis). This systemic response is manifested by two or more of the following criteria:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syndrome (SIRS)</td>
<td>• temperature &gt; 38°C or &lt; 36°C;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• heart rate &gt; 90 bpm;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• respiratory rate &gt; 20 breaths/min or PaCO₂ &lt; 32 mmHg (&lt; 4.3 kPa);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• white blood cell count &gt; 12,000 cells/mm³ or &lt; 4,000 cells/mm³ or &gt; 10% immature (band) forms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sepsis</td>
<td>Life-threatening organ dysfunction caused by a dysregulated host response to infection. For clinical application, organ dysfunction can be represented by an increase in the Sequential [Sepsis-related] Organ Failure Assessment (SOFA) score of 2 points or more. For rapid identification a quickSOFA (qSOFA) score was developed: respiratory rate of 22/min or greater, altered mentation, or systolic blood pressure of 100 mmHg or less.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Septic shock</td>
<td>Septic shock should be defined as a subset of sepsis in which particularly profound circulatory, cellular, and metabolic abnormalities are associated with a greater risk of mortality than with sepsis alone. Patients with septic shock can be clinically identified by a vasopressor requirement to maintain a mean arterial pressure of 65 mmHg or greater and serum lactate level greater than 2 mmol/L (&gt;18 mg/dL) in the absence of hypovolemia.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.9.4 Physiology and biochemical markers

_E. coli_ remains the most prevalent microorganism. In several countries, bacterial strains can be resistant or multi-resistant and therefore difficult to treat [178]. Most commonly, the condition develops in compromised patients (e.g. those with diabetes or immunosuppression), with typical signs of generalised sepsis associated with local signs of infection.

3.9.4.1 Cytokines as markers of the septic response

Cytokines are involved in the pathogenesis of sepsis syndrome [174]. They are molecules that regulate the amplitude and duration of the host inflammatory response. They are released from various cells including monocytes, macrophages and endothelial cells, in response to various infectious stimuli. The complex balance between pro- and anti-inflammatory responses is modified in severe sepsis. An immunosuppressive phase follows the initial pro-inflammatory mechanism. Sepsis may indicate an immune system that is severely compromised and unable to eradicate pathogens or a non-regulated and excessive activation of inflammation, or both. Genetic predisposition is a probable explanation of sepsis in several patients. Mechanisms of organ failure and death in patients with sepsis remain only partially understood [174].

3.9.4.2 Procalcitonin and mid-regional proadrenomedulline

Procalcitonin is the inactive pro-peptide of calcitonin. Normally, levels are undetectable in healthy humans. During severe generalised infections (bacterial, parasitic and fungal) with systemic manifestations, procalcitonin levels rise [182]. In contrast, during severe viral infections or inflammatory reactions of non-infectious origin, procalcitonin levels show only a moderate or no increase. Mid-regional proadrenomedulline is another sepsis marker. Mid-regional proadrenomedullin has been shown to play a decisive role in the induction of hyperdynamic circulation during the early stages of sepsis and progression to septic shock [183]. Procalcitonin monitoring may be useful in patients likely to develop sepsis and to differentiate from a severe inflammatory status not due to bacterial infection [182, 184]. In addition serum lactate is a marker of organ dysfunction and is associated with mortality in sepsis [185]. Serum lactate should therefore also be monitored in patients with severe infections.
3.9.5  **Disease management**

3.9.5.1  **Prevention**

Septic shock is the most frequent cause of death for patients hospitalised for community-acquired and nosocomial infection (20-40%). Urosepsis treatment requires a combination of treatment including treatment of the cause (obstruction of the urinary tract), adequate life-support care, and appropriate antimicrobial therapy [174]. In such a situation, it is recommended that urologists collaborate with intensive care and infectious disease specialists for the best management of the patient.

3.9.5.1.1 Preventive measures of proven or probable efficacy

The most effective methods to prevent nosocomial urosepsis are the same as those used to prevent other nosocomial infections [186, 187] they include:

- Isolation of all patients infected with multi-resistant organisms to avoid cross-infection.
- Prudent use of antimicrobial agents for prophylaxis and treatment of established infections, to avoid selection of resistant strains. Antibiotic agents should be chosen according to the predominant pathogens at a given site of infection in the hospital environment.
- Reduction in hospital stay, it is well known that long inpatient periods before surgery lead to a greater incidence of nosocomial infections.
- Early removal of indwelling urethral catheters, as soon as allowed by the patient's condition. Nosocomial UTIs are promoted by bladder catheterisation as well as by ureteral stenting [188]. Antibiotic prophylaxis does not prevent stent colonisation, which appears in 100% of patients with a permanent ureteral stent and in 70% of those temporarily stented.
- Use of closed catheter drainage and minimisation of breaks in the integrity of the system, e.g. for urine sampling or bladder wash-out.
- Use of least-invasive methods to release urinary tract obstruction until the patient is stabilised.
- Attention to simple everyday techniques to assure asepsis, including the routine use of protective disposable gloves, frequent hand disinfection, and using infectious disease control measures to prevent cross-infections.

3.9.5.1.2 Appropriate peri-operative antimicrobial prophylaxis

For appropriate peri-operative antimicrobial prophylaxis see section 3.15. The potential side-effects of antibiotics must be considered before their administration in a prophylactic regimen.

3.9.5.2  **Treatment**

During the first six hours of resuscitation, the goals of initial resuscitation of sepsis-induced hypoperfusion should include all of the following:

- central venous pressure (CVP) 8-12 mmHg;
- mean arterial pressure (MAP) 65-90 mmHg;
- central venous oxygen (CVO2) > 70%;
- haematocrit (HKT) > 30 %;
- urine output > 0.5 mL/kg/hr.

Early goal-directed resuscitation was initially shown to improve survival for emergency department patients presenting with septic shock in a randomised, controlled, single-centre study [189]. However, recent follow up studies in an improved emergency medicine background have not achieved positive effects with this strategy [190-192].

3.9.5.2.1 Antimicrobial therapy

Initial empiric antimicrobial therapy should provide broad antimicrobial coverage against all likely causative pathogens and should be adapted on the basis of culture results, once available [172]. The dosage of the antimicrobial substances is of paramount importance in patients with sepsis syndrome and should generally be high, with the exception of patients in renal failure [172]. Antimicrobials must be administered no later than one hour after clinical assumption of sepsis (Figure 2) [172].
3.9.5.2.1.1 Recommendations for parenteral antimicrobial therapy of urosepsis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antimicrobials</th>
<th>Daily dose</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cefotaxime</td>
<td>2 g t.i.d</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A*</td>
<td>Not studied as monotherapy in acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceftazidime</td>
<td>1-2 g t.i.d</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceftriaxone</td>
<td>1-2 g q.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A*</td>
<td>Lower dose studied, but higher dose recommended. Same protocol for acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis and complicated UTI (stratification not always possible).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cefepime</td>
<td>1-2 g b.i.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piperacillin/tazobactam</td>
<td>2.5-4.5 g t.i.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceftolozane/tazobactam</td>
<td>1.5 g t.i.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceftazidime/avibactam</td>
<td>2.5 g t.i.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentamicin</td>
<td>5 mg/kg q.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Not studied as monotherapy in acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amikacin</td>
<td>15 mg/kg q.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>uncomplicated pyelonephritis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ertapenem</td>
<td>1 g q.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imipenem/cilastatin</td>
<td>0.5/0.5 g t.i.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Same protocol for acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis and complicated UTI (stratification not always possible).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meropenem</td>
<td>1 g t.i.d</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doripenem</td>
<td>0.5 g t.i.d</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Upgraded based on panel consensus.

b.i.d = twice daily; t.i.d = three times daily; q.d = every day.

3.9.5.2.2 Source control

Drainage of any obstruction in the urinary tract and removal of foreign bodies, such as urinary catheters or stones, should lead to resolution of symptoms and recovery. These are key components of the strategy. This condition is an absolute emergency.

3.9.5.2.3 Adjunctive measures

The most important adjunctive measures in the management of sepsis are the following [172]:

- fluid therapy with crystalloids, or albumin, if crystalloids are not adequately increasing blood pressure;
- as vasopressors norepinephrine should be used primarily, dobutamine in myocardial dysfunction;
- hydrocortisone should be given only if fluid and vasopressors do not achieve a mean arterial pressure of ≥ 65 mmHg;
- blood products should be given to target a haemoglobin level of 7-9 g/dL;
- mechanical ventilation should be applied with a tidal volume 6 ml/kg and plateau pressure ≤ 30 cm H₂O and a high positive end-expiratory pressure;
- sedation should be given minimally, neuromuscular blocking agents should be avoided;
- glucose levels should be target at ≤ 180 mg/dL;
- deep vein thrombosis prevention should be given with low-molecular weight heparin subcutaneously;
- stress ulcer prophylaxis should be applied in patients at risk, using proton pump inhibitors;
- enteral nutrition should be started early (< 48 hours).

In conclusion, sepsis syndrome in urology remains a severe situation with a considerable mortality rate. A recent campaign, ‘Surviving Sepsis Guidelines’, aims to reduce mortality by 25% in the next years [172, 193]. Early recognition of the symptoms may decrease the mortality by timely treatment of urinary tract disorders, e.g. obstruction, or urolithiasis. Adequate life-support measures and appropriate antimicrobial treatment provide the best conditions for improving patient survival. The prevention of sepsis syndrome is dependent on good practice to avoid nosocomial infections and using antimicrobial prophylaxis and therapy in a prudent and well-accepted manner.
3.10 Urethritis

3.10.1 Introduction

Inflammation of the urethra presents usually with symptoms of the LUT and must be distinguished from other infections of the LUT. The following recommendations are based on a review of several European national guidelines and are aligned with the CDC’s guidelines on sexual transmitted diseases (STDs) [194-197].

3.10.2 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathogenesis

From a therapeutic and clinical point of view, gonorrhoeal urethritis (GU) must be differentiated from non-gonococcal urethritis (NGU). Infection is spread by sexual contact. Causative pathogens include Neisseria gonorrhoeae (NG), Chlamydia trachomatis (CT), Mycoplasma genitalium (MG), Trichomonas vaginalis (TV), and Ureaplasma urealyticum (UU) [198-203]. In a study of 367 patients with NGU isolated causative pathogens were: CT in 22.3%, MG in 12.5%, TV in 2.5%, and UU in 24.0%, with multiple pathogens detected in 9.5% and no aetiology in 29.2% [198]. There is limited evidence to support the role of Mycoplasma hominis in urethritis [204, 205].

Causative agents either remain extracellularly on the epithelial layer or penetrate into the epithelium (N. gonorrhoeae and C. trachomatis) and cause pyogenic infection. Although arising from urethritis, chlamydiae and gonococci can spread further through the urogenital tract to cause epididymitis in men or cervicitis, endometritis and salpingitis in women [206-208].

Mucopurulent or purulent discharge, alguria, dysuria and urethral pruritus are symptoms of urethritis. However, many infections of the urethra are asymptomatic.

3.10.3 Diagnostic evaluation

A Gram stain of urethral discharge or a urethral smear that shows more than five leukocytes per high power
field (× 1,000) and eventually, gonococci located intracellularly as Gram-negative diplococci, indicate pyogenic urethritis [209]. Laboratories should use validated nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) to detect chlamydia and gonorrhoea, in first void urine samples, as they are better than any of the other tests available for the diagnosis of chlamydial and gonococcal infections [210]. N. gonorrhoeae and chlamydia cultures are mainly to evaluate treatment failures and monitor developing resistance to current treatment.

In all patients with urethritis, and when sexual transmission is suspected, the aim should be to identify the pathogenic organisms. Trichomonas spp. can usually be identified microscopically [208].

### 3.10.3.1 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of urethritis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use a gram stain of urethral discharge or a urethral smear to preliminarily diagnosis pyogenic urethritis.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use a validated nucleic acid amplification tests to diagnosis chlamydial and gonococcal infections.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.10.4 Disease management

Broad spectrum empirical antibiotic therapy may be started on presentation followed by antibiotic treatment refinement according to the results of microbiological investigations.

### 3.10.4.1 Recommendations for antimicrobial therapy of Urethritis [211, 212]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathogen</th>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Dosage &amp; Duration of therapy</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Alternative regimens</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gonococcal Infection</strong></td>
<td>Ceftriaxone</td>
<td>1 g i.m., SD</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Cefixime 400 mg p.o., SD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Azithromycin</td>
<td>1-1.5 g p.o., SD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Or Azithromycin 1-1.5 g p.o., SD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cefixime</td>
<td>800 mg p.o., SD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-Gonococcal infection (non-identified pathogen)</strong></td>
<td>Doxycycline</td>
<td>100 mg b.i.d, p.o., 7-10 days</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Azithromycin 0.5 g p.o., day 1, 250 mg p.o., days 2-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chlamydia trachomatis</strong></td>
<td>Azithromycin</td>
<td>1.0-1.5 g p.o., SD</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Doxycycline 100 mg b.i.d, p.o., for 7 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mycoplasma genitalium</strong></td>
<td>Azithromycin</td>
<td>0.5 g p.o., day 1, 250 mg p.o., day 2-5</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Moxifloxacin 400 mg q.d., 5 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ureaplasma urealyticum</strong></td>
<td>Doxycycline</td>
<td>100 mg b.i.d, p.o., 7 days</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Azithromycin 1.0-1.5 g p.o., single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trichomonas vaginalis</strong></td>
<td>Metronidazole</td>
<td>2 g p.o., SD</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>In case of persistence 4 g daily for 3-5 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*SD = single dose; b.i.d = twice daily; q.d = everyday; p.o. = orally, i.m. = intramuscular.*

### 3.10.5 Follow-up

Patients should be followed-up for control of eradication or if symptoms persist or recur after completion of therapy. Patients should be instructed to abstain from sexual intercourse for seven days after therapy is initiated, provided their symptoms have resolved and their sexual partners have been adequately treated. Reporting and source tracing should be done in accordance with national guidelines and in co-operation with specialists in venereology, whenever required. Persons who have been diagnosed with a new STD should receive testing for other STDs, including syphilis and HIV.

### 3.11 Bacterial Prostatitis

#### 3.11.1 Introduction

Bacterial prostatitis is a clinical condition caused by bacterial infection of the prostate gland. It is...
recommended that urologists use the classification suggested by the National Institute of Diabetes, Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK) of the National Institutes of Health (NIH), in which bacterial prostatitis, with confirmed or suspected infection, is distinguished from chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CPPS) (Table 4) [213-215].

Table 4: Classification of prostatitis and CPPS according to NIDDK/NIH [213-215]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name and description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Acute bacterial prostatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Chronic bacterial prostatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Chronic abacterial prostatitis – chronic pelvic pain syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>Inflammatory chronic pelvic pain syndrome (white cells in semen/expressed prostatic secretion/voided bladder urine 3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Non-inflammatory chronic pelvic pain syndrome (no white cells in semen/expressed prostatic secretion/voided bladder urine 3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Asymptomatic inflammatory prostatitis (histological prostatitis)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.11.2 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathogenesis

A causative pathogen is detected by routine methods in only 5-10% of cases [216], antimicrobial therapy in these patients therefore, has a rational basis [217, 218]. The remainder of patients are treated empirically with numerous medical and physical modalities. However, recent improvement in classification and application of modern methods, including molecular biology, should allow proper systematisation of treatment [218, 219]. Enterobacteriaceae, especially *E. coli*, are the predominant pathogens in acute bacterial prostatitis [220]. In chronic bacterial prostatitis, the spectrum of strains is wider [218]. In patients with immune deficiency or HIV infection, prostatitis may be caused by fastidious pathogens, such as *M. tuberculosis*, *Candida sp.* and rare pathogens, such as *Coccidioides immitis*, *Blastomyces dermatitidis*, and *Histoplasma capsulatum* [221]. The significance of intracellular bacteria, such as *C. trachomatis*, is uncertain [222] however, two studies have highlighted its role as a causative pathogen in chronic bacterial prostatitis [223, 224].

3.11.3 Diagnostic evaluation

3.11.3.1 History and symptoms

According to the duration of symptoms, bacterial prostatitis is described as either acute or chronic, the latter being defined by symptoms that persist for at least three months [225-227]. The predominant symptoms are pain at various locations (Table 5) and LUTS such as a frequent need to urinate, difficulty urinating e.g. weak stream, straining and pain on urination, or that increases during urination [213-215]. Chronic bacterial prostatitis is the most frequent cause of rUTI in men [228].

Table 5: Localisation of pain in patients with prostatitis like symptoms [215]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site of pain</th>
<th>Percentage of patients</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prostate/perineum</td>
<td>46%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scrotum and/or testes</td>
<td>39%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penis</td>
<td>6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary bladder</td>
<td>6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower back</td>
<td>2%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.11.3.2 Symptom questionnaires

Symptoms appear to have a strong basis for use as a classification parameter in bacterial prostatitis [229]. Prostatitis symptom questionnaires have therefore been developed for the quantification of symptoms [229, 230]. They include the Chronic Prostatitis Symptom Index (CPSI), which was recently developed by the International Prostatitis Collaborative Network (IPCN), initiated by the NIH [231]. The questionnaire contains four questions regarding pain or discomfort, two regarding urination, and three related to quality of life.

3.11.4 Clinical findings

In acute prostatitis, the prostate may be swollen and tender on DRE. Prostatic massage is contraindicated. Otherwise, the prostate is usually normal on palpation. In case of lasting symptoms (“chronic prostatitis” symptoms) CPPS as well as other urogenital and ano-rectal disorders must be taken into consideration. Symptoms of chronic prostatitis or CPPS can mask prostate tuberculosis. Pyospermia and haematospermia in
men in endemic regions or with a history of tuberculosis should prompt investigation for urogenital tuberculosis [218].

3.11.4.1 Urine cultures and expressed prostatic secretion
The most important investigation in the evaluation of a patient with acute prostatitis is MSU culture [232]. If the patient presents with clinical signs suggestive of blood-stream infection, a blood culture should be taken following local protocols. In chronic bacterial prostatitis, quantitative bacteriological localisation cultures and microscopy of the segmented urine and of expressed prostatic secretion (EPS), as described by Meares and Stamey [217] are important investigations.

3.11.4.2 Prostate biopsy
Perineal biopsies cannot be recommended as routine work-up and should be reserved only for research purposes. Transrectal prostate biopsy is not advisable in bacterial prostatitis [232].

3.11.4.3 Other tests
Transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) may reveal intraprostatic abscesses, calcification in the prostate, and dilatation of the seminal vesicles but is unreliable and cannot be used as a diagnostic tool in prostatitis [233].

3.11.4.4 Additional investigations
3.11.4.4.1 Ejaculate analysis
An analysis of the ejaculate is not recommended for microbiological investigation due to the low sensitivity and specificity compared to the two or three-glass tests [232]. Ejaculate analysis is however frequently involved as part of the investigation of a generalised male accessory gland infection. Bladder outflow and urethral obstruction should always be considered and ruled out by uroflowmetry, retrograde urethrography, or endoscopy.

3.11.4.4.2 Prostate specific antigen
Prostate specific antigen (PSA) is often increased in acute bacterial prostatitis and other urogenital infections. If a patient has elevated PSA and evidence of prostatic inflammation, serum PSA will normalise after antimicrobial treatment of four weeks in about 50% of patients [234]. A delay of at least three months should be allowed before it can be assumed that a stable level of PSA has been reached. Measurement of free and total PSA adds no practical diagnostic information in prostatitis [235].

3.11.5 Recommendations for the diagnostic evaluation of bacterial prostatitis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform digital rectal examination to assess the condition of the prostate.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take a mid-stream urine culture in patients with acute prostatitis-related symptoms for diagnosis and targeted treatment planning.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform the Meares and Stamey four-glass test in patients with chronic bacterial prostatitis.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accurate microbiological evaluation for atypical pathogens such as Chlamydia trachomatis or Mycoplasma is recommended in patients with chronic bacterial prostatitis.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform transrectal ultrasound only in selected cases to rule out the presence of prostatic abscess, calcification in the prostate and dilatation of the seminal vesicles.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ejaculate analysis and prostate specific antigen measurement should not be performed as routine, due to the high number of false positive results.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.11.6 Disease management
3.11.6.1 Antimicrobials
Antimicrobials are life-saving in acute bacterial prostatitis and recommended in chronic bacterial prostatitis.

Acute bacterial prostatitis is a serious infection with fever and intense localised and general pain. Parenteral administration of high doses of bactericidal antimicrobials, such as a broad-spectrum penicillin, a third-generation cephalosporin or a fluoroquinolone, is recommended [232]. For initial therapy, any of these antimicrobials may be combined with an aminoglycoside [218, 232]. After defervescence and normalisation of infection parameters, oral therapy can be substituted in and continued for a total of two to four weeks [236].

Fluoroquinolones, such as ciprofloxacin and levofloxacin, are considered drugs of choice because of their favourable pharmacokinetic properties [237], their generally good safety profile, and antibacterial activity against Gram-negative pathogens, including Pseudomonas aeruginosa. In addition, levofloxacin is
active against Gram-positive and atypical pathogens, such as C. trachomatis and genital mycoplasmas.

The duration of antimicrobial treatment is based on clinical experience [238]. In chronic bacterial prostatitis antimicrobials should be given for four to six weeks after initial diagnosis [218, 232]. Relatively high doses are needed and oral therapy is preferred [237, 238]. If intracellular bacteria have been detected or are suspected, tetracyclines or erythromycin should be given [237, 239].

3.11.6.2 Recommendations for the disease management of bacterial prostatitis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antimicrobial</th>
<th>Daily dose</th>
<th>Duration of therapy</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acute febrile bacterial prostatitis with symptoms and fever</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levofloxacin</td>
<td>500 mg q.d</td>
<td>All parental treatment should be given until defervescence</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>All of these antimicrobials can be administered in conjunction with aminoglycosides e.g. Gentamicin 5 mg/kg q.d or Amikacin 15 mg/kg q.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceftriaxone</td>
<td>2 g q.d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piperacillin/ tazobactam</td>
<td>4.5 g t.i.d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cefepime</td>
<td>2 g b.i.d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute afebrile bacterial prostatitis with symptoms or after defervescence</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levofloxacin</td>
<td>500 mg q.d</td>
<td>2-4 weeks</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ciprofloxacin</td>
<td>500 mg b.i.d or 1000 mg p.d</td>
<td>2-4 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim</td>
<td>200 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>2-4 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co-trimoxazole</td>
<td>960 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>2-4 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doxycycline</td>
<td>100 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>10 days</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Only for Chlamydia trachomatis or mycoplasma infections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic bacterial prostatitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levofloxacin</td>
<td>500 mg q.d</td>
<td>4-6 weeks</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ciprofloxacin</td>
<td>500 mg b.i.d or 1000 mg q.d</td>
<td>4-6 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim</td>
<td>200 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>4-6 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co-trimoxazole</td>
<td>960 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>4-6 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doxycycline</td>
<td>100 mg b.i.d</td>
<td>10 days</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Only for Chlamydia trachomatis or mycoplasma infections.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b.i.d = twice daily; t.i.d = three times daily; q.d = every day.

3.11.6.3 Intraprostatic injection of antimicrobials

This treatment has not been evaluated in controlled trials and should not be considered [240, 241].

3.11.6.4 Drainage and surgery

Approximately 10% of men with acute prostatitis will experience urinary retention [242] which can be managed by suprapubic, intermittent or indwelling catheterisation. Suprapubic cystostomy placement is generally recommended. The use of catheterisation without evidence of retention may increase the risk of progression to chronic prostatitis [243]. Alpha-blocker treatment has also been recommended, but clinical evidence of benefit is poor [218, 232].

In case of prostatic abscess, both drainage and conservative treatment strategies appear feasible [244]. The size may matter. In one study conservative treatment was successful if the abscess cavities were < 1 cm in diameter, while larger abscesses were better treated by single aspiration or continuous drainage [245].

3.11.7 Follow-up

In asymptomatic post-treatment patients routine urinalysis and/or urine culture is not mandatory. The Meares and Stamey four-glass test should be repeated in patients representing with persistent symptoms. In patients with persistent symptoms and repeated positive microbiological results for sexually transmitted infectious pathogens, microbiological screening of the patients partner(s) is recommended [218, 232].

3.12 Acute Infective Epididymitis

3.12.1 Evidence question

In men with acute epididymitis what is the best antimicrobial treatment strategy for clinical resolution and eradication of the causative pathogen?
3.12.2 Epidemiology, Aetiology and Pathophysiology

Epididymitis is a common condition with incidence ranging from 25 to 65 cases per 10,000 adult males per year and can be acute, chronic or recurrent [246]. Acute epididymitis is clinically characterised by pain, swelling and increased temperature of the epididymis, which may involve the testis and scrotal skin. It is generally caused by migration of pathogens from the urethra or bladder. Torsion of the spermatic cord (testicular torsion) is the most important differential diagnosis in boys and young men.

The predominant pathogens isolated are C. trachomatis, Enterobacteriaceae (typically E. coli) and N. gonorrhoeae [247]. Men who have anal intercourse and those with abnormalities of the urinary tract resulting in bacteriuria are at higher risk of epididymitis caused by Enterobacteriaceae. The mumps virus should be considered if there are viral prodromal symptoms and salivary gland enlargement. Tuberculous epididymitis may occur in high-risk groups such as men with immunodeficiency and those from high prevalence countries, it frequently results in a discharging scrotal sinus. Brucella or Candida species are rare possible pathogens.

3.12.3 Diagnostic Evaluation

Culture of a mid-stream specimen of urine should be performed and any previous urine culture results should be checked. Sexually transmitted infection with C. trachomatis or N. gonorrhoeae should be detected by NAAT on first voided urine. A urethral swab or smear should be performed for Gram staining and culture if N. gonorrhoeae is likely. Detection of these pathogens should be reported according to local arrangements. All patients with probable STI should be advised to attend an appropriate clinic to be screened for other sexually transmitted infections. Men with Enterobacteriaceae may require investigation for lower urinary tract abnormalities. If tuberculous epididymitis is suspected, three sequential early morning urine samples should be cultured for acid-fast bacilli (AFB) and sent for screening by NAAT for M. tuberculosis DNA [248]. Prostate secretion, ejaculate, discharge from a draining scrotal fistula, as well as fine needle aspiration and biopsy specimens should be investigated using microscopy, AFB culture and NAAT, respectively.

3.12.4 Disease Management

Men with suspected STI should be informed of the risks to others and advised not to have sex until free of infection. Empirical antimicrobial therapy has to be chosen by consideration of the most probable pathogen and degree of penetration into the inflamed epididymis and may need to be varied according to local pathogen sensitivities and guidance. Generally, both C. trachomatis and Enterobacteriaceae should be covered initially and the regimen modified according to pathogen identification. Doxycycline and some specific fluoroquinolones have good clinical and microbiological cure rates in patients with suspected C. trachomatis and both achieve adequate levels in inflamed male genital tissues with oral dosing. Macrolide antibiotics such as azithromycin are effective against C. trachomatis but not tested in epididymitis. Fluoroquinolones remain effective for oral treatment of Enterobacteriaceae although resistance is increasing and local advice should be sought. Fluoroquinolones should not be considered for gonorrhoea. Single high parenteral dose of a third generation cephalosporin is effective against N. gonorrhoeae; current resistance patterns and local public health recommendations should guide choice of agent.

Clinical response to antibiotics in men with severe epididymitis should be assessed after about three days and men with likely or proven STI should be assessed at fourteen days to check cure and ensure tracing and treatment of contacts according to local public health recommendations.

3.12.5 Evidence Summary

Relating to this chapter three guidelines based on systematic reviews were identified [249-251] with search dates of December 2009, March 2012 and April 2013 respectively. A structured search of the literature from January 2010 to March 2015 identified 553 titles of which 45 were selected for full text review and five were included [252-256]. Data from a large comparative case series suggested that young age and history of sexual activity are not sufficiently predictive of a sexually transmitted pathogen to guide antibiotic treatment in acute epididymitis [256].

Empiric antibiotic regimens from existing guidelines [249-251] and panel consensus:

1. For men with acute epididymitis at low risk of gonorrhoea (e.g. no discharge) a single agent or combination of two agents of sufficient dose and duration to eradicate C. trachomatis and Enterobacteriaceae should be used. Appropriate options are:

   A. A fluoroquinolone active against C. trachomatis orally once daily for ten to fourteen days*  
   OR

   B. Doxycycline 200 mg initial dose by mouth and then 100 mg twice daily for ten to fourteen days* plus an antibiotic active against Enterobacteriaceae** for ten to fourteen days*
2. For men with likely gonorrhoeal acute epididymitis a combination regimen active against Gonococcus and *Chlamydia trachomatis* must be used such as:
   
   **A.** Ceftriaxone 500 mg intramuscularly single dose plus Doxycycline 200 mg initial dose by mouth and then 100 mg twice daily for ten to fourteen days*
   
3. For non-sexually active men with acute epididymitis a single agent of sufficient dose and duration to eradicate Enterobacteriaceae should be used. Appropriate option is a fluoroquinolone by mouth once daily for ten to fourteen days*

*Depending upon pathogen identification and clinical response.

**A parenteral option will be required for men with severe infection requiring hospitalisation.

Surgical exploration may be required to drain abscesses or debride tissue. A comparative cohort study found that lack of separation of epididymis and testis on palpation and the presence of abscess on US may predict requirement for surgery following initial antibiotic treatment [252].

A cohort study found semen parameters may be impaired during epididymitis but recovered following successful treatment [255]. Comparative clinician cohort studies suggest adherence to guidelines for assessment and treatment of epididymitis is low, particularly by urologists compared to sexual health specialists [253] and by primary care physicians [254].

### 3.12.6 Recommendations for the treatment of acute infective epididymitis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Obtain a mid-stream urine and first voided urine for pathogen identification.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initially prescribe a single antibiotic or a combination of two antibiotics active against <em>Chlamydia trachomatis</em> and Enterobacteriaceae in young sexually active men; in older men without sexual risk factors only Enterobacteriaceae have to be considered.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If gonorrhoeal infection is likely, give single dose ceftriaxone 500 mg intramuscularly in addition to a course of an antibiotic active against <em>Chlamydia trachomatis</em>.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjust antibiotic agent when pathogen has been identified and adjust duration according to clinical response.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follow national policies on reporting and tracing/treatment of contacts for sexually transmitted infections.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Upgraded based on Panel consensus.
3.13  Fournier's Gangrene

3.13.1  Introduction
Fournier's gangrene is an aggressive and frequently fatal polymicrobial soft tissue infection of the perineum, peri-anal region, and external genitalia [257]. It is an anatomical sub-category of necrotising fasciitis with which it shares a common aetiology and management pathway. Evidence regarding investigation and treatment is predominantly from case series.

3.13.2  Diagnostic evaluation
Fournier's gangrene remains rare but its incidence is increasing with an ageing population and higher prevalence of diabetes, and emergence of multi-resistant pathogens. Typically there is painful swelling of the scrotum or perineum with severe sepsis [258]. Examination shows small necrotic areas of skin with surrounding erythema and oedema. Crepitus on palpation and a foul-smelling exudate occurs with more advanced disease [259]. Risk factors include immuno-compromised patients, most commonly diabetes or malnutrition, or a recent history of catheterisation, instrumentation or perineal surgery. In up to 40% of cases, the onset is more insidious with undiagnosed pain often resulting in delayed treatment [260, 261]. A high index of suspicion and careful examination, particularly of obese patients, is required.

3.13.2.1  Microbiology
Fournier's gangrene is typically a type 1 necrotising fasciitis that is polymicrobial in origin, including S.aureus, Streptococcus sp., Klebsiella sp., E. coli and anerobes; involvement of Clostridium sp. is now less common [258, 260, 262]. These organisms secrete endotoxins causing tissue necrosis and severe cardiovascular impairment. Subsequent inflammatory reaction by the host contributes to multi-organ failure and death if untreated.

3.13.3  Disease management
The degree of internal necrosis is usually vastly greater than suggested by external signs, and consequently,
adequate, repeated surgical debridement is necessary to save the patient’s life [263]. Disease-specific severity scoring systems do not appear superior to generic critical illness scores and are therefore not recommended for routine use [264-266]. Computed tomography or MRI can help define para-rectal involvement, suggesting the need for colostomy [267]. Consensus from case series suggests that surgical debridement should be early (< 24 hours) and complete, as delayed and/or inadequate surgery results in higher mortality [268]. Concurrent parenteral antibiotic treatment should be given that covers all causative organisms and can penetrate inflammatory tissue. This can then be refined following surgical cultures. The benefit of pooled immunoglobulin therapy and hyperbaric oxygen remains uncertain and should not be used routinely [267, 269, 270]. With aggressive early surgical and medical management, survival rates are > 70% depending upon patient group and availability of critical care [271]. Following resolution, reconstruction using skin grafts is required [272-275].

3.13.3.1 Recommendations for the disease management of Fournier’s Gangrene

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Commence full, repeated, surgical debridement within 24 hours of presentation.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start treatment with broad-spectrum antibiotics on presentation, with subsequent refinement according to culture and clinical response.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use adjunctive treatments such as pooled immunoglobulin and hyperbaric oxygen, except in the context of clinical trials.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.14 Detection of bacteriuria prior to urological procedures

3.14.1 Evidence question
What is the diagnostic accuracy of alternative urinary investigations compared with urine culture for the diagnosis of bacteriuria in adult patients prior to urological interventions?

3.14.2 Background
Identifying bacteriuria prior to diagnostic and therapeutic procedures aims to reduce the risk of infectious complications by controlling any pre-operative detected bacteriuria and to optimise antimicrobial coverage in conjunction with the procedure. However, the absence of bacteriuria by itself is not an assurance against infectious complications and antimicrobial prophylaxis according to section 3.15 is recommended. The standard method, laboratory culture of an appropriate urine sample, is time consuming and logistically difficult. Alternative rapid near-patient methods such as reagent strip (dipstick) urinalysis, automated microscopy, flow cytometry, and dipslide culture have been developed but their diagnostic accuracy is uncertain.

3.14.3 Evidence summary
A systematic search of the literature to February 2015 identified 3,033 titles of which 210 were selected for full text review and 18 studies investigating diagnostic accuracy of different index tests with urine culture as the reference standard were included [276-293]. None of the studies focused on a urology patient population.

3.14.3.1 Reagents strip (dipstick) urinalysis
Sixteen studies assessed dipstick urine analysis using a variety of criteria for a positive test [276-284, 287-289]. The criterion that resulted in the best overall diagnostic accuracy was when a positive test was defined as at least one of nitrite and leucocyte esterase being detected however, low sensitivity (0.8) limits clinical usefulness, in the setting of assessment of bacteriuria, prior to urological surgery.

3.14.3.2 Automated microscopy
Two studies used automated microscopy of urine sediment following centrifugation [285, 289]. Although sensitivity was high (0.98), specificity was too low for effective use in this setting (0.59) and optimum diagnostic thresholds were not determined.

3.14.3.3 Dipslide culture
Two studies on dipslide technology using different culture media were identified [286, 293]. In one study diagnostic accuracy was high (0.98) although contaminated samples were excluded [31]. The other study showed lower accuracy, below the level required in this setting [286]. Overall, dipslide technology is currently unsuited for routine use in this setting with further studies required to determine the best combination of culture media.
3.14.3.4  **Flow cytometry**

No studies on this technology that met the inclusion criteria. The poor quality of available studies was confirmed in a meta-analysis [294]. In summary, laboratory urine culture remains the standard investigation to detect both the presence and absence of clinically relevant concentrations of bacteria in urine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory urine culture is the recommended method to determine the presence or absence of clinically significant bacteriuria in patients prior to undergoing urological interventions.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.15  **Peri-operative antibacterial prophylaxis in urology**

3.15.1  **Introduction**

The aim of antimicrobial prophylaxis (AMP) in urology is to prevent infectious complications resulting from diagnostic and therapeutic procedures. However, evidence for the best choice of antimicrobials and regimens is limited.

As microbial resistance is dramatically increasing, there is a strong need to change unproven paradigms. In the absence of high level evidence regarding the benefit of AMP, prior to a specific procedure, the Guideline panel recommends to individually assess its need for each case. It is important to keep in mind that AMP is only one of several measures to prevent infections and can never compensate for poor hygiene and operative technique. The CDC has presented definitions that are currently the most comprehensive, and are recommended for the evaluation of infectious complications [295]. These definitions have also been used in the Global Prevalence Study on Infections in Urology (GPIU) point prevalence studies [296].

3.15.2  **Risk factors**

The risk of infection varies with the type of intervention. The wide spectrum of interventions and the recent advances in minimal invasive surgery have further complicated the provision of clear-cut recommendations. Furthermore, the bacterial load, the duration and difficulty of the procedure, the surgeon's skill, and peri-operative bleeding may also influence the risk of infection [295, 297, 298]. For elective urological surgery, general and urinary-tract-specific risk factors must be controlled (i.e. bacteriuria, obstruction).

Before surgery, it is essential to categorise the patients in relation to:

- their general health status according to the American Society of Anaesthesiology (ASA) score P1-P5;
- the presence of general risk factors such as older age, diabetes mellitus, impaired immune system, malnutrition, extreme weight; even though these risk factors were not proven in level one evidence studies;
- the presence of specific endogenous or exogenous risk factors such as a history of UTI or urogenital infection, indwelling catheters, bacterial burden, previous instrumentation, genetic factors;
- the type of intervention and surgical field contamination burden;
- the expected level of invasiveness, duration and technical aspects of the procedure.

3.15.3  **Principles of antimicrobial prophylaxis**

3.15.3.1  **Timing**

Overall, administration of the first dose of antimicrobial within 60 minutes before surgical incision is recommended. Administration of vancomycin and fluoroquinolones should begin within 120 minutes before surgical incision due to the prolonged infusion times required for these drugs [299, 300].

3.15.3.2  **Route of administration**

The preferred route of administration varies with the type of procedure, however, for a majority of procedures, intravenous administration is ideal as it produces rapid, reliable, and predictable serum and tissue concentrations [299, 300].

3.15.3.3  **Duration of the regimen**

For most procedures, duration of AMP has not yet been adequately addressed and rarely can a defined regimen be recommended. In principle, the duration of peri-operative prophylaxis should be minimised, ideally to a single dose.

3.15.3.4  **Choice of antimicrobials**

No clear-cut recommendations can be given, as there is considerable variation in Europe regarding bacterial spectra and their susceptibility to different antimicrobials. Therefore, knowledge of the local pathogen profiles, susceptibility and virulence is mandatory in establishing local AMP guidelines. It is also essential to define the
predominant pathogens for each type of procedure. When choosing an antimicrobial agent, it is necessary to consider the procedure-specific risk factors, contamination load, target organ, and the role of local inflammation.

3.15.4 **Antimicrobial prophylaxis by procedure**

3.15.4.1 **Diagnostic procedures**

3.15.4.1.1 **Transrectal prostate biopsy**

See section 3.16 for the results of a recent systematic review on which strategies are effective for reducing the risk of infective complications in men undergoing prostate biopsy.

3.15.4.1.2 **Cystoscopy**

The frequency of infectious complications after cystoscopy, standard urodynamic studies and diagnostic simple ureteroscopy in otherwise healthy individuals with sterile pre-operative urine is low [301-303]. In view of the very large number of cystoscopic examinations, the low infectious risk and the potential adverse effect on bacterial sensitivity, AMP is not recommended. However, bacteriuria, indwelling catheters, neurogenic LUTD and a history of urogenital infection are risk factors that must be considered [304-317].

3.15.4.2 **Endourological treatment procedures (urinary tract entered)**

3.15.4.2.1 **Transurethral resection of the bladder (TURB)**

There is little evidence for any benefit of AMP prior to TURB. Studies do not distinguish between simple fulguration (cystoscopy) and large or multiple tumours, or the presence or absence of necrotic material. Therefore, the present Guidelines recommend that clinicians choose the appropriate AMP regime based on tumour differentiation, see section 3.15.5 [303, 318-320].

3.15.4.2.2 **Transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP)**

Transurethral resection of the prostate is the best studied urological intervention. At least two meta-analyses of a large number of prospective, randomised controlled studies, including several thousand patients, showed a marked benefit of AMP with a relative risk reduction of 65% and 77% for bacteriuria and sepsicaemia, respectively [303, 318-320].

3.15.4.2.3 **Ureteroscopy**

Well-conducted prospective controlled trials on ureteroscopy are lacking. It is reasonable, however, to distinguish low-risk procedures, such as simple diagnostic and distal stone treatment in otherwise healthy individuals, from higher-risk procedures, such as treatment of proximal impacted stones with obstruction. Therefore the present Guidelines recommend clinicians choose the appropriate AMP regime based on the degree of severity, stone anatomic position and patient related risk factors, all of which are supported by a large database study [321].

3.15.4.2.4 **Percutaneous nephrolithotripsy (PNL)**

The risk of infection in PNL is high and use of AMP has been shown to significantly reduce the risk of infectious complications [99, 322-329]. A single dose was shown to be sufficient [330]. Retrograde intra-renal stone treatment could be expected to have a similar risk profile [321].

3.15.4.2.5 **Shock-wave lithotripsy**

No standard AMP is recommended. However, control of bacteriuria and AMP is recommended in cases of increased bacterial burden (e.g. indwelling catheter, nephrostomy tube, or infectious stones) [331-340].

3.15.4.3 **Laparoscopic surgery**

There has been a lack of sufficiently powered studies in laparoscopic urological surgery. However, it seems reasonable to manage laparoscopic surgical procedures in the same manner as the corresponding open procedures.

3.15.4.4 **Nephrectomy, adrenalectomy**

No standard AMP can be recommended, however, AMP may be considered optional in certain circumstances [341-345].

3.15.4.5 **Prostatectomy**

In open enucleation of prostatic adenoma, the risk of post-operative infection is particularly high and AMP is recommended [346]. As there are no studies on AMP in radical prostatectomy the use of AMP may be considered optional.
3.15.4.6 Cystectomy with bowel use
Single or one day dosage AMP is recommended, although prolonged operation and other morbidity risk factors might support the use of pre-emptive antimicrobial treatment, which should be < 72 hours. The choice of antimicrobials should focus on aerobic and anaerobic pathogens. Evidence is based on colorectal surgery, but experience is limited for specific urological interventions [347-350].

3.15.4.7 Post-operative drainage of the urinary tract
When continuous urinary drainage is left in place after surgery, prolongation of AMP is not recommended. Asymptomatic bacteriuria should not be treated.

3.15.4.8 Implantation of prosthetic devices: testis, penile prosthesis and artificial sphincter
Antimicrobial prophylaxis is recommended. When infectious complications occur in implant surgery, they are usually problematic and often result in removal of the prosthetic device. Diabetes mellitus is considered a specific risk factor for infection. Skin-related staphylococci are responsible for most infections, AMP used must be chosen to target these strains [351-354].

3.15.5 Recommendations for peri-operative antibacterial prophylaxis in urology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations for peri-operative antibacterial prophylaxis in urology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Procedure</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diagnostic procedures</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urodynamic study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transrectal core biopsy of prostate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnostic uroscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common endourological/endoscopic therapeutic procedures (examples)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fulguration of small bladder tumours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transurethral resection of the bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transurethral resection of the prostate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shock-wave lithotripsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ureteroscopy for stone management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percutaneous and retrograde intra-renal stone management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common open and/or laparoscopic surgery</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephrectomy ± ureterectomy Adrenalectomy Radical prostatectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planned scrotal surgery, vasectomy, surgery for varicocele</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3.16 Prostate biopsy

#### 3.16.1 Evidence question

Which strategies are effective for reducing the risk of infective complications in men undergoing prostate biopsy?

#### 3.16.2 Epidemiology, Aetiology and Pathophysiology

Histological examination of needle biopsies of the prostate is the principle method for prostate cancer diagnosis. Prostate biopsy is a common procedure in high-resource countries with, for example, about 32,000 procedures performed in England during 2013 [355] giving a rate of 2.6/1,000 men at risk per year. Transrectal ultrasound-guided biopsy (TRUS) is the current standard technique although the transperineal route is also used [356]. Infection is the most clinically significant harm experienced by men following prostate biopsy. There is some evidence that the risk is increasing [357]. Infection generally occurs by implantation of rectal commensal organisms into the prostate, urethra or bloodstream during needle insertion. Severity of infection will depend on bacterial inoculum, virulence and status of host defence.

#### 3.16.3 Diagnostic Evaluation

Urine culture prior to prostate biopsy has an uncertain predictive value [358].

#### 3.16.4 Disease Management

The focus is on prevention of infectious complications. Possible strategies include antimicrobial prophylaxis and non-antimicrobial strategies, the effectiveness of which will be described in this section. Established infection is treated according to standard pathways [355].

#### 3.16.5 Evidence summary

A systematic search of the literature to March 2015 identified 1,556 titles of which 189 were selected for full text review and 93 RCTs were included [359-453].

#### 3.16.6 Non-antimicrobial interventions

**3.16.6.1 Number of biopsy cores**

Meta-analysis of seven trials involving 1,290 men found no evidence that extended biopsy (> 6-24 cores) templates resulted in more infectious complications than standard templates (6-12 cores) [(95% CIs) = 1.71 (0.70 – 4.16)] [359-365].

**3.16.6.2 Peri-prostatic injection of local anaesthetic**

A meta-analysis of 25 RCTs with 3,533 participants found no evidence that use of peri-prostatic injection of local anaesthesia resulted in a higher rate of infectious complications compared to no injection [366-370, 372-388, 429, 430, 434]. Four other RCTs with 497 patients compared different numbers of injections performed for peri-prostatic injection of local anaesthetic. Here, no difference was found in infective complications [RR (95% CIs) = 1.51 (0.26 – 8.97)] [405-408].

**3.16.6.3 Route of biopsy**

Three RCTs involving 646 men compared transrectal and transperineal routes of biopsy. Overall two men (0.4%) suffered infectious complications after transperineal biopsy, compared to five (1.1%) after transrectal biopsy [RR (95% CIs) = 0.45 (0.10 – 1.97)]. The studies were heterogeneous in design, did not state how infectious outcomes were assessed and used differing antimicrobial prophylaxis between arms.

**3.16.6.4 Rectal preparation**

A meta-analysis of three studies including 209 men evaluated the use of rectal preparation by enema before transrectal biopsy. No significant advantage was found regarding infectious complications [RR (95% CIs) = 0.76]
Meta-analysis of six trials including 1,373 men showed that use of a rectal povidone-iodine preparation before biopsy in addition to antimicrobial prophylaxis resulted in a lower rate of infectious complications [RR (95% CIs) = 0.58 (0.43 to 0.76)] [392-397]. Single RCTs showed no evidence of benefit for perineal skin disinfection [398] but reported an advantage for rectal povidone-iodine preparation before biopsy compared to after biopsy [453].

### Other interventions

Combining data from two RCTs with 253 participants showed that biopsy using disposable needle guides resulted in nine infectious complications compared to 22 with reusable biopsy needle guides. The difference was not significant [RR (95% CIs) = 0.51 (0.24 to 1.06)] [402, 403]. A single RCT found no evidence that disinfection of a single patient use needle between cores resulted in fewer infectious complications [404]. Another single study evaluated the needle size and did not find significant differences between a 16 G and an 18 G needle size [446].

**Recommendation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use rectal cleansing with povidone-iodine in men prior to transrectal prostate biopsy.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>B*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Downgraded as highest quality trial in meta-analysis showed no difference [391].

### Antimicrobial prophylaxis

The meta-analysis on eleven studies with 1,753 patients showed significantly reduced infections after biopsy when using AMP as compared to placebo/control [RR (95% CIs) = 0.56 (0.40 to 0.77)] [393, 397, 413, 423, 431, 433, 437, 442, 447, 448, 452]. Thus, antimicrobial prophylaxis is strongly recommended. However, the choice of regimens and duration of prophylaxis remains debatable. Most commonly fluorochinolones are applied [419, 421, 422, 431, 435, 451]. Due to the increase in fluorochinolone resistance recent studies have investigated alternatives like fosfomycin trometamol [435], or suggest targeted antimicrobial prophylaxis based on rectal swab [401]. While the available Cochrane review of 2011 suggests a one-day prophylaxis with a single agent [454], a recent systematic analysis has pointed towards an augmented antimicrobial therapy [455]. A meta-analysis on this issue by the guideline panel is ongoing on and will be finalised next year.

**Recommendation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use antimicrobial prophylaxis in men prior to transrectal prostate biopsy.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. REFERENCES


http://www.turkurolojidergisi.com/eng/ozet/1097/32/Abstract


5. **CONFLICT OF INTEREST**

All members of the EAU Urological Infections Guidelines Panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have that might be perceived to be a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publicly accessible through the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/. These Guidelines were developed with the financial support of the EAU. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation, and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Urolithiasis

C. Türk (Chair), A. Neisius, A. Petrik, C. Seitz, A. Skolarikos, A. Tepeler, K. Thomas
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. **INTRODUCTION**  
   1.1 Aims and scope  
   1.2 Panel composition  
   1.3 Available publications  
   1.4 Publication history and summary of changes  
      1.4.1 Publication history  
      1.4.2 Summary of changes  

2. **METHODS**  
   2.1 Data identification  
   2.2 Review  
   2.3 Future goals  

3. **GUIDELINES**  
   3.1 Prevalence, aetiology, risk of recurrence  
      3.1.1 Introduction  
      3.1.2 Stone composition  
      3.1.3 Risk groups for stone formation  
   3.2 Classification of stones  
      3.2.1 Stone size  
      3.2.2 Stone location  
      3.2.3 X-ray characteristics  
   3.3 Diagnostic evaluation  
      3.3.1 Diagnostic imaging  
      3.3.2 Diagnostics - metabolism-related  
      3.3.3 Diagnosis in special groups and conditions  
      3.3.3.1 Diagnostic imaging during pregnancy  
      3.3.3.2 Children  
      3.3.3.2.1 Diagnostic imaging  
      3.3.3.2.2 Ultrasound  
      3.3.3.2.3 Plain films (KUB radiography)  
      3.3.3.2.4 Intravenous urography (IVU)  
      3.3.3.2.5 Helical computed tomography (CT)  
      3.3.3.2.6 Magnetic resonance urography (MRU)  
   3.4 Disease management  
      3.4.1 Management of patients with renal or ureteral stones  
      3.4.1.1 Renal colic  
      3.4.1.2 Management of sepsis and/or anuria in obstructed kidney  
      3.4.1.3 General recommendations and precautions for stone removal  
      3.4.1.3.1 Antibiotic therapy  
      3.4.1.3.2 Antithrombotic therapy and stone treatment  
      3.4.1.3.3 Obesity  
      3.4.1.3.4 Stone composition  
      3.4.1.3.5 Steinstrasse  
   3.4.2 Specific stone management in renal stones  
      3.4.2.1 Types of treatments  
      3.4.2.1.1 Conservative treatment (Observation)  
      3.4.2.1.2 Chemolysis  
      3.4.2.1.2.1 Percutaneous irrigation chemolysis  
      3.4.2.1.2.2 Oral chemolysis  
      3.4.2.1.3 Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (SWL)  
      3.4.2.1.3.1 Contraindications of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy  
      3.4.2.1.3.2 Best clinical practice
3.4.2.1.3 Complications of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy... 
3.4.2.1.4 Endourology techniques for renal stone removal... 
3.4.2.1.4.1 Percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PNL)... 
  3.4.2.1.4.1.1 Contraindications... 
  3.4.2.1.4.1.2 Best clinical practice... 
  3.4.2.1.4.1.3 Complications... 
3.4.2.1.4.2 Ureterorenoscopy for renal stones (RIRS)... 
3.4.2.1.4.3 Open and laparoscopic surgery for removal of renal stones... 

3.4.2.2 Indication for active stone removal of renal stones... 
3.4.2.3 Selection of procedure for active removal of renal stones... 
  3.4.2.3.1 Stones in renal pelvis or upper/middle calices... 
  3.4.2.3.2 Stones in the lower renal pole... 
  3.4.2.3.3 Recommendations for the selection of procedures for active removal of renal stones... 

3.4.3 Specific stone management of Ureteral stones... 
3.4.3.1 Types of treatment... 
  3.4.3.1.1 Conservative treatment/observation... 
  3.4.3.1.2 Pharmacological treatment, Medical expulsive therapy... 
    3.4.3.1.2.1 Duration of medical expulsive therapy treatment... 
  3.4.3.1.3 Shock wave lithotripsy... 
  3.4.3.1.4 Endourology techniques... 
    3.4.3.1.4.1 Ureterorenoscopy... 
      3.4.3.1.4.1.1 Contraindications... 
      3.4.3.1.4.1.2 Best clinical practice in ureterorenoscopy (URS)... 
      3.4.3.1.4.1.3 Complications... 
    3.4.3.1.4.2 Percutaneous antegrade ureterorenoscopy... 
    3.4.3.1.5 Laparoscopic ureteral stone removal... 
3.4.3.2 Indications for active removal of ureteral stones... 
  3.4.3.2.5.1 Bleeding disorder... 
3.4.3.3 Selection of procedure for active removal of ureteral stones... 

3.4.4 Management of patients with residual stones... 
3.4.4.1 Therapy... 

3.4.5 Management of specific patient groups... 
3.4.5.1 Management of urinary stones and related problems during pregnancy... 
3.4.5.2 Management of stones in patients with urinary diversion... 
  3.4.5.2.1 Aetiology... 
  3.4.5.2.2 Management... 
  3.4.5.2.3 Prevention... 
3.4.5.3 Management of stones in patients with neurogenic bladder... 
  3.4.5.3.1 Aetiology, clinical presentation and diagnosis... 
  3.4.5.3.2 Management... 
3.4.5.4 Management of stones in transplanted kidneys... 
  3.4.5.4.1 Aetiology... 
  3.4.5.4.2 Management... 
  3.4.5.4.3 Special problems in stone removal... 

3.4.6 Management of urolithiasis in children... 
3.4.6.1 Stone removal... 
  3.4.6.1.1 Medical expulsive therapy in children... 
  3.4.6.1.2 Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy... 
  3.4.6.1.3 Endourological procedures... 
    3.4.6.1.3.1 Percutaneous nephrolithotomy... 
    3.4.6.1.3.2 Ureterorenoscopy... 
    3.4.6.1.3.3 Open or laparoscopic surgery... 
    3.4.6.1.3.4 Special considerations on recurrence prevention...
# Follow Up: Metabolic Evaluation and Recurrence Prevention

## 4.1 General metabolic considerations for patient work-up

### 4.1.1 Evaluation of patient risk

### 4.1.2 Urine sampling

### 4.1.3 Timing of specific metabolic work-up

### 4.1.4 Reference ranges of laboratory values

### 4.1.5 Risk indices and additional diagnostic tools

## 4.2 General considerations for recurrence prevention

### 4.2.1 Fluid intake

### 4.2.2 Diet

### 4.2.3 Lifestyle

### 4.2.4 Recommendations for recurrence prevention

## 4.3 Stone-specific metabolic evaluation and pharmacological recurrence prevention

### 4.3.1 Introduction

## 4.4 Calcium oxalate stones

### 4.4.1 Diagnosis

### 4.4.2 Interpretation of results and aetiology

### 4.4.3 Specific treatment

### 4.4.4 Recommendations for pharmacological treatment of patients with specific abnormalities in urine composition

## 4.5 Calcium phosphate stones

### 4.5.1 Diagnosis

### 4.5.2 Interpretation of results and aetiology

### 4.5.3 Pharmacological therapy

### 4.5.4 Recommendations for the treatment of calcium phosphate stones

## 4.6 Disorders and diseases related to calcium stones

### 4.6.1 Hyperparathyroidism

### 4.6.2 Granulomatous diseases

### 4.6.3 Primary hyperoxaluria

### 4.6.4 Enteric hyperoxaluria

### 4.6.5 Renal tubular acidosis

### 4.6.6 Nephrocalcinosis

### 4.6.6.1 Diagnosis

## 4.7 Uric acid and ammonium urate stones

### 4.7.1 Diagnosis

### 4.7.2 Interpretation of results

## 4.8 Struvite and infection stones

### 4.8.1 Diagnosis

### 4.8.2 Specific treatment

### 4.8.3 Recommendations for therapeutic measures of infection stones

## 4.9 Cystine stones

### 4.9.1 Diagnosis

### 4.9.2 Specific treatment

#### 4.9.2.1 Pharmacological treatment of cystine stones

#### 4.9.3 Recommendations for the treatment of cystine stones

## 4.10 2,8-Dihydroxyadenine stones and xanthine stones

### 4.10.1 2,8-Dihydroxyadenine stones

### 4.10.2 Xanthine stones

### 4.10.3 Fluid intake and diet

## 4.11 Drug stones

## 4.12 Matrix Stones

## 4.13 Unknown stone composition

## References

## Conflict of Interest
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aims and scope
The European Association of Urology (EAU) Urolithiasis Guidelines Panel has prepared these guidelines to help urologists assess evidence-based management of stones/calculi in the urinary tract and incorporate recommendations into clinical practice. Management of bladder stones is not addressed in these guidelines. This document covers most aspects of the disease, which is still a cause of significant morbidity despite technological and scientific advances. The Panel is aware of the geographical variations in healthcare provision.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account.

Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition
The EAU Urolithiasis Guidelines Panel consists of an international group of clinicians with particular expertise in this area. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements which can be viewed on the EAU website Uroweb: http://uroweb.org/guideline/urolithiasis/.

1.3 Available publications
A quick reference document (Pocket guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text versions. Also a number of scientific publications are available [1-3]. All documents can be accessed through the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guideline/urolithiasis/.

1.4 Publication history and summary of changes
1.4.1 Publication history
The EAU Urolithiasis Guidelines were first published in 2000. This 2017 document presents a limited update of the 2016 publication of the EAU Urolithiasis Guidelines.

1.4.2 Summary of changes
The literature for the entire document has been assessed and updated, whenever relevant (see Methods section below).

Key changes for the 2017 publication:

3.4.1.1 Renal colic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Administration of daily α-blockers seems to reduce colic episodes, although controversy remains in the published literature.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.2.1.3.2 Best clinical practice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence - Number of shock waves, energy setting and repeat treatment sessions</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stepwise power ramping prevents renal injury.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical experience has shown that repeat sessions are feasible (within one day for ureteral stones).</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimal shock wave frequency is 1.0 to 1.5Hz.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.2.2 Indication for active stone removal of renal stones

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer active treatment for renal stones in case of stone growth, de novo obstruction, associated infection, and acute and/or chronic pain.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.4.3.1.2 Pharmacological treatment, Medical expulsive therapy (MET)

**Summary of evidence**

Medical expulsion therapy (MET) seems to be efficacious treating patients with ureteric stones who are amenable to conservative management. The greatest benefit might be among those with larger (distal) stones.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select patients for an attempt at spontaneous passage or MET, based on well-controlled pain, no clinical evidence of sepsis, and adequate renal functional reserve.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer α-blockers as MET as one of the treatment options, in particular for (distal) ureteral stones &gt; 5 mm.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counsel patients regarding the controversies in the literature, attendant risks of MET, including associated drug side effects. Inform the patient that α-blockers as MET are administered off-label!**.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

† It is not known if tamsulosin harms the human foetus or if it is found in breast milk.

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

**MET in children cannot be recommended due to the limited data in this specific population.

3.4.3.1.4.1.2 Best clinical practice in ureteroscopy

**Summary of evidence**

In ureterorenoscopy (URS) (in particular for renal stones), pre-stenting has been shown to improve outcome.

3.4.3.3 Selection of procedure for active removal of ureteral stones

**Recommendation**

In obese patients ureterorenoscopy is a safe and efficient option to remove renal stones. (2b)

Ureterorenoscopy in morbidly obese patients have significantly higher complication rates as compared to normal weight patients. (1a)

2. METHODS

2.1 Data identification

For the 2017 Urolithiasis Guidelines, new and relevant evidence has been identified, collated and appraised through a structured assessment of the literature.

A broad and comprehensive scoping exercise covering all areas of the guideline was performed. The search was limited to studies representing high levels of evidence only (i.e. systematic reviews with meta-analysis, randomised controlled trials (RCTs), and prospective non-randomised comparative studies only) published in the English language. The search was restricted to articles published between September 1st 2015 and October 12th, 2016. Databases covered by the search included Medline, EMBASE and the Cochrane Libraries. A total of 751 unique records were identified, and screened for relevance. The search strategy is published online: http://uroweb.org/guideline/urolithiasis/?type=appendices-publications.

In addition to the new literature identified through the electronic searches, the authors included one additional, more recent, article as of significant relevance for two sections (3.4.1.1 Renal colic & 3.4.3.1.2 Pharmacological treatment, Medical expulsive therapy (MET) [4].

Two sections of the text have been updated based on two systematic reviews (SRs). These SRs were performed using standard Cochrane SR methodology; http://www.cochranelibrary.com/about/about-cochranesystematic-reviews.html.
Systematic review topics:

- Tract sizes in miniaturized percutaneous nephrolithotomy: A systematic review [5].
- What are the benefits and harms of ureteroscopy (URS) compared with shock-wave lithotripsy (SWL) in the treatment of upper ureteral stones (UUS): A systematic review [6].

Recommendations in this text are assessed according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [7]. Additional methodology information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guidelines/.

A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed on line at the above address.

2.2 Review
The 2015 Urolithiasis Guidelines were subjected to peer review prior to publication.

2.3 Future goals
Further results on ongoing and new SRs will be included in the 2018 update of the Urolithiasis Guidelines.

3. GUIDELINES

3.1 Prevalence, aetiology, risk of recurrence

3.1.1 Introduction
Stone incidence depends on geographical, climatic, ethnic, dietary and genetic factors. The recurrence risk is basically determined by the disease or disorder causing the stone formation. Accordingly, the prevalence rates for urinary stones vary from 1% to 20% [8]. In countries with a high standard of life such as Sweden, Canada or the US, renal stone prevalence is notably high (> 10%). For some areas an increase of more than 37% over the last 20 years has been reported [9-11].

Stones can be classified into those caused by: infection, or non-infectious causes (infection- and non-infection stones); genetic defects [12]; or adverse drug effects (drug stones) (Table 3.1.1).

Table 3.1.1: Stones classified by aetiology*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Non-infection stones</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calcium oxalate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium phosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uric acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection stones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium ammonium phosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbonate apatite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammonium urate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genetic causes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xanthine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,8-Dihydroxyadenine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug stones</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See Section 4.4.2

3.1.2 Stone composition
Stone composition is the basis for further diagnostic and management decisions. Stones are often formed from a mixture of substances. Table 3.1.2 lists the clinically most relevant substances and their mineral components.
### Table 3.1.2: Stone composition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical name</th>
<th>Mineral name</th>
<th>Chemical formula</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calcium oxalate monohydrate</td>
<td>Whewellite</td>
<td>CaC₂O₄·H₂O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium oxalate dihydrate</td>
<td>Wheddelite</td>
<td>CaC₂O₄·2H₂O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic calcium phosphate</td>
<td>Apatite</td>
<td>Ca₁₀(PO₄)₆(OH)₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium hydroxyl phosphate</td>
<td>Carbonite apatite</td>
<td>Ca₅(PO₄)(OH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β-tricalcium phosphate</td>
<td>Whitlockite</td>
<td>Ca₃(PO₄)₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbonate apatite phosphate</td>
<td>Dahllite</td>
<td>Ca₅(PO₄)₃(OH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium hydrogen phosphate</td>
<td>Brushite</td>
<td>PO₄·2H₂O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium carbonate</td>
<td>Aragonite</td>
<td>CaCO₃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octacalcium phosphate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uric acid</td>
<td>Uricite</td>
<td>C₅H₄N₂O₃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uric acid dihydrate</td>
<td>Uricite</td>
<td>C₅H₆O₇·2H₂O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammonium urate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium acid urate monohydrate</td>
<td>Struvite</td>
<td>MgNH₄PO₄·6H₂O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium ammonium phosphate</td>
<td>Newberyite</td>
<td>MgHPO₄·3H₂O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium acid phosphate trihydrate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium ammonium phosphate monohydrate</td>
<td>Dittmarite</td>
<td>MgNH₄(PO₄)·1H₂O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xanthine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,8-Dihydroxyadenine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proteins</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholesterol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium urate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimagnesium phosphate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melamine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matrix</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug stones</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Active compounds crystallising in urine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Substances impairing urine composition (Section 4.11)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign body calculi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.1.3 Risk groups for stone formation

The risk status of stone formers is of particular interest because it defines the probability of recurrence or regrowth, and is imperative for pharmacological treatment.

About 50% of recurrent stone formers have just one lifetime recurrence [10, 13]. Highly recurrent disease is observed in slightly more than 10% of patients. Stone type and disease severity determine low- or high risk of recurrence (Table 3.1.3) [14, 15].
### Table 3.1.3: High-risk stone formers [14-25]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General factors</th>
<th>Diseases associated with stone formation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Early onset of urolithiasis (especially children and teenagers)</td>
<td>Hyperparathyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial stone formation</td>
<td>Metabolic syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brushite-containing stones (CaHPO₄·2H₂O)</td>
<td>Nephrocalcinosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uric acid and urate-containing stones</td>
<td>Polycystic kidney disease (PKD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection stones</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal diseases (i.e., jejuno-ileal bypass, intestinal resection, Crohn’s disease, malabsorptive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solitary kidney (the kidney itself does not particularly increase the risk of stone</td>
<td>conditions, enteric hyperoxaluria after urinary diversion) and bariatric surgery [20]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formation, but prevention of stone recurrence is of more importance)</td>
<td>Sarcoidosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spinal cord injury, neurogenic bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genetically determined stone formation</strong></td>
<td><strong>Drug-induced stone formation</strong> (see Table 4.11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystinuria (type A, B and AB)</td>
<td><strong>Anatomical abnormalities associated with stone formation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary hyperoxaluria (PH)</td>
<td>Medullary sponge kidney (tubular ectasia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal tubular acidosis (RTA) type I</td>
<td>Ureteropelvic junction (UPJ) obstruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,8-Dihydroxyadeninuria</td>
<td>Calyceal diverticulum, calyceal cyst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xanthinuria</td>
<td>Ureteral stricture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesch-Nyhan syndrome</td>
<td>Vesico-uretero-renal reflux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic fibrosis</td>
<td>Horseshoe kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ureterocele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Environmental factors</strong></td>
<td><strong>3.2 Classification of stones</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic lead exposure</td>
<td>Urinary stones can be classified according to size, location, X-ray characteristics, aetiology of formation,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>composition, and risk of recurrence [10, 26-28].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3.2.1 Stone size**

Stone size is usually given in one or two dimensions, and stratified into those measuring up to 5, 5-10, 10-20, and > 20 mm in largest diameter.

**3.2.2 Stone location**

Stones can be classified according to anatomical position: upper, middle or lower calyx; renal pelvis; upper, middle or distal ureter; and urinary bladder. Treatment of bladder stones is not discussed in these guidelines.

**3.2.3 X-ray characteristics**

Stones can be classified according to plain X-ray appearance [kidney-ureter-bladder (KUB) radiography] (Table 3.2.1), which varies according to mineral composition [28]. Non-contrast-enhanced computed tomography (NCCT) can be used to classify stones according to density, inner structure and composition, which can affect treatment decisions (Section 3.4.1.4.4) [27, 28].
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radiopaque</th>
<th>Poor radiopacity</th>
<th>Radiolucent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calcium oxalate dihydrate</td>
<td>Magnesium ammonium phosphate</td>
<td>Uric acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium oxalate monohydrate</td>
<td>Apatite</td>
<td>Ammonium urate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium phosphates</td>
<td>Cystine</td>
<td>Xanthine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2,8-Dihydroxyadenine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Drug-stones (Section 4.11)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Stratification of stones according to aetiology, composition and risk of recurrence is addressed in Section 3.1.

3.3 Diagnostic evaluation

3.3.1 Diagnostic imaging

The clinical situation will inform on the most appropriate imaging modality, which will differ for a suspected ureteral stone or a suspected renal stone.

Standard evaluation includes a detailed medical history and physical examination. Patients with ureteral stones usually present with loin pain, vomiting, and sometimes fever, but may also be asymptomatic [29].

Ultrasound (US) should be used as the primary diagnostic imaging tool, although pain relief, or any other emergency measures should not be delayed by imaging assessments. Ultrasound is safe (no risk of radiation), reproducible and inexpensive. It can identify stones located in the calices, pelvis, and pyeloureteric and vesicoureteric junctions (US with filled bladder), as well as in patients with upper urinary tract dilatation. Ultrasound has a sensitivity of 45% and specificity of 94% for ureteric stones and a sensitivity of 45% and specificity of 88% for renal stones [30, 31].

The sensitivity and specificity of KUB (kidney-ureter-bladder radiography) is 44-77% and 80-87%, respectively [32]. Kidney-ureter-bladder radiography should not be performed if NCCT is considered [33]. However, KUB is helpful in differentiating between radiolucent and radiopaque stones and be used for comparison during follow-up.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>With fever or solitary kidney, and when diagnosis is doubtful, immediate imaging is indicated.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

3.3.1.1 Evaluation of patients with acute flank pain/suspected ureteral stones

Non-contrast-enhanced computed tomography has become the standard for diagnosing acute flank pain, and has replaced intravenous urography (IVU). Non-contrast-enhanced computed tomography can determine stone diameter and density. When stones are absent, the cause of abdominal pain should be identified. In evaluating patients with suspected acute urolithiasis, NCCT is significantly more accurate than IVU [34].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Following initial ultrasound assessment, use non-contrast-enhanced computed tomography to confirm stone diagnosis in patients with acute flank pain, as it is superior to intravenous urography.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Non-contrast-enhanced computed tomography can detect uric acid and xanthine stones, which are radiolucent on plain films, but not indinavir stones [35]. Non-contrast-enhanced computed tomography can determine stone density, inner structure of the stone and skin-to-stone distance and surrounding anatomy; all of which affect selection of treatment modality [28, 36-38]. The advantage of non-contrast imaging must be balanced against loss of information on renal function and urinary collecting system anatomy, as well as higher radiation dose [39-42].

Radiation risk can be reduced by low-dose CT, which may, however, be difficult to introduce in standard clinical practice [43, 44]. In patients with a body mass index (BMI) < 30, low-dose CT has been shown to have a sensitivity of 86% for detecting ureteric stones < 3 mm and 100% for calculi > 3 mm [45]. A meta-analysis of prospective studies [46] has shown that low-dose CT diagnosed urolithiasis with a pooled sensitivity of 96.6% (95% CI: 95.0-97.8) and specificity of 94.9% (95% CI: 92.0-97.0).

Dual-energy CT can differentiate uric acid containing stones from calcium-containing stones [47].

---

Table 3.2.1: X-ray characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radiopaque</th>
<th>Poor radiopacity</th>
<th>Radiolucent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calcium oxalate dihydrate</td>
<td>Magnesium ammonium phosphate</td>
<td>Uric acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium oxalate monohydrate</td>
<td>Apatite</td>
<td>Ammonium urate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium phosphates</td>
<td>Cystine</td>
<td>Xanthine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2,8-Dihydroxyadenine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Drug-stones (Section 4.11)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.3.1.2 Radiological evaluation of patients with renal stones

Intravenous urography can provide information about renal function, the anatomy of the collecting system as well as the level of an obstruction. Non-contrast-enhanced CT allows for rapid 3D data acquisition including information on stone size and density, skin-to-stone distance and surrounding anatomy, but at the cost of increased radiation exposure. Low-dose and ultra-low-dose protocols seem to yield comparable results as standard-dose protocols with the exception of detection of very small stones or stones in obese patients [45, 46].

A small randomised study showed that in supine PNL, pre-operative planning using CT compared to IVU, resulted in easier access and shorter operating times [48].

In case stone removal is planned, the renal collecting system needs to be assessed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform a contrast study if stone removal is planned and the anatomy of the renal collecting system needs to be assessed.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use enhanced computed tomography in complex cases because it enables 3D reconstruction of the collecting system, as well as measurement of stone density and skin-to-stone distance. Intravenous urography may also be used.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.3.2 Diagnostics - metabolism-related

Each emergency patient with urolithiasis needs a succinct biochemical work-up of urine and blood besides imaging. At that point, no distinction is made between high- and low-risk patients for stone formation.

Table 3.3.1: Recommendations: basic laboratory analysis - emergency urolithiasis patients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Urine</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dipstick test of spot urine sample</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• red cells</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• white cells</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• nitrite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• approximate urine pH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urine microscopy and/or culture</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serum blood sample</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• creatinine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• uric acid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (ionised) calcium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• sodium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• potassium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood cell count</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• C-reactive protein (CRP)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a coagulation test (partial thromboplastin time [PTT] and international normalised ratio [INR]) if intervention is likely or planned.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.3.2.1 Basic laboratory analysis - non-emergency urolithiasis patients

Biochemical work-up is similar for all stone patients. However, if no intervention is planned, examination of sodium, potassium, C-reactive protein, and blood coagulation time can be omitted.

Only patients at high risk for stone recurrence should undergo a more specific analytical programme [15]. Stone-specific metabolic evaluation is described in Chapter 4.

The easiest method for diagnosing stones is by analysis of a passed stone using a validated method as listed below (see 3.2.2). Once the mineral composition is known, a potential metabolic disorder can be identified.

3.3.2.2 Analysis of stone composition

Stone analysis should be performed in all first-time stone formers.
In clinical practice, repeat stone analysis is needed in the case of:
• recurrence under pharmacological prevention;
• early recurrence after interventional therapy with complete stone clearance;
• late recurrence after a prolonged stone-free period [49, 51].

Patients should be instructed to filter their urine to retrieve a concrement for analysis. Stone passage and restoration of normal renal function should be confirmed.

The preferred analytical procedures are infrared spectroscopy (IRS) or X-ray diffraction (XRD) [52-54]. Equivalent results can be obtained by polarisation microscopy. Chemical analysis (wet chemistry) is generally deemed to be obsolete [52].

### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform stone analysis in first-time formers using a valid procedure (X-ray diffraction or infrared spectroscopy).</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat stone analysis in patients:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• presenting with recurrent stones despite drug therapy;</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• with early recurrence after complete stone clearance;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• with late recurrence after a long stone-free period because stone composition may change.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 3.3.3 Diagnosis in special groups and conditions

#### 3.3.3.1 Diagnostic imaging during pregnancy

In pregnant women diagnostic imaging (exposure to ionising radiation) might be associated with teratogenic risks and development of (childhood) malignancies. The risk for the child crucially depends on gestational age and radiation dose delivered. X-ray imaging during the first trimester should be reserved for patients in which alternative imaging methods have failed [55, 56].

Ultrasound (when necessary using change in renal resistive index and transvaginal/transabdominal US with a full bladder) has become the primary radiological diagnostic tool when evaluating pregnant patients suspected of renal colic. However, normal physiological changes in pregnancy can mimic ureteral obstruction [57].

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) can be used, as a second-line procedure, to define the level of urinary tract obstruction, and to visualise stones as a filling defect [58, 59].

Low dose CT protocols reduce the radiation exposure and are currently recommended to be used judicially in pregnant women as a last-line option [60, 61].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use ultrasound as the preferred method of imaging in pregnant women.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In pregnant women, use magnetic resonance imaging as a second-line imaging modality.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In pregnant women, use low-dose computed tomography as a last-line option.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

#### 3.3.3.2 Children

Children with urinary stones have a high risk of recurrence; therefore, standard diagnostic procedures for high-risk patients apply (Section 3.1.3 and Chapter 4). The most common non-metabolic disorders facilitating stone formation are vesicoureteral reflux (VUR), UPJ obstruction, neurogenic bladder, and other voiding difficulties [62].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In children, the most common non-metabolic disorders facilitating stone formation are vesicoureteral reflux, ureteropelvic junction obstruction, neurogenic bladder, and other voiding difficulties [62].</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 3.3.3.2.1 Diagnostic imaging

When selecting diagnostic procedures to identify urolithiasis in children, it should be remembered that these patients might be uncooperative, require anaesthesia, and may be sensitive to ionising radiation [63-65]. Again, the principle of ALARA (As Low As Reasonably Achievable) should be observed.
3.3.3.2 Ultrasound

Ultrasound is the primary imaging technique [63] in children. Its advantages are absence of radiation and no need for anaesthesia. Imaging should include both the fluid-filled bladder with adjoining portion of the ureters, as well as the upper ureter [66-70].

Colour Doppler US shows differences in the ureteric jet [67] and resistive index of the arciform arteries of both kidneys, which are indicative of the grade of obstruction [68].

Nevertheless, US fails to identify stones in > 40% of children [69-72] (LE: 4), and provides limited information on renal function.

3.3.3.2.3 Plain films (KUB radiography)

KUB radiography can help to identify stones and their radiopacitity, and facilitate follow-up.

3.3.3.2.4 Intravenous urography (IVU)

The radiation dose for IVU is comparable to that for voiding cystourethrography (0.33 mSV) [73]. However, the need for contrast medium injection is a major drawback.

3.3.3.2.5 Helical computed tomography (CT)

Recent low-dose CT protocols have been shown to significantly reduce radiation exposure [42, 74]. In children, only 5% of stones escape detection by NCCT [60, 67, 74]. Sedation or anaesthesia is rarely needed with modern high-speed CT equipment.

3.3.3.2.6 Magnetic resonance urography (MRU)

Magnetic resonance urography cannot be used to detect urinary stones. However, it might provide detailed anatomical information about the urinary collecting system, the location of an obstruction or stenosis in the ureter, and renal parenchymal morphology [75].

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In all children, complete a metabolic evaluation based on stone analysis.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collect stone material for analysis to classify the stone type.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In children, use ultrasound as first-line imaging modality when a stone is suspected; it should include the kidney, fluid-filled bladder and the ureter next to the kidney and the (filled) bladder.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If ultrasound will not provide the required information, perform a kidney-ureter-bladder radiography (or low-dose non-contrast-enhanced computed tomography).</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

3.4 Disease management

3.4.1 Management of patients with renal or ureteral stones

Treatment decisions for upper urinary tract calculi are based on several general aspects such as stone composition, stone size, and symptoms.

3.4.1.1 Renal colic

**Pain relief**

Pain relief is the first therapeutic step in patients with an acute stone episode [76].

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) including metamizole (dipyrone), a pyrazolone NSAID, are effective in patients with acute stone colic [77, 78], and have better analgesic efficacy than opioids. The addition of antispasmodics to NSAIDs does not result in better pain control and data on other types of non-opioid, non-NSAID medication is scarce [79]. Patients receiving NSAIDs are less likely to require further analgesia in the short term. It should be taken into consideration that the use of diclofenac and ibuprofen increased major coronary events. Diclofenac is contraindicated in patients with congestive heart failure (New York Heart Association class II-IV), ischaemic heart disease and peripheral arterial- and cerebrovascular disease. Patients with significant risk factors for cardiovascular events should be treated with diclofenac only after careful consideration. As risks increase with dose and duration, the lowest effective dose should be used for the shortest duration [80, 81].

Opioids, particularly pethidine, are associated with a high rate of vomiting compared to NSAIDs, and carry a greater likelihood of further analgesia being needed [82] (see below). If an opioid is used, it is recommended that it is not pethidine.
Prevention of recurrent renal colic
Facilitation of passage of ureteral stones is discussed in Section 3.4.3.1.2.

For patients with ureteral stones that are expected to pass spontaneously, NSAID tablets or suppositories (e.g., diclofenac sodium, 100-150 mg/day, 3-10 days) may help reduce inflammation and the risk of recurrent pain [83, 84]. Although diclofenac can affect renal function in patients with already reduced function, it has no functional effect in patients with normal renal function [85] (LE: 1a).

In a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, recurrent pain episodes of stone colic were significantly fewer in patients treated with NSAIDs (as compared to no NSAIDs) during the first seven days of treatment [86]. Contrary to earlier findings, daily α-blockers did not reduce recurrent pain or analgesia requirements in patients with distal ureteral stones in two recent large high-quality studies [87, 88] (Section 3.4.3.1.2). The most recent SR and meta-analysis by Hollingsworth et al. [4] addressed pain reduction as a secondary outcome and concluded that MET seems efficacious in reducing pain episodes of patients with ureteric stones who are amenable to conservative management. Patients benefitting most might be those with larger (distal) stones.

If analgesia cannot be achieved medically, drainage, using stenting or percutaneous nephrostomy or stone removal, should be performed.

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Provide immediate pain relief in acute stone episodes.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Whenever possible, offer a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory as the first drug of choice. e.g. metamizol (dipyrone); alternatively, depending on cardio-vascular risk factors, diclofenac*, indomethacin or ibuprofen**.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Offer hydromorphine, pentazocine or tramadol as a second choice.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Affects glomerular filtration rate (GFR) in patients with reduced renal function (LE: 2a).
** Recommended to counteract recurrent pain after ureteral colic.

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>Administration of daily α-blockers seems to reduce colic episodes, although controversy remains in the published literature.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>For symptomatic ureteral stones, urgent stone removal as first-line treatment is a feasible option in selected cases (see text).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

3.4.1.2 Management of sepsis and/or anuria in obstructed kidney
The obstructed kidney with all signs of urinary tract infection (UTI) and/or anuria is a urological emergency. Urgent decompression is often necessary to prevent further complications in infected hydronephrosis secondary to stone-induced, unilateral or bilateral renal obstruction.

**Decompression**
Currently, there are two options for urgent decompression of obstructed collecting systems:
- placement of an indwelling ureteral stent;
- percutaneous placement of a nephrostomy tube.

There is little evidence to support the superiority of percutaneous nephrostomy over retrograde stenting for primary treatment of infected hydronephrosis. There is no good quality evidence to suggest that ureteric stenting has more complications than percutaneous nephrostomy [89, 90].

Only one RCT [91] compared different modalities of decompression of acute infected hydronephrosis. The complications of percutaneous nephrostomy insertion have been reported consistently, but those of ureteric stent insertion are less well described [89]. Definitive stone removal should be delayed until the infection is cleared following a complete course of antimicrobial therapy. A small RCT showed the feasibility of immediate ureteroscopic stone removal combined with appropriate antibiotic regimen; however, at the cost of longer hospital stay and higher analgesic requirements [92].

In children, ureteric stents might have some advantage compared to PCN in case of acute anuria [93].

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>For decompression of the renal collecting system, ureteral stents and percutaneous nephrostomy catheters are equally effective.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Urgently decompress the collecting system in case of sepsis with obstructing stones, using percutaneous drainage or ureteral stenting.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delay definitive treatment of the stone until sepsis is resolved.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Further measures**

Following urgent decompression of the obstructed and infected urinary collecting system, both urine- and blood samples should be sent for culture-antibiogram sensitivity testing, and antibiotics should be initiated immediately thereafter or continued if initiated prior to testing. The regimen should be re-evaluated in the light of the culture-antibiogram test. Although clinically well accepted, the impact of a second antibiogram test on treatment outcome has not yet been evaluated. Intensive care might become necessary [94].

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Collect (again) urine for antibiogram test following decompression.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start antibiotics immediately (+ intensive care if necessary).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-evaluate antibiotic regimen following antibiogram findings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.4.1.3  General recommendations and precautions for stone removal

3.4.1.3.1  Antibiotic therapy

Urinary tract infections should always be treated if stone removal is planned. In patients with clinically significant infection and obstruction, drainage should be performed for several days, via a stent or percutaneous nephrostomy, before starting stone removal.

**Recommendation**

| Obtain a urine culture or perform urinary microscopy before any treatment is planned. | GR |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------    |    |

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

**Perioperative antibiotic prophylaxis**

For prevention of infection following ureterorenoscopy and percutaneous stone removal, no clear-cut evidence exists [95, 96]. In a review of a large database of patients undergoing percutaneous nephrolithotomy, it was found that in patients with negative baseline urine culture, antibiotic prophylaxis significantly reduced the rate of post-operative fever and other complications [97]. Single dose administration was found to be sufficient [98].

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exclude or treat urinary tract infections prior to stone removal.</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer perioperative antibiotic prophylaxis to all patients undergoing endourological treatment.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.1.3.2  Antithrombotic therapy and stone treatment

Patients with a bleeding diathesis, or receiving antithrombotic therapy, should be referred to an internist for appropriate therapeutic measures before deciding on stone management [99-103]. In patients with an uncorrected bleeding diathesis, the following are at elevated risk of haemorrhage or perinephric haematoma (PNH) (high-risk procedures):

- shock wave lithotripsy (SWL) (hazard ratio of PNH up to 4.2 during anticoagulant/antiplatelet medication [104] [LE: 2];
- percutaneous nephrolithotripsy;
- percutaneous nephrostomy;
- laparoscopic surgery;
- open surgery [99, 105, 106].

Shock wave lithotripsy is feasible and safe after correction of the underlying coagulopathy [107-111]. In the case of an uncorrected bleeding disorder or continued antithrombotic therapy, ureterorenoscopy (URS), in contrast to SWL and PNL, might offer an alternative approach since it is associated with less morbidity [112-116]. Only data on flexible ureterorenoscopy are available which support the superiority of URS in the treatment of proximal ureteric stones [113, 117].
Table 3.4.1: Risk stratification for bleeding [101-103, 118]

| Low-risk bleeding procedures | Cystoscopy  
Flexible cystoscopy  
Ureteral catheterisation  
Extraction of ureteric stentUreteroscopy |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| High-risk bleeding procedures | Shock wave lithotripsy  
Percutaneous nephrostomy  
Percutaneous nephrolithotripsy |

Table 3.4.2: Suggested strategy for antithrombotic therapy in stone removal [101-103]
(In collaboration with cardiologist/internist weigh the risks and benefits of discontinuation of therapy, vs. delaying elective surgical procedures.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Bleeding risk of planned procedure</th>
<th>Risk of thromboembolism</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td>Intermediate risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warfarin</td>
<td>Low-risk procedure</td>
<td>May be continued</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dabigatran</td>
<td>High-risk procedure</td>
<td>May be temporarily discontinued at appropriate interval. Bridging therapy is strongly recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rivaroxaban</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apixaban</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirin</td>
<td>Low-risk procedure</td>
<td>Continue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thienopyridine agents (P2Y12 receptor inhibitors)</td>
<td>Low-risk procedure</td>
<td>Discontinue five days before intervention. Resume within 24-72 hours with a loading dose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk procedure</td>
<td>Discontinue five days before intervention and resume within 24-72 hours with a loading dose.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommendations | LE | GR
--- | --- | ---
Offer active surveillance to patients at high risk for thrombotic complications in the presence of an asymptomatic calyceal stone. | 4 | C
Decide on temporary discontinuation, or bridging of antithrombotic therapy in high-risk patients, in consultation with the internist. | 3 | B
Prefer retrograde (flexible) URS if stone removal is essential and antithrombotic therapy cannot be discontinued, since it is associated with less morbidity. | 2a | A* 

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.4.1.3.3 Obesity
Obesity can cause a higher risk due to anesthesiological requirements, and a lower success rate after SWL and PNL.

3.4.1.3.4 Stone composition
Stones composed of brushite, calcium oxalate monohydrate, or cystine are particularly hard as well as stones with high density on NCCT [36]. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy or ureterorenoscopy (RIRS) and URS are alternatives for removal of large SWL-resistant stones.

Recommendations | LE | GR
--- | --- | ---
Consider the stone composition before deciding on the method of removal, based on patient history, former stone analysis of the patient or Hounsfield unit (HU) on unenhanced computed tomography (CT). Stones with density > 1,000 HU on non-contrast-enhanced CT are less likely to be disintegrated by shock wave lithotripsy. | 2-4 | B*

*Upgraded in parts based on panel consensus.

3.4.1.3.5 Steinstrasse
Steinstrasse is an accumulation of stone fragments or stone gravel in the ureter, may interfere with the passage of urine [119]. Steinstrasse occurs in 4-7% cases of SWL [120], and the major factor in in the development of steinstrasse formation is stone size [121].

A major problem of steinstrasse is ureteral obstruction, which may be silent in up to 23% of cases. A meta-analysis including eight RCTs (n = 876) suggests a benefit of stenting before SWL in terms of steinstrasse formation, but does not result in a benefit on stone-free rates (SFRs) or less auxiliary treatments [122-124]. When steinstrasse is asymptomatic, conservative treatment is an initial option. Medical expulsion therapy significantly increases stone expulsion and reduces the need for endoscopic intervention [125, 126].

Summary of evidence

| Medical expulsion therapy increases the stone expulsion rate of steinstrasse [125]. | 1b |
| When spontaneous passage is unlikely, further treatment of steinstrasse is indicated. | 4 |
| Shock wave lithotripsy is indicated in asymptomatic and symptomatic cases, with no evidence of urinary tract infection (UTI), when large stone fragments are present [127]. | 4 |
| Ureterorenoscopy is effective for the treatment of steinstrasse [128]. | 3 |
| Placement of a percutaneous nephrostomy tube or ureteral stent is indicated for symptomatic ureteric obstruction with/without urinary tract infection. | 4 |

Recommendations

| Treat steinstrasse associated with urinary tract infection/fever preferably with percutaneous nephrostomy. | 4 | C |
| Treat steinstrasse when large stone fragments are present with shock wave lithotripsy or ureterorenoscopy. | 4 | C |

3.4.2 Specific stone management in renal stones
The natural history of small, non-obstructing asymptomatic calculi is not well defined, and the risk of progression is unclear. There is still no consensus on the follow-up duration, timing and type of intervention. Treatment options are chemolysis or active stone removal.
3.4.2.1 Types of treatments

3.4.2.1.1 Conservative treatment (Observation)

Observation of renal stones, especially in calices, depends on their natural history (Section 3.4.2.2). The recommendations provided are not supported by high level literature. There is a prospective trial supporting annual observation for asymptomatic inferior calyceal stones, ≤ 10 mm. In case stone growth is detected the follow up interval should be lowered. Intervention is advised for stones growing > 5 mm [129].

### Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is still debatable whether renal stones should be treated, or whether annual follow-up is sufficient for asymptomatic calyceal stones that have remained stable for six months.

### Recommendation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Follow-up periodically in cases where renal stones are not treated (initially after six months then yearly, evaluating symptoms and stone status [either by ultrasound, kidney-ureter-bladder radiography or computed tomography]).

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.4.2.1.2 Chemolysis

3.4.2.1.2.1 Percutaneous irrigation chemolysis

Percutaneous chemolysis is rarely used nowadays. Percutaneous irrigation chemolysis may be an option for infection- and uric acid stones [130, 131]. For dissolution of struvite stones, Suby’s G solution (10% hemiacidrin; pH 3.5-4) can be used [132].

3.4.2.1.2.2 Oral chemolysis

Stones composed of uric acid, but not sodium or ammonium urate, can be dissolved by oral chemolysis. Prior stone analysis may provide information on stone composition. Urinary pH measurement and X-ray characteristics can provide information on the type of stone.

Oral chemolitholysis is based on alkalinisation of urine by application of alkaline citrate or sodium bicarbonate [131, 133]. The pH should be adjusted to 7.0-7.2. Chemolysis is more effective at a higher pH, which might, however, promote calcium phosphate stone formation. Monitoring of radiolucent stones during therapy is the domain of US; however, repeat-N CCT might be necessary.

In the case of uric acid obstruction of the collecting system, oral chemolysis in combination with urinary drainage is indicated [134]. A combination of alkalinisation with tamsulosin can increase the frequency of spontaneous passage of distal ureteral uric acid stones [134].

### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inform the patient how to modify the dosage of alkalis medication according to urine pH, which is a direct consequence of such medication.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inform the patient how to monitor urine pH by dipstick three times a day (at regular intervals). Morning urine must be included.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Carefully monitor radiolucent stones during/after therapy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inform the patient of the significance of compliance.

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.4.2.1.3 Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (SWL)

Success depends on the efficacy of the lithotripter and the following factors:

- size, location (ureteral, pelvic or calyceal), and composition (hardness) of the stones (Section 3.4.3.2);
- patient’s habitus (Section 3.4.2.2);
- performance of SWL (best practice, see below).

Each of these factors significantly influence retreatment rate and final outcome of SWL.

3.4.2.1.3.1 Contraindications of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy

There are several contraindications to the use of extracorporeal SWL, including:

- pregnancy, due to the potential effects on the foetus [135];
- bleeding diatheses, which should be compensated for at least 24 hours before and 48 hours after treatment [136];
- uncontrolled UTIs;
• severe skeletal malformations and severe obesity, which prevent targeting of the stone;
• arterial aneurysm in the vicinity of the stone [137];
• anatomical obstruction distal to the stone.

3.4.2.1.3.2 Best clinical practice

Stenting
Routine use of internal stents before SWL does not improve SFRs, nor lowers the number of auxiliary treatments. It may, however, reduce formation of steinstrasse [122, 124] (LE: 1b).

Pacemaker
Patients with a pacemaker can be treated with SWL, provided that appropriate technical precautions are taken; patients with implanted cardioverter defibrillators must be managed with special care (firing mode temporarily reprogrammed during SWL treatment). However, this might not be necessary with new-generation lithotripters [138].

Shock wave rate
Lowering shock wave frequency from 120 to 60-90 shock waves/min improves SFRs [139-144]. Tissue damage increases with shock wave frequency [145-150].

Number of shock waves, energy setting and repeat treatment sessions
The number of shock waves that can be delivered at each session depends on the type of lithotripter and shock wave power. There is no consensus on the maximum number of shock waves.

Starting SWL on a lower energy setting with stepwise power (and SWL sequence) ramping can achieve vasoconstriction during treatment [147], which prevents renal injury [151-153]. Animal studies [154] and a prospective randomised study [155] have shown better SFRs (96% vs. 72%) using stepwise power ramping, but no difference has been found for fragmentation or evidence of complications after SWL, irrespective of whether ramping was used [156].

There are no conclusive data on the intervals required between repeated SWL sessions. However, clinical experience indicates that repeat sessions are feasible (within 1 day for ureteral stones).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stepwise power ramping prevents renal injury.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical experience has shown that repeat sessions are feasible (within one day for ureteral stones).</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimal shock wave frequency is 1.0 to 1.5Hz.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Improvement of acoustic coupling
Proper acoustic coupling between the cushion of the treatment head and the patient’s skin is important. Defects (air pockets) in the coupling gel deflect 99% of shock waves [157]. Ultrasound gel is probably the most widely used agent available for use as a lithotripsy coupling agent [158].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ensure correct use of the coupling agent because this is crucial for effective shock wave transportation.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Procedural control
Results of treatment are operator dependent, and better results are obtained by experienced clinicians. During the procedure, careful imaging control of localisation contributes to outcome quality [159].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maintain careful fluoroscopic and/or ultrasonographic monitoring during shock wave lithotripsy.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

Pain control
Careful control of pain during treatment is necessary to limit pain-induced movements and excessive respiratory excursions [160-162].
Recommendation
Use proper analgesia because it improves treatment results by limiting pain-induced movements and excessive respiratory excursions.

**Antibiotic prophylaxis**
No standard antibiotic prophylaxis before SWL is recommended. However, prophylaxis is recommended in the case of internal stent placement ahead of anticipated treatments and in the presence of increased bacterial burden (e.g., indwelling catheter, nephrostomy tube, or infectious stones) [50, 163, 164].

Recommendation
In the case of infected stones or bacteriuria, prescribe antibiotics prior to shock wave lithotripsy.

**Medical therapy after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy**
In spite of conflicting results, most RCTs and several meta-analyses support MET after SWL for ureteral or renal stones as adjunct to expedite expulsion and to increase SFRs. Medical expulsion therapy might also reduce analgesic requirements [165-172].

3.4.2.1.3.3 Complications of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy
Compared to PNL and URS, there are fewer overall complications with SWL [173, 174] (Table 3.4.1).

Table 3.4.1: Shock wave lithotripsy-related complications [120, 175-188]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complications</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Related to stone fragments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steinstrasse</td>
<td>4 - 7</td>
<td>[120, 175, 176]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regrowth of residual fragments</td>
<td>21 - 59</td>
<td>[177, 178]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal colic</td>
<td>2 - 4</td>
<td>[179]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infectious</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacteriuria in non-infection stones</td>
<td>7.7 - 23</td>
<td>[177, 180]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sepsis</td>
<td>1 - 2.7</td>
<td>[177, 180]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tissue effect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haematoma, symptomatic</td>
<td>&lt; 1</td>
<td>[181]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haematoma, asymptomatic</td>
<td>4 - 19</td>
<td>[181]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiovascular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysrhythmia</td>
<td>11 - 59</td>
<td>[177, 182]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morbid cardiac events</td>
<td>Case reports</td>
<td>[177, 182]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowel perforation</td>
<td>Case reports</td>
<td>[183-185]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver, spleen haematoma</td>
<td>Case reports</td>
<td>[15-188]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The relationship between SWL and hypertension or diabetes is unclear. Published data are contradictory; however, no evidence exists supporting the hypothesis that SWL may cause long-term adverse effects [189-194].

3.4.2.1.4 Endourology techniques for renal stone removal
3.4.2.1.4.1 Percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PNL)
Percutaneous nephrolithotripsy remains the standard procedure for large renal calculi. Different rigid and flexible endoscopes are available and the selection is mainly based on the surgeon’s own preference. Standard access tracts are 24-30 F. Smaller access sheaths, < 18 French, were initially introduced for paediatric use, but are now increasingly popular in adults.

The efficacy of miniaturised systems seems to be high, but longer operation times apply and benefit compared to standard PNL for selected patients has yet to be demonstrated [195]. There is some evidence that smaller tracts cause less bleeding complications, but further studies need to evaluate this issue. Smaller instruments bear the risk of increasing intra-renal pelvic pressure [5, 196-198].

3.4.2.1.4.1.1 Contraindications
Patients receiving anticoagulant therapy must be monitored carefully pre- and post-operatively. Anticoagulant therapy must be discontinued before PNL [112].
Other important contraindications include:
- untreated UTI;
• tumour in the presumptive access tract area;
• potential malignant kidney tumour;
• pregnancy (Section 3.4.3.1).

3.4.2.1.4.1.2 Best clinical practice

Intracorporeal lithotripsy

Several methods for intracorporeal lithotripsy are available (devices are discussed in Section 3.4.1.2.1.1.5).

During PNL, ultrasonic and pneumatic systems are most commonly used for rigid nephroscopy. When using miniaturised instruments, laser lithotripsy is associated with lower stone migration than with pneumatic lithotripsy [199]. Flexible endoscopes require laser lithotripsy to maintain tip deflection and the Ho:YAG laser has become the standard [200].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use ultrasonic, ballistic and holmium: yttrium-aluminium-garnet devices for intracorporeal lithotripsy during percutaneous nephrolithotomy.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

Pre-operative imaging

Pre-procedural evaluations are summarised in Section 3.3.1. In particular, PNL, US or CT of the kidney and the surrounding structures can provide information regarding interpositioned organs within the planned percutaneous path (e.g., spleen, liver, large bowel, pleura, and lung) [201].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform pre-procedural imaging, including contrast medium where possible or retrograde study when starting the procedure, to assess stone comprehensiveness and anatomy of the collecting system to ensure safe access to the renal stone.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

For antibiotic therapy - see General recommendations and precautions for stone removal (Section 3.4.1.4.1).

Positioning of the patient

Both prone and supine positions are equally safe.

Although the supine position confers some advantages, it depends on appropriate equipment being available to position the patient correctly, for example, X-ray devices and an operating table. Most studies cannot demonstrate an advantage of supine PNL in terms of operating room (OR) time. In some series, SFR is lower than for the prone position despite a longer OR time. Prone position offers more options for puncture and is therefore preferred for upper pole or multiple access [202-204]. On the other hand, supine position allows simultaneous retrograde access to the collecting system, using flexible ureteroscope [205]. The Urolithiasis Guidelines Panel aim to set up a SR to assess this topic.

Puncture

Although fluoroscopy is the most common intra-operative imaging method, the (additional) use of US reduces the radiation exposure.

Colon interposition in the access tract of PNL can lead to colon injuries. Pre-operative CT or intra-operative US allows identification of the tissue between the skin and kidney and lowers the incidence of bowel injury. The calyceal puncture may be done under direct visualisation using simultaneous flexible ureteroscopy [206-209].

Dilatation

Dilatation of the percutaneous access tract can be achieved using a metallic telescope, single (serial) dilators, or a balloon dilator. Although there are papers demonstrating that single step dilation is equally effective as other methods, the difference in outcomes is most likely related to surgeon experience rather than to the technology used [210].

Choice of instruments

The Urolithiasis Panel performed a SR assessing the outcomes of PNL using smaller tract sizes (< 22 Fr, mini-PNL) for removing renal calculi [5]. Stone-free rates were comparable in miniaturised and standard PNL
procedures. Procedures performed with small instruments tended to be associated with significantly lower blood loss, while the duration of procedure tended to be significantly longer. Other complications were not notably different between PNL types. However, the quality of the evidence was poor, drawn mainly from small studies, the majority of which were single-arm case series, and only two of which were RCTs. Furthermore, the tract sizes used, and types of stones treated were heterogeneous. Hence, the risk of bias and confounding were high.

**Nephrostomy and stents**
The decision on whether or not to place a nephrostomy tube at the end of the PNL procedure depends on several factors, including:

- presence of residual stones;
- likelihood of a second-look procedure;
- significant intra-operative blood loss;
- urine extravasation;
- ureteral obstruction;
- potential persistent bacteriuria due to infected stones;
- solitary kidney;
- bleeding diathesis;
- planned percutaneous chemolitholysis.

Small bore nephrostomies seem to have advantages in terms of post-operative pain [211, 212]. Tubeless PNL is performed without a nephrostomy tube. When neither a nephrostomy tube nor a ureteral stent is introduced, the procedure is known as totally tubeless PNL. In uncomplicated cases, the latter procedure results in a shorter hospital stay, with no disadvantages reported [213-215].

**Recommendation LE GR**
In uncomplicated cases, perform a tubeless (without nephrostomy tube) or totally tubeless (without nephrostomy tube and ureteral stent) percutaneous nephrolithotomy procedure as it is a safe alternative.

### 3.4.2.1.4.1.3 Complications
The most common post-operative complications associated with PNL are fever and bleeding, urinary leakage, and problems due to residual stones (Table 3.4.2).

#### Table 3.4.2: Complications following percutaneous nephrolithotomy [216]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complications</th>
<th>Transfusion</th>
<th>Embolisation</th>
<th>Urinoma</th>
<th>Fever</th>
<th>Sepsis</th>
<th>Thoracic complication</th>
<th>Organ injury</th>
<th>Death</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Range)</td>
<td>(0-20%)</td>
<td>(0-1.5%)</td>
<td>(0-1%)</td>
<td>(0-32.1%)</td>
<td>(0-11.6%)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(0-1.7%)</td>
<td>(0-0.3%)</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N = 11,929</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>0.4%</td>
<td>0.2%</td>
<td>10.8%</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
<td>1.5%</td>
<td>0.4%</td>
<td>0.05%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Peri-operative fever can occur, even with a sterile pre-operative urinary culture and peri-operative antibiotic prophylaxis, because the renal stones themselves may be a source of infection. Intra-operative renal stone culture may therefore help to select post-operative antibiotics [217, 218]. Intra-operative irrigation pressure < 30 mmHg and unobstructed post-operative urinary drainage may be important factors in preventing post-operative sepsis. Bleeding after PNL may be treated by brief clamping of the nephrostomy tube. Super-selective embolic occlusion of the arterial branch may become necessary in the case of severe bleeding.

#### 3.4.2.1.4.2 Ureterorenoscopy for renal stones (RIRS)
Technical improvements including endoscope miniaturisation, improved deflection mechanism, enhanced optical quality and tools, and introduction of disposables have led to an increased use of URS for both, renal and ureteral stones. Major technological progress has been achieved for RIRS. A recent SR addressing renal stones > 2 cm showed a cumulative SFR of 91% with 1.45 procedures/patient; 4.5% of the complications were ≥ Clavien 3 [219-221]. Digital scopes demonstrate shorter operation times due to the improvement in image quality [220, 222, 223]. For best clinical practice see Section 3.4.3.1.4.1.2 - Ureteral stones-URS.

Stones that cannot be extracted directly must be disintegrated. If it is difficult to access stones that need disintegration within the lower renal pole, it may help to displace them into a more accessible calyx [224].
Use flexible ureterorenoscopy in case percutaneous nephrolithotomy or shock wave lithotripsy are not an option (even for stones > 2 cm). However, in that case there is a higher risk that a follow-up procedure and placement of a ureteral stent may be needed. In complex stone cases, use open or laparoscopic approaches as possible alternatives.

3.4.2.1.4.3 Open and laparoscopic surgery for removal of renal stones

Advances in SWL and endourological surgery (URS and PNL) have significantly decreased the indications for open or laparoscopic stone surgery [225-231]. There is a consensus that most complex stones, including partial and complete staghorn stones, should be approached primarily with PNL. Additionally, a combined approach with PNL and RIRS may also be an appropriate alternative. However, if a reasonable number of percutaneous approaches are not likely to be successful, or if multiple, endourological approaches have been performed unsuccessfully; open or laparoscopic surgery may be a valid treatment option [232-239].

Recommendation
Offer laparoscopic or open surgical stone removal in rare cases in which shock wave lithotripsy, (flexible) ureterorenoscopy and percutaneous nephrolithotomy fail, or are unlikely to be successful.

3 C
When expertise is available, perform surgery laparoscopically before proceeding to open surgery, especially when the stone mass is centrally located.

3.4.2.2 Indication for active stone removal of renal stones [240]

• stone growth;
• stones in high-risk patients for stone formation;
• obstruction caused by stones;
• infection;
• symptomatic stones (e.g., pain or haematuria);
• stones > 15 mm;
• stones < 15 mm if observation is not the option of choice.
• patient preference;
• comorbidity;
• social situation of the patient (e.g., profession or travelling);
• choice of treatment.

The risk of a symptomatic episode or need for intervention of patients with asymptomatic renal stones seems to be ~10-25% per year, with a cumulative five-year event probability of 48.5% [129, 241, 242]. A prospective RCT with > 2 year clinical follow-up reported no significant difference between SWL and observation when comparing asymptomatic calyceal stones < 15 mm in terms of SFR, symptoms, requirement for additional treatment, quality of life (QoL), renal function, or hospital admission [243]. Although some have recommended prophylaxis for these stones to prevent renal colic, haematuria, infection, or stone growth, conflicting data have been reported [242, 244, 245]. In a follow-up period of almost five years after SWL, two series have demonstrated that up to 25% of patients with small residual fragments needed treatment [178, 246]. Although the question of whether calyceal stones should be treated is still unanswered, stone growth, de novo obstruction, associated infection, and acute and/or chronic pain are indications for treatment [240, 247, 248].

Summary of evidence
Although the question of whether calyceal stones should be treated is still unanswered, stone growth, de novo obstruction, associated infection, and acute and/or chronic pain are indications for treatment.

Recommendations
Offer active treatment for renal stones in case of stone growth, de novo obstruction, associated infection, and acute and/or chronic pain.

Assess comorbidity and patient preference when making treatment decisions.
3.4.2.3 Selection of procedure for active removal of renal stones

For general recommendations and precautions see Section 3.4.1.3.

3.4.2.3.1 Stones in renal pelvis or upper/middle calices
Shock wave lithotripsy, PNL and RIRS are available treatment modalities for renal calculi. While PNL efficacy is hardly affected by stone size, the SFRs after SWL or URS are inversely proportional to stone size [249-252]. Shock wave lithotripsy achieves good SFRs for stones up to 20 mm, except for those at the lower pole [251, 253, 254]. Endourology is considered an alternative because of the reduced need of repeated procedures and consequently a shorter time until stone-free status is achieved. Stones > 20 mm should be treated primarily by PNL, because SWL often requires multiple treatments, and is associated with an increased risk of ureteral obstruction (colic or steinstrasse) with a need for adjunctive procedures (Figure 3.4.1) [173]. Retrograde renal surgery cannot be recommended as first-line treatment for stones > 20 mm in uncomplicated cases as SFRs decrease, and staged procedures will be required [255-257]. However, it may be a first-line option in patients where PNL is not an option or contraindicated.

3.4.2.3.2 Stones in the lower renal pole
The stone clearance rate after SWL seems to be lower for stones in the inferior calyx than for other intra-renal locations. Although the disintegration efficacy of SWL is not limited compared to other locations, the fragments often remain in the calyx and cause recurrent stone formation. The reported SFR of SWL for lower pole calculi is 25-95%. The preferential use of endoscopic procedures is supported by some current reports, even for stones smaller than 1 cm [173, 249, 250, 252, 253, 257-265].

The following can impair successful stone treatment by SWL [260, 266-269]:
• steep infundibular-pelvic angle;
• long calyx;
• long skin-to-stone distance;
• narrow infundibulum (Table 3.4.4).

Further anatomical parameters cannot yet be established. Supportive measures such as inversion, vibration or hydration may facilitate stone clearance [270].

Table 3.4.4: Unfavourable factors for shock wave lithotripsy success for lower calyceal stones
[260, 266, 271]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factors that make shock wave lithotripsy less likely</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shock wave-resistant stones (calcium oxalate monohydrate, brushite, or cystine).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steep infundibular-pelvic angle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long lower pole calyx (&gt; 10 mm).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrow infundibulum (&lt; 5 mm).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long skin-to-stone distance (&gt; 10 cm).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If there are negative predictors for SWL, PNL and RIRS might be reasonable alternatives, even for smaller calculi [258]. Retrograde renal surgery seems to have comparable efficacy to SWL [173, 253]. Recent clinical experience has suggested a higher SFR of RIRS compared to SWL, but at the expense of greater invasiveness. Depending on operator skills, stones up to 3 cm can be treated by RIRS [221, 272-274]. However, staged procedures are frequently required.

In complex stone cases, open or laparoscopic approaches are possible alternatives (see appropriate chapters).
3.4.2.3.3 Recommendations for the selection of procedures for active removal of renal stones

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer shock wave lithotripsy (SWL) and endourology (percutaneous nephrolithotomy [PNL], retrograde renal surgery [RIRS]) as treatment options for stones &lt; 2 cm within the renal pelvis and upper or middle calices.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform PNL as first-line treatment of larger stones &gt; 2 cm.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In case PNL is not an option, treat larger stones (&gt; 2 cm) with flexible ureterorenoscopy or SWL. However, in such instances there is a higher risk that a follow-up procedure and placement of a ureteral stent may be needed.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For the lower pole, perform PNL or RIRS, even for stones &gt; 1 cm, as the efficacy of SWL is limited (depending on favourable and unfavourable factors for SWL).</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 3.4.1: Treatment algorithm for renal calculi

*The term ‘Endourology’ encompasses all PNL and URS interventions. PNL = percutaneous nephrolithotomy; RIRS = retrograde renal surgery; SWL = shock wave lithotripsy; URS = ureterorenoscopy.

3.4.3 Specific stone management of Ureteral stones
3.4.3.1 Types of treatment
3.4.3.1.1 Conservative treatment/observation
There are only limited data regarding spontaneous stone passage according to stone size [275]. It is estimated that 95% of stones up to 4 mm pass within 40 days [189]. Observation is feasible in informed patients who develop no complications (infection, refractory pain, deterioration of renal function).
In patients with newly diagnosed small* ureteral stones, if active removal is not indicated (Section 3.4.2.2), observe patient initially with periodic evaluation. Offer patient appropriate medical therapy to facilitate stone passage during observation.

*See stratification data [189].

Based on the analysis of available evidence, an exact cut-off size for stones that are likely to pass spontaneously cannot be provided; < 10 mm may be considered a best estimate [189]. Therefore, the Panel decided not to include stone size but rather recommend “small”, suggesting < 6 mm. The Panel is aware of the fact that spontaneous stone expulsion decreases with increasing stone size and that there are differences between individual patients.

3.4.3.1.2 Pharmacological treatment, Medical expulsive therapy

Medical expulsive therapy (MET) should only be used in informed patients. Treatment should be discontinued if complications develop (infection, refractory pain, deterioration of renal function). Several substances are in discussion for MET [276-279]. When using \( \alpha \)-blockers for MET possible side effects include retrograde ejaculation and hypotension [84].

Meta-analyses have shown that patients with ureteral stones treated with \( \alpha \)-blockers or nifedipine are more likely to pass stones with fewer colic episodes than those not receiving such therapy [84, 280]. However, there is contradictory evidence between these studies and several well-designed, multicentre, placebo-controlled, double-blinded randomised studies showing limited, or no, benefit using \( \alpha \)-blockers, besides some advantage for distal ureteral stones > 5 mm) [87, 88, 281]. A published meta-analysis, including 55 trials with a data search cut-off of July 1st 2015, also including the publications addressed above, assessed stone passage as primary outcome [4]. Based on the well-designed sensitivity analyses of this meta-analysis, \( \alpha \)-blockers promote spontaneous stone expulsion of large stones located in any part of the ureter.

The panel concludes that MET seems efficacious in the treatment of patients with ureteric stones who are amenable to conservative management. The greatest benefit might be among those with larger (distal) stones [282].

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>MET seems to be efficacious treating patients with ureteric stones who are amenable to conservative management. The greatest benefit might be among those with larger (distal) stones.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Based on studies with a limited number of patients [279, 283, 284] (LE: 1b), no recommendation for the use of corticosteroids in combination with \( \alpha \)-blockers in MET can be made.

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>There is no evidence to support the use of corticosteroids as monotherapy for MET.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>Insufficient data exist to support the use of corticosteroids in combination with ( \alpha )-blockers as an accelerating adjunct.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Select patients for an attempt at spontaneous passage or medical expulsive therapy (MET), based on well-controlled pain, no clinical evidence of sepsis, and adequate renal functional reserve.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Offer ( \alpha )-blockers as MET as one of the treatment options, in particular for (distal) ureteral stones &gt; 5 mm.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Counsel patients regarding the controversies in the literature, attendant risks of MET, including associated drug side effects. Inform the patient that ( \alpha )-blockers as MET are administered off-label†**.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Follow-up patients in short intervals to monitor stone position and assess for hydronephrosis.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

† It is not known if tamsulosin harms the human foetus or if it is found in breast milk.
*Upgraded based on panel consensus.
**MET in children cannot be recommended due to the limited data in this specific population.

Medical expulsive therapy in special situations is addressed in the particular chapters.
3.4.3.1.2.1 Duration of medical expulsive therapy treatment
Most studies have had a duration of one month. No data are currently available to support other time-intervals.

3.4.3.1.3 Shock wave lithotripsy
For best clinical practice, see Section 3.4.2.1.4.2 (Renal stones).

**Stenting**
The stenting is not recommended as part of SWL, since it does not increase SFRs [189, 285]. When a stent is inserted, patients often suffer from frequency, dysuria, urgency, and suprapubic pain [285].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not routinely use a stent as part of shock wave lithotripsy treatment of ureteral stones.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.3.1.4 Endourology techniques
3.4.3.1.4.1 Ureterorenoscopy
The current standard for rigid ureterorenoscopes are tip diameters of < 8 F. Rigid URS can be used for the whole ureter [189]. However, technical improvements, as well as the availability of digital scopes also favour the use of flexible ureteroscopes in the ureter [219].

3.4.3.1.4.1.1 Contraindications
Apart from general problems, for example, with general anaesthesia or untreated UTIs, URS can be performed in all patients without any specific contraindications.

3.4.3.1.4.1.2 Best clinical practice in ureterorenoscopy (URS)
**Access to the upper urinary tract**
Most interventions are performed under general anaesthesia, although local or spinal anaesthesia is possible. Intravenous sedation is suitable for female patients with distal ureteral stones [286].

Antegrade URS is an option for large, impacted proximal ureteral calculi [287] (Section 3.4.3.1.4.2).

**Safety aspects**
Fluoroscopic equipment must be available in the OR. We recommend placement of a safety wire, even though some groups have demonstrated that URS can be performed without it [288-290].

Balloon and plastic dilators should be available, if necessary.

Prior rigid ureterorenoscopy can be helpful for optical dilatation followed by flexible URS, if necessary. If ureteral access is not possible, insertion of a JJ stent followed by URS after seven to fourteen days offers an alternative procedure. Bilateral URS during the same session is feasible resulting in similar SFRs, but slightly higher overall (mostly minor) complication rates [291].

**Ureteral access sheaths**
Hydrophilic-coated ureteral access sheaths, which are available in different calibres (inner diameter from 9 F upwards), can be inserted via a guide wire, with the tip placed in the proximal ureter.

Ureteral access sheaths allow easy, multiple, access to the upper urinary tract and therefore significantly facilitate URS. The use of ureteral access sheaths improves vision by establishing a continuous outflow, decreasing intra-renal pressure, and potentially reduces operating time [292, 293].

The insertion of ureteral access sheaths may lead to ureteral damage, whereas the risk is lowest in pre-stented systems [294]. No data on long-term side effects are available [294, 295]. Use of ureteral access sheaths depends on the surgeon’s preference.

**Stone extraction**
The aim of URS is complete stone removal. “Dust and go” strategies should be limited to the treatment of large (renal) stones.

Stones can be extracted by endoscopic forceps or baskets. Only baskets made of nitinol can be used for flexible URS [296].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform stone extraction using a basket without endoscopic visualisation of the stone (blind basketing).</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.*
**Intracorporeal lithotripsy**

The most effective lithotripsy system is the Ho:YAG laser, which is currently the optimum standard for ureterorenoscopy and flexible nephroscopy (Section 3.4.2.1.4.1.2), because it is effective in all stone types [297, 298]. Pneumatic and US systems can be used with high disintegration efficacy in rigid URS [299, 300].

However, stone migration into the kidney is a common problem, which can be prevented by placement of special anti-migration tools proximal of the stone [301]. Medical expulsion therapy following Ho:YAG laser lithotripsy increases SFRs and reduces colic episodes [302] (LE: 1b).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use holmium: yttrium-aluminium-garnet laser lithotripsy for (flexible) ureterorenoscopy.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Stenting before and after URS**

Routine stenting is not necessary before URS. However, pre-stenting facilitates ureteroscopic management of stones, improves the SFR, and reduces intra-operative complications [303, 304].

Randomised prospective trials have found that routine stenting after uncomplicated URS (complete stone removal) is not necessary; stenting might be associated with higher post-operative morbidity [305-307]. A ureteric catheter with a shorter indwelling time (one day) may also be used, with similar results [308].

Stents should be inserted in patients who are at increased risk of complications (e.g., ureteral trauma, residual fragments, bleeding, perforation, UTIs, or pregnancy), and in all doubtful cases, to avoid stressful emergencies. The ideal duration of stenting is not known. Most urologists favour 1-2 weeks after URS. Alpha-blockers reduce the morbidity of ureteral stents and increase tolerability [309, 310]. A recently published meta-analysis provides evidence for improvement of ureteral stent tolerability with tamsulosin [311].

**Medical expulsive therapy after ureteroscopy**

Medical expulsion therapy following Ho:YAG laser lithotripsy accelerates the spontaneous passage of fragments and reduces episodes of colic [302] (LE: 1b).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In uncomplicated ureterorenoscopy (URS), a stent need not be inserted.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In URS (in particular for renal stones), pre-stenting has been shown to improve outcome.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An α-blocker can reduce stent-related symptoms and colic episodes.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.3.1.4.1.3 Complications

The overall complication rate after URS is 9-25% [189, 312, 313]. Most are minor and do not require intervention. Ureteral avulsion and strictures are rare (< 1%). Previous perforations are the most important risk factor for complications.

3.4.3.1.4.2 Percutaneous antegrade ureteroscopy

Percutaneous antegrade removal of ureteral stones is a consideration in selected cases, i.e. large, impacted proximal ureteral calculi with dilated renal collecting system [314], or when the ureter is not amenable to retrograde manipulation [287, 315-318].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use percutaneous antegrade removal of ureteral stones as an alternative when shock wave lithotripsy is not indicated or has failed, and when the upper urinary tract is not amenable to retrograde ureterorenoscopy.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.3.1.5 Laparoscopic ureteral stone removal

Few studies have reported laparoscopic stone removal (Section 3.4.2.1.4.3). These procedures are usually reserved for special cases. When expertise is available, laparoscopic ureterolithotomy can be performed for large proximal ureteral stones as an alternative to URS or SWL [319, 320]. These more invasive procedures have yielded high SFRs and lower auxiliary procedure rates [234].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For ureterolithotomy, perform laparoscopy for large impacted stones when endoscopic lithotripsy or shock wave lithotripsy has failed.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.4.3.2 **Indications for active removal of ureteral stones [189, 275, 321]**

Indications for active removal of ureteral stones are:

- stones with a low likelihood of spontaneous passage;
- persistent pain despite adequate analgesic medication;
- persistent obstruction;
- renal insufficiency (renal failure, bilateral obstruction, or single kidney).

For general recommendations and precautions see Section 3.4.1.3.

Obesity can cause a lower success rate after SWL and PNL and may influence the choice of treatment.

### Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In the case of severe obesity, ureterorenoscopy is a more promising therapeutic option than shock wave lithotripsy.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.3.2.5.1 **Bleeding disorder**

Ureterorenoscopy can be performed in patients with bleeding disorders, with a moderate increase in complications (see also Section 3.4.1.3) [112, 115].

3.4.3.3 **Selection of procedure for active removal of ureteral stones**

Overall SFRs after URS or SWL for ureteral stones are comparable. However, larger stones achieve earlier stone-free status with URS. Although URS is effective for ureteric calculi, it has greater potential for complications. However, in the current endourological era, the complication rate and morbidity of ureterorenoscopy have been significantly reduced [322]. It has been demonstrated that URS is a safe option in obese patients (BMI > 30 kg/m²) with comparable SFRs and complication rates. However, in morbidly obese patients (BMI > 35 kg/m²) the overall complication rates double [323].

The Panel performed an SR to assess the benefits and harms of URS compared to SWL [6]. Compared with SWL, URS was associated with a significantly greater SFR up to four weeks, but the difference was not significant at three months in the included studies. Ureterorenoscopy was associated with fewer re-treatments and need for secondary procedures, but with a higher need for adjunctive procedures, greater complication rates and longer hospital stay. Counterbalancing for URS’s higher SFRs, SWL is associated with least morbidity. Clavien-Dindo grade complications were, if reported, less frequent in patients treated with SWL.

**Figure 3.4.2: Treatment algorithm for ureteral calculi (if indicated for active stone removal) (GR: A*)**

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

SWL = shock wave lithotripsy; URS = ureterorenoscopy.
### Management of patients with residual stones

The clinical problem of residual renal stones is related to the risk of developing:
- new stones from such nidi (heterogeneous nucleation);
- persistent UTI;
- dislocation of fragments with/without obstruction and symptoms [178, 324, 325].

### Management of specific patient groups

#### Management of urinary stones and related problems during pregnancy

Clinical management of a pregnant urolithiasis patient is complex and demands close collaboration between patient, radiologist, obstetrician and urologist. For diagnostic imaging see Section 3.3.1.

If spontaneous passage does not occur, or if complications develop (e.g., induction of premature labour), placement of a ureteral stent or a percutaneous nephrostomy tube is necessary [333-335]. Unfortunately, these
Temporising therapies are often associated with poor tolerance, and they require multiple exchanges during pregnancy, due to the potential for rapid encrustation. Ureteroscopy has become a reasonable alternative in these situations [336-338]. Although feasible, retrograde endoscopic and percutaneous removal of renal stones during pregnancy remain an individual decision and should be performed only in experienced centres [339].

Pregnancy remains an absolute contraindication for SWL.

### Summary of evidence LE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If intervention becomes necessary, placement of a ureteral stent or a percutaneous nephrostomy tube is a readily available primary option.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ureteroscopy is a reasonable alternative to avoid long-term stenting/drainage.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular follow-up until final stone removal is necessary due to the higher encrustation tendency of stents during pregnancy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Recommendation GR

Treat all uncomplicated cases of urolithiasis in pregnancy conservatively (except those that have clinical indications for intervention).

#### 3.4.5.2 Management of stones in patients with urinary diversion

**3.4.5.2.1 Aetiology**

Patients with urinary diversion are at high risk for stone formation in the renal collecting system and ureter or in the conduit or continent reservoir [340-342]. Metabolic factors (hypercalciuria, hyperoxaluria and hypocitraturia), infection with urease-producing bacteria, foreign bodies, mucus secretion, and urinary stasis are responsible for stone formation [343] (Section 3.1.3). One study has shown that the risk for recurrent upper-tract stones in patients with urinary diversion subjected to PNL was 63% at five years [344].

**3.4.5.2.2 Management**

Smaller upper-tract stones can be treated effectively with SWL [316, 345]. In the majority, endourological techniques are necessary to achieve stone-free status [315]. In individuals with long, tortuous conduits or with invisible ureter orifices, a retrograde endoscopic approach might be difficult or impossible.

### Summary of evidence LE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Access choice</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The choice of access depends on the feasibility of orifice identification in the conduit or bowel reservoir. Whenever a retrograde approach is impossible, percutaneous access with antegrade ureterorenoscopy is the alternative.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Recommendation GR

Perform percutaneous lithotomy to remove large renal stones in patients with urinary diversion, as well as for ureteral stones that cannot be accessed via a retrograde approach, or that are not amenable to shock wave lithotripsy.

For stones in the conduit, a trans-stomal approach can be used to remove all stone material (along with the foreign body) using standard techniques, including intracorporeal lithotripsy and flexible endoscopes. Trans-stomal manipulations in continent urinary diversion must be performed carefully to avoid disturbance of the continence mechanism [346].

Before considering any percutaneous approach in these cases, CT should be undertaken to assess the presence of an overlying bowel, which could make this approach unsafe [347], and if present, an open surgical approach should be considered.

**3.4.5.2.3 Prevention**

Recurrence risk is high in these patients [344]. Metabolic evaluation and close follow-up are necessary to obtain the risk parameters for effective long-term prevention. Preventive measures include medical management of metabolic abnormalities, appropriate therapy of urinary infections, and hyperdiuresis or regular irrigation of continent reservoirs [348].
3.4.5.3 Management of stones in patients with neurogenic bladder
3.4.5.3.1 Aetiology, clinical presentation and diagnosis
Patients with neurogenic bladder develop urinary calculi because of additional risk factors such as bacteriuria, pelvicaliectasis, VUR, renal scarring, lower urinary tract reconstruction, and thoracic spinal defect [349]. The most common causes are urinary stasis and infection (Section 3.1.3). Indwelling catheters and surgical interposition of bowel segments for treatment of bladder dysfunction both facilitate UTI. Although calculi can form at any level of the urinary tract, they occur more frequently in the bladder; especially if bladder augmentation has been performed [350, 351].

Diagnosis of stones may be difficult and delayed in the absence of clinical symptoms due to sensory impairment and vesicourethral dysfunction. Difficulties in self-catheterisation should lead to suspicion of bladder calculi. Imaging studies are needed (US, CT) to confirm the clinical diagnosis prior to surgical intervention.

3.4.5.3.2 Management
Management of calculi in patients with neurogenic bladder is similar to that described in Section 3.3.3. In MMC (myelomeningocele) patients, latex allergy is common, therefore, appropriate measures need to be taken regardless of the treatment [352]. Any surgery in these patients must be performed under general anaesthesia because of the impossibility of using spinal anaesthesia. Bone deformities often complicate positioning on the operating table [353]. The risk of stone formation after augmentation cystoplasty in immobile patients with sensory impairment can be significantly reduced by irrigation protocols [348].

For efficient long-term stone prevention in patients with neurogenic bladder, correction of the metabolic disorder, appropriate infection control, and restoration of normal storing/voiding function of the bladder are needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Patients undergoing urinary diversion and/or suffering from neurogenic bladder dysfunction are at risk for recurrent stone formation.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take appropriate measures regardless of the treatment provided since in myelomeningocele patients latex allergy is common.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.5.4 Management of stones in transplanted kidneys
3.4.5.4.1 Aetiology
Transplant patients depend on their solitary kidney for renal function. Impairment causing urinary stasis/obstruction therefore requires immediate intervention or drainage of the transplanted kidney. Risk factors in these patients are multifold:

- immunosuppression increases the infection risk, resulting in recurrent UTIs;
- hyperfiltration, excessively alkaline urine, renal tubular acidosis, and increased serum calcium caused by persistent tertiary hyperparathyroidism [354] are biochemical risk factors.

Stones in kidney allografts have an incidence of 0.2-1.7% [355-357].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform ultrasound or non-contrast-enhanced computed tomography to rule out calculi in patients with transplanted kidneys, unexplained fever, or unexplained failure to thrive (particularly in children) [358].</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.5.4.2 Management
Selecting the appropriate technique for stone removal in a transplanted kidney is difficult, although management principles are similar to those applied in other single renal units [359-362]. Additional factors such as transplant function, coagulative status, and anatomical obstacles due to the iliacal position of the organ, directly influence the surgical strategy.

For large or ureteral stones, careful percutaneous access and subsequent antegrade endoscopy are more favourable. The introduction of small flexible ureteroscopes and the holmium laser has made ureteroscopy a valid treatment option for transplant calculi. However, one must be aware of potential injury to adjacent organs [363-365]. Retrograde access to transplanted kidneys is difficult due to the anterior location of the ureteral anastomosis, and ureteral tortuosity [366-368].
**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conservative treatment for small asymptomatic stones is only possible under close surveillance and in absolutely compliant patients.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shock wave lithotripsy for small calyceal stones is an option with minimal complication risk, but localisation of the stone can be challenging and stone-free rates are poor [369, 370].</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer patients with transplanted kidneys, any of the contemporary management options, including shock wave therapy, flexible ureteroscopy and percutaneous nephrolithotomy.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete metabolic evaluation after stone removal.</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

3.4.5.4.3 Special problems in stone removal

**Table 3.4.6: Special problems in stone removal**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Calyceal diverticulum stones | • Shock wave lithotripsy (SWL), percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PNL) (if possible) or retrograde renal surgery (RIRS).  
  • Can also be removed using laparoscopic retroperitoneal surgery [371-375].  
  • Patients may become asymptomatic due to stone disintegration (SWL), whilst well-disintegrated stone material remains in the original position due to narrow calyceal neck. |
| Horseshoe kidneys | • Can be treated in line with the options described above [376].  
  • Passage of fragments after SWL might be poor.  
  • Acceptable SFRs can be achieved with flexible ureteroscopy [377]. |
| Stones in pelvic kidneys | • SWL, RIRS, PNL or laparoscopic surgery.  
  • In obese patients, the options are RIRS, PNL or open surgery. |
| Stones formed in a continent reservoir | • See Section 3.4.4.  
  • Each stone must be considered and treated individually. |
| Patients with obstruction of the ureteropelvic junction | • When outflow abnormality requires correction, stones can be removed by PNL together with percutaneous endopyelotomy or open/laparoscopic reconstructive surgery.  
  • Ureterorenoscopy together with endopyelotomy with holmium: yttrium-aluminium-garnet laser.  
  • Incision with an Acucise® balloon catheter might be considered, provided the stones can be prevented from falling into the pelvi-ureteral incision [378-381].  
  • Open surgery with correction of the UPJ obstruction (pyeloplasty) and stone removal is a feasible option [382]. |

3.4.6 Management of urolithiasis in children

Rates of urolithiasis have increased in developed countries, and there has been a shift in the age group experiencing a first stone episode [10, 383, 384]. More than 1% of all urinary stones are seen in patients aged < 18 years. As a result of malnutrition and racial factors, paediatric urolithiasis remains an endemic disease in some areas (e.g., Turkey and the Far East); elsewhere, the rates are similar to those observed in developed countries [385-388].

For diagnostic procedures see Section 3.3.3.2, for acute decompression see Section 3.4.1.2.

3.4.6.1 Stone removal

Several factors must be considered when selecting treatment procedures for children. Compared to adults, children pass fragments more rapidly after SWL [52]. For endourological procedures, the smaller organs in children must be considered when selecting instruments for PNL or URS. Stone composition should be taken into account when selecting the appropriate procedure for stone removal (cystine stones are more resistant to SWL).
3.4.6.1.1 Medical expulsive therapy in children
Medical expulsive therapy has already been discussed in Section 3.4.3.1.2 but not addressing children. Although the use of \(\alpha\)-blockers is very common in adults, there are limited data to demonstrate their safety and efficacy in children; however, tamsulosin seems to support stone passage [65, 389-393].

3.4.6.1.2 Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy
Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy remains the least-invasive procedure for stone management in children [394-399].

Stone-free-rates of 67-93% in short-term and 57-92% in long-term follow-up studies have been reported. In children, compared with adults, SWL can achieve more effective disintegration of large stones, together with swifter and uncomplicated discharge of large fragments [396, 400]. As in adults, the slow delivery rate of shock waves may improve the stone clearance rates [400]. Stones located in calices, as well as in abnormal kidneys, and large stones, are more difficult to disintegrate and clear. The likelihood of urinary obstruction is higher in such cases, and children should be followed closely for the prolonged risk of urinary tract obstruction. The retreatment rate is 13.9-53.9%, and the need for ancillary procedures and/or additional interventions is 7-33% [396, 398].

The need for general anaesthesia during SWL depends on patient age and the lithotripter used. General or dissociative anaesthesia is administered in most children aged < 10 years, to prevent patient and stone motion and the need for repositioning [396, 398]. With modern lithotripters, intravenous sedation or patient-controlled analgesia have been used in selected co-operative older children [401] (LE: 2b). There are concerns regarding the safety and potential biological effects of SWL on immature kidneys and surrounding organs in children. However, during short- and long-term follow-up, no irreversible functional or morphological side effects of high-energy shock waves have been demonstrated. In addition, when the potential deterioration of renal function is taken into account (although transient), restricting the number of shock waves and the energy used during each treatment session helps protect the kidneys [402-405].

If the stone burden requires a ureteral stent, alternative procedures should be considered. Ureteral stents are seldom needed following SWL of upper tract stones, ureteral pre-stenting decreases the SFR after initial treatment [394-396].

3.4.6.1.3 Endourological procedures
Improvement in intracorporeal lithotripsy devices and development of smaller instruments facilitate PNL and URS in children.

3.4.6.1.3.1 Percutaneous nephrolithotomy
Pre-operative evaluation and indications for PNL in children are similar to those in adults. Provided appropriate size instruments and US guidance are used, age is not a limiting factor, and PNL can be performed safely by experienced operators, with less radiation exposure, even for large and complex stones [406-410]. Stone-free rates are between 68% and 100% after a single session, and increase with adjunctive measures, such as second-look PNL, SWL and URS [406].

As for adults, tubeless PNL is safe in children, in well-selected cases [411, 412].

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In children, the indications for shock wave lithotripsy are similar to those in adults; however, children pass fragments more easily.

Children with renal stones of a diameter up to 20 mm (~300 mm²) are ideal candidates for shock wave lithotripsy.

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In children, the indications for percutaneous nephrolithotomy are similar to those in adults.

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In children, perform percutaneous nephrolithotomy for the treatment of renal pelvic or calyceal stones with a diameter > 20 mm (~300 mm²). For ureteral stones, ureterorenoscopy may be an alternative, in case shockwave lithotripsy does not look promising.
3.4.6.1.3.2 Ureteroscopy
Although SWL is still the first-line treatment for most ureteral stones, it is unlikely to be successful for stones > 10 mm in diameter, or for impacted stones, calcium oxalate monohydrate or cystine stones, or stones in children with unfavourable anatomy and in whom localisation is difficult [413, 414].

If SWL is not promising, ureteroscopy can be used. With the clinical introduction of smaller-calibre instruments, this modality has become the treatment of choice for medium and larger distal ureteric stones in children [413-417].

Different lithotripsy techniques, including ultrasonic, pneumatic and laser lithotripsy, are all safe and effective (Section 3.4.3.1.4.1.2) [418, 419].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For intracorporeal lithotripsy, use the same devices as in adults (holmium: yttrium-aluminium-garnet laser, pneumatic- and ultrasound lithotripters).</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Flexible URS
Despite concerns about the potential risks and complications related to endoscopic surgery of children’s delicate ureter and collecting system, with the development of smaller size endoscopes, flexible ureteroscopy (RIRS) has become an efficacious treatment modality for renal and ureteral stones [413, 419-421] and might be a particularly effective treatment option for lower calyx stones in the presence of unfavourable factors for SWL.

Similar to adults, routine stenting is not necessary before URS. However, leaving a ureteral stent for the subsequent session must be considered in case of failure of ureteroscopy. Pre-stenting facilitates URS, increases SFR and decreases complication rates [422].

For large and complex kidney stones PNL has a higher SFR compared to RIRS, but RIRS is associated with less radiation exposure, lower complication rates and a shorter hospital stay [423]. The experience of the surgical team is of the utmost importance for the success of both endourological techniques.

3.4.6.1.3.3 Open or laparoscopic surgery
Most stones in children can be managed by SWL and endoscopic techniques. Therefore, the rate of open procedures has dropped significantly [424-426]. Indications for surgery include: failure of primary therapy for stone removal; very young children with complex stones; congenital obstruction that requires simultaneous surgical correction; severe orthopaedic deformities that limit positioning for endoscopic procedures; and abnormal kidney position [394, 395, 407]. Open surgery can be replaced by laparoscopic procedures in experienced hands [425, 426].

3.4.6.1.3.4 Special considerations on recurrence prevention
All paediatric stone formers need metabolic evaluation and recurrence prevention with respect to the detected stone type. In radiolucent stones oral chemolysis may be considered as an alternative to SWL [427]. In the case of obstructive pathology in association with the established metabolic abnormalities, treatment should not be delayed. Children are in the high-risk group for stone recurrence [65, 428] (Chapter 4).

4. FOLLOW UP: METABOLIC EVALUATION AND RECURRENCE PREVENTION

4.1 General metabolic considerations for patient work-up
4.1.1 Evaluation of patient risk
After stone passage, every patient should be assigned to a low- or high-risk group for stone formation (Figure 4.1).

For correct classification, two items are mandatory:
- reliable stone analysis by infrared spectroscopy or X-ray diffraction;
- basic analysis (Section 3.3.2).
Only high-risk stone formers require specific metabolic evaluation. Stone type is the deciding factor for further diagnostic tests. The different stone types include:

- calcium oxalate;
- calcium phosphate;
- uric acid;
- ammonium urate;
- struvite (and infection stones);
- cystine;
- xanthine;
- 2,8-Dihydroxyadenine;
- drug stones;
- stones of unknown composition.

### 4.1.2 Urine sampling

Specific metabolic evaluation requires collection of two consecutive 24-hour urine samples [429, 430]. The collecting bottles should be prepared with 5% thymol in isopropanol or stored at < 8°C during collection to prevent the risk of spontaneous crystallisation in the urine [431, 432]. Pre-analytical errors can be minimised by carrying out urinalysis immediately after collection. Alternatively, boric acid (10 g powder per urine container) can also be used. The collecting method should be chosen in close cooperation with the particular laboratory. Urine pH should be assessed during collection of freshly voided urine four times daily [16, 431] using sensitive pH-dipsticks or a pH-meter.
Spot urine samples are an alternative method of sampling, particularly when 24-hours urine collection is difficult, for example, in non-toilet trained children [433]. Spot urine studies normally link the excretion rates to creatinine [433], but these are of limited use because the results may vary with collection time and patients’ sex, body weight and age.

4.1.3 **Timing of specific metabolic work-up**
For the initial specific metabolic work-up, the patient should stay on a self-determined diet under normal daily conditions and should ideally be stone free for at least twenty days [434].

Follow-up studies are necessary in patients taking medication for recurrence prevention [435]. The first follow-up 24-hour urine measurement is suggested eight-twelve weeks after starting pharmacological prevention of stone recurrence. This enables drug dosage to be adjusted if urinary risk factors have not normalised, with further 24-hour urine measurements if necessary. Once urinary parameters have been normalised, it is sufficient to perform 24-hour urine evaluation every twelve months. The panel realise that on this issue there is only very limited published evidence. The Urolithiasis Guidelines Panel aim to set up a SR on the ideal timing of the 24-hour urine collection.

4.1.4 **Reference ranges of laboratory values**
Tables 4.1 - 4.4 provide the internationally accepted reference ranges for the different laboratory values in serum and urine.

**Table 4.1: Normal laboratory values for blood parameters in adults** [436]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Blood parameter</th>
<th>Reference range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Creatinine</td>
<td>20-100 μmol/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium</td>
<td>135-145 mmol/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium</td>
<td>3.5-5.5 mmol/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>2.0-2.5 mmol/L (total calcium)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.12-1.32 mmol/L (ionised calcium)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uric acid</td>
<td>119-380 μmol/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloride</td>
<td>98-112 mmol/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphate</td>
<td>0.81-1.29 mmol/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood gas analysis</td>
<td>pH 7.35-7.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pO₂ 80-90 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pCO₂ 35-45 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HCO₃ 22-26 mmol/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BE ± 2 mmol/L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BE** = base excess (loss of buffer base to neutralise acid); **HCO** = bicarbonate; **PCO** = partial pressure of carbon dioxide; **PO** = partial pressure of oxygen.

4.1.5 **Risk indices and additional diagnostic tools**
Several risk indices have been developed to describe the crystallisation risk for calcium oxalate or calcium phosphate in urine [437-440]. However, clinical validation of these risk indices for recurrence prediction or therapy improvement is ongoing.
### Table 4.2: Normal laboratory values for urinary parameters in adults

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Urinary Parameters</th>
<th>Reference ranges and limits for medical attention</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| pH                 | Constantly > 5.8 (suspicious of renal tubular acidosis)  
                       Constantly > 7.0 (suspicious of infection)  
                       Constantly ≤ 5.8 (suspicious of acidic arrest) |
| Specific weight    | > 1.010                                          |
| Creatinine         | 7-13 mmol/day females  
                       13-18 mmol/day males |
| Calcium            | > 5.0 mmol/day (see Fig. 4.2)  
                       ≥ 8.0 mmol/day (see Fig. 4.2) |
| Oxalate            | > 0.5 mmol/day (suspicious of enteric hyperoxaluria)  
                       ≥ 1.0 mmol/day (suspicious of primary hyperoxaluria) |
| Uric acid          | > 4.0 mmol/day (women), 5 mmol/day (men) |
| Citrate            | < 2.5 mmol/day                                  |
| Magnesium          | < 3.0 mmol/day                                  |
| Inorganic phosphate| > 35 mmol/day                                  |
| Ammonium           | > 50 mmol/day                                  |
| Cystine            | > 0.8 mmol/day                                  |

### Table 4.3: Normal values for spot urine samples: creatinine ratios (solute/creatinine) in adults [441]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter/Patient age</th>
<th>Ratio of solute to creatinine</th>
<th>Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 12 months</td>
<td>&lt; 2.0</td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-3 years</td>
<td>&lt; 1.5</td>
<td>0.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-5 years</td>
<td>&lt; 1.1</td>
<td>0.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-7 years</td>
<td>&lt; 0.8</td>
<td>0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 7 years</td>
<td>&lt; 0.6</td>
<td>0.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxalate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-6 months</td>
<td>&lt; 325-360</td>
<td>288-260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-24 months</td>
<td>&lt; 132-174</td>
<td>110-139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-5 years</td>
<td>&lt; 98-101</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-14 years</td>
<td>&lt; 70-82</td>
<td>60-65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 16 years</td>
<td>&lt; 40</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-5 years</td>
<td>&gt; 0.25</td>
<td>0.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 5 years</td>
<td>&gt; 0.15</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 0.63</td>
<td>&gt; 0.13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uric acid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 2 years</td>
<td>&lt; 0.56 mg/dl (33 imol/L) per GFR (ratio x plasma creatinine)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 4.4: Solute excretion in 24-hour urine samples in children [441]**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Calcium/24 hour</th>
<th>Citrate/24 hour</th>
<th>Cystine/24 hour</th>
<th>Oxalate/24 hour</th>
<th>Urate/24 hour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All age groups</td>
<td>Boys Girls</td>
<td>&lt; 10 years &gt; 10 years</td>
<td>&lt; 1 year &gt; 5 years</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 0.1 mmol/kg/24 h</td>
<td>1.9 mmol/1.73 m²/24 h</td>
<td>1.6 mmol/1.73 m²/24 h</td>
<td>&lt; 55 μmol/1.73 m²/24 h</td>
<td>&lt; 200 μmol/1.73 m²/24 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 4 mg/kg/24 h</td>
<td>&gt; 365 mg/1.73 m²/24 h</td>
<td>&gt; 310 mg/1.73 m²/24 h</td>
<td>&lt; 13 mg/1.73 m²/24 h</td>
<td>&lt; 48 mg/1.73 m²/24 h</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**24 h urine parameters are diet and gender dependent and may vary geographically.
4.2 General considerations for recurrence prevention

All stone formers, independent of their individual risk, should follow the preventive measures in Table 4.5. The main focus of these is normalisation of dietary habits and lifestyle risks. Stone formers at high risk need specific prophylaxis for recurrence, which is usually pharmacological treatment based on stone analysis.

Table 4.5: General preventive measures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fluid intake (drinking advice)</th>
<th>Fluid amount: 2.5-3.0 L/day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Circadian drinking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neutral pH beverages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diuresis: 2.0-2.5 L/day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific weight of urine: &lt; 1010</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nutritional advice for a balanced diet</th>
<th>Balanced diet*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rich in vegetables and fibre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal calcium content: 1-1.2 g/day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limited NaCl content: 4-5 g/day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limited animal protein content: 0.8-1.0 g/kg/day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lifestyle advice to normalise general risk factors</th>
<th>BMI: retain a normal BMI level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adequate physical activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Balancing of excessive fluid loss</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Caution: The protein need is age dependent; therefore, protein restriction in childhood should be handled carefully.

* Avoid excessive consumption of vitamin supplements.

4.2.1 Fluid intake

An inverse relationship between high fluid intake and stone formation has been repeatedly demonstrated [442-444]. The effect of fruit juices is mainly determined by the presence of citrate or bicarbonate [445]. If hydrogen ions are present, the net result is neutralisation. However, if potassium is present, both pH and citrate are increased [446, 447]. One large fair-quality RCT randomly assigned men with more than one past renal stone of any type and soft drink consumption of at least 160 mL/day to reduced soft drink intake or no treatment. Although the intervention significantly reduced the risk for symptomatic recurrent stones (RR: 0.83; CI: 0.71-0.98), the level of evidence for this outcome was low because results were from only one trial [444, 448].

4.2.2 Diet

A common sense approach to diet should be taken, that is, a mixed balanced diet with contributions from all food groups, without any excesses [444, 449, 450].

Fruits, vegetables and fibres: fruit and vegetable intake should be encouraged because of the beneficial effects of fibre, although the role of the latter in preventing stone recurrences is debatable [451-454]. The alkaline content of a vegetarian diet also increases urinary pH.

Oxalate: excessive intake of oxalate-rich products should be limited or avoided to prevent high oxalate load [445], particularly in patients who have high oxalate excretion.

Vitamin C: although vitamin C is a precursor of oxalate, its role as a risk factor in calcium oxalate stone formation remains controversial [455]. However, it seems wise to advise calcium oxalate stone formers to avoid excessive intake.

Animal protein: should not be taken in excess [456, 457] and limited to 0.8-1.0 g/kg body weight. Excessive consumption of animal protein has several effects that favour stone formation, including hypocitraturia, low urine pH, hyperoxaluria and hyperuricosuria.

Calcium intake: should not be restricted unless there are strong reasons due to the inverse relationship between dietary calcium and stone formation [452, 458]. The daily requirement for calcium is 1,000 to 1,200 mg [16]. Calcium supplements are not recommended except in enteric hyperoxaluria, when additional calcium should be taken with meals to bind intestinal oxalate [444, 457, 459]. Older adults, who do not have a history of renal stones but who take calcium supplements should ensure adequate fluid intake since it may prevent increases in urine calcium concentration, and thereby reduce or eliminate any increased risk of renal stones formation associated with calcium supplement use [460].
Sodium: the daily sodium (NaCl) intake should not exceed 3-5 g [16]. High intake adversely affects urine composition:

- calcium excretion is increased by reduced tubular reabsorption;
- urinary citrate is reduced due to loss of bicarbonate;
- increased risk of sodium urate crystal formation.

Calcium stone formation can be reduced by restricting sodium and animal protein [456, 457]. A positive correlation between sodium consumption and risk of first-time stone formation has been confirmed only in women [458, 461]. There have been no prospective clinical trials on the role of sodium restriction as an independent variable in reducing the risk of stone formation.

Urate: intake of purine-rich food should be restricted in patients with hyperuricosuric calcium oxalate [462, 463] and uric acid stones. Intake should not exceed 500 mg/day [16].

4.2.3 Lifestyle
Lifestyle factors may influence the risk of stone formation, for example, obesity [464] and arterial hypertension [465, 466].

4.2.4 Recommendations for recurrence prevention

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Advise patients that a generous fluid intake is to be maintained, allowing for a 24-hour urine volume &gt; 2.5 L.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advise patients with a small urine volume to increase their fluid intake.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3 Stone-specific metabolic evaluation and pharmacological recurrence prevention

4.3.1 Introduction
Pharmacological treatment is necessary in patients at high risk for recurrent stone formation. The ideal drug should halt stone formation, have no side effects, and be easy to administer. Each of these aspects is important to achieve good compliance. Table 4.6 highlights the most important characteristics of commonly used medication.
Table 4.6: Pharmacological substances used for stone prevention - characteristics, specifics and dosage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>Rationale</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Specifics and side effects</th>
<th>Stone type</th>
<th>Ref</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alkaline citrates</td>
<td>Alkalinisation</td>
<td>5-12 g/d (14-36 mmol/d)</td>
<td>Daily dose for alkalinisation depends on urine pH</td>
<td>Calcium oxalate</td>
<td>[49, 444, 467-474]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypocitraturia</td>
<td>Children: 0.1-0.15 g/kg/d</td>
<td></td>
<td>Uric acid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inhibition of calcium oxalate crystallisation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cystine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allopurinol</td>
<td>Hyperuricosuria</td>
<td>100-300 mg/d</td>
<td>100 mg in isolated hyperuricosuria</td>
<td>Calcium oxalate</td>
<td>[475-479]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperuricaemia</td>
<td>Children: 1-3 mg/kg/d</td>
<td>Renal insufficiency demands dose correction</td>
<td>Uric acid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ammonium urate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Enteric hyperoxaluria</td>
<td>1000 mg/d</td>
<td>Intake 30 min before meals</td>
<td>Calcium oxalate</td>
<td>[457-459]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Captopril</td>
<td>Cystinuria</td>
<td>75-150 mg</td>
<td>Second-line option due to significant side effects</td>
<td>Cystine</td>
<td>[480, 481]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Active decrease of urinary cystine levels</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Febuxostat</td>
<td>Hyperuricosuria</td>
<td>80-120 mg/d</td>
<td>Acute gout contraindicated, pregnancy, xanthine stone formation</td>
<td>Calcium oxalate</td>
<td>[482, 483]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperuricaemia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Uric acid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-Methionine</td>
<td>Acidification</td>
<td>600-1500 mg/d</td>
<td>Hypercalciuria, bone demineralisation, systemic acidosis. No long-term therapy.</td>
<td>Calcium oxalate</td>
<td>[49, 484, 485]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Uric acid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Isolated hypomagnesiuria</td>
<td>200-400 mg/d</td>
<td>Renal insufficiency demands dose correction. Diarrhoea, chronic alkali losses, hypocitraturia.</td>
<td>Calcium oxalate</td>
<td>[486, 487]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enteric hyperoxaluria</td>
<td>Children: 6 mg/kg/d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Low evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium bicarbonate</td>
<td>Alkalinisation</td>
<td>4.5 g/d</td>
<td></td>
<td>Calcium oxalate</td>
<td>[488]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypocitraturia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Uric acid, Cystine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyridoxine</td>
<td>Primary hyperoxaluria</td>
<td>Initial dose 5 mg/kg/d</td>
<td>Polyneuropathia</td>
<td>Calcium oxalate</td>
<td>[489]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Max. 20 mg/kg/d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiazide (Hydrochlorothiazide)</td>
<td>Hypercalciuria</td>
<td>25-50 mg/d</td>
<td>Risk for agent-induced hypotonic blood pressure, diabetes, hyperuricaemia, hypokalaemia, followed by intracellular acidosis and hypocitraturia.</td>
<td>Calcium oxalate</td>
<td>[49, 486, 490-498]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Children: 0.5-1 mg/kg/d</td>
<td></td>
<td>Calcium phosphate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiopronin</td>
<td>Cystinuria</td>
<td>Initial dose 250 mg/d</td>
<td>Risk for tachyphylaxis and proteinuria.</td>
<td>Cystine</td>
<td>[499-502]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Active decrease of urinary cystine levels</td>
<td>Max. 2000 mg/d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.4 Calcium oxalate stones
The criteria for identification of calcium oxalate stone formers with high recurrence risk are listed in Section 3.1.2.

4.4.1 Diagnosis
Blood analysis requires measurement of creatinine, sodium, potassium, chloride, ionised calcium (or total calcium + albumin), uric acid, and parathyroid hormone (PTH) (and vitamin D) in the case of increased calcium levels. Urinalysis requires measurement of urine volume, urine pH profile, specific weight, calcium, oxalate, uric acid, citrate, sodium and magnesium.

4.4.2 Interpretation of results and aetiology
The diagnostic and therapeutic algorithm for calcium oxalate stones is shown in Figure 4.2 [49, 444, 468-470, 475-477, 482, 486-488, 490-497, 503-507].

The most common metabolic abnormalities associated with calcium stone formation are hypercalciuria, which affects 30-60% of adult stone formers, and hyperoxaluria (26-67%), followed by hyperuricosuria (7-23%), and hypocitraturia (5-29%). However, ranges tend to differ based on ethnicity [503].
- Elevated levels of ionised calcium in serum (or total calcium and albumin) require assessment of intact PTH to confirm or exclude suspected hyperparathyroidism (HPT).
- “Acidic arrest” (urine pH constantly < 5.8) may promote co-crystallisation of uric acid and calcium oxalate.
- Similarly, increased uric acid excretion (> 4 mmol/day in adults or > 12 mg/kg/day in children) can act as a promoter.
- Urine pH levels constantly > 5.8 in the day profile indicate renal tubular acidosis (RTA), provided UTI has been excluded. An ammonium chloride loading test confirms RTA and identifies RTA subtype (Section 4.6.5).
- Hypercalciuria may be associated with normocalcemia (idiopathic hypercalciuria, or granulomatous diseases) or hypercalcaemia (hyperparathyroidism, granulomatous diseases, vitamin D excess, or malignancy).
- Hypocitraturia (male < 1.7 mmol/d, female < 1.9 mmol/d) may be idiopathic or secondary to metabolic acidosis or hypokalaemia.
- Oxalate excretion > 0.5 mmol/day in adults (> 0.37 mmol/1.73 m²/day in children) confirms hyperoxaluria.
  o primary hyperoxaluria (oxalate excretion mostly > 1 mmol/day), appears in three genetically determined forms;
  o secondary hyperoxaluria (oxalate excretion 0.5 mmol/day, usually < 1 mmol/day), occurs due to intestinal hyperabsorption of oxalate or extreme dietary oxalate intake;
  o mild hyperoxaluria (oxalate excretion 0.45-0.85 mmol/day), commonly found in idiopathic calcium oxalate stone formers.
- Hypomagnesuria (< 3.0 mmol/day) may be related to poor dietary intake or to reduced intestinal absorption (chronic diarrhoea).
Figure 4.2: Diagnostic and therapeutic algorithm for calcium oxalate stones

1 Be aware of excess calcium excretion.
2 tid = three times/day (24h).
3 No magnesium therapy for patients with renal insufficiency.
4 There is no evidence that combination therapy (thiazide + citrate) (thiazide + allopurinol) is superior to thiazide therapy alone [490, 497].
5 Febuxostat 80 mg/d.

4.4.3 Specific treatment
General preventive measures are recommended for fluid intake and diet. Hyperoxaluric stone formers should consume foods with low oxalate content, whereas hyperuricosuric stone formers benefit from daily dietary reduction of purine. Figure 4.2 summarises the diagnostic algorithm and the pharmacological treatment of calcium oxalate stones [49, 444, 468-470, 475-477, 482, 486-488, 490-497, 503-507]. There is only low level evidence on the efficacy of preventing stone recurrence through pre-treatment stone composition and biochemistry measures, or on-treatment biochemistry measures [444].

4.4.4 Recommendations for pharmacological treatment of patients with specific abnormalities in urine composition (based on 24-hour urine samples)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Urinary risk factor</th>
<th>Suggested treatment</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypercalciuria</td>
<td>Thiazide + potassium citrate</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperoxaluria</td>
<td>Oxalate restriction</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enteric hyperoxaluria</td>
<td>Potassium citrate</td>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Calcium supplement</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diet reduced in fat and oxalate</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypocitraturia</td>
<td>Potassium citrate</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxaturia</td>
<td>Sodium bicarbonate if intolerant to potassium citrate</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperuricosuria</td>
<td>Allopurinol</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Febuxostat</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High sodium excretion</td>
<td>Restricted intake of salt</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small urine volume</td>
<td>Increased fluid intake</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urea level indicating a high intake of animal protein</td>
<td>Avoid excessive intake of animal protein</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No abnormality identified</td>
<td>High fluid intake</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.5 Calcium phosphate stones

Some calcium phosphate stone formers are at high risk of recurrence. Further information on identifying high-risk patients is provided in Section 3.1.2.

Calcium phosphate mainly appears in two completely different minerals: carbonate apatite and brushite. Carbonate apatite crystallisation occurs at a pH > 6.8 and may be associated with infection.

Brushite crystallises at an optimum pH of 6.5-6.8, at high urinary concentrations of calcium (> 8 mmol/day) and phosphate (> 35 mmol/day). Its occurrence is not related to UTI.

Possible causes of calcium phosphate stones include HPT, RTA and UTI; each of which requires different therapy.

4.5.1 Diagnosis

Diagnosis requires blood analysis for: creatinine, sodium, potassium, chloride, ionised calcium (or total calcium + albumin), and PTH (in the case of increased calcium levels). Urinalysis includes measurement of: volume, urine pH profile, specific weight, calcium, phosphate and citrate.

4.5.2 Interpretation of results and aetiology

General preventive measures are recommended for fluid intake and diet. The diagnostic and therapeutic algorithm for calcium phosphate stones is shown in Figure 4.3.

Figure 4.3: Diagnostic and therapeutic algorithm for calcium phosphate stones

HPT = hyperparathyroidism; RTA = renal tubular acidosis; UTI = urinary tract infection.

4.5.3 Pharmacological therapy [49, 444, 490, 491, 495, 507]

Hyperparathyroidism and RTA are common causes of calcium phosphate stone formation. Although most patients with primary HPT require surgery, RTA can be corrected pharmacologically. If primary HPT and RTA have been excluded, pharmacotherapy for calcium phosphate calculi depends on effective reduction of urinary calcium levels using thiazides. If urine pH remains constantly > 6.2, urinary acidification with L-methionine may be beneficial; however, it is not commonly used and needs monitoring for systemic acidosis development. For
infection-associated calcium phosphate stones, it is important to consider the guidance given for infection stones.

4.5.4 **Recommendations for the treatment of calcium phosphate stones**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Urinary risk factor and suggested treatment</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prescribe thiazide in case of hypercalciuria.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advise patients to acidify their urine in case of inadequate urine pH.</td>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribe antibiotics in case of a urinary tract infection.</td>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.6 **Disorders and diseases related to calcium stones**

4.6.1 **Hyperparathyroidism** [508-511]

Primary HPT is responsible for an estimated 5% of all calcium stone formation. Renal stones occur in approximately 20% of patients with primary HPT. Elevated levels of PTH significantly increase calcium turnover, leading to hypercalcaemia and hypercalciuria. Serum calcium may be mildly elevated and serum PTH may be within the upper normal limits, therefore, repeated measurements may be needed; preferably with the patient fasting. Stones of HPT patients may contain both calcium oxalate and calcium phosphate.

If HPT is suspected, neck exploration should be performed to confirm the diagnosis. Primary HPT can only be cured by surgery.

4.6.2 **Granulomatous diseases** [511]

Granulomatous diseases, such as sarcoidosis, may be complicated by hypercalcaemia and hypercalciuria secondary to increased calcitriol production. The latter is independent of PTH control, leading to increased calcium absorption in the gastrointestinal tract and suppression of PTH. Treatment focusses on the activity of the granulomatous diseases and may require steroids, hydroxychloroquine or ketoconazole. Treatment should be reserved for the specialist.

4.6.3 **Primary hyperoxaluria** [489]

Patients with primary hyperoxaluria (PH) should be referred to specialised centres, as successful management requires an experienced interdisciplinary team. The main therapeutic aim is to reduce endogenous oxalate production, which is increased in patients with PH. In approximately one-third of patients with PH type I, pyridoxine therapy normalises or significantly reduces urinary oxalate excretion. The goal of adequate urine dilution is achieved by adjusting fluid intake to 3.5-4.0 L/day in adults (children 1.5 L/m² body surface area) and following a circadian drinking regimen.

Therapeutic options for preventing calcium oxalate crystallisation include hyperdiuresis, alkaline citrates and magnesium. However, in end-stage renal failure, PH requires simultaneous liver-kidney transplantation.

Treatment regimens are:

- pyridoxine in PH type I: 5-20 mg/kg/day according to urinary oxalate excretion and patient tolerance;
- alkaline citrate: 9-12 g/day in adults, 0.1-0.15 meq/kg/day in children;
- magnesium: 200-400 mg/day (no magnesium in the case of renal insufficiency).

4.6.4 **Enteric hyperoxaluria** [459, 512]

Enteric hyperoxaluria is a particularly problematic condition in patients with intestinal malabsorption of fat. This abnormality is associated with a high risk of stone formation, and is seen after intestinal resection and malabsorptive bariatric surgery and in Crohn’s disease and pancreas insufficiency. In addition to hyperoxaluria, these patients usually present with hypocitraturia due to loss of alkali. Urine pH is usually low, as are urinary calcium and urine volume. All these abnormalities contribute to high levels of supersaturation with calcium oxalate, crystalluria, and stone formation.

Specific preventive measures are:

- restricted intake of oxalate-rich foods;
• restricted fat intake;
• calcium supplementation at meal times to enable calcium oxalate complex formation in the intestine [459, 512];
• sufficient fluid intake to balance intestinal loss of water caused by diarrhoea;
• alkaline citrates to raise urinary pH and citrate.

### Urinary risk factor and suggested management of enteric hyperoxaluria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prescribe potassium citrate.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advise patients to take a calcium supplement.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advise patients to follow a diet with a low fat and oxalate content.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

** Renal tubular acidosis [513, 514] **

Renal tubular acidosis is caused by severe impairment of proton or bicarbonate handling along the nephron. Kidney stone formation most probably occurs in patients with distal RTA type I. Figure 4.4 outlines the diagnosis of RTA. Table 4.7 shows acquired and inherited causes of RTA.

** Figure 4.4: Diagnosis of renal tubular acidosis **

Renal tubular acidosis can be acquired or inherited. Reasons for acquired RTA can be obstructive uropathy, recurrent pyelonephritis, acute tubular necrosis, renal transplantation, analgesic nephropathy, sarcoidosis, idiopathic hypercalciuria, and primary parathyroidism; it may also be drug-induced (e.g. zonisamide). Table 4.7 shows the inherited causes of RTA.
Table 4.7: Inherited causes of renal tubular acidosis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type - inheritance</th>
<th>Gene/gene product/function</th>
<th>Phenotype</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal dominant</td>
<td>SLC4A1/AE1/Cl-bicarbonate exchanger</td>
<td>Hypercalciuria, hypokalaemia, osteomalacia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive with hearing loss</td>
<td>ATP6V1B1/B1 subunit of vacuolar H-ATPase/proton secretion</td>
<td>Hypercalciuria, hypokalaemia, rickets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td>ATP6V0A4/A4 subunit of vacuolar H-ATPase/proton secretion</td>
<td>Hypercalciuria, hypokalaemia, rickets</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The main therapeutic aim of RTA treatment is restoring a normal acid-base equilibrium. Despite the alkaline pH of urine in RTA, alkalinisation using alkaline citrates or sodium bicarbonate is key to normalising the metabolic changes (intracellular acidosis) responsible for stone formation (Table 4.8). The alkali load reduces tubular reabsorption of citrate, which in turn normalises citrate excretion and simultaneously reduces calcium turnover. Therapeutic success can be monitored by venous blood gas analysis (base excess: ± 2.0 mmol/L) in complete RTA. If excessive calcium excretion (> 8 mmol/day) persists after re-establishing acid-base equilibrium, thiazides may lower urinary calcium excretion.

Table 4.8: Pharmacological treatment of renal tubular acidosis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Biochemical risk factor</th>
<th>Rationale for pharmacological therapy</th>
<th>Medication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypercalciuria</td>
<td>Calcium excretion &gt; 8 mmol/day</td>
<td>Hydrochlorothiazide, - in adults: 25 mg/day initially, up to 50 mg/day - in children: 0.5-1 mg/kg/day Alternatives in adults: Chlorthalidone 25 mg/d Indapamide 2.5 mg/d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inadequate urine pH</td>
<td>Intracellular acidosis in nephron</td>
<td>Alkaline citrate, 9-12 g/day divided in three doses OR Sodium bicarbonate, 1.5 g, three times daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Urinary risk factor and suggested management of renal tubular acidosis</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prescribe potassium citrate for distal renal tubular acidosis.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribe thiazide + potassium citrate for hypercalciuria.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.6.6 Nephrocalcinosis [441]

Nephrocalcinosis (NC) refers to increased crystal deposition within the renal cortex or medulla, and occurs alone or in combination with renal stones. There are various metabolic causes. The main risk factors are: HPT, PH, RTA, vitamin D metabolic disorders, idiopathic hypercalciuria and hypocitraturia, and genetic disorders, including Dent’s disease, Bartter’s syndrome and Medullary sponge kidney. The many causes of NC means there is no single standard therapy. Therapeutic attention must focus on the underlying metabolic or genetic disease, while minimising the biochemical risk factors.

4.6.6.1 Diagnosis

Diagnosis requires the following blood analysis: PTH (in the case of increased calcium levels), vitamin D and metabolites, vitamin A, sodium, potassium, magnesium, chloride, and blood gas analysis. Urinalysis should investigate: urine pH profile (minimum four times daily), daily urine volume, specific weight of urine, and levels of calcium, oxalate, phosphate, uric acid, magnesium and citrate.

4.7 Uric acid and ammonium urate stones

All uric acid and ammonium urate stone formers are considered to be at high risk of recurrence [16]. Uric acid nephrolithiasis is responsible for approximately 10% of renal stones [515]. They are associated with hyperuricosuria or low urinary pH. Hyperuricosuria may be a result of dietary excess, endogenous
overproduction (enzyme defects), myeloproliferative disorders, tumour lysis syndrome, drugs, gout or catabolism [516]. Low urinary pH may be caused by decreased urinary ammonium excretion (insulin resistance or gout), increased endogenous acid production (insulin resistance, metabolic syndrome, or exercise-induced lactic acidosis), increased acid intake (high animal protein intake), or increased base loss (diarrhoea) [516].

Ammonium urate stones are extremely rare, comprising < 1% of all types of urinary stones. They are associated with UTI, malabsorption (inflammatory bowel disease and ileostomy diversion or laxative abuse), potassium deficiency, hypokalaemia and malnutrition.

Suggestions on uric acid and ammonium urate nephrolithiasis are based on level 3 and 4 evidence.

4.7.1 Diagnosis
Figure 4.5 shows the diagnostic and therapeutic algorithm for uric acid and ammonium urate stones. Blood analysis requires measurement of creatinine, potassium and uric acid levels. Urinalysis requires measurement of urine volume, urine pH profile, specific weight of urine, and uric acid level. Urine culture is needed in the case of ammonium urate stones.

4.7.2 Interpretation of results
Uric acid and ammonium urate stones form under completely different biochemical conditions. Acidic arrest (urine pH constantly < 5.8) promotes uric acid crystallisation.

Hyperuricosuria is defined as uric acid excretion > 4 mmol/day in adults or > 0.12 mmol/kg/day in children. Hyperuricaemia may be present, but there is only weak evidence for its association with stone formation.

Hyperuricosuric calcium oxalate stone formation can be distinguished from uric acid stone formation by: urinary pH, which is usually > 5.5 in calcium oxalate stone formation and < 5.5 in uric acid stone formation and occasional absence of hyperuricosuria in patients with pure uric acid stones [517, 518]. Ammonium urate crystals form in urine at pH > 6.5, at high uric acid concentration when ammonium is present to serve as a cation [519-521].

4.7.3 Specific treatment
General preventive measures are recommended for fluid intake and diet. Hyperuricosuric stone formers benefit from purine reduction in their daily diet. Figure 4.5 describes pharmacological treatment [16, 433, 515-527]. For uric acid stones, allopurinol may change the stone composition distribution in patients with gout to a pattern similar to that in stone formers without gout [528].
4.8 Struvite and infection stones

All infection-stone formers are deemed at high risk of recurrence. Struvite stones represent 2-15% of the stones sent for analysis. Stones that contain struvite may originate de novo or grow on pre-existing stones, which are infected with urea-splitting bacteria [529]. There are several factors predisposing patients to struvite stone formation (Table 4.9) [530].

4.8.1 Diagnosis

Blood analysis requires measurement of creatinine, and urinalysis requires repeat urine pH measurements and urine culture.

Interpretation

Infection stones contain the following minerals: struvite and/or carbonate apatite and/or ammonium urate. Urine culture typically provides evidence for urease-producing bacteria, which increase ammonia ions and develop alkaline urine (Table 4.10). Carbonate apatite starts to crystallise at a urine pH level of 6.8. Struvite only precipitates at pH > 7.2 [531, 532]. *Proteus mirabilis* accounts for more than half of all urease-positive UTIs [533, 534].
4.8.2 **Specific treatment**
General preventive measures are recommended for fluid intake and diet. Specific measures include complete surgical stone removal [530], short- or long-term antibiotic treatment [535], urinary acidification using methionine [484] or ammonium chloride [536], and advice to restrict intake of urease [537, 538]. For severe infections, acetohydroxamic acid may be an option [537, 538] (Figure 4.6); however, it is not licensed/available in all European countries.

4.8.3 **Recommendations for therapeutic measures of infection stones**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Surgically remove the stone material as completely as possible.</td>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribe a short-term antibiotic course.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribe a long-term antibiotic course in case of recurrent infections.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribe ammonium chloride, 1 g, two or three times daily to ensure urinary acidification.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribe methionine, 200-500 mg, one-three times daily, as an alternative, to ensure urinary acidification.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider prescription of urease inhibitors in case of severe infection (if licensed).</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

Table 4.9: Factors predisposing to struvite stone formation

- Neurogenic bladder
- Spinal cord injury/paralysis
- Continent urinary diversion
- Ileal conduit
- Foreign body
- Stone disease
- Indwelling urinary catheter
- Urethral stricture
- Benign prostatic hyperplasia
- Bladder diverticulum
- Cystocele
- Calyceal diverticulum
- UPJ obstruction

Table 4.10: Most important species of urease-producing bacteria

**Obligate urease-producing bacteria (> 98%)**
- *Proteus* spp.
- *Providencia rettgeri*
- *Morganella morganii*
- *Corynebacterium urealyticum*
- *Ureaplasma urealyticum*

**Facultative urease-producing bacteria**
- *Enterobacter gergoviae*
- *Klebsiella spp.*
- *Providencia stuartii*
- *Serratia marcescens*
- *Staphylococcus spp.*

**CAUTION:** 0-5% of *Escherichia coli*, *Enterococcus* spp. and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* strains may produce urease.
4.9 Cystine stones

Cystine stones account for 1-2% of all urinary stones in adults and 6-8% of the stones reported in paediatric studies [26, 539]. All cystine stone formers are deemed at high risk of recurrence.

4.9.1 Diagnosis

Blood analysis includes measurement of creatinine, and urinalysis includes measurement of urine volume, pH profile, specific weight, and cystine.

**Interpretation**

- Cystine is poorly soluble in urine and crystallises spontaneously within the physiological urinary pH range.
- Cystine solubility depends strongly on urine pH: at pH 6.0, the limit of solubility is 1.33 mmol/L.
- Routine analysis of cystine is not suitable for therapeutic monitoring.
- Regardless of phenotype or genotype of the cystinuric patient, the clinical manifestations are the same [540].
- There is no role for genotyping patients in the routine management of cystinuria [541, 542].
- Reductive therapy targets the disulphide binding in the cysteine molecule. For therapy monitoring, it is essential to differentiate between cystine, cysteine and drug-cysteine complexes. Only high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC)-based analysis differentiates between the different complexes formed by therapy.
- Diagnosis is established by stone analysis. The typical hexagonal crystals are detectable in only 20-25% of urine specimens from patients with cystinuria [543].
• The cyanide nitroprusside colorimetric qualitative test detects the presence of cystine at a threshold concentration of 75 mg/L, with a sensitivity of 72% and specificity of 95%. False-positive results in patients with Fanconi’s syndrome, homocystinuria, or those taking various drugs, including Infection stones.
• Quantitative 24-hour urinary cystine excretion confirms the diagnosis in the absence of stone analysis.
• Levels above 30 mg/day are considered abnormal [544, 545].

4.9.2 Specific treatment
General preventative measures for fluid intake and diet are recommended. A diet low in methionine may theoretically reduce urinary excretion of cystine; however, patients are unlikely to comply sufficiently with such a diet. A restricted intake of sodium is more easily achieved and is more effective in reducing urinary cystine. Patients are usually advised to avoid sodium consumption > 2 g/day [546].

A high level of diuresis is of fundamental importance, aiming for a 24-hour urine volume of > 3 L [547].

A considerable fluid intake evenly distributed throughout the day is necessary.

4.9.2.1 Pharmacological treatment of cystine stones
The main therapeutic option for avoiding cystine crystallisation is to maintain urine pH > 7.5, to improve cystine solubility and ensure appropriate hydration with a minimum of 3.5 L/day in adults, or 1.5 L/m² body surface area in children.

Free cystine concentration can be decreased by reductive substances, which act by splitting the disulphide binding of cysteine.

Tiopronin is currently the best choice for cystine reduction. However, side effects often lead to treatment termination, for example, when nephrotic syndrome develops, or poor compliance, especially with long-term use.

After carefully considering the risk of early tachyphylaxis, putting into place a dose-escape phenomenon for long-term use, and recurrence risk, tiopronin is recommended at cystine levels > 3.0 mmol/day or in the case of recurring stone formation, notwithstanding other preventive measures.
4.9.3 **Recommendations for the treatment of cystine stones**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Therapeutic measures</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Urine dilution</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advise patients to increase their fluid intake so that 24-hour urine volume exceeds 3 L. Intake should be &gt; 150 mL/h.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alkalisation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For patients with cystine excretion &lt; 3 mmol/day, prescribe potassium citrate 3-10 mmol two or three times daily, to achieve pH &gt; 7.5.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Complex formation with cystine</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For patients with cystine excretion, &gt; 3 mmol/day, or when other measures are insufficient: prescribe in addition to other measures tiopronin, 250-2,000 mg/day.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.10 **2,8-Dihydroxyadenine stones and xanthine stones** [16]

All 2,8-Dihydroxyadenine and xanthine stone formers are considered to be at high risk of recurrence. Both stone types are rare. Diagnosis and specific prevention are similar to those for uric acid stones.

4.10.1 **2,8-Dihydroxyadenine stones**

A genetically determined defect of adenine phosphoribosyl transferase causes high urinary excretion of poorly soluble 2,8-Dihydroxyadenine. High-dose allopurinol or febuxostat are important options, but should be given with regular monitoring.
4.10.2 **Xanthine stones**
Patients who form xanthine stones usually show decreased levels of serum uric acid. There is no available pharmacological intervention.

4.10.3 **Fluid intake and diet**
Recommendations for general preventive measures apply. Pharmacological intervention is difficult, therefore, high fluid intake ensures optimal specific weight levels of urine < 1.010. A purine-reduced diet decreases the risk of spontaneous crystallisation in urine.

4.11 **Drug stones [49]**
Drug stones are induced by pharmacological treatment [548] (Table 4.11). Two types exist:
- stones formed by crystallised compounds of the drug;
- stones formed due to unfavourable changes in urine composition under drug therapy.

**Table 4.11: Compounds that cause drug stones**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active compounds crystallising in urine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allopurinol/oxypurinol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amoxicillin/ampicillin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceftriaxone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quinolones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephedrine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indinavir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium trisilicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulphonamides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triamterene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zonisamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Substances impairing urine composition</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetazolamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allopurinol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminium magnesium hydroxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascorbic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furosemide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laxatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methoxyflurane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topiramate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.12 **Matrix Stones**
Pure matrix stones are extremely rare with less than 70 cases described in the literature. They are more prevalent in females. The main risk factors are recurrent UTIs, especially due to Proteus mirabilis or Escherichia coli, previous surgery for stone disease, chronic renal failure and haemodialysis. Complete endourological removal, frequently via the percutaneous approach, is critical. Given the rarity of matrix calculi a specific prophylactic regimen to minimise recurrence cannot be recommended. Eliminating infections and prophylactic use of antibiotics are most commonly proposed [233].

4.13 **Unknown stone composition [15]**
An accurate medical history is the first step towards identifying risk factors (Table 4.12).

Diagnostic imaging begins with US examination of both kidneys to establish whether the patient is stone free. Stone detection by US should be followed by KUB and unenhanced multislice CT in adults to differentiate between calcium-containing and non-calcium stones.

Blood analysis demonstrates severe metabolic and organic disorders, such as renal insufficiency, HPT or other hypercalcaemic states and hyperuricaemia. In children, hyperoxalaemia is additionally screened for.

Urinalysis is performed routinely with a dipstick test as described above. Urine culture is required if there are signs of infection.

Constant urine pH < 5.8 in the daily profile indicates acidic arrest, which may promote uric acid
crystallisation. Persistent urine pH > 5.8 in the daily profile indicates RTA, if UTI is excluded.

Microscopy of urinary sediment can help to discover rare stone types, because crystals of 2,8-Dihydroxyadenine, cystine and xanthine are pathognomonic for the corresponding disease. In cases in which the presence of cystine is doubtful, a cyanide nitroprusside colorimetric qualitative test can be used to detect the presence of cystine in urine, with a sensitivity of 72% and specificity of 95%. False-positive results are possible in patients with Fanconi's syndrome or homocystinuria, or in those taking various drugs, including ampicillin or sulfa-containing medication [549, 550].

Following this programme, the most probable stone type can be assumed and specific patient evaluation can follow. However, if any expelled stone material is available, it should be analysed by diagnostic confirmation or correction.

Table 4.12: Recommendations for the assessment of patients with stones of unknown composition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigation</th>
<th>Rationale for investigation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take a medical history</td>
<td>• Stone history (former stone events, family history)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Dietary habits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Medication chart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform diagnostic imaging</td>
<td>• Ultrasound in the case of a suspected stone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Unenhanced helical computed tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Determination of Hounsfield units provides information about the possible stone composition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a blood analysis</td>
<td>• Creatinine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Calcium (ionised calcium or total calcium + albumin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a urinalysis</td>
<td>• Urine pH profile (measurement after each voiding, minimum four times daily)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Dipstick test: leukocytes, erythrocytes, nitrite, protein, urine pH, specific weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Urine cultures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Microscopy of urinary sediment (morning urine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cyanide nitroprusside test (cystine exclusion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Further examinations depend on the results of the investigations listed above.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. REFERENCES


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17221245


http://www.medicinejournal.co.uk/article/S1357-3039(07)00109-0/abstract


6. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the Urolithiasis Guidelines Panel have provided disclosure statements of all relationships that they have that might be perceived as a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publicly accessible through the European Association of Urology website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Paediatric Urology

S. Tekgül (Chair), H.S. Dogan, R. Kocvara, J.M. Nijman (Vice-chair), C. Radmayr, R. Stein
Guidelines Associates: M.S. Silay, S. Undre, J. Quaedackers
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>Aim</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>Panel composition</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>Available publications</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>Publication history</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>Summary of changes</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.1</td>
<td>New and changed recommendations</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>METHODS</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Peer review</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>Future goals</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>THE GUIDELINE</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Phimosis</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1</td>
<td>Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.2</td>
<td>Classification systems</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3</td>
<td>Diagnostic evaluation</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4</td>
<td>Management</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.5</td>
<td>Follow-up</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.6</td>
<td>Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of phimosis</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Management of undescended testes</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1</td>
<td>Background</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2</td>
<td>Classification</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2.1</td>
<td>Palpable testes</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2.2</td>
<td>Non-palpable testes</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3</td>
<td>Diagnostic evaluation</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3.1</td>
<td>History</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3.2</td>
<td>Physical examination</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3.3</td>
<td>Imaging studies</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4</td>
<td>Management</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.1</td>
<td>Medical therapy</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.1.1</td>
<td>Medical therapy for testicular descent</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.1.2</td>
<td>Medical therapy for fertility potential</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.2</td>
<td>Surgical therapy</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.2.1</td>
<td>Palpable testes</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.2.1.1</td>
<td>Inguinal orchidopexy</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.2.1.2</td>
<td>Scrotal orchidopexy</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.2.2</td>
<td>Non-palpable testes</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.2.3</td>
<td>Complications of surgical therapy</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.2.4</td>
<td>Surgical therapy for undescended testes after puberty</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.5</td>
<td>Undescended testes and fertility</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.6</td>
<td>Undescended testes and malignancy</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.7</td>
<td>Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of undescended testes</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Hydrocele</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1</td>
<td>Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2</td>
<td>Diagnostic evaluation</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.3</td>
<td>Management</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.4</td>
<td>Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of hydrocele</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Acute scrotum</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.1</td>
<td>Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2</td>
<td>Diagnostic evaluation</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3</td>
<td>Management</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3.1</td>
<td>Epididymitis</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3.2</td>
<td>Testicular torsion</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3.3</td>
<td>Surgical treatment</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.4</td>
<td>Follow-up</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.4.1</td>
<td>Fertility</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.4.2</td>
<td>Subfertility</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.4.3</td>
<td>Androgen levels</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.4.4</td>
<td>Unanswered questions</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.5</td>
<td>Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of acute scrotum in children</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Hypospadias</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.1</td>
<td>Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.1.1</td>
<td>Epidemiology</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.2</td>
<td>Risk factors</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.3</td>
<td>Classification systems</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.4</td>
<td>Diagnostic evaluation</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5</td>
<td>Management</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5.1</td>
<td>Indication for reconstruction and therapeutic objectives</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5.2</td>
<td>Pre-operative hormonal treatment</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5.3</td>
<td>Age at surgery</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5.4</td>
<td>Penile curvature</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5.5</td>
<td>Urethral reconstruction</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5.6</td>
<td>Re-do hypospadias repairs</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5.7</td>
<td>Penile reconstruction following formation of the neourethra</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5.8</td>
<td>Urine drainage and wound dressing</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5.9</td>
<td>Outcome</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.6</td>
<td>Follow-up</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.7</td>
<td>Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of hypospadias</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Congenital penile curvature</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.1</td>
<td>Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.2</td>
<td>Diagnostic evaluation</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.3</td>
<td>Management</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.4</td>
<td>Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of congenital penile curvature</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>Varicocele in children and adolescents</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7.1</td>
<td>Classification systems</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7.2</td>
<td>Diagnostic evaluation</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7.3</td>
<td>Management</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7.4</td>
<td>Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of varicocele</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>Urinary tract infections in children</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.1</td>
<td>Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.2</td>
<td>Classification systems</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.2.1</td>
<td>Classification according to site</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.2.2</td>
<td>Classification according to episode</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.2.3</td>
<td>Classification according to severity</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.2.4</td>
<td>Classification according to symptoms</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.2.5</td>
<td>Classification according to complicating factors</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3</td>
<td>Diagnostic evaluation</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3.1</td>
<td>Medical history</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3.2</td>
<td>Clinical signs and symptoms</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3.3</td>
<td>Physical examination</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3.4</td>
<td>Urine sampling, analysis and culture</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3.4.1</td>
<td>Urine sampling</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3.4.2</td>
<td>Urinalysis</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3.4.3</td>
<td>Urine culture</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3.5</td>
<td>Imaging</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3.5.1</td>
<td>Ultrasound</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3.5.2</td>
<td>Radionuclide scanning</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3.5.3</td>
<td>Voiding cystourethrography</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.3.6</td>
<td>Bladder and bowel dysfunction</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.4</td>
<td>Management</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8.4.1</td>
<td>Administration route</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.12.3.3 Megaureter
   3.12.3.3.1 Non-operative management
   3.12.3.3.2 Surgical management
3.12.4 Conclusion
3.12.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of UPJ-, UVJ-obstruction

3.13 Vesicoureteric reflux
3.13.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology
3.13.2 Diagnostic evaluation
   3.13.2.1 Infants presenting because of prenatally diagnosed hydrenephrosis
   3.13.2.2 Siblings and offspring of reflux patients
   3.13.2.3 Recommendations for paediatric screening of VUR
   3.13.2.4 Children with febrile urinary tract infections
   3.13.2.5 Children with lower urinary tract symptoms and vesicoureteric reflux
3.13.3 Disease management
   3.13.3.1 Non-surgical therapy
     3.13.3.1.1 Follow-up
     3.13.3.1.2 Continuous antibiotic prophylaxis
   3.13.3.2 Surgical treatment
     3.13.3.2.1 Subureteric injection of bulking materials
     3.13.3.2.2 Open surgical techniques
     3.13.3.2.3 Laparoscopy and robot-assisted
3.13.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of vesicoureteric reflux in childhood

3.14 Urinary stone disease
3.14.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology
3.14.2 Classification systems
   3.14.2.1 Calcium stones
   3.14.2.2 Uric acid stones
   3.14.2.3 Cystine stones
   3.14.2.4 Infection stones (struvite stones)
3.14.3 Diagnostic evaluation
   3.14.3.1 Imaging
   3.14.3.2 Metabolic evaluation
3.14.4 Management
   3.14.4.1 Extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy
   3.14.4.2 Percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PCNL)
   3.14.4.3 Ureterorenoscopy
   3.14.4.4 Open or laparoscopic stone surgery
3.14.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of urinary stones

3.15 Obstructive pathology of renal duplication: ureterocele and ectopic ureter
3.15.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology
   3.15.1.1 Ureterocele
   3.15.1.2 Ectopic ureter
3.15.2 Classification systems
   3.15.2.1 Ureterocele
     3.15.2.1.1 Ectopic (extravesical) ureterocele
     3.15.2.1.2 Orthotopic (intravesical) ureterocele
   3.15.2.2 Ectopic ureter
3.15.3 Diagnostic evaluation
   3.15.3.1 Ureterocele
   3.15.3.2 Ectopic ureter
3.15.4 Management
   3.15.4.1 Ureterocele
     3.15.4.1.1 Early treatment
     3.15.4.1.2 Re-evaluation
   3.15.4.2 Ectopic ureter
3.15.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of obstructive pathology of renal duplication: ureterocele and ectopic ureter
3.16 Disorders of sex development 72
  3.16.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology 72
    3.16.1.1 Micropenis 73
  3.16.2 Diagnostic evaluation 73
    3.16.2.1 The neonatal emergency 73
      3.16.2.1.1 Family history and clinical examination 73
      3.16.2.1.2 Choice of laboratory investigations 74
    3.16.2.2 Gender assignment 74
    3.16.2.3 Role of the paediatric urologist 75
      3.16.2.3.1 Clinical examination 75
      3.16.2.3.2 Investigations 75
  3.16.3 Management 76
    3.16.3.1 Feminising surgery 76
    3.16.3.2 Masculinising surgery 76
  3.16.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of disorders of sex development 77

3.17 Posterior urethral valves 77
  3.17.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology 77
  3.17.2 Classification systems 77
    3.17.2.1 Urethral valve 77
  3.17.3 Diagnostic evaluation 78
  3.17.4 Management 78
    3.17.4.1 Antenatal treatment 78
    3.17.4.2 Postnatal treatment 78
  3.17.5 Follow-up 79
  3.17.6 Summary 80
  3.17.7 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of posterior urethral valves 81

3.18 Paediatric urological trauma 81
  3.18.1 Paediatric renal trauma 81
    3.18.1.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology 81
    3.18.1.2 Classification systems 81
    3.18.1.3 Diagnostic evaluation 82
      3.18.1.3.1 Haematuria 82
      3.18.1.3.2 Blood pressure 82
      3.18.1.3.3 Choice of imaging method 82
    3.18.1.4 Disease management 82
    3.18.1.5 Recommendations for the diagnosis and management of paediatric renal trauma 83
  3.18.2 Paediatric ureteral trauma 83
    3.18.2.1 Diagnostic evaluation 83
    3.18.2.2 Management 83
    3.18.2.3 Recommendations for the diagnosis and management of paediatric ureteral trauma 83
  3.18.3 Paediatric bladder injuries 83
    3.18.3.1 Diagnostic evaluation 84
    3.18.3.2 Management 84
      3.18.3.2.1 Intra-peritoneal injuries 84
      3.18.3.2.2 Extra-peritoneal injuries 84
    3.18.3.3 Recommendations for the diagnosis and management of paediatric bladder injuries 84
  3.18.4 Paediatric urethral injuries 84
    3.18.4.1 Diagnostic evaluation 85
    3.18.4.2 Disease management 85
    3.18.4.3 Recommendations for the diagnosis and management of paediatric trauma 85

3.19 Post-operative fluid management 85
  3.19.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology 85
  3.19.2 Disease management 86
    3.19.2.1 Pre-operative fasting 86
3.19.2.2 Maintenance therapy and intra-operative fluid therapy 86
3.19.2.3 Post-operative fluid management 87
3.19.2.4 Post-operative fasting 88
3.19.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of post-operative fluid management 88

3.20 Post-operative pain management: general information 88
3.20.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology 88
3.20.2 Diagnostic evaluation 89
3.20.3 Disease management 89
3.20.3.1 Drugs and route of administration 89
3.20.3.2 Circumcision 89
3.20.3.3 Penile, inguinal and scrotal surgery 89
3.20.3.4 Bladder and kidney surgery 92
3.20.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of post-operative pain 92

4. REFERENCES 92

5. CONFLICT OF INTEREST 141
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim
A collaborative working group consisting of members representing the European Society for Paediatric Urology (ESPU) and the European Association of Urology (EAU) has prepared these Guidelines with the aim of increasing the quality of care for children with urological conditions. This Guideline document addresses a number of common clinical pathologies in paediatric urological practice, as covering the entire field of paediatric urology in a single guideline document is unattainable.

The majority of urological clinical problems in children are distinct and in many ways differ to those in adults. This publication intends to outline a practical and preliminary approach to paediatric urological conditions. Complex and rare conditions that require special care with experienced doctors should be referred to designated centres where paediatric urology practice has been fully established and a multidisciplinary approach is available.

Over time, paediatric urology has informally developed and matured, establishing its diverse body of knowledge and expertise and may now be ready to distinguish itself from its parent specialties. Thus, paediatric urology has recently emerged in many European countries as a distinct subspecialty of both urology and paediatric surgery and presents a unique challenge in the sense that it covers a large area with many different schools of thought and a huge diversity in management.

Knowledge gained by increasing experience, new technological advances and non-invasive diagnostic screening modalities has had a profound influence on treatment modalities in paediatric urology, a trend that is likely to continue in the years to come.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of children and their care-givers into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition
The EAU-ESPU Paediatric Urology Guidelines Panel consists of an international group of clinicians with particular expertise in this area. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements, which can be viewed on the EAU Website Uroweb: http://uroweb.org/guideline/paediatric-urology/.

1.3 Available publications
A quick reference document (Pocket guidelines) is available, in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text version. A number of translated versions, alongside several scientific publications in European Urology, the Associations scientific journal are also available [1-3]. All documents can be viewed through the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guideline/paediatric-urology/.

1.4 Publication history
The Paediatric Urology Guidelines were first published in 2001. This 2017 publication includes a number of updated chapters and sections as detailed below.

1.5 Summary of changes
The literature for the complete document has been assessed and updated, wherever relevant.
Key changes in the 2017 publication:
- Section 3.4 - Acute scrotum in children: The literature has been updated resulting in minor revisions to the text;
- Section 3.5 - Hypospadias: Both the literature and the text have been revised extensively;
- Section 3.6 - Congenital penile curvature: Both the literature and the text have been revised extensively;
- 3.12 - Dilatation of the upper urinary tract (UUT) (UPJ and UVJ obstruction). A new section presenting the results of a systematic review interrogating the role of antibiotic prophylaxis in antenatal hydronephrosis has been included [4];
- Section 3.14 - Urinary stone disease: Both the literature and the text have been revised extensively.
1.5.1 New and changed recommendations

3.6.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of congenital penile curvature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Isolated congenital penile curvature is relatively uncommon.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital penile curvature is often associated with hypospadias.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis is usually made late in childhood.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The penis only appears abnormal when erect.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital penile curvature can cause aesthetic as well as functional sexual problems.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital penile curvature is treated with surgery.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The goal of surgery is to achieve corpora of similar size.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ensure that a thorough medical history is taken and a full clinical examination done to rule out associated anomalies in boys presenting with congenital curvature.</td>
<td>1a A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provide photo documentation of the erect penis from different angles as a prerequisite in the pre-operative evaluation.</td>
<td>1b A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform surgery after weighing aesthetic as well as functional implications of the curvature.</td>
<td>2b B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At the beginning as well as at the end of surgery perform artificial erection tests.</td>
<td>2a A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.5.6 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of hypospadias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Androgen stimulation therapy results in increased penile length and glans circumference.</td>
<td>1B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The complication rate is about 10% in distal and 25% in proximal hypospadias one-stage repairs. Higher and variable rate (between 28 and 68%) can occur in two-stage repairs.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In children diagnosed with proximal hypospadias and a small appearing penis, reduced glans circumference or reduced urethral plate, pre-operative hormonal androgen stimulation treatment is an option and the body of evidence to accentuate its harms and benefits is inadequate.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ensure long-term follow-up to detect urethral stricture, voiding dysfunctions and recurrent penile curvature.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use validated objective scoring systems to assist in evaluating the functional and cosmetic outcome.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.12.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of ureteropelvic junction (UPJ), UVJ-obstruction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In children diagnosed with antenatal hydronephrosis, a systematic review could not establish any benefits or harms related to continuous antibiotic prophylaxis.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In children diagnosed with antenatal hydronephrosis, non-circumcised infants (LE: 1a), children diagnosed with high-grade hydronephrosis (LE: 2) and hydroureteronephrosis (LE: 1b) were shown to be at higher risk of developing UTI.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer continuous antibiotic prophylaxis to the subgroup of children with antenatal hydronephrosis who are at high risk of developing urinary tract infection (uncircumcised infants (LE: 1a), children diagnosed with hydroureteronephrosis (LE: 1b) and high-grade hydronephrosis (LE: 2).</td>
<td>2 A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. METHODS

These Guidelines were compiled based on current literature following a structured review using MEDLINE. Application of a structured analysis of the literature was not possible in many conditions due to a lack of well-designed studies. The limited availability of large randomised controlled trials (RCTs) - influenced also by the fact that a considerable number of treatment options relate to surgical interventions on a large spectrum of different congenital problems - means this document is largely a consensus document. Clearly there is a need for continuous re-evaluation of the information presented in this document.

Recommendations in this text are assessed according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [5]. Additional methodology information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guidelines/. A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address.

2.1 Peer review
The following section was peer-reviewed prior to publication:
- Chapter 3.2 - Undescended testes.

All other chapters of the Paediatric Urology Guidelines were peer-reviewed in 2015.

2.2 Future goals
The Paediatric Urology Guidelines Panel aim to systematically address the following key clinical topic in a future update of the Guidelines:
- What are the short-term and long-term benefits and harms of varicocoele intervention in children?

3. THE GUIDELINE

3.1 Phimosis

3.1.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology
At the end of the first year of life, retraction of the foreskin behind the glandular sulcus is possible in approximately 50% of boys; this rises to approximately 89% by the age of three years. The incidence of phimosis is 8% in six to seven year olds and just 1% in males aged sixteen to eighteen years [6].

3.1.2 Classification systems
The phimosis is either primary with no sign of scarring, or secondary (pathological) to a scarring such as balanitis xerotica obliterans (BXO) [6]. Balanitis xerotica obliterans, also termed lichen sclerosis, has been recently found in 17% of boys younger than ten years presenting with phimosis. The clinical appearance of BXO in children may be confusing and does not correlate with the final histopathological results. Chronic inflammation was the most common finding [7] (LE: 2b).

Phimosis has to be distinguished from normal agglutination of the foreskin to the glans, which is a more or less lasting physiological phenomenon with clearly-visible meatus and free partial retraction [8]. Paraphimosis must be regarded as an emergency situation: retraction of a too narrow prepuce behind the glans penis into the glanular sulcus may constrict the shaft and lead to oedema of the glans and retracted foreskin. It interferes with perfusion distally from the constrictive ring and brings a risk of preputial necrosis.

3.1.3 Diagnostic evaluation
The diagnosis of phimosis and paraphimosis is made by physical examination. If the prepuce is not retractable, or only partly retractable, and shows a constrictive ring on drawing back over the glans penis, a disproportion between the width of the foreskin and the diameter of the glans penis has to be assumed. In addition to the constricted foreskin, there may be adhesions between the inner surface of the prepuce and the glanular epithelium and/or a fraenulum breve. Paraphimosis is characterised by a retracted foreskin with the constrictive ring localised at the level of the sulcus, which prevents replacement of the foreskin over the glans.

3.1.4 Management
Conservative treatment is an option for primary phimosis. A corticoid ointment or cream (0.05-0.1%) can be administered twice a day over a period of 20-30 days with a success rate of > 90% [9-12] (LE: 1b). A recurrence rate of up to 17% can be expected [13]. This treatment has no side effects and the mean bloodspot
cortisol levels are not significantly different from an untreated group of patients [14] (LE: 1b). The hypothalamic pituitary-adrenal axis was not influenced by local corticoid treatment [15]. Agglutination of the foreskin does not respond to steroid treatment [11] (LE: 2).

Operative treatment of phimosis in children is dependent on the parents’ preferences and can be plastic or radical circumcision after completion of the second year of life. Alternatively, the Shang Ring may be used especially in developing countries [16]. Plastic circumcision has the objective of achieving a wide foreskin circumference with full retractability, while the foreskin is preserved (dorsal incision, partial circumcision). However, this procedure carries the potential for recurrence of the phimosis [17]. In the same session, adhesions are released and an associated fraenulum breve is corrected by fraenulotomy. Meatoplasty is added if necessary.

An absolute indication for circumcision is secondary phimosis. In primary phimosis, recurrent balanoposthitis and recurrent urinary tract infections (UTIs) in patients with urinary tract abnormalities are indications for intervention [18-21] (LE: 2b). Male circumcision significantly reduces the bacterial colonisation of the glans penis with regard to both non-uropathogenic and uropathogenic bacteria [22] (LE: 2b). Simple ballooning of the foreskin during micturition is not a strict indication for circumcision.

Routine neonatal circumcision to prevent penile carcinoma is not indicated. A recent meta-analysis could not find any risk in uncircumcised patients without a history of phimosis [23]. Contraindications for circumcision are: an acute local infection and congenital anomalies of the penis, particularly hypospadias or buried penis, as the foreskin may be required for a reconstructive procedure [24, 25]. Circumcision can be performed in children with coagulopathy with 1-5% suffering complications (bleeding), if haemostatic agents or a diathermic knife are used [26, 27]. Childhood circumcision has an appreciable morbidity and should not be recommended without a medical reason and also taking into account epidemiological and social aspects [28-32] (LE: 1b).

Treatment of paraphimosis consists of manual compression of the oedematous tissue with a subsequent attempt to retract the tightened foreskin over the glans penis. Injection of hyaluronidase beneath the narrow band or 20% mannitol may be helpful to release the foreskin [33, 34] (LE: 3-4). If this manoeuvre fails, a dorsal incision of the constrictive ring is required. Depending on the local findings, a circumcision is carried out immediately or can be performed in a second session.

3.1.5 Follow-up
Any surgery done on the prepuce requires an early follow-up of four to six weeks after surgery.

3.1.6 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of phimosis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treatment for phimosis usually starts after two years of age or according to parents’ preference.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In primary phimosis, conservative treatment with a corticoid ointment or cream is a first line treatment with a success rate of more than 90%.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treat primary phimosis conservatively with a corticoid ointment or cream. Circumcision will also solve the problem if being considered.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not delay treatment of primary phimosis in recurrent balanoposthitis and recurrent urinary tract infection (UTI) in patients with urinary tract abnormalities.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circumcision is indicated in secondary phimosis.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not delay treatment in case of paraphimosis, this is an emergency situation. Perform a dorsal incision of the constrictive ring if manual reposition has failed.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine neonatal circumcision is not recommended to prevent penile carcinoma.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2 Management of undescended testes

3.2.1 Background
Cryptorchidism or undescended testis is one of the most common congenital malformations of male neonates. Incidence varies and depends on gestational age, affecting 1.0-4.6% of full-term and 1.1-45% of preterm neonates. Following spontaneous descent within the first months of life, nearly 1.0% of all full-term male infants still have undescended testes at one year of age [35]. This congenital malformation may affect both sides in up to 30% of cases [36]. In newborn cases with non-palpable or undescended testes on both sides and any sign of disorders of sex development (DSDs) like concomitant hypospadias, urgent endocrinological and genetic evaluation is required [37].
3.2.2 **Classification**

The term cryptorchidism is most often used synonymously for undescended testes. The most useful classification of undescended testes is distinguishing into palpable and non-palpable testes, and clinical management is decided by the location and presence of the testes (see Figure 1). Approximately 80% of all undescended testes are palpable [38]. Acquired undescended testes can be caused by entrapment after herniorrhaphy or spontaneously referred to as ascending testis.

Palpable testes include true undescended testes and ectopic testes. Non-palpable testes include intra-abdominal, inguinal, absent, and sometimes also some ectopic testes. Most importantly, the diagnosis of palpable or non-palpable testis needs to be confirmed once the child is under general anaesthesia, as this is the first step of any surgical procedure for undescended testes.

**Figure 1: Classification of undescended testes**

![Diagram](#)

### 3.2.2.1 Palpable testes

#### Undescended testes

- **Palpable**
  - Inguinal
  - Ectopic
  - Retractile

- **Non-palpable**
  - Inguinal
  - Ectopic
  - Intra-abdominal
  - Absent

#### Undescended testis

- A true undescended testis is on its normal path of descent but is halted on its way down to the scrotum. Depending on the location, the testes may be palpable or not, as in the case of testes arrested in the inguinal canal.

#### Ectopic testes

If the position of a testis is outside its normal path of descent and outside the scrotum, the testis is considered to be ectopic. The most common aberrant position is in the superficial inguinal pouch. Sometimes an ectopic testis can be identified in a femoral, perineal, pubic, penile or even contralateral position. Usually, there is no possibility for an ectopic testis to descend spontaneously to the correct position; therefore, it requires surgical intervention. In addition, an ectopic testis might not be palpable due to its position.

#### Retractile testes

Retractile testes have completed their descent into a proper scrotal position but can be found again in a suprascrotal position along the path of their normal descent. This is due to an overactive cremasteric reflex [39]. Retractile testes can be easily manipulated down to the scrotum and remain there at least temporarily. They are typically normal in size and consistency. However, they may not be normal and should be monitored carefully since up to one-third can ascend and become undescended [40].
3.2.2.2 Non-palpable testes
Among the 20% of non-palpable testes, 50-60% are intra-abdominal, canalicular or peeping (right inside the internal inguinal ring). The remaining 20% are absent and 30% are atrophic or rudimentary.

Intra-abdominal testes
Intra-abdominal testes can be located in different positions, with most of them being found close to the internal inguinal ring. However, possible locations include the kidney, anterior abdominal wall, and retrovesical space. In the case of an open internal inguinal ring, the testis may be peeping into the inguinal canal.

Absent testes
Monorchidism can be identified in up to 4% of boys with undescended testes, and anorchidism (bilateral absence) in < 1%. Possible pathogenic mechanisms include testicular agenesis and atrophy after intrauterine torsion with the latter one most probably due to an in utero infarction of a normal testis by gonadal vessel torsion. The term vanishing testis is commonly used for this condition [41].

3.2.3 Diagnostic evaluation
History taking and physical examination are key in evaluating boys with undescended testes. Localisation studies using different imaging modalities are usually without any additional benefit.

3.2.3.1 History
Parents should be asked for maternal and paternal risk factors, including hormonal exposure and genetic or hormonal disorders. If the child has a history of previously descended testes this might be suggestive of testicular ascent [42]. Prior inguinal surgery is indicative of secondary undescended testes due to entrapment.

3.2.3.2 Physical examination
An undescended testis is pursued by carefully advancing the examining fingers along the inguinal canal towards the pubis region, perhaps with the help of lubricant. A possible inguinal testis can be felt to bounce under the fingers [43]. A non-palpable testis in the supine position may become palpable once the child is in a sitting or squatting position. If no testis can be identified along the normal path of descent, possible ectopic locations must be considered.

In case of unilateral non-palpable testis, the contralateral testis needs to be examined. Its size and location can have important prognostic implications. Any compensatory hypertrophy suggests testicular absence or atrophy [44]. Nevertheless, this does not preclude surgical exploration since the sign of compensatory hypertrophy is not specific enough [45].

In case of bilateral undescended testes and any evidence or sign of DSDs, such as genital ambiguity, or scrotal hyperpigmentation, further evaluation including endocrinological and genetic assessment becomes mandatory [46].

3.2.3.3 Imaging studies
Imaging studies cannot determine with certainty that a testis is present or not [47]. Ultrasound (US) lacks the diagnostic performance to detect the testis confidently or establish the absence of an intra-abdominal testis [48].

Consequently, the use of different imaging modalities, such as US or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) [49], for undescended testes is limited and only recommended in specific and selected clinical scenarios (e.g., identification of Müllerian structures in cases with suspicion of DSDs) [50].

3.2.4 Management
Treatment should be started at the age of six months. After that age, undescended testes rarely descend [51]. Any kind of treatment leading to a scrotally positioned testis should be finished by twelve months, or eighteen months at the latest, because histological examination of undescended testes at that age has already revealed a progressive loss of germ cells and Leydig cells [52]. The early timing of treatment is also driven by the final adult results on spermatogenesis and hormone production, as well as on the risk of tumour development [53].

3.2.4.1 Medical therapy
Unfortunately, most of the studies on hormonal treatment have been of poor quality, with heterogeneous and mixed patient populations, testis location, schedules and dosages of hormonal administration. Additionally, long-term data are almost completely lacking.

Short-term side effects of hormonal treatment include increased scrotal erythema and pigmentation, and induction of pubic hair and penile growth. Some boys experience pain after intramuscular injection of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG). All of these tend to regress after treatment cessation [54, 55].
3.2.4.1 Medical therapy for testicular descent

Hormonal therapy using hCG or gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) is based on the hormonal dependence of testicular descent, but has a maximum success rate of only 20% [56]. However, it must be taken into account that almost 20% of these descended testes have the risk of re-ascending later [54]. In general, success rates depend on testicular location. The higher the testis is located prior to therapy, the lower the success rate, suggesting that testicular position is an important determinant of success [55]. Some authors recommend combined hCG-GnRH treatment. Unfortunately, it is poorly documented and the treatment groups were diverse. Some studies reported successful descent in up to 38% of non-responders to monotherapy [57]. The Panel consensus is that endocrine treatment to achieve testicular descent is not recommended (LE: 4).

Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)

Human chorionic gonadotropin stimulates endogenous testosterone production and is administered by intramuscular injection. Several dose and administration schedules are reported. There is no proven difference between 1.5 IU and weight-based doses up to 3.0 IU every other day for fourteen days [58]. Similar response rates were achieved with 500 IU once weekly and 1.50 IU three times weekly [59]. However, there is evidence that dosing frequency might affect testicular descent rates. Fewer lower dose injections per week for five weeks seem to be superior to one higher dose every seven to ten days for three weeks with regard to testicular descent [60].

Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH)

Gonadotropin-releasing hormone analogues (e.g., buserelin and gonadorelin) are available as nasal sprays, thus avoiding painful intramuscular injections. A typical dosage regimen consists of 1.2 mg per day in three divided doses, for four weeks. Success rates are wide ranging, from 9 to 60%, due to multiple treatment strategies and heterogeneous patient populations [61].

3.2.4.1.2 Medical therapy for fertility potential

Hormonal treatment may improve fertility indices [61, 62] and therefore serve as an additional tool to orchidopexy. There is no difference in treatment with GnRH before (neo-adjuvant) or after (adjuvant) surgical orchidolysis and orchidopexy in terms of increasing fertility index, which may be a predictor for fertility later in life [63]. It is still unknown whether this effect on testicular histology persists into adulthood but it has been shown that men who were treated in childhood with buserelin had better semen analyses compared with men who had childhood orchidopexy alone or placebo treatment [64].

It is reported that hCG treatment may be harmful to future spermatogenesis through increased apoptosis of germ cells, including acute inflammatory changes in the testes and reduced testicular volume in adulthood [65]. Identification of specific subgroups of boys with undescended testes who would benefit from such an approach using hormones is difficult. Since these important data on specific groups as well as additional support on the long-term effects are still lacking, the Nordic consensus does not recommend hormonal therapy [66]. The Panel consensus recommends endocrine treatment with GnRH analogues in a dosage described above for boys with bilateral undescended testes to preserve the fertility potential (LE: 4, GR: C).

3.2.4.2 Surgical therapy

If a testis has not concluded its descent at the age of six months (corrected for gestational age), and since spontaneous testicular descent is unlikely to occur after that age, surgery should be performed within the subsequent year, and by age eighteen months at the latest [52]. In addition, early orchidopexy can be followed by partial catch-up testicular growth, which is not the case in delayed surgery [67]. All these findings recommend performing early orchidopexy between the ages of six and twelve months [51].

3.2.4.2.1 Palpable testes

Surgery for palpable testes includes orchidofunicolysis and orchidopexy, either via an inguinal or scrotal approach. The latter approach is mainly reserved for low-positioned, undescended testes, with the pros and cons of each method being weighed against each other [68].

3.2.4.2.1.1 Inguinal orchidopexy

Inguinal orchidopexy is a widely used technique with a high success rate of up to 92% [69]. Important steps include mobilisation of the testis and spermatic cord to the level of the internal inguinal ring, with dissection and division of all cremasteric fibres, to prevent secondary retraction and detachment of the gubernaculum testis. The patent processus vaginalis needs to be ligated proximally at the level of the internal ring, because an unidentified or inadequately repaired patent processus vaginalis is an important factor leading to failure of orchidopexy [70]. Any additional pathology has to be taken care of, such as removal of an appendix testis
(hydatid of Morgagni). At this moment the size of the testis can be measured and the connection of the epididymis to the testis can be judged and described in the protocol. Some boys have a significant dissociation between testis and epididymis which is prognostically bad for fertility. Finally, the mobilised testicle needs to be placed in a sub-dartos pouch within the hemi-scrotum without any tension. In case the length achieved using the above-mentioned technique is still inadequate, the Prentiss manoeuvre, which consists of dividing the inferior epigastric vessels and transposing the spermatic cord medially, in order to provide a straight course to the scrotum, might be an option [71]. With regard to fixation sutures, if required, they should be made between the tunica vaginalis and the dartos musculature [72]. Lymph drainage of a testis that has undergone surgery for orchidopexy may have changed from high retroperitoneal drainage to iliac and inguinal drainage, which might become important in the event of later malignancy [73].

### 3.2.4.2.1.2 Scrotal orchidopexy

Low-positioned, palpable undescended testis can be fixed through a scrotal incision including division of the gubernaculum, and the processus vaginalis needs to be probed to check for patency [74]. Otherwise, fixation in the scrotum is carried out correspondingly to the inguinal approach. In up to 20% of cases, an inguinal incision will be compulsory to correct an associated inguinal hernia [75]. Any testicular or epididymal appendages can be easily identified and removed. A systematic review shows that the overall success rates ranged from 88 to 100%, with rates of recurrence and post-operative testicular atrophy or hypotrophy < 1% [68].

### 3.2.4.2.2 Non-palpable testes

For non-palpable testes, surgery must clearly determine whether a testis is present or not [76]. If a testis is found, the decision has to be made to remove it or bring it down to the scrotum. An important step in surgery is a thorough re-examination once the boy is under general anaesthesia, since a previously non-palpable testis might be identifiable and subsequently change the surgical approach to standard inguinal orchidopexy, as described above. Otherwise, the easiest and most accurate way to locate an intra-abdominal testis is diagnostic laparoscopy [77]. Subsequent removal or orchidolysis and orchidopexy can be carried out using the same approach to achieve the therapeutic aims [78]. Some tend to start with inguinal surgical exploration, with possible laparoscopy during the procedure [79]. If an ipsilateral scrotal nubbin is suspected, and contralateral compensatory testicular hypertrophy is present, a scrotal incision with removal of the nubbin, thus confirming the vanishing testis, is an option avoiding the need for laparoscopy [80].

During laparoscopy for non-palpable testes, possible anatomical findings include spermatic vessels entering the inguinal canal (40%), an intra-abdominal (40%) or peeping (10%) testis, or blind-ending spermatic vessels confirming vanishing testis (10%) [81].

In case of a vanishing testis, the procedure is finished once blind-ending spermatic vessels are clearly identified. If the vessels enter the inguinal canal, one may find an atrophic testis upon inguinal exploration or a healthy testis that needs to undergo standard orchidopexy [82]. A peeping testis can be placed down in the scrotum laparoscopically or via an inguinal incision [83]. Placement of an intra-abdominal testis can sometimes be a surgical challenge. Usually, testes lying > 2 cm above the internal inguinal ring may not reach the scrotum without division of the testicular vessels [84]. Under such circumstances, a Fowler-Stephens orchidopexy may be an option [85] (see Figure 2).

Proximal cutting and transection of the testicular vessels, with conservation of the collateral arterial blood supply, via the deferential artery and cremasteric vessels comprise the key features of the Fowler-Stephens procedure. Recently, a modification with low spermatic vessel ligation has gained popularity, allowing blood supply from the testicular artery to the deferential artery. An additional advantage is the position of the peritoneal incision, leading to a longer structure, to ease later scrotal placement [86]. Due to the nature of these approaches the testis is at risk of hypotrophy or atrophy if the collateral blood supply is insufficient [87]. The testicular survival rate in the one-stage Fowler-Stephens technique varies between 50 and 60%, with success rates increasing up to 90% for the two-stage procedure [88]. The advantages of two-stage orchidopexy, with the second part done usually six months after the first, are to allow for development of collateral blood supply and to create greater testicular mobility [89]. In addition preservation of the gubernaculum may also decrease the chance of testicular atrophy [90].

An alternative might be microsurgical auto-transplantation, which has a success rate of up to 90%. However, this approach requires skilled and experienced surgeons and is performed in a limited number of centres [91].
3.2.4.2.3 Complications of surgical therapy
Surgical complications are usually uncommon, with testicular atrophy being the most serious. A systematic review revealed an overall atrophy rate for primary orchidopexy of 1.83%, 28.1% for one-stage Fowler-Stephens procedure, and 8.2% for the two-stage approach [92]. Other rare complications comprise testicular ascent and vas deferens injury besides local wound infection, dehiscence, and haematoma.

3.2.4.2.4 Surgical therapy for undescended testes after puberty
A recent study on 51 men diagnosed with inguinal unilateral undescended testis and a normal contralateral one, with no history of any previous therapy, demonstrated a wide range of changes upon histological evaluation. Nearly half of the study population still had significant germ cell activity at different maturation levels. Importantly, the incidence of intratubular germ cell neoplasia was 2% [93].

The Panel consensus recommends orchiectomy in post-pubertal boys with an undescended testis and a normal contralateral one in a scrotal position.

Figure 2: Treatment of unilateral non-palpable undescended testes

3.2.5 Undescended testes and fertility
The association of undescended testes with compromised fertility [94] is extensively discussed in the literature and seems to be a result of multiple factors, including germ cell loss, impaired germ cell maturation [95], Leydig cell diminution and testicular fibrosis [96].

Although boys with one undescended testis have a lower fertility rate, they have the same paternity rate as those with bilateral descended testes. Boys with bilateral undescended testes suffer both, lower fertility and paternity rates. Fertility rate is the number of offspring born per mating pair, individual of population, whereas paternity reflects the actual potential of fatherhood [97]. The age at which surgical intervention for an undescended testis happens seems to be an important predictive factor for fertility later in life. Endocrinological studies revealed higher inhibin-B and lower follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) levels in men who underwent orchidopexy at age two years compared to individuals who had surgery later, which is indicative of a benefit of earlier orchidopexy [98]. In addition, others demonstrated a relation between undescended testes and
increased loss of germ cells and Leydig cells, which is also suggestive of prompt orchidopexy being a significant factor for fertility preservation [99].

Outcome studies for untreated bilateral undescended testes revealed that 100% are oligospermic and 75% azoospermic. Among those successfully treated for bilateral undescended testes, 75% still remain oligospermic and 42% azoospermic [96].

In summary, regarding preservation of fertility potential, early surgical correction of undescended testes is highly recommended before twelve months of age, and by eighteen months at the latest [52].

3.2.6 Undescended testes and malignancy

Boys who are treated for an undescended testis have an increased risk of developing testicular malignancy. Screening and self-examination both during and after puberty is therefore recommended [100]. A Swedish study, with a cohort of almost 17,000 men (56 developed a testicular tumour) who were treated surgically for undescended testes and followed for 210,000 person-years, showed that management of undescended testes before the onset of puberty decreased the risk of testicular cancer. The relative risk of testicular cancer among those who underwent orchidopexy before thirteen years of age was 2.2 compared to the Swedish general population; this increased to 5.4 for those treated after thirteen years of age [101].

A systematic review and meta-analysis of the literature have also concluded that pre-pubertal orchidopexy may reduce the risk of testicular cancer and that early surgical intervention is indicated in boys with undescended testes [102].

3.2.7 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of undescended testes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>An undescended testis justifies treatment early in life to avoid loss of spermatogenic potential.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A failed or delayed orchidopexy may increase the risk of testicular malignancy later in life.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The earlier the treatment, the lower the risk of impaired fertility and testicular cancer.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In unilateral undescended testis, fertility rate is reduced whereas paternity rate is not.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In bilateral undescended testes, fertility and paternity rates are impaired.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The treatment of choice for undescended testis is surgical replacement in the scrotum.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The palpable testis is usually treated surgically using an inguinal approach.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The non-palpable testis is most commonly approached laparoscopically.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no consensus on the use of hormonal treatment.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boys with retractile testes do not need medical or surgical treatment, but ensure close follow-up until puberty.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform surgical orchidolysis and orchidopexy before the age of twelve months, and by eighteen months at the latest.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaluate male neonates with bilateral non-palpable testes for possible disorders of sex development (DSD).</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In case of non-palpable testes and no evidence of DSDs, laparoscopy is recommended because of its excellent sensitivity and specificity in identifying an intra-abdominal testis, as well as the possibility for subsequent treatment in the same session.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not routinely offer hormonal therapy, either in an adjuvant or neo-adjuvant setting. Patients have to be evaluated on an individual basis.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In case of bilateral undescended testes, offer endocrine treatment.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For an undescended testis in a post-pubertal boy or older, with a normal contralateral testis, discuss removal with the patient/parents because of the theoretical risk of a later malignancy.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.3 Hydrocele

3.3.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Hydrocele is defined as a collection of fluid between the parietal and visceral layers of the tunica vaginalis [103]. Pathogenesis of primary hydrocele is based on patency of processus vaginalis in contrast with secondary hydrocele. Incomplete obliteration of the processus vaginalis peritonei results in formation of various types of communicating hydrocele; a large open processus vaginalis allowing passage of abdominal viscera results in clinical hernia [104]. The exact time of spontaneous closure of the processus vaginalis is not known. It persists in approximately 80-94% of newborns and in 20% of adults [105]. If complete obliteration
of the processus vaginalis occurs with patency of midportion, a hydrocele of the cord occurs. Scrotal hydroceles without associated patency of the processus vaginalis are also encountered in newborns [106]. Non-communicating hydroceles, based on an imbalance between the secretion and re-absorption of this fluid, are found secondary to minor trauma, testicular torsion, epididymitis, varicocele operation or may appear as a recurrence after primary repair of a communicating or non-communicating hydrocele.

3.3.2  Diagnostic evaluation
The classic description of a communicating hydrocele is that of a hydrocele that vacillates in size, and is usually related to ambulation. It may be diagnosed by history and physical investigation. Transillumination of the scrotum provides the diagnosis in the majority of cases, keeping in mind that fluid-filled intestine and some pre-pubertal tumours may transilluminate as well [107, 108]. If the diagnosis is that of a hydrocele, there will be no history of reducibility and no associated symptoms; the swelling is translucent, smooth and usually nontender. If there are any doubts about the character of an intrascrotal mass, scrotal US should be performed and has nearly 100% sensitivity in detecting intrascrotal lesions. Doppler US studies help to distinguish hydroceles from varicocele and testicular torsion, although these conditions may also be accompanied by a hydrocele.

3.3.3  Management
In the majority of infants, surgical treatment of hydrocele is not indicated within the first twelve months because of the tendency for spontaneous resolution [109] (LE: 2). Little risk is taken by initial observation as progression to hernia is rare and does not result in incarceration [109]. Early surgery is indicated if there is suspicion of a concomitant inguinal hernia or underlying testicular pathology [110, 111] (LE: 2). Persistence of a simple scrotal hydrocele beyond twelve months of age may be an indication for surgical correction. There is no evidence that this type of hydrocele risks testicular damage. The natural history of hydrocele is poorly documented beyond the age of two years and according to a systematic review there is no good evidence to support current practice. Delaying surgery may reduce the number of procedures necessary without increasing morbidity [112].

The question of contralateral disease should be addressed by both history and physical examination at the time of initial consultation (LE: 2) [113]. In late-onset hydrocele, suggestive of a non-communicating hydrocele, there is a reasonable chance of spontaneous resolution (75%) and expectant management of six to nine months is recommended [114]. In the paediatric age group, the operation consists of ligation of patent processus vaginalis via inguinal incision and the distal stump is left open, whereas in hydrocele of the cord the cystic mass is excised or unroofed [103, 108, 110] (LE: 4). In expert hands, the incidence of testicular damage during hydrocele or inguinal hernia repair is very low (0.3%) (LE: 3). Sclerosing agents should not be used because of the risk of chemical peritonitis in communicating processus vaginalis peritonei [108, 110] (LE: 4). The scrotal approach (Lord or Jaboulay technique) is used in the treatment of a secondary non-communicating hydrocele.

3.3.4  Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of hydrocele

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In the majority of infants, surgical treatment of hydrocele is not indicated within the first twelve months due to the tendency for spontaneous resolution. Little risk is taken by initial observation as progression to hernia is rare.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the paediatric age group, an operation would generally involve ligation of the patent processus vaginalis via inguinal incision.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In the majority of infants, observe hydrocele for twelve months prior to considering surgical treatment.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform early surgery if there is suspicion of a concomitant inguinal hernia or underlying testicular pathology.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a scrotal ultrasound in case of doubt about the character of an intrascrotal mass.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use sclerosing agents because of the risk for chemical peritonitis.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.4 Acute scrotum

3.4.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Acute scrotum is a paediatric urological emergency, most commonly caused by torsion of the testis or appendix testis, or epididymitis/epididymo-orchitis [115-120]. Other causes of acute scrotal pain are idiopathic scrotal oedema, mumps orchitis, varicocele, scrotal haematoma, incarcerated hernia, appendicitis or systemic disease (e.g. Henoch-Schönlein purpura) [121-133]. Trauma can also be a cause of acute scrotum as it can relate to post-traumatic haematomas, testicular contusion, rupture dislocation or torsion [134-139]. Scrotal fat necrosis has also been reported to be an uncommon cause of mild-to-moderate scrotal pain in pre-pubertal overweight boys after exposure to cold [140].

In this chapter testicular torsion and epididymitis is discussed, while recurrent epididymitis is discussed in the chapter dealing with infections. Torsion of the testis occurs most often in the neonatal period and around puberty, whereas torsion of the appendix testes occurs over a wider age range.

Epididymitis affects two age groups: less than one year and twelve to fifteen years [118, 141, 142]. One study predicted the annual incidence of epididymitis around 1.2 per 1,000 children [143]. Perinatal torsion of the testis most often occurs prenatally. Bilateral torsion comprises 11-21% of all perinatal cases [144]. Most cases are extravaginal in contrast to the usual intravaginal torsion, which occurs during puberty.

3.4.2 Diagnostic evaluation

Patients usually present with scrotal pain, except in neonatal torsion. The sudden onset of invalidating pain in combination with vomiting is typical for torsion of the testis or appendix testes [145, 146].

In general the duration of symptoms is shorter in testicular torsion (69% present within twelve hours) and torsion of the appendix testes (62%) compared to epididymitis (31%) [117, 118, 142].

In the early phase, location of the pain can lead to diagnosis. Patients with acute epididymitis experience a tender epididymis, whereas patients with testicular torsion are more likely to have a tender testicle, and patients with torsion of the appendix testis feel isolated tenderness of the superior pole of the testis [142].

An abnormal (horizontal) position of the testis is more frequent in testicular torsion than epididymitis [117]. Looking for absence of the cremasteric reflex is a simple method with 100% sensitivity and 66% specificity for testicular torsion [141, 146] (LE:3). Elevation of the scrotum may reduce complaints in epididymitis, but not in testicular torsion.

Fever occurs more often in epididymitis (11-19%). The classical sign of a “blue dot” was found only in 10-23% of patients with torsion of the appendix testes [116, 117, 141, 147]. In many cases, it is not easy to determine the cause of acute scrotum based on history and physical examination alone [115-120, 141, 147].

A positive urine culture is only found in a few patients with epididymitis [119, 141, 147, 148]. It should be remembered that a normal urinalysis does not exclude epididymitis. Similarly, an abnormal urinalysis does not exclude testicular torsion.

Doppler US is useful to evaluate acute scrotum, with 63.6-100% sensitivity and 97-100% specificity, and a positive predictive value of 100% and negative predictive value of 97.5% [149-154] (LE: 3). The use of Doppler US may reduce the number of patients with acute scrotum undergoing scrotal exploration, but it is operator-dependent and can be difficult to perform in pre-pubertal patients [151, 155]. It may also show a misleading arterial flow in the early phases of torsion and in partial or intermittent torsion. Of key importance, persistent arterial flow does not exclude testicular torsion. In a multicentre study of 208 boys with torsion of the testis, 24% had normal or increased testicular vascularisation [151]. A comparison with the other side should always be done.

Better results were reported using high-resolution US (HRUS) for direct visualisation of the spermatic cord twist with a sensitivity of 97.3% and specificity of 99% [151, 156] (LE: 2).

Scintigraphy and, more recently, dynamic contrast-enhanced subtraction MRI of the scrotum also provide a comparable sensitivity and specificity to US [157-160]. These investigations may be used when diagnosis is less likely and if torsion of the testis still cannot be excluded from history and physical examination. This should be done without inordinate delays for emergency intervention [147].

The diagnosis of acute epididymitis in boys is mainly based on clinical judgement and adjunctive investigation. However, it should be remembered that findings of secondary inflammatory changes in the absence of evidence of an extra-testicular nodule by Doppler US might suggest an erroneous diagnosis of epididymitis in children with torsion of the appendix testes [161]. Pre-pubertal boys with acute epididymitis have an incidence of underlying urogenital anomalies of 25-27.6%. Complete urological evaluation in all children with acute epididymitis is still debatable [119, 141, 143].
3.4.3 Management

3.4.3.1 Epididymitis

In pre-pubertal boys, the aetiology is usually unclear, with an underlying pathology in about 25%. A urine culture is usually negative, and unlike in older boys, a sexually transmitted disease is very rare.

Antibiotic treatment, although often started, is not indicated in most cases unless urinalysis and urine culture show a bacterial infection [143, 162]. Epididymitis is usually self-limiting and with supportive therapy (i.e. minimal physical activity and analgesics) heals without any sequelae (LE: 3). However, bacterial epididymitis can be complicated by abscess or necrotic testis and surgical exploration is required [163].

3.4.3.2 Testicular torsion

Manual detorsion of the testis is done without anaesthesia. It should initially be done by outwards rotation of the testis unless the pain increases or if there is obvious resistance. Success is defined as the immediate relief of all symptoms and normal findings at physical examination [164] (LE: 3; GR: C). Doppler US may be used for guidance [165]. Bilateral orchiopexy is still required after successful detorsion. This should not be done as an elective procedure, but rather immediately following detorsion. One study reported residual torsion during exploration in 17 out of 53 patients, including eleven patients who had reported pain relief after manual detorsion [164, 166].

Torsion of the appendix testis can be managed non-operatively with the use of anti-inflammatory analgesics (LE: 4). During the six-week follow-up, clinically and with US, no testicular atrophy was revealed. Surgical exploration is done in equivocal cases and in patients with persistent pain [154].

3.4.3.3 Surgical treatment

Testicular torsion is an urgent condition, which requires prompt surgical treatment. The two most important determinants of early salvage rate of the testis are the time between onset of symptoms and detorsion, and the degree of cord twisting [167]. Severe testicular atrophy occurred after torsion for as little as four hours when the turn was > 360°. In cases of incomplete torsion (180-360°), with symptom duration up to twelve hours, no atrophy was observed. However, an absent or severely atrophied testis was found in all cases of torsion > 360° and symptom duration > 24 hours [168].

Early surgical intervention with detorsion (mean torsion time less than thirteen hours) was found to preserve fertility [169]. Urgent surgical exploration is mandatory in all cases of testicular torsion within 24 hours of symptom onset. In patients with testicular torsion > 24 hours, semi-elective exploration is necessary [167, 168] (LE: 3). There is still controversy on whether to carry out detorsion and to preserve the ipsilateral testis, or to perform an orchietomy, in order to preserve contralateral function and fertility after testicular torsion of long duration (> 24 hours).

A study found that sperm quality was preserved after orchietomy and orchiopexy in comparison to normal control men, although orchietomy resulted in better sperm morphology [170].

During exploration, fixation of the contralateral testis is also performed. Recurrence after orchidopexy is rare (4.5%) and may occur several years later. There is no consensus recommendation about the preferred type of fixation and suture material [171]. Incision of the tunica albuginea with tunica vaginalis graft to prevent or treat compartment syndrome has also been suggested [172].

External cooling before exploration and several medical treatments seem effective in reducing ischaemia-reperfusion injury and preserving the viability of the torsed and the contralateral testis [173-177]. It is good clinical practice to perform fixation also of the contralateral testis in prenatal and neonatal torsion, although there is no literature to support this and to remove an atrophied testicle.

3.4.4 Follow-up

Patients require follow-up mainly for fertility issues and hormonal consequences. Despite timely and adequate detorsion and fixation of the testicle, up to half of the patients may develop testicular atrophy, even when intraoperatively assessed as viable, and should be counseled accordingly [178].

3.4.4.1 Fertility

The results vary and are conflicting. In one study, unilateral torsion of the testis seriously intervened with subsequent spermatogenesis in about 50% of the patients and produced borderline impairment in another 20% [167]. Although, 30% of affected testicles with mumps orchitis show a degree of atrophy, long-term outcome in terms of fertility is not conclusive [179].

A recent study showed a normal pregnancy rate after unilateral testicular torsion, with no difference between the patients undergoing orchidopexie and those after orchidectomy [180].
3.4.4.2 Subfertility
Subfertility is found in 36-39% of patients after torsion. Semen analysis may be normal in only 5-50% in long-term follow-up [167]. Early surgical intervention (mean torsion time less than thirteen hours) with detorsion was found to preserve fertility, but a prolonged torsion period (mean 70 hours) followed by orchiectomy jeopardised fertility [169].

Subfertility and infertility are consequences of direct injury to the testis after the torsion. This is caused by the cut-off of blood supply, but also by post-ischaemia-reperfusion injury that is caused after the detorsion when oxygen-derived free radicals are rapidly circulated within the testicular parenchyma [167].

3.4.4.3 Androgen levels
Even though the levels of FSH, luteinising hormone (LH) and testosterone are higher in patients after testicular torsion compared to normal controls, endocrine testicular function remains in the normal range after testicular torsion [170].

3.4.4.4 Unanswered questions
Although testicular torsion is a common problem the mechanism of neonatal and prenatal torsion is still not exactly known and whether fixation of the contralateral testicle in these cases is really necessary. The influence of an atrophied testicle on fertility is also unclear.

3.4.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of acute scrotum in children

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis of testicular torsion is based on presentation and physical exam.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doppler US is an effective imaging tool to evaluate acute scrotum and comparable to scintigraphy and dynamic contrast-enhanced subtraction MRI.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neonates with acute scrotum should be treated as surgical emergencies.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not delay intervention since testicular torsion is a paediatric urological emergency.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In neonates, also explore the contralateral scrotum.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base the clinical decision on physical examination. The use of Doppler ultrasound to evaluate acute scrotum is useful, but this should not delay the intervention.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage torsion of the appendix testis conservatively. Perform surgical exploration in equivocal cases and in patients with persistent pain.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform urgent surgical exploration in all cases of testicular torsion within 24 hours of symptom onset. In prenatal torsion the timing of surgery is usually dictated by clinical findings.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.5 Hypospadias

3.5.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

3.5.1.1 Epidemiology
The total prevalence of hypospadias in Europe is 18.6 new cases per 10,000 births (5.1-36.8) according to the recent EUROCAT registry-based study. This incidence was stable over the period of 2001 to 2010 [181, 182]. The mean worldwide prevalence of hypospadias according to an extended systematic literature review varies: Europe 19.9 (range: 1-464), North America 34.2 (6-129.8), South America 5.2 (2.8-110), Asia 0.6-69, Africa 5.9 (1.9-110), and Australia 17.1-34.8. There are conflicting data on the recent trends of prevalence - different trends in Europe and increasing in the USA [183, 184].

3.5.2 Risk factors
Risk factors associated with hypospadias are likely to be genetic, placental and/or environmental [181, 182] (LE: 2b). Interactions between genetic and environmental factors may help explain non-replication in genetic studies of hypospadias. Single nucleotide polymorphisms seemed to influence hypospadias risk only in exposed cases [182, 185] (LE: 2b).

- An additional family member with hypospadias is found in 7% of families, but this is more predominant in anterior and middle forms [185-188].
- Endocrine disorders can be detected in rare cases.
- Babies with a low birth weight have a higher risk of hypospadias [185-188].
• Over the last 25 years, a significant increase in the incidence of hypospadias has been found.
• Endocrines disruptors are one component of a multi-factorial model for hypospadias.
• The use of oral contraceptives prior to pregnancy has not been associated with an increased risk of hypospadias in offspring, but their use after conception increased the risk of middle and posterior hypospadias [187-190] (LE: 2a).

3.5.3 Classification systems
Hypospadias are usually classified based on the anatomical location of the proximally displaced urethral orifice:
• distal-anterior hypospadias (located on the glans or distal shaft of the penis and the most common type of hypospadias);
• intermediate-middle (penile);
• proximal-posterior (penoscrotal, scrotal, perineal).

The pathology may be different after skin release and should be reclassified accordingly. Anatomical location of meatus may not always be enough to explain the severity and the complex nature of this pathology. Therefore, a simple classification related to severity of the problem, which takes into account penile length, glans size, shape, urethral plate quality and penile curvature is commonly used. In that classification there are 2 types:
• mild hypospadias (glanular or penile isolated hypospadias without associated chordee, micropenis or scrotal anomaly);
• severe hypospadias (penoscrotal, perineal hypospadias with associated chordee and scrotal anomalies).

3.5.4 Diagnostic evaluation
Most hypospadias patients are easily diagnosed at birth (except for the megameatus intact prepuce variant). Diagnosis includes a description of the local findings:
• position, shape and width of the orifice;
• presence of atretic urethra and division of corpus spongiosum;
• appearance of the preputial hood and scrotum;
• size of the penis;
• curvature of the penis on erection.

The diagnostic evaluation also includes an assessment of associated anomalies, which are:
• cryptorchidism (in up to 10% of cases of hypospadias);
• open processus vaginalis or inguinal hernia (in 9-15%).

Severe hypospadias with unilaterally or bilaterally impalpable testis, or with ambiguous genitalia, requires a complete genetic and endocrine work-up immediately after birth to exclude DSD, especially congenital adrenal hyperplasia.

Urine trickling and ballooning of the urethra requires exclusion of meatal stenosis. The relationship between the severity of the hypospadias and associated anomalies of the upper- or lower urinary tract were not confirmed [191] (LE: 3).

3.5.5 Management
3.5.5.1 Indication for reconstruction and therapeutic objectives
Differentiation between functionally necessary and aesthetically feasible operative procedures is important for therapeutic decision making.
The functional indications for surgery are:
• proximally located (ectopic) meatus;
• ventrally deflected or spraying urinary stream;
• meatal stenosis;
• curved penis.

The cosmetic indications, which are strongly linked to the psychology of the parent or future patient’s psychology, are:
• abnormally located meatus;
• cleft glans;
• rotated penis with abnormal cutaneous raphe;
• preputial hood;
• penoscrotal transposition;
• split scrotum.

As all surgical procedures carry the risk of complications, thorough pre-operative counselling of the parents is crucial.
To achieve an overall acceptable functional and cosmetic outcome, the penile curvature must be corrected and a neo-urethra of an adequate size with opening on the glans formed with proper skin coverage of the penile shaft [192] (LE: 4) (Figure 1). The use of magnifying spectacles and fine synthetic absorbable suture materials (6.0-7.0) are required. As in any penile surgery, exceptional prudence should be adopted with the use of cautery. Bipolar cautery is recommended. Knowledge of a variety of surgical reconstructive techniques, wound care and post-operative treatment are essential for a satisfactory outcome.

3.5.5.2 Pre-operative hormonal treatment
Pre-operative hormonal treatment with local or parenteral application of testosterone, dihydrotestosterone or beta-chorionic gonadotropin is usually limited to patients with proximal hypospadias, a small appearing penis, reduced glans circumference or reduced urethral plate [190, 193, 194]. It leads to significant enlargement of the glans and shaft of the penis (LE: 1b).

Pre-operative testosterone administration is most often well tolerated. Transient side effects on child’s behaviour, appearance of pubic hair, increased erections and peri-operative bleeding have been reported, but no persistent side effects related to hormonal stimulation have been reported in the literature. There is also no evidence about possible effects on bone maturation [194, 195].

3.5.5.3 Age at surgery
The age at surgery for primary hypospadias repair is usually 6-18 (24) months [192, 196, 197] (LE: 3). Age at surgery is not a risk factor for urethroplasty complication in pre-pubertal tubularised incised plate urethroplasty (TIP) repair [196] (LE: 2b). Complication rate after primary TIP repair was 2.5 times higher in adults than in the paediatric group according to a recent prospective controlled study [198] (LE:2a).

3.5.5.4 Penile curvature
If present, penile curvature is often released by degloving the penis (skin chordee) and by excision of the connective tissue of the genuine chordee on the ventral aspect of the penis in up to 70% [199]. The urethral plate has well vascularised connective tissue and does not cause curvature in most cases [200, 201]. The residual curvature is caused by corporeal disproportion and requires straightening of the penis, mostly using dorsal midline plication or orthoplasty (modification of the Nesbit plication with or without elevation of the neurovascular bundle). In more severe curvature (> 45°), which is often combined with a short urethral plate requiring transection, ventral penile lengthening is recommended to prevent shortening of the penis. This consists of a ventral transverse incision of tunica albuginea extending from the 3 to 9 o’clock position patched with tunica vaginalis flap or graft, or in several short ventral corporotomies without grafting (LE: 2b) [202]. After the ventral lengthening, a shorter dorsal midline plication is usually added.

According to a retrospective study, dorsal plication remained significantly associated with recurrent ventral curvature independently of the other factors. Ventral corporeal grafting for severe penile curvature gives good long-term results and safety profiles for erectile function [203] (LE: 2b).

3.5.5.5 Urethral reconstruction
The mainstay of hypospadias repair is preservation of the well-vascularised urethral plate and its use for urethral reconstruction has become standard practice in hypospadias repair [201]. Mobilisation of the corpus spongiosum/urethral plate and the bulbar urethra decreases the need for urethral plate transection [202] (LE: 2b).

If the urethral plate is wide, it can be tubularised following the Thiersch-Duplay technique. If the plate is too narrow to be simply tubularised, it is recommended relaxing the plate by a midline incision and its subsequent tubularisation according to the Snodgrass-Orkiszewski TIP technique. This technique has become treatment of choice in distal and mid-penile hypospadias [204-208]. If the incision of the plate is deep, it is recommended covering the raw surface with inner preputial (or buccal) inlay graft in primary and secondary repairs [209]. This also enables extension of the incision beyond the end of the plate to prevent meatal stenosis [210, 211] (LE 2a).

For distal forms of hypospadias, a range of other techniques is available (e.g. Mathieu, urethral advancement) [212] (LE: 2b). The TIP technique has become an option for proximal hypospadias as well [204-208]. However, urethral plate elevation and urethral mobilisation should not be combined with TIP repair because it results in focal devascularisation of the neourethra with symptomatic stricture development [213] (LE: 2b). The onlay technique using a preputial island flap is a standard repair, preferred in proximal hypospadias, if a plate is unhealthy or too narrow [199]. An onlay preputial graft is an option for single-stage repair [214] (LE: 2b).

If the continuity of the urethral plate cannot be preserved, single or two-stage repairs are used. For the former, a modification of the tubularised flap (Duckett tube), such as a tube-onlay or an inlay-onlay flap, or onlay
flap on albuginea are used to prevent urethral stricture [215-217] (LE: 3); alternatively the Koyanagi-Hayashi technique is used [218-221]. The two-stage procedure has become preferable over the past few years because of lower recurrence of ventral curvature and more favourable results with variable long-term complication rate [211, 217, 222-226].

3.5.5.6 Re-do hypospadias repairs
For re-do hypospadias repairs, no definitive guidelines can be given. All the above-mentioned procedures are used in different ways and are often modified according to the individual findings and needs of the patient.

Figure 3: Algorithm for the management of hypospadias

DSD = disorders of sex development; GAP = glans approximation procedure; TIP = tubularised incised plate urethroplasty; MAGPI = meatal advancement and glanuloplasty incorporated.

3.5.5.7 Penile reconstruction following formation of the neourethra.
Following formation of the neo-urethra, the procedure is completed by glansplasty and by reconstruction of the penile skin. If there is a shortage of skin covering, the preputial double-face technique or placement of the suture line into the scrotum according to Cecil-Michalowski is used. In countries where circumcision is not routinely performed, preputial reconstruction can be considered. Preputial reconstruction carries a risk of specific complications but does not seem to increase the risk of urethroplasty complications [227]. In the TIP repair, the use of a preputial dartos flap reduces the fistula rate [204, 205] (LE: 2b).

3.5.5.8 Urine drainage and wound dressing
Urine is drained transurethrally (eg. dripping stent) or with a suprapubic tube. No drainage after distal hypospadias repair is another option [228, 229]. Circular dressing with slight compression, as well as prophylactic antibiotics during surgery, are established procedures [228] (LE: 4). Post-operative prophylaxis after hypospadias repair is controversial [230, 231] (LE: 2b). There is no consensus on duration of stenting and dressing.
3.5.5.9 Outcome

Some studies have tried to determine risk factors for complications after hypospadias repair. An analysis of prospectively collected data found glans size (width < 14 mm), proximal meatal location and re-operation as independent risk factors for urethral complication [228, 232]. Low surgeon volume independently increases the risk of fistula, stricture or diverticulum repair [228, 233] (LE: 3).

A meta-analysis of complication rates of TIP repair found lower complication rate and incidence of re-operations in primary distal repairs (in 4.5%) than in primary proximal repairs (in 12.2%) and in secondary repair (in 23.3%) [204-208, 228]. One should expect a predictable outcome with complication rates below 10% in distal hypospadias (fistula, meatal stenosis, dehiscence, recurrent ventral curvature, and haematoma) [233, 234]. A similar incidence of fistula (3.4-3.6%) can be expected after the Mathieu and TIP repairs of distal hypospadias [208, 235, 236].

The complication rate of TIP and onlay repairs of primary severe hypospadias is similar, 24% and 27%, respectively. It is higher in free graft and in preputial island tube urethroplasty [199]. The complication rate of single-stage Koyanagi and Hayashi modification repairs goes up 61%, according to a comparative study [220, 228]. Staged buccal mucosa graft requires a redo grafting in 13% of patients, after the second stage more than one third of patients have complications, mostly with some degree of graft fibrosis [235, 237]. A recent long-term study on two-stage flap repair showed a complication rate of 68% [228], another study showed a re-operation rate of 28% [211, 228].

3.5.6 Follow-up

Long-term follow-up is necessary up to adolescence to detect urethral stricture, voiding dysfunctions and recurrent penile curvature. Up to half of complications requiring re-operation present after the first year post-operatively [238] (LE: 2b).

Obstructive flow curve is common after hypospadias repair and while most are not clinically significant, long-term follow-up is required [239-242] (LE: 2a). Urine flow is significantly lower in patients after hypospadias surgery, especially in those who had corrected chordee, but without significant association with lower urinary symptoms [243] (LE: 2a).

Objective scoring systems have been developed in order to evaluate the results of hypospadias surgery (HOSE) [244] (LE: 2b) and cosmetic appearance (HOPE-Hypospadias Objective Penile Evaluation) [245] (LE: 2a). The Pediatric Penile Perception Score (PPPS) is a reliable instrument to assess penile self-perception in children after hypospadias repair and for appraisal of the surgical result by parents and uninvolved urologists [246] (LE: 2a).

Adolescents and adults, who have undergone hypospadias repair in childhood, have a slightly higher rate of dissatisfaction with penile size, especially proximal hypospadias patients, but their sexual behaviour is not different from that of control groups [247, 248] (LE: 2a-b). Another long-term follow-up of men born with hypospadias revealed, in a controlled study, that these patients are less satisfied with penile cosmetic outcome according to all parameters of the PPS, there was a difference in penile length (9.7 vs 11.6 cm) and more patients had lower maximum urinary flow; and more prominent results were found in proximal hypospadias vs. controls [228, 249].

According to a systematic review of long-term patient satisfaction with cosmetic outcomes [250]:

- patient perception of penile size does not differ greatly from the norm;
- patients approaching puberty have a more negative perception and are more critical about the cosmetic outcomes of surgery;
- patients report high levels of perception of deformity and social embarrassment.
3.5.7 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of hypospadias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The suggested age at surgery for primary hypospadias repair is 6 - 18 (24) months.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The therapeutic objectives are to correct the penile curvature, to form a neo-urethra of an adequate size, to bring the new meatus to the tip of the glans, if possible, and to achieve an overall acceptable cosmetic appearance.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Androgen stimulation therapy results in increased penile length and glans circumference.</td>
<td>1B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The complication rate is about 10% in distal and 25% in proximal hypospadias one-stage repairs. Higher and variable rate (between 28 and 68%) can occur in two-stage repairs.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sexual functions are usually well preserved.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>At birth, differentiate isolated hypospadias from disorders of sex development which are mostly associated with cryptorchidism or micropenis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counsel parents on functional indications for surgery, aesthetically feasible operative procedures (psychological, cosmetic indications) and possible complications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In children diagnosed with proximal hypospadias and a small appearing penis, reduced glans circumference or reduced urethral plate, pre-operative hormonal androgen stimulation treatment is an option and the body of evidence to accentuate its harms and benefits is inadequate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For distal hypospadias, use original and modified tubularised incised plate urethroplasty; use the onlay urethroplasty or two-stage procedures in more severe hypospadias. A treatment algorithm is presented (Figure 3). Correct significant (&gt; 30 degrees) curvature of the penis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ensure long-term follow-up to detect urethral stricture, voiding dysfunctions and recurrent penile curvature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use validated objective scoring systems to assist in evaluating the functional and cosmetic outcome.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.6 Congenital penile curvature

3.6.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Congenital penile curvature presents penile bending of a normally formed penis due to corporal disproportion. The incidence at birth is 0.6% and congenital penile curvature is caused by asymmetry of the cavernous bodies but an orthotopic meatus [251] because of developmental arrest during embryogenesis [252]. On the other hand the incidence of clinically significant congenital penile curvature is much lower, because the extent of the curvature and its associated sexual dysfunction varies widely [253]. Most of the cases are ventral deviations (48%), followed by lateral (24%), dorsal (5%), and a combination of ventral and lateral (23%) [254]. Most ventral curvatures are associated with hypospadias due to chordee or ventral dysplasia of cavernous bodies [255]. Similarly, dorsal curvature is mostly associated with extrophy/epispadias complex.

Curvature > 30° is considered clinically significant; curvature > 60° may interfere with satisfactory sexual intercourse in adulthood (LE: 4). Minor penile curvature may be the result of ventral penile skin deficiency only and should be distinguished from corporal anomalies. For penile curvature associated with hypospadias or epispadias refer to the relevant chapters.

3.6.2 Diagnostic evaluation

Penile curvature is frequently not documented until later in childhood since the penis only appears abnormal when erect. Patients are usually concerned with the aesthetic and/or functional aspects of their penis [256]. Besides exact history taking to exclude any possibility of acquired penile curvature (e.g. post-traumatic) a thorough clinical examination is mandatory. In addition photo documentation of the erect penis clearly showing the curvature from different angles serves as a pre-requisite in pre-operative evaluation [257]. The exact degree of curvature is generally determined at the time of surgery using an artificial erection test.

3.6.3 Management

The treatment is surgical, starting with an artificial erection to determine the degree of curvature and to check symmetry after the repair [258]. The ultimate goal of any surgical method used to correct the curvature is to achieve corpora of similar size. Various procedures are in use ranging from rather simple de-gloving and plication procedures, to corporal rotation, use of free dermal or tunica vaginalis grafts, to complete penile disassembly techniques [259, 260]. Reviews comparing the outcome of Nesbit/modified Nesbit procedures [261] to plication procedures [262] were able to demonstrate that while there is a decreased risk of
complications and loss of sensation, it remains unclear whether plication techniques can lead to increased risk of recurrence [263]. Altogether these methods include the risk of post-operative shortening of the penis with an average loss of 2.5 cm in stretched penile length depending on the pre-operative degree of curvature and the type of repair used [264, 265].

Recently the non-corporotomy technique has been introduced with promising results enabling correction of any degree of ventral curvature with neither shortening of the penis nor the risk of post-operative erectile dysfunction [266].

3.6.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of congenital penile curvature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Isolated congenital penile curvature is relatively uncommon.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital penile curvature is often associated with hypospadias.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis is usually made late in childhood.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The penis only appears abnormal when erect.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital penile curvature can cause aesthetic as well as functional sexual problems.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital penile curvature is treated with surgery.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The goal of surgery is to achieve corpora of similar size.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ensure that a thorough medical history is taken and a full clinical examination done to rule out associated anomalies in boys presenting with congenital curvature.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provide photo documentation of the erect penis from different angles as a prerequisite in the preoperative evaluation.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform surgery after weighing aesthetic as well as functional implications of the curvature.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At the beginning as well as at the end of surgery perform artificial erection tests.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.7 Varicocele in children and adolescents

3.7.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Varicocele is defined as an abnormal dilatation of testicular veins in the pampiniformis plexus caused by venous reflux. It is unusual in boys under ten years of age and becomes more frequent at the beginning of puberty. It is found in 14-20% of adolescents, with a similar incidence during adulthood. It appears mostly on the left side (78-93% of cases). Right-sided varicoceles are less common; they are usually noted only when bilateral varicoceles are present and seldom occur as an isolated finding [267-269].

Varicocele develops during accelerated body growth and increased blood flow to the testes, by a mechanism that is not clearly understood. Genetic factors may be present. An anatomic abnormality leading to impaired venous drainage is expressed by the considerable prevalence of the left side condition where the internal spermatic vein drains into the renal vein. Varicocele can induce apoptotic pathways because of heat stress, androgen deprivation and accumulation of toxic materials. Severe damage is found in 20% of adolescents affected, with abnormal findings in 46% of affected adolescents. Histological findings are similar in children or adolescents and in infertile men. In 70% of patients with grade II and III varicocele, left testicular volume loss was found.

Several authors reported on reversal of testicular growth after varicocelectomy in adolescents [270, 271]. An average proportion of catch-up growth of 76.4% (range: 52.6-93.8%) has been found according to a recent meta-analysis [272] (LE: 2a). However, this may partly be attributable to testicular oedema associated with the division of lymphatic vessels [273] (LE: 2).

In about 20% of adolescents with varicocele, fertility problems will arise [274]. The adverse influence of varicocele increases with time. Improvement in sperm parameters has been demonstrated after adolescent varicocelectomy [275-278] (LE: 1).

3.7.1 Classification systems

Varicocele is classified into 3 grades [279]:
- Grade I - Valsalva positive (palpable at Valsalva manoeuvre only);
- Grade II - palpable (palpable without the Valsalva manoeuvre);
- Grade III - visible (visible at distance).
3.7.2  **Diagnostic evaluation**

Varicocele is mostly asymptomatic, rarely causing pain. It may be noticed by the patient or parents, or discovered by the paediatrician at a routine visit. The diagnosis depends upon the clinical finding of a collection of dilated and tortuous veins in the upright posture; the veins are more pronounced when the patient performs the Valsalva manoeuvre. The size of both testicles should be evaluated during palpation to detect a smaller testis.

Venous reflux into the plexus pampiniformis is diagnosed using Doppler US colour flow mapping in the supine and upright position [280]. Venous reflux detected on US only is classified as subclinical varicocele. To discriminate testicular hypoplasia, the testicular volume is measured by US examination or by orchidometer. In adolescents, a testis that is smaller by > 2 mL or 20% compared to the other testis is considered to be hypoplastic [281] (LE: 2).

Extension of Wilms tumour into the renal vein and inferior vena cava can cause a secondary varicocele. A renal US should be routinely added in pre-pubertal boys and in isolated right varicocele (LE: 4).

In order to assess testicular injury in adolescents with varicocele, supranormal FSH and LH responses to the luteinising hormone-releasing hormone (LHRH) stimulation test are considered reliable, because histopathological testicular changes have been found in these patients [276, 282].

3.7.3  **Management**

There is no evidence that treatment of varicocele at paediatric age will offer a better andrological outcome than an operation performed later. Beneficial effect of pubertal screening and treatment for varicocele regarding chance of paternity has been questioned according to a corresponding questionnaire in adult patients [283] (LE: 4). The recommended indication criteria for varicocelectomy in children and adolescents are [268]:

- varicocele associated with a small testis;
- additional testicular condition affecting fertility;
- bilateral palpable varicocele;
- pathological sperm quality (in older adolescents);
- symptomatic varicocele [283].

Testicular (left + right) volume loss in comparison with normal testes is a promising indication criterion, once the normal values are available [284]. Repair of a large varicocele, causing physical or psychological discomfort, may also be considered. Other varicoceles should be followed-up until a reliable sperm analysis can be performed (LE: 4).

Surgical intervention is based on ligation or occlusion of the internal spermatic veins. Ligation is performed at different levels:

- inguinal (or subinguinal) microsurgical ligation;
- suprainguinal ligation, using open or laparoscopic techniques [285-288].

The advantage of the former is the lower invasiveness of the procedure, while the advantage of the latter is a considerably lower number of veins to be ligated and safety of the incidental division of the internal spermatic at the suprainguinal level.

For surgical ligation, some form of optical magnification (microscopic or laparoscopic) should be used because the internal spermatic artery is 0.5 mm in diameter at the level of the internal ring [285, 287]. The recurrence rate is usually < 10%.

Lymphatic-sparing varicocelectomy is preferred to prevent hydrocele formation and testicular hypertrophy development and to achieve a better testicular function according to the LHRH stimulation test [273, 285, 286, 289] (LE: 2). The methods of choice are subinguinal or inguinal microsurgical (microscopic) repairs, or suprainguinal open or laparoscopic lymphatic-sparing repairs [285, 287, 290, 291]. Intrascrotal application of isosulphan blue was recommended to visualise the lymphatic vessels [292, 293]. In suprainguinal approach, an artery sparing varicocelectomy may not offer any advantage in regards to catch-up growth and is associated with a higher incidence of recurrent varicocele [294, 295].

Angiographic occlusion of the internal spermatic veins also meets the requirements of lymphatic sparing repair. It is based on retrograde or antegrade sclerotherapy of the internal spermatic veins [296, 297]. However, although this method is less invasive and may not require general anaesthesia, it is associated with radiation burden, which is less controllable in the antegrade technique [268, 296, 297] (LE: 2).
### 3.7.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of varicocele

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Varicocele becomes more frequent at the beginning of puberty and is found in 14-20% of adolescents. Fertility problems are expected in up to 20% of adolescents with a varicocele.</td>
<td>LE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pubertal patients with a left grade II and III varicocele have the left testis smaller in up to 70%; in late adolescence the contralateral right testis also becomes smaller.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After adolescent varicocelectomy, left testis catch-up growth and improvement in sperm parameters has been demonstrated.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence that treatment of varicocele at paediatric age will offer a better andrological outcome than an operation performed later.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division of testicular lymphatics leads to hydrocele in up to 40% and to testicular hypertrophy.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnostic Test</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examine varicocele in the standing position and classify into three grades.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use scrotal ultrasound to detect venous reflux without Valsalva manoeuvre in the supine and upright position and to discriminate testicular hypoplasia.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In pre-pubertal boys and in isolated right varicocele perform standard renal ultrasound to exlude a retroperitonal mass.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform surgery for:</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• varicocele associated with a small testis (size difference of &gt; 2 mL or 20%);</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• additional testicular condition affecting fertility;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• pathological sperm quality (in older adolescents);</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• bilateral palpable varicocele;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• symptomatic varicocele.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use some form of optical magnification (microscopic or laparoscopic magnification) for surgical ligation.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use lymphatic-sparing varicocelectomy to prevent hydrocele formation and testicular hypertrophy.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.8 Urinary tract infections in children

#### 3.8.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Urinary tract infections represent the most common bacterial infection in children [298-300]. In neonates, the symptoms differ in many aspects from those in infants and children. The prevalence is higher; there is a male predominance; infections not caused by *Escherichia coli* are more frequent; and there is a higher risk of urosepsis [301-304].

The incidence varies depending on age and sex. One meta-analysis showed in the first three months of life UTIs were present in 7.5% of girls, 2.4% (CI: 1.4-3.5) of circumcised boys, and 20.1% (CI: 16.8-23.4) of uncircumcised boys, who presented with fever [302]. In the first year of life, UTIs are more common in boys (3.7%) than girls (2%). Later, the incidence of UTIs changes to ~3% in pre-pubertal girls and 1% in pre-pubertal boys [302-305].

*E. coli* is found in ~75% of UTIs and is more frequent in community-acquired than nosocomial infections. In the latter, Klebsiella pneumoniae, *Enterobacter spp.*, *Enterococcus spp.*, *Pseudomonas spp.* and *Candida spp.* are more frequent than in community-acquired UTIs. Neonatal UTI is frequently complicated by bacteraemia. In a retrospective study, 12.4% of blood cultures from neonates admitted for UTI were positive for bacteraemia [306], however, it is less frequent in community-acquired than in nosocomial UTI [306, 307].

#### 3.8.2 Classification systems

There are five widely used classification systems according to: the site, episode, severity, symptoms and complicating factors. For acute treatment, site and severity are most important.

**Classification according to site**

Lower urinary tract (cystitis) is an inflammatory condition of the urinary bladder mucosa with general signs and symptoms including infection, dysuria, frequency, urgency, malodorous urine, enuresis, haematuria, and suprapubic pain.

Upper urinary tract (pyelonephritis) is a diffuse pyogenic infection of the renal pelvis and parenchyma. The onset of pyelonephritis is generally abrupt. Clinical signs and symptoms include fever (> 38°C), chills, costovertbral angle or flank pain, and tenderness. Older children may report cystitis symptoms...
along with fever/flank pain. Infants and children may have non-specific signs such as poor appetite, failure to thrive, lethargy, irritability, vomiting or diarrhoea.

### 3.8.2.2 Classification according to episode

The first UTI may be a sign of anatomical anomalies that may predispose to complications of UTI and potential renal damage [308]. Anatomical evaluation is recommended (see below). Recurrent infection can be divided into unresolved and persistent infection.

In unresolved infection, initial therapy is inadequate for elimination of bacterial growth in the urinary tract (inadequate therapy, inadequate antimicrobial urinary concentration [poor renal concentration/ gastrointestinal malabsorption], and infection involving multiple organisms with differing antimicrobial susceptibilities).

Persistent infection is caused by re-emergence of bacteria from a site within the urinary tract coming from persistent infection for which cannot be eradicated (e.g. infected stones, non-functioning or poorly functioning kidneys/renal segments, ureteral stumps after nephrectomy, necrotic papillae in papillary necrosis, urachal cyst, perirectal gland, vesicointestinal, rectourethral or vesicovaginal fistulas). The same pathogen is identified in recurrent infections, but episodes of sterile urine may occur during and shortly following antimicrobial treatment.

In re-infection, each episode can be caused by a variety of new infecting organisms, in contrast to bacterial persistence in which the same infecting organism is always isolated. However, the most common general pathogenic species is *E. coli*, which occurs in many different serotypes. Therefore, recurrent *E. coli* UTI does not equate to infection with the same organism.

### 3.8.2.3 Classification according to severity

In simple UTI, children may have only mild pyrexia; are able to take fluids and oral medication; are only slightly or not dehydrated; and have a good expected level of compliance. When a low level of compliance is expected, such children should be managed as those with severe UTI. In severe UTI, infection is related to the presence of fever of > 39°C, the feeling of being ill, persistent vomiting, and moderate or severe dehydration.

### 3.8.2.4 Classification according to symptoms

Asymptomatic bacteriuria indicates attenuation of uropathogenic bacteria by the host, or colonisation of the bladder by non-virulent bacteria that are incapable of activating a symptomatic response (no leukocyturia, no symptoms). Asymptomatic UTI includes leukocyturia but no other symptoms.

A symptomatic UTI, includes irritative voiding symptoms, suprapubic pain (cystitis), fever and malaise (pyelonephritis). Cystitis may represent early recognition of an infection destined to become pyelonephritis, or bacterial growth controlled by a balance of virulence and host response.

### 3.8.2.5 Classification according to complicating factors

In uncomplicated UTI, infection occurs in a patient with a morphologically and functionally normal upper and lower urinary tract, normal renal function and competent immune system. This category includes mostly isolated or recurrent bacterial cystitis and is usually associated with a narrow spectrum of infecting pathogens that are easily eradicated by a short course of oral antimicrobial agents. Patients can be managed on an outpatient basis, with an emphasis on documenting resolution of bacteriuria, followed by elective evaluation for potential anatomical or functional abnormalities of the urinary tract [309].

All neonates, most patients with clinical evidence of pyelonephritis, and all children with known mechanical or functional obstructions of the urinary tract, are considered to have complicated UTI. Mechanical obstruction is commonly due to the presence of posterior urethral valves, strictures or stones, independent of their location. Functional obstruction often results from lower urinary tract dysfunction (LUTD) of either neurogenic or non-neurogenic origin and dilating vesicoureteral reflux (VUR). Patients with complicated UTI require hospitalisation and parenteral antibiotics. Prompt anatomical evaluation of the urinary tract is critical to exclude the presence of significant abnormalities [310]. If mechanical or functional abnormalities are present, adequate drainage of the infected urinary tract is necessary.

### 3.8.3 Diagnostic evaluation

#### 3.8.3.1 Medical history

Medical history includes the question of a primary (first) or secondary (recurring) infection; possible malformations of the urinary tract (e.g. pre- or post-natal US screening); prior operation; family history; and whether there is constipation or presence of lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS).

#### 3.8.3.2 Clinical signs and symptoms

Neonates with pyelonephritis or urosepsis can present with non-specific symptoms (failure to thrive, jaundice,
hyperexcitability and without fever). Urinary tract infection is the cause of fever in 4.1-7.5% of children who present to a paediatric clinic [311-313]. Septic shock is unusual, even with very high fever. Signs of a UTI may be vague and unspecific in small children, but later on, when they are more than two years old, frequent voiding, dysuria and suprapubic, abdominal or lumbar pain can be detected.

3.8.3.3 Physical examination
Physical examination includes a general examination of the throat, lymph nodes, abdomen (constipation, palpable and painful kidney, or palpable bladder), flank, the back (stigmata of spina bifida or sacral agenesis), genitalia (phimosis, labial adhesion, vulvitis, epididymo-orchitis), and temperature.

3.8.3.4 Urine sampling, analysis and culture
Urine sampling has to be performed before any antimicrobial agent is administered. The technique for obtaining urine for urinalysis as well as culture affects the rate of contamination, which influences interpretation of the results. Especially in early infancy it can be challenging and depends on the mode of urine sampling [314].

3.8.3.4.1 Urine sampling
Urine must be collected under defined conditions and investigated as soon as possible to confirm or exclude UTI, especially in children with fever. In neonates, infants and non-toilet-trained children, there are four main methods with varying contamination rates and invasiveness to obtain urine:

(1) Plastic bag attached to the cleaned genitalia: This technique is most often used in daily practice. It is helpful when the culture results are negative. Also, if the dipstick is negative for both leukocyte esterase and nitrile, or microscopic analysis is negative for both pyuria and bacteriuria, UTI can be excluded without the need for confirmatory culture [315]. However, if the genitalia are not cleaned and culture is delayed, a high incidence of false-positive results (85-99%) can be found [316, 317].

(2) Clean-catch urine collection: The infant is placed in the lap of a parent or member of the nursing staff, who holds a sterile foil bowl underneath the infant's genitalia. The infant is offered oral fluids and urine collection is awaited [318]. This is time consuming and requires proper instruction of the parents. There seems to be a good correlation between the results of urine culture obtained by this method and suprapubic aspiration (SPA), with a false-positive rate of 5% and false-negative rate of 12% [318, 319]; however the contamination rate is higher compared to SPA [320].

(3) Bladder catheterisation: In female infants and also in neonates, this technique may be an alternative to SPA, however with a higher contamination rate [321]. In a prospective study using bladder catheterisation in febrile children aged < 36 months, contamination was defined by multiple pathogens, non-pathogens, or colony counts < 10,000 cfu/mL. True UTI was found in 10% of children and 14% of the cultures were contaminated. Univariate analysis of potential predictors identified age less than six months, difficult catheterisation, and uncircumcised boys. In children less than six months and uncircumcised boys a new, sterile catheter with each repeated attempt at catheterisation may lead to less contamination [322] otherwise SPA should be the method of choice.

(4) Suprapubic bladder aspiration: This is the most sensitive method to obtain an uncontaminated urine sample in this age group [322-324]. Using US to assess bladder filling, simplifies SPA and improves the diagnostic yield of obtaining a urine specimen from 60% to 97% [323, 324]. Complications are rare and have been reported in only 0.22% of cases, ranging from transient haematuria to bowel perforation [325]. However, bladder puncture causes more pain than catheterisation in infants less than two months old [326].

In older, toilet-trained, children who can void on command, after carefully retracting the foreskin and cleaning the glans penis in boys and spreading the labia and cleaning the peri-urethral area in girls, the use of clean catch, especially midstream urine, could be an acceptable technique for obtaining urine. After cleaning the urethral meatus and perineum with gauze and liquid soap twice, the risk of contamination was reduced from 23.9% (41/171) to 7.8% (14/171) in a randomised trial [327].

If the clinical situation necessitates, and for differential diagnosis of sepsis, it is most appropriate to obtain an adequate urine sample by catheterisation or SPA [319]. In infants, a bag can only be used if the dipstick is negative, otherwise the urine should be obtained through catheterisation or SPA. This is also recommended in children, who are severely ill and a UTI needs to be excluded or confirmed. Blood sampling is dependent on the clinical situation.
3.8.3.4.2 Urinalysis
There are three methods that are commonly used for urinalysis:

1. Dipsticks: These are appealing because they provide rapid results, do not require microscopy, and are ready to use. Leukocyte esterase (as a surrogate marker for pyuria) and nitrite (which is converted from dietary nitrates by most Gram-negative enteric bacteria in the urine) are the most frequent markers, and are usually combined in a dipstick test. The conversion of dietary nitrates to nitrites by bacteria takes approximately four hours in the bladder [319, 328]. However, nitrite is not a very sensitive marker for infants, who empty their bladder frequently, and not all urinary pathogens reduce nitrate to nitrite. The test is helpful when the result is positive, because it is highly specific (i.e. there are few false-positive results) [319, 329].

Table 1: Sensitivity and specificity of component of urinalysis, alone and in combination [319]*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Sensitivity (Range), %</th>
<th>Specificity (Range), %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Leukocyte esterase test</td>
<td>83 (67-94)</td>
<td>78 (64-92)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrite test</td>
<td>53 (15-82)</td>
<td>98 (90-100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leukocyte esterase or nitrite test positive</td>
<td>93 (90-100)</td>
<td>72 (58-91)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microscopy, white blood cells</td>
<td>73 (32-100)</td>
<td>81 (45-98)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microscopy, bacteria</td>
<td>81 (16-99)</td>
<td>83 (11-100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leucocyte esterase test, nitrite test or microscopy positive</td>
<td>99.8 (99-100)</td>
<td>70 (60-92)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Reproduced with permission from Pediatrics 2011 Sep;128(3):595-610, Copyright© 2011 by the AAP [319].

2. Microscopy: This is the standard method of assessing pyuria after centrifugation of the urine with a threshold of five white blood cells (WBCs) per high-power field (25 WBC/μL) [325]. In uncentrifuged urine, > 10 WBC/μL has been demonstrated to be sensitive for UTI [330] and this could perform well in clinical situations [331]. However, this is rarely done in an outpatient setting.

3. Flow imaging analysis technology: This is being used increasingly to classify particles in uncentrifuged urine specimens [332]. The numbers of WBCs, squamous epithelial cells and red cells correlate well with those found by manual methods [319].

3.8.3.4.3 Urine culture
After negative results for dipstick, microscopic or automated urinalysis, urine culture is generally not necessary, especially if there is an alternative source of fever. If the dipstick result is positive, confirmation by urine culture is strongly recommended.

It is unclear what represents a significant UTI. In severe UTI, > 10⁶ cfu/mL can be expected. However, the count can vary and be related to the method of specimen collection, diuresis, and time and temperature of storage until cultivation occurs [304]. The classical definition of > 10⁵ cfu/mL of voided urine is still used to define a significant UTI [333, 334]. The American Academy of Pediatric Guidelines on Urinary Tract Infection suggest that the diagnosis should be on the basis of the presence of both pyuria and at least 10⁵ cfu/mL. However, some studies have shown that, in voided specimens, < 10⁴ organisms may indicate a significant UTI [335, 336]. If urine is obtained by catheterisation, 10³ - 10⁵ cfu/mL is considered to be positive, and any counts obtained after SPA should be considered as significant. Mixed cultures are indicative of contamination.

Table 2: Criteria for UTI in children (adapted from the EAU Guidelines on Urological Infections [337])

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Urine specimen from suprapubic bladder puncture</th>
<th>Urine specimen from bladder catheterisation</th>
<th>Urine specimen from midstream void</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any number of cfu/mL (at least 10 identical colonies)</td>
<td>&gt; 10³ - 10⁵ cfu/mL</td>
<td>&gt; 10⁴ cfu/mL with symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 10⁵ cfu/mL without symptoms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pyuria without bacteriuria (sterile pyuria) may be due to incomplete antibiotic treatment, urolithiasis, or foreign bodies in the urinary tract, and infections caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* or *Chlamydia trachomatis*.

3.8.3.5 Imaging
3.8.3.5.1 Ultrasound
Renal and bladder US within 24 hours is advised in infants with febrile UTI to exclude obstruction of the upper and lower urinary tract. Abnormal results are found in 15% of cases, and 1-2% have abnormalities that
require prompt action (e.g. additional evaluation, referral, or surgery) [319]. In other studies, renal US revealed abnormalities in up to 37% of cases, whereas voiding cystourethrogram (VCUG) showed VUR in 27% of cases [307]. Dilating VUR is missed by US in around one third of cases [338]. Post-void residual (PVR) urine should be measured in toilet-trained children to exclude voiding abnormalities as a cause of UTI. Elevated post-void residual urine volume predicts recurrence of UTIs in toilet-trained children [339].

3.8.3.5.2 Radionuclide scanning
Changes in dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA) clearance during acute UTI indicate pyelonephritis or parenchymal damage, correlated well with the presence of dilating reflux and the risk of further pyelonephritis episodes, breakthrough infections [340] and future renal scarring. In the acute phase of a febrile UTI (up to four to six weeks), DMSA-scan can demonstrate pyelonephritis by perfusion defects. Renal scars can be detected after three to six months [338, 341]. These findings are different in neonates. After the first symptomatic, community-acquired UTI, the majority of renal units with VUR grade III or higher had normal early DMSA scanning [342]. See also Chapter 3.13 on VUR.

3.8.3.5.3 Voiding cystourethrography
The gold standard to exclude or confirm VUR is VCUG. Due to the risk of renal scarring, VCUG is recommended after the first episode of febrile UTI in boys and girls depending on sex, age and clinical presentation (see Figure 4 and Table 4) (see also Chapter 3.13). The timing of VCUG does not influence the presence or severity of VUR [343, 344]. Performance of early VCUG in patients with proven sterile urine does not cause any significant morbidity [345]. Another option is doing DMSA first, followed by VCUG if there is renal cortical uptake deficiency after UTI (see Chapter 3.13).

3.8.3.6 Bladder and bowel dysfunction
Bladder and bowel dysfunction (BBD) are risk factors for which each child with UTI should be screened upon presentation. Normalisation of micturition disorders or bladder over-activity is important to lower the rate of UTI recurrence. If there are signs of BBD at infection-free intervals, further diagnosis and effective treatment are strongly recommended [346-349]. Treatment of constipation leads to a decrease in UTI recurrence [350-352]. Therefore, exclusion of BBD is strongly recommended in any child with febrile and/or recurrent UTI, and it should be treated if there is evidence of BBD.

3.8.4 Management
3.8.4.1 Administration route
The choice between oral and parenteral therapy should be based on patient age; clinical suspicion of urosepsis; illness severity; refusal of fluids, food and/or oral medication; vomiting; diarrhoea; non-compliance; and complicated pyelonephritis (e.g. urinary obstruction). As a result of the increased incidence of urosepsis and severe pyelonephritis in newborns and infants aged less than two months, parenteral antibiotic therapy is recommended. Electrolyte disorders with life-threatening hyponatraemia and hyperkalaemia based on pseudohypoaldosteronism can occur in these cases [353, 354].

Parenteral combination treatment with ampicillin and an aminoglycoside (e.g. tobramycin or gentamicin) or respectively a third-generation cephalosporin achieves excellent therapeutic results (high efficacy of aminoglycosides, respectively cephalosporins against common uropathogens; enterococcus gap is closed with ampicillin). Compared to the division in two doses, a daily single dose of aminoglycosides is safe and effective [310, 355, 356].

The choice of agent is also based on local antimicrobial sensitivity patterns, and should later be adjusted according to sensitivity testing of the isolated uropathogen [319]. Not all available antibiotics are approved by the national health authorities, especially in infancy. In uncomplicated nephritis, both oral and parenteral treatment can be considered, because both are equally effective in children without urinary tract abnormalities. Some studies have demonstrated that once daily parenteral administration of gentamicin or ceftriaxone in a day treatment centre is safe, effective and cost-effective in children with UTI [355, 357, 358].

3.8.4.2 Duration of therapy
Prompt adequate treatment of UTI can prevent the spread of infection and renal scarring. Outcomes of short courses (one to three days) are inferior to those of seven to fourteen-day courses [319]. In newborns and young infants with a febrile UTI, up to 20% may have a positive blood culture [306, 310]. In late infancy, there are no differences between strategies regarding the incidence of parenchymal scars, as diagnosed with DMSA scan [359]. Some recent studies using exclusively oral therapy with a third-generation cephalosporin (e.g. cefixime or cefixibuten) have demonstrated that this is equivalent to the usual two to four days intravenous therapy followed by oral treatment [356, 360-362]. Similar data have been shown for amoxicillin-clavulanate [363], however, these antibiotics are associated with increasing rates of resistance. If ambulatory therapy is chosen, adequate
surveillance, medical supervision and, if necessary, adjustment of therapy must be guaranteed. In the initial phase of therapy, a close ambulant contact to the family is advised [364].

In complicated UTI, uropathogens other than *E. coli*, such as *Proteus mirabilis*, *Klebsiella* spp., *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *enterococci* and *staphylococci*, are more often the causative pathogens [310]. Parenteral treatment with broad-spectrum antibiotics is preferred. A temporary urinary diversion (suprapubic-cystostomy or percutaneous nephrostomy) might be required in case of failure of conservative treatment in obstructive uropathy. Acute focal bacterial nephritis (lobar nephronia) is a localised bacterial infection of the kidney that presents as an inflammatory mass without abscess formation. This may represent a relatively early stage of renal abscess. For the majority of children, the pathogenesis is related to ascending infection due to pre-existing uropathy, especially vesicoureteral reflux or urinary obstruction (megaureter).

Prolonged intravenous antibiotic treatment is sufficient in most cases [365], and intravenous and oral therapy tailored to the pathogen identified in culture is recommended [366].

**Figure 4: Algorithm for disease management of first febrile UTI**

**3.8.4.3 Antimicrobial agents**

There is a great difference in the prevalence of antibiotic resistance of uropathogenic *E. coli* in different countries, with an alarmingly high resistance in Iran and Vietnam [367]. There are upcoming reports of UTIs caused by extended spectrum β-lactamase-producing enterobacteriaceae (ESBL) in children. In one study from Turkey, 49% of the children less than one year of age and 38% of those more than one year of age had ESBL-producing bacteria that were resistant to trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole in 83%, to nitrofurantoin in 18%, to quinolones in 47%, and to aminoglycosides in 40% [368]. Fortunately, the outcome appears to be the same as for children with non-ESBL-producing bacteria, despite the fact that initial intravenous empirical antibiotic therapy was inappropriate in one study [369].

*BBD* = Bladder Bowel Dysfunction; *DMSA* = technetium99-labelled dimercaptosuccinic acid; *MRI* = magnetic resonance imaging; *UTI* = urinary tract infection; *VCUG* = voiding cystourethrography; *VUR* = vesicoureteral reflux.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemotherapeutics</th>
<th>Daily dosage</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parenteral cephalosporins</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 3a, e.g. cefotaxime</td>
<td>100-200 mg/kg</td>
<td>i.v. in 2-3 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Adolesc.: 3-6 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 3b, e.g. ceftazidime</td>
<td>100-150 mg/kg</td>
<td>i.v. in 2-3 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Adolesc.: 2-6 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceftriaxone</td>
<td>75 mg/kg</td>
<td>i.v. in 1 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Oral cephalosporins</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 3, e.g. ceftibuten</td>
<td>9 mg/kg</td>
<td>p.o. in 1-2 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Adolesc.: 0.4 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 3, e.g. cefixime</td>
<td>8-12 mg/kg</td>
<td>p.o. in 1-2 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Adolesc.: 0.4 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 2, e.g. cefpodoxime proxetil</td>
<td>8-10 mg/kg</td>
<td>p.o. in 2 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Adolesc.: 0.4 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 2, e.g. cefturoximaxetil</td>
<td>20-30 mg/kg</td>
<td>p.o. in 3 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Adolesc.: 0.5-1 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 1, e.g. cefaclor</td>
<td>50 -100 mg/kg</td>
<td>p.o. in 2-3 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Adolesc.: 1.5-4 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trimethoprim or</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim or</td>
<td>5-6 mg/kg</td>
<td>p.o. in 2 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole</td>
<td>5-6 mg/kg (TMP-Anteil)</td>
<td>p.o. in 2 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Adolesc.: 320 mg)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ampicillin</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amoxicillin</strong></td>
<td>100-200 mg/kg</td>
<td>i.v. in 3 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Adolesc.: 3-6 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50-100 mg/kg</td>
<td>i.v. in 3-4 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Adolesc.: 1.5-6 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid</strong></td>
<td>60-100 mg/kg</td>
<td>p.o. in 2-3 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(parenteral)</td>
<td>(Adolesc.: 3.6-6.6 g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid</strong></td>
<td>45-60 mg/kg</td>
<td>i.v. in 3 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(oral)</td>
<td>(Adolesc.: 1500 + 375 mg)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Piperacillin</strong></td>
<td>300 mg/kg</td>
<td>i.v. in 3-4 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tobramycin</strong></td>
<td>5 mg/kg (Adolesc.: 3-5 mg/ kg, max. 0.4 g)</td>
<td>i.v. in 1 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gentamicin</strong></td>
<td>5 mg/kg (Adolesc.: 3-5 mg/ kg, max. 0.4 g)</td>
<td>i.v. in 1 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ciprofloxacin</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children and adolesc. (1-17 years of age): 20-30 mg/kg (max. D: 400 mg) (parenterally)</td>
<td>i.v. in 3 D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nitrofurantoin</strong></td>
<td>3-5 mg</td>
<td>p.o. in 2 D</td>
<td>Contraindicated in the case of renal insufficiency</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Reproduced with permission from the International Consultation on Urological Diseases (ICUD), International Consultation on Urogenital Infections, 2009. Copyright © by the European Association of Urology [370].

Dosage for adolescents in paracentesis, if differing. 1 Infants 2 D, children 1-12 ys. 3 D.
i.v. = intravenous; p.o. = by mouth.
Table 4: Recommendations for calculated antibacterial therapy of pyelonephritis dependent on age and severity of the infection*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
<th>Proposal</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Duration of therapy</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pyelonephritis during the first 0-6 months of life</td>
<td>Ceftazidime + Ampicillin or Aminoglycoside + Ampicillin¹</td>
<td>3-7 D parenterally, for at least 2 D after defervescence, then oral therapy²</td>
<td>10 (-14) D Newborns 14-21 D</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>In newborns: parenteral therapy for 7-14 D, then oral therapy²</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncomplicated pyelonephritis after 6 months of age</td>
<td>Cephalosporin group 3²</td>
<td>Orally (initially parenterally, if necessary)</td>
<td>(7-)10 D</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complicated pyelonephritis/urosepsis (all ages)</td>
<td>Ceftazidime + Ampicillin or Aminoglycoside + Ampicillin¹</td>
<td>7 D parenterally, then oral therapy²</td>
<td>10-14 D</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Reproduced with permission from the International Consultation on Urological Diseases (ICUD), International Consultation on Urogenital Infections, 2009. Copyright © by the European Association of Urology [370].
1 after receipt of microbiological findings (pathogen, resistance) adaptation of therapy.
2 i.v.: e.g. cefotaxime; orally: e.g. cefpodoxime proxetil, cefitabuten, cefixime.

Table 5: Frequently used antibacterial agents used for the treatment of cystitis and cystourethritis (Dosages for children up to twelve years of age)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemothapeutics</th>
<th>Daily dosage</th>
<th>Application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral cephalosporins</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 1, e.g. cefaclor</td>
<td>50 (-100) mg/kgbw</td>
<td>p.o. in 2-3 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 1, e.g. cefalexin</td>
<td>50 mg/kgbw</td>
<td>p.o. in 3-4 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 2, e.g. cefuroximaxetil</td>
<td>20-30 mg/kgbw</td>
<td>p.o. in 2 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 2, e.g. cefpodoxime proxetil</td>
<td>8-10 mg/kgbw</td>
<td>p.o. in 2 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 3, e.g. cefitabuten</td>
<td>9 mg/kgbw</td>
<td>p.o. in 1 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim</td>
<td>5-6 mg/kgbw</td>
<td>p.o. in 2 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole</td>
<td>5-6 mg/kgbw (TMP-fraction)</td>
<td>p.o. in 3 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid</td>
<td>37.5-75 mg/kgbw (Amoxicillin-fraction)</td>
<td>p.o. in 3 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrofurantoin</td>
<td>3-5 mg/kgbw</td>
<td>p.o. in 2 D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Reproduced with permission from the International Consultation on Urological Diseases (ICUD), International Consultation on Urogenital Infections, 2009. Copyright © by the European Association of Urology [370].

3.8.4.4 Chemoprophylaxis

Long-term antibacterial prophylaxis should be considered in cases of high susceptibility to UTI and risk of acquired renal damage. Some recently published prospective, randomised studies do not support the efficacy of antibacterial prophylaxis [371-374]. However, two recently published prospective randomised trails as well as one meta-analysis demonstrated a significant risk reduction of developing another UTI by using continuous antibiotic prophylaxis [360, 375, 376] (see also Chapter 3.13 on VUR).

Cranberry juice as well as probiotics may also prevent recurrence of UTI as demonstrated by RCTs [377-379]. A cochrane review could not rule out some benefit of using probiotics [380].
Table 6: Drugs for antibacterial prophylaxis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substance</th>
<th>Prophylactic dosage (mg/kg bw/d)</th>
<th>Limitations in neonates and infants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim**</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Until six weeks of age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethoprim</td>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>Not recommended under two months of age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfamethoxazole</td>
<td>10-15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrofurantoin**</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Until three months of age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cefaclor</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>No age limitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cefixim</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Preterms and newborns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceftibuten</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cefuroximaxetil</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>***</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Reproduced with permission from the International Consultation on Urological Diseases (ICUD), International Consultation on Urogenital Infections, 2009. Copyright © by the European Association of Urology [370].

** Substances of first choice are nitrofurantoin and trimethoprim. In exceptional cases, oral cephalosporin can be used.

*** In Germany, ceftibuten is not approved for infants < 3 months old.

3.8.4.5 Monitoring of UTI

With successful treatment, urine usually becomes sterile after 24 hours, and leukocyturia normally disappears within three to four days. Normalisation of body temperature can be expected within 24-48 hours after the start of therapy in 90% of cases. In patients with prolonged fever and failing recovery, treatment-resistant uropathogens or the presence of congenital uropathy or acute urinary obstruction should be considered. Immediate US examination is recommended in these cases.

Procalcitonin (among other laboratory inflammatory parameters such as C-reactive protein and leukocyte count) can be used as reliable serum marker for early prediction of renal parenchymal inflammation with first febrile UTI [381]. In patients with febrile UTI, serum electrolytes and blood cell counts should be obtained.

3.8.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of UTI in children

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Urinary tract infection represents the most common bacterial infection in children less than 2 years of age. The incidence varies depending on age and sex.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classifications are made according to the site, episode, severity, symptoms and complicating factors. For acute treatment, site and severity are most important.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The number of colony forming units (cfu) in the urine culture can vary and is related to the method of specimen collection, diuresis, and time and temperature of storage until cultivation occurs.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The classical definition of &gt; 10^5 cfu/mL in voided urine is still used to define a significant UTI.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changes in DMSA clearance during acute UTI indicate pyelonephritis or parenchymal damage. If it is positive, reflux may be present.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommendations | LE | GR
--- | --- | ---
Take a medical history, assess clinical signs and symptoms and perform a physical examination to diagnose children suspected of having a urinary tract infection (UTI). | 3 | A
Exclude bladder- and bowel dysfunction in any child with febrile and/or recurrent UTI. | 3 | A
Do not delay diagnosis and treatment of bladder-bowel-dysfunction. | 2a | A
Collect an uncontaminated urine sample in an infant through suprapubic bladder aspiration. Bladder catheterisation is an alternative (traumatic especially in boys). | 2a | B
Do not use plastic bags for urine sampling in non-toilet-trained children since it has a high risk of false-positive results. Clean catch urine is an acceptable technique for toilet-trained children. | 2a | B
Urinalysis by dipstick yields rapid results, but it should be used with caution. Microscopic investigation is the standard method of assessing pyuria after centrifugation. Using flow imaging analysis, the numbers of white blood cells (WBCs), squamous epithelial cells and red cells correlate well with manual methods. | 2a | B
The choice between oral and parenteral therapy should be based on patient age; clinical suspicion of urosepsis; illness severity; refusal of fluids, food and/or oral medication; vomiting; diarrhoea; non-compliance; complicated pyelonephritis. | 2a | B
Treat UTIs with four to seven day courses of oral or parenteral therapy. Do not use of short courses (one to three days) since outcomes are inferior. | 1b | B
Offer long-term antibacterial prophylaxis in case of high susceptibility to UTI and risk of acquired renal damage and lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS). | 1b | B
Treat complicated UTI, with broad-spectrum antibiotics (parenteral). | 1b | B
In infants with febrile UTI, use renal and bladder ultrasound to exclude obstruction of the upper and lower urinary tract. | 3 | B
In all infants, exclude vesicoureteral reflux (VUR) after the first episode of febrile UTI, using voiding cystourethrogram (VCUG) or a dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA) scan first (in case of a positive DMSA-scan, follow-up with VCUG). In boys more than one year of age, exclude VUR after the second febrile UTI. | 2a | B

3.9 Day-time lower urinary tract conditions

3.9.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology
Day-time LUT conditions are conditions that present with LUTS, including urgency, urge incontinence, weak stream, hesitancy, frequency and UTIs without overt uropathy or neuropathy. Following the newest terminology document by the International Children’s Continence Society (ICCS), ‘day-time LUT conditions’ is the new term used to group together functional incontinence problems in children [382]. After any possible underlying uropathy or neuropathy has been excluded, a problem of incontinence in children is grouped into the category of ‘day-time LUT conditions’. Night-time wetting is known as ‘enuresis’.

Due to the relationship between the bladder and bowel, concomitant bladder and bowel disturbances have been labelled as bladder bowel dysfunction (BBD). The use of the terms dysfunctional elimination syndrome (DES) or voiding dysfunction are discouraged. Bladder bowel dysfunction is an umbrella term that can be subcategorised into LUT dysfunction and bowel dysfunction.

Although exact data are unavailable, it is clear that the incidence of day-time LUT conditions is increasing. Awareness and better access to specialised health care can be one of the reasons for this observation. Reported prevalence ranges widely from 2% to 20% [383-387]. This wide variation might reflect the variation in definitions used. In recent studies, bowel dysfunction is observed in > 50 % of children suffering LUT dysfunction [388, 389].

3.9.2 Classification systems
Various functional disorders of the detrusor-sphincter complex may occur during the sophisticated early development of normal mechanisms of micturition control. Lower urinary tract conditions are therefore thought to be the expression of incomplete or delayed maturation of the bladder sphincter complex. Normal day-time control of bladder function matures between two and three years of age, while night-time control is normally achieved between three and seven years of age [383]. There are two main groups of LUTD, namely, filling-phase dysfunctions and voiding-phase dysfunctions. As compared to the general population, in children LUT conditions present with higher prevalence of comorbidities such as Attention Deficit and Hyperactivity Disorder (ADHD) [390, 391].
3.9.2.1 Filling-phase dysfunctions
In filling-phase dysfunctions, the detrusor can be overactive, as in overactive bladder (OAB), or underactive, as in underactive bladder (UAB). Some children habitually postpone micturition leading to voiding postponement.

3.9.2.2 Voiding-phase (emptying) dysfunctions
In voiding-phase (emptying) dysfunctions, sphincter and pelvic floor interference during detrusor contraction is the main dysfunction. The general term for this condition is dysfunctional voiding. Different degrees of dysfunction are described, depending on the strength of interference with the sphincter and pelvic floor. Weak interference results in staccato voiding, while stronger interference results in interrupted voiding and straining, due to an inability to relax during voiding.

3.9.3 Diagnostic evaluation
A non-invasive screening, consisting of history-taking, clinical examination, uroflow, US and voiding diary, is essential to reach a diagnosis [391]. In the paediatric age group, where the history is taken from both the parents and child together, a structured approach is recommended using a questionnaire. Many signs and symptoms related to voiding and wetting will be unknown to the parents and should be specifically requested, using the questionnaire as a checklist. A voiding diary is mandatory to determine the child's voiding frequency and voided volumes as well as the child's drinking habits. History-taking should also include assessment of bowel function. Some dysfunctional voiding scores have recently been developed and validated [392, 393]. For evaluation of bowel function in children, the Bristol Stool Scale is an easy-to-use tool [394, 395].

Upon clinical examination, genital inspection and observation of the lumbosacral spine and the lower extremities are necessary to exclude obvious uropathy and neuropathy. Uroflow with post-void residual evaluates the emptying ability, while an UUT US screens for secondary anatomical changes. A voiding diary provides information about storage function and incontinence frequency, while a pad test can help to quantify the urine loss.

In the case of resistance to initial treatment, or in the case of former failed treatment, re-evaluation is warranted and further video-urodynamic (VUD) studies may be considered. Sometimes, there are minor, underlying, urological or neurological problems, which can only be suspected using VUD. In these cases, structured psychological interviews to assess social stress should be added [396] (LE: 1b).

In the case of anatomical problems, such as posterior urethral valve problems, syringoceles, congenital obstructive posterior urethral membrane (COPUM) or Moormann’s ring, it may be necessary to perform further cystoscopy with treatment. If neuropathic disease is suspected, MRI of the lumbosacral spine and medulla can help to exclude tethered cord, lipoma or other rare conditions.

3.9.4 Management
Treatment of LUTD consists of LUT rehabilitation, mostly referred to as urotherapy, meaning non-surgical, non-pharmacological, treatment of LUT function. It is a very broad therapy field, incorporating many treatments used by urotherapists and other healthcare professionals [397]. In case of comorbidity due to bowel problems it is advised to treat the bowel first, since bowel problems may sustain any bladder problems [394]. Urotherapy can be divided into standard therapy and specific interventions. It is strongly advised not to use terms such as “standard therapy” or “maintenance therapy” without defining the design of these treatments.

3.9.4.1 Standard therapy
In case of combined bladder- and bowel dysfunction it is advised to treat the bowel dysfunction first [389] as LUTS may disappear after successful management of bowel dysfunction. Standard urotherapy is defined as non-surgical, non-pharmacological, treatment for LUTD. It can include the following components:

- Information and demystification, which includes explanation about normal LUT function and how a particular child deviates from normal function.
- Instruction about what to do about the problem, i.e. regular voiding habits, sound voiding posture, avoiding holding manoeuvres, etc.
- Lifestyle advice, regarding fluid intake, prevention of constipation, etc.
- Registration of symptoms and voiding habits using bladder diaries or frequency-volume charts.
- Support and encouragement via regular follow-up by the caregiver.

A success rate of 80% has been described for urotherapy programmes, independent of the components of the programme. However, the evidence level is low as most studies of urotherapy programmes are retrospective and non-controlled. A recently published multicentre controlled trial of cognitive treatment, placebo, oxybutynin, bladder and pelvic floor training did not report better results with oxybutynin and pelvic floor training compared to standard therapy [396] (LE: 1b).
3.9.4.2 **Specific interventions**

As well as urotherapy, there are some specific interventions, including physiotherapy (e.g. pelvic floor exercises), biofeedback, alarm therapy and neurostimulation. Although good results with these treatment modalities have been reported, the level of evidence remains low, since only a few RCTs were published [350, 397-402]. Two RCTs on underactive bladder without neurophatic disease have recently been published. Transcutaneous interferential electrical stimulation and animated biofeedback with pelvic floor exercise have been shown to be effective [403, 404]. In some cases, pharmacotherapy may be added. Antispasmodics and anticholinergics have been shown to be effective, although the level of evidence was low. Some studies on orthosympathicomimetics have been published with a low level of evidence [405].

A few RCTs have been published, one on tolterodine showed safety but not efficacy [406], while another on propiverine showed both safety and efficacy [407] (LE: 1). The difference in results is probably due to study design. Despite the low level of evidence for the use of anticholinergics and antimuscarinics, their use is recommended because of the large number of studies reporting a positive effect on OAB symptoms. Although α-blocking agents are used occasionally, an RCT showed no benefit [408]. Botulinum toxin injection seems promising, but can only be used off-label [409]. Other new treatment modalities such as sacral nerve stimulation are described in case series only and there is no evidence for their usefulness. These new treatment modalities can only be recommended for standard therapy resistant cases [410]. A recent ICCS standardisation document on treatment of day-time incontinence gives an excellent overview of treatment modalities [390].

3.9.5 **Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of day-time lower urinary tract conditions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The term; ‘bladder bowel dysfunction’ is to be used rather than ‘dysfunctional elimination syndrome and voiding dysfunction’.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day-time LUTS has a high prevalence (2% to 20%).</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use a stepwise approach, starting with the least invasive treatment in managing day-time lower urinary tract dysfunction (LUTD) in children.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initially offer urotherapy involving: non-invasive training and re-education, and non-invasive neurostimulation.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If present, treat bladder bowel dysfunction bowel dysfunction first, before treating the lower urinary tract condition.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use pharmacotherapy (mainly antispasmodics and anticholinergics) as second line therapy.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-evaluate in case of therapy resistance; this may consist of videourodynamics and magnetic resonance imaging of lumbosacral spine, guiding to off-label treatment (e.g. some of the non-licensed drugs in children, botulinum toxin injection and sacral nerve stimulation). Such treatment should only be offered in highly experienced centres.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.10 **Monosymptomatic enuresis**

3.10.1 **Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology**

Enuresis is synonymous to intermittent nocturnal incontinence. It is a frequent symptom in children. With a prevalence of 5-10% at seven years of age, it is one of the most prevalent conditions in childhood. With a spontaneous yearly resolution rate of 15%, it is considered relatively benign [411, 412]. Nocturnal enuresis is considered primary when a child has not yet had a prolonged period of being dry. The term “secondary nocturnal enuresis” is used when a child or adult begins wetting again after having stayed dry.

However, seven out of 100 children wetting the bed at age seven will take this condition into adulthood. As it is a stressful condition, which puts a high psychological burden on children resulting in low self-esteem, treatment is advised from the age of six to seven years onwards. Treatment is unnecessary in younger children in whom spontaneous cure is likely. The child’s mental status, family expectations, social issues and cultural background need to be considered before treatment can be started.

Genetically, enuresis is a complex and heterogeneous disorder. Loci have been described on chromosomes 12, 13 and 22 [413].

Three factors play an important pathophysiological role:

- high night-time urine output;
- night-time low bladder capacity or increased detrusor activity;
- arousal disorder.
Due to an imbalance between night-time urine output and night-time bladder capacity, the bladder can become easily full at night and the child will either wake up to empty the bladder or will void during sleep if there is a lack of arousal from sleep [411-413]. Recently, attention has been given to the chronobiology of micturition in which the existence of a circadian clock in kidney, brain and bladder [414] (LE: 1).

3.10.2 Classification systems
Enuresis is the condition describing the symptom of incontinence during night. Any wetting during sleep above the age of five years is enuresis. However, most importantly, there is a single symptom only. Children with other LUTS and enuresis are said to have non-monosymptomatic enuresis [411]. Thorough history-taking, excluding any other day-time symptoms, is mandatory before diagnosing monosymptomatic enuresis. Any associated urinary tract symptoms make the condition a ‘day-time LUT condition’ [413].

The condition is described as ‘primary’ when the symptom has always existed and the patient has not been dry for a period longer than six months. The condition is described as ‘secondary’, when there has been a symptom-free interval of six months.

3.10.3 Diagnostic evaluation
The diagnosis is obtained by history-taking. In a patient with monosymptomatic enuresis, no further investigations are needed. A voiding diary, which records day-time bladder function and night-time urine output, will help to guide the treatment. An estimate of night-time urine production can be obtained by weighing diapers (nappies) in the morning and adding the volume of the morning void. Measuring the day-time bladder capacity gives an estimate of bladder capacity compared to normal values for age [415].

Ultrasound of the urinary tract is not recommended but, when available, it can be used to exclude underlying pathology. In most children, bedwetting is a familial problem, with most affected children found to have a history of bedwetting within the family. A urinary dipstick may help differentiate between true enuresis resulting from polyuria due to diabetes insipidus.

3.10.4 Management
Before using alarm treatment or medication, simple therapeutic interventions should be considered.

3.10.4.1 Supportive treatment measures
Explaining the condition to the child and the parents helps to demystify the problem. Eating and drinking habits should be reviewed, stressing normal fluid intake during the day and reducing fluid intake in the hours before sleep. Keeping a chart depicting wet and dry nights has been shown to be successful.

Counselling, provision of information, positive reinforcement, and increasing (and supporting) motivation of the child should be introduced first. A recent Cochrane review shows that simple behavioural interventions can be effective. However, other proven therapies like enuresis alarm and tricyclic antidepressants are more effective [416] (LE:1a).

3.10.4.2 Alarm treatment
Alarm treatment is the best form for arousal disorder (LE: 1). Initial success rates of 80% are realistic, with low relapse rates, especially when night-time diuresis is not too high and bladder capacity is not too low [417].

3.10.4.3 Medication
In the case of high night-time diuresis, success rates of 70% can be obtained with desmopressin (DDAVP), either as tablets (200-400 μg), or as sublingual DDAVP oral lyophilisate (120-240 μg). A nasal spray is no longer recommended due to the increased risk of overdose [418, 419] (LE: 1). Relapse rates are high after DDAVP discontinuation [415] however recently, structured withdrawal has shown lower relapse rates [420] (LE: 1).

In the case of small bladder capacity, treatment with antispasmodics or anticholinergics is possible [415]. However, when these medications are necessary, the condition is no longer considered to be monosymptomatic. Imipramine, which has been popular for treatment of the enuresis, achieves only a moderate response rate of 50% and has a high relapse rate. Furthermore, cardiotoxicity and death from overdose are described, its use should therefore be discouraged as the first line therapy [421] (LE: 1). Figure 5 presents stepwise assessment and management options for nocturnal enuresis.
Figure 5: Assessment and management of nocturnal enuresis

Nocturnal enuresis

Initial assessment

Voiding diary or direct questioning
  Voiding habits
  Wetting episodes
  Bowel function
  Urinalysis

Monosymptomatic
  Nocturnal enuresis

Education

Supportive therapy

Alarm or desmopressin

Still wet

Check for night-time polyuria
  Investigate for sleep disorders
  Overactivity of the bladder

Consider longer use of desmopressin
  Combination therapies
  Imipramine

Day-time wetting
  Urge syndrome
  Lower tract dysfunction
  Infection
  Other

Uroflowmetry, urine volume, osmolarity

Urotherapy, Ab, Ach, Biofeedback

Ab = antibody; Ach = acetylcholine.

3.10.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of monosymptomatic enuresis

Summary of evidence

Chronobiology of micturition in which the existence of a circadian clock has been proven in kidney, brain and bladder and disturbances in this chronobiology play a major role in the pathophysiology of enuresis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not treat children less than 5 years of age in whom spontaneous cure is likely.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use voiding diaries or questionnaires to exclude day-time symptoms.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a urine test to exclude the presence of infection or potential causes such as diabetes insipidus.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer supportive measures in conjunction with other treatment modalities, of which pharmacological and alarm treatment are the two most important. When used alone they have limited success.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Offer alarm treatment for arousal disorder with low relapse rates. There may be family compliance problems. 1 A

Offer desmopressin for the treatment of night-time diuresis. The response rate is high around 70%; relapse rates are high. 1 A

Ensure structured withdrawal of desmopressin to improve relapse rates. 1 A

Ensure that the parents are well informed about the problem. The advantages and disadvantages of each of the two treatment modalities should be explained. The choice of the treatment modality can be made during parental counselling. 4 B

3.11 Management of neurogenic bladder

3.11.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Neurogenic detrusor-sphincter dysfunction (NDSD) can develop as a result of a lesion at any level in the nervous system. This condition contributes to various forms of LUTD, which may lead to incontinence, UTIs, VUR, and renal scarring. Surgery may be required to establish adequate bladder storage and drainage. If not managed properly, NDSD can potentially cause renal failure, requiring dialysis or transplantation. The main goals of treatment are prevention of urinary tract deterioration and achievement of continence at an appropriate age.

The management of neurogenic bladder sphincter dysfunction in children has undergone major changes over the years. Although nappies (diapers), permanent catheters, external appliances, Crede’s manoeuvre and various forms of urinary diversion have been acceptable treatment methods, these are now reserved for only a small number of resistant patients. The introduction of clean intermittent catheterisation (IC) has revolutionised the management of children with neurogenic bladder. Not only has it made conservative management a very successful treatment option, but it has also made surgical creation of continent reservoirs a very effective treatment alternative, with a good outcome for quality of life and kidney protection [422-424].

Neurogenic bladder in children with myelodysplasia presents with various patterns of DSD with a wide range of severity. About 15% of neonates with myelodysplasia have no signs of neuro-urological dysfunction at birth. However, there is a high chance of progressive changes in the dynamics of neurological lesions with time. Even babies with normal neuro-urological function at birth have a one in three risk of developing either detrusor sphincter dyssynergia or denervation by the time they reach puberty. At birth, the majority of patients have normal UUTs, but nearly 60% of them develop upper tract deterioration due to infections, bladder changes and reflux [425-428].

The most common presentation at birth is myelodysplasia. The term myelodysplasia includes a group of developmental anomalies that result from defects in neural tube closure. Lesions may include spina bifida occulta, meningocele, lipomyelomeningocele, or myelomeningocele. Myelomeningocele is by far the most common defect seen and the most detrimental. Traumatic and neoplastic spinal lesions of the cord are less frequent in children. Additionally, different growth rates between the vertebral bodies and the elongating spinal cord can introduce a dynamic factor to the lesion. Scar tissue surrounding the cord at the site of meningocele closure can tether the cord during growth. In occult myelodysplasia, the lesions are not overt and often occur with no obvious signs of neurological lesion. In nearly 90% of patients, however, a cutaneous abnormality overlies the lower spine, and this condition can easily be detected by simple inspection of the lower back [429].

Total or partial sacral agenesis is a rare congenital anomaly that involves absence of part or all of one or more sacral vertebrae. This anomaly can be part of the caudal regression syndrome, and must be considered in any child presenting with anorectal malformation (ARM). Patients with cerebral palsy may also present with varying degrees of voiding dysfunction, usually in the form of uninhibited bladder contractions (often due to spasticity of the pelvic floor and sphincter complex) and wetting. Bladder sphincter dysfunction is poorly correlated with the type and spinal level of the neurological lesion.

3.11.2 Classification systems

The purpose of any classification system is to facilitate the understanding and management of the underlying pathology. There are various systems of classification of neurogenic bladder. Most systems of classification were formulated primarily to describe those types of dysfunction secondary to neurological disease or injury. Such systems are based on the localisation of the neurological lesion and the findings of the neuro-urological examination. These classifications have been of more value in adults, in whom neurogenic lesions are usually due to trauma and are more readily identifiable.

In children, the spinal level and extent of congenital lesion are poorly correlated with the clinical outcome. Urodynamic and functional classifications have therefore been more practical for defining the extent of the pathology and planning treatment in children.

The bladder and sphincter are two units working in harmony to make a single functional unit. The initial approach should be to evaluate the state of each unit and define the pattern of bladder dysfunction.
According to the nature of the neurological deficit, the bladder and sphincter may be in either an overactive or inactive state:

- the bladder may be overactive with increased contractions, and low capacity and compliance, or inactive with no effective contractions;
- the outlet (urethra and sphincter) may be independently overactive causing functional obstruction, or paralysed with no resistance to urinary flow;
- these conditions may present in different combinations.

This is mainly a classification based on urodynamic findings. The understanding of the pathophysiology of disorders is essential to plan a rational treatment plan for each individual patient. In meningomyelocele, most patients will present with hyper-reflexive detrusor and dyssynergic sphincter, which is a dangerous combination as pressure is built up and the upper tract is threatened.

3.11.3 Diagnostic evaluation
3.11.3.1 Urodynamic studies
Since the treatment plan mainly depends upon a good understanding of the underlying problem in the LUT, a well-performed urodynamic study is mandatory in the evaluation of each child with neurogenic bladder. As the bony level often does not correspond with the neurological defect present, and as the effect of the lesion on bladder function cannot be entirely determined by radiographic studies or physical examination, the information gained from a urodynamic study is crucial. A urodynamic study also provides the clinician with information about the response of the vesicourethral unit to therapy, as demonstrated by improvement or deterioration in follow-up.

It is important to determine several urodynamic parameters, including:

- the bladder capacity;
- the intravesical filling pressure;
- the intravesical pressure at the moment of urethral leakage;
- the presence or absence of reflex detrusor activity;
- the competence of the internal and external sphincteric mechanisms;
- the degree of coordination of the detrusor and sphincteric mechanisms;
- the voiding pattern;
- the post-voiding residual urine volume.

3.11.3.1.1 Method of urodynamic study
There is very little comparative data evaluating the complexity and invasiveness of urodynamic testing for neurogenic bladders in children.

3.11.3.2 Cystometry
Although moderately invasive and dependent on a co-operative child, cystometry in children provides valuable information regarding detrusor contractility and compliance. The amount of information obtained from each study is related to the degree of interest and care given to the test.

It is important to be aware of the alterations in filling and emptying detrusor pressures as the infusion rates change during cystometry. Slow fill cystometry (filling rate < 10 mL/min) is recommended by the ICCS for use in children [434]. However, it has been suggested that the infusion rate should be set according to the child’s predicted capacity, based on age and divided by 10 or 20 [412].

Several clinical studies using conventional artificial fill cystometry to evaluate neurogenic bladder in children have reported that conventional cystometry provides useful information for diagnosis and follow-up
of children with neurogenic bladder [435-440]. All of the studies were retrospective clinical series and lacked comparison with natural fill cystometry, so that the grade of recommendation for an artificial cystometry in children with neurogenic bladder is not high (LE: 4). Additionally, there is evidence suggesting that natural bladder behaviour is altered during regular artificial filling cystometry [441-444].

Conventional cystometry in infants is useful for predicting future deterioration. Urodynamic parameters, such as low capacity, compliance and high leak-point pressures, are poor prognostic factors for future deterioration. Resolution of reflux is less likely to happen in such bladders [435, 439, 441] (LE: 4). Although there are only a few studies on natural fill cystometry in children with neurogenic bladder, the results suggest that natural fill cystometry detects new findings compared with diagnoses delivered by conventional cystometry [442] (LE: 3). However, the comparison between natural- and artificial fill cystometry has not been performed against a gold standard, making it difficult to conclude which study is a true reflection of natural bladder behaviour. Findings in the non-neurogenic adult population have questioned the reliability of natural fill cystometry, as it has shown a high incidence of bladder over-activity in totally normal asymptomatic volunteers [445]. The main disadvantage of natural fill cystometry is that it is labour-intensive and time-consuming. Moreover, because of the transurethral catheter used during this study, false-positive findings caused by the catheter are possible. Especially in children, the recording of events is difficult and there is an increased risk of artefacts, which makes interpretation of the huge amount of data even more difficult. Natural fill cystometry remains a new technique in the paediatric population. More data need to be gathered in a standard way before it can be widely accepted [433].

The timing of the first urodynamic study is not clear. However, repeat studies should be done in a child with neurogenic bladder who are not responsive to the initial treatment or in whom a change in treatment or an intervention is planned.

3.11.4 Management

The medical care of children with myelodysplasia with a neurogenic bladder requires constant observation and adaptation to new problems. In the first years of life, the kidneys are highly susceptible to back-pressure and infection. During this period, the emphasis is on documenting the pattern of NDSD and assessing the potential for functional obstruction and VUR. The early study and treatment of patients is essential for decreasing renal impairment, reducing the need for surgery and improving the continence options [446].

A simple algorithm can be used for management of these patients (Figure 6).
3.11.4.1 Investigations
An abdominal US obtained as soon as possible after birth will detect hydronephrosis or other upper genitourinary tract pathology. Following US, a VCUG, preferably a VUD study should be obtained to evaluate the LUT. Measurement of residual urine during both US and cystography should also be done. These studies provide a baseline for the appearance of the upper and lower urinary tracts, can facilitate the diagnosis of hydronephrosis or VUR, and can help identify children at risk for upper genitourinary tract deterioration and impairment of renal function.

A urodynamic evaluation can be done after some weeks, and needs to be repeated at regular intervals, in combination with evaluation of the upper tract [447-449] (LE: 3).

3.11.4.2 Early management with intermittent catheterisation
Overwhelming experience gained over the years with early management of neurogenic bladder in infants has led to a consensus that children do not have upper tract deterioration when managed early with IC and anticholinergic medication. Intermittent catheterisation should be started soon after birth in all babies, especially in those with signs of possible outlet obstruction [349, 447, 450-457] (LE: 2). In babies without any
clear sign of outlet obstruction, may be delayed but these babies should be monitored for UTIs and upper tract changes.

The early initiation of IC in the newborn period makes it easier for parents to master the procedure and for children to accept it, as they grow older [458, 459].

Early management results in fewer upper tract changes, but also better bladder protection and lower incontinence rates. It has been suggested that increased bladder pressures due to detrusor sphincter dyssynergia causes secondary changes of the bladder wall. These fibroproliferative changes in the bladder wall may cause further loss of elasticity and compliance, resulting in a small non-compliant bladder with progressively elevated pressures.

Early institution of IC and anticholinergic drugs may prevent this in some patients [424, 457, 460] (LE: 3). The retrospective evaluation of patients has also shown that significantly fewer augmentations were required in patients with an early start of IC [451, 456] (LE: 4).

3.11.4.3 Medical therapy
At present, oxybutynin, tolterodine, trospium and propiverine are the most frequently used drugs, with oxybutynin being the most studied. The dosage for oxybutynin is 0.1-0.3 mg/kg given three times daily. In case of side effects intravesical administration may be considered.

Two different forms of tolterodine have been investigated in children with neurogenic bladder. The extended release formulation of tolterodine has been found to be as efficient as the instant release form, with the advantages of being single dose and less expensive. Although the clinical outcome is encouraging, the level of evidence is low for anticholinergic medication because there are no controlled studies [460-467] (LE: 3). The use of medication to facilitate emptying in children with neurogenic bladder has not been well studied in the literature. A few studies investigating the use of α-adrenergic blockade in children with neurogenic bladder have reported a good response rate, but the studies lacked controls, and long-term follow-up is warranted [468] (LE: 4).

Botulinum toxin injections: In neurogenic bladders that are refractory to anticholinergics, injection of botulinum toxin into the detrusor muscle is a novel treatment alternative. Initial promising results in adults has resulted in its use in children. It has been shown that this treatment has beneficial effects on clinical and urodynamic variables. Complete continence was achieved in 65-87% of patients; in most studies mean maximum detrusor pressure was reduced to at least 40 cmH\textsubscript{2}O and bladder compliance was increased to at least 20 cmH\textsubscript{2}O/mL. However, findings are limited by the lack of controlled trials and studies involving small patient numbers [409, 469-473]. Botulinum toxin seems to be more effective in bladders with obvious detrusor muscle over-activity, whereas non-compliant bladders without obvious contractions are unlikely to respond [473-478].

The most commonly used dose of botulinum toxin is 10 U/kg with a maximum dose of 200 U. No dose study has been performed in children and there is no evidence regarding the optimal dose. Currently, it is unclear how many times this treatment can be repeated, although repetitive treatment has been found to be safe in adults [409, 479-481].

Injection of botulinum toxin in therapy-resistant bladders appears to be an effective and safe treatment alternative (LE: 3). Urethral sphincter botulinum-A toxin injection has been shown to be effective in decreasing urethral resistance and improve voiding. The evidence is still too low to recommend its routine use in decreasing outlet resistance, but it could be considered as an alternative in refractory cases [482, 483].

3.11.4.4 Management of bowel incontinence
Children with neurogenic bladder have disturbances of bowel function as well as urinary function. Bowel incontinence in these children is frequently unpredictable. It is related to the turnover rate of faecal material in the anal area after evacuation, the degree of intactness of sacral cord sensation and motor function, and reflex reactivity of the external anal sphincter [484].

Bowel incontinence is managed most commonly with mild laxatives, such as mineral oil, combined with enemas to facilitate removal of bowel contents. A regular and efficient bowel emptying regimen is often necessary to maintain faecal continence, and may have to be started at a very young age. With antegrade or retrograde enemas, most children will have decreased constipation problems and may attain some degree of faecal continence [485-489] (LE: 3).

Biofeedback training programmes to strengthen the external anal sphincter have not been shown to be more effective than a conventional bowel management programme in achieving faecal continence [490]. Electrostimulation of the bowel may also offer a variable improvement in some patients [491] (LE: 3).

3.11.4.5 Urinary tract infection
Urinary tract infections are common in children with neurogenic bladders. In the absence of reflux, UTIs should be treated symptomatically. Although bacteriuria is seen in more than half of children on CIC, patients who
are asymptomatic do not need treatment [492-494] (LE: 3). Patients with VUR should usually be placed on prophylactic antibiotics to reduce the incidence of pyelonephritis, which can potentially lead to renal damage [495, 496].

3.11.4.6 Sexuality
Sexuality, while not an issue in childhood, becomes progressively more important as the patient gets older. This issue has historically been overlooked in individuals with myelodysplasia. However, patients with myelodysplasia do have sexual encounters. Studies indicate that at least 15-20% of males are capable of fathering children and 70% of females can conceive and carry a pregnancy to term. It is therefore important to counsel patients about sexual development in early adolescence.

3.11.4.7 Bladder augmentation
Children with a good response to anticholinergic treatment and an overactive sphincter may be continent between catheterisations. Bladder pressure and development of the UUT will determine whether additional treatment is necessary or not. Therapy-resistant overactivity of the detrusor, or small capacity and poor compliance, will usually need to be treated by bladder augmentation. A simple bladder augmentation using intestine may be carried out if there is any bladder tissue, a competent sphincter and/or bladder neck, and a urethra that can be catheterised.

Stomach is rarely used as an augmenting patch because of the associated complications [497]. Ileal or colonic patches are frequently used for augmenting the bladder, with either equally useful. Despite some advantages (e.g. avoiding mucus, decreased malignancy rate and fewer complications), alternative urothelium preserving techniques, such as autoaugmentation and seromuscular cystoplasty, have not proven to be as successful as standard augmentation with intestine [498, 499].

3.11.4.8 Bladder outlet procedures
Children with detrusor overactivity and underactive sphincters will have better protection of their upper tracts, although they will be severely incontinent. Initial treatment is IC (as it might reduce the degree of incontinence and offers much better control over UTIs) with anticholinergic drugs. At a later age, the outlet resistance will be increased in order to render them continent. No available medical treatment has been validated to increase bladder outlet resistance. α-adrenergic receptor stimulation of the bladder neck has not been very effective [500-505].

When conservative measures fail, surgical procedures need to be considered for maintaining continence. Although a simple augmentation is sufficient for most low-capacity, high-pressure bladders, augmentation with additional bladder outlet procedures is required when both the bladder and outlet are deficient. Bladder outlet procedures include bladder neck reconstruction or other forms of urethral reconstruction.

Various procedures can be used on the bladder neck to increase resistance, but all of them may complicate transurethral catheterisation. Augmentation with surgical closure of the bladder neck may be required primarily, or as a secondary procedure in certain rare clinical situations. In this situation, a continent stoma will be required. However, most surgeons prefer to leave the bladder neck and urethra patent as a safety precaution. Application of artificial urinary sphincters (AUS) in children is another option, which gives the patient the opportunity to void spontaneously. The largest paediatric series in the literature reports a continence rate over 85% [506]. However, the decision to implant an AUS in a child raises the issue of mechanical failure (> 30%), revision of the functioning sphincter (> 15%) and surgical complication (15%). Although, advancement of newer devices decreased these numbers [506].

3.11.4.9 Continent stoma
Augmentation with an additional continent stoma is utilised primarily after failure of previous bladder outlet surgery. It is also advisable when an inability to catheterise transurethrally is likely. An abdominal wall continent stoma may be particularly beneficial to wheelchair-bound spina bifida patients, who often have difficulty with urethral catheterisation or are dependent on others to catheterise the bladder. For continence with augmentation and an abdominal wall stoma, an adequate bladder outlet mechanism is essential.

3.11.4.10 Total bladder replacement
Total bladder replacement in anticipation of normal voiding in children is very rare, as there are infrequent indications for a total cystectomy, with preservation of the bladder outlet and a competent urethral sphincter. This type of bladder replacement is much more common in adult urological reconstruction. Any type of major bladder and bladder outlet construction should be performed in centres with sufficient experience in the surgical technique, and with experienced healthcare personnel to carry out post-operative follow-up [507-509].
3.11.5  **Follow-up**

Neurogenic bladder patients require lifelong supervision, and the monitoring of renal and bladder function is extremely important. Periodic investigation of upper tract changes, renal function and bladder status is mandatory. Repeat urodynamic tests are therefore needed more frequently (every year) in younger children and less frequently in older children. From the urological viewpoint, a repeat urodynamic study is warranted when the patient has a change in symptoms or undergoes any neurosurgical procedure. In the case of any apparent changes in the UUT and LUT, or changes in neurological symptoms, a more detailed examination including urodynamics and spinal MRI is indicated.

Renal failure can progress slowly or occur with startling speed in these children. Patients who have undergone reconstructive procedures using intestine should be regularly followed up for complications such as infection, stone formation, reservoir rupture, metabolic changes, and malignancy [507].

The risk of malignancy in enteric augmentations has been reported to be higher than expected, and the risk increases with length of follow-up. Malignancy occurs in 0.6-2.8% of patients during median follow-up of 13-21 years [510-515]. In a study including 153 patients with a median follow-up time of 28 years [512], malignancy was found in 4.5%. The malignancy seemed to be associated with coexisting carcinogenic stimuli or with the inherent risk present with bladder exstrophy. Although there are poor data on follow-up schemes; after a reasonable follow-up time (e.g. ten years), an annual diagnostic work-up including cystoscopy should be considered.

3.11.6  **Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of neurogenic bladder**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neurogenic detrusor-sphincter dysfunction may result in different forms of LUTD and ultimately result in incontinence, UTIs, VUR, and renal scarring.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In children, the most common cause of NDSD is myelodysplasia (a group of developmental anomalies that result from defects in neural tube closure).</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder sphincter dysfunction correlates poorly with the type and level of the spinal cord lesion. Therefore, urodynamic and functional classifications are more practical in defining the extent of the pathology and in guiding treatment planning.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children with neurogenic bladder can have disturbances of bowel function as well as urinary function which require monitoring and, if needed, management.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The main goals of treatment are prevention of urinary tract deterioration and achievement of continence at an appropriate age.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injection of botulinum toxin into the detrusor muscle in children who are refractory to anticholinergics, has been shown to have beneficial effects on clinical and urodynamic variables.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In all babies, start intermittent catheterisation soon after birth, except for babies without any clear sign of outlet obstruction. If intermittent catheterisation is delayed, closely monitor babies for urinary tract infections and upper tract changes.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use anticholinergic drugs as initial treatment in children with overactive bladders. Clinical improvement is common but usually insufficient.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use injection of botulinum toxin into the detrusor muscle as an alternative in children who are refractory to anticholinergics.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use a bladder augmentation procedure, using a segment of intestine, in case of therapy-resistant overactivity of the detrusor, or small capacity and poor compliance causing upper tract damage and incontinence.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use augmentation with additional bladder outlet procedures when both the bladder and outlet are deficient. Simple augmentation will suffice in most low-capacity, high-pressure bladders.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Augment with an additional continent stoma after bladder outlet surgery and in patients with urethral catheterisation limitations.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follow-up of neurogenic bladder patients will be life-long. Follow-up includes monitoring of renal and bladder function as well as ensuring that sexuality and fertility issues receive particular care as the child gets older and moves into adulthood.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.12  **Dilatation of the upper urinary tract (UPJ and UVJ obstruction)**

3.12.1  **Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology**

Dilatation of the UUT remains a significant clinical challenge in deciding which patient will benefit from
treatment. Ureteropelvic junction (UPJ) obstruction is defined as impaired urine flow from the pelvis into the proximal ureter with subsequent dilatation of the collecting system and the potential to damage the kidney. It is the most common pathological cause of neonatal hydronephrosis [516]. It has an overall incidence of 1:1,500 and a ratio of males to females of 2:1 in newborns.

Ureterovesical junction (UVJ) obstruction is an obstructive condition of the distal ureter as it enters the bladder, commonly called a primary obstructive megaureter. Megaureters are the second most likely cause of neonatal hydronephrosis. They occur more often in males and are more likely to occur on the left side [517].

It can be very difficult to define ‘obstruction’ as there is no clear division between ‘obstructed’ and ‘non-obstructed’ urinary tracts. Currently, the most popular definition is that an obstruction represents any restriction to urinary outflow that, if left untreated, will cause progressive renal deterioration [518].

3.12.2 Diagnostic evaluation
The widespread use of US during pregnancy has resulted in a higher detection rate for antenatal hydronephrosis [519]. The challenge in the management of dilated UUT is to decide which child should be observed, which child should be managed medically, and which child requires surgical intervention. Despite the wide range of diagnostic tests, there is no single test that can accurately distinguish obstructive from non-obstructive cases (see Figure 7).

3.12.2.1 Antenatal ultrasound
Usually between the 16th and 18th weeks of pregnancy, the kidneys are visualised routinely, when almost all amniotic fluid consists of urine. The most sensitive time for foetal urinary tract evaluation is the 28th week. If dilatation is detected, US should focus on:
• laterality, severity of dilatation, and echogenicity of the kidneys;
• hydronephrosis or hydro-ureteronephrosis;
• bladder volume and bladder emptying;
• sex of the child;
• amniotic fluid volume [520].

3.12.2.2 Postnatal ultrasound
Since transitory neonatal dehydration lasts about 48 hours after birth, imaging should be performed following this period of postnatal oliguria. However, in severe cases (bilateral dilatation, solitary kidney, oligohydramnios), immediate postnatal sonography is recommended [521]. Ultrasound should assess the anteroposterior diameter of the renal pelvis, calyceal dilatation, kidney size, thickness of the parenchyma, cortical echogenicity, ureters, bladder wall and residual urine.

3.12.2.3 Voiding cystourethrogram
In newborns with identified UUT dilatation, the primary or important associated factors that must be detected include:
• vesicoureteral reflux (found in up to 25% of affected children) [522];
• urethral valves;
• ureteroceles;
• diverticula;
• neurogenic bladder.
Conventional VCUG is the method of choice for primary diagnostic procedures [523].

3.12.2.4 Diuretic renography
Diuretic renography is the most commonly used diagnostic tool to detect the severity and functional significance of problems with urine transport. Technetium-99m (99mTc) mercaptoacetyltriglycine (MAG3) is the radionuclide of choice. It is important to perform the study under standardised circumstances (hydration, transurethral catheter) after the fourth and sixth weeks of life [524]. Oral fluid intake is encouraged prior to the examination. At fifteen minutes before the injection of the radionuclide, it is mandatory to administer normal saline intravenous infusion at a rate of 15 mL/kg over 30 minutes, with a subsequent maintenance rate of 4 mL/kg/h throughout the entire time of the investigation [525]. The recommended dose of furosemide is 1 mg/kg for infants during the first year of life, while 0.5 mg/kg should be given to children aged one to sixteen years, up to a maximum dose of 40 mg.
Figure 7: Diagnostic algorithm for dilatation of the upper urinary tract

- **Postnatal US**
  - Dilatation (uni- or bilateral)
  - Voiding cystourethrogram (VCUG)*
    - Diuretic renography
  - No dilatation
  - Repeat US after 4 weeks

* A diagnostic work-up including VCUG must be discussed with the parents, as it is possible that, even if reflux is detected, it may have absolutely no clinical impact. However, it should be borne in mind that reflux has been detected in up to 25% of cases of prenatally detected and postnatally confirmed hydronephrosis [522]. US = ultrasound.

### 3.12.3 Management

#### 3.12.3.1 Prenatal management

Counselling the parents of an affected child is one of the most important aspects of care. The prognosis is hopeful for a hydronephrotic kidney, even if it is severely affected, as it may still be capable of meaningful renal function, unlike a severely hypoplastic and dysplastic kidney.

It is important to be able to tell the parents exactly when they will have a definitive diagnosis for their child and what this diagnosis will mean. In some cases, however, it will be immediately obvious that the child is severely affected; there will be evidence of massive bilateral dilatation, bilateral hypoplastic dysplasia, progressive bilateral dilatation with oligohydramnios, and pulmonary hypoplasia.

Intrauterine intervention is rarely indicated and should only be performed in well-experienced centres [526].

#### 3.12.3.1.1 Antibiotic prophylaxis for antenatal hydronephrosis (ANH)

The benefits and harms of continuous antibiotic prophylaxis (CAP) vs. observation in patients with antenatal hydronephrosis are controversial. Currently, only two RCTs have been published, one of which is a pilot trial [527] and the other publication is only available as a congress abstract [528]. Both publications present incomplete data and outcomes.

The EAU Paediatric Guidelines Panel conducted a systematic review (SR) assessing the literature from 1980 onwards [4]. The key findings are summarised below:

Due to the heterogeneity of the published literature it was not possible to draw strong conclusions as to whether CAP is superior to observation alone in children diagnosed with ANH. In the first RCT, a prospective longitudinal study [527], female gender, uncircumcised males, lack of CAP, high-grade hydronephrosis, hydroureteronephrosis and VUR were found to be the independent predictors for the development of UTI. The second RCT included in the SR, was published as an abstract only, presented limited data [528]. This trial seemed to focus mainly on patients with ANH and VUR and did not report any beneficial effect of CAP on UTI rates, but details on the study population were limited.

Key findings of the SR are that CAP may or may not be superior to observation in children with antenatal hydronephrosis in terms of decreasing UTI. Due to the low data quality it was also not possible to establish whether boys or girls are at a greater risk of developing a UTI, or ascertain the presence or absence of VUR impacts UTI rates. A correlation between VUR-grade and UTI could not be established either. However, non-circumcised infants, children diagnosed with high-grade hydronephrosis and hydroureteronephrosis were shown to be at higher risk of developing a UTI.

The SR also tried to identify the most effective antibiotic regimen and present data on adverse effects but due to heterogeneity, the available data could not be statistically compared. The most commonly used antibiotic in infants with antenatal hydronephrosis is trimethoprim, but only one study reported side effects [527].

In conclusion, based on the currently available evidence, the benefits and harms of CAP in children with antenatal hydronephrosis remain unproven. Uncircumcised infants and infants with hydroureteronephrosis...
and high-grade hydronephrosis are more likely to develop a UTI. Continuous antibiotic prophylaxis should be reserved for this sub-group of children who are proven to be at high risk.

### 3.12.3.2 UPJ obstruction

It is most important that management decisions are made on the basis of serial investigations that have used the same technique and have been performed by the same institution under standardised circumstances. Symptomatic obstruction (recurrent flank pain, UTI) requires surgical correction using a pyeloplasty, according to the standardised open technique of Hynes and Anderson [529]. In experienced hands, laparoscopic or retroperitoneoscopic techniques and robot-assisted techniques have the same success rates as standard open procedures. In asymptomatic cases, conservative follow-up is the treatment of choice.

Indications for surgical intervention comprise impaired split renal function (< 40%), a decrease of split renal function of > 10% in subsequent studies, poor drainage function after the administration of furosemide, increased anteroposterior diameter on US, and grade III and IV dilatation as defined by the Society for Fetal Urology [530].

Well-established benefits of conventional laparoscopy over open surgery are the decreased length of hospital stay, better cosmesis, less post-operative pain and early recovery [531, 532]. A recent meta-analysis in children has shown that laparoscopic pyeloplasty (LP) was associated with decreased length of hospital stay and complication rates but prolonged operative time when compared to open pyeloplasty (OP). Additionally, both LP and OP had equal success rates [533]. Robotic-assisted laparoscopic pyeloplasty (RALP) has all the same advantages as LP plus better maneuverability, improved vision, ease in suturing and increased ergonomics but higher costs [534, 535]. There does not seem to be any clear benefit of minimal invasive procedures in a very young child but current data is insufficient to defer a cut-off age.

### 3.12.3.3 Megaureter

The treatment options of secondary megaureters are reviewed in Chapter 3.13.3.

#### 3.12.3.3.1 Non-operative management

If a functional study reveals and confirms adequate ureteral drainage, conservative management is the best option. Initially, low-dose prophylactic antibiotics within the first year of life are recommended for the prevention of UTIs, although there are no existing prospective randomised trials evaluating the benefit of this regimen [536]. With spontaneous remission rates of up to 85% in primary megaureter cases, surgical management is no longer recommended, except for megaureters with recurrent UTIs, deterioration of split renal function and significant obstruction [537].

#### 3.12.3.3.2 Surgical management

In general, surgery is indicated for symptomatic children and if there is a drop in function in conservative follow-up and hydroureteronephrosis is increasing [538]. Data suggest that children with a ureteric diameter of > 10-15 mm are more likely to require intervention [539].

The initial approach to the ureter can be either intravesical, extravesical or combined. Straightening the ureter is necessary without devascularisation. Ureteral tapering should enhance urinary flow into the bladder. The ureter must be tapered to achieve a diameter for an anti-reflux repair. Several tailoring techniques exist, such as ureteral imbrication or excisional tapering [540]. Some institutions perform endoscopic stenting, but there is still no long-term data and no prospective randomised trials to confirm their outcome.

### 3.12.4 Conclusion

The use of routine perinatal sonography has resulted in increased detection of hydronephrosis caused by UPJ or UVJ obstruction. Meticulous and repeat postnatal evaluation is mandatory to try to identify obstructive cases at risk of renal deterioration and requiring surgical reconstruction. Surgical methods are quite standardised and have a good clinical outcome.
3.12.5  Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of UPJ-, UVJ-obstruction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nowadays, most hydronephrotic kidneys have already been diagnosed prenatally during a maternal US investigation.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ureteropelvic junction obstruction is the leading cause of hydronephrotic kidneys (40%).</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In children diagnosed with antenatal hydronephrosis, a systematic review could not establish any benefits or harms related to continuous antibiotic prophylaxis.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In children diagnosed with antenatal hydronephrosis, non-circumcised infants (LE: 1a), children diagnosed with high-grade hydronephrosis (LE: 2) and hydroureteronephrosis (LE: 1b) were shown to be at higher risk of developing UTI.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Include serial ultrasound (US) and subsequent diuretic renogram and sometimes voiding cystourethrography (VCUG) in postnatal investigations.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer continuous antibiotic prophylaxis to the sub-group of children with antenatal hydronephrosis who are at high risk of developing urinary tract infection (uncircumcised infants (LE: 1a), children diagnosed with hydroureteronephrosis (LE: 2) and high-grade hydronephrosis (LE: 2)).</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decide on surgical intervention based on the time course of the hydronephrosis and the impairment of renal function.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer surgical intervention in case of an impaired split renal function due to obstruction or a decrease of split renal function in subsequent studies and increased anteroposterior diameter on the US, and grade IV dilatation as defined by the Society for Fetal Urology.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer pyeloplasty when ureteropelvic junction obstruction has been confirmed clinically or with serial imaging studies.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not offer surgery as a standard for primary megaureters since most do not require surgical intervention.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.13 Vesicoureteric reflux

Lack of robust prospective RCTs limits the strength of the established guidelines for the management of VUR. The scientific literature for reflux disease is still limited and the level of evidence is generally low. Most of the studies are retrospective, include different patient groups, and have poor stratification of quality. Also, there is a high risk of presenting misleading results by combining different types of studies when systematically extracting data. Therefore, for reflux disease, it is unfortunately not possible to produce recommendations based on high-quality studies. The authors have assessed the current literature, but in the absence of conclusive findings, have provided recommendations based on panel consensus. These Guidelines aim to provide a practical approach to the treatment of VUR based on risk analysis.

3.13.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Vesicoureteric reflux is an anatomical and/or functional disorder with potentially serious consequences, such as renal scarring, hypertension and renal failure. Fortunately, patients with VUR present with a wide range of severity, and a good proportion of reflux patients do not develop renal scars and probably do not need any intervention [541]. Vesicoureteric reflux is a very common urological anomaly in children, with an incidence of nearly 1%.

The main management goal is the preservation of kidney function, by minimising the risk of pyelonephritis. By defining and analysing the risk factors for each patient (i.e. age, sex, reflux grade, LUTD, anatomical abnormalities, and kidney status), it is possible to identify those patients with a potential risk of UTIs and renal scarring. Controversy persists over the optimal management of VUR, particularly the choice of diagnostic procedures, treatment (medical, endoscopic or surgical), and the timing of treatment.

Many children present without symptoms of UTI and, because invasive diagnostic procedures are performed only when clinically indicated, the exact prevalence of VUR is unknown. However, the prevalence of VUR in non-symptomatic children has been estimated at 0.4-1.8% [542]. Among infants prenatally identified with hydronephrosis on US, who were screened for VUR, the prevalence was 16.2% (7-35%) [543]. Siblings of children with VUR had a 27.4% (3-51%) risk of also having VUR, whereas the offspring of parents with VUR had a higher incidence of 35.7% (21.2-61.4%) [543].

However, reflux detected by sibling screening is associated with lower grades [543] and significantly earlier resolution [544]. When VUR is discovered in siblings after UTI, it is usually high-grade and associated with a high incidence of reflux nephropathy, particularly if the sibling is male and the grade of reflux was high in the index patient [545, 546].
The incidence of VUR is much higher among children with UTIs (30-50%, depending on age). UTIs are more common in girls than boys due to anatomical differences. However, among all children with UTIs, boys are more likely to have VUR than girls (29% vs. 14%). Boys also tend to have higher grades of VUR diagnosed at younger ages, although their VUR is more likely to resolve itself [547-550].

There is a clear co-prevalence between LUTD and VUR [347]. Lower urinary tract dysfunction refers to the presence of LUTS, including urge, urge incontinence, weak stream, hesitancy, frequency and UTIs, which reflect the filling and/or emptying dysfunction that may be accompanied with bowel problems [347]. Some studies have described a prevalence of 40-60% for VUR in children with LUTD [551]. A recently published Swedish reflux trial has demonstrated LUTD in 34% of patients, and subdivision into groups characteristic of children revealed that 9% had isolated overactive bladder and 24% had voiding phase dysfunction [552].

The spontaneous resolution of VUR is dependent on age at presentation, sex, grade, laterality, mode of clinical presentation, and anatomy [544]. Faster resolution of VUR is more likely with age less than one year at presentation, lower grade of reflux (grade 1-3), and asymptomatic presentation with prenatal hydronephrosis or sibling reflux. The overall resolution rate is high in congenital high-grade VUR during the first years of life. In several Scandinavian studies, the complete resolution rate for high-grade VUR has been reported at > 25%, which is higher than the resolution rate for VUR detected after infancy [552-554].

The presence of renal cortical abnormality, bladder dysfunction, and breakthrough febrile UTIs are negative predictive factors for reflux resolution [555-557].

Dilating VUR increases the risk of developing acute pyelonephritis and renal scarring. Untreated recurrent UTIs may have a negative impact on somatic growth and medical status of the child. Evidence of renal scarring is present in 10-40% of children with symptomatic VUR, resulting from either congenital dysplasia and/or acquired post-infectious damage, which may have a negative impact on somatic growth and general well-being [558-560].

Higher grades of VUR present with higher rates of renal scars. Scar rates vary in different patient groups. In those with prenatal hydronephrosis, renal scarring occurs in 10% of patients [561-566], whereas in patients with LUTD, this may increase up to 30% [560, 567, 568]. Renal scarring may adversely affect renal growth and function, with bilateral scarring increasing the risk of insufficiency. Reflux nephropathy (RN) may be the most common cause of childhood hypertension. Follow-up studies have shown that 10-20% of children with RN develop hypertension or end-stage renal disease [569].

### 3.13.2 Diagnostic evaluation

The diagnostic work-up should aim to evaluate the overall health and development of the child, the presence of UTIs, renal status, the presence of VUR, and LUT function. A basic diagnostic work-up comprises a detailed medical history (including family history, and screening for LUTD), physical examination including blood pressure measurement, urinalysis (assessing proteinuria), urine culture, and serum creatinine in patients with bilateral renal parenchymal abnormalities.

The standard imaging tests include renal and bladder US, VCUG and nuclear renal scans. The criterion standard in diagnosis of VUR is VCUG, especially at the initial work-up. This test provides precise anatomical detail and allows grading of VUR [570]. In 1985, the International Reflux Study Committee introduced a uniform system for the classification of VUR [571, 572] (Table 7). The grading system combines two earlier classifications and is based upon the extent of retrograde filling and dilatation of the ureter, renal pelvis and calyces on VCUG [572].

Radionuclide studies for detection of reflux have lower radiation exposure than VCUG, but the anatomical details depicted are inferior [573]. Recent studies on alternative imaging modalities for detection on VUR have yielded good results with voiding US and magnetic resonance VCUG [574-576]. However, despite the concerns about ionising radiation and its invasive nature, conventional VCUG still remains the gold standard because it allows better determination of the grade of VUR (in a single or duplicated kidney) and assessment of the bladder and urethral configuration.

**Table 7: Grading system for VUR on VCUG, according to the International Reflux Study Committee [577]**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Reflux does not reach the renal pelvis; varying degrees of ureteral dilatation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Reflux reaches the renal pelvis; no dilatation of the collecting system; normal fornices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Mild or moderate dilatation of the ureter, with or without kinking; moderate dilatation of the collecting system; normal or minimally deformed fornices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Moderate dilatation of the ureter with or without kinking; moderate dilatation of the collecting system; blunt fornices, but impressions of the papillae still visible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Gross dilatation and kinking of the ureter, marked dilatation of the collecting system; papillary impressions no longer visible; intraparenchymal reflux</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dimercaptosuccinic acid is the best nuclear agent for visualising the cortical tissue and differential function between both kidneys. Dimercaptosuccinic acid is taken up by proximal renal tubular cells and is a good indicator of renal parenchyma function. In areas of acute inflammation or scarring, Dimercaptosuccinic acid uptake is poor and appears as cold spots. Dimercaptosuccinic acid scans are therefore used to detect and monitor renal scarring. A baseline DMSA scan at the time of diagnosis can be used for comparison with successive scans later during follow-up [572, 578]. DMSA can also be used as a diagnostic tool during suspected episodes of acute pyelonephritis [579]. Children with a normal DMSA scan during acute UTI have a low-risk of renal damage [579].

Video-urodynamic studies are only important in patients in whom secondary reflux is suspected, such as those with spina bifida or boys in whom VCUG is suggestive of posterior urethral valves. In the case of LUTS, diagnosis and follow-up can be limited to non-invasive tests (e.g. voiding charts, US, or uroflowmetry) [347]. Cystoscopy has a limited role in evaluating reflux, except for infravesical obstruction or ureteral anomalies that might influence therapy.

3.13.2.1 Infants presenting because of prenatally diagnosed hydronephrosis
Ultrasound of the kidney and bladder is the first standard evaluation tool for children with prenatally diagnosed hydronephrosis. It is non-invasive and provides reliable information regarding kidney structure, size, parenchymal thickness and collecting system dilatation [580, 581].

Ultrasound should be delayed until after the first week after birth because of early oliguria in the neonate. It is essential to evaluate the bladder, as well as the kidneys. The degree of dilatation in the collecting system under US, when the bladder is both full and empty, may provide significant information about the presence of VUR. Bladder wall thickness and configuration may be an indirect sign of LUTD and reflux. The absence of hydronephrosis on postnatal US excludes the presence of significant obstruction; however, it does not exclude VUR.

Monitoring with careful US avoids unnecessary invasive and irradiating examinations. The first two US scans within the first one to two months of life are highly accurate for defining the presence or absence of renal pathology. In infants with two normal, successive scans, VUR is rare, and if present it is likely to be low-grade [561, 582]. The degree of hydronephrosis is not a reliable indicator for the presence of VUR, even though cortical abnormalities are more common in high-grade hydronephrosis [543]. The presence of cortical abnormalities on US (defined as cortical thinning and irregularity, as well as increased echogenicity) warrants the use of VCUG for detecting VUR [543]. Dimercaptosuccinic acid provides more reliable and quantitative measurement of the degree of cortical abnormalities, first detected with US.

The use of VCUG is recommended in patients with US findings of bilateral high-grade hydronephrosis, duplex kidneys with hydronephrosis, ureterocele, ureteric dilatation, and abnormal bladders, because the likelihood of VUR is much higher. In all other conditions, the use of VCUG to detect reflux is optional [543, 563, 583, 584]. When infants who are diagnosed with prenatal hydronephrosis become symptomatic with UTIs, further evaluation with VCUG should be considered [584]. Patients with severe hydronephrosis and those whose hydronephrosis is sustained or progressive, need further evaluation to exclude obstruction.

3.13.2.2 Siblings and offspring of reflux patients
The screening of asymptomatic siblings and offspring is controversial. Some authors think that early identification of children with VUR may prevent episodes of UTI and therefore renal scarring, whereas others think that screening asymptomatic individuals is likely to result in significant over-treatment of clinically insignificant VUR. The overall estimate for renal cortical abnormalities is 19.3% (11-54%), with 27.8% having renal damage in cohorts of symptomatic and asymptomatic children combined. In asymptomatic siblings only, the rate of renal damage is 14.4% (0-100%). Early screening and therefore early diagnosis and treatment appears to be more effective than late screening in preventing further renal damage [543, 545, 585, 586]. The lack of RCTs for screened patients to assess clinical health outcomes makes evidence-based guideline recommendations difficult.

3.13.2.3 Recommendations for paediatric screening of VUR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inform parents of children with vesicoureteric reflux (VUR) that siblings and offspring have a high prevalence of VUR.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use renal ultrasound (US) for screening of sibling(s).</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use voiding cystourethrography (VCUG) if there is evidence of renal scarring on US or a history of urinary tract infection.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not screen older toilet-trained children since there is no added value in screening for VUR.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.13.2.4 Children with febrile urinary tract infections
A routine recommendation of VCUG at zero to two years of age after the first proven febrile UTI is the safest approach as the evidence for the criteria to selecting patients for reflux detection is weak. Children with febrile infections and abnormal renal ultrasonographic findings may have higher risk of developing renal scars and they should all be evaluated for reflux [587]. If reflux is diagnosed, further evaluation has traditionally consisted of a DMSA scan.

An alternative “top-down” approach is also an option, as suggested by several studies in the literature. This approach carries out an initial DMSA scan close to the time of a febrile UTI, to determine the presence of pyelonephritis, which is then followed by VCUG if the DMSA scan reveals kidney involvement. A normal DMSA scan with no subsequent VCUG will fail to spot VUR in 5-27% of cases, with the missed VUR presumably being less significant. In contrast, a normal DMSA scan with no VCUG avoids unnecessary VCUG in > 50% of those screened [341, 588-590].

3.13.2.5 Children with lower urinary tract symptoms and vesicoureteric reflux
Detection of LUTD is essential in treating children with VUR. It is suggested that reflux with LUTD resolves faster after LUTD correction, and that patients with LUTD are at higher risk for developing UTI and renal scarring [552, 591]. The co-existence of both conditions should be explored in any patient who has VUR. If there are symptoms suggestive of LUTD (e.g. urgency, wetting, constipation or holding manoeuvres), an extensive history and examination, including voiding charts, uroflowmetry and residual urine determination, will reliably diagnose underlying LUTD.

In LUTD, VUR is often low-grade and US findings are normal, and there is no indication for performing VCUG in all children with LUTD, but the presence of febrile infections should be meticulously investigated. The co-existence of LUTD and VUR means it would be better to do a test covering both conditions, such as a videourodynamic study (VUDS). Any patient with LUTD and a history of febrile UTI should be investigated with a VUDS, if available. Furthermore, any child who fails standard therapy for LUTD should undergo urodynamic investigation. At this stage, combining a urodynamic study with VCUG is highly recommended.

3.13.3 Disease management
There are two main treatment approaches: conservative (non-surgical) and surgical.

3.13.3.1 Non-surgical therapy
The objective of conservative therapy is prevention of febrile UTI. It is based on the understanding that:
- VUR resolves spontaneously, mostly in young patients with low-grade reflux. Resolution is nearly 80% in VUR grades I and II and 30-50% in VUR grades III-V within four to five years of follow-up. Spontaneous resolution is low for bilateral high-grade reflux [592].
- VUR does not damage the kidney when patients are free of infection and have normal LUT function.
- There is no evidence that small scars can cause hypertension, renal insufficiency or problems during pregnancy. Indeed, these are possible only in cases of severe bilateral renal damage.
- The conservative approach includes watchful waiting, intermittent or continuous antibiotic prophylaxis, and bladder rehabilitation in those with LUTD [567, 591, 593-595].
- Circumcision during early infancy may be considered as part of the conservative approach because it is effective in reducing the risk of infection in normal children [596].

3.13.3.1.1 Follow-up
Regular follow-up with imaging studies (e.g. VCUG, nuclear cystography, or DMSA scan) is part of the conservative management to monitor spontaneous resolution and kidney status. Conservative management should be dismissed in all cases of febrile breakthrough infections, despite prophylaxis, and intervention should be considered.

3.13.3.1.2 Continuous antibiotic prophylaxis
Vesicoureteral reflux increases the risk of UTI and renal scarring especially when in combination with LUTD. Many prospective studies have evaluated the role of continuous antibiotic prophylaxis in the prevention of recurrent UTI and renal scarring.

It is clear that antibiotic prophylaxis may not be needed in every reflux patient [567, 597-599]. Trials show the benefit of CAP is none or minimal in low-grade reflux. Continuous antibiotic prophylaxis is useful in patients with grade III and IV reflux in preventing recurrent infections but its use in preventing further renal damage is not proven. Toilet-trained children and children with LUTD derive much better benefit from CAP [371-374, 600, 601]. The RIVUR trial was the largest, randomised, placebo-controlled, double blind, multi-centre study, involving 607 children aged 2-72 months with grade I-IV VUR. The RIVUR study showed...
that prophylaxis reduced the risk of recurrent UTI by 50% but not renal scarring and its consequences (hypertension and renal failure), at the cost of increased antimicrobial resistance. The benefit of prophylaxis was insignificant in patients with grade III or IV VUR and in the absence of LUTD [376, 602-604].

It may be difficult and risky to select patients who do not need CAP. A safe approach would be to use CAP in most cases. Decision-making may be influenced by the presence of risk factors for UTI, such as young age, high-grade VUR, status of toilet-training/LUTS, female sex, and circumcision status. Although the literature does not provide any reliable information about the duration of CAP in patients, a practical approach would be to use CAP until after children have been toilet-trained and ensuring that there is no LUTD. CAP is mandatory in patients with LUTD and reflux. Active surveillance of UTI is needed after CAP is discontinued. The follow-up scheme and the decision to perform an anti-reflux procedure or discontinuation of CAP may also depend on personal preferences and the attitude of patients and parents. It is strongly advised that the advantages and disadvantages should be discussed in detail with the family.

3.13.3.2 Surgical treatment
Surgical treatment can be carried out by endoscopic injection of bulking agents or ureteral reimplantation.

3.13.3.2.1 Subureteric injection of bulking materials
With the availability of biodegradable substances, endoscopic subureteric injection of bulking agents has become an alternative to long-term antibiotic prophylaxis and open surgical intervention in the treatment of VUR in children. Using cystoscopy, a bulking material is injected beneath the intramural part of the ureter in a submucosal location. The injected bulking agent elevates the ureteral orifice and the distal ureter, so that coaptation is increased. This results in narrowing of the lumen, which prevents reflux of urine into the ureter, while still allowing its antegrade flow.

Several bulking agents have been used over the past two decades, including polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE or Teflon), collagen, autologous fat, polydimethylsiloxane, silicone, chondrocytes, a solution of dextranomer/hyaluronic acid (Deflux, Dexell) and more recently polycrylate-polyalcohol copolymer hydrogel (Vantris) [605, 606].

Although the best results have been obtained with PTFE [607], due to concerns about particle migration, PTFE has not been approved for use in children [608]. Although they are all biocompatible, other compounds such as collagen and chondrocytes have failed to provide a good outcome. Deflux was approved by the USA FDA in 2001 for the treatment of VUR in children. Initial clinical trials have demonstrated that this method is effective in treating reflux [609]. Studies with long-term follow-up have shown that there is a high recurrence rate which may reach as high as 20% in two years [597].

In a meta-analysis [610] of 5,527 patients and 8,101 renal units, the reflux resolution rate (by ureter) following one treatment for grades I and II reflux was 78.5%, 72% for grade III, 63% for grade IV, and 51% for grade V. If the first injection was unsuccessful, the second treatment had a success rate of 68% and the third treatment 34%. The aggregate success rate with one or more injections was 85%. The success rate was significantly lower for duplicated (50%) vs. single (73%) systems, and neuropathic (62%) vs. normal (74%) bladders.

Clinical validation of the effectiveness of anti-reflux endoscopy is currently hampered by the lack of methodologically appropriate studies. In the most recent prospective, randomised trials comparing three treatment arms: i) endoscopic injection; ii) antibiotic prophylaxis; iii) surveillance without antibiotic prophylaxis in 203 children aged one to two years with grade III/IV reflux, endoscopic treatment gave the highest resolution rate of 71% compared to 39% and 47% for treatment arms ii and iii, respectively, after two years’ follow-up.

The recurrence rate at two years after endoscopic treatment was 20%. The occurrence of febrile UTIs and LUTD. CAP is mandatory in patients with LUTD and reflux. Active surveillance of UTI is needed after CAP is discontinued. The follow-up scheme and the decision to perform an anti-reflux procedure or discontinuation of CAP may also depend on personal preferences and the attitude of patients and parents. It is strongly advised that the advantages and disadvantages should be discussed in detail with the family.

3.13.3.2.2 Open surgical techniques
Various intra- and extravesical techniques have been described for the surgical correction of reflux. Although different methods have specific advantages and complications, they all share the basic principle of lengthening the intramural part of the ureter by submucosal embedding of the ureter. All techniques have been shown to be safe with a low rate of complications and excellent success rates (92-98%) [612].

The most popular and reliable open procedure is cross trigonal re-implantation described by Cohen. The main concern with this procedure is the difficulty of accessing the ureters endoscopically if needed when the child is older. Alternatives are supravesical re-implantation (Politano-Leadbetter technique) and infravesical re-implantation (Glenn-Anderson technique). If an extravesical procedure (Lich-Gregoir) is planned, cystoscopy should be performed pre-operatively to assess the bladder mucosa and the position and configuration of the ureteric orifices. In bilateral reflux, an intravesical antireflux procedure may be considered, because
simultaneous bilateral extravesical reflux repair carries an increased risk of temporary post-operative urine retention [613]. Overall, all surgical procedures offer very high and similar success rates for correcting VUR.

3.13.3.2.3 Laparoscopy and robot-assisted

There have been a considerable number of case series of transperitoneal extravesical and pneumovesicoscopic intravesical ureteral reimplantation, which have shown the feasibility of the techniques. Various anti-reflux surgeries have been performed with the robot and the extravesical approach is the most commonly used. Although initial reports give comparable outcomes to their open surgical counterparts in terms of successful resolution of reflux, further studies are needed to define the success rates, costs and benefits of this minimal invasive approach [614, 615].

The major shortcoming of the new techniques seems to be the longer operative times, which hinder their wider acceptance. Also, laparoscopic or robotic assisted approaches are more invasive than endoscopic correction and their advantages over open surgery are still debated. Therefore, at present, a laparoscopic approach cannot be recommended as a routine procedure. It can be offered as an alternative to the parents in centres where there is established experience [596, 614, 616-623].

3.13.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of vesicoureteric reflux in childhood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence that correction of persistent low-grade reflux (grades I-III) without symptoms and normal kidneys offers a significant benefit.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The traditional approach of initial medical treatment after diagnosis and shifting to interventional treatment in case of breakthrough infections and new scar formation needs to be challenged, because the treatment should be tailored to different risk groups.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical correction should be considered in patients with persistent high-grade reflux (grades IV/V). There is no consensus about the timing and type of surgical correction. The outcome of open surgical correction is better than endoscopic correction for higher grades of reflux, whereas satisfactory results can be achieved by endoscopic injection for lower grades.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The choice of management depends on the presence of renal scars, clinical course, grade of reflux, ipsilateral renal function, bilaterality, bladder function, associated anomalies of the urinary tract, age, compliance, and parental preference. Febrile UTI, high-grade reflux, bilaterality, and cortical abnormalities are considered to be risk factors for possible renal damage. The presence of LUTD is an additional risk factor for new scars.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initially treat all patients diagnosed within the first year of life with continuous antibiotic prophylaxis, regardless of the grade of reflux or presence of renal scars.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer immediate, parenteral antibiotic treatment for febrile breakthrough infections.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer definitive surgical or endoscopic correction to patients with frequent breakthrough infections.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer surgical correction to patients with persistent high-grade reflux (grades IV/V) if intervention is needed; the outcome of open surgical correction is better than endoscopic correction for higher grades of reflux, whereas satisfactory results can be achieved by endoscopic injection for lower grades.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initially manage all children presenting at age one to five years conservatively.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer surgical repair to children presenting with high-grade reflux or abnormal renal parenchyma.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer close surveillance without antibiotic prophylaxis to children presenting with lower grades of reflux and without symptoms.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ensure that a detailed investigation for the presence of lower urinary tract dysfunction (LUTD) is done in all children after toilet-training. If LUTD is found, the initial treatment should always be for LUTD.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider surgical correction, if parents prefer definitive therapy to conservative management. Endoscopic treatment is an option for all children with low grades of reflux.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Select the most appropriate management option based on:
- the presence of renal scars;
- clinical course;
- the grade of reflux;
- ipsilateral renal function;
- bilaterality;
- bladder function;
- associated anomalies of the urinary tract;
- age and gender;
- compliance;
- parental preference.

In high-risk patients who already have renal impairment, a more aggressive, multi-disciplinary approach is needed.

Table 8: Management and follow-up according to different risk groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk Groups</th>
<th>Presentation</th>
<th>Initial treatment</th>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Follow-up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>Symptomatic male or female patients after toilet-training with high-grade reflux (grades IV-V), abnormal kidneys and LUTD</td>
<td>Initial treatment is always for LUTD with CAP; intervention may be considered in cases of BT infections or persistent reflux</td>
<td>Greater possibility of earlier intervention</td>
<td>More aggressive follow-up for UTI and LUTD; full re-evaluation after 6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>Symptomatic male or female patients after toilet-training with high-grade reflux (grade IV-V), abnormal kidneys and no LUTD</td>
<td>Intervention should be considered</td>
<td>Open surgery has better results than endoscopic surgery</td>
<td>Post-operative VCUG on indication only; follow-up of kidney status until after puberty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Symptomatic male or female patients before toilet-training, with high-grade reflux and abnormal kidneys</td>
<td>CAP is the initial treatment. Intervention may be considered in cases of BT infections or persistent reflux</td>
<td>Spontaneous resolution is higher in males</td>
<td>Follow-up for UTI/hydronephrosis; full re-evaluation after 12-24 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Asymptomatic patients (PNH or sibling) with high-grade reflux and abnormal kidneys</td>
<td>CAP is the initial treatment. Intervention may be considered in cases of BT infections or persistent reflux</td>
<td></td>
<td>Follow-up for UTI/hydronephrosis; full re-evaluation after 12-24 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Symptomatic male or female patients after toilet-training, with high-grade reflux and normal kidneys with LUTD</td>
<td>Initial treatment is always for LUTD with CAP. Intervention may be considered in cases of BT infections or persistent reflux</td>
<td>In case of persistent LUTD, despite urotherapy, intervention should be considered. The choice of intervention is controversial</td>
<td>Follow-up for UTI and LUTD, kidney status; full re-evaluation after successful urotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Symptomatic male or female patients after toilet-training with low-grade reflux, abnormal kidneys with or without LUTD</td>
<td>Choice of treatment is controversial. Endoscopic treatment may be an option. LUTD treatment should be given if needed</td>
<td></td>
<td>Follow-up for UTI, LUTD, and kidney status until after puberty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.14 Urinary stone disease

3.14.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Paediatric stone disease is an important clinical problem in paediatric urology practice. Because of its recurrent nature, every effort should be made to discover the underlying metabolic abnormality so that it can be treated appropriately. Obtaining a stone-free state with close follow-up are of the utmost importance, although, it may not be possible in some circumstances (e.g. oxalosis or nephrocalcinosis).

However, bladder stones are still common in underdeveloped areas of the world and are usually ammonium acid urate and uric acid stones, strongly implicating dietary factors [624]. Patients with augmented bladder constitute another important group with a risk of up to 15% [625].

The incidence and characteristics of stones show a wide geographical variation in children. Although urinary stone disease is generally considered to be a relatively rare disease, it is quite common in some parts of the world. Paediatric stone disease is endemic in Turkey, Pakistan and in some South Asian, African and South American states. However, recent epidemiological studies have shown that the incidence of paediatric stone disease is also increasing in the Western world [626-628], especially in girls, Caucasian ethnicity, African Americans and older children [629]. More than 70% of stones in children contain calcium oxalate, while infection stones are found more frequently in younger children [630].

3.14.2 Classification systems

Urinary stone formation is the result of a complex process involving metabolic, anatomical factors and presence of infection.

3.14.2.1 Calcium stones

Calcium stones are usually made from calcium oxalate or calcium phosphate. Super-saturation of calcium (hypercalciuria) and oxalate (hyperoxaluria) or decreased concentration of inhibitors, such as citrate (hypocitraturia) or magnesium (hypomagnesemia) play a major role in the formation of calcium oxalate stones.

Hypercalciuria: This is defined by a 24-hour urinary calcium excretion of more than 4 mg/kg/day (0.1 mmol/kg/day) in a child weighing < 60 kg. In infants younger than three months, 5 mg/kg/day (0.125 mmol/kg/day) is considered to be the upper limit for normal calcium excretion [631].

Hypercalciuria can be classified as either idiopathic or secondary. Idiopathic hypercalciuria is diagnosed when clinical, laboratory, and radiographic investigations fail to delineate an underlying cause leading to hypercalcaemia. Urinary calcium may increase in patients with high sodium chloride intake. Secondary hypercalciuria occurs when a known process produces excessive urinary calcium. In secondary (hypercalciemic) hypercalciuria, a high serum calcium level may be due to increased bone resorption (hyperparathyroidism, hyperthyroidism, immobilisation, acidosis, metastatic disease) or gastrointestinal hyperabsorption (hypervitaminosis D) [632].

A good screening test for hypercalciuria compares the ratio of urinary calcium to creatinine. The normal calcium-to-creatinine ratio in children is less than 0.2. If the calculated ratio is higher than 0.2, repeat testing is indicated. Neonates and infants have a higher calcium excretion and lower creatinine excretion than older children [631, 632]. If the follow-up ratios are normal, then no additional testing for hypercalciuria is needed.
However, if the ratio remains elevated, a timed 24-hour urine collection should be obtained and the calcium excretion calculated.

The 24-hour calcium excretion test is the standard criterion for the diagnosis of hypercalciuria. If calcium excretion is higher than 4 mg/kg/day (0.1 mmol/kg/day), the diagnosis of hypercalciuria is confirmed and further evaluation is warranted: levels of serum bicarbonate, creatinine, alkaline phosphatase, calcium, phosphorus, magnesium, pH, and parathyroid hormone. Freshly voided urine should be measured for pH [631-634]. In addition to calcium, the 24-hour urine analysis should also include phosphorus, sodium, magnesium, uric acid, citrate and oxalate.

Initial management is always to increase fluid intake and urinary flow. Dietary modification is a mandatory part of effective therapy. The child should be referred to a dietician to assess accurately the daily intake of calcium, animal protein, and sodium. Dietary sodium restriction is recommended as well as maintenance of calcium intake consistent with the daily needs of the child [635]. A brief trial of a low-calcium diet can be carried out to determine if exogenous calcium intake and/or calcium hyperabsorption is contributing to high urinary calcium. Any recommendation to restrict calcium intake below the daily needs of the child should be avoided. Moreover, low calcium intake is a risk factor for stone formation [636] (LE: 3).

Hydrochlorothiazide and other thiazide-type diuretics may be used to treat idiopathic hypercalciuria, especially with calcium renal leak, at a starting dosage of 0.5-1 mg/kg/day [637-640] (LE: 3). In long-term use of thiazide-type diuretics, a decrease in hypocalciuric effect may be seen after the third month and may cause hypokalemia, hypocitraturia, hyperuricaemia and hypomagnesaemia. Therefore, control of blood and serum values should be performed with regular intervals. Citrate therapy is also useful if citrate levels are low or if hypercalciuria persists, despite other therapies [637, 641] (LE: 4).

Hyperoxaluria: Only 10-15% of oxalate comes from diet. The average child excretes less than 50 mg (0.57 mmol)/1.73 m²/day [642-644], while infants excrete four times as much. Hyperoxaluria may result from increased dietary intake, enteric hyperabsorption (as in short bowel syndrome) or an inborn error of metabolism.

In rare primary hyperoxaluria, one of the two liver enzymes that play a role in the metabolism of oxalate may be deficient. With increased deposition of calcium oxalate in the kidneys, renal failure may ensue in resulting deposition of calcium oxalate in other tissues (oxalosis). The diagnosis is made upon laboratory findings of severe hyperoxaluria and clinical symptoms. The definitive diagnosis requires liver biopsy to assay the enzyme activity.

Other forms of hyperoxaluria, as mentioned earlier, may be due to hyperabsorption of oxalate in inflammatory bowel syndrome, pancreatitis and short bowel syndrome. Yet, the majority of children have ‘mild’ (idiopathic) hyperoxaluria, with urine oxalate levels elevated only mildly in these cases. The treatment of hyperoxaluria consists of the promotion of high urine flow, restriction of dietary oxalate and regular calcium intake. Pyridoxine may be useful in reducing urine levels, especially in primary hyperoxaluria. Citrate administration increases inhibitory urine activity [637, 645] (LE: 4).

Hypocitraturia: Citrate is a urinary stone inhibitor. Citrate acts by binding to calcium and by directly inhibiting the growth and aggregation of calcium oxalate as well as calcium phosphate crystals. Thus low urine citrate may be a significant cause of calcium stone disease. In adults, hypocitraturia is the excretion of citrate in urine of less than 320 mg/day (1.5 mmol/day) for adults; this value must be adjusted for children depending on body size [646-648].

Hypocitraturia usually occurs in the absence of any concurrent symptoms or any known metabolic derangements. It may also occur in association with any metabolic acidosis, distal tubular acidosis or diarrhoeal syndromes.

Environmental factors that lower urinary citrate include a high protein intake and excessive salt intake. Many reports emphasise the significance of hypocitraturia in paediatric calcium stone disease. The presence of hypocitraturia ranges from 30% to 60% in children with calcium stone disease [648, 649].

The restoration of normal citrate levels is advocated to reduce stone formation, although there are few relevant studies in children. Hypocitraturia is treated by potassium citrate at a starting dose of 1 mEq/kg, given in two divided doses [647] (LE: 3). The side effects of potassium citrate are very rare and most of the time they include non-specific gastrointestinal complaints. Potassium citrate should be used with caution in hyperkalemic and chronic renal failure conditions.
3.14.2.2 Uric acid stones

Uric acid stones are responsible for urinary calculi in 4-8% of children. Uric acid is the end product of purine metabolism. Hyperuricosuria is the main cause of uric acid stone formation in children. A daily output of uric acid of more than 10 mg/kg/day (0.6 mmol/kg/day) is considered to be hyperuricosuria [637].

The formation of uric acid stones is mainly dependent on the presence of acidic urinary composition. Uric acid dissociation and solubility is strongly reduced at pH of < 5.8. As the pH becomes more alkaline, uric acid crystals become more soluble and the risk of uric acid stone formation is reduced.

In the familial or idiopathic form of hyperuricosuria, children usually have normal serum uric acid levels. In other children, it can be caused by uric acid overproduction secondary to inborn errors of metabolism, myeloproliferative disorders or other causes of cell breakdown. Hyperuricosuria is also caused by high purine and protein intake. Although hyperuricosuria is a risk factor for calcium oxalate stone formation in adults, this does not appear to be a significant risk factor in children.

Uric acid stones are non-opaque stones. Plain X-rays are insufficient to show uric acid stones, and renal sonography and spiral CT are used for diagnosis.

Alkalinisation of urine is the mainstay of therapy and prevention for uric acid stones. Citrate preparations are useful as alkalinising agents. Maintaining a urine pH of 6 to 6.5 is sufficient to prevent uric acid stones [637]. In cases who failed with conservative measures with sustaining hyperuricosuria and hyperuricemia, stone recurrences or myeloproliferative diseases, allopurinol (10 mg/kg) may be used. This medication may cause several drug reactions (rash, diarrhoea, eosinophilia) and should be cautiously used in chronic renal failure patients.

3.14.2.3 Cystine stones

Cystinuria is the cause of cystine stone formation and accounts for 2-6% of all urinary stones in children. Cystinuria is an incompletely recessive autosomal disorder characterised by failure of renal tubules to reabsorb four basic amino acids: cystine, ornithine, lysine and arginine.

Of these four amino acids, only cystine has poor solubility in urine, so that only cystine stones may form in the case of excessive excretion in urine. Cystine solubility is pH-dependent, with cystine precipitation beginning at pH levels < 7.0. Other metabolic conditions, such as hypercalciuria, hypocitraturia and hyperuricosuria, may accompany cystinuria, so leading to the formation of mixed-composition stones. Cystine stones are faintly radiopaque and may be difficult to visualise on regular radiograph studies. They are also hard in texture and more difficult to disintegrate by extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy (SWL).

The medical treatment for cystine stones aims to reduce cystine saturation in urine and increase its solubility. The initial treatment consists of maintaining a high urine flow and the use of alkalinising agents, such as potassium citrate to maintain urine pH at above 7.0 (better above 7.5). If this treatment fails, the use of alphamercaptopropionyl glycine or D-penicilamin may increase cystine solubility and reduce cystine levels in urine and prevent stone formation. Side effects of these drugs are mostly mild and include gastrointestinal complaints (alterations in taste and odour), fever and rash, however they can be associated with severe side effects, such as bone marrow depression, nephrotic syndrome and epidermolysis [650] (LE: 4).

3.14.2.4 Infection stones (struvite stones)

Infection-related stones constitute nearly 5% of urinary stones in children, though incidence increases over 10% in younger ages [651] and in non-endemic regions [630, 652]. Bacteria capable of producing urease enzyme (Proteus, Klebsiella, Pseudomonas) are responsible for the formation of such stones.

Urease converts urea into ammonia and bicarbonate, alkalinising the urine and further converting bicarbonate into carbonate. In the alkaline environment, triple phosphates form, eventually resulting in a supersaturated environment of magnesium ammonium phosphate and carbonate apatite, which in turn leads to stone formation.

In addition to bacterial elimination, stone elimination is essential for treatment, as stones will harbour infection and antibiotic treatment will not be effective. Consideration should be given to investigating any congenital problem that causes stasis and infection. Genitourinary tract anomalies predispose to formation of such stones.

3.14.3 Diagnostic evaluation

Presentation tends to be age-dependent, with symptoms such as flank pain and haematuria being more common in older children. Non-specific symptoms (e.g. irritability, vomiting) are common in very young children. Haematuria, usually visible, occurring with or without pain, is less common in children. However, non-visible haematuria may be the sole indicator and is more common in children. In some cases, urinary infection may be the only finding leading to radiological imaging in which a stone is identified [653, 654].
3.14.3.1 Imaging
Generally, US should be used as a first study. Renal US is very effective for identifying stones in the kidney. Many radiopaque stones can be identified with a simple abdominal flat-plate examination. The most sensitive test for identifying stones in the urinary system (especially for ureteric stones) is non-contrast helical CT scanning. It is safe and rapid, with 97% sensitivity and 96% specificity [655-657] (LE: 2). Despite its high diagnostic accuracy, because of the potential radiation hazards, its use should be reserved for cases with non-informative US and/or plain abdominal roentgenogram. Low dose protocols have also been developed with the goal of reducing radiation dose with adequate image quality [658]. Intravenous pyelography is rarely used in children, but may be needed to delineate the caliceal anatomy prior to percutaneous or open surgery.

3.14.3.2 Metabolic evaluation
Due to the high incidence of predisposing factors for urolithiasis in children and high stone recurrence rates, every child with urinary stone should be given a complete metabolic evaluation [624, 659-661].

Metabolic evaluation includes:
- family and patient history of metabolic problems and dietary habits;
- analysis of stone composition (following stone analysis, metabolic evaluation can be modified according to the specific stone type);
- electrolytes, blood/urea/nitrogen (BUN), creatinine, calcium, phosphorus, alkaline phosphatase, uric acid, total protein, carbonate, albumin, and parathyroid hormone (if there is hypercalcaemia);
- spot urinalysis and culture, including ratio of calcium to creatinine;
- urine tests, including a 24-hour urine collection for calcium, phosphorus, magnesium, oxalate, uric acid citrate, protein, and creatinine clearance;
- 24-hour cystine analysis if cystinuria is suspected (positive sodium nitroprusside test, cystine stone, cystine hexagonal crystals in urine).

Figure 8 provides an algorithm of how to perform metabolic investigations in urinary stone disease in children and how to plan medical treatment accordingly.
**Management**

With the advance of technology stone management has changed from open surgical approaches to endoscopic techniques that are less invasive. Deciding the type of treatment depends on the number, size, location, stone composition and the anatomy of the urinary tract [659, 662, 663]. Expectant management is the initial management in children with asymptomatic small size stones (< 4-5 mm) with a possibility of spontaneous clearance. There is no consensus on the size of stones for different ages eligible for clearance and the duration of conservative follow-up. Adult literature reveals the benefits of medical expulsive therapy (MET) using α-blockers. Although, experience in children is limited showing different results [664], a recent meta-analysis of three randomised and two retrospective studies demonstrate that treatment with MET results in increased odds of spontaneous ureteral stone passage and a low rate of adverse events [665]. Currently, most paediatric stones can easily be managed by shockwave lithotripsy (SWL). Endoscopic treatment can be applied for ureteric and bladder stones. Percutaneous removal of stones is also possible for kidney stones in paediatriic stone patient.

---

**Ca = calcium; HCTZ = hydrochlorothiazide; Mg = magnesium; Ox = oxalate; PTH = parathyroid hormone; SWL = extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy; RTA = renal tubular acidosis; Uric-A = uric acid.**
children. Only a small portion of children will require open surgery but all attempts must be made to completely remove all stones since post-operative residual fragments pass spontaneously in only 20-25% of cases [666, 667]. A congenital obstructive uropathy should be managed together with stone removal therapy to prevent recurrence.

3.14.4.1 Extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy

Many reports confirm that SWL can be performed in children with no suspicion of long-term morbidity of the kidney [668-675].

The mean number of shockwaves for each treatment is approximately 1,800 and 2,000 (up to 4,000 if needed) and the mean power settings vary between 14 kV and 21 kV. The use of US and digital fluoroscopy has significantly decreased the radiation exposure and it has been shown that children are exposed to significantly lower doses of radiation compared to adults [662, 676, 677]. Concerns about anaesthesia no longer present a problem due to advances in technique and medication, even in the infant age group. The type of anaesthesia should be general or dissociative for children under ten years of age, whereas conventional intravenous sedation or patient-controlled analgesia is an option for older children who are able to co-operate [678] (LE: 2b).

Stone-free rates are significantly affected by various factors. Regardless of the location, as the stone size increases, the stone-free rates decrease and re-treatment rate increases. The stone-free rates for < 1 cm, 1-2 cm, > 2 cm and overall, were reported as nearly 90%, 80%, 60% and 80%, respectively. As the stone size increases, the need for additional sessions increases [662, 676, 677, 679-683].

Localisation of the calculi has been described as a significant factor affecting the success rates in different studies. Stones in the renal pelvis and upper ureter seem to respond better to SWL. For these locations, the stone clearance rates are nearly 90%. However, SWL was found to be less effective for caliceal stones particularly the lower caliceal stones. Several studies reported stone-free rates for isolated lower caliceal stones varying between 50% and 62% [684-687].

Shockwave lithotripsy can also be used to treat ureteral calculi. However, this is a more specific issue and controversial. The success rates with SWL are less for distal ureteric stones. There may also be technical problems with localisation and focusing of ureteric stones in children [684-686, 688, 689].

The type of machine used has a strong effect on success rates and complications. First-generation machines can deliver more energy to a larger focal zone, resulting in higher fragmentation rates in a single therapy. However, general anaesthesia is usually required due to the intolerable discomfort associated with a first-generation machine. Later-generation machines have a smaller focal zone and deliver less energy, and have a lower risk of pulmonary trauma, however, additional treatments may be needed. The success rate is higher in younger children [682].

Although stenting does not affect stone clearance, overall complication rates are higher and hospital stay is longer in the unstented patient [681, 682]. Stenting is essential in solitary kidneys undergoing SWL treatment. Children with a large stone burden have a high risk of developing Steinstrasse and urinary obstruction and should be followed more closely for the risk of prolonged urinary tract obstruction after SWL. Post-SWL stent or nephrostomy tube placement may be needed in prolonged obstruction [660, 683].

The Hounsefield Unit (HU) of stone on noncontrast tomography has also been shown to be a predictive factor for success in children and SWL was found to be more successful in stones with HU less than 600 [667] and 1000 [690]. Two nomogram studies revealed male gender, younger age, smaller stone size, single stone, non-lower pole localisation and negative history for previous intervention are favourable factors for stone clearance in paediatric SWL [691, 692].

Complications arising from SWL in children are usually self-limiting and transient. The most common are:

- renal colic;
- transient hydronephrosis;
- dermal ecchymosis;
- UTI;
- formation of Steinstrasse;
- sepsis;
- rarely, haemoptysis.

In children with sterile pre-operative urine cultures, antibiotic prophylaxis to decrease infectious complications is not recommended [893]. However, every effort should be made to sterilise the urine before performing SWL, ureteroscopy (URS), or percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PNL).

Because of the smaller size of the probes, laser energy is easier to use in smaller instruments and is more useful for paediatric cases [694-703].
3.14.4.2 Percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PCNL)

Shockwave lithotripsy is the first choice for treating most renal paediatric stones. However, percutaneous renal surgery should be used for larger and complex stones. Pre-operative evaluation, indication and surgical technique are similar in children and adults. In most cases, PCNL is used as monotherapy, but is also used as an adjunctive procedure to other therapies.

The use of adult-sized instruments, in association with an increased number of tracts and sheath size, seems to increase blood loss. However, the development of small-calibre instruments means that PCNL can be used in children. In children (particularly smaller children), PCNL has some advantages, such as smaller skin incision, single-step dilation and sheath placement, good working access for paediatric instruments, variable length, and lower cost [693, 704, 705].

As monotherapy, PCNL is considerably effective and safe. The reported stone-free rates in the recent literature are between 86.9% and 98.5% after a single session. These rates increase with adjunctive measures, such as second-look PCNL, SWL and URS. Even in complete staghorn cases, a clearance rate of 89% has been achieved following a single session [694, 706-710].

The most frequently reported complications of PCNL in children are bleeding, post-operative fever or infection, and persistent urinary leakage. Bleeding requiring transfusion in the modern series is reported in less than 10% [711-716] and is closely associated with stone burden, operative time, sheath size and the number of tracts [711, 717, 718]. In recent studies, post-operative infectious complications, such as fever with or without documented UTI, are reported as less than 15% [711-713, 715, 716, 719] and the origin of fever is not always found to be the infection. With the availability of smaller size instruments, miniaturised PCNL (‘miniper') through a 13F or 14F sheath [704, 720, 721] as well as ultrami-PCNL (UMP) through 12F sheaths [722] have become possible, with decreased transfusion rates [720]. This miniaturisation has been further developed into the technique of ‘micro-perc' using a 4.85F ‘all-seeing needle’. This technique is still experimental and enables the stone to be fragmented by a laser in situ and left for spontaneous passage [723]. A recent study revealed that microperc provides a similar stone-free rate with similar complication rates and a lower additional treatment rate compared with SWL in the treatment of kidney stone disease in children [724] (LE: 3, GR: B). For stones 10-20 mm, micro-PNL was shown to have comparable results, with lesser bleeding, compared to mini-PCNL [725] (LE: 3, GR: B). As experience has accumulated in adult cases, new approaches have also started to be applied in children, including tubeless PCNL. This technique has been used in uncomplicated surgery for stones smaller than 2 cm, with patients left either with an indwelling catheter or double J stent in the ureter [714, 719] or totally tubeless [726]. Moreover, use of ultrasonography for establishment of access [727] and supine approach [728] were also reported to be feasible in children.

The mean post-operative hospital stay is similar to adults. It is reported as three to four days in all published literature and is much shorter than open surgery. The less invasive nature of this technique has made it a promising alternative to open surgery for treating renal stones in children (LE: 2; GR:B) [713-728].

3.14.4.3 Ureterorenoscopy

The increasing availability of smaller size endourological equipment has made it possible to manage paediatric ureteral stones using endoscopic techniques.

The technique used in children is similar to the one used in adults. It is strongly recommended that guide wires are used and the procedure is performed using direct vision. Routine balloon dilation of ureterovesical junction and ureteral stenting are controversial. In general, ureteric dilatation is being performed much less and only in selected cases. There is a tendency to use hydrodilatation more because it is similarly effective [693, 695, 696, 729-732] (LE: 3; GR: B).

Different lithotripsy techniques, including ultrasonic, pneumatic and laser lithotripsy, have all been shown to be safe and effective. Because of the smaller size of the probes, laser energy is easier to use in smaller instruments and is more useful for paediatric cases [694-703].

All studies reporting the use of endoscopy for ureteric stones in children have clearly demonstrated that there is no significant risk of ureteric strictures or reflux with this mode of therapy (LE: 1; GR: A). The risk of post-operative hydronephrosis depends on the presence of impacted stone and ureteral injury during operation [733]. A multi-institutional study on the use of semi-rigid ureteroscopy for ureteral calculi in children has revealed that the procedure is effective with a 90% stone-free rate and efficacy quotient. The study also focused on the factors affecting the complication rates. The authors found that although operating time, age, institutional experience, orifice dilation, stenting and stone burden were significant on univariate analysis, multivariate analysis revealed that operating time was the only significant parameter affecting the complication rate [734].

A recent literature review contains a growing number of case series on the use of flexible ureterorenoscopic interventions in children. Both intrarenal and ureteric stones can be treated using this approach [735-739]. In these series, the authors generally did not use active orifice dilation, but attempted to
use a ureteral sheath where possible. However, an important problem was the inability to obtain retrograde access to the ureter in approximately half of the cases [736, 737]. This problem can be overcome by stenting and leaving the stent indwelling for passive dilatation of the orifice, and performing the procedure in a second session. The success rates varied between 60 and 100%, with a negligible number of complications [735, 737-740]. The need for additional procedures was related to stone size [739]. A comparative study showed that retrograde intrarenal surgery (RIRS) had similar stone-free rate compared to ESWL after three months, with fewer sessions [741], however for stones larger than 2 cm, RIRS monotherapy has lower stone-free rates than mini-PCNL with the advantages of of decreased radiation exposure, fewer complications and shorter hospital stay [742] (LE: 3; GR: B). On the other hand, for stones between 10-20 mm, RIRS has similar success and complication rates and shorter hospital stay and low radiation exposure when compared to micro-PNL [743] (LE: 3; GR: B).

3.14.4.4 Open or laparoscopic stone surgery
Most stones in children can be managed by SWL and endoscopic techniques. However, in some situations, open surgery is inevitable. Good candidates for open stone surgery include very young children with large stones and/or a congenitally obstructed system, which also require surgical correction. Open surgery is also necessary in children with severe orthopaedic deformities that limit positioning for endoscopic procedures.

In centres with a well-established experience, a laparoscopic approach may be a good alternative for some cases as a last resort before open surgery. Suitable candidates include patients who have a history of previous failed endoscopic procedures, complex renal anatomy (ectopic or retrorenal colon), concomitant UPJ obstruction or caliceal diverticula, megaureter, or large impacted stones. Laparoscopic stone surgery via conventional or a robot-assisted transperitoneal or retroperitoneal approach can be attempted. However, there is very limited experience with these techniques and they are not routine therapeutic modalities [744-747].

Bladder stones in children can usually be managed by endoscopic techniques. Open surgery may also be used for very large bladder stones or for bladder stones caused by an anatomical problem.

In addition to advantage and disadvantage of each treatment modality for the specific size and location of the stone, one will have to consider the availability of the instruments and the experience with each treatment modality before the choice of technique. Recommendations for interventional management are given in Table 9.
Table 9: Recommendations for interventional management in paediatric stones

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stone size and localisation*</th>
<th>Primary treatment option</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Secondary treatment options</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Staghorn stones</td>
<td>PCNL</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Open/SWL</td>
<td>Multiple sessions and accesses with PCNL may be needed. Combination with SWL may be useful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvis &lt; 10 mm</td>
<td>SWL</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>RIRS/PCNL/MicroPerc</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvis 10-20 mm</td>
<td>SWL</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>PCNL/RIRS/MicroPerc/Open</td>
<td>Multiple sessions with SWL may be needed. PCNL has similar recommendation grade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvis &gt; 20 mm</td>
<td>PCNL</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>SWL/Open</td>
<td>Multiple sessions with SWL may be needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower pole calyx &lt; 10 mm</td>
<td>SWL</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>RIRS/PCNL/MicroPerc</td>
<td>Anatomical variations are important for complete clearance after SWL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower pole calyx &gt; 10 mm</td>
<td>PCNL</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>SWL/MicroPerc</td>
<td>Anatomical variations are important for complete clearance after SWL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper ureteric stones</td>
<td>SWL</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>PCNL/URS/Open</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower ureteric stones</td>
<td>URS</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>SWL/Open</td>
<td>Additional intervention need is high with SWL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder stones</td>
<td>Endoscopic</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td>Open is easier and with less operative time with large stones.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Cystine and uric acid stones excluded.

PCNL = percutaneous nephrolithostomy; SWL = shockwave lithotripsy; RIRS = retrograde intrarenal surgery; URS = ureteroscopy.

3.14.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of urinary stones

**Summary of evidence**

| The incidence of stone disease in children is increasing. | 2  |
| Contemporary surgical treatment is based on minimally invasive modalities. Open surgery is very rarely indicated. | 2a |
| The term ‘clinically insignificant residual fragments’ is not appropriate for children since most of them become symptomatic and require intervention. | 2b |

**Recommendations**

| Use plain abdominal X-ray and ultrasound (US) as the primary imaging techniques for the diagnosis and follow-up of stones. | 2b  | B  |
| Use low-dose non-contrast computed tomography (CT) in cases with a doubtful diagnosis, especially of ureteral stones or complex cases requiring surgery. | 2a  | B  |
| Perform a metabolic and anatomical evaluation in any child with urinary stone disease. | 2a  | B  |
| Any kind of interventional treatment should be supported with medical treatment for the underlying metabolic abnormality, if detected. | 2a  | B  |
| Open surgery may be done under circumstances in which the child is very young with large stones, in association with congenital problems requiring surgical correction and/or with severe orthopedic deformities that limit positioning for endoscopic procedures. | 2a  | B  |
| Use appropriately-sized instruments in order to decrease the number of complications during surgical treatment. | 2b  | B  |
3.15 Obstructive pathology of renal duplication: ureterocele and ectopic ureter

3.15.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Ureterocele and ectopic ureter are the two main anomalies associated with complete renal duplication, but they also occur in a single system. At present, antenatal US detects both conditions in the majority of cases if associated with obstruction, and diagnosis is confirmed after birth by further examination. Later in life, these anomalies are revealed by clinical symptoms: UTI, pain, calculus formation, disturbances of micturition, and urinary incontinence. There is a wide variation of symptoms in patients with ureterocele (from the asymptomatic patient to urosepsis, urinary retention and upper tract dilatation after birth).

3.15.1.1 Ureterocele

Ureterocele is 4-7 times more frequent in female than in male patients; the overall incidence in autopsies is around one in 4,000 children. Around 80% is associated with the upper pole ureter in duplicated systems and 20% in single systems. About 10% of ureteroceles are bilateral [748].

3.15.1.2 Ectopic ureter

Ectopic ureter is less frequent than ureterocele (10 in 19,046 autopsies), but is also more common in female patients (male to female ratio, 1:5). Some remain asymptomatic, therefore, the true incidence is difficult to determine [749]. Eighty per cent of ectopic ureters are associated with complete renal duplication; however, in male patients about 50% of ectopic ureters are associated with a single system [750].

3.15.2 Classification systems

3.15.2.1 Ureterocele

Ureterocele is a cystic dilatation that develops in the intravesical part of the submucosal ureter. The aetiology remains unclear [751-753]. A single-system ureterocele is associated with a kidney with one ureter, and in duplex systems, the ureterocele belongs to the upper pole.

Ureteroceles usually cause obstruction of the upper pole, but the degree of obstruction and functional impairment is variable according to the type of ureterocele and upper pole dysplasia. In the orthotopic form, there is often no or only mild obstruction, and frequently the function of the moiety is normal or slightly impaired, and the corresponding ureter may be dilated. Cystic renal dysplasia is also associated with a single system ureterocele [754, 755]. Vesicoureteral reflux can be observed in 50% on the ipsilateral side and 20% on the contralateral side. Reflux into the ureterocele is uncommon [756]. In the ectopic form, the upper pole is altered, frequently dysplastic, and hypo-functional or non-functional [757, 758]. The corresponding ureter is a mega-ureter. In the caeco-ureterocele (see definition below), the upper pole of the renal duplication is dysplastic and non-functional.

3.15.2.1.1 Ectopic (extravesical) ureterocele

If any portion of the ureterocele extends into the bladder neck or urethra, it is called an ectopic ureterocele. Ectopic ureteroceles are the most common form of ureterocele (> 80%). It can be voluminous, dissociating the trigone and slipping into the urethra, and may prolapse through the urethral meatus (caeco-ureterocele). The ureterocele orifice is tight, and located in the bladder itself or below the neck. The ureter corresponding to the lower pole moiety is raised by the ureterocele and is frequently refluxing or compressed by the ureterocele, leading to an obstructive megaureter. A contralateral renal duplication is associated in 50% of cases. Occasionally, large ureteroceles are responsible for reflux or obstruction of the contralateral upper tract.

3.15.2.1.2 Orthotopic (intravesical) ureterocele

The intravesical or orthotopic ureterocele is completely located in the bladder. Intravesical ureteroceles are mostly combined with a single kidney system and account for about 15% of cases. It is diagnosed more in older children or adults.

3.15.2.2 Ectopic ureter

The term ectopic ureter describes a ureter with the orifice located at the bladder neck, in the urethra, or outside the urinary tract. The ureter can drain the upper pole of a duplex or single system. There is a fundamental difference between the sexes. In boys, the ectopic orifice is never below the external sphincter.

In girls, the ureteral orifice may be located [759]:
- in the urethra, from the bladder neck to the meatus (35%);
- in the vaginal vestibule (34%);
- in the vagina (25%);
- in the uterus and Fallopian tube (6%).
In boys, the ureteral orifice may be located [759]:

- in the posterior urethra (47%);
- in the prostatic utricle (10%);
- in the seminal vesicles (33%);
- in the vas deferens or ejaculatory ducts (10%).

3.15.3 Diagnostic evaluation

3.15.3.1 Ureterocele

Prenatal US easily reveals voluminous obstructive ureteroceles [760, 761]. In cases with a small upper pole or a slightly obstructive ureteroceles, prenatal diagnosis is difficult.

If prenatal diagnosis is impossible, the following clinical symptoms, besides incidental findings, can reveal the congenital anomaly at birth or later:

- At birth, a prolapsed and sometimes strangulated ureterocele may be observed in front of the urethral orifice. In a newborn boy, it might cause acute urinary retention, simulating urethral valves.
- The early symptom of pyelonephritis in either sex may lead to the diagnosis.
- Later symptoms can include dysuria, recurrent cystitis and urgency.

In cases of prenatal diagnosis, at birth, US confirms the ureteral dilatation that ends at the upper pole of a renal duplication. It also demonstrates the presence of a ureterocele in the bladder, with a dilated ureter behind the bladder.

At this point, it is important to assess the function of the upper pole using nuclear renography of the region of interest. This is best assessed with DMSA [762-764]. Magnetic resonance urography may visualise the morphological status of the upper pole and lower moieties and of the contralateral kidney, but cannot reliably predict histology [765]. Based on the prevalence of high-grade reflux, VCUG is mandatory for identifying ipsilateral or contralateral reflux, and assessing the degree of intra-urethral prolapse of the ureterocele [766]. Urethrocystoscopy may reveal the pathology in cases where it is difficult to make the differential diagnosis between ureterocele and ectopic mega-ureter.

3.15.3.2 Ectopic ureter

Most of the ectopic mega-ureters are diagnosed primarily by US.

In some cases, clinical symptoms can lead to diagnosis:

- In neonates: dribbling of urine, pyuria, and acute pyelonephritis.
- In young girls: permanent urinary incontinence besides normal voiding, or significant vaginal discharge as the equivalent of incontinence; an ectopic orifice may be found in the meatal region [767].
- In pre-adolescent boys: epididymitis is the usual clinical presentation and the seminal vesicle may be palpable.

Ultrasound, radionuclide studies (DMSA, VCUG, MR urography, high-resolution MRI, and cystoscopy) are the diagnostic tools to assess function, to detect reflux and rule out ipsilateral compression of the lower pole and urethral obstruction [768]. In some cases, the large ectopic ureter presses against the bladder and can look like a pseudo-ureterocele [769, 770].

Girls who present with lifelong minimal urinary incontinence, never being dry, normal bladder function, complete emptying, and normal US are very suspicious for ectopic ureter. This needs to be excluded or confirmed by MRI as the most sensitive method [771]. Filling the bladder with methylene blue and checking for clear urine output from the vagina can give clear evidence of extra-sphincteric ureteral ectopia. This test is also helpful in confirming a vesicovaginal fistula (in this case blue fluid drains from the vagina).

3.15.4 Management

3.15.4.1 Ureterocele

Management is controversial with a choice between a non-operative approach, endoscopic decompression, ureteral re-implantation, partial nephroureterectomy, or complete primary reconstruction [772-777]. The choice of a therapeutic modality depends on the following criteria: clinical status of the patient (e.g. urosepsis); patient age; function of the upper pole; presence of reflux or obstruction of the ipsilateral or contralateral ureter; presence of bladder neck obstruction caused by ureterocele; intravesical or ectopic ureterocele; and parents’ and surgeon’s preferences [778]: When the diagnosis is made by US, prophylactic antibiotic treatment is indicated until a VCUG is performed.

3.15.4.1.1 Early treatment

In the presence of febrile infection or obstruction at the bladder neck, immediate endoscopic incision or puncture of the ureterocele is recommended. In a clinically asymptomatic child with a ureterocele and a non
or hypofunctional upper pole, without significant obstruction of the lower pole and without bladder outlet obstruction, prophylactic antibiotic treatment is given until follow-up procedures are instigated.

3.15.4.1.2 Re-evaluation
Conservative treatment may be adopted in asymptomatic patients without any bladder outlet obstruction, severe hydroureteronephrosis of the ureterocele moiety or high-grade (over grade III) reflux [778, 779]. If decompression is effective and there is no reflux (~25% of cases and more often in intravesical ureterocele), the patient is followed-up conservatively. After an endoscopic incision, most of the children with an extravesical ureterocele (50-80%) need a secondary procedure, compared with only 18% of those with an intravesical ureterocele [750]. Secondary surgery is necessary if decompression is not effective, significant reflux is present, or there is obstruction of the ipsi- or contralateral ureters, and/or bladder neck obstruction or retained ureterocele [780].

Surgery may vary from upper pole nephrectomy to complete unilateral LUT reconstruction [756, 776, 781-784]. In an ectopic ureterocele with severe hydroureteronephrosis and without reflux, the primary upper tract approach without endoscopic decompression (partial upper-pole nephroureterectomy, pyelo/ureteropyelo/ureterostomy and upper-pole ureterectomy) has an 80% chance of being the definitive treatment [778, 785].

Figure 9: Algorithm for the management of duplex system ureteroceles after the first 3-6 months of life [778]

DSU = duplex system ureterocele; HUN = hydroureteronephrosis; UPPN = upper pole partial nephrectomy; VUR = vesicoureteric reflux to the lower pole.

Obstruction is considered to be the presence of non-refluxing dilatation of non-ureterocele-bearing moieties (especially of the lower pole) or of an obstructive drainage pattern on diuretic renography.

3.15.4.2 Ectopic ureter
In the majority of cases, the upper pole is dysplastic and heminephro-ureterectomy should be considered. Ureteral reconstruction (ureteral re-implantation/ureteroureterostomy/ureteropyelostomy and upper-pole ureterectomy) is a therapeutic option in cases in which the upper pole has function worth preserving. Both procedures can be performed through an open or laparoscopic approach [786-788]. In patients with bilateral single ectopic ureters (a very rare condition), an individual approach depending on the sex and renal and bladder function of the patient is necessary. Usually the bladder neck is insufficient in these patients [789-792].
3.15.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of obstructive pathology of renal duplication: ureterocele and ectopic ureter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ureterocele and ectopic ureter are associated with complete renal duplication, but they also occur in a single system.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In most cases, in young children (first years of life) diagnosis is done by US.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In older children clinical symptoms will prompt assessment.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management includes a conservative approach, endoscopic decompression, partial nephroureterectomy, or complete primary reconstruction. Choice of treatment will depend on:</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• clinical status of the patient (e.g., urosepsis);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• patient age;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• function of the upper pole;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• presence of reflux or obstruction of the ipsilateral or contralateral ureter;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• presence of bladder neck obstruction caused by ureterocele;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• intravesical or ectopic ureterocele;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• and parents’ and surgeon’s preferences.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ureterocele</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis</td>
<td>Use ultrasound (US), radionuclide studies (mercaptoacetyltriglycine (MAG3)/dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA)), voiding cystourethrography (VCUG), magnetic resonance urography, high-resolution magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and cystoscopy to assess function, to detect reflux and rule out ipsilateral compression of the lower pole and urethral obstruction.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment</td>
<td>Select treatment based on symptoms, function and reflux as well on surgical and parenteral choices: observation, endoscopic decompression, ureteral re-implantation, partial nephroureterectomy, complete primary reconstruction.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer conservative treatment to patients (single/duplex systems) with no hydronephrosis and no symptoms, the risk for renal injury is low and conservative treatment is a good option.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer endoscopic treatment to patients with reflux; open re-implantation especially in dilating reflux provides better results.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer, early endoscopic decompression to patients with an obstructing ureterocele. In half to two-thirds of children with an extravesical ureterocele a secondary procedure is needed (compared to 20-25% of those with an intravesical ureterocele).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer heminephrectomy to patients with a non-functioning moiety and symptoms.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ectopic ureter</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis</td>
<td>Use US, DMSA scan, VCUG or MRI for a definitive diagnosis.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment</td>
<td>Select the most appropriate treatment option based on the function of the upper urinary tract.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer (hemi-)nephroureterectomy in poorly or non-functioning moieties.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer ureteral re-implantation, ureteroureterostomy or ureteropyelostomy to patients with a functioning renal moiety, especially in cases in which the upper pole has function worth preserving.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.16 Disorders of sex development

3.16.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

The formerly called ‘intersex disorders’ were recently the subject of a consensus document in which it was decided that the term ‘intersex’ should be changed to ‘disorders of sex development’ (DSD) [793, 794].

The new classification has arisen because of advances in knowledge of the molecular genetic causes of abnormal sexual development, controversies inherent to clinical management and ethical issues. Controversial and negative terminology, e.g. ‘pseudohermaphroditism’ and ‘hermaphroditism’, have been renamed according to the new pathophysiological insights. Furthermore, some conditions presenting with
severe male genital malformation, such as penile agenesis and cloacal extrophy, which could not be categorised, have also been included. The term ‘disorders of sex development’ is proposed to indicate congenital conditions with atypical development of chromosomal, gonadal or anatomical sex. This will also include the idiopathic micropenis which is addressed here as a separate heading.

We refer to the consensus document as a general guideline, while this chapter will focus on what is relevant for the practising paediatric urologist. As the urologist is likely to be involved in both surgical and non-surgical neonatal work, this chapter will discuss the neonatal emergency and the diagnostic and therapeutic role of the paediatric urologist.

Overall, there is a low evidence base in the published literature on DSD. There are no RCTs and most studies are based on retrospective clinical descriptive studies (LE: 4) or on expert opinion. An exception is the risk of gonadal cancer, for which the LE is higher.

Disorders of sex development can present as prenatal diagnosis, neonatal diagnosis and late diagnosis. Prenatal diagnosis can be based on karyotype or US findings, neonatal diagnosis is based on genital ambiguity and late diagnosis is made on early or delayed puberty. In this guideline focus is on the neonatal presentation where the paediatric urologist plays a major role. For late diagnosis we refer to endocrinology and gynaecology guidelines on precocious and delayed puberty where paediatric urologists play a minor role [795, 796].

The diagnosis and treatment of DSD requires a multi-disciplinary approach, which should include geneticists, neonatologists, paediatric and adult endocrinologists, gynaecologists, psychologists, ethicists and social workers. Each team member should be specialised in DSD and a team should have enough patients to ensure experience.

### 3.16.1.1 Micropenis

Micropenis is a small but otherwise normally formed penis with a stretched length of < 2.5 SD below the mean [793, 794, 797]. Besides an idiopathic micropenis, two major causes of abnormal hormonal stimulation have been identified:

- hypogonadotropic hypogonadism (due to an inadequate secretion of GnRH);
- hypergonadotropic hypogonadism (due to failure of the testes to produce testosterone).

The penis is measured on the dorsal aspect, while stretching the penis, from the pubic symphysis to the tip of the glans [793]. The corpora cavernosa are palpated, the scrotum is often small, and the testes may be small and descended. Micropenis should be distinguished from buried and webbed penis, which is usually of normal size. The initial evaluation has to define whether the aetiology of the micropenis is central (hypothalamic/pituitary) or testicular. A paediatric endocrinology work-up has to be carried out immediately. Karyotyping is mandatory in all patients with a micropenis. Endocrine testicular function is assessed (baseline and stimulated testosterone, LH and FSH serum levels). Stimulated hormone levels may also give an idea of the growth potential of the penis. In patients with non-palpable testes and hypogonadotropic hypogonadism, laparoscopy should be carried out to confirm vanishing testes syndrome or intra-abdominal undescended hypoplastic testes. This investigation can be delayed until the age of one year [794].

Pituitary or testicular insufficiency are treated by the paediatric endocrinologist. In patients with testicular failure and proven androgen sensitivity, androgen therapy is recommended during childhood and at puberty to stimulate the growth of the penis [798-801] (LE: 2). In the presence of androgen insensitivity, good outcome of sexual function is questioned and gender conversion can be considered [802-804].

### 3.16.2 Diagnostic evaluation

#### 3.16.2.1 The neonatal emergency

The first step is to recognise the possibility of DSD (Table 10) and to refer the newborn baby immediately to a tertiary paediatric centre, fully equipped with neonatal, genetics, endocrinology and paediatric urology units. At the paediatric centre, the situation should be explained to the parents fully and kindly. Registering and naming the newborn should be delayed as long as necessary.

A careful family history must be taken followed by a thorough clinical examination (Table 11).
Table 10: Findings in a newborn suggesting the possibility of DSD (adapted from the American Academy of Pediatrics)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Apparent male</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Severe hypospadias associated with bifid scrotum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undescended testis/testes with hypospadias</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilateral non-palpable testes in a full-term apparently male infant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Apparent female</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clitoral hypertrophy of any degree, non-palpable gonads</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vulva with single opening</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indeterminate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambiguous genitalia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11: Diagnostic work-up of neonates with disorders of sex development

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>History (family, maternal, neonatal)</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parental consanguinity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous DSD or genital anomalies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous neonatal deaths</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary amenorrhoea or infertility in other family members</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maternal exposure to androgens</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure to thrive, vomiting, diarrhoea of the neonate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Physical examination</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pigmentation of genital and areolar area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypospadias or urogenital sinus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size of phallus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palpable and/or symmetrical gonads</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Investigations</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blood analysis: 17-hydroxyprogesterone, electrolytes, LH, FSH, TST, cortisol, ACTH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urine: adrenal steroids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karyotype</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrasound</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitogram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hCG stimulation test</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Androgen-binding studies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endoscopy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ACTH = adrenocorticotropic hormone; FSH = follicle-stimulating hormone; hCG = human chorionic gonadotropin; LH = luteinising hormone; TST = testosterone.

3.16.2.1.2 Choice of laboratory investigations
The following laboratory investigations are mandatory:
- karyotype;
- plasma 17-hydroxyprogesterone assay;
- plasma electrolytes;
- ultrasound to evaluate the presence of Müllerian duct structures.

These investigations will provide evidence of congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH), which is the most frequently occurring DSD. If this evidence is found, no further investigation is needed. If not, then the laboratory work-up should proceed further.

The hCG stimulation test is particularly helpful in differentiating the main syndromes of 46XYDSD by evaluating Leydig cell potential. When testosterone metabolism is evaluated, the presence or absence of metabolites will help to define the problem. An extended stimulation can help to define phallic growth potential and to induce testicular descent in some cases of associated cryptorchidism.

3.16.2.2 Gender assignment
This is a very complicated task. It should take place after a definitive diagnosis has been made.
The idea that an individual is sex-neutral at birth and that rearing determines gender development is no longer the standard approach. Instead, gender assignment decisions should be based upon:

- age at presentation;
- fertility potential;
- size of the penis;
- presence of a functional vagina;
- endocrine function;
- malignancy potential;
- antenatal testosterone exposure;
- general appearance;
- psychosocial well-being and a stable gender identity;
- sociocultural aspect;
- parental opinions.

Each patient presenting with DSD should be assigned a gender as quickly as a thorough diagnostic evaluation permits. Minimal time needed is 48 hours. During this period any referral to gender should be avoided, better to address the patient as “the child”, “your child”.

3.16.2.3 Role of the paediatric urologist
The role of the paediatric urologist can be divided into a diagnostic role and a therapeutic role (Table 12). Each of these roles will be discussed briefly.

Table 12: Role of the paediatric urologist

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnostic role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinical examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrasound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnostic laparoscopy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Therapeutic role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculinising surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminising surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gonadectomy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.16.2.3.1 Clinical examination
A thorough clinical examination in a neonate presenting with ambiguous genitalia is important. As well as an accurate description of the ambiguous genitalia, detailed information should be given on palpability and localisation of the gonads. Information gathered by the various examinations described below should help the team to come to a final diagnosis.

Palpable gonad. If it is possible to feel a gonad, it is almost certainly a testis; this clinical finding therefore virtually excludes 46XX DSD.

Medical photography can be useful but requires sensitivity and consent [805].

Phallus. The phallus should be measured. A cotton bud placed at the suprapubic base of the implant of the stretched phallus allows for a good measurement of phallic length.

Urogenital sinus opening. The opening of the urogenital sinus must be well evaluated. Is there only one opening visible? Can a hymenal ring be seen? What does the fusion of the labioscrotal folds look like; do the folds show rugae or some discoloration?

3.16.2.3.2 Investigations
Ultrasound can help to describe the palpated gonads or to detect non-palpable gonads. However, the sensitivity and specificity are not high. On US, the Müllerian structures can be evaluated. Is there a vagina? Are there some abdominal gonads? Is there a vaginal or utricular structure visible [806, 807]?
Genitography can provide some more information on the urogenital sinus. How low or how high is the confluence? Is there any duplication of the vagina? How does the urethra relate to the vagina?

General anaesthesia. In some cases, further examinations under general anaesthesia can be helpful. On cystoscopy, the urogenital sinus can be evaluated and the level of confluence between the bladder neck and the bladder. Cystoscopy can also be used to evaluate the vagina or utriculus, e.g. the presence of a cervix at the top of the vagina can be important information.

Laparoscopy is necessary to obtain a final diagnosis on the presence of impalpable gonads and on the presence of Müllerian structures. If indicated, a gonadal biopsy can be performed [808, 809].

3.16.3 Management
Referring to the consensus document [793, 794], it is clear that the timing of surgery is much more controversial than it used to be. The rationale for early surgery includes:
- beneficial effects of oestrogen on infant tissue;
- avoiding complications from anatomical anomalies;
- minimising family distress;
- mitigating the risks of stigmatisation and gender-identity confusion [810].

However, adverse outcomes have led to recommendations to delay unnecessary surgery to an age when the patient can give informed consent. Surgery that alters appearance is not urgent. Early surgery should be reserved for those patients with high confluent urogenital tracts, girls with severely masculinised genitalia and boys with undervirilised genitals. Vaginoplasty should be delayed until puberty and milder forms of masculinisation should not be treated surgically. Recently the ESPU and SPU have taken a position in the debate on surgery for DSD [811].

3.16.3.1 Feminising surgery
Clitororeduction. Reduction of an enlarged clitoris should be done with preservation of the neurovascular bundle. Clitoral surgery has been reported to have an adverse outcome on sexual function and should therefore be limited to severely enlarged clitorises [812, 813]. Informed parental consent should be obtained. Although some techniques that conserve erectile tissue have been described, the long-term outcome is unknown [814].

Separation of the vagina and the urethra is preserved for high confluence anomalies. Many techniques for urogenital sinus repair have been described, but their outcome has not been evaluated prospectively [815, 816].

Vaginoplasty should be performed during the teenage years. Every technique (self-dilatation, skin or bowel substitution) has its specific advantages and disadvantages [817]. All carry a potential for scarring that would require further surgery before sexual function was possible.

Aesthetic refinements. The goals of genital surgery are to maximise anatomy to allow sexual function and romantic partnering. Aesthetics are important in this perspective. The reconstruction of minor labiae from an enlarged clitoral hood is an example of aesthetic refinement.

3.16.3.2 Masculinising surgery
Hormone therapy early in life is advocated by many doctors. The level of evidence is low for restoration of normal penile size.

Hypospadias surgery. See section on hypospadias (Chapter 3.5).

Excision of Mullerian structures. In the DSD patient assigned a male gender, Müllerian structures should be excised. There is no evidence on whether utricular cysts need to be excised.

Orchiopexy. See section on orchiopexy (Chapter 3.2).

Phalloplasty. Increasing experience of phalloplasty in the treatment of female to male transsexual patients has led to reports about the reliability and feasibility of this technique. It has therefore become available to treat severe penile inadequacy in DSD patients.

Aesthetic refinements. These include correction of penoscrotal transposition, scrotoplasty and insertion of testicular prostheses.
Gonadectomy. Germ cell malignancy only occurs in patients with DSD who have Y-chromosomal material. The highest risk is seen in patients with gonadal dysgenesis and in patients with partial androgen insensitivity with intra-abdominal gonads (LE: 2). Intra-abdominal gonads of high-risk patients should be removed at the time of diagnosis [818].

3.16.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of disorders of sex development

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Timing of surgery will be dependent on the severity of the condition and on the assigned sex.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In boys the surgical correction will mainly consist of hypospadias repair and orchiopexy, so the timing will follow the recommendations for hypospadias repair and orchiopexy (from six months onwards and before two years of age).</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treat disorders of sex development (DSD) within a multi-disciplinary team.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refer children to experienced centres where neonatology, paediatric endocrinology, paediatric urology, child psychology and transition to adult care are guaranteed.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not delay treatment of any neonate presenting with ambiguous genitalia since salt-loss in a 46XX CAH girl can be fatal.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender assignment is imminent and should be based on multi-disciplinary consensus taking into account the latest knowledge.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not delay surgical treatment in girls presenting with severe anomalies.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer more conservative approaches in less severe cases, in consultation with the parents.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follow the recommendations for boys, for hypospadias repair and orchiopexy (from six months onwards and before two years of age).</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.17 Posterior urethral valves

3.17.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Posterior urethral valves (PUV) are one of the few life-threatening congenital anomalies of the urinary tract found during the neonatal period. Despite optimal treatment, PUV in children may result in renal insufficiency in nearly one-third of cases [819-821]. Posterior urethral valves are found in 1 in 1,250 in a population undergoing foetal US screening [519]. An incidence of PUV of 1 in 5,000-12,500 live-births has been estimated [822, 823]. In one report, up to 46% of foetuses with a PUV diagnosis were terminated, indicating a possible decrease in incidence [824].

3.17.2 Classification systems

3.17.2.1 Urethral valve

Despite recent attempts to introduce new classification terms, such as ‘congenital obstructive posterior urethral membrane’ (COPUM) [825], the original classification by Hugh Hampton Young remains the most commonly used [826].

Hugh Hampton Young described three categories: type I, type II and type III. However, today, only type I and type III are found to be obstructive. As type II seems to be more like a fold and not obstructive, it is no longer referred to as a valve. Hampton Young’s descriptions of type I and III are as follows:

Type I (90-95%). ‘In the most common type there is a ridge lying on the floor of the urethra, continuous with the verumontanum, which takes an anterior course and divides into two fork-like processes in the region of the bulbo-membranous junction. These processes are continued as thin membranous sheets, direct upward and forward which may be attached to the urethra throughout its entire circumference. It is generally supposed that the valves have complete fusion anteriorly, leaving only an open channel at the posterior urethral wall. Yet, the fusion of the valves anteriorly may not be complete in all cases, and at this point a slight separation of the folds exists’ [826].

Type III. ‘There is a third type which has been found at different levels of the posterior urethra and which apparently bears no such relation to the verumontanum. This obstruction was attached to the entire circumference of the urethra, with a small opening in the centre’ [826]. The transverse membrane described has been attributed to incomplete dissolution from the urogenital portion of the cloacal membrane [827]. The embryology of the urethral valves is poorly understood. The membrane may be an abnormal insertion of the mesonephric ducts into the foetal cloaca [828].
3.17.3 Diagnostic evaluation
An obstruction above the level of the urethra affects the whole urinary tract to varying degrees.
- The prostatic urethra is distended and the ejaculatory ducts may be dilated due to urinary reflux.
- The bladder neck is hypertrophied and rigid.
- The hypertrophied bladder occasionally has multiple diverticula.
- Nearly all valve patients have dilatation of both UUT. This may be due to the valve itself and the high pressure in the bladder, or due to obstruction of the ureterovesical junction by the hypertrophied bladder.
- If there is secondary reflux, the affected kidney functions poorly in most cases.

During prenatal US screening, bilateral hydroureteronephrosis and a distended bladder are suspicious signs of a urethral valve. Also a thick-walled bladder and a dilated posterior urethra (‘keyhole’ sign) make a PUV likely. In one study, however, the keyhole sign was not found to be a reliable predictor \( p = 0.27 \) [829]. In the presence of increased echogenicity of the kidney, dilatation of the urinary tract and oligohydramnion, the diagnosis of a PUV should strongly be considered.

Voiding cystourethrogram confirms a PUV diagnosis. This study is essential whenever there is a question of an infravesical obstruction, as the urethral anatomy is well outlined during voiding. A secondary reflux is observed in at least 50% of patients with PUV [830]. Reflux is consistently associated with renal dysplasia in patients with PUV. It is generally accepted that reflux in the renal units acts as a ‘pressure pop-off valve’, which would protect the other kidney, leading to a better prognosis [831]. Other types of pop-off mechanism include bladder diverticula and urinary extravasation, with or without urinary ascites [832]. However, in the long-term, a supposed protective effect did not show a significant difference compared to other patients with PUV [833, 834].

Nuclear renography with split renal function is important to assess kidney function (DMSA or MAG3). Creatinine, blood urea nitrogen and electrolytes should be monitored closely during the first few days. A nadir creatinine of 80 μmol/L is correlated with a better prognosis [821]. Initial management includes a multidisciplinary team involving a paediatric nephrologist.

3.17.4 Management
3.17.4.1 Antenatal treatment
About 40-60% of PUV are discovered before birth [835]. The intrauterine obstruction leads to a decreased urine output, which could result in an oligohydramnios. Amniotic fluid is necessary for normal development of the lung and its absence may lead to pulmonary hypoplasia, causing a life-threatening problem. Intrauterine attempts have been made to treat a foetus with PUV.

As renal dysplasia is not reversible, it is important to identify those foetuses with good renal function. A sodium level below 100 mmol/L, a chloride value of < 90mmol/L and an osmolarity below 200 mOsm/L found in three foetal urine samples gained on three different days are associated with a better prognosis [836].

The placing of a vesicoamniotic shunt has a complication rate of 21-59%, dislocation of the shunt occurs in up to 44%, mortality lies between 33% and 43%, and renal insufficiency is above 50% [836-838]. Although shunting is effective in reversing oligohydramnios, it makes no difference to the outcome and longterm results of patients with PUV [837, 838]. The PLUTO-trail (randomised study) could not prove a benefit of placing a shunt [839].

Foetal valve treatment e.g laser ablation has a high complication rate without evidence for the effectiveness of these interventions. Therefore this should be still considered as an experimental intervention [840, 841].

3.17.4.2 Postnatal treatment
Bladder drainage. If a boy is born with suspected PUV, drainage of the bladder and, if possible, an immediate VCUG is necessary. A neonate can be catheterised with a 3.5-5 F catheter. Balloon catheters are not available in this size. A VCUG is performed to see if the diagnosis is correct and whether the catheter is within the bladder and not in the posterior urethra. An alternative option is to place a suprapubic catheter, perform a VCUG and leave the tube until the neonate is stable enough to perform an endoscopic incision or resection of the valve.

Valve ablation. When the medical situation of the neonate has stabilised and the creatinine level decreased, the next step is to remove the intravesical obstruction. In cases were the urethra is too small to safely pass a small faecal cystoscope, a suprapubic diversion is performed until valve ablation can be performed. Small paediatric cystoscopes and resectoscopes are now available either to incise, ablate or to resect the valve at the 4-5, 7-8 or 12 o’clock position, or at all three positions, depending on the surgeon’s preference. It is important to avoid
extensive electrocoagulation, as the most common complication of this procedure is stricture formation. One recently published study demonstrated a significant lower urethral stricture rate using the cold knife compared to diathermy [842]. Within the three months following initial treatment, a control VCUG or a re-look cystoscopy should demonstrate the effectiveness of the treatment, depending on the clinical course [843].

**Vesicostomy.** If the child is too small and/or too ill to undergo endoscopic surgery, a suprapubic diversion is performed to drain the bladder temporarily. If initially a suprapubic tube has been inserted, this can be left in place for six to twelve weeks. Otherwise, a cutaneous vesicostomy provides an improvement or stabilisation of the UUT in over 90% of cases [844]. Although there has been concern that a vesicostomy could decrease bladder compliance or capacity, so far there are no valid data to support these expectations [845, 846].

**High diversion.** If bladder drainage is insufficient to drain the UUT, high urinary diversion should be considered. Diversion may be suitable if there are recurrent infections of the upper tract, no improvement in renal function and/or an increase in upper tract dilatation, despite adequate bladder drainage. The choice of urinary diversion depends on the surgeon’s preference for high loop ureterostomy, ring ureterostomy, end ureterostomy or pyelostomy, with each technique having advantages and disadvantages [847-849]. Reconstructive surgery should be delayed until the UUT has improved as much as can be expected.

Reflex is very common in PUV patients (up to 72%) and it is described bilaterally in up to 32% [850]. During the first months of life, antibiotic prophylaxis may be given especially in those with high-grade reflux [600] and in those with a phimosis, circumcision can be discussed in order to reduce the risk of UTIs [851]. However, there are no randomised studies to support this for patients with PUV. High-grade reflux is associated with a poor functioning kidney and is considered a poor prognostic factor [819, 852]. However, early removal of the renal unit seems to be unnecessary, as long as it causes no problems. It may be necessary to augment the bladder and in this case the ureter may be used [853].

**Follow-up**

Life-long monitoring of these patients is mandatory, as bladder dysfunction (‘valve bladder’) is not uncommon and the delay in day- and night-time continence is a major problem [821, 830]. Poor bladder sensation and compliance, detrusor instability and polyuria (especially at night) and their combination are responsible for bladder dysfunction. In those with bladder instability, anticholinergic therapy can improve bladder function. However, with a low risk of reversible myogenic failure (3/37 patients in one study) [854, 855]. In patients with poor bladder emptying α-blocker can be used to reduce the PVR urine, as demonstrated in one study with 42 patients using terazosin (mean PVR) was reduced from 16 to 2 mL) [856] and in another study tamsulosin was effective [857]. Between 10% and 47% of patients may develop end-stage renal failure [819-821]. High creatinine nadir and severe bladder dysfunction are risk factors for renal replacement therapy [858]. Renal transplantation in these patients can be performed safely and effectively [859, 860]. Deterioration of the graft function is mainly related to LUTD [860, 861]. An assessment and treatment algorithm is provided in Figure 10.
Posterior urethral valves are one of the few life-threatening congenital anomalies of the urinary tract found during the neonatal period and despite optimal treatment result in renal insufficiency in nearly one-third of cases. Bilateral hydroureteronephrosis and a distended bladder are suspicious signs of a PUV in neonates. A VCUG confirms a PUV diagnosis. Nuclear renography with split renal function is important to assess kidney function and serum creatinine nadir above 80 μmol/L is correlated with a poor prognosis.

Postnatal treatment includes bladder drainage either transurethral or suprapubic and if the child is stable enough, endoscopic incision of the valve is performed. If a child is too small and/or too ill to undergo endoscopic surgery, a vesicostomy is an option for bladder drainage. If bladder drainage is insufficient to drain the UUT, high urinary diversion should be considered.

In all patients life-long monitoring is mandatory, as bladder dysfunction is quite common and may cause progressive upper tract deterioration, if not managed properly. In the long run between 10% and 47% of patients may develop end-stage renal failure. Renal transplantation in these patients can be performed safely and effectively.

**CIC** = clean intermittent catheterisation; **OAB** = overactive bladder; **PUV** = posterior urethral valve; **RF** = renal function; **UT** = urinary tract; **UUT** = upper urinary tract; **VCUG** = voiding cystourethrogram.

**Summary**

Posterior urethral valves are one of the few life-threatening congenital anomalies of the urinary tract found during the neonatal period and despite optimal treatment result in renal insufficiency in nearly one-third of cases. Bilateral hydroureteronephrosis and a distended bladder are suspicious signs of a PUV in neonates. A VCUG confirms a PUV diagnosis. Nuclear renography with split renal function is important to assess kidney function and serum creatinine nadir above 80 μmol/L is correlated with a poor prognosis.

Postnatal treatment includes bladder drainage either transurethral or suprapubic and if the child is stable enough, endoscopic incision of the valve is performed. If a child is too small and/or too ill to undergo endoscopic surgery, a vesicostomy is an option for bladder drainage. If bladder drainage is insufficient to drain the UUT, high urinary diversion should be considered.

In all patients life-long monitoring is mandatory, as bladder dysfunction is quite common and may cause progressive upper tract deterioration, if not managed properly. In the long run between 10% and 47% of patients may develop end-stage renal failure. Renal transplantation in these patients can be performed safely and effectively.
Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of posterior urethral valves

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Posterior urethral valves are one of the few life-threatening congenital anomalies of the urinary tract found during the neonatal period.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Despite optimal treatment nearly one-third of the patients end up in renal insufficiency.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilateral hydrourerteronephrosis and a distended bladder are suspicious signs on US; a VCUG confirms the diagnosis.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serum creatinine nadir above 80 μmol/L is correlated with a poor prognosis.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the long run between 10% and 47% of patients develop end-stage renal failure due to primary dysplasia and/or further deterioration because of bladder dysfunction.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal transplantation in these patients is safe and effective, if the bladder function is normalised.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diagnose posterior urethral valves (PUV) initially by ultrasound (US) but a voiding cystourethrogram (VCUG) is required to confirm the diagnosis. Assess split renal function by dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA) scan or mercaptoacetyltriglycine (MAG3) clearance. Serum creatinine is the prognostic marker.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vesico-amniotic shunt antenatally is not recommended to improve renal outcome.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer endoscopic valve ablation after bladder drainage and stabilisation of the child.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer suprapubic diversion for bladder drainage if the child is too small for urethral surgery.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer a high urinary diversion if bladder drainage is insufficient to drain the UUT and the child remains unstable.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor bladder- and renal function lifelong, in all patients.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.18 Paediatric urological trauma

Trauma is the leading cause of morbidity and mortality in children and is responsible for more childhood deaths than the total of all other causes [862]. In about 3% of children seen at paediatric hospital trauma centres, there is significant involvement of the genitourinary tract [863]. This is caused by either blunt injuries from falls, car accidents, sports injuries, physical assault, and sexual abuse, or penetrating injuries, usually due to falls onto sharp objects or from gunshot or knife wounds.

3.18.1 Paediatric renal trauma

3.18.1.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

In blunt abdominal trauma, the kidney is the most commonly affected organ, accounting for about 10% of all blunt abdominal injuries [862].

Children are more likely than adults to sustain renal injuries after blunt trauma because of their anatomy. Compared to an adult kidney, a child’s kidney is larger in relation to the rest of the body and often retains foetal lobulations, so that blunt trauma is more likely to lead to a local parenchymal disruption. The paediatric kidney is also less well protected than the adult kidney. Children have less peri-renal fat, much weaker abdominal muscles, and a less ossified and therefore much more elastic and compressible thoracic cage [864].

Blunt renal trauma is usually a result of sudden deceleration of the child’s body, particularly due to sport accidents, falls, and contact with blunt objects. Deceleration or crush injuries result in contusion, laceration or avulsion of the less well-protected paediatric renal parenchyma.

3.18.1.2 Classification systems

Renal injuries are classified according to the kidney injury scale of the American Association for the Surgery of Trauma (Table 13) [865].
Table 13: Renal injury classified according to the kidney injury scale of the American Association for the Surgery of Trauma [865]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Type of injury</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Contusion</td>
<td>Non-visible or visible haematuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Haematoma</td>
<td>Normal urological studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Haematoma</td>
<td>Non-expanding subcapsular haematoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laceration</td>
<td>Laceration of the cortex of &lt; 1.0 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Laceration</td>
<td>Laceration &gt; 1.0 cm without rupture of collecting system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Laceration</td>
<td>Through the cortex, medulla and collecting system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vascular</td>
<td>Vascular injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Laceration</td>
<td>Completely shattered kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vascular</td>
<td>Avulsion of the renal hilum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.18.1.3 Diagnostic evaluation

In a child who has sustained blunt abdominal trauma, renal involvement can often be predicted from the history, physical examination and laboratory evaluation. Renal involvement may be associated with abdominal or flank tenderness, lower rib fractures, fractures or vertebral pedicles, trunk contusions and abrasions, and haematuria.

3.18.1.3.1 Haematuria

Haematuria may be a reliable finding. In severe renal injuries, 65% suffer visible haematuria and 33% non-visible, while only 2% have no haematuria at all [866].

The radiographic evaluation of children with suspected renal trauma remains controversial. Some centres rely on the presence of haematuria to diagnose renal trauma, with a threshold for renal involvement of 50 RBCs/HPF. Although this may be a reliable threshold for significant non-visible in trauma, there have been many reports of significant renal injuries that manifest with little or even no blood in the urine [867]. It is therefore compulsory to consider all the clinical aspects involved, including the history, physical examination, consciousness of the child, overall clinical status and laboratory findings to decide on the diagnostic algorithm and whether or not a child needs further imaging studies.

3.18.1.3.2 Blood pressure

It is important to consider that children, unlike adults, are able to maintain their blood pressure, even in the presence of hypovolaemia, due to compliance of the vascular tree and mechanisms for cardiac compensation [868]. Because blood pressure is an unreliable predictor of renal involvement in children, some centres recommend imaging of the urinary tract in children with any degree of haematuria following significant abdominal trauma.

3.18.1.3.3 Choice of imaging method

Nowadays, CT is the best imaging method for renal involvement in children. Computed tomography scanning is the cornerstone of modern staging of blunt renal injuries especially when it comes to grading the severity of renal trauma.

Computed tomography scanning is quite rapid and usually performed with the injection of contrast media. To detect extravasation, a second series of images is necessary since the initial series usually finishes 60 seconds after injection of the contrast material and may therefore fail to detect urinary extravasation [869]. In acute trauma, US may be used as a screening tool and for reliably following the course of renal injury. However, US is of limited value in the initial and acute evaluation of trauma. The Standard Intravenous Pyelogram is a good alternative imaging method if a CT scan is not available. It is superior to US but not as good as CT scanning for diagnostic purposes.

3.18.1.4 Disease management

The modern management of trauma is multidisciplinary, requiring paediatricians, emergency physicians, surgeons, urologists, and other specialties as required.

Non-surgical conservative management with bed rest, fluids and monitoring has become the standard approach for treating blunt renal trauma. Even in high-grade renal injuries, a conservative approach is effective and recommended for stable children. However, this approach requires close clinical observation, serial CT scans, and frequent re-assessment of the patient’s overall condition.

Absolute indications for surgery include persistent bleeding into an expanding or unconfined haematoma. Relative indications for surgery are massive urinary extravasation and extensive non-viable renal tissue [870].
3.18.1.5  

**Recommendations for the diagnosis and management of paediatric renal trauma**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use imaging in all children who have sustained a blunt or penetrating trauma with any level of haematuria, especially when the history reveals a deceleration trauma, direct flank trauma or a fall from a height.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use rapid spiral computed tomography scanning for diagnostic and staging purposes.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage most injured kidneys conservatively.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer surgical intervention in case of haemodynamic instability and a Grade V renal injury.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.18.2  

**Paediatric ureteral trauma**

Injuries to the ureter are rare. The ureter is well protected; the upper part is protected by its close approximation to the vertebral column and paraspinal muscles and the lower part by its route through the bony pelvis. In addition, the ureter is a small target, and both flexible and mobile. This also means that ureteral injuries are caused more often by penetrating trauma than blunt trauma [871]. Since the ureter is the sole conduit for urinary transport between the kidney and the bladder, any ureteral injury can threaten the function of the ipsilateral kidney.

3.18.2.1  

**Diagnostic evaluation**

Since there are no classical clinical symptoms suggestive of ureteral trauma, it is important to carry out a careful diagnostic work-up using different imaging modalities. Unfortunately, initial imaging studies, such as IVP and routine CT scans, are unreliable; a study of eleven disruptions of the ureteropelvic junction found that 72% had a normal or non-diagnostic IVP on initial studies [871]. Diagnostic accuracy of CT scanning can be improved by performing a delayed CT scan up to ten minutes after injection of the contrast material [872]. The most sensitive diagnostic test is a retrograde pyelogram.

Quite a few patients present several days after the injury, when the urinoma produces flank and abdominal pain, nausea and fever.

Because the symptoms may often be quite vague, it is important to remain suspicious of a potential undiagnosed urinary injury following significant blunt abdominal trauma in a child.

3.18.2.2  

**Management**

Immediate repair during abdominal exploration is rare. Minimally invasive procedures are the method of choice, especially since many ureteral injuries are diagnosed late after the traumatic event. Percutaneous or nephrostomy tube drainage of urinomas can be successful, as well as internal stenting of ureteral injuries [873].

If endoscopic management is not possible, primary repair of partial lacerations should be followed by internal stenting. The management of complete lacerations, avulsions or crush injuries depends on the amount of ureter lost and its location. If there is an adequate healthy length of ureter, a primary ureteroureterostomy can be performed. If primary re-anastomosis is not achievable, distal ureteral injuries can be managed using a psoas bladder hitch, Boari flap or even nephroplexy. Proximal injuries can be managed using transureteroureterostomy, autotransplantation or ureteral replacement with bowel or appendix [874].

3.18.2.3  

**Recommendations for the diagnosis and management of paediatric ureteral trauma**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diagnose suspected ureteral injuries by retrograde pyelogram.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>However, in the initial phase of an injury, it is very likely that ureteral injuries will not be detected by routine imaging methods, including contrast-enhanced spiral computed tomography.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage ureteral injuries endoscopically, using internal stenting or drainage of a urinoma, either percutaneously or via a nephrostomy tube.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage distal and proximal ureteral injuries with open surgery.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage distal injuries with direct re-anastomosis and ureteroneocystostomy.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage proximal injuries, with transureteroureterostomy, ureteral replacement with bowel or appendix, or even autotransplantation.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.18.3  

**Paediatric bladder injuries**

The paediatric bladder is less protected than the adult bladder, and is therefore more susceptible to injuries than the adult bladder, especially when it is full, due to:
• Its higher position in the abdomen and its exposure above the bony pelvis.
• The fact that the abdominal wall provides less muscular protection.
• The fact that there is less pelvic and abdominal fat surrounding the bladder to cushion it in trauma.

Blunt trauma is the most common cause of significant bladder injury. In adults, bladder injury is often associated with pelvic fractures. This is less common in children because the paediatric bladder sits above the pelvic ring. In a large prospective study, only 57% of children with pelvic fractures also had a bladder injury compared to 89% of adults [875].

3.18.3.1 Diagnostic evaluation
The characteristic signs of bladder injury are suprapubic pain and tenderness, an inability to urinate, and visible haematuria (95% of injuries). Patients with a pelvic fracture and visible haematuria present with a bladder rupture in up to 45% of cases [876].

The diagnosis of bladder rupture can be difficult in some cases. The bladder should be imaged both when fully distended and after drainage using standard radiography or a CT scan. The best results can be achieved by retrograde filling of the bladder using a catheter. Despite advances in CT imaging, the bladder must still be filled to capacity to accurately diagnose a possible bladder injury [877].

Blunt injuries to the bladder are categorised as:
• contusions with damage to the bladder mucosa or muscle, without loss of bladder wall continuity or extravasation;
• ruptures, which are either intraperitoneal or extraperitoneal.

Intra-peritoneal bladder ruptures are more common in children because of the bladder’s exposed position and the acute increase in pressure during trauma. These cause the bladder to burst at its weakest point, i.e. the dome. Extraperitoneal lesions occur in the lower half of the bladder and are almost always associated with pelvic fractures. A cystogram will show extravasation into the perivesical soft tissue in a typical flame pattern and the contrast material is confined to the pelvis.

3.18.3.2 Management
Contusions usually present with varying degrees of haematuria and are treated with catheter drainage alone.

3.18.3.2.1 Intra-peritoneal injuries
The accepted management of intra-peritoneal bladder ruptures is open surgical exploration and primary repair. Post-operative drainage with a suprapubic tube is mandatory. Recent data suggest that transurethral drainage may be as effective, with fewer complications, resulting in shorter periods of diversion [878]. Usually, after about seven to ten days, a repeat cystogram is performed to ensure healing is taking place properly.

3.18.3.2.2 Extra-peritoneal injuries
Non-operative management with catheter drainage for seven to ten days alone is the method of choice for extra-peritoneal bladder rupture. However, if there are bone fragments within the bladder, these must be removed and the bladder must then be repaired and drained, according to the principles for treating intraperitoneal ruptures [879].

3.18.3.3 Recommendations for the diagnosis and management of paediatric bladder injuries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use retrograde cystography to diagnose suspected bladder injuries.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ensure that the bladder has been filled to its full capacity and an additional film is taken after drainage.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage extra-peritoneal bladder ruptures conservatively with a transurethral catheter left in place for seven to ten days.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not delay treatment of intra-peritoneal bladder ruptures by surgical exploration and repair as well as post-operative drainage for seven to ten days.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.18.4 Paediatric urethral injuries
Except for the penile part of the urethra, the paediatric urethra is quite well protected. In addition, its shape and elasticity mean the urethra is seldom injured by trauma. However, a urethral injury should be suspected in any patient with a pelvic fracture or significant trauma to the perineum until confirmed otherwise by a diagnostic work-up.
3.18.4.1 Diagnostic evaluation

Patients with suspected urethral trauma and pelvic fractures usually present with a history of severe trauma, often involving other organ systems.

Signs of urethral injury are blood at the meatus, visible haematuria, and pain during voiding or an inability to void. There may also be perineal swelling and haematoma involving the scrotum. A rectal examination to determine the position and fixation of the prostate is important in any male with a suspected urethral injury. The prostate, as well as the bladder, may be displaced up out of the pelvis, especially in membranous urethral trauma.

Radiographic evaluation of the urethra requires a retrograde urethrogram. It is important to expose the entire urethral length, including the bladder neck. If a catheter has already been placed by someone else and there is suspected urethral trauma, the catheter should be left in place and should not be removed. Instead, a small infant feeding tube can be placed into the distal urethra along the catheter to allow the injection of contrast material for a diagnostic scan [880].

3.18.4.2 Disease management

Since many of these patients are unstable, the urologist’s initial responsibility is to provide a method of draining and monitoring urine output.

A transurethral catheter should only be inserted if there is a history of voiding after the traumatic event, and if a rectal and pelvic examination, as described above, has not suggested a urethral rupture. If the catheter does not pass easily, an immediate retrograde urethrogram should be performed.

A suprapubic tube may be placed in the emergency department percutaneously, or even in the operating room, if the patient has to undergo immediate exploration because of other life-threatening injuries.

There are often no associated injuries with a bulbous urethral or straddle injury and management is therefore usually straightforward. In these cases, a transurethral catheter is the best option for preventing urethral bleeding and/or painful voiding [881].

The initial management of posterior urethral injuries remains controversial, mainly regarding the long-term results with primary realignment compared to simple suprapubic drainage with later reconstruction.

The main goals in the surgical repair of posterior urethral injuries are:
• Providing a stricture-free urethra.
• Avoiding the complications of urinary incontinence and impotence.

Suprapubic drainage and late urethral reconstruction was first attempted because immediate surgical repair had a poor outcome, with significant bleeding and high rates of incontinence (21%) and impotence in up to 56% of cases [882]. In adults, a study of the success rates of delayed repair reported re-structure rates of 11–30%, continence rates of 90–95% and impotence rates of 62–68% [883]. However, in children, there is much less experience with delayed repair. The largest paediatric series of delayed repair in 68 boys reported a success rate of 90% [884]. Another study reported strictures and impotence in 67% of boys, although all the boys were continent [883].

An alternative to providing initial suprapubic drainage and delayed repair is primary realignment of the urethra via a catheter. The catheter is usually put in place during open cystostomy by passing it from either the bladder neck or meatus and through the injured segment. In a series of fourteen children undergoing this procedure, this resulted in a stricture rate of 29% and incontinence in 7% of patients [885].

3.18.4.3 Recommendations for the diagnosis and management of paediatric trauma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assess the urethra by retrograde urethrogram in case of suspected urethral trauma.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a rectal examination to determine the position of the prostate.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage bulbous urethral injuries conservatively with a transurethral catheter.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage posterior urethral disruption by either:</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• primary reconstruction;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• primary drainage with a suprapubic catheter alone and delayed repair;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• primary re-alignment with a transurethral catheter.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.19 Post-operative fluid management

3.19.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

Compared to adults, children have a different total body fluid distribution, renal physiology and electrolyte requirements, as well as weaker cardiovascular compensation mechanisms [886]. As children are developing,
they have a high metabolic rate and low fat and nutrient stores, which means they are more susceptible to metabolic disturbances caused by surgical stress [887]. The metabolic response to anaesthesia and surgery in infants and children is related to the severity of the operation [888].

3.19.2 Disease management
3.19.2.1 Pre-operative fasting
Pre-operative fasting has been advocated for elective surgery to avoid the complications associated with pulmonary aspiration during induction of anaesthesia. Table 14 gives the current guidelines for pre-operative fasting for elective surgery [889, 890].

Table 14: Pre-operative fasting times for elective surgery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingested material</th>
<th>Minimum fasting period (hours)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clear liquids</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast milk</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infant formula</td>
<td>4 (&lt;3 months old) to 6 (&gt;3 months old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-human milk</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light meal</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although hypoglycaemia is an important issue in children, research has shown that hypoglycaemia is uncommon if children are still fed up to four hours before the induction of anaesthesia [891]. Newborns often have low glycogen stores and impaired gluconeogenesis, both of which can be helped by limiting the period of pre-operative starvation and feeding with glucose-containing solutions. It is important to monitor blood glucose and to adjust the glucose supply continuously in neonates and children who are small for their age, as this helps to prevent excessive fluctuation in blood glucose levels [892].

3.19.2.2 Maintenance therapy and intra-operative fluid therapy
Generally, the anaesthetist is responsible for intra-operative management and the surgeon is responsible for post-operative instructions. The goal of intra-operative fluid management is to sustain homeostasis by providing the appropriate amount of parenteral fluid; this maintains adequate intravascular volume, cardiac output and oxygen delivery to tissues at a time when normal physiological functions have been altered by surgical stress and anaesthetic agents [892].

The fluids for maintenance therapy replace losses from two sources: insensible (evaporation) and urinary loss. They do not replace blood loss or third-space fluid loss into the interstitial space or gut. The main formulae for calculating the daily maintenance requirement for water have not changed in the past 50 years (Table 15) [893]. Calculations have shown that anaesthetised and non-anaesthetised children have similar fluid requirements [894].

The combination of maintenance fluid and electrolyte requirements results in a hypotonic electrolyte solution. The usual intravenous maintenance fluid given to children by paediatricians is one-quarter to one-third strength saline [895].

Table 15: Hourly and daily fluid requirements according to body weight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Body weight</th>
<th>Hourly</th>
<th>Daily</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 10 kg</td>
<td>4 mL/kg</td>
<td>100 mL/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-20 kg</td>
<td>40 mL + 2 mL/kg; &gt; 10 kg</td>
<td>1,000 mL + 50 mL/kg; &gt; 10 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 20 kg</td>
<td>60 mL + 1 mL/kg; &gt; 20 kg</td>
<td>1,500 mL + 20 mL/kg; &gt; 20 kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The fasting deficit is calculated by multiplying the hourly maintenance fluid requirement by the number of hours of fluid restriction. It is recommended that 50% of the fasting deficit is replaced in the first hour and 25% in the second and third hours [896]. Berry (1986) proposed simplified guidelines for fluid administration according to the child’s age and severity of surgical trauma [897] (Table 16).
Table 16: Intra-operative fluid management adapted for children fasted for six to eight hours, following the classical recommendation 'nil per oral after midnight'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hour of fluid replacement</th>
<th>Maintenance fluid</th>
<th>Fasting deficit replacement</th>
<th>Persistent losses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First hour</td>
<td></td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>Third space + blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second hour</td>
<td>As Table 14</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>loss replacement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third hour</td>
<td></td>
<td>25%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Berry [897]

- First hour: < 3 years: 25 mL/kg > 4 years: 15 mL/kg
- Blood replacement 1:1 with blood or colloid or 3:1 with crystalloids

All other hours

Maintenance volume = 4 mL/kg/h
Maintenance + mild trauma = 6 mL/kg/h
Maintenance + moderate trauma = 8 mL/kg/h
Maintenance + severe trauma = 10 mL/kg/h
Blood replacement 1:1 with blood or colloid or 3:1 with crystalloids

* Reduce the amount of fluid given during the first hour if children are fasting for a shorter period of time, or if the child was already being given intravenous fluid prior to surgery.

Five percent dextrose with one-quarter- to half-normal saline is often used as a maintenance fluid, while balanced salt solution or normal saline is used as replacement fluid. Blood losses are replaced with a 1:1 ratio of blood or colloid or a 3:1 ratio of crystalloid. However, the administration of a large volume of normal saline can cause dilutional acidosis or hyperchloremic acidosis, while a large volume of balanced salt solution, such as lactated Ringer’s solution, can decrease serum osmolality, which is not beneficial in patients with decreased intracranial compliance. If appropriate, albumin, plasma, synthetic colloids, and blood should be administered [892].

Third-space losses may vary from 1 mL/kg/h for a minor surgical procedure to 15-20 mL/kg/h for major abdominal procedures, or even up to 50 mL/kg/h for surgery of necrotising enterocolitis in premature infants. Third-space losses should be replaced with crystalloids (normal saline or Ringer’s lactate) [890].

Most of the fluids required during surgery are needed to replace fasting deficit or third-space losses, which are mainly extracellular fluids. Hydrating solutions should contain high concentrations of sodium and chloride and low concentrations of bicarbonate, calcium and potassium.

Intra-operative hypoglycaemia is rare in children. In contrast, hyperglycaemia is commonly encountered during anaesthesia and surgery. The replacement fluid should be free of dextrose or should not have > 1% dextrose. Current recommendations include the use of low-dextrose-containing solutions for maintenance fluid therapy, except in patients who are at high risk of hypoglycaemia [886, 895]. Intra-operative administration of glucose-free isotonic hydrating solutions should be the routine practice for most procedures in children over four to five years of age. In infants and young children, 5% dextrose solutions should be avoided, but it is appropriate to use 1% or 2% dextrose in lactated Ringer’s solution [890].

3.19.2.3 Post-operative fluid management

During the post-operative period, the fundamental principle is to monitor gastrointestinal function and to continue oral or enteral nutrition as much as possible [887], while remembering that withholding oral fluids post-operatively from children undergoing day surgery helps prevent vomiting [898]. In minor surgical procedures, intra-operative administration of large volumes of crystalloids is associated with a reduced incidence of post-operative nausea and vomiting after anaesthesia in both paediatric and adult patients [899]. Berry’s fluid replacement guidelines can be followed, provided the child is given lactated Ringer’s solution or polyionique B66, which has an osmolarity similar to plasma [900].

It is not obligatory to check serum chemistry after uncomplicated surgery in children with normal pre-operative renal and hepatic function. However, if oral intake has been postponed for > 24 hours (e.g. as in intestinal surgery), there is an increased risk of electrolyte abnormalities, requiring further assessment and subsequent management, particularly with potassium. Post-operative findings, such as decreased bowel movements and ileus, may be signs of hypokalemia, which may be corrected with a solution of 20 mmol/L potassium and an infusion rate of not more than 3 mmol/kg/day. The potassium should be given via peripheral venous access if the duration of infusion is not expected to exceed five days, or via central venous access when long-term parenteral nutrition is necessary.

The goals of fluid therapy are to provide basic metabolic requirements and to compensate for
gastrointestinal and additional losses. If hypovolemia is present, it should be treated rapidly. Hyponatremia is the most frequent electrolyte disorder in the post-operative period [900, 901]. This means that hypotonic fluid should not be routinely administered to hospitalised children because they have several stimuli for producing arginine vasopressin and are therefore at high risk for developing hyponatremia [890, 900, 902-905]. The preferred fluids for maintenance therapy are 0.45% saline with dextrose or isotonic fluids, in the absence of a specific indication for 0.25% saline. It is also advisable to administer isotonic fluids intra-operatively and also immediately post-operatively, albeit at two-thirds of the calculated maintenance rate in the recovery room. Fluid composition should balance high sodium requirements, energy requirements and solution osmolarity. The extra losses from gastric or chest tubes should be replaced with lactated Ringer’s solution. Fluid that has been given to dilute medications must also be taken into account [890].

Children who undergo interventions to relieve any kind of obstructive diseases deserve particular attention, especially due to the risk of polyuria as a result of post-obstructive diuresis. In children who develop polyuria, it is important to monitor fluid intake and urine output, as well as renal function and serum electrolytes. If necessary, clinicians should not hesitate in consulting with a paediatric nephrologist.

3.19.2.4 Post-operative fasting
It has been reported that fasting reduces the risk of vomiting by up to 50% [898, 906, 907]. However, a study found that if children were freely allowed to drink and eat when they felt ready or requested it, the incidence of vomiting did not increase and the children felt happier and were significantly less bothered by pain than children who were fasting [908]. The mean times until first drink and first eating in the children who were free to eat or drink were 108 and 270 minutes, respectively, which were four hours and three hours earlier than in the fasting group. Previous studies have suggested that gastric motility returns to normal one hour after emergence from anaesthesia in children who have undergone non-abdominal surgery [909]. The first oral intake in children at one hour after emergence from anaesthesia for minor surgery did not cause an increase in the incidence of vomiting, provided that the fluid ingested was at body temperature [910]. The EAU Panel members therefore recommend encouraging an early intake of fluid in children who have undergone minor or non-abdominal urological surgery.

3.19.3 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of post-operative fluid management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Children are not simply smaller physiological versions of adults. They have their own unique metabolic features, which must be considered during surgery.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ensure that shorter pre-operative fasting periods apply for elective surgeries (up to four hours).</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use fluids with lower dextrose concentrations since hyperglycaemia is common in children, compared to intra-operative hypoglycaemia (which is very rare).</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not routinely use hypotonic fluid in hospitalised children because they are at high risk of developing hyponatraemia.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess the baseline and daily levels of serum electrolytes, glucose, urea and/or creatinine in every child who receives intravenous fluids, especially in intestinal surgery (e.g. ileal augmentation), regardless of the type of solution chosen since there is an increased risk of electrolyte abnormalities in children undergoing such surgery.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start early oral fluid intake in patients scheduled for minor surgical procedures.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.20 Post-operative pain management: general information

3.20.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology
The provision of adequate pain control requires proper pain evaluation, accurate choice of drug and route of administration, and consideration of age, physical condition and type of surgery and anaesthesia [917]. However, there is still no standardised algorithm for management of post-operative pain in children [918]. There is an urgent need for a post-operative pain management protocol in children, particularly for guidance on the frequency of pain assessment, use of parenteral opioids, introduction of regional anaesthesia, and the application of rescue analgesics [919].

Traditional medical beliefs that neonates are incapable of experiencing pain have now been abandoned following recent and better understanding of how the pain system matures in humans, better pain assessment methods and a knowledge of the clinical consequences of pain in neonates [911, 920-923]. Many studies have indicated that deficient or insufficient analgesia may be the cause of future behavioural and
somatic sequelae [912, 924-926]. Our current understanding of pain management in children depends fully on the belief that all children, irrespective of age, deserve adequate treatment.

3.20.2 **Diagnostic evaluation**
Assessment of pain is the first step in pain management. Validated pain assessment tools are needed for this purpose and it is important to select the appropriate pain assessment technique. Several pain assessment tools have been developed according to the child’s age, cultural background, mental status, communication skills and physiological reactions [927, 928].

One of the most important topics in paediatric pain management is informing and involving the child and parents during this process. Parents and patients can manage post-operative pain at home or in hospital if provided with the correct information. Parents and patients, if they are old enough, can actively take part in pain management in patient-family-controlled analgesia applications [913, 929-933].

3.20.3 **Disease management**

3.20.3.1 **Drugs and route of administration**
Pre-emptive analgesia is an important concept that aims to induce the suppression of pain before neural hypersensitisation occurs [934]. Local anaesthetics or non-steroidal analgesics are given intra-operatively to delay post-operative pain and to decrease post-operative analgesic consumption. Analgesics must be titrated until an appropriate response is achieved. Opioids can be administered to children by the oral, mucosal, transdermal, subcutaneous, intramuscular or intravenous routes [930]. The combination of opioids with nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) or local anaesthetics (balanced or multimodal analgesia) can be used to increase the quality of analgesia and decrease undesired effects related to opioids [935]. The same combination of local anaesthetics, opioids, and non-opioid drugs used in adults can also be used in children taking into account their age, body weight and individual medical status.

The World Health Organization’s ‘pain ladder’ is a useful tool for the pain management strategy [936]. A three-level strategy seems practical for clinical use. Post-operative management should be based on sufficient intra-operative pre-emptive analgesia with regional or caudal blockade followed by balanced analgesia.

Paracetamol and NSAIDs are the drugs of choice at the first level. As they become insufficient to prevent pain, weak and strong opioids are added to oral drugs to achieve balanced analgesia. Every institute must build their own strategy for post-operative analgesia. A proposed strategy for post-operative analgesia may be as follows:

1. Intra-operative regional or caudal block
2. Paracetamol + NSAID
3. Paracetamol + NSAID + weak opioid (e.g. tramadol or codeine)
4. Paracetamol + NSAID + strong opioid (e.g. morphine, fentanyl, oxycodone or pethidine)

3.20.3.2 **Circumcision**
Circumcision without anaesthesia, irrespective of age, is not recommended. Circumcision requires proper pain management [937]. Despite this, adequate pain management is still below expectation [938]. Potential analgesic interventions during circumcision include the use of a dorsal penile nerve block (DPNB) or ring block, topical anaesthetics (e.g. lidocaine-prilocaine cream, or 4% liposomal lidocaine cream), a less painful clamp (e.g. Mogen clamp), a pacifier, sucrose, and swaddling, preferably in combination [939-943].

Although DPNB and topical anaesthetics seem to have a similar post-operative analgesic effect, DPNB is still the most preferred method [944] (LE: 1a). Ultrasound guidance may improve the results, with an increase in procedural time [945, 946]. Caudal blockade methods have similar efficacy compared to DPNB. However, parents should be informed about the more frequent incidence of post-operative motor weakness and micturition problems [947-952].

3.20.3.3 **Penile, inguinal and scrotal surgery**
Caudal block is the most studied method for analgesia following surgery for hypospadias. Several agents with different doses, concentrations and administration techniques have been used with similar outcomes [953-967]. Both single and combined use of these agents is effective [954, 955, 957, 958, 963, 965].

Penile blocks can be used for post-operative analgesia and have similar post-operative analgesic properties as caudal blocks [968]. Two penile blocks at the beginning and end of surgery seems to provide better pain relief [969]. Severe bladder spasms caused by the presence of the bladder catheter may sometimes cause more problems than pain and is managed with antimuscarinic medications.

For inguinoscrotal surgery, all anaesthetic methods, such as caudal blocks [392, 970-972] nerve block [973, 974], wound infiltration or instillation, and irrigation with local anaesthetics [975-977] have been shown to have adequate post-operative analgesic properties. Combinations may improve the results [978].
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Route of administration</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Side effects</th>
<th>General remarks</th>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-narcotics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetaminophen</td>
<td>Rectal, Oral, Intravenous</td>
<td>40 mg/kg loading, 20 mg/kg/dose 4 times/day</td>
<td>Nephrotoxicity, hepatotoxicity (neonates)</td>
<td>Most common used analgesic Antipyretic effect</td>
<td>Slow onset time and variable absorption via the rectal route; dividing the vehicle is not recommended. Total dose should not exceed: 100 mg/kg for children; 75 mg/kg for infants; 60 mg/kg for term and preterm neonates &gt; 32 weeks post-conceptual age; and 40 mg/kg for preterm neonates &lt; 32 weeks post-conceptual age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15-40 mg/kg, followed by 30 mg/kg/8 h</td>
<td></td>
<td>Opioid-sparing effect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Propacetamol (prodrug)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Wide safety range</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibuprofen</td>
<td>Oral, rectal</td>
<td>4-10 mg/kg/dose 3-4 times/day</td>
<td>Better analgesic than paracetamol</td>
<td></td>
<td>Safety not established for infants &lt; 6 months old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diclofenac</td>
<td>Tablet, syrup, suppository</td>
<td>1-1.5 mg/kg 2-3 times/day</td>
<td>Nephrotoxicity, gastrointestinal disturbances</td>
<td>Better than ibuprofen</td>
<td>&gt; 6 years old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketorolac</td>
<td>Oral, IV, IM</td>
<td>0.2-0.5 mg/kg every 6 h (48 h) Total dose &lt; 2 mg/kg/day, maximum 5 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>Opioid-sparing effect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketamine</td>
<td>Oral, rectal, IM, SC, IV, intraspinal</td>
<td>&lt; 2 mg/kg (IM) &lt; 1 mg/kg (IV, epidural)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metamizole, dipyrone</td>
<td>Oral, IM, Oral drop</td>
<td>10-15 mg/kg/dose (max 40 mg/kg total)</td>
<td>Risk of agranulocytosis, not clarified definitely</td>
<td>Very effective antipyretic</td>
<td>Not approved in some countries including USA, Sweden, Japan and Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10-15 mg/kg 1 drop/kg/dose, up to 4 times/day</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Narcotics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opioids</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, dyspepsia, constipation, urinary retention, respiratory depression, drowsiness, euphoria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tramadol (weak opioid)</td>
<td>Oral, rectal, IV, IM (dose can be repeated 4-6 times/day)</td>
<td>2-3 mg/kg/dose (oral, drop) 1-2 mg/kg/dose (oral, tablet) 1.5-3 mg/kg/dose (rectal) 0.75-2 mg/kg/dose (IM) 2-2.5 mg/kg/dose (IV) 0.1-0.25 mg/kg/h (continuous)</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, pruritus and rash</td>
<td>Does not inhibit prostaglandin synthesis</td>
<td>An IM injection is not recommended. Slow IV infusion. Be careful in patients taking psychoactive medications and with seizures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Route</td>
<td>Dose</td>
<td>Side effects</td>
<td>General remarks</td>
<td>Caution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-narcotics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetaminophen</td>
<td>Oral, intravenous</td>
<td>40 mg/kg loading, 20 mg/kg/dose 4 times/day</td>
<td>Nephrotoxicity, hepatotoxicity (neonates)</td>
<td>Most common used analgesic, antipyretic effect</td>
<td>Slow onset time and variable absorption via the rectal route; dividing the vehicle is not recommended. Total dose should not exceed: 100 mg/kg for children; 75 mg/kg for infants; 60 mg/kg for term and preterm neonates &gt; 32 weeks post-conceptual age; and 40 mg/kg for preterm neonates &lt; 32 weeks post-conceptual age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15-40 mg/kg, followed by 30 mg/kg/8 h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propacetamol (prodrug)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibuprofen</td>
<td>Oral, rectal</td>
<td>4-10 mg/kg/dose 3-4 times/day</td>
<td>Better analgesic than paracetamol</td>
<td>Safety not established for infants &lt; 6 months old</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diclofenac</td>
<td>Tablet, syrup, suppository</td>
<td>1-1.5 mg/kg 2-3 times/day</td>
<td>Nephrotoxicity, gastrointestinal disturbances</td>
<td>Better than ibuprofen &gt; 6 years old</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketorolac</td>
<td>Oral, IV, IM (dose can be repeated 4-6 times/day)</td>
<td>0.2-0.5 mg/kg every 6 h (48 h)</td>
<td>Total dose &lt; 2 mg/kg/day, maximum 5 days</td>
<td>Opioid-sparing effect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketamine</td>
<td>Oral, rectal, IM, SC, IV, intraspinal</td>
<td>&lt; 2 mg/kg (IM)</td>
<td>&lt; 1 mg/kg (IV, epidural)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metamizole, dipyrone</td>
<td>Oral, IM, oral drop</td>
<td>10-15 mg/kg/dose (max 40 mg/kg total)</td>
<td>Risk of agranulocytosis, not clarified definitely</td>
<td>Very effective antipyretic</td>
<td>Not approved in some countries including USA, Sweden, Japan and Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Narcotics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tramadol (weak opioid)</td>
<td>Oral, rectal, IV, IM (dose can be repeated 4-6 times/day)</td>
<td>2-3 mg/kg/dose (oral, drop)</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, pruritus and rash</td>
<td>Does not inhibit prostaglandin synthesis</td>
<td>IM injection not recommended &lt; 2 months old: be careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codeine</td>
<td>Oral</td>
<td>1 mg/kg, single dose</td>
<td>Respiratory depression not seen after single dose</td>
<td>Both antitussive and analgesic effect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morphine</td>
<td>IM, IV</td>
<td>6-12 months: 0.1 mg/kg, IM 0.05 mg/kg, IV</td>
<td>Most commonly used opioid, but not the most suitable opioid for pain relief in children</td>
<td></td>
<td>IM injection not recommended &lt; 2 months old: be careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.05-0.10 mg/kg/dose (4-6 times/day)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piritramide</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>0.05-0.10 mg/kg/dose (4-6 times/day)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dextromethorphan</td>
<td>Oral, syrup</td>
<td>1 mg/kg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pethidine/ meperidine</td>
<td>IM, IV</td>
<td>1.5-2 mg/kg IM as premedicant 1 mg/kg IV as analgesic</td>
<td>No advantage over morphine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fentanyl</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>1-2 μg/kg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buprenorphine</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>3-5 mg/kg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentazocine</td>
<td>IV, IM</td>
<td>1 mg/kg IM 0.5-0.75 mg/kg IV</td>
<td>In small infants, observe respiration after IV administration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Regional (local) anaesthetics**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Route</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Side effects</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bupivacaine</td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum single bolus dose: 2.5-3.0 mg/kg Maximum infusion: 0.4-0.5 mg/kg/h (10-20 mg/kg/day) in older infants and children; 0.2-0.25 mg/kg/h (5-6 mg/kg/day) in neonates</td>
<td>Cardiotoxicity, convulsion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levobupivacaine</td>
<td>IV, IM</td>
<td>0.2-0.25% 1-2.5 mg/kg for single-shot epidural 0.2-0.4 mg/kg/h for IV continuous administration</td>
<td>Less toxic than bupivacaine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ropivacaine</td>
<td>IV, IM</td>
<td>0.2-0.25% 1-2.5 mg/kg for single-shot epidural 0.2-0.4 mg/kg/h for IV continuous administration</td>
<td>Less toxic than levobupivacaine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3.20.3.4 Bladder and kidney surgery

Continuous epidural infusion of local anaesthetics [979-981], as well as systemic (intravenous) application of analgesics [982], has been shown to be effective. Ketorolac is an effective agent that is underused. It decreases the frequency and severity of bladder spasms and the length of post-operative hospital stay and costs [971, 983-986].

Open kidney surgery is particularly painful because all three muscle layers are cut during conventional loin incision. A dorsal lumbotomy incision may be a good alternative because of the shorter post-operative hospital stay and earlier return to oral intake and unrestricted daily activity [987].

Caudal blocks plus systemic analgesics [988], and continuous epidural analgesia, are effective in terms of decreased post-operative morphine requirement after renal surgery [989, 990]. However, when there is a relative contraindication to line insertion, a less experienced anaesthetist is available, or parents prefer it [991], non-invasive regimens composed of intra-operative and post-operative analgesics may be the choice. Particularly in this group of patients, stepwise analgesia protocols can be developed [992]. For laparoscopic approaches, intra-peritoneal spraying of local anaesthetic before incision of the perirenal fascia may be beneficial [993].

#### Table 18: A simple pain management strategy for paediatric urological surgery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intensity of surgery</th>
<th>First step</th>
<th>Second step</th>
<th>Third step</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mild (inguinal, scrotal, penile)</td>
<td>Paracetamol and wound infiltration with local anaesthetics</td>
<td>non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)</td>
<td>Regional block/weak opioid or IV strong opioid with small increments as rescue analgesia (e.g. nalbuphine, fentanyl, meperidine, morphine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate (lower abdominal)</td>
<td>Peripheral nerve block (single shot or continuous infusion)/opioid injection (intravenous patient-controlled analgesia (IV PCA))</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe (upper abdominal or lombotomy)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Epidural local/major peripheral nerve/plexus block/opioid injection (IV PCA)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.20.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of post-operative pain

#### Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neonates experience pain.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain may cause behavioural and somatic sequelae.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Every institute must develop their own well-structured strategy for post-operative analgesia.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prevent/treat pain in children of all ages.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaluate pain using age-compatible assessment tools.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inform patients and parents accurately.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use pre-emptive and balanced analgesia in order to decrease the side effects of opioids.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4. REFERENCES


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25196653


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26086897


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15758796


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753434


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9507881


751. Chwalla, R. The process of formation of cystic dilatation of the vesical end of the ureter and of diverticula at the ureteral ostium. Urol Cutan Ren 1927. 31: 499. [No abstract available].


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8326617


http://pediatrics.aappublications.org/content/97/4/590


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12563043


http://medind.nic.in/iaad/t04/i5/iaadt04i5p406.pdf


5. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the Paediatric Urology Guidelines Panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have that might be perceived to be a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publically accessible through the European Association of Urology website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/. This Guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the EAU. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation, and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
4.2.3.2 Radiological diagnosis

4.2.4 Prevention of iatrogenic trauma

4.2.5 Management
  4.2.5.1 Proximal and mid-ureteral injury
  4.2.5.2 Distal ureteral injury
  4.2.5.3 Complete ureteral injury

4.2.6 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of ureteral trauma

4.3 Bladder Trauma
  4.3.1 Classification
  4.3.2 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology
    4.3.2.1 Non-iatrogenic trauma
    4.3.2.2 Iatrogenic bladder trauma (IBT)
  4.3.3 Diagnostic evaluation
    4.3.3.1 General evaluation
    4.3.3.2 Supplemental evaluation
      4.3.3.2.1 Cystography
      4.3.3.2.2 Cystoscopy
      4.3.3.2.3 Excretory phase of CT or IVP
      4.3.3.2.4 Ultrasound
  4.3.4 Prevention
  4.3.5 Disease management
    4.3.5.1 Conservative management
    4.3.5.2 Surgical management
      4.3.5.2.1 Blunt non-iatrogenic trauma
      4.3.5.2.2 Penetrating non-iatrogenic trauma
      4.3.5.2.3 Iatrogenic bladder trauma
      4.3.5.2.4 Intravesical foreign body
  4.3.6 Follow-up
  4.3.7 Summary of evidence and recommendations for bladder injury

4.4 Urethral Trauma
  4.4.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology
    4.4.1.1 Iatrogenic urethral trauma
      4.4.1.1.1 Transurethral catheterisation
      4.4.1.1.2 Transurethral surgery
      4.4.1.1.3 Surgical treatment for prostate cancer
      4.4.1.1.4 Radiotherapy for prostate cancer
      4.4.1.1.5 Major pelvic surgery and cystectomy
    4.4.1.2 Non-iatrogenic urethral injuries
      4.4.1.2.1 Anterior urethral injuries (in males)
      4.4.1.2.2 Posterior urethral injuries (in males)
    4.4.1.3 Urethral injuries in females
  4.4.2 Diagnosis in males and females
    4.4.2.1 Clinical signs
    4.4.2.2 Further diagnostic evaluation
      4.4.2.2.1 Retrograde urethrography
      4.4.2.2.2 Ultrasound, computed tomography and magnetic resonance imaging
      4.4.2.2.3 Cystoscopy
  4.4.3 Disease Management
    4.4.3.1 Anterior urethral injuries
      4.4.3.1.1 Blunt anterior urethral injuries
      4.4.3.1.2 Penile fracture-related anterior urethral injuries
      4.4.3.1.3 Penetrating anterior urethral injuries
    4.4.3.2 Posterior urethral injuries
      4.4.3.2.1 Blunt posterior urethral injuries
      4.4.3.2.1.1 Immediate management
      4.4.3.2.1.1.1 Partial posterior urethral rupture
      4.4.3.2.1.1.2 Complete posterior urethral rupture
4.4.3.2 Immediate re-alignment 31
4.4.3.2.1 Immediate urethroplasty 32
4.4.3.2.1.3 Delayed primary treatment 32
4.4.3.2.1.3.1 Delayed primary re-alignment 32
4.4.3.2.1.3.2 Delayed primary urethroplasty 32
4.4.3.2.1.4 Deferred treatment 32
4.4.3.2.1.4.1 Deferred urethroplasty 32
4.4.3.2.1.4.2 Deferred endoscopic treatment 33
4.4.3.2.2 Penetrating posterior urethral injuries 33
4.4.3.2.2.1 Female urethral injuries 33
4.4.3.2.2.1.1 Iatrogenic urethral injuries 33
4.4.3.3 Treatment algorithms 34
4.4.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of urethral trauma 37
4.4.4.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of iatrogenic urethral trauma 37
4.5 Genital Trauma 37
4.5.1 Introduction and background 37
4.5.2 General principles and pathophysiology 38
4.5.2.1 Gunshot wounds 38
4.5.2.2 Bites 38
4.5.2.2.1 Animal bites 38
4.5.2.2.2 Human bites 38
4.5.2.3 Sexual activity 38
4.5.2.3.1 Sexual intercourse 38
4.5.2.3.2 Sexual assault 38
4.5.3 Organ-specific genital trauma 38
4.5.3.1 Penile trauma 38
4.5.3.1.1 Blunt penile trauma 38
4.5.3.1.1.1 Penile fracture 39
4.5.3.2 Penetrating penile trauma 39
4.5.3.3 Penile avulsion injuries and amputation 40
4.5.4 Scrotal trauma 40
4.5.4.1 Blunt scrotal trauma 40
4.5.4.1.1 Testicular dislocation 40
4.5.4.1.2 Haematocoele 40
4.5.4.1.3 Testicular rupture 41
4.5.4.2 Penetrating scrotal trauma 41
4.5.5 Genital trauma in females 41
4.5.5.1 Coital injury of the female genital tract 41
4.5.5.2 Blunt vulvar injuries 41
4.5.6 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of genital trauma 42

5. POLYTRAUMA, DAMAGE CONTROL AND MASS CASUALTY EVENTS 42
5.1 Introduction 42
5.1.1 The development of major trauma centres 42
5.1.1.1 Recommendations for polytrauma management 42
5.2 Damage control 42
5.3 Management principles; polytrauma and associated urological injury 43
5.3.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for management principles of polytrauma and associated urological injury 43
5.4 Urological injury management in polytrauma 43
5.4.1 Renal injury 43
5.4.1.1 Renal preservation 44
5.4.1.2 Recommendations for the management of renal injury 44
5.4.2 Ureteral injury 44
5.4.2.1 Recommendations for the management of ureteral injury 45
5.4.3 Bladder trauma 45
5.4.3.1 Recommendations for the management of bladder trauma and urethral injury
5.4.4 Urethral injury
5.4.5 External genital injury
5.5 Mass casualty events
5.5.1 Triage
5.5.2 Urological role in the mass casualty setting

6. REFERENCES

7. CONFLICT OF INTEREST
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim and objectives

The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Panel for Urological Trauma have prepared these guidelines in order to assist medical professionals in the management of urological trauma in adults. Paediatric trauma is addressed in the EAU Paediatric Urology Guidelines [1].

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions – also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition

The EAU Urological Trauma Guidelines Panel consists of an international group of experts, including urologists and an interventional radiologist, with particular expertise in urological trauma. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements, which can be viewed on the EAU Website Uroweb: http://uroweb.org/guideline/urological-trauma/?type=panel.

1.3 Available publications

A quick reference document (Pocket guidelines) is available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text version. A number of translated versions, alongside several scientific publications in European Urology, the Associations scientific journal, are also available [2-5]. All documents can be viewed through the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guideline/urological-trauma/.

1.4 Publication history

The Urological Trauma Guidelines were first published in 2003. Standard procedure for EAU Guidelines includes an annual assessment of newly published literature in the field to guide future updates. All sections of the 2017 Urological Trauma guidelines, with the exception of sections relating to imaging modalities, have been updated.

2. METHODS

2.1 Evidence sources

For the 2017 Urological Trauma Guidelines, new and relevant evidence has been identified, collated and appraised through a structured assessment of the literature. A broad and comprehensive literature search, covering all sections of the Urological Trauma Guidelines was performed. Databases searched included Medline, EMBASE, and the Cochrane Libraries, covering a time frame between January 2005 and May 31st 2016. A total of 14,498 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance. A detailed search strategy is available online: http://uroweb.org/guideline/urological-trauma/?type=appendices-publications. The majority of identified publications were comprised of case reports and retrospective case series. The lack of high-powered randomised controlled trials (RCTs) makes it difficult to draw meaningful conclusions. The panel recognises this critical limitation.

Specific sections were updated by way of systematic reviews based on topics or questions prioritised by the Guideline Panel. These reviews were performed using standard Cochrane systematic review methodology; http://www.cochranelibrary.com/about/about-cochrane-systematic-reviews.html.

Systematic review results included in the 2017 Urological Trauma Guidelines include:

- Is conservative/minimally-invasive management of Grade 4-5 renal trauma safe and effective compared with open surgical exploration [6]?
- What are the comparative outcomes of early endoscopic re-alignment versus suprapubic diversion alone for pelvic fracture related urethral injuries [7]?

Recommendations in this text are assessed according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [8]. Additional methodology information can be found...
in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://uroweb.org/guidelines/. A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address.

2.2 Peer review
The Urological trauma Guidelines were peer reviewed prior to publication in 2015.

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY & CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Definition and Epidemiology
Trauma is defined as a physical injury or a wound to living tissue caused by an extrinsic agent. Trauma is the sixth leading cause of death worldwide, accounting for 10% of all mortalities. It accounts for approximately five million deaths each year and causes disability to millions more [9, 10].

About half of all deaths due to trauma are in people aged 15-45 years with trauma being the leading cause of death in this age group [11]. Death from injury is twice as common in males, especially in relation to motor vehicle accidents (MVAs) and interpersonal violence. Trauma is therefore a serious public health problem with significant social and economic costs.

Significant variation exists in the causes and the effects of traumatic injuries between geographical areas, and between low, middle, and high-income countries. It should be noted that alcohol and drug abuse increase the rate of traumatic injuries by precipitating interpersonal violence, child and sexual abuse, and MVAs [12].

3.1.1 Genito-Urinary Trauma
Genito-urinary trauma is seen in both sexes and in all age groups, but is more common in males. The kidney is the most commonly injured organ in the genito-urinary system and renal trauma is seen in up to 5% of all trauma cases [13, 14], and in 10% of all abdominal trauma cases [15]. In MVAs, renal trauma is seen after direct impact into the seatbelt or steering wheel (frontal crashes) or from body panel intrusion in side-impact crashes [16].

Ureteral trauma is relatively rare and mainly due to iatrogenic injuries or penetrating gunshot wounds, both in military and civilian settings [17].

Traumatic bladder injuries are usually due to blunt causes (MVAs) and associated with pelvic fracture [18], although they may also be a result of iatrogenic trauma.

The anterior urethra is most commonly injured by blunt or “fall-astride” trauma, whereas the posterior urethra is usually injured in pelvic fracture cases, the majority of which are seen in MVAs [19].

Genital trauma is much more common in males due to anatomical considerations, more frequent participation in physical sports, violent events and war-fighting. Of all genito-urinary injuries, a third to two thirds involve the external genitalia [20].

3.2 Classification of trauma
Traumatic injuries are classified by the World Health Organization (WHO) into intentional (either interpersonal violence related, war-related or self-inflicted injuries), and unintentional injuries (mainly MVAs, falls, and other domestic accidents). Intentional trauma accounts for approximately half of the trauma-related deaths worldwide [10]. A specific type of unintentional injury is iatrogenic injury which is created during therapeutic- or diagnostic procedures by healthcare personnel.

Traumatic insults are classified according to the basic mechanism of the injury into penetrating, when an object pierces the skin, and blunt injuries.

Penetrating trauma is further classified according to the velocity of the projectile into:
1. high-velocity projectiles (e.g. rifle bullets - 800-1,000 m/sec);
2. medium-velocity projectiles (e.g. handgun bullets - 200-300 m/sec);
3. low-velocity items (e.g. knife stab).

High-velocity weapons inflict greater damage because the bullets transmit large amounts of energy to the tissues. They form a temporary expansive cavitation that immediately collapses and creates shear forces and destruction in a much larger area than the projectile tract itself. Cavity formation disrupts tissue, ruptures blood vessels and nerves, and may fracture bones away from the path of the missile. In lower velocity injuries, the damage is usually confined to the projectile tract.

Blast injury is a complex cause of trauma as it commonly includes both blunt and penetrating
trauma, and may also be accompanied by a burn injury.

Several classifications are used to describe the severity and the features of a traumatic injury. The most common is the AAST (American Association for the Surgery of Trauma) injury scoring scale, which is widely used in renal trauma (see Section 4.1.1.3) http://www.aast.org/library/traumatools/injuryscoringscales.aspx [21]. For the other urological organs, general practice is that injuries are described by their anatomical site and severity (partial/complete); therefore, the elaborated AAST tables are omitted from these guidelines.

3.2.1 Initial evaluation and treatment
The initial emergency assessment of a trauma patient is beyond the focus of these guidelines, and is usually carried out by emergency medicine and trauma specialised personnel. The first priority is stabilisation of the patient and treatment of associated life-threatening injuries. The initial treatment should include securing the airway, controlling external bleeding and resuscitation of shock. In many cases, physical examination is carried out during stabilisation of the patient.

A direct history is obtained from conscious patients, while witnesses and emergency personnel can provide valuable information about unconscious or seriously injured patients. In penetrating injuries, important information includes the size of the weapon in stabbings, and the type and calibre of the weapon used in gunshot wounds. The medical history should be as detailed as possible, as pre-existing organ dysfunction can have a negative effect on trauma patient outcome [22, 23]. It is essential that all persons treating trauma patients are aware of the risk of hepatitis B and C infection. An infection rate of 38% was reported among males with penetrating wounds to the external genitalia [24]. In any penetrating trauma, tetanus vaccination should be considered according to the patient’s vaccination history and the features of the wound itself (Centres for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] tetanus wound management) [25].

4. UROGENITAL TRAUMA GUIDELINES

4.1 Renal Trauma
4.1.1 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology
4.1.1.1 Definition and impact of the disease
Renal trauma occurs in approximately 1-5% of all trauma cases [14, 26]. Renal injuries are associated with young age and male gender, the incidence is approximately 4.9 per 100,000 of the population [27]. Most injuries can be managed conservatively as advances in imaging and treatment strategies have decreased the need for surgical intervention and increased organ preservation [15, 28, 29].

4.1.1.2 Mode of injury
4.1.1.2.1 Blunt renal injuries
Blunt mechanisms include MVAs, falls, vehicle-associated pedestrian accidents and assault [30]. A direct blow to the flank or abdomen during sports activities is another cause. Sudden deceleration or a crush injury may result in contusion or laceration of the parenchyma or the renal hilum. In general, renal vascular injuries occur in less than 5% of blunt abdominal trauma, while isolated renal artery injury is very rare (0.05-0.08%) [15] and renal artery occlusion is associated with rapid deceleration injuries.

4.1.1.2.2 Penetrating renal injuries
Gunshot and stab wounds represent the most common causes of penetrating injuries and tend to be more severe and less predictable than blunt trauma. In urban settings, the percentage of penetrating injuries can be 20% or higher [31, 32]. Bullets have the potential for greater parenchymal destruction and are most often associated with multiple-organ injuries [33]. Penetrating injury produces direct tissue disruption of the parenchyma, vascular pedicles, or collecting system.

4.1.1.3 Classification systems
The most commonly used classification system is that of the AAST [21] (Table 4.1.1). This validated system has clinical relevance and helps to predict the need for intervention [16, 34, 35]. It also predicts morbidity after blunt or penetrating injury and mortality after blunt injury [16].
Table 4.1.1: AAST renal injury grading scale

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade*</th>
<th>Description of injury</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Contusion or non-expanding subcapsular haematoma No laceration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Non-expanding peri-renal haematoma Cortical laceration &lt; 1 cm deep without extravasation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Cortical laceration &gt; 1 cm without urinary extravasation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Laceration: through corticomedullary junction into collecting system or Vascular: segmental renal artery or vein injury with contained haematoma, or partial vessel laceration, or vessel thrombosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Laceration: shattered kidney or Vascular: renal pedicle or avulsion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Advance one grade for bilateral injuries up to grade III.

Proposals for changes to the AAST classification include a sub-stratification of the intermediate grade injury into grade 4a (low-risk cases likely to be managed non-operatively) and grade 4b (high-risk cases likely to benefit from angiographic embolisation, repair or nephrectomy), based on the presence of radiographic risk factors, including peri-renal haematoma, intravascular contrast extravasation and laceration complexity [36], as well as a suggestion that grade 4 injuries comprise all collecting system injuries, including ureteropelvic junction (UPJ) injuries of any severity and segmental arterial and venous injuries, while grade 5 injuries should include only hilar injuries, including thrombotic events [37].

4.1.2Diagnostic evaluation

4.1.2.1 Patient history and physical examination

Vital signs should be recorded throughout the diagnostic evaluation. Possible indicators of major injury include a history of a rapid deceleration event (fall, high-speed MVAs) or a direct blow to the flank. In the early resuscitation phase, special consideration should be given to pre-existing renal disease [38]. In patients with a solitary kidney, the entire functioning renal unit may be endangered [39, 40]. Since pre-existing abnormality makes injury more likely following trauma, hydronephrosis due to UPJ abnormality, calculi, cysts and tumours may complicate a minor injury [40].

Physical examination may reveal an obvious penetrating trauma from a stab wound to the lower thoracic back, flanks and upper abdomen, or bullet entry or exit wounds. In stab wounds, the extent of the entrance wound may not accurately reflect the depth of penetration.

Blunt trauma to the back, flank, lower thorax or upper abdomen may result in renal injury. Flank pain, ecchymoses, abrasions, fractured ribs, abdominal distension and/or a mass and tenderness, raise the suspicion of renal involvement.

4.1.2.1.1 Recommendations for patient history and physical examination

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assess haemodynamic stability upon admission.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obtain a history from conscious patients, witnesses and rescue team personnel with regard to the time and setting of the incident.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record past renal surgery, and known pre-existing renal abnormalities (ureteropelvic junction obstruction, large cysts, lithiasis).</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

4.1.2.2 Laboratory evaluation

Urinalysis, haematocrit and baseline creatinine are the most important tests. Haematuria, either non-visible or visible is often seen, but is neither sensitive nor specific enough to differentiate between minor and major injuries [41].

Major injury, such as disruption of the UPJ, pedicle injuries, segmental arterial thrombosis and approximately 9% of patients with stab wounds and renal injury may occur without haematuria [42, 43]. Haematuria that is out of proportion to the history of trauma may suggest pre-existing pathology [44]. A urine dipstick is an acceptable, reliable and rapid test to evaluate haematuria, however, the rate of false-negative
results ranges from 3-10% [45].

Serial haematocrit determination is part of the continuous evaluation. A decrease in haematocrit and the requirement for blood transfusions are indirect signs of the rate of blood loss, and along with the patient's response to resuscitation, are valuable in the decision-making process. However, until evaluation is complete, it will not be clear whether this is due to renal trauma and/or associated injuries. Baseline creatinine measurement reflects renal function prior to the injury. An increased creatinine level usually reflects pre-existing renal pathology.

### 4.1.2.2.1 Recommendations for laboratory evaluation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Test for haematuria in a patient with suspected renal injury.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measure creatinine level to identify patients with impaired renal function prior to injury.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

### 4.1.2.3 Imaging: criteria for radiographic assessment

Decisions to image in suspected renal trauma are based on the mechanism of injury and clinical findings. The goals of imaging are to grade the renal injury, document pre-existing renal pathology, demonstrate presence of the contralateral kidney and identify injuries to other organs. Haemodynamic status will determine the initial imaging pathway with unstable patients potentially requiring immediate damage control laparotomy.

There is general agreement in the literature that renal imaging should be undertaken in blunt trauma if there is visible haematuria or non-visible haematuria and hypotension (systolic blood pressure < 90 mmHg) [30, 46-49]. Patients with non-visible haematuria and no shock after blunt trauma have a low likelihood of concealing significant injury. Other accepted indications for renal imaging in blunt trauma are rapid deceleration injury, direct flank trauma, flank contusions, fracture of the lower ribs and fracture of the thoracolumbar spine, regardless of the presence or absence of haematuria [30, 46-49].

In patients with penetrating trauma, with the suspicion of renal injury, imaging is indicated regardless of haematuria [30, 46-49].

#### 4.1.2.3.1 Ultrasonography (US)

In the setting of abdominal trauma, US is used widely to assess for the presence of haemoperitoneum. However, grey-scale US is insensitive to solid abdominal organ injury [50-52] and the American College of Radiologists (ACR) Renal Trauma guidelines considers US usually not appropriate in renal trauma [47].

The use of contrast enhanced US (CEUS) with microbubbles increases the sensitivity of US to solid organ injury [53]. Its usefulness in renal injury is limited because microbubbles are not excreted into the collecting system, therefore CEUS cannot reliably demonstrate injuries to the renal pelvis or ureter. It is not widely used, although it is a possible no-radiation alternative to computed tomography (CT) in the follow-up of renal trauma [54-56].

#### 4.1.2.3.2 Computed tomography

Computed tomography is the imaging modality of choice in haemodynamically stable patients following blunt or penetrating trauma. Computed tomography is widely available, can quickly and accurately identify and grade renal injury [57], establish the presence of the contralateral kidney and demonstrate concurrent injuries to other organs. Integration of whole body CT into the initial management of polytrauma patients significantly increases the probability of survival [58]. Although the AAST system of grading renal injuries is primarily based on surgical findings, there is a good correlation with CT appearances [58, 59].

In the setting of isolated renal trauma, multiphase CT allows the most comprehensive assessment of the injured kidney and includes pre-contrast and post-contrast arterial, nephrographic and delayed (pyelographic) phase images. Pre-contrast images may help identify subcapsular haematomas obscured on post-contrast sequences [59]. Administration of intravenous iodinated contrast media is essential. Concerns regarding contrast media worsening outcomes via renal parenchymal toxicity are likely unwarranted, with low rates of contrast-induced nephropathy seen in trauma patients [60]. Arterial phase images allow assessment of vascular injury and presence of active extravasation of contrast. Nephrographic phase images optimally demonstrate parenchymal contusions and lacerations. Delayed phase imaging reliably identifies collecting system/ureteric injury [61]. In practice, trauma patients usually undergo standardised whole body imaging protocols and multiphase imaging of the renal tract will not be routinely performed. If there is suspicion that renal injuries have not been fully evaluated, repeat renal imaging should be considered.
4.1.2.3.3 Other imaging modalities

**Intravenous pyelography (IVP)**

Intravenous pyelography has been superseded by cross-sectional imaging and should only be performed when CT is not available. Intravenous pyelography can be used to confirm function of the injured kidney and presence of the contralateral kidney [47].

**Intraoperative pyelography**

One-shot, intraoperative IVP remains a useful technique to confirm the presence of a functioning contralateral kidney in patients too unstable to undergo pre-operative imaging [62]. The technique consists of a bolus intravenous injection of 2 mL/kg of radiographic contrast followed by a single plain film taken after ten minutes.

**Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)**

The diagnostic accuracy of MRI in renal trauma is similar to that of CT [63, 64]. However, the logistical challenges of moving a trauma patient to the MRI suite and the need for MRI-safe equipment make routine evaluation of trauma patients by this imaging modality impractical.

**Radionuclide scans**

Radionuclide scans do not play a role in the immediate evaluation of renal trauma patients.

4.1.3 Disease management

4.1.3.1 Conservative management

4.1.3.1.1 Blunt renal injuries

Haemodynamic stability is the primary criterion for the management of all renal injuries. Non-operative management has become the treatment of choice for most renal injuries. In stable patients, this means supportive care with bed-rest and observation. Primary conservative management is associated with a lower rate of nephrectomies, without any increase in the immediate or long-term morbidity [65]. Hospitalisation or prolonged observation for evaluation of possible injury after a normal abdominal CT scan, when combined with clinical judgment, is unnecessary in most cases [66]. All grade 1 and 2 injuries, either due to blunt or penetrating trauma, can be managed non-operatively. For the treatment of grade 3 injuries, most studies support expectant treatment [67-69].

Most patients with grade 4 and 5 injuries present with major associated injuries, and consequently often undergo exploration and nephrectomy [70], although emerging data indicate that many of these patients can be managed safely with an expectant approach [71]. An initially conservative approach is feasible in stable patients with devitalised fragments [72], although these injuries are associated with an increased rate of complications and late surgery [73]. Patients diagnosed with urinary extravasation from solitary injuries can be managed without major intervention with a resolution rate of > 90% [71, 74]. Similarly, unilateral main arterial injuries are normally managed non-operatively in a haemodynamically stable patient with surgical repair reserved for bilateral artery injuries or injuries involving a solitary functional kidney. Conservative management is also advised in the treatment of unilateral complete blunt arterial thrombosis. However, a blunt arterial thrombosis in multiple trauma patients is usually associated with severe injuries and attempts at repair are usually unsuccessful [75].

4.1.3.1.2 Penetrating renal injuries

Penetrating wounds have traditionally been approached surgically. A systematic approach based on clinical, laboratory and radiological evaluation minimises the incidence of negative exploration without increasing morbidity from a missed injury [76]. Selective non-operative management of abdominal stab wounds is generally accepted following complete staging in stable patients [69, 77]. If the site of penetration by the stab wound is posterior to the anterior axillary line, 88% of such injuries can be managed non-operatively [78]. Stab wounds producing major renal injuries (grade 3 or higher) are more unpredictable and are associated with a higher rate of delayed complications if treated expectantly [79].

Isolated grade 4 injuries represent a unique situation where treatment of the patient is based solely on the extent of the renal injury. Gunshot injuries should be explored only if they involve the hilum or are accompanied by signs of ongoing bleeding, ureteral injuries, or renal pelvis lacerations [80]. Minor low-velocity gunshot and stab wounds may be managed conservatively with an acceptably good outcome [81]. In contrast, tissue damage due to high-velocity gunshot injuries can be more extensive and nephrectomy may be required. Non-operative management of penetrating injuries in selected stable patients is associated with a successful outcome in approximately 50% of stab wounds and up to 40% of gunshot wounds [82-84].
4.1.3.1.3 Interventional radiology
Angioembolisation has a central role in the non-operative management of blunt renal trauma in haemodynamically stable patients [85-87]. Currently there are no validated criteria to identify patients who require angioembolisation and its use in renal trauma remains heterogeneous. Generally, accepted CT findings indicating angioembolisation are active extravasation of contrast, arteriovenous fistula and pseudoaneurysm [88]. The presence of both active extravasation of contrast and a large haematoma (> 25 mm depth) predict the need for angioembolisation with good accuracy [88, 89]. Angioembolisation has been utilised in the non-operative management of all grades of renal injury, however it is likely to be most beneficial in the setting of high grade renal trauma (AAST > 3) [85-87]. Non-operative management of high-grade renal trauma, where angioembolisation is included in the management algorithm, can be successful in up to 94.9% of grade 3, 89% of grade 4 and 52% of grade 5 injuries [85, 86]. Increasing grade of renal injury is associated with increased risk of failed angioembolisation and need for repeat intervention [90]. Repeat embolisation prevents nephrectomy in 67% of patients and open surgery after failed embolisation usually results in nephrectomy [90, 91]. Despite concerns regarding parenchymal infarction and the use of iodinated contrast media, there is evidence to suggest angioembolisation does not affect the occurrence or course of acute kidney injury following renal trauma [92]. In severe polytrauma or high operative risk, the main artery may be embolised, either as a definitive treatment or to be followed by interval nephrectomy.

Available evidence regarding angioembolisation in penetrating renal trauma is sparse. One older study found angioembolisation is three times more likely to fail in penetrating trauma [76]. However, angioembolisation has been used successfully to treat arteriovenous fistulae and pseudoaneurysms in the non-operative management of penetrating renal trauma [93]. With studies reporting successful non-operative management of penetrating renal trauma, angioembolisation must be critically considered in this setting [93, 94].

4.1.3.2 Surgical management
4.1.3.2.1 Indications for renal exploration
The need for renal exploration can be predicted by considering the type of injury, transfusion requirements, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), creatinine and injury grade [95]. However, management of renal injury may also be influenced by the decision to explore or observe associated abdominal injuries [96]. Continuing haemodynamic instability and unresponsiveness to aggressive resuscitation due to renal haemorrhage is an indication for exploration, irrespective of the mode of injury [76, 97]. Other indications include an expanding or pulsatile peri-renal haematoma, identified at exploratory laparotomy, performed for associated injuries. Persistent extravasation or urinoma are usually managed successfully with endo-urological techniques. Inconclusive imaging and a pre-existing abnormality or an incidentally diagnosed tumour may require surgery even after minor renal injury [44].

Grade 5 vascular injuries are regarded as an absolute indication for exploration, but parenchymal grade 5 patients who are stable at presentation may be safely treated conservatively [98-101]. In these patients, intervention is predicted by the need for continued fluid and blood resuscitation, peri-renal haematoma size > 3.5 cm and the presence of intravascular contrast extravasation [36].

4.1.3.2.2 Operative findings and reconstruction
The overall exploration rate for blunt trauma is less than 10% [97], and may be even lower, as the conservative approach is increasingly adopted [102]. The goals of exploration following renal trauma are control of haemorrhage and renal salvage.

Most series suggest the transperitoneal approach for surgery [103, 104]. Access to the pedicle is obtained either through the posterior parietal peritoneum, which is incised over the aorta, just medial to the inferior mesenteric vein or by bluntly dissecting along the plane of the psoas muscle fascia, adjacent to the great vessels, and directly placing a vascular clamp on the hilum [105]. Stable haematomas detected during exploration for associated injuries should not be opened. Central or expanding haematomas indicate injuries of the renal pedicle, aorta, or vena cava and are potentially life-threatening [106].

In cases with unilateral arterial intimal disruption, repair can be delayed, especially in the presence of a normal contralateral kidney. However, prolonged warm ischaemia usually results in irreparable damage and renal loss. Entering the retroperitoneum and leaving the confined haematoma undisturbed within the perinephric fascia is recommended unless it is violated and cortical bleeding is noted; temporarily packing the fossa tightly with laparotomy pads can salvage the kidney [107]. Haemorrhage can occur while the patient is resuscitated, warmed, and awaits re-exploration, however, careful monitoring is sufficient. A brief period of controlled local urinary extravasation is unlikely to result in a significant adverse event or impact overall recovery. During the following 48 to 72 hours, CT scans can identify injuries and select patients for reconstruction or continued expectant management [108]. Ureteral stenting or nephrostomy diversion should be considered after delayed reconstruction due to the increased risk of post-operative urinary extravasation.
Feasibility of renal reconstruction should be judged during the operation. The overall rate of patients who undergo a nephrectomy during exploration is approximately 13%, usually in patients with penetrating injuries and higher rates of transfusion requirements, haemodynamic instability, and higher injury severity scores [109]. Other intra-abdominal injuries also slightly increase the need for nephrectomy [110]. Mortality is associated with overall severity of the injury and not often a consequence of the renal injury itself [111]. In gunshot injuries caused by a high-velocity bullet, reconstruction can be difficult and nephrectomy is often required [112]. Renorrhaphy is the most common reconstructive technique. Partial nephrectomy is required when non-viable tissue is detected. Watertight closure of the collecting system, if open, is desirable, although closing the parenchyma over the injured collecting system also has good results. If the capsule is not preserved, an omental pedicle flap or peri-renal fat bolster may be used for coverage [113]. The use of haemostatic agents and sealants in reconstruction can be helpful [114]. In all cases, drainage of the ipsilateral retroperitoneum is recommended. Following blunt trauma, repair of vascular injuries (grade 5) is seldom, if ever, effective [115]. Repair should be attempted in patients with a solitary kidney or bilateral injuries [116], but not in the presence of a functioning contralateral kidney [29]. Nephrectomy for main artery injury has outcomes similar to those of vascular repair and does not worsen post-treatment renal function in the short-term.

4.1.3.2.3 Recommendations for management of renal trauma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manage stable patients with blunt renal trauma conservatively with close monitoring of vital signs.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage isolated grade 1-3 stab and low-velocity gunshot wounds in stable patients, expectantly.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat patients with active bleeding from renal injury, but without other indications for immediate abdominal operation, with angioembolisation.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proceed with renal exploration in the presence of persistent haemodynamic instability, expanding or pulsatile peri-renal haematoma, grade 5 vascular injury or in case of exploration for associated injuries.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attempt renal reconstruction if haemorrhage is controlled and there is sufficient viable renal parenchyma.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.1.4 Follow-up

The risk of complications in patients who have been treated conservatively increases with injury grade. Repeat imaging two to four days after trauma minimises the risk of missed complications, especially in grade 3-5 blunt injuries [117]. The usefulness of frequent CT scanning after injury has never been satisfactorily proven. Computed tomography scans should always be performed on patients with fever, unexplained decreased haematocrit or significant flank pain. Repeat imaging can be safely omitted for patients with grade 1-4 injuries as long as they remain clinically well [118].

Nuclear scans are useful for documenting and tracking functional recovery following renal reconstruction [119]. Follow-up should involve physical examination, urinalysis, individualised radiological investigation, serial blood pressure measurement and serum determination of renal function [72]. A decline in renal function correlates directly with injury grade; this is independent of the mechanism of injury and the method of management [120, 121]. Follow-up examinations should continue until healing is documented and laboratory findings have stabilised, although checking for latent renovascular hypertension may need to continue for years [122]. In general, the literature is highly limited on the long-term consequences of renal tissue trauma.

4.1.4.1 Complications

Early complications, occurring less than one month after injury, include bleeding, infection, perinephric abscess, sepsis, urinary fistula, hypertension, urinary extravasation and urinoma. Delayed complications include bleeding, hydronephrosis, calculus formation, chronic pyelonephritis, hypertension, arteriovenous fistula, hydronephrosis and pseudo-aneurysms. Delayed retroperitoneal bleeding may be life-threatening and selective angiographic embolisation is the preferred treatment [123]. Perinephric abscess formation is best managed by percutaneous drainage, although open drainage may sometimes be required. Percutaneous management of complications may pose less risk of renal loss than re-operation, when infected tissues make reconstruction difficult [97].

Renal trauma is a rare cause of hypertension, and is mostly observed in young men. The frequency of post-traumatic hypertension is estimated to be less than 5% [124, 125]. Hypertension may occur acutely as a result of external compression from peri-renal haematoma (Page kidney), or chronically due to compressive
scar formation. Renin-mediated hypertension may occur as a long-term complication, aetiologies include renal artery thrombosis, segmental arterial thrombosis, renal artery stenosis (Goldblatt kidney), devitalised fragments and arteriovenous fistulae (AVF). Arteriography is informative in cases of post-traumatic hypertension. Treatment is required if the hypertension persists and could include medical management, excision of the ischaemic parenchymal segment, vascular reconstruction, or total nephrectomy [126].

Urinary extravasation after reconstruction often subsides without intervention as long as ureteral obstruction and infection are not present. Ureteral retrograde stenting may improve drainage and allow healing [127]. Persistent urinary extravasation from an otherwise viable kidney after blunt trauma often responds to stent placement and/or percutaneous drainage [128].

Arteriovenous fistulae usually present with delayed onset of significant haematuria, most often after penetrating trauma. Percutaneous embolisation is often effective for symptomatic AVF, but larger ones may require surgery [129]. Post-procedural complications include infection, sepsis, urinary fistula, and renal infarction [130]. The development of pseudo-aneurysm is a rare complication following blunt trauma. In numerous case reports, transcatheter embolisation appears to be a reliable minimally invasive solution [131]. Acute renal colic from a retained missile has been reported, and should be managed endoscopically, if possible [132].

### 4.1.4.2 Recommendations for follow-up

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Repeat imaging in case of fever, worsening flank pain, or falling haematocrit.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follow-up approximately three months after major renal injury with physical examination, urinalysis, individualised radiological investigation, including nuclear scintigraphy, serial blood pressure measurements and renal function tests.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.1.5 Iatrogenic renal injuries

#### 4.1.5.1 Introduction

Iatrogenic renal trauma is rare, but can lead to significant morbidity.

#### 4.1.5.2 Incidence and aetiology

The commonest causes of iatrogenic renal injuries are listed in Table 4.1.2 [133].

### Table 4.1.2: Incidence and aetiology of commonest iatrogenic renal trauma during various procedures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Haemorrhage</th>
<th>AVF</th>
<th>Pseudo-aneurysm</th>
<th>Renal pelvis Injury</th>
<th>Aortocaliceal fistula</th>
<th>Foreign body</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nephrostomy</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biopsy</td>
<td>+ (0.5-1.5%)</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+ (0.9%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCNL</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopic surgery (oncology)</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open surgery (oncology)</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+ (0.43%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transplantation</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endopyelotomy</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endovascular procedure</td>
<td>+ (1.6%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AVF = arteriovenous fistulae; PCNL = percutaneous nephrolithotomy.

Large haematomas after biopsy (0.5-1.5%) are caused by laceration or arterial damage [134]. Renal artery and intraparenchymal pseudo-aneurysms (0.9%) may be caused by percutaneous biopsy, nephrostomy, and partial nephrectomy (0.43%) [135]. In percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PCNL), haemorrhage is the most dangerous iatrogenic renal trauma, especially when punctures are too medial or directly entering the renal pelvis. Other injuries include AVF or a tear in the pelvicaliceal system.

Iatrogenic renal injuries associated with renal transplantation include AVF, intrarenal pseudo-aneurysms, arterial dissection and arteriocaliceal fistulas. Pseudo-aneurysm is a rare complication of allograft biopsy. Although the overall complication rate following biopsy in transplanted kidneys is 9% (including haematoma, AVF, visible haematuria and infection), vascular complications requiring intervention account for
0.2-2.0% [136]. Predisposing factors include hypertension, renal medullary disease, central biopsies, and numerous needle passes [137]. Arteriovenous fistulae and pseudo-aneurysms can occur in 1-18% of allograft biopsies [134].

Extra-renal pseudo-aneurysms after transplantation procedures generally occur at the anastomosis, in association with local or haematogenous infection. Arterial dissection related to transplantation is rare and presents in the early post-operative period [138].

Iatrogenic renal trauma associated with endopyelotomy is classified as major (vascular injury), and minor (urinoma) [139]. Patients undergoing cryoablation for small masses via the percutaneous or the laparoscopic approach may have asymptomatic perinephric haematoma and self-limiting urine leakage.

Vascular injury is a rare complication (1.6%) of endovascular interventions in contrast to patients with surgical injuries. The renal vessels are vulnerable mainly during oncological procedures [140]. Renal foreign bodies, with retained sponges or wires during open or endo-urological procedures, are uncommon.

4.1.5.3 Diagnosis

Haematuria is common after insertion of nephrostomies, but massive retroperitoneal haemorrhage is rare. Following percutaneous biopsy, AVF may occur with severe hypertension. A pseudo-aneurysm should be suspected if the patient presents with flank pain and decreasing haematocrit, even in the absence of haematuria.

During PCNL, acute bleeding may be caused by injury to the anterior or posterior segmental arteries, whilst late post-operative bleeding may be caused by interlobar and lower-pole arterial lesions, AVF and post-traumatic aneurysms [141]. Duplex US and CT angiography can be used to diagnose vascular injuries. A close watch on irrigation fluid input and output is required to ensure early recognition of fluid extravasation. Intra-operative evaluation of serum electrolytes, acid-base status, oxygenation, and monitoring of airway pressure are good indicators of this complication.

In arterial dissection related to transplantation, symptoms include anuria and a prolonged dependence on dialysis. Doppler US can demonstrate compromised arterial flow. Dissection can lead to thrombosis of the renal artery and/or vein.

After angioplasty and stent-graft placement in the renal artery, during which wire or catheters may enter the parenchyma and penetrate through the capsule, possible radiological findings include AVF, pseudo-aneurysm, arterial dissection and contrast extravasation. Common symptoms of pseudo-aneurysms are flank pain and visible haematuria within two or three weeks after surgery [142]. Transplant AVF and pseudo-aneurysms may be asymptomatic or may cause visible haematuria or hypovolemia due to shunting and the ‘steal’ phenomenon, renal insufficiency, hypertension, and high output cardiac failure.

Patients with extrarenal pseudo-aneurysms (post-transplantation) may present with infection/bleeding, swelling, pain and intermittent claudication. Doppler US findings for AVFs include high-velocity, low-resistance, spectral waveforms, with focal areas of disorganised colour flow outside the normal vascular borders, and possibly a dilated vein [143]. Pseudo-aneurysms appear on US as anechoic cysts, with intracystic flow on colour Doppler US.

Potential complications of retained sponges include abscess formation, fistula formation to the skin or intestinal tract, and sepsis. Retained sponges may look like pseudo-tumours or appear as solid masses. Magnetic resonance imaging clearly shows the characteristic features [144]. Absorbable haemostatic agents may also produce a foreign body giant cell reaction, but the imaging characteristics are not specific. Retained stents, wires, or fractured Acucise cutting wires may also present as foreign bodies and can serve as a nidus for stone formation [145].

4.1.5.4 Management

If a nephrostomy catheter appears to transfix the renal pelvis, significant arterial injury is possible. The misplaced catheter should be withdrawn and embolisation may rapidly arrest the haemorrhage. Computed tomography can also successfully guide repositioning of the catheter into the collecting system [146]. Small subcapsular haematomas after insertion of nephrostomies resolve spontaneously, whilst AVFs are best managed by embolisation. AVF and pseudo-aneurysms after biopsy are also managed by embolisation [147].

During PCNL, bleeding can be venous or arterial. In major venous trauma with haemorrhage, patients with concomitant renal insufficiency can be treated without open exploration or angiographic embolisation using a Council-tip balloon catheter [148]. In the case of profuse bleeding at the end of a PCNL, conservative management is usually effective. The patient should be placed in the supine position, clamping the nephrostomy catheter and forcing diuresis. Super-selective embolisation is required in less than 1% of cases and has proved effective in more than 90% [149]. Short-term deleterious effects are more pronounced in patients with a solitary kidney, but long-term follow-up shows functional and morphological improvements [150]. Termination of PCNL if the renal pelvis is torn or ruptured is a safe choice. Management requires close monitoring, placement of an abdominal or retroperitoneal drain and supportive measures [151]. Most surgical...
venous injuries include partial lacerations that can be managed with various techniques, such as venorrhaphy, patch angioplasty with autologous vein, or an expanded polytetrafluoroethylene (ePTFE) graft [152]. If conservative measures fail in cases of pseudo-aneurysm and clinical symptoms or a relevant decrease in haemoglobin occurs, transarterial embolisation should be considered [153]. As the success rate is similar for initial and repeat interventions, a repeat intervention is justified when the clinical course allows this [90].

Traditionally, patients with post-operative haemorrhage following intra-abdominal laparoscopic surgery of the kidney require laparotomy. Pseudo-aneurysms and AVF are uncommon after minimally invasive partial nephrectomy, but can lead to significant morbidity. Temporary haemostasis occurs with coagulation and/or tamponade, but later degradation of the clot, connection with the extravascular space, and possible fistula formation within the collecting system may develop. Patients typically present with visible haematuria, even though they may also experience flank pain, dizziness and fever. Embolisation is the reference standard for both diagnosis and treatment in the acute setting, although CT can be used if the symptoms are not severe and/or the diagnosis is ambiguous. Reports have described good preservation of renal function after embolisation [154].

Endoluminal management after renal transplantation consists of stabilising the intimal flap with stent placement. Embolisation is the treatment of choice for a symptomatic transplant AVF or enlarging pseudo-aneurysm [155]. Super-selective embolisation with a coaxial catheter and metallic coils helps to limit the loss of normal functioning graft tissue [156]. Failure of embolisation is associated with a high nephrectomy rate. The long-term outcome depends on the course of the transplant and the amount of contrast medium used during the procedure.

Surgical treatment for AVF consists of partial or total nephrectomy or arterial ligation, which results in loss of part of the transplant or the entire transplant. To date, surgery has been the main approach in the treatment of renal vascular injuries. In patients with retroperitoneal haematoma, AVF, and haemorrhagic shock, interventional therapy is associated with a lower level of risk compared to surgery [157]. Renal arteriography followed by selective embolisation can confirm the injury. In injuries during angioplasty and stent-graft placement, transcatheter embolisation is the first choice of treatment [158]. The treatment for acute iatrogenic rupture of the main renal artery is balloon tamponade. If this fails, immediate availability of a stent graft is vital [159]. The true nature of lesions caused by foreign bodies is revealed after exploration.

4.1.5.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of iatrogenic renal injuries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Iatrogenic renal injuries are procedure-dependent (1.8-15%).</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Significant injury requiring intervention is rare.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The most common injuries are vascular.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal allografts are more susceptible.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injuries occurring during surgery are rectified immediately.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptoms suggestive of a significant injury require investigation.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Repeat imaging in case of fever, worsening flank pain, or falling haematocrit.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follow-up approximately three months after major renal injury with physical examination, urinalysis, individualised radiological investigation, including nuclear scintigraphy, serial blood pressure measurements and renal function tests.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.1.6 **Algorithms**

Figures 4.1.1 and 4.1.2 show the suggested treatment for blunt and penetrating renal injuries in adults.

**Figure 4.1.1 Evaluation of blunt renal trauma in adults**

* Suspected renal trauma results from reported mechanism of injury and physical examination.

† Renal imaging: CT scans are the gold standard for evaluating blunt and penetrating renal injuries in stable patients. In settings where CT is not available, the urologist should rely on other imaging modalities (IVP, angiography, radiographic scintigraphy, MRI).

‡ Renal exploration: Although renal salvage is a primary goal for the urologist, decisions concerning the viability of the organ and the type of reconstruction are made during the operation. CT = computed tomography; Ht = haematocrit; IVP = intravenous pyelography.
Suspected renal trauma results from reported mechanism of injury and physical examination. 

† Renal imaging: CT scans are the gold standard for evaluating blunt and penetrating renal injuries in stable patients. In settings where CT is not available, the urologist should rely on other imaging modalities (IVP, angiography, radiographic scintigraphy, MRI).

‡ Renal exploration: Although renal salvage is a primary goal for the urologist, decisions concerning the viability of the organ and the type of reconstruction are made during the operation.

CT = computed tomography; Ht = haematocrit.

4.2 Ureteral Trauma

4.2.1 Incidence

Trauma to the ureters is relatively rare as they are protected from injury by their small size, mobility, and the adjacent vertebrae, bony pelvis and muscles. Iatrogenic trauma is the commonest cause of ureteral injury (approximately 80%) [160]. It is seen in open, laparoscopic or endoscopic surgery and is often missed intra-operatively. Any trauma to the ureter may result in severe sequelae.

4.2.2 Epidemiology, aetiology, and pathophysiology

Overall, ureteral trauma accounts for 1-2.5% of urinary tract trauma [17, 160-162], with even higher rates in modern combat injuries [163]. Penetrating external ureteral trauma, mainly caused by gunshot wounds, dominates most of the modern series, both civilian and military [17, 160, 164]. About one-third of cases of external trauma to the ureters are caused by blunt trauma, mostly road traffic injuries [161, 162].
Ureteral injury should be suspected in all cases of penetrating abdominal injury, especially gunshot wounds, as it occurs in 2-3% of cases [160]. It should also be suspected in blunt trauma with a deceleration mechanism, as the renal pelvis can be torn away from the ureter [160]. The distribution of external ureteral injuries along the ureter varies between series, but it is more common in the upper ureter [17, 161, 162].

Iatrogenic ureteral trauma can result from various mechanisms: ligation or kinking with a suture, crushing from a clamp, partial or complete transection, thermal injury, or ischaemia from devascularisation [164-166]. It usually involves damage to the lower ureter [160, 164, 165, 167]. Gynaecological operations are the commonest cause of iatrogenic trauma to the ureters (Table 4.2.1), but it may also occur in colorectal operations, especially abdominoperineal resection and low anterior resection [168]. The incidence of urological iatrogenic trauma has decreased in the last twenty years [164, 169] due to improvements in technique, instruments and surgical experience.

Risk factors for iatrogenic trauma include conditions that alter the normal anatomy, e.g. advanced malignancy, prior surgery or irradiation, diverticulitis, endometriosis, anatomical abnormalities, and major haemorrhage [164, 168, 170]. Occult ureteral injury occurs more often than reported and not all injuries are diagnosed intra-operatively. In gynaecological surgery, if routine intra-operative cystoscopy is used, the detection rate of ureteral trauma is five times higher than usually reported [170, 171].

Table 4.2.1: Incidence of ureteral injury in various procedures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Percentage %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gynaecological</strong> [167, 171, 172]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaginal hysterectomy</td>
<td>0.02 – 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal hysterectomy</td>
<td>0.03 – 2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopic hysterectomy</td>
<td>0.2 – 6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urogynaecological (anti-incontinence/prolapse)</td>
<td>1.7 – 3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colorectal</strong> [166, 171, 173]</td>
<td>0.15 – 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ureteroscopy</strong> [169]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucosal abrasion</td>
<td>0.3 – 4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ureteral perforation</td>
<td>0.2 – 2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intussusception/avulsion</td>
<td>0 – 0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Radical prostatectomy</strong> [174]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open retropubic</td>
<td>0.05 – 1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robot-assisted</td>
<td>0.05 – 0.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2.3 Diagnosis

The diagnosis of ureteral trauma is challenging, therefore, a high index of suspicion should be maintained. In penetrating external trauma, it is usually made intra-operatively during laparotomy [175], while it is delayed in most blunt trauma and iatrogenic cases [164, 167, 176].

4.2.3.1 Clinical diagnosis

External ureteral trauma usually accompanies severe abdominal and pelvic injuries. Penetrating trauma is usually associated with vascular and intestinal injuries, while blunt trauma is associated with damage to the pelvic bones and lumbosacral spine injuries [161, 162]. Haematuria is an unreliable and poor indicator of ureteral injury, as it is present in only 50-75% of patients [160, 164, 177].

Iatrogenic injury may be noticed during the primary procedure, when intravenous dye (e.g. indigo carmine) is injected to exclude ureteral injury. However, it is usually noticed later, when it is discovered by subsequent evidence of upper tract obstruction, urinary fistulae formation or sepsis. The following clinical signs are characteristic of delayed diagnosis: flank pain, urinary incontinence, vaginal or drain urinary leakage, haematuria, fever, uraemia or urinoma. When the diagnosis is missed, the complication rate increases [160, 163, 176]. Early recognition facilitates immediate repair and provides better outcome [172, 178].

4.2.3.2 Radiological diagnosis

Extravasation of contrast medium on CT is the hallmark sign of ureteral trauma. However, hydronephrosis, ascites, urinoma or mild ureteral dilation are often the only signs. In unclear cases, a retrograde or antegrade urography is the optimum standard for confirmation [164]. Intravenous pyelography, especially one-shot IVP, is unreliable in diagnosis, as it is negative in up to 60% of patients [160, 164].
4.2.4 Prevention of iatrogenic trauma

The prevention of iatrogenic trauma to the ureters depends upon the visual identification of the ureters and careful intra-operative dissection in their proximity [164-166]. The use of prophylactic pre-operative ureteral stent insertion assists in visualisation and palpation and is often used in complicated cases (about 4% in a large cohort) [179]. It is probably also advantageous in making it easier to detect ureteral injury [165] however, it does not decrease the rate of injury [164]. Apart from its evident disadvantages (potential complications and cost), a stent may alter the location of the ureter and diminish its flexibility [165, 173]. Routine prophylactic stenting is generally not cost-effective [165]. Another form of secondary prevention is intra-operative cystoscopy after intravenous dye injection, which can provide confirmation of ureteral patency [167]. Routine cystoscopy has minimal risks and can markedly increase the rate of ureteral injury detection [171].

4.2.5 Management

Management of a ureteral trauma depends on many factors concerning the nature, severity and location of the injury. Immediate diagnosis of a ligation injury during an operation can be managed by de-ligation and stent placement. Partial injuries can be repaired immediately with a stent or urine diversion by a nephrostomy tube. Stenting is helpful because it provides canalisation and may decrease the risk of stricture [164]. On the other hand, its insertion has to be weighed against potentially aggravating the severity of the ureteral injury. Immediate repair of ureteral injury is usually advisable. However, in cases of unstable trauma patients, a ‘damage control’ approach is preferred with ligation of the ureter, diversion of the urine (e.g. by a nephrostomy), and a delayed definitive repair [180]. Injuries that are diagnosed late are usually treated first by a nephrostomy tube with or without a stent [164].

Endo-urological treatment of delayed-diagnosed ureteral injuries by internal stenting, with or without dilatation, is the first step in most cases. It is performed either retrogradely or antegradely through a PCN, and it has a variable success rate of 14 to 89% in published series [181-183]. An open surgical repair is necessary in case of failure. The basic principles for any surgical repair of a ureteral injury are outlined in Table 4.2.2. Wide debridement is highly recommended for gunshot wound injuries due to the ‘blast effect’ of the injury.

4.2.5.1 Proximal and mid-ureteral injury

Injuries shorter than 2-3 cm can usually be managed by a primary uretero-ureterostomy [160]. When this approach is not feasible, a uretero-calycostomy should be considered. In extensive ureteral loss, a transuretero-ureterostomy is a valid option, where the proximal stump of the ureter is transposed across the midline and anastomosed to the contralateral ureter. The reported stenosis rate is 4% and intervention or revision occur in 10% of cases [184].

4.2.5.2 Distal ureteral injury

Distal injuries are best managed by ureteral re-implantation (uretero-neocystostomy) because the primary trauma usually jeopardises the blood supply to the distal ureter. The question of refluxing vs. non-refluxing ureteral re-implantation remains unresolved in the literature. The risk for clinically significant reflux should be weighed against the risk for ureteral obstruction.

A psoas hitch between the bladder and the ipsilateral psoas tendon is usually needed to bridge the gap and to protect the anastomosis from tension. The contralateral superior vesical pedicle may be divided to improve bladder mobility. The reported success rate is very high (97%) [184]. In extensive mid-lower ureteral injury, the large gap can be bridged with a tubularised L-shaped bladder flap (Boari flap). It is a time-consuming operation and not usually suitable in the acute setting. The success rate is reported to be 81-88% [185].

4.2.5.3 Complete ureteral injury

A longer ureteral injury can be replaced using a segment of the intestines, usually the ileum (ileal interposition graft). This should be avoided in patients with impaired renal function or known intestinal disease. Follow-up should include serum chemistry to diagnose hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis [186]. The long-term complications include anastomotic stricture (3%) and fistulae (6%) [187]. In cases of extensive ureteral loss or after multiple attempts at ureteral repair, the kidney can be relocated to the pelvis (autotransplantation). The renal vessels are anastomosed to the iliac vessels and a ureteral re-implantation is performed [188].
Table 4.2.2: Principles of surgical repair of ureteral injury

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Debridement of necrotic tissue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spatulation of ureteral ends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watertight mucosa-to-mucosa anastomosis with absorbable sutures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal stenting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External drain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolation of injury with peritoneum or omentum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.3: Reconstruction option by site of injury

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site of injury</th>
<th>Reconstruction options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Upper ureter</td>
<td>Uretero-ureterostomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Transuretero-ureterostomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Uretero-calycostomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid ureter</td>
<td>Uretero-ureterostomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Transuretero-ureterostomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ureteral re-implantation and a Boari flap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower ureter</td>
<td>Ureteral re-implantation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ureteral re-implantation with a psoas hitch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete</td>
<td>Ileal interposition graft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Autotransplantation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2.6 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of ureteral trauma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Iatrogenic ureteral trauma gives rise to the commonest cause of ureteral injury</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gunshot wounds account for the majority of penetrating ureteral injuries, while MVAs account for most blunt injuries.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ureteral trauma usually accompanies severe abdominal and pelvic injuries.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haematuria is an unreliable and poor indicator of ureteral injury.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The diagnosis of ureteral trauma is often delayed.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-operative prophylactic stents do not prevent ureteral injury, but may assist in its detection.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endo-urological treatment of small ureteral fistulae and strictures is safe and effective.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major ureteral injury requires ureteral reconstruction following temporary urinary diversion.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Visually identify the ureters to prevent ureteral trauma during abdominal and pelvic surgery.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beware of concomitant ureteral injury in all abdominal penetrating trauma, and in deceleration-type blunt trauma.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use pre-operative prophylactic stents in high-risk cases.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

4.3 Bladder Trauma

4.3.1 Classification

The AAST proposes a classification of bladder trauma, based on the extent and location of the injury [189]. Practically the location of the bladder injury is important as it will guide further management (Table 4.3.1) [190]:

- Intraperitoneal;
- Extraperitoneal;
- combined intra-extraperitoneal.
Table 4.3.1: Classification of bladder trauma based on mode of action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode of Action</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-iatrogenic trauma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>penetrating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iatrogenic trauma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>external</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign body</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3.2 Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

4.3.2.1 Non-iatrogenic trauma

Motor vehicle traffic collisions are the most common cause of blunt bladder injury, followed by falls, industrial trauma/pelvic crush injuries and blows to the lower abdomen [161, 189, 191]. Between 60-90% of patients with bladder injuries caused by blunt trauma have associated pelvic fractures, and 44-68.5% of patients with bladder injuries have at least one other intra-abdominal injury [192, 193]. Pelvic fractures are associated with bladder injuries in only 3.6% of cases [161]. The incidence of extraperitoneal (84.2-86%) and intraperitoneal (14-50%) injuries varies among series [189, 192, 193]. A combination of bladder and urethral injury is present in 10-20% of cases [190, 193].

Extraperitoneal ruptures are almost always associated with pelvic fractures [191, 193]. The injury is usually caused by distortion of the pelvic ring, with shearing of the anterolateral bladder wall near the bladder base (at its fascial attachments), or by a ‘counter-coup’ that bursts opposite the fracture site. Occasionally, the bladder is directly perforated by a sharp bony fragment [190]. The highest risk of bladder injury was found in disruptions of the pelvic circle with displacement > 1 cm, diastasis of the pubic symphysis > 1 cm and pubic rami fractures [161, 190]. An isolated acetabular fracture is not likely to be associated with bladder injury [190, 193].

Intraperitoneal ruptures are caused by a sudden rise in intravesical pressure of a distended bladder, secondary to a blow to the pelvis or lower abdomen. The bladder dome is the weakest point of the bladder and ruptures will usually occur there [190]. Penetrating injuries, mainly gunshot wounds, are rare except in conflict regions and some urban settings [189, 194, 195]. Improvised explosive devices are at present the main cause of combat related bladder injuries in asymmetric warfare [196].

4.3.2.2 Iatrogenic bladder trauma (IBT)

The bladder is the urological organ that most often suffers iatrogenic injury [197]. Table 4.3.2 shows the incidence of IBT during various procedures.

Table 4.3.2: Incidence of IBT during various procedures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Percentage (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>External</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstetrics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesarean delivery [198]</td>
<td>0.08-0.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gynaecology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal radical hysterectomy [199]</td>
<td>2.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopic radical hysterectomy [199]</td>
<td>4.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robotic radical hysterectomy [199]</td>
<td>4.38-4.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopic hysterectomy [200] (benign)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaginal hysterectomy [200] (benign)</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal hysterectomy [200] (benign)</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General surgery</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small/large bowel procedures [201]</td>
<td>0.12-0.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectal procedures [201]</td>
<td>0.27-0.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal cytoreductive surgery [202]</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopic inguinal hernia repair [203]</td>
<td>0.04-0.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Urology</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retropubic male sling [204]</td>
<td>8.0-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopic sacrocolpopexy [205]</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4.3.3: Clinical signs and symptoms of bladder injury

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signs and symptoms</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Haematuria [190, 191]</td>
<td>Visible = principal sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inability to void [190]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal tenderness [190, 191]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal distension [190]</td>
<td>In the case of urinary ascites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uraemia and elevated creatinine level [190]</td>
<td>Intraperitoneal rupture =&gt; re-absorption of urea nitrogen and creatinine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inadequate urinary output [190]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entrance/exit wounds at lower abdomen, perineum or buttocks [194, 218]</td>
<td>In penetrating injuries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Signs of external IBT are extravasation of urine, visible laceration, clear fluid in the surgical field, appearance of the bladder catheter, and blood and/or gas in the urine bag during laparoscopy [198]. Direct inspection is the most reliable method of assessing bladder integrity [197]. Intravesical instillation of methylene blue may be helpful to detect smaller lesions [219]. If bladder perforation is close to the trigone, the ureteric orifices should be inspected [197, 198].

Internal IBT is suggested by cystoscopic identification of fatty tissue, a dark space between detrusor muscle fibres, or the visualisation of bowel [209]. Signs of major perforation are the inability to distend the bladder, a low return of irrigation fluid, and abdominal distension [220].

Clinical signs and symptoms of an iatrogenic bladder trauma not recognised during surgery include haematuria, abdominal pain, abdominal distension, ileus, peritonitis, sepsis, urine leakage from the wound, decreased urinary output, and increased serum creatinine [197, 198]. An IBT during hysterectomy or caesarean delivery can be complicated by respective vesico-vaginal or vesico-uterine fistula [198, 221].

Symptoms of an intravesical foreign body include dysuria, recurrent urinary tract infection,

---

**Burch colposuspension** [206, 207] 1.0-1.2

**Midurethral sling (Transobturator route)** [206] 1.61

**Midurethral sling (Retropubic route)** [206] 4.91

**Pubovaginal sling** [206] 2.8

**Transvaginal mesh surgery** [208] 2.84

**Native tissue colporrhaphy** [208] 0.53

**Transurethral resection of the bladder (TURB)** [209, 210] 3.5-58

External IBT occurs most often during obstetric and gynaecological procedures, followed by general surgical and urological interventions [197]. Main risk factors are previous surgery, inflammation and malignancy [197].

Internal IBT mainly occurs during TURB. Reported risk factors are larger tumours, older age, pre-treated bladders (previous TURB, intravesical instillations) and location at the bladder dome [211, 212]. There is conflicting evidence whether bipolar TURB can reduce the risk of bladder perforation due to obturator jerk for tumours at the lateral wall [213, 214]. Perforations requiring intervention are rare (0.16-0.57%) [211]. Extraperitoneal perforations are more frequent than intraperitoneal perforations [212, 215].

Intravesical foreign bodies include:

- retained parts of endo-urologic equipment such as resectoscopes, ureteric stents or bladder catheters;
- forgotten pieces of surgical gauze, sutures or staples used in pelvic procedures [216];
- an unrecognised perforation or erosion of mesh used for correction of urinary incontinence or pelvic organ prolapse [217].

**Diagnostic evaluation**

**General evaluation**

The principal sign of bladder injury is visible haematuria [190, 191]. Non-iatrogenic bladder injury is strongly correlated with a combination of pelvic fracture and visible haematuria, and this combination is an absolute indication for further imaging [190]. Further imaging is also indicated in case of non-visible haematuria associated with either disruption of the pelvic circle with displacement > 1 cm or diastasis of the pubic symphysis > 1 cm and in case of posterior urethral injury [190]. In the absence of these absolute indications, the decision for further imaging should be based on the presence of other clinical signs and symptoms [190] which are summarised in Table 4.3.3.
frequency, urgency, haematuria, and perineal/pelvic pain [217]. Bladder calculi may develop with chronic intravesical mesh exposure [217].

4.3.3.2 Supplemental evaluation
4.3.3.2.1 Cystography
Cystography is the preferred diagnostic modality for non-iatrogenic bladder injury and for a suspected IBT in the post-operative setting [221, 222]. Both plain and CT cystography have a comparable sensitivity (90-95%) and specificity (100%) [191, 223]. However, CT cystography is superior in the identification of bony fragments in the bladder and bladder neck injuries as well as other abdominal injuries [190, 193].

Cystography must be performed using retrograde filling of the bladder with a minimum volume of 350 mL of dilute contrast material [221, 222].

With intraperitoneal extravasation, free contrast medium is visualised in the abdomen, highlighting bowel loops and/or outlining abdominal viscera such as the liver [224]. Extraperitoneal bladder injury is associated with flame-shaped areas of contrast extravasation in the peri-vesical soft tissues. Contrast medium in the vagina is a sign of vesico-vaginal fistula [221].

4.3.3.2.2 Cystoscopy
Cystoscopy is the preferred method for detection of intra-operative bladder injuries, as it may directly visualise the laceration. Cystoscopy can localise the lesion in relation to the position of the trigone and ureteral orifices [224]. A lack of bladder distension during cystoscopy suggests a large perforation.

Cystoscopy is recommended to detect perforation of the bladder (or urethra) following suburethral sling operations by the retropubic route [207]. Routine intra-operative cystoscopy during benign gynaecologic procedures significantly increases the intra-operative detection rate, however the post-operative detection rate remains unaffected [225]. Based on these findings, routine cystoscopy during benign gynaecologic procedures cannot be generally recommended, although the threshold to perform it should be low in case of suspicion of bladder injury. Cystoscopy is also preferred to diagnose a foreign body [216, 217].

4.3.3.2.3 Excretory phase of CT or IVP
Passive bladder filling by clamping the urinary catheter during the excretory phase of CT or IVP is not sufficient to exclude bladder injury [190].

4.3.3.2.4 Ultrasound
Demonstration of intraperitoneal fluid or an extraperitoneal collection suggests intraperitoneal or extraperitoneal perforation, respectively. However, US alone is insufficient in the diagnosis of bladder trauma.

4.3.4 Prevention
The risk of bladder injury is reduced by emptying the bladder by urethral catheterisation in every procedure where the bladder is at risk [219, 226]. Furthermore, the balloon of the catheter can aid in identification of the bladder [219]. For tumours at the lateral wall, obturator nerve block or general anesthesia with adequate muscle relaxation can reduce the incidence of internal IBT during TURB [214]. The use of combat pelvic protection systems reduces the risk of bladder and other genito-urinary injuries due to the blast mechanism of improvised explosive devices [196, 227].

4.3.5 Disease management
4.3.5.1 Conservative management
Conservative treatment comprises clinical observation, continuous bladder drainage and antibiotic prophylaxis [212]. This is the standard treatment for an uncomplicated extraperitoneal injury due to blunt trauma [190, 193], after TURB or after other operations in which the injury was not recognised during surgery [212].

It is also an option for an uncomplicated intraperitoneal injury after TURB or after other operations in which the injury was not recognised during surgery, but only in the absence of peritonitis and ileus [210, 224]. In addition to conservative treatment, placement of an intraperitoneal drain is advocated, especially when the lesion is larger [220, 228].

On the rare occasion of a penetrating, minor and isolated extraperitoneal bladder injury, conservative management can be attempted [218, 229, 230].

4.3.5.2 Surgical management
The preferred method is two-layer vescicorraphy (mucosa-detrusor) with absorbable sutures [197, 219], although a watertight single-layer closure might be as good [193].
4.3.5.2.1 Blunt non-iatrogenic trauma

Although most extraperitoneal ruptures can be treated conservatively, bladder neck involvement, bone fragments in the bladder wall, concomitant rectal or vaginal injury or entrapment of the bladder wall will necessitate surgical intervention [190]. There is an increasing trend to treat pelvic ring fractures with open stabilisation and internal fixation with osteosynthetic material. During this procedure, an extraperitoneal rupture should be sutured concomitantly in order to reduce the risk of infection [190, 191]. Similarly, during surgical exploration for other injuries, an extraperitoneal rupture should be sutured concomitantly in order to reduce infective complications [189, 191, 192].

Intraperitoneal ruptures should always be managed by formal surgical repair [190, 193] because intraperitoneal urine extravasation can lead to peritonitis, intra-abdominal sepsis and death [192]. Abdominal organs should be inspected for possible associated injuries and urinomas must be drained if detected. In the absence of other intra-abdominal injuries, laparoscopic suturing of the intraperitoneal rupture is possible [191].

4.3.5.2.2 Penetrating non-iatrogenic trauma

The standard treatment is emergency exploration, debridement of devitalised bladder muscle and primary bladder repair [194, 195]. A midline exploratory cystotomy is advised to inspect the bladder wall and the distal ureters [194]. In gunshot wounds, there is a strong association with intestinal and rectal injuries, requiring faecal diversion [194, 218]. Most gunshot wounds are associated with two transmural injuries (entry and exit wounds) and the bladder should be carefully checked for those two lesions [194]. As the penetrating agent (bullet, knife) is not sterile, concomitant antibiotic treatment is advised [195].

4.3.5.2.3 Iatrogenic bladder trauma

Perforations recognised intra-operatively are primarily closed [231].

For bladder injuries not recognised during surgery or for internal injuries, a distinction must be made between intraperitoneal and extraperitoneal injuries. For intraperitoneal injuries, the standard of care is surgical exploration with repair [224]. If surgical exploration is performed after TURB, the bowel must be inspected to rule out concomitant injury [211]. For extraperitoneal injuries, exploration is only needed for large perforations complicated by symptomatic extravesical collections. It requires drainage of the collection, with or without closure of the perforation [232].

If bladder perforation is encountered during mid-urethral sling or transvaginal mesh procedures, sling re-insertion and urethral catheterisation (one to two days) should be performed [233].

4.3.5.2.4 Intravesical foreign body

For perforated or eroded meshes, the intravesical portion must be removed endoscopically or by open surgery (retropubic or transvaginal). It is advised to excise the mesh at least 1 cm beyond the bladder urothelium. As this can be better accomplished with open surgery, the risk of persistent or recurrent mesh exposure is lower as compared to endoscopic removal [217]. For other types of foreign bodies, cystoscopic removal is performed and if this fails cystotomy is needed [216].

4.3.6 Follow-up

Continuous bladder drainage is required to prevent elevated intravesical pressure and to allow the bladder to heal [197, 234]. Conservatively treated bladder injuries (traumatic or external IBT) are followed by planned cystography scheduled to evaluate bladder healing, with catheter removal in case of absence of contrast extravasation [190]. The first cystography is planned seven to ten days after injury. In case of ongoing leakage, cystoscopy must be performed to rule out bony fragments in the bladder and, if absent, cystography is done after one week [190].

After operative repair of a simple injury in a healthy patient, the catheter can be removed after seven to ten days without need for a control cystography [234, 235]. After repair of a complex injury (trigone involvement, ureteric reimplantation) or in the case of risk factors of wound healing (e.g. use of steroids, malnutrition), control cystography is advised [234, 235].

For conservatively treated internal IBT, a catheter duration of five and seven days for extraperitoneal and intraperitoneal perforations, respectively, is proposed [212, 215].
### 4.3.7  Summary of evidence and recommendations for bladder injury

#### Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The risk of bladder perforation during mid-urethral sling operations for stress urinary incontinence is lower for the obturator route compared to the retropubic route.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The combination of pelvic fracture and visible haematuria is highly suggestive of bladder injury.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform cystography in case of suspicion of a iatrogenic bladder injury in the post-operative setting.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform cystography (conventional or computed tomography imaging) in the presence of visible haematuria and pelvic fracture.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystography should be performed with filling of the bladder with at least 350 mL of dilute contrast.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use cystoscopy to rule out bladder injury after suburethral sling procedure by the retropubic route.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage a blunt extraperitoneal bladder injury caused by blunt trauma conservatively, in the absence of bladder neck involvement and/or associated injuries that require surgical intervention.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage intraperitoneal injuries caused by blunt trauma by surgical exploration and repair.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage small uncomplicated iatrogenic intraperitoneal bladder injuries conservatively.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform control cystography to assess bladder wall healing after repair of a simple injury in a healthy patient.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform control cystography to assess bladder wall healing after repair of a complex injury or in case of risk factors for wound healing.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

### 4.4  Urethral Trauma

#### 4.4.1  Epidemiology, aetiology and pathophysiology

4.4.1.1  Iatrogenic urethral trauma
The most common type of urethral trauma seen in urological practice is iatrogenic, due to catheterisation, instrumentation or surgery [236, 237]. New treatment methods and applied energy sources can also injure the urethra [238].

4.4.1.1.1  Transurethral catheterisation
Iatrogenic urethral trauma usually results from improper or prolonged catheterisation and accounts for 32% of strictures. Most of these strictures affect the bulbar urethra [238, 239], while the bladder neck is rarely affected in such cases [240].

The size and type of catheter used have an important impact on urethral stricture formation. Current data indicate that silicone catheters and small-calibre Foley catheters are associated with less urethral morbidity [241] (see Figure 4.4.3). Implementing training programmes may significantly decrease the incidence of such injuries, increase patient safety and reduce the negative long-term effects [237, 242].

4.4.1.1.2  Transurethral surgery
Transurethral procedures are a common cause of iatrogenic urethral trauma. Factors that may influence the development of iatrogenic endoscopic urethral strictures include electrical dispersion generated by uni- or bipolar current and the diameter of the instruments used [243]. The incidence of urethral strictures following mono- or bipolar transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) appear to be equal, although some data indicates that bipolar TURP has a higher urethral stricture rate when used for higher prostate volumes (> 70 mL) [244] and that bladder neck strictures are also more common when bipolar TURP is used [245].

Predisposing factors most strongly associated with stricture formation in patients undergoing TURP are increased prostate volume, prostate cancer and the surgeon’s experience [246]. Meatal strictures occur as a result of a mismatch between the size of the instrument and the diameter of the urethral meatus. Bulbar strictures occur due to insufficient insulation by the lubricant, causing the monopolar current to leak. To prevent strictures, lubricant gel should be applied carefully in the urethra. The lubricant must be re-applied when the resection time is prolonged [247]. Internal urethrotomy must be performed before TURP if there are pre-existing meatal or urethral strictures [247].
There appears to be no relationship with the duration of the procedure or the method used (holmium laser or traditional TURP) on the rate of stricture formation [248].

4.4.1.3 Surgical treatment for prostate cancer
Urethral stricture following prostate cancer treatment can occur anywhere from the bladder neck to the urethral meatus. The rate of bladder neck constriction after radical prostatectomy varies with the definition of the stricture used and individual practice [249, 250]. Published data shows that the incidence of urethral stricture after various forms of prostate cancer therapy is 1.1-8.4%. The risk is greatest after radical prostatectomy if combined with external-beam radiation therapy. In a multivariate analysis, primary treatment type, age and obesity were found to be significant predictors for stricture development [249, 251].

Robot-assisted prostatectomy also affects urinary function and the risk of iatrogenic trauma. Iatrogenic complications involving the bladder neck account for 2.2%, similar to the stricture rate found with conventional treatment for localised prostate cancer [252].

Anastomotic stricture is a complication in conventional laparoscopic prostatectomy. If prospective studies only are taken into account, there is no significant difference in the anastomotic stricture rates comparing laparoscopic and robot-assisted radical prostatectomy [251, 253].

4.4.1.4 Radiotherapy for prostate cancer
The development of urinary fistulae has been reported after brachytherapy and radical prostatectomy, with incidences of 0.3-3.0% and 0-0.6%, respectively, with most fistulae involving the rectum [254, 255]. Brachytherapy is a recognised cause of strictures in patients with localised prostate cancer, as the CaPSURE study has shown [256]. Previous TURP increases the risk of stricture formation [257, 258].

4.4.1.5 Major pelvic surgery and cystectomy
Iatrogenic injuries to the urethra can be a complication of major pelvic procedures. Bladder and urethral catheterisation must therefore be carried out pre-operatively to prevent these complications [259]. Radical cystectomy and subsequent urinary diversion may also cause urethral trauma [260]. Table 4.4.1 lists the most common causes of urethral trauma.

Table 4.4.1: Most common causes of iatrogenic urethral trauma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
<th>Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Catheterisation</td>
<td>32% of iatrogenic urethral strictures (52% bulbar urethra)</td>
<td>Transurethral surgery (e.g. TURB/TURP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral instrumentation for therapy and/or diagnosis</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.2-9.8% urethral stricture rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment for prostatic disease</td>
<td>1.1-8.4% urethral stricture rate</td>
<td>Radical prostatectomy (Radical prostatectomy and external-beam radiation therapy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radical prostatectomy (Radical prostatectomy and external-beam radiation therapy)</td>
<td>0.5-32% bladder neck constriction; no difference between LRP and RALP (relative risk: 1.42; 95% confidence interval for relative risk, 0.40-5.06; p = 0.59)</td>
<td>Radiotherapy (percutaneous or brachytherapy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiotherapy (percutaneous or brachytherapy)</td>
<td>6% urethral stricture rate, 0.3-3.0% urinary fistula rate</td>
<td>Radical prostatectomy and external-beam radiation therapy, This combination has the greatest risk for the formation of a urethral stricture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryotherapy</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cystectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-intensity focused ultrasound</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.1% subneovesical obstruction, 1.2% neovesicourethral anastomotic strictures, 0.9% urethral strictures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment for bladder disease</td>
<td></td>
<td>Injury during major abdominal and pelvic operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transurethral resection of the bladder</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TURB = transurethral resection of the bladder; TURP = transurethral resection of the prostate; LRP = laparoscopic radical prostatectomy; RALP = robot-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy;

4.4.1.2 Non-iatrogenic urethral injuries
4.4.1.2.1 Anterior urethral injuries (in males)
Different causes of anterior injuries [261] are listed in Table 4.4.2. Anterior urethral injuries are mainly caused by
blunt trauma [261-263], with the bulbar urethra being the most common site injured [263, 264]. In these bulbar injuries, which are mostly ‘straddle injuries’ or kicks in the perineum, the bulb is compressed against the pubic symphysis, resulting in rupture of the urethra at this site [265].

Penetrating injuries of the penile or bulbar urethra are rare and usually caused by gunshot wounds [265-270]. Depending on the affected segment, penetrating injuries are usually associated with penile, testicular and/or pelvic injuries [267, 270].

Insertion of foreign bodies is another rare cause of anterior injury. It is usually a result of autoerotic stimulation or may be associated with psychiatric disorders [266]. Penile fractures account for 10-20% of anterior injuries [266]. In up to one-third of cases, the tear extends into the corpus spongiosum and urethra [271]. Urethral instrumentation is by far the most common cause of urethral trauma in the Western world and can affect all segments of the anterior urethra [272, 273].

Table 4.4.2: Aetiology of urethral injury

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blunt trauma</td>
<td>Vehicular accidents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fall astride (‘straddle’) e.g. on bicycle, fences, inspection covers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kicks in the perineum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sexual intercourse</td>
<td>Penile fractures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Urethral intraluminal stimulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penetrating trauma</td>
<td>Gunshot wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stab wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dog bites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>External impalement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Penile amputations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constriction bands</td>
<td>Paraplegia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iatrogenic injuries</td>
<td>Endoscopic instruments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Urethral catheters/dilators</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.4.1.2.2 Posterior urethral injuries (in males)

Injuries to the posterior urethra are most often related to pelvic fractures (~72%) [272, 273], which themselves are usually caused by MVAs in up to 43% of cases [18, 236, 274, 275]. Iatrogenic posterior injuries, due to irradiation or surgery to the prostate, are an increasing problem [272, 273], but appear to be less common than previously believed (3-25%) [261].

Surgically, these injuries are divided into either partial or complete ruptures. In complete ruptures, there is a gap between the disrupted ends of the urethra. The dismembered ends of the urethra retract and fibrous tissue fills the space between them [236]. There is no urethral wall in the scarred space and any lumen represents merely a fistulous tract between the urethral stumps [236]. Injury to the posterior urethra exclusively occurs in pelvic fractures with disruption of the pelvic ring [18]. The highest risk of urethral injury is in straddle fractures with a concomitant diastasis of the sacroiliac joint, followed by straddle fractures alone, and Malgaigne fractures [276]. Displaced fractures of the inferomedial pubic bone and pubic symphysis diastasis, together with their degree of displacement, are independent predictors of urethral injury [274]. Injuries of the bladder neck and prostate are rare [277] and they mostly occur at the anterior midline of both the bladder neck and prostatic urethra. It is more rare to find a complete transection of the bladder neck or an avulsion of the anterior part of the prostate [277].

Penetrating injuries of the pelvis, perineum or buttocks (mainly gunshot wounds) can also cause damage to the posterior urethra, but are extremely rare [278]. There is a high probability of associated injuries (80-90%), mainly intra-abdominal [194, 278].

Although urethral injuries themselves are not directly life-threatening [18, 261], the association with pelvic fractures and concomitant injuries of the thorax, abdomen and spine, may be life-threatening [18, 274].

Delayed morbidity of posterior urethral injuries includes strictures, incontinence and erectile dysfunction (ED), which may all have a detrimental effect on the patient’s quality of life [279]. Erectile dysfunction occurs in up to 45% of patients after traumatic posterior urethral rupture [279, 280]. Strong predictors for ED are diastasis of the pubic symphysis [279-282], lateral displacement of the prostate [279, 283], a long urethral gap (> 2 cm) [279], a bilateral pubic rami fracture and Malgaigne’s fracture [279]. The assessment of sexual function and the definitive treatment (e.g. penile prosthesis) should be performed two years after the trauma because of the potential return of potency within that time [279].
4.4.1.3 **Urethral injuries in females**

Urethral injuries are very rare in females [262, 265]. Pelvic fractures are the main aetiology [262]. The injury is usually a partial longitudinal tear of the anterior wall associated with vaginal laceration [262, 266]. Urethral injuries in females which extend into the bladder neck may disrupt the normal continence mechanism [284].

4.4.2 **Diagnosis in males and females**

4.4.2.1 **Clinical signs**

Blood at the meatus is the cardinal sign of urethral injury [236]. The absence of it, however, does not rule out a urethral injury.

An inability to void (with a palpable distended bladder) is another classic sign and is often associated with a complete rupture [236]. In addition, haematuria and pain on urination may be present. Interestingly, lower urinary tract pain is statistically more common in men < 40 years compared to men > 60 years [282]. Urinary extravasation and bleeding may result in scrotal, penile and/or perineal swelling and ecchymosis, depending on the location and extent of the trauma [281, 266]. The presentation of these clinical symptoms may be delayed (> 1 hour) [236].

Rectal examination should always be done to exclude an associated rectal injury (up to 5% of cases) [190, 285] and may reveal a ‘high-riding’ prostate, which is an unreliable finding [190, 236]. Failure to detect a rectal injury can cause significant morbidity and even mortality [190]. A rectal injury is suggested by blood on the examining finger and/or a palpable laceration [190]. Another sign of urethral injury is difficulty or an inability to pass a urethral catheter [190].

A female urethral injury should be suspected from the combination of a pelvic fracture with blood at the vaginal introitus, vaginal laceration, haematuria, urethrorrhagia, labial swelling and/or urinary retention [262, 265, 266]. Vaginal examination is indicated to assess vaginal lacerations [190].

Symptoms of urethral lesions caused by improper catheterisation or instrumentation are penile and/or perineal pain (100%) and urethral bleeding (86%) [240]. Failure to accurately diagnose and treat urethral injuries may lead to significant long-term sequelae, mostly presenting as strictures [286, 287].

4.4.2.2 **Further diagnostic evaluation**

4.4.2.2.1 **Retrograde urethrography**

Retrograde urethrography is the standard diagnostic investigation for the acute evaluation of a male urethral injury [261]. A retrograde urethrography is conducted by injecting 20-30 mL of contrast material while occluding the meatus, with a balloon of a Foley catheter inflated in the fossa navicularis. Films should be taken in a 30°-oblique position, unless this is not possible because of the severity of the pelvic fractures and associated patient discomfort [261, 266]. In an unstable patient, retrograde urethrography should be postponed until the patient has been stabilised [194, 262].

A urethrogram allows for identification of the site of injury and assessment of the extent of any injury [190]. Any extravasation outside the urethra is pathognomonic for urethral injury. However, the distinction between a complete and partial rupture is not always clear [236]. A typical image for incomplete rupture shows extravasation from the urethra which occurs while the bladder is still filling. A complete rupture is suggested by massive extravasation without bladder filling [236].

The following classification of urethral injuries is based on retrograde urethrography (Table 4.4.3) [261]:

**Table 4.4.3: Staging of urethral injuries**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anterior urethra</th>
<th>Posterior urethra</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial disruption</td>
<td>Stretched but intact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete disruption</td>
<td>Partial disruption</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*According to the 2004 Consensus Panel on Urethral Trauma [261].

4.4.2.2.2 **Ultrasound, computed tomography and magnetic resonance imaging**

In the acute phase, US scanning is used for guiding the placement of a suprapubic catheter [261]. Computed tomography and rarely MRI are useful to evaluate concomitant injuries [261, 266].
4.4.2.3 Cystoscopy

Flexible cystoscopy is an option to diagnose (and manage) an acute urethral injury and may distinguish between complete- and incomplete rupture [261]. In addition, it may allow a guidewire to be passed into the bladder for early catheterisation [262, 288]. Flexible cystoscopy is also recommended above retrograde urethrography in suspected penile fracture-associated urethral injury [284, 289, 290]. In females, where the short urethra precludes adequate, radiological visualisation, urethroscopy and vaginoscopy are the diagnostic modalities of choice [261, 262]. Flexible urethroscopy also plays an important role during post-operative follow-up, as its routine use is associated with a higher detection rate of urethral stricture recurrence, compared to the use of urinary flow rates [291].

4.4.2.3 Summary

Prior to deferred management, the combination of retrograde urethrography and antegrade cystourethrography is standard [261]. The location and extent of the obliteration is diagnosed [261]. An MRI of the pelvis provides valuable additional information, which can help to determine the most appropriate surgical strategy [261, 283]. If the competence of the bladder neck is not clear upon antegrade cysto-urethrography, a suprapubic cystoscopy is advised [261].

Post-operative follow-up protocols include the use of retrograde urethrograms and voiding cystourethrograms at the time of catheter removal. Following this, urine flow charts as well as post-void residual urine, cystoscopy and urine culture, should be performed at variable intervals.

4.4.3 Disease Management

4.4.3.1 Anterior urethral injuries

Anterior urethral injuries are usually not associated with other life-threatening injuries [262, 266]. Treatment decisions are based mainly on the type of injury (blunt, penile fracture associated or penetrating).

4.4.3.1.1 Blunt anterior urethral injuries

Blunt anterior urethral injuries are associated with spongiosal contusion, which makes it more difficult to evaluate the limits of urethral debridement in the acute phase. Acute or early urethroplasty is therefore not indicated [261]. The therapeutic options are suprapubic diversion or (a trial of) early endoscopic re-alignment with transurethral catheterisation [262]. Urinary diversion is maintained for two and three weeks for partial and complete ruptures, respectively [264]. Satisfactory urethral luminal re-canalisation may occur in up to 68% after partial ruptures, but is rare after complete ruptures [264, 292].

4.4.3.1.2 Penile fracture-related anterior urethral injuries

In order to preserve erectile function, penile fractures require early exploration [265, 284, 293, 294]. The strategy consists of closing the tear in the cavernosal tunica albuginea, while the concomitant tear in the urethra is repaired at the same time [293]. In these circumstances, there is no substantial urethral tissue loss [295]. A small laceration can be repaired by simple closure, while a complete rupture requires an anastomotic repair [293, 294].

4.4.3.1.3 Penetrating anterior urethral injuries

Immediate exploration is advised, except when this is precluded by other life-threatening injuries [261]. Devitalised tissues should be debrided, although urethral and spongiosal debridement should be kept to a minimum due to the excellent vascularisation [270, 284]. For small lacerations and stab wounds, simple urethral closure might be sufficient [261]. Defects of up to 2-3 cm in length in the bulbar urethra, and up to 1.5 cm in the penile urethra, can be treated by spatulation of the urethral ends and primary anastomosis [262, 268, 270]. In the case of longer defects or apparent infection (particularly bite wounds), a staged repair with urethral marsupialisation and a suprapubic catheter is needed [268, 270]. Peri- and post-operative antibiotic treatment is also necessary [269].

4.4.3.2 Posterior urethral injuries

4.4.3.2.1 Blunt posterior urethral injuries

In posterior injuries, it is important to distinguish between complete and partial ruptures prior to treatment. The timing of the surgical intervention is classified as [261, 262]:

- immediate: < 48 hours after injury (4.4.3.2.1.1);
- delayed primary: two days to two weeks after injury (4.4.3.2.1.2);
- deferred: > three months after injury (4.4.3.2.1.3).
4.4.3.2.1.1 Immediate management
Although urinary diversion is not essential during the first hours after trauma, many prefer to perform an early urinary diversion for three main reasons [236, 262]:

- to monitor urinary output, since this is a valuable sign of the haemodynamic condition and the renal function of the patient;
- to treat symptomatic retention if the patient is still conscious;
- to minimise urinary extravasation and its secondary effects, such as infection and fibrosis.

Insertion of a suprapubic catheter is always a good solution in urgent situations [261, 284]. However, insertion of a suprapubic catheter is not without risk, especially in the unstable trauma patient where the bladder is often displaced by the pelvic haematoma or because of poor bladder filling due to haemodynamic shock or concomitant bladder injury. In these circumstances, an attempt at urethral catheterisation can be carried out by experienced hands. It is extremely unlikely that the gentle passage of a urethral catheter will do any additional damage [236, 262, 266, 272, 273, 295]. If there is any difficulty, a suprapubic catheter should be placed under US guidance and direct vision [236].

4.4.3.2.1.1.1 Partial posterior urethral rupture
Partial tears of the posterior urethra can be managed with a suprapubic or urethral catheter [284]. Urethrography should be performed at two-weekly intervals until healing has occurred [285, 296]. Injuries may heal without significant scarring or obstruction if managed by diversion alone [284]. A residual or subsequent stricture should be managed with:

- internal urethrotomy if it is short and non-obliterative;
- anastomotic urethroplasty, if it is long and dense, as is found with complete obliteration or after failed internal urethrotomy [292, 297].

4.4.3.2.1.1.2 Complete posterior urethral rupture
Acute definitive treatment options include:

- immediate re-alignment: apposition of the urethral ends over a catheter (4.4.3.2.1.1.2.1);
- immediate urethroplasty: suturing of urethral ends (4.4.3.2.1.1.2.2).

4.4.3.2.1.1.2.1 Immediate re-alignment
The aim of re-alignment is to correct severe distraction injuries rather than to prevent a stricture [284]. The reported benefits of re-alignment are:

- a lower stricture rate than with suprapubic catheter placement alone (where stricture formation is almost certain) [292, 297, 298];
- if scarring and subsequent stricture formation occurs, the restoration of urethral continuity is simplified;
- for short (< 2 cm), non-obliterative strictures, internal urethrotomy can be attempted, with a 50-90% success rate [292, 297, 299];
- for longer strictures, or in the case of failure of an internal urethrotomy, urethroplasty is required [297];
- if urethroplasty is required later, it is technically easier when the prostate and urethra are well aligned [300].

Endoscopic re-alignment is the preferred technique [262, 284]. Using a flexible/rigid cystoscope and biplanar fluoroscopy, a guidewire is placed inside the bladder. Over this, a catheter is placed into the bladder. If necessary, two cystoscopes can be used: one retrograde (per urethra) and one antegrade (suprapubic route through the bladder neck) [292, 297, 298]. The duration of catheter stay varies between four and eight weeks among series [190, 292, 297, 298].

It is important to avoid traction on the Foley balloon catheter since it can damage the remaining sphincter mechanism at the bladder neck. Concomitant bladder neck or rectal injuries or presence of bony fragments inside the bladder must be repaired immediately.

The reasons for immediate repair of bladder neck and rectal injury are:

- unrepairder bladder neck injury risks incontinence and infection of pelvic fractures;
- unrepaired rectal injury carries the obvious risk of sepsis and fistula, early exploration is indicated to evacuate contaminated haematomas and to perform colostomy if necessary.

Immediate endoscopic re-alignment can also be performed when the patient is on the operating table for other surgery. Early endoscopic re-alignment (immediate or delayed primary, see below) is also possible in a stable patient without significant concomitant injuries [297, 298].

With modern endoscopic re-alignment procedures, acceptable complication rates have been
reported for stricture formation (14-79%), incontinence (< 5%) and impotence (10-55%) [297, 298].

Differences between series in the rates of incontinence, impotence and re-stricture can be explained by differences in patient selection (severe vs. less severe trauma), a mix of partial and complete ruptures, and differences in follow-up duration. Furthermore, these differences make the comparison with other techniques difficult, especially with urethroplasty [190, 292, 297, 298].

4.4.3.2.1.1.2.2 Immediate urethroplasty
Immediate urethroplasty with suturing of the urethral ends is difficult because of poor visualisation and the inability to assess accurately the degree of urethral disruption, due to extensive swelling and ecchymosis. This might lead to extensive unjustified urethral debridement [262]. Another problem is the risk of uncontrolled bleeding following entry into the pelvic haematoma, which may result in uncontrolled re-bleeding [262]. Due to disturbingly high rates of impotence (56%), incontinence (21%) and strictures (69%) [296], immediate urethroplasty cannot be recommended and should only be done in experienced centres [301, 302].

4.4.3.2.1.1.3 Delayed primary treatment
Delayed treatment options include delayed primary re-alignment (4.4.3.2.1.2.1) and delayed primary urethroplasty (4.4.3.2.1.2.2).

4.4.3.2.1.1.3.1 Delayed primary re-alignment
In the absence of indications for immediate exploration, posterior urethral disruption can be managed in a delayed primary fashion. Delayed primary re-alignment requires the placement of a suprapubic tube at the time of initial injury, with endoscopic re-alignment performed within fourteen days (i.e. before fibrosis begins). At that time, patients are stable and most of the pelvic bleeding has resolved [296, 298]. The aim and proposed benefits of delayed primary re-alignment are the same as mentioned for immediate re-alignment. Endoscopic re-alignment is also the preferred modality.

4.4.3.2.1.1.3.2 Delayed primary urethroplasty
Delayed primary urethroplasty is performed no later than fourteen days after the initial injury i.e. before the start of the fibrotic process [303, 304]. If successful, it avoids a long period of suprapubic diversion [303]. It is restricted to stable patients with a short distraction defect, who are able to lie down in the lithotomy position [303]. Considering the limited accumulated experience with this approach, it cannot be generally recommended [303, 305, 306].

Supporters of early vs. delayed intervention state that it does not affect the outcome of an eventual subsequent urethroplasty [301, 307]. However, some authors have reported worse outcomes of subsequent urethroplasty after failed initial urethral manipulation (re-alignment or urethroplasty) [302, 303, 308]. Due to this concern and the excellent results obtained with deferred urethroplasty, early re-alignment or urethroplasty should only be selectively performed in highly experienced centres [301, 302].

4.4.3.2.1.1.4 Deferred treatment
In the case of a complete rupture, treated with an initial period of three months’ suprapubic diversion, obliteration of the posterior urethra is almost inevitable [236, 296]. Treatment options for these posterior urethral strictures are deferred urethroplasty (4.4.3.2.1.3.1) and deferred endoscopic optical incision (4.4.3.2.1.3.2).

4.4.3.2.1.1.4.1 Deferred urethroplasty
Deferred urethroplasty is the procedure of choice for the treatment of posterior urethral distraction defects [284]. After three months of suprapubic diversion, the pelvic haematoma is nearly always resolved, the prostate has descended into a more normal position, the scar tissue has stabilised [303] and the patient is clinically stable and able to lie down in the lithotomy position [261, 262].

Most posterior urethral distraction defects are short and can be treated using a perineal anastomotic repair [261, 303]. The key objective of the operation is to achieve a tension-free anastomosis between two healthy urethral ends (i.e. after complete excision of any scar tissue) [284, 303].

After resection of fibrosis and spatulation of both healthy urethral ends, the gap between both ends is bridged by the so-called ‘elaborated perineal approach’, which is a series of consecutive manoeuvres, first described by Webster and Ramon [309] with reported success rates of 80-98% [310-314].

Most urethral stenoses are short and can be treated by mobilisation of the bulbar urethra, with or without separation of the corpora cavernosa [303]. This is in contrast to the situation in developing countries, where stenoses are more complex and where additional manoeuvres, such as inferior pubectomy and supracaecal re-routing or a combined abdominoperineal approach, are needed more often [299, 311].

A number of situations may prevent the use of perineal anastomotic repair, either as an initial or as a salvage therapy. These situations probably represent < 5% of cases (Table 4.4.4) [315, 316].
Table 4.4.4: Circumstances that might preclude successful perineal anastomotic repair, either as an initial or as a salvage therapy [315, 316]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Circumstance</th>
<th>Alternative procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Distraction defects longer than 7-8 cm</td>
<td>A tubed interposition flap of penile or perineal skin can be used for reconstruction [317]. This is seldom required and most patients that require flap urethroplasties have previous failed repairs of posterior urethral rupture [284].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fistulae</td>
<td>These might require a combined abdominoperineal approach to secure adequate closure [311].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synchronous anterior urethral stricture</td>
<td>The presence of anterior urethral stricture may compromise the blood supply to the bulbar urethra following division of the bulbar arteries. These patients should be treated cautiously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary incontinence</td>
<td>The distal urethral sphincter mechanism can be defunctionalised by urethral distraction, so that urinary continence is maintained primarily by the proximal bladder neck sphincter. Concomitant bladder neck injury might increase incontinence and should require an abdominoperineal procedure to allow simultaneous bladder neck and urethral reconstruction [261, 284, 311].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Outcome after deferred urethroplasty is excellent with a stricture rate of around 10% [309, 318]. Deferred urethroplasty is unlikely to result in additional ED [303, 318]. Decompression of the erectile nerves after excision of the scar tissue might explain the amelioration of erectile function after urethroplasty [318]. Incontinence is rare with deferred urethroplasty (< 4%) [303] and is usually due to incompetence of the bladder neck [284, 311]. Standard therapy is a deferred urethroplasty at a minimum of three months after trauma, using a one-stage perineal approach, whenever possible.

4.4.3.2.1.4.2 Deferred endoscopic treatment
Cold knife or laser core-through or cut-to-the light urethrotomy for complete urethral obliteration has been described. The results of this technique are poor [319, 320] and the procedure is therefore not recommended. For short, non-obliterative strictures following re-alignment or urethroplasty, direct vision urethrotomy can be performed [312] while in other cases, urethroplasty is warranted.

4.4.3.2.2 Penetrating posterior urethral injuries
The management of penetrating posterior urethral injuries is mainly dependent on associated injuries and the clinical condition of the patient [194, 278]. If possible, immediate exploration by the retropubic route and primary repair or re-alignment can be performed [194, 278, 284]. In the case of rectal injury, a diverting colostomy is necessary [194, 278]. Life-threatening associated injuries often preclude direct urethral repair. In those cases, suprapubic diversion with delayed abdominoperineal urethroplasty is advised [194, 270, 278].

4.4.3.2.2.1 Female urethral injuries
Proximal and mid-urethral disruptions require immediate exploration and primary repair using the retropubic and transvaginal routes, respectively, with primary suturing of the urethral ends. Concomitant vaginal lacerations are repaired transvaginally at the same time [190, 262, 265, 285]. Distal urethral injuries can be managed vaginally by primary suturing and closure of the vaginal laceration [262, 285]. In all of these operations, it is advisable to use a flap (e.g. Martius) to prevent urethrovaginal fistulas [321]. Nonetheless, distal urethral injuries can be left unrepaired and hypospadiac since they do not disrupt the sphincteric mechanism [190, 262, 265, 285].

4.4.3.2.2.1.1 Iatrogenic urethral injuries
Temporary stenting with an indwelling catheter is the conventional treatment option for an acute false passage [322], although its value in minor urethral injuries is unproven. In difficult cases, catheter insertion may be assisted by cystoscopy and guidewire placement [323]. Suprapubic catheterisation is an alternative.

Endoscopic management, either with incision or resection, can successfully treat iatrogenic prostatic urethral strictures. Indwelling catheter placement or an open procedure (which is associated with increased morbidity) are alternatives [324].

Urethral lesions following radiotherapy are often more difficult to treat and may require complex reconstructive surgery [254, 255]. Section 4.4.4.1 lists the statements and recommendations regarding the iatrogenic causes of urethral trauma.
4.4.3.3 Treatment algorithms

The following algorithms are suggested for the treatment of anterior and posterior urethral injuries in men (Figures 4.4.1 and 4.4.2).

Figure 4.4.1: Management of anterior urethral injuries in men

Suspected anterior urethral injury

Retrograde urethrography/ flexible urethroscopy

Urethral injury No urethral injury

Cause of urethral trauma

Blunt Penetrating If associated with penile rupture

Endoscopic transurethral catheterisation Suprapubic cystostomy Primary urethral repair Urethral & cavernosal repair

No stricture Stricture

Follow-up If stricture is short (< 1 cm) and flimsy

Endoscopic optical incision If failure

If stricture is long or denser

Formal urethral reconstruction
Figure 4.4.2: Management of posterior urethral injuries in men

Suspected urethral injury

- Retrograde urethrogram

Prostatomembranous disruption

Complete rupture

- Penetrating
  - Primary open repair. If patient unstable or significant associated non-urological injuries, suprapubic cystostomy
- Blunt
  - Assess for acute surgical indications: bladder neck injury, rectal tear, pie-the-sky bladder

Partial rupture

- Penetrating
  - Primary open repair. If patient unstable or significant associated non-urological injuries, suprapubic cystostomy
- Blunt
  - Suprapubic cystostomy

No

- Suprapubic cystostomy
- Urethrotomy

Yes

- Stricture
  - Suprapubic tube + endoscopic re-alignment. Open if rectal or bladder injury.
  - Delayed urethroplasty

Option: endoscopic realignment if patient is stable (< day 14)
Figure 4.4.3: Treatment of iatrogenic urethral injury caused by improper insertion of a catheter

Suspected iatrogenic urethral injury (improper catheter insertion)

Urethrogram

Catheterisation by urologist

Resolved

False passage

Endoscopic guide-wire placement and catheter insertion

Pre-existing stenosis

No stricture

Stricture

Follow-UP

Suprapubic drainage

If stricture is short and flimsy

Endoscopic optical incision

If failure

Urethral reconstruction

If stricture is longer and denser

Endoscopic optical bladder neck incision

If failure

Open surgery (reanastomosis)

Urinary diversion

Figure 4.4.4: Treatment for stricture after radical prostatectomy

Iatrogenic urethral stricture anastomotic stricture after radical prostatectomy

Dilation

Endoscopic optical bladder neck incision

If failure
4.4.4  Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of urethral trauma

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blunt trauma accounts for more than 90% of urethral injuries.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In penile fracture, the urethra is involved in 20% of cases.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The male posterior urethra is injured in 4-19% of pelvic fracture cases. In industrialised societies pelvic fracture-related injuries of the posterior urethra are the most common non-iatrogenic injuries.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erectile dysfunction occurs in 20-60% of patients after traumatic urethral rupture.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Evaluate urethral injuries with flexible cystoscopy and/or retrograde urethrography.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat blunt anterior urethral injuries by suprapubic diversion.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat partial posterior urethral ruptures by urethral or suprapubic catheterisation.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform early endoscopic re-alignment when feasible.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage complete posterior urethral disruption with suprapubic diversion and delayed urethroplasty.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

4.4.4.1  Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of iatrogenic urethral trauma

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Iatrogenic causes are the most common type of urethral injury in Europe, and therefore the most common cause of urethral stricture formation.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementing training programmes on urinary catheter insertion significantly improves the rate of catheter-related complications.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New technologies represent an additional source of urethral injury.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provide appropriate training to reduce the risk of traumatic catheterisation.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preform urethral instrumentation when there are valid clinical indications.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keep duration of catheterisation to a minimum.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

4.5  Genital Trauma

4.5.1  Introduction and background

Genito-urinary trauma is seen in both sexes across all age groups. Of all urological injuries, 33-66% involve the external genitalia [20]. Genital trauma is much more common in males than in females, especially between the ages of 15 and 40 years. This is due to anatomical differences, increased frequency of road traffic accidents and increased participation in physical sports, war and violent crime.

Genital trauma is commonly caused by blunt injuries (80%). The risk of associated injuries to neighbouring organs (bladder, urethra, vagina, rectum and bowel) after blunt trauma is higher in females than in males. In males, blunt genital trauma frequently occurs unilaterally with only approximately 1% presenting as bilateral scrotal or testicular injuries [325].

Any kind of contact sport, without the use of necessary protective aids, may be associated with genital trauma. Off-road bicycling, motorbike riding (especially on motorbikes with a dominant petrol tank), rugby, football and hockey are all activities which are associated with blunt testicular trauma [326-329].

Penetrating injuries account for 20% of genito-urinary trauma, with 40-60% of all penetrating genito-urinary lesions involving the external genitalia [267, 330]. Thirty-five per cent of all genito-urinary gunshot wounds involve the genitalia [325]. In a recent series of wartime genito-urinary injuries, 71.5% of 361 operations involved the external genitalia - the majority caused by IEDs and other explosive ordinance, while smaller numbers of injuries were due to gunshot injuries [331]. In both males and females, penetrating genital injuries occur with other associated injuries in 70% of patients. In males, penetrating scrotal injuries affect both testes in 30% of cases compared with 1% in blunt scrotal injuries [325, 332]. Self-mutilation of the external genitalia has also been reported in psychotic patients and trans-sexuals [333]. Genital burns are rare in isolation, usually due to industrial flame or chemicals in adults, and all but the full thickness type are treated conservatively [334].
Both male and female genital piercings increase the risk for unexpected genital trauma [335]. Although there is an increased risk of Hepatitis B and C in genitally injured patients, there is no higher incidence of sexual transmitted diseases (STDs) in patients with genital piercings [335].

4.5.2 General principles and pathophysiology
In genital trauma, a urinalysis should be performed. The presence of visible- and/or non-visible haematuria requires a retrograde urethrogram in males. In females, flexible or rigid cystoscopy has been recommended to exclude urethral and bladder injury [336, 337]. In women with genital injuries and blood at the vaginal introitus, further gynaecological investigation is needed to exclude vaginal injuries [337]. The potential for significant injury should never be discounted in those patients who may also have blood in the vaginal vault from menstruation. Complete vaginal inspection with specula is mandatory.

4.5.2.1 Gunshot wounds
In patients with genitalia injured by gunshot wounds, it is very useful to have information about the causative weapon, particularly the range, calibre and type of weapon. High-velocity missiles transmit large amounts of energy to the tissues and can produce trauma to structures outside the wound track. The passage of a missile creates an expansive cavity of sub-atmospheric pressure, which then collapses and creates shear forces and induction of other foreign bodies and (usually) infected material [20].

4.5.2.2 Bites
4.5.2.2.1 Animal bites
Although animal bites are common, bites injuring the external genital are rare. Wounds are usually minor, but have a risk of wound infection. The most common bacterial infection caused by a dog bite is Pasteurella multica, which accounts for up to 50% of infections [338]. Other commonly involved organisms are Escherichia coli, Streptococcus viridans, Staphylococcus aureus, Eikenella corrodens, Capnocytophaga canimorsus, Veillonella parvula, Bacteroides and Fusobacterium spp. [333, 338, 339]. Antibiotics should be prescribed in accordance with local resistance patterns [340-342].

The possibility of rabies infection must be considered. If rabies infection is suspected, vaccination should be considered taking into account the geographical location, animal involved, specific nature of the wound and the type of attack (provoked/unprovoked). Besides vaccination, local wound management is an essential part of post-exposure prophylaxis. High-risk patients should be vaccinated with human rabies immunoglobulin and human diploid cell vaccine [343, 344].

4.5.2.2.2 Human bites
Human bites are much less common, but infection should be considered, especially in at risk groups. Since transmission of viral diseases may occur, risk assessment should be made. If appropriate, hepatitis B vaccine/ immunoglobulin and/or immunodeficiency virus (HIV) post-exposure prophylaxis should be offered. For further details, see Guidelines for the Management of Human Bite Injuries [345].

4.5.2.3 Sexual activity
4.5.2.3.1 Sexual intercourse
Accidents during sexual intercourse can cause genital trauma, men of younger age are the most affected. The major pathologies are: penile fractures, strangulation and necrosis, and urethrovesical foreign bodies resulting from autoeroticism practices [346].

4.5.2.3.2 Sexual assault
Genital injury is often seen (42%) after sexual abuse, which must be considered when genital injuries present at any age [347]. In these cases, the examiner should be aware of the extraordinary emotional situation of the patient and the privacy of the patient should be respected. In suspicious cases, gynaecological and forensic support and advice is necessary. Swabs or vaginal smears should be taken for detection of spermatozoa [348] and local legal protocols followed closely. A thorough history and examination (in some cases under anaesthesia), photo documentation, and identification of forensic material may be important. In a recent report, only 38% of the forensic samples tested positive for an ejaculate and/or sperm. This may be due to delayed presentation or lack of vaginal/anal ejaculation [349, 350].

4.5.3 Organ-specific genital trauma
4.5.3.1 Penile trauma
4.5.3.1.1 Blunt penile trauma
Blunt trauma to the flaccid penis does not usually cause tearing of the tunica. In these cases, only subcutaneous haematoma with intact tunica albuginea may be seen.
4.5.3.1.1 Penile fracture
The most important and common presentation of blunt penile trauma is penile fracture. A recent meta-analysis on penile fractures showed that the most common causes are sexual intercourse, forced flexion (taqaandan), masturbation and rolling over in 46%, 21%, 18% and 8.2% respectively [351]. The most common mechanism of injury is when the penis slips out of the vagina and strikes against the symphysis pubis or perineum. Sixty per cent of cases occur during consensual intercourse [352], with penile fracture more likely when the partner is on top. Penile fracture is caused by rupture of the cavernosal tunica albuginea, and may be associated with subcutaneous haematoma and lesions of the corpus spongiosum or urethra in 10-22% [353, 354].

The thickness of the tunica albuginea in the flaccid state (approximately 2 mm) decreases in erection to 0.25-0.5 mm, and is therefore more vulnerable to traumatic injury [355, 356]. Penile fracture is associated with a sudden cracking or popping sound, pain and immediate detumescence. Local swelling of the penile shaft develops quickly, due to enlarging haematoma. Bleeding may spread along the fascial layers of the penile shaft and extend to the lower abdominal wall if Buck’s fascia is also ruptured. Sometimes, the rupture of the tunica may be palpable. Less severe penile injuries can be distinguished from penile fracture, as they are not usually associated with detumescence [351].

A thorough history and examination usually confirm the diagnosis, but in some cases imaging may be useful. Cavernosography, US or MRI [351, 357-359] can identify lacerations of the tunica albuginea in unclear cases [360], or provide reassurance that the tunica is intact. If a concomitant urethral injury is suspected, a retrograde urethrogram may be performed, however, flexible cystoscopy under anaesthesia during exploration/repair is more usually employed.

Subcutaneous haematoma, without associated rupture of the cavernosal tunica albuginea, does not require surgical intervention. In these cases, non-steroidal analgesics and ice-packs are recommended [361].

When a penile fracture is diagnosed, surgical intervention with closure of the tunica albuginea is recommended, it ensures the lowest rate of negative long-term sequelae and has no negative effect on the psychological well-being of the patient [362]. The approach is usually through a circumferential incision proximal to the coronal sulcus which enables complete degloving of the penis. Increasingly, local longitudinal incisions centred on the area of fracture or ventral longitudinal approaches are currently used [289]. Further localisation may be gained with a flexible cystoscopy performed prior to incision, if urethral trauma is suspected and eventually proven.

Surgical closure of the tunica should be carried out using absorbable sutures. Post-operative complications were reported in up to 20% of cases, development of plaques or nodules following surgery, post-operative curvature formation and ED occur in 13.9%, 2.8% and 1.9% of patients, respectively [351]. Conservative management of penile fracture is not recommended, as it significantly increases the rate of post-operative complications [351]. It increases complications, such as penile abscess, missed urethral disruption, penile curvature, and persistent haematoma requiring delayed surgical intervention [363]. Late complications after conservative management were fibrosis and angulations in 35% and impotence in up to 62% [352, 363].

4.5.3.2 Penetrating penile trauma
Penetrating penile trauma is rarely seen in isolation. Most cases are associated with multiple injuries. Non-operative management is recommended in small superficial injuries with intact Buck’s fascia [267]. In more significant penetrating penile injuries, surgical exploration and debridement of necrotic tissue is recommended. Even in extended injuries of the penis, primary alignment of the disrupted tissues may allow for acceptable healing because of the robust penile blood supply [333].

The principles of care are debridement of devitalised tissue, with the preservation of as much viable tissues as possible, haemostasis, diversion of urine in selected cases and the removal of foreign bodies. Tissues of questionable viability may be left for subsequent definitive surgery. If a subsequent immediate or delayed repair is needed, depending on the type of injury and the extent of tissue damage, it usually takes place four to six weeks after the trauma has occurred.

The surgical approach depends upon the site and extent of the injury, but a subcoronal incision with penis degloving usually gives good exposure. Initially, a defect in the tunica albuginea should be closed after copious irrigation. If there has been too much tissue loss, the defect can be repaired either immediately or after delay with a patch (either from an autologous saphenous vein or xenograft). If a concomitant urethral injury is suspected, a pre- or peri-operative urethrogram or cystoscopy is useful to diagnose any urethral involvement, to define its position, and to decide upon the incision used.
The elasticity of genital skin means it is usually possible to manage the loss of a moderate amount of penile skin. However, management is more difficult in extensive injuries with significant skin loss. The tissue chosen for reconstruction following trauma needs to provide good coverage and must be suitable for reconstruction. Split-thickness skin grafting provides good coverage and a dependable take that is reproducible and durable. However, split-thickness grafts contract more than full-thickness grafts and their use on the penile shaft should be kept to a minimum. In accordance, McAninch et al. recommended the use of skin grafts with thickness of at least 0.015 inch (0.4 mm) in order to reduce the risk of contraction [333]. Full-thickness skin grafting onto the penile shaft gives less contracture, a better cosmetic appearance and more resistance to trauma during intercourse, when eventually re-established [361]. The donor site may be taken from the abdomen, buttock, thigh or axilla and is chosen according to surgeon’s preference and the pattern of injury.

In cases of extensive destruction of deeper tissues, or if later prosthetic placement is being considered, skin flaps, with their secure vascular supply, can be used.

4.5.3.3 Penile avulsion injuries and amputation
Most injuries are self-inflicted, but some are a result of industrial accidents or assault. Acute management involves resuscitation of the patient, who may be compromised from massive blood loss, and preparation for surgical re-implantation of the penis if it has been recovered and is not too badly damaged. Surgical re-implantation should be considered for all patients and should be performed within 24 hours of amputation. If the injury occurred during a psychotic episode, early psychiatric advice and support should be sought [364].

The severed penis should be washed with sterile saline, wrapped in saline-soaked gauze, placed in a sterile bag and immersed in iced water. The penis must not come into direct contact with the ice. A pressure dressing or a tourniquet should be placed around the penile stump to prevent excessive blood loss. Re-attachment can be achieved in a non-microsurgical way, a technique which probably gives higher rates of post-operative urethral stricture and more problems with loss of sensation [365]. When operating microscopically, the corpora cavernosa and urethra are firstly aligned and repaired. Subsequently, the dorsal penile arteries, the dorsal vein and the dorsal nerves are anastomosed. The cavernosal arteries are generally too small to anastomose. The fascia and skin are closed in layers and both a urethral and a supra-pubic catheter are placed.

If the severed penis cannot be found, or is unsuitable for re-attachment, then the end should be closed as it is done in partial penectomy. Later reconstruction may be employed to lengthen the penis (e.g. suspensory ligament division and V-Y plasty, pseudo-glans formation with split-thickness skin grafting, etc). A delayed major reconstructive procedure, i.e. phalloplasty (either radial artery or pubic), is sometimes required for injuries which leave a very small or non-functioning penile stump [364].

4.5.4 Scrotal trauma
4.5.4.1 Blunt scrotal trauma
Blunt trauma to the scrotum can cause testicular dislocation, testicular haematocoele, testicular rupture and/or scrotal haematoma.

4.5.4.1.1 Testicular dislocation
Traumatic dislocation of the testicle rarely occurs and is most common in victims of MVAs [366-369]. Bilateral dislocation of the testes has been reported in up to 25% of cases [367]. It can be either a subcutaneous dislocation with epifascial displacement of the testis or an internal dislocation. In the latter, the testis is positioned in the superficial external inguinal ring, inguinal canal or abdominal cavity. Traumatic dislocation of the testis is treated by manual replacement and secondary orchidopexy. If primary manual reposition cannot be performed, immediate orchidopexy is indicated.

4.5.4.1.2 Haematocoele
Conservative management is recommended in haematocoeles smaller than three times the size of the contralateral testis [370]. In large haematocoeles, non-operative management can fail, and delayed surgery (more than three days) is often required. Patients with large haematocoeles have a higher rate of orchietomy than patients who undergo early surgery, even in non-ruptured testes [325, 333, 371-373]. Early surgical intervention results in preservation of the testis in more than 90% of cases compared to delayed surgeries which result in orchietomy in 45-55% of patients [373]. In addition, non-operative management is also associated with prolonged hospital stays. Therefore, large haematocoeles should be treated surgically, irrespective of the presence of testicular contusion or rupture. At the very least, the blood clot should be evacuated from the tunica vaginalis sac to relieve disability and hasten recovery. Patients initially treated non-operatively may eventually need delayed surgery if they develop infection or undue pain.
4.5.4.1.3 Testicular rupture

Testicular rupture is found in approximately 50% of cases of direct blunt scrotal trauma [373]. It may occur under intense, traumatic compression of the testis against the inferior pubic ramus or symphysis, resulting in a rupture of the tunica albuginea of the testis. A force of approximately 50 kg is necessary to cause testicular rupture [374]. Testicular rupture is associated with immediate pain, nausea, vomiting, and sometimes fainting. The hemiscrotum is tender, swollen, and ecchymotic. The testis itself may be difficult to palpate.

Ultrasound should be performed to determine intra- and/or extra-testicular haematoma, testicular contusion, or rupture [375-383]. However, the literature is contradictory as to the usefulness of US compared to clinical examination alone. Some studies have reported convincing findings with a specificity of up to 98.6% [356]. Others reported poor specificity (78%) and sensitivity (28%) for the differentiation between testicular rupture and haematocele, while accuracy is as low as 56% [376]. Colour Doppler-duplex US may provide useful information when used to evaluate testicular perfusion. If scrotal US is inconclusive, testicular CT or MRI may be helpful [384]. However, these techniques did not specifically increase the detection rates of testicular rupture. It is therefore essential to surgically explore equivocal patients whenever imaging studies cannot definitively exclude testicular rupture. This involves exploration with evacuation of blood clots and haematoma, excision of any necrotic testicular tubules and closure of the tunica albuginea, usually with running absorbable sutures (e.g. 3/0 Vicryl).

4.5.4.2 Penetrating scrotal trauma

Penetrating injuries to the scrotum require surgical exploration with conservative debridement of non-viable tissue. Depending on the extent of the injury, primary reconstruction of the testis and scrotum can usually be performed. In complete disruption of the spermatic cord, re-alignment without vaso-vasostomy may be considered if surgically feasible [385]. Staged secondary microsurgical vaso-vasostomy can be performed after rehabilitation, although only a few cases have been reported [385]. If there is extensive destruction of the tunica albuginea, mobilisation of a free tunica vaginalis flap can be performed for testicular closure. If the patient is unstable or reconstruction cannot be achieved, orchiectomy is then indicated.

Prophylactic antibiotics are recommended after scrotal penetrating trauma, although data to support this approach is lacking. Tetanus prophylaxis is mandatory. Post-operative complications were reported in 8% of patients who underwent testicular repair after penetrating trauma [267].

Extended laceration of scrotal skin requires surgical intervention for skin closure. Due to the elasticity of the scrotum, most defects can be primarily closed, even if the lacerated skin is only minimally attached to the scrotum [333]. Local wound management with extensive initial wound debridement and washout is important for scrotal convalescence. In the case of extensive loss of genital tissue, e.g. IED blast injury, complex and staged reconstructive surgical procedures are often required [331].

4.5.5 Genital trauma in females

In females with blunt trauma to the external genitalia, imaging of the pelvis with US, CT, or MRI should be performed since additional injuries and extensive intra-pelvic haematomas are frequently expected [337, 348].

4.5.5.1 Coital injury of the female genital tract

Consensual sexual intercourse can lead to genital trauma in women. Up to 35% of all genital injuries in women are sustained during their first sexual contact. The majority of women present with bleeding and pain. The most frequently found injuries are lacerations. These lesions can be treated with a simple suture under local anesthesia [386].

4.5.5.2 Blunt vulvar injuries

Blunt trauma to the vulva is rarely reported and usually presents as a large haematoma. The incidence of traumatic vulvar haematomas after vaginal deliveries has been reported as 1 in 310 deliveries [387]. Although blunt trauma to the female external genitalia is rarely reported, the presence of a vulvar haematoma is closely related to an increased risk of associated vaginal, pelvic or abdominal injuries. Goldman et al. reported that blunt injuries of the vulva and vagina were associated with pelvic trauma in 30%, after consensual intercourse in 25%, following sexual assault in 20%, and other blunt trauma in 15% [336].

Blunt vulvar or perineal trauma may be associated with voiding problems and bladder catheterisation is usually required. Vulvar haematomas usually do not require surgical intervention, although they can cause a significant blood loss, which sometimes even requires blood transfusion. Data are scarce [388], but in haemodynamically stable women, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory medication and cold packs are generally successful. Yet, in
cases of massive vulvar haematoma and haemodynamically unstable patients, surgical intervention with lavage and drainage is sometimes indicated [389].

Although antibiotics are often recommended after major vulvar trauma, there is no data to support this approach. It is important to emphasise that vulvar haematoma and/or blood at the vaginal introitus are indications for vaginal exploration under sedation or general anaesthesia. The aim is to identify possible associated vaginal and/or rectal injuries [337]. Flexible or rigid cystoscopy has been recommended to exclude urethral and bladder injury [336, 337]. In the case of vulvar laceration, suturing after conservative debridement is indicated. If there are associated injuries to the vagina, these can be repaired immediately by primary suturing.

4.5.6 Summary of evidence and recommendations for the management of genital trauma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Most genital injuries, in males and females, are caused by blunt trauma.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treat penile fractures surgically, with closure of tunica albuginea.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explore the injured testis in all cases of testicular rupture and in those with inconclusive ultrasound findings.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. POLYTRAUMA, DAMAGE CONTROL AND MASS CASUALTY EVENTS

5.1 Introduction

Urological trauma is often associated with significant and higher priority injuries in the polytraumatised patient [390]. Lessons from civilian trauma networks, the battlefield, and mass casualty events have led to many advances in general trauma care [391, 392]. These include the widespread acceptance of damage control principles, trauma centralisation and recognition of the value of dedicated trauma teams. Urologists need to understand their role in the context of polytrauma with the ultimate aims of improving survivability and decreasing morbidity in these patients.

5.1.1 The development of major trauma centres

Multidisciplinary management of trauma patients has been shown to improve outcomes [393]. Major trauma patients initially managed in local hospitals are 1.5-5 times more likely to die than patients transported directly to specialist trauma centres. The re-organisation of care to these centres has been shown to reduce mortality by 25% and length of stay by four days [391]. Major trauma centres, which are expected to provide senior-led resuscitative trauma teams, dedicated trauma theatres, input from all major surgical specialties and interventional radiologists, have therefore been established worldwide. Urologists have an important role to play in this process [394].

5.1.1.1 Recommendations for polytrauma management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manage polytrauma patients in designated major trauma centres within a trauma network.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Involve urologists in cases of associated urological injury.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

5.2 Damage control

Damage control is a life-saving strategy for severely injured patients that recognises the consequences of the lethal triad of trauma, i.e. hypothermia, coagulopathy and acidosis [395-397]. It is a prioritised three-phase approach:

- the first phase consists of rapid control of haemorrhage and wound contamination;
• the second phase involves resuscitation in the intensive care unit (ICU), with the goal of restoring normal temperature, coagulation, and tissue oxygenation;
• the third stage involves definitive surgery when more time-consuming reconstructive procedures are performed in the stabilised patient [398].

Identifying which patients benefit from the damage control mode requires critical decision-making by the trauma team leader. Prior preparedness and regular communication between the surgical, critical care and anaesthetic teams are vital [399]. Damage control principles have been successfully adopted in the context of civilian mass casualty events, military field surgery, and initial treatment in rural areas with long-range transfers [396, 400].

5.3 Management principles: polytrauma and associated urological injury

Urologists are often asked for advice in polytrauma patients, some of whom might be in a damage control phase of management. Fortunately, the management of urological trauma often involves the use of temporary measures, followed by later definitive surgery, which fits in well with these principles. In the polytrauma setting, the urologist will usually work alongside the general/trauma surgeon. Procedures should be directed at the rapid control of bleeding, debridement of dead and devitalised tissue, and minimising urinary extravasation by simple diversionary measures. Complex reconstructive procedures, including organ preservation, are preferably delayed.

Examples where urological input is required in the polytraumatised patient include:
• haemodynamically unstable patients with suspected intra-abdominal bleeding, who are transferred urgently to the operating theatre without any pre-operative imaging;
• stable patients with suspected renal injuries—penetrating trauma to the upper abdomen/flanks/lower chest, or blunt abdominal trauma and visible haematuria;
• patients with suspected urethral or bladder injury associated with pelvic fractures; blood at the urethral meatus and/or the inability to void;
• external genitalia injury associated with penetrating trauma (intra-abdominal injury).

5.3.1 Summary of evidence and recommendations for management principles of polytrauma and associated urological injury

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Damage control principles govern the management of severely injured polytrauma patients.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Follow damage control principles in the management of severely injured polytrauma patients.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

5.4 Urological injury management in polytrauma

5.4.1 Renal injury

The incidence of multi-organ injury is high in penetrating trauma [32]. Most of these injuries can be managed without surgical exploration [29]. Renal exploration is required to control life-threatening bleeding [401]. The preservation of viable renal parenchyma is a secondary goal, with time-consuming renal reconstruction delayed until the patient is optimised [112].

At laparotomy, it is considered best practice not to explore the injured kidney if there is no active haemorrhage, even if delayed exploration is then necessary [79]. In unstable patients, packing the renal fossa and transferring the patient to the surgical intensive care unit is the option of choice for damage control. A planned second-look laparotomy is then performed [180]. However, in patients with significant ongoing haemorrhage, speedy nephrectomy is required. It is recommended that the contralateral kidney should at least be palpated prior to nephrectomy [402].

In patients who are packed temporarily and who become sufficiently stable in the intensive setting, radiological assessment allows definitive management to begin. Computed tomography allows the kidney injury to be graded, documents the presence of a contralateral kidney, and helps to determine whether or not intervention (radiological or surgical) is necessary.
In patients who are haemodynamically unstable after the initial acute-damage-control laparotomy, or in patients with deteriorating haemodynamic parameters (indicating ongoing or delayed bleeding), the management options are angiographic embolisation of the bleeding kidney or re-operation. This decision should be made according to:

- the status of the patient;
- the presence of associated injuries (stapled bowel, packed liver or spleen), which may need re-operation irrespective of the renal injury;
- the availability of angioembolisation.

5.4.1.1 Renal preservation

Haemostatic techniques, many of which were developed for hepatic surgery and splenic trauma, can be used to control renal parenchymal bleeding. These techniques are not consistent with damage control principles and should only be considered in the rare casualty situation of a solitary kidney or bilateral renal injury. These techniques are outlined below:

- mattress sutures through the parenchyma, i.e. renorrhaphy [180];
- haemostatic agents, i.e. combined acellular matrix and fibrin sealants [114];
- absorbable mesh kidney bags to maintain contact between renal parenchymal fragments [107];
- intra-operative drain left in situ to collect any urine that leaks following organ salvage.

5.4.1.2 Recommendations for the management of renal injury

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manage life-threatening bleeding from renal injury by urgent nephrectomy.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>B*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage profuse non-arterial bleeding by renal packing as a damage control measure.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>B*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use angioembolisation as an effective haemostatic measure.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>B*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus

5.4.2 Ureteral injury

Ureteral injuries are primarily associated with penetrating intra-abdominal injury; although rapid deceleration injuries can also result in ureteropelvic disruption [164]. A high index of suspicion is required as these injuries are quite commonly missed [403]. The results of immediate ureteral reconstruction are generally satisfactory, but this is time-consuming and may not be appropriate in the polytraumatised patient. Diagnostic procedures, such as on-table IVP or retrograde ureteropyelography to evaluate ureteral injuries are also not recommended in this setting.

If a ureteral injury is suspected but not clearly identified, a drain should be sited. If urine leaks post-operatively, a nephrostomy should be arranged. If a partial ureteral tear is identified (less than half a circumference) and the ureter is otherwise healthy, a double J-stent may be inserted over a guide wire through the tear, and the tear quickly closed with fine interrupted absorbable stitches.

When complete ureteral injuries are identified, definitive repair should not be performed. Dissection of the ureteral stumps should be avoided as it interferes with the blood supply. Temporary measures to control urine spillage should be performed:

- a single J or 8 French feeding tube is inserted into the ureter;
- the end of the disrupted proximal ureter is secured over the tube, which is exteriorised and secured to the skin.

The distal ureteral stump does not need to be ligated and any unnecessary manipulation should be avoided. Intra-operative placement of a nephrostomy tube is time-consuming and should be avoided [112, 180]. Tying off the injured ureteral segment and inserting a percutaneous nephrostomy post-operatively is a viable alternative [404]. Rarely, in cases with severe associated injuries of the ipsilateral kidney, nephrectomy is required.
5.4.2.1 Recommendations for the management of ureteral injury

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rule out ureteral injury in penetrating abdominal trauma.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat ureteral injury with &quot;tube&quot; urinary diversion if repair is not performed.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded following panel consensus.

5.4.3 Bladder trauma

In the acute polytrauma setting, a bladder injury should be treated with bladder drainage by a suprapubic and/or a urethral catheter. Later, definitive treatment can follow as necessary [405]. Ideally, large intraperitoneal bladder ruptures (often associated with unstable pelvic fractures) should be closed primarily and drained, as this will cope with both haemorrhage control and urinary contamination.

Examples of temporary measures that may be necessary include:

- the placement of externalised ureteral stents to provide external urinary drainage in extensive bladder rupture [180];
- packing and/or arteriography and selective embolisation in unstable patients with severe bladder haemorrhage [180];
- the placement of a pelvic suction drain for urinary evacuation [180].

5.4.3.1 Recommendations for the management of bladder trauma and urethral injury

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provide urinary drainage by either the suprapubic or urethral route.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.4 Urethral injury

Urethral injury of any kind is not life-threatening, but the associated injuries are often severe. In this situation, wherever the location or extent of injury, drainage through a suprapubic or urethral catheter should be obtained without prior imaging [261].

5.4.5 External genital injury

Traditionally, traumatic injuries of the external genitalia have a low priority and management is often deferred [406]. In the polytraumatised patient, the management of these injuries should be guided by the principles of haemorrhage control, debridement and urinary diversion (via a catheter). Delayed organ conservation is possible, particularly in testicular injury [407].

Temporary damage control measures that might be applicable include:

- compression dressing of the penis [180];
- packing of penetrating testicular injuries;
- tampons for vulvar lacerations.

5.5 Mass casualty events

A mass casualty event is one in which the number of injured people is significantly higher than the number of available healthcare providers [408]. A mass casualty disaster does not therefore necessarily involve a large number of victims, but it is related to the disproportion between the number of victims and the size of the medical team available [409, 410].

There are little published data on the best way in which to handle these events. However, recent developments in both the military and civilian settings have led to greater survivability following major trauma [411]. Triage, communication and preparedness are important components for a successful response.

Potential mass casualty events include:

- transportation systems accidents, e.g. road traffic, aircraft, shipping, railways;
- natural disasters, e.g. earthquakes, hurricanes, floods, tsunamis;
- industry, e.g. chemical spills, factory explosions and fires;
- civilian terrorism.
5.5.1 Triage
Triage after mass casualty events is difficult and involves difficult moral and ethical considerations. Disaster triage requires differentiation of the few critically injured individuals who can be saved by immediate intervention from the many others with non-life-threatening injuries for whom treatment can be delayed. The ethical dilemmas that arise are primarily caused by having to decide who should be actively treated, or subsequently whether to stop treatment, because of injuries deemed un-survivable or incompatible with survival in the home environment.

Triage sorts patients into four groups [412, 413]:
1. Patients with life-threatening injuries that require immediate intervention, presenting with airway compromise, breathing failure and/or circulatory compromise from ongoing external haemorrhage.
2. Patients with severe but non-life-threatening injuries, in whom treatment can be acceptably delayed, including those with major fractures, vascular injuries of the limbs and large soft tissue wounds.
3. ‘Walking wounded’, i.e. casualties with minimal injuries.
4. Patients who are so severely injured that treatment would require allocation of resources and time that would deny timely care to other patients with greater survivability. These patients are given minimal or no treatment, and are re-evaluated when resources become available. There is no absolute definition for this group because triage is individualised, according to the number and severity of casualties related to the available resources. The decision to implement this category is decided when sufficient information of the incident is available and is made at the highest level possible.

Triage should be performed at each stage from the pre-hospital setting to the emergency department and repeated as the clinical situation evolves. Ultimately, the individual in charge is responsible for directing specialty surgical teams, including urologists, and assigning them responsibility for specific patients as dictated by the specific injuries.

5.5.2 Urological role in the mass casualty setting
Urological consultations during a mass casualty scenario should follow the principles outlined below:
1. Rule out under-triage by the surgeon in charge, and perform a rapid primary survey of every patient.
2. Avoid unnecessary imaging procedures such as CT scans and retrograde urethrography. These procedures should be performed later, after re-evaluation of the patient, and after mass casualty protocols have been suspended.
3. Treat unstable patients who are to have surgery using damage control principles.
4. Stable patients should be transferred to the surgical ward without imaging procedures. Re-evaluate if there is any change in their haemodynamic status, or when possible as dictated by the constraints of the mass casualty event.
5. ‘Minimal acceptable’ treatment for all urological injuries should be performed in order to transfer patients to the surgical wards and are outlined above in the Section 5.4 Urological injury management in polytrauma.

6. REFERENCES
   https://uroweb.org/guideline/paediatric-urology/


7. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the Urological Trauma Guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements of all relationships that they have that might be perceived as a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publically accessible through the European Association of Urology website: http://uroweb.org/guidelines/. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Chronic Pelvic Pain

D. Engeler (Chair), A.P. Baranowski, J. Borovicka, A.M. Cottrell, P. Dinis-Oliveira, S. Elneil, J. Hughes, E.J. Messelink (Vice-chair), A.C. de C Williams
Guidelines Associates: S. Goonewardene, M.P. Schneider

© European Association of Urology 2017
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## 1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim

1.2 Publication history

1.3 Available Publications

1.4 Panel composition

1.5 Terminology

## 2. METHODOLOGY

2.1 Methods

2.2 Review

2.3 Future goals

## 3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

3.1 Chronic visceral pain

3.1.1 Incidence

3.1.2 Prevalence

3.1.3 Influence on Quality of Life

3.1.4 Costs

3.1.5 Risk Factors and underlying causes

3.2 Pelvic Pain

3.2.1 Incidence

3.2.2 Prevalence

3.2.2.1 Prostate Pain syndrome

3.2.2.2 Bladder Pain syndrome

3.2.2.3 Sexual pain syndrome

3.2.2.4 Myofascial pain syndromes

3.2.3 Influence on QoL

3.2.4 Costs

3.2.5 Risk factors and underlying causes

3.2.5.1 Prostate Pain Syndrome

3.2.5.2 Bladder Pain syndrome

3.2.5.3 Scrotal Pain Syndrome

3.2.5.4 Urethral Pain Syndrome

3.2.5.5 Vaginal and vulvar pain syndromes

3.2.5.6 Associated conditions in pelvic pain syndromes

3.3 Abdominal aspects of pelvic pain

3.3.1 Incidence

3.3.2 Prevalence

3.3.3 Influence on QOL

3.3.4 Costs

3.3.5 Risk factors & underlying causes

3.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations: CPP and mechanisms

## 4. DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

4.1 General Evaluation

4.1.1 History

4.1.1.1 Anxiety, depression, and overall function

4.1.1.2 Urological aspects

4.1.1.3 Gynaecological aspects

4.1.1.4 Gastrointestinal aspects

4.1.1.5 Peripheral nerve aspects

4.1.1.6 Myofascial aspects

4.1.2 Physical Evaluation

4.2 Supplemental evaluation

4.2.1 Assessing pain and related symptoms
| 4.2.2 | Focused myofascial evaluation | 29 |
| 4.2.3 | Neurological | 29 |
| 4.2.4 | Imaging | 30 |
| 4.2.5 | Laboratory Tests | 30 |
| 4.2.6 | Invasive tests | 30 |
| 4.3 | Diagnostic algorithm | 32 |
| 4.4 | Other painful conditions without a urological cause | 33 |
| 4.5 | Summary of evidence and recommendations: diagnostic evaluation | 34 |
| 4.5.1 | Diagnostic evaluation of PPS | 34 |
| 4.5.2 | Diagnostic evaluation of BPS | 35 |
| 4.5.3 | Diagnostic evaluation of scrotal pain syndrome | 35 |
| 4.5.4 | Diagnostic evaluation of urethral pain syndrome | 35 |
| 4.5.5 | Diagnostic evaluation of gynaecological aspects chronic pelvic pain | 35 |
| 4.5.6 | Diagnostic evaluation of anorectal pain syndrome | 35 |
| 4.5.7 | Diagnostic evaluation of pudendal neuralgia | 36 |
| 4.5.8 | Diagnostic evaluation of sexological aspects in CPP | 36 |
| 4.5.9 | Diagnostic evaluation of psychological aspects of CPP | 36 |
| 4.5.10 | Diagnostic evaluation of pelvic floor function | 37 |
| 5. | MANAGEMENT | 37 |
| 5.1 | Conservative management | 37 |
| 5.1.1 | Pain education | 37 |
| 5.1.2 | Physical therapy | 37 |
| 5.1.3 | Psychological therapy | 39 |
| 5.1.4 | Dietary treatment | 39 |
| 5.2 | Pharmacological management | 40 |
| 5.2.1 | Drugs for chronic pelvic pain syndrome | 40 |
| 5.2.1.1 | Mechanisms of action | 40 |
| 5.2.1.2 | Comparisons of agents used in pelvic pain syndromes | 40 |
| 5.2.2 | Analgesics | 44 |
| 5.2.2.1 | Mechanisms of action | 45 |
| 5.2.2.2 | Comparisons within and between groups in terms of efficacy and safety | 45 |
| 5.3 | Surgical management | 47 |
| 5.3.1 | Surgery | 47 |
| 5.3.2 | Neuromodulation | 49 |
| 5.3.3 | Nerve blocks | 50 |
| 5.4 | Summary of evidence and recommendations: management | 50 |
| 5.4.1 | Management of PPS | 50 |
| 5.4.2 | Management of BPS | 51 |
| 5.4.3 | Management of scrotal pain syndrome | 52 |
| 5.4.4 | Management of urethral pain syndrome | 52 |
| 5.4.5 | Management of gynaecological aspects of chronic pelvic pain | 53 |
| 5.4.6 | Management of anorectal pain syndrome | 53 |
| 5.4.7 | Management of pudendal neuralgia | 53 |
| 5.4.8 | Management of sexological aspects in CPP | 53 |
| 5.4.9 | Management of pelvic floor dysfunction | 54 |
| 5.4.10 | Management of chronic/non-acute urogenital pain by opioids | 54 |
| 6. | EVALUATION OF TREATMENT RESULTS | 54 |
| 6.1 | Evaluation of treatment | 54 |
| 6.1.1 | Treatment has not been effective | 54 |
| 6.1.1.1 | Alternative treatment | 54 |
| 6.1.1.2 | Referral to next envelope of care | 54 |
| 6.1.1.3 | Self-management and shared care | 54 |
| 6.1.2 | Treatment has been effective | 55 |
| 7. | REFERENCES | 55 |
| 8. | CONFLICT OF INTEREST | 81 |
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim
This guideline plays an important role in the process of consolidation and improvement of care for patients with abdominal and pelvic pain. From both literature and daily practice it has become clear that abdominal and pelvic pain are areas still under development. This guideline has been recognised as a cornerstone for important developments that have taken place in the past ten years.

This guideline aims to expand the awareness of caregivers in the field of abdominal and pelvic pain and to assist those who treat patients with abdominal and pelvic pain in their daily practice. The guideline is a useful instrument not only for urologists, but also for gynaecologists, surgeons, physiotherapists, psychologists and pain doctors.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts. However following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

Structure and scope
The panel wishes to take advantage of modern methods of delivering guideline information to clinicians dealing with these patients. In 2016, we made a stepped information structure, in alignment with stepped care protocols, using new digital information sources like websites and apps to aid this process. Furthermore, the guideline was changed according to the template used in all other non-oncology guidelines of the EAU. It was recognised that structuring a guideline on chronic pain is quite different from structuring one on another subject. A multi-disciplinary approach is of utmost importance and demands a broad view. In 2016, the guideline was rewritten in such a way that it is centred around pain instead of being organ-centred. It is partly theoretical to show the importance of using this pain centred approach. The biggest part, however, deals with the practical approach to diagnostics, treatment and management of patients with abdominal and pelvic pain.

1.2 Publication history
The EAU Guidelines on Chronic Pelvic Pain were first published in 2003 [1] which formed the basis of a scientific publication in European Urology in 2004 [2]. Also, in the 2003 edition the concept of Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndromes (CPPS) was introduced, which is now referred to as “pain as a disease process”. Partial updates of the CPP Guidelines were published in 2008 and formed the basis for another scientific publication in European Urology in the year 2010 [3, 4].

Two chapters were added at that time: Chapter 5 ‘Gastrointestinal aspects of chronic pelvic pain’ and Chapter 7 ‘Sexological aspects of chronic pelvic pain’. In the 2014 edition minor revisions were made in Chapters 5 ‘Gastrointestinal aspects of chronic pelvic pain’ and 8 ‘Psychological aspects of chronic pelvic pain’.

For the 2015 edition the Panel critically reviewed the sub-chapter on bladder pain syndrome which is now a comprehensive part of the guideline [5].

In 2016, the guideline was rewritten in such a way that it is centred around pain instead of being organ-centred and furthermore restructured in accordance with the template used in all other non-oncology guidelines of the EAU.

1.3 Available Publications
Alongside the full text version, a quick reference document (Pocket Guidelines) is available, presenting key findings of the Chronic Pelvic Pain Guidelines. This reference document follows the updating cycle of the underlying large texts. All available material can be viewed and downloaded for personal use at the EAU website. The EAU website also includes a selection of EAU Guideline articles as well as translations produced by national urological associations: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

1.4 Panel composition
The panel of experts responsible for this document include four urologists, (one of which has a subspecialisation in neuro-urology and one is a sexologist), two consultants in pain medicine, a gynaecologist, a psychologist and a gastroenterologist.
The Panel is also grateful to Dr. N. Wood for his expertise, time and diligence in undertaking a review of these Guidelines from a patient perspective.

1.5 Terminology

Definitions of CPP terminology

Classification

Much debate over the classification of CPP has occurred, is ongoing and will continue in the future. Classification involves three aspects of defining a condition: phenotyping, terminology and taxonomy.

Phenotyping

Phenotyping is describing the condition. For example, chronic bladder pain may be associated with the presence of Hunner’s ulcers and glomerulation on cystoscopy, whereas other bladder pain conditions may have a normal appearance on cystoscopy. These are two different phenotypes. The same is true for irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), which may be sub-divided into that associated primarily with diarrhoea or that with constipation. Phenotyping is based upon mechanisms when they are known (e.g., infection, ischaemic, autoimmune, or neuropathic). In the absence of well-defined mechanisms, describing the condition by its symptoms, signs and, where possible, by investigations, has been demonstrated to have clinical and research validity in many situations. When pain is the main symptom and pain as a disease process is considered the cause, the condition is often referred to as a pain syndrome - a well-defined collection of symptoms, signs and investigation results associated with pain mechanisms and pain perception as the primary complaint.

Terminology

Terminology is the words that are used within classification, both to name the phenotype and within the definition of the phenotype. Examples of names for phenotypes associated with the bladder include interstitial cystitis, painful bladder syndrome or bladder pain syndrome (BPS). The EAU, the International Society for the study of BPS (ESSIC), the International Association for the Study of Pain (IASP) and several other groups now prefer the term bladder pain syndrome. In the pain syndromes, the role of the nervous system in generating the sensations is thought to be pivotal, but the term syndrome is also comprehensive and takes into account the emotional, cognitive, behavioural, sexual and functional consequences of the chronic pain.

When defining the phenotype, the terminology used in that definition must also be clear and if necessary defined. One of the most important guiding principles is that spurious terminology should be avoided. Terms that end in “itis” in particular should be avoided unless infection and or inflammation is proven and considered to be the cause of the pain [6]. It must be appreciated that end-organ inflammation may be secondary and neurogenic in origin and not a primary cause of the pain.

Taxonomy

Taxonomy places the phenotypes into a relationship hierarchy. The EAU approach sub-divides CPP into conditions that are pain syndromes and those that are non-pain syndromes. The latter are conditions that have well-recognised pathology (e.g., infection, neuropathy or inflammation), whereas the former syndromes do not and pain as a disease process is the mechanism. Other terms for the non-pain syndromes include “classical conditions”, “well-defined conditions” and “confusable diseases”. Although the EAU approach deals primarily with urological conditions, this approach to classification can be applied to all conditions associated with pain perception within the pelvis; the classification has been developed to include non-urological pain and was accepted by the IASP for publication in January 2012.

Classification of CPP syndromes

Importance of classification

It should be obvious to all that a condition cannot be treated unless it is defined. However, the reasons for classifying CPP go far beyond that.

Clues to the mechanism

As a result of systematic phenotypic and taxonomic classifications, similarities and differences between conditions become clear. Drawing comparisons between the phenotypes of different disorders allows one to compare disorders such as bladder and bowel pain syndromes, thus facilitating research and treatment.

Guidelines for best treatment options

As conditions become better defined, more specific treatment approaches can be adopted. In particular, there
will be a move away from treatments based upon spurious terms (e.g., antibiotics and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for the “-itis” conditions). Generic treatments aimed at groups of conditions will be more commonplace and based upon research evidence.

**Research platform**

Only by clearly defining the phenotype being investigated can research be valued or applied to the clinical situation.

**Patient needs**

A diagnosis, or name, for a set of symptoms can provide patients with a sense of being understood, as well as hope for relief. It may therefore help in acceptance of the problem as chronic, resolution of unfounded fears about its implications (if not life-threatening), and engagement in therapeutic endeavours, as well as in self-management. However, it may also lead to accessing information of variable quality associated with the diagnosis or name, and the possibility of generating new concerns about long-term consequences or about appropriateness of treatment.

**IASP definitions**

**Sub-dividing pain syndromes**

There is much debate on the sub-divisions of the pain syndromes within the hierarchical taxonomy. The EAU has led the way in this regard and the guiding principles are as follows [2]:

1. The pain syndromes are defined by a process of exclusion. In particular, there should be no evidence of infection or inflammation. Investigations by end-organ specialists should therefore be aimed at obtaining a differential diagnosis; repeated, unnecessary investigations are detrimental in the management of chronic pain syndromes.

2. A sub-division phenotype should only be used if there is adequate evidence to support its use. For instance, in non-specific, poorly localised pelvic pain without obvious pathology, only the term chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CPPS) should be used. If the pain can be localised to an organ, then a more specific term, such as rectal pain syndrome, may be used. If the pain is localised to multiple organs, then the syndrome is a regional pain syndrome and the term CPPS should once again be considered. As well as defining the patient by a specific end-organ phenotype, there are several other more general descriptors that need to be considered. These are primarily psychological (e.g., cognitive or emotional), sexual, behavioural and functional. Psychological and behavioural factors are well-established factors which relate to quality of life (QoL) issues and prognosis. In North America a research programme, the MAPP program (Multi-disciplinary Approach to the study of Chronic Pelvic Pain research) has been devised to investigate the importance of these factors and looks at all types of pelvic pain irrespective of the end-organ where the pain is perceived. It also looks at systemic disorder associations, such as the co-occurrence of fibromyalgia, facial pain, or auto-immune disorders.

3. In 2004 this expert panel introduced the concept of managing the polysymptomatic nature of CPP, since then others have developed their own schemes, such as Nickel’s UPOINT [7], modified by Magri et al. [8]. In light of these and other publications, the symptom classification table has been updated (Table 1).

The debate in relation to sub-dividing the pain syndromes remains ongoing. As more information is collected suggesting that the central nervous system (CNS) is involved, and indeed may be the main cause of many CPP conditions (e.g., bladder, genitalia, colorectal or myofascial), there is a general tendency to move away from end-organ nomenclature. Only time and good research will determine whether this is appropriate. To enable such research, it is essential to have a framework of classification within which to work. Any hierarchical taxonomy must be flexible to allow change.
In Table 1 the classification has been set up according to the axis system used by IASP.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Axis I Region</th>
<th>Axis II System</th>
<th>Axis III End-organ as pain syndrome as identified from Hx, Ex and Ix</th>
<th>Axis IV Referral characteristics</th>
<th>Axis V Temporal characteristics</th>
<th>Axis VI Character</th>
<th>Axis VII Associated symptoms</th>
<th>Axis VIII Psychological symptoms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chronic pelvic pain</td>
<td>Urological</td>
<td>Prostate, Bladder</td>
<td>Suprapubic, Inguinal, Urethral, Perineal, Rectal, Buttocks, Thighs</td>
<td>ONSET Acute, Chronic</td>
<td>Aching, Burning</td>
<td>UROLOGICAL Frequency, Nocturia, Hesitance</td>
<td>ANXIETY About pain, or putative cause of pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic pain syndrome</td>
<td>Gynaecological</td>
<td>Vulvar, Vaginal, Clitoral</td>
<td>Endometriosis associated, CPPS with cyclical exacerbations, Dysmenorrhoea</td>
<td>ONGOING Sporadic, Cyclical, Continuous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Catastrophic thinking about pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gastrointestinal</td>
<td>Irritable bowel, Chronic anal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DEPRESSION Attributed to pain or impact of pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peripheral nerves</td>
<td>Pudendal pain syndrome</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Attributed to other causes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sexological</td>
<td>Dyspareunia, Pelvic pain with sexual dysfunction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unattributed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Psychological</td>
<td>Any pelvic organ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PTSD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Musculo-skeletal</td>
<td>Pelvic floor muscle, Abdominal muscle, Spinal, Coccyx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SYMPTOMS Re-experiencing Avoidance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pain syndromes
The original EAU classification [2] was inspired by the IASP classification [9] and much work around what has become known as “pain as a disease” and its associated psychological, behavioural, sexual and functional correlates. After ten years of work developing the initial ideas, an updated version was accepted by IASP Council for publication in January 2012.

Definition of chronic pelvic pain (CPP)
Chronic pelvic pain is chronic or persistent pain perceived* in structures related to the pelvis of either men or women. It is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual and emotional consequences as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel, pelvic floor or gynaecological dysfunction.
[*Perceived indicates that the patient and clinician, to the best of their ability from the history, examination and investigations (where appropriate) has localised the pain as being perceived in a specified anatomical pelvic area.]

In the case of documented nociceptive pain that becomes chronic/persistent through time, pain must have been continuous or recurrent for at least six months. That is, it can be cyclical over a six-month period, such as the cyclical pain of dysmenorrhoea. Although arbitrary, six months was chosen because three months was not considered long enough if cyclical pain conditions are included. If non-acute and central sensitisation pain mechanisms are well documented, then the pain may be regarded as chronic, irrespective of the time period. Cyclical pain is included in the classification and hence dysmenorrhoea needs to be considered as a chronic pain syndrome if it is persistent and associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences.

Chronic pelvic pain may be sub-divided into conditions with well-defined classical pathology (such as infection or cancer) and those with no obvious pathology. For the purpose of this classification, the term “specific disease-associated pelvic pain” is proposed for the former, and “chronic pelvic pain syndrome” for the latter. The following classification only deals with Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndrome.

Definition of chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CPPS)
Chronic pelvic pain syndrome is the occurrence of CPP when there is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology that may account for the pain. It is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. CPPS is a sub-division of CPP.

Further subdivision of CPPS
Pain perception in CPPS may be focused within a single organ, more than one pelvic organ and even associated with systemic symptoms such as chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS), fibromyalgia (FM) or Sjögren’s syndrome. When the pain is localised to a single organ, some specialists may wish to consider using an end organ term such as BPS (Table 2). The use of such a phrase with the terminology “syndrome” indicates that, although peripheral mechanisms may exist, CNS neuromodulation may be more important and systemic associations may occur. When the pain is localised to more than one organ site, the term CPPS should be used. Many, including some of the authors of this text, never sub-divide by anatomy and prefer to refer to patients with pain perceived within the pelvis, and no specific disease process, as suffering from CPPS, sub-divided by psychological and functional symptoms.

Psychological considerations for classification
Many CPPSs are associated with a range of concurrent negative psychological, behavioural and sexual consequences that must be described and assessed. Examples that need to be considered are depression, anxiety, fears about pain or its implications, unhelpful coping strategies, and distress in relationships. Both anxiety and depression can be significant important concomitant symptoms that are relevant to pain, disability and poor QoL. Catastrophic interpretation of pain has been shown to be a particularly salient variable, predicting patients’ report of pain, disability, and poor QoL, over and above psychosocial variables such as depression or behavioural factors such as self-reported sexual dysfunction. It is suggested that CPPS sometimes creates a sense of helplessness that can be reported as overwhelming, and may be associated with the refractory nature of the patients’ symptoms. It is important to note that many of these biopsychosocial consequences are common to other persistent pain problems but may show varying degrees of importance for any one individual suffering from CPPS. In all patients with CPPS, these consequences must be clearly described as part of the phenotype (where the term phenotype is used to indicate the observable characteristics of the syndrome).
**Functional considerations for classification**

Functional disorders, for the purpose of this document, are pathologies that have arisen secondary to changes in the control mechanisms of an organ or system. That is, they are disorders characterised by disturbance of function. As an example, slow colonic transit is a functional disorder of the bowel - the normal function of the bowel is not occurring as a result of changes in the mechanisms that produce defecation, and hence bowel control is abnormal. The term is not used in the sense of a psychiatric functional disorder. Many CPPSs are associated with functional abnormalities at a local and even systemic level. These also need to be defined as a part of the phenotype.

Functional pain disorders may not express significant pathology in the organs that appear responsible for the primary symptoms, but they are associated with substantial neurobiological, physiological and sometimes anatomical changes in the CNS.

**Multi-system sub-division**

It is recognised that the end-organ where the pain is perceived may not be the centre of pain generation. This classification is based upon the most effective and accepted method of classifying and identifying different pain syndromes, that is, by site of presentation. It is argued that keeping the end-organ name in the classification is inappropriate because, in most cases, there are multi-systemic causes and effects, with the result that symptoms are perceived in several areas. This is an area in which discussions are ongoing, and despite there being strong arguments for both keeping and dispensing with end-organ classification, the authors have not taken the umbrella approach of referring to all pain perceived in the pelvis as CPPS.

**Dyspareunia**

Dyspareunia is defined as pain perceived within the pelvis associated with penetrative sex. It tells us nothing about the mechanism and may be applied to women and men. It is usually applied to penile penetration, but is often associated with pain during insertion of any object. It may apply to anal as well as vaginal intercourse. It is classically sub-divided into superficial and deep.

**Perineal pain syndrome**

Perineal pain syndrome is a neuropathic-type pain that is perceived in the distribution area of the pudendal nerve, and may be associated with symptoms and signs of rectal, urinary tract or sexual dysfunction. There is no proven obvious pathology. It is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual and emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. Perineal pain syndrome should be distinguished from pudendal neuralgia, which is a specific disease associated with pelvic pain that is caused by nerve damage.
### Table 2: Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndromes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Urological Pain Syndromes</th>
<th>Pain Syndrome Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prostate pain syndrome</strong></td>
<td>Prostate pain syndrome (PPS) is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pain (which is convincingly reproduced by prostate palpation). There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. PPS is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction. The term “chronic prostatitis” continues to be equated with that of PPS. In the authors’ and others’ opinion, this is an inappropriate term, although it is recognised that it has a long history of use. The National Institutes of Health (NIH) consensus [10] includes infection (types I and II), which the authors feel should not be considered under PPS, but as specific disease-associated pelvic pain. The term prostadynia has also been used in the past but is no longer recommended by the expert panel. Please note that some of the authors of the IASP document disagree with this term and suggest that CPPS of the male is used instead of PPS, which has been agreed by the majority.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bladder pain syndrome</strong></td>
<td>Bladder pain syndrome (BPS) is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent pain perceived in the urinary bladder region, accompanied by at least one other symptom, such as pain worsening with bladder filling and day-time and/or night-time urinary frequency. There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. BPS is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction. BPS is believed to represent a heterogeneous spectrum of disorders. There may be specific types of inflammation as a feature in subsets of patients. Localisation of the pain can be difficult by examination, and consequently, another localising symptom is required. Cystoscopy with hydrodistension and biopsy may be indicated to define phenotypes. Recently, ESSIC has suggested a standardised scheme of sub-classifications [11] to acknowledge differences and make it easier to compare various studies. Other terms that have been used include “interstitial cystitis”, “painful bladder syndrome”, and “PBS/IC” or “BPS/IC”. These terms are no longer recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scrotal pain syndrome</strong></td>
<td>Scrotal pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pain localised within the organs of the scrotum, and may be associated with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract or sexual dysfunction. There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Scrotal pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences. Scrotal pain syndrome is a generic term and is used when the site of the pain is not clearly testicular or epididymal. The pain is not in the skin of the scrotum as such, but perceived within its contents, in a similar way to idiopathic chest pain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Testicular pain syndrome</strong></td>
<td>Testicular pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the testes, and may be associated with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract or sexual dysfunction. There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Testicular pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences. Previous terms have included orchitis, orchialgia and orchiodynia. These terms are no longer recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Epididymal pain syndrome</strong></td>
<td>Epididymal pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the epididymis, and may be associated with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract or sexual dysfunction. There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Epididymal pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Penile pain syndrome</strong></td>
<td>Penile pain syndrome is the occurrence of pain within the penis that is not primarily in the urethra, in the absence of proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Penile pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Urethral pain syndrome

Urethral pain syndrome is the occurrence of chronic or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the urethra, in the absence of proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Urethral pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. Urethral pain syndrome may occur in men and women.

Post-vasectomy scrotal pain syndrome

Post-vasectomy scrotal pain syndrome is a scrotal pain syndrome that follows vasectomy. Post-vasectomy scrotal pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction. Post-vasectomy pain may be as frequent as 1% following vasectomy, possibly more frequent. The mechanisms are poorly understood and for that reason it is considered a special form of scrotal pain syndrome.

Gynaecological Pain Syndromes: external genitalia

Vulvar pain syndrome

Vulvar pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic vulvar pain. There is no proven infection or other local obvious pathology. It is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. Although pain perceived in the vulva was included under sexual disorders in the DSM-IV-R manual for classifying psychiatric disorders, there is no scientific basis for this classification, and pain perceived in the vulva is best understood as a pain problem that usually has psychological consequences. There is no evidence for its classification as a psychiatric disorder. The International Society for the Study of Vulvovaginal Disease (ISSVD) has used the term vulvodynia, where we use the term vulvar pain syndrome. According to the ISSVD, vulvodynia is vulvar pain that is not accounted for by any physical findings. The ISSVD has defined vulvodynia as “vulvar discomfort, most often described as burning pain, occurring in the absence of relevant visible findings or a specific, clinically identifiable, neurologic disorder”. If physical findings are present, the patient is said to have vulvar pain due to a specified cause. The ISSVD has sub-divided vulvodynia based on pain location and temporal characteristics of the pain (e.g. provoked or unprovoked). The following definitions are based on that approach.

Generalised vulvar pain syndrome

Generalised vulvar pain syndrome refers to a vulvar pain syndrome in which the pain/burning cannot be consistently and precisely localised by point-pressure mapping via probing with a cotton-tipped applicator or similar instrument. Rather, the pain is diffuse and affects all parts of the vulva. The vulvar vestibule (the part that lies between the labia minora into which the urethral meatus and vaginal introitus open) may be involved but the discomfort is not limited to the vestibule. This pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences. Previous terms have included “dysesthetic vulvodynia” and “essential vulvodynia”, but are no longer recommended.

Localised vulvar pain syndrome

Localised vulvar pain syndrome refers to pain that can be consistently and precisely localised by point-pressure mapping to one or more portions of the vulva. Clinically, the pain usually occurs as a result of provocation (touch, pressure or friction). Localised vulvar pain syndrome can be sub-divided into vestibular pain syndrome and clitoral pain syndrome.

Vestibular pain syndrome

Vestibular pain syndrome refers to pain that can be localised by point-pressure mapping to the vestibule or is well perceived in the area of the vestibule.

Clitoral pain syndrome

Clitoral pain syndrome refers to pain that can be localised by point-pressure mapping to the clitoris or is well-perceived in the area of the clitoris.
**Gynaecological system: internal pelvic pain syndromes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syndrome</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Endometriosis-associated pain syndrome</strong></td>
<td>Endometriosis-associated pain syndrome is chronic or recurrent pelvic pain in patients with laparoscopically confirmed endometriosis, and the term is used when the symptoms persist despite adequate endometriosis treatment. It is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. Many patients have pain above and beyond the endometriotic lesions; this term is used to cover that group of patients. Endometriosis may be an incidental finding, is not always painful, and the degree of disease seen laparoscopically does not correlate with severity of symptoms. As with other patients, they often have more than one end-organ involved. It has been suggested that this phenotype should be removed from the classification because the endometriosis may be irrelevant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chronic pelvic pain syndrome with cyclical exacerbations</strong></td>
<td>Chronic pelvic pain syndrome with cyclical exacerbations covers the non-gynaecological organ pain that frequently shows cyclical exacerbations (e.g., IBS or BPS) as well as pain similar to that associated with endometriosis/adenomyosis but where no pathology is identified. This condition is different from dysmenorrhoea, in which pain is only present with menstruation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dysmenorrhoea</strong></td>
<td>Dysmenorrhoea is pain with menstruation that is not associated with well-defined pathology. Dysmenorrhoea needs to be considered as a chronic pain syndrome if it is persistent and associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gastrointestinal Pelvic Pain Syndromes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syndrome</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS)</strong></td>
<td>IBS is the occurrence of chronic or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the bowel, in the absence of proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Bowel dysfunction is frequent. IBS is often associated with worry and pre-occupation about bowel function, and negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract or gynaecological dysfunction. The above classification is based upon the Rome III Criteria [12]: three months of continuous or recurring symptoms of abdominal pain or irritation that may be relieved with a bowel movement, may be coupled with a change in frequency, or may be related to a change in stool consistency. Two or more of the following are present at least 25% of the time: change in stool frequency (&gt; three bowel movements per day or &lt; three per week); noticeable difference in stool form (hard, loose, watery or poorly formed stools); passage of mucus in stools; bloating or feeling of abdominal distension; or altered stool passage (e.g., sensation of incomplete evacuation, straining, or urgency). Extra-intestinal symptoms include: nausea, fatigue, full sensation after a very small meal, and vomiting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chronic anal pain syndrome</strong></td>
<td>Chronic anal pain syndrome is the occurrence of chronic or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the anus, in the absence of proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Chronic anal pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intermittent chronic anal pain syndrome</strong></td>
<td>Intermittent chronic anal pain syndrome refers to severe, brief, episodic pain that seems to arise in the rectum or anal canal and occurs at irregular intervals. This is unrelated to the need to or the process of defecation. It may be considered a sub-group of the chronic anal pain syndromes. It was previously known as “proctalgia fugax” but this term is no longer recommended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Musculoskeletal System**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syndrome</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pelvic floor muscle pain syndrome</strong></td>
<td>Pelvic floor muscle pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pelvic floor pain. There is no proven well-defined local pathology. It is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. This syndrome may be associated with over-activity of or trigger points within the pelvic floor muscles. Trigger points may also be found in several muscles, such as the abdominal, thigh and paraspinal muscles and even those not directly related to the pelvis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Coccyx pain syndrome is the occurrence of chronic or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the region of the coccyx, in the absence of proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Coccyx pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. The term “coccydynia” was used but is no longer recommended.

2. METHODOLOGY

2.1 Methods
References used in this text are assessed according to their Level of Evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a Grade of Recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence [13]. Additional methodology information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/. A list of Associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be reviewed online at the above address.

The 2012 full text update was based on a systematic review of literature using the Embase and Medline databases, the Cochrane Central Register of controlled trials and the PsycINFO and Bandolier databases to identify the best evidence from randomised controlled trials (RCTs) (Level of Evidence 1 (LE: 1)) according to the rating schedule adapted from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence [13]. Where no LE: 1 literature could be identified the search was moved down to the next lower level on the rating scale. Extensive use of free text ensured the sensitivity of the searches, resulting in a substantial body of literature to scan. Searches covered the period January 1995 to July 2011 and were restricted to English language publications.

For the 2017 print, a scoping search was performed, covering all areas of the guideline starting from the last cut-off date of July 2011 with a cut-off date of May 2016. Embase, Medline, the Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials and CINAHL databases were searched and were restricted to English language publications. A total of 3,489 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance of which 47 publications were selected for inclusion in the 2017 guidelines. A detailed search strategy is available online: https://uroweb.org/guideline/chronic-pelvic-pain/. The gynaecological aspects of the guideline were not updated in this edition but will be updated in 2018.

2.2 Review
This document was subject to peer review prior to publication in 2015.

2.3 Future goals
The results of ongoing and new systematic reviews will be included in the 2018 update of the Chronic Pelvic Pain Guidelines. An ongoing systematic review is:

- What are the benefits and harms of electrical neuromodulation vs. best clinical practice or no treatment in CPP? [14].

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY, AETIOLOGY AND PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

3.1 Chronic visceral pain
Definition of pain
Pain is defined as an unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with actual or potential tissue damage, or described in terms of such damage (IASP Taxonomy).

Introduction to chronic pelvic pain syndromes
Over the years much of the focus for CPP has been on peripheral-end-organ mechanisms, such as inflammatory or infective conditions. However, both animal and clinical research have indicated that many of
the mechanisms for the CPP syndromes are based within the CNS. Although a peripheral stimulus such as infection may initiate the start of a CPP condition, the condition may become self-perpetuating as a result of CNS modulation. As well as pain, these central mechanisms are associated with several other sensory, functional, behavioural and psychological phenomena. It is this collection of phenomena that forms the basis of the pain syndrome diagnosis and each individual phenomena needs to be addressed in its own right through multi-specialty and multi-disciplinary care. Although ongoing peripheral organ pathology can produce persistent and chronic pain, the main focus of these guidelines is on CPP syndromes in which no peripheral ongoing pathology (such as infection or neoplastic disease) is detected. The main exception is when pain is due to peripheral nerve damage.

3.1.1 Incidence
No adequate data on incidence were found.

3.1.2 Prevalence
In a large study in Europe undertaken in 2004 [15] it was found that chronic pain of moderate to severe intensity occurs in 19% of adult Europeans, seriously affecting the quality of their social and working lives. There are some differences between countries but not much spread is seen.

3.1.3 Influence on Quality of Life
Assessing the QoL in pelvic pain patients is challenging due to the multi-faceted nature of the complaints and the overlap between the different pelvic pain syndromes [16]. Assessment of QoL is further complicated due to the complex pathology of pain itself [17].

Pelvic pain syndromes do have an impact on QoL [18, 19]. This may result in depression, anxiety, impaired emotional functioning, insomnia and fatigue [18, 20]. If these aspects are identified and targeted early in the diagnostic process, the associated pain symptoms may also improve [21]. Addressing co-morbidities will help in further improving QoL [22]. Quality of life assessment is therefore important in patients with pelvic pain and should include physical, psychosocial and emotional tools, using standardised and validated instruments [19].

The impact of pain on QoL has been assessed in an extensive European study [15]. In-depth interviews with 4,839 respondents with chronic pain (about 300 per country) showed: 66% had moderate pain (NRS = 5-7) and 34% had severe pain (NRS = 8-10), 46% had constant pain, 54% had intermittent pain, 59% had suffered with pain for two to fifteen years, 21% had been diagnosed with depression because of their pain, 61% were less able or unable to work outside their home, 19% had lost their job and 13% had changed jobs because of their pain. 60% visited their doctor about their pain two to nine times in the last six months. Only 2% were currently treated by a pain management specialist.

3.1.4 Costs
No adequate data on costs were found.

3.1.5 Risk Factors and underlying causes
3.1.5.1 Risk factors
Risk factors include many different factors from various areas, including genetic, psychological state, recurrent physical trauma and endocrine factors.

The endocrine system is involved in visceral function. Significant life events, and in particular, early life events may alter the development of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis and the chemicals released. Increased vulnerability to stress is thought to be partly due to increased corticotrophin-releasing hormone (CRH) gene expression. Up-regulation of CRH has been implicated in several pain states such as rectal hypersensitivity to rectal distension. This model suggests an action of CRH on mast cells. A range of stress-related illnesses have been suggested, e.g. IBS and BPS. There is evidence accumulating to suggest that the sex hormones also modulate both nociception and pain perception. Stress can also produce long-term biological changes which may form the relation between chronic pain syndromes and significant early life and adverse life events [23]. Asking the patient about these events is important as they have an effect on a patient’s psychological wellbeing [24-26].

Genetics also play a role in assessing the risk of developing chronic pain. An individual who has one chronic pain syndrome is more likely to develop another. Family clusters of pain conditions are also observed and animals can be bred to be more prone to apparent chronic pain state. A range of genetic variations have been described that may explain the pain in certain cases; many of these are to do with subtle changes
in transmitters and their receptors. However, the picture is more complicated in that developmental, environmental and social factors also influence the situation. Evidence that BPS may have a genetic component has been presented in several identical twin studies, but genetics may contribute to less than one third of total variation in susceptibility to BPS [27, 28].

Studies about integrating the psychological factors are few but the quality is high. Psychological factors are consistently found to be relevant in the maintenance of persistent pelvic and urogenital pain with current neurobiological understanding of pain. Beliefs about pain contribute to the experience of pain [29] and symptom-related anxiety and central pain amplification may be measurably linked, as in IBS [30]. Central sensitisation has been demonstrated in symptomatic endometriosis [31] and central changes are evident in association with dysmenorrhoea and increasingly recognised as a risk for female pelvic pain [32]. The various mechanisms of CNS facilitation, amplification and failure of inhibition, mean that there is no simple relationship between physical findings, pain experienced and resulting distress and restriction of activities. Diagnoses that assign women's pain to psychological origins, as is common in primary care [33] due to scepticism about the reality or severity of their pain [34], undermines any therapeutic relationship [35]. Division of aetiology into organic vs. psychogenic is unscientific. Pelvic pain and distress may be related [36, 37] in men as well as in women [38]; the same is true of painful bladder and distress [39]. In a large population based study of men, CPPS was associated with prior anxiety disorder [40]. The only systematic review [41] of risk factors for chronic non-cyclical pelvic pain in women included, as well as medical variables: sexual or physical abuse (OR from 1.51 to 3.49); psychological problems such as anxiety (OR: 2.28, 95% CI: 1.41- 3.70) and depression (OR: 2.69, 95% CI: 1.66-3.88); multiple somatic problems (OR: 4.83, 95% CI: 2.50-9.33); and psychosomatic symptoms (OR: 8.01, 95% CI: 5.16-12.44).

Many studies have reported high rates of childhood sexual abuse in adults with persistent pain, particularly in women with pelvic pain [42, 43]. In these studies it is suggested that there is increased frequency of sexual abuse or trauma history, anxiety and depression in women with CPP [44-48]. The only prospective investigation into the relationship between childhood sexual abuse, physical abuse, or neglect, and “medically unexplained pain”, including pelvic pain, used court records to compare women with a definite history with matched classmates [26] and concluded that physically and sexually abused individuals were not at risk for increased pain, although women with pain problems as adults were more likely to report earlier sexual or physical abuse or neglect. The correlation between childhood victimisation and pain may concern retrospective explanations for pain; controlling for depression significantly weakens the relationship between childhood abuse and adult pain [49]. Disentangling the influences and inferred causes requires further prospective studies or careful comparisons [23]. There is some evidence for a specific relationship between rape and CPP (and with fibromyalgia and functional gastrointestinal disorders) [50]; and, recent sexual assault may prompt presentation of pelvic pain [42, 51]. Few studies have been found of sexual or physical abuse in childhood and pelvic pain in men, although it has known adverse effects on health [50, 52]. In the BACH study, it was found that men who reported having experienced sexual, physical, or emotional abuse had increased odds (3.3 compared to 1.7) for symptoms suggestive of CPP. The authors suggested that clinicians may wish to screen for abuse in men presenting with symptoms suggestive of CPP. Conversely, clinicians may wish to inquire about pelvic pain in patients who have experienced abuse [53].

3.1.5.2 Underlying causes
The mechanisms that serve as an underlying cause for chronic pelvic pain are:

1. Ongoing acute pain mechanisms [54] (such as those associated with inflammation or infection), which may involve somatic or visceral tissue.
2. Chronic pain mechanisms, which especially involve the CNS [6].
3. Emotional, cognitive, behavioural and sexual responses and mechanisms [55-57].

Symptoms and signs of neuropathic pain appear to be common in CPP patients and assessment of neuropathic pain should be considered in that group of patients. The presence or absence of endometriosis does not seem to change this [58].

Chronic pain mechanisms may include altered resting state neuromotor connectivity, for instance in men with chronic prostatitis/CPPS [59].

Table 3 illustrates some of the differences between the somatic and visceral pain mechanisms. These underlie some of the mechanisms that may produce the classical features of visceral pain; in particular, referred pain and hyperalgnesia.
### Table 3: Comparison between visceral and somatic pain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Visceral pain</th>
<th>Somatic pain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Effective painful stimuli</strong></td>
<td>Stretching and distension, producing poorly localised pain.</td>
<td>Mechanical, thermal, chemical and electrical stimuli, producing well localised pain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Summation</strong></td>
<td>Widespread stimulation produces significantly magnified pain.</td>
<td>Widespread stimulation produces a modest increase in pain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Autonomic involvement</strong></td>
<td>Autonomic features (e.g., nausea and sweating) frequently present.</td>
<td>Autonomic features less frequent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Referred pain</strong></td>
<td>Pain perceived at a site distant to the cause of the pain is common.</td>
<td>Pain is relatively well localised but well recognised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Referred hyperalgesia</strong></td>
<td>Referred cutaneous and muscle hyperalgesia is common, as is involvement of other visceral organs.</td>
<td>Hyperalgesia tends to be localised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Innervation</strong></td>
<td>Low density, unmyelinated C fibres and thinly myelinated A(\delta) fibres.</td>
<td>Dense innervation with a wide range of nerve fibres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Primary afferent physiology</strong></td>
<td>Intensity coding. As stimulation increases, afferent firing increases with an increase in sensation and ultimately pain.</td>
<td>Two fibre coding. Separate fibres for pain and normal sensation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Silent afferents</strong></td>
<td>50-90% of visceral afferents are silent until the time they are switched on.</td>
<td>These fibres are very important in the central sensitisation process. Silent afferents present, but form a lower percentage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Central mechanisms</strong></td>
<td>Play an important part in the hyperalgesia, visceral-visceral, visceromuscular and musculovisceral hyperalgesia.</td>
<td>Sensations not normally perceived become perceived and non-noxious sensations become painful. Responsible for the allodynia and hyperalgesia of chronic somatic pain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abnormalities of function</strong></td>
<td>Central mechanisms associated with visceral pain may be responsible for organ dysfunction.</td>
<td>Somatic pain associated with somatic dysfunction, e.g., muscle spasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Central pathways and representation</strong></td>
<td>As well as classical pathways, there is evidence for a separate dorsal horn pathway and central representation.</td>
<td>Classical pain pathways.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ongoing peripheral pain mechanisms in visceral pain**

In most cases of CPP, ongoing tissue trauma, inflammation or infection is absent [60-63]. However, conditions that produce recurrent trauma, infection or ongoing inflammation may result in CPP in a small proportion of cases. For example, out of a large cohort with acute bacterial prostatitis, 10.5% ended up with a state of CPPS [64]. It is for this reason that the early stages of assessment include looking for these pathologies [11]. Once excluded, ongoing investigations for these causes are rarely helpful and indeed may be detrimental.

When acute pain mechanisms are activated by a noxious event, as well as direct activation of the peripheral nociceptor transducers, sensitisation of those transducers may also occur, therefore magnifying the afferent signaling. Afferents that are not normally active may also become activated by the change, that is, there may be activation of the so-called silent afferents. Although these are mechanisms of acute pain, the increased afferent signaling is often a trigger for the chronic pain mechanisms that maintain the perception of pain in the absence of ongoing peripheral pathology (see below) [65, 66].

There are a number of mechanisms by which the peripheral transducers may exhibit an increase in sensibility.

1. Modification of the peripheral tissue, which may result in the transducers being more exposed to peripheral stimulation.
2. There may be an increase in the chemicals that stimulate the receptors of the transducers [67].
3. There are many modifications in the receptors that result in them being more sensitive.
In general, the effect of 1 and 2 is to lower the threshold and the effect of 3 is to increase responsiveness to external stimuli. Some of the chemicals responsible for the above changes may be released from those cells associated with inflammation, but the peripheral nervous system may also release chemicals in the positive and inhibitory loops [68].

Central sensitisation as a mechanism in visceral pain
It is important to appreciate that nociception is the process of transmitting information to centres involved in perception of a stimulus that has the potential to cause tissue damage. Pain is far more complex and involves activation of the nociceptive pathways but also the emotional response. The brain may affect the modulation of pain pathways at the spinal cord level.

Central sensitisation [69] is responsible for a decrease in threshold and an increase in response duration and magnitude of dorsal horn neurons. It is associated with an expansion of the receptive field. As a result, sensitisation increases signaling to the CNS and amplifies what we perceive from a peripheral stimulus. As an example, for cutaneous stimuli, light touch would not normally produce pain, however, when central sensitisation is present, light touch may be perceived as painful (allodynia). In visceral hyperalgesia (so called because the afferents are primarily small fibres), visceral stimuli that are normally sub-threshold and not usually perceived, may be perceived. For instance, with central sensitisation, stimuli that are normally sub-threshold may result in a sensation of fullness and a need to void or to defecate. Non-noxious stimuli may be interpreted as pain and stimuli that are normally noxious may be magnified (true hyperalgesia) with an increased perception of pain. As a consequence, one can see that many of the symptoms of BPS and IBS may be explained by central sensitisation. A similar explanation exists for the muscle pain in FM.

It is now well accepted that there are both descending pain-inhibitory and descending pain-facilitatory pathways that originate from the brain [70]. Several neurotransmitters and neuromodulators are involved in descending pain-inhibitory pathways. The main contenders are the opioids, 5-hydroxytryptamine and noradrenaline.

The autonomic nervous system also plays a role in sensitisation. There is good evidence that damaged afferent fibres may develop a sensitivity to sympathetic stimulation, both at the site of injury and more centrally, particularly in the dorsal horns. In visceral pain, the efferent output of the CNS may be influenced by central changes (again, those changes may be throughout the neuraxis), and such modification of the efferent message may produce significant end-organ dysfunction. These functional abnormalities can have a significant effect on QoL and must be managed as appropriate.

Psychological mechanisms in visceral pain
Psychological processes of emotions, thought and behaviour involve networks rather than distinct centres. Some of these processes are sophisticated and others fundamental in evolutionary terms, and their interaction with pain processing is complex.

Various psychological processes affect pain neuromodulation at a higher level. Inhibiting or facilitating both the nociceptive signal reaching the consciousness and appraisal and interpretation of that signal, will also modulate the response to the nociceptive message and hence the pain experience. Further, descending pathways represent cognitive, emotional and behavioural states at spinal and peripheral levels. Functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) has indicated that the psychological modulation of visceral pain probably involves multiple pathways. For instance, mood and attentional focus probably act through different areas of the brain when involved in reducing pain [71].

This psychological modulation may act to reduce nociception within a rapid time frame but may also result in long-term vulnerability to chronic visceral pain, through long-term potentiation. This involvement of higher centre learning may be at both a conscious and subconscious level, and is clearly significant in the supratentorial neuroprocessing of nociception and pain. Long-term potentiation [72] may occur at any level within the nervous system, so that pathways for specific or combinations of stimuli may become established, resulting in an individual being vulnerable to perceiving sensations that would not normally be experienced as painful.

An important review [23] of CPP in women identifies the notion that women without physical findings to which pain can be causally attributed differ in psychological characteristics from women with physical findings. It argues for better methodology, and for greater use of idiographic methods. In summary, women with pelvic pain often have other ‘medically unexplained’ symptoms, and current or lifetime anxiety and depression
disorder; they may have a history of physical or sexual abuse in childhood of unclear significance. Studies that invoke ‘medically unexplained’ or ‘psychosomatic’ or ‘somatoform’ disorders are entirely inconsistent with current pain science, ignoring phenomena such as viscerovisceral cross sensitisation in relation to multiple pain sites [73], and interpreting absence of physical findings to indicate psychological origins of the complaint [74, 75]. Some pain problems which affect sexual activity are diagnosed as sexual problems (e.g. ‘dyspareunia’) when pain is the central problem and not contingent on sexual activity alone [76]. Better integration of sexology and mainstream psychology for pelvic pain in both men and women is needed [77], building on a biopsychosocial formulation [78, 79].

The term psychosomatic symptoms can best be understood as multiple somatic symptoms not associated with or indicative of any serious disease process. Medical and surgical history may also be important [80]. There have been a few studies of maintenance of, or recovery from, pelvic pain in relation to psychological factors of importance in pain. Those that described pelvic pain as medically unexplained or psychosomatic, due to the lack of physical findings, have been discarded, because such a distinction is inconsistent with known pain mechanisms [74].

**Understanding the psychological components of pain**

Psychological processes of emotions, thought and behaviour involve networks rather than distinct centres, and their interaction with pain processing is complex, producing inhibition and facilitation of signal processing, appraisal, and response. Models that integrate the psychological factors consistently found to be relevant in the maintenance of persistent pelvic and urogenital pain with current neurobiological understanding of pain are few but the quality is high (see 3.1.5.1).

There is no evidence that women with CPP without physical findings are primarily presenting a psychological problem [23]. Anxiety and post-traumatic stress symptoms are common in some women with CPP [33, 81] and with vulvar pain [82], and may account for substantial variance in health status and treatment use. Negative investigative findings do not necessarily resolve women’s anxieties about the cause of pain [83, 84] and anxiety often focuses on what might be ‘wrong’ [85]. Depression may be related to pain in various ways, as described above. Until measures are available that are adequately standardised in patients with pain, anxiety and distress may be best assessed by questions about concerns about the cause of pain, the hope that diagnosis will validate pain, the struggle with unpredictability, and the implications of pain for everyday life [86, 87]. Reference to the studies of the IMMPACT group [88] is recommended for guidance on outcome measures suitable for pain trials.

Stress can modify the nervous system to produce long-term biological changes. These structural changes may be responsible for significant early life and adverse life events which are associated with chronic pain syndromes [26]. The patient should be asked about adverse life events that may produce these biological responses and affect a patient’s general psychological well-being [25, 26, 89].

3.1.5.3 Clinical paradigms in visceral pain

**Referred pain**

Referred pain is frequently observed and its identification is important for diagnosis and treatment. Referral is usually somatic to somatic, or visceral to somatic. However, there is no reason why pain cannot also be perceived within the area of an organ with the nociceptive signal having arisen from a somatic area. Referred pain may occur as a result of several mechanisms but the main theory is one of convergence-projection. In the convergence-projection theory, as an example, afferent fibres from the viscera and the somatic site of referred pain converge onto the same second order projection neurons. The higher centres receiving messages from these projection neurons are unable to separate the two possible sites from the origin of the nociceptive signal [61, 65, 90].

Hyperalgesia refers to an increased sensitivity to normally painful stimuli. In patients that have passed a renal stone, somatic muscle hyperalgesia is frequently present, even a year after expulsion of the stone. Pain to non-painful stimuli (alldynia) may also be present in certain individuals. Somatic tissue hyperaesthesia is associated with urinary and biliary colic, IBS, endometriosis, dysmenorrhoea, and recurrent bladder infections. Vulvar pain syndromes are examples of cutaneous alldynia that, in certain cases, may be associated with visceral pain syndromes, such as BPS. Referred pain with hyperalgesia is thought to be due to central sensitisation of the converging viscero-somatic neurons. Central sensitisation also stimulates efferent activity that could explain the trophic changes that are often found in the somatic tissues.

**Muscles and pelvic pain**

In the urogenital pain syndromes, muscle tenderness and trigger points may be implicated as a source of pain.
Central mechanisms are of great importance in the pathogenesis of this muscle hyperalgesia. The muscles involved may be a part of the spinal, abdominal or pelvic complex of muscles. It is not unknown for adjacent muscles of the lower limbs and the thorax to become involved. Pain may be localised to the trigger points but it is more often associated with classical referral patterns. As well as trigger points, inflammation of the attachments to the bones (enthesitis) and of the bursa (bursitis) may be found [91]. Certain postures affect the different muscles in different ways, and as a consequence, may exacerbate or reduce the pain. Stress has been implicated as both an initiator of pelvic myalgia and as a maintenance factor. As a result, negative sexual encounters may also have a precipitating effect [23].

**Visceral hyperalgesia**

The increased perception of stimuli in the viscera is known as visceral hyperalgesia, and the underlying mechanisms are thought to be responsible for IBS, BPS and dysmenorrhoea. The mechanisms involved are often acute afferent input (e.g., due to infection) followed by long-term central sensitisation. Viscero-visceral hyperalgesia is thought to be due to two or more organs with converging sensory projections and central sensitisation. For instance, overlap of bladder and uterine afferents or uterine and colon afferents.

### 3.2 Pelvic Pain

#### 3.2.1 Incidence

No adequate data on incidence were found.

#### 3.2.2 Prevalence

##### 3.2.2.1 Prostate Pain syndrome

There is only limited information on the true prevalence of PPS in the population. As a result of significant overlap of symptoms with other conditions (e.g. benign prostatic enlargement and BPS), purely symptom-based case definitions may not reflect the true prevalence of PPS [92, 93]. In the literature, population-based prevalence of prostatitis symptoms ranges from 1 - 14.2% [94, 95]. The risk of prostatitis increases with age (men aged 50-59 years have a 3.1-fold greater risk than those aged 20-39 years).

##### 3.2.2.2 Bladder Pain syndrome

Reports of BPS prevalence have varied greatly, along with the diagnostic criteria and populations studied. Recent reports range from 0.06% to 30% [96-105]. There is a female predominance of about 10:1 [102, 106-108] but possibly no difference in race or ethnicity [92, 109, 110]. The relative proportions of classic and non-lesion disease are unclear. Incidence in studies has ranged from 5 to 50% [111-115]. There is increasing evidence that children under 18 may also be affected, although prevalence figures are low; therefore, BPS cannot be excluded on the basis of age [116].

##### 3.2.2.3 Sexual pain syndrome

In the 1980s an association between CPP and sexual dysfunction was postulated. In two reviews the relationship between PPS and health status, with influence on sexual activity, was addressed [117, 118]. In a Chinese study of men with CPP 1,768 males completed the questionnaires. The overall prevalence of sexual dysfunction was 49%. Erectile dysfunction (ED) is the most investigated sexual dysfunction in PPS patients. The reported prevalence of ED ranges from 15.1% to 48%, varying with evaluation tools and populations [119, 120]. Erectile dysfunction was prevalent in 27.4% of Italian men aged 25-50 [121], 15.2% among Turkish men (significantly higher than in the control group) [122] and 43% among Finnish men with PPS [123]. The prevalence of ED was found to be higher in young men with PPS than in the general population. According to other studies men with pelvic pain had a higher chance of suffering from ED [124, 125]. Recently, a significant correlation between “chronic prostatitis", CPP symptoms (measured by NIH-CPSI) and ED (measured by IIEF) was confirmed [126], while other studies using the same questionnaires were not able to confirm such a correlation [79, 127]. Some studies also report ejaculatory dysfunction, mainly premature ejaculation [119, 120, 128, 129].

In community-based studies in the UK [130], New Zealand [131] and Australia [132], a substantially larger proportion of the women with CPP reported dyspareunia (varying between 29% and 42%) than women without CPP (varying between 11% and 14%). Only a few studies have investigated sexual problems within clinical populations [133]. Another study showed that all of the sexual function domains (desire, arousal, lubrication, orgasm, satisfaction, and pain) were significantly lower in women with CPP than in women without CPP [133]. In line with the results of community based studies, patients with CPP reported more sexual problems such as dyspareunia, problems with desire or arousal and lubrication than women without CPP [133, 135, 136]. One study of patients enrolled in chronic pain treatment programs in England has reported that 73% had pain-related sexual problems [137].
3.2.2.4 *Myofascial pain syndromes*

The relationship between muscular dysfunction (especially over-activity) and pelvic pain has been found in several studies [138]. Rectal pain treated with pelvic floor muscle therapy is only relieved when patients learn to relax their pelvic floor muscles [139]. The vast majority (92.2%) of men visiting a tertiary centre for pelvic pain had dysfunction of the pelvic floor muscles. This finding was true regardless of evidence of inflammation (prostatitis or cystitis) [140]. This relationship has been found in chronic prostatitis [141], BPS [142] and vulvar pain [143]. Dysfunction of the pelvic floor directly affects function of the pelvic viscera and vice versa. Both systems can act as the primary signal to the spinal cord, with a cascade of reactions ascending to the CNS as a result. The muscle itself ends up with a diminished length, leading to restrictions even when it is in a relaxed state.

3.2.3 *Influence on QoL*

Data on the influence on QoL will be included in the next version of the guidelines.

3.2.4 *Costs*

No adequate data on costs were found.

3.2.5 *Risk factors and underlying causes*

The risk factors are unspecific for most of the pain syndromes in the pelvic area. They are described in 3.1.5.1. The underlying causes, including the mechanisms are described here for the different clinical pain syndromes.

3.2.5.1 *Prostate Pain Syndrome*

Pain is the main symptom in PPS. As a common feature of chronic pain syndromes, no single aetiological explanation has been found. One explanation [144] is that the condition probably occurs in susceptible men exposed to one or more initiating factors, which may be single, repetitive or continuous. Several of these potential initiating factors have been proposed, including infectious, genetic, anatomical, neuromuscular, endocrine, immune (including autoimmune), or psychological mechanisms. These factors may then lead to a peripheral self-perpetuating immunological, inflammatory state and/or neurogenic injury, creating acute and then chronic pain. Based on the peripheral and the central nervous system, sensitisation involving neuroplasticity may lead to a centralised neuropathic pain state [144]. This could also explain why tissue damage is not usually found in PPS. There is growing evidence for a neuropathic origin and association with CNS changes of pain in PPS and anxiety appears to be a risk factor for its development [40].

3.2.5.2 *Bladder Pain Syndrome*

An initial unidentified insult to the bladder, leading to urothelial damage, neurogenic inflammation and pain is thought to be the cause of BPS. However, BPS might be a local manifestation of a systemic disorder. No infection has as yet been implicated. Nevertheless, urinary infection is significantly more frequent during childhood and adolescence, in patients with BPS in adulthood [145]. Experimental induction of CPP by O-antigen deficient bacterial strains reinstates the bacterial hypothesis [146]. Pancystitis, with associated perineural inflammatory infiltrates, and mast cell count increase is an essential part of BPS type 3 C [147], but is scant in non-lesion BPS [26, 71, 148, 149]. Cystoscopic and biopsy findings in both lesion and non-lesion BPS are consistent with defects in the urothelial glycosaminoglycan (GAG) layer, which might expose submucosal structures to noxious urine components [150-157] and a consequent cytotoxic effect [158, 159]. Basic and clinical studies indicate that autonomic dysfunction with sympathetic predominance may be implicated in BPS [160, 161].

An association has been reported between BPS and non-bladder syndromes such as FM, chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS), IBS, vulvodynia, depression, panic disorders, migraine, sicca syndrome, temporomandibular joint disorder, allergy, asthma and systemic lupus erythematosus [162-168].

Risk of BPS correlates with a number of non-bladder syndromes in each patient [169]. Recent work showing non-lesion BPS to have significantly more FM, migraine, temporomandibular joint disorder and depression than BPS type 3C patients, emphasises the need for subtyping [170].

3.2.5.3 *Scrotal Pain Syndrome*

Often scrotal pain is not associated with any specific pathology. Pain is perceived in the testes, epididymis, or the vas deferens. The ilioinguinal, genitofemoral and the pudendal nerves innervate the scrotum [171]. Any pathology or intervention at the origin or along the course of the nerves may result in pain perceived in the scrotum [172].
Two special forms of scrotal pain syndrome can be described. The first one is the post-vasectomy scrotal pain syndrome which occurs following vasectomy. The mechanisms are poorly understood and it is for that reason considered a special form of scrotal pain syndrome. Incidence of post-vasectomy pain is 2-20% among all men who have undergone a vasectomy [173]. In men with post-vasectomy pain, 2-6% have a VAS score > 5 [174]. In a large cohort study of 625 men, the likelihood of scrotal pain after six months was 14.7%. The mean pain severity on a VAS score was 3.4/10. In the pain group, 0.9% had quite severe pain, noticeably affecting their daily life. In this cohort, different techniques were used to perform the vasectomy. The risk of post-vasectomy pain was significantly lower in the no-scalpel vasectomy group (11.7% vs. the scalpel group 18.8%) [175].

The second special form of scrotal pain is post-inguinal hernia repair pain. It is seen as a complication of hernia repair, but in trials it is seldom reported or it is put under the term chronic pain (not specified). In studies that have explicitly mentioned scrotal pain, there was a difference in incidence between laparoscopic and open hernia repair. In almost all studies, the frequency of scrotal pain was significantly higher in the laparoscopic than in the open group [172, 176]. In one particular study, there was no difference at one year but after five years, the open group had far fewer patients with scrotal pain [177].

3.2.5.4 Urethral Pain Syndrome
Some mechanisms for the development of urethral pain syndrome have been proposed. The intimate relation of the urethra with the bladder (both covered with urothelium) suggests that urethral pain syndrome may be a form of BPS. Mechanisms thought to be basic for BPS may also apply to the urethra. This means that the specific testing with potassium has been used to support the theory of epithelial leakage [178, 179]. Another possible mechanism is neuropathic hypersensitivity following urinary tract infection [180]. The relationship with gynaecological and obstetric aspects is unclear. In a small group of patients with urethral pain, it has been found that grand multi-parity and delivery without episiotomy were more often seen in patients with urethral syndrome, using univariate analysis [181].

3.2.5.5 Vaginal and vulvar pain syndromes
Pain in the vagina or the female external genital organs is often due to infection or trauma, as a consequence of childbirth or surgery. Pain is usually a precedent to dyspareunia. When the pain persists for more than six months, it can be diagnosed as vulvar pain syndrome previously known as “vulvodynia” or “chronic vaginal pain” with no known cause. It is still a poorly understood condition, and thus difficult to treat.

There are two main subtypes of vulvar pain syndrome: generalised, where the pain occurs in different areas of the vulva at different times; and focal, where the pain is at the entrance of the vagina. In generalised vulvar pain syndrome, the pain may be constant or occur occasionally, but touch or pressure does not initiate it, although it may make the pain worse. In focal vulvar pain syndrome, the pain is described as a burning sensation that comes on only after touch or pressure, such as during intercourse.

The possible causes of vulvar pain syndrome are many and include:
- History of sexual abuse;
- History of chronic antibiotic use;
- Hypersensitivity to yeast infections, allergies to chemicals or other substances;
- Abnormal inflammatory response (genetic and non-genetic) to infection and trauma;
- Nerve or muscle injury or irritation;
- Hormonal changes.

3.2.5.6 Associated conditions in pelvic pain syndromes
Nerve damage
Spinal pathology and any pathology along the course of the nerve involved may result in neuropathic pain in the distribution of these nerves. Neoplastic disease, infection and trauma, surgical incisions and post-operative scarring may result in nerve injury [182].

Pudendal neuralgia is the most often mentioned form of nerve damage in the literature. Anatomical variations may pre-dispose the patient to developing pudendal neuralgia over time or with repeated low-grade trauma (such as sitting for prolonged periods of time or cycling) [183, 184].

The pudendal nerve may be damaged at the level of:
1. The piriformis muscle. For example, as part of a piriformis syndrome: in some cases, the nerve may pass through the muscle and hence be trapped; or in other cases, muscle hypertrophy or spasm is implicated.
2. The sacrospinal/sacrotuberous ligaments, possibly accounting for 42% of cases.
3. Within Alcock's canal (medial to the obturator internus muscle, within the fascia of the muscle), possibly accounting for 26% of cases.
4. Multiple levels in 17% of cases.

The site of injury determines the site of perceived pain and the nature of associated symptoms (e.g., the more distal the damage, the less likely the anal region will be involved).

The clinical presentation depends on different factors. There is a wide age range, as one would expect with a condition that has so many potential causes. There is a suggestion that, the younger the patient, the better the prognosis. Essentially, the sooner the diagnosis is made, as with any compression nerve injury, the better the prognosis, and older patients may have a more protracted problem [185-187]. Six out of ten cases are observed in women. Some special situations can be listed:

- In orthopaedic hip surgery, pressure from the positioning of the patient, where the perineum is placed hard against the brace, can result in pudendal nerve damage [188, 189]. The surgery itself may also directly damage the nerve. Pelvic surgery such as sacrospinous colpopexy is clearly associated with pudendal nerve damage in some cases [190, 191]. In many types of surgery, including colorectal, urological and gynaecological, pudendal nerve injury may be implicated.
- Fractures of the sacrum or pelvis may result in pudendal nerve/root damage and pain. Falls and trauma to the gluteal region may also produce pudendal nerve damage if associated with significant tissue injury or prolonged pressure.
- Tumours in the pre-sacral space must be considered. Tumours invading the pudendal nerve may occur and there may also be damage from surgery for pelvic cancer [192].
- The pudendal neuralgia of birth trauma is thought to resolve in most cases over a period of months. However, rarely, it appears to continue as painful neuropathy. Multiple pregnancies and births may predispose to stretch neuropathy in later life. This is more difficult to be certain about [193].
- Child birth and repeated abdominal straining associated with chronic constipation [194] are thought to predispose elderly women to post-menopausal pelvic floor descent and stretching of the pudendal nerve with associated pain. Changes in the hormone status may also be a factor. In the Urogenital Pain Management Centre, the commonest associations with pudendal neuralgia appear to be: history of pelvic surgery; prolonged sitting (especially young men working with computer technology); and post-menopausal older women.

**Sexual dysfunction**

Chronic pelvic pain is a clinical condition that results from the complex interactions of physiological and psychological factors and has a direct impact on the social, marital and professional lives of men and women.

**Men**

Chronic pain and its treatment can impair our ability to express sexuality. In a study in England, 73% of patients with chronic pain had some degree of sexual problems as result of the pain [137]. These problems can occur because of several factors. Psychological factors like decrease in self-esteem, depression and anxiety can contribute to loss of libido. Physiological factors like fatigue, nausea and pain itself can cause sexual dysfunction. Pain medications (opioids, and the selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors (SSRIs) can also decrease libido [195] and delay ejaculation. The number of studies on the effects of CPP on sexual function is limited. Sexual dysfunction is often ignored because of a lack of standardised measurements. At present, the most commonly used tool is the International Index of Erectile Function (IIEF) questionnaire [127].

The presence of pelvic pain may increase the risk for ED independent of age [196-198]. On the other hand, cross-sectional data suggest no improvement of lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS) by an increased frequency of ejaculation [118]. Although mental distress and impaired QoL related to illness could contribute to sexual dysfunction observed in patients with PPS, the presence of erectile and ejaculatory disorders is more frequently related to symptoms suggestive of a more severe inflammatory condition [129]. These arguments are important for the understanding of the close relationship between CPP symptoms, disturbed sexuality, impact on QoL, and psychological implications including depression [117-120, 199]. Sexual dysfunction heightens anger, frustration and depression, all of which place a strain on the patients’ relationships. The female partners of men with sexual dysfunction and depression often present with similar symptoms including pain upon intercourse and depressive symptoms. Men with CPP have reported a high frequency of sexual relationship dissolution and psychological symptoms, such as depression and suicidal thinking [117, 197]. PPS patients reported greater sexual and relationship problems [117, 197, 200]. On the other hand, it was found that men with PPS did not report significantly decreased sexual satisfaction compared to controls [201]. There is consensus that therapeutic strategies reducing symptoms of pelvic pain are of relevance in relation to changes...
in sexual function. Also intimacy and having sex can yield positive experiences that will reduce the pain. The CNS plays an important role in this mechanism.

**Women**

Chronic pelvic pain leads to substantial impairment in QoL and several sexual dysfunctions [131, 202-204]. It seems reasonable to expect that pain, extreme fatigue, depressive mood and pain drugs will affect women’s sexuality. Women with CPP reported significantly more pain, depression, and anxiety symptoms and were physically more impaired than women in the control group. In comparison with controls, women with CPP reported significantly more sexual avoidance behaviour, non-sensuality, and complaints of “vaginismus” [205]. In one study of CPP patients’ feelings and beliefs about their pain or illness, 40 out of 64 participants cited sexual dysfunction as one of the main problems the illness had caused, making it the most frequent complaint [206]. Patients with CPP reported more sexual problems than women with any other type of chronic pain problem [207]. The quality of intimate relationships is closely connected with sexual function [208]. Satisfaction with sexual relationships appears to be associated with higher marital functioning [209]. In addition sexual dissatisfaction is related to sexual dysfunction. When one partner suffers from chronic pain, the ability of both partners to cope with the pain and the extent to which partners are supportive of the chronic pain sufferer have been found to be a predictor of sexual functioning [209].

Approximately two-thirds of patients in another study reported reduced frequency in their sexual relations as a result of CPP [210]. One study demonstrated that CPP patients reported worse sexual function with regard to desire, arousal, lubrication, orgasm, satisfaction, and more frequent and severe pain with vaginal penetration than women without CPP [211]. In an interview with 50 chronic pain sufferers and their spouses, 78% of the pain sufferers and 84% of partners described deterioration, including cessation of their sex life [196]. In a study in patients with back pain, half reported decreased frequency of sex since the onset of chronic pain [137]. The Female Sexual Function Index (FSFI) has been developed as a brief, multi-dimensional self-report instrument for assessing the key dimensions of sexual function in women, which includes desire, subjective arousal, lubrication, orgasm, satisfaction, and pain. Using the FSFI, women with CPP reported worse sexual function in all subscales and total score than women without CPP. The largest differences between women with CPP and without CPP were seen for the domains of pain and arousal. The total score and the subscales of the FSFI had high levels of internal consistency and test-retest reliability when assessed in a sample of women with CPP. The FSFI also showed good ability to discriminate between women with and without CPP [211].

**Myofascial pain**

Chronic pelvic pain can simply be a form of myalgia, due to the muscles being used in an abnormal way, in this case, the pelvic floor muscles. Studies in the field of chronic prostatitis support the idea that patients with CPP have more muscle spasm and increased muscle tone and report pain when the pelvic floor muscles are palpated [212]. Muscle relaxation can diminish spasm and pain [213]. Repeated or chronic muscular overload can activate trigger points in the muscle. A report from the Chronic Prostatitis Cohort Study showed that 51% of patients with prostatitis and only 7% of controls had any muscle tenderness. Tenderness in the pelvic floor muscles was only found in the CPP group [141].

In 1999, the first ideas about the neurological aspects of the pelvic floor muscles in relation to CPP were published. The probability of CNS breakdown in the regulation of pelvic floor function was suggested as a mechanism for development of CPP. Of the patients presenting with pelvic pain, 88% had poor to absent pelvic floor function [140]. Basic studies on the role of neurogenic inflammation have also elucidated some important phenomena. Irritation of the prostate, bladder and pelvic floor muscles results in expression of C-fos-positive cells in the CNS. There appears to be convergence of afferent information onto central pathways. Once the central changes have become established, they become independent of the peripheral input that initiated them [214].

Repeated or chronic muscular overload can activate trigger points in the muscle. Trigger points are defined as hyperirritable spots within a taut band. Other criteria for trigger points are: recognition of the pain as ‘familiar’, and pain on stretching the muscle. Apart from pain, trigger points prevent full lengthening of the muscle, thereby restricting the range of movement. Pain as a result of these trigger points is aggravated by specific movements and alleviated by certain positions. Positions and movements in which the shortened muscle is stretched are painful. Patients know which activities and postures influence pain. Trigger points can be located within the pelvic floor muscles and in adjacent muscles such as the abdominal, glutal and ilioiopsoas muscles. Pain is aggravated by pressure on the trigger point (e.g., pain related to sexual intercourse). Pain also worsens after sustained or repeated contractions (e.g., pain related to voiding or defecation).
3.3 Abdominal aspects of pelvic pain
3.3.1 Incidence
Epidemiological data on IBS and CPP are scarce. CPP has been shown to be one of the most common functional disorders in women of reproductive age. The monthly incidence rate of CPP published by Zondervan was 1.58/1000 [215].

3.3.2 Prevalence
Using a vague definition of continuous or episodic pain situated below the umbilicus over six months, one study reported that CPP was one of the most common diagnosis in primary care units in Great Britain [215]. The monthly prevalence rate of CPP in this study was 21.5/1,000, with an annual prevalence of 38.3/1,000. They increase significantly with older age and vary significantly between regions in the UK. The overall prevalence of anorectal pain in a sample of USA householders was 6.6% and was more common in women [216]. IBS is associated with common gynaecologic problems (endometriosis, dyspareunia, and dysmenorrhoea) [217]. 50% of women who presented with abdominal pain to the gynaecologic clinic or were scheduled for laparoscopy due to CPP had symptoms of IBS [218]. In a survey from Olmsted county 20% of women reported CPP and 40% of those met criteria for IBS [16]. This overlap of CPP and IBS was associated with an increased incidence of somatisation. Not gynaecological surgical procedures but only psychosocial variables predict pain development without a different incidence of IBS in a prospective and controlled study [219]. Clinical features of pelvic floor dysfunction, gynaecological and psychological features are related to disordered anorectal function in IBS patients but do not predict physiological anorectal testing.

3.3.3 Influence on QOL
There is little known on health related quality of life (HRQoL) in patients with CPP and a need to develop validated disease specific HRQoL instruments for CPP in addition to sound measurement properties. More data are available in patients with IBS treated at referral centres who have comparable HRQoL scores as patients with other common disorders such as diabetes, end-stage renal disease, and inflammatory bowel disease [220]. Subgroups of IBS with predominance of diarrhoea or constipation show no difference in HRQoL. Multi-variate analysis shows that HRQoL in patients with IBS is affected by sex and psychological conditions.

3.3.4 Costs
Costs combine direct health-care costs and societal costs (productivity loss) such as under-performance and absenteeism from work. The annual costs to society can be calculated by using the average population earnings. In Germany direct care costs are estimated at € 791 and societal costs €995 per patient with IBS per year which may be comparable to patients with CPP [221].

3.3.5 Risk factors & underlying causes
Risk factors are covered in Section 3.1.5.

3.4 Summary of evidence and recommendations: CPP and mechanisms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPP mechanisms are well defined and involve mechanisms of neuroplasticity and neuropathic pain.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The mechanisms of neuroplasticity and neuropathic pain result in increased perception of afferent stimuli which may produce abnormal sensations as well as pain.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End-organ function can also be altered by the mechanisms of neuroplasticity so that symptoms of function can also occur.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The diagnosis of a CPPS as a pain syndrome is essential as it encourages a holistic approach to management with multi-specialty and multi-disciplinary care.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All of those involved in the management of Chronic Pelvic Pain (CPP) should have knowledge of peripheral and central pain mechanisms.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The early assessment of patients with CPP should involve:</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Investigations aimed at specific disease-associated pelvic pain;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• assessment of functional, emotional, behavioural, sexual and other quality of life issues, such as effect on work and socialisation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPPS patients should be managed in a multi-specialty and multi-disciplinary environment with consideration of all their symptoms.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Diagnostic Evaluation

4.1 General Evaluation

4.1.1 History

History is very important for the evaluation of patients with CPP. Pain syndromes are symptomatic diagnoses, which are derived from a history of pain perceived in the region of the pelvis, and absence of other pathology, for a minimum of three out of the past six months. This implies that specific disease-associated pelvic pain caused by bacterial infection, cancer, drug-induced pathology (e.g., ketamine use) [222], primary anatomical or functional disease of the pelvic organs, and neurogenic disease must be ruled out.

4.1.1.1 Anxiety, depression, and overall function

Distress is best understood in the context of pain and of the meaning of pain to the individual and is best assessed ideographically rather than normatively. Almost all diagnostic measures and standardised instruments of anxiety and depression are designed for people without significant physical problems, so are hard to interpret in CPP [223-225].

Anxiety about pain often refers to fears of missed pathology (particularly cancer) as the cause of pain [29], or to uncertainties about treatment and prognosis. These can drive healthcare seeking behaviour [20]. The question: “What do you believe or fear is the cause of your pain?” has been suggested [226]. Anxiety may also concern urinary urgency and frequency as a possible problem in social settings.

Depression or depressed mood are common in chronic pain [227] e.g., often related to losses consequent to chronic pain (work, leisure activities, social relationships, etc.). Because of the lack of suitable assessment instruments, it is better to ask a simple question such as “How does the pain affect you emotionally?” If the answer gives cause for concern about the patient’s emotional state, further assessment should be undertaken by an appropriately qualified colleague.

Most measures of restricted function are designed primarily for musculoskeletal pain and may emphasise mobility problems rather than the difficulties of the individual with pelvic or urogenital pain. A promising specific measure, UPOINT, was introduced and in a later version the sexological aspects were added [228]. However, it may under-assess relevant psychological variables [38]. Generic QoL measures are helpful. If such an instrument is not already used in the clinic, the Brief Pain Inventory [229] provides a broad and economical assessment of interference of pain with various aspects of life in multiple languages. (For further suggested instruments see [230]). In a study, more pain, pain-contingent rest, and urinary symptoms were associated with poorer function [57].

4.1.1.2 Urological aspects

Pain may be associated with urological symptoms. A detailed history of lower urinary tract functions should be taken. Dysfunctions of the lower urinary tract may exacerbate symptoms, as pain may interfere with the function of the lower urinary tract. Micturition in all its aspects should be addressed. Special attention should be paid to the influence of micturition on the experience of pain.

Prostate pain syndrome

Prostate pain syndrome is diagnosed from a history of pain perceived in the region of the prostate (convincingly reproduced by prostate palpation), and absence of other lower urinary tract pathology, for a minimum of three out of the past six months. As mentioned above, specific disease-associated pelvic pain must be ruled out.

A thorough history is an important first step in the evaluation of PPS. It should include type of pain and localisation. Pain is often reported in other pelvic areas outside the prostate such as perineum, rectum, penis, testicles and abdomen [49]. In addition, associated lower urinary tract symptoms, sexual function, psychological, social and economic factors should be addressed. Determination of the severity of disease, its progression and treatment response can be assessed only by means of a validated symptom-scoring instrument (see section 4.2.3). These subjective outcome measures are recommended for the basic evaluation and therapeutic monitoring of patients in urological practice.

Bladder pain syndrome

Bladder pain syndrome should be diagnosed on the basis of pain, pressure or discomfort associated with the urinary bladder, accompanied by at least one other symptom, such as daytime and/or night-time increased urinary frequency, the exclusion of confusable diseases as the cause of symptoms, and if indicated, cystoscopy with hydrodistension and biopsy (Table 4) [11].
The nature of pain is key to disease definition:
1. pain, pressure or discomfort perceived to be related to the bladder, increasing with increasing bladder content;
2. located suprapubically, sometimes radiating to the groins, vagina, rectum or sacrum;
3. relieved by voiding but soon returns [231-235];
4. aggravated by food or drink [235].
Bladder pain syndrome type 3 can lead to a small capacity fibrotic bladder with or without upper urinary tract outflow obstruction.

4.1.1.3 Gynaecological aspects
A detailed medical history outlining the nature, frequency and site of pain; its relationship to precipitating factors and the menstrual cycle, may help define the aetiology. A menstrual and sexual history, including a history of sexually transmitted diseases, vaginal discharge, as well as previous sexual trauma is mandatory as well as up to date cervical cancer screening.

4.1.1.4 Gastrointestinal aspects
The predominant symptoms that patients are interviewed about are discomfort or pain in relation to their bowel habits, daily activities, and eating. A precise history of dysfunctional voiding or defecation should be asked, ideally applying symptom questionnaires for urinary and anorectal symptoms (e.g., Rome III criteria for anorectal pain). Excessive straining at most defecations, anal digitations in dyssynergic defecation, and a sensation of anal blockage may be found in patients with chronic anal pain. History of anxiety and depression with impaired QoL is often encountered in anorectal functional disorders and should be evaluated.

Diagnostic criteria for chronic anal pain syndrome (chronic proctalgia) according to the Rome III criteria are as follows and must include all of the following: chronic or recurrent rectal pain or aching, episodes last at least 20 min and exclusion of other causes of rectal pain such as ischaemia, inflammatory bowel disease, cryptitis, intramuscular abscess and fissure, haemorrhoids, prostatitis, and coccygodynia. These criteria should be fulfilled for the past three months with symptom onset at least six months before diagnosis [236].

The chronic anal pain syndrome includes the above diagnostic criteria and exhibits exquisite tenderness during posterior traction on the puborectalis muscle (previously called “Levator Ani Syndrome”). Pathophysiology of pain is thought to be due to overactivity of the pelvic floor muscles.

Intermittent chronic anal pain syndrome (proctalgia fugax) consists of all the following diagnostic criteria, which should be fulfilled for three months: recurrent episodes of pain localised to the anus or lower rectum, episodes last from several seconds to minutes and there is no anorectal pain between episodes. Stressful life events or anxiety may precede the onset of the intermittent chronic anal pain syndrome. The attacks may last from a few seconds to as long as 30 min. The pain may be cramping, aching or stabbing and may become unbearable. However, most patients do not report it to their physicians and pain attacks occur less than five times a year in 51% of patients.

4.1.1.5 Peripheral nerve aspects
A proportion of patients will be able to relate the onset of pain to an acute event such as surgery, sepsis or trauma, and occasionally, cycling for a prolonged period. Chronic injury is more frequent, such as associated with sitting for prolonged periods over time. Many will be idiopathic.

The pain is classically perceived in the perineum from anus to clitoris/penis. However, less-specific pain distribution may occur, and this may be due to anatomical variation, involvement of branches of the nerve rather than the main nerve, CNS central sensitisation, and consequently, the involvement of other organs and systems in a regional pain syndrome. Other nerves in the vicinity may also be involved, for example, inferior cluneal nerve and perineal branches of the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve. The musculoskeletal system may become involved, confusing the pain picture as aches and pain developing in the muscles due to immobility and disability, possibly magnified by the CNS changes.

Burning is the most predominant adjective used to describe the pain. Crushing and electric may also be used, indicating the two components - a constant pain often associated with acute sharp episodes. Many patients may have the feeling of a swelling or foreign body in the rectum or perineum, often described as a golf or tennis ball. The term pain has different meanings to patients and some would rather use the term discomfort or numbness.
Aggravating factors include any cause of pressure being applied, either directly to the nerve or indirectly to other tissue, resulting in pudendal traction. Allodynia is pain on light touch due to involvement of the CNS, and may make sexual contact and the wearing of clothes difficult. These patients often remain standing, and as a consequence, develop a wide range of other aches and pains. Soft seats are often less well-tolerated, whereas sitting on a toilet seat is said to be much better tolerated. If unilateral, sitting on one buttock is common. The pain may be exacerbated by bowel or bladder evacuation.

Pudendal nerve damage may be associated with a range of sensory phenomena. In the distribution of the nerve itself, as well as unprovoked pain; the patient may have paraesthesia (pins and needles); dysaesthesia (unpleasant sensory perceptions usually but not necessarily secondary to provocation, such as the sensation of running cold water); allodynia (pain on light touch); or hyperalgesia (increased pain perception following a painful stimulus, including hot and cold stimuli). Similar sensory abnormalities may be found outside of the area innervated by the damaged nerve, particularly for visceral and muscle hyperalgesia.

The cutaneous sensory dysfunction may be associated with superficial dyspareunia, but also irritation and pain associated with clothes brushing the skin. There may also be a lack of sensation and pain may occur in the presence of numbness. Visceral hypersensitivity may result in an urge to defecate or urinate. This is usually associated with voiding frequency, with small amounts of urine being passed. Pain on visceral filling may occur. Anal pain and loss of motor control may result in poor bowel activity, with constipation and/or incontinence. Ejaculation and orgasm may also be painful or reduced.

Many of those suffering from pudendal neuralgia complain of fatigue and generalised muscle cramps, weakness and pain. Being unable to sit is a major disability, and over time, patients struggle to stand and they often become bedbound. The immobility produces generalised muscle wasting, and minimal activity hurts. As a consequence of the widespread pain and disability, patients often have emotional problems, and in particular, depression. Patients with CPP are also often anxious and have the tendency to catastrophise. Depression, catastrophising and disability are all poor prognostic markers. Cutaneous colour may change due to changes in innervation but also because of neurogenic oedema. The patient may describe the area as swollen due to this oedema, but also due to the lack of afferent perception.

4.1.6 Myofascial aspects
When taking a history from a patient with pelvic pain, it is important to address the function of all the organs in the pelvic area. The following items certainly should be addressed: lower urinary tract function, anorectal function, sexual function, gynaecological items, presence of pain and psycho-social aspects. One cannot state that there is a pelvic floor dysfunction based only on the history. But there is a suspicion of pelvic floor muscle dysfunction when two or more pelvic organs show dysfunction, for instance a combination of micturition and defecation problems.

4.1.2 Physical Evaluation
The clinical examination often serves to confirm or refute the initial impressions gained from a good history. The examination should be aimed at specific questions where the outcome of the examination may change management. Prior to an examination, best practice requires the medical practitioner to explain what will happen and what the aims of the examination are to the patient. Consent to the examination should occur during that discussion and should cover an explanation around the aim to maintain modesty as appropriate and, if necessary, why there is a need for rectal and/or vaginal examination. Finally, the risk of exacerbating the pain should form a part of that request. A record of the discussion should be noted. The possibility of the presence of a chaperone should be discussed with the patient. As well as a local examination, a general musculoskeletal and neurological examination should be considered an integral part of the assessment and undertaken if appropriate. Following the examination, it is good practice to ask the patient if they had any concerns relating to the conduct of the examination and that discussion should be noted.

There is no specific diagnostic test for CPPS, therefore, procedures are on the one hand directed towards identification and exclusion of specific diseases associated with pelvic pain, and on the other hand may be used for phenotypic description. Abdominal and pelvic examination to exclude gross pelvic pathology, as well as to demonstrate the site of tenderness is essential. Abnormalities in muscle function should also be sought. Examination of the external genitalia is a part of the evaluation. In patients with scrotal pain, gentle palpation of each component of the scrotum is performed to search for masses and painful spots. The penis and urethra may be palpated in a similar way. Many authors recommend that one should assess cutaneous allodynia along the dermatomes of the abdomen (T11-L1) and the perineum (S3), and the degree of tenderness should be recorded. The bulbocavernous reflex in the male may also provide useful information concerning the
intactness of the pudendal nerves. Clinical pelvic examination should be a single digit examination if possible. The usual bi-manual examination can generate severe pain so the examiner must proceed with caution. A rectal examination is done to look for prostate abnormalities in male patients including pain on palpation and to examine the rectum and the pelvic floor muscles regarding muscle tenderness and trigger points.

At clinical examination, perianal dermatitis may be found as a sign of faecal incontinence or diarrhoea. Fissures may be easily overlooked and should be searched for thoroughly in patients with anal pain. Rectal digital examination findings may show high or low anal sphincter resting pressure, a tender puborectalis muscle in patients with the Levator Ani Syndrome, and occasionally increased perineal descent. The tenderness during posterior traction on the puborectalis muscle differentiates between Levator Ani Syndrome and unspecified.

Functional Anorectal Pain is used in most studies as the main inclusion criterion. Dyssynergic (paradoxical) contraction of the pelvic muscles when instructed to strain during defecation is a frequent finding in patients with pelvic pain. Attention should be paid to anal or rectal prolapse at straining, and ideally during combined rectal and vaginal examination to diagnose pelvic organ prolapse.

A full clinical examination of the spinal, muscular, nervous and urogenital systems is necessary to aid in diagnosis of pudendal neuralgia, especially to detect signs indicating another pathology. Often, there is little to find in pudendal neuralgia and frequently findings are non-specific. The main pathognomonic features are the signs of nerve injury in the appropriate neurological distribution, for example, allodynia or numbness. Tenderness in response to pressure over the pudendal nerve may aid the clinical diagnosis. This may be elicited by per rectal or per vaginal examination and palpation in the region of the ischial spine and/or Alcock’s canal. Muscle tenderness and the presence of trigger points in the muscles may confuse the picture. Trigger points may be present in a range of muscles, both within the pelvis (levator ani and obturator internus muscles) or externally (e.g., the piriformis, adductors, rectus abdominus or paraspinal muscles).

4.2 Supplemental evaluation

If history is suggestive of lower urinary tract, gynaecological, anorectal or other known aetiology disease, diagnostic workup should follow respective guidelines.

4.2.1 Assessing pain and related symptoms

Determination of the severity of disease, its progression and treatment response can be assessed only by means of a reliable symptom-scoring instrument. These subjective outcome measures are recommended for the basic evaluation and therapeutic monitoring of patients. Pain should always be assessed (see below) to identify progression and treatment response. As well as doing this in the clinic, the patient can keep a daily record (pain diary). This may need to include other relevant variables such as voiding, sexual activity, activity levels, or analgesic use.

Increased attention to patient reported outcomes gives prominence to patients’ views on their disease and pain diaries, in patients’ own environments, improve data quality.

Quality of life should also be measured because it can be very poor compared to other chronic diseases [237, 238]. In a study [57] more pain, pain-contingent rest, and urinary symptoms were associated with greater disability (also measured by self-report), and pain was predicted by depression and by catastrophising (helplessness subscale).

Where the primary outcome of treatment is pain relief, it is useful before starting treatment to agree a clinically useful level of relief [239]. The most reliable methods are:

- a five point verbal scale: none, mild, moderate, severe, very severe pain;
- a visual analogue scale (VAS) score from one to ten;
- an eleven point numerical scale.

<p>| | | | | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no pain</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>extreme pain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pain assessment ratings are not independent of cognitive and emotional variables [57]. Target outcomes of pain severity, distress and disability co-vary only partly, and improvement in one does not necessarily imply improvement in the others. When the primary outcome is pain its meaning should be anchored in discussion of clinically important difference [239].

**Prostate pain syndrome**
Reliable, valid indices of symptoms and QoL are the NIH-CPSI [240] and the International Prostate Symptom Score (I-PSS) [241].

**Bladder pain syndrome**
Symptom scores may help to assess the patient and act as outcome measures. The O’Leary-Sant Symptom Index, also known as the Interstitial Cystitis Symptom Index (ICSI) was validated in a large study [242].

**Gastrointestinal questionnaire**
The functional anorectal pain disorders (anorectal pelvic pain) are defined and characterised by duration, frequency, and quality of pain. More complex questionnaires are used in the setting of IBS. The validated IBS-Symptom Severity Scale (IBS-SSS) includes the broadest measurement of pain-related aspects [243, 244]. However, as different instruments measure different endpoints of chronic abdominal pain in IBS, a comparison of published studies is often impossible.

**Sexual function assessment**
In males most frequent effects on sexual function are erectile dysfunction and premature ejaculation. These can be evaluated by proper questionnaires namely IIEF (international index of erectile function) and PEDT (premature ejaculation diagnostic tool). In comparison with controls, women with CPP reported significantly more sexual avoidance behaviour, non-sensuality, and complaints of “vaginismus” [205]. The female sexual function index (FSFI) has been developed as a brief, multi-dimensional self-report instrument for assessing the key dimensions of sexual function in women, which includes desire, subjective arousal, lubrication, orgasm, satisfaction, and pain. The corresponding evidence in men is lacking.

### 4.2.2 Focused myofascial evaluation
Pelvic floor muscle testing can be done by the medical doctor but a consultation of the pelvic floor by a physiotherapist is a good alternative. A vaginal or rectal examination is performed to assess the function of the pelvic floor muscles, according to the International Continence Society (ICS) report. This assessment has been tested and shows satisfactory face validity and intra-observer reliability. It can therefore be considered suitable for use in clinical practice [245]. Rectal examination is a good way to test the pelvic floor function in men [246]. There is a growing number of reports on the use of ultrasound (US) in establishing the function of the pelvic floor muscles. The exact place in the diagnostic setting needs to be addressed in the future [247]. In a cohort study of 72 men with CPP, the relationship between the locations of the trigger point and the referred pain was examined. Ninety percent of the patients showed tenderness in the puborectalis muscle and 55% in the abdominal wall muscles. Of the patients in whom trigger points were found in the puborectalis, 93% reported pain in the penis and 57% in the suprapubic region. Patients with trigger points in the abdominal muscles reported pain in the penis (74%), perineum (65%) and rectum (46%) [248].

### 4.2.3 Neurological

**Injections**
An injection of local anaesthetic and steroid at the sight of nerve injury may be diagnostic. Differential block of the pudendal nerve helps to provide information in relation to the site where the nerve may be trapped [249-259]. Infiltration at the ischial spine requires the use of a nerve stimulator/locator. Both motor (anal contraction) and sensory endpoints may be noted. The anatomical endpoint may be localised by fluoroscopy, computed tomography (CT) guidance, or the use of US. Ultrasound avoids any form of radiation, whereas CT guidance involves a significant amount of radiation. Currently, fluoroscopy is probably the imaging technique most frequently used because it is readily available to most anaesthetists that perform the block. Currently, infiltration of the pudendal nerve within Alcock’s canal is primarily undertaken with the use of CT. As well as injecting around the pudendal nerve, specific blocks of other nerves arising from the pelvis may be performed.

**Electrophysiological studies**
These may reveal signs of perineal denervation, increased pudendal nerve latency, or impaired bulbocavernous reflex [260-264]. However, for an abnormality to be detected, significant nerve damage is probably necessary. Pain may be associated with limited nerve damage, therefore, these investigations are often normal.
4.2.4 Imaging
Ancillary studies should be performed according to appropriate guidelines for exclusion of diseases with known aetiology presenting with symptoms identical to those of CPP. Once the latter diagnosis is established studies can be useful to assess functional abnormalities and phenotype conditions such as BPS, and chronic anal pain syndrome.

Ultrasound
Has limited value but may reassure patients. However, over-investigating may be detrimental.

MRI
Magnetic resonance neurography has been increasingly used in specialised centres for the diagnosis of the location (proximal versus peripheral) and degree (total versus partial) of nerve injury in the peripheral nervous system, earlier and with higher specificity than conduction studies.

MR defecating proctogram
Magnetic resonance imaging in conjunction with MR defecography has become the most valuable imaging technique to assess anorectal function dynamically. MRI studies outline simultaneously the anatomy of the pelvic floor and visualise different structural and functional pathologies, by applying dynamic sequences after filling of the rectum with a viscous contrast medium (e.g., US gel). The following pathologies can be visualised: pelvic floor descent, an abnormal anorectal angle while squeezing and straining, rectal intussusception, rectocele, enterocele and cystocele. However, limitations of MR defecography are the left lateral position and the limited space for the patient, which may reduce the ability to strain and thereby reduce the sensitivity of the method, underestimating the size of entero- and rectoceles as well as the amount of intussusception.

Functional neuroimaging (fMRI)
Functional neuroimaging (fMRI, functional magnetic resonance imaging) is currently being re-evaluated as a research tool and some groups have raised issues around over interpretation [265]. With regards to pain, fMRI findings may represent a pain matrix or may represent non-specific threat processing [266]. Currently this panel cannot recommend fMRI as a clinical tool.

4.2.5 Laboratory Tests

Microbiology tests
Prostate pain syndrome
Laboratory diagnosis has been classically based on the four-glass test for bacterial localisation [267]. Besides sterile pre-massage urine (voided bladder urine-2), PPS shows < 10,000 cfu/mL of uropathogenic bacteria in expressed prostatic secretions and insignificant numbers of leukocytes or bacterial growth in ejaculates. However, this test is too complex for use by practising urologists. Diagnostic efficiency may be enhanced cost-effectively by a simple screening procedure, that is, the two-glass test or pre-post-massage test (PPMT) [268, 269]. Overall, these tests help only a little in the diagnosis of PPS, because 8% of patients with suggested PPS have been found to have positive prostatic localisation cultures, similar to the percentage of asymptomatic men [270].

Bladder pain syndrome
Urine dipstick and urine culture (including culture for TB if sterile pyuria) are recommended in all patients suspected of having BPS. Urine cytology is also recommended in risk groups.

Gynaecological aspects of chronic pelvic pain
Vaginal and endocervical swabs to exclude infection are recommended.

4.2.6 Invasive tests

Anorectal pain
Anorectal manometry with sensory testing (pressure volume measurement: barostat) may be useful to diagnose dyssynergic defecation and hypersensitivity of the rectum which are typical for patients with CPP and IBS. Flexible rectosigmoidoscopy or colonoscopy should be considered in patients with anorectal pain to rule out coincidental colorectal pathology.
Laparoscopy for females
Laparoscopy is perhaps the most useful invasive investigation to exclude gynaecological pathology [271, 272] and to assist in the differential diagnosis of CPP in women [273]. Often, it is combined with cystoscopy [274, 275] and/or proctoscopy to help identify the site of multi-compartment pain.

Psychological considerations around laparoscopy
Three very different studies of laparoscopy suggest that it can improve pain through resolving concerns about serious disease [276], although showing women the photograph of their pelvic contents did not improve on explanation alone [277]; and integrating somatic and psychological assessment from the start rather than dealing with psychological concerns only after excluding organic causes of pelvic pain [278].

Cystoscopy and bladder biopsy
Despite controversy on the diagnostic and follow-up value of cystoscopy in BPS [279-283], this panel believes that objective findings are important for diagnosis, prognosis and ruling out other treatable conditions (a standardised scheme of diagnostic criteria will also contribute to uniformity and comparability of different studies [284]. Endoscopically, BPS type 3 displays reddened mucosal areas often associated with small vessels radiating towards a central scar, sometimes covered by a small clot or fibrin deposit - the Hunner lesion [234]. The scar ruptures with increasing bladder distension, producing a characteristic waterfall type of bleeding. There is a strong association between BPS type 3 and reduced bladder capacity under anaesthesia [285]. Non-lesion disease displays a normal bladder mucosa at initial cystoscopy. The development of glomerulations after hydrodistension is considered to be a positive diagnostic sign although they can be observed without BPS [286]. Biopsies are helpful in establishing or supporting the clinical diagnosis of both classic and non-lesion types of the disease [151, 178, 284, 287, 288]. Important differential diagnoses to exclude, by histological examination, are carcinoma in situ and tuberculous cystitis.

Table 4: ESSIC classification of BPS types according to results of cystoscopy with hydrodistension and biopsies [11]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cystoscopy with hydrodistension</th>
<th>Glomerulations(^a)</th>
<th>Hunner's lesion(^b)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Biopsy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not done</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>1X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>XA</td>
<td>1A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inconclusive</td>
<td>XB</td>
<td>1B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive(^c)</td>
<td>XC</td>
<td>1C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Cystoscopy: glomerulations grade 2-3

\(^b\)Lesion per Fall's definition with/without glomerulations

\(^c\)Histology showing inflammatory infiltrates and/or detrusor mastocytosis and/or granulation tissue and/or intrafascicular fibrosis.
4.3 Diagnostic algorithm

Figure 1: Diagnosing chronic pelvic pain

Chronic Pelvic Pain

History

Physical examination

Symptom of a well known disease

yes

Specific disease associated with pelvic pain

no

Pelvic pain syndrome

Organ specific symptoms present

yes

Urology

Gynaecology

Gastro-enterology

Neurology

Sexology

Pelvic floor

Phenotype and proceed according to Chronic Pelvic Pain Guideline.
Figure 2: Phenotyping of pelvic pain - UPOINT classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phenotyping</th>
<th>Assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Urology</td>
<td>Urinary flow, micturition diary, cystoscopy, ultrasound, uroflowmetry,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psychology</td>
<td>Anxiety about pain, depression and loss of function, history of negative sexual experiences</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Organ specific | Ask for gynaecological, gastro-intestinal, ano-rectal, sexological complaints  
Gynaecological examination, rectal examination |
| Infection   | Semen culture and urine culture, vaginal swab, stool culture |
| Neurological | Ask for neurological complaints (sensory loss, dysaesthesia).  
Neurological testing during physical examination: sensory problems, sacral reflexes and muscular function. |
| Tender muscle | Palpation of the pelvic floor muscles, the abdominal muscles and the gluteal muscles |
| Sexological | Erectile function, ejaculatory function, post-orgasmic pain |

4.4 Other painful conditions without a urological cause

Dysmenorrhoea
Menstrual pain or ‘dysmenorrhoea’ may be primary or secondary. Primary dysmenorrhoea classically begins at the onset of ovulatory menstrual cycles and tends to decrease following childbirth [273]. Secondary dysmenorrhoea suggests the development of a pathological process, such as endometriosis [272], adenomyosis [289] or pelvic infection, which need to be excluded.

Infection
In pre-menopausal women, a history of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) must be excluded. A patient’s sexual history should be taken along with swabs to exclude chlamydia and gonorrhoea infection. Bacterial and viral genital tract pathogens should also be excluded [290], as they can cause severe pelvic/vaginal/vulvar pain [291] and are associated with ulcerating lesions and inflammation, which may lead to urinary retention [292]. If there is any doubt about the diagnosis, laparoscopy may be helpful, as one of the differential diagnoses is endometriosis.

Endometriosis and adenomyosis
The incidence of endometriosis is rising in the developed world. It has widespread impact on women’s lives [293], with pain more important than physical findings in determining QoL [294]. The precise aetiology is unknown, but an association with infertility is recognised [295]. A diagnosis is usually made when a history of secondary dysmenorrhoea and/or dyspareunia exists. On examination, there is often tenderness in the lateral vaginal fornices, reduced uterine mobility, tenderness in the recto-vaginal septum, and on occasion, adnexal masses. Laparoscopy is the most useful diagnostic tool [296-298]. Endometriotic lesions affecting the urinary bladder or causing ureteric obstructions can occur, as well as lesions affecting the bowel, which may lead to rectal bleeding in association with menstruation. Adenomyosis is associated with augmented pain during menses. It is diagnosed by an US scan of the uterus, which often shows cystic dilatation of the myometrium [299].

Gynaecological malignancy
The spread of gynaecological malignancy of the cervix, uterine body or ovary will cause pelvic pain depending on the site of spread.

Injuries related to childbirth
Trauma occurring at the time of childbirth may lead to CPP related to the site of injury. Female sexual dysfunction is perhaps the commonest presenting problem [300]. There is often a transient problem with oestrogen deficiency in the post-partum period and during breastfeeding, which can compound this situation. Denervation of the pelvic floor with re-innervation may also lead to dysfunction and pain.
Pain associated with pelvic organ prolapse and prolapse surgery
Pelvic organ prolapse is often asymptomatic, unless it is so marked that it causes back strain, vaginal pain and skin excoriation [301]. Prolapse is often a disease of older women, and it is often associated with post-menopausal oestrogen deficiency, which may lead to pain associated with intercourse. Prolapse surgery may entail the use of non-absorbable mesh (usually in the form of “mesh kits”) [302-304]. Although they may have a role in supporting the vagina, they are also associated with several complications including bladder, bowel and vaginal trauma [303]. In a subset of these patients, chronic pain may ensue, because mesh insertion may cause nerve and muscle irritation [300]. Patients should be fully evaluated clinically and may need specialised imaging, using contrast mediums if necessary, to make a diagnosis.

Haemorrhoids
Chronic pelvic pain is rare in haemorrhoidal disease because endoscopic and surgical treatment is mostly effective in acute disease. The most frequent aetiology of pain without significant bleeding is thrombosed external haemorrhoids or an anal fissure. Haemorrhoidal pain on defecation associated with bleeding is usually due to prolapse or ulceration of internal haemorrhoids. Anaemia from haemorrhoidal bleeding is rare but may arise in patients on anti-coagulation therapy, or those with clotting disorders.

Anal fissure
Anal fissures are tears in the distal anal canal and induce pain during and after defecation. The pain can last for several minutes to hours. Persistence of symptoms beyond six weeks or visible transversal anal sphincter fibres define chronicity. Fissures located off the midline are often associated with specific diseases such as Crohn’s disease or anal cancer. Internal anal sphincter spasms and ischaemia are associated with chronic fissures.

Proctitis
Abdominal and pelvic pain in patients with inflammatory bowel disease and proctitis are often difficult to interpret. Faecal calprotectin may help to differentiate between inflammation and functional pain, to spare steroids.

Irritable bowel syndrome
Although IBS can be associated with pelvic pain, the authors of these guidelines consider a full discussion of this topic beyond the scope of these guidelines. A number of high quality clinical guidelines address this topic [305, 306].

4.5 Summary of evidence and recommendations: diagnostic evaluation

4.5.1 Diagnostic evaluation of PPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prostate pain syndrome is associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostate pain syndrome has no known single aetiology.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain in PPS involves mechanisms of neuroplasticity and neuropathic pain.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostate pain syndrome has a high impact on QoL.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depression and catastrophic thinking are associated with more pain and poorer adjustment.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The prevalence of PPS-like symptoms is high in population-based studies (&gt; 2%).</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reliable instruments assessing symptom severity as well as phenotypic differences exist.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adapt diagnostic procedures to the patient. Specific diseases with similar symptoms must be excluded.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use a validated symptom and quality of life scoring instrument, such as the National Institutes of Health Chronic Prostatitis Symptom Index, for initial assessment and follow-up.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess prostate pain syndrome associated negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences, as well as symptoms of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunctions.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.5.2 Diagnostic evaluation of BPS

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BPS has no known single aetiology.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain in BPS does not correlate with bladder cystoscopic or histologic findings.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPS Type 3 C can only be confirmed by cystoscopy and histology.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesion/non-lesion disease ratios of BPS are highly variable between studies.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The prevalence of BPS-like symptoms is high in population-based studies.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPS occurs at a level higher than chance with other pain syndromes.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPS has an adverse impact on QoL.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reliable instruments assessing symptom severity as well as phenotypical differences exist.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Patients with bladder pain should undergo general anaesthetic rigid cystoscopy in accordance with European Society for the Study of Interstitial Cystitis guidelines.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After primary exclusion of specific diseases, patients with symptoms according to the above definition should be diagnosed with bladder pain syndrome (BPS) by subtype and phenotype.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess BPS associated non-bladder diseases systematically.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess BPS associated negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use a validated symptom and quality of life scoring instrument for initial assessment and follow-up.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.5.3 Diagnostic evaluation of scrotal pain syndrome

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The nerves in the spermatic cord play an important role in scrotal pain.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrasound of the scrotal contents does not aid in diagnosis or treatment of scrotal pain.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-vasectomy pain is seen in a substantial number of men undergoing vasectomy.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scrotal pain is more often noticed after laparoscopic than after open inguinal hernia repair.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.5.4 Diagnostic evaluation of urethral pain syndrome

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Urethral pain syndrome may be a part of BPS.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethral pain involves mechanisms of neuroplasticity and neuropathic pain.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.5.5 Diagnostic evaluation of gynaecological aspects chronic pelvic pain

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinical history and examination are mandatory to making a diagnosis.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopy is well-tolerated and does not appear to have negative psychological effects.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All women with pelvic pain should have a full gynaecological history and evaluation, including laparoscopy to rule out a treatable cause (e.g. endometriosis).</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.5.6 Diagnostic evaluation of anorectal pain syndrome

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tenderness on traction is the main criterion of the chronic anal pain syndrome.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Functional testing is recommended in patients with anorectal pain.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4.5.7 Diagnostic evaluation of pudendal neuralgia

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multiple sensory and functional disorders within the region of the pelvis/urogenital system may occur as a result of injury to one or more of many nerves. The anatomy is complex.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no single aetiology for the nerve damage and the symptoms and signs may be few or multiple.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investigations are often normal.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The peripheral nerve pain syndromes are frequently associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rule out confusable diseases.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If a peripheral nerve pain syndrome is suspected, early referral should occur to an expert in the field, working within a multi-disciplinary team environment.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imaging and neurophysiology help diagnosis but image and nerve locator guided local anaesthetic injection is preferable.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.5.8 Diagnostic evaluation of sexological aspects in CPP

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chronic pain can lead to decline in sexual activity and satisfaction and may reduce relationship satisfaction.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients who reported having sexual, physical or emotional abuse show a higher rate of reporting symptoms of PPS.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sexual dysfunctions are prevalent in patients with PPS.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In men with PPS the most prevalent sexual complaints are erectile dysfunction and ejaculatory dysfunction.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In females with CPPS all sexual function domains are lower. The most reported dysfunctions are sexual avoidance, dyspareunia and “vaginismus”.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vulvar pain syndrome is associated with BPS.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women with BPS suffer significantly more from fear of pain, dyspareunia and decreased desire.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic floor muscle function is involved in the excitement and orgasm phases of sexual response.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic pain can cause disturbances in each of the sexual response cycle phases.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Patients presenting with symptoms suggestive for chronic pelvic pain syndrome, should be screened for abuse, without suggesting a causal relation with the pain.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The bio-psychosocial model should be applied in the evaluation of the effect of chronic pelvic pain syndrome on the sexual function of the patient.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The bio-psychosocial model should be incorporated in research into the role of chronic pelvic pain in sexual dysfunction.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.5.9 Diagnostic evaluation of psychological aspects of CPP

**Summary of evidence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is no evidence that distress generates complaints of pelvic pain, or that multiple symptoms suggest unreality of pain.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current or recent sexual abuse are possible contributory factors in pelvic pain.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psychological distress is common in pelvic pain in women, but should be interpreted in the context of pain.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ask patients what they think is the cause of their pain to allow the opportunity to inform and re-assure as appropriate.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.5.10 Diagnostic evaluation of pelvic floor function

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td>Over-activity of the pelvic floor muscles is related to chronic pelvic pain, prostate, bladder and vulvar pain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td>Over-activity of the pelvic floor muscles is an input to the central nervous system causing central sensitisation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td>There is no accepted standard for diagnosing myofascial trigger points.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>There is a relation between the location of trigger point and the region where the pain is perceived.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GR</th>
<th>Recommendations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Use ICS classification on pelvic floor muscle function and dysfunction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>In patients with chronic pelvic pain syndrome it is recommended to actively look for the presence of myofascial trigger points.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. MANAGEMENT

The philosophy for the management of chronic pelvic pain is based on a bio-psychosocial model. This is a holistic approach with the patients’ active involvement. Single interventions rarely work in isolation and need to be considered within a broader personalised management strategy.

The management strategy may well have elements of self-management. Pharmacological and non-pharmacological interventions should be considered with a clear understanding of the potential outcomes and end points. These may well include: psychology, physiotherapy, drugs and more invasive interventions.

Treatment philosophy

Providing information that is personalised and responsive to the patient's problems, conveying belief and concern, is a powerful way to allay anxiety [307]. Additional written information or direction to reliable sources of information is useful; practitioners tend to rely on locally produced material or pharmaceutical products of variable quality while endorsing the need for independent materials for patients [308].

5.1 Conservative management

5.1.1 Pain education

It is always valuable to include education about the causes of pain, including eliciting from patients their anxieties about undiscovered pathology and addressing them. Information improves adherence to treatment and underpins self-management, as shown in many other painful and non-painful disorders but not specifically in pelvic and abdominal pain.

5.1.2 Physical therapy

The physiotherapist is part of the pain management team, together with the pain doctor and the psychologist. The therapeutic options for physiotherapists may not be the same in every country. Physiotherapists can either specifically treat the pathology of the pelvic floor muscles, or more generally treat myofascial pain if it is part of the pelvic pain syndrome. In most studies that have been done looking at the effect of physiotherapy in pelvic pain, the treatment of the pelvic floor is only part of the pain management. In a review about physiotherapy in women with pelvic pain, it was concluded that recommendations for physiotherapy should be given with caution [309]. They found six RCTs of which three showed level 1b evidence with low-risk of bias. One of these three found that Mensendieck somatocognitive therapy showed a pain reduction after one year follow-up of 64%. This approach consists of myofascial relaxation and tension, improving posture and movement in combination with cognitive behaviour therapy (CBT) [310].

Pelvic floor muscle pain

Treating pelvic floor over-activity and myofascial trigger points should be considered in the management of CPP. Treatment should be done by specialised physiotherapists who are trained not only in the musculoskeletal aspects of pain, but also in the psychological mechanisms and the role of the CNS in chronic pain.
For patients with CPP and dysfunction of the pelvic floor muscles, it is very helpful to learn how to relax the muscles when the pain starts. By doing this, the circle of pain-spasm-pain can be interrupted. In the case of shortened muscles, relaxation alone is not enough. Stretching of the muscle is mandatory to regain length and function. Studies on physical therapy for pelvic floor pain syndrome have been sparse. A single blinded RCT with myofascial physical therapy and general massage was carried out in patients with prostate or bladder pain. The global response rate to treatment with massage was significantly better in the prostate than in the bladder pain group (57% vs. 21%). In the prostate pain group, there was no difference between the two treatment arms. In the bladder pain group, myofascial treatment did significantly better than the massage. Massage only improved complaints in the prostate pain group. The fact that the prostate pain group consisted of only men is mentioned as a possible confounding factor [311].

Myofascial trigger point release
Treatment of myofascial trigger points can be done by manual therapy, dry needling and wet needling. The evidence for all the different treatments is weak, with most studies showing no significant difference between these techniques, though most studies were small and heterogeneous with regards to the patients and methods. There is no evidence that manual techniques are more effective than no treatment [312]. Most studies of dry needling have compared with wet needling. Different systematic reviews have come to the conclusion that, although there is an effect of needling on pain, it is neither supported nor refuted that this effect is better of dry needling than placebo [313]. Other reviews have concluded that the same is true for the difference between dry and wet needling [314, 315].

Physiotherapy in BPS
General muscular exercise may be beneficial in some BPS patients [316]. Transvaginal manual therapy of the pelvic floor musculature (Thieale massage) in BPS patients with high-tone dysfunction of the pelvic floor significantly improved several assessment scales [317]. The role of specific levator ani trigger point injections in women with CPP has been studied [318]. Each trigger point was identified by intravaginal palpation and injected with bupivacaine, lidocaine and triamcinolone. Seventy-two percent of women improved with the first trigger point injection, with 33% being completely pain-free. Efficacy and safety of pelvic floor myofascial physical therapy has been compared with global therapeutic massage in women with BPS; global response assessment (GRA) rate was 59% and 26%, respectively. Pain, urgency and frequency ratings, and O’Leary-Sant IC Symptom and Problem Index decreased in both groups during follow-up, and did not differ significantly between the groups. This suggests that myofascial physical therapy is beneficial in women with BPS [319].

Anal Pain Syndrome
In a recently published RCT, it is demonstrated that biofeedback treatment was superior to electrogalvanic stimulation and massage for treating chronic anal pain syndrome [139]. One hundred and fifty-seven patients who had at least weekly rectal pain were investigated, but only patients with tenderness on traction of the pelvic floor showed a significant treatment benefit. In patients with tenderness of the puborectalis muscle (Rome II: Highly likely Levator Ani Syndrome), 87% reported adequate relief after one month of biofeedback vs. 45% for electrogalvanic stimulation, and 22% for massage. These results were maintained at twelve months with adequate relief after nine sessions of biofeedback in 58% of the whole group (Rome II: Highly likely and Possible Levator Ani Syndrome), after galvanic stimulation in 27% and massage in 21% of patients. As previously described in dyssynergic defecation, the ability to expel a 50 mL water filled balloon and to relax pelvic floor muscles after biofeedback treatment were predictive of a favourable therapeutic outcome [139]. The pathophysiology of the chronic anal pain syndrome is therefore similar to that of dyssynergic defecation, and this favours the role of the pelvic floor muscles in the pathophysiology of both conditions. Other treatment modalities have been less successful.

Treatment of sexual dysfunctions and CPP
Couples often benefit from early referral for relationship and sexual counselling during their treatment course [320]. Specific behavioural strategies for women who have urogenital complaints and female sexual dysfunction often include exploring alternatives to sexual intercourse (manual or oral pleasuring), different coital positions (female superior or side lying), and pacing, such as limiting thrusting to less than that causes pain. Planning for the time of intercourse is important, and scheduling a clinic visit after intercourse might be useful to identify specific sites and causes of post-coital flares. The corresponding evidence in men is lacking.

Other behavioural changes involve pre- and post-coital voiding, application of ice packs to the genital or suprapubic area [320, 321], and use of vaginal dilators before penile penetration. An alternative is to use natural dilators such as different fingers or sex toys. Hypoallergenic non-irritating lubricants can be used to reduce vulvar, urethral, and vaginal friction, and women with signs of vulvovaginal atrophy may benefit from introital
application of minimally absorbed locally applied oestrogen cream [322]. In patients with an overactive pelvic floor, referral for physical therapy, myofascial release, and internal pelvic floor muscle massage may offer relief [323].

Other physical therapy interventions

Electromagnetic therapy. A small, sham-controlled, double-blind study of four weeks showed a significant, sustained effect over a one-year period for CPPS [324].

Microwave thermotherapy. In uncontrolled studies significant symptomatic improvement has been reported from heat therapy, for example, transrectal and transurethral thermotherapy [325, 326].

Extracorporeal shockwave therapy. A small sham-controlled double-blind study of four times weekly perineal extracorporeal shockwave therapy (n=30) in men with chronic pelvic pain syndrome showed significant improvement in pain, QoL, and voiding compared to the control group (n=30) over twelve weeks [327]. Two other randomised sham-controlled studies, have been published more recently, one comparing ten treatment sessions over two weeks (n=40 vs. n=40) [328], another with four times weekly treatments (n=20 vs. n=20) [329]. Both concluded there was a significant effect in terms of total NIH-CPSI score and pain at twelve weeks. Unfortunately, no long term effects at 24 weeks could be shown in a published follow-up study of the second [330].

Acupuncture. In a small three-arm randomised trial of CPPS in men, electro-acupuncture was superior to sham treatment and advice and exercise alone [331]. Another more recent randomised study comparing acupuncture (n=50) versus sham-controlled (n=50) once weekly treatment for six weeks showed significant long lasting improvement at 24 weeks in terms of response rate and overall symptom scores [332]. Two systematic reviews and meta-analyses have been published in 2016 analysing seven randomised-controlled studies on a total of 471 participants comparing acupuncture to sham control or oral medical treatment [333, 334]. Both came to the conclusion that acupuncture was effective and safe, significantly reducing total NIH-CPSI scores compared to sham or medical treatment, and should be considered as a treatment option. However, the durability of this effect is not known.

Posterior tibial nerve stimulation. One sham-controlled medium-sized study (n=89) demonstrated significant improvement in total NIH-CPSI score and visual analogue scale for pain in men with category IIIB chronic prostatitis/CPP [335].

Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation. Despite the popularity of transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) and the number of trials undertaken, a systematic review has been unable to provide good evidence for or against its use in the management of chronic pain [336]. Furthermore, rigorous trials should be undertaken to provide some clarity for a commonly used intervention.

5.1.4 Dietary treatment

Scientific data are limited and dietary restriction alone does not produce significant symptomatic relief, however, consider the involvement of a dietician.
5.2 Pharmacological management

5.2.1 Drugs for chronic pelvic pain syndrome

In this section the evidence available for specific CPPSs is presented. Where there is no evidence the reader is directed to the section on analgesics below (5.2.3) where more generic use is discussed. There is a large discrepancy in the treatment effects reported in case series and controlled trials that results from a large placebo effect or publication bias. As a result of the multifactorial origin of for example PPS, one reason for treatment failure in some large randomised placebo-controlled trials may be the heterogeneity of the patient population. One strategy for improving treatment effects may be stratification of patient phenotypes. A prospective series of phenotypically directed treatment for PPS has shown significant improvement of symptoms and QoL [263, 350]. Monotherapeutic strategies for the treatment of PPS may fail [263], therefore, most patients require multimodal treatment aimed at the main symptoms, and taking comorbidity into account. In the past ten years, results from RCTs have led to advances in standard and novel treatment options.

5.2.1.1 Mechanisms of action

Mechanisms of action are discussed as appropriate under the drugs headings below.

5.2.1.2 Comparisons of agents used in pelvic pain syndromes

Prostate Pain Syndrome (PPS)

Anti-inflammatory drugs

For non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents (NSAIDs), a trial with celecoxib reported that the pain subscore, QoL subscore, and total NIH-CPSI score were in favour of the treatment arm vs. placebo, but effects were limited to the duration of therapy [264]. In a meta-analysis, two studies of NSAIDs [264, 270] and one with prednisolone [260] were pooled. Anti-inflammatory drugs were 80% more likely to have a favourable response than placebo. An updated network meta-analysis with more restrictive inclusion criteria regarding documented outcome measures but a wider spectrum of drugs (including glycosaminoglycans, phytotherapy and tanezumab) a significant effect on total NIH-CPSI scores and treatment response rates could be demonstrated. Overall, a moderate treatment effect has been shown for anti-inflammatory drugs, but larger studies are needed for confirmation, and long-term side-effects have to be taken into account.

α-blockers

Positive results from RCTs of α-blockers, i.e. terazosin [351, 352], alfuzosin [353], doxazosin [354, 355], tamsulosin [356, 357], and silodosin [358] have led to widespread use of α-antagonists in the treatment of PPS in recent years. Whereas one systematic review and classic meta-analysis has not reported a relevant effect of α-blockers due to study heterogeneity [359], another network meta-analysis of α-blockers [360] has shown significant improvement in total symptoms, pain, voiding, and QoL scores. In addition, they had a higher rate of favourable response compared to placebo [relative risk (RR) 1.4, 95% confidence interval (CI) 1.1-1.8, P=0.013]. However, treatment responsiveness, i.e. clinically perceptive or significant improvement, may be lower than expected from the change in mean symptom scores. Overall, α-blockers seem to have moderate but significant beneficial effects. This probably is not the case for long-standing PPS patients [361]. Future studies should show if longer duration of therapy or some sort of phenotypically directed (e.g. patients with PPS and relevant voiding dysfunction) treatment strategies will improve treatment outcomes.

Antibiotic therapy

Empirical antibiotic therapy is widely used because some patients have improved with antimicrobial therapy. Patients responding to antibiotics should be maintained on medication for four to six weeks or even longer. Unfortunately, culture, leukocyte and antibody status of prostate-specific specimens do not predict antibiotic response in patients with PPS [362], and prostate biopsy culture findings do not differ from those of healthy controls [363]. The only randomised placebo-controlled trials of sufficient quality have been done for oral antibiotic treatment with ciprofloxacin (six weeks) [144], levofloxacin (six weeks) [364], and tetracycline hydrochloride (twelve weeks) [365]. The studies have been analysed in published meta-analyses [360, 366]. Although direct meta-analysis has not shown significant differences in outcome measures, network meta-analysis has suggested significant effects in decreasing total symptom, pain, voiding, and QoL scores compared with placebo. Combination therapy of antibiotics with α-blockers has shown even better outcomes in network meta-analysis. Despite significant improvement in symptom scores, antibiotic therapy did not lead to statistically significant higher response rates [366]. In addition, the sample sizes of the studies were relatively small and treatment effects only modest and most of the time below clinical significance. It may be speculated that patients profiting from treatment have had some unrecognised uropathogens. If antibiotics are used, other therapeutic options should be offered after one unsuccessful course of a quinolone or tetracycline antibiotic over six weeks.
5-α-reductase inhibitors
Although a few small pilot studies with 5-α-reductase inhibitors supported the view that finasteride may improve voiding and pain, the first RCT published in a peer-reviewed journal did not support this, but the study did lack power [367]. In another RCT, finasteride provided better amelioration of symptoms compared to saw palmetto over a one-year period, but lacked a placebo-control arm [368]. A six-month placebo-controlled study showed a non-significant tendency towards better outcome in favour of finasteride, possibly because of a lack of statistical power [369]. The NIH-CPSI scores decreased significantly in a subgroup of men enrolled in a prostate cancer risk reduction study treated with dutasteride compared to placebo [370]. Patients (n=427, age 50 to 75, elevated prostate-specific antigen) were included if they had significant “prostatitis-like” symptoms at baseline. Based on the evidence, 5-α-reductase inhibitors cannot be recommended for use in PPS in general, but symptom scores may be reduced in a restricted group of older men with an elevated PSA [370].

Phytotherapy
Phytotherapy applies scientific research to the practice of herbal medicine. An adequately powered placebo-controlled RCT of a pollen extract (Cernilton), showed clinically significant symptom improvement over a twelve-week period in inflammatory PPS patients (NIH Cat. IIIA) [371]. The effect was mainly based on a significant effect on pain. Another pollen extract (DEPROX 500) has been shown to significantly improve total symptoms, pain and QoL compared to ibuprofen [372]. Quercetin, a polyphenolic bioflavonoid with documented antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties, improved NIH-CPSI scores significantly in a small RCT [373]. In contrast, treatment with saw palmetto, most commonly used for benign prostatic hyperplasia, did not improve symptoms over a one-year period [368]. In a systematic review and meta-analysis, patients treated with phytotherapy were found to have significantly lower pain scores than those treated with placebo [360]. In addition, overall response rate in network meta-analysis was in favour of phytotherapy (RR: 1.6; 95% CI: 1.1-1.6).

Pregabalin is an anti-epileptic drug that has been approved for use in neuropathic pain. In an adequately powered randomised placebo-controlled study, which was the only report included in a recently published Cochrane review [374], a six-week course of pregabalin (n=218) compared to placebo (n=106) did not result in a significant reduction of NIH-CPSI total score [375].

Pentosane polysulphate is a semi-synthetic drug manufactured from beech-wood hemicellulose. One study using oral high-dose (3x 300 mg/day) demonstrated a significant improvement in clinical global assessment and QoL over placebo in men with PPS, suggesting a possible common aetiology [376].

Muscle relaxants (diazepam, baclofen) are claimed to be helpful in sphincter dysfunction or pelvic floor/perineal muscle spasm, but there have been few prospective clinical trials to support these claims. In one RCT, a triple combination of a muscle relaxant (thiocolchicoside), an anti-inflammatory drug (ibuprofen) and an α-blocker (doxazosin) was effective in treatment-naïve patients, but not superior to an α-blocker alone [355].

Botulinum toxin type A (BTX-A) showed some effect in the global response assessment and the NIH-CPSI pain subdomain score in a small randomised placebo-controlled study of perineal skeletal muscle injection (100 U). However, patient numbers were low (thirteen in the (BTX-A) group and sixteen in the placebo group), and follow-up was too short to draw definitive conclusions. Side-effects are unclear [377]. In another randomised-controlled study of intraprostatic injection of BTX-A (100 or 200 U depending on prostate volume) versus placebo (n=30 in both groups) a significant improvement of total NIH-CPSI and subdomain scores could be shown at six months [378]. However, no real placebo effect could be demonstrated, which suggests unblinding. No definitive conclusion can be drawn.

Zafirlukast, a leukotriene antagonist, and prednisone in two low-power placebo-controlled studies failed to show a benefit [260, 379]. More recently, a placebo-controlled phase IIa study of tanezumab, a humanised monoclonal antibody against the pain mediating neurotrophin, nerve growth factor, failed to demonstrate significant effect [380].

Tanezumab is a humanised monoclonal antibody that specifically inhibits nerve growth factor (NGF), and should only be used in clinical trials.

Allopurinol
There is insufficient evidence for the use of allopurinol in PPS [381, 382].
Bladder Pain Syndrome

Treatments of significant value for BPS

Anti-histamines
Mast cells may play a role in BPS. Histamine is one of the substances released by mast cells. Histamine receptor antagonists have been used to block the H1 [383] and H2 [384] receptor subtypes, with variable results. A prospective placebo-controlled RCT of hydroxyzine or oral pentosane polysulphate did not show a significant effect [385].

Amitriptyline
Amitriptyline is a tricyclic antidepressant. Several reports have indicated improvement of BPS symptoms after oral amitriptyline [107, 386, 387]. Amitriptyline has been shown to be beneficial when compared with placebo plus behavioural modification [388]. Drowsiness is a limiting factor with amitriptyline, nortriptyline is sometimes considered instead.

Pentosane polysulphate
Is a semi-synthetic drug manufactured from beech-wood hemicellulose. Subjective improvement of pain, urgency, frequency, but not nocturia, has been reported [389, 390]. Pentosane polysulphate had a more favourable effect in BPS type 3C than in non-lesion disease [391]. Response was not dose dependent but related more to treatment duration. At 32 weeks, about half the patients responded. Combination therapy showed a response rate of 40% compared to 13% with placebo. For patients with an initial minor response to pentosane polysulphate, additional subcutaneous heparin was helpful [392, 393].

Immunosuppressants
Azathioprine treatment has resulted in disappearance of pain and urinary frequency [394]. Initial evaluation of cyclosporin A (CyA) [395] and methotrexate [396] showed good analgesic effect but limited efficacy for urgency and frequency. Corticosteroids are not recommended in the management of patients with BPS because of a lack of evidence.

Intravesical Treatments
Intravesical drugs are administered due to poor oral bio-availability establishing high drug concentrations within the bladder, with few systemic side-effects. Disadvantages include the need for intermittent catheterisation which can be painful in BPS patients, cost and risk of infection [397].

- Local anaesthetics
  There are sporadic reports of successful treatment of BPS with intravesical lidocaine [398, 399]. Alkalisation of lidocaine improves its pharmacokinetics [400]. Combination of heparin, lidocaine and sodium bicarbonate gave immediate symptom relief in 94% of patients and sustained relief after two weeks in 80% [401]. Intravesical instillation of alkalised lidocaine or placebo for five consecutive days resulted in significantly sustained symptom relief for up to one month [402].

- Hyaluronic acid and chondroitin sulphate
  are described to repair defects in the glycosaminoglycan (GAG) layer. Despite the fact that intravesical GAG replenishment has been in use for about twenty years for BPS/IC, most of the studies are uncontrolled and with a small number of patients. Based on the studies available there are differences by virtue of substance classes, whether they are natural GAG layer components, dosage formulations, or concentrations. More important, there are differences in proven efficacy. RCTs are only published for chondroitin sulphate, a combination containing chondroitin sulfate and hyaluronic acid and pentosane polysulphate. One large prospective non-randomised study indicated hyaluronic acid significantly ameliorated sexual functions domains in IC/BPS patients [403]. It is well documented that intravesical instillations are a valuable and beneficial therapy, but distinct patient groups need to be confirmed by definite diagnostic findings [404].

- Intravesical heparin
  Bladder pain syndrome patients were treated with heparin for three months, and over half had control of symptoms, with continued improvement after one year of therapy [405]. Kuo reported another trial of intravesical heparin for three months in women with frequency-urgency syndrome and a positive potassium test. Symptomatic improvement was reported in 80% of BPS patients [406]. Intravesical heparin plus dorsal tibial nerve stimulation in patients with refractory BPS was studied and it was shown that voiding frequency, pain score and maximum cystometric capacity were significantly better after two and twelve months [407].
Hyperbaric oxygen (HBO) has a moderate effect on a small subgroup of BPS patients. Disadvantages include high cost, limited availability of treatment sites, and time-consuming treatment [126].

Treatments of limited value for BPS

Cimetidine
There is limited data to suggest that cimetidine improves symptoms of BPS in the short-term [408]. Compared with placebo for three months, cimetidine significantly improved symptom scores, pain and nocturia, although the bladder mucosa showed no histological changes in either group [409].

Prostaglandins
Misoprostol is a prostaglandin that regulates various immunological cascades. After three months of treatment with misoprostol, 14/25 patients had significantly improved, with twelve showing a sustained response after a further six months [410]. The incidence of adverse drug effects was 64%.

L-Arginine
Oral treatment with the nitric oxide (NO) synthase substrate L-arginine decreases BPS-related symptoms [134, 411, 412]. Nitric oxide is elevated in patients with BPS [413]. However, others have not demonstrated symptomatic relief or changes in NO production after treatment [414, 415].

Oxybutynin
is an anti-cholinergic drug used in overactive detrusor dysfunction. Intravesical oxybutynin combined with bladder training improves functional bladder capacity, volume at first sensation, and cystometric bladder capacity [416]. However, an effect on pain has not been reported.

Duloxetine
(a serotonin-noradrenaline reuptake inhibitor antidepressant with a licence for the management of neuropathic pain) did not significantly improve symptoms of BPS [417]. Administration was safe, but tolerability was poor due to nausea. Based on these preliminary data, duloxetine cannot be recommended for treatment of BPS.

Clorpactin
is a derivative of hypochloric acid previously used to treat BPS [418-422]. Due to high complication rates, clorpactin instillations can no longer be recommended [418, 419, 421, 423, 424].

Dimethyl sulphoxide (DMSO) and Bacillus Calmette Guérin (BCG) have been used in the past. There is insufficient evidence to recommend the use of either.

Scrotal Pain Syndrome
Treatment of chronic scrotal pain is based on the principles of treating chronic pain syndromes, as described throughout these guidelines [425].

Chronic gynaecological pain
It is difficult to compare the wide variation of drugs from an efficacy and safety perspective as they have such diverse uses/indications.

In those gynaecological patients where CPP is unrelated to any of the well-defined conditions, it is often difficult to determine a therapeutic pathway other than a multi-disciplinary chronic abdomino-pelvic pain management plan. A Cochrane review suggests there may be some evidence (moderate) supporting the use of progestogens. Though efficacious, physicians need to be conversant with progestogenic side effects (e.g. weight gain, bloatedness - the most common adverse effects) which can stop some patients from accepting such medication. Gonadotrophins, such as goserelin, are also thought to help such pain. However, when compared with progestogens, their efficacy remains limited, as is the case when comparing gabapentin with amitriptyline. The quality of evidence is generally low and is drawn from single studies [339].

Current hormonal contraceptives (e.g. the combined oral contraceptive pill and the progesterone-only pill), and intrauterine contraceptive devices (Mirena IUS™) have multiple biologic effects. Their mechanism of action maybe via a primary or secondary contraceptive action. For combined oral contraceptives and progestin-only methods, the main mechanisms are ovulation inhibition and changes in the cervical mucus that inhibit sperm penetration. The hormonal methods, particularly the low-dose progestin-only products and emergency contraceptive pills, have effects on the endometrium that, theoretically, could affect implantation. Their effectiveness as contraceptives range from 92-99.9% [261]. The precise mechanism of intrauterine contraceptive devices is unclear. Current evidence indicates they exert their primary effect before fertilisation, reducing the opportunity of sperm to fertilise an ovum. Their efficacy approaches 99% [426].
Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) bind to specific receptors on pituitary gonadotrophs. Prolonged activation of GnRH receptors by GnRH leads to desensitisation and consequently to suppressed gonadotropin secretion. By contrast, GnRH antagonists compete with GnRH for receptors on gonadotropin cell membranes, inhibit GnRH-induced signal transduction and consequently gonadotrophin secretion. These compounds are free of agonistic actions, which might be beneficial in certain clinical applications, such as reducing the size of fibroids, endometrial bleeding and endometriosis [427].

Pelvic Floor and Chronic Anal Pain

Botulinum toxin type A (BTX-A) (pelvic floor)

Botulinum toxin type A has been injected into trigger points. It is more expensive than lidocaine and has not been proven to be more effective [428]. Reviews do not support the injection of BTX-A into trigger points [429]. Pelvic floor muscle over-activity plays a role in CPP. BTX-A, as a muscle relaxant, can be used to reduce the resting pressure in the pelvic floor muscles. In women with high resting pressure in the pelvic floor muscles, it has been found that BTX-A lowers this pressure significantly. The magnitude of reduction was significantly higher than that in the placebo group. On the pain score (VAS), no intergroup differences were found in this relatively small randomised study [430]. BTX-A can also be injected at the sphincter level to improve urination or defecation. Relaxation of the urethral sphincter alleviates bladder problems and secondarily the spasm. In a cohort study of thirteen patients with CPP, BTX-A was injected into the external urethral sphincter. Subjectively, eleven patients reported a substantial change in pain symptoms, from 7.2 to 1.6 on a VAS [431].

Botulinum toxin type A (BTX-A) (chronic anal pain syndrome)

In CPP associated with spasm of the levator ani muscles, treatment of the puborectalis and pubococcygeus muscle by BTX-A appears to be promising in some women, as shown in a pilot study (n=12). The inclusion criteria were dependent only on vaginal manometry with over-activity of the pelvic floor muscles, defined as a vaginal resting pressure > 40 cm H₂O. Although dyspareunia and dysmenorrhoea improved, non-menstrual pelvic pain scores were not significantly altered [432]. In the following double-blinded, randomised, placebo-controlled trial, the same group defined pelvic floor myalgia according to the two criteria of tenderness on contraction and hypertension (> 40 cm H₂O) and included 60 women. In this larger study, non-menstrual pelvic pain was significantly improved compared to those treated with placebo (VAS score 51 vs. 22; P=0.009). It was concluded therefore that BTX-A is effective at reducing pelvic floor-muscle associated pain with acceptable adverse effects such as occasional urinary and faecal stress incontinence [430]. However, recently, a small RCT failed to show any benefit of BTX-A [433].

Intermittent chronic anal pain syndrome

Due to the short duration of the episodes, medical treatment and prevention is often not feasible. Inhaled β-2 adrenergic agonist salbutamol was effective in an RCT in patients with frequent symptoms and shortened pain duration [434]. Other treatment options are topic diltiazem and BTX-A [435]. However, there is still some controversy regarding the duration of pain of intermittent chronic and chronic anal pain syndrome. RCTs often use different definitions, extending the pain duration (with a shift to chronic pain) in order to include more patients and to better evaluate the study-drug action.

Abdominal pain associated with Irritable Bowel Syndrome

Linaclotide, a minimally absorbed peptide guanylate cyclase-C agonist at a dose of 290 μg once daily significantly improved abdominal pain (48.9% vs 34.5% placebo-treated) and bowel symptoms associated with irritable bowel syndrome with constipation (IBS-C) over 26 weeks of treatment [436]. Diarrhoea was the most common adverse event in patients treated with linaclotide (4.5%). However, although it is known to overlap with IBS pelvic pain, effect on the latter was not assessed in this study.

5.2.2 Analgesics

If the use of simple analgesics fails to provide adequate benefit, then consider using the neuropathic agents, and if there is no improvement, consider involving a specialist pain management centre with an interest in pelvic pain. CPP is well defined and involves multiple mechanisms as described in previous sections of chapters. The management requires a holistic approach with biological, psychological and social components. Few studies have specifically looked at medications used in CPP [437], therefore, a wider look at the literature has been undertaken and further specific research is required. The agents concerned are divided for ease of description. Combinations often provide a greater benefit than individual agents. They may also allow lower individual dosages and thus minimise side-effects. The aim of using these drugs is to allow patients to improve their QoL. This is best measured by assessing their function as well as pain severity. If the use of these agents does not allow this, then they should be withdrawn. Unfortunately, the failure of one agent does not exclude potential benefit of an alternative. If the benefit is limited by side-effects, then the lowest effective dose should
be found (by dose titration). Sometimes, patients will prefer a higher level of pain and have fewer side-effects.

5.2.2.1 Mechanisms of action
Mechanisms of action are discussed as appropriate under the drug headings below.

5.2.2.2 Comparisons within and between groups in terms of efficacy and safety

Paracetamol (acetaminophen)
Paracetamol is a well-tolerated analgesic in a class of its own. This is an antipyretic analgesic with a central mechanism of action [438]. It is often available over the counter without prescription. A recent review questions its routine use as a first line analgesic based on inadequate evidence of efficacy in many pain conditions including dysmenorrhoea [439]. It will not be effective for all patients and individual responses should be reviewed when deciding on longer term use.

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents (NSAIDs)
These agents are anti-inflammatory, antipyretic analgesics that act by inhibiting the enzyme cyclooxygenase (COX). They have a peripheral effect, hence their use in conditions involving peripheral or inflammatory mechanisms. They are commonly used for pelvic pain, many are available over the counter and are usually well tolerated. There is no good evidence to suggest one NSAID over another for pelvic pain. Guidelines for use of NSAIDs and COX-2 selective agents have been developed. They have more side-effects than paracetamol, including indigestion, headaches and drowsiness.

The evidence for their benefit in CPP is weak or non-existent and are often limited by side-effects. For pelvic pain in which inflammatory processes are considered important, such as dysmenorrhoea [440], NSAIDs are more effective than placebo and paracetamol, but with a higher incidence of side-effects. For pelvic pain in which central mechanisms may be incriminated, such as endometriosis [441], then the evidence is lacking for NSAIDs despite their common use.

At a practical level, if NSAIDs are considered for use, they should be tried (having regard for the cautions and contraindications) and the patient reviewed for improvement in function as well as analgesia. If this is not achieved, or side-effects are limiting, then they should be withdrawn.

Neuromodulators
These are agents that are not simple analgesics but used to modulate neuropathic or centrally mediated pain. There are several classes commonly used with recognised benefits in pain medicine. They are taken on a regular basis, all have side-effects that may limit use in some patients. In the UK, the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) has reviewed the pharmacological management of neuropathic pain [442]. Not all the agents are licensed for use in pain management but there is a history and evidence to demonstrate their benefit. The evidence for treatment of CPP is lacking but is present for other painful conditions. For this chapter, most of the evidence is from non-pelvic pain sources. The general method for using these agents is by titrating the dose against benefit and side-effects. The aim is for patients to have an improvement in their QoL, which is often best assessed by alterations in their function. It is common to use these agents in combination but studies comparing different agents against each other, or in combination, are lacking. Some of these agents are also used for specific conditions.

Antidepressants
Tricyclic antidepressants
The tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) have multiple mechanisms of action including, blockade of acetylcholine receptors, inhibition of serotonin and noradrenaline re-uptake, and blockade of histamine H1 receptors. They also have anxiolytic affects [443] and are frequently limited by their side-effects. Tricyclic antidepressants have a long history of use in pain medicine and have been subjected to a Cochrane review [444], suggesting that they are effective for neuropathic pain. Amitriptyline is the most commonly used member at doses from 10 to 75 mg/day (sometimes rising to 150 mg/day). This is titrated against benefit or side-effects and can be taken at night [442]. Nortriptyline and imipramine are used as alternatives.

Other Antidepressants
Duloxetine is a serotonin-noradrenaline re-uptake inhibitor (SNRI) antidepressant licensed for use in depression, urinary stress incontinence and neuropathic pain. There is moderately strong evidence of benefit in diabetic neuropathy and fibromyalgia at a dose of 60 mg/day [445]. Side-effects are common and may result in its discontinuation.
Selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors are antidepressants with fewer side-effects. They are effective for depression, but there have been insufficient studies to demonstrate their benefit in pelvic or neuropathic pain [444-446].

**Anticonvulsants**

Anticonvulsants are commonly used in the management of neuropathic pain. There are general studies and some looking more particularly at pelvic pain. Individual agents have been systematically reviewed. Their use is suggested in the NICE Neuropathic Guidelines [442].

Carbamazepine has a long history of use in neuropathic pain. Evidence exists for its benefit [447]. Trials have tended to be of short duration, showing only moderate benefit. There are side-effects; some of which may be serious. It is no longer a first choice agent. Other anticonvulsant agents are available with fewer serious side-effects.

Gabapentin is commonly used for neuropathic pain and has been systematically reviewed [448]. It provides good quality relief with NNT of approximately six. Side-effects are common, notably drowsiness, dizziness and peripheral oedema. For higher dose levels, reference should be made to local formularies, and many clinicians do not routinely exceed 2.4 g/day in divided doses (most commonly three times daily). One study of women with CPP has suggested that gabapentin alone or in combination with amitriptyline provides better analgesia than amitriptyline alone [449]. A more recent pilot study suggests that gabapentin is beneficial and tolerable; a larger study is required to provide a definitive result [450].

Pregabalin is a commonly used neuromodulator with good evidence of efficacy in some neuropathic conditions but the NNT varies depending on the condition [451]. The dose for benefit is in the range of 300 to 600 mg/day. The same systematic review found that doses less than 150 mg/day are unlikely to provide benefit. A review for chronic pelvic pain syndrome (prostate) only found a single reviewable study that does not show overall symptom improvement but suggests individual symptoms may improve (e.g. pain, QoL) and side-effects were common demonstrating the need for further robust studies [374]. As with gabapentin, side-effects are common and may not be tolerated by patients. A formal assessment of efficacy against side-effects is required with the patient in order to determine longer-term treatment. Other anticonvulsants are available but not commonly used for managing pain. Other agents can be used in the management of neuropathic pain but they are best administered only by specialists in the management of pain and familiar with their use. They tend to be considered after the standard options have been exhausted. As with all good pain management, they are used as part of a comprehensive multidimensional management plan.

**Opioids**

Opioids are used for chronic non-malignant pain and may be beneficial for a small number of patients. Often patients will stop taking oral opioids due to side-effects or insufficient analgesic effect [452]. They should only be used in conjunction with a management plan with consultation between clinicians experienced in their use. It is suggested that a pain management unit should be involved along with the patient and their primary care physician.

There are well established guidelines for the use of opioids in pain management as well as considering the potential risks [453]. There is also information available online for patients [454, 455]. Opioids Aware is a web-based resource for patients and healthcare professionals, jointly produced by the Faculty of Pain Medicine of Royal College of Anaesthetists and Public Health England, to support prescribing of opioid medicines for pain. http://www.rcoa.ac.uk/faculty-of-pain-medicine/opioids-aware/. There are several agents available in the group. They can be divided into weak (e.g., codeine, dihydrocodeine and tramadol) or strong opioids (e.g., morphine, oxycodone, fentanyl and hydromorphone). Oral administration is preferable, but if poorly tolerated, a percutaneous (patch) route may have advantages. More invasive approaches are less commonly used and within the realms of specialist units. Side-effects are common, including constipation, nausea, reduced QoL, opioid tolerance, hormonal and immunological effects along with psychological changes and require active management.

There is a growing understanding of opioid-induced hyperalgesia; a situation in which patients taking opioids, paradoxically, become more sensitive to painful stimuli [456, 457]. This is another reason for these drugs to be used in a controlled fashion for long-term management of non-malignant pain.

Morphine is the standard opioid with which many physicians are familiar. The aim is to use a slow or sustained release preparation starting with a low-dose and titrating the dose every three days to one week against
improvement in both function and pain. Side-effects should also be monitored and managed accordingly. Particular attention should be paid to the management of constipation.

**There are a variety of other agents available and some are mentioned below:**

**Transdermal fentanyl** may be considered when oral preparations are restricted (e.g., ileostomy). It may also be beneficial when there are intolerable side-effects from other opioids.

**Methadone** has a long record of use as an opioid. There is a theoretical advantage of benefit with its N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor (NMDA) antagonist activity. This may be relevant in neuropathic pain [458].

**Oxycodone** may have greater efficacy than morphine in some situations, such as hyperalgesic states including visceral pain [459].

**Tramadol** is an established analgesic with dual effects on opioid receptors and serotonin release. More recently, tapentadol, has been released with opioid action and noradrenaline re-uptake inhibition. It is too early to assess its real value in the armamentarium for pain management.

### 5.3 Surgical management

#### 5.3.1 Surgery

**Bladder Pain Syndrome (BPS)**

**Bladder distension**

Although bladder hydrodistension is a common treatment for BPS, the scientific justification is scarce. It can be part of the diagnostic evaluation, but has limited therapeutic role.

**Hydrodistension and Botulinum toxin type A (BTX-A)**

Botulinum toxin type A may have an antinociceptive effect on bladder afferent pathways, producing symptomatic and urodynamic improvements [115]. Treatment with hydrodistension and hydrodistension plus intravesical BTX-A has been compared [460]. There was symptomatic improvement in all patients. However, in the hydrodistension-only group, 70% returned to their previous symptoms after one month, while in the BTX-A-treated patients, VAS score and functional and cystometric bladder capacity improved at three months. Botulinum toxin type A trigonal-only injection seems effective and long-lasting as 87% of patients reported improvement after three months follow-up [461]. Over 50% reported continued benefit nine months after the first treatment. When re-treatment was needed, similar results were obtained. The authors concluded that this treatment is safe, effective and can be repeated. Adverse effects of BTX-A administration for IC/BPS were significantly less than for overactive bladder syndrome, namely in increased post-void residual volumes and decreased voiding efficiency [462]. Recent RCTs have confirmed benefits and long efficacy of BTX-A administration [463-466]. The AUA guidelines panel has recently upgraded BTX-A treatment from fifth to a fourth line treatment [467].

**Transurethral resection (TUR), coagulation and laser**

Endourological destruction of bladder tissue aims to eliminate urothelial, mostly Hunner lesions. Since the 1970s resection and fulguration have been reported to achieve symptom relief, often for more than three years [468, 469]. Prolonged amelioration of pain and urgency has been described for transurethral laser ablation as well [470].

**Open Surgery for BPS**

Bladder pain syndrome is benign and does not shorten life, thus operative procedures rank last in the therapeutic algorithm. There is no evidence that it relieves pain. Surgery for refractory BPS is only appropriate as a last resort for patients with refractory end-stage disease. Major surgery should be preceded by thorough pre-operative evaluation, with an emphasis on determining the relevant disease location and subtype. If surgery is considered, the panel’s advice is to refer the patient to a specialist centre experienced in managing CPP with a multi-disciplinary team approach.

Four major techniques are common:

1. Urinary diversion without cystectomy. As early as 1967, it was reported that bladder augmentation without removal of the diseased tissue was not appropriate [471]. Reports that unrected BPS bladders cease to induce symptoms after loss of contact with urine are scarce [112, 472].
2. Supratrigonal cystectomy with subsequent bladder augmentation represents the most favoured continence-preserving surgical technique. Various intestinal segments have been used for supratrigonal augmentation [473-475].

3. Subtrigonal cystectomy. Subtrigonal resection has the potential of removing the trigone as a possible disease site, but at the cost of requiring ureteral reimplantation. Trigonal disease is reported in 50% of patients and surgical failure has been blamed on the trigone being left in place [476]. In contrast, another study [477] reported six out of seventeen patients being completely cured by supratrigonal resection [476]. A recent study on female sexuality after cystectomy and orthotopic ileal neobladder showed pain relief in all patients, but only one regained normal sexual activity [478].

4. Cystectomy with formation of an ileal conduit still ranks first in current USA practice trends for BPS surgery [479]. For cosmetic reasons, continent diversion is preferred, particularly in younger patients. After orthotopic bladder augmentation, particularly when removing the trigone, voiding may be incomplete and require intermittent self-catheterisation. Patients considering these procedures must be capable of performing, accepting and tolerating self-catheterisation. For patients with BPS who develop recurrent pain in the augmented bladder or continent pouch after enterocystoplasty or continent urinary diversion, retubularisation of a previously used bowel segment to form a urinary conduit has been recommended [480]. It is important to note that pregnancies with subsequent lower-segment Caesarean section have been reported after ileocystoplasty [480, 481].

**Prostate Pain Syndrome (PPS)**
There is no evidence for surgical management, including transurethral incision of the bladder neck, radical transurethral resection of the prostate or, in particular, radical prostatectomy in the management of chronic pain in patients with PPS. Recently, a large Chinese randomised-controlled trial of circumcision combined with a triple oral therapy (ciprofloxacin, ibuprofen, tamsulosin) versus oral therapy alone has been published for patients with PPS (total N=774) [482]. It is hypothesised that there may be some immunological interaction via pathogenic antigen presenting cells in the foreskin with CD4+ T cells causing autoimmunity to the prostate gland. They reported an improvement in total NIH-CPSI score and subdomain scores at twelve weeks. However, despite a large cohort, the study results are questionable because of the weak theoretical background, and a potential large placebo effect lacking a sham control. In addition, no long-term effectiveness has been reported. Before having an impact on recommendations, the results of this study have to be independently confirmed and the treatment effect must persist.

**Testicular Pain Syndrome**
Microsurgical denervation of the spermatic can be offered to patients with testicular pain. In a long term follow-up study, patients who had a positive result on blocking the spermatic cord were found to have a good result following denervation [483].

**Chronic Anal Pain Syndrome**
Chronic anal pain syndrome after stapled procedures, such as hemorrhoidopexy (PPH) or stapled trans-anal rectal resection (STARR) may respond to excision of the scarred staple line as shown in 21 consecutive patients with an overall improvement of pain in 85.7% of patients undergoing scar excision surgery [484]. An early scar excision before three to six months after pain onset was associated with better pain relief.

**Urethral Pain Syndrome**
There is no specific treatment that can be advised. Management should be multi-disciplinary and multi-modal [485]. Laser therapy of the trigonal region may be a specific treatment. One trial comparing two forms of laser reported good results, but did not compare with sham treatment [486]. The majority of publications on treatment of urethral pain syndrome have come from psychologists [180].

**Presumed intra-abdominal adhesions**
In gynaecological patients with CPP and presumed adhesions, there is no consensus as to whether adhesiolysis should be performed to improve pain [487, 488].

Extensive surgery for endometriosis is challenging and is still considered to be controversial, as there is at least one RCT showing no benefit in pain relief after the removal of early extensive endometriosis compared to sham surgery [489, 490].
In patients with adenomyosis, the only curative surgery is hysterectomy but patients can benefit from hormonal therapy and analgesics (see 5.2.1).

**Pudendal Neuralgia and surgery**
Decompression of an entrapped or injured nerve is a routine approach and probably should apply to the pudendal nerve as it applies to all other nerves. There are several approaches and the approach of choice probably depends upon the nature of the pathology. The most traditional approach is transgluteal; however, a transperineal approach may be an alternative, particularly if the nerve damage is thought to be related to previous pelvic surgery [187, 251, 491-495]. Currently, there has been only one prospective randomised study [493]. This study suggests that, if the patient has had the pain for less than six years, 66% of patients will see some improvement with surgery (compared to 40% if the pain has been present for more than six years). Surgery is not the answer for all patients. On talking to patients that have undergone surgery, providing the diagnosis was clear-cut, most patients are grateful to have undergone surgery but many still have symptoms that need management.

5.3.2 **Neuromodulation**
The role of neuromodulation in the management of pelvic pain should only be considered by specialists in pelvic pain management. These techniques are only used as part of a broader management plan and require regular follow-up. The research base is developing and the techniques broadening (e.g., spinal cord stimulation (SCS), sacral root stimulation, dorsal root ganglion stimulation or peripheral nerve stimulation). These are expensive interventional techniques for patients refractory to other therapies. Therefore, it is inappropriate to provide a detailed review in this publication. In the UK, guidance has been published for SCS in neuropathic pain [496]. This emphasises the comments above. This guidance suggests a trial period of stimulation before full implementation. Neuromodulation is still finding its role in pelvic pain management. There has been growing evidence in small case series or pilot studies, but more detailed research is required [497]. Its role in overactive bladder and faecal incontinence is more robust but is limited for pain.

**Bladder Pain Syndrome**
A comparison of sacral neuromodulation (SNM) vs. pudendal nerve stimulation (PNS), showed an overall 59% improvement in symptoms with PNS vs. 44% with SNM. Most patients who tested both a sacral and pudendal electrode chose PNS as the better site. Follow-up showed marked improvements in voiding variables and validated BPS symptom questionnaires. Over 90% of patients treated with neuromodulation stated that they would undergo implantation again [498]. Long-term results were verified in a retrospective study of patients from 1994 to 2008 [499]. Permanent SNM implantation was performed in patients who showed at least 50% improvement in symptoms with a temporary peripheral nerve evaluation test [499]. Median follow-up was 61.5 months. Good long-term success of SNM was seen in 72%, with a 28% explantation rate. The most frequent reason for explantation was poor outcome (54% of the failed patients). The revision rate was 50%. In a study of women who underwent permanent device implantation from 2002 to 2004 [448], mean pre-/post-operative pelvic pain and urgency/frequency scores were 21.61 ± 8.6/9.22 ± 6.6, and mean pre-/post-operative visual analogue pain scale (VAPS) scores were 6.5 ± 2.9/2.4 ± 1.1. Mean follow-up was 86 ± 9.8 months. Sacral neuromodulation showed adequate improvement for the symptoms of refractory BPS. The re-operation rate was 25%.

**Pudendal Neuralgia**
Pudendal neuralgia represents a peripheral nerve injury and as such should respond to neuromodulation by implanted pulse generators. However, it is important that the stimulation is perceived in the same site as the perceived pain. Spinal cord stimulation (SCS) may be effective for thoraco-lumbar afferents. However, it is difficult to obtain appropriate stimulation from SCS for the sacral nerves including pudendal. There is limited experience with sacral root stimulation and as a result stimulation for pudendal neuralgia should only be undertaken in specialised centres and in centres that can provide multi-disciplinary care [500-503].

**Chronic Anal Pain Syndrome**
In a large cohort of 170 patients with functional anorectal pain from the St. Mark’s Hospital (Harrow, Middlesex, United Kingdom) sacral nerve stimulation was used in three patients (two improved), while biofeedback was the most used modality with the greatest treatment effect in patients with defecatory dysfunction (29 patients, 17 improved) [435]. Sacral neuromodulation has been reported to be somewhat beneficial in two uncontrolled studies, showing improvement in about half the patients [504, 505]. Martelli et al have evaluated sacral neuromodulation in 27 patients, including 18 patients with previous pelvic surgery. Sixteen patients (59%) responded to testing and had a definitive implantation with long-term follow-up of 37 months with sustained response, while no patients after stapler surgery responded to neuromodulation [505]. Sacral neuromodulation
may be a choice in patients with CPP who failed to respond to biofeedback and drug therapy. The less invasive PTNS was tested in twelve women with CPP lasting for at least six months and showed an improvement in pain, QoL and sexual life [506]. No “sham” SNM or PTNS control group were used in either cited studies, which limits their value as an important placebo effect cannot be ruled out.

5.3.3  **Nerve blocks**

Nerve blocks for pain management are usually carried out by specialists in pain medicine as part of a broader management plan [61]. They may have a diagnostic or therapeutic role. Textbooks have been written on the subject and practitioners using them should be trained in appropriate patient selection, indications, risks and benefits. Many such interventions also require understanding and expertise in using imaging techniques to perform the blocks accurately. Diagnostic blocks can be difficult to interpret due to the complex mechanisms underlying the painful condition or syndrome. Sustained but limited benefit may lead to more permanent procedures (e.g., radiofrequency procedures). There is a weak evidence base for these interventions for chronic non-malignant pain.

**Pudendal Neuralgia**

The role of injections may be divided into two. First, an injection of local anaesthetic and steroid at the sight of nerve injury may produce a therapeutic action. The possible reasons for this are related to the fact that steroids may reduce any inflammation and swelling at the site of nerve irritation, but also because steroids may block sodium channels and reduce irritable firing from the nerve [507]. The second possible benefit is diagnostic. It has already been indicated that when the pudendal nerve is injured there are several sites where this may occur. Differential block of the pudendal nerve helps to provide information in relation to the site where the nerve may be trapped [249-259].

Infiltration at the ischial spine requires the use of a nerve stimulator/locator. Both motor (anal contraction) and sensory endpoints may be noted. The anatomical endpoint may be localised by fluoroscopy, CT guidance, or the use of US. US avoids any radiation, whereas CT guidance involves a significant amount of radiation. Currently, fluoroscopy is probably the imaging technique most frequently used because it is readily available to most anaesthetists that perform the block. Currently, infiltration of the pudendal nerve within Alcock’s canal is primarily undertaken with the use of CT. As well as injecting around the pudendal nerve, specific blocks of other nerves arising from the pelvis may be performed. Pulsed radio frequency stimulation has also been suggested as a treatment [508].

5.4  **Summary of evidence and recommendations: management**

5.4.1  **Management of PPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phenotypically directed treatment may improve treatment success.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-blockers have moderate treatment effect regarding total pain-, voiding-, and QoL scores in PPS.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antimicrobial therapy has a moderate effect on total pain-, voiding-, and QoL scores in PPS.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSAIDs have moderate overall treatment effects on PPS.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phytotherapy has some beneficial effect on pain and overall favourable treatment response in PPS.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentosane polysulphate improves global assessment and QoL score in PPS.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are insufficient data on the effectiveness of muscle relaxants in PPS.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregabalin is not effective for the treatment of PPS.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BTX-A injection into the pelvic floor (or prostate) may have a modest effect in PPS.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acupuncture is superior to sham acupuncture in improving symptoms and QoL.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior tibial nerve stimulation is probably effective for the treatment of PPS.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extracorporeal shock wave therapy is probably effective over the short term.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are insufficient data supporting the use of other surgical treatments, such as transurethral incision of the bladder neck, transurethral resection of the prostate, or radical prostatectomy in patients with PPS.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cognitive behavioural therapy designed for PPS may improve pain and QoL.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gr</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Offer multimodal and phenotypically directed treatment options for Prostate Pain Syndrome (PPS).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Single use of antimicrobial therapy (quinolones or tetracyclines) over a minimum of six weeks is recommended in treatment-naïve patients with a duration of PPS less than one year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>α-blockers are recommended for patients with a duration of PPS less than one year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>High-dose oral pentosane polysulphate is recommended in PPS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Acupuncture is recommended for use in PPS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) are recommended for use in PPS, but long-term side-effects have to be considered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>For PPS with significant psychological distress, psychological treatment focused on PPS is recommended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.2 Management of BPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>There is insufficient data for the long-term use of corticosteroids.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2b</td>
<td>Limited data exist on effectiveness of cimetidine in BPS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Amitriptyline is effective for pain and related symptoms of BPS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1a</td>
<td>Oral pentosane polysulphate is effective for pain and related symptoms of BPS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Oral pentosane polysulphate plus subcutaneous heparin is effective for pain and related symptoms of BPS, especially in initially low responders to pentosane polysulphate alone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Intravesical lidocaine plus sodium bicarbonate is effective in the short term.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Intravesical pentosane polysulphate is effective, based on limited data, and may enhance oral treatment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>There are limited data on the effectiveness of intravesical heparin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2b</td>
<td>Intravesical chondroitin sulphate may be effective.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>There is insufficient data for the use of bladder distension as a therapeutic intervention.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Hydrodistension plus BTX-A is superior to hydrodistension alone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Intravesical Bacillus Calmette Guérin (BCG) is not effective in BPS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Transurethral resection (coagulation and laser) may be effective in BPS type 3C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Sacral neuromodulation may be effective in BPS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Pudendal nerve stimulation (PNS) is superior to SNM for treatment of BPS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Avoidance of some food and drink may reduce symptoms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Outcome of cystectomy for BPS is variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommendations</td>
<td>GR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer sub-type and phenotype-oriented therapy for the treatment of Bladder Pain Syndrome (BPS).</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multimodal behavioural, physical and psychological techniques should always be considered alongside oral or invasive treatments of BPS.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administer amitriptyline for use in BPS.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer oral pentosane polysulphate for the treatment of BPS.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment with oral pentosane polysulphate plus subcutaneous heparin is recommended especially in low responders to pentosane polysulphate alone.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administer intravesical lidocaine plus sodium bicarbonate prior to more invasive methods.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administer intravesical pentosane polysulphate before more invasive treatment alone or combined with oral pentosane polysulphate.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administer submucosal injection of Botulinum toxin type A (BTX-A) plus hydrodistension if intravesical instillation therapies have failed.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All ablative organ surgery should be the last resort and undertaken by experienced and BPS knowledgeable surgeons only.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer intravesical hyaluronic acid before more invasive measures.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer intravesical chondroitin sulphate before more invasive measures.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer transurethral resection (or coagulation or laser) of bladder lesions, but in BPS type 3 C only.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer neuromodulation before more invasive interventions.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer dietary advice.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer intravesical heparin before more invasive measures alone or in combination treatment.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer intravesical bladder wall and trigonal injection of BTX-A if intravesical instillation therapies have failed.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corticosteroids are not recommended for long-term treatment.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder distension is not recommended as a treatment of BPS.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.3 Management of scrotal pain syndrome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Microsurgical denervation of the spermatic cord is an effective therapy for scrotal pain syndrome.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vasovasostomy is effective in post-vasectomy pain.</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orchiectomy is the last resort in treating scrotal pain syndrome.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start with general treatment options for chronic pelvic pain.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inform about the risk of post-vasectomy pain when counselling patients planned for vasectomy.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To reduce the risk of scrotal pain, open instead of laparoscopic inguinal hernia repair is recommended.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is recommended that during inguinal hernia repair all the nerves in the spermatic cord are identified.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For patients who are treated surgically, microsurgical denervation of the spermatic cord is recommended.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We recommend that orchiectomy should not be done, unless all other therapies, including pain management assessment, have failed.</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.4 Management of urethral pain syndrome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of evidence</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is no specific treatment for urethral pain syndrome.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with significant distress associated with bladder or urethral symptoms, psychological treatment may be worth using to reduce distress and thereby improve function and QoL.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start with general treatment options for chronic pelvic pain.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is recommended that patients with urethral pain syndrome are treated in a multi-disciplinary and multi-modal programme.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When patients are distressed, it is recommended to refer them for pain-relevant psychological treatment to improve function and quality of life.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.4.5  Management of gynaecological aspects of chronic pelvic pain

Summary of evidence

Therapeutic options, including pharmacotherapy and surgery, can treat endometriosis effectively. 1b
Psychological treatment (CBT or supportive psychotherapy) can improve pain and sexual and emotional function in vaginal and vulvar pain syndrome. 1b
All other gynaecological conditions (including dysmenorrhea, obstetric injury, pelvic organ prolapse and gynaecological malignancy) can be treated effectively using pharmacotherapy. 3

Recommendations

Provide therapeutic options such as hormonal therapy or surgery in well-defined disease states. B
Provide a multi-disciplinary approach to pain management in persistent disease states. B

5.4.6  Management of anorectal pain syndrome

Summary of evidence on functional anorectal pain

Biofeedback is the preferred treatment for the chronic anal pain syndrome. 1a
Electrogalvanic stimulation is less effective than biofeedback. 1b
Botulinum toxin type A is effective. 1b
Percutaneous tibial nerve stimulation is effective in anal pain. 1b
Sacral neuromodulation is effective in anal pain. 3
Inhaled salbutamol is effective in intermittent chronic anal pain syndrome. 3

Recommendations for functional anorectal pain

Bio-feedback treatment is recommended in patients with pelvic pain and dyssynergic defecation. A
Offer botulinum toxin type A and electrogalvanic stimulation in chronic anal pain syndrome. B
Offer percutaneous tibial nerve stimulation in chronic anal pain syndrome. B
Offer sacral neuromodulation in chronic anal pain syndrome. C
Offer inhaled salbutamol in intermittent chronic anal pain syndrome. C

5.4.7  Management of pudendal neuralgia

Summary of evidence

There are multiple treatment options with varying levels of evidence. 3

Recommendations

Neuropathic pain guidelines are well-established. Standard approaches to management of neuropathic pain should be utilised. A

5.4.8  Management of sexological aspects in CPP

Summary of evidence

Pelvic floor muscle physical therapy may offer relief of pain and reduction in sexual complaints. 2b

Recommendations

Offer behavioural strategies to the patient and his/her partner to cope with sexual dysfunctions. B
Training of the pelvic floor muscles is recommended to improve quality of life and sexual function. B
5.4.9  Management of pelvic floor dysfunction

Summary of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Myofascial treatment is effective.</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biofeedback improves the outcome of myofascial therapy.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigger point release is effective in treating muscle and referred pain.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Apply myofascial treatment as first line treatment.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with an overactive pelvic floor, bio-feedback is recommended as therapy adjuvant to muscle exercises.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When myofascial trigger points are found, treatment by pressure or needling is recommended.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.10  Management of chronic/non-acute urogenital pain by opioids

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All other reasonable treatments must have been tried and failed, before considering opioid treatment.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The decision to instigate long-term opioid therapy should be made by an appropriately trained specialist in consultation with another physician (including the patient and their family doctor).</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where there is a history or suspicion of drug abuse, a psychiatrist or psychologist with an interest in pain management and drug addiction should be involved.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.  EVALUATION OF TREATMENT RESULTS

6.1  Evaluation of treatment

For patients with chronic visceral pain, a visit to the clinician is important because they can ask questions, talk about how the process is going and have some time with the caregiver who understands the nature of their pain. First evaluation should take place after about six weeks to see if the treatment has been successful or not. When necessary adaptations are made and a next evaluation is planned.

6.1.1  Treatment has not been effective

6.1.1.1  Alternative treatment

In cases where the treatment initiated did not have enough effect, an alternative approach is advised. The first thing to do is a thorough evaluation of the patients’ or care providers’ adherence to the treatment that was initiated. Ask the patient if they have taken the medication according to the prescription, if there were any side-effects and if there were any changes in pain and function. Adjustment of medication or dose schemes might help. Another important thing to do is to read the reports of other caregivers like the physiotherapist and the psychologist. Has the therapy been followed until the end, what was the opinion of the therapist about the changes that were observed. In cases where the sessions had been ended by the patient, ask the patient why they made that decision. Check if the patient has understood the idea behind the therapy that was prematurely stopped.

6.1.1.2  Referral to next envelope of care

If patients and doctors come to the conclusion that none of the therapies given showed enough effect, then referral to a next envelope of care is advised. Unfortunately, the terminology used to describe the nature and specialisation level of centres providing specialised care for visceral pain patients is not standardised and country based. This does not facilitate easy referral schemes. It is advised that patients are referred to a centre that is working with a multi-disciplinary team and nationally recognised as specialised in pelvic pain. Such a centre will re-evaluate what has been done and when available, provide specialised care.

6.1.1.3  Self-management and shared care

Patients who find themselves confronted with CPP for which there is no specific treatment option available, will have to live with their pain. They will need to manage their pain, meaning that they will have to find a way to deal with the impact of their pain on daily activities in all domains of life. Self-help programmes maybe advised...
and can be of help. The patient may also benefit from shared care, which means that a caregiver is available for supporting the self-management strategies. Together with this caregiver the patient can optimise and use the management strategies.

6.1.2 Treatment has been effective
In cases where treatment has been effective the caregiver may pay attention to fallback prevention. If the patient feels the same pain again, it helps to start at an early stage with the self-management strategies that he/she has learned during the former treatment. By doing so they will have the best chance of preventing the development of pelvic pain syndromes again.

7. REFERENCES


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16140064


https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2666302


8. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the EAU Chronic Pelvic Pain Guidelines working panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is publically accessible through the European Association of Urology website http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/. This document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Renal Transplantation

A. Breda (Chair), J. Olsburgh (Vice-chair), K. Budde, A. Figueiredo, E. Lledó García, H. Regele
Guidelines Associates: R. Boissier, C. Fraser Taylor, V. Hevia, R.H. Zakri
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.</th>
<th>INTRODUCTION</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>Aim and objectives</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>Panel Composition</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>Available publications</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>Publication history</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2.</th>
<th>METHODS</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>Review and future goals</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3.</th>
<th>THE GUIDELINE</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Organ retrieval and transplantation surgery</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1</td>
<td>Living-donor nephrectomy</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.2</td>
<td>Organ preservation</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.2.1</td>
<td>Kidney storage solutions and cold storage</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.2.2</td>
<td>Duration of organ preservation</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.2.3</td>
<td>Methods of kidney preservation: static and dynamic preservation</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3</td>
<td>Donor Kidney biopsies</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.1</td>
<td>Procurement Biopsies</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.2</td>
<td>Type and size of biopsy</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.3</td>
<td>Key points and recommendations</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3.4</td>
<td>Implantation biopsies</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4</td>
<td>Living and deceased donor implantation surgery</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.1</td>
<td>Anaesthetic and peri-operative aspects</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.2</td>
<td>Immediate pre-op haemodialysis</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.3</td>
<td>Operating on patients taking anti-platelet and anti-coagulation agents</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.4</td>
<td>What measures should be taken to prevent venous thrombosis including deep vein thrombosis during and after renal transplant?</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.5</td>
<td>Is there a role for peri-operative antibiotics in renal transplant?</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.6</td>
<td>Is there a role for specific fluid regimes during renal transplantation and central venous pressure measurement in kidney transplant recipients?</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.4.7</td>
<td>Is there a role for dopaminergic drugs, furosemide or mannitol in renal transplantation?</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.5</td>
<td>Surgical approaches for first, second, third and further transplants</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.5.1</td>
<td>Single kidney transplant - living and deceased donors</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.5.1.1</td>
<td>Emerging surgical technologies</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.5.2</td>
<td>Dual kidney transplants</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.5.3</td>
<td>Ureteric implantation in normal urinary tract</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.5.4</td>
<td>Transplantation/ureteric implantation in abnormal urogenital tract</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.6</td>
<td>Donor complications</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.6.1</td>
<td>Long-term complications</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7</td>
<td>Recipient complications</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7.1</td>
<td>General complications</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7.2</td>
<td>Haemorrhage</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7.3</td>
<td>Arterial thrombosis</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7.4</td>
<td>Venous thrombosis</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7.5</td>
<td>Transplant renal artery stenosis.</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7.6</td>
<td>Arteriovenous fistulae and pseudo-aneurysms after renal biopsy</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7.7</td>
<td>Lymphocele</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7.8</td>
<td>Urinary leak</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7.9</td>
<td>Ureteral stenosis</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7.10</td>
<td>Haematuria</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7.11</td>
<td>Reflux and acute pyelonephritis</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7.12</td>
<td>Kidney stones</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.7.13</td>
<td>Wound infection</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.1.7.14 Incisional hernia 20
3.1.8 Matching of donors and recipients 20
3.1.9 Immunosuppression after kidney transplantation 21
  3.1.9.1 Calcineurin inhibitors 21
  3.1.9.2 Mycophenolates 22
  3.1.9.3 Azathioprine 23
  3.1.9.4 Steroids 23
  3.1.9.5 Inhibitors of the mammalian target of rapamycin (m-TOR) 23
  3.1.9.6 Induction with Interleukin-2 receptor antibodies 24
  3.1.9.7 T-cell depleting induction therapy 25
  3.1.9.8 Belatacept 25
3.1.10 Immunological complications 25
  3.1.10.1 Hyper-acute rejection 26
  3.1.10.2 Treatment of T-cell mediated acute rejection 26
  3.1.10.3 Treatment of antibody mediated rejection 27
3.1.11 Follow-up after transplantation 27
  3.1.11.1 Chronic allograft dysfunction/interstitial fibrosis and tubular atrophy 27

4. REFERENCES 28

5. CONFLICT OF INTEREST 42
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aim and objectives
The European Association of Urology (EAU) Renal Transplantation Guidelines aim to provide a comprehensive overview of the medical and technical aspects relating to renal transplantation.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel Composition
The EAU Renal Transplantation Guidelines panel consists of an international multidisciplinary group of urological surgeons, a nephrologist and a pathologist. All experts involved in the production of this document have submitted potential conflict of interest statements which can be viewed on the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/renal-transplantation/.

1.3 Available publications
A quick reference document, the Pocket Guidelines, is also available, both in print and in a number of versions for mobile devices. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text version. All are available through the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/renal-transplantation/.

1.4 Publication history
The EAU published the first Renal Transplantation Guidelines in 2003 with updates in 2004 and 2009. This document is a comprehensive update of the 2009 Renal Transplantation Guidelines. Additional chapters will be added in the coming year to address ethical issues surrounding kidney transplantation as well as the issue of prior malignancy in kidney transplantation.

2. METHODS

2.1 Introduction
For the 2017 Renal Transplantation Guidelines, new and relevant evidence has been identified, collated and appraised through a structured assessment of the literature. A broad and comprehensive literature search, covering all sections of the Renal Transplantation Guidelines was performed. Databases searched included Medline, EMBASE, and the Cochrane Libraries, covering a time frame between January 1st 2007 and May 31st 2016. A total of 2,601 unique records were identified, retrieved and screened for relevance. A detailed search strategy is available online: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/renal-transplantation/.

References used in this text are graded according to their level of evidence (LE) and Guidelines are given a grade of recommendation (GR), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence [1]. Additional information can be found in the general Methodology section of this print, and online at the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guideline/. A list of associations endorsing the EAU Guidelines can also be viewed online at the above address.

2.2 Review and future goals
This document was subject to independent peer review prior to publication.

The results of ongoing and new systematic reviews will be included in the 2018 update of the Renal Transplantation Guidelines. Ongoing systematic reviews include:

1. What are the effectiveness and harms of using kidneys with small renal tumours from deceased or living donors as a source for renal transplantation [2]?
2. For patients with CKD 4/5 and previous urological cancer who subsequently undergo renal transplantation, do they have a higher risk of tumour recurrence compared with patients who do not undergo transplantation [3]?
3. **THE GUIDELINE**

3.1 **Organ retrieval and transplantation surgery**

3.1.1 **Living-donor nephrectomy**

The endoscopic (laparoscopic) approach is the preferred technique for living-donor nephrectomy in established kidney transplant programmes [4]. Nevertheless, open surgery, preferably by a mini-incision approach, can still be considered a valid option, despite increased pain in the post-operative period [5].

Endoscopic living-donor nephrectomy (ELDN) includes:

- Pure or hand-assisted transperitoneal laparoscopy;
- Pure or hand-assisted retroperitoneal approach;
- Laparo-Endoscopic Single Site Surgery (LESS);
- Natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery-assisted (NOTES);
- Laparo-Endoscopic Single Site Surgery and robotic-assisted transperitoneal or retroperitoneal approach.

There is strong evidence in support of laparoscopic living-donor nephrectomy (LLDN), including several systematic reviews and meta-analysis, which have compared its safety and efficacy to open donor nephrectomy. Laparoscopic living-donor nephrectomy is associated with similar rates of graft function and rejection, urological complications and patient and graft survival. However, measures related to analgesic requirements, pain, hospital stay, and time to return to work are significantly better for laparoscopic procedures [6-8].

Standard LLDN is usually done through 5 and 12 mm ports, but has also been done with 3 or 3.5 mm ports [9]. Laparoscopic living-donor nephrectomy can also be performed with robotic assistance, with equivalent results according to a recent systematic review [10]. However, the numbers are still low and a recent paper found a higher complication rate for this approach [11].

Laparo-endoscopic single site surgery nephrectomy allows the surgeon to work through a single incision (usually the umbilicus) with a multi-entry port. The same or a separate incision is then used for kidney withdrawal. Several retrospective and at least three prospective randomised trials demonstrated equivalent safety and results, with a trend towards less pain and better cosmetic results [12]. However, LESS is considered a more technically demanding procedure when compared with classic LLDN and its role is yet to be defined.

Natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery-assisted transvaginal nephrectomy avoids the abdominal incision needed for kidney extraction, aimed at minimising scarring and pain. Initial reports suggest that this approach is safe, however experience with this technique is still highly limited [13].

Right LLDN has been considered more difficult, yielding inferior results. However, according to a recent systematic review and meta-analysis right LLDN can be performed with equivalent safety and efficacy [14].

Laparoscopic living-donor nephrectomy has brought attention to potential failures of different devices such as, endoscopic staplers and locking and non-locking clips, used to secure the renal hilum [14]. There is no scientific evidence that one device is safer than another for securing the renal artery [15-17]. However, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the manufacturers of locking clips have issued a contraindication against their use in securing the artery during LLDN.

### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer pure or hand-assisted laparoscopic/retroperitoneoscopic surgery as the preferential technique for living-donor nephrectomy.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform laparo-endoscopic single site surgery, robotic and natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery-assisted living-donor nephrectomy in highly specialised centres only.</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform open living-donor nephrectomy in centres where endoscopic techniques are not implemented.</td>
<td>1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.2 **Organ preservation**

3.1.2.1 **Kidney storage solutions and cold storage**

There are two main sources for kidney graft injury: ischaemia (warm and cold) and reperfusion injury. The aims of modern kidney storage solutions include: control of cell-swelling during hypothermic ischaemia; maintenance of intra- and extra-cellular electrolyte gradient during ischaemia; buffering of acidosis; provision of energy reserve; and minimisation of oxidative reperfusion injury. There is no agreement on which of the
mechanisms is most important for post-ischaemic renal graft function [18]. No storage solution seems to combine all mechanisms. Previously, Euro-Collins was widely used, but is no longer recommended.

Presently, University of Wisconsin (UW), and histidine-tryptophan-ketoglutarate (HTK) solution are equally effective and are standard for multi-organ or single kidney harvesting procedures [2]. The characteristics of HTK are its low viscosity, low potassium concentration and low cost. University of Wisconsin solution has been the standard static cold preservation solution for the procurement of liver, kidney, pancreas, and intestine [19]. University of Wisconsin, HTK, and Celsior solutions have provided similar allograft outcomes in most clinical trials, however, some differences have become apparent in recent studies and registry reports [20, 21]. Marshall’s hypertonic citrate solution (MHCS) is also suitable for use in the preservation of human kidneys before transplantation [22]. In experimental studies of kidney preservation, HTK and UW retained a greater capacity to preserve endothelial structure and pH buffering function during warm ischaemia in comparison to MHCS and Celsior, especially in uncontrolled donors after cardiac death (DCD) [23]. In the absence of a cost-utility analysis, the results of the meta-analysis from the randomised controlled trials (RCTs) comparing UW with Celsior and MHSC in standard cadaver donors indicate that these cold storage solutions are equivalent [24].

For living donors, in whom immediate kidney transplantation is planned, perfusion with crystalloid solution is sufficient. Kidneys coming from DCD, especially those uncontrolled are high-risk marginal organs due to prolonged warm ischaemia periods, and require specific measures in order to diminish the rate of non-function or delayed graft function (DGF). More than 60% of kidney grafts currently come from Expanded Criteria Donors (ECD) (any donor aged > 65 years old, and/or donor aged > 55 years with any of the following: acute renal dysfunction, stroke or arterial hypertension) [25].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use either University of Wisconsin or histidine tryptophane ketoglutarate preservation solutions for cold storage.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Celsior or Soltran solution for cold storage if University of Wisconsin or histidine tryptophane ketoglutarate solutions are not available.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.2.2 Duration of organ preservation
Cold ischaemia time should be as short as possible. Kidneys from elderly (> 55 years) and marginal donors are more sensitive to ischaemia than young kidneys. Organ preservation relies mainly on hypothermia, which lowers the metabolic rate, conserves stores of adenosine triphosphate (ATP), and prevents formation of oxygen-free radicals during the reperfusion phase. Kidneys from deceased donors should ideally be transplanted within 18 hours. Within this 18 hour window, ischaemia time has no significant influence on graft survival [26].

3.1.2.3 Methods of kidney preservation: static and dynamic preservation
Whichever method is used, cold storage is critical. The use of cold preservation as a therapeutic window to deliver pharmacological or gene therapy treatments could, from an investigational point of view, improve both short- and long-term graft outcomes [27]. Cooling reduces the metabolic rate of biological tissue minimising continuous cellular processes that lead to depletion of ATP and accumulation of metabolic products. Reperfusion with oxygenated blood invokes ischaemia-reperfusion injury. Hypothermic perfusion does not enable normal cellular metabolic function or prevent depletion of energy stores [28]. However, it prevents the deleterious effects of simple cooling, especially in the setting of prolonged warm-ischaemic time in uncontrolled DCD. Hypothermic machine perfusion reduces DGF compared with static cold storage [29].

The increased demand for organs has led to the increased use of “higher risk” kidney grafts. Kidneys from DCD or grafts coming from ECDs are more susceptible to preservation injury and have a higher risk of unfavourable outcomes [30, 31].

Dynamic, instead of static, preservation could allow for organ optimisation, offering a platform for viability assessment, active organ repair and resuscitation. Ex situ machine perfusion and in situ regional perfusion in the donor are emerging as potential tools to preserve vulnerable grafts. Preclinical findings have driven clinical organ preservation research that investigates dynamic preservation, in various modes (continuous, pre-implantation) and temperatures (hypo-, sub-, or normothermic) [28].

There are several methods of kidney preservation including:
- Initial flushing with cold preservation solution followed by ice storage. However, the limitations of static cold storage (CS) in preserving marginal organs such as ECD kidneys has led to the increased use of dynamic methods.
• Current dynamic preservation strategies entering clinical practice and the different modalities of their use are: hypothermic machine perfusion, hypothermic regional perfusion, normothermic machine perfusion, normothermic regional perfusion, subnormothermic machine perfusion and subnormothermic regional perfusion [28].

• Continuous pulsatile hypothermic machine-perfusion (HMP) seems to be a good preservation method for marginal organs, either initially or after a period of simple CS (shipping of suboptimal kidneys) [32].

• Some evidence shows that hypothermic dynamic preservation should be controlled by pressure and not flow, using low pressures to avoid pressure-related injury. The perfusion solutions used are specific, and are qualitatively different to CS solution [24].

• Nonoxygenated HMP of the kidney at low perfusion pressures (20-30 mmHg) has been shown to reduce DGF [29]. The largest RCT comparing simple CS with HMP of deceased donor kidneys showed an overall reduced risk of DGF and a survival benefit, most pronounced in ECD kidneys [33]. Hypothermic machine-perfusion of kidneys from type III DCD decreased DGF with no impact on graft survival [30].

• Hypothermic machine-perfusion reduces the risk of DGF in standard cadaver donor kidneys regardless of cold ischaemia time [34].

• Increased vascular resistance and high perfusate injury marker concentrations are risk factors for DGF, however, they do not justify discarding the kidney. The flow perfusion value seems to be an indicator of graft viability in uncontrolled DCD, particularly donors with high creatinine level [35]. However, research is required to identify a strong and reliable measure for predicting kidney viability from machine perfusion [24]. Perfusion parameters (renal flow and renal vascular resistance) have low predictive values and should not be used as the sole criterion to assess viability of kidney grafts [36].

• Oxygenation during HMP appears to be beneficial, improving early kidney graft function [37]. The effect of oxygenated HMP is being investigated in two RCTs initiated by the Consortium on Organ Preservation in Europe (COPE), on type III DCD kidneys and ECD kidneys [28].

• A short period of normothermic machine perfusion (NMP) immediately prior to implantation has been shown to improve kidney graft function, replenish ATP and reduce injury in experimental models [38, 39].

• Active research is being developed on preservation of prolonged warm-ischaemically damaged human kidneys (types I and II DCD) by in situ normothermic extracorporal hemoperfusion with oxygenation and leukocyte depletion before procurement [40]. Oxygen carriage is achieved by using blood depleted of leukocytes. Potential advantages of this preservation technique are reduction in ischaemia-reperfusion injury as well as the possibility of assessing organ viability.

• Currently there are no registered ongoing RCTs on pre-implantation NMP using an oxygenated, sanguineous normothermic perfusion solution. However, kidney function can be evaluated during NMP by assessing macroscopic appearance of blood perfusion, renal blood flow and urine output [41].

• Continuous subnormothermic MP and controlled oxygenated rewarming has demonstrated improved creatinine clearance and preservation of structural integrity compared with continuous oxygenated HMP in a research setting [42].

### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use cold and warm ischaemia time as predictors of delayed graft function.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use hypothermic machine-perfusion in type III kidneys from donors after cardiac death, kidneys with prolonged simple cold storage and expanded criteria donor kidneys.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothermic machine-perfusion may be used in standard criteria deceased donor kidneys.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use low pressure values in hypothermic machine-perfusion preservation.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothermic machine-perfusion must be continuous and controlled by pressure and not flow.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not discard grafts due to only increased vascular resistance and high perfusate injury marker concentrations during hypothermic machine-perfusion preservation.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.1.3 Donor Kidney biopsies

Donor kidney biopsies can serve different purposes including:

- histological assessment of organ quality prior to transplantation (often referred to as procurement or harvest biopsies);
- histological analysis of focal lesions, especially if there is a suspicion of neoplasia;
- detection of donor derived lesions as reference for subsequent post-transplant biopsies (often referred to as baseline, zero-time or implantation biopsies).
3.1.3.1 Procurement Biopsies

3.1.3.1.1 Background and prognostic value

Procurement biopsies are used for the detection of tissue injury to aid the decision of whether or not a deceased donor kidney is suitable for transplantation. These biopsies are most commonly performed in donors with clinical suspicion of chronic kidney injury (ECDs).

Kidney discard in Europe is rarely based on histology findings, as procurement biopsies are not regularly performed for graft allocation in the Eurotransplant region [43]. However, since biopsy findings are the most frequent cause for discarding donor organs in the United States [44-46], their prognostic value has been analysed in numerous studies. A recently published systematic review of studies on donor kidney biopsies revealed a lack of prospective studies and marked heterogeneity regarding the type of lesions being assessed, their scoring, the definitions of post-transplant outcomes and the statistical methods employed [47]. Therefore, the published evidence suggests that the use of procurement biopsies for deciding on suitability for transplantation of donor kidneys may have some important limitations including the following [43, 47, 48]:

• **There is no consistent association between histological lesions observed in donor kidney biopsies and post-transplant outcomes.**

The concept of procurement biopsies in elderly donors was introduced by a study from Gaber et al. in 1995. This study observed significantly worse outcomes in recipients of kidneys with > 20% globally sclerotic glomeruli [49]. However, subsequent studies yielded highly variable results and it cannot be concluded that glomerulosclerosis is independently associated with graft outcomes [47]. A similar variability was also observed for other potentially relevant lesions like arterial injury, interstitial fibrosis and tubular atrophy which did show predictive value in some studies but not in others [47].

• **There is no agreement on prognostically relevant lesions and how they should be scored.**

Specific grading systems for donor kidney biopsies have not yet been developed. Lesion scoring in pre-transplant biopsies is mostly based on the Banff consensus for post-transplant renal allograft pathology, which is supported by the 2007 Banff Conference report [50].

Many attempts have been made to use composite semi-quantitative scoring systems to express the global extent of tissue injury in donor kidney biopsies. These scoring systems are mostly based on simple addition of the Banff scores for individual lesions, most commonly glomerulosclerosis, arteriolar hyalinosis, arterial intimal fibrosis, interstitial fibrosis and tubular atrophy and rarely include clinical parameters like donor age [51], serum creatinine values and donor hypertension [52].

A limited number of histological scoring systems are based on modelling analysis [51-55]. Only the Maryland Aggregate Pathology Index (MAPI) [55] scoring system and the Leuven donor risk score [51], use graft failure as their endpoint and have been independently validated in a second cohort. Other studies used surrogate clinical endpoints like DGF [53] and estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) at three months [54] to calculate histological models. In addition, these models were not validated in independent cohorts. The variation in how the components are weighted to achieve the composite score and the different endpoints used may explain the conflicting conclusions in the literature [43, 47, 48].

• **Due to the time constraints of organ allocation procurement biopsies are mostly read on frozen sections by on-call pathologists, which might affect the diagnostic reliability of reported findings.**

This may have substantial impact on the diagnostic reliability of the procedure since frozen sections are prone to morphological artefacts that can impair the detection and scoring of potentially important lesions such as arteriolar hyalinosis and interstitial fibrosis [56, 57]. There is strong evidence that dedicated renal pathologists should examine formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded (FFPE) core-needle biopsies. Paraffin histology employing special stains is technically superior to frozen sections since morphological details are better preserved on paraffin sections than on frozen sections and potentially confounding artefacts can be avoided. Rapid processing of tissue for paraffin histology is technically feasible but the respective protocols are not universally implemented and are not available on a 24/7 basis in most departments. Another source of variability is the professional experience of the pathologist in charge. Procurement biopsies are commonly read by the on-call general pathologist who frequently has no specific training in renal pathology. A recent study specifically addressing this issue found that the on-call pathologists tended to overestimate chronic injury in biopsies [58].

3.1.3.2 Type and size of biopsy

Many transplant centres obtain wedge biopsies of donor kidneys rather than needle biopsies due to the presumed higher risk of bleeding complications with the latter. Wedge biopsies sample the cortex superficially whereas needle biopsies reach deeper aspects of the cortex. Needle biopsies also allow sampling from different areas of the kidney. Several studies comparing wedge with needle biopsies concluded that needle biopsies perform much better in the evaluation of vascular lesions because interlobular arteries are rarely
sampled in wedge biopsies. Both methods were comparable for glomerular or tubulointerstitial lesions [59-62]. It was also demonstrated that glomerulosclerosis is significantly more pronounced in the subcapsular zone compared with deeper areas of the cortex [63]. The problem of insufficient sampling of arteries and over-representation of (subcapsular) glomerular scars in wedge biopsies, can only be avoided if particular attention is paid to the correct performance of the biopsy, with a minimal depth of 5 mm [64]. The predictive value of glomerulosclerosis increases significantly with higher numbers of glomeruli in the wedge biopsy, with ideally at least 25 glomeruli required for evaluation [61].

For surgeons who are reluctant to take needle biopsies, the use of a skin punch biopsy device might be an attractive alternative. Skin punch biopsies measure 3 mm in diameter. They have a shorter length than needle biopsies therefore avoiding injury to large calibre arteries at the corticomedullary junction whilst still sampling tissue from deeper areas of the cortex [65].

3.1.3.3 Key points and recommendations

- Individual histologic lesions like glomerulosclerosis, arterial luminal narrowing or tubulointerstitial injury observed in donor kidney biopsies have limited prognostic value for long-term allograft survival.
- Composite histological scoring systems provide a more comprehensive measure of overall organ damage. Published scoring systems, however, still lack independent validation and robust thresholds.
- Size of the biopsy is of critical importance for its diagnostic value. An adequate biopsy reaches beyond the immediate subcapsular area (≥ 5 mm) and contains ≥ 25 glomeruli and ≥ one artery. Needle biopsies, wedge biopsies or specimens obtained with a skin punch biopsy device will result in equally adequate biopsies if sampling is properly performed. Obtaining adequate biopsies with 18 G needles is difficult and requires multiple cores.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not base decisions on the acceptance of a donor organ on histological findings alone, since this might lead to an unnecessary high rate of discarded grafts. Interpret histology in context with clinical parameters of donor and recipient including perfusion parameters where available.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For frozen sections preferably submit 16 G needle core biopsies, wedge biopsies or skin punch biopsies since adequate work-up of very thin specimens in frozen sections is technically difficult.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use paraffin histology for histomorphology as it is superior to frozen sections, however, its diagnostic value has to be balanced against a potential delay of transplantation.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurement biopsies should be read by a renal pathologist or a general pathologist with specific training in kidney pathology.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.3.4 Implantation biopsies

Implantation biopsies are used to provide baseline information on donor kidney injury for comparison with subsequent post-transplant kidney biopsies. Baseline biopsies can be essential for clear distinction between pre-existing damage and acquired lesions. They are particularly valuable in cases of thrombotic microangiopathy, arteriolar hyalinosis or acute tubular injury. In contrast to procurement biopsies that are obtained at the time of organ harvesting, implantation biopsies are usually taken before implantation in order to cover potential effects of cold ischaemia time. Their diagnostic contribution has not been formally quantified in the literature which might be due to the difficulties of measuring the value of implantation biopsies for improving diagnoses. Despite the lack of formal studies investigating their value it seems very reasonable to perform implantation biopsies in deceased donor kidneys.

3.1.4 Living and deceased donor implantation surgery

3.1.4.1 Anaesthetic and peri-operative aspects

Good communication between nephrologists, anaesthetists and surgeons is required for optimal anaesthetic and peri-operative care of the renal transplant patient. Anaesthetic care of the living kidney donor [66] and renal transplant recipient [67] have been reviewed and recent guidelines from the European Renal Association-European Dialysis and Transplantation Association (ERA-EDTA) [68] are cross referenced.

3.1.4.2 Immediate pre-op haemodialysis

Routine use of haemodialysis immediately prior to renal transplantation is not indicated [68]. Hyperkalaemia is the most common indication for haemodialysis pre-operatively. The risks of haemodialysis compared with medical therapy must be considered along with the risks of intra-operative fluid overload, electrolyte and acid-base disturbances, particularly where a deceased donor kidney is transplanted with a significant risk of DGF. Pre-operative haemodialysis may initiate a pro-inflammatory state, delay surgery, increase the cold ischaemia time and increase the risk of DGF [69, 70].
Recommendation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manage fluid and electrolyte imbalance prior to transplant surgery with conservative measures where possible.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.4.3 Operating on patients taking anti-platelet and anti-coagulation agents

Many patients active on the transplant waiting list have vascular disease and/or a pro-thrombotic condition that should be risk-assessed prior to transplantation. Dual anti-platelet therapy is commonly given to patients with coronary artery stents for six to twelve months; peri-operative management plans for these patients should be discussed with a cardiologist so that the risks of withdrawal of the anti-platelet agent can be fully considered. Options for reversal of anti-coagulation and post-operative anti-coagulation should be discussed with a haematologist prior to patient listing.

Some patients will be active on a transplant waiting list whilst continuing to take anti-platelet and/or anti-coagulation agents. The indication for anti-platelet or anti-coagulation agents should be clearly documented for each individual. Potential increased risk of peri-operative bleeding needs to be weighed against potential harm from arterial or venous thrombosis. In accordance with the American College of Chest Physicians and the European Society of Cardiology guidelines [71, 72], the literature suggests that continuing anti-platelet therapy with aspirin, ticlopidine or clopidogrel does not confer a significantly greater risk of peri/post-operative complications [73], however, the number of patients studied was low. If needed, the effect of anti-platelet agents can be reduced with intra-operative platelet infusions.

Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consider continuing anti-platelet therapy in patients on the transplant waiting list.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discuss patients who take anti-platelet and anti-coagulation agents prior to transplant surgery with relevant cardiologist/haematologist/nephrologist.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.4.4 What measures should be taken to prevent venous thrombosis including deep vein thrombosis during and after renal transplant?

Peri-operative administration of short-acting anti-coagulation agents reduces peri-operative risk of venous thrombosis (including in ilio-femoral and renal veins), however, due to associated increased blood loss administration requires knowledge of individual patient risk factors. None of the current major thrombosis prevention guidelines directly address thromboprophylaxis in the renal transplant peri-operative period. A small RCT [74] showed no difference in early post-operative graft loss or thromboembolic complications with or without prophylactic anti-coagulation. Those administered prophylactic anti-coagulation had significantly lower haemoglobin whilst those administered prophylactic unfractionated heparin had prolonged lymph drainage. Based on this study, routine pharmacological prophylaxis is not recommended in low-risk living donor recipients. Mechanical measures to decrease ilio-femoral deep vein thrombosis (DVT) can be used where there is no contraindication due to peripheral vascular disease particularly where there are concerns about bleeding risks with pharmacological prophylaxis.

Recommendation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Post-operative prophylactic unfractionated or low-molecular-weight heparin should not be routinely given to low-risk living donor transplant recipients.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Downgraded due to low power of the RCT.

3.1.4.5 Is there a role for peri-operative antibiotics in renal transplant?

Prophylactic peri-operative antibiotics are generally used in renal transplant surgery but the optimal antibiotic regimen is not known and increasing antibiotic resistance may hamper their effectiveness in this setting. A multicentre, prospective RCT showed no difference at one month in surgical site, bacterial, fungal or viral infection between those receiving a single dose broad spectrum antibiotic at induction of anaesthesia compared to those receiving antibiotic 12 hourly for 3-5 days [75]. A retrospective comparison of peri-operative intravenous cefazolin prophylaxis compared to no antibiotic showed no difference in infectious complications (surgical site, urinary tract, bacteraemia or central catheter-related infection) in the first month after renal transplantation [76].
Recommendation

Use single-dose, rather than multi-dose, peri-operative prophylactic antibiotics in routine renal transplant recipients.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use single-dose, rather than multi-dose, peri-operative prophylactic antibiotics in routine renal transplant recipients.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.4.6 Is there a role for specific fluid regimes during renal transplantation and central venous pressure measurement in kidney transplant recipients?

Careful peri- and post-operative fluid balance is essential for optimal renal graft function. There is no evidence determining if crystalloids or colloids are better for intravenous fluid management during renal transplant surgery, however colloids may be immunogenic. If normal saline (0.9%) is used, monitoring for metabolic acidosis is recommended in the peri-operative period. A prospective double-blind RCT compared normal saline to lactated Ringer’s solution as intra-operative intravenous fluid therapy. Serum creatinine at day three post-surgery did not differ between the two groups. However, Ringer’s lactate caused less hyperkalaemia and metabolic acidosis than normal saline. Balanced solutions may be the optimal and safer option for intra-operative intravenous fluid therapy [77].

Central venous pressure (CVP) measurement helps anaesthetists guide fluid management. A small prospective non-blinded RCT compared two normal (0.9%) saline regimens: constant infusion (10-12 mL/kg⁻¹/h⁻¹ from start of surgery until reperfusion) and central venous pressure-based infusion (target CVP appropriate to stage of operation) [78]. Central venous pressure directed infusion produced a more stable haemodynamic profile, better diuresis and early graft function. Directed hydration may decrease DGF rates and CVP measurement may help optimise early graft function.

Recommendation

Optimise pre-, peri- and post-operative hydration to improve renal graft function. 1b B*

Use balanced crystalloid solutions for intra-operative intravenous fluid therapy. 1b B*

Use target directed intra-operative hydration to decrease delayed graft function rates and optimise early graft function. 1b B*

*Downgraded due to low power of the RCT.

3.1.4.7 Is there a role for dopaminergic drugs, furosemide or mannitol in renal transplantation?

Low-dose dopamine (LDD) has been used in renal transplantation due to a perceived improvement in urine output and early graft function. Use of LDD in kidney donors is outside of the scope of this section. Conflicting results prevent a consensus statement on routine use of LDD in transplant recipients. A small (n=20) prospective randomised cross-over study in deceased donor renal transplantation suggested significant improvements in urine output and creatinine clearance in the first nine hours post-surgery without adverse events [79]. By contrast, a retrospective comparison of LDD in the first twelve hours post-deceased donor renal transplantation showed no difference in diuresis or kidney function but those administered LDD (n=57) had increased heart rates, longer intensive therapy unit stay and higher six-month mortality than those not treated with LDD (n=48) [80].

Considerable variation exists in the use of diuretics during renal transplant recipient surgery and there is little evidence to suggest any benefit from their use [81]. No evidence on the use of mannitol during renal transplant recipient surgery was found during the panels literature search. Use of mannitol in kidney donors is outside of the scope of this section.

Recommendation

Do not routinely use low-dose dopaminergic agents in the early post-operative period. 2b C

3.1.5 Surgical approaches for first, second, third and further transplants

Transplant (bench/back-table) preparation is a crucial step in the transplantation process. The kidney must be inspected whilst on a sterile iced slush, removing peri-nephric fat when possible to permit inspection of the quality of the organ and to exclude exophytic renal tumours. Biopsy of the kidney on the back-table may be performed to help in the multi-factorial decision making process regarding the quality and usage of the kidney for both single and/or dual transplantation. Suspicious parenchymal lesions also require biopsy. Techniques for intra-operative kidney biopsy are discussed in section 3.1.3.

The number, quality and integrity of renal vessels and ureter(s) should be established and lymphatics at the renal hilum ligated. The quality of the intima of the donor renal artery should be evaluated. Branches of the
renal artery not going to the kidney or ureter(s) should be tied.

In deceased donor kidney transplantation the quality of the aortic patch should be determined. If severe atheroma of the patch, ostium or distal renal artery is seen then the aortic patch and/or distal renal artery can be removed to provide a better quality donor renal artery for implantation. Back table reconstruction of multiple donor arteries is discussed in section 3.1.5.1.

The length of the renal vein should be evaluated. Renal vein branches should be secured/tied.

For a deceased donor right kidney, lengthening the renal vein on the back table may be performed if needed with donor inferior vena cava [82]. Techniques for lengthening a short living donor right renal vein from donor gonadal vein or recipient saphenous vein require pre-operative planning and specific consent (discussed in section 3.1.5.1).

The length, quality and number of the ureter(s) should be established. The peri-pelvic and proximal peri-ureteral tissue in the ‘golden triangle’ should be preserved.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inspect the kidney to be implanted on the back table before or at the commencement of transplant surgery.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.1.5.1 Single kidney transplant - living and deceased donors

An extra-peritoneal approach to either iliac fossa should be used as the operative approach in most first or second single kidney transplant (SKT) operations. There is no evidence to prefer placement of a left or right kidney into either iliac fossa [83]. Peri-iliac vessel lymphatics should be ligated to try and prevent post-operative lymphocele. Appropriate segments of iliac artery and vein should be mobilised to facilitate appropriate tension free vascular anastomoses and the final positioning of the transplanted kidney.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Choose either iliac fossa for placement of a first or second single kidney transplant.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ligate peri-iliac vessel lymphatics (lymphostasis) to reduce post-operative lymphocele.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A variety of techniques have been described to help with the anastomosis of a short renal vein. This is most commonly encountered with a right kidney especially from a living donor. To achieve equivalent outcomes with right kidneys appropriate surgical technical manoeuvres may be needed to optimise right kidney implantation. Data from cohort studies [83, 84] and one registry study [85] suggest equivalent outcomes with either left or right deceased donor kidneys. By contrast, another registry study of 2,450 paired kidneys, donated after cardiac death, observed with right kidneys: more early surgical complications; an increased risk in DGF (Odds Ratio [OR] 1.46); and inferior one year graft survival (OR 1.62) but not at subsequent time points [86]. However, surgical techniques used to compensate for a right kidney, anastomosis time and surgeon experience were not recorded.

Data from at least two large registry studies demonstrate a slightly higher risk of early graft failure using right compared to left kidneys from living donors [85, 87, 88]. However, meta-analysis of data from one RCT and fourteen cohort studies suggested equivalent graft outcomes [89].

Techniques to manage a short renal vein can be addressed in the donor and/or recipient. Ligation of internal iliac vein(s) may be necessary to elevate the iliac vein and avoid tension on the renal vein anastomosis [83]. Transposition of the iliac artery and vein may enhance the position for the venous anastomosis [90]. The right renal vein may be lengthened. With deceased donor kidneys this is usually done with donor inferior vena cava (IVC) [84]. In living donors, lengthening of the renal vein may be achieved with donor gonadal vein retrieved at donor nephrectomy [91] or with recipient saphenous vein [92], although both require specific consent and in general the other aforementioned techniques are preferred.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assess the length of the donor renal vein and if it is short consider one of a variety of surgical techniques to optimise the venous anastomosis.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A history suggesting previous iliac or femoral vein thrombosis should initiate pre-operative imaging to establish patency of one iliac vein and the IVC. An intra-operative finding of an unexpected iliac vein and/or vena cava thrombosis may lead to abandonment of implantation. With pre-operative planning, native renal (orthotopic) or superior mesenteric vein or gonadal vein collaterals can be used.
The external or common iliac arteries are equally good for arterial anastomosis. The internal iliac artery is more frequently affected by atherosclerosis than the external or common iliac arteries. End-to-side anastomosis of donor renal artery to recipient external and/or common iliac artery is recommended in general over an end-to-end anastomosis to the internal iliac artery. The only RCT comparing these techniques suggests no difference [93]. However, the study was limited by small numbers and a high (8%) overall renal artery thrombosis rate.

The sites of the vascular anastomosis should be chosen carefully according to the length of the renal artery and vein to avoid kinking of the vessels when the kidney is placed into its final location, usually in the iliac fossa. The site of the arterial anastomosis should avoid atheromatous plaques in the iliac artery to decrease the risk of iliac artery dissection. The intima of the donor and recipient arteries should be checked prior to commencing the arterial anastomosis to ensure that there is no intimal rupture/flap. If this is found it must be repaired prior, to or as part of, the arterial anastomosis.

A Carrel patch is usually maintained on a deceased donor renal artery although it can be removed if there is either severe ostial atheroma/stenosis (with good quality proximal renal artery) or if the length of the renal artery is too long for the appropriate implantation site on the iliac artery (which is more common with the right renal artery).

Multiple renal arteries supplying a deceased donor kidney can be maintained on a Carrel patch (of appropriate length) and implanted as a single anastomosis. In living donor transplantation, multiple renal arteries require a variety of strategies to achieve optimum re-perfusion [83]. Two arteries can be implanted separately or to achieve a single anastomosis: a very small second artery (especially if supplying the upper pole) may be sacrificed; the two arteries may be joined together (as a trouser graft); or the smaller artery can be anastomosed onto the side of the main artery (end-to-side anastomoses). A lower polar artery may be re-vascularised via anastomosis to the inferior epigastric artery [94]. In living donor transplantation where three or more donor arteries exist consideration should be given to alternate kidney donors. In circumstances using a living donor kidney with three or more donor arteries, strategies include a combination of the above techniques or, after appropriate consent, use an explanted (recipient’s own) internal iliac artery graft [95] or saphenous vein graft [96].

In cases where an iliac artery prosthetic replacement has previously been carried out because of severe symptomatic iliac atheroma, the renal artery should be implanted into the prosthesis. Administration of systemic heparin should be considered prior to clamping of a vascular prosthesis [97].

A variety of sutures and suturing techniques for the vascular anastomosis are described, but in general practice, a 5/0 and 6/0 non-absorbable mono-filament polypropylene suture(s) are used for the renal vein and renal artery anastomosis. Despite this, there is no evidence to recommend one suturing technique over another to prevent, for example, transplant artery stenosis. Use of an expanded polytetrafluorethylene (ePTFE) suture compared to standard polypropylene suture may reduce blood loss due to a better needle/thread ratio [98].

In third or further transplants the surgical approach must be planned pre-operatively so that appropriate arterial inflow and venous outflow exists with adequate space to implant the new kidney [99, 100]. Nephrectomy of an old transplant kidney may be required prior to transplantation or at the time of transplantation [99]. Mobilisation of the common or internal iliac artery, internal iliac vein or IVC may be required. An intraperitoneal approach (via the iliac fossa or midline) may be required [101]. Rarely orthotopic transplantation is needed [99, 102].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the external or common iliac arteries for an end-to-side arterial anastomosis to donor renal artery.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An end-to-end anastomosis to the internal iliac artery is an alternative to external or common iliac arteries.</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>B*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check the intima of the donor and recipient arteries prior to commencing the arterial anastomosis to ensure that there is no intimal rupture/flap. If this is found it must be repaired prior to/as part of the arterial anastomosis.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-operatively plan the surgical approach in third or further transplants, to ensure that appropriate arterial inflow and venous outflow exists with adequate space to implant the new kidney.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Downgraded due to low power of study.
**Upgraded based on panel consensus.
3.1.5.1.1 Emerging surgical technologies

Robot-assisted kidney transplant (RAKT) surgery is being evaluated in prospective non-randomised trials (using IDEAL consortium principles) [103]. Whilst potential advantages may exist (decreased post-operative pain, length of hospital stay, incision length and lymphocele rate), evidence is too premature to recommend RAKT.

3.1.5.2 Dual kidney transplants

Dual kidney transplant (DKT) is performed when the quality of a single deceased donor kidney is thought to be insufficient for appropriate long-term graft function and that the outcome with both kidneys would be better. A variety of surgical techniques have been described to implant the pair of donor kidneys [104]. These include unilateral extra-peritoneal (UEP) or intraperitoneal (UIP) and bilateral extra-peritoneal (BEP) or intraperitoneal (BIP) that can be via a midline [105] or two lateral incisions.

The aim of a unilateral approach is to leave the contralateral iliac fossa intact for future transplantation in the event of graft loss and to reduce cold ischaemia time (CIT) for the second kidney transplant [106]. The unilateral approach may require mobilisation and division of the internal iliac vein to facilitate the two renal veins into iliac vein anastomoses. Modifications of the unilateral technique include single renal artery and vein anastomoses (with bench reconstruction) to further reduce CIT for the second kidney [107-109]. Dual kidney transplant takes longer and has higher blood loss than SKT regardless of the technique used. Data suggest shorter operative time and hospital stay with UEP compared to BEP [110] but other data suggest similar outcomes from all DKT techniques. No RCT exist to recommend one technique for all patients or situations.

En-bloc retrieval is performed when kidneys are retrieved from children weighing < 15 kg. Depending on the size of the donor kidney and size and weight of the adult recipient(s), en-bloc transplantation of the two kidneys may be performed or, if appropriate, the aorta and IVC patch may be divided for SKT [111].

3.1.5.3 Ureteric implantation in normal urinary tract

Ureteric anastomotic techniques described for renal transplant recipients with no underlying urological abnormality include: extra (Lich-Gregoir) or intra (Ledbetter-Politano) vesical uretero-neo-cystotomy and uretero-ureterostomy using native ureter. A meta-analysis [112] of two RCTs and 24 observational studies favoured the extra-vesical Lich-Gregoir technique for reduced overall complications (specifically urine leak, stricture and post-operative haematuria). Fewer urinary tract infections (UTIs) were observed with the extra-vesical approach when compared with the intra-vesical technique in one RCT [113].

The donor ureter should be kept as short as possible with peri-ureteric fat preserved to ensure adequate ureteric blood supply. The location on the bladder to position an extra-vesical anastomosis was shown in one small RCT to be advantageous at the posterior bladder rather than anterior position to facilitate future endoscopic manipulation if needed and reported less hydronephrosis post stent removal [114]. Pyelo- or uretero-ureterostomy to the ipsilateral native ureter has been described as a primary technique in recipients with non-refluxing native ureters [115]. In cases where donor ureter has been damaged at retrieval then pyelo-native-ureterostomy or pyelo-neo-cystotomy can be performed. Mono-filament absorbable sutures should be used for the urinary anastomosis to prevent stone formation around the suture material [116].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform Lich-Gregoir extra-vesical ureteric anastomosis technique to minimise urinary tract complications in renal transplant recipients with normal urological anatomy.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyelo/uretero-ureteral anastomosis is an alternative especially for a very short or poorly vascularised transplant ureter.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The transplant ureteric anastomosis can be performed with or without a ureteric stent. If a stent is placed a second procedure is generally required for removal. A Cochrane review [117] concluded that stents are recommended to reduce major urological complications, especially urinary leak. The optimal timing for stent removal has yet to be defined but if left over 30 days is associated with more UTIs [118].

Most commonly, stents are removed with local anaesthetic flexible cystoscopy unless there is a need to combine with another procedure warranting general anaesthetic. Various techniques to reduce the morbidity of a second procedure involve tying the stent to the catheter or percutaneous stents but evidence is not yet available as to whether this is beneficial.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use transplant ureteric stents prophylactically to prevent major urinary complications.</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Duplex ureters are not infrequently identified at organ retrieval/kidney benching or during work-up for living donor nephrectomy [119, 120]. Duplex ureters can be anastomosed together and then joined to the bladder as one unit (double pant) or kept as two separate anastomoses. This also applies to the two single ureters in DKT in adults or with en-bloc transplantation from paediatric donors. The arguments for two separate ureteric anastomoses to the bladder are that an already tenuous blood supply may be further compromised with added suturing and handling, and if there is an issue with one ureter the other should remain unaffected. The advantages to forming one single (two ureter) anastomosis to the bladder are that only one cystotomy is needed; it may be faster and complications may be reduced. There is a lack of high quality evidence relating to duplex ureters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anastomose duplex ureters to the bladder either separately or as a combined single anastomosis.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.5.4 Transplantation/ureteric implantation in abnormal urogenital tract

The following points should be considered when performing kidney transplantation in the abnormal urogenital tract:

- In patients with an ileal conduit, a kidney transplant may be placed upside down to align the ureter to the conduit and avoid a redundant ureter [121].
- The technique used to implant transplant ureter(s) into an ileal conduit is the same as the method used with native ureter(s) (Bricker; Wallace).
- In bladder augmentation or continent pouches, ureters should be implanted with a tunnel technique or extra-vesically (Lich-Gregoir). The latter is favoured in most patients.
- In patients with a Mitrofanoff catheterisable stoma or continent ileo-caecal pouch with catheterisable stoma, consideration should be given to the positioning of the catheterisable stoma (umbilical or iliac fossa - usually right-side) with clear communication with the transplant surgeons so that the position of any future transplant kidney is not compromised. If an intraperitoneal placement of a future kidney transplant is likely, then placement of a Mitrofanoff existing in the iliac fossa is preferable at the umbilicus. If a future kidney transplant is likely in the right iliac fossa then placement of a Mitrofanoff exiting at the umbilicus or left iliac fossa may be preferable.

3.1.6 Donor complications

Living-donor nephrectomy, like any other intervention, is potentially associated with complications and mortality. However, the fact that the operation is performed on a healthy individual amplifies the relevance of any complications. Potential complications should be included in the process of informed consent.

Reported surgical mortality is 0.01% to 0.03% with no apparent alteration due to changes in surgical techniques or donor selection in recent years [122, 123]. According to a recent systematic review (190 studies) and meta-analysis (40 studies) on complications in minimally invasive LDN, reporting on a total of 32,308 LDNs, intra-operative complications occur in 2.2% (the most common being bleeding in 1.5% and injury to other organs in 0.8%) and post-operative complications occur in 7% (infectious complications in 2.6% and bleeding in 1%) [122]. Conversion to open surgery was reported in 1.1%, half due to bleeding and half due to injury to other organs. Surgical re-interventions occurred in 0.6%; the majority due to bleeding or to evacuate a haematoma [122]. A low trigger for conversion or re-operation should be observed in order to minimise the risk of serious complications.

A recent review looked for complications in 14,964 LDNs performed in the U.S. from 2008-2012 and found an overall peri-operative complication rate of 16.8%, gastrointestinal (4.4%), bleeding (3.0%), respiratory (2.5%), surgical/anaesthesia-related injuries (2.4%), and “other” complications (6.6%). Among the sample, 2.4% required intensive care and in-hospital mortality was 0.007% [11].

Major Clavien Classification of Surgical Complications grade IV or higher affected 2.5% of donors. Risk factors for Clavien grade IV or higher events included obesity (adjusted odds ratio [aOR] 1.55, p = 0.0005), pre-donation haematologic (aOR 2.78, p = 0.0002), psychiatric conditions (aOR 1.45, p = 0.04) and robotic nephrectomy (aOR 2.07, p = 0.002). An annual centre volume > 50 (aOR 0.55, p < 0.0001) was associated with lower risk [11].

3.1.6.1 Long-term complications

Long-term complications are mostly related to the single-kidney condition. Renal function in living donors decreases after donation before improving for many years, however, in the long run it shows signs of slight deterioration [124, 125]. There is a steady increase in the incidence of proteinuria and hypertension, yet the incidence of end-stage renal disease (0.4-1.1%) does not differ from the general population [124-127]. Long-
term risk of death is no higher than for an age- and co-morbidity-matched population [123, 126].

Health related quality of life (HRQoL), including mental condition, remains on average better than the general population after donation [126-128]. However, some donors experience significant deterioration in their perceived QoL [128]. While global HRQoL is comparable or superior to population normative data, some factors identifiable around time of donation including longer recovery, financial stressors, younger age, higher body mass index (BMI), lower education, smoking and higher expectations prior to donation, may identify donors more likely to develop poor HRQoL, providing an opportunity for intervention [126-128].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Restrict living donor nephrectomy to specialised, preferably high volume, centres.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer long-term follow-up to all living kidney donors.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.1.7 Recipient complications

3.1.7.1 General complications

Surgical complications during and after kidney transplantation may expose the recipient to an increased risk of morbidity and mortality. The incidence and management of such complications is therefore of primary importance [112, 118, 129-141]. We herein describe in detail the most common surgical complications in renal transplantation.

3.1.7.2 Haemorrhage

Haematomas are usually a minor complication in renal transplantation. Their incidence is reported to be between 0.2-25% [142, 143]. Small and asymptomatic hematomas do not usually require any intervention. In case of larger haematomas, clinical signs and symptoms due to external pressure with graft dysfunction and/or thrombotic graft vessels complications can be present. These cases may be treated by percutaneous drainage under computed tomography (CT) or ultrasound (US) guidance or may require surgical treatment [142].

3.1.7.3 Arterial thrombosis

Transplant renal artery thrombosis is a rare complication with a prevalence ranging from 0.5-3.5% [144]. Usually, it is a consequence of a technical error during the anastomosis although other causes may be related to both the donor and recipient’s artery condition (i.e. atherosclerosis), intimal rupture during kidney harvesting, acute rejection episodes, external compression by haematoma or lymphocele, hypercoagulative state, severe hypotension, and toxicity of immunosuppressive agents (cyclosporine or sirolimus) [145]. The clinical manifestations are acute reduction of urine output and the elevation of renal function tests, often resulting in graft loss [142]. The diagnosis is obtained with eco-colour-doppler [142]. Surgical exploration is usually recommended to evaluate the status of the graft. In the rare event the graft appears salvageable, a thrombectomy must be performed. In this situation, the iliac artery is clamped and an arteriotomy versus a dissection of the vascular anastomosis must be performed in order to remove the clot. The graft can be flushed on site and re-vascularised [142]. Unfortunately, in the majority of the situations, the graft is not perfused and therefore an allograft nephrectomy must be performed [142]. Alternatively, thrombolytic agent administration through a catheter directly into the transplant renal artery can be an efficient treatment [144], after the first ten to fourteen post-transplantation days [142].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform ultrasound-colour-doppler in case of suspected graft thrombosis.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform surgical exploration in case of ultrasound finding of poor graft perfusion.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If arterial thrombosis is confirmed intra-operatively, perform a surgical thrombectomy in case of a salvageable graft or an allograft nephrectomy in case of a non-viable graft.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not perform directed injection of thrombolytic agents in the renal artery during the first ten to fourteen post-transplantation days due to the high risk of bleeding.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.7.4 Venous thrombosis

Transplant renal vein thrombosis is an early complication (prevalence 0.5-4%) and one of the most important causes of graft loss during the first post-operative month [146]. The aetiology includes technical errors and/or difficulties during surgery [142] and the hypercoagulative state of the recipient [147, 148]. Colour-doppler-flow-ultrasonography shows absence of venous flow with an abnormal arterial signal (usually a plateau-like reversed diastolic flow). Furthermore, it is common to see an enlargement of the graft due to venous congestion [149].
Surgical exploration is usually recommended despite the fact that the majority of the cases will result in graft loss. In those cases where the venous thrombosis has not resulted in kidney loss at surgical exploration, a venotomy with surgical thrombectomy after clamping the iliac vein can be performed. Alternatively an explantation and subsequent re-implantation can be considered [142]. Thrombolytic agents can also be used, however their results have not been satisfactory [142, 150].

### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform ultrasound-colour-doppler in case of suspected graft thrombosis.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform surgical exploration in case of ultrasound finding of poor graft perfusion.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If venous thrombosis is confirmed intra-operatively, perform a surgical thrombectomy in case of a salvageable graft or an allograft nephrectomy in case of a non-viable graft.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmacologic prophylaxis to prevent transplant renal vein thrombosis is not currently recommended.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.7.5  **Transplant renal artery stenosis.**

The incidence of transplant renal artery stenosis is 1-25% [151, 152]. Risk factors include small calibre and atherosclerosis of the donor artery, trauma to donor artery at procurement, absence of arterial patch, suturing technique (interrupted versus continuous), and damage to the iliac artery during transplantation [153, 154]. It is more common at the site of the anastomosis [153, 154]. It can be suspected in case of arterial hypertension refractory to medical treatment and/or an increase in serum creatinine without hydronephrosis or urinary infection (30). The diagnosis is performed by US-colour-doppler, showing a peak systolic velocity (PSV) of > 200 cm/s in the graft renal artery [153]. In cases of doubt a magnetic resonance angiogram (MRA) or a CT angiogram (CTA) can be performed [155]. It is important to determine whether the stenosis is haemodynamically significant or not. Usually, a stenosis of over 50% is considered a risk for kidney impairment [156]. In case of mild stenosis (< 50%) and absence of symptoms with no deterioration of the allograft, the management is normally conservative although a strict follow-up with US-colour-doppler and clinical parameters has to be adopted due to the possible risk of graft failure [153]. In cases of clinically significant stenosis and/or > 50% on US-colour-doppler, a confirmatory angiogram should be performed. If confirmed and a decision to treat is taken, treatments include percutaneous transluminal angioplasty/stent or surgical intervention. Interventional radiology is typically the first choice although patients considered unsuitable for radiological angioplasty due to recent transplant, multiple, long and narrow stenosis, or after failure of angioplasty may benefit from surgical treatment [153, 154].

### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suspect transplant renal artery stenosis in case of refractory arterial hypertension and/or an increasing in serum creatinine without hydronephrosis/infections.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform ultrasound-colour-doppler to diagnose an arterial stenosis.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider a magnetic resonance or computed tomography angiogram in case of undetermined results on ultrasound.</td>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percutaneous transluminal angioplasty/stent should be the first-line treatment if feasible.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer surgical treatment in case of recent transplant, multiple, long and narrow stenosis, or after failure of angioplasty.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.7.6  **Arteriovenous fistulae and pseudo-aneurysms after renal biopsy**

Percutaneous biopsy may result in arteriovenous (AV) fistulae and/or intrarenal pseudo-aneurysms in 1-18% of cases [157]. The aetiology of the AV fistula is related to the simultaneous injury of adjacent arterial and venous branches. A pseudo-aneurysm occurs when only the arterial branch is damaged. Both conditions are diagnosed with US-colour-doppler [142]. The majority of AV fistulae are asymptomatic, resolving in one to two years spontaneously, whilst approximately 30% of them persist and become symptomatic. Typically, the symptoms are hypertension, haematuria, and graft dysfunction due to shunting between arterial and venous vessels. There is an increased risk of spontaneous rupture in case of enlarging pseudo-aneurysms. For both AV fistulae and pseudo-aneurysm, angiographic selective or super selective embolisation represents the treatment of choice [158]. Partial or radical allograft nephrectomy is currently considered the last option [142].
### 3.1.7.7 Lymphocele

Lymphocele is a relatively common (1-26%) complication [159]. There is a significant aetiological association with diabetes, m-TOR inhibitors (i.e. Sirolimus) therapy, and acute rejection [160]. For large and symptomatic lymphocele, laparoscopic fenestration is associated with the lowest overall recurrence (8%) and complication (14%) rate compared to open surgery and aspiration therapy [161]. Placement of a percutaneous drain (i.e. Fr Pig-Tail) is an option with a success rate as high as 50% [161]. Percutaneous aspiration can be performed although the recurrence rate can be as high as 95% [161], with an increased risk of local infection (6% - 17%) [161]. Furthermore, sclerosant agents such as ethanol, fibrin sealant, gentamicin, or octreotide reduce the recurrence rate compared to simple aspiration [161, 162].

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.1.7.8 Urinary leak

Urinary leakage occurs in 0-9.3% of cases [163]. Anastomotic urine leaks can be ureteral or vesical [164]. Ureteral necrosis and/or suture failure are the most important causes [165, 166]. Non-technical risk factors include recipient age, number of renal arteries, site of arterial anastomosis, occurrence of acute rejection episodes, bladder problems, and immunosuppressive regimen [167]. Urinary leak can be suspected by the urine output and the creatinine level in the drain fluid [165]. In order to decrease the risk of ureteral necrosis, it is important to preserve vascularisation of the distal ureter [165]. Furthermore, the routine use of JJ-stent is recommended [166, 168]. The management of urinary leak depends on the location (renal pelvis, proximal or distal ureter, and bladder), the time of appearance and the volume of the leak. For early and low volume urine leaks the treatment may be conservative (i.e. urethral catheter, percutaneous nephrostomy and JJ-stent) [169]. In case of failure of the conservative management, or massive leak, surgical repair must be undertaken. Ureteral re-implantation directly to the bladder or to the native ureter provide similar results [169, 170].

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.1.7.9 Ureteral stenosis

Ureteral stenosis is a common complication in recipients, with an incidence of 0.6-10.5% [171]. Early stenosis (within three months of surgery) is usually caused by surgical technique or compromised ureteral blood supply during surgery. Late stenosis (after > six months) is provoked by infection, fibrosis, progressive vascular disease and/or rejection [165, 172]. Clinically significant ureteral stricture should be considered when persistent hydronephrosis on US occurs in association with impaired renal function. The first approach in the management of stricture is the placement of a percutaneous nephrostomy tube with an antegrade pyelogram [171]. The following treatment options depend mainly on the timing, recoverable kidney function, anatomy of the stricture, patient body habitus/comorbidities, and surgeon preference. Strictures < 3 cm in length may be treated endoscopically either with percutaneous balloon dilation or antegrade flexible ureteroscopy and holmium laser incision. In this scenario the success rate approaches 50% [173-175]. In case of a recurrence after a primary endourological approach and/or stricture > 3 cm in length, surgical reconstruction should be performed [172] including ureteral direct re-implantation, pyelo-vesical re-implantation (with or without psoas-hitch and/or Boari Flap) or in cases with a normal native ureter, uretero-ureterostomy [176, 177].

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>GR</th>
<th>LE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In case of ureteral stricture, place a nephrostomy tube for both kidney decompression and stricture diagnosis via an antegrade pyelogram.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endoscopic management (percutaneous balloon dilation or antegrade flexible ureteroscopy and holmium laser incision) should be considered for strictures &lt; 3 cm in length.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat late stricture recurrence and/or stricture &gt; 3 cm in length with surgical reconstruction in appropriate recipients.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3.1.7.10 Haematuria**

The incidence of haematuria ranges from 1-34% [163]. According to the literature, the Lich-Gregoire technique provides the lowest incidence of haematuria (9). Furthermore, meticulous haemostasis during re-implantation results in minimal bleeding [112, 163, 164]. Bladder irrigation is the first line of treatment. Some cases require cystoscopy with evacuation of clots and/or fulguration of bleeding sites [163].

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>An endoscopic approach may be the first option for the treatment of symptomatic reflux.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In case of recurrence (endoscopic failure), a surgical approach should be adopted.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3.1.7.11 Reflux and acute pyelonephritis**

The frequency of vesicoureteral reflux is between 1-86% [163, 178]. Acute graft pyelonephritis occurs in 13% of graft recipients. Patients with lower tract urinary infections and cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection present a higher risk of acute graft pyelonephritis [179]. Endoscopic injection of dextranomer/hyaluronic acid copolymer may be the first approach for treatment of vesicoureteral reflux associated with acute pyelonephritis, with a success rate ranging from 57.9% after the first injection to 78.9% after the second injection [180]. Ureteral re-implantation or pyelo-ureterostomy with the native ureter is a viable second treatment option [176].

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Evaluate the causes of urolithiasis in the recipient.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat ureteral obstruction due to a stone with a percutaneous nephrostomy tube or JJ-stent placement.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy should be considered as the first-line treatment option for stones &lt; 15 mm.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antegrade/retrograde ureteroscopy and percutaneous nephrolithotomy may be considered as first-or second-line treatment options as they provide high stone-free rates.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3.1.7.12 Kidney stones**

Urolithiasis occurs in 0.2-1.7% of recipients [181, 182]. The most frequent causes are hyper filtration, renal tubular acidosis, recurrent UTIs, hypocitraturia, hyperoxaluria, hyperuricemia, excessive alkaline urine, persistent tertiary hyperparathyroidism and ureteral strictures [183, 184]. Another risk factor can be urinary anastomosis, with the lowest stone rate using Lich-Gregoir technique [182]. The most frequent clinical signs are fever, increased serum creatinine level, decreased urine output, and haematuria. Pain is usually not referred to due to impaired innervation. A US examination usually provides the diagnosis although a CT of the kidneys, ureters and bladder may be needed to confirm the location and size of the stone [183]. The management depends on the location and size of the stone, and the presence of obstruction. In case of obstructive stones first-line treatment includes placement of a nephrostomy tube, or in some occasions a JJ-stent [185]. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (ESWL) is usually considered the first approach for stones < 15 mm with stone-free rate varying between 40 and 80% depending on the location of the stone [185]. Ureteroscopy, including antegrade and retrograde approaches, can be considered for stones < 20 mm, with a success rate of up to 67% [115, 182, 186]. For larger stones (> 20 mm), percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PNL) can be offered with a high overall effective stone-free rate (61). In cases of large impacted stones, uretero-ureteral anastomosis, pyelo-ureteral anastomosis, or uretero-vesical re-implantation may provide excellent results for both stone and ureteral obstruction [182].

**Recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Evaluate the causes of urolithiasis in the recipient.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat ureteral obstruction due to a stone with a percutaneous nephrostomy tube or JJ-stent placement.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy should be considered as the first-line treatment option for stones &lt; 15 mm.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antegrade/retrograde ureteroscopy and percutaneous nephrolithotomy may be considered as first-or second-line treatment options as they provide high stone-free rates.</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3.1.7.13 Wound infection**

Wound infections occur in about 4% of the cases. Risk factors include recipients > 60 years, high BMI, anemia, hypoalbuminemia, long surgical times (> 200 min) [187]. Bacteria commonly involved are *Enterobacteriaceae*, *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Pseudomonas* [176]. Subcutaneous sutures, pre-dialysis transplantation, sealing or ligation of lymphatic trunks, prophylactic fenestration, reducing corticosteroid load,
and avoiding sirolimus/everolimus therapy can decrease wound complication rates [187].

3.1.7.14 Incisional hernia

Incisional hernia occurs in approximately 4% of the open kidney transplantations. Risk factors include age, obesity, diabetes, haematoma, rejection, re-operation through the same transplant incision and use of m-TOR inhibitors. Mesh infection is a risk factor for incisional hernia recurrence [188]. Open and laparoscopic repair approaches are safe and effective [188].

3.1.8 Matching of donors and recipients

Histocompatibility antigens show remarkable polymorphism and human leukocyte antigen (HLA) matching is still very important in kidney transplantation as transplant outcome correlates with the number of HLA mismatches [189-192]. Human leukocyte antigen incompatibility can result in proliferation and activation of the recipient’s CD4+ and CD8+ T-cells with concomitant activation of B-cell allo-antibody production. This may lead to cellular and humoral graft rejection. Matching should concentrate on HLA antigens, which impact outcome. Human leukocyte antigens A, B, C as well as DR must be determined in all potential recipients and donors according to current guidelines and national allocation rules [189-194]. Additional, it is recommended to determine HLA-DQ antigens of donor and recipient. Furthermore, HLA-DP antigen characterisation may be performed, especially for sensitised recipients [189-194].

All patients registered for renal transplantation must have their serum screened for anti-HLA antibodies, which are particularly common after pregnancy, previous transplant, transplant rejection, and blood transfusions [189-194]. Thorough pre-transplant testing for HLA antibodies must be performed according to current recommendations [189-194]. Sera from potential organ recipients should be screened for HLA-specific antibodies every three months or as stipulated by the national and/or international organ exchange organisations [189-194]. In addition, screening for HLA-specific antibodies should be carried out at two and four weeks after every immunising event, e.g. blood transfusion, transplantation, pregnancy, and graft explantation [189-194]. Highly sensitised patients should have prioritised access to special allocation programs [191, 192, 194], such as the acceptable mismatch (AM) programme of Eurotransplant [195]. A careful analysis of HLA antibody specificities must be carried out to avoid unacceptable HLA antigens and to determine acceptable HLA antigens in potential donors, who are expected to give a negative cross-match result. The definition of unacceptable HLA antigens should be implemented according to local allocation rules and international recommendations [189-193, 196]. The information on unacceptable HLA antigens should be highlighted with the patient’s details in the database of the national kidney-sharing programme, preventing the unnecessary transport of kidneys to recipients with high antibody sensitivity.

To avoid hyper-acute rejection (HAR), adequate (e.g. CDC, virtual) cross-match tests must be performed before each kidney and combined kidney/pancreas transplantation in accordance with national and international recommendations [189-192, 194].

Laboratories which provide HLA-testing, HLA antibody testing and cross-matching for transplant centres must have valid accreditation to ensure accuracy and reliability [189-193]. They must follow the standards of national and international organisations, such as the European Federation for Immunogenetics [194].

Previously, compatibility for ABO blood group antigens and HLA antigens was of critical importance in kidney transplantation. This may change in the future, e.g. in the new U.S. allocation system A2 and A2B donors are transplanted into B recipients [192]. To avoid an increasing imbalance between demand and supply in deceased-donor kidney transplantation in O recipients, ABO identity is demanded by several organ allocation organisations with a few exceptions, e.g. as in zero HLA-A+B+DR-mismatch kidneys [192, 193]. With the introduction of antibody elimination methods, potent immunosuppression and novel agents (e.g. anti B-cell drugs), successful ABO-incompatible living donor transplantations, with good long-term outcomes are possible [197, 198]. However, higher costs and infection rates have been described.

Even the barrier of a positive cross-match due to preformed HLA antibodies is under discussion with newer “desensitisation” techniques available in cases with available living donors [199, 200]. Success rates are lower, antibody-mediated rejections are frequent, but survival may be better compared to waiting list survival on dialysis. While this is a rapidly evolving field, further research is needed to define standard protocols. Until then such “desensitisation” protocols are experimental and patients undergoing “desensitisation” should be treated in specialised centres, where outcomes are documented. Patients should be informed adequately on the risks and limitations and alternative strategies (e.g. acceptable miss-match programmes, cross-over transplantation and donor chains) should be discussed.
Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Determine the ABO blood group and the human leukocyte antigen A, B, C and DR phenotypes for all candidates awaiting kidney transplantation.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testing of donor and recipient for human leukocyte antigen DQ is recommended and human leukocyte antigen DP testing may be performed for sensitised patients.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform thorough testing for HLA antibodies before transplantation.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform adequate cross-match tests to avoid hyper-acute rejection, before each kidney and combined kidney/pancreas transplantation.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.1.9  **Immunosuppression after kidney transplantation**

The principle underlying successful immunosuppression is ‘the balance of survival’. Practitioners must prescribe a dosage of drug high enough to suppress rejection without endangering the recipient’s health. Increased understanding of immune rejection has led to the development of safe modern immunosuppressives [201, 202], which suppress sensitised lymphocyte activity against a transplant. Immunosuppression is particularly important during the initial post-transplant period when there is a high incidence of early post-transplant rejection.

In later post-operative stages, ‘graft adaptation’ occurs, resulting in the very low rejection rates seen in maintenance patients. Rejection prophylaxis should therefore be reduced over time by steroid tapering and gradual lowering of calcineurin inhibitor (CNI) [201-203].

Non-specific side effects of immunosuppression include a higher risk of malignancy and infection, particularly opportunistic infections [201-203]. All immunosuppressants also have dose-dependent specific side effects. Current immunosuppressive protocols aim to reduce drug-specific side effects using a synergistic regimen. A truly synergistic regimen allows profound dose reductions of immunosuppressive drugs; therefore, reducing side effects whilst still maintaining efficacy due to the synergistic effects of the immunosuppressants.

The currently recommended standard initial immunosuppression regime provides excellent efficacy with good tolerability [201-204]. It is given to most patients and consists of:
- calcineurin inhibitors (preferably tacrolimus, alternatively cyclosporine);
- mycophenolate (MMF or enteric-coated mycophenolate sodium [EC-MPS]);
- steroids (prednisolone or methylprednisolone);
- induction therapy (preferably basiliximab in low and standard risk patients and anti-thymocyte globulin (ATG) in high risk patients).

This multidrug regimen reflects the current standard of care for the majority of transplant recipients worldwide [201-203] and may be modified according to local needs and immunological risk. This standard regimen is likely to change as new immunosuppressive drugs and new treatment regimens are developed [201-203]. In addition, any initial drug regimen will need to be tailored to the individual needs of a patient as suggested by the appearance of side effects, lack of efficacy or protocol-driven requirements.

### 3.1.9.1  **Calcineurin inhibitors**

Both cyclosporine and tacrolimus have significant side effects that are hazardous to the graft and patient [201-207]. Most importantly, both are nephrotoxic, and long-term use is an important cause of chronic allograft dysfunction, eventually leading to graft loss or severe chronic kidney disease in recipients of non-renal organs. Both CNIs are considered to be ‘critical-dose’ drugs, so that any deviations from exposure can lead to severe toxicity or failure of efficacy. Because of the narrow therapeutic window and the potential for drug-to-drug interaction, CNIs should be monitored using trough levels, which provide a reasonable estimate for exposure.

Meta-analysis of tacrolimus and cyclosporine has demonstrated similar outcomes with respect to overall patient and graft survival [201-207]. Tacrolimus provided better rejection prophylaxis and were associated with better graft survival, when censored for death in some analyses. Renal function was favourable for tacrolimus-treated patients, but did not reach statistical significance in most analyses. Therefore, both CNIs can be used for the effective prevention of acute rejection, but due to higher efficacy tacrolimus is recommended by current guidelines as first-line CNI [202].
For both CNIs several different formulations are available. Precautions (e.g. close surveillance and determination of drug levels) should be instituted after conversion from one formulation to another [208-212]. In case of specific side effects of a CNI (e.g. hirsutism, alopecia, gingival hyperplasia, diabetes, polyoma nephropathy) conversion to the other CNI can be a successful strategy to reduce side effects [201-203]. Due to differences in the efficacy and safety profile, the choice of CNI should include the individual risks and benefits for each patient.

Despite their side effects, CNIs have been a cornerstone of modern immunosuppressive regimens for more than twenty years as they have resulted in an exemplary improvement in kidney graft survival [201, 202]. Future protocols aim to minimise or even eliminate CNIs [203, 206, 213, 214]. However, until such strategies provide superior outcomes, CNIs remain the standard of care [201, 202, 215]. For severe CNI-related side effects, CNI withdrawal, replacement, or profound reduction may be needed [201, 203, 206, 213, 214]. Special attention should be paid to maintenance patients, who may need less CNIs than previously thought [201, 203, 214].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use calcineurin inhibitors for rejection prophylaxis as they represent current best practice pending publication of long-term results using newer agents.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choose a calcineurin inhibitor having taking in to account the immunological risk, characteristics, concomitant immunosuppression, and socio-economic factors of the recipient.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use tacrolimus as first-line calcineurin inhibitor due to its higher efficacy.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Upgraded based on panel consensus.

3.1.9.2 Mycophenolates (MPA)
The mycophenolates, MMF and EC-MPS, are based on mycophenolic acid (MPA), which inhibits inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase (IMPDH) [216-220]. This is the rate-limiting step for the synthesis of guanosine monophosphate in the de novo purine pathway. As the function and proliferation of lymphocytes is more dependent on de novo purine nucleotide synthesis compared to other cell types, IMPDH inhibitors may provide more specific lymphocyte-targeted immunosuppression. The co-administration of mycophenolate with prednisolone and CNI has resulted in a profound reduction of biopsy-proven rejections [201, 204, 216-220]. Mycophenolic acid is not nephrotoxic; however, it inhibits bone marrow function and may cause CMV infections and gastrointestinal side effects, particularly diarrhoea [216-220]. There is also a higher incidence of polyoma nephropathy, especially when mycophenolate is combined with tacrolimus [221].

Both MPA formulations are equally effective with an almost identical safety profile [201, 216-220], though some prospective studies suggest a better gastrointestinal side-effect profile for EC-MPS in patients who have suffered from MMF-related gastrointestinal complaints, although firm evidence from prospective randomised studies is lacking [216-220].

Standard doses in combination with cyclosporine are MMF 1 g or EC-MPS 720 mg twice daily, although higher initial doses have been suggested [201, 202, 216-220]. Mycophenolic acid is not formally approved for use with tacrolimus, though this is the most frequently used drug combination in many countries worldwide and recommended by guidelines [202]. Despite its frequent use with tacrolimus, there is insufficient evidence to support the optimal dosage for this combination [201, 216, 218]. Tacrolimus has no influence on MPA exposure and leads to approximately 30% higher MPA exposure compared to cyclosporine. Most transplant centres use the same starting dose as in cyclosporine-treated patients, however dose reductions are frequent, especially because of gastrointestinal side effects. Due to the high incidence of side effects, some centres perform a protocol-driven MPA dose reduction in tacrolimus treated patients [216, 218]. Regular monitoring for polyoma is recommended in patients given MPA combined with tacrolimus [201, 221].

Due to a higher incidence of CMV disease with MPA [220], either CMV prophylaxis or a pre-emptive strategy with regular screening for CMV viraemia should be instituted [201, 222]. Cytomegalovirus prophylaxis with antiviral medications (e.g. valganciclovir) should be used routinely in CMV positive recipients and in CMV negative recipients of CMV positive organ transplants, because prophylaxis has recently been shown to reduce CMV disease, CMV-associated mortality in solid organ transplant recipients, and leads to better long-term graft survival in kidney allograft recipients.

The benefit for MPA drug monitoring is uncertain and currently not recommended for the majority of patients [216, 218, 219, 223].
In maintenance patients, the potency of MPA can be used for successful steroid withdrawal in most patients [224] or for substantial dose reductions of nephrotoxic CNIs, which may lead to better renal function [201-204, 206, 214]. Although there have been several studies of the potential for CNI-free protocols with MPA and steroids, complete CNI avoidance or withdrawal over the first three years has been associated with a substantially increased rejection risk and even worse outcomes in prospective randomised studies [201, 203, 214]. In contrast, CNI withdrawal under MPA and steroids appeared to be safe in long-term maintenance patients beyond five years post-transplant and resulted in improved renal function [201, 203, 206, 214, 225].

**Recommendation**

Administer mycophenolate as part of the initial immunosuppressive regimen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Administer mycophenolate as part of the initial immunosuppressive regimen.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.1.9.3 Azathioprine

Mycophenolate is now routinely used as a primary therapy in place of azathioprine in most units worldwide. In comparison to azathioprine, MPA reduced rejection rates significantly in prospective randomised trials [201, 202, 204, 216-220]. Although a large, prospective study found that azathioprine may give acceptable results in a low-risk population [226], azathioprine is usually reserved for patients who cannot tolerate MPA [201, 202, 216, 217, 219]. When added to dual therapy with cyclosporine and steroids, a meta-analysis found no significant benefit for azathioprine with respect to major outcome parameters [227].

**Recommendation**

Azathioprine may be used in a low-risk population as a immunosuppressive drug, especially for those intolerant to mycophenolate formulations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Azathioprine may be used in a low-risk population as a immunosuppressive drug, especially for those intolerant to mycophenolate formulations.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.1.9.4 Steroids

Steroids have a large number of side effects [201-203, 224], especially with long-term use. Most practitioners still consider steroids (either prednisolone or methylprednisolone) to be a fundamental adjunct to primary immunosuppression, even though successful steroid withdrawal has been achieved in the vast majority of patients in many prospective, randomised trials [201, 203, 204, 224]. These trials suggest the risk of steroid withdrawal depends on the use of concomitant immuno-suppressive medication, immunological risk, ethnicity, and time after transplantation. Although the risk of rejection diminishes over time, potential benefits may be less prominent after a prolonged steroid treatment period. [201-204, 224].

**Recommendation**

Initial steroid therapy should be part of immunosuppression in the peri-operative and early post-transplant period.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial steroid therapy should be part of immunosuppression in the peri-operative and early post-transplant period.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommendation**

Consider steroid withdrawal in standard immunological risk patients on combination therapy with calcineurin inhibitors and mycophenolic acid after the early post-transplant period.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consider steroid withdrawal in standard immunological risk patients on combination therapy with calcineurin inhibitors and mycophenolic acid after the early post-transplant period.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.1.9.5 Inhibitors of the mammalian target of rapamycin

The immunosuppressants, sirolimus and everolimus, inhibit the mammalian target of rapamycin (m-TOR) and suppress lymphocyte proliferation and differentiation [201, 213, 228-230]. They inhibit multiple intracellular pathways and block cytokine signals for T-cell proliferation. Similar effects are seen on B-cells, endothelial cells, fibroblasts, and tumour cells. Inhibitors of m-TOR are as effective as MPA when combined with CNIs in preventing rejection [201, 204, 213, 228-230]. However, m-TOR inhibitors exhibit dose-dependent bone marrow toxicity [201, 213, 228-230]. Other potential side effects include hyperlipidaemia, oedema, development of lymphoedema, wound-healing problems, pneumonitis, proteinuria, and impaired fertility.

To date, no prospective comparative studies have been carried out on the m-TOR inhibitors sirolimus and everolimus. Both m-TOR inhibitors have an almost identical side effect profile and mainly differ in their pharmacokinetic properties [201, 213, 228-231]. Sirolimus has a half-life of about 60 hours, is given once a day and is licensed for prophylaxis of kidney recipients only. Everolimus has a half-life of about 24 hours, is licensed for kidney, liver and heart recipients and is given twice a day. Everolimus is licenced for use with cyclosporine and can be given simultaneously with cyclosporine, while sirolimus should be given four hours after cyclosporine. Sirolimus is also licensed in combination therapy with steroids for cyclosporine withdrawal from combination therapy with cyclosporine.

Therapeutic monitoring of trough levels is recommended because of the narrow therapeutic window and the risk of drug-to-drug interactions [201, 213, 228-231].
When combined with CNIs, antimicrobial prophylaxis for *Pneumocystis jirovecii* pneumonia should be administered for one year following transplantation, e.g. low-dose cotrimoxazole [201, 228-230]. Most importantly, combination therapy with CNIs aggravates CNI-induced nephrotoxicity, although m-TOR inhibitors themselves are non-nephrotoxic [201]. Several studies suggest less favourable outcomes for this combination, especially if CNIs are maintained at standard dosages [201, 204, 206]. Calcineurin inhibitor dosage should therefore be substantially reduced in combination therapy with m-TOR inhibitors, which seems to have no impact on efficacy, due to the highly synergistic potential of this combination therapy [213, 228-232].

Several studies suggest m-TOR inhibitors cannot replace CNIs in the initial phase after transplantation due to lower efficacy and a less favourable side effect profile, particularly wound healing problems and lymphocele [201, 203, 204, 213, 228-230, 232]. Other trials suggest that m-TOR inhibitors may replace CNI at later stages, e.g. three months after transplantation, with improvements in renal function [201, 203, 204, 206, 213, 228-230, 232]. However, there is an increased risk of rejection and development of HLA antibodies [201, 203, 213, 233], which may be offset by the benefit of the non-nephrotoxic immunosuppression. To date, limited data on long-term follow-up of m-TOR-treated patients have been reported.

Proteinuria and poor renal function at conversion are associated with inferior outcomes [201, 203, 213, 228-230]. Conversion from CNIs is not advisable in patients with proteinuria > 800 mg/day, and a cautious and individual approach should be followed in patients with GFR < 30 mL/min.

Due to an anti-proliferative effect and a lower incidence of malignancy in m-TOR inhibitor treated patients, conversion from CNIs to m-TOR inhibitors may be beneficial for patients, who develop malignancy after transplantation, or who are at a high risk for the development of post-transplant malignancy or skin cancer [201, 203, 213, 228-230, 232, 234, 235]. Several studies and case reports have suggested that patients with Kaposi sarcoma under CNI therapy benefit from conversion to an m-TOR inhibitor [235].

In summary, m-TOR inhibitors are not recommended as initial immunosuppressive therapy due to their side effect profile and higher discontinuation rates [202]. However, m-TOR inhibitors are a well-studied alternative treatment option.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The m-TOR inhibitors, sirolimus and everolimus, may be used to effectively prevent rejection.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Significantly reduce calcineurin inhibitor dosage in a combination regimen with m-TOR inhibitors to prevent aggravated nephrotoxicity.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take into consideration impaired wound healing and prophylactic surgical measures when m-TOR inhibitors are used as part of the initial immunosuppressive regimen or when patients treated with m-TOR inhibitors undergo major surgery.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion to m-TOR inhibitors is not recommended for patients with proteinuria and poor renal function.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor blood-levels of both sirolimus and everolimus to allow for appropriate dose adjustment</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.1.9.6 Induction with Interleukin-2 receptor antibodies

Basiliximab, a high-affinity anti-interleukin-2 (IL-2) receptor monoclonal antibody is approved for rejection prophylaxis following organ transplantation [201, 202, 204, 236-238]. Basiliximab is given before transplantation and on day four post-transplant. The drug is safe, and IL-2 receptor antibodies have been shown in RCTs to reduce the prevalence of acute cellular rejection by approximately 40% [201, 202, 204, 236-238]. Meta-analyses [204, 236-238] have confirmed the efficacy, although no positive effect on patient or graft survival could be demonstrated, although large retrospective cohort studies and recent large prospective studies suggest such a benefit [201, 202]. Several large controlled trials support the efficacy and safety of quadruple therapy with tacrolimus, mycophenolate and steroids. Interleukin-2 receptor antibodies may allow early steroid withdrawal [224], although higher rejection rates were described. Most importantly, IL-2 receptor antibodies allow a substantial reduction in CNIs, while maintaining excellent efficacy and renal function [201-204, 236-238]. Therefore, this regimen is proposed as first line immunosuppression in patients with low to normal immunological risk [202].
Recommendation LE GR
Use interleukin-2 receptor antibodies for induction in patients with normal immunological risk in order to reduce incidence of acute rejection. 1 A

3.1.9.7 T-cell depleting induction therapy
Prophylactic immunosuppression regimens in many countries, particularly the U.S., use potent T-cell depleting ‘induction’ treatments [201, 202, 204, 236, 239, 240]. Most frequently, ATG is used for prevention of rejection in immunological high risk patients, as recommended by guidelines [202]. In addition these potent biological agents are used for the treatment of severe, steroid resistant rejection episodes [239].

Use of T-cell depleting antibodies in immunological low-risk patients has not been associated with improved long-term outcomes but with an increased risk of severe opportunistic infections and malignancy, particularly post-transplant lymphoproliferative disease [201, 202, 204, 236, 239, 240]. Graft rejection rates are initially lower with induction treatment, however, some studies suggest an increased rejection rate after cessation of lymphocyte depletion [239]. Some centres use these agents to provide effective rejection prophylaxis while initiating CNIs after recovery of the graft from ischaemic injury, although evidence supporting this hypothesis is lacking [239].

Recommendation LE GR
T-cell depleting antibodies may be used for induction therapy in immunologically high risk patients. 1 B

3.1.9.8 Belatacept
Belatacept is a fusion protein, which effectively blocks the CD28 co-stimulatory pathway and thereby prevents T-cell activation [213, 241, 242]. Belatacept is intravenously administered and indicated for use as part of a CNI-free regimen together with basiliximab induction, mycophenolate, and corticosteroids. Long-term data from three randomised studies of de novo kidney transplant recipients demonstrated better renal function versus cyclosporine-based immunosuppression, although rates and grades of acute rejection were higher for belatacept in the first year post-transplant [201, 204, 213, 241-244]. In patients receiving a standard deceased or living donor kidney, better graft survival was observed, while similar graft survival rates were found with ECDs. Interestingly, belatacept-treated patients had better preserved histology and developed less donor specific antibodies (DSA) compared to cyclosporine. The long-term safety profile of belatacept treated patients was similar to cyclosporine controls, less belatacept treated patients discontinued due to adverse events. In addition, the option of converting patients (either stable patients or due to CNI or m-TOR associated toxicity) was explored with promising initial results [244, 245]. Specific safety signals include a higher rate of post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorder (PTLD) (especially in Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) negative patients), more herpes infections, and tuberculosis in patients from endemic areas [213, 241, 242]. Belatacept was approved in the U.S. and in Europe for EBV positive patients, but is not yet available in many countries. Additional studies are ongoing to fully explore the value of this compound.

Recommendation LE GR
Belatacept may be used for immunosuppressive therapy in immunologically low risk patients, who have a positive Epstein-Barr virus serology. 1 B

3.1.10 Immunological complications
Immunological rejection is a common cause of early and late transplant dysfunction [202, 246-248]. There is great variation in the timing and severity of rejection episodes and how they respond to treatment. Today two main types of immunological reactions are distinguished, T-cell mediated rejections (TCMR) and antibody-mediated rejections (ABMR) [202, 246-248]. Antibody-mediated rejection and TCMR may be diagnosed together, called mixed acute rejection. Antibody-mediated rejection may occur as hyperacute rejection (HAR), acute rejection or chronic rejection. Chronic ABMR is considered as one of the leading causes of late graft loss.

The ultimate standard for the diagnosis of rejection is transplant biopsy [202], because it is impossible to differentiate acute rejection solely on clinical indicators from other causes of renal dysfunction (e.g. acute tubular necrosis, infection, disease recurrence or CNI nephrotoxicity). Therefore, all rejections should be verified by renal biopsy and biopsies should be classified according to the most recent Banff criteria [249], which are the basis for prognosis and treatment [202, 246]. Renal transplant biopsy should be conducted preferably under US control, using an automated needle biopsy system (e.g. tru-cut, biopsy gun) [202] with a 16 G needle.
to assure specimen adequacy. The biopsy procedure is considered safe but complications such as bleeding and AV fistulas may occur [202, 250, 251]. The reported risk of major complications (including substantial bleeding, macroscopic haematuria with ureteric obstruction, peritonitis or graft loss) is approximately 1%. Most important contraindications are anti-coagulant therapy including anti-platelet agents and uncontrolled hypertension.

### Recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitor transplant recipients for signs of acute rejection, particularly during the first six months post-transplant.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take regular blood samples in addition to regular monitoring of urine output and ultrasound examinations in order to detect graft dysfunction during hospitalisation.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediately rule out other potential causes of graft dysfunction in cases of suspected acute rejection. An ultrasound of the kidney transplant should be performed.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There must be routine access to ultrasound-guided biopsy of the transplant and sufficient expertise in the hospital pathology department to allow a rapid and clear-cut diagnosis of rejection or other type of allograft dysfunction.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform a renal biopsy, graded according to the most recent Banff criteria, in patients with suspected acute rejection episodes.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only if contraindications to renal biopsy are present, can 'blind' steroid bolus therapy be given.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steroid treatment for rejection may start before the renal biopsy is performed.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test patients who suffer acute rejection as soon as possible for anti-HLA antibodies against the graft.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In all patients with rejection, the immunosuppressive therapy should be re-assessed including patient adherence to the medication, which is of particular importance in late rejections.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 3.1.10.1 Hyper-acute rejection

Hyper-acute rejection is the most dramatic and destructive immunological attack on the graft [189, 202, 246, 247]. It results from circulating, complement-fixing IgG antibodies, specifically reactive against incompatible donor antigen, which engages with and destroys the vascular endothelium within minutes or hours after vascularisation. It occurs in ABO-incompatible grafts due to the presence of high titres of pre-existing iso-antibodies against blood group antigens. In ABO-matched grafts, HAR is mediated by anti-donor HLA IgG antibodies. With the development of the cross-match test before transplantation, HAR has become an extremely uncommon complication [189]. Imaging and histology reveals generalised infarction of the graft, which has to be treated by graft nephrectomy. Therefore, prevention is crucial, either by avoidance of high iso-antibodies against incompatible blood group antigens in case of an ABO-incompatible renal transplant and/or by performing a regular cross-match before transplantation (see section 3.1.8).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prevent hyper-acute rejection by adequate ABO blood group and HLA matching of donor and recipients.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 3.1.10.2 Treatment of T-cell mediated acute rejection

As only a few randomised trials have investigated different treatment options for this clinical problem, therapy is mainly based on empirical experience rather than on clinical evidence [202, 246]. Parenteral methylprednisolone (500 mg to 1 g) should be given intravenously as one pulse per day for three days. Anuria or a steep rise in the serum creatinine may indicate steroid-refractory rejection and the need for another three day course of pulsed methylprednisolone therapy [202, 246]. In addition, baseline immunosuppression should be optimised to ensure adequate drug exposure [202, 246]. In severe rejection, a conversion from cyclosporine to tacrolimus and/or from azathioprine to mycophenolate is recommended [202, 246].

T-cell depleting biological agents, such as ATG may be given in severe steroid-refractory cases [202, 239, 246]. If biological agents are used, other immunosuppression should be adapted and daily T-cell monitoring should be considered to minimise the dose of the biological agent [239]. Before immunosuppression is intensified, especially before the use of T-cell depleting agents, the prognosis of the graft should be critically assessed against the risks of the aggravated immunosuppression. The patient should be counselled adequately.
3.1.10.3 Treatment of antibody mediated rejection

Antibody mediated rejection is treated in a similar way as T-cell mediated rejection [202, 239, 246, 252-255]. Treatment relies on retrospective studies and empirical treatment guidelines. Treatment with a steroid bolus (at least three days of 500 mg/day) and adequate maintenance therapy with mycophenolate and tacrolimus and sufficient tacrolimus trough levels are common in acute ABMR [202, 246, 252-255]. Although T-cell depleting agents such as ATG appear to have limited value they are frequently used during mixed acute rejection [239]. There are controversial data on the utility of the anti-CD20 antibody, rituximab [202, 246, 252-256]. A retrospective series suggests aggravated toxicity, when rituximab is combined with ATG [257]. In order to target the antibody producing plasma cell, several centres have advocated the use of bortezomib, a proteasome inhibitor approved for the treatment of multiple myeloma [258]. So far, no prospective, randomized trials on bortezomib or other novel agents have been published and neither dose, side effects nor efficacy parameters have been evaluated in a larger cohort of patients with acute ABMR with adequate follow-up.

Some centres advocate intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) [202, 246, 252-256], which may modulate and/or suppress antibody production. Intravenous immunoglobulin alone seems insufficient for effective treatment and IVIG is used today in a multimodal regimen. Dosages vary widely from 0.2-2.0 g/kg bodyweight, and no comparative studies (e.g. on the dose or optimal concomitant immunosuppression) have been published.

In addition to drug therapy most centres also try to remove antibodies using plasmapheresis or immune-adsorption columns. Retrospective and prospective case series clearly suggest efficacy [202, 246, 252-256], although details of the procedures vary widely.

Treatment recommendations for chronic ABMR lack firm evidence, and treatment appears to be less successful [246, 252, 254]. Treatment relies on the same principles as for acute ABMR [202, 239, 246, 252-255]. Most centres have similar treatment algorithms and perform antibody elimination together with IVIG and eventually add anti-CD20 and/or bortezomib. Unfortunately, prospective trials on efficacy and side effects are lacking.

In summary, several regimens have proven some efficacy in ABMR. However, except for a beneficial effect of early antibody removal, the lack of firm evidence does not permit evidence-based recommendations for treatment.

3.1.11 Follow-up after transplantation

Long-term graft function is of critical importance for the success of a transplant [202, 203]. Therefore, regular long-term follow-up by experienced transplant physicians is essential in order to detect complications or graft dysfunction early and reassure adherence to the immunosuppressive regimen. Complications of immunosuppression occur frequently including specific complications of the different drugs as well as over immunosuppression (namely opportunistic infections and malignancy) [202, 203]. The risk of cancer and cardiac disease is several-fold higher in transplanted patients than in the general population. Cancer is a cause of significant morbidity and mortality in the transplanted population [202, 259, 260]. Cardiovascular disease is the most frequent cause of death in renal allograft recipients [202, 261, 262]. Other important long-term problems are non-adherence, the development of anti-HLA antibodies, recurrence of the original disease and CNI associated nephrotoxicity [202, 203].

3.1.11.1 Chronic allograft dysfunction/interstitial fibrosis and tubular atrophy

Many patients lose their grafts due to chronic allograft dysfunction [202, 203, 263]. Histology will usually reveal a chronic process of interstitial fibrosis and tubular atrophy (IF/TA) [264]. Some patients will have immunological chronic ABMR [265], as discussed in section 3.1.10.3. Interstitial fibrosis and tubular atrophy takes months or years to develop and is heralded by proteinuria and hypertension, with a simultaneous or delayed rise in serum
creatinine level over months [202, 263, 264]. It is likely that IF/TA is more common in patients who have had early attacks of acute rejection or infection. The main differential diagnoses is chronic nephrotoxicity [266], which is common in patients receiving CNIs, and pre-existing and/or aggravated chronic kidney damage from a marginal donor kidney [202, 263, 264].

Diagnosis is by renal biopsy [202, 263]. In patients diagnosed early, particularly if there is evidence for CNI toxicity, disease progression may be slowed by conversion to a CNI-free regimen [201-203, 263, 264]. Conversion to m-TOR inhibitors is an option for patients without significant proteinuria (<800 mg/day) but moderate renal function [201-203]. Alternatively, successful conversion to a MPA-based regimen has been described, especially in patients beyond the first three years post-transplant [201, 203, 214]. If there is intolerance to m-TOR inhibitors or MPA, conversion to belatacept or an azathioprine-based regimen may be successful, though the higher risk of rejection warrants close surveillance [44, 245]. If the risk of rejection seems too high, another option is substantial reduction of CNI under the protection of MPA [203, 214].

In patients with proteinuria, intervention with an angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor, or angiotensin II receptor blocker [202, 263] together with tight blood pressure control may slow down renal progression. Other supportive measures include the treatment of hypertension, hyperlipidaemia, diabetes, anaemia, acidosis, and bone disease [202]. However, ultimately, the patient will require another transplant (if fit enough to go on the transplant waiting list) or dialysis therapy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>GR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provide lifelong regular post-transplant follow-up by an experienced and trained transplant specialist at least every six to twelve months.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advise patients on appropriate lifestyle changes, potential complications, and the importance of adherence to their immunosuppressive regimen.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual screening should include a dermatological examination, cardiovascular history and exam, tumour screening (including a nodal examination, faecal occult screening, chest X-ray, gynaecological and urological examination), and an abdominal ultrasound, including ultrasound of the native and transplanted kidney. If appropriate further diagnostic tests should be prompted to treat or slow down the progression of any identified complication.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regularly monitor (approximately every four to eight weeks) serum creatinine, estimated glomerular filtration rate, blood pressure, urinary protein excretion, immunosuppression and complications after renal transplantation.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform an ultrasound of the graft, in case of graft dysfunction, to rule out obstruction and renal artery stenosis.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changes in renal function, blood pressure and urinary protein excretion over time should trigger further diagnostic work-up including renal biopsy, a search for infectious causes and anti-HLA antibodies.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In patients with interstitial fibrosis and tubular atrophy undergoing calcineurin inhibitor therapy and/or with histological signs suggestive for calcineurin inhibitor toxicity (e.g. arteriolar hyalinosis, striped fibrosis) consider calcineurin inhibitor reduction or withdrawal.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiate appropriate medical treatment, e.g. tight control of hypertension, diabetes, proteinuria, cardiac risk factors, infections, and other complications according to current guidelines.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supportive measures should aim to adequately treat the consequences of chronic kidney disease (e.g. anaemia, acidosis, bone disease).</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. REFERENCES


192. UNOS. United Network For Organ Sharing Website: [https://www.unos.org/]


5. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the EAU Renal Transplantation Guidelines Panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have that might be perceived to be a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publically accessible through the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/. These Guidelines were developed with the financial support of the EAU. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation, and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.
EAU Guidelines on Thromboprophylaxis in Urological Surgery

K.A.O. Tikkinen (Chair), R. Cartwright, M.K. Gould, R. Naspro, G. Novara, P.M. Sandset, P.D. Violette, G.H. Guyatt

© European Association of Urology 2017
1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Aims and objectives
Due to the hypercoagulable state induced by surgery, serious complications of urological surgery include deep vein thrombosis (DVT) and pulmonary embolism (PE) - together referred to as venous thromboembolism (VTE) - and major bleeding [1-4]. Decisions regarding pharmacologic thromboprophylaxis in urologic surgery involve a trade-off between decreased risk of (VTE) and increased risk of bleeding [1-3]. Currently, there exists substantial practice variation in the use of thromboprophylaxis in urology, both within and between countries [5-7]. This variation is unsurprising when one considers that recommendations from national and international guidelines often conflict [2].

To date, existing recommendations for thromboprophylaxis have been limited by a lack of urology-specific evidence [2]. Decisions regarding thromboprophylaxis require both estimates of relative effects on VTE and bleeding, and absolute risks of VTE and bleeding in the absence of prophylaxis (the latter is referred to as baseline risk). Substantial evidence from randomised control trials (RCTs) across a range of surgical procedures is available, and it is reasonable to assume that relative effects of prophylaxis are similar across surgical procedures. Evidence regarding baseline risk across urological procedures is, however, more limited, and systematic summaries of the available evidence have thus far been unavailable [1, 3].

To develop these guidelines, the Panel conducted systematic reviews of the baseline risk of VTE and bleeding in a wide variety of urological procedures [1, 8, 9]. These reviews provide a stronger evidence base for urological thromboprophylaxis guidelines than has been previously available.

Utilising this newly summarised evidence [8, 9], these Guidelines from the European Association of Urology (EAU) Working Panel on Thromboprophylaxis in Urological Surgery provide practical evidence-based guidance regarding post-surgery thromboprophylaxis and peri-operative management of antithrombotic agents in urology.

Clinicians who wish to implement our recommendations should bear in mind that guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to guide decisions that must also take into account patients' values and preferences as well as their individual circumstances. Guidelines are not mandates and do not purport to be a legal standard of care.

1.2 Panel composition
The EAU Guidelines on Thromboprophylaxis in Urological Surgery Panel consists of physicians/methodologists with expertise from urology, internal medicine, haematology, gynaecology and clinical epidemiology. Although the Guidelines are written primarily for urologists, they can also be used by other physicians, patients or other interested parties.

1.3 Available publications
A quick reference document, the Pocket Guidelines, is also available, both in print and as a mobile application, presenting the main findings of the Thromboprophylaxis in Urological Surgery Guidelines. These are abridged versions which may require consultation together with the full text version. All are available through the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/.

1.4 Publication history
These EAU Guidelines on Thromboprophylaxis in Urological Surgery are the first of their kind.

2. METHODS

2.1 Guideline methodology
The EAU Guidelines on Thromboprophylaxis in Urological Surgery Panel used the Grading of Recommendations Assessment, Development and Evaluation (GRADE) approach for assessment of quality of evidence and grading of recommendations [10-12].

GRADE offers four levels of evidence quality, reflecting the degree of certainty or confidence in the evidence: high, moderate, low, and very low [11]. For relative treatment effect, RCTs are high-quality evidence
and observational studies are low-quality evidence. For baseline risk (such as risk of VTE post-surgery), observational studies are high-quality evidence. Quality may be rated down as a result of limitations in study design or implementation (risk of bias), imprecision of estimates (wide confidence intervals), inconsistency (variability in results), indirectness of evidence, or publication bias. Quality may be rated up on the basis of a very large magnitude of effect, a dose-response gradient, and if consideration of all plausible biases would reduce an apparent treatment effect, or create an effect when none is apparent. The lowest quality of any critical outcome represents the overall quality of evidence.

The strength of a recommendation reflects the extent to which we can be confident that desirable effects of an intervention outweigh undesirable effects. GRADE classifies recommendations as strong or weak [12]. Strong recommendations mean that all or virtually all informed patients would choose the recommended management and that clinicians can structure their interactions with patients accordingly. Weak recommendations mean that patients’ choices will vary according to their values and preferences, and that clinicians must ensure that patients’ care is in keeping with their values and preferences through shared decision-making. Strength of recommendation is determined by the balance between desirable and undesirable consequences of alternative management strategies, quality of evidence (certainty in estimates), and nature and variability of values and preferences.

Post-operative thromboprophylaxis and peri-operative management of antithrombotic agents in urology are discussed separately. Specific methods are presented in the context of the relevant recommendations.

3. GUIDELINE

3.1 Thromboprophylaxis post-surgery

3.1.1 Introduction
This guideline provides procedure and patient risk-specific guidance weighing the benefit of reduced VTE with the harm of increased bleeding. The Panel provides recommendations for numerous urologic procedures with a simple and practical patient risk stratification scheme.

3.1.2 Outcomes and definitions
The Panel defined non-fatal and fatal symptomatic VTE and non-fatal and fatal major bleeding as key outcomes. Venous thromboembolism was defined as symptomatic DVT or PE and major bleeding was defined as bleeding requiring re-operation or intervention (such as angioembolisation). Transfusion, indwelling catheter, or change in hemoglobin levels were not considered as part of “major bleeding”.

3.1.3 Timing and duration of thromboprophylaxis
High-quality evidence suggests that, of the cumulative risk during the first four weeks post-surgery, approximately 50% of major bleeds occur between surgery and the next morning and approximately 90% during the first four post-surgical days. In contrast, the risk of VTE is almost constant during these first four post-surgical weeks (Figure 1) [1, 13-15].

There are no direct comparisons of the same agent administered before versus after surgery. Recent studies with direct-acting oral anticoagulants (DOACs) in orthopedic surgery have, however, suggested that, relative to starting low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) before surgery, prophylaxis can begin 24 hours after surgery without an increase in VTE but with a decrease in bleeding complications [16, 17]. Given these findings, in addition to the compelling rationale regarding the relative timing of bleeds versus thrombosis (Figure 1), we recommend administration of thromboprophylaxis beginning the day after surgery.

One could argue that prophylaxis be started even later than this, especially in procedures with high bleeding risk. The extent to which an even later start would decrease the effectiveness of thromboprophylaxis is, however, open to question. Given that the further the patient is from surgery the greater the net benefit of prophylaxis (as bleeding risks decreases), while the risk of VTE is just as great in the fourth week after surgery as in the first, the optimal duration of pharmacological prophylaxis is approximately four weeks post-surgery [1, 13-15].
3.1.4 Basic principles for recommending (or not recommending) post-surgery thromboprophylaxis

Considerations in the administration of thromboprophylaxis include the relative effect of prophylaxis on key outcomes, baseline risk of key outcomes, as well as patient-related risk (and protective) factors. Finally, one must consider the quality of evidence (certainty in estimates) as well as the relative importance of the relevant outcomes.

3.1.4.1 Effect of prophylaxis on key outcomes

The Panel performed several meta-analyses of RCTs in urology, general surgery, gynecology, and gastrointestinal surgery to inform relative risk estimates of thromboprophylaxis [1, 8, 9]. These meta-analyses demonstrated that anticoagulants (such as LMWH) reduce the relative risk of VTE by approximately 50% and increase the relative risk of major bleeding by approximately 50% [1, 8, 9]. These meta-analyses also demonstrated 50% VTE risk reduction for mechanical prophylaxis [1, 8, 9]. An earlier meta-analysis informing the risk estimates for direct-acting oral anticoagulants yielded similar estimates: a decrease in the relative risk of VTE by approximately 50% and an increase of major bleeding by approximately 50% [18]. The evidence regarding pharmacological prophylaxis was judged as high-quality but low-certainty for mechanical prophylaxis because studies used surrogate outcomes, had very few events, unblinded patients and assessors, and provided almost no information on intermittent pneumatic compression (low-quality evidence) [1, 8, 9].

3.1.4.2 Baseline risk of key outcomes

The Panel performed a series of systematic reviews to provide estimates of absolute risk of symptomatic VTE and bleeding requiring re-operation in urologic surgery [1, 8, 9]. The cited publications, with minor modifications, provide the evidence summary used to develop these recommendations.

3.1.4.3 Patient-related risk (and protective) factors

The Panel conducted a comprehensive literature search addressing VTE and bleeding risk factors in the context of urology, general surgery, gynecology, and gastrointestinal surgery [1]. A model was developed for VTE risk based on the studies reporting the most relevant and high-quality evidence [19-27] (Table 1). However, this model has not been validated and clinicians may consider other factors, including the length of the surgical procedure, oral contraception, immobility, spinal cord injury, and inheritable blood disorders such as
antiphospholipid antibody syndromes, factor V Leiden, antithrombin, protein C or S deficiencies, when making decisions. The Panel’s search did not reveal studies demonstrating convincing and replicable risk factors for bleeding [1]; therefore, bleeding risk was not stratified by patient specific factors.

**Table 1: Venous thromboembolism (VTE) according to patient risk factors**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk</th>
<th>Likelihood of VTE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td>No risk factors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium risk</td>
<td>Any one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>age 75 years or more;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Body mass index 35 or more;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VTE in 1st degree relative (parent, full sibling, or child).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High risk</td>
<td>Prior VTE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Patients with any combination of two or more risk factors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.4.4 From evidence to recommendations

When creating recommendations, the Panel first calculated the net benefit (absolute reduction in VTE risk – absolute increase in bleeding risk) and thereafter considered quality of evidence, separately for both pharmacological and mechanical prophylaxis. The Panel made strong recommendations only if the quality of evidence was moderate or high and net benefit fulfilled threshold criteria (see below); otherwise, the Panel made weak recommendations.

When calculating the net benefit, twice the weight was assigned for major bleeding as for ‘any symptomatic VTE’. The most comprehensive guideline published in the field, the American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP) guideline on “Prevention of VTE in Nonorthopedic Surgical Patients” considered symptomatic VTE and major bleeding as having the same weight. However, they included transfusions in their definition of major bleeding [28] which the Panel considered less relevant because: 1) studies often did not report transfusions, 2) criteria for transfusion vary widely between studies, and use of transfusion may have limited relation to underlying bleeding, and 3) transfusions are less important to patients than are reoperations. Given this guideline’s focus on only the more severe bleeds – those that require re-operation – the greater weight on preventing bleeding is appropriate.

For each procedure (and separately for each patient risk factor stratum), the net benefit of using pharmacological thromboprophylaxis (benefit from VTE reduction – harm from bleeding) was calculated. After considering the net benefit and quality of evidence, the thresholds presented in Table 2 were indentified.

**Table 2: Thresholds of net benefit and quality of evidence used when creating recommendations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Net benefit*</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pharmacological prophylaxis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 10 per 1000</td>
<td>STRONG in FAVOUR</td>
<td>If based on moderate or high-quality evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 10 per 1000</td>
<td>WEAK in FAVOUR</td>
<td>If based on low or very low-quality evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 5-10 per 1000</td>
<td>WEAK in FAVOUR</td>
<td>In borderline situations prophylaxis was always favoured as case fatality is higher for VTE than for bleeding [8, 9]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 1-5 per 1000</td>
<td>WEAK AGAINST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 1 per 1000</td>
<td>WEAK AGAINST</td>
<td>If based on low or very low-quality evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 1 per 1000</td>
<td>STRONG AGAINST</td>
<td>If based on moderate or high-quality evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mechanical prophylaxis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 2.5 per 1000</td>
<td>WEAK in FAVOUR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 2.5 per 1000</td>
<td>WEAK AGAINST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Net benefit is equal to absolute reduction in VTE risk minus absolute increase in bleeding risk (with twice the weight for major bleeding as for VTE). The net benefit is positive when the value of reduced VTE is greater than increased bleeding.

These thresholds reflect value and preference considerations for which there is limited evidence available [29]. A recent multinational study found that the median threshold net benefit at which women with a history of VTE were willing to accept use of heparin to prevent VTE during pregnancy or the post-partum period is 30 in 1,000 [30]. In that study, the use of prophylaxis spanned the entire duration of pregnancy and continued during the
post-partum period. As post-surgery prophylaxis has a much shorter duration, and is thus less burdensome, our threshold of strong recommendation when net benefit is 10 in 1,000 or more is consistent with this evidence. As mechanical prophylaxis is typically used for a shorter duration than the Panel recommend for pharmacological prophylaxis [31], a lower threshold for mechanical prophylaxis was used.

Making a recommendation regarding thromboprophylaxis requires trading off VTE reduction against bleeding increase, and thus placing a relative value on the two events. A serious bleed (defined as bleeding requiring re-operation or intervention) was considered twice as important as a VTE (defined as symptomatic DVT or PE) event. For patients who feel very differently about this relative value judgment, the Panel’s recommendations may not be optimal.

3.1.5 General statements for all procedure-specific recommendations
Consistent with GRADE guidance [32], a single good practice statement was made in which the supporting evidence is compelling, though indirect, and which was not summarised systematically. This association between early ambulation and decreased post-operative complications, in particular decrease in VTE, and early discharge from hospital is convincing. Further, early ambulation has no important adverse consequences. Therefore, the Panel believes that early ambulation for all patients after surgery represents good clinical practice.

The following apply to all recommendations for pharmacologic prophylaxis:
- All recommendations are based on a starting time of the morning after surgery.
- The optimal duration of prophylaxis for all recommendations is approximately four weeks post-surgery.
- There are number of acceptable alternatives for pharmacologic prophylaxis (Table 3).

Table 3: Alternative regimens for pharmacological prophylaxis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pharmacological agent</th>
<th>Dosage*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low molecular weight heparins:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dalteparin</td>
<td>5,000 IU injection once a day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enoxaparin</td>
<td>40 mg injection once a day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tinzaparin</td>
<td>3,500/4,500 IU injection once a day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unfractionated heparin</td>
<td>5,000 IU injection two or three times a day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fondaparinux†</td>
<td>2.5 mg injection once a day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct acting oral anticoagulants†:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dabigatran</td>
<td>220 mg tablet once a day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apixaban</td>
<td>2.5 mg tablet once a day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edoxaban</td>
<td>30 mg tablet once a day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rivaroxaban</td>
<td>10 mg tablet once a day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Dosages may not apply in renal impairment.
† Fondaparinux and direct acting oral anticoagulants have not been sufficiently studied in urology to warrant on-label use for post-surgery thromboprophylaxis.

3.1.6 Recommendations

Ambulatory day surgery
R1. In all patients undergoing minor ambulatory day surgery (for example, circumcision, hydrocelectomy and vasectomy), the Panel recommends against use of pharmacological prophylaxis (strong, moderate-quality evidence), and against use of mechanical prophylaxis (strong, moderate-quality evidence).

Note: The Panel is of the opinion that these patients have risk of VTE close to the general population with an increased risk of bleeding.

Open radical cystectomy
R2. In all patients undergoing open radical cystectomy, the Panel recommends use of pharmacological prophylaxis (strong, moderate or high-quality evidence), and suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).
Robotic radical cystectomy

**R3.** In all patients undergoing robotic radical cystectomy, the Panel suggests use of pharmacological prophylaxis (weak, low-quality evidence), and suggest use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).

### Table 4: Procedure-specific evidence summaries with recommendations for radical cystectomies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Baseline risk among 1000 patients</th>
<th>Net benefit per 1000 patients with pharmacological prophylaxis*</th>
<th>Certainty in estimate</th>
<th>Recommendations for pharmacological prophylaxis</th>
<th>Recommendations for mechanical prophylaxis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cystectomy, Open</strong></td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Strong, for</td>
<td>Weak, for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Strong, for</td>
<td>Weak, for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High risk</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Strong, for</td>
<td>Weak, for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak, for</td>
<td>Weak, for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cystectomy, Robotic</strong></td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak, for</td>
<td>Weak, for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak, for</td>
<td>Weak, for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High risk</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak, for</td>
<td>Weak, for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak, for</td>
<td>Weak, for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Net benefit is equal to absolute reduction in VTE risk minus absolute increase in bleeding risk (with twice the weight for major bleeding as for VTE). For instance, in medium-risk patients undergoing open radical cystectomy, use of pharmacological prophylaxis, such as LMWH, beginning first post-surgery day for four weeks decreases absolute risk of VTE by 29 per 1,000 and increases absolute risk of bleeding by 0.8 per 1,000 (Figure 1). As twice the weight for major bleeding was assigned as for VTE, the net benefit is 27 per 1,000.

Laparoscopic radical prostatectomy

**R4.** For patients undergoing laparoscopic radical prostatectomy without pelvic lymph node dissection (PLND), for those at low risk of VTE, the Panel recommends against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (strong, moderate-quality evidence) and suggests against use of mechanical prophylaxis (weak, low-quality evidence); for those at moderate and high risk, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, moderate or high quality evidence) and suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).

**R5.** For patients undergoing laparoscopic radical prostatectomy with standard PLND, for those at low risk of VTE, the Panel recommends against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (strong, moderate-quality evidence); for those at medium risk, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, moderate-quality evidence); for those at high risk, the Panel recommends use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (strong, high-quality evidence); and for all patients, the Panel suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).

**R6.** For patients undergoing laparoscopic radical prostatectomy with extended PLND, for those at low risk of VTE, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, moderate-quality evidence); for those at medium risk, the Panel suggests use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, high-quality evidence); for those at high risk, the Panel recommends use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (strong, high-quality evidence); and for all patients, the Panel suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).

Open radical prostatectomy

**R7.** For patients undergoing open radical prostatectomy without PLND or with standard PLND, for those at low risk of VTE, the use of pharmacologic prophylaxis is suggested (weak, moderate-quality evidence); for those at medium and high risk, the use of pharmacologic prophylaxis is recommended (strong, moderate or high-quality evidence); and for all patients, the Panel suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).
R8. For all patients undergoing open radical prostatectomy with extended PLND, the Panel recommends use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (strong, moderate or high-quality evidence), and suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).

Robotic radical prostatectomy
R9. For patients undergoing robotic radical prostatectomy without PLND, for those at low risk of VTE, the Panel recommends against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (strong, moderate-quality evidence) and suggests against use of mechanical prophylaxis (weak, low-quality evidence); for those at medium and high risk, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, moderate-quality evidence) and suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).

R10. For patients undergoing robotic radical prostatectomy with standard PLND, for those at low risk of VTE, the Panel recommends against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (strong, moderate-quality evidence); for those at medium risk, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, moderate-quality evidence); for those at high risk, the Panel suggests use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, moderate-quality evidence); and for all patients, the Panel suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).

R11. For patients undergoing robotic radical prostatectomy with extended PLND, for those at low risk of VTE, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, moderate-quality evidence); for those at medium risk, the Panel recommends use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (strong, moderate-quality evidence); for those at high risk, the Panel recommends use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (strong, moderate-quality evidence); and for all patients, the Panel suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).

Table 5: Procedure-specific evidence summaries with recommendations for radical prostatectomies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Baseline risk among 1000 patients</th>
<th>Net benefit per 1000 patients with pharmacological prophylaxis*</th>
<th>Certainty in estimate</th>
<th>Recommendations for pharmacological prophylaxis</th>
<th>Recommendations for mechanical prophylaxis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prostatectomy, Laparoscopic</td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk: 4.0</td>
<td>-1.7</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Strong - against</td>
<td>Weak – against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without pelvic lymph node</td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk: 8.0</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissection (PLND)</td>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk: 15</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reoperation: 7.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostatectomy, Laparoscopic</td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk: 8.0</td>
<td>-1.3</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Strong - against</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with standard PLND</td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk: 15</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk: 30</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Strong - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reoperation: 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostatectomy, Laparoscopic</td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk: 15</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with extended PLND</td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk: 30</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk: 60</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Strong - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reoperation: 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostatectomy, Open without</td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk: 10</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLND</td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk: 20</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Strong - for</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk: 39</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Strong - for</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reoperation: 1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Net benefit: difference in risk of venous thromboembolism between patients with and without prophylaxis.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure, Type</th>
<th>Venous Thromboembolism</th>
<th>Low-risk</th>
<th>Moderate</th>
<th>High-risk</th>
<th>Bleeding Requiring Reoperation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prostatectomy, Open with standard PLND</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Strong - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>79</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Strong - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostatectomy, Open with extended PLND</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostatectomy, Robotic without PLND</td>
<td>Low-risk</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Strong - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephrectomy</td>
<td>Low-risk</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>-1.1</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Strong - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nephrectomy

R12. For patients undergoing laparoscopic partial nephrectomy, for those at low and medium-risk of VTE, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, low-quality evidence); for those at high risk, the Panel recommends use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (strong, moderate-quality evidence); and for all patients, the Panel suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).

R13. For all patients undergoing open partial nephrectomy, the Panel suggests use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, very low-quality evidence), and suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, very low-quality evidence).

R14. For patients undergoing robotic partial nephrectomy, for those at low risk of VTE, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, moderate-quality evidence); for those at medium risk, the Panel suggests use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, moderate-quality evidence); for those at high risk, the Panel recommends use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (strong, high-quality evidence); and for all patients, the Panel suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).

R15. For patients undergoing laparoscopic radical nephrectomy, for those at low or medium risk of VTE, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, very low-quality evidence); for those at high risk, the Panel suggests use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, very low-quality evidence); and for all patients, the Panel suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, very low-quality evidence).

R16. For patients undergoing open radical nephrectomy, the Panel suggests use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, very low-quality evidence); and for all patients, the Panel suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).

R17. For all patients undergoing radical nephrectomy with thrombectomy, the Panel suggests use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, very low-quality evidence), and suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, very low-quality evidence).
R18. For all patients undergoing open nephroureterectomy, the Panel suggests use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (*weak, very low-quality evidence*), and suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (*weak, very low-quality evidence*).

**Table 6: Procedure-specific evidence summaries with recommendations for kidney procedures for cancer**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Baseline risk among 1000 patients</th>
<th>Net benefit per 1000 patients with pharmacological prophylaxis*</th>
<th>Certainty in estimate</th>
<th>Recommendations for pharmacological prophylaxis</th>
<th>Recommendations for mechanical prophylaxis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nephrectomy, Laparoscopic partial</td>
<td>Venous thrombo-embolism</td>
<td>Low-risk 11</td>
<td>-3.4</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk 21</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td>High-risk 42</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Strong - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td>Low/ Moderate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephrectomy, Open partial</td>
<td>Venous thrombo-embolism</td>
<td>Low-risk 10</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk 20</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td>High-risk 39</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephrectomy- Robotic partial</td>
<td>Venous thrombo-embolism</td>
<td>Low-risk 10</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk 19</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td>High-risk 39</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>high-quality</td>
<td>Strong - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephrectomy, Laparoscopic radical</td>
<td>Venous thrombo-embolism</td>
<td>Low-risk 7.0</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk 13</td>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td>High-risk 26</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephrectomy, Open radical</td>
<td>Venous thrombo-embolism</td>
<td>Low-risk 11</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk 22</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td>High-risk 44</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radical nephrectomy with thrombectomy</td>
<td>Venous thrombo-embolism</td>
<td>Low-risk 29</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk 58</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td>High-risk 116</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open nephroureterectomy</td>
<td>Venous thrombo-embolism</td>
<td>Low-risk 16</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk 31</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td>High-risk 62</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

R19. For all patients undergoing primary nerve sparing RPLND, the Panel suggests use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (*weak, very low-quality evidence*), and suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (*weak, very low-quality evidence*).
Table 7: Procedure-specific evidence summaries with recommendations for primary nerve sparing retroperitoneal lymph node dissection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Baseline risk among 1000 patients</th>
<th>Net benefit per 1000 patients with pharmacological prophylaxis*</th>
<th>Certainty in estimate</th>
<th>Recommendations for pharmacological prophylaxis</th>
<th>Recommendations for mechanical prophylaxis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary nerve sparing retroperitoneal lymph node dissection</td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk 23</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk 45</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk 91</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Non-cancer urological procedures

R20. For all patients undergoing transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) or equivalent procedures, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, very low-quality evidence); for those at low or medium risk of VTE, the Panel suggests against use of mechanical prophylaxis (weak, low-quality evidence); and for those at high risk, the Panel suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, low-quality evidence).

R21. For patients undergoing laparoscopic donor nephrectomy or open donor nephrectomy, for those at low risk of VTE, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, very low or low-quality evidence), and suggests against use of mechanical prophylaxis (weak, very low or low-quality evidence); for medium risk patients, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, very low or low-quality evidence), and suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, very low or low-quality evidence); and for high risk patients, the Panel suggests use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, very low or low-quality evidence), and suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, very low or low-quality evidence).

R22. For all patients undergoing open prolapse surgery or reconstructive pelvic surgery, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, very low-quality evidence); for those at low or medium risk of VTE, the Panel suggests against use of mechanical prophylaxis (weak, very low or low-quality evidence); while for those at high risk, the Panel suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, very low or low-quality evidence).

R23. For all patients undergoing percutaneous nephrolithotomy, the Panel suggests against use of pharmacologic prophylaxis (weak, very low-quality evidence); for those at low or medium risk of VTE, the Panel suggests against use of mechanical prophylaxis (weak, very low-quality evidence); while for those at high risk, the Panel suggests use of mechanical prophylaxis until ambulation (weak, very low-quality evidence).
Table 8: Procedure-specific evidence summaries (with recommendations) for non-cancer procedures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Baseline risk among 1000 patients</th>
<th>Net benefit per 1000 patients with pharmacological prophylaxis*</th>
<th>Certainty in estimate</th>
<th>Recommendations for pharmacological prophylaxis</th>
<th>Recommendations for mechanical prophylaxis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) or equivalent</td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>-0.1</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donor nephrectomy, laparoscopic</td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>Low</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donor nephrectomy, open</td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recipient nephrectomy, open</td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>-5.6</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - against*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - against*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak – for*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td></td>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prolapse surgery, open</td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>-1.1</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>-0.6</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reconstructive pelvic surgery (including sling surgery for stress urinary</td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>-1.1</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incontinence and vaginal prolapse surgery)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>-0.1</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percutaneous nephrolithotomy</td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>Low-risk</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>-3.7</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-risk</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>-2.7</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High-risk</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>-1.2</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Weak - against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bleeding requiring reoperation</td>
<td></td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>Low</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The Panel understands that patients will receive anticoagulation in the peri-operative period. The recommendations against refer to extended prophylaxis.
3.2 Peri-operative management of antithrombotic agents in urology

3.2.1 Introduction

In principle, there are four options to manage use of antithrombotic agents (Figure 2) during the peri-operative period: 1) to defer surgery until antithrombotic agents are not needed, 2) stop antithrombotic agents prior to surgery and restart some time after surgery, 3) continue through the surgical procedure, or 4) administer alternative antithrombotic agents that may still reduce the risk of thrombosis but with less risk of bleeding than agents patients are currently using (“bridging”).

Figure 2: The most widely used antithrombotic agents in patients undergoing urologic surgery

Required period of stopping drug before surgery (if desired) provided in parentheses.

3.2.2 Evidence summary

Earlier major guidelines addressing perioperative management of antithrombotic agents in surgery [2, 33-35] preceded recent major studies, including large, rigorous randomised trials [15, 36-38]. With respect to antiplatelet agents, a recent large, rigorous randomised trial comparing aspirin to placebo has demonstrated that aspirin increases post-operative bleeding without reducing arterial thrombotic events [15]. These results provide indirect evidence for antiplatelet agents other than aspirin. Although the absence of large, rigorous placebo-controlled trials to inform recommendations for other antiplatelet agents constitutes a limitation, given similar antithrombotic and bleeding profiles, the indirect evidence provides useful information to inform our recommendations.

Recommendations that preceded the recent much higher-quality evidence often recommended, in the perioperative context, substitution of alternative agents for the antithrombotic agents patients were using on a regular basis [39]. The recent evidence has demonstrated that bridging increases bleeding without preventing thrombosis. The Panel therefore essentially have two recommendations for patients receiving antithrombotic agents regularly and contemplating surgery: 1) discontinue antithrombotic therapy for the period around surgery, or 2) in those with a temporary very high risk of thrombosis, delay surgery until that risk decreases. If it is not possible to delay, continuing antithrombotic therapy or bridging through surgery may be advisable.

3.2.3 Recommendations

Five days is an appropriate time to stop antiplatelet agents before surgery while the optimal time to stop varies across anticoagulants (for details, see Figure 2).

R24. In all patients receiving antiplatelet agents (aspirin, clopidogrel, prasugrel, ticagrelor), except those with very high risk of thrombosis (see recommendations 26 and 27), the Panel recommends stopping antiplatelet agents before surgery and not initiating any alternative antithrombotic therapy (strong, high-quality evidence).

R25. In patients in whom antiplatelet agents have been stopped before surgery, the Panel recommends restarting when bleeding is no longer a serious risk – typically four days post-surgery – rather than withholding for longer periods (strong, moderate-quality evidence).

R26. In patients with very high risk of thrombosis receiving antiplatelet agents (those with: drug-eluting stent placement within six months; bare metal stent placement within six weeks; transient ischemic attack (TIA) or...
stroke within 30 days) in whom surgery can be delayed, the Panel recommends delaying surgery (strong, high-quality evidence).

R27. In patients with very high risk of thrombosis receiving antiplatelet agents (those with: drug-eluting stent placement within six months; bare metal stent placement within six weeks; TIA or stroke within 30 days) in whom surgery cannot be delayed, the Panel suggests continuing the drugs through surgery (weak, low-quality evidence).

R28. In all patients receiving anticoagulant agents (unfractionated heparin, low molecular weight heparin, warfarin, fondaparinux, dabigatran, apixaban, rivaroxaban, edoxaban), except those with very high risk of thrombosis (see recommendation 26), the Panel recommends stopping drugs before surgery (strong, high-quality evidence).

Note: Patients with creatinine clearance < 30 ml/min should not receive dabigatran, apixaban, rivaroxaban or edoxaban.

R29. In patients in whom anticoagulants have been stopped before surgery, the Panel recommends restarting when bleeding is no longer a serious risk – typically four days post-surgery – rather than withholding for longer periods (strong, moderate-quality evidence).

R30. In patients with a new VTE, it is recommended that surgery is delayed for at least one month, and if possible three months, to permit discontinuation of anticoagulation pre-operatively, rather than operating within one month of thrombosis (strong, high-quality evidence).

R31. In patients receiving any anticoagulant with a severe thrombophilia, such as antithrombin deficiency and antiphospholipid antibody syndrome, the Panel suggests anticoagulation with either heparin or low molecular weight heparin through surgery, rather than stopping anticoagulation before and after surgery (weak, low-quality evidence).

R32. In patients with high-risk mechanical prosthetic heart valves, such as cage-ball valves, receiving warfarin, the Panel recommends bridging with LMWH prior and subsequent to surgery, rather than discontinuing anticoagulation peri-operatively (strong, high-quality evidence).

Anticoagulation in these patients involves stopping the warfarin five days prior, commencing LMWH four days prior, omitting LMWH on the day of surgery, and recommencing LMWH and warfarin after surgery.
4. RESEARCH RECOMMENDATIONS

The evidence base for this guideline is limited. Much of the evidence regarding baseline risk is low, or very low quality [8, 9]. Prospective observational studies to establish baseline risk of VTE and bleeding in a wide variety of urologic procedures, as well as addressing patient risk factors for both thrombosis and bleeding, will be necessary to create more definite guidelines. Examples of procedures in which the evidence base is particularly limited include robotic cystectomy, laparoscopic radical nephrectomy, open nephroureterectomy, TURP and prolapse surgery. To confidently establish the baseline risk of VTE and bleeding for specific surgery will require studies that meet certain methodologic standards, such as comprehensive characterisation of the patient populations and follow-up times, documentation of the prophylaxis used, and explicit criteria with demonstration of reproducibility of judgments for documentation of DVT, PE, and bleeding assessments. Furthermore, the optimal timing and duration of thromboprophylaxis remains unclear. Timing and duration questions will be best addressed by large-scale randomised trials.

5. REFERENCES


34. National Clinical Guideline Centre – Acute and chronic conditions (UK). Venous thromboembolism: reducing the risk of venous thromboembolism (deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism) in patients admitted to hospital. London: Royal College of Physicians (UK); 2010.


6. CONFLICT OF INTEREST

All members of the Thromboprophylaxis working panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have that might be perceived to be a potential source of a conflict of interest. This information is publically accessible through the European Association of Urology website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/. This document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a nonprofit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

7. ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The guideline panelists are grateful for Samantha Craigie and Arnav Agarwal, who participated at various stages of the guideline development.
ABBREVIATIONS 2017 EDITION

3IQ three incontinence questions questionnaire
5-ARIs 5-alpha-reductase inhibitors
5-FU 5-fluorouracil
5-HT 5-hydroxytryptamine
AA abiraterone acetate
AAST American Association for the Surgery of Trauma
ABP antibiotic prophylaxis
ABP acute bacterial prostatitis
ABS-GEC-ESTRO American Brachytherapy Society and the Groupe Européen de Curiethérapie-European Society of Therapeutic Radiation Oncology
ABSSST Actionable Bladder Symptom Screening Tool
ABU asymptomatic bacteriuria
AC adenocarcinoma
ACD-RCC acquired cystic disease-associated RCC
ACE angiotensin-converting enzyme
ACKD acquired cystic kidney disease
ACT adjustable compression therapy (device)
ACTH adrenocorticotropic hormone
AD autonomic dysreflexia
ADL activities of daily living
ADPKD adult dominant polycystic disease
ADT androgen-deprivation therapy
AFP alpha-fetoprotein
AGS adrenogenital syndrome
AHRQ Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality
AIPE Arabic Index of Premature Ejaculation
ALK anaplastic lymphoma kinase
ALP alkaline phosphatase
ALPP abdominal leak point pressure
AMH anti-Müllerian hormone
AML angiomyolipoma
AMPA amino-methylene-phosphonic acid
APCKD adult polycystic kidney disease
AR androgen receptor
ARF acute renal failure
ARM anorectal malformation
ART assisted reproduction technique
ART adjuvant radiotherapy
AS active surveillance
ASA American Society of Anesthesiologists
ASCO American Society of Clinical Oncology
ASTRO American Society for Therapeutic Radiology and Oncology
ATP adenosinetriphosphate
AUA American Urological Association
AUC area under curve
AUR acute urinary retention
AUS artificial urinary sphincter
AVF arteriovenous fistulae
AVP arginine vasopressin
BBD bladder and bowel dysfunction
BC bladder cancer
BCF biochemical failure
BCG bacillus Calmette-Guérin
BCR biochemical recurrence
BDFS biochemical disease-free survival
BDNF brain-derived neurotrophic factor
BEP cisplatin, etoposide, bleomycin
BLI β-lactamase inhibitor
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COLD</td>
<td>cryo on-line data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contlife®</td>
<td>quality of life assessment questionnaire concerning urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CombAT</td>
<td>combination of Avodart® and Tamsulosin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COPUM</td>
<td>congenital obstructive posterior urethral membrane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPA</td>
<td>cyproterone acetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPP</td>
<td>chronic pelvic pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPPS</td>
<td>chronic pelvic pain syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cPSA</td>
<td>complex PSA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPSI</td>
<td>chronic prostatitis symptom index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CR</td>
<td>complete response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cRCC</td>
<td>clear cell renal cell cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CrCl</td>
<td>calculation of creatinine clearance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRH</td>
<td>corticotrophin-releasing hormone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRP</td>
<td>C-reactive protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRPC</td>
<td>castration-resistant prostate cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRS</td>
<td>caudal regression syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRT</td>
<td>conformal radiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS</td>
<td>clinical stage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSAP</td>
<td>cryosurgical ablation of the prostate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSS</td>
<td>cancer-specific survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td>computed tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTC</td>
<td>circulating tumour cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTC AE</td>
<td>Common Terminology criteria for Adverse Events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTU</td>
<td>computed tomography urography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CUETO</td>
<td>Club Urológico Español de Tratamiento Oncológico (Spanish Oncology Group)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVA</td>
<td>cerebrovascular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVD</td>
<td>cardiovascular disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CyA</td>
<td>Cyclosporin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAN-PSS</td>
<td>Danish prostate symptom score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DARE</td>
<td>database of abstracts of reviews of effectiveness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCE</td>
<td>dynamic contract enhanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDAVP</td>
<td>desmopressin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DES</td>
<td>diethylstilbestrol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DFS</td>
<td>disease-free survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHT</td>
<td>dihydrotestosterone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHTST</td>
<td>dihydrotestosterone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DICC</td>
<td>dynamic infusion cavernosometry or cavernosography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLPD</td>
<td>detrusor leak point pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMSA</td>
<td>dimercaptosuccinic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMSO</td>
<td>dimethyl sulphoxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNIC</td>
<td>diffuse noxious inhibitory control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DO</td>
<td>detrusor overactivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRE</td>
<td>digital rectal examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRG</td>
<td>dorsal root ganglion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSD</td>
<td>disorders of sex development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSD</td>
<td>detrusor sphincter dysynergia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSM-IV-TR</td>
<td>Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders IV-Text Revision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSNB</td>
<td>dynamic sentinel node biopsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSS</td>
<td>disease-specific survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DT</td>
<td>doubling time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTPA</td>
<td>diethylenetriamine pentaacetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DWI</td>
<td>diffusion-weighted imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DWT</td>
<td>detrusor wall thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAA</td>
<td>European Academy of Andrology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAU</td>
<td>European Association of Urology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBL</td>
<td>estimated blood losses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBM</td>
<td>evidence-based medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBRT</td>
<td>external beam radiation therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECQG</td>
<td>Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ED</td>
<td>erectile dysfunction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EEC  extracapsular extension of carcinoma
EGFR  epidermal growth factor receptor
eGFR  estimated glomerular filtration rate
EH  excisional haemorrhoidectomy
EHL  electrohydraulic lithotripsy
eLND  extended lymph node dissection
EMA  European Medicines Agency
EMDA  transdermal electromotive drug administration or electromotive drug administration
EMEA  European Medicines Agency
EMG  electromyography
eNOS  endothelial NOS
EORTC  European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer
EORTC-GUCG  European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer - Genito-Urinary Cancer Group
EP  etoposide, cisplatin
EPC  Early Prostate Cancer Trialists’ Group
EPIQ  epidemiology of prolapse and incontinence questionnaire
EPS  expressed prostatic secretion
ePTFE  expanded polytetrafluoroethylene
EQ  euro quality
ER  extended release
ERSPC  European Randomized Screening for Prostate Cancer
ES  electrical stimulation
ESR  erythrocyte sedimentation rate
ESSIC  International Society for the Study of BPS
ESTRO  European Society for Radiotherapy & Oncology
ESWT  extracorporeal shock wave treatment
EUCAST  European Committee for Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing
FACT  functional assessment of cancer therapy
FACT-P  functional assessment of cancer therapy-prostate
FAP  familial amyloidotic polyneuropathy
FDA  Food and Drug Administration
FDG  fluorodeoxyglucose
FDG-PET  fluorodeoxyglucose-positron emission tomography
FISH  fluorescent in situ hybridisation
FIT  functional incidental training
FM  fibromyalgia
FNA  fine-needle aspiration
FNAB  fine-needle aspiration biopsy
FNAC  fine needle aspiration cytology
FS2S  first stage of two-stage (implantation of sacral neuromodulator)
FSFI  female sexual function index
FSH  follicle stimulating hormone
FSRT  fractionated stereotactic radiotherapy
FSSs  functional somatic syndromes
FVC  frequency volume chart
G6PD  glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase
GABA  gamma-aminobutyric acid
GAG  glycosaminoglycan
GAQ  general assessment question
GC  gemcitabine, cisplatin
G-CSF  granulocyte colony stimulating factor
GCT  germ cell tumour
GETUG  Groupe d’Etude des Tumeurs Uro-Génitales
GFR  glomerular filtration rate
GHQ  general health questionnaire
GI  gastrointestinal
GITS  gastrointestinal therapeutic system
GnRH  gonadotropin-releasing hormone
GR  grade of recommendation
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GREAT</td>
<td>G-protein-coupled receptor affecting testis descent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GS</td>
<td>Gleason score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSSAB</td>
<td>Global Study of Sexual Attitudes and Behaviors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GU</td>
<td>Genitourinary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GWAS</td>
<td>Genome-wide association studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAD scale</td>
<td>Hospital anxiety and depression scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAL</td>
<td>Hexaminolaevulinic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HBO</td>
<td>Hyperbaric oxygen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hCG</td>
<td>Human chorionic gonadotropin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HD-MVAC</td>
<td>High-dose intensity MVAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDR</td>
<td>High-dose rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HGPIN</td>
<td>High-grade prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIF</td>
<td>Hypoxia inducible factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIFU</td>
<td>High-intensity focused ultrasound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV</td>
<td>Human immunodeficiency virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLRRCC</td>
<td>Hereditary leiomyomatosis and renal cell cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HMG</td>
<td>Human menopausal gonadotropin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HNPCC</td>
<td>Hereditary non-polyposis colorectal carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ho:YAG</td>
<td>Holmium:yttrium-aluminium-garnet (laser)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HoLEP</td>
<td>Holmium laser enucleation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HoLRP</td>
<td>Holmium laser resection of the prostate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOPE</td>
<td>Hypospadias objective penile evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOSE</td>
<td>Hypospadias objective scoring evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP</td>
<td>Hyperprolactinemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPF</td>
<td>High-power field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPLC</td>
<td>High-performance liquid chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPT</td>
<td>Hyperparathyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPV</td>
<td>Human papillomavirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HR</td>
<td>Hazard ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRPC</td>
<td>Hormone-refractory prostate cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRQoL</td>
<td>Health-related quality of life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HT</td>
<td>Hormonal therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTA</td>
<td>Health technology appraisal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HUI</td>
<td>Health utilities index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAD</td>
<td>Intermittent androgen deprivation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IARC</td>
<td>International Agency for Research on Cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IASP</td>
<td>Association for the Study of Pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBS</td>
<td>Irritable bowel syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBT</td>
<td>Iatrogenic bladder trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC</td>
<td>Intermittent catheterisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICSS</td>
<td>International Children's Continence Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICD-10</td>
<td>International Classification of Diseases-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICDB</td>
<td>Interstitial Cystitis Data Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICIQ</td>
<td>International consultation on incontinence modular questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICIQ-FLUTS</td>
<td>ICIQ-female lower urinary tract symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICIQ-MLUTS</td>
<td>ICIQ-male lower urinary tract symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICIQ-VS</td>
<td>International Consultation on Incontinence Questionnaire – Vaginal Symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICS</td>
<td>International Continence Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICSCI</td>
<td>Interstitial cystitis symptom index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICSI</td>
<td>Intracytoplasmic sperm injection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICU</td>
<td>Intensive care unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDSA</td>
<td>Infectious Diseases Society of America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IED</td>
<td>Improvised explosive device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IELT</td>
<td>Intravaginal ejaculatory latency time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IF</td>
<td>Impact factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFIS</td>
<td>Intra-operative floppy iris syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGCCCG</td>
<td>International Germ Cell Cancer Collaborative Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGGNU</td>
<td>Intratubular germ cell neoplasia, unclassified type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGRT</td>
<td>Image-guided radiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IHH</td>
<td>Isolated (formerly termed idiopathic) hypogonadotropic hypogonadism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIEF</td>
<td>International Index of Erectile Function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIQ</td>
<td>Incontinence Impact Questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IKCWWG</td>
<td>International Kidney Cancer Working Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL</td>
<td>Interleukin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL-6</td>
<td>Interleukin-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMDC</td>
<td>International Metastatic Renal Cancer Database Consortium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMRT</td>
<td>Intensity Modulated Radiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INR</td>
<td>International Normalised Ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOQ</td>
<td>Incontinence Outcome Questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPCN</td>
<td>International Prostatitis Collaborative Network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPD</td>
<td>Idiopathic Parkinson’s Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPE</td>
<td>Index of Premature Ejaculation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPP</td>
<td>Intravesical Prostatic Protrusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPSS</td>
<td>International Prostate Symptom Score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-QOL</td>
<td>Incontinence Quality of Life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-QOL (ICIQ-Uqol)</td>
<td>Urinary Incontinence-Specific Quality of Life Instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IR</td>
<td>Immediate Release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRS</td>
<td>Infrared Spectroscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRT</td>
<td>Iatrogenic Renal Trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISI</td>
<td>Incontinence Severity Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISQ</td>
<td>Incontinence Stress Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISS</td>
<td>Incontinence Symptom Severity Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISSM</td>
<td>International Society for Sexual Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISSVD</td>
<td>Society for the Study of Vulvovaginal Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISUP</td>
<td>International Society of Urological Pathology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITGCN</td>
<td>Intratubular Germ Cell Neoplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITGCNU</td>
<td>Intratubular Germ Cell Neoplasia of Unclassified Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITT</td>
<td>Intent-to-Treat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IU</td>
<td>International Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUGA</td>
<td>International Urogynaecological Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUSS</td>
<td>Indevus Urgency Severity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Inferior Vena Cava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVF</td>
<td>In Vitro Fertilisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVP</td>
<td>Intravenous Pyelogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVU</td>
<td>Intravenous Urography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JESS</td>
<td>Joint Expert Speciation System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KHQ</td>
<td>King’s Health Questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KUB</td>
<td>Kidney Ureter Bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAD</td>
<td>Lymphadenectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LARP</td>
<td>Laparoscopic Radical Prostatectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDH</td>
<td>Lactate Dehydrogenase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDR</td>
<td>Low-Dose Rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LE</td>
<td>Level of Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LESS</td>
<td>Laparoscopic Single-Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LET</td>
<td>Linear Energy Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>Luteinizing Hormone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LHRH</td>
<td>Luteinizing Hormone Releasing Hormone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LI-SWT</td>
<td>Low-Intensity Extracorporeal Shock Wave Therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS</td>
<td>Leicester Impact Scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMNL</td>
<td>Lower Motor Neuron Lesion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LN</td>
<td>Lymph Node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LND</td>
<td>Lymph Node Dissection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNs</td>
<td>Lymph Nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPN</td>
<td>Laparoscopic Partial Nephrectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPP</td>
<td>Leak Point Pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPP</td>
<td>Laparoscopic Pyeloplasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LRN</td>
<td>Laparoscopic Radical Nephrectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LRP</td>
<td>Laparoscopic Radical Prostatectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUSQ</td>
<td>Leicester Urinary Symptom Questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUT</td>
<td>Lower Urinary Tract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUTD</td>
<td>lower urinary tract dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUTS</td>
<td>lower urinary tract symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUTS Tool</td>
<td>lower urinary tract symptoms tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVD</td>
<td>left ventricular dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAB</td>
<td>maximal androgen blockade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MACE</td>
<td>major cardiovascular events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAG-3</td>
<td>mercaptoacetylglucine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAGI</td>
<td>male accessory gland infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAPP</td>
<td>Multi-disciplinary Approach to the study of chronic Pelvic Pain research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAR</td>
<td>mixed antiglobulin reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASRI</td>
<td>medication adherence self-report inventory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBD</td>
<td>metastatic bone disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-Cavi</td>
<td>compared methotrexate/carboplatin/vinblastine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MESA</td>
<td>microsurgical epididymal sperm aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MESA-Q</td>
<td>medial epidemiological and social aspects of aging questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MeSH</td>
<td>medical subject headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MET</td>
<td>metabolic equivalent system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MET</td>
<td>medical expulsive therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFS</td>
<td>metastasis-free survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFSR</td>
<td>metastasis-free survival rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI</td>
<td>myocardial infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIBC</td>
<td>muscle-invasive bladder cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mLND</td>
<td>modified inguinal lymphadenectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMAS</td>
<td>Massachusetts Male Aging Study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMC</td>
<td>mitomycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMC</td>
<td>myelomeningocele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPA</td>
<td>medroxyprogesterone acetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpMRI</td>
<td>multiparametric magnetic resonance imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPR</td>
<td>medication possession rate (drug adherence)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRA</td>
<td>MRI biphasic angiography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRC</td>
<td>Medical Research Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI</td>
<td>magnetic resonance imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRSA</td>
<td>methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRU</td>
<td>magnetic resonance urography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>multiple sclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSA</td>
<td>multiple system atrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSAM</td>
<td>multinational survey on the aging male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSHQ-EjD</td>
<td>male sexual health questionnaire ejaculatory dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSI</td>
<td>microsatellite instability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSKCC</td>
<td>Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Centre classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSU</td>
<td>mid-stream sample of urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTOPS</td>
<td>medical therapy of prostatic symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTS</td>
<td>cell proliferation assay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUI</td>
<td>mixed urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MVA</td>
<td>methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MVAC</td>
<td>methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin and cisplatin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAION</td>
<td>non-arteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NBSs</td>
<td>non-bladder syndromes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>nephrocalcinosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCCLS</td>
<td>National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCCN</td>
<td>National Comprehensive Cancer Network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCCT</td>
<td>non-contrast enhanced computed tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCIC</td>
<td>National Cancer Institute of Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCT-CTC</td>
<td>National Cancer Institute Common Toxicity Criteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nd:YAG</td>
<td>neodymium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NDO</td>
<td>neurogenic detrusor overactivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NDSd</td>
<td>neurogenic detrusor-sphincter dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NGF</td>
<td>nerve growth factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHSLS</td>
<td>National Health and Social Life Survey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHT</td>
<td>neoadjuvant hormonal therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NICE</td>
<td>National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIDDK</td>
<td>National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIH</td>
<td>National Institutes of Health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIH-CPSI</td>
<td>NIH Prostatitis Symptom Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NLUTD</td>
<td>neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMDA</td>
<td>N-methyl-D-aspartate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMIBC</td>
<td>non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nNOS</td>
<td>neuronal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NNT</td>
<td>number needed to treat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO</td>
<td>nitric oxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOA</td>
<td>non-obstructive azoospermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOS</td>
<td>NO synthases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPTR</td>
<td>nocturnal penile tumescence and rigidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPV</td>
<td>negative predictive value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N-OoL</td>
<td>nocturia quality of life questionnaires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRS</td>
<td>non-randomized studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NS</td>
<td>nerve sparing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSAA</td>
<td>non-steroidal anti-androgen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSAIIds</td>
<td>non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSF</td>
<td>nephrogenic systemic fibrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSGCT</td>
<td>non-seminomatous germ cell tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSQIP</td>
<td>national surgical quality improvement programme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSRP</td>
<td>nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NVB</td>
<td>neurovascular bundle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NYHA</td>
<td>New York Heart Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O/E</td>
<td>ratio of observed versus expected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OA</td>
<td>obstructive azoospermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAB</td>
<td>overactive bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAB-q (ICIQ-OABqol)</td>
<td>overactive bladder questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAB-S</td>
<td>overactive bladder satisfaction measure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAB-SAT-q</td>
<td>OAB satisfaction questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAB-SS</td>
<td>overactive bladder symptom score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAB-v3</td>
<td>OAB short form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAB-v8</td>
<td>OAB awareness tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAT</td>
<td>oligo-astheno-teratozoospermia [syndrome]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCAS</td>
<td>oral controlled absorption system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORC</td>
<td>open radical cystectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORP</td>
<td>open retropubic radical prostatectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORR</td>
<td>overall response rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS</td>
<td>overall survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OSA</td>
<td>obstructive sleep apnoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PA</td>
<td>para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PADUA</td>
<td>preoperative aspects and dimensions used for an anatomical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAG</td>
<td>periaqueductal grey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA</td>
<td>prostate cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCN</td>
<td>percutaneous nephrostomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCNL</td>
<td>percutaneous nephrolithotomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCOS</td>
<td>prostate cancer outcomes study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCP</td>
<td>pneumocystis carinii pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCPT</td>
<td>prostate cancer prevention trial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCPTRC</td>
<td>prostate cancer prevention trial risk calculator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pCR</td>
<td>pathologically complete remissions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR</td>
<td>pathological complete remission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCSM</td>
<td>prostate-cancer-specific mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCWG</td>
<td>prostate cancer working group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PD</td>
<td>Peyronie's disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PD</td>
<td>Parkinson's disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PD-1L</td>
<td>programmed death-1 ligand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDD</td>
<td>photodynamic diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDE5i</td>
<td>phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDGF</td>
<td>platelet-derived growth factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDQ</td>
<td>Peyronie's disease-specific questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE</td>
<td>premature ejaculation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEDT</td>
<td>premature ejaculation diagnostic tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEI</td>
<td>cisplatin, etoposide, ifosfamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEP</td>
<td>premature ejaculation profile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEPA</td>
<td>premature ejaculation prevalence and attitudes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PESA</td>
<td>percutaneous epididymal sperm aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PET</td>
<td>positron emission tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PET/CT</td>
<td>positron emission tomography, computed tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFBO</td>
<td>pelvic floor bother questionnaire PFDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(PFDI-20)</td>
<td>pelvic floor distress inventory (short form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFIQ</td>
<td>pelvic floor impact questionnaire (short form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFMT</td>
<td>pelvic floor muscle training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFS</td>
<td>pressure flow study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFS</td>
<td>progression-free survival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGD</td>
<td>preimplantation genetic diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGI-I and PGI-S</td>
<td>patient global impression of severity and improvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PH</td>
<td>primary hyperoxaluria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHI</td>
<td>prostate health index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PICO</td>
<td>population, intervention, comparison, outcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PID</td>
<td>pelvic inflammatory disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIN</td>
<td>prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIRADS</td>
<td>prostate imaging reporting and data system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PISQ</td>
<td>pelvic organ prolapse/urinary incontinence sexual questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIVOT</td>
<td>prostate cancer intervention versus observation trial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLAP</td>
<td>placental alkaline phosphatase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLCO</td>
<td>prostate, lung, colorectal and ovary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLN</td>
<td>pelvic lymph node dissection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMB</td>
<td>prostate mapping biopsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMSES</td>
<td>broome pelvic muscle exercise self- efficacy scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PN</td>
<td>partial nephrectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PNE</td>
<td>percutaneous nerve evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PNH</td>
<td>perinephritic hematoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PNL</td>
<td>percutaneous litholapaxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PNL</td>
<td>percutaneous nephrolithotomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PNS</td>
<td>pudendal nerve stimulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP</td>
<td>pelvic organ prolapse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSEI</td>
<td>postoperative stress urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSQ</td>
<td>primary OAB symptom questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPBCT</td>
<td>patient perception of bladder condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPI</td>
<td>post-prostatectomy urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPIUS</td>
<td>patient's perception of intensity of urgency scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPMT</td>
<td>pre-post-massage test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPQ</td>
<td>patient preparation questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPS</td>
<td>prostate pain syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-PTNS</td>
<td>percutaneous posterior tibial nerve stimulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPV</td>
<td>positive predictive value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pRCC</td>
<td>papillary renal cell cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRAFAB</td>
<td>protection, amount, frequency, adjustment, body image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRISMA</td>
<td>preferred reporting items for systematic reviews and meta-analyses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRO</td>
<td>patient reported outcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROMS</td>
<td>patient reported outcome measures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PS</td>
<td>performance status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PS</td>
<td>pathological stage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSA</td>
<td>prostate specific antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSADT</td>
<td>PSA doubling time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSAV</td>
<td>PSA velocity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSM</td>
<td>positive surgical margin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTEN</td>
<td>phosphatase and tensin homolog</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PTH  parathyroid hormone
PTNS  posterior tibial nerve stimulation
PTNS  percutaneous tibial nerve stimulation
PTT  partial thromboplastin time
PUNLMP  papillary urothelial neoplasms of low malignant potential
PUF  patient symptom scale (pelvic pain, urgency and frequency)
PUV  posterior urethral valves
PVB  cisplatin, vinblastine, bleomycin
PVR  post void residual
PWS  Prader-Willi syndrome
QALY  quality-adjusted life year
Qave  average urinary flow rate
Qmax  maximum urinary flow rate
Qol  quality of life
QUALYs  quality-of-life-adjusted gain in life years
QUID  questionnaire for urinary incontinence diagnosis
RALC  robotic-assisted laparoscopic cystectomy
RALP  robotic-assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy
RALRP  robotic-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy
RALPS  robot-assisted laparoscopic sacrocolpopexy
RANKL  receptor activator of nuclear factor KB ligand
RARC  robot-assisted radical cystectomy
RARP  robot-assisted radical prostatectomy
RAT  renal angiomyomatous tumour
RBL  rubber band ligation
RC  radical cystectomy
RCC  renal cell cancer
RCT  randomised controlled trial
RECIST  response evaluation criteria in solid tumours
REMS  risk evaluation and mitigation strategy
REST  renal epithelial and stromal tumours
RFA  radiofrequency ablation
RFS  recurrence-free survival
RIRS  retrograde renal surgery
RLPP  robot-assisted laparoscopic pyeloplasty
RN  reflux nephropathy
RN  radical nephrectomy
RNC  radionuclide cystography
RNU  radical nephroureterectomy
RP  radical prostatectomy
RPA  recursive partitioning analysis
RPLND  retroperitoneal lymph node dissection
RPN  robotic partial nephrectomy
RR  recurrent stones
RR  relative risk
RRN  robotic radical nephrectomy
RRP  radical retropubic prostatectomy
RT  radiotherapy
RTA  renal tubular acidosis
RTOG  Radiation Therapy Oncology Group
RTX  resiniferatoxin
SAE  selective arterial embolization
SAGA  self-assessment goal achievement questionnaire
SARS  sacral anterior root stimulation
SAT  severe acute toxicity
SB  spina bifida
SBRT  stereotactic body radiotherapy
SCC  squamous cell carcinoma
SCI  spinal cord injury
SDH  succinate dehydrogenase
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SEER</td>
<td>surveillance, epidemiology and end results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELECT</td>
<td>selenium and vitamin E cancer prevention trial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEP</td>
<td>sexual encounter profile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SF</td>
<td>short form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SFR</td>
<td>stone free rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SGA</td>
<td>standardized geriatric assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHBG</td>
<td>sex hormone binding globulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHIM</td>
<td>sexual health inventory for men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGN</td>
<td>Scottish Intercollegiate Guideline Network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIOG</td>
<td>International Society of Geriatric Oncology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIRS</td>
<td>systemic inflammatory response syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIS</td>
<td>small intestinal submucosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SITUS</td>
<td>single-incision triangulated umbilical surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMX</td>
<td>sulphamethoxazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNB</td>
<td>sentinel node biopsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNM</td>
<td>sacral neuromodulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPCG-4</td>
<td>Scandinavian Prostate Cancer Group Study Number 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQoL-F</td>
<td>sexual quality of life - female</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SR</td>
<td>systematic review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SR</td>
<td>sustained release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRE</td>
<td>skeletal-related events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRS</td>
<td>stereotactic radiosurgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRT</td>
<td>salvage radiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRY</td>
<td>sex region of the Y chromosome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSI</td>
<td>surgical site infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSI and SII</td>
<td>symptom severity index and symptom impact index for stress incontinence in women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSRi</td>
<td>selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSRIs</td>
<td>selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STD</td>
<td>sexually transmitted disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUI</td>
<td>stress urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUIQ</td>
<td>stress/urge incontinence questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SV</td>
<td>seminal vesicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVI</td>
<td>seminal vesicle invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWENOTECA</td>
<td>Swedish-Norwegian Testicular Cancer Project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWL</td>
<td>shock wave lithotripsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWOG</td>
<td>Southwest Oncology Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t½</td>
<td>elimination half-life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBS</td>
<td>treatment benefit scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBT-O</td>
<td>transobturator tension-free vaginal tape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC</td>
<td>testicular cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC99m</td>
<td>technetium 99m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCC</td>
<td>transitional cell carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tc-MAG3 (99m)</td>
<td>technetium-99m mercaptoacetyl triglycine (MAG3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCS</td>
<td>testicular cancer survivor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDS</td>
<td>testicular dysgenesis syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDS</td>
<td>transdermal delivery system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEFNA</td>
<td>testicular fine-needle aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEMPE</td>
<td>topical eutectic mixture for premature ejaculation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TENS</td>
<td>transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TESE</td>
<td>testicular sperm extraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TGCT</td>
<td>testicular germ cell tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TGF 1</td>
<td>transforming growth factor 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ThuLEP</td>
<td>tm:YAG laser enucleation of the prostate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ThuVaP</td>
<td>tm:YAG vaporization of the prostate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ThuVARP</td>
<td>tm:YAG vapouresection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ThuVEP</td>
<td>tm:YAG vapoenucleation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIN</td>
<td>testicular intraepithelial neoplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIP</td>
<td>paclitaxel, cisplatin, and ifosfamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIP</td>
<td>tubularised incised plate urethroplasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIP</td>
<td>paclitaxel, ifosfamide, cisplatin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TK</td>
<td>tyrosine kinase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TKi</td>
<td>tyrosine kinase inhibitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TM</td>
<td>testicular microlithiasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tmax</td>
<td>time to maximum plasma concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMP</td>
<td>trimethoprim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNF</td>
<td>tumour necrosis factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNM</td>
<td>tumour, node, metastasis (classification)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPA</td>
<td>tissue plasminogen activator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-PTNS</td>
<td>transcutaneous posterior tibial nerve stimulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRCC</td>
<td>MIT translocation renal cell carcinomas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TROG</td>
<td>Trans-Tasman Oncology Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRT</td>
<td>testosterone replacement therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRUS</td>
<td>transrectal ultrasound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TS</td>
<td>tuberous sclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TST</td>
<td>testosterone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TT</td>
<td>tumour thrombus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTP</td>
<td>time to progression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TUPA</td>
<td>tissue plasminogen activator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TUR</td>
<td>transurethral resection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TURB</td>
<td>transurethral resection of the bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TURED</td>
<td>transurethral resection of the ejaculatory ducts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TURP</td>
<td>transurethral resection of the prostate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TVT</td>
<td>tension-free vaginal tape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TVTS</td>
<td>tension-free vaginal tape secure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWOC</td>
<td>trial without catheter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAB</td>
<td>underactive bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC</td>
<td>urothelial carcinomas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCB</td>
<td>urothelial carcinoma of the bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDI (UDI-6)</td>
<td>urogenital distress inventory (-6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDS</td>
<td>urodynamic study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UEBW</td>
<td>ultrasound-estimated bladder weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U-IIQ</td>
<td>urge incontinence impact questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI</td>
<td>urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI-4</td>
<td>urinary incontinence -4 questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UICC</td>
<td>Union for International Cancer Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UIHI</td>
<td>urinary incontinence handicap inventory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UIQ</td>
<td>urinary incontinence questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UISS</td>
<td>urinary incontinence severity score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ULN</td>
<td>upper limit of normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UMNL</td>
<td>upper motor neuron lesion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPJ</td>
<td>ureteropelvic junction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPScale</td>
<td>urgency perception scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPScore</td>
<td>urgency perception score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UQ</td>
<td>urgency questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URR</td>
<td>urethral reflectometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URS</td>
<td>ureterorenoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US</td>
<td>ultrasound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US PSA</td>
<td>ultra-sensitive PSA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USIQ-QOL</td>
<td>urgency severity &amp; intensity questionnaire: symptom severity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USIQ-S</td>
<td>urgency severity &amp; intensity questionnaire: quality of life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USP</td>
<td>urinary symptom profile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USPIOs</td>
<td>ultra-small particles of iron oxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USS</td>
<td>urinary sensation scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTI</td>
<td>urinary tract infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTIs</td>
<td>urinary tract infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTUC</td>
<td>upper tract urothelial carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UUI</td>
<td>urgency urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UUT</td>
<td>upper urinary tract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uUTI</td>
<td>uncomplicated urinary tract infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UVJ</td>
<td>ureterovesical junction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VA</td>
<td>US Veterans Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VACURG</td>
<td>Veterans Administration Co-operative Urological Research Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAPS</td>
<td>visual analogue pain scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAS</td>
<td>visual analogue scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VB1</td>
<td>first-voided urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VB2</td>
<td>mid-stream urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VB3</td>
<td>voided bladder urine-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VBM</td>
<td>vinblastine, bleomycin, methotrexate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VC</td>
<td>vena cava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCD</td>
<td>vacuum constriction devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCU</td>
<td>voiding cystourethrography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCUG</td>
<td>voiding cystourethrography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VED</td>
<td>vacuum erection devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VEGF</td>
<td>vascular endothelial growth factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VelP</td>
<td>vinblastine, ifosfamide, cisplatin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VHL</td>
<td>Von Hippel-Lindau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIP</td>
<td>vasoactive intestinal peptide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIP (VP-16)</td>
<td>etoposide, ifosfamide, cisplatin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VR</td>
<td>vesicorenal reflux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VTT</td>
<td>venous tumour thrombus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VUD</td>
<td>video-urodynamic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VUR</td>
<td>vesicoureteric reflux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VUS</td>
<td>voiding urosonography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WBC</td>
<td>white blood cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WBRT</td>
<td>whole brain radiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHO</td>
<td>World Health Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIT</td>
<td>warm ischaemia time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WW</td>
<td>watchful waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XRD</td>
<td>X-ray diffraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZA</td>
<td>zoledronic acid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Disclaimer

The European Association of Urology (EAU) Clinical Guidelines® published by the EAU Guidelines office are systematically developed evidence statements incorporating data from a comprehensive literature review of the most recent studies available (up to their publication date).

The aim of clinical guidelines is to help clinicians to make informed decisions about their patients. However, adherence to a guideline does not guarantee a successful outcome. Ultimately, healthcare professionals must make their own treatment decisions about care on a case-by-case basis, after consultation with their patients, using their clinical judgement, knowledge and expertise. A guideline is not intended to take the place of physician judgment in diagnosing and treatment of particular patients.

Guidelines may not be complete or accurate. The EAU and their Guidelines Office, and members of their boards, officers and employees disclaim all liability for the accuracy or completeness of a guideline, and disclaim all warranties, express or implied to their incorrect use. Guidelines users always are urged to seek out newer information that might impact the diagnostic and treatment recommendations contained within a guideline.

Due to their unique nature – as international guidelines, the EAU Guidelines are not embedded within one distinct healthcare setting - variations in clinical settings, resources, or common patient characteristics, are not accounted for.